Kevin K. **Chui** | Milagros **Jorge** | Sheng-Che **Yen** | Michelle M. **Lusardi**

Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation

Fourth Edition

ELSEVIER

http://evolve.elsevier.com

Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation

Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation

Fourth Edition

Kevin K. Chui, PT, DPT, PhD, GCS, OCS, CEEAA, FAAOMPT
Director and Professor
School of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
College of Health Professions
Pacific University
Hillsboro, Oregon

Milagros "Millee" Jorge, PT, MA, EdD
Professor Emerita
School of Physical Therapy
Langston University
Langston, Oklahoma

Sheng-Che Yen, PT, PhD
Associate Clinical Professor
Department of Physical Therapy, Movement and Rehabilitation Sciences
Bouvé College of Health Professions
Northeastern University
Boston, Massachusetts

Michelle M. Lusardi, PT, DPT, PhD, FAPTA
Professor Emerita
Department of Physical Therapy and Human Movement Science
College of Health Professions
Sacred Heart University
Fairfield, Connecticut

ELSEVIER

Elsevier
3251 Riverport Lane
St. Louis, Missouri 63043

ORTHOTICS AND PROSTHETICS IN REHABILITATION, FOURTH EDITION ISBN: 978-0-323-60913-5

Notice

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds or experiments described herein. Because of rapid advances in the medical sciences, in particular, independent verification of diagnoses and drug dosages should be made. To the fullest extent of the law, no responsibility is assumed by Elsevier, authors, editors or contributors for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Previous editions copyrighted 2013, 2007, and 2000.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2019943498

Content Strategist: Lauren Willis
Senior Content Development Manager: Ellen Wurm-Cutter / Luke Held
Senior Content Development Specialist: Sarah Vora
Publishing Services Manager: Catherine Jackson
Project Manager: Tara Delaney
Design Direction: Patrick Ferguson

Printed in China

Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contributors

Heather Appling, BSME, MSOP, CPO
Program Director
Department of Orthotics and Prosthetics Education
School of Allied Health Professions
Loma Linda University
Loma Linda, California

Katherine Bendix, PT
Physical Therapist
Therapy Team Leader
Encompass Health Rehabilitation Hospital of Braintree
Clinical Services
Braintree, Massachusetts;
Part-Time Lecturer
Department of Physical Therapy, Movement and Rehabilitation Sciences
Bouvé College of Health Professions
Northeastern University
Boston, Massachusetts

Donna M. Bowers, PT, DPT, MPH, PCS
Clinical Associate Professor and Assistant Program Director
Department of Physical Therapy and Human Movement Science
Doctoral Program in Physical Therapy
College of Health Professions
Sacred Heart University
Fairfield, Connecticut

Michael Bridges, PT, DPT, BSME
Assistant Professor
School of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
College of Health Professions
Pacific University
Hillsboro, Oregon

J. Douglas Call, BS, CP
President, CEO
Virginia Prosthetics & Orthotics Inc.
Roanoke, Virginia

Kevin Carroll, MS, CP, FAAOP(D)
Vice President of Prosthetics
Lower Limb Prosthetics
Hanger Clinic
Austin, Texas

Tzurei Chen, PT, PhD
Assistant Professor
School of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
College of Health Professions
Pacific University
Hillsboro, Oregon

Kevin K. Chui, PT, DPT, PhD, GCS, OCS, CEEAA, FAAOMPT
Director and Professor
School of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
College of Health Professions
Pacific University
Hillsboro, Oregon

Bradley Conner, BS, CPO
Orthotics and Prosthetics
Virginia Prosthetics
Roanoke, Virginia

Jonathan Day, MA, CPO
Clinical Associate Professor
Orthopedic Surgery and Rehabilitation
The University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma

Susan Ann Denninger, PT, DPT, PCS
Physical Therapist
Kidnetics
Greenville Health System
Greenville, South Carolina

Todd DeWees, AAS
Physical Therapy Assistant
Prosthetist Orthotists
POPS
Shriner's Hospital for Children
Portland, Oregon

Carol Pierce Dionne, PT, DPT, PhD, MS, OCS, Cert MDT
Associate Professor
Rehabilitation Sciences
University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center;
Director, Center for Human Performance Measurement
Rehabilitation Sciences
University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma

Joan E. Edelstein, PT, MA, FISPO
Special Lecturer
Columbia University
New York, New York

Eric Folmar, PT, DPT, OCS
Assistant Clinical Professor
Department of Physical Therapy, Movement and Rehabilitation Sciences
Bouvé College of Health Professions
Northeastern University
Boston, Massachusetts

Tabitha D. Galindo, PT, DPT
Physical Therapist
Adventist Health
Clackamas Physical Therapy
Clackamas, OR

Tamara Gravano, PT, DPT, EdD, GCS
Associate Professor & Director of Survey Research
Doctor of Physical Therapy Program
Rocky Mountain University of Health Professions
Provo, Utah

Patrick D. Grimm, MD
Research Fellow & Orthopaedic Surgery Senior Resident
Uniformed Services University - Walter Reed Department of Surgery
Walter Reed National Military Medical Center
Bethesda, Maryland

Jeremy E. Hilliard, PT, DPT
Associate Professor & Director of Clinical Education
School of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
College of Health Professions
Pacific University
Hillsboro, Oregon

Ethan A. Hood, PT, DPT, MBA, GCS, NCS
Assistant Professor
Doctor of Physical Therapy Program
DeSales University
Center Valley, Pennsylvania

Heather Jennings, PT, DPT
Physical Therapist
Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation
Department of Veterans Affairs Hospital
West Roxbury, Massachusetts

Milagros "Millee" Jorge, PT, MA, EdD
Professor Emerita
School of Physical Therapy
Langston University
Langston, Oklahoma

Géza F. Kogler, PhD, CO
Director, Master of Science in Prosthetics and Orthotics Program;
Principal Investigator, Clinical Biomechanics Laboratory
School of Biological Sciences
Georgia Institute of Technology
Atlanta, Georgia

Theresa E. Leahy, PT, MHS, PhD
Assistant Professor
Doctor of Physical Therapy Program
University of Lynchburg
Lynchburg, Virginia

Michelle M. Lusardi, PT, DPT, PhD, FAPTA
Professor Emerita
Department of Physical Therapy and Human Movement Science
College of Health Professions
Sacred Heart University
Fairfield, Connecticut

Sharidy MacCord, CPO
Orthotics and Prosthetics
Virginia, Prosthetics and Orthotics
Lynchburg, Virginia

Kimberly Leigh Malin, PT, MS, DHSc, NCS
Assistant Professor
School of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
College of Health Professions
Pacific University
Hillsboro, Oregon

Tyler Manee, MS
Certified Prosthetist Orthotist
Prosthetics and Orthotics
Virginia Prosthetics & Orthotics
Roanoke, Virginia;
Chief Operating Officer
Additive Orthotics & Prosthetics
Charlotte, North Carolina

Olfat Mohamed, PT, PhD
Professor and Chair
Department of Physical Therapy
California State University
Long Beach, California

Kelly J. Negley, PT, DPT
Assistant Professor
Doctor of Physical Therapy Program
Marymount University;
Physical Therapist
Inpatient Rehabilitation
Virginia Hospital Center
Arlington, Virginia

Andrea Oberlander, PT, DPT
Clinical Assistant Professor
Department of Physical Therapy and Human Movement Science
Doctoral Program in Physical Therapy
College of Health Professions
Sacred Heart University
Fairfield, Connecticut

Annemarie E. Orr, MA, OTD
Assistant Professor of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation
Uniformed Services University of Health Sciences
Bethesda, Maryland;
Occupational Therapist
Department of Clinical Support Services
Naval Medical Center San Diego
San Diego, California

Elicia Pollard, PT, MEd, PhD
Dean
School of Physical Therapy
Langston University
Langston, Oklahoma

Benjamin K. Potter, MD
Director for Surgery
Surgery
Walter Reed National Military Medical Center;
Professor
Surgery
Uniformed Service University of Health Sciences
Bethesda, Maryland

John Rheinstein, CP, FAAOP(D)
Upper and Lower Limb Prosthetic Specialist
Metro New York
Hanger Clinic
New York, New York

Daniel A. Riddick, PT, DPT
Inpatient Rehabilitation
Lynchburg General Hospital
Lynchburg, Virginia

Daniel H. Riddick, MD, PhD
Professor (Retired)
University of Vermont
School of Medicine
Burlington, Vermont

Julie D. Ries, PT, PhD
Professor
Doctor of Physical Therapy Program
Marymount University
Arlington, Virginia

S. Tyler Shultz, PT, DPT, OCS
Assistant Professor
Department of Physical Therapy
Wingate University
Wingate, North Carolina

Susan Spaulding, CPO, MS
Senior Lecturer
Department of Rehabilitation
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington

Melissa Thacker, PT, DPT
Assistant Professor
Department of Sports and Exercise Science
Cameron University
Lawton, Oklahoma

Eddie J. Traylor, BS, MEd, DPT
Assistant Professor
School of Physical Therapy
Langston University
Langston, Oklahoma

Susan H. Ventura, PT, MEd, PhD
Associate Clinical Professor
Department of Physical Therapy, Movement and Rehabilitation Sciences
Bouvé College of Health Professions
Northeastern University
Boston, Massachusetts

R. Scott Ward, PT, PhD, FAPTA
Professor and Chair
Department of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
University of Utah
Salt Lake City, Utah

Brian J. Wilkinson, PT, DPT, CHT, CLT
Assistant Professor
School of Physical Therapy and Athletic Training
College of Health Professions
Pacific University
Hillsboro, Oregon

Joshua Thomas Williams, PT, DPT
Assistant Professor
Department of Rehabilitation Sciences
University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma

Christopher K. Wong, PT, PhD
Associate Director
Program in Physical Therapy
Columbia University Medical Center
New York, New York

Sheng-Che Yen, PT, PhD
Associate Clinical Professor
Department of Physical Therapy, Movement and Rehabilitation Sciences
Bouvé College of Health Professions
Northeastern University
Boston, MA

Preface

The twenty-first century continues to provide new advances in health care through the efforts of the many professionals working in scientific research and development. In particular the field of orthotics and prosthetics continues to make profound advancement through the dedication of scientists and clinicians at the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs Office of Research and Development and in medical centers and private industry across the globe. The use of technology such as computer-aided design (CAD) and computer-aided engineering systems has been developed to support advances in product development that reduce the need for physical prototypes, as well as costs and fabrication time. The clinical application of assistive devices, such as those available in the field of orthotics and prosthetics, offer relief from physical impairments and reduce the activity limitations and participation restrictions presented by disease and disability to individuals of varied ages and backgrounds, including the men and women who courageously serve in the different branches of the United States Armed Forces.

Advancements in the use of "smart" technology in the rehabilitation of persons using orthotic and prosthetic devices challenges health professionals such as physicians, physical therapists, occupational therapists, orthotists, prosthetists, nurses, and social workers to aspire for continuous quality improvement in service delivery models of care. Health care professionals seek to provide quality care using evidence-based best practice recommendations and clinical guidelines available in their respective fields. The need for integrated knowledge and collaborative collegial relationships among health professionals is critical for optimal delivery of health care to consumers across the life span. The 4th edition of *Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation* provides clinicians, educators, and students of physical therapy, occupational therapy, prosthetics, and orthotics an updated textbook on common health conditions and available interventions for persons with physical impairments and disabilities that require the use of assistive devices such as an orthosis or prosthesis.

The challenges facing health professionals who are dedicated to providing effective and efficient evidence-based rehabilitative care to individuals with conditions affecting their ability to engage in essential daily activities and participate in meaningful roles are many. These challenges include (1) the ever more rapidly advancing technology that tests our ability to remain up to date about available prosthetic and orthotic options, (2) expectations for productivity in practice reflected in the very real time constraints of daily patient care, and (3) the need to be good stewards of the health care dollar while at the same time providing the best orthosis or prosthesis and associated rehabilitation care so that the individual can meet his or her personal goals when using the device. Clearly, optimum care for these individuals and their family requires the combined expertise of health professionals from many different disciplines. The complexity of the health care delivery system, the varied options and alternatives for health care, and information available through the internet can present challenges to health professionals and consumers alike. To address this complexity, the 4th edition of *Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation* incorporates information from the perspectives of different members of the rehabilitation team.

The goal of the 4th edition of *Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation* is to present best available evidence for entry-level physical therapy, occupational therapy, and orthotic/prosthetic students and to provide a positive model of clinical decision making in the context of multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary care. We also intend the text to be a comprehensive and accessible reference for practicing clinicians; a resource for their person-centered examination, evaluation, intervention planning, and outcome assessment. Our contributors are professionals from the fields of orthotics and prosthetics, physical and occupational therapy, biomechanics, engineering, and medicine (including surgery). We present this text as an example of the value of collaborative and interdisciplinary patient care. Each contributor has carefully researched the developments in technology, examination, and intervention for the revised or new chapter presented in this edition. We have incorporated concepts and language of the World Health Organization's International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF) to enhance communication across disciplines. We have included case examples, posing sequential relevant questions to provoke discussion of alternatives as a model of effective clinical decision making. We have opted not to "answer" the questions posed, on the grounds that the general principles we present in the text must be adapted appropriately to meet individual needs, daring readers to work through the problem-solving process and debate the pros and cons of the various options with their peers. We seek to provide opportunity to "practice" the process of evidence-based clinical decision making, rather than present an absolute prescription or plan of care. We hope that this approach will provide a workable model, prompting the reader to appraise critically evidence from a variety of sources, integrate this material with the clinical expertise of self and others, and include the individual and family's values and goals when making clinical decisions.

As in previous editions, we have chosen purposefully to continue using "person-first" language to reflect the humanity and value of the individuals we care for. Person-first language utilizes phrases such as "person with stroke" or "person with amputation" rather than stating "stroke patient" or "amputee patient". The use of person-first language is the standard approach in addressing individuals with disabilities. We hope that this example assists students and clinicians using the text to embrace person-centered care.

The text begins with a set of chapters that provides foundation and context for the care of persons who might benefit, in terms of function and of quality of life, from prescription of an orthosis or prosthesis. Although chapters on exercise prescription for older adults, motor learning and

motor control, and evidence-based practice may not initially seem to "fit" with the remaining chapters, they are written with the intent to apply these concepts to the rehabilitation of individuals using an orthosis or prosthesis, and we trust that those who read them will recognize their relevance. The chapters on assessment of the ability to walk, the methods of fabrication and fitting, and on footwear choices have obvious relevance.

The second part of the text takes us into the world of orthotic design and application, starting with orthoses for foot and lower limb, spine, and hand. We challenge our readers to think not only about selecting the most appropriate orthosis for persons with musculoskeletal or neuromuscular system problems, but also to design a rehabilitation intervention based on principles of motor learning that will facilitate the person's use of the orthoses and ability to participate in activities most meaningful to the individual. We then consider wheelchairs and seating as an orthosis-of-sorts, designed to enhance mobility for persons when functional walking is not a viable option.

The third part of the text focuses on the care of persons with amputation, beginning with consideration of why amputations are performed, care of those at risk of amputation (with prevention as a focus), how amputations are done, and postoperative/preprosthetic care. The following chapters provide an overview of prosthetic options and alignment issues for those with partial foot, transtibial, transfemoral, transhumeral, and bilateral amputations. We then consider initial prosthetic rehabilitation, including chapters on advanced skills for community function and athletics following amputation. The chapter on children with limb deficiency prompts us to incorporate our understanding of motor, cognitive, and emotional development, as well as family dynamics, into prosthetic rehabilitation. We include chapters on prosthetic options and rehabilitation for persons with upper extremity amputation meant to provide exposure to this more specialized aspect of prosthetic and rehabilitative care.

With this 4th edition of *Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation*, we hope that our work will enhance collaboration, mutual respect, and communication, as well as broaden the knowledge base of health professionals involved in orthotic or prosthetic rehabilitation. It is our belief that collaborative and interdisciplinary care not only enriches clinical practice and teaching, but also insures the best possible outcomes for individuals for which we provide rehabilitative care.

Kevin K. Chui, PT, DPT, PhD
Milagros "Millee" Jorge, PT, MA, EdD
Sheng-Che Yen, PT, PhD
Michelle M. Lusardi, PT, DPT, PhD

Acknowledgments

To my family, for their endless support. To Dr. Michelle Lusardi, PT, DPT, PhD, FAPTA, for believing in me. To our colleagues, for their commitment to this project. And to my Executive Dean, Dr. Ann Barr-Gillespie, PT, DPT, PhD, for her guidance.

K.K.C.

To Mitchell B. Horowitz

In thanksgiving for our wonderful married life together and in memory of my beloved brother William Jorge. "The way to love anything is to realize that it may be lost."– G.K. Chesterton

M.J.

To my beloved wife, Shao-Jen Cheng

You have been my source of inspiration and interest for all of my scholarly work.

S.Y.

To all who have served as my mentors, I as truly grateful and blessed to have followed in your footsteps.

To all of the former students who have come through my classroom, what a privilege to have been part of your journey.

To my beloved husband, Lawrence, and my wonderful son, Tigre, you have been the wing beneath my wings…

M.M.L

1 Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation: Multidisciplinary Approach☆

MILAGROS JORGE

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the role of the orthotist, prosthetist, physical therapist, and other professionals in the rehabilitation of persons with movement dysfunction.
2. Discuss the history and development of physical rehabilitation professions associated with the practice of orthotics and prosthetics in health care.
3. Identify contemporary critical factors that continue to influence the need for the use of orthotics and prosthetics in rehabilitation.
4. Apply the use of disablement frameworks in physical rehabilitation.
5. Discuss the role of health professionals in multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary rehabilitation teams.
6. Determine key attributes and attitudes that health professionals should possess to be successful members of interdisciplinary rehabilitation teams.

The author extends appreciation to Caroline Nielson, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Health professionals work in health care settings to meet the physical rehabilitation needs of diverse patient populations. The current health care environment strives to be patient-centered and advocates the use of best-practice models that maximize patient outcomes and contain costs. The use of evidence-based treatment approaches, clinical practice guidelines, and standardized outcome measures provides a foundation for evaluating and determining efficacy in health care across disciplines and health conditions. The World Health Organization (WHO) International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF)[1] provides a disablement framework that enables health professionals to maximize patient/client participation and function while minimizing disability. The current complex environment of health care and evolving patterns of health care delivery require a focus on multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary approaches to the total care of the patient.

For a health care team to function effectively, each member of the health care team must develop a positive attitude toward multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary collaboration. The collaborating health professional must understand the functional roles of each health care discipline within the team and must respect and value each discipline's input in the decision-making process of the health care team. Rehabilitation, particularly when related to orthotics and prosthetics, requires an interdisciplinary approach and lends itself well to collaboration among the various health professionals involved in the management of providing physical rehabilitation. Persons with orthopedic and neurologic impairments caused by a variety of health conditions require a wide range of expert knowledge and technical skills. The physician, prosthetist, orthotist, physical therapist, occupational therapist, nurse, and social worker are important participants in the rehabilitation team who will provide the knowledge and skills necessary for effective patient management. Understanding the roles and professional responsibilities of each of these disciplines maximizes the ability of the rehabilitation team members to function effectively to provide comprehensive care for the patient.

According to disability data from the American Community Survey 2017,[2] 12.6% of noninstitutionalized populations, male or female, of all ages and races regardless of ethnicity, reported having a disability. Nearly 24% (23.6%) of noninstitutionalized civilian veterans aged 21 to 64 years report having a Veterans Administration (VA) service–connected disability. In the 2015 US Congressional Research Service report, "A Guide to U.S. Military Casualty Statistics,"[3] the US military engagements that have continuously persisted for the past 15 years in Iraq, Afghanistan, and other countries have resulted in traumatic brain injury (TBI), amputation, and physical disabilities with life-long impairments.[4] The continued rise in persons with obesity has increased the number of people with diabetes. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2017 Diabetes Surveillance System Report indicates 30.3 million Americans have diabetes[5]—1 out of every 10 persons; 84 million Americans (1 out of every 3 persons) have prediabetes (Box 1.1). Persons with diabetes are at risk for dysvascular

☆The author extends appreciation to Caroline C. Nielsen, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Box 1.1 Fast Facts on Diabetes

30.3 million Americans have diabetes (1 out of every 10 persons)
Diagnosed: 23.1 million people
Undiagnosed: 7.2 million people
84 million Americans have prediabetes (1 out of every 3 persons)

Source: https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pdfs/data/statistics/national-diabetes-statistics-report.pdf.

disease, such as peripheral arterial disease (PAD),[6] which often results in musculoskeletal and neuromuscular impairments to the lower extremities. Ischemic disease can cause peripheral neuropathy, loss of sensation, poor skin care and wound formation, trophic ulceration, osteomyelitis, and gangrene, which can result in the need for limb amputation.

Persons coping with illness, injury, disease, impairments, and disability often require rehabilitation inclusive of special orthotic and prosthetic devices to help with mobility, stability, pain relief, and skin and joint protection. Appropriate prescription, fabrication, instruction, and application of the orthotic and prosthetic devices help persons to engage in activities of daily living as independently as possible. Orthotists and prosthetists are health care professionals who custom-fabricate and fit orthoses and prostheses. Along with other health care professionals, including nurses, physical therapists, and occupational therapists, orthotists and prosthestists are integral members of the multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary rehabilitation teams responsible for returning patients to productive and meaningful lives. The WHO ICF[7] is a common framework to understand and describe functioning and disability. To make the ICF more applicable for everyday use, the WHO and ICF research branch created a process for developing core sets of data to be considered when addressing persons with disabilities. ICF categories, or ICF Core Sets,[8] facilitate the description of functioning by providing lists of essential categories that are relevant for specific health conditions and health care contexts. The use of the WHO ICF disablement framework enables health professionals to evaluate and support individuals with impairments that maximize function and minimize disability. The WHO ICF disablement framework has broadened considerably the original pathology model framework in which disability was a function of a particular disease or group of diseases.[9] In developing the ICF Core Sets, the WHO engages professionals from across health care disciplines to endorse a more inclusive model that uses expertise within the many sectors in rehabilitative care. A multidisciplinary approach to patient care in rehabilitation is the current standard when addressing the needs of persons with physical impairments, limitations, and disabilities. The 2016 American Heart Association (AHA)/American College of Cardiology (ACC) clinical guideline supports an interdisciplinary approach to the management of persons with PAD.[10] The AHA/ACC clinical guideline identifies a team of professionals representing different disciplines to assist in the evaluation and management of the patient with PAD. This chapter discusses the developmental history of the art and science of orthotics, prosthetics, and physical therapy as professions dedicated to rehabilitating persons with injury, impairment, and disability.

Orthotists and Prosthetists

Orthotists provide care to persons with neuromuscular and musculoskeletal impairments that contribute to functional limitation and disability by designing, fabricating, and fitting orthoses or custom-made braces. The orthotist is responsible for evaluating the patient's functional and cosmetic needs, designing the orthosis, selecting appropriate components, and fabricating, fitting, and aligning the orthosis. The orthotist educates the patient and the care providers on appropriate use of the orthosis, care of the orthosis, and how to assess continued appropriateness of the orthosis (Figs. 1.1 and 1.2).

Prosthetists provide care to patients with partial or total absence of limbs by designing, fabricating, and fitting prostheses or artificial limbs. The prosthetist creates the design to fit the individual's particular functional and cosmetic needs; selects the appropriate materials and components; makes all necessary casts, measurements, and modifications (including static and dynamic alignment); evaluates the fit and function of the prosthesis on the patient; and teaches the patient how to care for the prosthesis (Figs. 1.3 and 1.4).

According to the US Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics, in 2016, there were 7500 certified orthotists and prosthetists practicing in the United States.[11] Individuals who enter the fields of orthotics and prosthetics must complete advanced education (beyond an undergraduate degree) and a residency program before becoming eligible for certification. Registered assistants and technicians in orthotics or prosthetics assist the certified practitioner with patient care and fabrication of orthotic and prosthetic devices.

Fig. 1.1 Orthotist is evaluating the proper fit of a spinal orthosis to determine whether it meets the prescriptive goals and can be worn comfortably during functional activities or whether modifications need to be made.

Fig. 1.2 Child is wearing a spinal orthosis during a physical therapy session. Orthotist is observing the child as she is engaged in therapeutic play, to assess the child's level of support and comfort while wearing the orthosis.

Fig. 1.3 Prosthetist is assisting child in donning prosthetic limb. Prosthetist will check the prosthesis for alignment, fit, and comfort.

History

The emergence of orthotics and prosthetics as health care professions has followed a course similar to the profession of physical therapy. Development of all three professions is closely related to three significant events in world history: World War I, World War II, and the onset and spread of polio in the 1950s. Unfortunately, it has taken war and disease to provide the major impetus for research and development in these key areas of rehabilitation.

Although the profession of physical therapy has its roots in the early history of medicine, World War I was a major impetus to its development. During the war, female "physical educators" volunteered in physicians' offices and Army hospitals to instruct patients in corrective exercises. After the war ended, a group of these "reconstruction aides" joined together to form the American Women's Physical Therapy Association. In 1922, the association changed its name to the American Physiotherapy Association and opened membership to men and aligned itself closely with the medical profession. In the late 1940s the Association had once again changed its name to the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA), as it remains at present.[12]

Fig. 1.4 Prosthetist using computer-aided design in fabricating a lower-extremity prosthesis.

Until World War II, the practice of prosthetics depended on the skills of individual craftsmen. The roots of prosthetics can be traced to early blacksmiths, armor makers, other skilled artisans, and even the individuals with amputations, who fashioned makeshift replacement limbs from materials at hand. During the Civil War, more than 30,000 amputations were performed on Union soldiers injured in battle; at least as many occurred among injured Confederate troops. At that time, most prostheses consisted of carved or milled wooden sockets and feet. Many were procured by mail order from companies in New York or other manufacturing centers at a cost of $75 to $100 each.[13] Before World War II, prosthetic practice required much hands-on work and craftsman's skill. D.A. McKeever, a prosthetist who practiced in the 1930s, described the process: "You went to [the person with an amputation's] house, took measurements and then carved a block of wood, covered it with rawhide and glue, and sanded it." During his training, McKeever spent 3 years in a shop carving wood: "You pulled out the inside, shaped the outside, and sanded it with a sandbelt."[14]

The development of the profession of orthotics mirrors the field of prosthetics. Early "bracemakers" were also artisans such as blacksmiths, armor makers, and patients who used many of the same materials as the prosthetist: metal, leather, and wood. By the 18th and 19th centuries, splints and braces were also mass produced and sold through catalogs. These bracemakers were also frequently known as "bonesetters" until surgery replaced manipulation and bracing in the practice of orthopedics. "Bracemaker" then became a profession with a particular role distinct from that of the physician.[15]

World War II and the period following were times of significant growth for the professions of physical therapy, prosthetics, and orthotics. During the war, many more physical therapists were needed to treat the wounded and rehabilitate those who were left with functional impairments and disabilities. The Army became the major resource for physical therapy training programs, and the number of physical therapists serving in the armed services increased more than sixfold.[16] The number of soldiers who required braces or artificial limbs during and after the war increased the demand for prosthetists and orthotists as well.

After World War II, a coordinated program for persons with amputations was developed. In 1945, a conference of surgeons, prosthetists, and scientists organized by the National Academy of Sciences revealed that little scientific effort had been devoted to the development of artificial limbs. A "crash" research program was initiated, funded by the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs Office of Scientific Research and Development and continued by the VA. A direct result of this effort was the development of the patellar tendon–bearing prosthesis for individuals with transtibial (below-knee) amputation and the quadrilateral socket design for those with transfemoral (above-knee) amputation. This program also included educating prosthetists, physicians, and physical therapists in the skills of fitting and training of patients with these new prosthetic designs.[16]

The needs of soldiers injured in the military conflicts in Korea and Vietnam ensured continuing research, further refinements, and development of new materials. The development of myoelectrically controlled upper extremity prostheses and the advent of modular endoskeletal lower extremity prostheses occurred in the post–Vietnam conflict era. The US Department of Defense reports data on the casualties from military engagements in Iraq and Afghanistan, including Operation Freedom's Sentinel; Operation Inherent Resolve; Operation New Dawn; Operation Iraqi Freedom; and Operation Enduring Freedom. Based on the 2015 Congressional Research Service report on the military casualties of war, 327,299 service men and women sustained TBI and 1645 sustained major limb amputations.[17]

The use of orthotics and prosthetics to support individuals with TBI and amputation is critical when seeking to reduce impairments and enhance functional abilities. The Veterans Health Administration Research Development is committed to exploring the use of new technology such as robotics, tissue engineering, and nanotechnology to design and build lighter, more functional orthoses and prostheses.[18]

The current term *orthotics* emerged in the late 1940s and was officially adopted by American orthotists and prosthetists when the American Orthotic and Prosthetic Association was formed to replace its professional predecessor, the Artificial Limb Manufacturers' Association. *Orthosis* is a more inclusive term than *brace* and reflects the development of devices and materials for dynamic control in addition to stabilization of the body. In 1948 the American Board for Certification in Orthotics and Prosthetics[19] was formed to establish and promote high professional standards.

Although the polio epidemic of the 1950s played a role in the further development of the physical therapy profession, this epidemic had the greatest effect on the development of orthotics. By 1970, many new techniques and materials, some adapted from industrial techniques, were being used to assist patients in coping with the effects of polio and other neuromuscular disorders. The scope of practice in the field of orthotics is extensive, including working with children with muscular dystrophy, cerebral palsy, and spina bifida; patients of all ages recovering from severe burns or fractures; adolescents with scoliosis; athletes recovering from surgery or injury; and older adults with diabetes, cerebrovascular accident, severe arthritis, and other disabling conditions.

Like physical therapists, orthotists and prosthetists practice in a variety of settings. The most common setting is the private office, where the professional offers services to a patient on referral from the patient's physician. Many large institutions, such as hospitals, rehabilitation centers, and research institutes, have departments of orthotics and prosthetics with on-site staff to provide services to patients. The prosthetist or orthotist may also be a supplier or fabrication manager in a central production laboratory. In addition, orthotists and prosthetists serve as full-time faculty in orthotic and prosthetic professional education programs. Orthotists and prosthetists also serve as residency directors and clinical educators in a variety of facilities for the yearlong residency program required before the certification examination.

Prosthetic and Orthotic Professional Roles and Responsibilities

With rapid advances in technology and health care, the roles of the prosthetist and orthotist have expanded from a technologic focus to a more inclusive focus on being a member of the rehabilitation team. Patient examination, evaluation, education, and treatment are currently significant responsibilities of practitioners. Most technical tasks are completed by technicians who work in the office, in the laboratory, or at an increasing number of central fabrication facilities. The advent and availability of modifiable prefabrication systems have reduced the amount of time that the practitioner spends crafting new prostheses and orthoses.

Current educational requirements reflect these changes in orthotic and prosthetic practice. Entry into professional training programs requires completion of a bachelor's degree from an accredited college or university, with a strong emphasis on prerequisite courses in the sciences. Professional education in orthotics or prosthetics requires an additional academic year for each discipline. Along with the necessary technical courses, students study research methodology, kinesiology and biomechanics, musculoskeletal and neuromuscular pathology, communication and education, and current health care issues. Orthotics and prosthetics programs are most often based within academic health centers or in colleges or universities with hospital affiliations. On completion of the educational and experiential requirements, the student is eligible to take the certification examinations. To address the rehabilitation needs of individuals who will benefit from the art and science of the fields of prosthetics and orthotics, physical therapists,

orthotists, prosthetists, and other members of the health care team must have discreet knowledge and skills in the management of persons with a variety of health conditions across the life span. Working as a rehabilitation team, physicians, nurses, prosthetists, orthotists, physical therapists, occupational therapists, social workers, patients, and family members seek to alleviate disease, injury, impairments, and disability by maximizing function.

Disablement Frameworks

Historically, disability was described using a theoretical medical model of disease and pathology. Over time, various conceptual frameworks have been developed to organize information about the process and effects of disability.[20] Disablement frameworks in the past have been used to understand the relationship of disease and pathology to human function and disability.[20-23] The need to understand the impact that acute injury or illness and chronic health conditions have on the functioning of specific body systems, human performance in general, and on the typical activities of daily living from both the individual and a societal perspective has been central to the development of the disablement models. The biomedical model of pathology and dysfunction provided the conceptual framework for understanding human function, disability, and handicap as a consequence of pathological and disease processes.

The Nagi model was among the first to challenge the appropriateness of the traditional biomedical model of disability.[21] Nagi developed a model that looked at the individual in relationship to the pathologic condition, functional limitations, and the role that the environment and society or the social environment played. The four major elements of Nagi's theoretical formulation included active pathology (interference with normal processes at the level of the cell), impairment (anatomic, physiologic, mental, or emotional abnormalities or loss at the level of body systems), functional limitation (limitation in performance at the level of the individual), and disability. Nagi defined disability as "an expression of physical or mental limitation in a social context."[21] The Nagi model was the first theoretical construct on disability that considered the interaction between the individual and the environment from a sociologic perspective rather than a purely biomedical perspective. Despite the innovation of the Nagi model in the 1960s, the biomedical model of disability persisted.

In 1980, the WHO developed the International Classification of Impairments, Disabilities, and Handicaps (ICIDH) to provide a standardized means of classifying the consequences of disease and injury for the collection of data and the development of social policy.[24] This document provided a framework for organizing information about the consequences of disease. However, it focused solely on the effects of pathologic processes on the individual's activity level. Disability was viewed as a result of an impairment and considered a lack of ability to perform an activity in the normal manner. In 1993, the WHO began a revision of ICIDH disablement framework that gave rise to the concept that a person's handicap was less related to the health condition that created a disadvantage for completing the necessary life roles but rather to the level of participation that the person with the health condition was able to engage in within the environment. The concept of being handicapped was changed to be seen as a consequence of the level of participation for the person and the interaction within an environment.

The Institute of Medicine enlarged Nagi's original concept in 1991 to include the individual's social and physical environment (Fig. 1.5). This revised model describes the environment as "including the natural environment, the built environment, the culture, the economic system, the political system, and psychological factors." In this model, disability is not viewed as a pathologic condition residing in a person but instead is a function of the interaction of the person with the environment.[25]

In 2001 the ICIDH was revised to ICIDH-2 and renamed "International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health" and is commonly referred to as ICF.[26] The ICF disablement framework includes individual function at the level of body/body part, whole person, and whole person within a social context. The model helps in the description of changes in body function and structure, what people with particular health conditions can do in standard environments (their level of capacity), and what they actually do in their usual environments (their level of performance). One of the major innovations of the ICF model is the presence of an environmental factor classification that considers the role of environmental barriers and facilitators in the performance of tasks of daily living. Disability becomes an umbrella term for impairments, activity limitations, and participation restrictions. The ICF model emphasizes health and functioning rather than disability. The ICF model provides a radical departure from emphasizing a person's disability to focusing on the level of health and facilitating an individual's participation to whatever extent is possible within that level of health. In the ICF, disability and functioning are viewed as outcomes of interactions between health conditions (diseases, disorders, and injuries) and contextual factors (Fig. 1.6).

As is stated on the ICF website,[27] "To make the ICF more applicable for everyday use, WHO and the ICF Research Branch created a process for developing core sets of ICF categories, or "ICF Core Sets."[28] ICF Core Sets facilitate the description of functioning, for example, in clinical practice by providing lists of essential categories that are relevant for specific health conditions and health care contexts. These ICF categories were selected from the entire ICF following a scientific process based on preparatory studies and the involvement of a multidisciplinary group of experts.

The evolution of disablement frameworks from the biomedical models to the newer, contemporary models that include the biopsychosocial domains provides theoretical constructs that guide the rehabilitation professional in clinical practice. The development of the ICF Core Sets derived from input members of the rehabilitation team is essential for clinical decision-making that addresses pathologic conditions or disease processes, impairments, functional limitations, and disabilities. Interrelationships among all four of these elements are the focus of the rehabilitation team. The physical therapist, orthotist, prosthetist, and other team members work together to create the most effective outcome for the patient by identifying and addressing pathologic processes, functional limitations, impairments, and disability. The ICF Core Sets and ICF Documentation System[29] allow for data collection that can be useful in research leading to

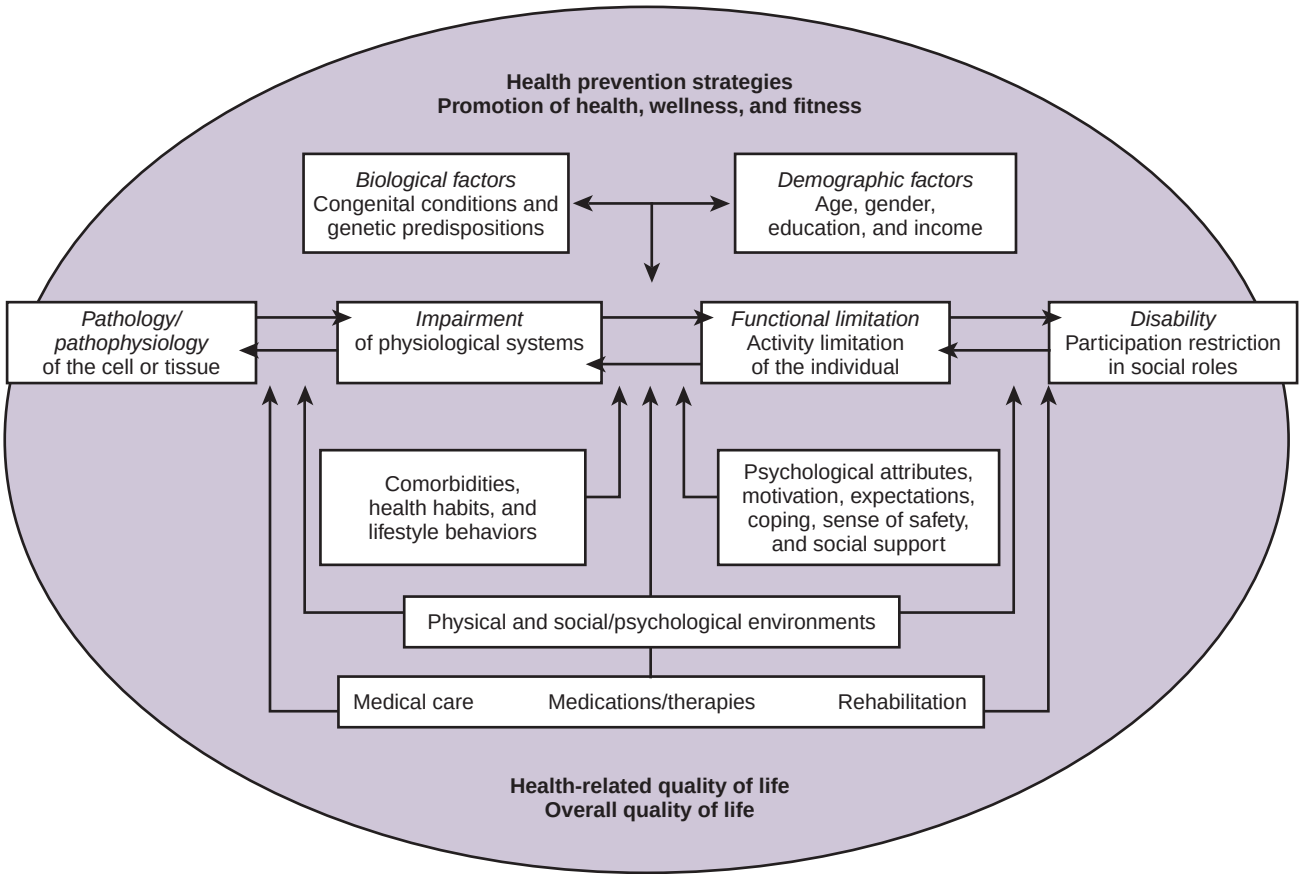


Fig. 1.5 The revised Institute of Medicine/Nagi model of the disablement process considers the impact of pathologic conditions and impairment, as well as intraindividual and extraindividual factors, that may influence functional limitation and disability affecting health-related and overall quality of life. (Modified from Guccione AA. Arthritis and the process of disablement. *Phys Ther.* 1994;74[5]:410, the Nagi Model.)

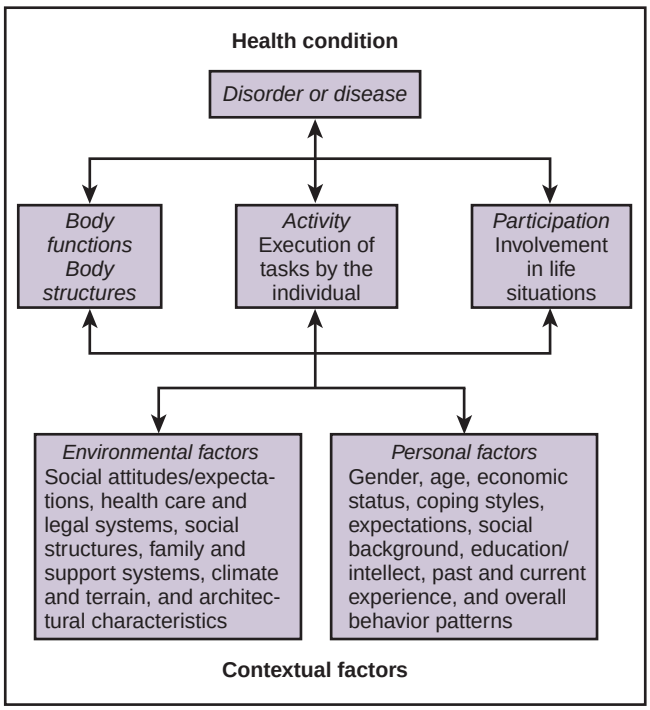


Fig. 1.6 World Health Organization International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health Framework. (Modified from World Health Organization. *Towards a Common Language for Functioning, Disability and Health*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2002: 9–10.)

improved patient interventions, assessment of patient outcomes, and development of health and social policies.

Characteristics of Rehabilitation Health Care Teams

The complexity of the health care arena and the level of care required by individuals in rehabilitation care settings require the collaboration of many health care practitioners with varied professional skills who can form multidisciplinary, interdisciplinary, and transdisciplinary teams as needed.[30-32] The multidisciplinary rehabilitation team is composed of the different health professionals such as the physician, nurse, physical therapist, occupational therapist, prosthetist, orthotist, and social worker. Each professional operates with an area of specialization and expertise. The members of the multidisciplinary team work parallel to one another, and the medical record is the collecting source for the information gleaned and shared. Interdisciplinary teams also include the representatives of a variety of health disciplines, but there is interdependence among the professionals. In the interdisciplinary team process, there is structure and organization that promotes program planning to support patient-centered care through effective communication and effective clinical management. Clinical practice guidelines that seek to promote best practices for

Table 1.1 AHA/ACC Clinical Guidelines for Management of Patients With Lower-Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease

- Nurses
- Orthopedic surgeons and podiatrists
- Endocrinologists
- Internal medicine specialists
- Infectious disease specialists
- Radiology and vascular imaging specialists
- Physical medicine and rehabilitation clinicians
- Orthotics and prosthetics specialists
- Social workers or exercise physiologists
- Physical and occupational therapists
- Nutritionists/dieticians

Recommendations for interdisciplinary care team members include: Vascular medical and surgical specialists (i.e., vascular medicine, vascular surgery, interventional radiology, interventional cardiology).

ACC, American College of Cardiology; *AHA*, American Heart Association.

From Gerhard-Herman MD, et al. 2016 AHA/ACC Lower Extremity PAD Guideline. 2016 AHA/ACC Guideline on the Management of Patients With Lower Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease. A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. 2017;69(11):1465-1508.

specific health conditions often include information on the interdisciplinary team.[33] Table 1.1 provides an example of the suggested composition of an interdisciplinary team for the management of patients with PAD. The interdisciplinary team members work to establish goals for the team that drive the rehabilitation process for the patient. Interdisciplinary teams traditionally follow a patient-centered approach to goal setting. Establishing the patient as the focus of the work for the team, the interdisciplinary team members collaborate to execute the goals and meet the desired outcomes. Most team processes in rehabilitation centers strive for an interdisciplinary team approach that promotes patient-centered care. Each discipline works within its scope of practice to optimize care through coordinated efforts.

Transdisciplinary teams are comprised of the same professional members identified in the multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary teams; however, the team members in the transdisciplinary model function differently in that they share clinical responsibilities and overlap in duties and responsibilities. In the transdisciplinary model of team building, the professional roles and responsibilities are so familiar to the team members that there is an interchange of tasks and functions.[34] Transdisciplinary teams engage in release of professional roles typical to the discipline in an effort to have the patient receive the interventions needed within a context that is supportive of the learning and the practice. The transdisciplinary model is operational in the management of infants and toddlers who receive early intervention rehabilitation services and have an Individualized Family Service Plan (IFSP).[35]

Two major issues emerging in health care that affect health care professionals include (1) the need for health care professionals with advanced education and training in specialty and subspecialty areas and (2) the need for collaboration among health practitioners to ensure efficiency of patient management that results in best practice and improves patient outcomes. The information explosion in health care, particularly in rehabilitation, has led to increasing specialization and subspecialization in many fields. The multidisciplinary, interdisciplinary, or transdisciplinary health care team concept has evolved, in part, because no single individual or discipline can have all the necessary expertise and specialty knowledge required for high-quality care, especially the care of patients with complex disorders. Rehabilitation health care teams provide patient care management approaches that capitalize on clinical expertise by engaging members from diverse medical and rehabilitation professions working together, collaborating, and communicating closely to optimize patient care.[36]

Collaboration is defined as a joint communication and decision-making process with the goal of meeting the health care needs of a particular patient or patient population. Each participant on the rehabilitation team brings a particular expertise, and leadership is determined by the particular rehabilitation situation being addressed. The rehabilitation team has the opportunity to meet and engage in "asking the answerable questions" that are critical in current clinical practice when engaging in an evidence-based model of practice. According to Strauss and colleagues,[37] evidence-based practice is the integration of the best research evidence, clinical expertise, and patient values. Evidence-based practice and clinical decision-making enhance the role of the rehabilitation team professionals as they share their clinical insights supported by historical and current evidence. Rehabilitation teams that are diverse in professional representation can bring a wide perspective of expertise on particular rehabilitation issues. With this perspective, clinical decision-making becomes a more inclusive process.

The role of the health care professional on a rehabilitation team begins during professional education. Rehabilitation sciences health professionals must work at understanding, evaluating, and analyzing the many facets of health care that require specialized professionals who will work to meet the goals and objectives of the specialty and of health care delivery on the whole. The formation of a rehabilitation team provides a cohort of professionals who individually and collectively strive for effective and efficient management of patients. The team process allows for a deeper understanding of and appreciation for the contributions of the other rehabilitation disciplines in the assessment and treatment of the patient and management of patient problems.

In addition to discipline-specific skills and knowledge, health professionals must be aware of the interrelationships among health care workers. One of the major barriers to effective team functioning is a lack of understanding or misconception of the roles of different disciplines in the care of the whole patient.[38] A clear understanding of the totality of the health care delivery system and the role of each professional within the system increase the potential effectiveness of the health care team. A group of informed, dedicated health professionals working together to set appropriate goals and initiate patient care to meet these goals uses a model that exceeds the sum of its individual components.

Almost all current rehabilitation health care is provided in a team setting using a patient-centered approach. This integrated approach facilitates appreciation of the patient as a person with individual strengths and needs rather than as a dehumanized diagnosis or problem. The diverse perspectives and knowledge that are brought to the rehabilitation process by the members of the interdisciplinary team provide insight into all aspects of the patient's concerns

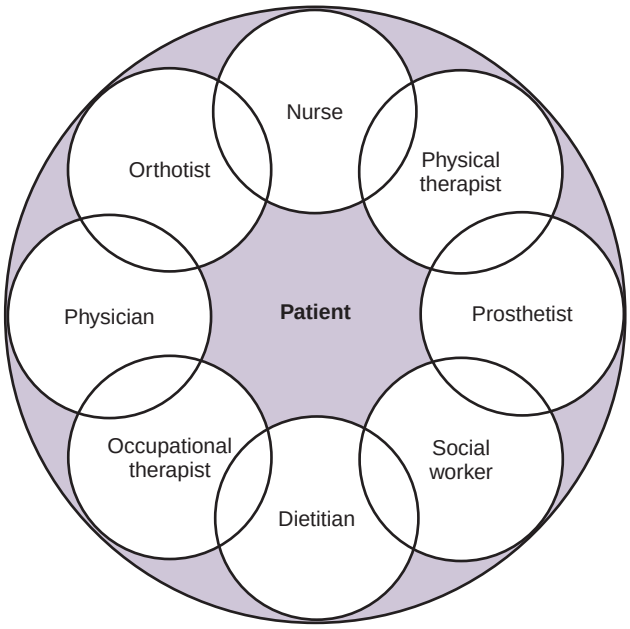


Fig. 1.7 Patient-centered rehabilitation teams. Key components of the successful health care team are a clear understanding of the role, responsibilities, and unique skills and knowledge of each member of the rehabilitation team, combined with open and effective communication.

(Fig. 1.7). Conceptually, all members of the health care team contribute equally to patient care. The contribution of each is important and valuable; otherwise, quality of patient care and efficacy of intervention would be diminished. Although one member of the team may take an organization or management role, decision-making occurs by consensus building and critical discussion. Professionals with different skills function together with mutual support, sharing the responsibility of patient care.

Effective team-based health care assumes that groups of health care providers representing multiple disciplines can work together to develop and implement a comprehensive, integrated treatment plan for each patient.

Much of our understanding of team function is drawn from organization and management research literature, the theories of which provide insight and information on how interdisciplinary teams operate and the factors that facilitate or inhibit their effectiveness. A number of factors are important influences on health professionals' perception of team membership that can be positive or negative to the team process.

VALUES AND BEHAVIORS

Some of the factors that tend to limit the effectiveness of a work group are large group size, poor decision-making practices, lack of fit between group members' skills and task demands, and poor leadership.[39-41] Other factors that influence team dynamics are classified as formal (tangible or visible) and informal (submerged). Formal factors include the policies and objectives of the group or its parent organization, the systems of communication available to the group, and the job descriptions of its members. Informal factors, which are often less obvious but equally influential on group process, include working relationships among team members; power networks within and external to the group; and the values, beliefs, and goals of individuals within the group. Team-building initiatives are often focused on the formal, or visible, areas, but informal communication, values, and norms play key roles in the functioning of the health care team.

A variety of characteristics and considerations also enhance the effectiveness of the interdisciplinary health care team. In addition to having strong professional backgrounds and appropriate skills, team members must appreciate the diversity within the group, taking into account age and status differences and the dynamics of individual professional subgroups.[42] The size of the team is also important: the most capable and effective teams tend to have no more than 12 members. Team members who know each other and are aware of and value each other's skills and interests are often better able to set and achieve goals. Clearly defined goals and objectives about the group's purpose and primary task, combined with a shared understanding of each member's roles and skills, increase the likelihood of effective communication.

Values and behaviors that facilitate the collaborative team care model include the following:

- Trust among members that develops over time as members become more familiar with each other
- Knowledge or expertise necessary for the development of trust
- Shared responsibility for joint decision-making regarding patient outcomes
- Mutual respect for all members of the team
- Two-way communication that facilitates sharing of patient information and knowledge
- Cooperation and coordination to promote the use of skills of all team members
- Optimism that the team is indeed the most effective means of delivering quality care

In the early stages of development, it is essential that the team spend time developing goals, tasks, roles, leadership, decision-making processes, and communication methods. In other words, the team needs to know where it is going, what it wants to do, who is going to do it, and how it will get done. One of the most important characteristics of an effective health care team is the ability to accommodate personal and professional differences among members and to use these differences as a source of strength. The well-functioning team often becomes a means of support, growth, and increased effectiveness and professional satisfaction for the physical therapist and other health professionals who wish to maximize their strengths as individuals while participating in professional responsibilities.

REHABILITATION TEAMS

The interdisciplinary health care team has become essential in the rehabilitation of patients whose body function and level of participation in the tasks of daily living could be enhanced by assistive technology such as an orthosis or prosthesis. The complexity of the rehabilitation process and the multidimensional needs of patients frequently

require the expertise of many different professional disciplines. The rehabilitation team is often shaped by the typical needs and characteristics of the patient population that it is designed to serve. The individuals most often represented on the rehabilitation team include one or more physicians with specialties in rehabilitation medicine, orthopedics, vascular surgery or neurology; nurses; prosthetists and/or orthotists; physical therapists; occupational therapists; dietitians; social workers; and vocational rehabilitation counselors, as well as patients and caregivers (see Fig. 1.7). Each member of the interdisciplinary team has an important role to play in the rehabilitation of the patient. Patient education is often one of the primary concerns of the team. Imparting information regarding the health condition, etiology, treatment, progression, management, and prognosis helps patients to become active partners in the rehabilitation process rather than passive recipients of care. Patient education addresses prevention and treatment strategies; patients and their families are able to identify their needs and concerns and communicate them to the team members. Each member of the team has the responsibility for contributing to patient education so that patients have the information needed for an effective partnership and positive outcome of rehabilitation efforts.

Research studies across a wide variety of medical conditions and health disciplines contain evidence that patients who feel prepared and informed are most likely to invest in and comply with recommended interventions and often have the most positive health outcome. Ideally, patient education about amputation and prosthetics begins in advance of, or at least immediately after, the amputation surgery.[43]

The Department of Veterans Affairs has instituted a system of care for US veterans with limb amputations, using outcome measures. The Amputation System of Care (ASoC) was introduced in 2008 with a goal of providing "lifelong care for service members with combat-related amputations from military conflicts in Iraq and Afghanistan and for veterans with amputations from diseases such as diabetes and peripheral vascular disease." The ASoC provides coordinated care that enables persons with amputation to receive the prosthetic technology and rehabilitation management that will maximize function and independence.[44]

Coordinated patient-centered care by an interdisciplinary rehabilitation team is just as essential for effective rehabilitation of children as it is for adults. For children with myelomeningocele or cerebral palsy, the broad knowledge base available through team interaction provides a stronger foundation for tailoring interventions to the ever-changing developmental needs of the child and family. Initially, the optimal delivery of care for children is best provided in a comprehensive health care setting in which the various specialists can provide a truly collaborative approach. Orthopedic surgeons, neurologists, orthotists, prosthetists, physical therapists, occupational therapists, nurses, dietitians, social workers, psychologists, and special education professionals may all be involved in setting goals and formulating and carrying out plans for intervention and outcomes assessment.

The concept of a multidisciplinary pediatric clinic team was formulated as World War II came to an end.[45] This structure has evolved further over the years and is particularly effective for the more complex orthotic and prosthetic challenges. A "mini-team" consisting of the patient's physician, a physical therapist, and a prosthetist or orthotist can usually be assembled, even in a small town with few facilities. Regardless of its size, an effective team views the child and family from a holistic perspective, with the input from each specialty being of equal value. Under these circumstances, the setting of treatment priorities, such as whether prosthetic fitting or training in single-handed tasks is most appropriate at a child's current age or developmental level, is made on the basis of the particular needs of the individual. Children with orthotic and prosthetic needs are followed in the community and within the school setting. As appropriate, a child may receive rehabilitation or habilitation services under the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA).[46] The rehabilitation/educational team is a diverse group of health care professionals, educators, family, and caregivers, each with essential skills necessary to address the needs of the child that encourage maximum participation in tasks of daily living. Each member of the team works in a collaborative manner with the family and caregivers and with the child's teachers and other health professionals to ensure that the goals of the IFSP or the Individualized Education Plan (IEP) are addressed and met. Clear and frequent communication is essential for the team to function effectively and to achieve the desired outcomes for the child.

Case Example 1.1 **Interdisciplinary Teams**

P.G. is a 23-year-old man admitted to a level 3 trauma center 2 weeks ago after sustaining severe crush injuries to both lower extremities and a closed-head injury in an accident involving a motorcycle and a sport utility vehicle. Initially unconscious with a Glasgow Coma Scale score of 8, P.G. was placed on life support in the emergency department. Radiographs revealed a severely comminuted fracture of the distal right femur and displaced fractures of the left tibia and fibula at midshaft. Examination revealed partial-thickness "road burn" abrasions on the left anterior thorax and thigh; these were thoroughly cleaned and covered with semipermeable dressings. A computed tomography scan of his cranium and brain revealed a subdural hematoma over the left Sylvian fissure and moderate contusion of the anterior pole and undersides of the frontal lobes. Arteriography indicated rupture of the right femoral artery 4 inches above the knee. Given the extent of the crush injuries, the trauma team determined P.G. was not a candidate for reconstructive surgery to salvage his right limb.

P.G. was taken to the operating room, where a standard-length transfemoral amputation was performed on the right lower extremity. Simultaneously, orthopedic surgeons performed an open-reduction internal fixation with an intramedullary rod in the tibia and used surgical plates and screws to repair the fibula. Neurosurgeons drained the subdural hematoma through a burr hole in his skull. P.G. was started on high-dose broad-spectrum antibiotics in the operating room. He was transferred to the surgical intensive care unit for postoperative care.

P.G. was weaned from the ventilator and is now functioning at a Rancho Los Amigos Scale level of 7. He is able to follow one- and two-step commands but becomes easily confused and

Case Example 1.1 **Interdisciplinary Teams (Continued)**

angry in complex environments and when fatigued. His postoperative pain is currently being managed with Tylenol #3 as needed. His right lower extremity has been managed with soft dressings and elastic bandages; his residual limb is moderately bulbous, with resolving ecchymosis from the accident and surgery. Moderate serosanguineous drainage continues from the medial one third of the suture line. Although most of the skin abrasions show signs of regranulation, one area on his left thigh is red and hot, with yellowish drainage. When transferred (maximum assist of two) into a bedside recliner, P.G. tolerates 30 minutes in a 45- to 60-degree reclined position. He becomes lightheaded and has significant pain when sitting upright with his left lower extremity dependent. He has been referred to physical therapy for evaluation of rehabilitation potential and initiation of mobility activities.

Before his accident, P.G. was a graduate student in physics at a nearby university. He lived in a third-floor walk-up apartment with his fiancé and his golden retriever. Besides his motorcycle, his interests and hobbies included long-distance running and mountain climbing. His mother and father have traveled to be with him during the acute hospital stay.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Who are the clinical specialists and health professionals needed to address the medical needs of the patient?
- What are the priorities, specific roles, and responsibilities for each potential member of the team? What team structure do you envision?
- How are the roles and responsibilities similar or different across the team?
- What external influences will affect team formation and functioning in a busy level 3 trauma center?
- What factors might facilitate team development?
- What factors might challenge the effectiveness of the team?
- As P.G. recovers from his injuries, how might the roles and responsibilities of the various team members change or evolve?
- When and how would you apply the International Classification of Functioning (ICF) disablement model for P.G.?
- Is there an ICF Core Set that applies to this clinical situation?
- Are there recommended clinical practice guidelines that apply to the management of this patient?

Case Example 1.2 **Interdisciplinary Teams**

E.L. is a 73-year-old woman with a 10-year history of type 2 diabetes mellitus. She is insulin dependent. Two weeks before her most recent hospitalization, she and her husband (who is in the early stages of Alzheimer disease) moved from their home of 50 years to an assisted-living complex in a neighboring town. Although the furniture is set up and functional, they have not had the chance to fully unpack and make the apartment their own.

Over the past 3 years, E.L. has been monitored by her team of physicians for progressive polyneuropathy of diabetes and for moderate peripheral vascular disease. She had a transmetatarsal amputation of her right forefoot 8 months ago because of nonhealing recurrent neuropathic ulcer. Despite wearing custom-molded shoes and accommodative orthoses, another ulcer of her first metatarsal head developed on the left foot 2 months ago. This new ulcer did not heal with conservative care and progressed to osteomyelitis 2 weeks ago. When vascular studies suggested inadequate circulation to heal the ulcer, she received arterial revascularization intervention, but the ischemia persisted and E.L. underwent an elective transtibial amputation of her left lower extremity. Despite a short bout of postoperative delirium thought to be related to pain management with morphine, E.L. (5 days postoperatively) was adamant about returning to her new assisted-living apartment, using a wheelchair for mobility, and receiving home care until her residual limb is healed and ready for prosthetic fitting.

Currently she is able to ambulate two lengths of 15-foot-long parallel bars before needing to rest and has begun gait training with a "hop-to" gait pattern with a standard walker. She is able to transfer from sitting on a firm seating surface with armrests to standing with standby guarding and verbal cueing and needs minimal assistance from low and soft seats without armrests. She believes that she and her husband will be able to manage at home because her bathroom has grab bars on the toilet, and a tub seat and handheld shower head are available from the "loaner closet" at her assisted-living facility.

At discharge, the suture line had one small area of continued moderate drainage, requiring frequent dressing changes. She is unable to move her residual limb into a position for effective visual self-inspection of the healing surgical wound without significant discomfort. Her husband, although attentive, becomes confused with the routine of wound care. E.L.'s postoperative limb volume and edema are being managed with a total contact cast, which she is able to don and doff independently. She had one late evening fall, when she awoke from a sound sleep having to go to the bathroom and was surprised when her left limb "wasn't really there" to stand on when she tried to get out of bed.

Since her amputation, E.L.'s insulin dosages have had to be adjusted frequently because of unpredictable changes in her serum glucose levels. She has lost 20 pounds (half of which can be attributed to her amputation) since admission.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Who are the health care professionals likely to be involved in her care?
- Which team approach is most desirable for patient-centered care: multidisciplinary, interdisciplinary, or transdisciplinary? Why?
- What are the major challenges facing the team of care providers involved in the postoperative, preprosthetic care of E.L and her husband? How are these similar to or different from challenges and issues the trauma center team considered before her amputation?
- What strategies are currently in place or must be developed to ensure that E.L.'s care at home is comprehensive and coordinated?
- How will the roles and responsibilities of the team members evolve and change as she recovers from her surgery and is ready to begin prosthetic use?
- When and how would you apply the International Classification of Functioning (ICF) disablement model for E.L.?
- Is there an ICF Core Set that applies to this clinical situation?
- Are there recommended clinical practice guidelines that apply to the management of this patient?

Case Example 1.3 **Interdisciplinary Teams**

M.S. is a 12-year-old girl with myelomeningocele (spina bifida) who uses a wheelchair for mobility. In the past year, she has developed significant thoracolumbar scoliosis believed to be associated with a growth spurt. Concerned about the rate of increase in her S-shaped thoracolumbar curve, her parents sought the advice of an orthopedic surgeon who has been involved as a consultant in her care since birth. The surgeon recommends surgical stabilization of M.S.'s spine with Harrington rods and bony fusion to (1) prevent further progression of the curve and rib hump so that secondary impairment of the respiratory system will be minimized as she grows and (2) provide more efficient upright sitting posture for wheelchair propulsion in the years ahead.

M.S. currently attends classes in her neighborhood middle school where she receives related health services including physical therapy. Until 2 years ago, she ambulated for exercise by using a reciprocal gait orthosis during gym periods at school, but with recent spurts in growth the use of a manual wheelchair is more efficient for mobility (to keep up with her classmates). She is also followed up on a regular basis by a neurologist who monitors the operation of her ventriculoperitoneal shunt (commonly used in the management of hydrocephalus associated with myelomeningocele).

In addition to their concerns about the risk of the surgical procedure, M.S.'s parents are quite concerned about how the anticipated 4-month postoperative immobilization in a thoracolumbosacral orthosis will affect her capacity for self-care and independent wheelchair mobility. They are also concerned about how the surgery and postoperative period will potentially interrupt the effective bowel and bladder management routine for which M.S. has just begun to assume responsibility. As witnesses to their daughter's deconditioning and loss of stamina over the past 6 months, they are concerned that she might not be "physically ready" for the surgery and postoperative rehabilitation. They are also asking questions about whether this spinal surgery will ultimately improve the prognosis of a successful return to ambulation with her reciprocal gait orthosis.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Who are the members of the rehabilitation team?
- What is the structure of the team that will best address the needs of the patient?
- What are the priorities, roles, and responsibilities of the health professionals involved in the care of this child and her family?
- How is the composition of M.S.'s rehabilitation team similar to or different from that of P.G.'s and E.L.'s teams?
- How will the health and education professionals support M.S. and her family through the postoperative recovery process?
- When and how would you apply the International Classification of Functioning disablement model to M.S.?

Summary

Patient-centered care, whether in tertiary care medical centers, in-patient rehabilitation facilities, skilled nursing facilities, or ambulatory community settings, currently relies on interdisciplinary rehabilitation teams that function to address the patient goals and maximize patient outcomes. The use of rehabilitation teams has evolved in part because no one person or discipline has the expertise in all the areas of specialty knowledge required for the established standards of care. The success of the rehabilitation team process requires health professionals to work together in a collaborative and cooperative manner. The rehabilitation team professional must demonstrate attitudes and attributes that foster collaboration, including:

1. Openness and receptivity to the ideas of others
2. An understanding of, value of, and respect for the roles and expertise of other professionals on the team
3. Value interdependence and acceptance of a common commitment to comprehensive patient-centered care
4. Willingness to share ideas openly and take responsibility

This chapter introduces the topic of orthotics and prosthetics in rehabilitation and advocates for a multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary approach to patient-centered care. There is a burgeoning demand for the use of orthotics and prosthetics, based on several varying health concerns for the population, including limb loss associated with US service men and women military duties; traumatic injuries sustained by US service men and women involved in military conflicts; and on the projected rise in the number of persons with chronic health conditions such as obesity, type 2 diabetes, and vascular disease. The overarching goal is to rehabilitate persons to the highest level of functional independence which is possible for the individual. The WHO ICF is the current disablement framework endorsed by 191 countries. Rehabilitation professionals including orthotists, prosthetists, and physical and occupational therapists will apply the ICF disablement model to maximize strategies for patient participation in the tasks of daily living through enhancement of environmental factors such as providing appropriate, cost-effective assistive technology including orthoses and prostheses. A rehabilitation model of patient-centered care that uses a multidisciplinary or interdisciplinary team approach to enhance communication, address goals and objectives, apply best practice, and improve patient outcomes is the current standard of care for persons in rehabilitation settings. Collaboration, mutual respect, and an understanding of the roles and responsibilities of colleagues engender productive teamwork and improved outcomes for the rehabilitation patient.

References

1. *How to Use the ICF—A Practical Manual for Using the International Classification of Function* http://www.who.int/classifications/drafticfpracticalmanual2.pdf Accessed on December 27, 2017.
2. Erickson W, Lee C, von Schreder S. Disability Statistics from the American Community Service (ACS). Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Yang-Tan Institute (YTI). Retrieved from Cornel University Disability Statistics Website: www.disabilitystatistics.org Accessed December 1, 2017.
3. 2015 U.S. Congressional Research Report, *A Guide to U.S. Military Casualty Statistics: Operation Freedom's Sentinel, Operation Inherent Resolve, Operation New Dawn, Operation Iraqi Freedom, and Operation*

Enduring Freedom. Hannah Fischer August 2015 https://fas.org/sgp/crs/natsec/RS22452.pdf Accessed December 1, 2017.
4. DeBruyne Nese F. *American War and Military Operations Casualties: Lists and Statistics*. April 2017, https://fas.org/sgp/crs/natsec/RL32492.pdf. Accessed 8 January 2018.
5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) National Diabetes Statistics Report 2017 https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pdfs/data/statistics/national-diabetes-statistics-report.pdf. Accessed on December 26, 2017.
6. Gerhard-Herman MD, et al. *AHA/ACC Guideline on the Management of Patients With Lower Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease* 2016. CIR.0000000000000471; Originally published. 2016;(November 13, 2016); A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Hear. (Marie D. Gerhard-Herman, Heather L. Gornik, Coletta Barrett, Neal R. Barshes, Matthew A. Corriere, Douglas E. Drachman, Lee A. Fleisher, Francis Gerry R. Fowkes, Naomi M. Hamburg, Scott Kinlay, Robert Lookstein, Sanjay Misra, Leila Mureebe, Jeffrey W. Olin, Rajan A.G. Patel, Judith G. Regensteiner, Andres Schanzer, Mehdi H. Shishehbor, Kerry J. Stewart, Diane Treat-Jacobson, M. Eileen Walsh).
7. WHO Towards a Common Language for Functioning. *Disability and Health. ICF*Geneva2002. http://www.who.int/classifications/icf/icfbeginnersguide.pdf?ua=1. Accessed 8 January 2018.
8. Bickenbach J, Cieza A, Rauch A, Stucki G. (Eds.) *ICF Core Sets Manual for Clinical Practice*. Hogrefe, Göttingen 2012 http://www.icf-core-sets.org/ Accessed January 8, 2018.
9. Nagi SZ. Disability concepts revisited: implications for prevention. In: Pope AM, Tarlov AR, eds. *Institute of Medicine Disability in America: Toward a National Agenda for Prevention*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1991.
10. Gerhard-Herman MD, et al. AHA/ACC Lower Extremity PAD Guideline 2016 AHA/ACC Guideline on the Management of Patients With Lower Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Circulation;* 2016: CIR.0000000000000471; Originally published. 2016;(November 13, 2016).
11. U.S Bureau of Labor Statistics Occupational Employment Statistics For Orthotists and Prosthetists May 2016. https://www.bls.gov/oes/current/oes292091.htm Accessed January 8, 2018.
12. American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) History http://www.apta.org/History/ Accessed January 8, 2018.
13. Wilson BA. History of amputation surgery and prosthetics. In: Bowker JH, Michael JW, eds. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics: Surgical, Prosthetic and Rehabilitation Principles. St*. Louis: Mosby–Year Book; 1992:3–15.
14. Retzlaff K. AOPA celebrates 75 years of service to O&P. *Orthotics and Prosthetics Almanac.* 1992. (Nov):45.
15. Wilson BA. History of amputation surgery and prosthetics. In: Bowker JH, Michael JW, eds. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics: Surgical, Prosthetic and Rehabilitation Principles. St*. Louis: Mosby–Year Book; 1992:3–15.
16. Hazenhyer IM. A history of the American Physiotherapy Association. Part IV: maturity, 1939-1946. *Phys Ther Rev.* 1946;26:174–184.
17. 2015 U.S. Congressional Research Report. *A Guide to U.S. Military Casualty Statistics: Operation Freedom's Sentinel, Operation Inherent Resolve, Operation New Dawn, Operation Iraqi Freedom, and Operation Enduring Freedom*. Hannah Fischer August 2015 https://fas.org/sgp/crs/natsec/RS22452.pdf Accessed December 1, 2017.
18. Webster JB, Poorman CE, Cifu DX. Department of Veterans Affairs Amputation System of Care: 5 Years of Accomplishments and Outcomes. *JRRD. 2014*;51(4):vii–xvi.
19. American Board of Certification in Orthotics, Prosthetics & Pedorthics, Inc. Serving the OP & P Profession since 1948. *Practitioner Book of Rules and Candidate Guide*; 2017.
20. Masala C, Donatella RP. From disablement to enablement: conceptual models of disability in the 20th century. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2008;30(7):1233–1244.
21. Nagi S. Some conceptual issues in disability and rehabilitation. In: Sussman M, ed. *Sociology and Rehabilitation*. Washington, DC: American Sociological Association; 1965:100–113.
22. Bornman J. The World Health Organisation's terminology and classification: application to serve disability. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2004;26(3):182–188.
23. Rimmer J. Use of the ICF in identifying factors that impact participation in physical activity/rehabilitation among people with disabilities. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2006;28(17):1087–1095.
24. WHO Towards a Common Language for Functioning. *Disability and Health.* Geneva: ICF; 2002. http://www.who.int/classifications/icf/icfbeginnersguide.pdf?ua=1 Accessed January 8, 2018.
25. Nagi SZ. Disability concepts revisited: implications for prevention. In: Pope AM, Tarlov AR, eds. *Institute of Medicine Disability in America: Toward a National Agenda for Prevention*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press; 1991.
26. World Health Organization. *Towards a Common Language for Functioning, Disability and Health.* In: Geneva: 2002.
27. WHO ICF Research Branch. www.icf-research-branch.org. Accessed 1 December 2017.
28. Bickenbach J, Cieza A, Rauch A, Stucki G. (Eds.) *ICF Core Sets Manual for Clinical Practice*. Hogrefe, Göttingen 2012 http://www.icf-core-sets.org/ accessed January 8, 2018.
29. WHO ICF Research Branch –Documentation Form https://www.icf-research-branch.org/component/content/article/120-external-links/456-icf-based-documentation-form.html.
30. Sullivan EE, Ibrahim Z, Ellner AL, Giesen LJ. Management Lessons for High-Functioning Primary Care Teams. *J Healthcare Management Nov/Dec*. 2016;61(6):449–466.
31. Erwin C. Perspectives on Multidisciplinary Team Processes Among Healthcare Executives: Processes that facilitate team effectiveness. *Journal of Health and Human Services Administration Winter*. 2015;38(3):350–380.
32. Bewer V. *Transdisciplinarity in Health Care:A Concept Analysis*.2017 Wiley Periodicals, Inc. Nursing Forum Volume 52, No. 4, October-December 2017; 339–347.
33. Gerhard-Herman MD, et al. *AHA/ACC Lower Extremity PAD Guideline 2016 AHA/ACC Guideline on the Management of Patients With Lower Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Circulation; 2016: CIR.0000000000000471; Originally published. 2016;(November 13, 2016).
34. Bewer V. *Transdisciplinarity in Health Care:A Concept Analysis*.2017 Wiley Periodicals, Inc. Nursing Forum Volume 52, No. 4, October-December 2017; 339–347.
35. Early Intervention *Programs for Infants and Toddlers with Disabilities*. https://sites.ed.gov/idea/ Accessed January 8, 2018.
36. Zafiropoulous G, Byfield D. Multidisciplinary meeting (MDM) can provide education and reinforcement of inter-professional development. *Academic Journals*. 2016;11(2):78–86.
37. Strauss SE, Richardson WS, Glasziou P, Hayes RB. *Evidence Based Medicine.* 4th ed. Elsevier Churchill Livingston; 2011.
38. Zafiropoulous G, Byfield D. Multidisciplinary meeting (MDM) can provide education and reinforcement of inter-professional development. *Academic Journals*. 2016;11(2):78–86.
39. Hackman JR. *Groups That Work (& Those That Don't): Creating Conditions for Effective Team Work*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 1990.
40. Goodman PS, Devadas RA, Hughson TLG. Groups and productivity: analyzing the effectiveness of self-managing teams. In: Campbell JP, Campbell JR, eds. *Productivity in Organizations*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 1988:295–327.
41. Van Norman G. *Interdisciplinary Team Issues. Ethics in Medicine*. http://depts.washington.edu/bioethx/topics/team.html Accessed January 8, 2018.
42. Goodman PS, Devadas RA, Hughson TLG. Groups and productivity: analyzing the effectiveness of self-managing teams. In: Campbell JP, Campbell JR, eds. *Productivity in Organizations*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass; 1988:295–327.
43. Fitzgerald R. The Diabetic Foot—"Being DRRAFTED." *Podiatry Management*. 102–108.
44. Webster JB, Poorman CE, Cifu DX. Deparment of Veterans Affairs Amputation System of Care: 5 Years of Accomplishments and Outcomes. *JRRD*. 2014;51(4):vii–vxi.
45. Wiart L, Darrah J. Changing philosophical perspectives on the management of children with physical disabilities: their effect on the use of powered mobility. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2002;24(9):492–498.
46. U.S. Department of Education–IDEA. https://sites.ed.gov/idea/. Accessed January 8, 2018. References from 3rd Edition.

2 Aging and Activity Tolerance

ETHAN A. HOOD, KEVIN K. CHUI, and MICHELLE M. LUSARDI

IMPLICATIONS FOR ORTHOTIC AND PROSTHETIC REHABILITATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the role of the cardiopulmonary and cardiovascular systems as "effectors" for goal-driven functional motor activity.
2. Define the key components of the cardiopulmonary and cardiovascular systems as they relate to energy expenditure during functional activity.
3. Describe the functional consequences of age-related change in cardiopulmonary and cardiovascular structures, especially with respect to exercise and activity tolerance.
4. Apply principles of cardiopulmonary/cardiovascular conditioning to rehabilitation interventions for older and/or deconditioned individuals who will be using a prosthesis or an orthosis.
5. Weigh the benefits and limitations with respect to energy cost and facilitation of daily function in selecting an appropriate orthosis or prosthesis for an older or deconditioned individual.
6. Appreciate technologic advances in prosthetics and orthotics and their role in activity tolerance.

Many individuals who rely on orthotic or prosthetic devices to walk or to accomplish functional tasks have impairments of the musculoskeletal or neuromuscular systems that limit the efficiency of their movement and increase the energy cost of their daily and leisure activities. The separate and interactive effects of aging, inactivity, and cardiac or pulmonary disease can also compromise the capacity for muscular "work," tolerance of activity, and ability to function.

Consider this example: a 79-year-old woman with insulin-controlled type 2 diabetes has been referred for physical therapy evaluation after transfemoral amputation following a failed femoral-popliteal bypass. She has been on bed rest for several weeks because of her multiple surgeries. The physical effort required in undergoing rehabilitation and prosthetic training may initially feel overwhelming to this woman. In her deconditioned state, preprosthetic ambulation with a walker is likely to increase her heart rate (HR) close to the upper limits of a safe target HR for aerobic training. What, then, is her prognosis for functional use of a prosthesis? What are the most important issues to address in her plan of care? What intensity of intervention is most appropriate given her deconditioned state? In what setting and for how long will care be provided? These questions have no simple answers.

The physical therapist, orthotist, and prosthetist must recognize factors that can be successfully modified to enhance performance and activity tolerance when decisions about prescription and intervention strategies are being made. Aerobic fitness should be a key component of the rehabilitation program for those who will be using a prosthesis or orthosis for the first time. It is vitally important that rehabilitation professionals recognize and respond to the warning signs of significant cardiopulmonary or cardiovascular dysfunction during treatment and training sessions.

Although the anatomic and physiologic changes in the aging cardiopulmonary system are important to our discussion, our focus is on the contribution of cellular and tissue-level changes to the performance of the cardiopulmonary and cardiovascular systems and, consequently, on the individual's ability to function. This view provides a conceptual framework for answering four essential questions:

- Is this individual capable of physical work?
- If so, what is the energy cost of doing this work?
- Is it possible for this individual to become more efficient or more able to do physical work?
- What impact does the use of an orthosis or prosthesis have on energy use and cost during functional activities for this person?

Oxygen Transport System

The foundation for the functional view of the cardiopulmonary system is the equation for the oxygen transport system (Fig. 2.1). Aerobic capacity (VO_{2max}) is the body's ability to deliver and use oxygen (maximum rate of oxygen consumption) to support the energy needs of demanding physical activity. VO_{2max} is influenced by three factors: the efficiency of ventilation and oxygenation in the lungs, how much oxygen-rich blood can be delivered from the heart (cardiac output, or CO) to active peripheral tissues, and how well oxygen is extracted from the blood to support muscle contraction and other peripheral tissues during activity (arteriovenous oxygen difference, or AVO_{2diff}).[1–4] Aerobic capacity can be represented by the following formula:

$$VO_{2\,max} = CO \times AVO_{2\,max}$$

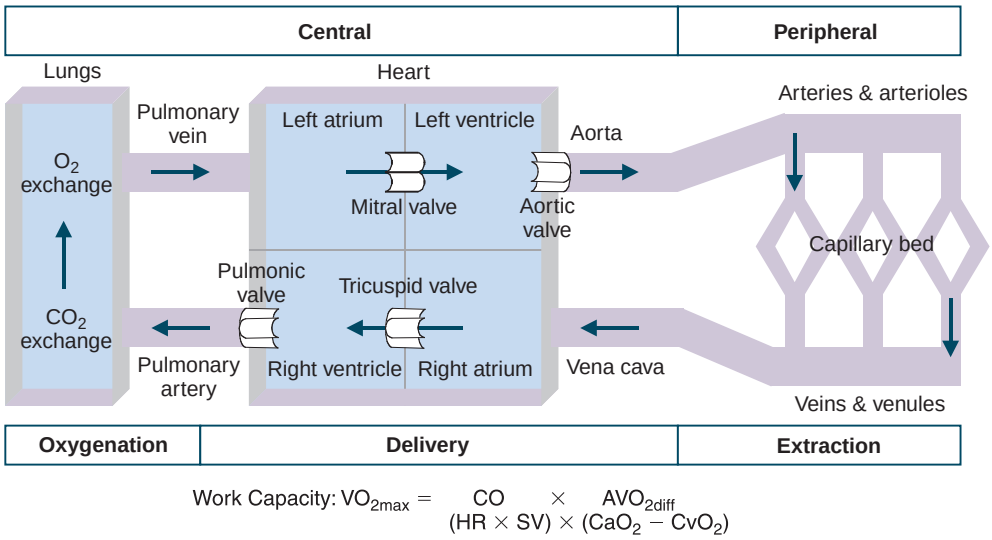


Fig. 2.1 Functional anatomy and physiology of the cardiorespiratory system. After blood has been oxygenated in the lungs, the left side of the heart contracts to deliver the blood, through the aorta and its branches, to active tissues in the periphery. Oxygen must be effectively extracted from blood by peripheral tissues to support their activity. Deoxygenated blood, high in carbon dioxide, returns through the vena cava to the right side of the heart, which pumps it to the lungs for reoxygenation. Aerobic capacity (VO_{2max}) is the product of how well oxygen is delivered to cardiac output (CO) and extracted by arterial-venous oxygen difference (AVO_{2diff}) active tissues. *HR,* Heart rate; *SV,* stroke volume.

The energy cost of doing work is based on the amount of oxygen consumed for the activity, regardless of whether the activity is supported by aerobic (with oxygen) or anaerobic (without oxygen) metabolic mechanisms for producing energy. VO_{2max} provides an indication of the maximum amount of work that can be supported.[1–4]

CO is the product of two elements. The first is the HR, the number of times that the heart contracts (or beats) per minute. The second is stroke volume (SV), the amount of blood pumped from the left ventricle with each beat (measured in milliliters or liters). CO is expressed by the following formula (measured in milliliters or liters per minute):

$$CO = HR \times SV$$

As a product of HR and SV, CO is influenced by four factors: (1) the amount of blood returned from the periphery through the vena cava, (2) the ability of the heart to match its rate of contraction to physiologic demand, (3) the efficiency or forcefulness of the heart's contraction, and (4) the ability of the aorta to deliver blood to peripheral vessels. The delivery of oxygen to the body tissues to be used to produce energy for work is, ultimately, a function of the central components of the cardiopulmonary system.[1–4]

The second determinant of aerobic capacity, the AVO_{2diff}, reflects the extraction of oxygen from the capillary by the surrounding tissues. The AVO_{2diff} is determined by subtracting the oxygen concentration on the venous (postextraction) side of the capillary bed (CvO_2) from that of the arteriole (preextraction) side of the capillary bed (CaO_2), according to the formula:

$$AVO_{2\,max} = CaO_2 - CvO_2$$

The smaller vessels and capillaries of the cardiovascular system are involved in the process of extraction of oxygen from the blood by the active tissues. Extraction of oxygen from the blood to be used to produce energy for the work of the active tissues is a function of the peripheral components of the cardiopulmonary system.[1–4]

During exercise or a physically demanding activity, CO must increase to meet the need for additional oxygen in the more active peripheral tissues. This increased CO is the result of a more rapid HR and a greater SV: As the return of blood to the heart increases, the heart contracts more forcefully and a larger volume of blood is pumped into the aorta by the left ventricle. Chemical and hormonal changes that accompany exercise enhance the peripheral shunting of blood to the active muscles, and oxygen depletion in muscle assists transfer of oxygen from the capillary blood to the tissue at work.[1,4,5]

The efficiency of central components, primarily of CO, accounts for as much as 75% of VO_{2max}. Peripheral oxygen extraction (AVO_{2diff}) contributes the remaining 25% to the process of making oxygen available to support tissue work.[6] In healthy adults under most conditions, more oxygen is delivered to active tissues (muscle mass) than is necessary.[4,6] During exercise in healthy adults, CO may increase five times, allowing for oxygen to be available to working muscles.[1] For those who are significantly deconditioned or who have cardiopulmonary or cardiovascular disease, the ability to deliver oxygen efficiently to the periphery as physical activity increases may be compromised. With normal aging, there are age-related physiologic changes in the heart itself that limit maximum attainable HR. Because of these changes, it is important to assess whether and to what degree SV can be increased effectively if rehabilitation interventions are to be successful.

The Aging Heart

The ability to plan an appropriate intervention to address cardiovascular endurance and conditioning in older adults who may need to use a prosthesis or orthosis is founded on

an understanding of "typical" age-related changes in cardiovascular structure and physiology as well as on the functional consequences of these changes.

CARDIOVASCULAR STRUCTURE

Age-related structural changes in the cardiovascular system occur in five areas: myocardium, cardiac valves, coronary arteries, conduction system, and coronary vasculature (i.e., arteries) (Table 2.1).[7–10] Despite these cellular and tissue-level changes, a healthy older heart can typically meet energy demands of usual daily activity. Cardiovascular disease, quite prevalent in later life, and a habitually sedentary lifestyle coupled with unhealthy lifestyle choices can, however, significantly compromise activity tolerance.[11,12]

Myocardium

In advanced age, cells of the myocardium show microscopic signs of degeneration, including increases in myocardial fat content (i.e., storage of triglyceride droplets within cardiomyocytes); however, the relationship between the quantity of fat and disease severity remains unclear.[13] Unlike aging skeletal muscle cells, there is minimal atrophy of cardiac smooth muscle cells. More typically, there is hypertrophy of the left ventricular myocardium, increasing the diameter of the left atrium.[12,14–16] These changes have been attributed to cardiac tissue responses to an increased systolic blood pressure (SBP) and to reduced compliance of the left ventricle; they are associated with an increase in the weight and size of the heart.[15–19]

Valves

The four valves of the aged heart often become fibrous and thickened at their margins as well as somewhat calcified.[20] Calcification of the aorta at the base of the cusps of the aortic valve (aortic stenosis) is clinically associated with the slowed exit of blood from the left ventricle into the aorta.[21] Such aortic stenosis contributes to a functional reduction in CO. A baroreflex-mediated increase in SBP attempts to compensate for this reduced CO.[22,23] Over time, the larger residual of blood in the left ventricle after each beat (increased end systolic volume, or ESV) begins to weaken the left ventricular muscle.[24] This muscle must work harder to pump the blood out of the ventricle into a more resistant peripheral vascular system.[25,26]

Calcification of the annulus of the mitral valve can restrict blood flow from the left atrium into the left ventricle during diastole. As a result, end-diastolic volume (EDV) of blood in the left ventricle is decreased because the left atrium does not completely empty. Over time, this residual blood in the left atrium elongates the muscle of the atrial walls and increases the diameter of the atrium of the heart.[25–27]

Coronary Arteries

Age-related changes of the coronary arteries are similar to those in any aged arterial vessel: an increase in the thickness of the vessel walls and tortuosity of the vessel's path.[28] These changes tend to occur earlier in the left coronary artery than in the right.[29] When coupled with atherosclerosis, these changes may compromise the muscular contraction and pumping efficiency and effectiveness of the left ventricle during exercise or any activity of high physiologic demand.[3,4,30]

Conduction System

Age-related changes in the conduction system of the heart can have a substantial impact on cardiac function. The typical 75-year-old person has less than 10% of the original number of pacemaker cells of the sinoatrial node.[31,32] Fibrous tissue builds within the internodal tracts as well as within the atrioventricular node, including the bundle of His and its main bundle branches.[31,32] As a consequence, the ability of the heart to coordinate the actions of all four of its chambers may be compromised.[31] Arrhythmias are pathologic conditions that become more common in later life; they are managed pharmacologically or with implantation of a pacemaker/defibrillator.[33] Rehabilitation professionals must be aware of the impact of medications or pacemaker settings on an individual's ability to physiologically respond to exercise and to adapt to the intervention accordingly, whether it be a conditioning program or early mobility after a medical/surgical event.[34]

Arterial Vascular Tree

Age-related changes in the arterial vascular tree, demonstrated most notably by the thoracic aorta and eventually

Table 2.1 Age-Related Changes in the Cardiovascular System

Structure	Change	Functional Consequences
Heart	Deposition of lipids, lipofuscin, and amyloid within cardiac smooth muscle	Less excitability
	Increased connective tissue and fibrosity	Diminished cardiac output
	Hypertrophy of left ventricle	Diminished venous return
	Increased diameter of atria	Susceptibility to dysrhythmia
	Stiffening and calcification of valves	Reduction in maximal attainable heart rate
	Fewer pacemaker cells in sinoatrial and atrioventricular nodes	Less efficient dilation of cardiac arteries during activity
	Fewer conduction fibers in bundle of His and branches	Less efficient left ventricular filling in early diastole, leading to reduced stroke volume
	Less sensitivity to extrinsic (autonomic) innervation	Increased afterload, leading to weakening of heart muscle
	Slower rate of tension development during contraction	
Blood vessels	Altered ratio of smooth muscle to connective tissue and elastin in vessel walls	Less efficient delivery of oxygenated blood to muscle and organs
	Decreased baroreceptor responsiveness	Diminished cardiac output
	Susceptibility to plaque formation within vessel	Less efficient venous return
	Rigidity and calcification of large arteries, especially the aorta	Susceptibility to venous thrombosis
	Dilation and increased tortuosity of veins	Susceptibility to orthostatic hypotension

the more distal vessels, can disrupt the smooth or streamlined flow (i.e., laminar flow) of blood from the heart toward the periphery.[33,35,36] Altered alignment of endothelial cells of the intima creates rough or turbulence flow (i.e., nonlaminar flow), which increases the likelihood of deposition of collagen and lipid.[37] Fragmentation of elastic fibers in the intima and media of larger arterioles and arteries further compromises the functionally important "rebound" characteristic of arterial vessels.[38] Rebound normally assists directional blood flow through the system, preventing the backward reflection of fluid pressure waves of blood. This loss of elasticity increases vulnerability of the aorta, which, distended and stiffened, cannot effectively resist the tensile force of left ventricular ejection. Not surprisingly, the incidence of abdominal aortic aneurysms rises sharply among older adults, and stiffness (distensibility) of the ascending aorta is associated with the severity of coronary artery disease.[39,40]

CARDIOVASCULAR PHYSIOLOGY

Although the physiologic changes in the cardiovascular system are few, their impact on the performance of the older adult can be substantial. The nondiseased aging heart continues to be an effective pump, maintaining its ability to develop enough myocardial contraction to support daily activity. The response of cardiac muscle to calcium (Ca^{2+}) is preserved and its force-generating capacity maintained.[41] Two aspects of myocardial contractility do, however, change with aging: the rate of tension development in the myocardium slows, and the duration of contraction and relaxation becomes prolonged.[42,43]

Sensitivity to β-Adrenergic Stimulation

One of the most marked age-related changes in cardiovascular function is the reduced sensitivity of the heart to sympathetic stimulation, specifically to the stimulation of β-adrenergic receptors.[43,44] Age-related reduction in β-adrenergic sensitivity includes a decreased response to norepinephrine and epinephrine released from sympathetic nerve endings in the heart as well as a decreased sensitivity to any of these catecholamines circulating in the blood.[44,45] Normally, norepinephrine and epinephrine are potent stimulators of ventricular contraction.

An important functional consequence of the change in receptor sensitivity is less efficient cardioacceleratory response, which leads to a lower HR at submaximal and maximal levels of exercise or activity.[46] The time for HR rise to the peak rate is prolonged, so more time is necessary to reach the appropriate HR level for physically demanding activities. A further consequence of this reduced β-adrenergic sensitivity is less than optimal vasodilation of the coronary arteries with increasing activity.[44,47] In peripheral arterial vessels, β-adrenergic receptors do not appear to play a primary role in mediating vasodilation in the working muscles.[48]

Baroreceptor Reflex

Age-related change in the cardiovascular baroreceptor reflex also contributes to prolongation of cardiovascular response time in the face of an increase in activity (physiologic demand).[43] The baroreceptors in the proximal aorta appear to become less sensitive to changes in blood volume (pressure) within the vessel. Normally any drop in proximal aortic pressure triggers the hypothalamus to begin a sequence of events that leads to increased sympathetic stimulation of the heart. Decreased baroreceptor responsiveness may increase an older individual's susceptibility to orthostatic (postural) and postprandial (after eating) hypotension or may compromise his or her tolerance of the physiologic stress of a Valsalva maneuver associated with breath holding during strenuous activity.[49–51] Clinically this is evidenced by lightheadedness when rising from a lying or sitting position, especially after a meal, or if one tends to hold one's breath during effortful activity.

The effects of age-related physiologic changes on the cardiovascular system can often be managed satisfactorily by routinely using simple lower extremity warmup exercises before position changes. Several repetitions of ankle and knee exercises before standing up, especially after a prolonged time sitting (including for meals) or lying down (after a night's rest), help maximize blood return to the heart (preload), assisting cardiovascular function for the impending demand. In addition, taking a bit more time in initiating activities and progressing their difficulty may help the slowed cardiovascular response time reach an effective level of performance. Scheduling physical therapy or physical activity at a distance from mealtimes might also be beneficial for patients who are particularly vulnerable to postprandial hypotension. Fortunately many of the aging effects on the cardiovascular system can be minimized or reversed with exercise training.[1]

FUNCTIONAL CONSEQUENCES OF CARDIOVASCULAR AGING

What are the functional consequences of cardiovascular aging for older adults participating in exercise or rehabilitation activities? This question can best be answered by focusing on what happens to the CO (Fig. 2.2). The age-related structural and physiologic changes in the cardiovascular system give rise to two loading conditions that influence CO: cardiac filling (preload) and vascular impedance (afterload).[4,22]

Preload

Cardiac filling/preload determines the volume of blood in the left ventricle at the end of diastole. The most effective ventricular filling occurs when pressure is low within the heart and relaxation of the muscular walls of the ventricle is maximal.[1,2,6] Mitral valve calcification, decreased compliance of

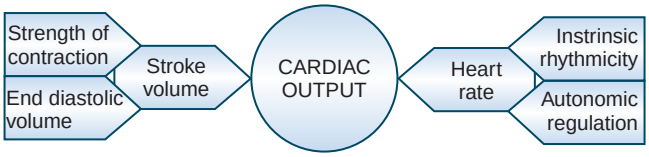


Fig. 2.2 Factors affecting cardiac output are influenced by the aging process. If strength of contraction decreases and end-diastolic volume increases, stroke volume is reduced. Coupled with alterations in heart rate response to increasing workload, activities that were submaximal in intensity at a younger age may become more physiologically demanding in later life.

the left ventricle, and the prolonged relaxation of myocardial contraction can contribute to less effective filling of the left ventricle in early diastole.[52] Doppler studies of the flow of blood into the left ventricle in aging adults demonstrate decreased rates of early filling, an increased rate of late atrial filling, and an overall decrease in the peak filling rate.[6,24,52] When compared with healthy 45- to 50-year-old adults, the early diastolic filling of a healthy 65- to 80-year-old is 50% less.[6,24,53] This reduced volume of blood in the ventricle at the end of diastole does not effectively stretch the ventricular muscle of the heart, thus compromising the Frank-Starling mechanism and the myocontractility of the left ventricle.[54] The functional outcome of decreased early diastolic filling and the reduced EDV is a proportional decrease in SV, one of the determinants of CO and, consequently, work capacity (VO_{2max}).[6,23,43]

Afterload

High vascular impedance and increased afterload disrupt the flow of blood as it leaves the heart and moves toward the peripheral vasculature. Increased afterload is partly a function of age-related stiffness of the proximal aorta, an increase in systemic vascular resistance (elevation of SBP, hypertension), or a combination of both.[43,55] Ventricular contraction that forces blood flow into a resistant peripheral vascular system produces pressure waves in the blood. These pressure waves reflect back toward the heart, unrestricted by the stiffened walls of the proximal aorta. The reflected pressure waves, aortic stiffness, and increased systemic vascular resistance collectively contribute to an increased afterload in the aging heart.[42,55] Increased afterload is thought to be a major factor in the age-associated decrease in maximum SV, hypertrophy of the left ventricle, and prolongation of myocardial relaxation (e.g., slowed relaxation in the presence of a persisting load on the heart).[7,8,10]

An unfortunate long-term consequence of increased afterload is weakening of the heart muscle itself, particularly of the left ventricle. Restricted blood flow out of the heart results in a large residual volume (RV) of blood in the heart at the end of systole, when ventricular contraction is complete. Large ESVs gradually increase the resting length of ventricular cardiac muscle, effectively weakening the force of contraction.[3,7,8,10,24,56]

Left Ventricular Ejection Fraction

Left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF) is the proportion of blood pumped out of the heart with each contraction of the left ventricle, which is expressed by the following equation:

$$\text{LVEF} = (\text{EDV} - \text{ESV}) + \text{EDV}$$

At rest, the LVEF does not appear to be reduced in older adults. Under conditions of maximal exercise, however, the rise in LVEF is much less than that in younger adults.[23,57,58] This reduced rise in the LVEF with maximal exercise clearly illustrates the impact that functional cardiovascular age-related changes in preload and afterload have on performance.

A substantial reduction in EDV, an expansion of ESV, or a more modest change in both components may account for the decreased LVEF of the exercising older adult:

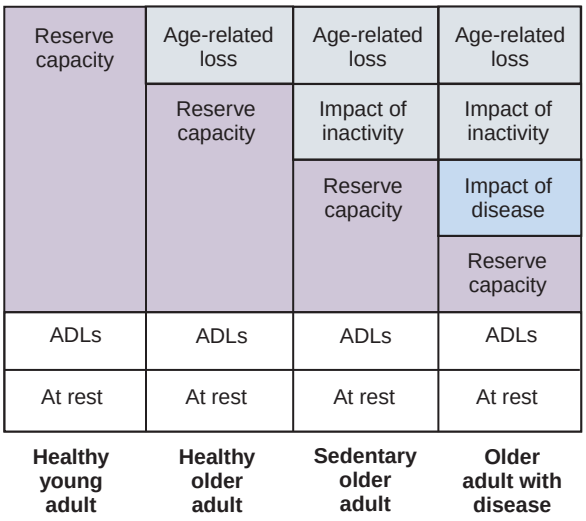


Fig. 2.3 Comparison of the effects of aging, inactivity, and cardiopulmonary disease on functional reserve capacity, expressed as cardiac output (CO in L/min). At rest, the heart delivers between 4 and 6 L/min of blood to peripheral tissues. This may double during many activities of daily living (ADLs). In a healthy young person, the CO may increase to as much as 24 L/min to meet the metabolic demands of sustained exercise. This reserve capacity decreases to approximately 18 L/min in healthy, fit adults after the age of 60 years. A sedentary lifestyle decreases functional reserve capacity further. Superimposed cardiopulmonary disease further limits the ability to do physical work, in some cases approaching or exceeding cardiopulmonary reserve capacity. *ADLs,* Activities of daily living. (Modified from Irwin SC, Zadai CC. Cardiopulmonary rehabilitation of the geriatric patient. In Lewis CB, ed. *Aging: the health care challenge*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 1990:190.)

$$\downarrow \text{EDV} = \downarrow \text{LVEF}$$
$$\uparrow \text{ESV} = \downarrow \text{LVEF}$$

When going from resting to maximal exercise conditions, the amount of blood pumped with each beat for young healthy adults increases by 20% to 30% from a resting LVEF of 55% to an exercise LVEF of 80%. For a healthy older adult, in contrast, LVEF typically increases less than 5% from rest to maximal exercise.[57,59] The LVEF may actually decrease in adults who are 60 years of age and older.[57,60] As LVEF and CO decrease with aging, so does the ability to work over prolonged periods (functional cardiopulmonary reserve capacity) because the volume of blood delivered to active tissue decreases (Fig. 2.3). Functional reserve capacity is further compromised by the long-term effects of inactivity and by cardiopulmonary pathology.[23,30,61,62] The contribution of habitual exercise to achieving effective maximum exercise LVEF is not well understood, but the decline may not be as substantial for highly fit older adults.[23]

Pulmonary Function in Later Life

Several important age-related structural changes of the lungs and of the musculoskeletal system have a significant impact on pulmonary function.[63] These include change in the tissues and structures making up the lungs and airways, alteration in lung volume, reduced efficiency of gas exchange, and a mechanically less efficient ventilatory pump related to changes in alignment and posture

Table 2.2 Summary of Age-Related Changes in the Cardiopulmonary System and Functional Consequences

Anatomic Changes	Physiologic Changes	Consequences	Change in Lung Function Tests
Rearrangement and fragmentation of elastin fibers Stiffened cartilage in compliant articulation of ribs and vertebrae Increasing stiffness and compression of annulus fibrosus in intervertebral disks Reduction of strength and endurance of respiratory musculature	Less elastic recoil for expiration Greater compliance of lung Decreased vital capacity, forced More rigid thoracic cage Decreased volume of maximum voluntary ventilation and maximum sustained ventilatory capacity Greater mismatch between ventilation and perfusion within lung	Greater airspace within alveoli, less surface area for O_2/CO_2 exchange thoracic cage Increased work of breathing Less force during inspiration Less efficient cough Diminished exercise tolerance Reduced resting PaO_2	Increased functional residual capacity and residual volume tissue Shorter, less vital capacity, and forced expiratory volume in 1 s (FEV_1) Decreased maximum inspiratory pressure, maximum expiratory pressure, and maximum voluntary ventilation

(Table 2.2).[64,65] Although a healthy adult at midlife uses only 10% of the respiratory system's capacity at rest, aging of the pulmonary system, especially when accompanied by chronic illness or acute disease, negatively affects the ability of the lungs to respond to increasing demands of physical activity (Fig. 2.4).[66] Age-related changes in the pulmonary and musculoskeletal systems also contribute to an increase in the physiologic work of breathing.

CHANGES WITHIN THE LUNG AND AIRWAY

The production of elastin, which is the major protein component of the structure of the lungs, decreases markedly in late life. The elastic fibers of the lung become fragmented, and, functionally, the passive elastic recoil or rebound important for expiration becomes much less efficient. The elastic fibers that maintain the structure of the walls of the alveoli also decrease in number. This loss of elastin means loss of alveoli and consequently a less surface area for the exchange of oxygen as well as an increase in RV associated with more "dead space" within the lung, where air exchange cannot occur.[64–66] There may be as much as a 15% decrease in the total number of alveoli per unit of lung volume by the age of 70 years.[67]

With aging, there is also an increase in diameter of major bronchi and large bronchioles as well as a decreased diameter of smaller bronchioles, often leading to a slight increase in resistance to airflow during respiration.[67] This contributes to greater physical work of breathing as age advances.

Starting at midlife and continuing into later life, there tends to be a growing mismatch between lung area ventilated with each breath and lung area perfused by pulmonary arterioles and capillaries, which is attributed to alteration in alveolar surface, vascular structures, and posture.[68] This mismatch compromises the efficiency of diffusion of oxygen across the alveoli into the capillary bed (i.e., decreasing arterial oxygen tension) within the lung becomes less efficient from midlife into later life.[64,68] However, fit elderly can produce levels of maximum oxygen consumption that match those of untrained middle-aged men. This suggests that pulmonary rehabilitation can play a large role in improving exercise tolerance in the elderly.[65,69–71]

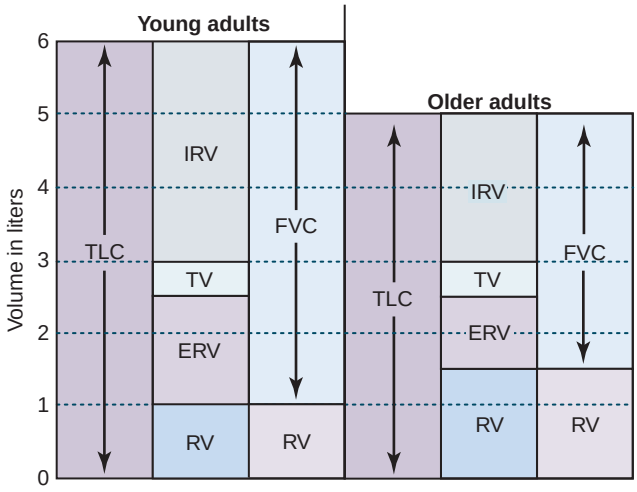


Fig. 2.4 Changes in the distribution of air within the lungs (volume) have an impact on an older adult's efficiency of physical work. Loss of alveoli and increasing stiffness of the rib cage result in a 30% to 50% increase in residual volume *(RV)* and a 40% to 50% decrease in forced vital capacity *(FVC)*. FVC includes three components: inspiratory reserve volume *(IRV)* and expiratory reserve volume *(ERV)* tend to decrease with aging, whereas resting tidal volume *(TV)*, the amount of air in a normal resting breath, tends to be stable over time. Total lung capacity *(TLC)* and inspiratory capacity (IRV + TV) also tend to decrease. Over time, the physiologic consequences of these changes make the older adult more vulnerable to dyspnea (shortness of breath) during exercise and physically demanding activity.

CHANGES IN THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM

The decreasing elastic recoil and alveolar surface area for oxygen exchange may be further compounded by increased stiffness (loss of flexibility); "barreling" of the thoracic rib cage, which houses the lungs; and a decrease in height as intervertebral disks narrow and stiffen.[72] Much of this stiffness is attributed to changes in the articulation between ribs and vertebrae as well as decreased elasticity of intercostal muscle and soft tissue.[73] Although the stiffened rib cage may be as much a consequence of a sedentary lifestyle as of advancing age, lack of flexibility compromises inspiration and also decreases the elastic recoil of expiration.[65,74] In addition, the forward head and slight kyphosis that tend to develop with aging alter the position of both ribs and diaphragm, thus decreasing the mechanical efficiency of inspiration.[66,72,74] The net effect of a stiffer thoracic cage is an increase in the work of taking a breath, since muscles of respiration must work harder during inspiration to counteract the stiffness.[66]

The striated muscles of respiration are composed of a combination of type I (slow twitch and fatigue resistant, for endurance) and type II (fast twitch, for power) fibers and are susceptible to the same age-related changes in strength and endurance that have been observed in muscles of the extremities.[75] Normally type I muscle fibers are active during quiet breathing, whereas recruitment of type II fibers is triggered by increasing physiologic demand as activity increases. Age-related decrements in the strength and efficiency of the diaphragm, intercostals, abdominal muscles, and other accessory muscles of respiration affect the effectiveness and work of breathing.[66,76] Altered posture and higher RV within the lung also contribute to an increased work of breathing; when the diaphragm rests in less than optimal position and configuration for contraction, accessory muscles become active sooner as physiologic demand increases. Oxygen consumption in respiratory muscles, as in all striated muscle, decreases linearly with age, making older muscle more vulnerable to the effects of fatigue in situations of high physical demand, especially in the presence of lung disease or injury.[64]

CONTROL OF VENTILATION

The rate of breathing (breaths per minute) is matched to physiologic demand by input from peripheral mechanoreceptors in the chest wall, lungs, and thoracic joints, as well as centers in the brain stem of the central nervous system (CNS) and peripheral aortic and carotid bodies that are sensitive to concentration of CO_2, O_2, and hydrogen ions (pH) in the blood.[77] With aging, stiffness of the thorax tends to reduce the efficiency of mechanoreceptors, and the CNS and peripheral nervous system (PNS) centers that monitor CO_2, O_2, and pH to detect hypoxia during activity slowly begin to decline.[65]

Gradual loss of descending motor neurons within the CNS also occurs, with less efficient activation of neurons innervating muscles of respiration via the phrenic nerve to the diaphragm for inspiration and of spinal nerves to intercostals for expiration.[68] These three factors combine to compromise the individual's ability to quickly and accurately respond to increasing physiologic demand and increase the likelihood of dyspnea during activity.

FUNCTIONAL CONSEQUENCES OF PULMONARY AGING

With less recoil for expiration and reduced flexibility for inspiration, the ability to work is compromised in two ways (see Fig. 2.4). First, vital capacity (VC), the maximum amount of air that can be voluntarily moved in and out of the lungs with a breath, is decreased by 25% to 40%. Second, RV, the air remaining in the lungs after a forced expiration, is increased by 25% to 40%.[64] This combination of reduced movement of air with each breath and increased air remaining in the lung between breaths leads to higher lung-air carbon dioxide content and, eventually, lower oxygen saturation of the blood after air exchange. The increase in RV also affects the muscles of inspiration: the dome of the diaphragm flattens and the accessory respiratory muscles are elongated. As a result of these length changes, the respiratory muscles work in a mechanically disadvantageous range of the length-tension curve, and the energy cost of the muscular work of breathing rises.[66]

Functionally, the amount of air inhaled per minute (minute ventilation) is a product of the frequency of breathing and the tidal volume (volume of air moving into and out of the lungs with each usual breath). In healthy individuals, the increased ventilatory needs of low-intensity activities are usually met by an increased depth of breathing (i.e., increased tidal volume).[78] Frequency of breathing increases when increased depth alone cannot meet the demands of activity, typically when tidal volume reaches 50% to 60% of the VC.[78] For the older adult with reduced VC who is involved in physical activity, tidal volume can quickly exceed this level so that the frequency of breathing increases much earlier than would be demonstrated by a young adult at the same intensity of exercise.[79] Because the energy cost of breathing rises sharply with the greater respiratory muscle work associated with an increased respiratory rate, an important consequence of increased frequency of breathing is fatigue.[80] This early reliance on an increased frequency of breathing combined with a large RV and its higher CO_2 concentration in lung air results in a physiologic cycle that further drives the need to breathe more frequently. Overworked respiratory muscles are forced to rely on anaerobic metabolism to supply their energy need, resulting in a buildup of lactic acid. Because lactic acid lowers the pH of the tissues (acidosis), it is also a potent physiologic stimulus for increased frequency of breathing.[80–82] The older person can be easily forced into a condition of rapid, shallow breathing (shortness of breath) to meet the ventilatory requirements of seemingly moderate-intensity exercise.

Implications for Intervention

Rehabilitation professionals must consider two questions about the implications of age-related changes in the cardiovascular and cardiopulmonary systems on an older person's ability to do physical work. First, what precautions should be observed to avoid cardiopulmonary and cardiovascular complications? Second, what can be done to optimize cardiopulmonary and cardiovascular function for maximal physical performance?

PRECAUTIONS

Because of the combined effects of the age-related changes in the cardiovascular and cardiopulmonary systems, the high incidence of cardiac and pulmonary pathologies in later life, and the deconditioning impact of bed rest and inactivity, older patients who require orthotic or prosthetic intervention may be vulnerable if exercise or activity is too physiologically demanding. The clinician must also consider whether the intervention is occurring after a recent major surgery, which may compound these age-related changes. High-complexity patients with a prolonged hospitalization that have undergone multiple procedures may demonstrate compromised airway protective responses to clear the airway and may be susceptible to diaphragmatic fatigue, which complicates mechanical ventilation weaning and overall recovery from surgery.[83,84] Although most

older adults can tolerate exercise and respond to it positively, exercise is not appropriate in a number of circumstances (Table 2.3).

Estimating Workload: Heart Rate and Rate Pressure Product

One of the readily measurable consequences of the reduced response of the heart to sympathetic stimulation in later life is a reduction in the maximal attainable HR.[42,77,85] This reduction in maximal HR also signals that an older person's HR reserve, the difference between the rate for any given level of activity and the maximal attainable HR, is limited as well. For older patients involved in rehabilitation programs, the difference between resting and maximal HR is narrowed. One method of estimating maximal (max) attainable HR is the following[6]:

$$\text{Max HR} = 220 - \text{Age}$$

For healthy individuals, the recommended target HR for aerobic conditioning exercise is between 60% and 80% of maximal attainable HR. For many older adults, especially those who are habitually inactive, resting HR may be close to the recommended range for exercise exertion.[86] Consider an 80-year-old individual with a resting HR of 72 beats per minute. His maximal attainable HR is approximately 140 beats per minute (220–80 years). A target HR for an aerobic training level of exertion of 60% of maximal HR would be 84 beats per minute. His resting HR is within 12 beats of the HR for aerobic training. Functionally this means that an activity as routine as rising from a chair or walking a short distance on a level surface may represent physical work of a level of exertion equated with moderate- to high-intensity exercise. Because of the reduction in maximal attainable HR with age, older adults may be working close to their VO_{2max} range even in usual activities of daily living (ADLs).[86,87]

Because HR essentially signals the work of the heart, with each beat representing ventricular contraction, increased HR relates closely to increased heart work and increased oxygen consumption by the myocardium.[85] Given that afterload on the heart increases with age, the overall work of the heart for each beat is likely greater as well.[23,41–43] A more representative way to estimate the work of the heart during activity for older adults is the rate pressure product (RPP),[88–90] using HR and SBP as follows:

$$\text{RPP} = \text{HR} \times \text{SBP}$$

The linear relationship between VO_{2max} and HR for younger adults actually levels off for older adults.[91] Because of

Table 2.3 Signs and Symptoms of Exercise Intolerance

Category	Cautionary Signs/Symptoms	Contraindications to Exercise
Heart rate	<40 bpm at rest >130 bpm at rest Little HR increase with activity Excessive HR increase with activity Frequent arrhythmia	Prolonged at maximum activity
ECG	Any recent ECG abnormalities	Prolonged arrhythmia or tachycardia Exercise-induced ECG abnormalities Second or third-degree heart block
BP	Resting SBP >165 mm Hg Resting DBP >110 mm Hg Lack of SBP response to activity Excessive BP response to activity	Resting SBP >210 mm Hg Resting DBP >110 mm Hg Drop in SBP >10 mm Hg in low level exercise Drop in DBP during exercise
Angina	Low threshold for angina	Resting or unstable angina New jaw, shoulder, or left arm pain
Respiratory rate	Dyspnea >35 breaths/min	Dyspnea >45 breaths/min
Blood gas values	O_2 saturation <90%	O_2 saturation <86%
Other symptoms	Mild to moderate claudication Onset of pallor Facial expression of distress Lightheadedness or mild dizziness Postactivity fatigue >1 h Slow recovery from activity	Severe, persistent claudication (8/10 pain scale) Cyanosis, severe pallor, or cold sweat Facial expression of severe distress Moderate to severe dizziness, syncope Nausea, vomiting Increasing mental confusion, onset of ataxia, incoordination
Additional considerations	Fever >100°F Aortic stenosis Recent mental confusion Abnormal electrolytes (potassium) Known left main coronary artery disease Idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis Compensated heart failure	Any acute illness Digoxin toxicity Overt congestive heart failure Untreated second- or third-degree heart block Acute pericarditis <4–6 weeks after myocardial infarction <2 days after pulmonary embolism Acute thrombophlebitis Acute hypoglycemia

BP, Blood pressure; *bpm*, beats per minute; *DBP*, diastolic blood pressure; *ECG*, electrocardiogram; *HR*, heart rate; *SBP*, systolic blood pressure.
Modified from Hillegass E, ed. *Essentials of cardiopulmonary physical therapy*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier Saunders; 2017:574, 582.

this, HR alone cannot accurately reflect the physiologic work that the older patient experiences; the RPP provides a clearer impression of relative work.[90] For older individuals with HR reserve limited by age, adjusting activity to keep the rise in HR within the lower end of the HR reserve is wise, especially for those with known coronary artery compromise.

Blood Pressure as a Warning Sign

An older person's blood pressure (BP) must also be considered. Hypertension, particularly increased SBP, is common in older adults. SBP also provides a relative indication of the level of afterload on the heart.[43,92,93] Resting BP can be used to indicate whether an older person can safely tolerate increased physiologic work. Persons with resting BPs of more than 180/95 mm Hg may have difficulty with increased activity. A conservative estimate of the safe range of exercise suggests that exercise should be stopped if and when BP exceeds 220/110 mm Hg, although some consider 220 mm Hg too conservative a limit for older adults.[85] SBP should rise with increasing activity or exercise.[94]

The older adult with limited HR reserve must increase SV to achieve the required CO.[23,42,57] SBP rises as SV increases and blood volume in the peripheral vasculature rises.[43] If SBP fails to rise or actually decreases during activity, this is a significant concern.[85] The drop or lack of change in SBP indicates that the heart is an ineffective pump, unable to contract and force a reasonable volume of blood out of the left ventricle. Continuing exercise or activity in the presence of a dropping SBP returns more blood to a heart that is incapable of pumping it back out to the body. Elevated diastolic blood pressure (DBP) suggests that the left ventricle is maintaining a higher pressure during the filling period.[42,43,77] Early diastolic filling during preload will be compromised,[43,53] and the heart will be unable to capitalize on the Frank-Starling mechanism to enhance the force of ventricular contraction.[23,57]

Respiratory Warning Signs

Dyspnea, or shortness of breath, is an important warning sign as well. Age-related changes in the pulmonary system increase the work of breathing, and breathing becomes less efficient as work increases.[80] Because an older person is prone to shortness of breath, recovering from shortness of breath during exercise may be difficult. Breathing more deeply requires a disproportionately greater amount of respiratory muscle work, which further increases the cost of ventilation.[81,82] The use of supplemental oxygen by nasal cannula for the postoperative or medically ill older adult who is beginning rehabilitation may be quite beneficial.

Oxygen supplementation may prevent or minimize shortness of breath, enabling an older person to tolerate increased activity better and to participate in rehabilitation more fully. During this oxygen-assisted time, any conditioning exercise to improve muscular performance (especially if combined with nutritional support) delivers blood to the working tissues and improves tissue oxygenation, ultimately aiding pulmonary function. Improved muscular conditioning and cardiovascular function may prevent or delay the onset of lactic acidemia and the resultant increased desire to breathe that would trigger shortness of breath.[80,95]

OPTIMIZING CARDIOPULMONARY PERFORMANCE

For most older adults, conditioning or training is an effective way to improve function, although some may need a longer training period than younger adults to accomplish their desired level of physical performance.[96–100] Physical conditioning in situations of acute and chronic illness enables the older person to do more work and better accomplish desired tasks or activities.

Older adults, including those who are quite debilitated, experience improvement in physical performance as a result of conditioning exercises (Fig. 2.5).[98] For some, significant gains are made as work capacity increases from an initial state below the threshold necessary for function, such that an older person appears to make greater gains than a younger individual in similar circumstances.[101,102] In many cases the cardiopulmonary system efficiency gained through conditioning means the difference between independence and dependence; functional recovery and minimal improvement; life without extraordinary means and life support; and, for some older individuals, life and death.

The physiologic mechanisms for achieving the conditioned responses of older adults may vary slightly from those of younger individuals. With increasing activity or exercise in the submaximal range, older adults demonstrate greater increases in SV and less rise in HR than do young adults.[23,43,53,57,85] This increase in SV is accomplished with an increased EDV, usually without change in the ESV.[23,43,53] Increasing the EDV enhances the force of

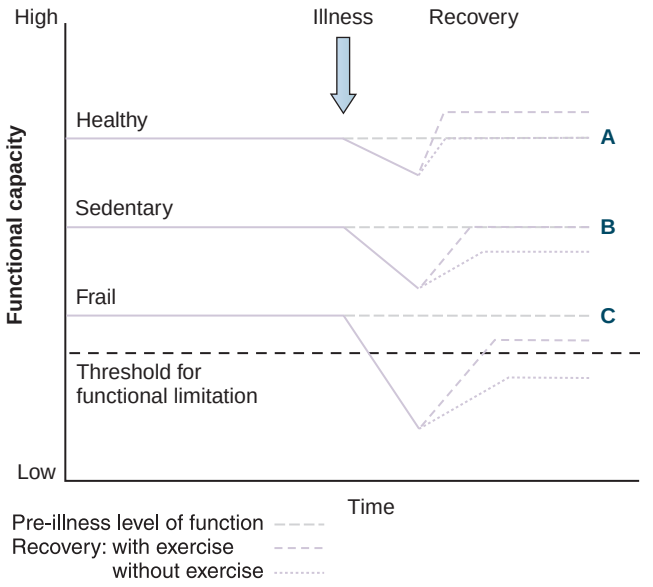


Fig. 2.5 Comparison of the impact of illness or prolonged inactivity or both on functional status and of exercise on recovery of premorbid functional levels of healthy, sedentary, and frail older adults. Each individual's functional reserve is represented by the distance between the threshold for functional limitation and the adult's functional capacity. *(A)* Healthy older adults have the most functional reserve and may recover preillness functional capacity without conditioning exercise; however, they often show improvement above baseline with exercise. *(B)* Sedentary older adults may not resume preillness functional capacity without the benefit of conditioning exercise. *(C)*, Frail older adults have the least functional reserve, often falling below threshold for function when illness occurs and tending to remain below this threshold without conditioning exercise. However, even frail older adults can regain functional status with conditioning exercise.

ventricular contraction by the Frank-Starling mechanism, which, in turn, increases CO despite the age-related impairment of the cardioacceleratory responses, which limits the rise in HR.[23,42,43,53,57] An increased preload, which improves CO, is the usual outcome of training at any age because improved conditioning of the peripheral musculature prevents distal pooling of blood and increased resting tension of the muscles assists blood return.[85]

Preparation for Activity and Exercise

Simple lower extremity exercise as a warmup before any functional activity or training session enhances the preload of the heart. Any gentle, repetitive, active lower extremity motions (e.g., ankle "pumps" in dorsiflexion/plantarflexion, knee flexion/extension, or cycling movements of the legs) before transfer or ambulation activities, before upper trunk and upper extremity activities or as part of the warmup portion of an aerobic or strength training exercise, effectively improves the EDV. This increased EDV compensates in part for age-related preload problems, which might otherwise compromise work capacity.

Additionally, the muscular work of preliminary lower extremity exercise initiates the electrolyte and hormonal changes that promote the metabolic changes and vasodilation in peripheral tissues necessary to support aerobic metabolism for meeting energy demands of the task.[85,98] Peripheral oxygen exchange improves as much as 16% with regular exercise training.[23] The peripheral vasodilation associated with exercise helps to check the rise in afterload on the heart and also minimizes the development of lactic acidemia and the resulting drive to breathe more rapidly.[103]

As submaximal levels of exercise increase toward maximal exercise, SV continues to increase, maintaining CO.[23,53,57] When cardiopulmonary disease is present in addition to aging, however, this continued increase in SV is likely to be blunted.[42,85] Under these circumstances, the reduced sensitivity of the heart to sympathetic stimulation limits the force of contraction of the ventricle so that the ejection fraction decreases and the ESV rises slightly.[43]

MONITORING THE CARDIORESPIRATORY RESPONSE TO EXERCISE

Consistent monitoring of the cardiopulmonary response is an essential component of rehabilitation interventions aimed at optimizing the endurance or fitness of older frail or deconditioned individuals.[86,104] The positive effects of training occur only when the older person is appropriately challenged by the exercise or activity. According to the principle of overload, functional improvements occur only when the body is asked to do more than the customary workload for that individual.[6] For an individual who has been on prolonged bed rest and is quite deconditioned, simple lower extremity exercises while sitting upright may be as challenging as training for a marathon in a healthy young adult. The level of physiologic exertion is relative to the individual's customary work. Providing the physiologic overload necessary to produce improvements in performance while avoiding a decline in performance because of exercise-induced fatigue or exhaustion requires that the therapist monitor the individual's level of exertion.

Heart Rate and Blood Pressure

Maximum oxygen consumption (VO_{2max}) is the most accurate and sensitive measure of the individual workload, but the special equipment and technology necessary to determine VO_{2max} are not typically available in routine clinical practice.[85,86] Although the linear relationship between HR and VO_{2max} plateaus so that HR becomes an inaccurate reflection of the workload for older adults, HR does partially indicate the work of the heart.[85,91] For a rapid clinical impression of the physiologic burden of an activity or exercise, HR is helpful as long as the clinician recognizes its limitations when the measure is being used with elders. Preexercise or activity BP provides some indication of likely afterload against which the heart will be working.[43,85,94] Continuing to monitor BP during the activity helps the clinician recognize if the exercising cardiovascular system can meet the requirements of an increasing workload.[85] Calculation of the RPP (HR × BP) may be a more accurate estimate of cardiac workload for older adults.[89,90,94]

Perceived Exertion

Ratings of perceived exertion are also effective indicators of the level of physiologic exertion experienced by patients who are exercising or involved in a strenuous physical activity (Table 2.4).[85,105,106]

These scales ask individuals to assess subjectively how much effort they are expending during an exercise session or activity, with higher ratings indicating greater effort. Similar scales have been developed to assess breathlessness, fatigue, and discomfort or pain during exercise (Table 2.5). In the clinical use of these ratings of perceived exertion, many older persons using ratings of perceived exertion tend to overestimate their true physiologic stress as indicated by their HR during exercise sessions.[85,105] Clinicians who appropriately recommend exercise for older adults relying on perceived exertion to limit the activity safely may find this phenomenon comforting.

Table 2.4 Borg Scales: Ratings of Perceived Exertion

LINEAR SCALE		RATIO SCALE	
Value	**Description**	**Value**	**Description**
6	No exertion	0	No effort at all
7–8	Extremely light effort	1	Very little (very weak) effort
9–10	Very light effort	2	Light (weak) effort
11–12	Light effort	3	Moderate effort
13–14	Somewhat hard effort	4	Somewhat strong effort
15–16	Heavy or hard	5–6	Strong effort
17–18	Very hard effort	7–8	Very strong effort
19	Extremely hard effort	9	Extremely strong effort
20	Maximum exertion	10	Maximal exertion

Modified from Borg G, Ottoson D. *The perception of exertion in physical work.* London: Macmillan; 1986.

Table 2.5 Ratio Scales of Perceived Breathlessness, Fatigue, or Discomfort During Exercise

Value	Breathlessness/ Dyspnea	Fatigue	Discomfort or Pain
0	No breathlessness at all	No fatigue at all	No pain or discomfort
1	Very light breathlessness	Very light fatigue	Very little (weak) pain
2	Light breathlessness	Light fatigue	Little (weak) discomfort
3	Moderate breathlessness	Moderate fatigue	Moderate discomfort
4	Somewhat hard to breathe	Somewhat hard	Somewhat strong discomfort
5-6	Heavy breathing	Heavy work/fatigue	Strong discomfort or pain
7-8	Very heavy breathing	Very heavy fatigue	Very heavy discomfort
9	Very, very breathless	Very, very fatigued	Very, very hard discomfort
10	Maximum breathlessness	Maximally fatigued	Maximal discomfort or pain

Modified from Dean E. Mobilization and exercise. In Frownfelter D, Dean E, eds. *Principles and practice of cardiopulmonary physical therapy.* 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1996:282.

Exercise Testing Protocols

Standard exercise testing protocols are appropriate for assessment of the status of conditioning of the cardiovascular system and exercise tolerance of older adults.[86,107] The "gold standard" treadmill test, a cycle ergometer, or a step test can be used to assess the cardiovascular performance of the older person unless the specific clinical setting or associated musculoskeletal dysfunction (e.g., balance problems, arthritic joints, or lower extremity muscle weakness) precludes this type of testing.[86] Alternatives for individuals who can walk distances include the One-Mile Walk Test and the Six-Minute Walk Test.[108–110] A brief step test performed while sitting in a chair has been developed for individuals who cannot otherwise be safely tested on a treadmill, with an ergometer, or by distance walked.[85,111]

Careful monitoring of HR and BP before the sitting step test—at predetermined points during testing, at the completion of a brief bout of exercise, and a short while into recovery from the exercise bout—provides a comprehensive picture of the cardiovascular function of any given older patient. This information often proves important in clinical decision making and program planning. Similarly, careful monitoring of HR and BP before, during, and after a bout of exercise during rehabilitation allows the clinician to compare the pattern of responses with the expected pattern for conditioned adults.[112] Normal exercise-induced cardiovascular responses include a slow rate of rise of HR, a rise in SBP, and minimal (if any) rise in DBP during the exercise bout. For the conditioned older adult, HR and SBP should return toward preexercise values during the immediate postexercise recovery period on the order of 50% of the changes during exercise. The pattern of change in the RPP for the exercise bout and recovery period may be an even more descriptive measure of the cardiovascular response.

Expecting individuals who are significantly deconditioned, can barely tolerate sitting for 30 minutes, are short of breath after 10 repetitions of simple lower extremity exercises while sitting, or are fatigued after 5 minutes of a sitting step test to be fully able to participate in gait and balance training is unreasonable. How can older individuals who are working at 90% or more of their maximum target HR be truly concerned with much more than delivering oxygen to the working tissues? Deconditioned individuals who are working at a high intensity in simple, well-known tasks have seriously restricted energy reserves; they are likely to have difficulty with focus and attention, processing, and the therapist's directions and supporting muscle activity—all necessary components for motor learning in performing a new skill such as gait training with a prosthetic device. Under these circumstances emphasis must first be placed on improving cardiovascular conditioning so as to improve energy reserves; then subsequent functional training with an orthosis or prosthesis will have a greater likelihood of a successful outcome.

PHYSICAL PERFORMANCE TRAINING

The same principles of training that are used with young adult athletes can be adapted and applied to frail or deconditioned older adults who are recovering from amputation in prosthetic rehabilitation or to a neuromuscular or musculoskeletal event that necessitates use of an orthosis. The primary goals of conditioning for frail individuals are (1) to develop enough aerobic capacity to do work and (2) to ensure efficient muscle function to produce work.[85,86,113] These concepts can guide any single rehabilitation session, as well as the progression of the rehabilitation program, over time. An understanding of exercise for improving fitness and of the few physiologic age-related changes in cardiopulmonary function provide a foundation for exercise prescription, which then is individualized on the basis of current exercise tolerance of a specific older patient. This strategy can likely optimize the performance and recovery of older adults in rehabilitation.

An effective strategy to improve cardiopulmonary response to exercise and activity for older patients who are deconditioned by bed rest, acute illness, or sedentary lifestyle begins with a warmup of continuous alternating movements using large muscle groups, particularly of the lower extremities. The goal of such activity is facilitation of the preload and SV; any increase in SV realized through this training regimen helps an older patient maximize cardiovascular function despite age-associated limitations in HR, cardioacceleratory responses, and baroreceptor sensitivity.

For healthy young adults, the recommended regimen for aerobic conditioning and endurance training involves at least three sessions per week of 30 to 60 minutes' duration in activities that use large muscles (running, cycling, swimming, brisk walking) and keep HR in a target range between 60% and 80% of the individual's maximal attainable HR.[114,115] This may be unreasonable for an older adult

who is recovering from an acute illness, habitually sedentary, or coping with age- or pathology-related impairments of cardiac or pulmonary function. Evidence suggests that, for older adults who are deconditioned, slower but significant improvement in functional capacity can occur at exercise intensities as low as 40% of maximal HR.[97,116–118] Although high-frequency, high-intensity exercise can maximize increase in work capacity (VO_{2max}), high-intensity exercise performed less frequently and low-intensity exercise performed more frequently can also yield positive endurance training effects.[118,119] Evidence is also growing that improvement in oxygen extraction and muscle function occurs when older adults are involved in regular endurance training.[119]

In addition to aerobic conditioning, the rehabilitation program might include exercises that focus on flexibility. One goal of stretching and flexibility exercise for older adults is to preserve or restore any limited joint mobility that would otherwise compromise essential functions.[120] As flexibility of the trunk and thorax improves, a more effective alignment of the diaphragm and improved elastic recoil of the chest wall will have a positive impact on VC and inspiratory reserve volume and minimize RV, reducing the work of breathing and improving ventilation. The availability of essential range-of-motion exercises is especially important for energy-efficient gait with lower limb orthoses or prostheses. Contracture of the hip, knee, or ankle has an impact on the alignment of orthotic and prosthetic components and often leads to greater sway and smaller stride length during gait, significantly increasing the energy cost or workload of walking.

Muscle strengthening can begin as soon as the aerobic conditioning appears adequate to oxygenate the peripheral muscular tissue sufficiently. Assessment of the adequacy of peripheral oxygenation might include monitoring the coloring of the distal extremities before and during exercise and noting whether cramping or claudication occurs during exercise. One of the most sensitive indicators of appropriate intensity and duration of exercise is whether the activity can be increased without a marked rise in respiratory rate or onset of shortness of breath; a potent stimulus for frequency of breathing is the pH of the exercising tissues with decreases as lactic acid builds up during anaerobic exercise.

Two factors should be considered when strengthening exercises are included in a rehabilitation program.[104] First, is there adequate muscle strength for consistent and safe performance of the motor tasks needed for functional independence (including the use of assistive devices)? Second, is the muscle mass large enough to support a VO_{2max} that allows ADLs to represent a light to modest work intensity level? For many older people who have lost muscle mass (whether as a result of disuse and sedentary lifestyle or because of recent health problems that limit activity), the development of more muscle mass increases lean body mass and improves the basal metabolic rate, thus improving overall health, fitness, and functional status.[121,122] Healthy but sedentary elderly subjected to high-load (80% of one rep max until muscular failure) resistance exercise to improve strength has been found to be safe when compared with low load (30% of one rep max until muscular failure) resistance exercise.[123]

Energy Cost of Walking

The human body is designed to be energy efficient during upright bipedal gait. Muscles of the trunk and extremities are activated by the CNS in a precise rhythmic cycle to move the body forward while maintaining dynamic stability, adapting stride length and walking speed to the constraints and demands of the task, the force of gravity, and the characteristics of the environment in which walking is occurring.[124,125] The advancing foot is lifted just enough to clear the surface in swing, and muscle activity at the stance-side hip and lower torso keeps the pelvis fairly level and the trunk erect, thus minimizing vertical displacement of the body's center of mass.[126] Normal arthrokinematic and osteokinematic relationships between body segments ensure a narrow base of support in quiet stance and relaxed walking, and reciprocal arm swing counterbalances the dynamic pendular motion of the lower extremities, ensuring that the center of mass progresses forward with minimal mediolateral sway.[126–129] Much of the energy cost of walking is related to the muscular work performed to keep the center of mass moving forward with a minimum of vertical and mediolateral displacement.[130]

SELF-SELECTED WALKING SPEED

Since self-selected walking speed emerges from the interaction of the cardiovascular, pulmonary, musculoskeletal, and neurologic systems, it reflects the overall health and functional status of an individual.[131–134] Walking speed is recognized as a vital sign that not only captures current function but also can be used to predict the risk of functional decline, adverse health events and morbidity, length of stay and discharge location after hospitalization, and mortality.[132,135–152]

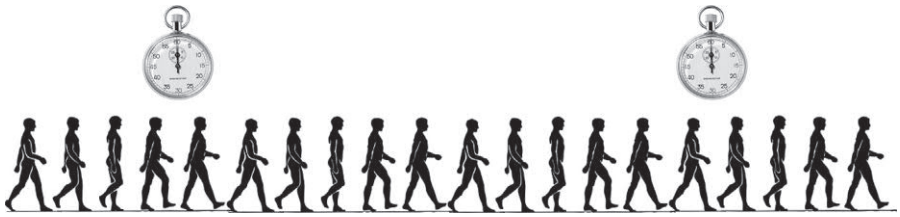
A recent study found that increases in the energetic costs of walking predicted the decline in self-selected walking speed in adults 65 years of age and older.[153] Although self-selected walking speed tends to decrease with aging, multiple studies have demonstrated that even into the ninth and tenth decades of life, healthy older adults are able to walk at speeds at or greater than 1 m/s (Table 2.6).[132,154–156] Values for typical walking speed are also becoming available for community living older adults with impaired mobility and physical frailty.[133,150,157–160] There is also evidence that the ability to increase walking speed is an indicator of functional reserve.[154,158,161]

Walking speed can be quickly and reliably measured using a stopwatch and either a 20- or 6-m walkway (Fig. 2.6). The individual is instructed to walk over the entire distance of the walkway but is timed only while walking the middle two thirds (10 or 4 m, respectively) of the distance so that steady-state speed is more likely and the impacts of acceleration (at the start) and deceleration (at the end) are minimized. Reliability is strong at either distance for persons with amputation, stroke, and spinal cord injury as well as for those with chronic disease, physical frailty, and other neurologic pathologies.[162–165] Minimal detectable differences (MDDs) have been consistently reported as between 0.08 m/s and 0.1 m/s for community-living persons, those with cognitive impairment, and those with hip fractures.[154,166,167] The minimal clinically important difference for walking

Table 2.6 Typical Self-Selected and Fast Walking Speeds for Community-Living Healthy and Mobility-Impaired Older Adults Reported as Mean Standard Deviation. (m/s)

RESEARCHER:		CHUI ET AL.[154]		BOHANNON[156]		STEFFEN ET AL.[155]		LUSARDI ET AL.[158]	
POPULATION		HEALTHY		HEALTHY		HEALTHY		MOBILITY IMPAIRED	
Gender	**Age Group**	**SSWS**	**FWS**	**SSWS**	**FWS**	**SSWS**	**FWS**	**SSWS**	**FWS**
Women	60–69	—	—	1.30 (0.21)	1.77 (0.25)	1.44 (0.25)	1.87 (0.30)	1.24 (0.12)	1.81 (0.17)
	70–79	1.34 (0.26)	1.69 (0.32)	1.27 (0.21)	1.79 (0.28)	1.33 (0.22)	1.71 (0.26)	1.25 (0.18)	1.80 (0.26)
	80–89	1.05 (0.12)	1.44 (0.17)	—	—	1.15 (0.21)	1.59 (0.28)	0.80 (0.16)[a]	1.20 (0.29)
	90–99	0.80 (0.17)	1.05 (0.22)	—	—	—	—	0.71 (0.23)[b]	1.05 (0.32)[b]
Men	60–69	—	—	1.36 (0.21)	1.93 (0.36)	1.59 (0.24)	2.05 (0.31)	—	—
	70–79	1.55 (0.58)	2.19 (0.78)	1.33 (0.20)	2.08 (0.36)	1.38 (0.23)	1.83 (0.44)	1.25 (0.23)	1.94 (0.26)
	80–89	1.30 (0.15)	1.75 (0.21)	—	—	1.21 (0.18)	1.65 (0.24)	0.88 (0.24)[a]	1.29 (0.38)[a]
	90–99	1.10 (0.38)	1.55 (0.66)	—	—	—	—	0.72 (0.14)[b]	1.27 (0.13)[b]

FWS, Fast walking speed; *SSWS*, self-selected walking speed.
[a]29.4% of older adults in the sample routinely used a rolling walker, standard walker, or cane while walking.
[b]58.8% of older adults in the sample routinely used rolling walker, standard walker, or cane while walking.



Acceleration Zone	Timed Walk	Deceleration Zone
1 m	4 m	1 m
5 m	10 m	5 m

Fig. 2.6 Strategy for assessing self-selected or fast walking speed timing either the central 10-m distance (10-m walk) or central 4-m distance (4-m walk) allowing for acceleration and deceleration at either end so that steady-state speed is better approximated.

speed following stroke is reported to be 0.16 m/s to 0.175 m/s.[168,169] Walking speed has been successfully used to evaluate the outcome of interventions for persons with cognitive impairments as well as those with hip fractures.[154,166,167]

Any musculoskeletal or neuromuscular pathologic condition that interferes with the alignment of body segments, the carefully controlled sequential activation of muscles, or the effectiveness of muscle contraction increases the energy cost of walking.[133] As vertical displacement and mediolateral sway increase and gait deviations occur, muscles must work harder to keep the center of mass moving forward despite extraneous displacing moments. As muscle work increases, the cardiopulmonary system responds to this physiologic demand with increased HR, SV, and respiratory rate. Any orthosis or prosthesis that adds mass to or alters movement of the lower extremity potentially increases the work of walking. However, in individuals with amputation or neuromuscular dysfunction, walking with an appropriate prosthesis or orthosis may actually require less energy than walking without it.[130,170,171]

MEASURING ENERGY COSTS OF WALKING

Measurement of physiologic energy expenditure by direct calorimetry is not realistic in all but the most sophisticated research laboratory settings. Instead, several indirect indicators have been found to be valid and reliable estimates of the energy cost and the efficiency of gait in research and clinical applications. These include calculation of oxygen consumption (VO_{2max}) and oxygen cost while walking, monitoring blood lactate levels, calculating the physiologic cost index (PCI) of walking, and monitoring heart and respiratory rates during activity.

Oxygen Rate and Oxygen Cost

The most precise indirect measurements of energy and gait efficiency use special equipment (e.g., a portable spirometer or a Douglas bag) to monitor ventilatory volumes and to measure how much oxygen is taken in and how much carbon dioxide is exhaled during physical activity. This type of testing is usually done while the subject or patient walks, runs on a treadmill or track, or cycles on a stationary bicycle. The rate of oxygen consumption (O_2 rate), measured as volume of oxygen consumed per unit of body weight in 1 minute (mL/kg/min), provides an index of intensity of physical work at any given time.[128,172] VO_{2max} is the highest rate of oxygen uptake possible and is determined by progressing the exercise test to the point of voluntary exhaustion, when the age-adjusted maximum attainable HR is approached or reached.[173,174]

If oxygen consumption during gait is low, an individual is likely to be able to walk long distances. If it is high, however,

the distance of functional gait is likely to be limited. The oxygen cost of walking is determined by dividing the rate of oxygen consumption by the speed of walking. Oxygen cost is a precise indicator of efficiency of gait, or the amount of energy expended to walk over a standard distance (mL/kg/m).[128] Most of what researchers currently understand about energy expenditure when a prosthesis or orthosis is being used is based on studies that have measured oxygen rate and the oxygen cost of walking.

Serum Lactate

The energy efficiency of walking is also assessed by evaluating serum carbon dioxide and lactate levels as indicators of anaerobic energy production. The energy (adenosine triphosphate [ATP]) required for muscle contraction during gait can be derived from a combination of aerobic oxidative and anaerobic glycolytic pathways.[175] The aerobic oxidative pathway, which depends on oxygen delivery to active muscle cells, is the most efficient source of energy, producing almost 19 times as much ATP as the anaerobic pathway. In healthy, fit individuals, this aerobic pathway is more than able to meet energy requirements of relaxed walking. If energy demands of an exercise or activity are met by aerobic oxidation, the activity can be sustained for long periods with relatively low levels of fatigue. As activity becomes strenuous (i.e., as walking speed or surface incline increases) and the need for energy begins to exceed the availability of oxygen for aerobic oxidation, additional energy is accessed through anaerobic metabolism.[176] This transition to anaerobic metabolism is reported to begin at work levels of 55% of VO_{2max} in healthy, untrained individuals but may begin at 80% of VO_{2max} in highly trained athletes.[177]

When the ability to deliver oxygen is compromised by the physical deconditioning of a sedentary lifestyle or by cardiac, pulmonary, or musculoskeletal pathology, anaerobic glycolysis becomes a primary source of energy at lower levels of work.[178] Whenever the anaerobic pathway is the major source of energy, blood levels of lactate and carbon dioxide rise, lowering blood pH and increasing the respiratory exchange ratio (CO_2 production/O_2 consumption).[179] Under these conditions, the ability to sustain activity is limited, with an earlier onset of fatigue as workload increases. Serum lactate levels are most often used in studies of assisted ambulation using hybrid orthotic/functional electrical stimulation (FES) systems for those with spinal cord injury.

Heart Rate and Physiologic Cost Index

High correlations between HR and oxygen consumption during gait have been reported for children and for healthy young adults at a variety of walking speeds.[180,181] Although this suggests that HR monitoring may be a reliable substitute for oxygen consumption, it should be used with caution in older adults because of the age-related changes in cardiopulmonary function discussed earlier in this chapter. This is especially true for older adults with heart disease who are being managed with medications that further blunt HR response.[182,183] The RPP or the PCI may be a more appropriate indicator of the energy cost of walking in these circumstances. The PCI is calculated as follows[184]:

$$\text{PCI} = (\text{HR walking} - \text{HR resting})/\text{Walking speed}$$

Measured in beats per meter, the PCI reflects the effort of walking; low values suggest energy-efficient gait. The PCI was originally used to assess gait restrictions in adults with rheumatoid arthritis or a similar inflammatory joint disease.[184] For children between 3 and 12 years of age, the mean PCI at self-selected or preferred walking speed has been reported to be between 0.38 and 0.40 beats per meter.[185] Typical PCI values for adolescents and young adults at usual walking speeds ranged from 0.3 to 0.4 beats per meter.[186] In a study of healthy adults older than age 65 years, the mean PCI value when walking on a flat 10-m track was 0.43 (SD = 0.13) beats per meter; when calculated while walking on a treadmill, mean PCI increased to 0.60 (SD = 0.26) beats per meter.[187]

The PCI has been used to assess the effect of different assistive devices on the effort of walking,[187,188] evaluate the short- and long-term impact on neuromuscular stimulation on the ability to walk and run in older adults and in children with hemiplegia, assess outcomes of orthopedic surgery in children with cerebral palsy, and evaluate the efficacy of reciprocal gait orthosis (RGO)/FES systems for individuals with spinal cord injury.[189–197] High correlation among the PCI, percent maximum HR, and oxygen rate ($r = 0.91$, $P > .005$) in able-bodied children and children with transtibial amputation supports its validity as an indicator of energy cost for children.[198] A similar study of energy cost of walking in young adults using a microprocessor-controlled transfemoral prosthesis suggests that PCI is comparable with oxygen uptake as an indicator of the energy cost of walking.[199] The PCI has also been used to compare energy cost of walking in different types of transfemoral prosthetic sockets and to assess efficacy of a stance control knee orthosis.[200,201]

Studies of variability in PCI values on repeated measures have raised questions about its accuracy and sensitivity to change in energy cost of gait as compared with monitoring oxygen consumption and oxygen cost.[202–204] Although the relationship between PCI and the gold standards of oxygen consumption and oxygen cost may not be strong enough for researchers, it remains an important tool for clinicians who lack the resources necessary to directly monitor oxygen consumption and cost yet want to estimate the energy cost of walking and assess the impact of orthotic or prosthetic rehabilitation over time.

ENERGY EXPENDITURE AT SELF-SELECTED WALKING SPEEDS

The energy requirements of walking vary with age and walking speed.[204–210] Oxygen consumption is highest in childhood and decreases to approximately 12 mL/kg/min in healthy adults and elders.[205] When oxygen consumption during walking is expressed as a percent of VO_{2max}, a slightly different picture emerges. For a healthy, untrained young adult, oxygen consumption at a comfortable walking speed may be 32% of VO_{2max}, whereas for an older adult walking at a similar speed, oxygen consumption may be as much as 48% of VO_{2max}.[126,211] For functional gait, if walking is to cover long distances or is to be sustained over prolonged periods of time, oxygen consumption must be less than 50% of that individual's VO_{2max} so that aerobic oxidation will be used as the primary source of energy.[6]

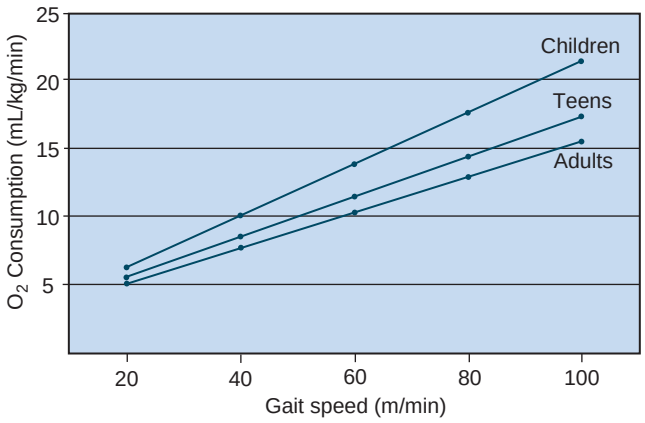


Fig. 2.7 Relationship between walking speed and oxygen consumption (O_2 rate). The differences in O_2 rate between children and adults (20 to 80 years) are attributed in part to differences in body composition. (From gait-velocity regression formulas reported by Waters RL. Energy expenditure. In Perry J, Burnfield JM, eds. *Gait analysis: normal and pathological function*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2010:483–518.)

At comfortable walking speeds, older adults are working nearer the threshold for transition to anaerobic metabolism than are younger adults. If some form of gait dysfunction is superimposed, increasing the energy cost of gait, the work of walking will transition to anaerobic glycolysis unless a cardiovascular conditioning program is included in the rehabilitation program.[212–216]

For individuals without neuromuscular or musculoskeletal impairment, the relationship between the energy cost of walking and walking speed is nearly linear (Fig. 2.7).[215] Gait is most efficient, as indicated by oxygen cost (O_2 rate/velocity), at an individual's self-selected or customary walking speed; energy requirements increase whenever walking speed is much slower or much faster.[215–218] The customary walking speed of most individuals with neuromuscular or musculoskeletal impairments is often much slower, a strategy that minimizes the rate of energy used during walking. As a result of slower speed, however, it takes longer to cover any given distance. Any impairment that reduces walking speed leads to increased oxygen cost, even if oxygen consumption remains close to normal.[219–224]

The weight and design of the prosthesis or orthosis are also determinants of energy cost of gait. The impact of added mass on the energy cost of gait depends on where the load is placed: Extra weight loaded on the trunk (e.g., a heavy backpack) changes oxygen rate during walking less than would a smaller load placed around the ankle.[225] Adding weight to the prosthesis center of mass increases the energy cost of gait by 7%, whereas adding the same weight to the ankle increases the energy cost by 12%.[226] Despite theories that increasing prosthesis weight may improve gait symmetry, they may have not taken into account the increase in energy cost for the patient. This highlights the importance of minimizing weight of lower extremity orthoses and prostheses to keep the energy cost of walking within an individual's aerobic capacity.[226,227]

WORK OF WALKING WITH AN ORTHOSIS

When the energy cost of walking with an orthosis is being discussed, it is important to remember that, for those with significant neuromuscular or musculoskeletal impairment, the energy cost of walking without the orthosis is typically higher than that of walking with an appropriate orthosis.[228–232] One of the determinants of energy cost when walking with a cast or an orthosis is the degree of immobility that the orthosis imposes on the ankle, knee, and hip and the associated change in walking speed.[233] For individuals with restriction of knee motion because of a cast or orthosis, the energy cost of gait can be reduced by placing a shoe lift on the contralateral limb to improve swing limb clearance.[234]

Recent advances in materials and computer technology have significantly increased material options and ankle/foot orthosis (AFO) design types. The use of carbon fiber's energy return characteristics may improve walking speed and gait kinematics in patients after stroke, and the use of traditional thermoplastic material and an articulated joint may provide similar improvements when compared with a solid joint.[235–238] Newer technology including computer-controlled active ankle/foot orthoses (AAFOs) may normalize ankle gait kinematics.[239,240] Despite the differences in design, all AFOs will reduce energy expenditure with walking. The true key for the clinician is to determine which type of AFO design is optimal for their patient based on the patient's individual deficits.[241]

The movement dysfunction associated with stroke and other neuromuscular impairments tends to reduce walking speed, with the degree of slowing determined by the severity of neuromuscular impairment.[134,231,242] As abnormal movement patterns and impaired postural responses compromise the cyclic and dynamic flow of walking, the higher levels of muscle activity that are required to remain upright and to move forward increase the energy cost of gait.[243] Reduction of walking speed is a functional strategy to keep energy expenditure within physiologic limits in addition to maintain postural stability. Oxygen rate (consumption) of persons with stroke who walk at a reduced walking speed is close to that of older adults who walk at their customary walking speed; however, oxygen cost is significantly higher.[130,220,230] When stroke survivors are able to improve their gait symmetry and walking speed, their overall oxygen consumption is reduced dramatically.[243] Orthosis use on the affected lower extremity may be one of the easiest methods to help facilitate improved gait quality and functional walking distance.

For individuals with spinal cord injury, regardless of age, the potential for functional ambulation appears to be determined by four conditions: the ability to use a reciprocal gait pattern, the adequacy of trunk stability, at least fair hip flexor strength bilaterally, and fair quadriceps strength of at least one limb.[243,244] This corresponds to an ambulatory motor index (AMI) score of 18 of 30 possible points, or 60% of "good" lower extremity strength.[207] In this instance, gait may be possible with bilateral AFOs or an AFO and knee/ankle/foot orthosis combination. Those with spinal cord injury at mid- to low-thoracic levels with AMI scores of less than 60% often require bilateral knee/ankle/foot orthoses with Lofstrand or axillary crutches in a swing-through gait pattern to ambulate. Waters[130] reports a near linear positive relationship between AMI scores and gait velocity as well as a somewhat curvilinear inverse relationship between AMI score and oxygen rate (percent above normal) and oxygen cost. For persons with spinal cord injury who

Table 2.7 MET level for SCI Versus Able Body While Using Functional Orthosis

	Able Body, No Device[244]	Paraplegia w/ FNS[245]	Paraplegia w/ RGO[247]	Paraplegia w/ Exoskeleton[246]	Able Body w/ Exoskeleton[248]
Walking speed (m/s)	1.3	.5	.27	.27	1.2
MET level	3.4	8	4.4	3.3	6.5

FNS, Functional neuromuscular stimulation; *MET,* metabolic equivalent of the task; *RGO,* reciprocal gait orthosis; *SCI,* spinal cord injury.

have the potential for functional ambulation, continued cardiovascular conditioning after discharge from rehabilitation improves the efficiency of walking as reflected in lower oxygen cost and improvement in walking speed.[244–246]

The development of RGOs and "parawalkers," at times augmented by functional neuromuscular stimulation (FNS), has also made modified ambulation possible for those with injury at mid and upper thoracic levels.[247–255] The high energy cost of the intense upper extremity work using crutches to propel the body forward during swing and maintain upright position in stance, however, restricts functional ambulation as a primary means of mobility.

The clinician must consider the potential energy requirement of using a functional orthosis such as an RGO, FNS, and exoskeleton with gait for a patient with a spinal cord injury (SPI) (Table 2.7).[256–260] An able-bodied individual ambulating at a normal walking speed of 1.3 m/s will use 3.4 times the average amount of oxygen at rest, or 3.4 metabolic equivalents (METs).[256] One MET is equal to 3.5 mL O_2/min/kg—essentially the amount of oxygen consumed while sitting at rest. When tasked with gait using a functional orthosis, patients with SCI demonstrate significantly higher energy requirements to complete the task. It is important to note that the energy expenditures listed in Table 2.7 were mostly performed at nonfunctional walking speeds. Despite the abundance of technology, there have been no significant findings of improved patient functional outcomes with using FNS, RGO, body weight–supported treadmill training (BWSTT), and FES versus conventional treatment with SCI patients.[261]

WORK OF WALKING WITH A PROSTHESIS

The characteristics of gait and the energy cost of walking with a prosthesis are related to the etiology and the level of amputation.[262–264] The walking speed, stride length, and cadence of persons with lower extremity amputation who walk with a prosthesis are typically lower than those of individuals without impairment regardless of the cause of amputation,[265] although individuals with a traumatic etiology tend to walk faster than those with a dysvascular etiology.[264,266,267] Additionally, biomechanical and energy efficiency of prosthetic gait decreases as amputation level increases. Therefore preservation of the anatomic knee joint appears to be especially important.[264,265,268]

A classic study by Waters and colleagues[267] (Table 2.8) demonstrated that, for young adults with traumatic transtibial amputation, walking speed, oxygen rate, and oxygen cost were quite close to the normal values reported by Perry.[126] Recent studies by Esposito and colleagues[269] support the initial findings of Waters and colleagues[267] demonstrating similar metabolic demands for the same velocity of walking between young adults with traumatic transtibial amputation and controls.[269] For those with traumatic transfemoral or dysvascular amputation, diminishing walking speeds kept oxygen consumption close to that of normal adult gait; however, oxygen cost increased well beyond the normal value of 0.15 mg/kg/m.[233] Although walking speeds reported 20 years later by Torburn and colleagues[266] are much higher (most likely from biomechanical advances in prosthetic components in the time between the studies), the difference in performance between traumatic and dysvascular groups was consistent. Other studies report oxygen costs of prosthetic gait at between 16% and 28% above normal for individuals with transtibial amputation and between 60% and 110% above normal for individuals with transfemoral amputation.[270–275] For hip disarticulation due to pathology, the oxygen cost of prosthetic gait can be more than 60% above normal, even at a significantly lower walking speed.[276] Although the relationship between walking speed and oxygen rate (consumption) in prosthetic gait is linear, just as it is in unimpaired gait, the slope is significantly steeper.[277] The clinical implication of this relationship is that the rate of energy consumption and of cardiac work at any walking speed is higher for those with amputation and that the threshold for transition from aerobic to anaerobic metabolism is reached at lower walking speeds.[278]

Several explanations are possible for the differences in prosthetic gait performance after traumatic versus dysvascular amputation. Because those with dysvascular amputation are typically older than those with traumatic amputation, differences in performance may be the result of age-related changes and concurrent cardiovascular disease in the dysvascular group.[270,279,280] For many older patients with dysvascular amputation, the energy source for walking with a prosthesis may be anaerobic rather than the more efficient aerobic metabolic pathways.[266] A larger cardiac and respiratory functional reserve capacity in younger persons with traumatic transtibial amputation may permit them to meet the increased metabolic demands of prosthetic use because proximal muscle groups work for longer periods at higher intensities to compensate for the loss of those at the ankle.[266,277,281]

Importantly, for most individuals with unilateral transtibial and transfemoral amputation regardless of age or etiology of amputation, the energy cost of walking with a prosthesis is less than that expended when walking without it, using crutches or a walker.[267,282] For most persons with a new transtibial amputation, the ability to ambulate before amputation is the best predictor of tolerance of the increased energy cost of walking with a prosthesis after surgery.[279] For some older individuals with transfemoral amputation and concurrent cardiovascular or respiratory disease and for those with bilateral amputation at transfemoral/transtibial or bilateral transfemoral levels, wheelchair mobility may be preferred.[283–286]

Table 2.8 Walking Speed, Oxygen Consumption, and Oxygen Cost in Prosthetic Gait: Comparison of Etiology and Level of Unilateral Amputation

Etiology and Level Parameter	TRAUMATIC		DYSVASCULAR		Other Pathology
	Transtibial	Transfemoral	Transtibial	Transfemoral	Hip Disarticulation
Waters et al., 1976[267]					
Walking speed (m/min)	71	52	45	36	
O_2 rate (mL/kg/min)	12.4	10.3	9.4	10.8	
O_2 cost (mL/kg/m)	0.16	0.20	0.20	0.28	
Torburn et al., 1995[266]					
Walking speed (m/min)	82.3	—	61.7	—	
O_2 rate (mL/kg/min)	17.7	—	13.2	—	
O_2 cost (mL/kg/m)	0.22	—	0.21	—	
Jarvis et al., 2017[275]					
Walking speed (m/min)	81.6	73.2			
O_2 rate (mL/kg/min)	12.3	13.3			
O_2 cost (mL/kg/m)	.15	.18			
Chin et al., 2012[276]					
Walking speed (m/min)					30.5
O_2 rate (mL/kg/min)					18.3
O_2 cost (mL/kg/m)					.64

Technologic Advances Impacting Energy Demands

Since the 1990s, significant efforts have been made to reduce the energy cost of prosthetic gait by developing dynamic-response (energy-storing) prosthetic feet and cadence-responsive and microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knee units.[287–301] The flexible keels of most energy storage and return prosthetic feet are designed to mimic those of normal ankle mobility, such that mechanical energy stored by compression during stance is released to enhance push-off in the terminal stance.[302] However, the impact of different prosthetic foot designs on the energy cost is limited. The 1M10 Adjust demonstrated significant improvement in the energy cost of walking and perceived exertion for hypomobile adults with transtibial amputation (TTA).[303] Other studies on adults with TTA found that the FlexFoot functioned more like an anatomic ankle than did four other dynamic response feet and the SACH foot, but little difference in stride, velocity, or energy cost was noted.[266,281,293] However, the materials and designs of most dynamic-response feet may enable transtibial prosthetic users to jump, run, and use a step-over step pattern in stair climbing; these activities are difficult or impossible with a traditional SACH foot.[267,268,270–274,277,293] Additionally, many individuals with transtibial amputation wear their prosthesis for longer periods during the day and report less fatigue in prolonged walking when using a prosthesis with a dynamic-response foot.[279] Additional research is needed focusing on standardized methods to objectively assess function while measuring subjective performance.

Recent research into dynamic ankle and foot system for transtibial amputees provides promise of improved performance of ADLs and even sports. Microprocessor ankle systems like the Proprio have demonstrated both objective and subjective improvements with slope ascent and descent.[304] However, with the varied designs of transtibial prostheses, the research has been mixed in determining whether active push-off reduces walking energy expenditure.[304–308] Some of the variables within the research has been the lack of subjects, weight of the prosthesis, gait analysis on a treadmill versus open ground, and the length of time of gait analysis, which may lead to fatigue becoming another factor. Much focus with these transtibial prostheses has been to replace the 80% of the mechanical work to complete the gait cycle performed by the gastrocsoleus complex.[309,310] However, researchers are realizing that there are more factors besides energy return at toe-off to improve energy expenditure with gait.[311] New designs are taking into account the entire gait cycle to reduce overall energy expenditure while improving gait kinematics.

A patient with a transfemoral prosthesis faces even greater energy requirements for gait and overall stability. Promising research looking at microprocessor-controlled active knee joints has demonstrated a significant reduction in energy expenditure when climbing stairs, even allowing subjects to perform a step-through gait.[312] Further research on the functional application of this latest generation of "smart" joints will definitely improve the overall functional capability of patients with transfemoral prostheses in the future.

Additional technologic advances will likely change how orthotics and prosthetics are designed and manufactured. Breakthroughs in computer modeling and 3D printing are allowing devices to be designed exactly for the wearer and "built" via a 3D printer in precise detail.[313] This holds

promise for patients with unique or less common amputations (such as a Syme or Pirogoff amputation) to have devices designed specifically for their needs and thereby maximizing walking efficiency and reducing energy expenditure.[314]

Summary

An understanding of normal cardiopulmonary function and how it changes in aging as a result of sedentary lifestyle or pathologic conditions provides a necessary foundation for rehabilitation professionals working with patients who require an orthosis or prosthesis to walk. This chapter reviews the anatomy and physiology of the cardiopulmonary system with attention to age-related changes, energy expenditure, and principles of aerobic conditioning for older adults.

Optimal performance of the cardiopulmonary system is influenced by three interrelated factors. First, the patient must have sufficient flexibility and mobility of the trunk for efficient and uncompromised ventilation. Second, adequate mobility of the extremities and excursion of the joints must be present for efficient performance of functional tasks. Third, the individual must have enough muscle mass, strength, and endurance to support the performance of the activity and function of the heart. Immediate and ongoing interventions that functionally enhance preload by returning blood to the older heart and avoidance of conditions (e.g., isometric muscle contraction and Valsalva maneuvers) that unnecessarily increase afterload can result in marked improvement in physical performance of the older person. With these conditions and compensation for the beta-adrenergic receptor–reduced sensitivity with a prolonged period of warmup exercises, an older person can be capable of a physical performance that is quite similar to that of younger counterparts and essential for the process of recovery of function as the optimal outcome of rehabilitation.

The energy cost and efficiency of gait are affected by aging, deconditioning from a sedentary lifestyle, and neuromuscular and musculoskeletal impairments that alter motor control or the biomechanics of walking. Although an orthosis that restricts joint motion increases the energy cost in unimpaired individuals, the same orthosis leads to more efficient gait in those with neuromuscular impairment. Determinants of efficiency of prosthetic gait include the level and cause of the amputation. Reduction of walking speed when using an orthosis or prosthesis helps maintain oxygen consumption at close to normal levels; however, this tends to compromise overall efficiency of gait, as indicated by oxygen cost. Attention to the principles of cardiovascular conditioning—including monitoring the response to exercise so that patients are challenged appropriately—optimizes the outcomes of rehabilitation programs. Further research needs to be performed to assess the efficacy of newer materials and "smart" joints in regard to gait kinematics and energy expenditure for both orthotics and prosthetics.

References

1. Frownfelter DL, Dean EW. *Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Physical Therapy: Evidence to Practice.* 5th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier/Mosby; 2012.
2. Des Jardins TR. *Cardiopulmonary Anatomy and Physiology: Essentials for Respiratory Care.* 6th ed. Clifton Park, NY: Delmar Publishers; 2013.
3. Phibbs B. *The Human Heart: A Basic Guide to Heart Disease.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2007.
4. Saltin B, Boushel R, Secher NH, et al. eds. *Exercise and Circulation in Health and Disease.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2000.
5. Ekblom B, Astrand P, Saltin B, et al. Effect of training on circulatory response to exercise. *J Appl Physiol.* 1968;24(4):518–528.
6. Astrand P, Rodahl K, Dahl HA, et al. *Textbook of Work Physiology: Physiological Bases of Exercise.* 4th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2003.
7. Bolton E, Rajkumar C. The ageing cardiovascular system. *Rev Clin Gerontol.* 2011;21(2):99–109.
8. Scalia GM, Khoo SK, O'Neill S. Age-related changes in heart function by serial echocardiography in women aged 40-80 years. *J Womens Health.* 2010;19(9):1741–1745.
9. Kojodjojo P, Kanagaratnam P, Markides V, et al. Age-Related changes in human left and right atrial conduction. *J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol.* 2006;17(2):120–127.
10. Aronow WS. Heart disease and aging. *Med Clin North Am.* 2006;90(5):849–862.
11. Alexander NB, Dengel DR, Olson RJ, et al. Oxygen uptake (VO_2) kinetics and functional mobility performance in impaired older adults. *J Gerontol Biol Med Sci.* 2003;58(8):734–739.
12. Hillegass E. *Essentials of Cardiopulmonary Physical Therapy.* 4th Ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2017.
13. Iozzo P. Myocardial, perivascular, and epicardial fat. *Diabetes Care.* 2011;34(suppl 2):S371–S379.
14. Lakatta EG, Sollott SJ. Perspectives on mammalian cardiovascular aging: humans to molecules. *Comp Biochem Physiol A Mol Integr Physiol.* 2002;132(4):699–722.
15. Elliott P, Spirito P. Prevention of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy-related deaths: theory and practice. *Heart.* 2008;94(10):1269–1275.
16. Rieck AE, Cramariuc D, Staal EM, et al. Impact of hypertension on left ventricular structure in patients with asymptomatic aortic valve stenosis (a SEAS substudy). *J Hypertens.* 2010;28(2):377–383.
17. Gosse P. Left ventricular hypertrophy as a predictor of cardiovascular risk. *J Hypertens.* 2005;23(S1):S27–S33.
18. Kubo T, Kitaoka H, Okawa M, et al. Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in the elderly. *Geriatr Gerontol Int.* 2010;10(1):9–16.
19. Gradman AH, Alfayoumi F. From left ventricular hypertrophy to congestive heart failure: management of hypertensive heart disease. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis.* 2006;48(5):326–341.
20. Roberts WC, Shirani J. Comparison of cardiac findings at necropsy in octogenarians, nonagenarians, and centenarians. *Am J Cardiol.* 1998;82(5):627–631.
21. Selzer A. Changing aspects of the natural history of valvular aortic stenosis. *N Engl J Med.* 1987;317(2):91–98.
22. Seals DR, Monahan KD, Bell C, et al. The aging cardiovascular system: changes in autonomic function at rest and in response to exercise. *Int J Sport Nutr Exerc Metab.* 2001;11(suppl):S189–S195.
23. Rodeheffer RJ, Gerstenblith G, Becker LC, et al. Exercise cardiac output is maintained with advancing age in healthy human subjects: cardiac dilation and increased stroke volume compensate for a diminished heart rate. *Circulation.* 1984;69(2):203–213.
24. Ghali JK, Liao Y, Cooper RS. Left ventricular hypertrophy in the elderly. *Am J Geriatr Cardiol.* 1997;6(1):38–49.
25. Truong QA, Toepker M, Mahabadi AA, et al. Relation of left ventricular mass and concentric remodeling to extent of coronary artery disease by computed tomography in patients without left ventricular hypertrophy: ROMICAT study. *J Hypertens.* 2009;27(12):2472–2482.
26. Bluemke DA, Kronmal RA, Lima JA, et al. The relationship of left ventricular mass and geometry to incident cardiovascular events: The MESA (Multi-Ethnic Study of Atherosclerosis) study. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2008;52(25):2148–2155.
27. Okin PM, Gerdts E, Wachtell K, et al. Relationship of left atrial enlargement to persistence or development of ECG left ventricular hypertrophy in hypertensive patients: implications for the development of new atrial fibrillation. *J Hypertens.* 2010;28(7):1534–1540.
28. Campuzano R, Moya JL, Garcia-Lledo A, et al. Endothelial dysfunction, intima-media thickness and coronary reserve in relation to risk factors and Framingham score in patients without clinical atherosclerosis. *J Hypertens.* 2006;24(8):1581–1588.

29. Kitzman DW, Edwards WE. Age-related changes in the anatomy of the normal human heart. *J Gerontol Biol Med Sci*. 1990;45(1):33–39.
30. Binder EF, Schechtman KB, Ehsani AA, et al. Effects of exercise training on frailty in community dwelling older adults: results of a randomized controlled clinical trial. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2002;50(12):1921–1928.
31. Lakatta EG. Cardiovascular regulatory mechanism in advanced age. *Physiol Rev*. 1993;73(2):413–467.
32. Shiaishi I, Takamatsu T, Minamikawa T, et al. Quantitative histological analysis of the human sinoatrial node during growth and aging. *Circulation*. 1992;85(6):2176–2184.
33. Erol-Yilmaz A, Schrama TA, Tanka JS, et al. Individual optimization of pacing sensors improves exercise capacity without influencing quality of life. *Pacing Clin Electrophysiol*. 2005;28(1):17–25.
34. Squires RW. *Exercise Prescription for the High Risk Cardiac Patient*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 1998.
35. Tsakiris A, Doumas M, Nearchos N, et al. Aortic calcification is associated with age and sex but not left ventricular mass in essential hypertension. *J Clin Hypertens*. 2004;6(2):65–70.
36. Meschiari CA, Ero OK, Pan H, Finkel T, Lindsey ML. The impact of aging on cardiac extracellular matrix. *GeroScience*. 2017;39:7–18.
37. Lindroos M, Kupari M, Valvanne J, et al. Factors associated with calcific aortic valve degeneration in the elderly. *Eur Heart J*. 1994;15(7):865–870.
38. Robert L. Aging of the vascular wall and atherosclerosis. *Exp Gerontol*. 1999;34(4):491–501.
39. Newman AB, Arnold AM, Burke GL, et al. Cardiovascular disease and mortality in older adults with small abdominal aortic aneurysms detected by ultrasonography: the cardiovascular health study. *Ann Intern Med*. 2001;134(3):182–190.
40. Yildiz A, Gur M, Yilmaz R, et al. The association of elasticity indexes of ascending aorta and the presence and the severity of coronary artery disease. *Coron Artery Dis*. 2008;19(5):311–317.
41. Wei JY, Epstein FH. Age and the cardiovascular system. *N Engl J Med*. 1992;327(24):1735–1739.
42. Kitzman DW. Aging and the heart. *Dev Cardiol*. 1994;1(1):1–15.
43. Lakatta EB, Mitchell JH, Pomerance A, et al. Human aging: changes in structure and function III. Characteristics of specific cardiovascular diseases in the elderly. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 1987;10(2):42–47. suppl A.
44. Lakatta EG. Altered autonomic modulation of cardiovascular function with adult aging: perspectives from studies ranging from man to cells. In: Stone HL, Weglicki WB, eds. *Pathobiology of Cardiovascular Injury*. Boston: Martinus Nijhoff; 1985:441–460.
45. Turner MJ, Mier CM, Spina RJ, et al. Effects of aging and gender on cardiovascular responses to isoproterenol. *J Gerontol*. 1999;54A(9): B393–B400.
46. Lakatta EG. Cardiovascular regulatory mechanisms in advanced age. *Physiol Rev*. 1993;73(2):413–467.
47. Shimada K, Kitazumi T, Ogura H. Differences in age-dependent effects of blood pressure on baroreflex sensitivity between normal and hypertensive subjects. *Clin Sci*. 1986;70(5):763–766.
48. Hall JE. *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology*. 13th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2016.
49. Mukai S, Lipsitz LA. Orthostatic hypotension. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2002;18(2):253–268.
50. Vloet LCM, Pel-Little RE, Jansen PAF, et al. High prevalence of postprandial and orthostatic hypotension among geriatric patients admitted to Dutch hospitals. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2005;60A (10):1271–1277.
51. D'Addio G, Corni G, Cesarelli M, Rengo G, Furgi G, Ferrara N. Aging and cardiac autonomic control in chronic heart failure: methods and clinical implications. *J Gerontol Geriatr*. 2017;65:38–47.
52. Gardin JM, Arnold AM, Bild DE, et al. Left ventricular diastolic filling in the elderly: the cardiovascular health study. *Am J Cardiol*. 1998; 82(3):345–352.
53. Kitzman DW, Higginbotham MB, Sullivan MJ. Aging and the cardiovascular response to exercise. *Cardiol Elderly*. 1993;1(6):543–550.
54. Green JS, Crouse SF. Endurance training, cardiovascular function, and the aged. *Sports Med*. 1993;16(5):331–341.
55. Cheitlin MD. Cardiovascular physiology—changes with age. *Am J Geriatr Cardiol*. 2003;12(1):9–13.
56. Steinberg DH. Diastolic dysfunction of the left ventricle. A review of the physiology, causes, diagnosis, treatment, and implications. *J Insur Med*. 1997;29(2):12–125.
57. Port S, Cobb FR, Coleman E, et al. Effect of age on the response of the left ventricular ejection fraction to exercise. *N Engl J Med*. 1980;303(20):1133–1137.
58. Nichols WW, O'Rourke MF, Avolio AP. Effects of age on ventricular-vascular coupling. *Am J Cardiol*. 1985;55(9):1179–1184.
59. Devereux RB, Roman MJ, Paranicas M, et al. A population-based assessment of left ventricular systolic dysfunction in middle-aged and older adults: the Strong Heart Study. *Am Heart J*. 2001;141(3): 439–446.
60. Lakatta EG. Changes in cardiovascular function with aging. *Eur Heart J*. 1990;11(suppl C):22–29.
61. Jurimae T, Jurimae J, Pihl E. Circulatory response to single circuit weight and walking training sessions of similar energy cost in middle-aged overweight females. *Clin Physiol*. 2000;20(2):143–149.
62. Vaitkevicius PV, Ebersold C, Muhammad S, et al. Effects of aerobic exercise training in community-based subjects aged 80 and older: a pilot study. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2002;50(12):2009–2013.
63. Amara CE, Koval JJ, Paterson DH, et al. Lung function in older humans: the contribution of body composition, physical activity, and smoking. *Ann Hum Biol*. 2001;28(5):522–537.
64. McRae H. Cardiovascular and pulmonary function. In: Spirduso WW, Francis KL, MacRae PG, eds. *Physical Dimensions of Aging*. 2nd ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2005:87–106.
65. Skloot GS. The effects of aging on lung structure and function. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2017;33:447–457.
66. LaPier T. Impaired aerobic capacity/endurance. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2012:229–247.
67. Rossi A, Ganassini A, Tantucci C, et al. Aging and the respiratory system. *Aging*. 1996;8(3):143–161.
68. Zaugg M, Lucchinetti E. Respiratory function in the elderly. *Anesthesiol Clin North America*. 2000;18(1):47–58.
69. Heath GW, Hagberg JM, Ehsani AA, et al. A physiological comparison of young and older endurance athletes. *J Appl Physiol Respir Environ Exerc Physiol*. 1981;51:634–640.
70. Janssens JP. Aging of the respiratory system: impact on pulmonary function tests and adaptation to exertion. *Clin Chest Med*. 2005;26:469–484. vi-vii.
71. Bichay AA, Ramirez JM, Nunez VM, et al. Efficacy of treadmill exercises on arterial blood oxygenation, oxygen consumption and walking distance in healthy elderly people: a controlled trial. *BMC Geriatr*. 2016;16:110.
72. Christiansen C. Impaired joint mobility. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2012:248–262.
73. Davidson WR, Fee EC. Influence of aging on pulmonary hemodynamics in a population free of coronary artery disease. *Am J Cardiol*. 1990;65(22):1454–1458.
74. Babb TG. Mechanical ventilatory constraints in aging, lung disease, and obesity: perspectives and brief review. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 1999;31(suppl 1):12–22.
75. Tolep K, Kelsen SG. Effects of aging in respiratory skeletal muscles. *Clin Chest Med*. 1993;14(3):363–378.
76. Brooks SV, Faulkner JA. Effects of aging on the structure and function of skeletal muscle. In: Roussos C, ed. *The Thorax*. New York: Academic Press; 1995:295–312.
77. Dias K. Physiology of the Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Systems. In: Hillegass E, ed. *Essentials of Cardiopulmonary Physical Therapy*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2017:23–40.
78. Zeleznik J. Normative aging of the respiratory system. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2003;19(1):1–18.
79. Camhi SL, Enright PL. How to assess pulmonary function in older persons. *J Respir Dis*. 2000;21(6):395.
80. Stulberg M, Carrieri-Kohlman V. Conceptual approach to the treatment of dyspnea: focus on the role of exercise. *Cardiopulmonary Phys Ther*. 1992;3(1):9–12.
81. Spector N, Connolly MA, Carlson KK. Dyspnea: applying research to bedside practice. *AACN Adv Crit Care*. 2007;18(1):45–60.
82. Maher D, Hemming L. Palliative care for breathless patients in the community. *Br J Community Nurs*. 2005;10(9):414–418.
83. Tran D, Rajwani K, Berlin DA. Pulmonary effects of aging. *Curr Opin Anesthesiol*. 2018;31(1):19–23. https://doi.org/10.1097/ACO.0000000000000546.
84. Tolep K, Higgins N, Musa S, et al. Comparison of diaphragm strength between healthy adult elderly and young men. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med*. 1995;152:677–682.
85. Pollock ML. *Exercise in Health and Disease: Evaluation and Prescription for Prevention and Rehabilitation*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006.

86. VanBeveran PJ, Avers D. Exercise and physical activity for older adults. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2012:64–86.
87. Host HH, Sinacore DR, Turner MJ, et al. Oxygen uptakes at preferred gait velocities of frail elderly subjects. *Phys Ther*. 1996;76(4):S69.
88. Wanderley FAC, Oliveira J, Mota J, et al. Six-minute walk distance (6MWD) is associated with body fat, systolic blood pressure, and rate-pressure product in community dwelling elderly subjects. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr*. 2011;52(2):206–210.
89. Ellestad MH. *Stress Testing: Principles and Practice.* 5th ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2003.
90. Housh TJ, Housh DJ, DeVries HA. *Applied Exercise and Sport Physiology.* 4th ed. New York: Routledge; 2017.
91. Tonino RP, Driscoll PA. Reliability of maximal and submaximal parameters of treadmill testing for the measurement of physical training in older persons. *J Gerontol*. 1988;42(2):M101–M104.
92. Materson BJ. Isolated systolic blood pressure: new answers, more questions. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1991;39(12):1237–1238.
93. Applegate WB, Davis BR, Black HR. Prevalence of postural hypotension at baseline in the systolic hypertension in the elderly program (SHEP) cohort. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1991;39(11):1057–1064.
94. Naughton J. *Exercise Testing: Physiological, Biomechanical, and Clinical Principles.* Mount Kisco, NY: Futura; 1988.
95. Dickinson-Fahrner TM, Crawforf K, Butler-McNamara S, et al. Pulmonary medications. In: Hillegass E, ed. *Essentials of Cardiopulmonary Physical Therapy*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2017:489–505.
96. Matsuda PN, Shumway-Cook A, Ciol MA. The effects of a home-based exercise program on physical function in frail older adults. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2010;33(2):78–84.
97. Tse MMY, Wan VTC, Ho SSK. Physical exercise: does it help in relieving pain and increasing mobility among older adults with chronic pain? *J Clin Nurs*. 2011;20(5/6):635–644.
98. Hagberg JM, Allen WK, Seals DR. A hemodynamic comparison of young and older endurance athletes during exercise. *J Appl Physiol*. 1985;58(6):2041–2046.
99. Ekstrum JA, Black LL, Paschal KA. Effects of a thoracic mobility and respiratory exercise program on pulmonary function and functional capacity in older adults. *Phys Occup Ther Geriatr*. 2009;27(4):310–327.
100. Steib S, Schoene D, Pfeifer K. Dose-response relationship of resistance training in older adults: a meta-analysis. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 2010;42(5):902–914.
101. Fleg JL, Morrell CH, Bos AG, et al. Accelerated longitudinal decline of aerobic capacity in healthy older adults. *Circulation*. 2005;112(5):674–682.
102. Yarasheski KE. Managing sarcopenia with progressive resistance exercise training. *J Nutr Health Aging*. 2002;6(5):349–356.
103. Casaburi R, Patessio A, Ioli F. Reductions in exercise lactic acidosis and ventilation as a result of exercise training in patients with obstructive lung disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis*. 1991;143(1):9–18.
104. Marcus RL, Westlen-Boyer K, LaStayo P. Impaired muscle performance. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2012:263–271.
105. Borg G. Perceived exertion as an indicator of somatic stress. *Scand J Rehabil Med*. 1970;2(3):92–97.
106. Borg G, Ottoson D. *The Perception of Exertion in Physical Work.* London: Macmillan; 1986.
107. Fletcher GF, Mills WC, Taylor WC. Update on exercise stress testing. *Am Fam Physician*. 2006;74(10):1749–1754.
108. Kline GM, Porcari JP, Hintermeister R, et al. Estimation of VO_{2max} from a one-mile track walk, gender, age, and body weight. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 1987;19(3):253–259.
109. Butland RJ, Pang J, Gross ER, et al. Two-, six-, and 12-minute walking tests in respiratory disease. *BMJ*. 1982;284(6329):1607–1608.
110. Guyatt GH, Sullivan MJ, Thompson PJ, et al. The 6-minute walk test: a new measure of exercise capacity in patients with chronic heart failure. *Can Med Assoc J*. 1985;132(8):9919–9923.
111. Smith EL, Gilligan C. Physical activity perception for the older adult. *Phys Sports Med*. 1993;11:91–101.
112. Prentice WE. *Armheim's Principles of Athletic Training: a Competency Based Approach.* 14th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 2011.
113. Moore GE, Durstine JL, Painter PL, et al. *ACSM's Exercise Management for Persons with Chronic Diseases and Disabilities.* 4th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2016.
114. Swain DP, Brawner CA, Chamblis HO, et al., eds. *ACSM's Resource Manual for Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription*. 7th ed. Baltimore: Wolters Kluwer; 2014.
115. Lavie CJ, Arena R, Swift DL, Johannsen NM, Sui X, Lee D, Earnest CP, Church TS, O'Keefe JH, Milani RV, Blair SN. Exercise and the cardiovascular system: clinical science and cardiovascular outcomes. *Circ Res*. 2015;117:207–219.
116. Cress ME, Buchner DM, Prohaska T, et al. Best practices statement: physical activity programs and behavior counseling in older adult populations. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 2004;36(11):1997–2003.
117. Mandic S, Riess K, Haykowsky MJ. Exercise training for individuals with coronary artery disease or heart failure. *Physiother Can*. 2006;58(1):21–29.
118. Huang G, Wang R, Chen P, Huang SC, Donnelly JE, Mehlferber JP. Dose-response relationship of cardiorespiratory fitness adaptation to controlled endurance training in sedentary older adults. *Eur J Prev Cardiol*. 2016;23(5):518–529.
119. Seals DR, Hagberg JM, Hurley BF, et al. Effects of endurance training on glucose tolerance and plasma lipid levels in older men and women. *JAMA*. 1984;252(5):645–649.
120. Lewis CB, Kellems S. Musculoskeletal changes with age: clinical implications. In: Lewis CB, ed. *Aging the Health Care Challenge*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 2002:104–126.
121. Avers D, Brown M. Strength training for the older adult. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2009;32(4):148–152. 158.
122. Hunter GR, McCarthy JP, Bamman MM. Effects of resistance training on older adults. *Sports Med*. 2004;34(5):329–348.
123. Sardeli AV, do Carmo Santos L, Ferreira ML, Gaspari AF, Rodrigues B, Cavaglieri CR. Chacon-Mikahil MP. Cardiovascular responses to different resistance exercise protocols in elderly. *Int J Sports Med*. 2017;38(12):928–936.
124. Patla AE. Adaptive human locomotion: Influence of neural, biological, and mechanical factors on control mechanisms. In: Bronstein A, Brandt T, Woollacott M, eds. *Clinical Disorders of Balance, Posture, and Gait*. 2nd ed. London: Arnold; 2004:20–38.
125. Bianchi L, Angelini D, Orani GP, et al. Kinematic coordination in human gait: relation to mechanical energy cost. *J Neurophysiol*. 1998;79(4):2155–2170.
126. Perry J, Burnfield JM. Basic functions. In: Perry J, Burnfield JM, eds. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function*. 2nd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2010:19–48.
127. Olney SJ, Eng J. Gait. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC, eds. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 2011:524–567.
128. Winter DA, Quanbury AO, Reimer GD. Analysis of instantaneous energy of normal gait. *J Biomech*. 1976;9(4):252–257.
129. Rose J, Gamble JG. *Human Walking.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.
130. Waters RL. Energy expenditure. In: Perry J, Burnfield JM, eds. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function*. 2nd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2010:483–518.
131. Studenski S, Perera S, Kushang P, et al. Gait speed and survival in older adults. *JAMA*. 2011;305(1):50–58.
132. Xie YJ, Liu EY, Anson ER, Agrawal Y. Age-related imbalance is associated with slower walking speed: an analysis from the national health and nutrition examination survey. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2017;40:183–189.
133. Schrack JA, Zipunnikov V, Simonsick EM, Studenski S, Ferrucci L. Rising energetic cost of walking predicts gait speed decline with aging. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2016;71(7):947–953.
134. Rosso AL, Sanders JL, Arnold AM, et al. Multisystem physiologic impairments and changes in gait speed of older adults. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2015;70(3):319–324.
135. Fritz S, Lusardi M. White paper: walking speed: the sixth vital sign. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2009;32(2):46–49.
136. Middleton A, Fritz S, Lusardi M. Walking speed: the functional vital sign. *J Aging Phys Act*. 2015;23(2):314–322.
137. Cesari M, Kritchevsky SB, Newman AB, et al. Added value of physical performance measures in predicting adverse health-related events: results from the Health, Aging and Body Composition Study. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2009;57(2):251–259.
138. Cesari M, Kritchevsky SB, Penninx BW, et al. Prognostic value of usual gait speed in well-functioning older people—results from the health, aging and body composition study. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2005;53(10):1675–1680.

139. Perera S, Patel KV, Rosano C, et al. Gait Speed Predicts Incident Disability: A Pooled Analysis. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2016;71(1):63–71.
140. Jerome GJ, Ko S, Kauffman D, et al. Gait characteristics associated with walking speed decline in older adults: results from the Baltimore Longitudinal Study of Aging. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr*. 2015;60(2):239–243.
141. Cawthon PM, Fox KM, Gandra SR, et al. Clustering of strength, physical function, muscle, and adiposity characteristics and risk of disability in older adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2011;59(5):781–787.
142. Purser JL, Weinberger M, Cohen HJ, et al. Walking speed predicts health status and hospital costs for frail elderly male veterans. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2005;42(4):535–545.
143. Rabadi MH, Blau A. Admission ambulation velocity predicts length of stay and discharge disposition following stroke in an acute hospital. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2005;19(1):20–26.
144. Studenski S, Perera S, Patel K, et al. Gait speed and survival in older adults. *JAMA*. 2011;305(1):50–58.
145. Chen MA. Frailty and cardiovascular disease: potential role of gait speed in surgical risk stratification in older adults. *J Geriatr Cardiol*. 2015;12(1):44–56.
146. Kim H-J, Park I, Lee HJ, et al. The reliability and validity of gait speed with different walking pace and distances against general health, physical function, and chronic disease in aged adults. *J Exerc Nutrition Biochem*. 2016;20(3):46–50.
147. Makizako H, Shimada H, Doi T, et al. Cognitive functioning and walking speed in older adults as predictors of limitations in self-reported instrumental activity of daily living: prospective findings from the Obu Study of Health Promotion for the Elderly. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2015;12(3):3002–3013.
148. Middleton A, Fulk GD, Beets MW, Herter TM, Fritz SL. Self-Selected Walking Speed is Predictive of Daily Ambulatory Activity in Older Adults. *J Aging Phys Act*. 2016;24(2):214–222.
149. Ostir GV, Berges IM, Ottenbacher KJ, et al. Gait Speed and Dismobility in Older Adults. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2015;96(9):1641–1645.
150. Peel NM, Navanathan S, Hubbard RE. Gait speed as a predictor of outcomes in post-acute transitional care for older people. *Geriatr Gerontol Int*. 2014;14(4):906–910.
151. Schoon Y, Bongers K, Van Kempen J, et al. Gait speed as a test for monitoring frailty in community-dwelling older people has the highest diagnostic value compared to step length and chair rise time. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med*. 2014;50(6):693–701.
152. Toots A, Rosendahl E, Lundin-Olsson L, et al. Usual gait speed independently predicts mortality in very old people: a population-based study. *J Am Med Dir Assoc*. 2013;14(7):529.e1–6.
153. Schrack JA, Zipunnikov V, Simonsick EM, et al. Rising Energetic Cost of Walking Predicts Gait Speed Decline With Aging. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2016;71(7):947–953.
154. Chui KK, Lusardi MM. Spatial and temporal parameters of self-selected and fast walking speeds in healthy community-living adults aged 72-98 years. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2010;33(4):173–183.
155. Steffen TM, Hacker TA, Mollinger L. Age- and gender-related test performance in community-dwelling elderly people: six-minute walk test, berg balance scale, timed up & go test, and gait speeds. *Phys Ther*. 2002;82(2):128–137.
156. Bohannon RW. Comfortable and maximum walking speed of adults aged 20-79 years. *Age Ageing*. 1997;26(1):15–19.
157. Wert DM, Brach J, Perera S, et al. Gait biomechanics, spatial and temporal characteristics, and the energy cost of walking in older adults with impaired mobility. *Phys Ther*. 2010;90(7):977–985.
158. Lusardi MM, Pellecchia GL, Schulman M. Functional performance in community living older adults. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2003;26(3):14–22.
159. Lang JT, Kassan TO, Devaney LL, et al. Test-Retest Reliability and Minimal Detectable Change for the 10-Meter Walk Test in Older Adults With Parkinson's disease. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2016;39(4):165–170.
160. Stanhope VA, Knarr BA, Reisman DS, et al. Frontal plane compensatory strategies associated with self-selected walking speed in individuals post-stroke. *Clin Biomech*. 2014;29(5):518–522.
161. Ko S, Hausdorff JM, Ferrucci L. Age-associated differences in the gait pattern changes of older adults during fast-speed and fatigue conditions: results from the Baltimore Longitudinal Study of Ageing. *Age Ageing*. 2010;39(6):688–694.
162. Deathe AB, Miller WC. The L Test of Functional Mobility: measurement properties of a modified version of the timed "up & go" test designed for people with lower-limb amputations. *Phys Ther*. 2005;85(7):626–635.
163. Rossier P, Wade DT. Validity and reliability comparison of 4 mobility measures in patients presenting with neurologic impairment. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2001;82(1):9–13.
164. van Hedel HJ, Wirz M, Dietz V. Assessing walking ability in subjects with spinal cord injury: validity and reliability of 3 walking tests. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2005;86(2):190–196.
165. Studenski S, Perera S, Wallace D. Physical performance measures in the clinical setting. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2003;51(3):314–322.
166. Ries JD, Echternach JL, Nof L, et al. Test-retest reliability and minimal detectable change scores for the timed "up & go" test, the six-minute walk test, and gait speed in people with Alzheimer disease. *Phys Ther*. 2009;89(6):569–579.
167. Hollman JH, Beckman BA, Brandt RA, Merriwether EN, Williams RT, Nordrum JT. Minimum detectable change in gait velocity during acute rehabilitation following hip fracture. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2008;31(2):53–56.
168. Tilson JK, Sullivan KJ, Cen SY, et al. Meaningful gait speed improvement during the first 60 days poststroke: minimal clinically important difference. *Phys Ther*. 2010;90(2):196–208.
169. Fulk GD, Ludwig M, Dunning K, Golden S, Boyne P, West T. Estimating clinically important change in gait speed in people with stroke undergoing outpatient rehabilitation. *J Neurol Phys Ther*. 2011;35(2):82–89.
170. Water RL, Mulroy SJ. Energy expenditure of walking in individuals with lower limb amputation. In: Smith DC, Michael JW, Bowker JH, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiency: Surgical, Prosthetics and Rehabilitation Principles*. 3rd ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons; 2004:395–408.
171. Perry J. Principles of Normal and pathological gait. In: Webster JB, Murphy DP, eds. *AAOS Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2019:49–63.
172. Riebe D, Ehrman JK, Liguori G, et al. *ACSM's Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription*. 10th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2018.
173. Kalapotharakos VI. Aerobic exercise in older adults: effects on VO_{2max} and functional performance. *Crit Rev Phys Rehabil Med*. 2007;19(3):213–225.
174. Sergi G, Coin A, Sarti S, et al. Resting VO_2, maximal VO_2 and metabolic equivalents in free-living healthy elderly women. *Clin Nutr*. 2010;29(1):84–88.
175. Leeuwenburgh C, Heinecke JW. Oxidative stress and antioxidants in exercise. *Curr Med Chem*. 2001;8(7):829–838.
176. Fleg JL, Morrell CH, Bos AG, et al. Accelerated longitudinal decline of aerobic capacity in healthy older adults. *Circulation*. 2005;112(5):674–682.
177. Saltin B, Blomquist G, Mitchell JH, et al. Response to submaximal and maximal exercise after bedrest and training. *Circulation*. 1968;38 (suppl 7):1–78.
178. Davis JA. Anaerobic threshold: review of the concept and directions for future research. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 1985;17(1):6–8.
179. McArdle WD, Katch FI, Katch VL. *Exercise Physiology: Energy, Nutrition, and Human Performance*. 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2014.
180. Rose J, Gamble JG, Medeiros J, et al. Energy cost of walking in normal children and in those with cerebral palsy: comparison of heart rate and oxygen uptake. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 1989;9(3):276–279.
181. Rose GK. Clinical gait assessment. *J Med Eng Technol*. 1983;7(6):273–279.
182. Eston R, Connolly D. The use of ratings of perceived exertion for exercise prescription in patients receiving beta-blocker therapy. *Sports Med*. 1996;21(3):176–190.
183. Faulhaber M, Flatz M, Burtscher M. Beta-blockers may provoke oxygen desaturation during submaximal exercise at moderate altitudes in elderly persons. *High Alt Med Biol*. 2003;4(4):475–478.
184. Steven MM, Capell HA, Sturrock RD, et al. The physiological cost of gait (PCG): a new technique for evaluating non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in rheumatoid arthritis. *Br J Rheumatol*. 1983;22(3):141–145.
185. Butler P, Engelbrecht M, Major RE, et al. Physiological cost index of walking for normal children and its use as an indicator of physical handicap. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1984;26(5):607–612.
186. Nene AV. Physiological cost index of walking in able-bodied adolescents and adults. *Clin Rehabil*. 1993;7(4):319–326.

187. Peebles KC, Woodman-Aldridge AD, Skinner MA. The physiological cost index in elderly subjects during treadmill and floor walking. *N Z J Physiother*. 2003;3(1):11–16.
188. Hamzeh MA, Bowker P, Sayeqh A, et al. The energy cost of ambulation using 2 types of walking frames. *Clin Rehabil*. 1988;2:119–123.
189. Johnson CA, Burridge JH, Strike PW, et al. The effect of combined use of botulinum toxin type A and functional electrical stimulation in the treatment of spastic foot drop after stroke: a preliminary investigation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2004;85(6):902–909.
190. Kottink AI, Oostendorp LJ, Buurke JH, et al. The orthotic effect of functional electrical stimulation on the improvement of walking in stroke patients with dropped foot: a systematic review. *Artif Organs*. 2004;28(6):577–586.
191. Burridge JH, Taylor PN, Hagan SA, et al. The effects of common peroneal nerve stimulation on the effort and speed of walking: a randomized controlled clinical trial with chronic hemiplegic patients. *Clin Rehabil*. 1997;11(3):201–210.
192. Burridge J, Taylor P, Hagan S, et al. Experience of clinical use of the Odstock dropped foot stimulator. *Artif Organs*. 1997;21(3): 254–260.
193. Carmick J. Clinical use of neuromuscular electrical stimulation for children with cerebral palsy: lower extremity. *Phys Ther*. 1993;73(8): 505–513.
194. Nene AV, Evans GA, Patrick JH. Simultaneous multiple operations for spastic diplegia: Outcome and functional assessment of walking in 18 patients. *J Bone Joint Surg Br*. 1993;75(3):488–494.
195. Yang L, Condie DN, Granat MP, et al. Effects of joint motion constraints on normal subjects and their implications on the further development of hybrid FES orthosis for paraplegic persons. *J Biomech*. 1996;29(2):217–226.
196. Nene AV, Jennings SJ. Physiological cost index of paraplegic locomotion using the ORLAU ParaWalker. *Paraplegia*. 1992;30(4): 246–252.
197. Stallard J, Major RE. The influence of stiffness on paraplegic ambulation and its implications for functional electrical stimulation walking systems. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1995;19(2):108–114.
198. Engsberg JR, Herbert LM, Grimston SK, et al. Relation among indices of effort and oxygen uptake in below knee and able-bodied children. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1994;75(12):1335–1341.
199. Chin T, Sawamura S, Fujita H, et al. The efficacy of physiological cost index measurement of a subject walking with an intelligent prosthesis. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1999;23(10):45–49.
200. Hachisuka K, Umezu Y, Ohmine S, et al. Subjective evaluations and objective measurements of the ischial-ramal containment prosthesis. *J UOEH*. 1999;21(2):107–118.
201. Herbert JS, Liggins AB. Gait evaluations of an automatic stance control knee orthosis in a patient with post-poliomyelitis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2005;86(8):1676–1680.
202. Hagberg K, Tranberg R, Zügner R, Danielsson A. Reproducibility of the Physiological Cost Index among individuals with a lower-limb amputation and healthy adults. *Physiother Res Int*. 2011;16(2): 92–100.
203. Danielsson A, Willen C, Sunnerhagen KS. Measurement of energy cost by the physiological cost index in walking after stroke. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88(10):1298–1303.
204. Genin JJ, Bastien GJ, Lopez N, et al. Does the physiological cost index reflect the cost of walking? *Arch Physiol Biochem*. 2004;112 (suppl):73.
205. Morgan DW, Tseh W, Caputo JL, et al. Longitudinal stratification of gait economy in young boys and girls: the locomotion energy and growth study. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2004;91(1):30–34.
206. Waters RL, Hislop HJ, Thomas L, et al. Energy cost of walking in normal children and teenagers. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1983;25(2): 184–188.
207. Waters RL, Lunsford BR, Perry J, et al. Energy-speed relationship of walking: standard tables. *J Orthop Res*. 1988;6(2):215–222.
208. Waters RL, Hislop HJ, Perry J, et al. Comparative cost of walking in young and old adults. *J Orthop Res*. 1983;1(1):73–76.
209. Aoyagi Y, Togo F, Matsuki S, et al. Walking velocity measured over 5 m as a basis of exercise prescription for the elderly: preliminary data from the Nakanojo Study. *Eur J Appl Physiol*. 2004;93(1–2): 217–223.
210. Malatesta D, Simar D, Dauvilliers Y, et al. Aerobic determinants of the decline in preferred walking speed in healthy, active 65- and 80-year-olds. *Eur J Physiol [Pflugers Arch]*. 2004;447(6):915–921.
211. Astrand A, Astrand I, Hallback I, et al. Reduction in maximal oxygen uptake with age. *J Appl Physiol*. 1973;35(5):649–654.
212. Binder EF, Schechtman KB, Ehsani AA, et al. Effects of exercise training on frailty in community-dwelling older adults: results of a randomized, controlled trial. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2002;50(12):1921–1928.
213. Vllasolli TO, Zafirova B, Orovcanec N, Poposka A, Murtezani A, Krasniqi B. Energy expenditure and walking speed in lower limb amputees: a cross sectional study. *Ortop Traumatol Rehabil*. 2014;4(6):419–426.
214. Darter BJ, Nielsen DH, Yack HJ, Janz KF. Home-based treadmill training to improve gait performance in persons with chronic transfemoral amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2013;94(12):2440–2447.
215. Corcoran PJ, Gelmanan B. Oxygen reuptake in normal and handicapped subjects in relation to the speed of walking beside a velocity controlled cart. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1970;51(2):78–87.
216. Holt KG, Hamill J, Andres RO. Predicting the minimal energy cost of human walking. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 1991;23(4):491–498.
217. Duff Raffaele M, Kerrigan DC, Corcoran PJ, et al. The proportional work of lifting the center of mass during walking. *Am J Phys Med*. 1996;75(5):375–379.
218. Hanada E, Kerrigan DC. Energy consumption during level walking with arm and knee immobilized. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2001;82(9): 1251–1254.
219. Bruinings AL, van den Berg-Emons HJ, Buffart LM, et al. Energy cost and physical strain of daily activities in adolescents and young adults with myelomeningocele. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2007;49(9): 672–677.
220. Detrembleur C, Dierick F, Stoquart G, et al. Energy cost, mechanical work, and efficiency of hemiparetic walking. *Gait Posture*. 2003;18(2): 47–55.
221. Brophy LS. Gait in cerebral palsy. *Orthop Phys Ther Clin North Am*. 2001;10(1):55–76.
222. Patrick JH. The case for gait analysis as part of the management of incomplete spinal cord injury. *Spinal Cord*. 2003;41(9):479–482.
223. Jeans KA, Browne RH, Karol LA. Effect of amputation level on energy expenditure during overground walking by children with an amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg*. 2011;93(1):49–56.
224. Bell KL, Davies PS. Energy expenditure and physical activity of ambulatory children with cerebral palsy and of typically developing children. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2010;92(2):313–319.
225. Lieberman JC. Human Walking. In: *Repr*. Baltimore: Waverly; 1984.
226. Smith JD, Martin PE. Effects of prosthetic mass distribution on metabolic costs and walking symmetry. *J Appl Biomech*. 2013;29: 317–328.
227. Waters RL, Lunsford BR. Energy expenditure of normal and pathological gait: application to orthotic prescription. In: Bowker JH, Michael JW, eds. *Atlas of Orthotics*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:151–159.
228. Buckon CE, Thomas SS, Jakobson-Huston S, et al. Comparison of three ankle-foot orthosis configurations for children with spastic diplegia. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2004;46(9):590–598.
229. Franceschini M, Massucci M, Ferrari L, et al. Effects of an ankle-foot orthosis on spatiotemporal parameters and energy cost of hemiparetic gait. *Clin Rehabil*. 2003;17(4):368–372.
230. Kaufman KR, Irby SE, Mathewson JW, et al. Energy-efficient knee-ankle-foot orthosis: a case study. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 1996;8 (3):79–85.
231. Khurana SR, Beranger AG, Felix ER. Perceived exertion is lower when using a functional electrical stimulation neuroprosthesis compared with an ankle-foot orthosis in persons with Multiple Sclerosis. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2017;96:133–139.
232. Pourghasem A, Takamjani IE, Karimi MT, Kamali M, Jannesari M, Salafian I. The effect of a powered ankle foot orthosis on walking in a stroke subject: a case study. *J Phys Ther Sci*. 2016;28: 3236–3240.
233. Waters RL, Campbell J, Thomas L, et al. Energy costs of walking in lower-extremity plaster casts. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 1982;64(6): 896–899.
234. Abudulhadi HM, Kerrigan DC, LaRaia PJ. Contralateral shoe-lift: effect on oxygen cost of walking with an immobilized knee. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1996;77(7):760–762.
235. Bartonek A, Wang R, Eriksson M, Gutierrez-Farewik EM. Comparison of two carbon fibre spring orthoses on gait in children with myelomeningocele. *Gait Posture*. 2013;38(supplement 1):S21–S22.

236. Bregman DJ, Harlaar J, Meskers CG, de Groot V. Spring-like ankle foot orthoses reduce the energy cost of walking by taking over ankle work. *Gait Posture*. 2012;35(1):148–153.
237. Ploeger HE, Brehm MA, Bus SA, Nollet F. Comparing the effect of a dorsal-leaf-spring AFO and a spring-hinged AFO on gait characteristics in plantarflexion weakness- a pilot study. *Gait Posture*. 2015;42 (supplement 3):S70.
238. Kobayashi T, Orendurff MS, Hunt G, et al. An articulated ankle-foot orthosis with adjustable plantarflexion resistance, dorsiflexion resistance and alignment: A pilot study on mechanical properties and effects on stroke hemiparetic gait. *Med Eng Phys*. 2017;44(supplement C):94–101.
239. Kochhar R, Kanthi M, Makkar RK. Neuro-fuzzy controller for active ankle foot orthosis. *Perspect Sci*. 2016;8:293–297.
240. Schmalz T, Probsting E. The microprocessor controlled C-brace orthosis and conventional knee-ankle-foot orthoses: Comparative biomechanical evaluation of functionality. *Gait Posture*. 2015;42 (Supplement 1):S88.
241. Feng Y, Song Y. The categories of AFO anf its effect on patients with foot impair: A systemic Review. *J Phys Act Health*. 2017;1(1): 8–16.
242. Awad LN, Palmer JA, Pohlig RT, Binder-Mcleod SA, Reisman DS. Walking speed and step length asymmetry modify the energy cost of walking after stroke. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2015;29(5): 416–423.
243. Morganti B, Scivoletto G, Ditunno P, et al. Walking index for spinal cord injury (WISCI): criterion validation. *Spinal Cord*. 2005;43(1): 27–33.
244. Hussey RW, Stauffer ES. Spinal cord injury: requirements for ambulation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1973;54(12):544–547.
245. Yakura JS, Waters RL, Adkins RH. Changes in ambulation parameters in spinal cord injury individuals following rehabilitation. *Paraplegia*. 1990;28(6):364–370.
246. Waters RL, Yakura JS, Adkins RH. Gait performance after spinal cord injury. *Clin Ortop*. 1993;228:87–96.
247. Johnston TE, Smith BT, Betz RR. Strengthening of partially denervated knee extensors using percutaneous electric stimulation in a young man with spinal cord injury. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2005;86(5):1037–1042.
248. Johnston TE, Finson RL, Smith BT, et al. Technical perspective functional electrical stimulation for augmented walking in adolescents with incomplete spinal cord injury. *J Spinal Cord Med*. 2003;26(4):390–400.
249. Brissot R, Gallien P, Le Bot M, et al. Clinical experience with functional electrical stimulation-assisted gait with parastep in spinal cord-injured patients. *Spine*. 2000;25(4):501–508.
250. Solomonow M, Baratta R, D'Ambrosia R. Standing and walking after spinal cord injury: experience with the reciprocating gait orthosis powered by electrical muscle stimulation. *Top Spinal Cord Inj Rehabil*. 2000;5(4):29–53.
251. Lam T, Eng JJ, Wolfe DL, et al. A systematic review of the efficacy of gait rehabilitation strategies for spinal cord injury. *Top Spinal Cord Inj Rehabil*. 2007;13(1):32–57.
252. Atrice MB. Lower extremity orthotic management for the spinal-cord-injured client. *Top Spinal Cord Inj Rehabil*. 2000;5(4):1–10.
253. Knutson J, Audu M, Triolo R. Interventions for mobility and manipulation after spinal cord injury: a review of orthotic and neuroprosthetic options. *Top Spinal Cord Inj Rehabil*. 2006;11(4):61–81.
254. Rasmussen AA, Smith KM, Damiano DL. Biomechanical evaluation of the combination of bilateral stance-control knee-ankle-foot orthoses and a reciprocating gait orthosis in an adult with a spinal cord injury. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2007;19(2):42–47.
255. Yang L, Granat MH, Paul JP, et al. Further development of hybrid functional electrical stimulation orthoses. *Artif Organs*. 1997;21 (3):183–187.
256. Waters RL, Mulroy S. The energy expenditure of normal and pathologic gait. *Gait Posture*. 1999;9(3):207–231.
257. Kobetic R, Marsolais EB. Synthesis of paraplegic gait with multichannel functional neuromuscular stimulation. *IEEE Trans Rehabil Eng*. 1994;2(2):66–79.
258. Miller ME, Zimmerman AK, Herbert WG. Clinical effectiveness and safety of powered exoskeleton-assisted walking in patients with spinal cord injury: systematic review with meta-analysis. *Med Devices*. 2016;9:455–466.
259. Marsolais EB, Kobetic R, Polando G, et al. The Case Western Reserve University hybrif gait orthosis. *J Spinal Cord Med*. 2000;23(2): 100–108.
260. Chang SR, Kobetic R, Triolo RJ. Effect of exoskeletal joint constraint and passive resistance on metabolic energy expenditure: Implications for walking in paraplegia. *PLoS One*. 2017;12(8):e0183125.
261. Fisahn C, Aach M, Jansen O, et al. The effectiveness and safety of exoskeletons as assistive and rehabilitation devices in the treatment of neurologic gait disorders in patients with spinal cord injury: A systematic review. *Global Spine J*. 2016;6:822–841.
262. Ward KH, Meyers MC. Exercise performance of lower extremity amputees. *Sports Med*. 1995;20(4):207–214.
263. Lin-Chan S, Nielsen DH, Shurr DG, et al. Physiological responses to multiple speed treadmill walking for Syme vs. transtibial amputation—a case report. *Disabil Rehabil*. 2003;25(23):1333–1338.
264. Czerniecki JM, Morgenroth DC. Metabolic energy expenditure of ambulation in lower extremity amputees: what have we learned and what are the next steps? *Disabil Rehabil*. 2017;39(2):143–151.
265. Winter DA, Sienko SE. Biomechanics of below-knee amputee gait. *J Biomech*. 1988;21(5):361–367.
266. Torburn L, Powers CM, Guiterrez R, et al. Energy expenditure during ambulation in dysvascular and traumatic below-knee amputees: a comparison of five prosthetic feet. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 1995;32(2): 111–119.
267. Waters RL, Perry J, Antonelli D, et al. The energy cost of walking of amputees: influence of level of amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg*. 1976;58(1):42–46.
268. Esqienazi A. Geriatric amputee rehabilitation. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 1993;9(5):731–743.
269. Esposito ER, Rodriguez KM, Rabago CA, Wilken JM. Does unilateral transtibial amputation lead to greater metabolic demand during walking? *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2014;51(8):1287–1296.
270. Ganguli S, Datta SR, Chatterjee B. Performance evaluation of amputee-prosthesis system in below knee amputees. *Ergonomics*. 1973;16(6):797–810.
271. Gailey RS, Wenger MA, Raya M, et al. Energy expenditure of transtibial amputees during ambulation at self-selected pace. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1994;18(2):84–91.
272. Otis JC, Lane JM, Kroll MA. Energy cost during gait in osteosarcoma patients after resection and knee replacement and after above the knee amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg*. 1985;67A(4):606–611.
273. Fisher SV, Gullickson G. Energy cost of ambulation in health and disability: a literature review. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1978;59(3): 124–133.
274. Jaeger SM, Vos LD, Rispens P, et al. The relationship between comfortable and most metabolically efficient walking speed in persons with unilateral above knee amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1993;74(5):521–525.
275. Jarvis HL, Bennett AN, Twiste M, Phillip RD, Etherington J, Baker R. Temporal spatial and metabolic measures of walking in highly functional individuals with lower limb amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2017;98:1389–1399.
276. Chin T, Kuroda R, Akisue T, Iguchi T, Kurosaka M. Energy consumption during prosthetic walking and physical fitness in older hip disarticulation amputees. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2012;49(8): 1255–1260.
277. Molen NH. Energy/speed relation of below knee amputees walking on a motor driven treadmill. *Int Z Angew Physiol*. 1973;31(3):173–185.
278. Czerniecki JM. Rehabilitation of limb deficiency. 1: Gait and motion analysis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1996;77(suppl 35):S29–S37. S81–S82.
279. May BJ. Lower extremity prosthetic management. In: *Amputation and Prosthetics: A Case Study Approach*. 2nd ed, Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 2002.
280. Andrews KL. Rehabilitation in limb deficiency. 3: The geriatric amputee. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1996;77(3):S14–S17.
281. Torburn L, Perry J, Ayyappa E, et al. Below knee amputee gait with dynamic elastic response feet: a pilot study. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 1990;27(4):369–384.
282. Mohanty RK, Lenka P, Equebal A, Kumar R. Comparison of energy cost in transtibial amputees using "prosthesis" and "crutches without prosthesis" for walking activities. *Ann Phys Rehabil Med*. 2012;55: 252–262.

283. Dubow LL, Witt PL, Kadaba MP, et al. Oxygen consumption of elderly persons with bilateral below knee amputation: ambulation vs. wheelchair propulsion. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1983;64(6):255–259.
284. Wu YJ, Chen SY, Lin MC, et al. Energy expenditure of wheeling and walking during prosthetic rehabilitation in a woman with bilateral transfemoral amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2001;82(2):265–269.
285. Nissen SJ, Newman WP. Factors influencing reintegration to normal living after amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1992;73(6):548–551.
286. Nitz JC. Rehabilitation outcomes after bilateral lower limb amputation for vascular disease. *Physiother Theory Pract*. 1993;9(3):165–170.
287. Hofstad C, Van der Linde H, Van Limbeek J, et al. *Prescription of Prosthetic Ankle Foot Mechanisms After Lower Limb Amputation*. Washington, DC: Cochrane Library; 2004:003978.
288. Zmitrewicz RJ, Neptune RR, Walden JG, et al. The effect of foot and ankle prosthetic components on braking and propulsive impulses during transtibial amputee gait. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2006;87(10):1334–1339.
289. Gitter A, Czerniecki JM, DeGroot DM. Biomechanical analysis of the influence of prosthetic feet on below knee amputee walking. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 1991;70(3):142–148.
290. Hsu MJ, Nielsen DH, Yack JH, et al. Physiological measurements of walking and running in people with transtibial amputations with 3 different prostheses. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther*. 1999;29(9):526–533.
291. Pomeranz B, Adler U, Shenoy N, et al. Prosthetics and orthotics for the older adult with a physical disability. *Clin Geriatr Med*. 2006;22(2):377–394.
292. Barth DG, Shumacher L, Sienko-Thomas S. Gait analysis and energy cost of below-knee amputees wearing six different prosthetic feet. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 1992;4(2):63–75.
293. McFarlane PA, Nielsen DH, Shurr DG, et al. Gait comparisons for below-knee amputees using a FlexFoot versus a conventional prosthetic foot. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 1991;3(4):150–161.
294. Wirta RW, Mason R, Calvo K, et al. Effect on gait using various prosthetic ankle foot devices. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 1991;28(2):13–24.
295. Czerniecki JM, Gitter A. The impact of energy storing prosthetic feet on below knee amputation gait. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1989;70(13):918.
296. Czerniecki JM, Gitter A, Murno C. Joint moment and muscle power output characteristics of below knee amputees during running: the influence of energy storing prosthetic feet. *J Biomech*. 1991;24(1):63–75.
297. Casillas JM, Dulieu V, Cohen M, et al. Bioenergetic comparison of a new energy storing foot and SAHD foot in traumatic below-knee vascular amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1995;76(1):39–44.
298. Torburn L, Schweiger GP, Perry J, et al. Below knee amputee gait in stair climbing: a comparison of stride characteristics using five different prosthetic feet. *Clin Ortop*. 1994;303:185–192.
299. Perry J, Burnfield JM, Newsam CJ, et al. Energy expenditures and gait characteristics of a bilateral amputee walking with C-leg prostheses compared with stubby and conventional articulating prostheses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2004;85(10):1711–1717.
300. Hafner BJ, Smith DG. Differences in function and safety between Medicare Functional Classification Level-2 and -3 transfemoral amputees and influence of prosthetic knee joint control. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2009;46(3):417–433.
301. Berry D, Olson MD, Larntz K. Perceived stability, function, and satisfaction among transfemoral amputees using microprocessor and nonmicroprocessor controlled prosthetic knees: a multicenter survey. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2009;21(1):32–42.
302. Segal AD, Zelik KE, Klute GK, et al. The effects of a controlled energy storage and return prototype prosthetic foot on transtibial amputee ambulation. *Hum Mov Sci*. 2012;31(4):918–931.
303. Delussu AS, Paradisi F, Brunelli S, Pellegrini R, Zenardi D, Traballesi M. Comparison between SACH foot and a new multiaxial prosthetic foot during walking in hypomobile transtibial amputees: physiological responses and functional assessment. *Eur J Phys Rehab Med*. 2016;51:304–309.
304. Darter BJ, Wilken JM. Energetic consequences of using a prosthesis with adaptive ankle motion during slope walking in persons with a transtibial amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38(1):5–11.
305. Feng Y, Zhu J, Wang Q. Metabolic cost of level-ground walking with a robotic transtibial prosthesis combining push-off power and nonlinear damping behaviors: Preliminary results. In: *38th Annual International Conference of the IEEE Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society (EMBC)*. August; 2016:16–20. https://doi.org/10.1109/EMBC.2016.7591865.
306. Quesada RE, Caputo JM, Collins SH. Increasing ankle push-off work with a powered prosthesis does not necessarily reduce metabolic rate for transtibial amputees. *J Biomech*. 2016;49:3452–3459.
307. Delussu AS, Brunelli S, Paradisi F, et al. Assessment of the effects of carbon fiber and bionic foot during overground and treadmill walking in transtibial amputees. *Gait Posture*. 2013; https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gaitpost.2013.04.009.
308. Mengelkoch LJ, Kahle JT, Highsmith MJ. Energy costs and performance of transtibial amputees and non-amputees during walking and running. *Int J Sports Med*. 2014;35:1223–1228.
309. Winter DA. Energy generation and absorption at the ankle and knee during fast, natural, and slow cadences. *Clin Ortho Rel Res*. 1983;175:147–154.
310. Soo CH, Donelan JM. Mechanics and energetics of step-to-step transitions isolated from human walking. *J Exp Biol*. 2010;213:4265–4271.
311. Zelik KE, Collins SH, Adamczyk PG, et al. Systematic variation of prosthetic foot spring affects center-of-mass mechanics and metabolic cost during walking. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng*. 2011;19(4):411–419.
312. Ledoux ED, Lawson BE, Schultz AH, Bartlett HL, Goldfarb M. Metabolics of stair ascent with a powered transfemoral prosthesis. Engineering in Medicine and Biology Society. In: *37th Annual International Conference of the IEEE*; 2015. https://doi.org/10.1109/EMBC.2015.7319589.
313. Cha YH, Lee KH, Ryu HJ, et al. Ankle-foot orthosis made by 3D printing technique and automated design software. *Appl Bionics Biomech*. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/9610468.
314. Mulder IA, Holtslag HR, Beersma L, Koopman B. Keep moving forward: A new energy returning prosthetic device with low installation height after Syme or Pirogoff amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38(1):12–20.

3 Motor Control, Motor Learning, and Neural Plasticity in Orthotic and Prosthetic Rehabilitation

DONNA M. BOWERS, ANDREA OBERLANDER, KEVIN K. CHUI, KIMBERLY LEIGH MALIN, and MICHELLE M. LUSARDI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Discuss the strengths, limitations, and implementation for practice of current models of motor control.
2. Compare and contrast the tenets of current motor learning theories.
3. Discuss the role of physical therapy interventions based on knowledge of motor control and motor learning in augmenting neural plasticity after brain injury.
4. Apply principles of practice conditions in the design of therapeutic interventions for individuals using orthoses or prostheses.
5. Appropriately use augmented feedback in therapeutic situations with individuals using orthoses or prostheses.
6. Describe the role of mental practice and imagery on skill acquisition for individuals using orthoses or prostheses.

Why Think About Motor Control, Motor Learning, or Neuroplastcity?

Physical therapists and colleagues in rehabilitation help individuals with movement dysfunction improve or adapt their ways of moving so that they are safe, efficient, and satisfied with their level of function in the activities they consider important for their quality of life.[1] Many different impairments in body structure, including physiologic structures and multiple systems, might lead to ineffective movement, atypical patterns of movement, or lack of movement. These movement problems interfere with an individual's performance of relevant activities and self-selected participation endeavors.[2,3]

Several underlying principles influence current thinking about how people move.[4] The first is that *movement is goal directed*. Individuals move in order to accomplish a task or activity that they want to do during self-care or other activities of daily living (ADLs), as part of their work role, or during leisure activities.[5] The second is that there are *many different ways to accomplish any task*: the central nervous system (CNS) organizes muscles and bodies using available physiologic resources in the context of the environment to accomplish any given task; there is no single "best" way of moving.[6–8] The third is that *each person develops preferential ways of moving:* although there are many possible movement strategies available, people tend to move in ways that are most efficient for their own individual physical characteristics.[9] Preferential movement patterns, however, are not always optimal. Repetitive motion injuries, for example, may be the result of preferential movement patterns that are not biomechanically effective, stressing tissues until inflammation or permanent deformation occurs.[10] The fourth is that people move when they have self-efficacy regarding their movment. Self-efficacy stems from competence with movement (capability) plus confidence in performing such movement.[11] Finally, evidence suggests that appropriate interventions *drive neural plasticity* and enhance recovery following insult to the CNS.

When there are impairments of musculoskeletal, neuromuscular, or cardiopulmonary systems, the resources that an individual can bring to movement may be altered, limited, or constrained.[12] Because movement is goal directed, an individual with impairments will find a way to accomplish movement goals that "work," often using a less effective or abnormal movement strategy. These altered strategies are recognized clinically as movement dysfunction.[13] The use of ineffective or abnormal movement patterns can, over time, lead to inflammation, tissue remodeling, or even deformity.[14] For example, in an individual recovering from stroke who is walking, an "abnormal" extensor synergy of the lower extremity may provide stance-phase stability, but it will impair swing limb advancement, leading to a compensatory circumduction or vaulting step.[15] Abnormal tone may contribute to habitual plantarflexion and eventually an equinus deformity.[16] Someone with a painful knee or back will alter the way in

which he or she uses those joints as well as the limbs or trunk when walking and moving between sitting and standing.[17–21] Over time, the individual may develop secondary musculoskeletal problems at distal or proximal joints or become physically deconditioned, compounding his or her movement dysfunction.[22,23] An individual with pain, shortness of breath, or a sense of fatigue (whether from disease or deconditioning) may choose to be less active to "conserve" energy and, as a result, become even more deconditioned, develop soft tissue tightness that impairs flexibility, and lose muscle mass, thus limiting functional strength.[24–28] Individuals who are concerned about pain, falling, or injury may also limit their physical activity and have similar decrements in physiologic capacity and resources.[29–31] Physical and occupational therapists use various types of therapeutic exercise (e.g., strengthening, endurance programs, flexibility, balance activities) as well as functional training (often with assistive devices or ambulatory aids, orthoses, and prostheses) to minimize movement dysfunction and remediate or accommodate the underlying impairments.[32] To be effective in these interventions, rehabilitation professionals must understand the principles of exercise and the effect that exercise has on the human body.[33–35] They must know both the purpose of an orthosis, prosthesis, or assistive device and how the design of the device will enhance or constrain movement and function.[36,37] If the goal of rehabilitation professionals is to help those with movement dysfunction learn more effective ways to accomplish what is important to them, they must also be aware of the process of learning, both on a cognitive and a motor level, and integrate this understanding into the interventions they plan and implement.[38]

This chapter provides an overview of recent thought on motor control using a dynamic systems perspective. The chapter also reviews the tenets of motor learning and considers practice, augmented feedback, and mental imagery as tools to assist development of new or adapted movement skills. The chapter also considers how physical therapy intervention, founded on knowledge of motor control and motor learning, can augment neural plasticity and recovery after brain injury. The case examples at the end of the chapter are designed to help readers integrate a growing understanding of the principles of motor control and motor learning into the planning of interventions for movement dysfunction.

Theories of Motor Control

Human movement has traditionally been examined from two distinct fields of study: a neurophysiologic control approach and a motor behavioral approach.[4,39–42] The traditional neurophysiologic approach explained movement within a hierarchic system of control on the basis of the development of neural mechanisms within the central and peripheral nervous systems and the interaction of sensory and motor systems. The motor behavioral approach examined movement performance from the perspectives largely from the field of psychology. Only in the past few decades have the two fields of study interfaced to bring about newer theories regarding human movement that more fully explain human movement and performance.[4,42–44] Recently there has been an increasing emphasis on the use of therapeutic intervention as a means of driving neural plasticity as a mechanism of recovery following brain injury.[11,45–48]

The motor behavioral approach and neurophysiologic control approach are further interfaced in the study of functional movement disorder (FMD). Contemporary literature highlights an emerging understanding of the neurobiology of FMD and the importance of developing behavioral models to address abnormal motor control patterns that are atypical of known organic disease processes.[49,50] It is thought that abnormalities in attention, personal agency, and beliefs and expectations about symptoms contribute to the manifestation of abnormal movement based on emotional triggers from prior traumatic events.[50,51] Findings suggest that targeted motor reprogramming using a coordinated interdisciplinary approach is a promising intervention for resolution of this disorder.[49,52] Especially important is interdisciplinary collaboration between neurology, rehabilitation services, and psychiatry. Recent research in psychology emphasizes the likelihood of missing relevant stressors in the absence of a thorough psychiatric evaluation,[53] and although the presence of stressful life events may not be a factor with all patients, it can be an important target of interdisciplinary treatment when it is present.[54] This developing body of research using integrated models from the fields of psychology and physiology advances our understanding of motor control and motor learning. The importance of these findings is highlighted in consideration of complex presentations, including traumatic events, which often accompany traumatic brain injury, spinal cord injury, and limb amputations.

DYNAMIC SYSTEMS PERSPECTIVES

Rehabilitation professionals think about the human body as a complex biologic system with many interacting elements and subsystems (Fig. 3.1). These components have an infinite number of ways to work together in accomplishing a goal-directed motor act.[55–57] Because the human body is a dynamic, adaptive, and inherently complex set of subsystems, motor behaviors and ways of moving become more efficient with practice and experience: motor control systems can consistently generate simple and well-organized movement from a complex array of movement possibilities.[58,59] The dynamic systems perspective of motor control is founded on an understanding of the behaviors that physical systems of various types have in common: the ability to change over time, the ability to be adaptive yet have preference for habitual tendencies, and the context of interaction with the environment in which movement occurs.[44,60–62] In the human movement system, there is great "motor abundance"; each person has a wide variety of ways to accomplish an intended movement goal (i.e., solve a functional movement problem) in whatever environmental conditions or circumstances that function occurs.[63,64]

According to Bernstein's model of motor control, individuals have the capacity "to make a choice within a multitude of accessible trajectories … of a most appropriate trajectory."[65] Dynamic systems theory suggests that there are both opportunities and challenges presented by interaction of the environment and the individual's will to move.[65]

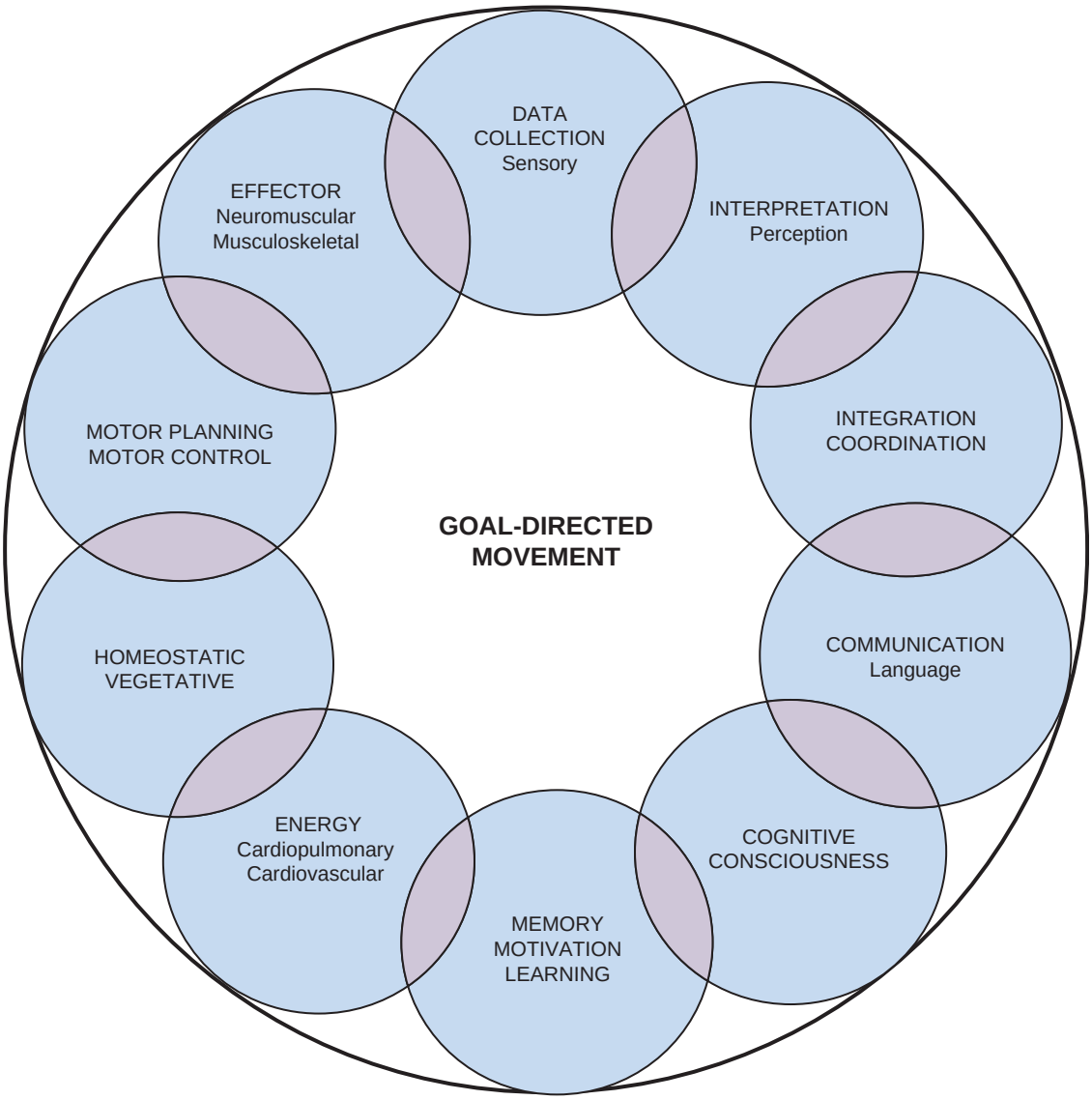


Fig. 3.1 The interactive physiologic systems of the body contribute to an individual's ability to carry out goal-directed (functional) movement. Sensory and perceptual systems contribute by monitoring the environment as well as the position and condition of the body during movement. Interpretive and integrative systems for perception work together with coordination, cognitive, memory, motivational, and planning systems to determine how a goal-directed task might be best implemented, corrected, or adapted for success (action). Homeostatic, vegetative, and energy systems anticipate physiologic demand and insure that oxygen and glucose supplies are sufficient to meet task demands. The neuromuscular system fine tunes postural control, tone, and recruitment so that the musculoskeletal system can be used effectively to accomplish the movement goal. Continuous communication and interaction among physiologic systems occur before, during, and in response to movement so that both feed-forward and feedback can instantaneously influence task performance.

Unlike systems that are purely physical, the human biologic system is a smart, special-purpose machine able to instantaneously and efficiently work to meet many parallel and serial functional demands.[66–68] In addition, biologic systems such as the human body are self-organizing[67,69]; the mutually dependent and complex processes within the body's subsystems allow this wonderfully dynamic structure to enact efficient functional movement patterns. Even though it is an inherently multidimensional biologic system, the human body prefers to be in a state of relative equilibrium.[70,71] This is likely to be the underlying reason why the gait cycle at self-selected (comfortable) walking speed tends to center around one cycle per second and why most individuals transition from walk to run, as gait speed increases, at nearly the same velocity.[72] The human body, as a smart and dynamic biologic system, is also intentional; there is a purposeful, goal-directed, and task-oriented nature in most motor behaviors.[73] The dynamic systems model defines an intention as a purposeful or desired act that influences (attracts) the human system to organize motor behavior toward the desired outcome in the context of the environment in which the movement is occurring.[74] The organism and the environment are interdependent; each is defined with respect to the other.[66,73,74] Although the characteristics of the physical environment are the focus on many studies of goal-directed movement, the social-emotional environment can also influence the emergence of goal-directed movement.[75] The combination of resources

available to the organism-environment interaction, in conjunction with the individual's intention, shapes (constrains) how task-oriented motor behavior is organized.

Motor control has been defined by Shumway-Cook and Woollacott[40] as "the ability to regulate or direct the mechanisms essential to movement." The interactive systems that provide resources that an individual uses to initiate and regulate goal-directed movement include the neurologic, musculoskeletal, sensory/perceptual, cardiorespiratory, and cardiopulmonary systems as well as the cognitive, learning, and memory systems. Human movement, or motor control, is a product of the interaction of the individual (with all of his or her subsystems), the characteristics of the environment, and the nature of the specific task or goal that the individual is involved in (Fig. 3.2). Movement, then, is goal directed and purposeful; it makes use of the innate and learned resources available to the individual and is subject to the influences of the environment in which it is performed. By considering each of these essential contributors to functional movement, rehabilitation professionals can assess potential sources of movement dysfunction, explore alternative movement strategies, and adapt or alter the task or environment to improve movement outcomes.[76,77]

Resources of the Individual

The first component to consider in this model of motor control is the individual, with his or her ability to think and reason, to sense and perceive, and to actively respond or initiate movement (Fig. 3.3). An individual's cognitive resources include the abilities to critically think and integrate concepts, organize and delay gratification, assign emotional meaning/significance to an activity or circumstance, solve problems, access and use memory, manage attention and focus (especially when engaged in concurrent tasks), and learn.[78–80] An individual's perceptual resources are the products of the ability to receive and process many different types of sensory information (i.e., data) and to integrate and interpret these data at both subcortical and cortical levels of information processing.[81–85] An individual's resources for action include the ability to plan motor function and refine motion at cortical and subcortical levels; control error through systems of the cerebellum, pyramidal, and extrapyramidal motor systems; and the neuromuscular, musculoskeletal, and cardiopulmonary/cardiovascular contributors to "effector" systems.[86–101] Perception influences motor action (feedforward movement), and action further leads to the monitoring of the movement (feedback refinement).

To illustrate how individual resources influence movement, consider two individuals who are walking to their cars after a major-league baseball game. Their pathway moves across a gravel-surfaced parking area with a slightly sloped and slightly unstable support surface. One person has the "stocking-glove" sensory and motor impairment typical of diabetic polyneuropathy. The other has consumed a few too many beers in cheering his team to victory, making his thinking and motor behavior less efficient than normal. Both are likely to exhibit less efficient postural responses and unsteady gait patterns as they return to their vehicles, but for very different reasons. The quality of the sensory data that the individual with diabetic neuropathy can collect may not be sufficient for accurate perception of environmental conditions, and, complicated by distal weakness, her patterns of movement may not meet the challenges presented by the sloped and slightly movable ground surface. The individual who is tipsy has normal data collection ability; however, the temporary impairment in cognitive function (judgment and perception) and less efficient "error control" associated with alcohol consumption lead to motor behaviors that are not matched to environmental demands. Both baseball fans may stumble, walk with a wide base of support, or reach for the support of solid objects as they make their way toward their cars, but the underlying individual contributors to this motor outcome are quite different.

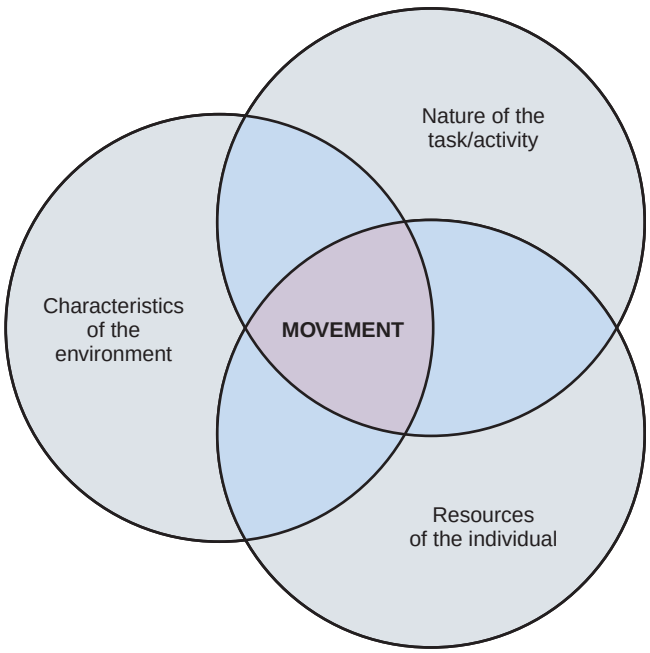


Fig. 3.2 A contemporary model of motor control: movement emerges from the interaction of the individual, the environment, and the task being attempted. Therapists must consider how the characteristics, resources, and constraints of each influence the ability to move and how each might be manipulated during intervention to enhance motor learning and effectiveness of movement.

Nature of the Task

The task is the second essential component to the overall outcome or motor behavior performed. A functional task may require an individual to organize goal-directed movement to address one or more of the following motor control goals (Fig. 3.4):

- Maintaining or adjusting antigravity posture (static, anticipatory, or reactionary postural control)[102–104]
- Transitioning from one stable position to another (quasimobility; e.g., moving from sitting to standing)[105–107]
- Moving a limb or the whole body through space (e.g., reaching, lifting, carrying, walking, stair climbing, walking on inclines, avoiding obstacles, hopping, running)[108–110]
- Using or manipulating tools appropriate to the task (e.g., assistive devices, objects needed for ADLs)[111,112]

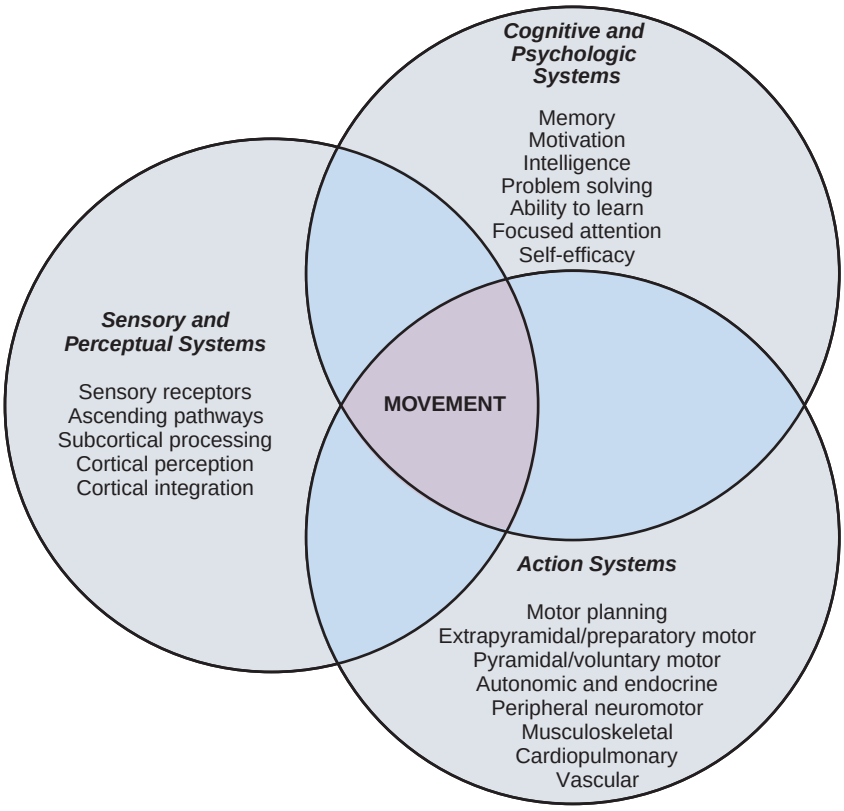


Fig. 3.3 The individual resources that contribute to movement include those in the sensory/perceptual systems, the cognitive systems, and the action systems. For persons recovering from central nervous system insult, the therapist must understand whether dysfunction in any of these systems has occurred and consider how intervention might enhance neural plasticity and recovery of function in each of these areas.

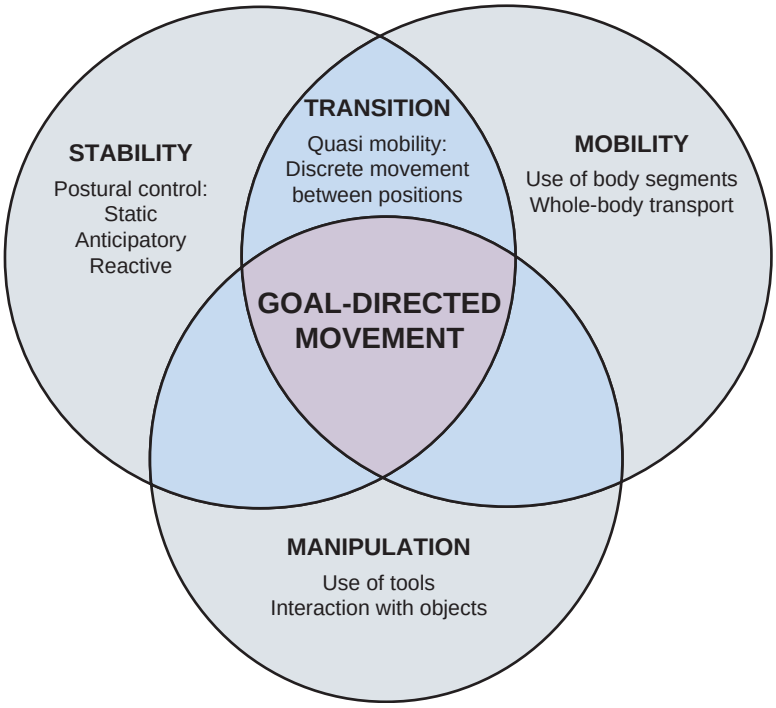


Fig. 3.4 The components or nature of the task being attempted also influence the movement that emerges. The task can include or combine goals of stability, transitions, mobility, and manipulation of tools or objects.

Any task can be described along a number of different dimensions or continua: it can have a *discrete* beginning and end point (e.g., transferring from bed to chair) or be *continuous* (e.g., walking or running over large distances). Tasks can involve *stability* or require *mobility*, occur at *various speeds*, require different levels of *accuracy* or *precision*, and demand different levels of *attention* or *focus* (Box 3.1). Repetitive and overlearned tasks performed in predictable (closed or fixed) environments are often executed on a nearly automatic level, requiring little attention; this allows the individual to focus attentional resources on other priorities.[113] Tasks occurring in a changing (dynamic or open)

Box 3.1 Descriptors of Movements Based on the Attributes/Nature of a Task

- Discrete: The beginning or end point of movement, or both, as determined by the task itself (e.g., stepping onto a curb, donning a prosthesis, catching a ball).
- Serial: An ordered sequence of discrete movements, defined by the task itself (e.g., climbing a flight of stairs).
- Continuous: The beginning and end points of the task are determined and controlled by the individual (e.g., riding a bicycle, deciding when to start or stop).
- Stability: The primary task goal is to maintain position of body segments (often against gravity or in response to perturbation) or to keep the body's center of mass within the available base of support during functional activity (e.g., to provide a secure base in sitting or standing for subsequent skilled use of extremities).
- Transitional (quasimobility): The primary task goal is to move the body from a starting position of stability to a different ending position of stability (e.g., moving from sitting to standing, rolling from supine to prone, getting up from the floor).
- Mobility: The primary task goal is to move a body part, or the entire body, through physical space (e.g., rolling over in bed, walking or running, reaching for an object on a shelf or on the floor).
- Manipulation continuum: The degree to which a task requires the individual to use (manipulate) or interact with one or more external objects in order to complete the activity successfully (e.g., fastening buttons or handling clothes during dressing, donning/doffing a prosthesis or orthosis, opening doors during mobility, locking the brakes on a wheelchair).
- Automaticity: The degree to which the task is well understood and can be carried out automatically or requires attention because of high task demand (level of preciseness, consequence of error) or the changing nature of the task or environmental conditions (e.g., threading a sewing needle, walking down an icy sloping walkway, catching a thrown object).
- Variability in performance: The degree to which an individual is able to adapt the performance of a learned task in response to differences in environmental conditions or changes in task constraints; the flexibility to apply what has been learned to similar or novel situations.

environment must be flexible or adaptable to be successful and require a higher degree of attention during performance.[114,115] Finally, the complexity of the task and the attentional requirements for effective task performance must be considered.[116]

One way to understand the nature of a task (either broken into components or as a whole) is to examine or classify the task using Gentile's Taxonomy of Movement Tasks (Fig. 3.5).[41] The first component considered in the taxonomy is the movement task's outcome goals: does the task

		BODY STABILITY		TRANSITION (Quasi-mobility)		BODY TRANSPORT	
		No object manipulation	Object manipulation	No object manipulation	Object manipulation	No object manipulation	Object manipulation
CLOSED ENVIRONMENT	No variability	Stand in prosthesis unsupported in the parallel bars in a quiet PT gym	Stand in prosthesis unsupported while putting on jacket in a quiet PT gym	Practice the sit-to-stand transition from a single chair with armrests in a quiet PT gym	Practice the sit to stand transition from the same chair while managing axillary crutches	Walk the length of the parallel bars at comfortable speed, turn around, repeat	Walk forward with crutches using a 2-point gait pattern in an empty hallway
	Trial variability	Stand in prosthesis in parallel bars with diagonal weight shifts on command	Stand in prosthesis in parallel bars catching ball from different directions and speeds	Transfer to and from wheelchair, toilet, and shower seat, moving to left and right in random order	Transfer between seating surfaces of different heights while holding a full glass of water in a quiet PT gym	Practice stepping in different directions and distances in the parallel bars	Walk up to a closed door, opening it, and walking through while using a cane
OPEN ENVIRONMENT	No variability	Remain standing upright as people walk by at regular intervals from similar directions	Retrieve an object repeatedly from the same spot on the floor in a corner of a busy PT gym	Practice moving from standing to sitting using arms in a pre-positioned chair in the cafeteria of the rehabilitation hospital	Move from standing to sitting and vice versa from a rocking chair while managing crutches	Practice ascending and descending a set of training stairs in the corner of a busy PT gym	Approach and ascend a full flight of stairs in a quiet hallway, using bilateral canes
	Trial variability	Remain upright while standing in line in a busy public area	Retrieve various randomly dropped objects throughout an active PT gym	Rise repeatedly from a seat in the movie theater so that other people (of various height and weight) can move past into the row	Scoot sideways while sitting, managing the blankets on a soft mattress so that grandchildren can climb into bed to hear a story	Ascend and descend stairs using the railing in a busy public space	Walk from car to supermarket door, pushing the grocery cart across the busy parking lot

Fig. 3.5 Examples of therapeutic activities for an individual learning to use bilateral transtibial prosthesis based on a modified version of Gentile's Taxonomy of Movement Tasks. *PT*, Physical therapy;

primarily focus on stability of the body, on transition between stable positions, or on transport (movement) of the body through space? As an example of a body stability task, consider the ability of an individual learning to use a transfemoral prosthesis to control hip and pelvic position while in single-limb stance on the prosthetic side, while slowly lifting the "intact" limb to place it on a stool or step placed in front of him or her. A transitional (quasimobile) task for this person might be practicing moving between sitting and standing position from various seating surfaces or heights.[4] A body mobility task for the same individual might be to learn to use a cadence-responsive prosthetic knee unit by altering gait speed, changing direction, or navigating through a crowded public space.

The next consideration is whether the task involves use of, or interaction with, a tool or object (i.e., is object manipulation part of the task?). In working with persons with spinal cord injuries to develop postural control in sitting, for example, therapists often use catching and throwing activities with balloons and balls of various weights, thrown at different speeds and in varying directions, to provide opportunity to master this body stability skill.[117–119] Managing assistive devices (e.g., cane, crutches) during transfers or operating orthotic knee locks or prosthetic knee units during transfers are examples of object manipulation during transitional motor tasks. Learning to use an ambulatory assistive device (e.g., crutch walking in a four-point reciprocal pattern; managing crutches when ascending or descending stairs) is a prime example of a body mobility task that requires object manipulation.[120,121]

Characteristics of the Environment

The final component of the Shumway-Cook and Woollacott model of motor control is the setting, environmental context, or conditions in which the goal-directed movement takes place (Fig. 3.6). The physical therapist must examine

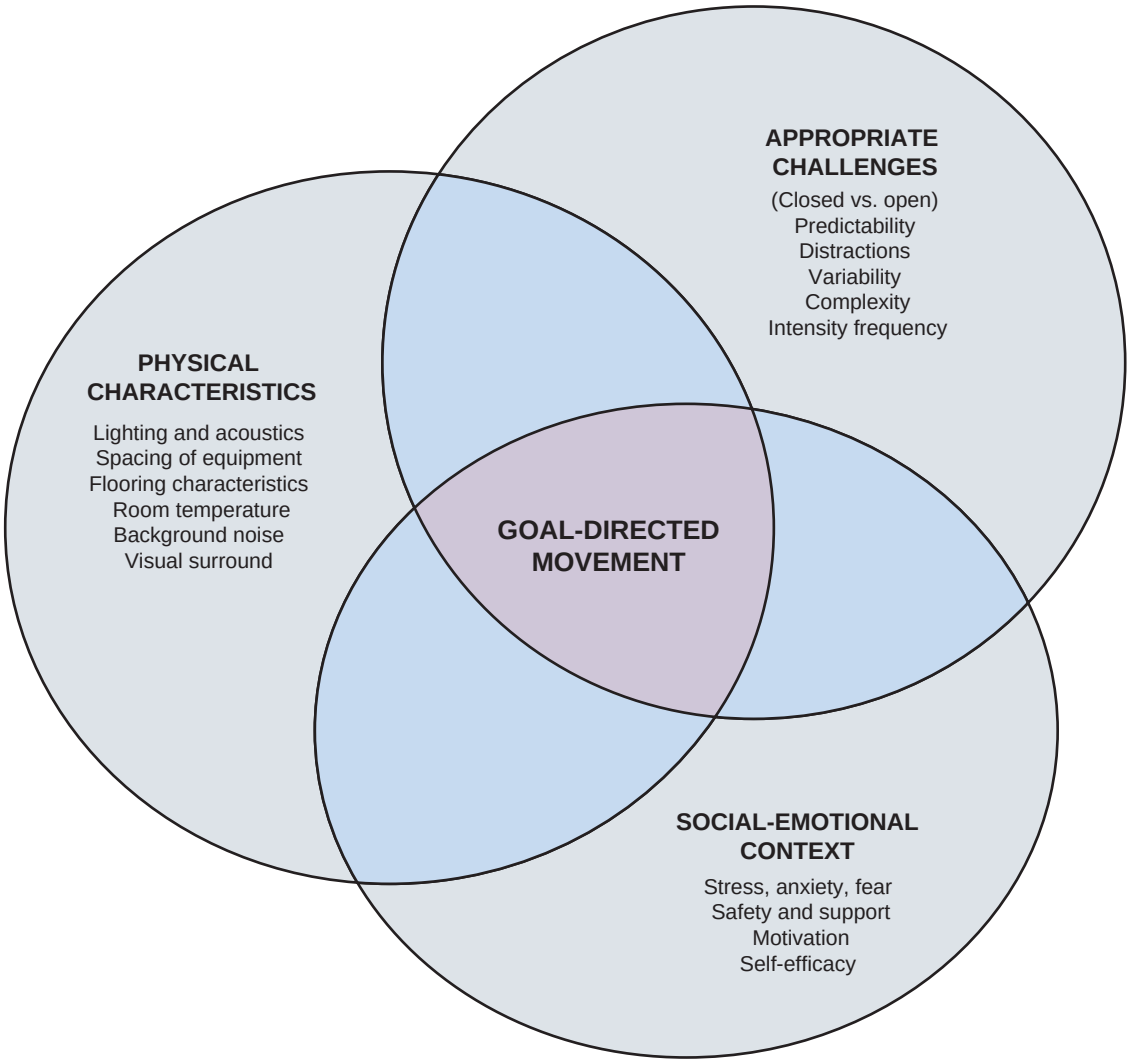


Fig. 3.6 In considering the influence of the environment on motor performance, the therapist must understand the challenges that it presents, the social-emotional context that might influence the individual's ability to move, and the physical characteristics of the movement space that affect the individual's safety and ability to move. Therapists often manipulate the social-emotional context by providing physical support and encouragement to create a situation where it is safe for the individual to attempt difficult movements and to risk failure (error) as part of the motor learning process. (From Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor control: translating research into clinical practice*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2012:84.)

(and, during intervention, purposefully manipulate) the environmental context in which functional movement occurs. Is the physical environment comfortable to be in while taking part in exercise and other rehabilitation interventions? Is it visually interesting and stimulating but not too distracting or challenging? Is the motor task occurring in an environment that is predictable (i.e., in a closed environment), or is there a degree of variability and possibility of change external to the individual (i.e., an open environment) that will require the individual to monitor and respond more carefully while performing the task?[122–124] Therapists must also consider the social-emotional context of the environment that is rooted in the interpersonal interaction: will the individual feel supported and encouraged as he takes risks and makes errors as part of the development of skill in salient activities? Or does the emotional environment contribute to anxiety about receiving negative criticism or a fear of failure?[125,126]

For the therapeutic application of environmental variables, therapists can consider both macroenvironmental influences (e.g., actual physical conditions that influence task demand, the therapeutic setting, or the involvement of family members) and microenvironmental influences (e.g., the level of visual and auditory "noise" present in the therapy room or variations in surfaces over which a client may be sitting or walking). Mastery of a motor task within a single, simple environment does not directly translate into safe performance of the same task under more complex and demanding environmental conditions. Navigating up and down a set of training steps in the physical therapy gym does not mean that the individual with stroke or paraplegic-level spinal cord injury will be functional and safe on a wet, leaf-covered, uneven brick staircase (with no railings) when entering or leaving his best friend's house or favorite neighborhood hangout.[127,128]

When they are working with persons with acquired brain injury functioning at the Rancho Los Amigos cognitive continuum of 4 (confused and agitated), 5 (confused inappropriate), or 6 (confused appropriate), therapists must provide a structured and predictable environment for functional and rehabilitative activities so that the demands of the environment do not exceed the individual's ability to monitor and respond to the challenges that the environment presents.[129–131] A complex environment can be overwhelming to the individual recovering from brain injury; the structured environment provides opportunity to complete key tasks with minimal frustration and behavioral complications. However, the complexity of the environment must be gradually increased as the individual prepares for discharge. Being able to cross the street safely at a crosswalk with real traffic is a more complex task than managing curbs and walking over a distance in the rehabilitation gym.

Gentile's taxonomy provides an organizational strategy for intervention planning by rehabilitation professions working with individuals with musculoskeletal or neuromuscular impairments and limitations in performing functional activities. The primary goal of a man who has had a recent stroke may be to climb stairs so that he can return to his home, where the bedroom and bathroom are upstairs. In the early stages of rehabilitation, it may be necessary to first concentrate on static postural control and controlled weight shifting in sitting and standing on a firm support surface (body stability, no object manipulation, predictable environment). As the quality and control of these motor tasks become more consistent, intervention expands to include ambulation in the parallel bars (body mobility, no object manipulation, unvarying environment), then with an assistive device in a quiet hallway (body mobility, object manipulation, predictable environment), and finally in a busy rehabilitation gym in which the individual must anticipate and react to others in the environment (body mobility, object manipulation, changing environment). As postural control becomes more efficient on level surfaces, task demand is increased by increasing speed or attempting more challenging surfaces such as stairs, inclines, and stepping over obstacles; this may initially occur in a relatively predictable environment but must eventually occur in an "open" situation in which the individual must dynamically react to or navigate around other persons and objects.

SKILL ACQUISITION MODELS

Movement has also been examined from the behavioral perspective, with a focus on quality of motor performance and acquisition of relatively permanent skilled behavior. Researchers with this perspective are interested in the influence of cognitive information processing and cognitive psychology on motor behavior. They concentrate on the acquisition of skills, the learning processes associated with skills, the relatively permanent changes in skills (retention), and the refinement process of skills across applications. Early on, studies of skill acquisition focused on orientation to the task; as the field developed and expanded, focus shifted toward understanding the process of skill development. This led to formulation of the concepts of motor memory and schema. Adams's theory of feedback-based learning was a catalyst for later research, which gave rise to Schmidt's schema theory for motor learning.

Current motor learning theory has become a blend of the various bodies of study presented in this section, integrating neurophysiologic, dynamic systems/ecologic, and behavioral models. This shared interest gave rise to the study of motor learning, which is concerned with the adaptation and application of movement strategies to altered or novel functional, behavioral, and environmental contexts.

Theories of Motor Learning

Although models of motor control focus on how the biologic system organizes and adapts movement as it occurs, models of motor learning consider how the individual comes to understand and consistently perform a particular behavioral task. The outcome of effective motor learning is mastery of skilled behaviors so that the individual can function appropriately in his or her physical and social environment. Most models of motor learning are founded on four distinct notions about learning:

1. Motor learning is a dynamic process that leads to acquisition of ability for skilled actions.
2. In order for motor learning to occur, there must be an opportunity to practice and build experience. Making

errors is a necessary part of the learning process; as learning occurs, motor memories are established.
3. Motor learning itself cannot be observed directly; it is inferred by observing changes in motor behavior that become consistent over time.
4. Learning produces sustainable, relatively permanent changes in the capacity for skilled behavior by building motor memory; as a result, what has been learned can be applied or adapted when altered task or environmental constraints occur.

To effectively master a novel motor task or remaster a previously learned motor task with altered motor function from disease or injury, the individual must have the following[11,60,132]:

- Focused attention to develop sensory and perceptual strategies for collecting information relevant to the task and the environment in which it is occurring
- Active problem solving to understand key features of the task, the performance environment, and any tools required to complete the task successfully
- Motor ability to activate the components of the motor control system (anticipatory, guiding, corrective, and reactive) necessary for skillful performance of the task
- Self-efficacy to apply (transfer) knowledge of the task, environment, and tools to perform skilled movement in situations that are different from the one in which learning took place.

Rehabilitation professionals must be careful to distinguish between the concepts of motor learning and motor performance. *Motor performance* is the observable action or behavior that can be measured (rated) qualitatively or quantitatively by an observer.[42] It is a temporary execution of a motor task at a specific point in time when being measured.[11] As health care professionals who focus on function, therapists are quite skilled at examining motor performance and determining whether an individual is moving effectively and efficiently or is coping with some form of movement dysfunction. Physical therapists use both subjective ratings (e.g., ratings of perceived exertion; using the terms "poor, fair, good, normal/excellent" to describe static postural control, dynamic balance ability, or endurance) and objective performance-based scales and measures (e.g., self-selected and fast walking speeds, Timed Up and Go times, Functional Reach distances, Dynamic Gait Index scores, 6-minute walk test distance, Gross Motor Functional Measure scores, among many others).[133–139]

In contrast, *motor learning* refers to the process that leads to relatively permanent changes in the quality, consistency, and efficiency of motor performance of a given individual. This process is not easily measured except by considering consistency or how other dimensions of performance of the task change over time. Comparisons of baseline performance to postintervention performance indicate changes in quality of performance. Although motor performance tends to transiently improve after a single practice session, we cannot be confident that learning has occurred until performance becomes consistent after multiple sessions over a period of time.[140,141] Improvement in motor performance to a level of consistency implies that effective motor learning has occurred; motor learning has occurred when the task is sustainable, long-lasting, and adaptable to situational demand.[11]

EVOLUTION OF MODELS OF MOTOR LEARNING

Initial models of motor learning were published in the early 1970s, the most prominent being Adams's closed-loop theory and Schmidt's schema theory.[142,143] Both models assume that, as a result of the motor learning process, the brain develops *generalized motor programs:* rules for timing and sequencing of muscle activity for key tasks.[140] The closed-loop theory proposes that sensory information generated from movements occurring during performance of functional tasks provides *feedback* necessary to build the memory and perceptual traces that guide and refine subsequent performance of the task.[142] In contrast, schema theory suggests that an open-loop process occurs in which a general set of rules for a particular movement is developed (motor recall and sensory recognition schema) over time. Such schemas allow the individual to continuously compare actual outcomes of movement with anticipated (feedforward)/predicted outcomes via error detection and correction mechanisms.[143,144] According to schema models, variability of practice must occur to establish and strengthen the movement schema over time.[144,146]

In the 1990s, Newell proposed an alternative ecologic model of motor learning (resonant with Bernstein's dynamic systems model of motor control), which suggests that individuals use a problem-solving approach to discover the optimal strategy to produce the task (performance) given both environmental and task influences.[147,148] By exploring the *perceptual motor work space* during practice, individuals begin to recognize salient sensory/perceptual cues as they explore movement options that might lead to successful task completion. In viewing a demonstration, perceptual information helps the learner better understand the nature of the task and task-related movements that need to be mastered. Perception during (knowledge of performance [KP]) and perception after (knowledge of results [KR]) task-related movement provides intrinsic feedback that assists the problem-solving process in the development of optimal strategies for the task at hand. Therapists can provide augmented information (explicit cues and extrinsic feedback) to facilitate an individual's search for optimal strategies. In this way, the perception (salient cues about the task and the environment) and action (adaptive motor performance of the task.) are linked so that task-relevant connection is established.[149]

Recent evidence (2014) suggests the need for active participation and task relevancy to the learning process. Winstein and colleagues[11] described the necessity of both psychologic elements and motor capabilities for motor learning to occur. A person must possess sufficient voluntary neuromotor capability and relevant motivation to acquire the motor skill. Both of these elements lead to active participation in the acquisition of the skill (motor learning process). Motivation is a complex behavior that involves feelings of self-efficacy (competency plus confidence), social relatedness, and autonomy. This motivation is influenced by a person's sense of involvement, which includes control, choice, and collaboration in the selection of the task activity. This will be further explained in the section on feedback.

TEMPORAL CONSIDERATIONS

Motor learning has also been explained through a temporal perspective in which learning occurs in stages over time. Various three- and two-stage models have been proposed to describe the process of acquisition of a skill and of adaptability or generalization/transfer of the skill (Table 3.1).

Three-stage models generally describe the earliest stage as the discovery stage, in which an understanding of the nature of a task is developed through trial and error, sometimes with guidance.[62,136,145–153] In this initial stage of motor learning, the need for attention is high, and there is significant trial and error–related variability in task performance early on with an eventual understanding or selection of the best plan for the task for that individual. The variability of task performance at this stage is unwanted and undesirable. Once a plan has been settled on, the second stage of motor learning focuses on refinement of the performance; variability and error during performance decreases while efficiency of performance increases, but attention is still required and distraction is often problematic, interfering with performance.[149] In the third and final stage of motor learning, the individual can generalize or adapt the learned skill to changing environmental demands; performance variability is now desired, such that the task can be performed effectively in different ways to meet changing environmental demands.

Building on the work of Lereijken and colleagues, Shumway-Cook and Woollacott describe a system-oriented three-stage model, integrating principles of dynamic systems motor control, human development, and the ecologic model of motor learning.[140,153] Early in motor learning, individuals constrain (freeze) the degrees of freedom among limb segments (joints) involved in the task as a means of reducing task difficulty; this freezing co-contraction around joints results in

Table 3.1 Comparison of Concepts in the Major Models of Motor Learning

Models	Descriptive Stages/Movement Characteristics
THREE-STAGE MODELS	
Fitts and Posner[151]	COGNITIVE
Early skill acquisition through trial and error; high undesirable variability to find most effective strategy for task	ASSOCIATIVE
Refinement of skill; performance less variable and more efficient	AUTONOMOUS
Low attention necessary for task; transfer or adapting skill to other environments; performance of skill during multiple task demands; desired variability	
Vereijken, Whiting, and Beek[62]	NOVICE
Discovery of task constraints; restriction of degrees of freedom to simplify task	ADVANCED
Release of some degrees of freedom to coordinate movement; adaptation of tasks to environmental demands	EXPERT
All degrees of freedom released; exploitation of mechanical forces to complement environmental forces	
Larin[153]	
(Refers to children)	DISCOVERY
Verbal-cognitive stage; physical and verbal guidance necessary	INTERMEDIATE
Motor stage; independent performance, greater consistency	AUTONOMOUS
Skilled performance; economy of effort; task adaptable to environment	
Shumway-Cook, Woollacott Systems Model[140]	STAGE 1
Co-contraction to constrain degrees of freedom to reduce the number of body segments or joints to be controlled during movement, undesired variability	STAGE 2
Gradual release of degrees of freedom of limb segments results in gradual increase in control and flexibility of the body during movement	STAGE 3
Mastery of the skilled movement with automaticity and desired variability during performance, allowing adaptation and transfer of skill in response to changing conditions/demands	
TWO-STAGE MODELS	
Gentile[41]	EXPLICIT LEARNING
Attainment of action-goal; conscious mapping of the movement's structure; rapid stabilization of performance	IMPLICIT LEARNING
Dynamics of force generation; active and passive force components finely tuned unconsciously; gradual change in performance	
Manoel and Connolly[155]	ACQUISITION
Formulation of the action plan; understanding task and how to accomplish it; stabilization of action	ADAPTATION
Task and environment interaction; task is fluid with range of options to cope with new situations; breakdown of stable task and reorganization for new action plans	

relatively accurate movement, although the movement typically has a high energy cost.[154] As learning occurs, there is a tendency to "unfreeze" joints sequentially such that movement becomes more fluid and energy-efficient. With mastery, the individual employs freedom of movement to fluidly perform the task and can adapt to changing characteristics of the environment.[155]

Two-stage models of motor learning focus on (1) acquisition of the skill and (2) adaptation or application of the skilled motor behavior.[156] The initial phase consolidates the first two components of the three-stage models: Acquisition and refinement of performance occur within the same stage. Undesired variability of performance occurs through internal demands within the individual's attempts to find and select a preferred action/strategy before refinement. In the second stage, performance has desired variability due to external demands of the environment: The person must adapt the task accordingly; this is quite similar to the final component of each of the three-stage models.[157]

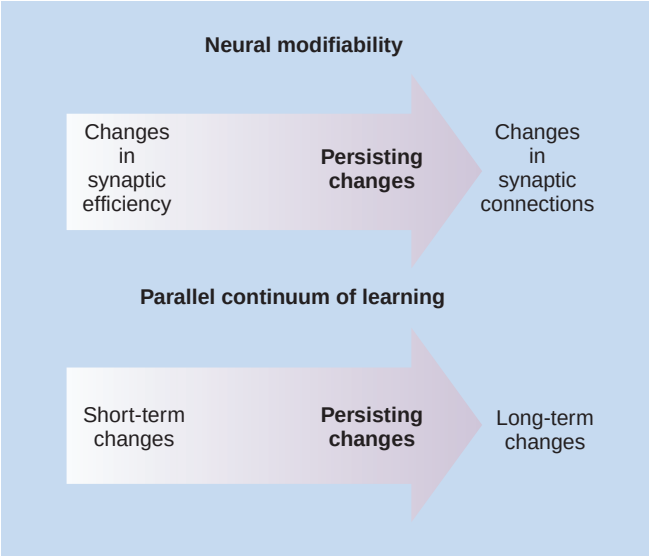


Fig. 3.7 The gradual shift from short-term (acquisition) to long-term (retention) learning and memory is reflected in a move along the continuum of neural modifiability. Short-term changes, associated with an increased synaptic efficiency, persist and gradually give way to structural changes, the underpinnings of long-term learning.

IMPLICIT AND EXPLICIT ASPECTS OF MOTOR LEARNING

To understand the process of motor learning, it is important to consider the principles underlying all learning processes: how new information is translated into memory to become useful. One can think about learning as the process of acquiring new information and new skills; memory then is the product or outcome of the learning process.[158] Learning is one of the major drivers of plasticity within the CNS, stimulating formation of new synapses as well as refinement of existing neural connections throughout the brain.[159,160] This plasticity is evident as information is moved from our short-term (working) memory into initial long-term memory stores, which become better established and more resistant to disruption with practice and experience (Fig. 3.7).[161]

Learning theorists describe two major categories of learning: implicit (nondeclarative) and explicit (declarative) learning (Fig. 3.8).[162] Both categories lead to functional and physiologic changes in synapses of involved areas of the spinal cord, brain stem, and forebrain.[163] One aspect of motor learning falls into the category of implicit procedural learning: it requires trial and error (discovery) in a relevant and functional context.[163] Focused attention is an important requirement during this discovery stage.[11] Consistently improved task performance over time and situation provide evidence of effective procedural learning. Neural structures thought to be necessary for implicit procedural learning include cortex of the frontal and parietal lobes, nuclei of the basal ganglia, and cerebellar cortex and nuclei.[163–166] Recent work has also identified that the hippocampus is involved in perceptual components of procedural learning.[167] Explicit (declarative) learning is founded on attention and conscious thought and can be described or demonstrated by the learner.[168] Neural structures involved with explicit learning include the prefrontal cortex, cingulate gyrus (limbic system), head of the caudate

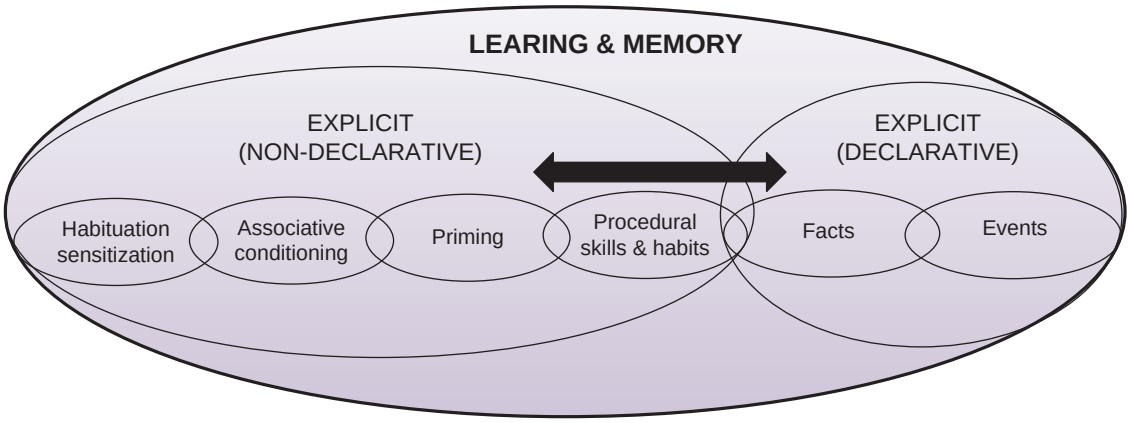


Fig. 3.8 Learning is the process of acquiring information or skill while memory is the product of the learning process. Traditionally, the learning process has been described as having two separate domains: explicit (or declarative) learning, which is primarily involved in acquisition of knowledge about facts and events, and implicit or nondeclarative learning. Much of motor learning falls into the category of procedural implicit learning, or the mastery of skills and habits. Recent research evidence using functional magnetic resonance imaging suggests that there are interactions between explicit and implicit processes *(arrow)* regardless of whether the focus is on fact or movement.

Box 3.2 Summary of the Dimensions or Characteristics of Practice

- Contextual interference: The work of keeping many options available in working memory over time when involved in discovering solutions to movement problems during the acquisition of skill in motor learning.
- Blocked: A single motor behavior (task) is repeated multiple times in unchanging environmental conditions. Performance improves within the practice session, but less than optimal retention across sessions.
- Random (variable): Practice of the targeted motor task is interspersed or embedded within trials of different motor behaviors. Although performance in a single practice session is less consistent, there is better retention of skills across practice sessions and environmental conditions.
- Serial: A series of separate (related or unrelated) tasks is performed in the same sequence for multiple trials.
- Massed: Time for active practice exceeds rest time between trials.
- Distributed: Time for active practice is less than rest time between trials.
- Part task training: Each component of a motor behavior is practiced separately; this assists accuracy or efficiency of performance of the single-task component.
- Whole task training: The entire motor behavior is practiced as a single task. Enhances the individual's ability to solve problems and adapt task performance across practice sessions and differing environmental conditions.

nucleus, medial temporal lobes, and hippocampus.[169] The hippocampus plays a key role in motor learning because it contains a cognitive-spatial map of the typical areas in which humans function.[174] Early motor learning is strengthened, as evidenced by changes in output of the primary motor cortex, when explicit learning of sequences is associated with implicit learning.[170–172]

Once sequential aspects of the task are well understood, the need to pay close attention during motor performance diminishes, and the skill becomes less effortful as it transitions toward automaticity.[173] As automaticity increases, the ability to attend to simultaneous tasks also increases.[174,175] There is growing evidence that the transition from early motor learning of complex, sequentially organized tasks to automaticity requires more time and practice as a person ages.[176–179] Encouragement and feedback that focus on building perceptions of capability (self-efficacy) with respect to better performance than that of peers appears to enhance motor learning in both young and older adults.[180,181] Recently the critical addition of support for the psychologic needs of the learner has been shown to be an important element of the motor learning process. A person's sustained behavioral commitment to learning the skill leads to competence, which leads to self-efficacy and ultimately to retention.[11]

ROLE OF AEROBIC EXERCISE IN MOTOR LEARNING

Recent evidence suggests that aerobic exercise and possibly resistance training play key roles in the motor learning of individuals who have had a stroke. Aerobic exercise leads to upregulation of the protein called "brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF)," which is involved in neuroprotection, neurogenesis, and neuroplasticity.[44] It has been suggested that BDNF is felt to influence the CNS by improving its capability for motor learning. Two different effects on the CNS and motor learning were described in relation to aerobic exercise: (1) Exercise that happens immediately prior to motor task practice assists with improved detection and encoding of information relevant to the motor task and (2) exercise that happens immediately following motor task practice strengthens the motor memory process.[46]

Key motor learning concepts that are employed by physical therapists working with individuals new to prosthetic or orthotic use include *practice* conditions and schedule; appropriate level of *challenge*; the role of *motivation* and *self-efficacy*; the role of *variability, contextual interference,* and *feedback* on skill acquisition; development of *automaticity* of performance; as well as *retention* and *transfer* of the newly learned motor skill (Box 3.2).[136,140] Each is discussed in the following section.

The Importance of Practice

Common to all models of motor learning is the concept of practice. Motor learning cannot occur unless the individual has an opportunity to gain experience through repeated attempts (both successful and unsuccessful) at accomplishing the desired movement task.[182] Much of the research literature in the area of motor learning is devoted to the exploration of practice and the optimal conditions or configurations in which it occurs. Conditions of practice can be classified or designed in several different ways. The type of practice used can influence the efficacy of motor learning that occurs as well as its carryover or generalizability to similar tasks or environmental conditions.

APPROPRIATE LEVEL OF CHALLENGE

Therapists have long understood that finding the optimal level of challenge for a patient is crucial to rehabilitation. Such challenge includes choosing the correct intensity of practice (labor) that will keep a patient engaged and motivated and the correct frequency of repetitions to drive neuroplastic changes in the CNS. Appropriate intensity of challenge allows a patient to work hard during the task without compromising the patient's physical or psychologic health status. A task that is too easy will not drive the physiologic conditioning that leads to neurocognitive changes for motor learning. Conversely, a task that is too difficult can lead to risk of potential harm or injury. A high frequency of repetitions in practice is necessary for neuroplasticity.[183] Research suggests that the neuroplasticity necessary for motor learning requires a range of several hundred to thousands of repetitions. Yet therapeutic sessions often fall well short of that mark. With the intent of bridging this practice gap, telehealth modalities are currently under investigation for stroke rehabilitation. Gaming, avatars, wearable sensors, and remote monitoring and feedback are being studied with an eye on increasing

intervention intensity and patient compliance for improved functional outcomes. This line of research is relatively new, however, and there is currently no strong evidence as to the effectiveness of telehealth for stroke rehabilitation in terms of functional outcomes or cost.[184,185] To choose an appropriate and optimal level of challenge for a patient, a therapist must consider several factors including but not limited to the patient's physiologic conditioning, motor capabilities to meet the challenge, constraints on both patient and therapist time imposed by the health care setting, and evidence-based findings regarding frequency and intensity.

MOTIVATION AND SELF-EFFICACY

Relevancy and meaningfulness of a task are critical for motor learning. Choice of a task for practice must include consideration of the person's desire to change. A task that is not meaningful can lead to disengagement and lack of motivation on the part of the person performing the task. Effective practice occurs only when tasks are meaningful to the patient and the challenge of the task is optimal for learning.[11] Sustained practice leads to increased capability for performing the task; increased capability leads to confidence in performing the task; and the combination of capability (skill) and confidence leads to self-efficacy in acquisition of a new skill. Self-efficacy with a skill is necessary to sustain the use of that skill long enough for a person to get to the late stages of motor learning in which the skill can be adapted as needed for function.

VARIABILITY

In a complex and variable world, there are innumerable ways to respond to challenges that are encountered. Over the life span, typically developing individuals explore many movement options to accomplish salient task goals, developing a set of action plans that demonstrate both automaticity in performance and adaptability to variations in task or environmental constraints (i.e., the mastery of bipedal locomotion, over different surfaces, at various speeds, in closed versus open environments).[186,187] Discovery learning and the feedback/feedforward provided by error during repeated practice across conditions with differing constraints allow the individual to develop an understanding (perception) of the common elements of the task wherever and whenever it is performed.[182,188,189] This perception provides the flexibility to select from a range of task-specific options and to adapt movement in response to variations encountered in daily life; variability in skilled movement is an adaptive resource responsive to variation in environmental demands.[190]

The movement patterns of individuals with neurologic or neuromuscular dysfunction, however, often demonstrate hyper- or hypovariability.[187,191] Too much or too little variability is problematic: perception of the nature of the task and of interaction between task and environment may be limited or altered, and acquisition of skill may be challenged by the constraints associated with altered muscle performance and motor control.[192–194] Functionally, this contributes to a reduced ability to adapt (vary) performance in response to changing environmental conditions. The rigidity characteristic of Parkinson disease, for example, creates "super stability" of the trunk and extremities, which interferes with mobility (locomotion) and postural control when task conditions change (i.e., the need to increase speed, walk through doorways, or to walk on inclines).[192,195] In persons with stroke, impaired ability to move the involved upper extremity has been found to be accompanied by difficulty recognizing action of the corresponding limb when observing others or a computer model.[196] In persons with right hemispheric stroke, impairments of attention and perception challenge the ability to develop the set of task-specific movement options necessary for adaptive function in response to variations in environment and context.[197,198] Although implicit motor learning can be successful after a stroke, movement during acquisition stages is often slower and more variable in both blocked and random practice conditions.[199] Variability in movement is also altered in children with hypertonic and dyskinetic cerebral palsy and in those with developmental coordination disorder.[190,193,200]

In rehabilitation, therapists set up opportunities for discovery motor learning for their patients; these opportunities are designed to enhance the likelihood of discovering, from among all possible movement options, the set of movements most likely to result in successful task performance.[186,187] This is accomplished by manipulating the environmental and task constraints in relevant and meaningful ways to actively engage the individual in iterations of the task with the goal of promoting both perceptual understanding and a usable set of action options for completing the task.[186,201,202]

PRACTICE CONDITIONS: BLOCKED, RANDOM, OR SERIAL?

One way to describe practice is by whether it occurs in a blocked or random sequence. *Blocked practice* (also known as constant practice) is characterized by separate but subsequent repeated trials of the same task.[140,182] For blocked practice, the task is repeated under consistent environmental conditions. Modified blocked practice involves repeating the motor task three or more times in one condition before altering conditions or context in which practice of the same task is repeated. During blocked practice, the individual concentrates on performance of a single task; this focus reduces overall demand on working memory. As a result, quality of performance tends to improve substantially over successive bouts of blocked practice. In healthy adults, acquisition of skill appears to be effective (performance becomes more accurate over a single practice session) with blocked practice; however, retention of the skill over time and transfer of the skill to differing conditions is not as strong.[203] Blocked practice appears to have a positive impact on retention of skill for children younger than 10 years of age; this is thought to be a function of the emergence of information processing ability in late childhood and early adolescence.[204,205]

For the individual with transfemoral amputation working on stance control on the prosthetic limb, a blocked practice session might include stepping up onto a stool with the intact limb for 10 trials (repetitions) while standing in the parallel bars. The level of difficulty of the activity could be advanced by setting up an additional practice session, asking the individual to perform a similar task while supporting

himself or herself with a straight cane to a practice curb or to step outside the parallel bars. Theoretically, practice in the parallel bars would provide a model to use when performing a similar activity outside the parallel bars.

Random practice (also described as variable practice) is characterized as practicing a set of tasks in which order and perhaps difficulty of tasks varies across bouts of practice.[141,182] Because of the variation encountered during random practice, there is less improvement of performance in a given practice session (compared with blocked practice); however, there is greater retention of what has been learned over time. Theoretically, random practice creates *contextual interference* (the work of keeping many options available in working memory over time) that actually enhances learning and mastery over time despite poorer immediate performance.[182,203] Although this may be counterintuitive, the efficacy of contextual interference on mastery of complex movement tasks is well supported.[206–210] One of the proposed mechanisms for enhanced retention in random practice is increased attentional demand, which results in better use of perceptual understanding to prepare for movement.[208,210] The degree of similarity of tasks (distraction) undertaken during a practice session can also be a source of contextual interference; greater attention is required to discriminate between tasks with similar but distinct characteristics.[209] The improvement of retention occurs even when the context or characteristics of the task are somewhat altered; thus random variable practice may enhance the transfer of learning.[182]

To practice the primary task of stance-phase stability using a random practice order, the individual with a transfemoral prosthesis would be involved in an ongoing session of gait training. As this person walked the length of the parallel bars (or across the gym), he or she might be asked to step up onto a stool or over an obstacle at a different point in the walk and to change direction or speed on randomly delivered commands. The walk itself might be repeated 10 times (practice trials), with a step up onto or over the stool and changing speed and direction at a different point in each of the 10 trials of walking. These trials of stepping up or over and altering speed and direction do not occur sequentially but instead are interspersed throughout the entire ambulation event.

A third practice condition called *serial practice* can be thought of as a blending of the blocked and random practice order. Serial practice is a collection of different tasks performed sequentially, from a designated starting point to a defined ending point, always occurring in the same order and repeated as a whole set of movement tasks.[140,182]

In a serial practice session for an individual learning to use a transfemoral prosthesis, the therapist may instruct him or her to repeat a specific sequence of movements such as the following:

1. Rise from a seated position and take three steps toward an obstacle in your pathway.
2. Step over the stool (obstacle) with your intact (right) foot, bringing your prosthetic limb around the object in a small arc.
3. Complete three more gait cycles and turn around to the right.
4. Walk back toward the obstacle, stepping over it with the prosthesis first on the return.
5. Continue walking back to the chair, turn, and sit down.
6. Rise to standing once again and repeat the entire sequence until you have done it a total of × number of times.

The original task of stepping onto the stool with the right foot has been embedded into a series of different (but somewhat related) tasks performed in the same order over multiple trials.

Another way to classify practice is by the relative period of time spent in active practice versus rest time between practice sessions. In conditions of *massed practice*, there is more time spent over a practice trial than there is rest time between trials. Massed practice often increases intensity level. Fatigue may be a factor in decreases in performance over repeated practice sessions if rest periods are insufficient. In conditions of *distributed practice,* the amount of practice time is less than or equal to the amount of rest time between trials.[140,182] Given evidence of better retention and transfer of skills with longer rest periods between practice trials (i.e., distributed practice), rest appears to be more than a period of physical recovery; it may also enhance consolidation of perceptual schemas and action rules associated with the skill that has been practiced into memory.[211] What is not yet understood is how much practice time and how much rest is optimal for tasks of different complexity or learners with various resources or impairments.

PART- VERSUS WHOLE-TASK TRAINING

Many functional tasks have sequential, recognizable subcomponents. The task of rising from a chair, for example, may require moving forward toward the edge of the seat, changing foot position, leaning forward to shift body weight from the ischial tuberosities toward the feet, lifting off the seat, accelerating quickly upward into standing, and then establishing postural control in the upright position.[212] The task of walking can be divided into stages including weight acceptance in early stance, stability during single-limb stance, preparation for swing at the end of stance, and initiation through completion of limb advancement during swing phase.[213] When the physical therapists are working with individuals who have neurologic, neuromuscular, or musculoskeletal related movement dysfunction, they often use task analysis to determine what subcomponents of the task are problematic. The therapist might opt to practice the problematic components of the task to build skill before attempting the entire task *(part-to-whole training)* or to practice the entire task repeatedly *(whole-task training)*. In partial task training, the task is divided into separate parts, and each part is explained or modeled as a distinct component of the whole, whereas in whole-task training the entire task is explained verbally or modeled (demonstrated) in its entirety from beginning to end. The decision to structure training as part versus whole is influenced by the level of difficulty of the task, the degree to which the individual has already mastered some of the task's components, the individual's ability to attend to the task, his or her level of motivation and frustration, and safety considerations as the task is attempted. Tasks that are serial in nature lend themselves in part-to-whole training; spending time practicing complex or difficult task components (ending the session by putting all of the components together to perform

the whole task) often leads to better retention and transfer than the same amount of time spent practicing the entire task.[182,213,214] Tasks that are continuous, such as carrying a tray while walking through a cafeteria, are not as easily separated into components because of the degree of coordination and interplay necessary among task components. When coordination, timing, and interaction must be learned, whole-task training appears to be more efficacious.[182,214,215]

RELATIONSHIPS: PRACTICE, RETENTION, AND TRANSFER

The effectiveness of the various practice conditions on motor learning has been the subject of many studies in psychology, movement science, and rehabilitation. As the evidence that these studies present to us is considered (to determine their clinical relevance and possible application), it is important to note the specific outcome of practice that is being investigated. Are the researchers focused on change in quality of performance during practice trials (i.e., skill acquisition within a session) or in carryover of understanding of the task from one practice session to another (i.e., postpractice performance or retention over time)? This distinction is particularly important for rehabilitation professionals to keep in mind.

How, then, do rehabilitation professionals determine whether the interventions they have implemented have resulted in effective motor learning and skill development? Rather than focusing on improvement in a single session, we look instead at the development of *automaticity* and the ability to adapt performance across sessions and circumstances. Although performance over repeated trials within a practice session is often observed, this is not a reliable indicator that motor learning has occurred. Consistency in motor behavior (as the product of the learning process) across sessions and over time suggests that there has been *retention* (consolidation), or a relatively permanent change in motor behavior. The ability to *transfer* what has been learned and apply the set of movement options across situations appears to be related to the opportunity to practice under a variety of environment conditions and constraints.

Scientists who study motor learning hypothesize that individuals who develop flexible learning strategies through random practice and whole-task training are better able to transfer learned skills to novel situations. This is critical for the individuals we care for, who will ultimately need to perform skills beyond the rehabilitation practice environment (rehabilitation settings) as they return to the real-world environment of their homes and community. This concept links back to self-efficacy for performing the skill when necessary in the typical routine of daily function.[11] Keeping this in mind, rehabilitation professionals need to carefully consider and choose the practice conditions that will lead to the best possible functional outcomes for individuals for whom they care.

Intrinsic and Extrinsic Feedback

A second key concept in motor learning paradigms centers on the provision of feedback during practice trials (Box 3.3).[216] As movement occurs, it generates *intrinsic (inherent) feedback* that the CNS (especially the cerebellum as a system interested in coordination and error control) compares with the sensation that it "anticipates"

Box 3.3 Definitions for Feedback in Motor Learning

Basic Definitions

- Intrinsic (inherent): Sensations generated by movement of the body itself, monitored by sensory receptors (exteroception, proprioception, vestibular, visual, auditory), and transmitted to the brain stem and brain via sensory pathways.
- Extrinsic (augmented): Information provided about the movement task by sources external to the individual who is moving. Extrinsic feedback can be provided by another individual (e.g., the therapist or coach), or by an external device (e.g., biofeedback, other types of signals) that would not necessarily be present during usual performance of the task. It can be provided before, during, or after movement.

Dimensions of Extrinsic Feedback

- Knowledge of performance (KP): Information about the quality of the movement, provided during or following performance.
- Knowledge of results (KR): Information about the outcome (success) of the movement or task, provided after it has been completed.

Variations of Extrinsic Feedback

- "Feedforward": Prompts or clues provided prior to movement to assist the learner's active engagement in problem solving or preparation for the motor task.
- Concurrent: KP information about the movement provided as it occurs.
- Terminal: KP or KR information provided after the movement task has been completed. This can be provided either as soon as the movement is finished (immediate) or after a period of time (delayed).
- Distinct: KP or KR information about one specific practice trial.
- Accumulated (summary): KP or KR information that reflects multiple attempts to perform the task or movement.

Channels Used for Extrinsic Feedback

- Verbal: Questions or statements made by the therapist or coach about the movement.
- Nonverbal: Gestures and facial expressions made by the therapist or coach; touch or guidance used to direct or redirect attention or movement; lights, whistles, or other sounds used to guide or influence the learning during or following the movement.

Timing for Extrinsic Feedback

- Consistent (100%): KR or KP distinct information provided after every practice trial.
- Reduced (50%, 33%, 25%): KR or KP distinct or summary information provided after every other, every third, or every fourth practice trial.
- For poor trials: Providing feedback for trials with large errors during practice.
- For good trials: Providing feedback for trials with relatively small or few errors during a practice trial.

(feedforward) will or should result from the movement. *Extrinsic (augmented) feedback* refers to information about the movement performance that is provided by an external source before, during, or after the movement. If rehabilitation professionals understand the "what, when, why, and how" of extrinsic feedback (and combine them with appropriately structured practice), they will be much more effective in facilitating motor learning as well as the individual's ability to solve problems or adapt a motor skill. Rehabilitation professionals must determine what type of information is most appropriate (KP or KR) for the individual they are working with as well as how and when the feedback would best be provided (feedback mode and schedule).

To initiate a therapy session, the therapist may ask an individual how he or she might approach a functional motor problem and what they expect will happen when they are performing a task: for example, "We're going to practice moving from the bed to the chair. How can you prepare to do this? What is the first thing you need to do? Are you ready to do it?" This provides extrinsic augmented *feedforward* information aimed at engaging the person in the exploration of probable solutions for the initial steps of the transfer task. If the therapist asks the person to assess what he or she felt or experienced during the performance, they are providing *concurrent* extrinsic feedback. If the therapist asks or comments on performance after the task is completed, he or she is providing *terminal* extrinsic feedback. Therapists provide extrinsic feedback, sometimes without careful thought, in each intervention encounter when they say "Good job!" or "Did that work out the way you expected?" or "What might you do differently next time you try this?" In providing extrinsic information, the therapist calls the person's attention to and enhances the use of intrinsically generated feedback (or sometimes the substitution of an alternative source of information in the presence of sensory impairment).

KNOWLEDGE OF PERFORMANCE AND KNOWLEDGE OF RESULTS

Extrinsic information can provide the individual who is learning a new motor strategy or skill with either KR, information about the outcome of the movement (i.e., whether it was successful), or KP, information about the quality or execution of the movement (accuracy of the performance).[216] Much of the research on feedback in motor learning has focused on KR (outcome); however, in rehabilitation, we often use KP (quality; e.g., "Do you think that you were leaning far enough forward as you began to stand up?") to help individuals recognize and respond to movement errors.

Evidence in the literature suggests that, although KR does not necessarily lead to better performance during practice conditions, this type of augmented feedback information contributes to better task performance during retention tests.[141,216] The individual learning a new skill may benefit most by considering whether he or she has accomplished a movement goal (KR), especially in the early and middle stages of motor learning, rather than how accurately or efficiently the goal was attained (KP). This correlates with supporting the psychologic needs of the patient through celebration of the patient's progress and attention to the patient's success (KR).[11] Early on, details about quality of performance may interfere with the individual's developing understanding of the nature of the task and ability to sort through possible strategies that might be used. In later stages of motor learning, when focus shifts to refinement or improved precision of performance, KP is a more appropriate and powerful form of feedback information as long as the task is consistently accomplished.[217] It appears that augmented and intrinsic KP feedback lead to better quality and consistency of performance during practice but perhaps to less accurate performance in retention tests.[173,216] Although KP may not enhance retention as much as hoped, it has been found to be both effective and necessary in the acquisition of complex motor tasks as compared with mastery of simple motor tasks.[217,218] Use of KR to support a patient's self-efficacy may lead to more frequent use of the skill in multiple settings, enhancing activity and participation levels of functioning.

How and When Should Feedback Be Used?

Another thread within the motor learning research literature explores the efficacy of different frequencies and timing in the provision of augmented information. Providing too much anticipatory prompting before initiation of the task or excessive feedback as the task proceeds and is completed can actually be detrimental to the learning process. Frequent KR-focused feedback, provided on almost each trial of the task, often contributes to dependence on external guidance and ultimately degrades performance on retention tests. Summarized KR-focused feedback given at infrequent intervals (after multiple trials) appears to improve performance during practice as well as on retention testing.[219–221] Delaying the timing of KR appears to have a positive effect on performance during practice and on retention tests. Providing feedback after trials that are relatively successful appears to enhance motor learning more than when trials are full of error.[222–224] Researchers have noted that KR, like random practice and whole training methods, better prepares individuals for adapting motor performance to changing environmental demands, resulting in better performance on retention tests. These findings are consistent across individuals with no neurologic impairment; adults with stroke, head injury, and Parkinson disease; children with cerebral palsy and developmental delay; and persons with mild cognitive impairment and early dementia.[225–230] There is gathering evidence that allowing individuals to pace or control feedback frequency also has a beneficial impact on the retention (effectiveness) of what has been learned.[231–233]

What Modality for Feedback Is Appropriate?

Extrinsic feedback (augmented information) can be provided in a number of ways, using the visual system (e.g., demonstration and modeling, targets and other visual cues); the auditory system (e.g., informational verbal prompts or questions, use of tone of voice); and the somatosensory-tactile systems (e.g., manual contacts, tapping/sweeping motions, compression of limb segments to cue stability response, traction/elongation of limb segments to cue mobility, appropriate resistance to guide movement).

Early in the motor learning process, therapists judiciously use all three modalities, keeping in mind that early stages of motor learning are periods of experimentation and trial/error as the individual becomes familiar with the nature of the task and develops strategies that lead to accomplishment of the task. Although it is tempting to explicitly direct and "tell" someone with movement dysfunction how to move more efficiently, prompting by using questions often can more effectively engage the individual in an active learning process. Active engagement in the problem-solving aspect of the activity is a key motivator.[11] It appears that certain tasks are more responsive to particular modalities of feedback than others.[234,235] In persons with stroke, for example, visual feedback about weight distribution is useful for balance activities and auditory feedback about force production positively affects learning the sit-to-stand transition; the efficacy of verbal and kinesthetic feedback is not as well understood.[236,237]

Music and rhythm are frequently used in rehabilitation of gait for persons with Parkinson disease. Recent research suggests that the rhythmic variation fundamental to Argentine tango is an especially useful mode of extrinsic feedback for persons with Parkinson disease, requiring on-the-spot responses to variable stimuli. Outcomes have been positive for balance, functional mobility, and Parkinson-specific motor symptoms using Argentine tango as an intervention.[238–240] Recent research investigates rhythmic cueing further in the form of self-generated rhythm through singing aloud while walking. Results show decreased gait variability for people with Parkinson disease who sing aloud while walking.[241]

Simple tasks appear to be learned more easily following demonstration or physical practice with or without KP-focused feedback. The learning of more cognitively and motorically complex tasks, on the other hand, benefited from a combination of demonstration and practice with KP feedback.[237] Many previous studies suggest that an *external focus* of attention (success or quality of the movement) has a more beneficial effect on motor learning than an internal (kinesthetic) focus of attention during practice.[242–245] However, recent work suggests that focused attention is another key motivator and factor to increase motor learning.[11] Perhaps *prompting* a patient to pay close attention to internal kinesthetic cues is a good method to combine proven elements of previous and newer studies.

As individuals move into the later stages of motor learning, therapists must be aware of the need to wean the amount and frequency of augmented information as the individual moves toward becoming adept at the task. In the final stages of motor learning, augmented information becomes less and less essential or effective as mastery of the motor task is achieved.

Using Normative Feedback

There is increasing evidence that providing information that is normative (social-comparative, social relatedness) has a positive impact on motor learning.[11,242] Providing feedback that suggests that the individual is doing as well or better than others in similar situations, when paired with KR information about outcomes of the individual's actual practice, appears to improve trial-to-trial performance as well as retention.[246,247] Making a statement at the start of a therapy session focused on a difficult motor task indicating that persons facing similar challenges typically do well and are able to master the task with practice enhances the individual's expectations of their own ability (self-efficacy) and reduces anxiety associated with risk of failure; this enhances motor learning as well.[248]

Mental Practice and Imagery

Another resource available to assist the process of motor learning is the incorporation of mental practice and imagery into therapeutic interventions. Mental practice is defined as the imagined execution of a task-related movement without actual movement or muscle activation.[249] Mental practice of a motor task is thought to activate the same areas and networks of the CNS that actual movement does, especially if the task has been previously practiced.[249,250] Growing evidence in both the human performance and rehabilitation literature indicates that mental practice and the use of imagery enhance learning effects of physical practice and improve motor performance and retention.[251–253] Mental practice and motor imagery that focus on ease and quality of movement have been found to be particularly helpful in acquisition of motor skills in persons recovering from acute and chronic stroke.[253–255]

Imagery and mental practice appear to have a more powerful influence on improving performance during skill acquisition; their impact on retention of skills is not as well understood. This has implications for application to practice in therapeutic settings. Given high-volume patient caseloads and the realities of multiple patients per therapist during sessions, mental imagery can be an effective tool for maintaining the involvement of the client in the activity even when the therapist is attending to other patients.

Role of Sleep in Motor Learning

Newly acquired motor memory becomes more stable (more resistant to disruption or interference) during sleep.[256] The procedural memory consolidation process appears to reduce the need for neocortical (prefrontal lobe) input into the neuronal representation of the movement, making it easier to recall the movement and increasing efficacy of retention.[257] Although early research suggested that consolidation during sleep actually improved learning (offline learning) and enhanced motor performance, more recent work proposes that it instead provides protection against forgetting by counteracting both physical and neuronal fatigue associated with practice.[258,259] Whichever perspective will prove to be accurate, it appears that sleep is a key component in the motor learning process.

The positive effect of sleep on the retention of newly learned skills appears to be true for motor skills that have been physically practiced as well as those reinforced by mental imagery both in persons who are healthy and in those with a pathologic condition of the CNS.[260,261] The opportunity for uninterrupted overnight sleep for offline consolidation of motor memory is a key component of the rehabilitation process for persons with stroke.[262,263] Individuals with prefrontal lobe damage (e.g., after traumatic brain injury), who typically are quite challenged by novel motor tasks presented during rehabilitation, appear to benefit significantly from

the opportunity for offline learning and memory consolidation that occurs during a night of sound sleep.[263]

However, sleep disturbances are quite common for people with traumatic brain injury (TBI) and mild traumatic brain injury/concussion (mTBI). These sleep problems lead to symptom exacerbations and difficulties participating in rehabilitation.[264,265] Animal model research suggests that sleep deprivation effects neuroplastic processes negatively, which could further affect functional motor recovery for those with TBI who are experiencing sleep disorders.[265] A coordinated interdisciplinary approach is needed to effectively treat sleep disorders so that persons with TBI or mTBI can benefit optimally from rehabilitation treatments. Rehabilitation professionals should pay particular attention to the sleep habits of clients who have TBI or mTBI and coexistent posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD). This is common in war veterans. Sleep problems are a diagnostic feature of PTSD, and veterans with PTSD commonly experience sleep problems at a rate much higher than that of veterans without PTSD.[264] For best outcomes, motor learning interventions for these individuals will likely need to occur along with an interdisciplinary strategy that addresses sleep disturbances.

Importance of Patient/Client-Centered Goals

Rehabilitation goals focus on improving an individual's ability to participate in meaningful activities. One aspect of the motor learning process that is often taken for granted is the salience of the task to the learner; therapists may assume that the goals they have developed for a given patient (e.g., to walk 150 feet safely and efficiently using an assistive device and a prosthesis or orthosis) are consistent with the goals of the individual with whom they are working, when in fact there may be a mismatch.[266,267] Emerging evidence suggests that focusing on the tasks that are most meaningful to the individual enhances motivation and attention, necessary components of the motor learning process as well as facilitators of neural plasticity and recovery after brain injury.[11,268,269] A sense of empowerment and increasing self-efficacy contributes to efficacy of learning when an individual works toward a goal that is particularly meaningful to him or her.[11,270–273]

How does a rehabilitation professional help an individual identify salient personal goals and use these goals to inform the design of appropriate opportunities for motor learning (Fig. 3.9)? Framing goals at the level of activity and participation is the first step.[274] The next is to ensure that stated goals reflect consensus (as much as possible) of the patient and the health professional.[275] Such consensus is a key influence on the relationship between the patient and the health professional; being "on the same page" creates a level of trust that provides a solid foundation for risking failure in the rehabilitation learning environment.[275] Goals for motor learning are most effective if they reflect both expertise of the therapist and expectations of the individual beginning rehabilitation; at times, reaching consensus requires patient and family education as well as negotiation about priorities.[276–278] Effectively defined goals are (1) specifically related to the task to be accomplished or mastered; (2) measurable (i.e., use quantifiable metrics of distance, time, effort or difficulty, and frequency of performance); (3) ambitious yet achievable within the forecasted episode of care; (4) relevant, realistic, and congruent with the individual's potential and expectations; and (5) those that include a time line for achievement.[278] Establishing clearly stated and measurable goals provides a framework for assessment of outcomes of interventions as well as the revision or progression of activities that will further improve functional capacity and the individual's ability to participate in meaningful activity. Such attention to the early establishment of functional goals has been found to have a positive effect on outcomes of rehabilitation for children with cerebral palsy and persons with spinal cord injury, stroke, and traumatic brain injury.[279–284]

NEURAL PLASTICITY IN MOTOR CONTROL AND MOTOR LEARNING

Rehabilitation professionals are on the cusp of significant expansion in the understanding of the neurobiologic/physiologic basis of recovery after neurologic and neuromuscular injury.[285,286] The developing science suggests that we can use our understanding of motor control and motor learning to *drive neural plasticity* in both acute and chronic stages of many neurologic and neuromuscular diseases.[287–290] Learning-induced neuroplasticity involves three processes: (1) strengthening existing neural connections, (2) stimulating the formation of new neural connections, and (3) preferentially selecting neural connections and pathways, which is known as *pruning*.[46,159,160] This science also challenges us to reevaluate whether our interventions are sufficient—in terms of therapeutic approach, intensity, and duration—to trigger the neuroplastic changes that will improve function and quality of life.[291–293]

The term *neural plasticity* refers to the dynamic ability of the brain to structurally and functionally reorganize neural circuits in response to activity and environmental demand: such plasticity occurs during development in children, during adulthood as one masters new motor skills and builds knowledge base, as well as after any type of brain injury or insult.[288,293] Plasticity is driven by (i.e., is dependent on) the process of learning, whether it be focused on new knowledge or skills or relearning of skills disrupted by illness or injury. Although the mechanisms underlying neuroplastic change are not fully understood, exposure to learning opportunities of sufficient intensity and duration contributes to remapping of motor, perceptual, and communication areas within the brain.[288–291,294] Early in rehabilitation, as the effects of inflammation and edema associated with CNS infarct or injury diminish, therefore activity-based interventions may help to revive and restore function in neural structures that were initially compromised; this is *neural recovery*.[295] In addition to plasticity in the brain. New evidence suggests that activity-dependent plasticity was also seen in the spinal cord below the level of lesion in patients with spinal cord injury.[296] Even if there is potential for neural recovery, at times the effort required to activate recovering neural circuits is intensely difficult and frustrating. Without encouragement and opportunity to practice, function may continue to be compromised because of *learned nonuse* of a body part.[297] As rehabilitation progresses, continued activity-based interventions may facilitate the recruitment of intact neighboring neural

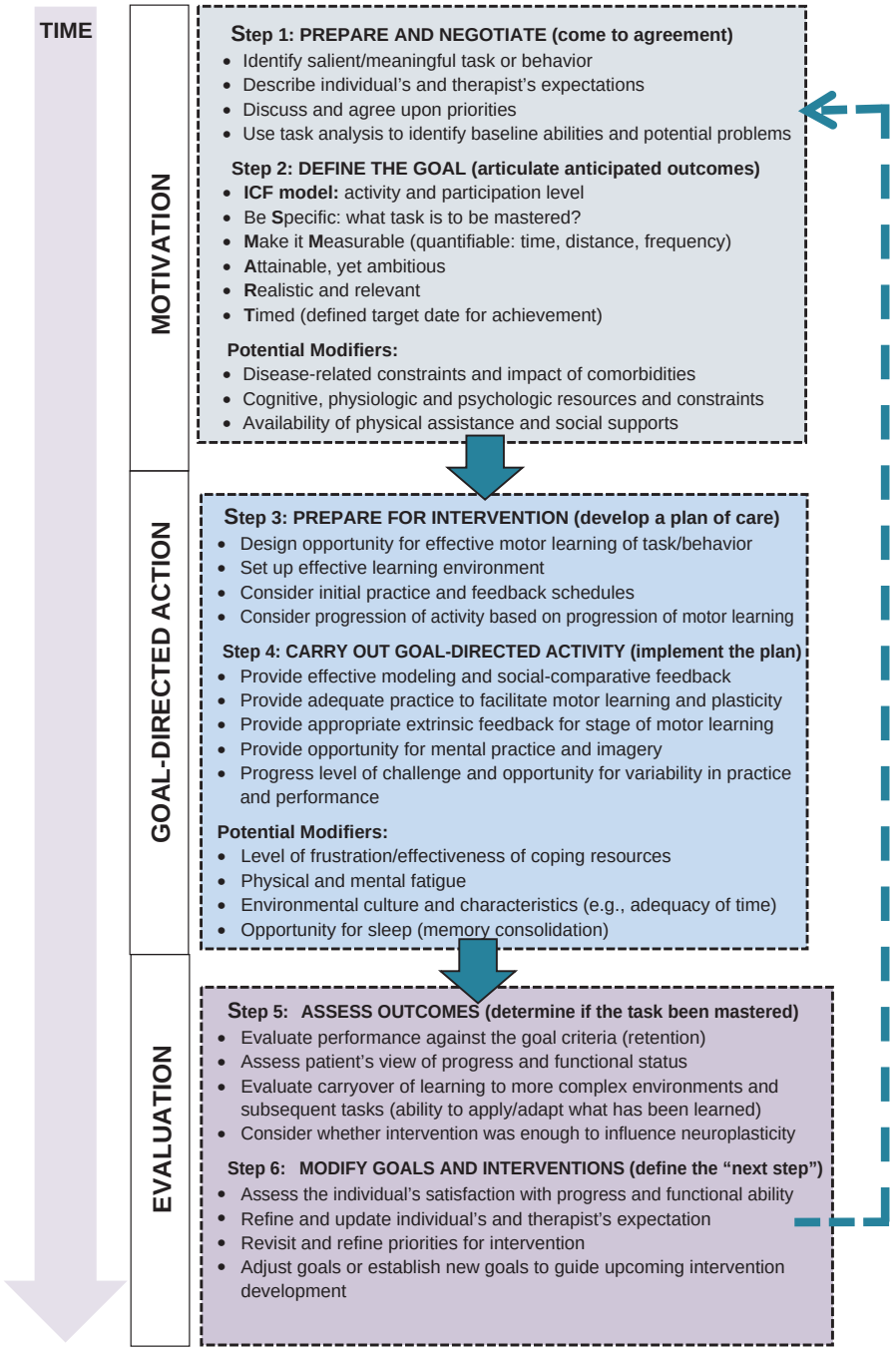


Fig. 3.9 A patient-centered model for setting goals for the effective motivation and facilitation of motor learning in rehabilitation. Initial efforts focus on building consensus between patient and therapist on the establishment of appropriate meaningful goals and on the articulation of such goals so that they can be later used to assess outcomes. Given understanding of motor learning, motor control, neuroplasticity, and recovery of function, the therapist then designs and implements task-specific, goal-directed rehabilitation interventions. Both the patient and therapist use agreed-upon goals as markers of efficacy of intervention; they modify or progress therapeutic activities and practice based on achievement of the goals.

structures to supplement the function of damaged brain structures. Even though this is actually a mechanism of *neural compensation*, it may be perceived by the individual, family, and rehabilitation professional as *functional recovery* at the International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF) levels of body function and activity.[288] If brain injury has been so extensive that alternative ways of performing key functional tasks is necessary, retraining leads to *functional compensation*.[288]

Medical management of newly injured or compromised brains has traditionally focused on preventing or limiting secondary sequelae that result from insult, whether traumatic, ischemic, infectious.[163] Although evolving pharmacologic or interventional strategies (e.g., transcranial stimulation) now target recovery of function, rehabilitation based on principles of motor learning is currently the most powerful facilitator or neural plasticity.[287,298,299] The behavioral, sensory/perceptual, and cognitive aspects of functional and skilled movement appear to effectively trigger neuroplastic processes in damaged brains in ways similar to what occurs in developing brains.[287]

Kleim and Jones[287] have developed a set of 10 principles that translates current best evidence about experience-dependent neural plasticity from animal and human basic science studies to inform development of motor learning-based interventions for clinical rehabilitation practice. New evidence from multiple authors adds weight to these principles.[300–302] A recent study by

Table 3.2 Principles of Experience-Dependent, Use-Dependent, and Activity-Based Neural Plasticity

Principle	Description
Use it or lose it	Failure to drive specific brain functions can lead to functional degradation.
Use it and improve it	Training that drives a specific brain function can lead to enhancement of that function.
Specificity	The nature of the training experience dictates the nature of the plasticity.
Repetition matters	Induction of plasticity requires high levels of repetition.
Intensity matters	Induction of plasticity requires high-intensity training.
Time matters	Different forms of plasticity occur at different times during training.
Exercise matters	Different forms of plasticity occur with exercise prior to and following training.
Salience matters	The training experience must be sufficiently salient to induce plasticity.
Age matters	Training-induced plasticity occurs more readily in younger brains.
Transference	Plasticity in response to one training experience can enhance the acquisition of similar behaviors.
Interference	Plasticity in response to one experience can interfere with acquisition of other behaviors.
Success reinforcement	Both internal reinforcement and external validation of success are necessary.

From Mang CS, Campbell KL, Ross CJD, Boyd LA. Promoting neuroplasticity for motor rehabilitation after stroke: considering the effects on aerobic exercise and genetic variation on brain-derived neurotrophic factor. *Phys Ther.* 2013;93(12):1707–1716; Milton JG, Small SS, Solodkin A. On the way to automatic: dynamic aspects in the development of expertise. *J Clin Neurophysiol.* 2004;21(3):134–143; and Landers M. Treatment-induced neuroplasticity following focal injury to the motor cortex. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2004;27(1):1–5.

Mawase et al. demonstrates that task success reinforcement is an additional principle to consider (Table 3.2).[303] Discussion of each principle follows.

Use It or Lose It

Basic science research has clearly demonstrated that impaired performance and eventual loss of skill and ability is likely if neural circuits are not consistently activated by functional activity. This is the underlying assumption of the learned nonuse theory that forms the foundation for constraint-induced therapy targeting upper extremity use for adults and children with hemiplegia.[304,305] A similar principle has been described as an explanation for decline in muscle performance and endurance associated with a sedentary lifestyle and bed rest.[306] Early in rehabilitation, individuals with CNS dysfunction or disease may discover compensatory or alternative movement strategies that are less difficult or frustrating, given their altered brain function and the resulting paresis or altered muscle tone.[12] Moving differently also impacts muscle performance and flexibility, making development of secondary impairments more likely. Thus, over time, not only does neural circuitry necessary for normal movement degrade, but also the individual's physical resources for movement change. Both of these factors reinforce the altered or abnormal movement pattern and the loss of premorbid skill and activity.

Use It and Improve It

Animal models consistently show that, in both nonimpaired and impaired circumstances, consistent or extended training induces cortical plasticity as evidenced by reorganization of cortical motor and sensory mapping and synaptogenesis.[307] The expectation is that behavioral experience will optimize neural plasticity in humans as well.[290] Participating in extended training (i.e., practice, experience) of specific skills and functions enhances performance in areas of the brain associated with those functions; this is the outcome expectation for constraint-induced therapy and task-specific paradigms used in stroke, brain injury, and spinal cord injury rehabilitation programs.[304,308,309]

Specificity Is Significant

In humans, the acquisition of particular motor skills (e.g., finger tapping) through physical practice leads to changes in neural activity only in particular areas of the motor cortex and cerebellum (e.g., areas mapped to hand and fingers) as evidenced on functional magnetic imaging.[310] This demonstrates that the training experience that leads to acquisition of a specific behavioral skill determines the resulting type and extent of plasticity. Task-specific training has been evaluated extensively as an intervention for recovery of upper extremity function and of locomotion after stroke.[311,312] It is important to note, however, that neuroplastic changes associated with training of one skill does not necessarily contribute to improvement in other skills or changes in other areas of the brain. Nonskilled movement appears to have little, if any, impact on neural plasticity.

Repetition, Repetition, Repetition

One successful performance of a motor task does not mean that the task has been skillfully mastered. In motor learning, evidence of mastery is the transition to automaticity.[113,174] An individual moves toward automaticity only after many practice sessions. Sufficient repetition of new or relearned behaviors is necessary for neuroplastic changes to become well established.[186] The underlying assumption is that the outcome of such repetition is the establishment of neural circuitry that makes the effectively learned behavior less likely to decay over time when practice is infrequent.[287] The role of repetition for driving learning and neural plasticity is a critical one. Body weight–supported treadmill (TM) training is designed to provide opportunity for repeated practice of locomotion that would not be possible in overground walking early in rehabilitation after stroke and spinal cord injury.[313,314] TM training has the added benefit of inducing cardiopulmonary/cardiovascular fitness, adding to overall resources for movement available to the individual whose CNS dysfunction may carry an associated secondary risk of deconditioning.

Intensity Is Important

In persons without brain injury, training intensity (dose, number of repetitions, number of practice sessions) influences both degree and stability of the neuroplastic change induced by practice.[287] Both constraint-induced therapy for upper extremity rehabilitation and TM training for the recovery of locomotion are high-intensity interventions. Although the optimal "dosage" for rehabilitation intervention is not well defined and may differ across diagnoses, it is clear that outcomes of intervention are influenced by dose, with high-intensity programs having the largest effect.[315] Intensity includes a high number of repetitions and high frequency of practice sessions.[183,300] Current rehabilitation practice models do not always provide the number of repetitions or dose intensity that might be necessary to induce neural plasticity and cortical reorganization.[316] Much of the research on intensity of intervention has involved persons who are medically stable and in the chronic period after their neurologic event. These individuals appear to tolerate intense interventions with little adverse consequence. What is not well understood, however, is whether there may be sensitivity to overuse in newly injured brains that is detrimental after a threshold level of repetitions is exceeded.[287,317] In the absence of guidelines about level intensity for persons with recent CNS insult, careful monitoring for signs of activity intolerance of the brain and body (e.g., fatigue, irritability, distractibility, change in attention or alertness, as well as a greater-than-anticipated decrement in performance, among others) may assist the therapist in keeping the intensity of intervention within safe ranges.

Time and Timing

There are many molecular, cellular, structural, and physiologic contributors to the process of neuroplasticity; the relationships and timing of changes at each of these levels continues to be explored.[287] Consolidation of motor memory, for example, requires "offline" time after practice for a newly learned skill to be effectively retained.[299] As in development, there may be windows of opportunity within the typical pattern of recovery when interventions targeting neuroplasticity are likely to be most effective.[317,318] Delaying intervention (or providing intervention at suboptimal levels of intensity) may allow abnormal compensatory movement patterns to become established, thus rendering rehabilitation less effective.[287] Certainly, there is much more investigation needed regarding when neuroplasticity focused rehabilitation intervention would be best implemented during the course of recovery following CNS insult.

Salience Is Substantial

Even a well-practiced activity will not successfully induce neural plasticity unless the individual perceives it to be as meaningful and important. Motivation, attention, and the ability to learn are influenced by the relevance of and perception of potential reward associated with a movement task.[319,320] Participation in rehabilitation interventions modeled on motor learning in the context of neural plasticity requires considerable investment and effort on the part of the patient. If the goal and level of effort needed to achieve it outweigh the perceived potential benefits or rewards of participation, is it any wonder that little will be accomplished in terms of skill development or facilitation of neural plasticity? It is essential that there be discussion and, optimally, consensus between the individual and the therapist about the likelihood of improved functional performance at a level that the individual perceives as valuable and important as a result of intervention. Increased motivation is noted in patients who are allowed some choice and control over interventions and when collaboration with the therapist is embedded into treatment planning.[11] Attention to task and intrinsic motivation strengthen learning when individual goals are connected to tasks.[300] Salience (meaningfulness) appears to impact motor learning and recovery via the cholinergic system of the basal forebrain.[321]

Considering the Life Span

Although the brain is clearly most "plastic" in early life—during periods of rapid motor, perceptual, and cognitive development—the brains of older adults continue to be responsive to experience-driven catalysts of neural plasticity.[322–324] Rich physical, emotional, and cognitive experiences over the life span appear to protect the older individual against decrements in brain function typically thought to be the result of aging.[325,326] There are differences in the process of motor learning and neural plasticity, however, at both ends of the life span. Children may require longer periods of practice and a more gradual reduction in frequency of feedback for effective motor learning than adults to effect neuroplastic change and the consolidation of newly learned skills.[327] Older adults also require longer periods of practice and increased number of repetitions, especially when they are attempting to replace competing compensatory movement strategies after CNS insult.[328] When such individuals are compared with younger adults, the efficacy of the motor learning process (and by extension, neural plasticity) appears to be somewhat less for older adults in both acquisition and retention of skilled sequential movements and retention.[329] This may be associated with age-related declines in visuospatial working memory and of attentional focus.[330] Increased age in patients with Parkinson disease appeared to be a factor for citing more barriers to exercise than younger patients with similar diagnosis.[302] Nevertheless, older adults with stroke and other CNS diseases do respond to appropriately targeted complex motor skill training, demanding environmental contexts and exercise interventions in both the acquisition and reinforcement of skilled movement.[313,331–333]

Transference

Kleim and Jones[287] describe transference as the ability of plastic changes in one set of neural circuits to enhance concurrent or future neuroplastic changes in other neuronal circuits. Adding repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation to physical practice of salient motor skills appears to enhance acquisition and retention of motor skills and promote more extensive return of function during acute and chronic stages while a person is recovering from a stroke.[334,335] Animal studies suggest that living and functioning in complex enriched environments may also

potentiate neuroplastic changes in the cortex after brain injury.[336] In humans, both enriched environments and physical exercise appear to have a potentiating neuroplastic effect on the damaged brain, brain stem, cerebellum, and spinal cord, contributing to angiogenesis mediated by the release of brain-derived neurotrophic factors during activity.[337,338] Repetitive physical activity and exercise during rehabilitation has the potential to enhance neural plasticity and to improve muscle performance and cardiovascular/cardiopulmonary conditioning.

Interference

Just as some neuroplastic changes enable reorganization in the process of transference, they also may block, interfere with, or otherwise impede operation or reorganization of other circuits, with a negative impact on the ability to learn.[287] Kleim and Jones[287] define interference as the ability of plasticity in a particular neural circuit to impede the generation of novel circuits or enactment of established circuits. How does this translate into rehabilitation? The clearest example is the detrimental impact that self-discovered compensatory movement strategies (a neuroplastic change in which persons with stroke have learned to move functionally using alternate movement strategies) have on learning more effective strategies of movement during therapy.[339,340] This interference has also been demonstrated in persons with acute or chronic pain who have learned to move in ways that avoid discomfort but are not kinematically effective and are associated with likelihood of additional dysfunction.[341,342]

Neuroplastic interference as described by Kleim and Jones[287] is a different concept than the contextual interference that occurs during random practice discussed earlier in the chapter as a facilitator of motor learning. Contextual interference occurs as a result of the need to keep many options that might solve a motor problem available in working memory over time.[182,203] The increased attentional demand associated with contextual interference appears to augment, rather than interfere with, the learning (and hence the neuroplastic) process.[208–210] From a motor learning perspective, neuroplastic interference might occur if the type of practice or feedback provided during a rehabilitation session is not appropriate for a learner's specific needs or characteristics.[343,344] Another example of neuroplastic interference might be the impact of learning of an additional novel complex motor task soon after practice of a newly learned complex motor task; having little offline time may interfere with motor memory consolidation of the newly learned task.[345,346]

A history of trauma can add an additional layer of neuroplastic interference when people are trying to reestablish normal motor control. Recent understanding of brain function includes a model of the brain as a predictive processor, continually comparing hypotheses about sensory input to actual input.[347] In persons with FMD, learning is negatively affected because of the influence of priors, or past trauma, on the active inference process. "Top-down" predictions about "bottom-up" sensory input become invalid; there is a failure of inference.[347] The resulting movement does not match neuroanatomic or physiologic constraints and looks as if it were purposeful. However, the person with FMD self-reports an absence of agency related to the movement.[50] The rehabilitation professional is challenged with selecting the best task, environment, and feedback to promote the reestablishment of normal motor control. Because FMD requires attention to manifest, current literature recommends diverting attention away from the motor task in question during rehabilitation interventions.[50,52]

Task Success Reinforcement

One additional principle has been identified by Mowase et al. in a 2017 study.[303] When a person receives internal reinforcement through successful performance of a newly learned motor task during trials, plasticity changes occur in the motor cortex. This was termed "use-dependent plasticity" (UDP). UDP was noted significantly more in participants who experienced success reinforcement than in those who did not.[303] This may suggest that successful performance during learning trials reinforces the learning, which in turn increases plasticity.

AEROBIC EXERCISE, NEUROPLASTICITY, AND NEUROPROTECTION

Exercise may be a rehabilitation professional's most potent tool for facilitating neural plasticity. Fitness (aerobic) exercise causes a cascade of events, at both molecular and cellular levels, that support the health and development of neural circuits.[348] This is thought to be due to the interplay of central and peripheral mechanisms supporting energy metabolism and homeostatis.[349,350] During and for a short time following a bout of aerobic exercise, the level of circulating neurotrophic factors increases and is more available for support of neuroplastic and neuroprotective changes in the brain.[46,348,351] Resistance (strengthening) exercise does not lead to the degree of increase in neurotrophic factors that aerobic exercise does.[352] Although rehabilitation professionals typically endorse aerobic exercise as a means of building functional capacity and activity tolerance, we may not be as aware of the role that aerobic exercise may play in readiness of the brain to learn. As was stated earlier in the chapter, exercise that happens immediately before motor task practice assists with improved detection and encoding of information relevant to the motor task, and exercise that happens immediately following motor task practice strengthens the motor memory process.[46] These are two powerful reasons that aerobic activity should be included in plans of care for all persons with CNS dysfunction as well as any individual who must develop new motor skills (e.g., learning to walk with a prosthesis).

Participation in TM training during rehabilitation after stroke or incomplete spinal cord injury enhances motor learning and neural plasticity in several ways: it is task-specific, provides repetitive practice at high dosage, builds cardiovascular/cardiopulmonary fitness, and (as a result) readies the brain for functional modification of neural circuits.[313,348] Aerobic fitness is associated with greater neuroplasticity and better cognitive performance in persons with multiple sclerosis.[353,354] There is growing evidence that aerobic exercise can enhance motor performance, improve quality of life, decrease caregiver burden,[355] and possibly slow progression of mobility impairment in persons

with Parkinson disease.[356–358] Current animal model research demonstrates upregulation of neurotrophic factors through aerobic exercise that may contribute to dopaminergic survival in those with Parkinson disease. It is not yet clear whether forced intensity of aerobic exercise provides more benefit than self-selected intensity in terms of sustained improvements in motor performance and function for persons with Parkinson disease.[359,360] A bout of fitness exercise appears to transiently improve cognitive function in older adults, and participation in habitual cardiovascular fitness training appears to have a neuroprotective effect on cognition and the ability to learn in later life.[361–363] The neuroplastic and neuroprotective effect of aerobic conditioning also appears to improve or stabilize cognitive function and learning in persons with mild cognitive impairment and dementia.[364–368]

Given current evidence about the ability of aerobic exercise to potentiate and protect brain health and function, rehabilitation programs that fail to incorporate a fitness or conditioning component may miss the opportunity to enhance motor learning and recovery of function. This applies to persons with neurologic problems as well as those who may be learning to use an orthosis or prosthesis as a result of neuromuscular and musculoskeletal impairment from trauma, overuse, or disease.

Application: Case Examples

The following case examples are presented as opportunities for readers to apply the information presented in this chapter. Readers are urged to take time to develop an appropriate plan of care/therapeutic intervention within the framework of the ICF model, using the interactive person-task-environment (systems model) framework of motor control and the context of the modified version of Gentile's Taxonomy of Movement Tasks presented in the chapter. Additionally readers are urged to consider the principles of exercise/activity-driven neuroplasticity, including relevant goal setting for engagement of the patient, practice conditions for appropriate intensity challenge, and feedback for effective motor learning/acquisition of skills and development of self-efficacy that have been discussed.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

The authors suggest that readers consider the following strategies and questions to guide their planning.

Functional Considerations

- What tasks or activities are most appropriate or important to address in developing a physical therapy plan of care for the individual described in the case? (Prioritize three or four tasks to be targeted by physical therapy intervention.)
- How can the therapist incorporate the goals and priorities of the person into the development of goals and plan of care to make it salient?
- Motor control considerations
- What resources/buffers and impairments/constraints does this individual bring to the situation? In what ways are these helpful or constraining, given the person's neuromotor and musculoskeletal condition, cognitive and emotional status, and level of fitness?
- What is the nature of the tasks that have been selected (stability, mobility, or quasimobility with or without object manipulation)? What are the foundational skills necessary to perform the task? What skills or abilities may be difficult, given the impairments/constraints described in the case? What skills are most feasible to improve to increase patient competence?
- Under what environmental conditions would this individual be best able to function at this time (closed/predictable versus open/variable)? In what type of environment does this individual need to be able to eventually function? How might you manipulate activities and environmental conditions to achieve function in the real environment to set an appropriate level of challenge?
- What is the emotional context of the environment? Can you manipulate the emotional context to facilitate better learning conditions? Does your patient require more "emotional press" to problem solve with you on the task? Does your patient require a stressful environmental context to be reduced to have an appropriate ready-to-learn context? Does the patient require encouragement and validation of success to increase confidence?
- How might you organize/prioritize a sequence of activities, using the modified Gentile's Taxonomy of Movement Tasks (stability/transitional/mobility), to prepare or progress the individual toward safe independent function in the least restrictive environment?

Motor Learning Issues

Identify the purpose of the task trials that will be designed by the therapist.

- Is this a task that needs to be acquired (or reacquired postamputation or postincidence), or is this a task that needs to be refined?
- At what stage of motor learning is the individual in relation to the defined task?
- Does the individual have an understanding or familiarity with the task, or is it completely novel?
- Is current task performance sufficient for the task to be functional?
- Is performance efficient or optimal?
- Is performance automated, and does it demonstrate desired variability? Can the individual use a variety of motor strategies to accomplish or address this task under changing environmental demands?
- Can this task be broken into discrete parts? Would it be better to practice the task as a whole? Why or why not?
- Is performance of a particular part of the task problematic (mechanics of the task, fluidity between the components of the task)?
- Is performance of the task as a whole problematic (completion, speed, endurance)?

- On the basis of your thoughts about the task trials, identify the best practice conditions for achieving the desired outcome.
- Is the primary goal of practice *retention (learning)* of motor behavior across practice sessions or *improving performance* within a practice session?
- Which practice condition or combination of practice conditions (blocked, random, or serial; massed or distributed; part- or whole-task training) would you use to assist retention of the skill? Why have you chosen these strategies?
- Which practice condition or combination of practice conditions (blocked, random, or serial; massed or distributed; part- or whole-task training) would assist improved performance *(competence)*? Why have you chosen these strategies?
- How might contextual interference influence the learning process?
- What type of augmented information should be included during practice of the tasks to achieve the desired outcome?
- What modes of information should be used for this individual (visual cues and demonstration, verbal prompting, physical prompt/facilitation)? Why has this augmented information strategy or combination of strategies been selected?
- What effect will the information have on the client's ability to recognize errors and self-correct motor behavior *(intrinsic feedback)*?
- What delivery scheme (KR or KP) should be used to provide augmented feedback?
- What is the anticipated effect of the selected delivery scheme (KR or KP) on retention versus performance of the motor skill being targeted?
- Can visual imagery or mental practice enhance the performance? What images would a rehabilitation professional want the client to visualize? What effect will imagery have on performance and on retention of the motor skill?
- What components can the client practice mentally? What effect will mental practice have on performance and on retention of the motor skill?
- How can the therapist incorporate understanding of neural plasticity into goal-directed activity and intervention? What strategies can be used to validate success and increase self-efficacy?
- Are the activities and tasks included in the plan of care sufficient in repetition and intensity to appropriately challenge the patient and influence neural plasticity?
- What evidence is available to guide decisions about potential windows of opportunity to time intervention for optimal neuroplastic effect in patients with similar diagnoses?
- How should the plan of care be influenced by the age of the patient in terms of facilitation of motor learning and neural plasticity?
- What additional medical interventions, environmental conditions, or principles of exercise can potentiate motor learning and neural plasticity for recovery of function?

Summary

This chapter explores the concepts that shape current understanding of human motor control, focusing on the dynamic and adaptive characteristics of the body as a biologic system. Rehabilitation professionals use their understanding of (1) an individual's resources and characteristics, (2) environmental conditions, and (3) the nature and constraints of functional tasks to develop appropriate interventions aimed at improving or adapting individuals' abilities to move effectively in ways that are safe and efficient in order to accomplish what is important for them to do.

The chapter also considers the process of motor learning, the ways in which individuals come to understand and approach a novel task or adapt a familiar task in differing environmental conditions or following an injury or illness that changes personal resources. Using their understanding of the stages of motor learning, the purpose of augmented information, types and timing of feedback/feedforward information, and types of practice conditions and other factors that enhance motor learning, physical therapists and other rehabilitation professionals can construct interventions that will effectively enhance the retention of motor learning or refine performance for persons with movement dysfunction.

The chapter concludes with a discussion of the emerging field of neuroplasticity, which links recovery of motor control and motor learning, considering rehabilitation as a mechanism to trigger neural plasticity and recovery of function after insult or injury to the CNS. As understanding of neuroplasticity grows, rehabilitation professionals must re-evaluate whether the interventions designed to enhance motor learning are sufficient to also drive neural plasticity and recovery of function for persons recovering from events and diseases that impact the structure and function of the brain.

Case Example 3.1 **Adult With Right Hemiparesis Who Is Learning to Use an Ankle-Foot Orthosis and Ambulatory Assistive Device**

A. F. is a slightly obese 78-year-old African American woman with a history of type 2 diabetes mellitus; she had an ischemic stroke of the left middle cerebral artery 3 weeks earlier. A computed tomography scan revealed a lacunar-shaped infarct from an embolic occlusion of a deep branch of the middle cerebral artery serving the internal capsule. A. F. was recently transferred to a skilled nursing facility for rehabilitation, particularly to address transfers and ambulation. She had received a prefabricated solid ankle-foot orthosis (AFO) just before her arrival. She says that the brace is intended to help control her "bad knee" and "lazy foot" position so she can walk better. She has not had much opportunity to use the orthosis and is concerned that it may actually make it more difficult for her to walk. She indicates that she prefers to use a rolling walker, although her therapist in the hospital insisted that she use a straight cane.

Chart review, interview, and physical therapy examination reveal the following:

- *Psychosocial*: A. F. lives alone in a two-story walk-up apartment. Her immediate family lives out of state. She retired 10 years ago from a position as a legal secretary and is heavily involved in the outreach ministry of her evangelical church.
- *Baseline vital signs*: heart rate: 82 beats/min; blood pressure: 132/94 mm Hg; respiratory rate: 16 breaths/min.
- *Cognitive status*: alert and oriented times 3.
- *Communication*: some slurring of words; has trouble finding the words she wants to say, but comprehension appears intact.
- *Vision*: intact; typically wears trifocals.
- *Sensory system*: cranial nerves intact; normal responses to light touch, pin prick, proprioception in all extremities.
- *Neuromotor status:*
  - *Tone*: moderate spasticity of right (R) upper extremity (UE) and lower extremity (LE); 1+ on the Modified Ashworth Scale.
  - *Range of motion (ROM)*: Passive ROM within normal limits for all extremities.
  - *Strength:* L extremities 4+/5 throughout.
  - *R UE:* shoulder elevation 2+/5; hand grip 2/5; elbow flexion 2/5; *R LE:* function strength grades include ankle plantar flexion 3/5; ankle dorsiflexion 1/5; knee extension 2+/5; knee flexion 3/5; hip flexion 3/5; hip extension 3/5; hip abduction 3/5; and hip adduction 3+/5.
  - *Postural control*: able to sit upright against gravity, asymmetric weight distribution with more weight borne on left side. Anticipatory posture changes are adequate when reaching toward right, inadequate when reaching toward left. Stands with supervision; requires verbal and tactile cues to bear weight on R LE.
  - *Functional activities*: rolls independently to both sides; supine to sit over edge of bed with supervision; transfers from bed to wheelchair with supervision; sit to stand transitions with supervision.
  - *Ambulation:* uses straight cane with moderate assist, requiring both verbal cueing and physical prompt to improve loading response on right leg and to minimize genu recurvatum during forward advancement over right foot.

Goal: Design a physical therapy plan of care that will focus on the development of motor skills necessary for safe and efficient locomotion using the AFO and straight cane.

Case Example 3.2 **Child With Cerebral Palsy Who Has Just Received New (Bilateral) Articulating Ankle-Foot Orthoses**

T. D. is a delightful 2{1/2}-year-old-boy with cerebral palsy ad spastic diplegia of moderate severity. He was born prematurely at 27 weeks' gestation and remained in the neonatal intensive care unit for 10 weeks. By the time he was 18 months old, there were increasing indications of developmental delay and abnormal motor control. He currently attends an early intervention program (EIP), receives individual home visits from a physical therapist, and attends a therapeutic play group run by an educator and occupational therapist weekly.

EIP examination findings include the following:

- *Social:* T. D. lives with both parents and an older brother in a two-story, single-family home. He interacts well with his family members and is on target for social development. He plays side by side with peers and occasionally interacts with them appropriately.
- *Cognition:* T. D. scores age appropriately for cognitive tasks including cause and effect, object permanence, means to end, early numeration, and sorting by categories. His play with objects includes variety and imagination.
- *Language:* T. D.'s comprehension, expression, and pragmatic use of language are on target for his age. He has an extensive vocabulary and uses language appropriately in various situations.
- *Fine motor/activities of daily living (ADLs):* T. D.'s reach, grasp, and release skills are within the age-expected range. Bimanual skills and object manipulation are also on target. Feeding skills are appropriate; T. D. uses utensils and drinks from a cup as expected for his age. His dressing skills are slightly below age expectations largely because of balance concerns in standing for putting on pants.
- *Gross motor:* T. D.'s gross motor skills fall below age expectations. He has been walking independently with bilateral solid ankle-foot orthoses (AFOs) for 6 months. He can walk on multiple terrains including tile or wood floors, carpets, grass, asphalt, and wood chips. He has some difficulty with stairs, requiring a railing or one hand held. Tripping and falling are issues with increasing speeds during ambulation and with attempts at running. T. D.'s mother is most concerned about his safety in ambulation at this point.

T. D. was having increasing difficulty with squatting and transitions into and out of standing from the floor. The rehabilitation team, discussing the problem, decided that articulating AFOs would increase the availability of ankle range of motion for these transition tasks. T. D. just received bilateral articulating AFOs with a plantarflexion stop set at 10 degrees. He is currently having trouble descending stairs in the new orthoses, refusing to go down stairs unless both hands are held. He also has increased frequency of tripping outside while ambulating on the grass and rock driveway at home.

Goal: Design a physical therapy plan of care to help T. D. master locomotion and transitional activities with the less constraining articulating AFOs in the environments of a typical 2{1/2}-year-old child.

Case Example 3.3 **Child With Congenital Upper Limb Deficiency Learning to Use a Myoelectric Prosthesis**

T. L. is a 3-year-old girl who has had a congenital right upper extremity limb deficiency since birth. She has an intact humerus and musculature of the upper limb with a functional elbow joint. Her forearm is incomplete, with a shortened ulna, missing radius, and no wrist or hand complex. T. L. has been wearing a prosthesis with a passive terminal device since she was 6 months old and uses her prosthesis well in mobility tasks and to stabilize objects against her body or a support surface during bimanual activities. T. L. began a preschool program 2 months ago and has adjusted well to socialization. She engages in play with her peers appropriately. She has good functional use of her left upper extremity (intact limb) and uses the residual limb to assist herself in tasks, particularly for stabilizing objects.

T. L. has been working with her prosthetist and therapists to learn to use a two-channel (voluntary closing/voluntary opening) myoelectrically controlled terminal device for the past 2 weeks. When she wears the myoelectric prosthesis throughout the day, she primarily uses it as she did her previous passive prosthesis. She has not attempted to use the "hand" for play or activities of daily living unless prompted by her parents or therapists. During her therapy sessions, she is intrigued with her new ability to open and close her "hand" but is inconsistent in controlling force of grasp and has difficulty initiating release. In today's session, she practiced picking up 1-inch blocks and placing them in a bowl, achieving the desired result in two of five trials. She was unsuccessful (and became frustrated) at picking up pegs that were much narrower than the blocks. The rehabilitation team's goals for T. L. include functional use of the prosthesis for grasp and release of household objects for feeding and self-care and school objects for play and participation in preschool activities. The team would like to increase the use of bimanual manipulation of various-sized objects.

Goal: Design a rehabilitation plan of care to help T. L. master grasp and release of objects of various sizes and levels of durability in activities meaningful for a 3-year-old child.

Case Example 3.4 **Adolescent With Transtibial Amputation Working on Returning to Competition in Track Events**

W. P. is a 16-year-old junior in high school who has been a star track athlete since he was a freshman. He currently holds his high school records in the 100-m and 200-m events, which he achieved during his sophomore year. He also finished third in the state championships that same year.

Three months ago, during the summer, W. P. was seriously injured when the garden tractor/lawnmower he was operating rolled over and down an embankment as he was making a fast turn while mowing the lawn. He sustained deep lacerations to his right foot and lower leg from the mower's blade as well as third-degree burns from the muffler. His injured limb was pinned under the tractor in a pile of leaves and debris. In the emergency department, trauma surgeons concluded that he did not meet the criteria for limb salvage and performed a long open transtibial amputation. After an intensive course of antibiotics, W. P. returned to the operating room a week later for closure to the standard transtibial level with equal anterior/posterior flaps. When his residual limb healed without difficulty, W. P. was fitted with a patellar tendon–bearing prosthesis with a sleeve and pin suspension and a Seattle Systems dynamic response foot. He quickly mastered ambulation without an assistive device and returned to school in the winter of his junior year.

W. P. is eager to return to track for his senior year. His prosthetist has fabricated a special prosthesis for him to wear in competition, an Otto Bock Healthcare Sprinter prosthetic foot designed for track-and-field athletes. He has begun training for his events and is pleased that he can run again. He has two goals: to decrease his performance time (hoping to meet the records he set the previous year) and to become much more efficient at leaving the starting block. He wants to master the new prosthesis this year so that he can concentrate on conditioning for his senior year.

Goal: Develop a prosthetic training regimen focusing on improving W. P.'s performance as he prepares to return to track competition.

References

1. Principles of Physical Therapist Patient and Client Management. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://www.apta.org/Guide.
2. Towards a Common Language for Functioning, Disability and Health. *ICF The International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health. WHO/EIP/GPE/CAS/01*. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2002.
3. Jette AM. Toward a common language of disablement. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2009;64A(11):1165–1168.
4. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Motor control: issues and theories. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:3–20.
5. Mastos M, Miller K, Eliasson AC, Imms C. Goal-directed training: linking theories of treatment to clinical practice for improved functional activities in daily life. *Clin Rehabil.* 2007;21(1):47–55.
6. Davids K, Glazier P. Deconstructing neurobiological coordination: the role of the biomechanics-motor control nexus. *Exerc Sport Sci Rev.* 2010;38(2):86–90.
7. Welsh TN, Elliott D. The effects of response priming on the planning and execution of goal-directed movements in the presence of a distracting stimulus. *Acta Psychol (Amst).* 2005;11(2):123–142.
8. Cornus S, Laurent M, Laborie S. Perception-movement coupling in the regulation of step lengths when approaching an obstacle. *Ecological Psychol.* 2009;21(4):334–367.
9. Chow JY, Davids K, Button C, Rein R. Dynamics of movement patterning in learning a discrete multi-articular action. *Motor Control.* 2008;12(3):219–240.
10. Sahrmann SA. *Movement System Impairment Syndromes of the Extremities, Cervical and Thoracic Spines.* St. Louis: Elsevier; 2011.
11. Winstein C, Lewthwaite R, Blanton S, Wolf RB, Wishart L. Infusing motor learning research into neurorehabilitation practice: a historical perspective with case exemplar from the accelerated skill acquisition program. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2014;38(3):190–200.

12. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Constraints on motor control: an overview of neurological function. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:106–134.
13. Schenkman M, Deutsch JE, Gill-Body KM. An integrated framework for decision making in neurologic physical therapist practice. *Phys Ther.* 2006;86(12):1681–1702.
14. Mueller MJ, Maluf KS. Tissue adaptation to physical stress: a proposed "physical stress theory" to guide physical therapist practice. *Phys Ther.* 2002;82(4):383–403.
15. Pavlik AJ. The effect of long-term ankle-foot orthosis use on gait in the post-stroke population. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2008;20(2):49–52.
16. Keenan MA. The management of spastic equinovarus deformity following stroke and head injury. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2011;16(3):499–514.
17. Patsika G, Kellis E, Amiridis IG. Neuromuscular efficiency during sit to stand movement in women with knee osteoarthritis. *J Electromyogr Kinesiol.* 2011;21(5):689–694.
18. Christiansen CL, Stevens-Lapsley JE. Weight-bearing asymmetry in relation to measures of impairment and functional mobility for people with knee osteoarthritis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;91(10): 1524–1528.
19. Rutherford DJ, Hubley-Kozey CL, Stanish WD, Dunbar MJ. Neuromuscular alterations exist with knee osteoarthritis presence and severity despite walking velocity similarities. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2011;26(4):377–383.
20. Shum GL, Crosbie J, Lee RYW. Effect of low back pain on the kinematics and joint coordination of the lumbar spine and hip during sit-to-stand and stand-to-sit. *Spine.* 2005;30(17):1998–2004.
21. Seay JF, Van Emmerik RE, Hamill J. Low back pain status affects pelvis-trunk coordination and variability during walking and running. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2011;26(6):572–578.
22. Dunlop DD, Semanik P, Song J, et al. Risk factors for functional decline in older adults with arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum.* 2005;52 (4):1274–1282.
23. Duque I, Parra JH, Duvallet A. Maximal aerobic power in patients with chronic low back pain: a comparison with healthy subjects. *Eur Spine J.* 2011;20(1):87–93.
24. Topinkova E. Aging, disability and frailty. *Ann Nutr Metab.* 2008; 52(Suppl 1):6–11.
25. Michael K, Macko RF. Ambulatory activity intensity profiles, fitness, and fatigue in chronic stroke. *Top Stroke Rehabil.* 2007;14(2):5–12.
26. Dekker J, van Dijk GM, Veenhof C. Risk factors for functional decline in osteoarthritis of the hip or knee. *Curr Opin Rheumatol.* 2009; 21(5):520–524.
27. Gill TM, Allore H, Guo Z. Restricted activity and functional decline among community-living older adults. *Arch Intern Med.* 2003; 163(11):1317–1322.
28. Clark L, White P. The role of deconditioning and therapeutic exercise in chronic fatigue syndrome. *J Mental Health.* 2005;14(3):237–252.
29. Duque I, Parra JH, Duvallet A. Physical deconditioning in chronic low back pain. *J Rehabil Med.* 2009;41(4):262–266.
30. Gaxatte C, Nguyen T, Chourabi F, et al. Fear of falling as seen in the Multidisciplinary falls consultation. *Ann Phys Rehabil Med.* 2011; 54(4):248–258.
31. Boyd R, Stevens JA. Falls and fear of falling: burden, beliefs and behaviors. *Age Ageing.* 2009;38(4):423–428.
32. Interventions. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*. Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://www.apta.org/Guide.
33. Pescatello LS, Arena R, Riebe D, Thompson PD, eds. *ACSM's Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription.* 10th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017.
34. Ratamess NA, Alvar PA, Evetoch TK, et al. Progression models in resistance training for healthy adults. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2009;41(3):687–708.
35. Moore GE, Durstine J, Painter PL, eds. *ACSM's Exercise Management for Persons with Chronic Diseases and Disabilities*. 4th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2016.
36. May BJ, Lockard MA. *Prosthetics & Orthotics in Clinical Practice: A Case Study Approach.* Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2011.
37. Edelstein J, Moroz A. *Lower-Limb Prosthetics and Orthotics: Clinical Concepts.* Slack: Thorofare, NJ; 2010.
38. Plack M, Driscoll M. *Teaching and Learning in Physical Therapy: From Classroom to Clinic.* 2nd ed. Slack: Thorofare, NJ; 2017.
39. Schmidt R, Lee T, Winstein CJ, Wulf G, Zelaznik HN, eds. Evolution of a field of study. In: *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2019:3–21.
40. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. A conceptual framework for clinical practice. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:135–149.
41. Gentile A. Skill acquisition: action, movement, and neuromotor processes. In: Carr J, Shepherd R, eds. *Movement Science: Foundation for Physical Therapy in Rehabilitation.* 2nd ed. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen Systems; 2000:111–180.
42. Lehto NK, Marley TL, Exekiel HJ, et al. Application of motor learning principles: the physiotherapy client as a problem solver. IV future directions. *Physiother Can.* 2001;53(2):109–114.
43. Papavasiliou AS. Management of motor problems in cerebral palsy: a critical update for the clinician. *Eur J Paediatr Neurol.* 2009;13(5): 387–396.
44. Turvey MT, Fonseca S. Nature of motor control: perspectives and issues. *Adv Exp Med Biol.* 2009;629:93–123.
45. Nudo RJ. Neural bases of recovery after brain injury. *J Commun Disord.* 2011;44(5):515–520.
46. Mang CS, Campbell KL, Ross CJD, Boyd LA. Promoting neuroplasticity for motor rehabilitation after stroke: considering the effects on aerobic exercise and genetic variation on brain-derived neurotrophic factor. *Phys Ther.* 2013;93(12):1707–1716.
47. Hallett M. Neuroplasticity and rehabilitation. *J Rehabil Res Devel.* 2005;42(4):xvii–xxi.
48. Callahan J, Parlman K, Beninato M, Townsend E. Perspective: impact of the III Step Conference on Clinical Practice. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2006;30(3):157–166.
49. Czarnecki K, Thompson JM, Seime R, Geda YE, Duffy TR, Ahlskog JE. Functional movement disorders: Successful treatment with a physical therapy rehabilitation protocol. *Parkinsonism and Related Disorders.* 2012;18(3): 247–251.
50. Edwards MJ, Fotopoulou A, Pareés I. Neurobiology of functional (psychogenic) movement disorders. *Current Opinion in Neurology.* 2013;26(4):442–447.
51. Voon V, Brezing C, Gallea C, Hallett M. Aberrant supplementary motor complex and limbic activity during motor preparation in motor conversion disorder. *Mov Disord.* 2011;26:2396–2403.
52. Nielsen G, Stone J, Matthews A, et al. Edwards M. Physiotherapy for functional motor disorders: A consensus recommendation. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry.* 2015;86(10): 1113–1119.
53. Nicholson TR, Aybek S, Craig T, et al. Life events and escape in conversion disorder. *Psychol Med.* 2016;46(12):2617–2626.
54. Ludwig L, et al. Stressful life events and maltreatment in conversion (functional neurological) disorder: systematic review and meta-analysis of case-control studies. *The Lancet Psychiatry.* 2018;5(4): 307–320.
55. Davids K, Bennett S, Newell K. *Movement System Variability.* Human Kinetics: Champaign IL; 2006.
56. Warren WH. The dynamics of perception and action. *Psychol Rev.* 2006;113(2):358–389.
57. Davids K, Glazier P. Deconstructing neurobiological coordination: the role of the biomechanics-motor control nexus. *Exerc Sport Sci Rev.* 2010;38(2):86–90.
58. Mastos M, Miller K, Eliasson AC, Imms C. Goal-directed training: linking theories of treatment to clinical practice for improved functional activities in daily life. *Clin Rehabil.* 2007;21(1):47–55.
59. Levac D, DeMatteo C. Bridging the gap between theory and practice: dynamic systems theory as a framework for understanding and promoting recovery of function in children and youth with acquired brain injuries. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2009;25(8):544–554.
60. Stergiou N, Harbourne RT, Cavanaugh JT. Optimal movement variability: a new theoretical perspective for neurologic physical therapy. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2006;30(3):120–129.
61. Gibson J. *The Ecological Approach to Visual Perception.* New York: Psychology Press; 2015.
62. Vereijken B, Whiting H, Beek W. A dynamical systems approach to skill acquisition. *Q J Exp Psychol A.* 1992;45(2):323–344.
63. Gera G, Freitas S, Latash M, Monahan K, Schoner G, Scholz J. Motor abundance contributes to resolving multiple kinematic task constraints. *Motor Control.* 2010;14(1):83–115.

64. Latash ML, Gorniak S, Zatsiorsky VM. Hierarchies of synergies in human movements. *Kinesiology.* 2008;40(1):29–38.
65. Bernstein NA. Essay II: On motor control. In: Latash M, Turvey M, eds. *Dexterity and Its Development*. New York: Psychology Press; 2009:25–44.
66. Warren WH. The dynamics of perception and action. *Psychol Rev.* 2006;113(2):358–389.
67. Fajen BR, Diaz G, Cramer C. Reconsidering the role of movement in perceiving action-scaled affordances. *Hum Mov Sci.* 2011;30(3): 504–533.
68. Coello Y. Spatial context and visual perception for action. *Psicologica.* 2011;26(1):39–59.
69. Mainzer K. The emergence of mind and brain: an evolutionary, computational, and philosophical approach. *Prog Brain Res.* 2008;168:115–132.
70. Feldman AG, Goussev V, Lagole A, Levin MF. Threshold position control and the principle of minimal interaction in motor actions. *Prog Brain Res.* 2007;165:267–281.
71. Martin V, Scholz JP, Schoner G. Redundancy, self motion, and motor control. *Neural Comput.* 2009;21(5):1371–1414.
72. De Smet K, Segers V, Lenoir M, De Clercq D. Spatiotemporal characteristics of spontaneous overground walk-to-run transition. *Gait Posture.* 2009;29(1):54–58.
73. Latash ML, Levin MF, Scholz JP, Schoner G. Motor control theories and their applications. *Medicina.* 2010;46(4):382–392.
74. Kaoru T, Toshikatsu O. Neurobiological basis of controlling posture and locomotion. *Adv Robotics.* 2008;22(15):1629–1663.
75. Smith ER, Collins EC. Contextualizing person perception: distributed social cognition. *Psycholog Rev.* 2009;116(2):343–364.
76. Jahiel RI, Scherer MJ. Initial steps towards a theory and praxis of person-environment interaction in disability. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010; 32(17):1467–1474.
77. Mastos M, Miller K, Eliasson AC, Imms C. Goal-directed training: linking theories of treatment to clinical practice for improved functional activities in daily life. *Clin Rehabil.* 2007;21(1):47–55.
78. Baker KS, Mattingley JB, Chambers CD, Cunnington R. Attention and the readiness for action. *Neuropsychologia.* 2011;49(12):3303–3313.
79. Lam WK, Masters RS, Maxwell JP. Cognitive demands of error processing associated with preparation and execution of a motor skill. *Conscious Cogn.* 2010;19(4):1058–1061.
80. Pellecchia GL, Shockley K, Turvey MT. Concurrent cognitive task modulates coordination dynamics. *Cognitive Sci.* 2005;29(4): 531–557.
81. Rueschemeyer SA, Pfeiffer C, Bekkering H. Body schematics: on the role of the body schema in embodied lexical-semantic representations. *Neuropsychologia.* 2010;48(3):774–781.
82. Corradi-Dell'Acqua C, Tomasino B, Fink GR. What is the position of an arm relative to the body? Neural correlates of body schema and body structural description. *J Neurosci.* 2009;29(13):4162–4171.
83. Kitagawa N, Spence C. Audiotactile multisensory interactions in human information processing. *Jpn Psychologic Res.* 2006;48(3): 158–173.
84. Bernier PM, Grafton ST. Human posterior parietal cortex flexibly determines reference frames for reaching based on sensory context. *Neuron.* 2010;68(4):776–788.
85. Beurze SM, Toni I, Pisella L, Medendorp WP. Reference frames for reach planning in human parietofrontal cortex. *J Neurophysiol.* 2010;104(3):1736–1745.
86. Makoshi Z, Kroliczak G, van Donkelaar P. Human supplementary motor area contribution to predictive motor planning. *J Motor Behavior.* 2011;43(4):303–309.
87. Iseki K, Hanakawa T, Shinozaki J, Nankaku M, Fukuyama H. Neural mechanisms involved in mental imagery and observation of gait. *Neuroimage.* 2008;41(3):1021–1031.
88. Liuzzi G, Hörniss V, Hoppe J, et al. Distinct temporospatial interhemispheric interactions in the human primary and premotor cortex during movement preparation. *Cereb Cortex.* 2010;20(6):1323–1331.
89. Buch ER, Mars RB, Boorman ED, Rushworth MF. A network centered on ventral premotor cortex exerts both facilitatory and inhibitory control over primary motor cortex during action reprogramming. *J Neurosci.* 2010;30(4):1395–1401.
90. Wolfensteller U. Juggling with the brain—thought and action in the human motor system. *Prog Brain Res.* 2009;174:289–301.
91. Turner RS, Desmurget M. Basal ganglia contributions to motor control: a vigorous tutor. *Curr Opin Neurobiol.* 2010;20(6):704–716.
92. Kreitzer AC, Malenka RC. Striatal plasticity and basal ganglia circuit function. *Neuron.* 2008;60(4):543–554.
93. Pollok B, Gross J, Kamp D, Schnitzler A. Evidence for anticipatory motor control within a cerebello-diencephalic-parietal network. *J Cogn Neurosci.* 2008;20(5):828–840.
94. Manto M, Bastian AJ. Cerebellum and the deciphering of motor coding. *Cerebellum.* 2007;6(1):3–6.
95. Molinari M, Restuccia D, Leggio MG. State estimation, response prediction, and cerebellar sensory processing for behavioral control. *Cerebellum.* 2009;8(3):399–402.
96. Salmi J, Pallesen KJ, Neuvonen T. Cognitive and motor loops of the human cerebro-cerebellar system. *J Cogn Neurosci.* 2010;22(11): 2663–2676.
97. Lemon RN. Descending pathways in motor control. *Annu Rev Neurosci.* 2008;31:195–218.
98. Petersen NC, Butler JE, Taylor JL, Gandevia SC. Probing the corticospinal link between the motor cortex and motoneurones: some neglected aspects of human motor cortical function. *Acta Physiol (Oxf).* 2010;198(4):403–416.
99. Falla D, Farina D. Neural and muscular factors associated with motor impairment in neck pain. *Curr Rheumatol Rep.* 2007;9(6): 497–502.
100. Gates D, Dingwell J. The effects of neuromuscular fatigue on task performance during repetitive goal-directed movements. *Exp Brain Res.* 2008;187(4):573–585.
101. Borghuis J, Hof AL, Lemmink KAP. The importance of sensory-motor control in providing core stability: implications for measurement and training. *Sports Med.* 2008;38(11):893–916.
102. Chern J, Lo C, Wu C, Chen C, Yang S, Tang F. Dynamic postural control during trunk bending and reaching in healthy adults and stroke patients. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;89(3):186–197.
103. Girolami GL, Shiratori T, Aruin AS. Anticipatory postural adjustments in children with typical motor development. *Exp Brain Res.* 2010;205(2):153–165.
104. Bigongiari A, de Andrade e Souza F, Franciulli PM, Neto SE, Araujo RC, Mochizuki L. Anticipatory and compensatory postural adjustments in sitting in children with cerebral palsy. *Hum Mov Sci.* 2011;309(3):648–657.
105. Alexander NB, Grunawalt JC, Carlos S, Augustine J. Bed mobility task performance in older adults. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2000;37 (5):633–895.
106. Guarrera-Bowlby PL, Gentile AM. Form and variability during sit-to-stand transitions: children versus adults. *J Mot Behav.* 2004;36(1): 104–114.
107. Ganea R, Paraschiv-Ionescu A, Büla C, Rochat S, Aminian K. Multiparametric evaluation of sit-to-stand and stand-to-sit transitions in elderly people. *Med Eng Phys.* 2011;33(9):1086–1093.
108. Michel J, Grobet C, Dietz V, van Hedel HJ. Obstacle stepping in children: task acquisition and performance. *Gait Posture.* 2010;31(3): 341–346.
109. Hicheur H, Quang-Cuong P, Arechavaleta G, Laumond JP, Berthoz A. The formation of trajectories during goal-oriented locomotion in humans. I. A stereotyped behavior. *Eur J Neurosci.* 2007;26(8): 2376–2390.
110. Zietz D, Hollands M. Gaze behavior of young and older adults during stair walking. *J Mot Behav.* 2009;41(4):357–366.
111. Nagengast AJ, Braun DA, Wolpert DM. Optimal control predicts human performance on objects with internal degrees of freedom. *PLoS Comput Biol.* 2009;5(6):1–15.
112. Botvinick MM, Buxbaum LJ, Bylsma LM, Jax SA. Toward an integrated account of object and action selection: a computational analysis and empirical findings from reaching-to-grasp and tool-use. *Neuropsychologia.* 2009;47(3):671–683.
113. Puttemans V, Wenderoth N, Swinnen SP. Changes in brain activation during the acquisition of a multifrequency bimanual coordination task: from the cognitive stage to advanced levels of automaticity. *J Neurosci.* 2005;25(17):4270–4278.
114. Hemond C, Brown RM, Robertson EM. A distraction can impair or enhance motor performance. *J Neurosci.* 2010;30(2):650–654.
115. Wulf G, Shea C, Lewthwaite R. Motor skill learning and performance: a review of influential factors. *Med Educ.* 2010;44(1):75–84.
116. Wulf G, Tollner T, Shea CH. Attentional focus effects as a function of task difficulty. *Res Q Exerc Sport.* 2007;78(3):257–264.
117. Ashford D, Bennett SJ, Davids K. Observational modeling effects for movement dynamics and movement outcome measures across

differing task constraints: a meta-analysis. *J Mot Behav.* 2006;38(3):185–205.
118. Fulk GD, Behrman AL, Schmitz TJ. Traumatic spinal cord injury. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:889–963.
119. Boswell-Ruys CL, Harvey LA, Barker JJ, Ben M, Middleton JW, Lord SR. Training unsupported sitting in people with chronic spinal cord injuries: a randomized controlled trial. *Spinal Cord.* 2010;48(2):138–143.
120. Krause D, Wunnemann M, Erlmann A. Biodynamic feedback training to assure learning partial load bearing on forearm crutches. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2007;88(7):901–906.
121. Pasquini SM, Peterson ML, Rattansi SM, et al. The impact of assistive device prescription on gait following total knee replacement. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 2010;33(2):64–70.
122. Richardson JK, Thies SB, DeMott TK, Ashton-Miller JA. Gait analysis in a challenging environment differentiates between fallers and nonfallers among older patients with peripheral neuropathy. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;86(8):1539–1544.
123. Shumway-Cook A, Patla AE, Stewart A, Ferrucci L, Ciol MA, Guralnik JM. Environmental demands associated with community mobility in older adults with and without mobility disabilities. *Phys Ther.* 2002;82(7):670–681.
124. Tieman B, Palisano RJ, Gracely EJ, Rosenbaum PL. Variability in mobility of children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2007;19(3):180–187.
125. McLaughlin R, Burton B. Psychosocial aspects of adaptation and adjustment during various phases of neurological disability. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:141–162.
126. Dickinson HO, Colver A. Quantifying the physical, social and attitudinal environment of children with cerebral palsy. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2011;33(1):36–50.
127. Kimberley TJ, Samargia S, Moore LG, Shakya JK, Lang CE. Comparison of amounts and types of practice during rehabilitation for traumatic brain injury and stroke. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2010;47(9):851–861.
128. Musselman KE, Fouad K, Misiaszek JE, Yang JF. Training of walking skills overground and on the treadmill: case series on individuals with incomplete spinal cord injury. *Phys Ther.* 2009;89(6):601–616.
129. Kelly F, Nikopoulos CK, Brooks N, Harrington H. Facilitating independence in personal activities of daily living after a severe traumatic brain injury. *Int J Ther Rehabil.* 2010;17(9):474–482.
130. Winkler PA. Traumatic brain injury. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:753–790.
131. Fulk GD, Nirider CD. Traumatic brain injury. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, Fulk GD, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2014:859–888.
132. Wolpert DM, Flanagan JR. Motor learning. *Curr Biol.* 2010;20(11):467–472.
133. Borg G. Psychophysical scaling with applications in physical work and the perception of exertion. *Scand J Work Environ Health.* 1990;16(suppl 1):55–58.
134. Fritz S, Lusardi MM. Walking speed: the sixth vital sign. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 2009;32(2):2–5.
135. Podsiadlo D, Richardson S. The timed up and go: a test of functional mobility for frail elderly persons. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 1991;39(2):142–148.
136. The learning process. Schmidt RA, Lee TD, Winstein CJ, Wlf G, Zelaznik HN, eds. *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2019:375–400.
137. Shumway-Cook A, Baldwin M, Pollissar NL, Gruber W. Predicting probability for falls in community-dwelling older adults. *Phys Ther.* 1997;77(8):812–819.
138. Guyatt GH, Sullivan MJ, Thompson PJ, et al. The 6-minute walk: a new measure of exercise capacity in patients with chronic heart failure. *Can Med Assoc J.* 1985;132(8):919–923.
139. Russell DJ, Rosenbaum PL, Avery LM, et al. *Gross Motor Functional Measure User's Manual.* London: MacKeith Press; 2002.
140. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. Motor learning and recovery of function. In: *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:21–43.
141. Schmidt RA, Lee TD, Winstein CJ, Wlf G, Zelaznik HN, eds. Retention and transfer. In: *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2019:401–431.
142. Adams JA. Closed loop theory of motor learning. *J Mot Behav.* 1971;3(2):111–150.
143. Schmidt RA. A schema theory of discrete motor skill learning. *Psychol Rev.* 1975;82(4):225–260.
144. Schmidt RA, Lee TD, Winstein CJ, Wlf G, Zelaznik HN, eds. Human information processing. In: *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2019:57–93.
145. Shea CH, Wulf G. Schema theory: a critical appraisal and reevaluation. *J Mot Behav.* 2005;37(2):85–101.
146. Sherwood DE, Lee TD. Schema theory: critical review and implications for the role of cognition in a new theory of motor learning. *Res Q Exerc Sport.* 2003;74(4):376–382.
147. Hamilton ML, Pankey R, Kinnunen D. Constraints of Motor Skill Acquisition: Implications for Teaching and Learning. Available at http://www.eric.ed.gov/contentdelivery/servlet/ERICServlet?accno=ED471196; 2002.
148. Newell KM. Motor skill acquisition. *Annu Rev Psychol.* 1991;42(1):213–237.
149. Luft AR, Buitrago MM. Stages of motor skill learning. *Mol Neurobiol.* 2005;32(3):205–216.
150. Chow JY, Davids K, Button C, Rein R, Hristovski R, Koh M. Dynamics of multi-articular coordination in neurobiological systems. *Nonlinear Dynamics Psychol Life Sci.* 2009;13(1):27–55.
151. Fitts PM, Posner MI. *Human Performance.* Brooks/Cole: Belmont, CA; 1967.
152. Vereijken B, van Emmerik REA, Whiting HTA, Newell KM. Freezing degress of freedom in skill acquisition. *J Mot Behav.* 1992;24(1):133–142.
153. Larin H. Motor learning: a practical framework for paediatric physiotherapy. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 1998;14(1):33–47.
154. Konczak J, vander Velden H, Jaeger L. Learning to play the violin: motor control by freezing, not freeing degrees of freedom. *J Mot Behav.* 2009;41(3):243–252.
155. Manoel E, Connolly K. Variability and the development of skilled action. *Int J Psychophysiol.* 1995;19(2):129–147.
156. Gentile A. Implicit and explicit processes during acquisition of functional skills. *Scand J Occup Ther.* 1998;5(1):7–16.
157. Caillou N, Nourrit D, Deschamps T, Lauriot B, Delignieres D. Overcoming spontaneous patterns of coordination during the acquisition of a complex balancing task. *Can J Exp Psychol.* 2002;56(4):283–293.
158. Coch D, Fischer KW, Dawson G, eds. *Human Behavior, Learning, and the Developing Brain: Typical Development.* New York: Guilford Publications; 2010.
159. Taubert M, Draganski B, Anwander A, et al. Dynamic properties of human brain structure: learning-related changes in cortical areas and associated fiber connections. *J Neurosci.* 2010;30(35):11670–11677.
160. May A. Experience-dependent structural plasticity in the adult human brain. *Trends Cogn Sci.* 2011;15(10):475–482.
161. van Merriënboer JJ, Sweller J. Cognitive load theory in health professional education: design principles and strategies. *Med Educ.* 2010;44(1):85–93.
162. Bastalbe S, Gramet P, Jacobs K, Sopczyk D. *Health Professional as Educator: Principles of Teaching and Learning.* Jones & Bartlett: Burlington, MA; 2011.
163. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Physiological basis of motor learning and recovery of function. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:80–105.
164. Park J, Kim Y, Jang SH, Chang WH, Park C, Kim ST. Dynamic changes in the cortico-subcortical network during early motor learning. *Neuro Rehabil.* 2010;26(2):95–103.
165. Seger CA. The basal ganglia in human learning. *Neuroscientist.* 2006;12(4):285–290.
166. Saywell N, Taylor D. The role of the cerebellum in procedural learning—are there implications for physiotherapists' clinical practice? *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2008;24(5):321–328.
167. Rose M, Haider H, Salari N, Büchel C. Functional dissociation of hippocampal mechanism during implicit learning based on the domain of associations. *J Neurosci.* 2011;31(39):13739–13745.

168. Sweatt JD. *Mechanisms of Memory.* 2nd ed. Burlington, MA: Academic Press; 2010.
169. Kandel ER. Cellular mechanism of impact memory storage and the biological basis of individuality. In: Kandel ER, Schwart JH, Jessell TM, Siegelbaum SA, Hudspeth AJ, eds. *Principles of Neural Science.* 5th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical; 2013:1461–1486.
170. Degonda N, Mondadori CR, Bosshardt S, et al. Implicit associative learning engages the hippocampus and interacts with explicit associative learning. *Neuron.* 2005;46(3):505–520.
171. Sun R, Zhang X, Slusarz P, Mathews R. The interaction of implicit learning, explicit hypothesis testing learning and implicit-to-explicit knowledge extraction. *Neural Netw.* 2007;20(1):34–47.
172. Vidoni ED, Boyd LA. Achieving enlightenment: what do we know about the implicit learning system and its interaction with explicit knowledge? *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2007;31(3):145–154.
173. Milton JG, Small SS, Solodkin A. On the way to automatic; dynamic aspects in the development of expertise. *J Clin Neurophysiol.* 2004; 21(3):134–143.
174. Poldrack RA, Saab FW, Foerde K, et al. Neural correlates of motor skill automaticity. *J Neurosci.* 2005;25(22):5356–5364.
175. Wu T, Hallett M. The influence of normal human aging on automatic movements. *J Physiol.* 2005;526(2):605–615.
176. Verwey W, Abrahamse E, Ruitenberg M, Jiménez L, Kleine E. Motor skill learning in the middle-aged: limited development of motor chunks and explicit sequence knowledge. *Psychol Res.* 2011;75 (5):406–422.
177. Fraser SA, Li KZ, Penhune VB. A comparison of motor skill learning and retention in younger and older adults. *Exp Brain Res.* 2009;195 (3):419–427.
178. Nemeth D, Janacsek K. The dynamics of implicit skill consolidation in young and elderly adults. *J Gerontol B Psychol Sci Soc Sci.* 2011;66 (1):15–22.
179. Shea CH, Park JH, Braden HW. Age-related effects in sequential motor learning. *Phys Ther.* 2006;86(4):478–488.
180. Wulf G, Chiviacowsky S, Lewthwaite R. Altering mindset can enhance motor learning in older adults. *Psychol Aging.* 2011; https://doi.org/10.1037/a0025718. Advance online publication.
181. Badami R, Vaez M, Wulf G, Namazizadeh M. Feedback after good trials enhances intrinsic motivation. *Res Q Exerc Sport.* 2011;82(2): 360–364.
182. Schmidt RA, Lee TD, Winstein CJ, Wlf G, Zelaznik HN, eds. Conditions of practice. In: *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2019:303–340.
183. Kimberley TJ, Samargia S, Moore LG, Shakya JK, Lang CE. Comparison of amounts and types of practice during rehabilitation for traumatic brain injury and stroke. *JRRD.* 2010;47(9):851–862.
184. Burridge JH, Lee AW, Turk R, et al. Telehealth, wearable sensors, and the internet: Will they improve stroke outcomes through increased intensity of therapy, motivation, and adherence to rehabilitation programs?. *Journal of Neurologic Physical Therapy.* 2017;41(3): S32–S38. *Suppl 3 Supplement, IV STEP Special.*
185. Dodakian L, McKenzie A, Le V, et al. A home-based telerehabilitation program for patients with stroke. *Neurorehabilitation and Neural Repair.* 2017;31(10-11):923–933.
186. Stergiou N, Harbourne RT, Cavanaugh JT. Optimal movement variability: a new theoretical perspective for neurologic physical therapy. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2006;30(3):120–129.
187. Fetters L. Perspective on variability in the development of human action. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90(12):1860–1867.
188. Turvey MT. Action and perception at the level of synergies. *Hum Mov Sci.* 2007;26(4):657–697.
189. Sparrow WA, Shinkfield AJ, Day RH, Hollitt S, Jolley D. Visual perception of movement kinematics and the acquisition of "action prototypes." *Motor Control.* 2002;6(2):146–165.
190. Hadders-Algra M. Variation and variability: key words in human motor development. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90(12):1823–1837.
191. Fetters L, Ellis T. A perception-action framework for physical therapy for persons with neurological dysfunction: use of therapeutic affordance and unit less ratio. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2006;30(3):142–147.
192. Dimitrova D, Horak FB, Nutt JG. Postural muscle responses to multidirectional translations in patients with Parkinson's disease. *J Neurophysiol.* 2004;91(1):489–501.
193. Sanger TD. Arm trajectories in dyskinetic cerebral palsy have increased random variability. *J Child Neurol.* 2006;21(7):551–557.
194. Sanger TD, Kaiser J, Placek B. Reaching movement in childhood dystonia contain signal-dependent noise. *J Child Neurol.* 2005;6: 489–496.
195. Cowie D, Limousin P, Peters A, Day BL. Insights into the neural control of locomotion from walking through doorways in Parkinson's disease. *Neuropsychologia.* 2010;48(9):2750–2757.
196. Serino A, De Filippo L, Casavecchia C, Coccia M, Shiffrar M, Ladavas E. Lesions to the motor system affect action perception. *J Cogn Neurosci.* 2010;22(3):413–426.
197. Rengachary J, He BJ, Shulman GL, Corbetta M. A behavioral analysis of spatial neglect and its recovery after stroke. *Front Hum Neurosci.* 2011;5:29.
198. Kerkhoff G, Rossett Y, Pérennou D. Postural disorders and spatial neglect in stroke patients: a strong association. *Restor Neurol Neurosci.* 2006;24(4/6):319–334.
199. Pohl PS, McDowd JM, Filion D, Richards LG, Stiers W. Implicit learning of a motor skill after mild and moderate stroke. *Clin Rehabil.* 2006;20(3):246–253.
200. Barela JA, Focks GM, Hilgeholt T, Barela AM, Carvalho RP, Savelsbergh GJ. Perception-action and adaptation in postural control of children and adolescents with cerebral palsy. *Res Dev Disabil.* 2011;32(6):2075–2083.
201. Mulder T, Hochstenbach J. Adaptability and flexibility of the human motor system: implications for neurological rehabilitation. *Neural Plast.* 2001;8(1–2):131–140.
202. Fell DW. Progressing therapeutic intervention in patients with neuromuscular disorders: a framework to assist clinical decision making. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2004;28(1):35–46.
203. Kruisselbrink LD, Van Gyn GH. Task characteristics and the contextual interference effect. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2011;113(1):19–37.
204. Jarus T, Gutman T. Effects of cognitive processes and task complexity on acquisition, retention, and transfer of motor skills. *Can J Occup Ther.* 2001;68(5):280–289.
205. Pollock BJ, Lee TD. Dissociated contextual interference effects in children and adults. *Percept Mot Skills.* 1997;84(3):851–858.
206. Boutin A, Blandin Y. On the cognitive processes underlying contextual interference: Contributions of practice schedule, task similarity and amount of practice. *Hum Mov Sci.* 2010;29(6):910–920.
207. Porter JM, Magill RA. Systematically increasing contextual interference is beneficial for learning sport skills. *J Sports Sci.* 2010; 28(12):1277–1285.
208. Cross ES, Schmitt PJ, Grafton ST. Neural substrates of contextual interference during motor learning support a model of active preparation. *J Cogn Neurosci.* 2007;19(11):1854–1871.
209. Kruiselbrink LD, Van Gyn GH. Task characteristics and the contextual interference effect. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2011;112(4):19–37.
210. Magnuson CE, Wright DL. Random practice can facilitate the learning of tasks that have different relative time structures. *Res Quart Ex Sport.* 2004;75(2):197–202.
211. Bock O, Thomas M, Grigorova V. The effect of rest breaks on human sensorimotor adaptation. *Exp Brain Res.* 2005;163 (2):258–260.
212. Lord SR, Murray SM, Chapman K, Munro B, Tiedemann A. Sit-to-stand performance depends on sensation, speed, balance, and psychological status in addition to strength in older people. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2002;57(8):M539–M543.
213. Mohamed O, Craig D, Worden H, Ayyappa E. Clinical assessment of pathological gait. In: Lusardi MM, Jorge M, Nielsen CC, eds. *Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation.* 3rd ed. St. Louis: Saunders//Elsevier; 2013:104–142.
214. Park JH, Wilde H, Shea CH. Part-whole practice of movement sequences. *J Motor Behav.* 2004;36(1):51–61.
215. Fontana FE, Furtado O, Mazzardo O, Gallagher JD. Whole and part practice: a meta-analysis. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2009;109(2):517–530.
216. Schmidt RA, Lee TD, Winstein CJ, Wlf G, Zelaznik HN, eds. Augmented feedback. In: *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2019:341–374.
217. Viitasalo JT, Era P, Konttinen N, Mononen H, Mononen K, Norvapalo K. Effects of 12-week shooting training and mode of feedback on shooting scores among novice shooters. *Scand J Med Sci Sports.* 2001;11(6):362–368.
218. Thorpe DE, Valvano J. The effects of knowledge of performance and cognitive strategies on motor skill learning in children with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2002;14(1):2–15.

219. Butki BD, Hoffman SJ. Effects of reducing frequency of intrinsic knowledge of results on the learning of a motor skill. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2003;97(2):569–580.
220. Bruechert L, Lai Q, Shea CH. Reduced Knowledge of Results Frequency Enhances Error Detection. *Res Q Exerc Sport.* 2003;74(4): 467–472.
221. Anderson DI, Sekiyam H, Magill RA, Ryan G. Support for an Explanation of the Guidance Effect in Motor Skill Learning. *J Mot Behav.* 2005;37(3):231–238.
222. Chiviacowsky S, Wulf G, Wally R. Knowledge of Results after Good Trials Enhances Learning in Older Adults. *Res Q Exerc Sport.* 2009;80(3):663–668.
223. Chiviacowsky S, Wulf G. Feedback after Good Trials Enhances Learning. *Res Q Exerc Sport.* 2007;78(2):40–47.
224. Anderson DI, Magill A, Sekia H. Motor learning as a function of KR schedule and characteristics of task-intrinsic feedback. *J Mot Behav.* 2001;33(1):59–66.
225. Subramanian SK, Massie CL, Malcolm MP, Levin MF. Does provision of extrinsic feedback result in improved motor learning in the upper limb post stroke? A systematic review of the evidence. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2010;24(2):113–124.
226. Onla-or S, Winstein CJ. Determining the optimal challenge point for motor skill learning in adults with moderately severe Parkinson's disease. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2008;22(4):385–395.
227. Hemayattalab R, Rostami LR. Effects of frequency of feedback on the learning of motor skill in individuals with cerebral palsy. *Res Dev Disabil.* 2010;31(1):212–217.
228. Rice MS, Hernandez HG. Frequency of knowledge of results and motor learning in persons with developmental delay. *Occup Ther Int.* 2006;13(1):35–48.
229. Rice MS, Fertig PA, Maitra KK, Miller BK. Reduced feedback: motor learning strategy in persons with Alzheimer's disease. *Phys Occup Ther Geriatr.* 2008;27(2):122–138.
230. van Halteren-van Tilborg IA, Scherder EJ, Hulstijn W. Motor-skill learning in Alzheimer's disease: a review with an eye to the clinical practice. *Neuropsychol Rev.* 2007;17(3):203–212.
231. Wulf G. Self-controlled practice enhances motor learning: implications for physiotherapy. *Physiother.* 2007;93(2):96–101.
232. Hansen S, Pfeiffer J, Patterson JT. Self-control of feedback during motor learning: accounting for the absolute amount of feedback using a yoked group with self-control over feedback. *J Mot Behav.* 2011;43(2):113–119.
233. Chiviacowsky S, Wulf G, de Medeiros FL. Research self-controlled feedback in 10-year-old children: higher feedback frequencies enhance learning. *Q Exerc Sport.* 2008;79(1):122–127.
234. Ronsse R, Puttemans V, Coxon JP, et al. Motor learning with augmented feedback: modality-dependent behavioral and neural consequences. *Cereb Cortex.* 2011;21(6):1283–1294.
235. Liu T, Jensen JL. Effectiveness of auditory and visual sensory feedback for children when learning a continuous motor task. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2009;109(3):804–816.
236. van Vliet PM, Wulf G. Extrinsic feedback for motor learning after stroke: what is the evidence? *Disabil Rehabil.* 2006;28(13–14): 831–840.
237. Piron L, Turolla A, Agostini M, et al. Motor learning principles for rehabilitation: a pilot randomized controlled study in post stroke patients. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2010;24(6):501–508.
238. Lotzke D, Ostermann T, Bussing A, Loetzke D, Buessing T. Argentine tango in Parkinson disease—a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMC Neurology.* 2015;15(227):226.
239. Mcneely ME, Mai MM, Duncan RP, Earhart GM. Differential Effects of Tango Versus Dance for PD in Parkinson Disease. *Frontiers in Aging Neuroscience.* 2015;7:239.
240. Mcneely ME, Mai MM, Duncan RP, Earhart GM. A Comparison of Dance Interventions in People with Parkinson Disease and Older Adults. *Maturitas.* 2015;81(1):10–16.
241. Harrison EC, McNeely ME, Earhart GM. The Feasibility of Singing to Improve Gait in Parkinson Disease. *Gait & Posture.* 2017;53: 224–229.
242. Wulf G, Shea C, Lewthwaite R. Motor skill learning and performance: a review of influential factors. *Med Educ.* 2010;44 (1):75–84.
243. Emanuel M, Jarus T, Bart O. Effect of focus of attention and age on motor acquisition, retention, and transfer: a randomized trial. *Phys Ther.* 2008;88(2):251–260.
244. Wulf G, Chiviacowsky S, Schiller E, Avila LT. Frequent external-focus feedback enhances motor learning. *Front Psychol.* 2010;1:190.
245. Chiviacowsky S, Wulf G, Wally R. An external focus of attention enhances balance learning in older adults. *Gait & Posture.* 2010; 32(4):572–575.
246. Wulf G, Chiviacowsky S, Lewthwaite R. Normative feedback effects on learning a timing task. *Res Q Exerc Sport.* 2010;81(4):425–431.
247. Lewthwaite R, Wulf G. Social-comparative feedback affects motor skill learning. *Q J Exp Psychol.* 2010;63(4):738–749.
248. Wulf G, Chiviacowsky S, Lewthwaite R. Altering mindset can enhance motor learning in older adults. *Psychol Aging.* 2012 Mar;27(1):14–21. 2012.
249. Mulder T. Motor imagery and action observation: cognitive tools for rehabilitation. *J Neural Transm.* 2007;114(10):1265–1278.
250. Lacourse MG, Turner JA, Randolph-Orr E, Schandler SL, Cohen MJ. Cerebral and cerebellar sensorimotor plasticity following motor imagery-based mental practice of a sequential movement. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2004;41(4):505–523.
251. Gentili R, Papaxanthis C, Pozzo T. Improvement and generalization of arm motor performance through motor imagery practice. *Neuroscience.* 2006;137(3):761–772.
252. Spittle M, Kremere P. Mental practice and the retention of motor learning; a pilot study. *Percept Mot Skills.* 2010;110(3):888–896.
253. Tunney N, Billings K, Blakely BG, Burch D, Hill M, Jackson K. Mental practice and motor learning of a functional motor task in older adults: a pilot study. *Phys Occ Ther Geriatr.* 2006;24(3):63–80.
254. Page SJ, Szaflarski JP, Eliassen JC, Pan H, Cramer SC. Cortical plasticity following motor skill learning during mental practice in stroke. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2009;23(4):382–388.
255. McEwen SE, Huijbregts MP, Ryan JD, Polatajko HJ. Cognitive strategy use to enhance motor skill acquisition post-stroke: A critical review. *Brain Inj.* 2009;23(4):263–277.
256. Diekelmann S, Born J. One memory, two ways to consolidate? *Nat Neurosci.* 2007;10(9):1085–1086.
257. Fischer S, Nitschke MF, Melchert UH, Erdmann C, Born J. Motor memory consolidation in sleep shapes more effective neuronal representations. *J Neurosci.* 2005;25(49):11248–11255.
258. Rickard TC, Cai DJ, Rieth CA, Jones J, Ard MC. Sleep does not enhance motor sequence learning. *J Exper Psychol Learning Memory Cognition.* 2008;34(4):834–842.
259. Sheth BR, Janvelyan D, Khan M. Practice makes imperfect: restorative effects of sleep on motor learning. *PLoS One.* 2008;3(9). e3190.
260. Debarnot U, Creveaux T, Collet C, et al. Sleep-related improvements in motor learning following mental practice. *Brain Cogn.* 2009;69(2): 398–405.
261. Siengsukon CF, Boyd LA. Perspective. Does sleep promote motor learning? Implications for physical rehabilitation. *Phys Ther.* 2009;89(4):370–383.
262. Siengsukon CF, Boyd LA. Sleep enhances implicit motor skill learning in individuals post stroke. *Top Stroke Rehabil.* 2008;15(1):1–12.
263. Siengsukon CF, Boyd LA. Sleep to learn after stroke: Implicit and explicit off-line motor learning. *Neurosci Lett.* 2009;451(1):1–5.
264. Gilbert KS, et al. Sleep Disturbances, TBI and PTSD: Implications for treatment and recovery. *Clinical Psychology Review.* 2015; 40:195–212.
265. Barshikar S, Bell KR. Sleep Disturbance After TBI. *Current Neurology and Neuroscience Reports.* 2017;17(11):87.
266. Gzil F, Lefeve C, Cammelli M, Pachoud B, Ravaud JF, Leplege A. Why is rehabilitation not yet fully person-centered and should it be more person-centered? *Disabil Rehabil.* 2007;29(20/21):1616–1624.
267. Bloom LF, Lapierre NM, Wilson KG, Curran D, Deforge DA, Blackmer J. Concordance in goal setting between patients with multiple sclerosis and their rehabilitation team. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2006;85(10):807–813.
268. Cramer SC, Sur M, Dobkin BH, et al. Harnessing neuroplasticity for clinical applications. *Brain J Neurol.* 2011;134(6):1591–1609.
269. Kee YH. Liu. Effects of dispositional mindfulness on the self-controlled learning of a novel motor task. *Learning Individual Diff.* 2011; 21(4):468–471.
270. Taylor RR. Extending client-centered practice: the use of participatory methods to empower clients. *Occup Ther Mental Health.* 2003;19(2):57–75.
271. Gauggel S, Fischer S. The effect of goal setting on motor performance and motor learning in brain-damaged patients. *Neuropsychol Rehabil.* 2001;11(1):33–44.

272. Eschenfelder VG. Shaping the goal setting process in OT: the role of meaningful occupation. *Phys Occup Ther Geriatr.* 2005;23(4):67–81.
273. Bovend'Eerdt TJ, Botell RE, Wade DT. Writing SMART rehabilitation goals and achieving goal attainment scaling: a practical guide. *Clin Rehabil.* 2009;23(4):352–361.
274. Harty M, Griesel M, van der Merwe A. The ICF as a common language for rehabilitation goal-setting: comparing client and professional priorities. *Health Qual Life Outcomes.* 2011;9:87. http://www.hqlo.com/content/9/1/87.
275. Playford ED, Siegert R, Levack W, Freeman J. Areas of consensus and controversy about goal setting in rehabilitation: a conference report. *Clin Rehabil.* 2009;23(4):334–344.
276. Leach E, Cornwell P, Fleming J, Haines T. Patient centered goal-setting in a subacute rehabilitation setting. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010;32(2):159–172.
277. Scobbie L, Dixon D, Wyke S. Goal setting and action planning in the rehabilitation setting: development of a theoretically informed practice framework. *Clin Rehabil.* 2011;25(5):468–482.
278. Scobbie L, Wyke S, Dixon D. Identifying and applying psychological theory to setting and achieving rehabilitation goals. *Clin Rehabil.* 2009;23(4):321–333.
279. Löwing K, Bexelius A, Carlberg EB. Goal-directed functional therapy: a longitudinal study on gross motor function in children with cerebral palsy. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010;32(11):908–916.
280. Löwing K, Bexelius A, Carlberg EB. Activity focused and goal directed therapy for children with cerebral palsy—do goals make a difference? *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(22):1808–1816.
281. Spooren AI, Janssen-Potten YJ, Kerckhofs E, Bongers HM, Seelen HA. ToCUEST: a task-oriented client-centered training module to improve upper extremity skilled performance in cervical spinal cord-injured persons. *Spinal Cord.* 2011;49(10):1042–1048.
282. Laver K, Halbert J, Stewart M, Crotty M. Patient readiness and ability to set recovery goals during the first 6 months after stroke. *J Allied Health.* 2010;39(4):e149–e154.
283. Gustafsson L, McLaughlin K. An exploration of clients' goals during inpatient and outpatient stroke rehabilitation. *Int J Ther Rehabil.* 2009;16(6):324–330.
284. Levack WM, Siegert RJ, Dean SG, McPherson KM. Goal planning for adults with acquired brain injury: how clinicians talk about involving family. *Brain Inj.* 2009;23(3):192–202.
285. Hallett M. Guest editorial: neuroplasticity and rehabilitation. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2005;42(4):xvii–xxi.
286. Callahan J, Parlman K, Bennato M, Townsend E. Perspective: impact of the IIIStep Conference on clinical practice. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2006;30(3):157–166.
287. Kleim JA, Jones TA. Principles of experience-dependent neural plasticity: implications for rehabilitation after brain damage. *J Speech Lang Hear Res.* 2008;51(1):S225–S239.
288. Kleim JA. Neural plasticity and neurorehabilitation: teaching the new brain old tricks. *J Commun Disord.* 2011;44(5):521–528.
289. Landers M. Treatment-induced neuroplasticity following focal injury to the motor cortex. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2004;27(1):1–5.
290. Wittenberg GF. Experience, cortical remapping, and recovery in brain disease. *Neurobiol Dis.* 2010;37(2):252–258.
291. Purton J, Golledge J. Establishing an effective quantity of physiotherapy after stroke: a discussion. *Int J Ther Rehabil.* 2007;14(7):318–323.
292. Teasell R, Bitensky J, Foley N, Bayona NA. Training and stimulation in post stroke recovery brain reorganization. *Top Stroke Rehabil.* 2005;12(3):37–45.
293. Damiano DL. Rehabilitative Therapies in Cerebral Palsy: The Good, the Not As Good, and the Possible. *J Child Neurol.* 2009;24(9):1200–1204.
294. Kolb B, Muhammad A, Gibb R. Searching for factors underlying cerebral plasticity in the normal and injured brain. *J Commun Disord.* 2011;44(5):503–514.
295. Cramer SC. Repairing the human brain after stroke. I. Mechanisms of spontaneous recovery. *Ann Neurol.* 2008;63(3):272–287.
296. Behrman AL, Ardolino EM, Harkema SJ. Activity-based therapy: from basic science to clinical application for recovery after spinal cord injury. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2017;41:S39–S45.
297. Oujamaa L, Relave I, Froger J, Mottet D, Pelissier JY. Rehabilitation of arm function after stroke. Literature review. *Ann Phys Rehabil Med.* 2009;52(3):269–293.
298. Carey JR, Bhatt E, Nagpal A. Neuroplasticity promoted by task complexity. *Exerc Sport Sci Rev.* 2005;33(1):24–31.
299. Kantak SS, Sullivan KJ, Fisher BE, Knowlton BJ, Winstein CJ. Neural substrates of motor memory consolidation depend on practice structure. *Nat Neurosci.* 2010;13(8):923–925.
300. Holleran CL, Straube DD, Kinnaird CR, Leddy AL, Hornby TG. Feasibility and potential efficacy of high-intensity stepping training in variable contexts in sub-acute and chronic stroke. *Neurorehab Neural Repair.* 2014;28(7):643–651.
301. Wulf G, Lewthwaite R. Optimizing performance through intrinsic motivation and attention for learning: the OPTIMAL theory of motor learning. *Psychonomic Bulletin & Review.* 2016:23;(5):1382-1414.
302. Ellis T, Boudreau JK, DeAngelis TR, et al. Barriers to exercise in people with parkinson disease. *Phys Ther.* 2013;93(5):628–636.
303. Mowase F, Uehara S, Bastian AJ, Celnik P. Motor learning enhances use-dependent plasticity. *J Neuroscience.* 2017;37(10):2673–2685.
304. Sunderland AT, Tuke A. Neuroplasticity, learning and recovery after stroke: a critical evaluation of constraint-induced therapy. *Neuropsychol Rehabil.* 2005;15(2):81–96.
305. Huang H, Fetters L, Hale J, McBride A. Bound for success: a systematic review of constraint-induced movement therapy in children with cerebral palsy supports improved arm and hand use. *Phys Ther.* 2009;89(11):1126–1141.
306. Hanson ED, Srivatsan SR, Agrawal S, et al. Effects of strength training on physical function: influence of power, strength, and body composition. *J Strength Cond Res.* 2009;23(9):2627–2637.
307. Kleim JA, Hogg TM, VandenBerg PM, Cooper NR, Bruneau R, Remple M. Cortical synaptogenesis and motor map reorganization occur during late but not early, phase of motor skill learning. *J Neurosci.* 2004;24(3):628–633.
308. DeFina P, Fellus J, Polito MZ, et al. The new neuroscience frontier: promoting neuroplasticity and brain repair in traumatic brain injury. *Clin Neuropsychol.* 2009;23(8):1391–1399.
309. Behrman AL, Bowden MG, Nair PM. Neuroplasticity after spinal cord injury and training: an emerging paradigm shift in rehabilitation and walking recovery. *Phys Ther.* 2006;86(10):1406–1425.
310. Nyberg L, Eriksson J, Larsson A, Marklund P. Learning by doing versus learning by thinking: an fMRI study of motor and mental training. *Neuropsychologia.* 2006;44(5):711–717.
311. Hubbard IJ, Parsons MW, Neilson C, Carey LM. Task-specific training: evidence for and translation to clinical practice. *Occup Ther Int.* 2009;16(3–4):175–189.
312. Sullivan KJ, Brown DA, Klassen T, et al. Effects of task-specific locomotor and strength training in adults who were ambulatory after stroke: results of the STEPS randomized clinical trial. *Phys Ther.* 2007;87(12):1580–1607.
313. Forrester LW, Wheaton LA, Luft AR. Exercise-mediated locomotor recovery and lower-limb neuroplasticity after stroke. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2008;45(2):205–220.
314. van Hedel HJ, Dietz V. Rehabilitation of locomotion after spinal cord injury. *Restor Neurol Neurosci.* 2010;28(1):123–134.
315. Byl NN, Pitsch EA, Abrams GM. Functional outcomes can vary by dose: learning-based sensorimotor training for patients stable post stroke. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2008;22(5):494–504.
316. Kimberley TJ, Samargia S, Moore LG, Shakya JK, Lang CE. Comparison of amounts and types of practice during rehabilitation for traumatic brain injury and stroke. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2010;47(9):851–861.
317. Kerr AL, Cheng SY, Jones TA. Experience-dependent neural plasticity in the adult damaged brain. *J Commun Disord.* 2011;44(5):538–548.
318. Cramer SC, Sur M, Dobkin BH, et al. Harnessing neuroplasticity for clinical applications. *Brain.* 2011;134(6):1591–1609.
319. Umphred DA, Thompson MH, West TM. The limbic system: influence over motor control and learning. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:99–140.
320. Min-Fang K, Grosch J, Fregni F, Paulus W, Nitsche MA. Focusing effect of acetylcholine on neuroplasticity in the human motor cortex. *J Neurosci.* 2007;27(52):14442–14447.
321. Anderson V, Spencer-Smith M, Wood A. Do children really recover better? Neurobehavioural plasticity after early brain insult. *Brain J Neurol.* 2011;134(8):2197–2221.

322. Landi D, Rossini PM. Cerebral restorative plasticity from normal ageing to brain diseases: a "never ending story." *Restor Neurol Neurosci.* 2010;28(3):349–366.
323. Heuninckx S, Wenderoth N, Swinnen SP. Systems neuroplasticity in the aging brain: recruiting additional neural resources for successful motor performance in elderly persons. *J Neurosci.* 2008;27(53): 91–99.
324. Goh JO, Park DC. Neuroplasticity and cognitive aging: the scaffolding theory of aging and cognition. *Restor Neurol Neurosci.* 2009;27 (5):391–403.
325. Kramer AF, Erickson KI. Capitalizing on cortical plasticity: influence of physical activity on cognition and brain function. *Trends Cogn Sci.* 2007;11(8):342–348.
326. Sullivan KJ, Kantak SS, Burtner PA. Motor learning in children: feedback effects on skill acquisition. *Phys Ther.* 2008;88(6):720–732.
327. Brosseau J, Potvin MJ, Rouleau I. Aging affects motor skill learning when the task requires inhibitory control. *Dev Neuropsychol.* 2007;32(1):597–613.
328. Boyd LA, Vidoni ED, Siengsukon CF. Multidimensional motor sequence learning is impaired in older but not younger or middle-aged adults. *Phys Ther.* 2008;88(3):351–362.
329. Bo J, Borza V, Seidler RD. Age-related declines in visuo-spatial working memory correlate with deficits in explicit motor sequence learning. *J Neurophysiol.* 2009;102(5):2744–2754.
330. Harvey RL. Improving post stroke recovery: neuroplasticity and task-oriented training. *Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med.* 2009;11(3): 251–259.
331. Muir AL, Jones LM, Signal NE. Is neuroplasticity promoted by task complexity? *N Z J Physiother.* 2009;37(3):136–144.
332. Dimyan MA, Cohen LG. Neuroplasticity in the context of motor rehabilitation after stroke. *Nat Rev Neurol.* 2011;7(2):76–85.
333. Khedr EM, Abdel-Fadeil MR, Farghali A, Qaid M. Role of 1 and 3 Hz repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation on motor function recovery after acute ischemic stroke. *Eur J Neurol.* 2009;16 (12):1323–1330.
334. Khedr EM, Etraby AE, Hemeda M, Nasef AM, Razek AA. Long-term effect of repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation on motor function recovery after acute ischemic stroke. *Acta Neurol Scand.* 2010; 121(1):30–37.
335. Will B, Galani R, Kelche C, Rosenzweig MR. Recovery from brain injury in animals: relative efficacy of environmental enrichment, physical exercise, or formal training. *Prog Neurobiol.* 2004;72(3): 167–182.
336. Knaepen K, Goekint M, Heyman EM, Meeusen R. Neuroplasticity—exercise-induced response of peripheral brain-derived neurotrophic factor: a systematic review of experimental studies in human subjects. *Sports Med.* 2010;40(9):765–801.
337. Bekinschtein P, Oomen CA, Saksida LM, Bussey TJ. Effects of environmental enrichment and voluntary exercise on neurogenesis, learning and memory, and pattern separation: BDNF as a critical variable. *Semin Cell Dev Biol.* 2011;22(5):536–542.
338. Bekinschtein P, Oomen CA, Saksida LM, Bussey TJ. Effects of environmental enrichment and voluntary exercise on neurogenesis, learning and memory, and pattern separation: BDNF as a critical variable. *Semin Cell Dev Biol.* 2011;22(5):536–542.
339. Celnik PA, Cohen GL. Modulation of motor function and cortical plasticity in health and disease. *Neurol Neurosci.* 2004;22(3–5):261–268.
340. Fregni F, Pascual-Leone A. Hand motor recovery after stroke: tuning the orchestra to improve hand motor function. *Cogn Behav Neurol.* 2006;19(1):21–33.
341. van Vliet PM, Heneghan NR. Motor control and the management of musculoskeletal dysfunction. *Man Ther.* 2006;11(3):208–213.
342. Langevin HM, Sherman KJ. Pathophysiological model for chronic low back pain integrating connective tissue and nervous system mechanisms. *Med Hypotheses.* 2007;68(1):74–80.
343. Boyd LA, Winstein CJ. Explicit information interferes with implicit motor learning of both continuous and discrete movement tasks after stroke. *J Neurol Phys Ther.* 2006;30(2):46–57.
344. Boyd LA, Winstein CJ. Impact of explicit information on implicit motor-sequence learning following middle cerebral artery stroke. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83(11):976–989.
345. Aberg KC, Herzog MH. Does perceptual learning suffer from retrograde interference? *PLoS One.* 2010;5(12):e14161.
346. Krakauer JW, Shadmehr R. Consolidation of motor memory. *Trends Neurosci.* 2006;29(1):58–64.
347. Henningsen P, et al. Persistent Physical Symptoms as Perceptual Dysregulation: A Neuropsychobehavioral Model and Its Clinical Implications. *Psychosomatic Medicine.* 2018;80(5):422–431.
348. Knaepen K, Goekint M, Heyman EM, Meeusen R. Neuroplasticity—exercise-induced response of peripheral brain-derived neurotrophic factor: a systematic review of experimental studies in human subjects. *Sports Med.* 2010;40(9):765–801.
349. Michelini LC, Stern JE. Exercise-induced neuronal plasticity in central autonomic networks: role in cardiovascular control. *Exp Physiol.* 2009;94(9):947–960.
350. Mueller PJ. Exercise training and sympathetic nervous system activity: evidence for physical activity dependent neural plasticity. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol.* 2007;34(4):377–384.
351. Vaynman S, Gomez-Pinilla F. License to run: exercise impacts functional plasticity in the intact and injured central nervous system by using neurotrophins. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2005;19(4): 283–295.
352. Rojas Vega S. Effect of resistance exercise on serum levels of growth factors in humans. *Horm Metab Res.* 2010;42(13):982–986.
353. Prakash RS, Snook EM, Erickson KI, et al. Cardiorespiratory fitness: a predictor of cortical plasticity in multiple sclerosis. *Neuroimage.* 2007;34(3):1238–1244.
354. White LJ, Castellano V. Exercise and brain health—implications for multiple sclerosis: part 1— neuronal growth factors. *Sports Med.* 2008;38(2):91–100.
355. Oguh O, Eisenstein A, Kwasny M, Simuni T. Back to the basics: Regular exercise matters in Parkinson's disease: Results from the National Parkinson Foundation QII Registry study. *Parkinsonism and Related disorders.* 2014;20(11):1221–1225.
356. Ahlskog JE. Does vigorous exercise have a neuroprotective effect in Parkinson disease? *Neurol.* 2011;77(3):288–294.
357. Petzinger GM, Fisher BE, Van Leeuwen JE, et al. Enhancing neuroplasticity in the basal ganglia: the role of exercise in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord.* 2010;25(Suppl 1):S141–S145.
358. Hirsch MA, Farley BG. Exercise and neuroplasticity in persons living with Parkinson's disease. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med.* 2009;45(2): 215–229.
359. Silva Da, Domingues De Carvalho. Allodi, Correa. Neurotrophic factors in Parkinson's disease are regulated by exercise: Evidence-based practice. *Journal of the Neurological Sciences.* 2016;363(C):5–15.
360. Zoladz JA, Majerczak J, Zeligowska E, et al. Moderate-intensity interval training increases serum brain-derived neurotrophic factor level and decreases inflammation in Parkinson's disease patients. *J Physiol Pharmacol.* 2014;65(3):441–448.
361. Kamijo K, Hayasi Y, Sakai T, Yahiro T, Tanaka K, Nishihira Y. Acute effects of aerobic exercise on cognitive function in older adults. *J Gerontol B Psychol Sci Soc Sci.* 2009;64B(3):356–363.
362. Muscari A, Giannoni C, Pierpaoli L, et al. Chronic endurance exercise training prevents aging-related cognitive decline in healthy older adults: a randomized controlled trial. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2010;25(10):1055–1064.
363. Lindwall M, Rennemark M, Berggren T. Movement in mind: the relationship of exercise with cognitive status for older adults in the Swedish National Study on Aging and Care (SNAC). *Aging Mental Health.* 2008;12(2):212–220.
364. Geda YE, Roberts RO, Knopman DS, et al. Physical exercise, aging, and mild cognitive impairment: a population-based study. *Arch Neurol.* 2010;67(1):80–86.
365. Baker LD, Frank LL, Foster-Schubert K, et al. Effects of aerobic exercise on mild cognitive impairment: a controlled trial. *Arch Neurol.* 2010;67(1):71–79.
366. Foster PP, Rosenblatt KP, Kuljiš RO. Exercise-induced cognitive plasticity, implications for mild cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. *Front Neurol.* 2011;2:e28.
367. Ahlskog JE, Geda YE, Graff-Radford NR, Petersen RC. Physical exercise as a preventive or disease-modifying treatment of dementia and brain aging. *Mayo Clin Proc.* 2011;86(9):876–884.
368. Liu-Ambrose T, Eng JJ, Boyd LA. Promotion of the mind through exercise (PROMoTE): a proof-of-concept randomized controlled trial of aerobic exercise training in older adults with vascular cognitive impairment. *BMC Neurol.* 2010;10:1–9. special section.

4 Evidence-Based Approach to Orthotic and Prosthetic Rehabilitation☆

JEREMY E. HILLIARD, KEVIN K. CHUI, TABITHA D. GALINDO, and MICHELLE M. LUSARDI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the basic principles of evidence-based practice and apply these principles to orthotic and prosthetic rehabilitation.
2. Ask well-formulated, clearly defined, and clinically important questions applicable to orthotic and prosthetic rehabilitation.
3. Efficiently locate meaningful research specific to orthotic and prosthetic rehabilitation.
4. Critically appraise the evidence for validity and clinical importance.
5. Use the orthotic and prosthetic research evidence to make evidence-based clinical judgments that affect your practice.
6. Describe strategies to encourage practitioners to engage in greater use of evidence to inform their clinical decision making and thus practice.

What Is Evidence-Based Practice?

Providing effective health and rehabilitative care requires that practitioners be well informed about advances in assessment, medical management, technology, theory, and rehabilitation interventions. Relying on past experience or on the opinion of experts is not enough. An effective health care provider must also regularly update his or her knowledge base by accessing the ever-growing information generated by clinical researchers and their basic science colleagues.[1] However, providers in all health care disciplines face a number of challenges in efficiently and accurately locating, appraising, and applying scientific evidence in the midst of their increasingly hectic clinical practice schedules.[2-4] Health care providers who routinely use such skills and strategies demonstrate an evidence-based approach to patient care. This chapter provides guidance to the practitioner in overcoming these challenges to engaging in evidence-based practice (EBP).

David Sackett, MD, the father of evidence-based medicine, described this approach as the "integration of best research evidence with clinical expertise and patient values."[4] EBP is a broader concept that applies Sackett's physician-oriented concepts to a wide range of health professions.[4] Both models identify three major elements of evidence that are interactive and valuable, as well as a set of skills necessary to integrate each resource into an effective and informed clinical decision (Fig. 4.1). The three major elements are the following:

1. Best available information from up-to-date, clinically relevant research
2. The skilled and experienced practitioner who can accurately perform diagnostic procedures and interventions, integrate findings to efficiently determine correct diagnosis, and engage in reflective clinical practice
3. The integration of the patient's and family's issues, concerns, and hopes into the care plan

All three elements are equally important for an effective clinical decision-making process; optimal health care outcomes are grounded on integration of perspectives and priorities that each source of information brings to bear.

To make an informed clinical decision, the evidence-based rehabilitation professional must possess the skills to do the following:

1. Effectively search for and access relevant scientific evidence in the professional literature.[5]
2. Assess the strength and value of the scientific evidence that will support the decision to be made.[6]
3. Apply results of an accurate clinical examination, as well as the evidence from the literature, in the process of diagnosis, evaluation, prognosis, and development of an appropriate plan of care.[7]
4. Assess and incorporate the patient's or client's values, knowledge, preferences, and motivation into the intervention and anticipated outcomes.[8]

☆The authors extend appreciation to Rita A. Wong, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

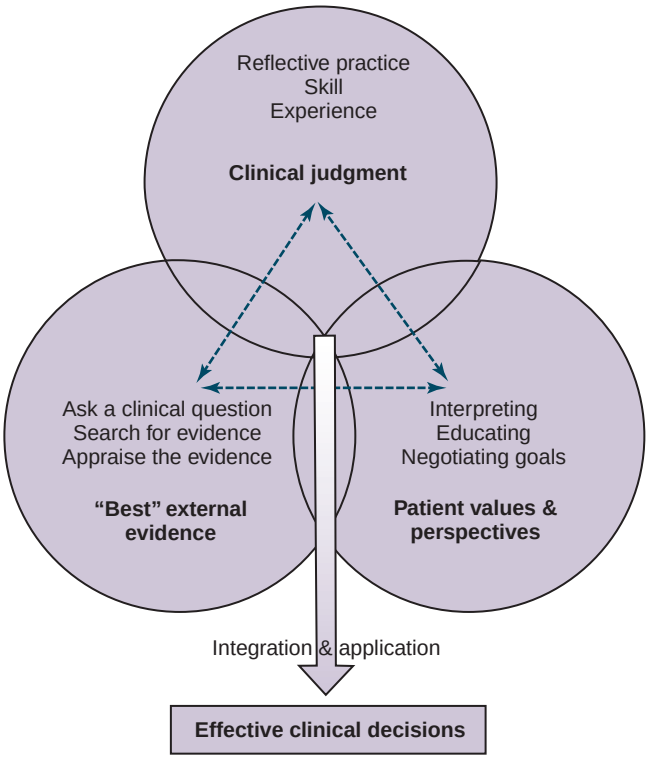


Fig. 4.1 Model of three essential and interactive components necessary for effective evidence-based health care approach to guide clinical decision making, as well as the dimensions of each.

Process of Evidence-Based Practice

EBP is essentially an orientation to clinical decision making that incorporates the best available sources of evidence into the process of assessment, intervention planning, and evaluation of outcomes. The skill set necessary for effective EBP develops over time, with practice and experience.

An EBP approach to the scientific literature is a systematic process with four primary steps[1,4,9]:

1. Posing a well-formulated, clinically important question
2. Locating meaningful research that is well targeted to the question (i.e., developing effective and efficient search strategies)
3. Critically appraising the available evidence for validity and clinical importance
4. Using the findings to make an evidence-based clinical judgment about examination or intervention options on the basis of the clinical relevance of the information applied to the needs of the individual patient

Step 1: Formulating an Answerable Clinical Question

The questions posed by researchers and the questions posed by clinicians, although similar in many respects, are asked and answered at quite different levels. Research questions combine information from groups (samples) of individuals to develop evidence about relationships among characteristics, effectiveness of examination strategies, or effectiveness of intervention strategies for the group as a whole.[10] In contrast, clinical questions seek to apply this knowledge to a single person with individual characteristics.[4,5,9] For example, clinicians ask, "Which examination strategy will provide the information most important for the clinical decision-making process for this particular individual?" and "Which intervention is likely to have the optimal outcome for this particular individual?"

The first essential step in the EBP process is developing a well-formulated, clinically important question. Sackett identifies two categories of clinical questions: broad background questions and specifically focused foreground questions.[4] *Background questions* expand our knowledge or understanding of a disorder, impairment, or functional limitation; they are often concerned with etiology, diagnosis, prognosis, or typical clinical course. Patients and their family members often ask health care practitioners background questions. Answers to background questions expand the general knowledge base used in clinical decision making. Students and novice clinicians ask many background questions as they develop expertise in their field. Even expert clinicians routinely need to seek answers to basic background questions when they encounter an unfamiliar pathologic condition or novel category of intervention. However, answers to background questions do not provide the specific evidence necessary to make individualized patient care decisions. Examples of broad background questions that might be asked by clinicians providing prosthetic and orthotic rehabilitation care include the following:

- What is the typical postsurgical rehabilitation program following a dysvascular transtibial amputation?
- What is peripheral arterial disease, and why can it lead to limb amputation?
- What neurologic functions are affected with a C7 spinal cord injury?
- What are the typical motor milestones of the first 2 years of life, and when is the achievement of these milestones considered delayed?

Foreground questions, in contrast, seek specific information to help guide management for an individual patient.[4,5,9] The most effective way to frame an answerable foreground clinical question follows the PICO model (Fig. 4.2). It identifies

P	Patient	Patient diagnostic category or key characteristic
I	Intervention	Treatment group, diagnostic tool, or prognostic marker
C	Comparison	Applicable if comparison is wanted between or among interventions, diagnostic tools, or prognostic markers
O	Outcome	What is the outcome of interest: presence of disease? Impairment? Functional limitation? Disability?

Fig. 4.2 The PICO system for formulating clinical questions includes consideration of the patient *(P)* who is receiving care; the intervention *(I)* being considered; and, if available, the reference standard with which it is being compared *(C)* and the anticipated outcomes *(O)* (positive and negative) of the intervention being considered.

the patient population of interest (P), noting specific characteristics (e.g., age, gender, diagnosis, acuity, severity) that will link the evidence to the patient care situation prompting the question. It then identifies the predictive factor, examination, or intervention (I) that is being considered. If appropriate, it identifies what comparisons (C) are being made to inform choice of examination or intervention. Finally, it clearly defines the outcomes (O) that might be expected for the given patient on the basis of the best available evidence. Using the PICO model, foreground questions that rehabilitation professionals might ask as they care for a specific individual in need of a prosthesis or orthosis include the following:

- How much does advanced age (I) affect the ability to become a functional ambulator (O) in an individual who has a dysvascular transtibial amputation (P)?
- Does supported treadmill gait training (I) improve ambulation endurance with a prosthesis (O) in older patients with dysvascular transtibial amputation (P)?
- Does the addition of functional neuromuscular stimulation (I) to a typical early rehabilitation intervention (C) enhance active muscle control (O) in individuals with incomplete spinal cord injury (P)?
- What factors predict (I) ambulation ability (O) in a young child with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy (P)?

PATIENT CHARACTERISTICS

A well-focused clinical question narrows the scope of possible patient characteristics to ones most applicable to a specific clinical problem or situation.[4,9] It defines the key characteristics that will best differentially guide the search for evidence. Characteristics or categories that help to focus a clinical question related to orthotic or prosthetic management are summarized in Table 4.1.

INTERVENTION

The term *intervention* is used broadly in the evidence-based literature. In the EBP paradigm, the intervention (I) and comparison intervention (C), described according to the PICO system, refer to the central issue for which the clinician is seeking an answer. This issue can typically revolve around an intervention, a diagnosis, or a prognosis.

Table 4.1 Patient Characteristics That May Be Used to Help Focus Literature Searches for Prosthetic and Orthotic Rehabilitation

Domain	Characteristics	Search Terms
Underlying condition	Etiology	Acquired (traumatic injury, infectious process, autoimmune disease, ischemia, vascular disease, neoplasm, cancer) Congenital condition Developmental delay Hereditary disease
	Systems affected	Musculoskeletal Neuromuscular Cardiovascular Pulmonary, respiratory Integumentary Endocrine Systemic physiologic
	Nature of condition	Chronic Progressive Degenerative Developmental Requiring remediation Requiring accommodation
	Comorbid conditions	Peripheral vascular disease Diabetes mellitus Systemic infections Cancer care, chemotherapy, radiation Heart disease Pulmonary disease Obesity Depression, anxiety Cognitive dysfunction Smoking
	Confounding factors	Alcohol use Other substance abuse Nutritional status
Family and lifespan development	Age category	Infant Toddler School-age child Adolescent Young adult Midlife adult Older adult

Continued on following page

Table 4.1 Patient Characteristics That May Be Used to Help Focus Literature Searches for Prosthetic and Orthotic Rehabilitation (Continued)

Domain	Characteristics	Search Terms
	Family system	Roles Responsibilities Caregiver
Fitness/conditioning	Level of activity	Frail Sedentary Active Elite athlete
Mobility	Use of assistive device	None Ambulatory aid (cane, crutch, walker) Wheelchair Adaptive equipment Requiring human assistance
Environmental issues	Environment	School Home Work Leisure Accessible/inaccessible
	Living arrangements	Community dwelling (alone, independent, with caregivers or family) Assisted living setting Skilled nursing

1 Intervention: a procedure or technique (e.g., a physical modality, surgical procedure, medication) (I) that is compared with alternative procedures or techniques (C).[11,12]
2 Diagnostic test: a test or measure (e.g., a bone mineral density test for identification of osteoporosis; the Berg Balance Scale for identification of fall risk) (I) that correctly differentiates patients with and without a specific condition (C).[13,14]
3 Prognostic marker: a specific set of characteristics or factors (I) that effectively predicts an outcome (O) for a given patient problem (P).[15]

DEFINING THE OUTCOME

A good clinical question focuses on the outcome that is most relevant to the patient care situation at hand. The Nagi model of disablement or the World Health Organization International Classification of Function (ICF) model provides a framework for clinicians to define the outcome they are most interested in: pathology or disease at the cellular level, impairment of a physiologic system, functional limitation at the level of the individual, or disability or handicap that interferes with the normal social role (Fig. 1.3).[16,17]

Case Example 4.1 **Elderly Woman With Recent Transtibial Amputation**

F. H. is an 89-year-old woman who had an elective transtibial amputation 4 days prior due to peripheral artery disease (PAD) unrelated to diabetes. Her postoperative pain is being managed with a narcotic, and she has been mildly disoriented and distractible during rehabilitation visits. At present, she requires moderate assistance in rising to standing and minimal assistance and directive cues to ambulate in a "hop to" pattern with a rolling walker. Her medical history includes mild congestive heart failure managed effectively with diuretics, hypertension managed effectively with beta-blockers, and a compression fracture (2 years ago) of the midthoracic spine secondary to osteoporosis. She recently had lens implants for cataracts. Before her hospitalization, she lived somewhat independently in an assisted living complex, walking long functional distances within the sprawling facility using a straight cane and eating her noon and evening meals in the communal dining room. She served as vice-chair of the Resident Council and was the organizer of an active bridge club and book discussion group. Her nearest living relative is a granddaughter who is finishing medical residency at the hospital.

The amputation/prosthetic clinic team has been charged with developing a plan for prosthetic rehabilitation, including determining her potential for prosthetic use, the optimal setting for rehabilitation intervention, the likely duration of rehabilitative care, and preliminary prosthetic prescription.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

Possible clinical questions that the team would ask to guide her plan of care include the following:

- Which strategies (pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic) for postamputation pain management (I, C) will minimize risk of delirium and assist motor and cognitive learning (O) in elderly individuals with multiple comorbidities (P)?
- Which functional and cognitive characteristics (I) provide the best indication of potential for prosthetic use (O) in elderly individuals with multiple comorbidities?
- What intrinsic and extrinsic factors (I) influence the duration of preprosthetic and prosthetic care (O) for older adults with recent transtibial amputation (P)?
- Which prosthetic foot option (nonarticulating, articulating, or dynamic response) (C, I) and suspension system (silicone suspension sleeve with pin, supracondylar cuff, waist belt, and forked-strap extension aid) (C, I) would maximize potential for safe community ambulation (O) in older patients with transtibial amputation, impaired postural control, and limited cardiovascular endurance (P)?

Case Example 4.2 **Young Adult With Incomplete Spinal Cord Injury**

S. K. is a 19-year-old with incomplete C7 level spinal cord injury who has just been admitted to the rehabilitation facility, 2 weeks after injury. S. K. was a backseat passenger injured in a driving-under-the-influence motor vehicle accident following a Thanksgiving homecoming football game victory at his high school. He was unconscious at the scene and for several hours afterward. He was given methylprednisolone in the emergency department 2 hours after injury. Radiographs revealed an anterior wedge fracture of C6 vertebra. After intubation, he was admitted to the neurologic intensive care unit; 2 days later he had surgical fusion of C4 through C7 with immobilization in a cervical halo. During the postoperative period, pneumonia developed and has since resolved. Sensation is intact in all sacral and lumbar 3 to 5 dermatomes, and he has 2/5 strength in dorsiflexion and plantar flexion bilaterally, with hyperactive deep tendon reflex at the knee. He can tolerate sitting in a bedside recliner or high-back reclining wheelchair for approximately 45 minutes. He is anxious to know whether he will be able to walk again and, although frightened by what has occurred, appears to be motivated to begin his rehabilitation.

Before his injury, S. K. lived at home while attending a nearby state university as a biology major. His intention was to eventually apply to medical school to become an orthopedic surgeon. His parents and younger sister are involved in his care; a family member is with him for most of the day. He has a cousin, now in law school, who was born with spina bifida and uses a wheelchair for primary mobility.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

Possible clinical questions that the team might ask to guide his plan of care might include the following:

- What are the most powerful indicators (I) of potential for return to functional ambulation (O) in patients with incomplete cervical spinal cord injury (P)?
- Which physical therapy interventions (I, C) will best improve functional lower extremity strength (O) in patients with incomplete cervical spinal cord injury who are immobilized in a cervical halo (P)?
- What strategies (pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic) (I, C) are effective in managing abnormal tone without compromising potential for strengthening (O) in patients with incomplete cervical spinal cord injury (P)?
- Will functional neuromuscular stimulation (I) reduce orthotic need and improve quality of gait (O) in patients with incomplete cervical spinal cord injury (P)?

Case Example 4.3 **Toddler With Spastic Diplegic Cerebral Palsy**

E. C. is an 18-month-old with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy being cared for by an interdisciplinary early intervention team. E. C. was born prematurely at 34 weeks of gestation after her mom's high-risk first pregnancy. Her course in the neonatal intensive care unit was relatively uneventful: She did not require ventilatory assistance but did have periodic episodes of apnea and bradycardia until she reached a weight of 4 lb. She was discharged to home at 3 weeks of age and appeared to be developing fairly typically until approximately 8 or 9 months of age. Her parents noted increasing "stiffness" of her lower extremities when in supported standing, a tendency toward "bunny hop" rather than reciprocal creeping, and over-reliance on upper extremities to pull to stand (as compared with her cousins and babies in her playgroup). Her pediatrician referred the family to a pediatric neurologist, who found mild to moderate hyperreflexia and decorticate pattern hypertonicity in her lower extremities. She has been followed in the early intervention program for 7 months; the team is charged with determining whether this is an appropriate time for orthotic intervention because she is ready to begin gait training.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

Questions that might be asked to guide her plan of care include the following:

- What are the minimal levels of muscle performance and range of motion at the hip and knee (I) necessary for effective ambulation with an articulating ankle-foot orthosis (AFO) (O) in children with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy (P)?
- Which type of therapeutic activity or approach (e.g., neurodevelopmental [NDT], sensory integration, proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation [PNF]) (I) is most effective in assisting dynamic postural control of the lower trunk and lower extremities during transitional and locomotor tasks (O) in children with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy (P)?
- What accommodations or adaptations of the home environment (I) will best assist safety, as well as developmental progression (O), in children with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy (P)?

Step 2: Locating and Accessing the Best Evidence

Once the clinical question has been clearly identified and articulated, the next step is to search the rehabilitation research literature for relevant information. The second step is to access full text articles, access their quality, and read those that might inform decision making.[18-21] Among the many ways to find citations and (hopefully) the full text of the article are the following:

- Regularly visit key journal websites to review what has been recently published or published ahead of print that might be relevant to the question. For example, the *Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics* (https://www.oandp.org/page/jpo_nm) allows full access to any journal article published in the years previous to the current year. This strategy can be somewhat "hit or miss" in terms of effectiveness.
- Use the index in the back of up-to-date textbooks as a reliable secondary source of information; this can be especially useful to answer background questions.

- Use an internet search engine such as Google Scholar (http://scholar.google.com; free access), which provides both unjuried and juried resources and requires the ability to carefully assess the quality of the source and of the information that has been located.
- Use electronic databases of peer-reviewed journals such as PubMed/Medline/OVID (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed; free access) or the Physiotherapy Evidence Database (PEDro; http://www.pedro.org.au/; free access) using appropriate key words. Professional organizations such as the American Physical Therapy Association (APTA) provide links to search engines (http://www.ptnow.org/ArticleSearch) or synthesized evidence (http://www.apta.org/PTNow) for organization members. Many medical libraries maintain subscriptions to multiple medical databases through services such as EBSCO (http://health.ebsco.com; subscription access) or ProQuest (http://www.proquest.com/products-services/pq_health_med_comp.html), among others.
- Subscribe to electronic table of content (eTOC) alerts from research journals relevant to their practice areas. For example, *Physical Therapy* (http://academic.oup.com/ptj), the *Journal of Geriatric Physical Therapy* (http://www.jgpt.org), the *Journal of Neurologic Physical* (http://www.jnpt.org), *Clinical Biomechanics* (http://www.clinbiomech.com), and the *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation* (http://www.archives-pmr.org), among many others will send table of contents for current issues to email, cellular phones, tablets, e-readers, and other devices.

Each strategy has pros and cons in terms of efficiency and availability. Health professionals who use an evidence-based approach to patient care develop, over time, an information-seeking strategy that works within their time constraints and accessible resources.[22-24]

SOURCES OF EVIDENCE

Clinicians can access information from the research literature in a variety of formats and from a variety of sources. One of the most accessible formats is a journal article.[25,26] Table 4.2 provides a list of the journals particularly relevant

Table 4.2 Journals Relevant to Orthotic and Prosthetic Rehabilitation

Journal Title	Abbreviation
American Journal of Occupational Therapy	Am J Occup Ther
American Journal of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation	Am J Phys Med Rehabil
American Journal of Podiatric Medicine	Am J Podiatr Med
American Journal of Surgery	Am J Surg
American Rehabilitation	Am Rehabil
Annals of Physical Medicine	Ann Phys Med
Archives of Neurology	Arch Neurol
Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation	Arch Phys Med Rehabil
Archives of Surgery	Arch Surg
Assistive Technology	Assist Technol
Journal of Athletic Training	J Athl Train
Australian Journal of Physiotherapy	Aust J Physiother
Biomechanics	Biomechanics
British Journal of Sports Medicine	Br J Sports Med
Bulletin of Prosthetic Research	Bull Prosthet Res
Canadian Journal of Occupational Therapy	Can J Occup Ther
Clinical Biomechanics	Clin Biomech
Clinics in Orthopedics and Related Research	Clin Orthop Rel Res
Clinics in Podiatric Medicine and Surgery	Clin Podiatr Med Surg
Clinics in Prosthetics and Orthotics	Clin Prosthet Orthot
Developmental Medicine & Child Neurology	Dev Med Child Neurol
Diabetes Care	Diabetes Care
Diabetic Foot	Diabet Foot
Diabetic Medicine	Diabet Med
Disability and Rehabilitation	Disabil Rehabil
Foot and Ankle Clinics	Foot Ankle Clin

Continued on following page

Table 4.2 Journals Relevant to Orthotic and Prosthetic Rehabilitation (Continued)

Journal Title	Abbreviation
Foot and Ankle International	Foot Ankle Int
Gait and Posture	Gait Posture
Interdisciplinary Science Reviews	Interdisc Sci Rev
International Journal of Rehabilitation Research	Int J Rehabil Res
Journal of Allied Health	J Allied Health
Journal of Applied Biomechanics	J Appl Biomech
Journal of Biomechanical Engineering	J Biomech Eng
Journal of Biomechanics	J Biomech
Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery	J Bone Joint Surg
Journal of Geriatric Physical Therapy	J Geriatr Phys Ther
Journal of Head Trauma and Rehabilitation	J Head Trauma Rehabil
Journal of Medical Engineering and Technology	J Med Eng Technol
Journal of Musculoskeletal Medicine	J Musculoskel Med
Journal of Neurologic Physical Therapy	J Neuro Phys Ther
Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy	J Orthop Sports Phys Ther
Journal of Pediatric Orthopedics	J Pediatr Orthop
Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics	J Prosthet Orthot
Journal of Rehabilitation	J Rehabil
Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine	J Rehabil Med
Journal of Rehabilitation Research and Development	J Rehabil Res Dev
Journal of Spinal Disorders	J Spinal Disord
Journal of the American Geriatrics Society	J Am Geriatr Soc
Journal of the American Medical Association	JAMA
Journal of the American Podiatry Association	J Am Podiatry Assoc
Journal of Trauma	J Trauma
Journal of Medical and Biological Engineering	J Med Biol Eng
Orthopedic Clinics of North America	Orthop Clin North Am
Paraplegia	Paraplegia
Physiotherapy Canada	Physiother Can
Physical and Occupational Therapy in Geriatrics	Phys Occup Ther Geriatr
Physical and Occupational Therapy in Pediatrics	Phys Occup Ther Pediatr
Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation Clinics of North America	Phys Med Rehabil Clin North Am
Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation: State of the Art Reviews	Phys Med Rehabil State Art Rev
Physical Therapy	Phys Ther
Physiotherapy	Physiotherapy
Physiotherapy Research International	Physiother Res Int
Prosthetics and Orthotics International	Prosthet Orthot Int
Rehabilitation Nursing	Rehabil Nurs
Rehabilitation Psychology	Rehabil Psychol
Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine	Scand J Rehabil Med
Spinal Cord	Spinal Cord
Spine	Spine
Topics in Stroke Rehabilitation	Top Stroke Rehabil

to orthotic and prosthetic rehabilitation. These journals often contain original clinical research, reviews of the literature, and case reports focused on issues most relevant to the particular professional group.

The medical literature is divided into primary and secondary sources of information. Primary sources are the reports of original scientific work commonly published as journal articles. Secondary sources are summary reviews of the primary literature on given topics. Secondary sources include textbooks, review articles, systematic reviews (such as meta-analyses, critical reviews of individual articles, clinical practice guidelines [CPGs]), and website summaries. Research studies are the foundation of meaningful evidence. Academic textbooks, biomedical journals, and internet websites aimed at health professionals and biomedical researchers are common sources of research evidence.

Textbooks

Academic textbooks can be a good starting point for locating background information, particularly for content areas that change slowly (e.g., gross anatomy or biomechanics). Evidence-based textbooks are well referenced, go through a review process, and are typically updated every 3 to 5 years. They summarize clinical studies and opinions of experts and analyze/synthesize the impact of the research and expert opinion on the topic. Some textbooks are currently available online, which provides the advantage of frequent updating of specific sections as new research evidence emerges and allows the reader to immediately hyperlink to primary research article sources. The website FreeBooks4Doctors! (http://www.freebooks4doctors.com) provides hyperlinks to many key medical textbooks free of charge online. Many other online textbooks are available for purchase. Box 4.1 lists key indicators of quality in academic textbooks.

Primary Sources: Journal Articles

Journal articles may serve as either primary or secondary literature sources. They can be useful for both background and foreground clinical questions. Primary research articles are those in which the author presents the findings of a specific original study.[27,28] It is best to use this category of evidence when dealing with rapidly evolving areas of health care (which many clinical practice questions fall into). Identifying two or three high-quality primary research articles that generally provide similar supporting evidence offers strong evidence on which to base a clinical decision. Searching, critiquing, and synthesizing primary research sources is a time-intensive task.

Secondary Sources: Integrative and Systematic Review Articles

Use of high-quality secondary source journal articles to guide evidence-based determinations can be a time-efficient strategy for clinicians.[29,30] Quality indicators for secondary source articles include a comprehensive search of the literature (using an explicit search strategy) to identify existing studies, an unbiased analysis of these studies, and objective conclusions and recommendations on the basis of the analysis and synthesis.[31] Secondary sources are available in a variety of formats: integrative narrative review, systematic review, meta-analysis, and CPG. Each of these summative resources can be an effective and time-efficient method to obtain a critical assessment of a specific body of knowledge. However, there are benefits and drawbacks associated with each type of summative resource.

In an *integrative review article*, the author reviews and summarizes, and sometimes analyzes or synthesizes, the work of a number of primary authors.[32] These narrative reviews are often broad in scope, may or may not describe how articles were chosen for inclusion in the review, and present a qualitative analysis of previous research findings. The quality (validity) of the narrative review varies with the expertise of the reviewer and requires careful assessment by the reader.

Systematic reviews are particularly powerful secondary sources of evidence that typically analyze and synthesize controlled clinical trials.[29,31,33] Well-done systematic reviews are valuable sources of evidence and should always be sought when initiating a search. Box 4.2 lists key indicators of a quality systematic review. Systematic reviews are typically focused on a fairly narrow clinical question, are based on a comprehensive search of relevant literature, and use well-defined inclusion and exclusion criteria to select high-quality studies (typically randomized controlled trials) for inclusion in the review. Each study included in the review is carefully appraised for quality and relevance to the specific clinical topic. The author attempts to identify commonalities among study methods and outcomes, as well as account for differences in approaches and findings. A good systematic review is labor intensive to prepare, thus only approximately 1.5% of all journal articles referenced in Medline are true systematic reviews.[34] Although the numbers are low, increasing numbers of systematic reviews are being published, including ones on topics relevant to orthotics and prosthetics. For example, a PubMed search from 2013 to January 2018 of the literature using the terms "'limb amputation' AND rehabilitation" combining the limits (1) review and (2) English yielded 33 applicable

Box 4.1 Quality Indicators for Textbooks and Internet Sources of Evidence

- Credentials of the authors
- Quality of references
- Recent/regular updating
- Endorsement by respected groups
- Peer reviewed
- Disclosure of funding source

Box 4.2 Quality Indicators for Systematic Review Articles

- Exhaustive search for evidence
- Clearly identified quality criteria for inclusion
- Multiple authors with independent judgments
- Impartial, unbiased summary
- Clearly stated conclusions: ready for clinical application
- If meta-analysis: statistical manipulation across studies

reviews (Appendix 4.1); by comparison, the same search from 2008 to January 2013 returned 20 reviews.

A *meta-analysis* is a type of systematic review that quantitatively aggregates outcome data from multiple studies to analyze treatment effects (typically using the "odds ratio" statistic) as if the data represented one large sample (thus with greater statistics power) rather than multiple small samples of individuals.[29,31,35] The limitation to performing a meta-analysis is that, to combine studies, the category of patients, the interventions, and the outcome measures across the studies must all be similar. Meta-analyses can provide more powerful statements of the strength of the evidence either supporting or refuting a given treatment effect than the separate assessment of each study. Because of the difficulty in identifying studies with enough similarity to combine data, only a small subset of systematic reviews has been carried to the level of a meta-analysis. One meta-analysis (and one systematic review) was identified in PubMed using the terms "'limb amputation' AND 'rehabilitation'" combined the limits (1) meta-analysis, (2) English, and (3) published in past 5 years.[36]

Secondary Sources: Clinical Practice Guidelines

Another secondary resource for clinicians may be CPGs that have been developed for application to clinical practice on the basis of the best available current evidence.[37] Most existing CPGs have been developed for screening, diagnosis, and intervention in medical practice. CPGs are intended to direct clinical decision making about appropriate health care for specific diseases among specific populations of patients. The best available evidence upon which CPGs are typically based combines expert consensus and review of clinical research literature.[38] Most are interpreted as prescriptive, using algorithms to assist decision making for appropriate examination and intervention strategies for patients with given characteristics. Examples of CPGs that may be relevant to orthotic and prosthetic rehabilitation are listed in Appendix 4.2. The National Guidelines Clearinghouse is the most comprehensive database in the United States for CPGs (http://www.guidelines.gov).

ELECTRONIC RESOURCES AND SEARCH STRATEGIES

A number of electronic databases can assist clinicians in quickly locating primary and secondary sources of evidence to guide clinical decision making (Table 4.3). When seeking articles, it is often helpful to use several different databases. The APTA provides access to many electronic resources described later as a service to APTA members via its ArticleSearch (formerly Open Door) portal on the website http://www.ptnow.org/ArticleSearch.

Using an electronic database effectively is a two-step process. First, the searcher must locate applicable citations that provide the title of the article, author, and other key identifying information (e.g., journal, issue, year, pages). Most often, these citations also provide an abstract of the article. Sometimes the searcher can gather enough information about the applicability of the article for his or her needs purely on the basis of the information found in the title and abstract. However, most often the searcher must access the full-text article to adequately assess the findings of the study. Citations and abstracts are readily available free of charge from numerous databases. However, access to the full text of articles often requires a paid subscription to search databases.

Table 4.3 Electronic Databases Used to Search for Relevant Evidence

Acronym	Database Information	Access
—	Academic Search Premier	By library access
Best Evidence	ACP Journal Club and Evidence-Based Medicine (critical and systematic reviews)	http://www.acpjc.org
CCTR	Cochrane Controlled Trials Register	By subscription or library access
CDSR	Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews	By subscription or library access
CINAHL	Cumulative Index of Nursing and Allied Health Literature (citations and abstracts)	By subscription or library access (http://www.cinahl.com)
DARE	Cochrane Database of Abstracts of Reviews of Effectiveness	By subscription or library access
EBM Online	Evidence-based Medicine for Primary Care and Internal Medicine (critical reviews and systematic reviews)	By subscription (http://www.ebm.bmj.com)
Embase	Embase/Elsevier Science (citations and abstracts)	By subscription (https://www.elsevier.com/solutions/embase-biomedical-research)
—	PTNow/American Physical Therapy Association (citations, abstracts, annotations)	By membership in American Physical Therapy Association (http://www.apta.org/ptnow)
Medline	National Library of Medicine (abstracts)	By library access
NIH	National Institutes of Health Library	https://www.nih.gov/research-training/library-resources
OVID	A collection of health and medical subject databases (abstracts and full text)	By subscription or library access (http://www.ovid.com)
PEDro	The Physiotherapy Evidence Database (systematic reviews)	http://www.pedro.org.au
PubMed	National Library of Medicine (abstracts)	http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed (no charge)

Locating Citations

The National Library of Medicine, through the database PubMed, produces and maintains Medline, the largest publicly available database of English language biomedical references in the world. PubMed references more than 4600

journals, including many key non–English language biomedical journals. These journals, in the aggregate, include more than 15 million individual journal article citations. This database is also a rich source of citations for quality systematic reviews. Journals indexed in PubMed must meet rigorous standards for their level of peer review and the quality of the articles published in the journal; this gives the searcher some confidence in the information that is located through PubMed. PubMed can be accessed through the National Library of Medicine's website (http://www.nlm.nih.gov). OVID is another Medline resource; it is typically accessed via library subscription and often links full text articles.

The Cumulative Index of Nursing and Allied Health Literature (CINAHL) includes journal citations from a larger pool of nursing and allied health fields than is found in Medline. Many of these journals have a much smaller circulation than the typical Medline-cited journals, and the quality of these smaller circulation journals may not meet PubMed requirements. Thus the reader must be aware that closer scrutiny of validity and methodologic quality may be necessary. However, the greater inclusion of rehabilitation-focused journals in the CINAHL database makes this an important database for rehabilitation professionals. This database is available only to paid subscribers (library or individual subscriptions).

PTNow is a database of the APTA that can facilitate the knowledge translation process and is available free of charge to members of the association (http://www.ptnow.org).[39–41] Resources in PTNow have been reviewed, synthesized, and summarized by physical therapy academicians, researchers, and clinicians. Here an evidence-based practitioner may search for articles directly using ArticleSearch or review secondary sources including "Clinical Summaries," "CPGs," or "Cochrane Reviews."

Clinical Summaries offer a synthesis of evidence, called "Clinician's QuickTakes," regarding the management of specific conditions in different populations, including information on incidence and prevalence, classification, screening, examination, diagnosis, prognosis, intervention, medical management, and cases.[42] The full version of a clinical summary can also include information pathoanatomic features, risk factors, and impact on daily life. Clinical summaries that include information on orthotics or prosthetics include Spina Bifida: Myelomeningocele,[43] Cerebral Palsy,[44] Down Syndrome,[45] Guillain-Barré Syndrome,[46] Knee Osteoarthritis,[47] Multiple Sclerosis,[48] Patellofemoral Pain,[49] Spinal Cord Injury in Children and Adolescents,[50] Spinal Cord Injury in Adults,[51] Stroke,[52] and Traumatic Brain Injury in Civilian and Military Populations.[53]

Practitioners can print a full or a portable clinical summary. Current practice-changing information relevant to physical therapy, sports medicine, occupational therapy, and speech therapy can be found in "Rehab Reference Center" (RRC). There is also a section on "Tests" that includes tests and measures cited in Clinical Summaries and APTA section-generated CPGs that can be used in functional limitation reporting.

PEDro is a database of the Centre for Evidence-Based Physiotherapy at the University of Sydney, Australia, and is available to the public free of charge (http://www.pedro.org.au). PEDro lists CPGs, systematic reviews, and clinical trials. An advanced search allows the searcher to select the type of therapy, problem, body part, and subdiscipline. Both the PTNow and PEDro databases focus on high-quality studies related to physical therapy. Their benefit is ease of identifying citations applicable to physical therapy and rehabilitation. To search either database successfully, the research question should be fairly broad, using synonyms that represent words in the title. Both databases contain only a fraction of the citations found in PubMed; however, all of the citations are directly applicable to rehabilitation. A search of PEDro using "orthoses" identified one practice guideline, 31 systematic reviews, and 30 clinical trials, all relevant to physical therapy (Appendix 4.3). A similar search in ArticleSearch identified 7306 articles published since 2013.

The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (http://www.cochranelibrary.com) is widely accepted as the "gold standard" for systematic reviews. Groups of experts perform comprehensive and quantitative analysis and synthesis of the existing research on well-focused topics and distill the findings into scientifically supported recommendations. Cochrane reviews use a standardized format and carefully follow rules to decrease bias in the choice of articles to review and in the interpretation of the evidence. Although few address physical therapy exclusively, rehabilitation procedures and approaches are a component of many of these reviews. The findings are reported in structured abstracts that summarize the key aspects of the full review including the authors' conclusions about the strength of the evidence and their recommendations. These structured abstracts are available free online. However, access to full-text review articles requires a paid subscription.

Finding valuable secondary references on the web is increasingly possible. However, searchers must carefully scrutinize these materials because there is wide variability in accuracy and objectivity of the published information.[54] This evidence represents such varied sources as reports of original research, research reviews from trusted experts, student summaries that are non–peer reviewed, marketing advertisements (sometimes presented visually to appear to be a peer-reviewed research report), and lobbying groups' perspectives and persuasive arguments. There are many patient-focused sites and fewer practitioner-focused ones. The quality indicators identified in Table 4.2 are applicable to internet websites and textbooks.

Executing Search Strategies

Often, the first search for citations results in one of two extremes: hundreds or thousands of citations with only a few related to the clinical question being asked, or almost no citations focused on the topic of interest.[18,55,56] Searchers should look carefully at the citations that result from a search. In the search that is too broad, the searcher must examine closely what he or she is really looking for, comparing titles and key words that have resulted from the search. Often, the search is repeated by rewording or setting limiters to narrow results and omit the previously identified unrelated citations. A searcher who uses the search term *prosthesis* may find that the results include articles about such diverse topics as joint prostheses, dental prostheses, and skin prostheses, as well as limb prostheses. Search

terms should be as applicable to the specific clinical question being posed as possible; using more precise search terms such as *limb prosthesis, leg prosthesis, arm prosthesis,* or *artificial limb* may be more effective.

Searchers should recognize that the search engine is simply matching the search words that the searcher has entered with subject headings linked to the article by the database administrator or librarian using predefined medical subject heading names or words included in the title or abstract. Searchers may need to adjust search terms to find applicable references. For example, a PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/) search of the English language literature published in the past 5 years (between January 2013 and January 2018) using the search terms *below-knee amputation* combined with the search term *prosthetic rehabilitation* yielded 19 citations. The same search using the term *transtibial amputation* rather than *below-knee amputation* yielded 143 citations, with five citations overlapping between the two searches. A third search using the term *trans-tibial amputation* in place of *transtibial amputation* yielded 15 citations, none of which overlapped with the first or second searches.

A search can be unforgiving to misspellings or, as described earlier, slight differences in search terms. If the searcher finds one citation that is on target for the topic of interest, repeating the search using terms from that article's title or abstract, as well as subject headings (key words), may yield additional appropriate citations. Using a variety of synonyms or Medical Subject Headings (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/mesh) when repeating the search can help the searcher to be more confident that the correct concepts are being targeted. Searchers should note the search terms that result in successful searches so that future searches can be most efficient. Searchers using PubMed can set up a permanent search by establishing a "cubby." This service is free and fully available via internet connection to PubMed. Online directions help users set up cubbies that save search terms. Searchers can periodically check their cubbies and ask for literature updates on the topic.

In addition to the search topic, a good clinical question will often focus on one of three broad categories of clinical questions: treatment/intervention/therapy, diagnosis, or prognosis.[57] Searchers can use these terms to narrow their search as needed. Searchers must recognize that each database uses its own set of key words and may (or may not) include the title words, abstract words, or common sense clinical terms in their electronic search process. Familiarity with key headings used by the database can minimize frustration during the search process; combining words from the title or abstract (e.g., by using Boolean operators such as "AND," "OR," or "NOT"), as well as using synonyms for the clinical terms or concepts of interest, can also assist the search process. In many databases, searchers can choose to limit the search to systematic reviews addressing their topic of interest.

Searching for Interventions

Words that are likely to limit the search to studies that focus on interventions include the following[58]:

- Therapeutic use
- Clinical trials
- Therapy
- Comparative studies
- Randomized controlled trial (to limit search to articles of highest quality, only if there are many relevant articles)
- Rehabilitation

Examples of search terms for therapeutic interventions commonly used in prosthetics and orthotics include the following:

- Prosthetic rehabilitation
- Orthotic use
- Physical therapy techniques
- Prosthetic fitting
- Prosthetic training
- Gait training
- Therapeutic exercise
- Edema management
- Balance training
- Skin care
- Strength training

Diagnosis as the Intervention

If the primary clinical question relates to making an accurate and efficacious diagnosis about some aspect of the patient's condition or to screening patients to determine the need for more specific assessment, the health practitioner may search the "diagnosis" literature for relevant studies. General search terms that help limit the search to general studies focusing on diagnosis include the following[57]:

- Diagnosis (actual disease or disorder)
- Diagnostic use (tool used in diagnosis)
- Diagnosis, differential
- Sensitivity
- Specificity
- Accuracy
- Predictive value
- Construct validity

Natural History or Prognosis

Studies of the prognosis of medical pathologic conditions and impairments are becoming increasingly available. Such studies attempt to predict who is most likely to benefit from specific treatment interventions or determine whether specific characteristics of patients or their environment predict outcomes. Search terms that are likely to limit the citations to those focused on the general category of prognosis include the following[58]:

- Experimental cohort studies
- Prognosis
- Prognostic factors
- Disease progression
- Recurrence
- Morbidity
- Mortality
- Incidence
- Prevalence
- Clinical course
- Outcomes

Systematic Review

Currently, PubMed does not identify systematic review as a specific "publication type." The searcher must use the limits "meta-analysis" or "review" under the Type of Article option. When "systematic review" is used as a search term, several types of reviews are retrieved, not limited to actual systematic reviews. Articles commonly identified as review-academic, CPGs, review-tutorial, meta-analysis, guideline, and consensus development conference are all categorized in PubMed under the term systematic review. Search terms that are likely to limit the citations to ones focused on true systematic reviews include the following:

- Systematic review (as a title word [tw])
- Systematic (as a key word)
- Meta-analysis
- Development
- Validation
- Cochrane database of systematic reviews (as a journal name [jn])

LOCATING FULL-TEXT ARTICLES

Once appropriate citations have been found via a search of the literature, the next step is to locate the full text of articles that appear to be most closely related to the clinical question of concern. Individual journals are published and owned by publishing companies that support themselves by paid journal subscriptions. Each journal has its own mechanism for providing access to the articles it contains. If the journal is published by a specific professional organization, members of that organization typically have access to a delivered hard copy of the journal or access via the organization's website (by entering an assigned user name and password).

Libraries purchase hard copy and online access to specific journals, either bundled together as part of an intermediary company service (e.g., EBSCO or ProQuest), as stand-alone subscriptions, or as a publisher aggregated offering of several or all of its journals at a specified price. Libraries make the online copies of these journals available to their library patrons, either free of charge or for a specified library fee. Some journals provide full text free to the public via the internet, either for all issues or for articles published after a certain period of time (e.g., 1 to 2 years after publication). Most journals provide full text of individual articles for a fee; this fee may be as much as $20 to $25 per article. One benefit of searching the literature on PubMed is that this database provides a link to any online access to a specific citation, both those with free access sources and those with a fee attached. The website http://www.freemedicaljournals.com lists the various biomedical journals that provide full text free, provides the hyperlink to the journal website, and identifies any limitations to free access (often time since publication). Health care practitioners should search out the availability of full-text biomedical journal articles (either hard copy or online) from the libraries to which they have regular access. Access will vary widely on the basis of the work setting and the mission of the library at the health facility or in the community.

Step 3: Critically Appraising the Evidence

Once the clinician has located and screened the article to ensure that it is reasonably focused on the clinical research question of interest and applicable to the patients in his or her clinical practice, the clinician must critically appraise the methodologic and analytic quality of the research process used in the study.[59] This is a skill that clinicians can develop with consistent practice, over time, and is well worth the effort involved.[22,23] Participation in study groups or journal clubs often helps development of this useful EBP skill.[60,61]

OVERALL METHODOLOGIC QUALITY

The best-quality research evidence comes from studies with a carefully articulated research question, an appropriate design and methodology, and a sample representative of the population of interest. No clinical research study or article is perfect, and the critical appraiser of the research literature must develop skills to *weigh the evidence* that an article provides to determine whether the information is accurate, relevant, and clinically important for his or her patients.[59,62] Just because something is published and in print does not ensure that it provides valuable or accurate information. Whether the clinical study focuses on treatment/intervention, prognosis, or diagnosis, the overall purpose of critical appraisal is to determine the extent to which threats to internal and external validity of the study bias, and potentially invalidate, the findings of the study.[63] The clinician is interested in determining whether, and to what degree, the findings of the study truly represent the answer to the research question asked in the study. Box 4.3 lists a series of questions about the overall quality and applicability of primary research studies. Some questions are applicable across all categories of primary research; others are specific to certain categories. Box 4.4 identifies quality assessment questions applicable to the secondary source category of systematic review.

Sample: Adequacy and Appropriateness

Sample size must be considered when making judgments about the methodologic quality of a study. In studies with small sample sizes, a few nonrepresentative subjects can skew data substantially and lead to statistical findings that are nonrepresentative of the parent group.[64] In addition, the natural variability between subjects may end up masking real differences when sample size is low. There is no absolute minimum number of subjects identified quantitatively as the minimum needed for a legitimate study. However, research textbooks often recommend 8 to 15 subjects per group as a minimum number to ensure that the statistical analysis has at least a reasonable opportunity of demonstrating real differences or real relationships if they are present.[10,65] The larger the sample size, the more likely that the sample will represent the population from which it has been drawn.

Researchers, as well as readers of research articles, can use a power analysis to evaluate adequacy of the sample size. A power analysis provides an objective estimate of the minimum sample size necessary to demonstrate real differences or relationships between and among groups.[66-68]

Box 4.3 Questions to Consider in the Critical Appraisal of a Research or Review Article

For All Studies

- What criteria were in place in the database used to find the study (e.g., journals referenced in PubMed have met stringent quality criteria)?
- How up to date (recent) is the study?
- Is the purpose of the study clearly stated? How closely does the purpose of the study address the clinical question of concern?
- How comprehensive is the review of the literature? How up to date and relevant are the references cited in the article? Does the review of the literature support the need for the study that is being reported?
- Are the outcome measurement tools used in the study described sufficiently? Are they appropriate to the clinical question of concern?
- Is evidence of the reliability and validity of each outcome measurement tool presented? Is the evidence adequate for the clinical question of concern?

For Studies of Interventions/Treatments/Therapy

- Have subjects been randomly assigned to groups?
- Is there a control group (or placebo or standard care group) used to compare with the experimental group?
- Are the researchers collecting outcome data blind to subject group assignment?
- As feasible, are subjects blinded to their group assignment?
- How similar are the experiment and control groups? Optimally, the only difference should be the intervention.
- Do confounding variables make the groups different before intervention?

For Studies Concerned With Prognosis

- Are the researchers collecting outcome data blind to each subject's score on prognostic factors?
- Is the period of follow-up sufficiently long to ensure that the outcome of interest is captured?
- Is there evidence from repeated analysis with a second group of subjects with similar results to provide confirmation of the prognostic factors being investigated?

For Studies Concerned With Diagnosis

- Has the new diagnostic test been compared with an accepted reference standard?
- Is the researcher performing the new diagnostic test blind to each subject's score on the reference standard?
- Is there evidence from repeated analysis with a second group of subjects with similar results to provide confirmation of the accuracy of the new diagnostic test?

Box 4.4 Questions Used to Assess Quality of a Systematic Review

Formulation of Objectives

- Is the topic (purpose of the review) well defined?
- Intervention
- Patients
- Outcomes of interest

Literature Search for Studies

- Was the search for papers thorough?
- Use of search terms that fully capture key concepts
- Identification of databases or citation sources used
- Search methods exhaustive, international in scope
- Search methods described in enough detail to replicate
- International in scope
- Search terms that fully capture search concepts

Study Selection

- Were study inclusion criteria clearly described and fairly applied?
- Explicit inclusion and exclusion criteria
- Criteria should be applicable to the topic
- Selection criteria are applied in a manner that limits bias
- Account for studies that are rejected

Assessing Quality of Design and Methods

- Was study quality assessed by blinded or independent reviewers?
- Was missing information sought from the original study investigators?
- Do the included studies seem to indicate similar effects?
- Were the overall findings assessed for their robustness?
- Was the play of chance adequately assessed?

Data Gathering

- Was information from each article extracted using a standardized format?
- Does the information gathered from each article include the following?
  - Type of study (e.g., randomized, controlled trial)
  - Characteristics of the intervention for experimental and control groups
  - Key demographics of all subjects
  - Primary outcome of importance
  - An accounting for missing data

Pooling Method

- Are selected studies similar enough to be pooled for analysis?
- In design
- In interventions
- In operational definition of outcome variable

Discussion, Conclusions, Recommendations

- Are recommendations based firmly on the quality of the evidence presented?
- Are conclusions and recommendations justified on the basis of the analysis performed?

Inclusion of a power analysis as a standard part of the research design is a fairly new concept. Thus, although the presence of a power analysis is helpful in assessing the adequacy of the sample size, lack of a specifically identified power analysis—particularly in older studies—does not necessarily indicate a weak study.

A power level (β) of 0.8 (80%) is generally considered acceptable in ensuring that, if real group differences (or

relationships) are present, the study design is sensitive enough to pick them up. A power analysis considers five factors in the determination of power. Knowing any four of these five factors allows the reader to calculate the final factor.[67] The five factors include the following:

1 The significance level (α coefficient) set for the statistical analysis of the outcome variable
2 Anticipated variance (e.g., standard deviation) within each group of subjects related to the outcome variable
3 Sample and group size
4 The anticipated effect size for the intervention or relationship; how large a difference or a correlation does there need to be to ensure that the outcome under review is important or clinically meaningful?
5 The desired level of power (β coefficient), an estimate of the likelihood that a real difference between groups will be demonstrated if it exists (avoiding a type II error)

Power analysis performed in preparation for a study (i.e., before subject recruitment, data collection, or analysis) identifies the ideal number of subjects that should be in each group.[29] When a power analysis is performed after the data analysis has been completed, it is used to determine the likelihood that small sample size affected the statistical analysis when insignificant findings occurred.[69]

When a power analysis is performed before implementation of a study, most use a significance level of $\alpha = 0.05$ or lower and the power level of $b = 0.8$ or higher. The score for effect size and anticipated group variance will be study specific. Typically, researchers provide references from prior research or their own pilot data to justify their choices of effect size and variance. This use of power analysis provides evidence of a rigorous research design and helps the clinician to trust the findings of the study.

The next important appraisal of the sample concerns its representativeness: to what extent are the subjects in the sample similar to (and therefore representative of) the "population" of interest and to the individual for whom the clinician is caring? The goal of all research studies is to make decisions about a general population of people on the basis of the findings of a representative sample from that population. How well a sample represents the larger group to which results will be generalized is a function of subject recruitment, selection, and retention.[70,71] In appraising an article to use as evidence for clinical decision making, the health professional must consider how subjects were selected and assigned to groups (hopefully randomly), what criteria were used to determine whether a possible subject was included or excluded from the study, and the reasons that subjects who started the study may have dropped out before data collection was completed. Study results will be biased if the sample used for the study is not representative of the underlying population. Small variations randomly occurring across all subject groups may be acceptable. Larger variations, particularly ones that systematically affect one subject group more than others, may introduce unacceptable amounts of bias.

As a critical appraiser of the research, the evidence-based practitioner must be on the alert for sampling bias.[72,73] In the ideal world, any subject in the patient population of interest should be equally likely to be chosen to be a subject in the study. Realistically, this is rarely the case. No one researcher has access to each older adult who has had a transtibial amputation, each child with cerebral palsy, or each young adult with an incomplete spinal cord lesion. The researcher should provide enough evidence in his or her discussion of the study's methodology that the reader can be reasonably comfortable that the methods implemented for choosing subjects provided access to subjects reasonably representative of the breadth of subjects with the target characteristics under investigation.

The article typically provides descriptive evidence from previous studies of the common characteristics of patients with the pathologic condition of interest. The researcher then compares these known characteristics with the descriptive characteristics of subjects in their particular study. Any differences should be identified and discussed in the article. The critical appraiser must use professional judgment to determine the extent to which potential biasing factors influence the methodologic rigor of the study. If inequalities were detected, it is possible to add steps to the statistical analysis to account for the inequality. This should be reported in the study.

Attrition (subject dropout rate) also influences the researcher's ability to generalize the findings of the study to the larger population of individuals with the diagnosis or impairment. A useful rule of thumb for readers who are critically appraising an article is that, if more than a 20% dropout rate has occurred, then findings of the study are likely suspect. In a strong research article, the researchers explain why and when subjects were lost. Evidence-based practitioners want to know whether subjects chose to leave the study because intervention made them worse or because the intervention was too difficult or painful to overcome its potential benefits. Another situation that may lead to attrition is based on a research design so burdensome or difficult that subjects were unable to meet participation requirements (so that only the most persistent individuals in the sample completed the study). Researchers attempt to account for dropouts either by performing an "intention-to-treat" analysis or presenting descriptive statistics that compare key characteristics of subjects who completed the study with those who did not complete the study.[74] If the researcher can confirm that both groups of subjects are not significantly different, particularly in terms of any characteristic that might bias outcomes, then a study may still be identified as having adequate methodologic quality.

In an intention-to-treat analysis, all subjects who started a study but did not finish it are assigned the most negative outcome likely to occur with the measurement tool for the purposes of statistical analysis.[75] If a statistically significant finding still occurs in the presence of an intention-to-treat analysis, then even assuming that all dropouts had a bad outcome, the study still demonstrated significant effects.

Outcome Measures

In assessing methodologic quality of a study's outcome measurement tools, three questions must be addressed:

- Are the outcome tools described well enough for the evidence-based practitioner to make an informed and realistic judgment about their appropriateness for assessing the variables of interest for this study?

- Are the outcome tools reasonably valid and reliable?
- Are the outcome tools reasonably responsive and sensitive to change?

A high-quality study describes the outcome measures in enough detail for the reader to understand exactly what was measured and to determine whether the tools are appropriate to answer the research questions addressed in the study.

The article should also provide sufficient detail to confirm reliability and validity of each outcome measurement tool. Reliability represents the consistency with which scores are reproduced given repetition of the test with the same tester or across numerous testers.[76,77] Validity represents the accuracy with which the measurement tool taps into the construct or characteristics that the test is purported to measure.[76,78-80] Table 4.4 lists the various aspects of reliability and validity.

If a test is reliable, it should perform consistently under similar testing situations regardless of who performs the test. Studies of reliability usually report either correlation coefficients or intraclass correlation coefficients as the statistical measure of the accuracy with which scores are reproduced.[81] There is no absolute standard of minimally acceptable reliability.[82] A score of 1 indicates a complete reliability (and is rarely achieved); a score of 0 represents a complete lack of reliability. A general benchmark is that a score of $r = 0.9$ or better is strong evidence of reliability of that measure. Coefficients between 0.75 and 0.89 suggest that the measure has moderate risk of error but may be acceptable. Correlations of less than $r = 0.75$ are not typically perceived as having acceptable reliability.

The researchers who are reporting their study should provide an adequate description of the methodology of the study for the critical appraiser to determine which aspects of reliability are most important in this study (and therefore to determine whether the authors provided evidence of the appropriate reliability). Intertester reliability should be reported when more than one tester measures the same

Table 4.4 Validity and Reliability

DETERMINATION OF A TEST OR MEASURES RELIABILITY

Type of Reliability	Question Being Addressed
Intrarater	Will the same examiner make consistent ratings of the same individual?
Test-retest	Is the measure stable/accurate over time?
Interrater	Will different examiners make consistent ratings of the same individual?
Internal consistency	How well do each of the items contribute or reflect what the test intends to measure (how well do the items hang together)?
Parallel forms	Are different versions of the test or measure equivalent?

RELIABILITY COEFFICIENTS

Parametric Analyses		Nonparametric Analyses		
Strategies for Continuous Measures	Types of Reliability Evaluated	Strategies for Nominal Measures	Strategies for Ordinal Measures	Types of Reliability Evaluated
Pearson product moment (Pearson *r*) (association) (0.0 to 1.0)	Intrarater Test-retest Interrater Parallel forms	Percent agreement (includes chance agreement)	Percent agreement (includes chance agreement)	Intrarater Test-retest Interrater Parallel forms
Coefficient of Variation (standard deviation/mean) (<10% suggests reliability)	Intrarater Interrater	Kappa coefficient (agreement beyond chance)	Weighted percent agreement (magnitude of disparity) (includes chance agreement)	Intrarater Test-retest Interrater Parallel forms
Intraclass correlation coefficient (ICC) (association and agreement)	Intrarater Test-retest Interrater Parallel forms		Weighted kappa (agreement beyond chance)	Intrarater Test-retest Interrater Parallel forms
Cronbach alpha	Internal consistency			

DETERMINATION OF A TEST OR MEASURE'S VALIDITY

Type of Validity	Question Being Addressed	Continuous Measures
Content	How well are items on the test sample from the domain being evaluated?	Content expert review of items
Concurrent or Criterion	How well does the measure reflect a particular event, characteristic, or outcome?	Correlation (with reference standard measure of characteristic or construct)
Predictive	How well does the measure predict a future event or outcome?	Correlation (with outcome variable, measured after a period of time)
Construct	Does the test measure a single underlying theoretical concept or construct?	Correlation (with variables theoretically related to the construct of interest)
	How many underlying constructs are included in the measure?	Confirmatory factor analysis
Discriminant or Divergent	How well does the test or measure differentiate between/among groups?	*t*-Test or analysis of variance

outcome, and intratester reliability should be reported when the same tester measures outcomes on more than one occasion. Test-retest reliability provides evidence that the test performs consistently when repeated under similar conditions.

In addition, readers are interested in whether the validity of the measure has been assessed. To be considered valid, there must be sufficient evidence to demonstrate that the test or tool measures what it is purported to measure.[78-80] The researchers who have written the article must provide this evidence about the measure so that the critical appraiser can be comfortable that concerns about validity have been adequately addressed. Just because a tool is reliable (consistent in its measurement properties) does not mean that it is also valid (measures what it intends to measure). However, a tool cannot be valid if it is not reliable in its measurement.[76] Ideally, the tests or measures used in the study demonstrate great consistency with high reproducibility (i.e., reliability) and accurately assess the targeted characteristic (validity).

Evidence of validity is especially important when the test or tool measures an abstract concept (e.g., quality of life or functional independence) rather than a physiologic phenomenon (e.g., heart rate, range of motion). A valid test or measure contains enough items or questions related to the concept or characteristic being evaluated that the clinician can be confident that the results of testing will represent the subject's status in relationship to the construct being assessed. A test or measure found to be reliable in one patient population is not automatically reliable in other populations.[76]

Step 4: Applicability to Patients and Clinical Practice

The final component of an EBP approach to rehabilitative care is just as essential to provision of quality care as the ability to access and use available evidence and clinical expertise. Without consideration of the unique goals, expectations, values, and concerns that an individual in our care brings to the health care encounter, even the "perfect" plan of action will not be as efficacious as it might otherwise be. An individual's perspective and values are influenced by a number of factors, including developmental issues and their position in the lifespan, their family system and culture, their work roles and responsibilities, their coping styles and strategies, their willingness or ability to access whatever resources might be available in their social support network, and their socioeconomic and educational resources.[83,84] To be as effective as possible in providing care, evidence-based practitioners must consider what the pathologic condition, impairment, functional limitation, or disability means to the individual with respect to self-concept and sociocultural roles.[85]

CLINICAL RELEVANCE

Assessing clinical importance of a study has both objective and subjective considerations. The clinician must look beyond the statistical significance of the findings.[86] Often this assessment is based on professional judgment about the impact of the extent of change. Does a statistically significant change in a functional test score or pain level translate into a change that the patient will perceive as important in daily life? Does long-term follow-up occur? That is, does the author examine the effectiveness of a given intervention 3 months, 6 months, or 1 year following the intervention? If the article only provides evidence of short-term benefits of the intervention, are these short-term benefits worth the time and effort in the long run? Would other interventions have had a better long-term outcome?

Making the decision to implement new approaches to care supported by the research literature requires the evidence-based practitioner to answer several questions related to his or her specific clinical environment[87]:

- How similar are the subjects used in the study to those in his or her clinical practice?
- How do the patient's values and expectations interact with or relate to effort, risks, and likely outcomes of the intervention being considered?

For studies of interventions/therapy/treatment, consider the following:

- How likely is it that the patient will be willing and able to comply with intervention activities suggested in the study?

For studies of diagnosis, consider the following:

- Is the diagnostic test adequately available, affordable, accurate, and precise for use in the clinician's setting?
- Is it likely that the patient will be willing and able to comply with the testing procedures?

For studies of prognosis, consider the following:

- Will knowing the predictor factors make a clinically important difference in the way the clinician will care for his or her patients?

Integrating Clinical Expertise and Skill

Although research literature is a valuable and important resource for evidence-based decision making, using evidence from the literature is not sufficient for effective EBP. Practitioners must also have strong examination, evaluation, and diagnostic skills and should be able to incorporate these skills into reflective past experience and current research findings.[88]

What is clinical expertise? In rehabilitation, it is the combination and integration of (1) a multidimensional knowledge base that is grounded in basic science, medical science, psychologic/sociocultural sciences, and movement sciences; (2) effective clinical reasoning skills and an orientation toward function; (3) well-developed and efficient psychomotor skills for examination and intervention; and (4) the desire or commitment to provide patient-centered care (see Fig. 4.3).[89-91]

The first chapter of this text explores the educational preparation, roles, and responsibilities of individual health professionals involved in orthotic and prosthetic rehabilitation. Each has a particular body of knowledge to bring to

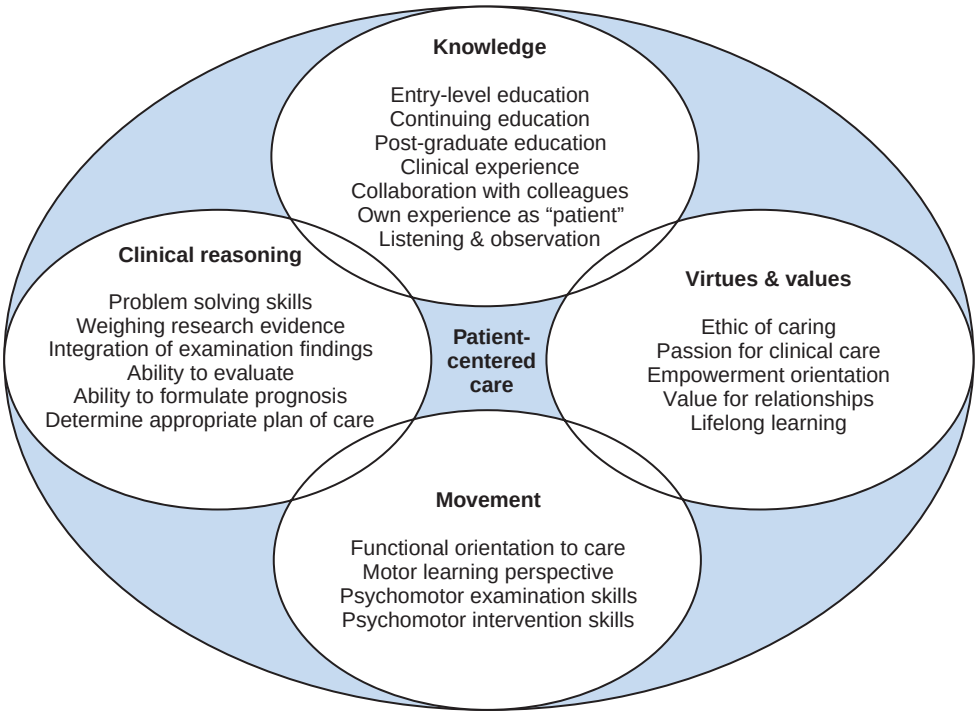


Fig. 4.3 Expert patient-centered physical therapy practice requires integration and interaction of a provider's underlying knowledge, values, examination, and intervention skills as well as clinical reasoning.

the care of individuals needing a prosthesis or orthosis, as well as shared understanding (albeit at various depths) of anatomy, kinesiology, biomechanics, gait analysis, mobility training, motor control and motor learning, and principles of exercise. The authors have established that effective interdisciplinary teaming, in which each profession's perspective interacts so that the team becomes "more than the sum of its parts," is an essential component in the provision of successful orthotic or prosthetic rehabilitative care.

The background knowledge important in orthotic and prosthetic rehabilitation that enables clinicians to ask sound clinical questions and apply evidence to patient care includes a strong foundation in the following areas:

- Anatomy and physiology of the musculoskeletal, neuromuscular, cardiovascular, and cardiopulmonary systems
- Kinesiology and biomechanics of the human body
- Properties of orthotic and prosthetic materials
- Principles of motor control and motor learning
- Lifespan development
- Exercise prescription and assessment of exercise tolerance
- Determinants of normal gait and methods of gait assessment

How does the clinician gain knowledge necessary for expert practice? Entry-level professional education is the baseline, and on-the-job experience via trial-and-error practice and discussion/debate/collaboration with colleagues moves clinicians from students toward novices.[89,91] They become more competent in their roles and responsibilities as their experience grows; they support and enhance their developing mastery and expertise with continuing education, participation in journal clubs and perusal of the clinical research literature, and postgraduate education. Another important component of increasing competence and developing expertise is the ability to actively listen to the hopes and concerns of those they work with and incorporate these into decision making and plans of care.

Clinical expertise, then, allows health care providers to quickly and efficiently identify an individual's rehabilitation diagnosis and, based on their constellation of impairments and functional limitations, select the strategies for remediation or accommodation that will assist the individual's return to a preferred lifestyle.

STAYING CURRENT WITH THE LITERATURE

One proactive way that a clinician can keep informed about new studies focused on his or her area of practice is to sign up for an online service that automatically sends weekly or monthly electronic updates of new articles from journals that the clinician feels are important to read or content areas that he or she wants to stay informed about. Professional organizations often offer this service as a membership benefit. Many journals allow readers to sign up for a service that electronically sends the table of contents via email whenever a new issue of the journal is released. Another valuable service (without charge) for evidence-based practitioners is available from an information management company, Amedeo (http://www.amedeo.com). When an evidence-based practitioner subscribes to Amedeo, he or she chooses from a list of topics for notification of newly published articles linked to those selected topics. Amedeo topics include rehabilitation, pain management, vascular surgery, and stroke, among many others. Amedeo routinely searches a large variety of high-quality journals for new publications on the topics selected by subscribers and sends weekly updates via email. This is a valuable resource for busy clinicians who may not have ready access to a medical library.

Two strategies, if routinely used, help health professionals to update and expand their expertise. The first is to select two or three journals (see Table 4.2) that are particularly appropriate for the clinician's area of professional interest and practice and arrange (via the journal's website) to receive an electronic copy of the table of contents of each issue. When the update arrives, it will be well worth the clinician's time and effort to scroll through the listing of articles and authors to determine which would be worth tracking down to read. The second strategy is to use whatever electronic literature update service is available through professional organizations, PubMed cubby, or Amedeo to arrange to be notified regularly of research reports published in the clinician's area of interest. The final step is to actually (and consistently) make time to read the resources that have been identified and discuss and debate them with colleagues to effectively integrate the new information into clinical practice.

Summary

This chapter explores the concepts underlying evidence-based health care practice and illustrates strategies to develop clear clinical questions that are relevant to an individual patient who is receiving care. The chapter also identifies various sources of evidence available to clinicians and illustrates how electronic databases can assist the search process. The authors suggest strategies that clinicians can use to develop critical appraisal skills and to update and expand their clinical expertise. Although much of the chapter focuses on evidence available in the research literature, it is the integration of the best available scientific evidence; clinical expertise and judgment; and the concerns, values, and expectations of the individual who the clinicians care for that determines the effectiveness of clinical decision making.

Appendix 4.1

Reviews Published from 2013 to January 2018, Identified by Searching PubMed Electronic Research Database Using Search Terms "'Limb Amputation' AND 'Rehabilitation'" and with the limits: (a) review and (b) English

Title	Authors	Journal
Analysis of selected factors determining quality of life in patients after lower limb amputation- a review article	Grzebierí A, Chabowski M, Malinowski M, Uchmanowicz I, Milan M, Janczak D	Pol Przegl Chir 2017;89(2):57–61
Neurorehabilitation in upper limb amputation: understanding how neurophysiological changes can affect functional rehabilitation.	Wheaton LA	J Neuroeng Rehabil 2017;14(1):41
A meta-analysis of long-term mortality and associated risk factors following lower extremity amputation	Stern JR, Wong CK, Yerovinkina M, Spindler SJ, See AS, Panjaki S, Loven SL, D'Andrea RF Jr, Nowygrod R	Ann Vasc Surg 2017;42:322–327
Anaerobic exercise testing in rehabilitation: a systematic review of available tests and protocols	Krops LA, Albada T, van der Woude LH, Hijmans JM, Dekker R	J Rehabil Med 2017;49(4):289–303
Finite element analysis of the amputated lower limb: a systematic review and recommendations	Dickinson AS, Steer JW, Worsley PR	Med Eng Phys 2017;43:1–18
Outcomes associated with the Intrepid Dynamic Exoskeletal Orthosis (IDEO): a systematic review of the literature	Highsmith MJ, Nelson LM, Carbone NT, Klenow TD, Kahle JT, Hill OT, Maikos JT, Kartel MS, Randolph BJ	Mil Med 2016;181(S4):69–76
A narrative review of the prevalence and risk factors associated with development of knee osteoarthritis after traumatic unilateral lower limb amputation	Farrokhi S, Mazzone B, Yoder A, Grant K, Wyatt M	Mil Med 2016;181(S4):38–44
Gait analysis: clinical facts	Baker R, Esquenazi A, Benedetti MG, Desloovere K	Eur J Phys Rehabil Med 2016;52(4):560–574
Multimodality imaging review of the post-amputation stump pain	Subedi N, Heire P, Parmer V, Beardmore S, Oh C, Jepson F, Ali SI	Br J Radiol 2016;89(1068):20160572
Risk factors for falls in people with a lower limb amputation: a systematic review	Hunter SW, Batchelor F, Hill KD, Hill AM, Mackintosh S, Payne M	PM R 2017;9(2):170–180.e1
Pediatric traumatic limb amputation: the principles of management and optimal residual limb lengths	Khan MA, Javed AA, Rao DJ, Corner JA, Rosenfield P	World J Plast Surg 2016;5(1):7–14
The effects of mirror therapy on pain and motor control of phantom limb in amputees: a systematic review	Barbin J, Seetha V, Casillas JM, Paysant J, Por contro	Ann Phys Rehabil Med. 2016;59(4):270-5
Physical and social factors determining quality of life for veterans with lower-limb amputation(s): a systematic review	Christensen J, Ipsen T, Doherty P, Langberg H	Disabil Rehabil 2016;38(24):2345–2353
Innovations in diabetic foot reconstruction using supermicrosurgery	Suh HS, Oh TS, Hong JP	Diabetes Metab Res Rev 2016;32 (Suppl 1): 275–280
Biomechanical design considerations for transradial prosthetic interface: a review	Sang Y, Li X, Luo Y	Proc Inst Mech Eng H 2016;230(3):239–250
Current concepts in total femoral replacement	Ramanathan D, Siqueira MB, Klika AK, Higuera CA, Barsoum WK, Joyce MJ	World J Orthop 2015;6(11):919–926
Early post-operative mortality after major lower limb amputation: a systematic review of population and regional based studies	van Netten JJ, Fortington LV, Hinchliffe RJ, Hijmans JM	Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg 2016;51(2):248–257
Cycling with an amputation: a systematic review	Dyer B	Prosthet Orthot Int 2016;40(5):538–544
Spinal, pelvic, and hip movement asymmetries in people with lower-limb amputation: systematic review	Devan H, Carman A, Hendrick P, Hale L, Ribeiro DC	J Rehabil Res Dev 2015;52(1):1–19
Special considerations for multiple limb amputation	Pasquina PF, Miller M, Carvalho AJ, Corcoran M, Vandersea J, Johnson E, Chen YT	Curr Phys Med Rehabil Rep 2014;2(4): 273–289

Continued on following page

Title	Authors	Journal
Prevalence of heat and perspiration discomfort inside prostheses: literature review	Ghoseiri K, Safari MR	J Rehabil Res Dev 2014;51(6):855–868
Anxiety and depression following traumatic limb amputation: a systematic review	Mckechnie PS, John A	Injury 2014;45(12):1859–1866
Exercise programs to improve gait performance in people with lower limb amputation: a systematic review	Wong CK, Ehrlich JE, Ersing JC, Maroldi NJ, Stevenson CE, Varca MJ	Prosthet Orthot Int 2016;40(1):8–17
Return to sport following amputation	Matthews D, Sukeik M, Haddad F	J Sports Med Phys Fitness. 2014;54(4): 481–486
Phantom phenomena and body scheme after limb amputation: a literature review	Pirowska A, Wloch T, Nowobilski R, Plaszewski M, Hocini A, M Wloch T	Neurol Neurochir Pol 2014;48(1):52–59
Gait analysis in lower-limb amputation and prosthetic rehabilitation	Esquenazi A	Phys Med Rehabil Clin North Am 2014; 25(1):153–167
Lower limb amputation and rehabilitation in total joint arthroplasties in the ipsilateral limb	Shi J, Wang S, Wei Y, Wu J, Chen F, Huang G, Chen J, Wei L, Jiang J, Xia J	Prosthet Orthot Int 2014;38(3):185–192
Influential factors in stability of lower-limb amputees	Kamali M, Karimi MT, Eshraghi A, Omar H	Am J Phys Med Rehabil 2013;92(12): 1110–1118
Motor and sensory rehabilitation after lower limb amputation: state of art and perspective of change	Casale R, Maini M, Bettinardi O, Labeeb A, Rosati V, Damiani C, Mallik M	G Ital Med Lav Ergon 2013;35(1):51–60
The psychological challenge of genital injury	Frappell-Cooke W, Wink P, Wood A	J R Army Med Corps 2013;159 (Suppl 1): i52–56
Limb salvage for veterans with diabetes: to care for him who has borne the battle	Gibson LW, Abbas A	Crit Care Nurs Clin North Am 2013;25(1):131–134
Noninvasive brain stimulation, maladaptive plasticity, and Bayesian analysis in phantom limb pain	Morales-Quezada L	Med Acupunct 2017;29(4):220–228
Impact of traumatic lower extremity injuries beyond acute care: movement-based considerations for resultant longer term secondary health conditions	Butowicz CM, Dearth CL, Hendershot BD	Adv Wound Care (New Rochelle) 2017; 6(8):269–278
Multimodality imaging approaches for evaluating traumatic extremity injuries: implications for military medicine	Stacy MR, Dearth CL	Adv Wound Care (New Rochelle) 2017; 6(7):241–251
Declining skeletal muscle function in diabetic peripheral neuropathy	Parasoglou P, Rao S, Slade JM	Clin Ther 2017;39(6):1085–1103
Analysis of selected factors determining quality of life in patients after lower limb amputation: a review article	Grzebien A, Chabowski M, Malinowski M, Uchmanowicz I, Milan M, Janczak D	Pol Przegl Chir 2017;89(2):57–61
Neurorehabilitation in upper limb amputation: understanding how neurophysiological changes can affect functional rehabilitation	Wheaton LA	J Neuroeng Rehabil 2017;14(1):41
A meta-analysis of long-term mortality and associated risk factors following lower extremity amputation	Stern JR, Wong CK, Yerovinkina M, Spindler SJ, See AS, Panjaki S, Loven SL, D'Andrea RF Jr, Nowygrod R	Ann Vasc Surg 2017;42:322–327
Comparative efficacy of endovascular revascularization versus supervised exercise training in patients with intermittent claudication: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials	Pandey A, Banerjee S, Ngo C, Mody P, Marso SP, Brilakis ES, Armstrong EJ, Giri J, Bonaca MP, Pradhan A, Bavry AA, Kumbhani DJ	JACC Cardiovasc Interv 2017;10(7): 712–724
Bypass surgery for chronic lower limb ischaemia	Antoniou GA, Georgiadis GS, Antoniou SA, Makar RR, Smout JD, Torella F	Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017;4:CD002000.
Anaerobic exercise testing in rehabilitation: a systematic review of available tests and protocols	Krops LA, Albada T, van der Woude LH, Hijmans JM, Dekker R	J Rehabil Med 2017;49(4):289–303
Finite element analysis of the amputated lower limb: a systematic review and recommendations	Dickinson AS, Steer JW, Worsley PR	Med Eng Phys 2017;43:1–18
The Compress® transcutaneous implant for rehabilitation following limb amputation	McGough RL, Goodman MA, Randall RL, Forsberg JA, Potter BK, Lindsey B	Unfallchirurg 2017;120(4):300–305
Osseointegrated prostheses for rehabilitation following amputation: the pioneering Swedish model	Li Y, Bregrated P	Unfallchirurg 2017;120(4):285–292
Systematic review of measures of impairment and activity limitation for persons with upper limb trauma and amputation	Resnik L, Borgia M, Silver B, Cancio J	Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2017;98(9):1863–1892.e14

Title	Authors	Journal
Osseointegrated prosthesis for patients with an amputation: multidisciplinary team approach in the Netherlands	Frölke JPM, Leijendekkers RA, van de Meent H	Unfallchirurg 2017;120(4):293–299
Osseointegrated prosthetic limb for the treatment of lower limb amputations: experience and outcomes	Al Muderis M, Lu W, Li JJ	Unfallchirurg 2017;120(4):306–311
Effectiveness of occupational therapy interventions for lower-extremity musculoskeletal disorders: a systematic review	Dorsey J, Bradshaw M	Am J Occup Ther 2017;71(1): 7101180030p1–7101180030p11
Rehabilitation strategies and outcomes of the sarcoma patient	Smith SR	Phys Med Rehabil Clin North Am 2017; 28(1):171–180
Cost-effectiveness analysis of the use of a prophylactic antibiotic for patients undergoing lower limb amputation due to diabetes or vascular illness in Colombia	Ceballos M, Orozco LE, Valderrama CO, Londoño DI, Lugo LH	Ann Vasc Surg 2017;40:327–334
Objective clinical measurement of physical functioning after treatment for lower extremity sarcoma: a systematic review	Furtado S, Errington L, Godfrey A, Rochester L, Gerrand C	Eur J Surg Oncol 2017;43(6):968–993
Diagnosis and treatment of pain in plexopathy, radiculopathy, peripheral neuropathy and phantom limb pain. Evidence and recommendations from the Italian Consensus Conference on Pain on Neurorehabilitation	Ferraro F, Jacopetti M, Spallone V, Padua L, Traballesi M, Brunelli S, Cantarella C, Ciotti C, Coraci D, Dalla Toffola E, Mandrini S, Morone G, Pazzaglia C, Romano M, Schenone A, Togni R, Tamburin S; Italian Consensus Conference on Pain in Neurorehabilitation (ICCPN)	Eur J Phys Rehabil Med 2016;52(6):855–866
Amputation and rotationplasty in children with limb deficiencies: current concepts	Sakkers R, van Wijk I	J Child Orthop 2016;10(6):619–626
Neuroprosthetics in amputee and brain injury rehabilitation	Eapen BC, Murphy DP, Cifu DX	Exp Neurol 2017;287(Pt 4):479–485
Rehabilitation therapy in peripheral arterial disease	Aggarwal S, Moore RD, Arena R, Marra B, McBride A, Lamb B, Martin BJ, Stone J	Can J Cardiol 2016;32(10S2):S374–381
Plastic surgery challenges in war wounded II: regenerative medicine	Valerio IL, Sabino JM, Dearth CL	Adv Wound Care (New Rochelle) 2016; 5(9):412–419
Gait analysis: clinical facts	Baker R, Esquenazi A, Benedetti MG, Desloovere K	Eur J Phys Rehabil Med 2016;52(4):560–574
Measuring community integration in persons with limb trauma and amputation: a systematic review	Resnik L, Borgia M, Silver B	Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2017;98(3):561–580.e8
Multimodality imaging review of the post-amputation stump pain	Subedi N, Heire P, Parmer V, Beardmore S, Oh C, Jepson F, Ali SI	Br J Radiol 2016;89(1068):20160572
The role of pressure offloading on diabetic foot ulcer healing and prevention of recurrence	Bus SA	Plast Reconstr Surg 2016;138(3 Suppl):179S–187S
Comparison of bone-anchored prostheses and socket prostheses for patients with a lower extremity amputation: a systematic review	Leijendekkers RA, van Hinte G, Frölke JP, van de Meent H, Nijhuis-van der Sanden MW, Staal JB	Disabil Rehabil 2017;39(11):1045–1058
Risk factors for falls in people with a lower limb amputation: a systematic review	Hunter SW, Batchelor F, Hill KD, Hill AM, Mackintosh S, Payne M	PM R 2017;9(2):170–180.e1
Pediatric traumatic limb amputation: the principles of management and optimal residual limb lengths	Khan MA, Javed AA, Rao DJ, Corner JA, Rosenfield P	World J Plast Surg 2016;5(1):7–14
Overview: mechanism and control of a prosthetic arm	Kulkarni T, Uddanwadiker R	Mol Cell Biomech 2015;12(3):147–195
The effects of mirror therapy on pain and motor control of phantom limb in amputees: a systematic review	Barbin J, Seetha V, Casillas JM, Paysant J, Pérennou D	Ann Phys Rehabil Med 2016;59(4):270–275
Physical and social factors determining quality of life for veterans with lower-limb amputation(s): a systematic review	Christensen J, Ipsen T, Doherty P, Langberg H	Disabil Rehabil 2016;38(24):2345–2353
Innovations in diabetic foot reconstruction using supermicrosurgery	Suh HS, Oh TS, Hong JP	Diabetes Metab Res Rev 2016;32 (Suppl 1):275–280
Acute limb shortening for major near and complete upper extremity amputations with associated neurovascular injury: a review of the literature	Kusnezov N, Dunn JC, Stewart J, Mitchell JS, Pirela-Cruz M	Orthop Surg 2015;7(4):306–316
Biomechanical design considerations for transradial prosthetic interface: a review	Sang Y, Li X, Luo Y	Proc Inst Mech Eng H 2016;230(3):239–250
Current concepts in total femoral replacement	Ramanathan D, Siqueira MB, Klika AK, Higuera CA, Barsoum WK, Joyce MJ	World J Orthop 2015 18;6(11):919–926
Management of major traumatic upper extremity amputations	Solarz MK, Thoder JJ, Rehman S	Orthop Clin North Am 2016;47(1):127–136

Continued on following page

Title	Authors	Journal
Early post-operative mortality after major lower limb amputation: a systematic review of population and regional based studies	van Netten JJ, Fortington LV, Hinchliffe RJ, Hijmans JM	Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg 2016;51(2):248–257
Dealing with catastrophic outcomes and amputations in the mangled limb	Cannada LK, Melton DH, Deren ME, Hayda RA, Harvey EJ	J Orthop Trauma 2015;29 (Suppl 12):S39–42
Cycling with an amputation: a systematic review	Dyer B	Prosthet Orthot Int 2016;40(5):538–544
Functional and clinical outcomes of upper extremity amputation	Fitzgibbons P, Medvedev G	J Am Acad Orthop Surg 2015;23(12):751–760
Lower limb ischaemia in patients with diabetic foot ulcers and gangrene: recognition, anatomic patterns and revascularization strategies	Mills JL	Diabetes Metab Res Rev 2016;32 (Suppl 1):239–245
Systematic review of effects of current transtibial prosthetic socket designs–Part 2: Quantitative outcomes	Safari MR, Meier MR	J Rehabil Res Dev 2015;52(5):509–526
Systematic review of effects of current transtibial prosthetic socket designs-Part 1: Qualitative outcomes	Safari MR, Meier MR	J Rehabil Res Dev 2015;52(5):491–508
Nonrevascularization-based treatments in patients with severe or critical limb ischemia	Abu Dabrh AM, Steffen MW, Asi N, Undavalli C, Wang Z, Elamin MB, Conte MS, Murad MH	J Vasc Surg 2015;62(5):1330–1339.e13
Peripheral neuromodulation to treat postamputation pain	Soin A, Fang ZP, Velasco J	Prog Neurol Surg 2015;29:158–167
Driving evaluation methods for able-bodied persons and individuals with lower extremity disabilities: a review of assessment modalities	Greve JM, Santos L, Alonso AC, Tate DG	Clinics (Sao Paulo) 2015;70(9):638–647
Effectiveness of revascularization of the ulcerated foot in patients with diabetes and peripheral artery disease: a systematic review	Hinchliffe RJ, Brownrigg JR, Andros G, Apelqvist J, Boyko EJ, Fitridge R, Mills JL, Reekers J, Shearman CP, Zierler RE, Schaper NC; International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot	Diabetes Metab Res Rev 2016;32 (Suppl 1):136–144
Replantation versus prosthetic fitting in traumatic arm amputations: a systematic review	Otto IA, Kon M, Schuurman AH, van Minnen LP	PLoS One 2015;10(9):e0137729
Targeted muscle reinnervation in the upper extremity amputee: a technical roadmap	Gart MS, Souza JM, Dumanian GA	J Hand Surg Am 2015;40(9):1877–1888
Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) for phantom pain and stump pain following amputation in adults	Johnson MI, Mulvey MR, Bagnall AM	Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015;8:CD007264
Differences in myoelectric and body-powered upper-limb prostheses: systematic literature review	Carey SL, Lura DJ, Highsmith MJ; CP; FAAOP	J Rehabil Res Dev 2015;52(3):247–262
Spinal, pelvic, and hip movement asymmetries in people with lower-limb amputation: systematic review	Devan H, Carman A, Hendrick P, Hale L, Ribeiro DC	J Rehabil Res Dev 2015;52(1):1–19
What is the magnitude and long-term economic cost of care of the British military Afghanistan amputee cohort?	Edwards DS, Phillip RD, Bosanquet N, Bull AM, Clasper JC	Clin Orthop Relat Res 2015;473(9):2848–2855
Providing a sense of touch to prosthetic hands	Nghiem BT, Sando IC, Gillespie RB, McLaughlin BL, Gerling GJ, Langhals NB, Urbanchek MG, Cederna PS	Plast Reconstr Surg 2015;135(6):1652–1663
Assessment of foot self-care in patients with diabetes: retrospective assessment (2008-2014)	Navarro-Flores E, Gijón-Noguerón G, Cervera-Marín JA, Labajos-Manzanares MT	Foot Ankle Spec 2015;8(5):406–412
The importance of soft tissue stabilization in trans-femoral amputation: English version.	Gottschalk F	Orthopade 2016;45 (Suppl 1):S1–4
Outcomes of knee disarticulation and the influence of surgical techniques in dysvascular patients: a systematic review	Murakami T, Murray K	Prosthet Orthot Int 2016;40(4):423–435
Hand-in-hand advances in biomedical engineering and sensorimotor restoration	Pisotta I, Perruchoud D, Ionta S	J Neurosci Methods 2015;246:22–29
A systematic review of treatment of intermittent claudication in the lower extremities	Malgor RD, Alahdab F, Elraiyah TA, Rizvi AZ, Lane MA, Prokop LJ, Phung OJ, Farah W, Montori VM, Conte MS, Murad MH	J Vasc Surg 2015;61(3 Suppl):54S–73S
A review of the surgical management of heel pressure ulcers in the 21st century	Bosanquet DC, Wright AM, White RD, Williams IM	Int Wound J 2016;13(1):9–16
Prosthetic rehabilitation for older dysvascular people following a unilateral transfemoral amputation	Cumming J, Barr S, Howe TE	Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015;1:CD005260
Pedorthic management of the diabetic foot	Janisse D, Janisse E	Prosthet Orthot Int 2015;39(1):40–47.
Development of a control system for artificially rehabilitated limbs: a review	Bhuiyan MS, Choudhury IA, Dahari M	Biol Cybern 2015;109(2):141–162
Pediatric limb differences and amputations	Le JT, Scott-Wyard PR	Phys Med Rehabil Clin North Am 2015; 26(1):95–108

Appendix 4.2

Examples of Clinical Practice Guidelines Available from the National Guideline Clearinghouse (http://www.guideline.gov)

Title (year)	NGC#	Sponsoring Professional Organization(s) *Type of Organization*
SEARCH TERMS: (ORTHOSIS OR ORTHOTIC) AND REHABILITATION, Publication Date from 2013 to 2016, sorted by date beginning with most recent		
Low back pain and sciatica in over 16s: assessment and management. (2016)	NGC:011116	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
Congress of Neurological Surgeons systematic review and evidence-based guideline on the role of cranial molding orthosis (helmet) therapy for patients with positional plagiocephaly. (2016)	NGC:011098	Congress of Neurological Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*
Congress of Neurological Surgeons systematic review and evidence-based guideline for the management of patients with positional plagiocephaly: the role of physical therapy. (2016)	NGC:011097	Congress of Neurological Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*
Cervical and thoracic spine disorders. (2016)	NGC:011174	American College of Occupational and Environmental Medicine *Medical Specialty Society*
Lower extremity injury medical treatment guidelines. (2016)	NGC:011050	Colorado Division of Workers' Compensation *State/Local Government Agency [U.S.]*
American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons clinical practice guideline on management of carpal tunnel syndrome. (2016)	NGC:010928	American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*
Low back disorders. (2016)	NGC:011173	American College of Occupational and Environmental Medicine *Medical Specialty Society*
Motor neurone disease: assessment and management. (2016)	NGC:010919	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
Fractures (complex): assessment and management. (2016)	NGC:010914	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
Fractures (non-complex): assessment and management. (2016)	NGC:010915	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
IWGDF guidance on the prevention of foot ulcers in at-risk patients with diabetes. (2016)	NGC:011052	International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot *Disease Specific Society*
IWGDF guidance on footwear and offloading interventions to prevent and heal foot ulcers in patients with diabetes. (2016)	NGC:011053	International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot *Disease Specific Society*
Diabetic foot problems: prevention and management. (2011, Revised 2015)	NGC:010790	National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) *Independent Public Body*
American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons clinical practice guideline on the treatment of pediatric diaphyseal femur fractures. (2009, Revised 2015)	NGC:010775	American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*
Evidence-based guideline summary: evaluation, diagnosis, and management of congenital muscular dystrophy: report of the Guideline Development Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Issues Review Panel of the American Association of Neuromuscular and Electrodiagnostic Medicine. (2015)	NGC:010825	American Academy of Neurology *Medical Specialty Society*; American Association of Neuromuscular and Electrodiagnostic Medicine *Medical Specialty Society*
Cervical spine collar clearance in the obtunded adult blunt trauma patient: a systematic review and practice management guideline from the Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma. (2015)	NGC:010633	Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma *Medical Specialty Society*

Continued on following page

Title (year)	NGC#	Sponsoring Professional Organization(s) *Type of Organization*
Shoulder injury medical treatment guidelines. (2015)	NGC:010966	Colorado Division of Worker's Compensation *State/Local Government Organization [U.S.]*
Heel pain—plantar fasciitis: revision 2014. (2014)	NGC:011093	The Orthopaedic Section of the American Physical Therapy Association, Inc. *Medical Specialty Society*
Low back pain medical treatment guidelines. (2014)	NGC:010647	Colorado Division of Workers' Compensation *State/Local Government Organization [U.S.]*
Cervical spine injury medical treatment guidelines. (2014)	NGC:010646	Colorado Division of Workers' Compensation *State/Local Government Agency [U.S.]*
Osteoarthritis. Care and management in adults. (2008, Revised 2014)	NGC:010279	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
Manual medicine guidelines for musculoskeletal injuries. (2004, Revised 2013)	NGC:010305	Academy for Chiropractic Education *Medical Specialty Society*
Stroke rehabilitation. Long-term rehabilitation after stroke. (2013)	NGC:009955	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
Treatment of subaxial cervical spinal injuries. In: Guidelines for the management of acute cervical spine and spinal cord injuries. (2013)	NGC:009766	American Association of Neurological Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*; Congress of Neurological Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*
Management of acute traumatic central cord syndrome (ATCCS). In: Guidelines for the management of acute cervical spine and spinal cord injuries. (2013)	NGC:009767	American Association of Neurological Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*; Congress of Neurological Surgeons *Medical Specialty Society*
Physical therapy management of congenital muscular torticollis: an evidence-based clinical practice guideline: from the Section on Pediatrics of the American Physical Therapy Association. (2013)	NGC:010278	Section on Pediatrics of the American Physical Therapy Association, Inc. *Medical Specialty Society*
Evidence-based care guideline for post-operative management of Legg-Calve-Perthes disease in children aged 3 to 12 years. (2013)	NGC:009584	Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center *Hospital/Medical Center*
SEARCH TERMS: (PROSTHESIS OR AMPUTATION) AND REHABILITATION, Publication Date from 2013 to 2016, sorted by date beginning with most recent		
Title (year)	NGC#	Sponsoring Professional Organization(s)
Lower extremity injury medical treatment guidelines. (2016)	NGC:011050	Colorado Division of Workers' Compensation *State/Local Government Organization [U.S.]*
Fractures (complex): assessment and management. (2016)	NGC:010914	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
ACR Appropriateness Criteria® imaging after shoulder arthroplasty. (2016)	NGC:011057	American College of Radiology *Medical Specialty Society*
IWGDF guidance on the prevention of foot ulcers in at-risk patients with diabetes. (2016)	NGC:011052	International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot *Disease Specific Society*
Diabetic foot problems: prevention and management. (2011, Revised 2015))	NGC:010790	National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) *Independent Public Body*
Venous thromboembolism in adults admitted to hospital: reducing the risk. (2007, Revised 2015)	NGC:010743	National Clinical Guideline Centre for Acute and Chronic Conditions *Nonprofit Organization*

Title (year)	NGC#	Sponsoring Professional Organization(s) *Type of Organization*
A clinical practice guideline for the use of hyperbaric oxygen therapy in the treatment of diabetic foot ulcers. (2015)	NGC:010736	Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society *Medical Specialty Society*
Shoulder injury medical treatment guidelines. (2015)	NGC:010966	Colorado Division of Workers' Compensation *State/Local Government Agency [U.S.]*
ACR Appropriateness Criteria imaging after total hip arthroplasty. (2015)	NGC:010837	American College of Radiology *Medical Specialty Society*
Total hip replacement and resurfacing arthroplasty for end-stage arthritis of the hip (review of technology appraisal guidance 2 and 44). (2002, Revised 2014)	NGC:010287	National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) *Independent Public Body*
Osteoarthritis. Care and management in adults. (2008, Revised 2014)	NGC:010279	National Guideline Centre *Nonprofit Organization*
VA/DoD clinical practice guideline for the management of upper extremity amputation rehabilitation. (2014)	NGC:010535	Department of Defense; Department of Veterans Affairs; Veterans Health Administration *Federal Government Agency [U.S.]*
Guideline for management of wounds in patients with lower-extremity arterial disease. (2002, Revised 2014)	NGC:010702	Wound, Ostomy and Continence Nurses Society *Professional Association*
VA/DoD clinical practice guideline for the non-surgical management of hip and knee osteoarthritis. (2014)	NGC:010536	Department of Defense; Department of Veterans Affairs; Veterans Health Administration *Federal Government Agency [U.S.]*
Adapting your practice: treatment and recommendations for patients who are homeless with diabetes mellitus. (2002, Revised 2013)	NGC:010208	Health Care for the Homeless (HCH) Clinician's Network *Nonprofit Organization*; National Health Care for the Homeless Council, Inc. *Nonprofit Organization*

Appendix 4.3

Results of Search Using PEDro Database[a]

Type of Study	Title	Authors	Source
Clinical Practice Guideline	The Italian Society of Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine (SIMFER) recommendations for neck pain	Monticone M, Iovine R, de Sena G, Rovere G, Uliano D, Arioli G, Bonaiuti D, Brugnoni G, Ceravolo G, Cerri C, Dalla Toffola E, Fiore P, Foti C	Giornale Italiano di Medicina del Lavoro ed Ergonomia 2013;35(1): 36–50
Systematic Review	Treadmill interventions in children under six years of age at risk of neuromotor delay	Valentin-Gudiol M, Mattern-Baxter K, Girabent-Farres M, Bagur-Calafat C, Hadders-Algra M, Angulo-Barroso RM	Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2017;Issue 7
Systematic Review	Braces and orthoses for treating osteoarthritis of the knee	Duivenvoorden T, Brouwer RW, van Raaij TM, Verhagen AP, Verhaar JAN, Bierma-Zeinstra SMA	Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015;Issue 3
Systematic Review	Knee orthoses for treating patellofemoral pain syndrome	Smith TO, Drew BT, Meek TH, Clark AB	Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015;Issue 12
Systematic Review	The effectiveness of braces and orthoses for patients with knee osteoarthritis: a systematic review of Japanese-language randomised controlled trials	Mine K, Nakayama T, Milanese S, Grimmer K	Prosthetics and Orthotics International 2017 Apr;41 (2):115–126
Systematic Review	Effectiveness of foot orthoses and shock-absorbing insoles for the prevention of injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis	Bonanno DR, Landorf KB, Munteanu SE, Murley GS, Menz HB	British Journal of Sports Medicine 2017 Jan;51(2):86–96
Systematic Review	Effectiveness of surgical and non-surgical management of crouch gait in cerebral palsy: a systematic review	Galey SA, Lerner ZF, Bulea TC, Zimbler S, Damiano DL	Gait & Posture 2017 May;54:93–105
Systematic Review	Shoulder orthoses for the prevention and reduction of hemiplegic shoulder pain and subluxation: systematic review	Nadler M, Pauls MMH	Clinical Rehabilitation 2017 Apr;31(4):444–453
Systematic Review	Counterforce orthosis in the management of lateral epicondylitis	Vellilappilly DV, Rai HR, Varghese J, Renjith V	Journal of Ayub Medical College, Abbottabad 2017 Apr-Jun;29(2):328–334
Systematic Review	Physical and mechanical therapies for lower-limb problems in juvenile idiopathic arthritis: a systematic review with meta-analysis	Fellas A, Coda A, Hawke F	Journal of the American Podiatric Medical Association 2017 Sep–Oct;107(5):399–412
Systematic Review	(A review study on various conservative management strategies for patellofemoral pain syndrome: what is the best intervention?) [Persian]	Mazloum V, Sahebozamani M	Journal of Kerman University of Medical Sciences 2016 Jan–Feb;23(1):116–136
Systematic Review	The effectiveness of physical agents for lower-limb soft tissue injuries: a systematic review	Yu H, Randhawa K, Cote P	The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy 2016 Jul;46(7):523–554
Systematic Review	The influence of orthosis options on walking parameters in spinal cord-injured patients: a literature review	Arazpour M, Samadian M, Ebrahimzadeh K, Ahmadi Bani M, Hutchins SW	Spinal Cord 2016 Jun;54(6):412–422
Systematic Review	Functional electrical stimulation versus ankle foot orthoses for foot-drop: a meta-analysis of orthotic effects	Prenton S, Hollands KL, Kenney LP	Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine 2016 Sep;48 (8):646–656
Systematic Review	Hand therapy versus corticosteroid injections in the treatment of de Quervain's disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis	Cavaleri R, Schabrun SM, Te M, Chipchase LS	Journal of Hand Therapy 2016 Jan–Mar;29(1):3–11
Systematic Review	A systematic review of the effect of foot orthoses and shoe characteristics on balance in healthy older subjects	Aboutorabi A, Bahramizadeh M, Arazpour M, Fadayevatan R, Farahmand F, Curran S, Hutchins SW	Prosthetics and Orthotics International 2016 Apr;40 (2):170–181

Type of Study	Title	Authors	Source
Systematic Review	Effectiveness of stretch interventions for children with neuromuscular disabilities: evidence-based recommendations	Craig J, Hilderman C, Wilson G, Misovic R	Pediatric Physical Therapy 2016 Fall;28(3):262–275
Systematic Review	Conservative treatment of thumb base osteoarthritis: a systematic review	Spaans AJ, van Minnen LP, Kon M, Schuurman AH, Schreuders ART, Vermeulen GM	The Journal of Hand Surgery - American Volume 2015 Jan;40(1):16–21
Systematic Review	Effectiveness of orthotic devices in the treatment of Achilles tendinopathy: a systematic review	Scott L, Munteanu S, Menz H	Sports Medicine 2015 Jan;45(1):95–110
Systematic Review	Static progressive versus dynamic splinting for posttraumatic elbow stiffness: a systematic review of 232 patients	Veltman ES, Doornberg JN, Eygendaal D, van den Bekerom MPJ	Archives of Orthopaedic and Trauma Surgery 2015 May;135(5):613–617
Systematic Review	The efficacy of conservative treatment of osteoporotic compression fractures on acute pain relief: a systematic review with meta-analysis	Rzewuska M, Ferreira M, McLachlan AJ, Machado GC, Maher CG	European Spine Journal 2015 Apr;24(4):702–714
Systematic Review	Custom made finger orthoses have fewer skin complications when compared to prefabricated finger orthoses in management of mallet injury: a systematic review and meta-analysis	Witherow EJ, Peiris CL	Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation 2015 Oct;96(10):1913–1923
Systematic Review	Systematic review and meta-analysis of effects of foot orthoses on pain and disability in rheumatoid arthritis patients	Sena da Conceicao C, Gomes Neto M, Mendes SMD, Nunes Sa K, Fontes Baptista A	Disability and Rehabilitation 2015;37(14):1209–1213
Systematic Review	Peroneal stimulation for foot drop after stroke: a systematic review	Dunning K, O'Dell MW, Kluding P, McBride K	American Journal of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation 2015 Aug;94(8):649–664
Systematic Review	The efficacy of foot orthoses on alteration to center of pressure displacement in subjects with flat and normal feet: a literature review	Aboutorabi A, Arazpour M, Hutchins SW, Curran S, Maleki M	Disability and Rehabilitation: Assistive Technology 2015;10(6):439–444
Systematic Review	Investigation of the effect of conservative interventions in thumb carpometacarpal osteoarthritis: systematic review and meta-analysis	Bertozzi L, Valdes K, Vanti C, Negrini S, Pillastrini P, Villafane JH	Disability and Rehabilitation 2015;37(22):2025–2043
Systematic Review	Effects of ankle foot orthoses on body functions and activities in people with floppy paretic ankle muscles: a systematic review	van der Wilk D, Dijkstra PU, Postema K, Verkerke GJ, Hijmans JM	Clinical Biomechanics 2015 Dec;30(10):1009–1025
Systematic Review	Efficacy of orthoses for children with hypotonia: a systematic review	Weber A, Martin K	Pediatric Physical Therapy 2014 Spring;26(1):38–47
Systematic Review	Technical devices in children with motor disabilities: a review	Montero SM, Gomez-Conesa A	Disability and Rehabilitation: Assistive Technology 2014;9(1):3–11
Systematic Review	Spinal cord injury rehabilitation: which way forward?	Karimi M, Omar AHH, Fatoye F	Neurorehabilitation 2014;35(2):325–340
Systematic Review	Psychological care, patient education, orthotics, ergonomics and prevention strategies for neck pain: an systematic overview update as part of the ICON project	Gross AR, Kaplan F, Huang S, Khan M, Santaguida PL, Carlesso LC, MacDermid JC, Walton DM, Kenardy J, Soderlund A, Verhagen A, Hartvigsen J	The Open Orthopaedics Journal 2013 Sep 20;7:530–561
Systematic Review	Nonoperative management of cervical myelopathy: a systematic review	Rhee JM, Shamji MF, Erwin WM, Bransford RJ, Yoon ST, Smith JS, Kim HJ, Ely CG, Dettori JR, Patel AA, Kalsi-Ryan S	Spine 2013 Oct 15;38(22):S55–S67
Clinical Trial	Podiatry intervention versus usual care to prevent falls in care homes: pilot randomised controlled trial	Wylie G, Menz HB, McFarlane S, Ogston S, Sullivan F, Williams B, Young Z, Morris J	BMC Geriatrics 2017 Jul 12;17(143):Epub

Continued on following page

Type of Study	Title	Authors	Source
Clinical Trial	Effectiveness of foot orthoses versus rocker-sole footwear for first metatarsophalangeal joint osteoarthritis: randomized trial	Menz HB, Auhl M, Tan JM, Levinger P, Roddy E, Munteanu SE	Arthritis Care & Research 2016 May;68(5):581–589
Clinical Trial	A randomized controlled trial of custom foot orthoses for the treatment of plantar heel pain	Wrobel JS, Fleischer AE, Crews RT, Jarrett B, Najafi B	Journal of the American Podiatric Medical Association 2015 Jul-Aug;105(4):281–294
Clinical Trial	Prevention of recurrent foot ulcers with plantar pressure-based in-shoe orthoses: the CareFUL prevention multicenter randomized controlled trial	Ulbrecht JS, Hurley T, Mauger DT, Cavanagh PR	Diabetes Care 2014 Jul;37(7):1982–1989
Clinical Trial	Cryoultrasound therapy in the treatment of chronic plantar fasciitis with heel spurs. A randomized controlled clinical study	Costantino C, Vulpiani MC, Romiti D, Vetrano M, Saraceni VM	European Journal of Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine 2014 Feb;50(1):39–47
Clinical Trial	Brain-machine interface in chronic stroke rehabilitation: a controlled study	Ramos-Murguialday A, Broetz D, Rea M, Laer L, Yilmaz O, Brasil FL, Liberati G, Curado MR, Garcia-Cossio E, Vyziotis A, Cho W, Agostini M, Soares E, Soekadar S, Caria A, Cohen LG, Birbaumer N	Annals of Neurology 2013 Jul;74(1):100–108
Clinical Trial	Foot exercises and foot orthoses are more effective than knee focused exercises in individuals with patellofemoral pain	Molgaard CM, Rathleff MS, Andreasen J, Christensen M, Lundbye-Christensen S, Simonsen O, Kaalund S	Journal of Science and Medicine in Sport 2018 Jan;21 (1):10–15
Clinical Trial	Early or delayed provision of an ankle-foot orthosis in patients with acute and subacute stroke: a randomized controlled trial	Nikamp CDM, Buurke JH, van der Palen J, Hermens HJ, Rietman JS	Clinical Rehabilitation 2017 Jun;31(6):798–808
Clinical Trial	Cohort randomised controlled trial of a multifaceted podiatry intervention for the prevention of falls in older people (the REFORM trial)	Cockayne S, Adamson J, Clarke A, Corbacho B, Fairhurst C, Green L, Hewitt CE, Hicks K, Kenan A-M, Lamb SE, McIntosh C, Menz HB, Redmond AC, Richardson Z, Rodgers S, Vernon W, Watson J, Torgerson DJ, on behalf of the REFORM study	PLoS One 2017 Jan;12(1):e0168712
Clinical Trial	Foot orthoses in the treatment of symptomatic midfoot osteoarthritis using clinical and biomechanical outcomes: a randomised feasibility study	Halstead J, Chapman GJ, Gray JC, Grainger AJ, Brown S, Wilkins RA, Roddy E, Helliwell PS, Keenan AM, Redmond AC	Clinical Rheumatology 2016 Apr;35(4):987–996
Clinical Trial	Effectiveness of footwear and foot orthoses for calcaneal apophysitis: a 12-month factorial randomised trial	James AM, Williams CM, Haines TP	British Journal of Sports Medicine 2016 Oct; 50(20):1268–1275
Clinical Trial	Effectiveness of customised foot orthoses for Achilles tendinopathy: a randomised controlled trial	Munteanu SE, Scott LA, Bonanno DR, Landorf KB, Pizzari T, Cook JL, Menz HB	British Journal of Sports Medicine 2015 Aug; 49(15):989–994
Clinical Trial	Additional effects of an individualized risk factor-based approach on pain and the function of patients with patellofemoral pain syndrome: a randomized controlled trial	Halabchi F, Mazaheri R, Mansournia MA, Hamedi Z	Clinical Journal of Sport Medicine 2015 Nov; 25(6):478–486
Clinical Trial	The clinical impact of orthotic correction of lower limb rotational deformities in children with cerebral palsy: a randomized controlled trial	Abd el-Kafy EM	Clinical Rehabilitation 2014 Oct;28(10):1004–1014
Clinical Trial	A randomized clinical trial comparing extensible and inextensible lumbosacral orthoses and standard care alone in the management of lower back pain	Morrisette D, Cholewicki J, Logan S, Seif G, McGowan S	Spine 2014 Oct 1;39(21): 1733–1742
Clinical Trial	Rigid versus semi-rigid orthotic use following TMC arthroplasty: a randomized controlled trial	Prosser R, Hancock MJ, Nicholson L, Merry C, Thorley F, Wheen D	Journal of Hand Therapy 2014 Oct–Nov;27(4): 265–271

Type of Study	Title	Authors	Source
Clinical Trial	Clinical effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of a multifaceted podiatry intervention for falls prevention in older people: a multicentre cohort randomised controlled trial (the REducing Falls with ORthoses and a Multifaceted podiatry intervention trial)	Cockayne S, Rodgers S, Green L, Fairhurst C, Adamson J, Scantlebury A, Corbacho B, Hewitt CE, Hicks K, Hull R, Keenan A-M, Lamb SE, McIntosh C, Menz HB, Redmond A, Richardson Z, Vernon W, Watson J, Torgerson DJ	Health Technology Assessment (Winchester, England) 2017 Apr;21(24):1–198
Clinical Trial	Bespoke versus off-the-shelf ankle-foot orthosis for people with stroke: randomized controlled trial	Tyson SF, Vail A, Thomas N, Woodward-Nutt K, Plant S, Tyrrell PJ	Clinical Rehabilitation 2017 Aug 1:Epub ahead of print
Clinical Trial	Integrated effect of treadmill training combined with dynamic ankle foot orthosis on balance in children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy	Sherief AEAA, Abo Gazya AA, Abd el Gafaar MA	Egyptian Journal of Medical Human Genetics 2015 Apr;16(2):173–179
Clinical Trial	Treatment of proximal interphalangeal joint flexion contracture: combined static and dynamic orthotic intervention compared with other therapy intervention: a randomized controlled trial	Cantero-Tellez R, Cuesta-Vargas AI, Cuadros-Romero M	The Journal of Hand Surgery - American Volume 2015 May;40(5):951–955
Clinical Trial	Day versus day-night use of ankle-foot orthoses in young children with spastic diplegia: a randomized controlled study	Zhao X, Xiao N, Li H, Du S	American Journal of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation 2013 Oct;92(10):905–911
Clinical Trial	Efficacy of low-level laser therapy associated to orthoses for patients with carpal tunnel syndrome: a randomized single-blinded controlled trial	Barbosa RI, Fonseca MCR, Rodrigues EKS, Tamanini G, Marcolino AM, Mazzer N, Guirro RRJ, MacDermid J	Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation 2016;29(3):459–466
Clinical Trial	Foot orthoses in the management of chronic subtalar and talo crural joint pain in rheumatoid arthritis	Gatt A, Formosa C, Otter S	The Foot 2016 Jun;27: 27–31
Clinical Trial	Long-term follow-up to a randomized controlled trial comparing peroneal nerve functional electrical stimulation to an ankle foot orthosis for patients with chronic stroke	Bethoux F, Rogers HL, Nolan KJ, Abrams GM, Annaswamy T, Brandstater M, Browne B, Burnfield JM, Feng W, Freed MJ, Geis C, Greenberg J, Gudesblatt M, Ikramuddin F, Jayaraman A, Kautz SA, Lutsep HL, Madhavan S, Meilahn J, Pease WS, Rao N, Seetharama S, Sethi P, Turk MA, Wallis RA, Kufta C	Neurorehabilitation and Neural Repair 2015 Aug;29 (10):911–922
Clinical Trial	The effects of peroneal nerve functional electrical stimulation versus ankle-foot orthosis in patients with chronic stroke: a randomized controlled trial	Bethoux F, Rogers HL, Nolan KJ, Abrams GM, Annaswamy TM, Brandstater M, Browne B, Burnfield JM, Feng W, Freed MJ, Geis C, Greenberg J, Gudesblatt M, Ikramuddin F, Jayaraman A, Kautz SA, Lutsep HL, Madhavan S, Meilahn J, Pease WS, Rao N, Seetharama S, Sethi P, Turk MA, Wallis RA, Kufta C	Neurorehabilitation and Neural Repair 2014 Sep;28 (7):688–697
Clinical Trial	Mechanical effectiveness of lateral foot wedging in medial knee osteoarthritis after 1 year of wear	Barrios JA, Butler RJ, Crenshaw JR, Royer TD, Davis IS	Journal of Orthopaedic Research 2013 May; 31(5):659–664
Clinical Trial	Effect of patellar strap and sports tape on pain in patellar tendinopathy: a randomized controlled trial	de Vries A, Zwerver J, Diercks R, Tak I, van Berkel S, van Cingel R, van der Worp H, van den Akker-Scheek I	Scandinavian Journal of Medicine & Science in Sports 2016 Oct;26(10):1217–1224
Clinical Trial	A comparison study on the efficacy of SpinoMed and soft lumbar orthosis for osteoporotic vertebral fracture	Li M, Law S-W, Cheng J, Kee H-M, Wong MS	Prosthetics and Orthotics International 2015 Aug;39 (4):270–276
Clinical Trial	Role of three side support ankle-foot orthosis in improving the balance in children with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy	Olama KA, el-Din SMN, Ibrahem MB	Egyptian Journal of Medical Human Genetics 2013 Jan;14(1):77–85
Clinical Trial	Effects of AFO use on walking in boys with Duchenne muscular dystrophy: a pilot study	Townsend EL, Tamhane H, Gross KD	Pediatric Physical Therapy 2015 Spring;27(1): 24–29

[a]Keyword: orthoses (limited to articles/abstracts published January 2013–January 2018).

References

1. Wong RA, Barr JO, Farina N, et al. Evidence-based practice: a resource for physical therapists. *Issues Aging.* 2000;23(3):19–26.
2. Thomas A, McCluskey A. Becoming an evidence-based practitioner. In: Law M, MacDermid J, eds. *Evidence-Based Rehabilitation: A Guide to Practice.* 3rd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2014:37–64.
3. MacDermid J, Law M. Evaluating the evidence. In: Law M, MacDermid J, eds. *Evidence-Based Rehabilitation: A Guide to Practice.* 3rd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2014:129–156.
4. Straus SE, Richardson WS, Glasziou P, et al. *Evidence-based Medicine: How to Practice and Teach EBM.* 5th ed. Edinburgh: Elsevier/Churchill Livingstone; 2018.
5. Donald A, Greenhalgh T. *A Hands-on Guide to Evidence-based Health Care: Practice and Implementation.* Oxford, UK: Blackwell Science; 2000.
6. Batavia M. *Clinical Research for Health Professionals: A User Friendly Guide.* Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2001.
7. Principles of Physical Therapist Patient and Client Management. American Physical Therapy Association. In: *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Revised 3rd ed. Alexandria, VA: APTA; 2016.
8. Kassirer JP. Incorporating patient's preferences into medical decisions. *N Engl J Med.* 1994;330(26):1895–1896.
9. Guyatt G, Jaeschke R, Wilson MC, et al. What is evidence-based medicine? In: Guyatt G, Rennie D, Meade MO, Cook DJ, eds. *Users' Guide to the Medical Literature: A Manual for Evidence-Based Clinical Practice.* 3rd ed. New York: McGraw Hill; 2015:7–14.
10. Portney LG, Watkins MP. *Foundations of Clinical Research: Applications to Practice.* 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall; 2009.
11. Greenhalgh T. Papers that report trials of drug treatments and other simple interventions. In: Greenhalgh T, ed. *How to Read a Paper: The Basics of Evidence Based Medicine.* 5th ed. London: BMJ Books; 2014:78–89.
12. Walsh M, Perkovic V, Manns B, et al. Therapy (randomized trials). In: Guyatt G, Rennie D, Meade MO, Cook DJ, eds. *Users' Guide to the Medical Literature: A Manual for Evidence-Based Clinical Practice.* 3rd ed. New York: McGraw Hill; 2015:59–74.
13. Greenhalgh T. Papers that report diagnostic or screening tests. In: Greenhalgh T, ed. *How to Read a Paper: The Basics of Evidence Based Medicine.* 5th ed. London: BMJ Books; 2014:99–115.
14. Fritz JM, Wainner RS. Examining diagnostic tests, an evidence-based perspective. *Phys Ther.* 2001;81(9):1546–1564.
15. Randolph AG, Cook DJ, Guyatt G. Prognosis. In: Guyatt G, Rennie D, Meade MO, Cook DJ, eds. *Users' Guide to the Medical Literature: A Manual for Evidence-Based Clinical Practice.* 3rd ed. New York: McGraw Hill; 2015:421–430.
16. Introduction to the Guide to Physical Therapist Practice. American Physical Therapy Association. In: *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Revised 3rd ed. Alexandria, VA: APTA; 2016.
17. World Health Organization. *Toward a common language for functioning, disability, and health.* Geneva: World Health Organization. 2002.
18. Helewa A, Walker JM. Where to look for evidence. In: Helewa A, Walker JM, eds. *Critical Evaluation of Research in Physical Rehabilitation, Toward Evidence-Based Practice.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 2000:33–48.
19. Walker-Dilks C. Searching the physiotherapy evidence-based literature. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2001;17(3):137–142.
20. Maher CG, Serrington C, Elkins M, et al. Challenges for evidence-based physical therapy: accessing and interpreting high-quality evidence on therapy. *Phys Ther.* 2004;84(8):644–654.
21. Greenhalgh T. Searching the literature. In: Greenhalgh T, ed. *How to Read a Paper: The Basics of Evidence Based Medicine.* 5th ed. London: BMJ Books; 2014:15–27.
22. Herbert RD, Sherrington C, Maher C, et al. Evidence-based practice—imperfect but necessary. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2001;17(3):201–211.
23. Jette DU, Bacon K, Batty C, et al. Evidence-based practice: beliefs, attitudes, knowledge, and behaviors of physical therapists. *Phys Ther.* 2003;93(9):786–805.
24. Turner P. Evidence-based practice and physiotherapy in the 1990s. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2001;17(2):107–121.
25. Maher C, Moseley A, Sherrington C, et al. Core journals of evidence-based physiotherapy practice. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2001;17(3):143–151.
26. Bohannon RW. Core journals of physiotherapy. *Physiotherapy.* 1999;85(6):317–321.
27. Jada A. *Randomized Controlled Clinical Trials; A User's Guide.* London: BMJ Publishing Group; 1998.
28. Helewa A, Walker JM. The nuts and bolts of research: terms, concepts, and designs. In: Helewa A, Walker JM, eds. *Critical Evaluation of Research in Physical Rehabilitation: Towards Evidence-based Practice.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 2000:1–32.
29. Greenhalgh T. Papers that summarize other papers (systematic reviews and meta-analysis). In: Greenhalgh T, ed. *How to Read a Paper: The Basics of Evidence Based Medicine.* 5th ed. London: BMJ Books; 2014:116–134.
30. Cook DJ, Mulrow CD, Haynes RB. Systematic reviews: synthesis of best evidence for clinical decisions. *Ann Intern Med.* 1997;126(5):376–380.
31. Montori VM, Swiontkowski MF, Cook DJ. Methodologic issues in systematic reviews and meta-analyses. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2003;413:43–54.
32. Bradley L, Law M. Systematically reviewing the evidence. In: Law M, MacDermid J, eds. *Evidence-based Rehabilitation: A Guide to Practice.* 3rd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2014:157–176.
33. Lau J, Ionnidis JPA, Schmid CH. Quantitative synthesis in systematic reviews. *Ann Intern Med.* 1997;127(9):820–826.
34. Montori VM, Wilczynski NL, Morgan D, et al. Optimal search strategies for retrieving systematic reviews from Medline: analytical survey. *BMJ.* 2005;330(7482):68–71.
35. Lewis S, Clarke M. Forest plots: trying to see the wood and the trees. *BMJ.* 2001;322:1479–1480.
36. Stern JR, Wong CK, Yerovinkina M, et al. A meta-analysis of long-term mortality and associated risk factors following lower extremity amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2017;42:322–327.
37. MacDermid J. Evidence synthesis practice tools: guidelines, algorithms, clinical pathways, predicition rules, and patient decision aids. In: Law M, MacDermid J, eds. *Evidence-based Rehabilitation: A Guide to Practice.* 3rd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2014:233–275.
38. Philadelphia panel evidence-based clinical practice guidelines on selected rehabilitation interventions: overview and methodology. *Phys Ther.* 2001;81(10):1629–1640.
39. About PTNow – PTNow. American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/AboutPTNow/Default.
40. Deutsch JE, Romney W, Reynolds J, et al. Validity and usability of a professional association's web-based knowledge translation portal: American Physical Therapy Association's PTNow.org. *BMC Med Inform Decis Mak.* 2015;15:79.
41. Papa A. *PTNow tips for First-Year PT Students.* American Physical Therapy Association; 2017.
42. Clinical Summaries - PTNow. American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries.
43. Hart SM. Spina Bifida: Myelomeningocele. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/spina-bifida-myelomeningocele.
44. LaForme AF, Begnache DM. Cerebral Palsy (CP). PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/cerebral-palsy.
45. Martin KS. Down Syndrome. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/down-syndrome.
46. Plummer L, Brown L, Riley E. Guillain-Barré Syndrome. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/guillan-barre-syndrome.
47. McMurray M, Bruneau M, Feldman K, et al. Knee Osteoarthritis. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/knee-osteoarthritis.
48. Cohen ET, Csiza L, Karpatkin H. Multiple Sclerosis (MS). PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/multiple-sclerosis-ms.
49. Freedman S. Patellofemoral Pain. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/patellofemoral-pain-2.
50. Johnston TE, Krey CH. Spinal Cord Injury (SCI) in Children and Adolescents. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/spinal-cord-injury-sci-in-children-adolescents.
51. Somers MF, Bruce J, Cohen ET, et al. Spinal Cord Injury (SCI) in Adults. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/spinal-cord-injury-sci-in-children-adolescents.

52. Zablotny C, Hershberg J, Parlman K. Stroke. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/stroke-2.
53. Madsen J, Roberts H, Wagner R, et al. Traumatic Brain Injury in Civilian and Military Populations. PTNow – American Physical Therapy Association. https://www.ptnow.org/clinical-summaries-detail/traumatic-brain-injury-in-civilian-military-popula#ViewComplete.
54. *A User's Guide to Finding and Evaluating Health Information on the Web*. Medical Library Association. http://www.mlanet.org/resources/userguide.html.
55. Shojania KG, Bero LA. Taking advantage of the explosion of systematic reviews: an efficient search strategy. *Eff Clin Pract.* 2001;4(4):157–162.
56. O'Rourke A, Booth A. Another fine MeSH: clinical medicine meets information science. *J Info Sci.* 1999;25(4):275–281.
57. Snowball R. Using the clinical question to teach search strategy: fostering transferable conceptual skills in user education by active learning. *Health Libr Rev.* 1997;14(3):167–172.
58. McKibbon KA, Richardson WS, Walker-Dilks C. EBM notebook: finding answers to well built questions. *Evid Based Med.* 1999;4(6):164–167.
59. Greenhalgh T. Assessing methodological quality. In: Greenhalgh T, ed. *How to Read a Paper: The Basics of Evidence Based Medicine*. 5th ed. London: BMJ Books; 2014:45–59.
60. Fink R, Thompson CJ, Bonnes D. Overcoming barriers and promoting the use of research in practice. *J Nurs Adm.* 2005;35(3):121–129.
61. Turner P, Mjolne I. Journal provision and the prevalence of journal clubs: a survey of physiotherapy departments in England and Australia. *Physiother Res Int.* 2001;6(3):157–169.
62. Urschel JD. How to analyze an article. *World J Surg.* 2005;29(5):557–560.
63. Crombie IK. *The Pocket Guide to Critical Appraisal*. London: BMJ Publishing Group; 1998.
64. Kinnear PR, Gray CD. *IBM SPSS Statistics 18 Made Simple*. New York: Psychology Press; 2011.
65. Carter R, Lubinsky J, Dumholdt E. *Rehabilitation Research: Principles and Applications*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2016.
66. Archibald CP, Lee HP. Sample size estimation for clinicians. *Ann Acad Med Singapore.* 1995;24(2):328–332.
67. Livingston EH, Cassidy L. Statistical power and estimation of required subjects for a study based on the t-test; a surgeons primer. *J Surg Res.* 2005;126(2):149–159.
68. Chow SC, Shao J, Wang H. *Sample Size Calculation in Clinical Research*. 3rd ed. Boca Raton, FL: Taylor & Francis; 2018.
69. Faul F, Erdfelder E, Lang A-G, Buchner A. G*Power 3: A flexible statistical power analysis program for the social, behavioral, and biomedical sciences. *Behav Res Methods.* 2007;39(2):175–191.
70. Daunt DJ. Ethnicity and recruitment rates in clinical research studies. *Appl Nurs Res.* 2003;16(3):189–195.
71. Larson E. Exclusion of certain groups from clinical research. *Image J Nurs Sch.* 1994;26(3):185–190.
72. Sitthi-amorn C, Bias Poshyachinda V. *Lancet*. 1993;342(8866):286–288.
73. Morabia A. Case-control studies in clinical research: mechanism and prevention of selection bias. *Prev Med.* 1997;26(5):674–677.
74. Kruse RL, Alper BS, Reust C, et al. Intention-to-treat analysis: Who is in? Who is out? *J Fam Pract.* 2002;51:969–971.
75. Montori VM, Guyatt GH. Intention to treat principle. *Can Med Assoc J.* 2001;165(10):1339–1341.
76. Salkind NJ. Just the truth: An introduction to understanding reliability and validity. In: *Statistics for People Who (Think They) Hate Statistics*. 6th ed. Los Angeles, CA: Sage Publications; 2017:109–132.
77. Shultz KS, Whitney DJ, Zikar MJ. Reliability overview: classical test theory, module 5. In: *Measurement Theory in Action: Case studies and exercises*. 2nd ed. New York: Routledge Taylor & Francis Group; 2014:57–68.
78. Shultz KS, Whitney DJ, Zikar MJ. Content validity, module 7. In: *Measurement Theory in Action: Case studies and exercises*. 2nd ed. New York: Routledge Taylor & Francis Group; 2014:83–94.
79. Shultz KS, Whitney DJ, Zikar MJ. Criterion-related validation, module 8. In: *Measurement Theory in Action: Case studies and exercises*. 2nd ed. New York: Routledge Taylor & Francis Group; 2014:95–110.
80. Shultz KS, Whitney DJ, Zikar MJ. Construct validity, module 9. In: *Measurement Theory in Action: Case studies and exercises*. 2nd ed. New York: Routledge Taylor & Francis Group; 2014:111–122.
81. Eliasziw M. Statistical methodology for the concurrent assessment of interrater and intrarater reliability: using goniometric measurements as an example. *Phys Ther.* 1994;74(8):777–788.
82. Stratford PW. Getting more from the literature; estimating standard error of measurement from reliability studies. *Physiother Can.* 2004;56(1):27–30.
83. Fell DW, Burnham JF. Access is key: teaching students and physical therapists to access evidence, expert opinion, and patient values for evidence based practice. *J Phys Ther Educ.* 2004;18(3):12–23.
84. Lockwood S. "Evidence of me" in evidence based medicine. *BMJ.* 2004;329(7473):1033–1035.
85. Spector RE. *Cultural Diversity in Health and Illness*. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall; 2017.
86. Foster N, Barlas P, Chesterton L, et al. Critically appraised topics: one method of facilitating evidence-based practice in physiotherapy. *Physiotherapy.* 2001;87(4):179–190.
87. Greenhalgh T. Getting evidence into practice. In: Greenhalgh T, ed. *How to Read a Paper: The Basics of Evidence Based Medicine*. 5th ed. London: BMJ Books; 2014:102–220.
88. Jensen GM, Dwyer J, Shepard K, et al. Expert practice in physical therapy. *Phys Ther.* 2000;80(1):28–43.
89. Hack LM. Fostering evidence-based practice in physical therapy: clinical decision making frameworks. In: Wong R, ed. *Evidence-Based Healthcare Practice, Proceedings of a Consensus Conference "EBP: Where Are We Today? Where Are We Going? How Do We Get There?"*. Arlington, VA: Marymount University; 2001:22–30.
90. Resnik L, Jensen GM. Using clinical outcomes to explore theory of expert practice in physical therapy. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83(12):1090–1106.
91. Jensen GM, Gwyer J, Hack L, et al. *Expertise in Physical Therapy Practice*. 2nd ed.: St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier; 2007.

5 Clinical Assessment of Gait☆

OLFAT MOHAMED and HEATHER APPLING

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the major functional tasks of the gait cycle and their corresponding subphases.
2. Identify the muscle activity, ground reaction forces, and joint angles during each of the subphases of the gait cycle.
3. Define the time and distance parameters used to describe and assess normal gait.
4. Describe common pathological gait patterns, including contributing factors, compensatory deviations, and when these are likely to occur in the gait cycle.
5. Compare and contrast the type and quality of information gathered with various quantitative, qualitative, instrumented, and function-based gait assessment tools.
6. Differentiate between pathological and compensatory gait characteristics typically observed in individuals with lower motor neuron disease, hemiplegia, spastic diplegic cerebral palsy, and spina bifida.
7. Discuss how prosthetic components and alignment influence the efficacy and quality of gait for individuals with amputation at the transtibial and transfemoral levels.

Normal Gait

Walking requires numerous physiological systems (neurologic, musculoskeletal, cardiopulmonary, and cognition) to work congruently. Understanding normal gait is a prerequisite to understanding pathological gait, as it will provide the standard against which the gait pattern (GP) of an individual could be compared. Normal walking requires stability to provide body weight support against gravity during stance, mobility of body segments, and motor control to sequence multiple segments while transferring body weight from one limb to the other. The primary goal in gait is forward progression by using a stable kinetic chain of joints and limb segments working congruently to transport its passenger unit, consisting of the head, arms, and trunk in a continuously changing environment and task demands.

Clinical gait assessment identifies primary or pathological gait problems and helps differentiate them from compensatory strategies. It is necessary for selection of appropriate orthotic or prosthetic components, alignment parameters, and identification of other variants that might enhance an individual's ability to walk. Clinical gait assessment also contributes to the development of a comprehensive treatment plan, with the ultimate goal of optimal energy efficiency and appropriate pathomechanical control, balancing cosmesis, and overall function.

A comprehensive system to describe normal and abnormal gait has been developed by the Pathokinesiology and Physical Therapy Departments at Rancho Los Amigos Medical Center over the past several decades.[1,2] Adams and Cerny have recently published a comprehensive manual for normal and pathological observational gait analysis that compliments the Perry and Burnfield book and offers a practical guide for clinical gait assessment.[3]

Kinetic and Kinematic Descriptors of Human Walking

The mechanics of human movement and related biomechanical behavior is studied by individuals desiring to know more about the loading experienced by the body, the body's response to loading, overall motion of the body as well as the motions of its unique body segments, and ultimately the forces required to produce motion. The study of kinetics and kinematics are independent and related; when studied alone and in unison the knowledge and understanding of human movement is far-reaching and comprehensive. *Kinematics* is the study of motion, whereas *kinetics* is the study of the forces that produce motion.

Step length, stride length, cadence, and velocity are important quantitative, interrelated kinematic measures of gait. Step length and stride length are not synonymous. *Step length* is the distance from the floor-contact point of one (ipsilateral, originating) foot in early stance to the floor-contact point of the opposite (contralateral) foot—in normal individuals, the distance from right heel contact to left heel contact. *Stride length* is the distance from floor contact on one side to the next floor contact on that same side—the distance from right heel contact to the next right heel contact. A reduction in functional joint motion or the presence of pain or muscle weakness can result in decreased stride or step length, or both. Pathological gait commonly produces asymmetries in step length between the two lower limbs.

☆The authors extend appreciation to Dana Craig, Heather Worden, and Edmond Ayyappa, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Cadence is the number of steps taken in a given unit of time, most often expressed in steps per minute. *Velocity* is the distance traveled in a given unit of time (the rate of forward progression) and is usually expressed in centimeters per second or meters per minute. Velocity is the best single index of walking ability. Decreased joint motion, pain, and/or muscle weakness can reduce cadence or velocity or both. Velocity can also be qualitatively categorized as free, slow, or fast. Free walking (self-selected) speed is an individual's normal self-selected (comfortable) walking velocity. Fast walking speed (WS) describes the maximum velocity possible for a given individual while being safe. Slow WS describes a velocity below the normal self-selected WS. For healthy individuals, a fast walk velocity may be as much as 44% faster than free or self-selected WS.[4] In people with musculoskeletal and neuromuscular impairments that affect gait, often much less difference is found between free and fast gait velocity.

Double limb support is the period of time when both feet are in contact with the ground. It occurs twice during the gait cycle, at the beginning and the end of each stance phase. As velocity increases, double limb support time decreases. When running, the individual has rapid forward movement with little or no period of double limb support. Individuals with slow WSs spend more of the gait cycle in double support.

Step width, or width of the walking base, typically measures between 5 and 10 cm from the heel center of one foot to the heel center of the other foot.[5] A wide walking base may increase stability but also reduces energy efficiency of gait.

Ground reaction force (GRF) in gait is established between the contact of the limb and the supporting surface; the point of application of the GRF and the supporting surface is called the *center of pressure*. The GRF is a vector quantity comprised of both magnitude and direction and can be resolved into perpendicular force vectors, normal force, and tangential force components, respectively. The magnitude is a result of the combination of the gravitational and inertial effects on all the body segments while the foot is in contact with the ground, and the direction is the result of the angle of application of the combination of gravitational and inertial forces when the foot is in contact with the ground.[6] Kinetic and kinematic measurements can be assessed through the combination of force plates, electromyography (EMG), and motion capture analysis. *Force plates* are platforms set on or into the ground that a person is traversing. The force plates measure the amount of force exerted on them during the respective steps taken across the platforms.[5] *EMG* captures the electrical signals produced by muscle activation. EMG data is implied from muscle activation patterns and when compiled with correlating force plate data; the combination of force plate and EMG data directly produces kinetic data in real time.

The spatial relationship between the GRF and a given joint center influences the direction of its rotation and measurements. The rotational potential of the forces that act on a joint is called a *torque* or *moment*. *Torque (or moment)* is the tendency to produce rotational motion as a result of a force being applied across a distance from the pivot point. Torque produces displacement of the lever or limb segment with a particular angular velocity. The measure that assesses the quantity of work occurring over a particular time or the rate of change of energy in a particular system is known as *power*. Power is useful in both kinetic and kinematic assessments of joint motion. Joint power is found by multiplying the magnitude of torque and the angular velocity for the respective joint.

Kinetic and kinematic descriptors of human motion are not only helpful in describing motion but also in the quantification and qualification of both static and dynamic assessment, providing feedback to the client and clinician informing modification to both technique and equipment, respectively—producing adequate evaluation to improve performance and reduce the risk of injury ultimately.

Gait Cycle

The *gait cycle* is the time interval between two successive occurrences of one of the repetitive events of walking. Conventionally the time from initial contact to initial contact of the same foot is selected as the starting and completing event of a single cycle of gait. Each cycle is divided into two periods: stance phase and swing phase. *Stance* is the time when the foot is in contact with floor during one gait cycle (0%–62%).[1] For adults, it constitutes approximately 62% of the gait of the gait cycle. *Swing* denotes the time when the foot is in the air during one gait cycle and constitutes the remaining 38% of the gait cycle. There are five subphases within the stance period: initial contact (IC), loading response (LR), midstance (MSt), terminal stance (TSt), and preswing (PSw). Swing phase is divided into three subphases: initial swing (ISw), mid swing (MSw), and terminal swing (TSw). Single limb support (SLS) is the time when only one foot is in contact with the ground during one gait cycle. Double Limb Stance is the time when both feet are in contact with the ground during one gait cycle. A variety of conceptual approaches describe the walking process. Saunders and colleagues define the functional task of walking as translation of the center of gravity through space in a manner that requires the least energy expenditure.[7] They identify six determinants, or variables, that affect energy expenditure in sustained walking: pelvic rotation, pelvic tilt, knee flexion in stance phase, foot interaction with the knee, ankle interaction with the knee, and lateral pelvic displacement. Individually and collectively, these determinants have an impact on energy expenditure and the mechanics of walking. Although they help us understand the process of walking, the determinants do not themselves offer a practical clinical solution to address the problems of gait assessment. Three functional tasks are achieved during these eight gait phases: weight acceptance in early stance, SLS in MSt to TSt, and limb advancement during swing (Fig. 5.1).

FUNCTIONAL TASK 1: WEIGHT ACCEPTANCE

IC and LR are the subphases of stance where weight acceptance is accomplished. Effective transfer of body weight onto the limb as soon as it makes contact with the ground requires initial limb stability, shock absorption, and the preservation of forward momentum.

Initial Contact

IC is the instant that the foot of the leading lower limb touches the ground. Most motor function during IC is preparation for LR. At IC, the ankle is in neutral position, the knee is close to full extension, and the hip is flexed 30 degrees. The sagittal plane GRF vector lies posterior to the

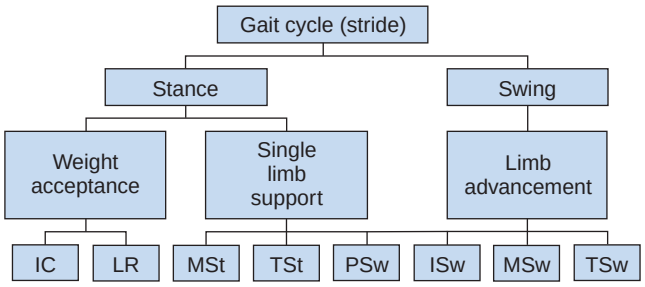


Fig. 5.1 A complete gait cycle divided into three functional tasks of weight acceptance, single limb support, and limb advancement. The gait cycle can also be described in phasic terms of initial contact *(IC)*, loading response *(LR)*, midstance *(MSt)*, terminal stance *(TSt)*, preswing *(PSw)*, initial swing *(ISw)*, midswing *(MSw)*, and terminal swing *(TSw)*. The PSw phase is a transitional phase between single limb support and limb advancement.

ankle joint, creating a plantar flexion moment (Fig. 5.2A). Eccentric contraction of the pretibial muscles (tibialis anterior and long toe extensors) holds the ankle and subtalar joint in neutral position. At the knee, the GRF vector is anterior to the joint axis, which creates a passive extensor torque. Muscle contraction activity of the three vasti of the quadriceps and hamstring muscle groups continues from the previous TSw to preserve the neutral position of the knee joint. A flexion moment is present around the hip joint because the GRF vector falls anterior to the joint axis. Gluteus maximus and hamstring muscles are activated to restrain the resultant flexion torque.

Loading Response

LR occupies approximately 10% of the gait cycle and constitutes the period of initial double limb support (see Fig. 5.2B).

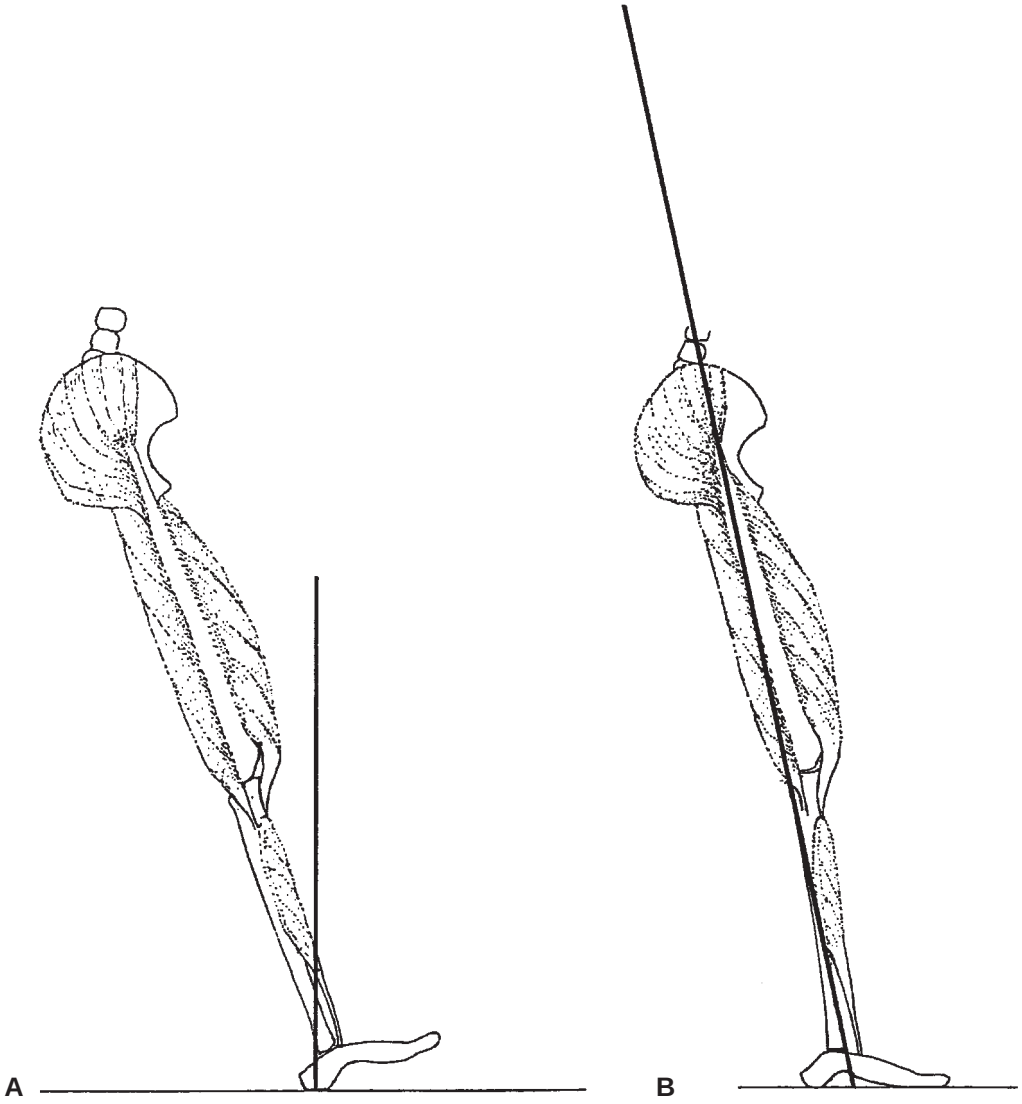


Fig. 5.2 The two subphases of gait involved with the functional task of weight acceptance are initial contact (IC) and loading response (LR). (A) At IC, the ground reaction force (GRF) line is posterior to the ankle and anterior to the knee and hip with activation of pretibial, quadriceps, hamstring, and gluteal muscles. Note that the length of the GRF line represents its magnitude. (B) The LR phase results in an increased magnitude of the vertical force, which ultimately exceeds body weight. Activity of the same muscle groups elicited at IC increases steadily with the vertical force.

Two functional tasks occur during LR: controlled descent of the foot toward the ground and shock absorption as weight is transferred onto the stance limb.

The momentum generated by the fall of body weight onto the stance limb is preserved by the *heel rocker* (first rocker) of stance phase.[5] Normal IC at the calcaneal tuberosity creates a fulcrum about which the foot and tibia move. The bony segment between this fulcrum and the center of the ankle rolls toward the ground as body weight is loaded onto the stance foot, preserving the momentum necessary for forward progression. Eccentric action of the pretibial muscles regulates the rate of ankle plantar flexion, and the quadriceps vasti contract to limit knee flexion. The action of these two muscle groups provides controlled forward advancement of the lower extremity unit (foot, tibia, and femur). During the peak of LR, the magnitude of the vertical GRF exceeds body weight. To absorb the impact force of body weight and preserve forward momentum, the knee flexes 15 to 18 degrees and the ankle plantar flexes to 10 degrees. The hip maintains its position of 30 degrees of flexion. Contraction of the gluteus maximus, hamstrings, and adductor magnus prevents further flexion of the hip joint.

FUNCTIONAL TASK 2: SINGLE LIMB SUPPORT

Two phases of stance are associated with SLS: MSt and TSt. During this period, the contralateral foot is in swing phase, and body weight is entirely supported on the stance limb. Forward progression of body weight over the stationary foot while maintaining stability must be accomplished during these two subphases of stance.

Midstance

MSt begins when the contralateral foot leaves the ground and continues as body weight travels along the length of the stance foot until it is aligned over the forefoot at approximately 20% of the gait cycle (Fig. 5.3A). This pivotal action of the *ankle rocker* (second rocker) advances the tibia over

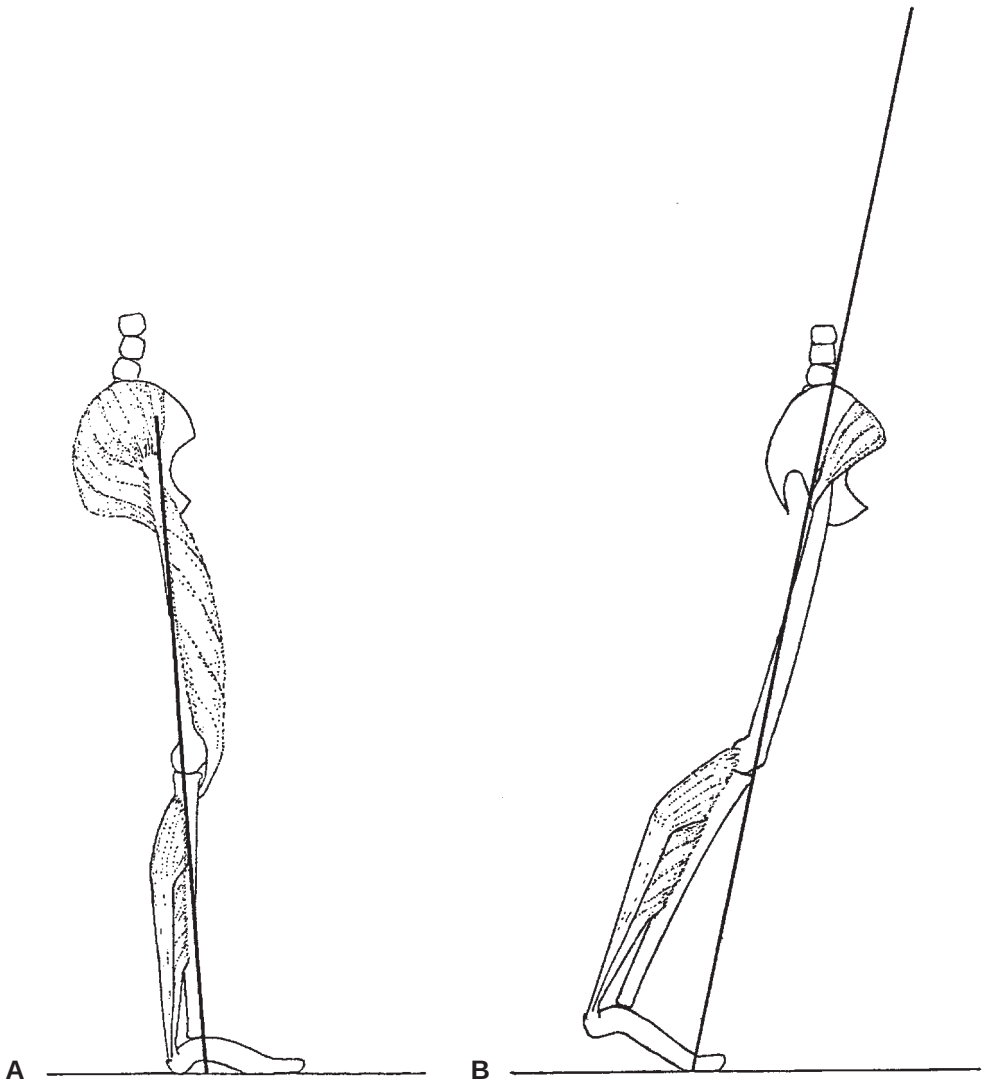


Fig. 5.3 The subphases of gait involved in the functional task of single limb support are midstance (MSt) and terminal stance (TSt). (A) In early MSt, the vertical force begins to decrease and the triceps surae, quadriceps, and gluteus medius and maximus are active. (B) During TSt, there is a second peak in vertical force, exceeding body weight, with high activity of the triceps surae, which maintain the third rocker. The tensor fascia lata restrains the increasing posterior hip vector.

the stationary foot.[5] Forward movement of the tibia over the foot is controlled by the eccentric contraction of the soleus assisted by the gastrocnemius.

During this phase, the ankle moves from its LR position of 10 degrees of plantar flexion to approximately 5 degrees of dorsiflexion. The knee extends from 15 degrees of flexion to a neutral position. The hip joint moves toward extension, from 30 to 10 degrees of flexion. With continued forward progression, the body weight vector moves anterior to the ankle, creating a dorsiflexion moment. Eccentric action of the plantar flexors is crucial in providing limb stability as contralateral toe-off occurs, transferring body weight onto the stance foot. By the end of MSt, the body weight vector moves anterior to the knee (creating passive extensor stability at the knee) and posterior to the hip (reducing the demand on the hip extensors). The gluteus maximus, active in early MSt, ceases its activity and now stability relies on passive structures as the hip nears vertical alignment over the femur. Vertical GRF is reduced in magnitude at MSt because of the upward momentum of the contralateral swing limb. In the coronal plane, activity of hip abductors during MSt is essential to provide lateral hip stability and almost a level pelvis.

Terminal Stance

TSt, the second half of SLS, begins with heel rise of the stance limb and ends when the contralateral foot makes contact with the ground. As the body vector approaches the metatarsophalangeal joint, the heel rises, and the phalanx dorsiflexes (extends). The metatarsal heads serve as an axis of rotation for body weight advancement (see Fig. 5.3B). This is referred to as the *forefoot rocker* (third rocker).[5] The forefoot rocker serves as an axis around which progression of the body vector advances beyond the area of foot support, creating the highest demand on calf muscles (gastrocnemius and soleus). During TSt, the ankle continues to dorsiflex to 10 degrees. The knee is fully extended, and the hip moves into slight hyperextension. Forward fall of the body moves the vector further anterior to the ankle, creating a large dorsiflexion moment. Stability of the tibia on the ankle is provided by the eccentric action of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles.

The trailing posture of the limb and the presence of the vector anterior to the knee and posterior to the hip provide passive stability at hip and knee joints. The tensor fascia latae serves to restrain the posterior vector at the hip. At the end of TSt, the vertical GRF reaches a second peak greater than body weight, similar to that which occurred at the end of LR.

FUNCTIONAL TASK 3: LIMB ADVANCEMENT

Four phases contribute to limb advancement: PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw. During these phases, the stance limb leaves the ground, advances forward, and prepares for the successive IC.

Preswing

PSw, the second period of double limb support in gait, comprises the last 10% of the stance phase. It begins when the contralateral foot makes contact with the ground and ends with ipsilateral toe-off. During this period, the stance limb is unloaded, and body weight is transferred onto the contralateral limb (Fig. 5.4A). This is referred to as the *toe rocker* (fourth rocker). The toe rocker, the most anterior aspect of the medial margin of the forefoot and the great toe, serves as the base for accelerated limb advancement.[5] The ankle moves rapidly from its TSt dorsiflexion into 20 degrees of plantar flexion. During this subphase, plantar flexor muscle activity decreases as the limb is unloaded. Toward the end of PSw, the vertical force is diminished such that plantar flexors rapidly decrease their activity to complete quiescence. There is no active muscle contraction for "push off" in normal reciprocal free walk bipedal gait.[8] The knee also flexes rapidly to achieve 35 to 40 degrees of flexion by the end of PSw.[9] The GRF vector is at the metatarsophalangeal joints and posterior to the knee, creating passive knee flexion with toe clearance. Knee flexion during this phase prepares the limb for toe clearance in the swing phase. PSw hip flexion is initiated by the rectus femoris and the adductor longus, which also decelerates the passive abduction created by contralateral body weight transfer. The sagittal vector extends through the hip as the hip returns to a neutral position.

Initial Swing

Approximately one third of the swing period is spent in ISw. It begins the moment the foot leaves the ground and continues until maximal knee flexion (60 degrees) occurs, when the swinging extremity is directly under the body (see Fig. 5.4B). Concentric contraction of pretibial muscles initiates foot dorsiflexion from its initial 20 degrees to 5 degrees of plantar flexion. This is necessary for toe and foot clearance as swing phase begins. Knee flexion, resulting from action of the short head of the biceps femoris, also assists in toe clearance. The knee continues to flex until it reaches a position of 60 degrees of flexion. Contraction of the iliacus advances the hip to 20 degrees of flexion. Contraction of the gracilis and sartorius muscles during this phase assists hip and knee flexion.

Midswing

During MSw, limb advancement and foot clearance continue. MSw begins at maximum knee flexion and ends when the tibia is vertical. Knee extension, coupled with ankle dorsiflexion, contributes to foot clearance while advancing the tibia (see Fig. 5.4C). Continued concentric activity of pretibial muscles ensures foot clearance and moves the foot toward the neutral position. Momentum creates an extension moment, advancing the lower leg toward extension from 60 to 30 degrees of flexion, with the quadriceps quiescent. Mild contraction of hip flexors continues to preserve the hip flexion position.

Terminal Swing

In the final phase, TSw, the knee extends fully in preparation for heel contact (see Fig. 5.4D). Eccentric contraction of the hamstrings and gluteus maximus decelerates the thigh and restrains further hip flexion. Activity of the pretibial muscles maintains the ankle at neutral to prepare for heel contact. In the second half of TSw, the rectus femoris is quiescent but the rest of the quadriceps vasti become active to facilitate full knee extension. Hip flexion remains at 30 degrees.

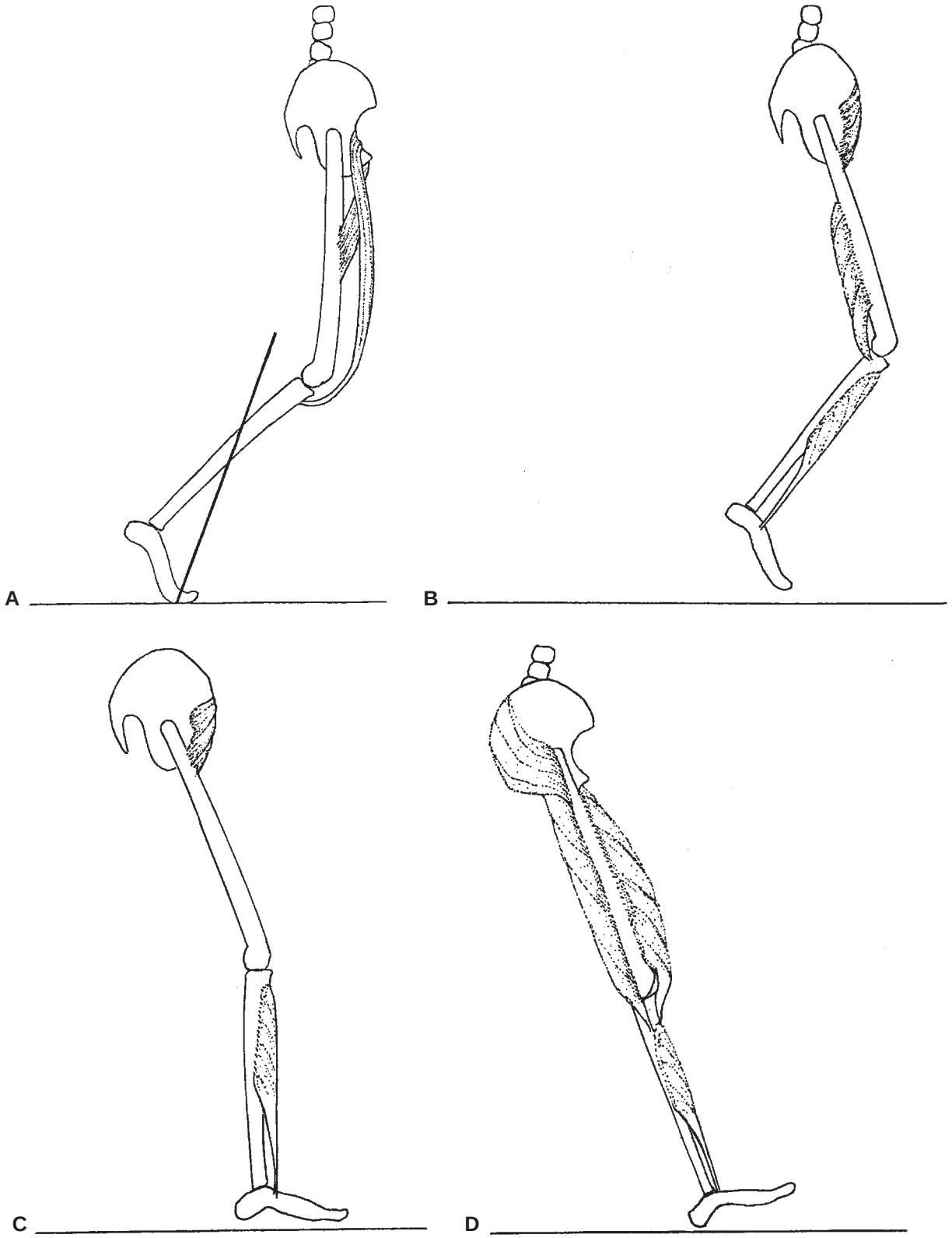


Fig. 5.4 The subphases of gait involved in the functional task of swing limb advancement include preswing (PSw), initial swing (ISw), midswing (MSw), and terminal swing (TSw). (A) During PSw, contralateral loading results in limited muscle activity in the limb transitioning from stance to swing. The rectus femoris and adductor longus initiate hip flexion. Knee flexion is passive, resulting from the planted forefoot and mobile proximal segments. (B) During ISw, the pretibial muscles, short head of the biceps femoris, and iliacus are active in initiating limb advancement and providing swing clearance. (C) A vertical tibia signals the end of the period of MSw. Here contraction of the iliacus preserves hip flexion while pretibial muscle activity maintains foot clearance. (D) At TSw, the gluteus maximus, hamstrings, quadriceps, and pretibial muscles are active to prepare for limb placement and the ensuing loading response.

A comprehensive system to describe normal and abnormal gait has been developed by the Pathokinesiology and Physical Therapy Departments at Rancho Los Amigos Medical Center over the past several decades.[1,2,10] Because velocity affects many parameters of walking, the description of normal gait assumes a comfortable self-selected velocity. At free walking velocity, the individual naturally recruits strategies and assumes the speed that provides maximum energy efficiency for their physiological system throughout the gait cycle.

Describing Pathological Gait

Qualitative descriptors are often used to characterize gait deviations and compensations. Some of these terms help identify specific primary impairments; others describe compensatory strategies adopted by individuals to address gait difficulties created by various primary impairments. Pathological gait mechanisms can be rooted in one of five primary areas. Dr. Perry identified these five functional categories as deformity, muscle weakness, sensory loss, pain, and impaired motor control.[5]

COMMON GAIT DEVIATIONS OBSERVED DURING STANCE

Gait deviations observed during stance can be a result of single impairment or a combination of deformity, muscle weakness, sensory loss, pain, and impaired motor control.

Increased contralateral pelvic drop or Trendelenburg gait pattern is seen in the stance phase of the gait cycle. This deviation can result from musculoskeletal complications or impaired motor control and is observed when the hip abductors are unable to generate sufficient torque to prevent excessive femoral adduction during LR. Increased contralateral pelvic drop is observed when the trunk leans to the same side as the hip pathology (ipsilateral lean), coupled with pelvic rotation. This is a compensatory strategy used when the gluteus medius muscle and its synergists (gluteus minimus and tensor fascia latae) cannot adequately stabilize the pelvis during stance.[11] Normally the drop of the contralateral pelvis is limited to 5 degrees by the eccentric control of the strong hip abductor muscles. To support the pelvis, the hip abductor muscles must generate a force that is about two times the body weight.[12] Weak or absent gluteus medius musculature leads to a postural substitution observed as an ipsilateral trunk lean over the weight-bearing hip joint. This reduces the external adductor moment created by a GRF line that falls medial to the joint center. Without this postural compensation, clearance of the distal portion of the contralateral limb becomes difficult in swing. Rarely, a positive Trendelenburg sign is caused by overactive hip adductors (adductors longus, magnus, brevis, and gracilis).

Vaulting may be a result of deformity or impaired motor control. Vaulting is observed through excessive plantar flexion of the stance foot, occasionally occurring with simultaneous stance limb hip and knee extension, with the goal of raising the pelvis to clear the contralateral swing limb.[13] It occurs when the functional length of the swing limb is relatively longer than that of the stance limb. It also occurs when swing limb advancement is impaired or delayed by inadequate motor control of hip or knee flexion, or both, or in the presence of a plantar flexion contracture of the swing leg. It may compensate for pelvic obliquity or leg length discrepancy.

Antalgic gait is a strategy used to avoid pain during walking. It is frequently observed in LR when the individual reduces SLS time on the affected limb. If the pain occurs during a particular interval in stance phase, that time interval is avoided. Antalgic gait caused by pain that originates around the hip might translate into a lateral lean to permit the individual to position the center of gravity over the support point, the head of the femur. If pain occurs during the extreme end range of a particular joint motion, that motion is diminished. For example, if full extension produces pain, the knee would be maintained in slight flexion throughout the gait cycle. It is important to note that while gait deviations are intended to lessen or avoid pain altogether, the compensatory movement patterns and altered mechanics can subsequently cause pain, dysfunction, and damage to the surrounding anatomy.[5]

COMMON GAIT DEVIATIONS OBSERVED DURING SWING

Circumducted gait may be a result of deformity, muscle weakness, or impaired motor control affecting ankle dorsiflexion, knee flexion, or hip flexion or a combination thereof. Circumduction is described as hip abduction combined with a wide arc of external pelvic rotation. Circumduction can be observed as a lateral arc of the foot in the transverse plane that begins at the end of PSw and ends at IC on the same limb, and the arc reaches the apex of its lateral movement at MSw. Most often, circumduction occurs as a compensatory pattern when there is a relatively longer swing limb compared with the stance limb. A plantar flexion contracture at the foot or a stiff knee or hip joint can necessitate a circumduction pattern during swing in an effort to achieve toe and foot clearance. The combination of abduction and pelvic rotation is a compensatory strategy to advance the limb through swing phase.

The typical pattern is a mixture of a wide base of support with the foot abnormally outset and may include an ipsilateral pelvic drop. In addition, it is possible for a contracture of the contralateral adductors to create this deviation by pulling the pelvis toward the contralateral femur and demanding a compensatory ipsilateral abducted position relative to the pelvis. A severe leg length discrepancy can result in an exaggerated pelvic tilt from the contralateral stance leg, which obligates the swing limb to an increased abduction position. Circumduction and abduction create a significant energy cost penalty, increasing lateral displacement of the center of gravity.

GAIT DEVIATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH ABNORMAL MUSCLE TONE

Gait deviations associated with abnormal muscle tone or weakness can be seen in both stance and swing phases and are also abnormalities produced by primary pathologies that present in the form of abnormal mechanics of one or more of the five functional areas (deformity, muscle weakness, sensory loss, pain, and impaired motor control).[5]

A variety of abnormal GPs are associated with abnormal muscle tone—most commonly spasticity, rigidity, hypotonicity, or abnormal motor control or muscle weakness.

Ataxic gait is a complication in gait that is seen as a failure of coordination or irregularity of muscular action of the limb segments commonly caused by cerebellar dysfunction. Ataxia often becomes accentuated when the eyes are closed, or vision is impaired or distracted.

Crouch gait is seen as excessive ankle dorsiflexion and exaggerated knee and hip flexion occurring throughout the stance phase of the gait cycle. Crouch gait is often seen in combination with toe-walking in children and adults with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy.[14] It has been attributed to a combination of overactivity of the hamstrings and weakness of calf muscles.

Scissor gait describes a pattern of poor control in limb advancement or tracking of the swing leg often characterized by the crossing, or scissoring (hip adduction, flexion, and medial rotation), of the lower limbs. It is most often observed in individuals with spastic or paretic pathological conditions such as hemiplegia, spastic diplegia, and cerebral palsy.[15]

Steppage gait occurs when there is weakness or paralysis of the dorsiflexor musculature, such as in persons with peroneal palsy or peripheral neuropathy, demanding exaggerated hip and knee flexion of the proximal joints to accomplish swing clearance; this gait deviation is most easily observed in late MSw.

Although orthosis use can successfully control abnormal motion in the sagittal plane as in steppage gait, orthoses are less effective in controlling the abnormal transverse, rotational, or coronal plane limb placement problems observed in ataxic, scissoring, or crouched GPs.

Qualitative Gait Assessment

Qualitative methods for identification and recording of gait deviations have played a role in patient care for decades. In 1925, Robinson described pathological GPs and attempted to correlate them with specific disease processes.[16] In 1937, Boorstein identified 14 disease processes that could be diagnosed with gait assessment.[17] He described seven major gait deficit groups, attributing the term *steppage gait* to the French physician Charcot and the identification of *waddling gait* in hip dysplasia to Hippocrates. In the late 1950s, Blair Hangar, the founder of Northwestern University's School of Prosthetics and Orthotics, and Hildegard Myers, a physical therapist at Rehabilitation Institute of Chicago, collaborated to develop the first comprehensive system of clinical gait analysis for persons with transfemoral amputation.[18] They identified 16 gait deviations and suggested numerous clinical and prosthetic causes for each. Their work, developed into an educational film and handbook in 1960, has since been a model for subsequent instructional videos and assessment systems in prosthetics.[19] Brunnstrom's comprehensive gait analysis form for hemiplegic gait, published in 1970, is a checklist of 28 deviations seen at the ankle, knee, and hip that are common after stroke.[20] Many other assessment tools have evolved; many are used but only a few have been assessed for validity and reliability. The Gait Assessment and Intervention Tool (GAIT) is a 31-item objective measure of the movements of persons following stroke that provides a comprehensive assessment of the coordinated components of gait pre- and postintervention.[21] This tool has been shown to be reliable and valid in the assessment of gait and the assessment of the success of intervention following neural injury.[22,23]

Early work in observational gait analysis received a significant impetus from Perry as an outgrowth of basic research data published in 1967.[24] In the late 1960s, Perry and a group of physical therapists from the Rancho Los Amigos Medical Center Physical Therapy Department developed an organized format for systematically applied observational gait analysis. Their work initially focused on the development of an in-house training program for students and personnel who were new to the rehabilitation hospital. The first Normal and Pathological Gait Syllabus was published by the Professional Staff Association of Rancho Los Amigos Hospital in 1977.[2,25] Subsequent revisions have included additional gait data and gait interpretation.[26] This syllabus uses parameters of normal gait as a comparative standard for abnormal or pathological gait. Recently Adams and Cerny have designed a similar but more simplified observational gait analysis form (KAKC's Observational Gait Analysis) that includes only major, most commonly, occurring gait deviations that interfere with the three gait functional tasks.[27] Problems in each of the major body segments are noted with a check in one of the bubbles, beginning with the ankle, calcaneus, toes, knee, thigh, pelvis, and trunk. This format allows the clinician to consider systematically critical questions to illuminate the deviations and complications present in each unique client presentation.[27] It focuses on identifying gait deviations that affect the three functional tasks of walking: weight acceptance, SLS, and swing limb advancement.

Qualitative gait assessment is an important component of preorthotic assessment because it assists the clinician in identifying the functional task and the subphase of gait that are problematic and can be addressed with orthotic intervention. Similarly, qualitative assessment can inform preprosthetic choices, as well as identify deviations observed during gait analysis, illuminating the need for adjustment of prosthetic design and alignment.

Instrumented Gait Analysis

Instrumented gait analysis records the process of walking with measurable parameters collected through the use of computerized equipment with the goal of enhancing the interpretive quality to clinical gait analysis. Such basic techniques would have enabled measurement of walking velocity (distance traversed per unit of time) and cadence (steps per unit of time). Marks, a New York City prosthetist, offered a more precise qualitative description of pathological gait in 1905, when he described the gait process in eight organized phases and discussed the implications of prosthetic component design on walking function. Marks praised "kinetoscopic" photography as a potential diagnostic tool for optimizing pathological gait.[28]

Today we record gait parameters with instruments as common as a stopwatch or as complex as the simultaneous integration of three-dimensional kinematics, kinetics, and

EMG methods. The primary emphasis of clinical assessment has been on accessible techniques and inexpensive technologies. A simple, inexpensive footprint mat has been used for decades to record barefoot plantar pressures. Clinics use individual or multiple mats to record step and stride length, as well as walking base width. Early on, video technology with slow-motion capabilities made more precise qualitative description of the gait cycle possible. The continued development of inexpensive video gait assessment software has made clinical quantitative applications more practical as well. Most quantitative and qualitative video systems, however, measure joint angles in two dimensions, which does not offer a complete analysis of the three-dimensional walking activity.

TECHNOLOGY IN GAIT ASSESSMENT

The high-tech side of quantitative gait analysis has traversed a surprisingly long road. The birth of instrumented kinematic, EMG, and temporal performance analysis began in the 1870s with E.J. Marey, who first performed movement analysis of pathological gait with photography.[29] He also developed the first myograph for measuring muscle activity and the first foot-switch collection system for measuring gait events related to the temporal parameters. The foot-switch system was an experimental shoe that measured the length and rapidity of the step and the pressure of the foot on the ground. Eadweard Muybridge, working at Stanford University in the 1880s, used synchronized multiple camera photography with a scaled backdrop to record on film and assess the motion of subjects walking.[30] Scherb made other major advances in instrumented gait analysis in 1920 by performing manual muscle palpation on individuals while using a treadmill. In addition, in 1925 Adrian advocated the use of EMG to study the dynamic action of muscles.[31]

Modern gait technology began in 1945, when Inman and colleagues initiated the systematic collection of gait data for individuals without impairment and with amputation in the outdoor gait laboratory at the University of California at Berkeley.[7] Since then, researchers and clinicians have increasingly used the wide array of gait technologies to measure the parameters of human performance in normal and pathological gait. A full-service gait laboratory gathers information on six performance parameters in walking: temporal, metabolic, kinematic, kinetic, EMG, and pressure.[32]

MEASURING TEMPORAL AND DISTANCE PARAMETERS

Temporal parameters (time and distance) enable the clinician to summarize the overall quality of an individual's gait. Temporal data collection systems might be one of the most effective components available for assessment in the clinical setting. In the gait laboratory, microswitch-embedded pads taped to the bottom of an individual's shoes or feet can record the amount of time that the individual spends on various anatomical landmarks over a measured distance. Portable pressure-sensitive gait mats, connected to a laptop computer with gait analysis software for time and distance parameters, are also commercially available to use in clinical settings.[33,34] For example, the GAITRite system, which consists of an electronic walkway connected to a computer, records the temporal and spatial characteristics of individuals while walking, as well as while performing other functional or occupational tasks. The GAITRite mat is flexible and can be rolled and transported in a hard case, which enables data collection at different clinics or sites. Rao and colleagues used the GAITRite system to collect temporal and spatial data to compare the effects of two unique and different ankle-foot orthosis (AFO) designs on the GP of individuals following acute hemiparetic cerebrovascular accidents (CVAs). In this study, they compared stride length, velocity, cadence, and step length, while also surveying the clients' perceptions between walking with no device, an off-the-shelf carbon AFO, and a custom plastic AFO. The GAITRite system data collection was consistent with the client perceptions; velocity, cadence, stride length, step length increase with either the carbon AFO or the custom plastic AFO compared to no AFO.[35]

Gait deviations related to excessive inversion, eversion, or prolonged heel-only time can be recognized and should be considered when modifying the alignment or components of prostheses or orthoses. A temporal data collection system is particularly cost effective and clinically meaningful. Temporal data are usually a product of another measuring system such as EMG or motion analysis. Temporal data systems are commercially available, covering a wide range of cost, technical sophistication, and time required to analyze the summarized data. Some of the temporal parameters, however, can be recorded to a lesser degree of accuracy using a stopwatch and basic video camera.[36]

ASSESSING THE ENERGY COST OF WALKING

Metabolic data reflect the physiological "energy cost" of walking. The traditional measures of energy cost are oxygen consumption, total carbon dioxide generated, and heart rate. Other relevant factors include volume of air breathed and respiratory rate. All these parameters are viewed in relation to velocity and distance walked over the collection period. Historically, metabolic data were collected while the individual walked on a treadmill, wearing umbilical devices. In recent years, because of the known influence of treadmill collection in altering normal gait velocity, energy cost data are more likely to be obtained on an open track of a measured distance with the individual ambulating in a free walk or natural cadence. With the cardiopulmonary device market continually growing and advancing, there is a wide array of versatile testing equipment to choose from. This equipment allows the individual to negotiate their normal environments with little or no interruption due to the testing and collection setups. Some of the newest products on the market couple the traditional oxygen and carbon dioxide (V_{O_2} and V_{CO_2}) measurement with the capability of collecting telemetry data, indirect calorimetry, and integrated electrocardiogram among other add-ons to standard systems. The primary limitation of energy cost as an assessment tool is that, although it can inform the investigator about body metabolism relative to the individual's gait, it cannot explain why or how an advantage or disadvantage was obtained. Dr. Weinert-Aplin found that through the analysis of the center of mass in all three plans for subjects

with amputations there could potentially be a correlation between metabolic cost and the center of mass positioning during gait. The study revealed the base of support and the medial-lateral positioning of the center of mass had the most significant correlation with the subject's metabolic requirements, suggesting that increases in base of support and medial-lateral center of mass displacement reduce walking efficiency.[37] Energy cost measures alone cannot easily identify between the impact of varieties of components, muscle activation, or a combination of both with regard to metabolic energy, whereas a combination of kinematic, kinetic, and EMG data typically can.[38] The COSMED K4b2 system has been used in many studies; in particular, one study utilized the wearable metabolic analysis system to assess the impact of new technologies in prosthetics and the associated energy requirements. The comparison was made between the standard energy storing prosthetic feet and the relatively new concept of crossover prosthetic feet.[39] The MetaMax 3B system was utilized to demonstrate that the movement of the center of mass, as well as the base of support, were significant indicators of the metabolic cost of walking in persons with amputations.[37]

Perhaps the best kept secret in the energy cost arsenal is the *physiological cost index* (PCI). It is easily calculated as follows:

$$\text{PCI} = (\text{walking pulse} - \text{resting pulse})/\text{gait speed}$$

The PCI is one of the most sensitive indicators of energy cost of gait. Tanabe and colleagues compared two different orthotic designs by measuring a wide variety of metabolic parameters as well as the PCI.[40] Their results demonstrated statistically significant difference in PCI between the two devices when all other measured parameters failed to produce such differences.

KINEMATIC AND KINETIC SYSTEMS

Most *kinematic* systems provide joint and body segment motion in graphic form. This information includes sagittal, coronal, and transverse motions that occur at the ankle, knee, hip, and pelvis. The individual is instrumented with reflective markers that are placed on well-recognized anatomical landmarks (Fig. 5.5). Typically, an infrared light source is positioned around or integrated into each of several cameras. This light is directed to the reflective spheres, which in turn are reflected into the cameras. Each field of video data is digitized, the markers are manually identified, and the coordinates of the geometric center of each marker are calculated with computer software. Resultant data are displayed as animated figures that represent the actual motions produced by the individual. The operator can freeze any frame and enlarge the image at any joint to examine GPs in greater depth. The operator can extract raw numbers that represent joint placement and motion in space or produce a printout showing joint motion in all planes plotted against the percentage of the gait cycle (Fig. 5.6). Angular velocities, accelerations, and joint and segment linear displacements can be calculated. Data from other systems (force platforms and EMG) collected during the same time sequence as the motion data are often integrated with the kinematics. Advanced systems like these can be a very expensive component of the gait lab, but the information collected provides some of the most in-depth and valid data. In the gait lab or a clinical lab, the motion system

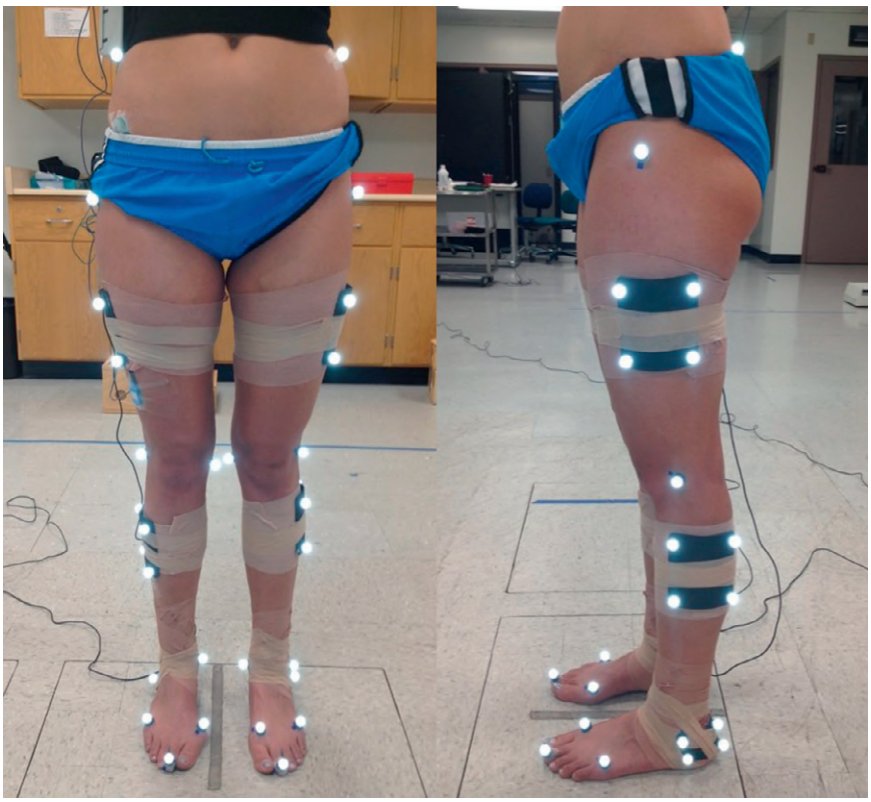


Fig. 5.5 This individual is wearing reflective spheres. An infrared camera system can track limb segment motion as the patient walks across the field of view.

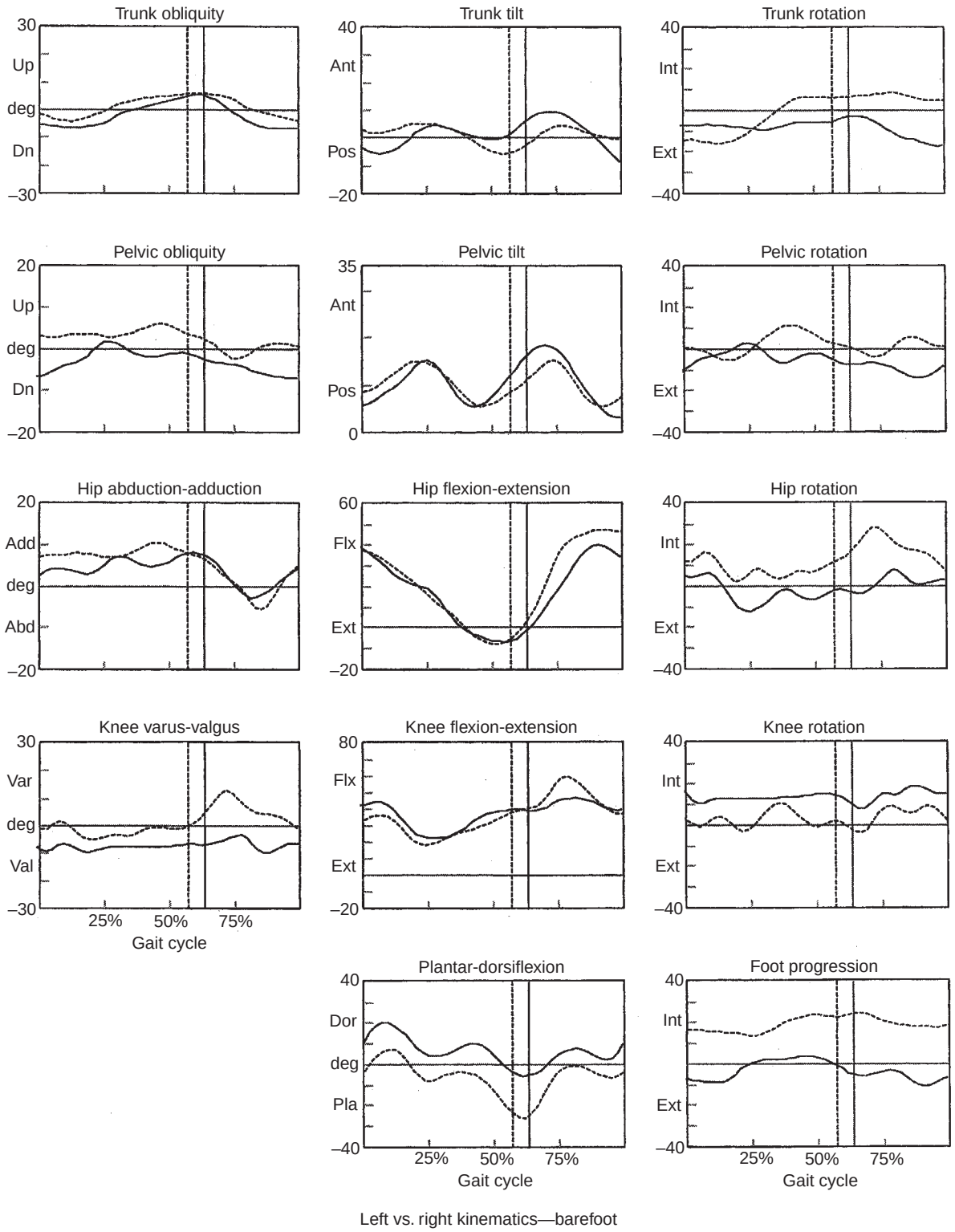


Fig. 5.6 The output generated by a computer-based motion analysis system includes graphs of the mean range of motion at each body segment or joint (trunk, pelvis, hip, knee, and ankle) in coronal *(left column)*, sagittal *(middle column)*, and transverse *(right column)* planes as the individual being evaluated progresses through multiple gait cycles. This is the output of an 8-year-old child with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy. (Courtesy the Center for Motion Analysis, Connecticut Children's Medical Center, Hartford, CT.)

setup serves as the technological core. A variety of Vicon motion systems have been used to evaluate the joint motion in individuals with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy and various other client populations.[41] Similarly, the EvaRT motion analysis system has been used to collect data comparing mechanical and microprocessor knees in individuals with gait and balance deficits associated with transfemoral amputations.[42]

The Dartfish system is another motion analysis tool that is used in gait laboratories and clinical settings.[43] The Dartfish system allows for two- and three-dimensional joint motion analysis. It is portable, less expensive, and requires less time to set up when compared with other motion analysis systems. In one study, the Dartfish system demonstrated excellent validity and reliability as well as agreement between 2D and 3D motion analysis in subjects demonstrating postural control of varying capabilities as well as balance deficits.[44]

When an individual takes a step, he is exerting force against the surface he is walking on. This kinetic information is obtained from one or more force platforms, which collect data on the three components of the GRF: vertical, fore-aft (anterior-posterior), and medial-lateral (Fig. 5.7). The contribution of kinetic data can be significant. Fore-aft shear is quite useful in establishing appropriate transtibial prosthetic alignment in the sagittal plane. For this purpose, the clinician would anticipate a balanced magnitude and timing of the braking and propulsive patterns. Data collection from two consecutive steps, one gait cycle, requires dual force plates. Some kinetic software packages also offer specialized programs for specific purposes such as stability analysis, which provides information about center of gravity shift relative to time.

Although the typical force platform system provides data about forces and moments occurring at the ground, or center of pressure progression, it can be combined with kinematic data to provide additional information. By combining these two data sets, the moments and powers acting at the joints can be calculated. This information is useful in measuring the dynamic joint control of an individual throughout stance, particularly when used in conjunction with EMG. Similarly, information about joint moments, sometimes referred to as *torque*, is also often reported as an outcome measure in research studies. Although this information can be potentially important in the evaluation of pathological gait, it is also necessary to have a basic understanding of how these values are derived. As mentioned, when a person ambulates, the individual exerts force on the walking surface; differing degrees of this force are similarly exerted on each of the joints in the lower extremity. With the exertion of these forces comes an associated moment that is also acting at the joint, along with a power value. In its most basic form, a moment is the result of a force multiplied by a distance or lever arm.[45] Joint power is then calculated by multiplying the moment acting at a joint by the joint's angular velocity. In addition, the moment acting on a particular segment is most frequently calculated with reference to the center of mass of that segment. This means that the lever arm is the distance from where the forces are acting at the joint to the center of mass of the segment. In order to calculate these values, the lower extremity must be broken down into segments—often the ankle, shank or calf, and thigh. By doing this, a link-segment model is being applied and the parameters of interest can be calculated. One study utilized a multilink segment model to evaluate the kinetics, kinematics, and energetics associated with energy storage and return (ESAR) prosthetic feet used in high impact sports. The study revealed there were some flaws in merging unaffected limb and affected limb parameters; this should be taken into consideration when studying the kinematics and kinetics of persons with unilateral amputations.[46]

To further illustrate the interrelated nature of these measures, the calculation path for forces, moments, and power is also presented in a flow chart (Fig. 5.8). It is important to note within the diagram where the different data sources originate. There are very few directly measured values that are then combined with biomechanical models to calculate these variables.

The calculation process begins with the determination of the GRFs, which are obtained through the direct measurement of an individual stepping on a force platform. Once that information is available, it is combined with kinematic data and derived from a two- or three-dimensional motion capture system for each lower extremity body segment so that the joint reaction forces can be calculated. As the forces at each of the joints are determined, then the associated moments acting on each segment can also be calculated. Ultimately, the power can be calculated as well (Fig. 5.9).

In many cases, instrumented kinetic and kinematic systems have included an inverse dynamics model that is applied to determine the forces acting at each of the lower extremity joints. Like virtually all biomechanics models, certain assumptions must be made in order for the calculation to be carried out in a practical manner. With assumptions come the opportunity for the introduction of additional error throughout the process. Because of the high potential for induced error, it is important to understand the limitations associated with them. A fundamental point is that frequently these calculations all rely upon data that are calculated using general body proportions and anthropometric models for whole bodied individuals. Because of this, certain assumptions are made about the mechanical properties of the segments and joints being evaluated. For example, many of the commonly used models assume that the subject has no limb deficiencies and essentially normal musculature. While this may be acceptable for evaluations of individuals without pathology, these assumptions can become a source of error when evaluating an individual with an amputation or other limb dysfunction. There is also the issue that the knee and ankle joints are frequently modeled as simple hinge joints. Doing this makes the calculations more practical to perform but does not completely represent the anatomical reality. Particularly in the case of the knee, the joint center does not stay in a fixed position during stance, but many of the models for calculating joint moments assume that it does (Fig. 5.10). As a result, there can be variation in the distance used to calculate the moment at the knee. Considering the physical location, even a small variation in the estimated joint center could result in a significant change in the value calculated. Because many of the calculations rely upon the model assumptions, the inherent errors can be easily compounded. This is not to say that these variables should be ignored, but that their value should be tempered with an understanding of the process for obtaining them.

ELECTROMYOGRAPHY

Muscle action beneath skin and subcutaneous tissue cannot be directly measured, but through the use of EMG, the activity can be approximated and studied in relation to the action, size of muscle, and signals obtained. EMG records the muscle activity by the electrical signal detected from

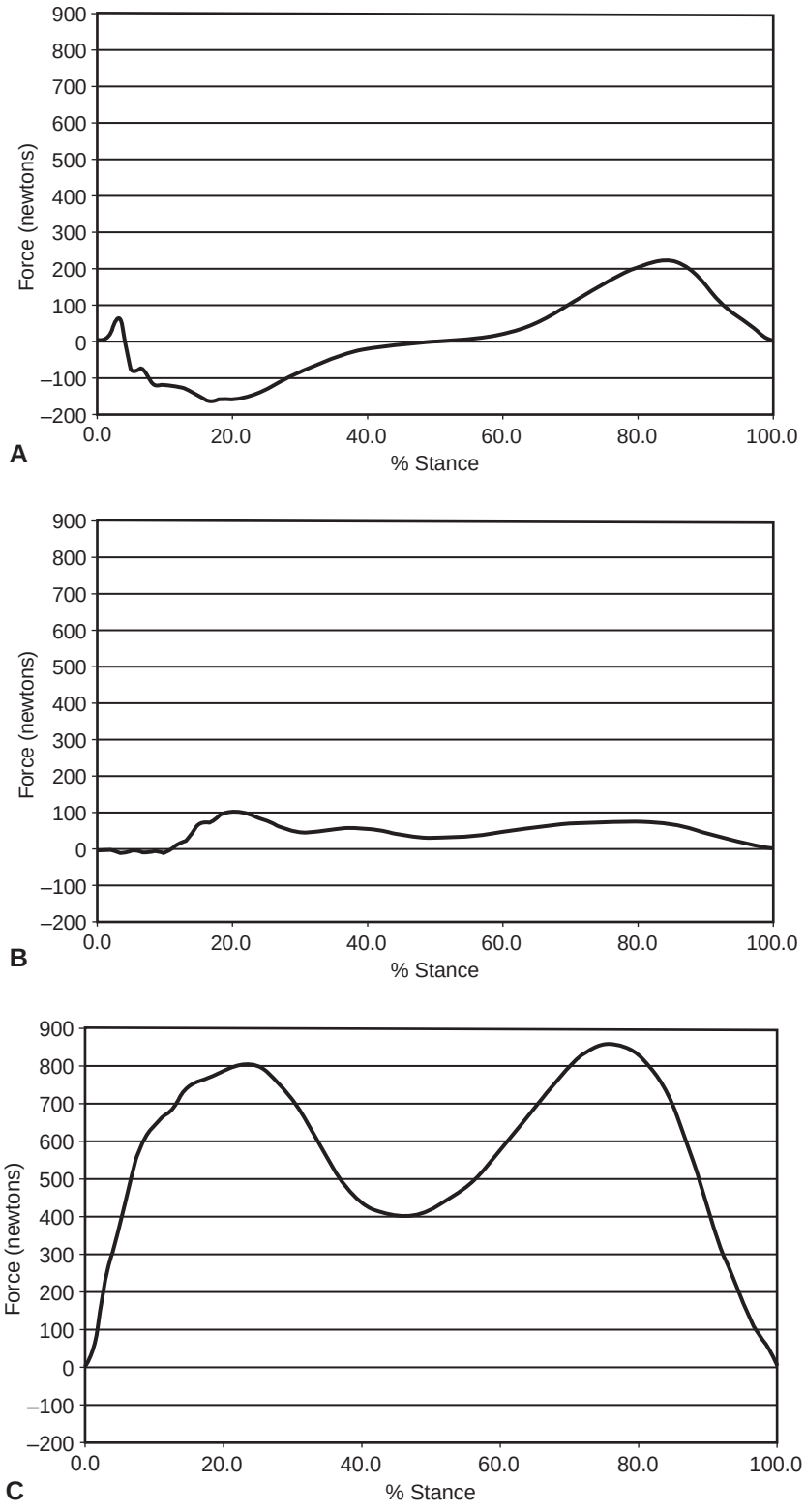


Fig. 5.7 Example of output generated by a force-plate as the individual being tested progresses through stance phase. (A) The anteroposterior component of the ground reaction force (GRF). (B) The medial lateral component of the GRF. (C) The vertical component of the GRF. (Output courtesy of the Motion Analysis Laboratory, Department of Physical Therapy and Human Movement Science, Sacred Heart University, Fairfield, CT.)

the contraction and chemical stimulation of the respective musculature.[47]

EMG instrumentation can vary, as is seen with surface EMG (sEMG) or fine-wire EMG. With sEMG, the electrode pad is adhered to the skin above the muscle being studied, while fine-wire EMG uses wire electrodes directly inserted into the belly of the respective muscle. Intrasocket EMG is a relatively new technique, employing traditional sEMG techniques as well as the use of transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) techniques to allow for EMG to be worn by amputees underneath their prosthesis. This technique allows for EMG information to be gathered on

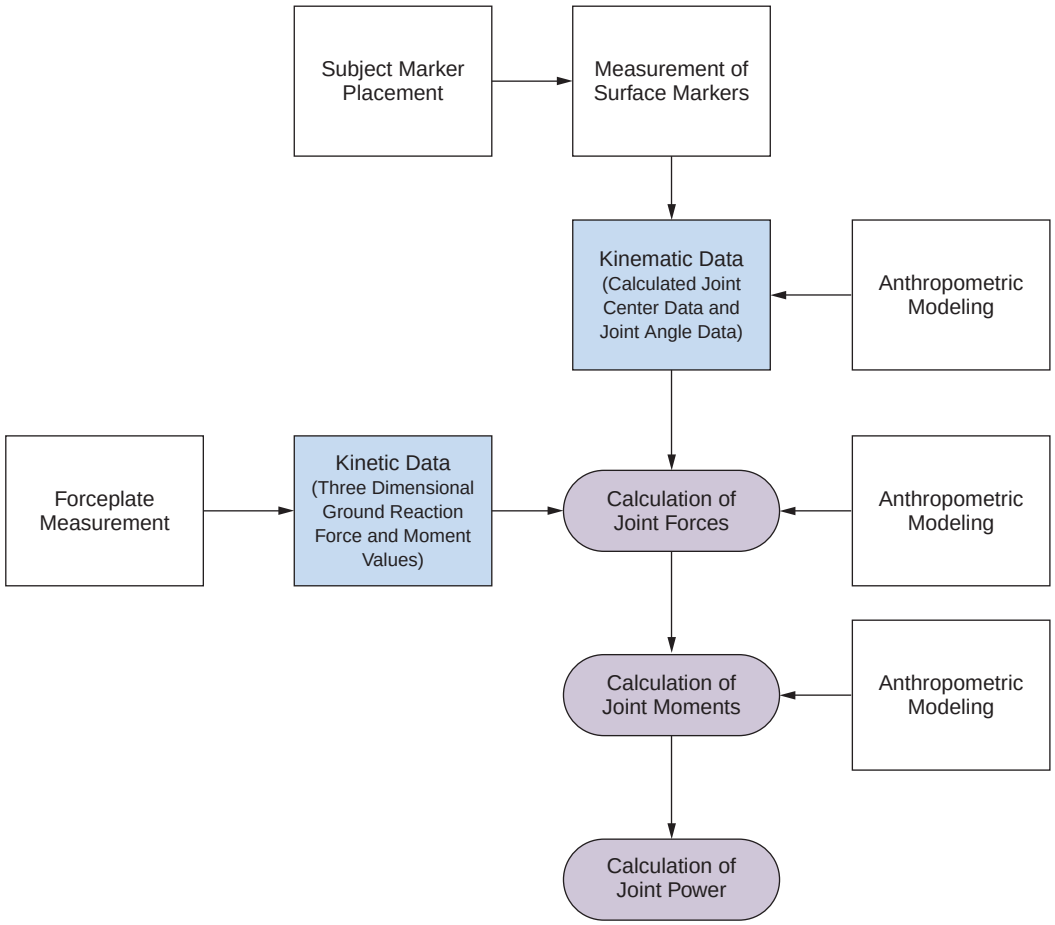


Fig. 5.8 Calculation flowchart: the kinematic data collected from the motion analysis system is entered into a series of calculations based on the person's anthropometric data to produce the instantaneous position of every joint and segment. These data are then combined with force plate data collected at the same time to calculate joint forces, moments, and powers.

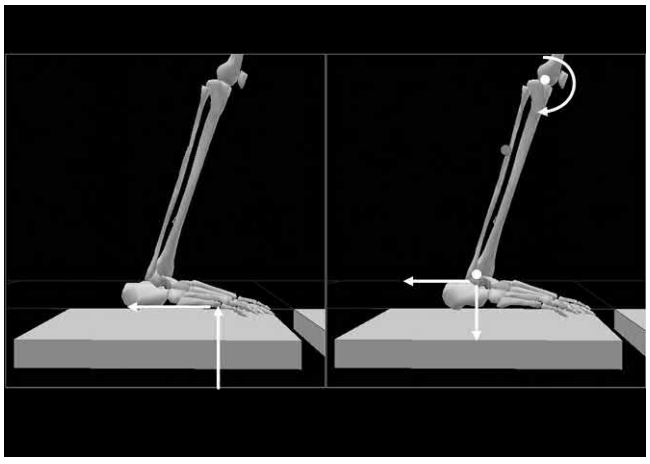


Fig. 5.9 Example of joint moment calculation. (A) Vertical and antero-posterior ground reaction forces recorded from a force plate. (B) Joint moments are calculated by combining ground reaction forces and kinematic data, taking into account the segment's center of mass.

amputees during walking and other dynamic activities, including the use of human intent and control of powered prosthetic devices.[48] EMG data may be the single most important technology in terms of understanding the direct physiological effect of gait variants.

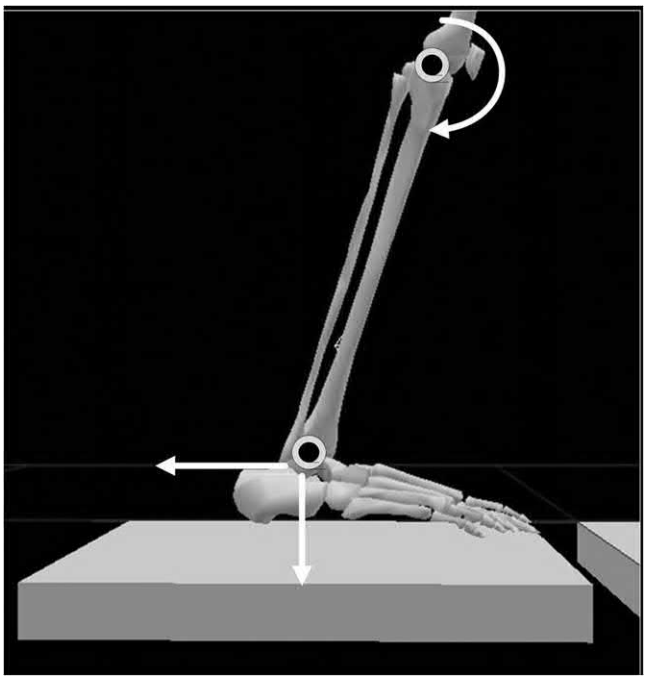


Fig. 5.10 Soft tissues and joint geometry differences between the anthropometric model and the actual individual being introduce a potential error in calculating joint moments. In this example, the outer circle indicates the potential range of location of the actual joint center, compared with where the model ultimately defines it *(inner circle)*.

EMG records the motor unit activation of muscle fibers in the specific muscle being studied. This is very useful but can be problematic with surface electrode applications in that they can pick up the signal from surrounding musculature during testing. EMG characterization allows for timing and relative intensity of muscular effort, as well as resultant muscle force, all of which are necessary to understand normal and pathological gait. EMG data are normalized against maximum contraction data for each respective muscle. Without normalization, the data collected may be invalid and can lead to erroneous interpretation. Maximum contraction is dependent on joint angle as well as the duration of the contraction, both of which are influential to the overall information extracted from analysis.

Patterns of muscle activity in individuals with abnormal gait are compared with well-established norms. Knowledge of the timing and intensity of the muscle activity throughout the gait cycle may guide gait training, orthotic or prosthetic prescription, and dynamic orthotic or prosthetic alignment aimed at reduction of excessive, ill-timed, or prolonged muscle activity. EMG is exceedingly adaptable with the most basic function of superficial muscle activity data to intramuscular fine-wire sensor technology, which is all cohesive to the implementation of many other complex clinical or gait lab technologies.[36] EMG data are also helpful in guiding decisions about surgical intervention (dorsal rhizotomy, tendon lengthening, or osteotomy) in children with cerebral palsy. Some myoelectric prosthesis users have benefitted from increased device control as a result of targeted muscle reinnervation (TMR). TMR procedures intend to create additional EMG sites in higher level upper extremity candidates (transhumeral or shoulder disarticulations), where the user would benefit from intuitive, physiological, and overall improved control of the myoelectric device.[49]

PRESSURE-SENSING TECHNOLOGY

Pressure-sensing technologies offer the clinician tremendous insights into the treatment of individuals at risk for amputation because of vascular disease and diabetic neuropathy. They can also assist vascular surgeons and orthopedic foot specialists in limb salvage through more appropriate custom-designed prophylactic orthoses. In some systems, a thin plastic array can slip nearly unnoticed between the plantar surface of the foot and an orthosis or insole of the shoe (Fig. 5.11). This array, connected to a computer by a lead wire or Bluetooth technology, can measure dynamic pressure patterns and record critical events throughout the walking cycle. A prosthetic version can provide various measurements at 60 individual sites within a socket and record those measurements during multiple events of the gait cycle. Pressure is expressed in terms of a force distributed over the area at which the force is acting.

$$\text{Pressure} = \text{Force}/\text{Area}$$

Plantar pressure and temperature measurements in the foot contribute to the identification of abnormal values and the risk for potential ulcers. These measurements transition critical feedback from subjective to objective clinical measurements offering a way to break out of the cycle of trial and error that is often necessary to find the correct solution to an individual's problem.[50] Currently, surface pressure measurement systems exist in various forms ranging from in-shoe, barefoot, seating and positioning, joint, and prosthetic and orthotic floor-based models. Over the years, Perry and colleagues have collected data on the most common types of pressure testing systems that consist of a "force plate" that uses ink and paper to record the areas of peak pressures during ambulation. This type of system is inexpensive and provides reliable, easily interpreted data. Instrumented insoles, however, are positioned inside the individual's shoes and worn during ambulation and activity performance. The insoles record pressures and various forces on the plantar surface of the foot through an integrated array of sensors.[47] The diversity of treatment applications has promoted these systems to be some of the most valuable in the laboratory setting.[36] An example of the application of pressure sensing technology is in the area of detecting plantar ulcers in the diabetic population. The compilation of data gathered from a six-camera motion capture system for kinematic data, kinetic data collected from two-force plates, data from a two-dimensional plantar pressure finite element model, and EMG data corresponding to the respective lower extremity musculature is used to predict the internal stresses experienced prematurely that ultimately present as plantar surface ulcers.[51] This area is one of the more recent and clinically promising technologies for future use in the clinical assessment setting.

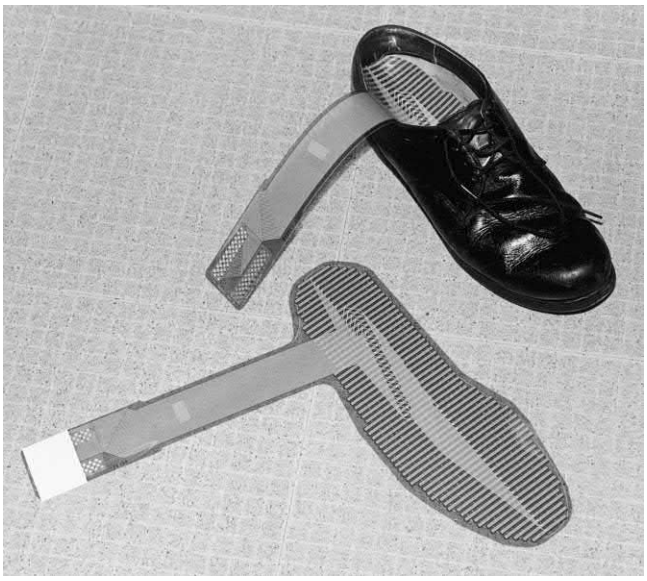


Fig. 5.11 An in-shoe pressure-sensing array can help identify areas of high pressure concentration. This information assists in the design of an orthosis to modify pressure dynamics during the stance phase of gait.

Choosing the Appropriate Assessment Tool

Over the past several decades, technologies have advanced and aided in providing a significantly improved understanding of pathological gait. They have also assisted clinicians in providing strong evidence for the efficacy of various treatment approaches and ultimately helped enhance patient

care. Advocates of a more universal application of the high-end technologies in the clinical setting have made a compelling case for implementation in gait laboratories and clinical settings alike across the field of rehabilitative care. Determining the extent and necessity for various high-end devices, such as full featured motion analysis systems, in the clinical setting can be a very extensive process requiring the evaluation of the advantages and disadvantages to both the individual and the clinic, particularly in the current climate of cost containment. Perhaps the strongest argument for gait technology in our present era lies in its use for outcome measurement to justify legitimate therapeutic treatment approaches, as well as orthotic and prosthetic applications.

Recognizing the need, benefits, and drawbacks of technology in the clinical setting is very important. Appropriate instrumented evaluations will need to be made by the rehabilitation team to help optimize client outcomes.

Function-Based Assessment

Functional measures are performance-based tools directly related to specific activities and linked to "real-world" domains of function. For example, walking in the community requires meeting the demand of varied distance, terrain, illumination, obstacles, stair-climbing, and multitasking. The results of these functional measures are usually compared with established "norms," which characterize the full spectrum of a specific population. Results of functional measures help specify level of function, evaluate progress after intervention, and establish goals and benchmarks.

Holden and colleagues suggest that gait performance goals for individuals with neurological impairments are best measured against values from impaired rather than healthy subjects. Treatment goals are adjusted for the individual's diagnosis, etiologic factor, ambulation aid, and functional category. In separate studies, Brandstater and colleagues and Holden and colleagues found that individuals with the greatest number of gait deviations did not have the lowest temporal values.[52,53] A great deal of energy is often expended by physical therapists, prosthetists, and orthotists in an attempt to help individuals achieve optimal GPs. Holden and colleagues suggest that hard-won qualitative gait improvements may cause secondary losses in time-distance parameters, such as slower velocity and reduced step length.[52] The fundamental issue is whether temporal gait efficiency or cosmesis should be the preferred goal. Certainly, in cases in which individuals are nominal walkers and in which therapy, surgery, and orthotics or prosthetics have optimized, gait efficiency is far more important than reducing in compensatory gait deficits.

In the past, symmetry and reciprocal movement patterns have been significant treatment goals. Wall and Ashburn maintain that "an ideal objective in the functional rehabilitation of hemiplegia is the reduction of the asymmetrical nature of movement patterns."[54] Measuring pathological gait against normal gait values is a useful means of providing an overall clinical picture. In setting treatment goals, however, measuring an individual's performance against their own best possible outcome is more reasonable. How can a given individual's best possible outcome be anticipated? This requires collection of accurate data to establish pretreatment and posttreatment profiles for a wide variety of involvement levels within each pathological condition. Olney and Richards suggest that large groups of instrumented studies be undertaken to identify clusters of biomechanical features associated with functional performance during walking.[55]

Time-distance parameters have enormous potential for setting outcome goals. Variations in time-distance values are often specific to pathological condition. Asymmetries in hemiplegia, for example, are obviously greater than in most other types of pathological conditions. Variables that are reported to affect temporal measurements in normal healthy subjects include age, gender, height, orthotic use, or type of assistive device. In separate studies of individuals with pathological conditions, Brandstater and colleagues and Holden and colleagues found no significant difference in temporal performance based on gender or age.[52,53]

Corcoran and colleagues measured temporal parameters of subjects with hemiplegia under two gait conditions: with and without their AFO. Individuals with hemiplegia had significantly faster gait velocity when wearing their orthoses than when walking without them.[56] Another similar study of healthy unimpaired subjects wearing AFOs found reduced step length. Apparently subjects without central nervous system involvement altered their movement strategy to decrease movements at the knee in an effort to minimize shearing forces in the AFO.[57] Reduced step length can minimize force exerted by the brace along the posterior aspect of the calf band.[58]

FUNCTIONAL MEASURES

Innumerable gait-specific functional measures have been developed to evaluate and quantify complex tasks essential to fully participate in everyday community life. These functional measures provide information about the ambulatory function of individuals with varying neuromuscular, musculoskeletal, cardiopulmonary, or metabolic diseases and conditions. Functional measures are commonly used to document current functional status, change over time, and response to interventions. Although Observational Gait Analysis is valuable in identifying gait deviations in all phases of the gait cycle, functional measures provide information about how these gait deviations affect function in the person's environment. Functional ambulation in the "real-world" involve complex gait tasks, including walking at a varying speed and distance, accelerating and decelerating pace as needed; negotiating changing terrains; navigating obstacles; and multitasking. Functional measures can be performed in most settings, as they do not require specialized equipment or instrumentation.

Commonly used gait-specific outcome measures include (1) WS, (2) Timed Up and Go Test (TUG), (3) Dynamic Gait Index (DGI), (4) Functional Ambulation Classification System (FAC), and (5) The Modified Gait Abnormality Rating Scale (GARS-M). Most of these measures require some degree of practice or training so that testers may develop accuracy in using the tool and can apply all of its psychometric implications. It is common that clinicians combine some of these measures to collect enough information to

make a clinical decision regarding functional level, safety, and/or need for a specific intervention.

Walking Speed

WS (or gait velocity) is the fundamental walking measure that defines the person's basic walking ability.[47] WS is the time required for a person to traverse a specific distance. The term *velocity* indicates not only the speed of travel but also the specific direction of travel. Since walking is usually measured in the forward direction, the distinction between speed and velocity is not significant. On level ground, people without pathology consistently walk at a preferred/comfortable or "self-selected" WS. This speed is the most efficient for that person; faster or slower speed will require more energy.[59,60] In the gait laboratory, this preferred speed is referred to as "free walking velocity" to be distinguished from "fast walking velocity."

WS as a functional measure is highly reliable and sensitive, regardless of the method of measurement.[61] In a group of frail elderly individuals, Van Iersel demonstrated that a 5% change in WS had a sensitivity of 92% to detect clinically relevant change.[62] WS also correlates with functional ability,[63] physiological changes,[63] and balance confidence.[64] Several studies demonstrated that WS can predict important aspects of health status and future events including hospitalization,[65] discharge location,[66,67] future health status,[68,69] and mortality.[70]

Numerous factors contribute to WS, including joint mobility, muscle strength, sensory function, neural control, cognitive status, and energy level, so it can reflect overall health. Fritz and Lusardi suggested considering WS as the "sixth vital sign" in older adults. Vital signs 1 to 5 include pulse rate, respiratory rate, blood pressure, pain, and temperature.[3] The National Institutes of Health (NIH) Toolbox for the Assessment of Neurological and Behavioral Function includes WS as a measure of motor function.[71]

In gait laboratory investigations, researchers have used a variety of state-of-the-art equipment including portable computerized walkways, motion analysis systems, and foot switch technology to measure WS. Clinicians, however, can reliably measure WS in almost any clinical setting using a stopwatch and a walkway. Most published reports measured WS for the middle 6-m of a 10-m walkway to avoid the acceleration and deceleration phases and capture the steady WS. Suggested walkway distance varied greatly between studies; however, a walkway as short as 6-m (recording zone is the central 4-m) is still a reliable measure.[71] Fritz and Lusardi suggest a 10-m test with added 5-m for acceleration and 5-m for deceleration.[72]

In people without pathology, several factors affect walking, including age, gender, lower extremity length, strength, and spontaneous variability between individuals.[72] To follow the International Standards of Measurement, gait speed should be expressed in m/s. Collectively, the range for normal WS for adults is between 1.2 and 1.4 m/s.[73] Others reported WSs in m/min to be compatible with other energy and cadence measurements. Waters and colleagues reported a similar average of 82 m/min for adults.[74]

Timed Up and Go

The original purpose of the TUG test was to assess general mobility and fall risk in frail older adults with limited mobility.[75] The American Geriatric Society recommends that TUG be utilized as a routine screening test for falls.[76] For the test, individuals are asked to rise from a seated position in a standard height chair, walk 3-m on a level surface, turn, walk back to the chair, and return to a seated position, moving as quickly as they are safely able. Although the original get-up-and-go test used a somewhat subjective 0 to 5 rating to score each component of the task, performance is now based on total time to complete the task.[77,78] In both versions, individuals being evaluated are instructed to move as quickly as they are safely able to move. It is important to note, the TUG is a measure of overall functional mobility, assessing the ability to transfer, walk, and change direction.

Several studies documented reference ranges for the TUG in community-dwelling older adults.[61,79–81] Bohannon consolidated data from 21 studies for meta-analysis on the TUG reference values in people older than 60 years of age.[82] The mean TUG time for individuals at least 60 years of age was 9.4 (8.9–9.9) seconds. When the data were divided into three age subgroups, the mean for those 60 to 69 years was 8.1 seconds, for 70 to 79 years was 9.2 seconds, and for 80 to 99 years was 11.3 seconds. Several other studies documented the higher mean of the TUG values as age increased and for women compared to men.[80,81] Intrarater and interrater reliability of the TUG is excellent, and Intraclass Correlation Coefficients range between 0.97 and 0.99.[61] Although the TUG does not specifically assess WS, it assesses the more functional components of mobility and transfer from sit to stand.[83]

The TUG times increased when healthy older adults were tested using an assistive device.[84,85] Reference range for the TUG times in individuals who use assistive devices is not available. Higher TUG times are associated with functional impairment in individuals with arthritis, amputation, hip fracture, and Parkinson disease.[86–92]

The TUG dual task tests have the same basic instructions as the TUG, where the participant simultaneously perform another task, either cognitive (TUG cognitive) or manual (TUG manual). In the TUG cognitive, the participant is asked to complete the test while counting out loud or verbally counting backward by threes from a randomly selected number between 20 and 100.[93,94] Similar to the TUG, the TUG dual task was tested in healthy individuals as well as in individuals with varying diagnoses.[93–95]

Dynamic Gait Index

The DGI tests the ability of the participant to maintain walking balance while responding to different task demands, through various dynamic conditions. It is a useful test in individuals with vestibular and balance problems.[96] It includes eight items, walking on level surfaces, changing speeds, head turns in horizontal and vertical directions, walking and turning 180 degrees to stop, stepping over and around obstacles, and stair ascent and descent. Each item is scored on a scale of 0 to 3, with 3 indicating normal performance and 0 representing severe impairment. The best possible score on the DGI is a 24. Several studies demonstrated its high intrarater and interrater reliability in older adults and in different client populations.[97–99] A score of less than 19 indicates a risk for falling.[98]

A short form of the DGI includes only four items: walking on level surfaces, changing speeds, and head turns in

horizontal and vertical directions.[100] Anything less than the maximum score of 12 on the short form identified individuals with balance deficit and those who scored less than 10 were at risk for falls.[83]

The Modified Dynamic Gait Index (mDGI) expands the original eight-item DGI expanding the range of possible scores. In addition to DGI scoring, it scores the level of assistance (LOA), GP, and time for each of the eight items.[101] The test has four environmental dimensions as well: temporal, postural, terrain, and density. The total possible mDGI score is 64 points, which is the sum of the scores of the three facets of the test; 24 points for time, 16 points for LOA, and 24 points for GP. Similar to the DGI, the mDGI was tested on healthy older adults as well as on varying client populations.[101,102]

Functional Ambulation Classification

The FAC is a walking test that classifies subjects into six functional categories based on the need for personal assistance, regardless of the use of assistive device during walking tasks.[52] Holden and colleagues suggest that grouping subjects by motor ability or functional category is more important than grouping by other indicators of gait.[52] Six functional categories are defined in their system. A score of 0 indicates nonfunctional ambulation. Individuals who require significant and constant assistance of another person for support and balance receive a score of 1. A score of 2 indicates that light touch or intermittent physical assistance is required, and 3 means that the individual needs verbal cueing or occasional safety assistance. To be scored as a 4, the individual must be independent in ambulation on level surfaces, and a score of 5 means the individual is independent in ambulation on level and nonlevel surfaces, including stairs and inclines. Although the FAC is a general ambulation test, its scores showed a positive linear relationship with such variables as gait velocity, step length and the 6-minute walk test.[103,104]

The FAC has been used most extensively in the assessment of functional locomotion and as a rehabilitation outcome measure for individuals recovering from stroke.[105–109] In a Rausch analysis of discriminant validity of measures used to assess outcome of stroke rehabilitation intervention, however, Functional Independence Measure (FIM) motor scores and WS were better discriminators of outcome than FAC scores.[110] The FAC has also been helpful in assessing concurrent reliability of new mobility measures in stroke rehabilitation and portable instrumented pressure-sensitive monitors.[111]

Modified Gait Abnormality Rating Scale

Wolfson and colleagues developed the original GARS in an effort to quantify abnormal gait performance of frail institutionalized older adults and identify those most at risk of falling.[112] The scale has since been modified (GARS-M) by Van Swearingen and colleagues for use in community settings.[113]

The GARS-M is a shorter (7-item) version of the original 16-item GARS; the 11 items were removed for several reasons including redundancy, inconsistent visual rating among raters, and not being an effective discriminator between fallers and nonfallers.[113]

To test the GARS-M, the individual is videotaped while walking at a self-selected pace on a level surface of about 8-m, then turns and walks back to the starting point. The evaluator then examines the videotape and scores the individual on seven dimensions: variability, guardedness, staggering, foot contact, hip range of motion, shoulder extension, and synchrony of arm movement and heel strike. The measure uses a four-point criterion-based rating scale (0–3). Total GARS-M scores range from 0 to 21, with high scores indicating less efficient or safe performance. Gait variability is one of the unique measures of the GARS-M, which has been linked to increased fall risk in older adults and in individuals with varying neurological disorders.[113–115] Huang and colleagues documented the validity of the GARS-M by comparing its scores with those recorded on a computerized walkway.[116] Evidence of interrater and intrarater reliability, and concurrent validity (compared with temporal and distance parameters of gait) and discriminate validity (between fallers and nonfallers), have been reported.[113,117]

Choosing an Assessment Strategy

Gait can be assessed in a myriad of ways depending on the objective of the assessment. Observational gait analysis is invaluable in systematically identifying phase-specific gait deviations. Instrumented gait analysis on the other hand provides quantitative kinematic and kinetic information about joint movement and forces. Performance-based measures attempt to document and quantify how gait deficiencies affect the individuals' ability to meet mobility demands of their environment. Functional measures are useful in documenting current functional status, change over time, and response to interventions.

Clinical Examples of Gait Deficiencies: Impact of Functional Tasks During Gait

Case Examples 5.1 to 5.6 illustrate gait deficiencies associated with pathological conditions that commonly alter gait performance: pretibial flaccid paralysis, hemiplegia, cerebral palsy, and spina bifida. As might be expected, each example demonstrates common gait characteristics specific to the particular pathological condition while presenting variants from that profile. The discussion is based on information gathered by foot-switch stride and kinematic and observational gait analysis.

CLINICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF GAIT IN HEMIPLEGIA

For most individuals who are recovering from stroke—a CVA—improvement in the quality of gait is related to the natural history of the pathological process and the impact of gait retraining in rehabilitation. In the weeks immediately following a CVA, only 53% of individuals are able to ambulate independently after intensive rehabilitation training.[118] After weeks of rehabilitation, approximately 75% of

Case Example 5.1 A Patient With Flaccid Paralysis of Pretibial Muscles

J.J. is a 37-year-old man with inherited sensorimotor neuropathy (Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease) who has been referred to the gait assessment clinic for evaluation of his orthotic intervention. Examination of muscle function and strength reveals relatively symmetrical distal impairment. Manual muscle test scores include "trace" activity of dorsiflexion muscles bilaterally, "poor" plantar flexion on the left, and "fair+" plantar flexion on the right. Knee and hip strength is "normal."

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given J.J.'s pattern of weakness, what types of primary difficulties or deviations might you predict during the functional task of (1) weight acceptance (IC and LR), (2) SLS (MSt and TSt), and (3) swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)?
- Given J.J.'s pattern of weakness, what compensatory strategies (pathological gait deviations) might he use to accomplish these functional tasks of gait?
- What quantitative measures, indicators of energy cost, qualitative measures, or function-based assessments would you use to determine whether a change in orthoses would be warranted? Why would you select those measures?

EXAMINATION AND EVALUATION

During a foot-switch stride analysis, J.J. walks without his usual orthoses. In the trailing left limb, the posterior compartment fails to support the forefoot lever arm so that the tibia progresses forward with limited heel-off in late stance (Fig. 5.12). This creates excessive knee flexion and limits the step length of the contralateral limb. The net effect of this inadequate forefoot rocker is a reduction in velocity. Lack of support of the trailing forefoot allows depression of the center of gravity. At the same time, dorsiflexion weakness on the right creates early, abrupt plantar flexion (foot slap) with premature contact of the first metatarsal. The variance between plantar flexor strength of the left and right limbs is demonstrated by difference in SLS times. The stronger right calf participates in 39.8% (0.416 s) of the gait cycle, whereas the weaker left calf commits itself to only 31.4% (0.328 s). This subtle timing discrepancy in gait was not readily identifiable in observational analysis.

In right MSw, while the left foot is in a supporting posture, the classical steppage gait characteristics of a flail forefoot are observed: Compensatory swing clearance is accomplished through excessive hip and knee flexion (see Fig. 5.9B).

When J.J. wears his orthoses (a dorsiflexion assist thermoplastic AFO on the right and a dorsiflexion stop–plantar flexion resist thermoplastic AFO on the left), results of foot-switch temporal analysis are quite different. Velocity, cadence, and stride length increase slightly. The asymmetry between right and left SLS times decreases because the AFO provides external support of the trailing left limb. The energy-inefficient steppage gait and unsightly foot slap are diminished as well.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What specific problems do the examination and evaluation identify in each of the functional tasks of gait: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)?
- In what ways do J.J.'s orthoses address the functional problems observed when he walks without his orthoses in each of the functional tasks of the gait cycle: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)? In what ways do his orthoses potentially limit each of the functional tasks of gait? Do the benefits outweigh the limitations?

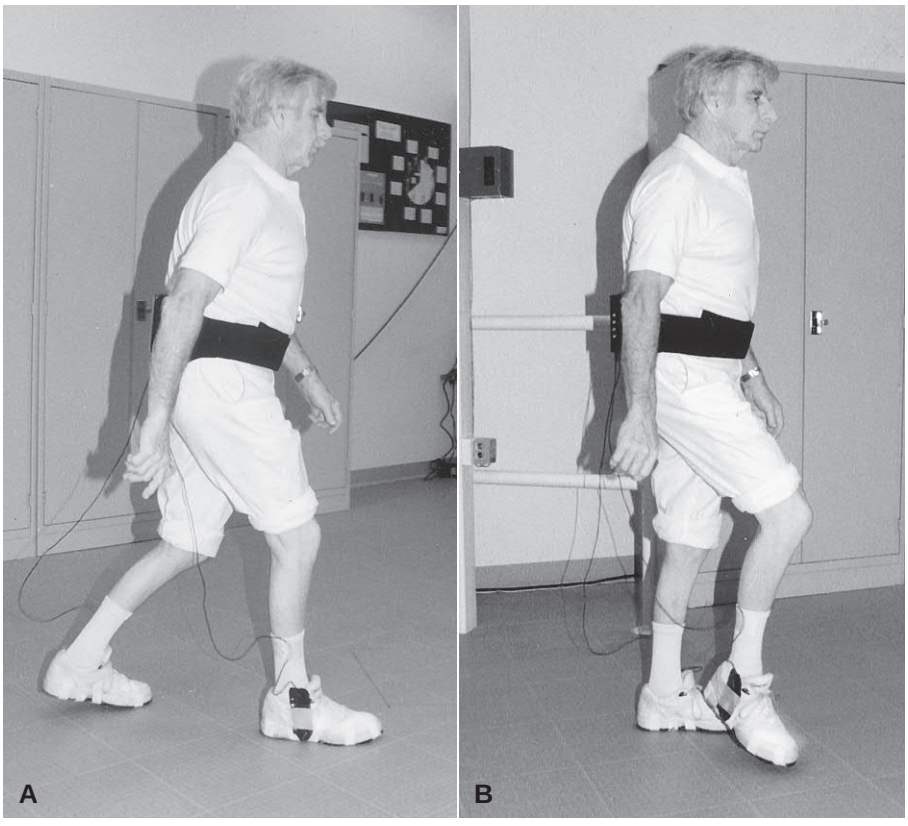


Fig. 5.12 A patient with Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease demonstrates shortened right stride length because of inadequate support at the foot and ankle in late stance of the left limb (A) and the use of a compensatory steppage gait to ensure swing clearance in the presence of dorsiflexion weakness (B).

individuals are able to walk without assistance, especially if using an assistive device, including AFOs and canes.[119] At the 6-month mark, more than 80% of individuals with a CVA are functionally independent in ambulation.[120]

The many variations of limb control observed during the gait of individuals who are recovering from a CVA can be explained by one or more of the following factors: primitive locomotor patterns, impaired postural responses, abnormal postural tone with various degrees of spasticity and rigidity, inappropriately timed muscle contractions, and diminished muscle strength. One of the primary determinants of gait dysfunction in post-CVA hemiplegia is whether the individual has some degree of selective control of specific muscles, rather than activation of abnormal synergy patterns (mass flexion or extension). Individuals with hemiplegia often have difficulty grading the magnitude of a particular muscle contraction with respect to other muscle contractions. Because of hyperactivity of muscle spindle/stretch reflex in the presence of spasticity, the ability to move toward dorsiflexion with forward progression of the tibia during stance may be counteracted by contraction of plantar flexors into a position of equinus. Spasticity, although difficult to measure, can be described for clinical purposes with the Modified Ashworth Spasticity Scale.[121] The baseline level 0 indicates no measurable tone. A designation of level 1, mild tone, is given when a muscle "catches" with an abrupt passive movement into flexion or extension. A level 2 designation indicates marked abnormal tone but flexible range of motion, and level 3 is characterized by pronounced tone and difficult passive movement. Level 4 denotes a limb that is held rigidly in either flexion or extension.

The orthotic goal for individuals with hypertonicity of the lower extremity after a CVA is to control ankle motion and preposition for tibial advancement. Two orthotic strategies are commonly used: (1) provision of an AFO with a locked ankle component set in slight dorsiflexion or (2) use of an articulated AFO that allows slight ankle motion around the neutral position. When ankle joint motion is limited or blocked by an orthosis, stability in stance improves; however, forward progression of the tibia is compromised, and step length is reduced. Modifications to the shoe, such as application of a rocker bottom sole or elevation of the heel, can compensate by mimicking the various rockers of gait, specifically the forefoot and toe rockers.[5]

Over the course of rehabilitation, the individual with hemiplegia often experiences changes in tone, joint flexibility, pain or discomfort, fear or confidence, motor strength or weakness, and quality of proprioception. Six stages of motor recovery in hemiplegia have been identified by Brunnstrom.[20] In the first stage, no voluntary movement of limbs is present. In the second, movement reappears but is limited by pronounced muscle weakness or spasticity, or both. The individual is usually not yet ready for functional ambulation. In the third stage, spasticity coexists with limb synergy motion. Typically, a mass extensor pattern is seen in the lower limb. As the individual continues to improve in the fourth stage, spasticity may be reduced as the individual begins to move out of stereotypical synergy patterns. In stage 5, selective control outside mass synergy patterns becomes more consistent and more functional. With recovery complete, in stage 6 the individual may achieve coordinated controlled movement. Because of the dynamic nature of the recovery process, the ability to adjust or alter orthotic alignment or characteristics is very desirable. It is not unusual that an orthosis prescribed early in rehabilitation becomes inappropriate or creates further gait dysfunction at a later stage. Once rehabilitation is complete and the individual has achieved stability in walking patterns, definitive biomechanical needs are identified, and the adjustability of the orthosis is less important.

The extension synergy pattern places the lower extremity in excessive extension at the hip and knee and the foot in equinovarus. This reduces the amount of knee flexion and dorsiflexion during swing, necessitating a compensatory strategy, such as circumduction, to provide swing phase clearance.[122] Rigidity of the ankle leaves the individual with inadequate dorsiflexion mobility, as well as vastly reduced plantar flexion excursion during PSw and early swing. Stance time is considerably reduced on the hemiplegic/paretic side, and the quadriceps, gastrocnemius, gluteus maximus, and semitendinous muscles are inappropriately active throughout stance.[123] Activity of lower limb muscle groups on the hemiplegic/paretic side is increased compared with normal patterns of muscle activation. Excessive hip flexion at MSt on the hemiplegic/paretic side shifts the GRF line anteriorly, producing a knee extension moment that interferes with forward progression. The hemiplegic/paretic side also displays less hip adduction in SLS, which compromises lateral shift toward the affected side.[124] Brandstater and Von Schroder describe reduced velocity, cadence, stride length, and SLS time on the affected side, with consequent increased SLS and reduced step length on the sound side.[53,125] The use of an appropriate AFO improves the quality of gait, increasing step length and stance time, as well as reducing swing time of the affected side, by correcting foot drop. Velocity of gait improves when the AFO is placed in slight dorsiflexion. When spasticity is not problematic, an AFO that permits some plantar flexion normalizes IC to LR timing and prevents an unstable knee flexion moment in early stance. Because knee extensor strength often equals or exceeds hip extensor strength after CVA, most individuals with hemiplegia can be effectively managed with an AFO rather than a knee-ankle-foot orthosis.[124] Muscle strengthening is less important in achieving improved walking characteristics in hemiplegia than is the retraining of normal movement patterns in gait.[126] Darekar and colleagues observed favorable effects related to the outcomes produced using virtual reality–based intervention with improving WS and the ability to deal with environmental challenges, which may ultimately facilitate independent community ambulation.[127]

CLINICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF GAIT IN SPASTIC DIPLEGIC CEREBRAL PALSY

Children with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy often have significant spasticity and marked weakness of the antigravity muscles in both lower extremities. This combination is a precursor of joint contracture. The clinical term often used to describe the typical gait of an individual with diplegia is *crouched gait*. In crouched gait, marked internal rotation of the femur and tibia occurs throughout the gait cycle, the knees remain in flexion throughout stance, and the

Case Example 5.2 **A Patient With Hemiplegia**

M.G. is a 67-year-old man referred to the gait laboratory for evaluation 13 months after a CVA damaged the sensorimotor cortex of the left hemisphere. Currently, he is a community ambulator (MGH functional ambulation classification level 6) who walks with the aid of an AFO and quad cane (FIM locomotion score 6). In the clinical examination, his spasticity becomes apparent when his ankle moves toward a neutral position (Ashworth spasticity scale level 3). The orthosis he received early in rehabilitation, and continues to use, is a traditional double upright, which locks his ankle in slight plantar flexion. Although this ankle angle delays tibial advancement and forward progression in stance, the individual has come to rely on its contribution to stability at proximal joints.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given M.G.'s pattern of spasticity and weakness, what types of primary difficulties or deviations might you predict when he is not wearing his orthosis during the functional task of weight acceptance (IC and LR)? Of SLS (MSt and TSt)? Of swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)?
- Given M.G.'s pattern of spasticity and weakness, what compensatory strategies (pathological gait deviations) might he use to accomplish these functional tasks of gait?
- What additional quantitative measures, indicators of energy cost, qualitative measures, or function-based assessments would you use to determine if a change in orthosis would be warranted? Why would you select those measures?

EXAMINATION AND EVALUATION

M.G.'s gait with the AFO is evaluated by foot-switch testing. Extensor synergy patterns contribute to function by providing a degree of stability in stance but also reduce efficiency of gait by limiting normal stance progression beginning with the first rocker period (Fig. 5.13). Duration heel-only time of the first rocker (IC to the foot-flat position at the end of LR) is approximately one-sixth of a second on the hemiplegic side, which is significantly less than normal heel-only time. Heel-only time on the intact side is roughly three times greater than that on the hemiplegic side. Forward progression during MSt is halted at the second rocker when spasticity prevents the necessary dorsiflexion of the ankle (see Fig. 5.10). As M.G. moves into TSt, when metatarsophalangeal break (concurrent with heel-off) should allow progression onto the forefoot, the third rocker is also relatively blocked. This lack of mobility of the metatarsophalangeal joints and inadequate third rocker result in a loss of knee flexion necessary for an effective PSw, for which the individual is unable to compensate. Of the 60 degrees of knee flexion necessary for the swing phase clearance, 35 degrees should be achieved passively during PSw. For individuals with hemiplegia, the loss of this positional flexion is an additional challenge to clearance beyond that produced by the equinus position of the ankle. Any attempts to compensate by "hip hiking" are likely to be inefficient and unsuccessful. These rocker limitations reduce step length of the sound side, leading to premature double limb support. The corresponding MSw knee flexion on the hemiplegic side is also reduced. MG demonstrates a much-reduced stance time on the affected side (62% gait cycle) versus the sound side (71% gait cycle) and a reduced SLS time on the affected side (28% gait cycle) versus the sound side (38% gait cycle).

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What specific problems has the examination and evaluation identified in each of the functional tasks of gait: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)? How do these problems relate to his abnormal tone and motor control?
- In what ways does M.G.'s orthosis address or constrain each of the functional tasks of the gait cycle: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)?

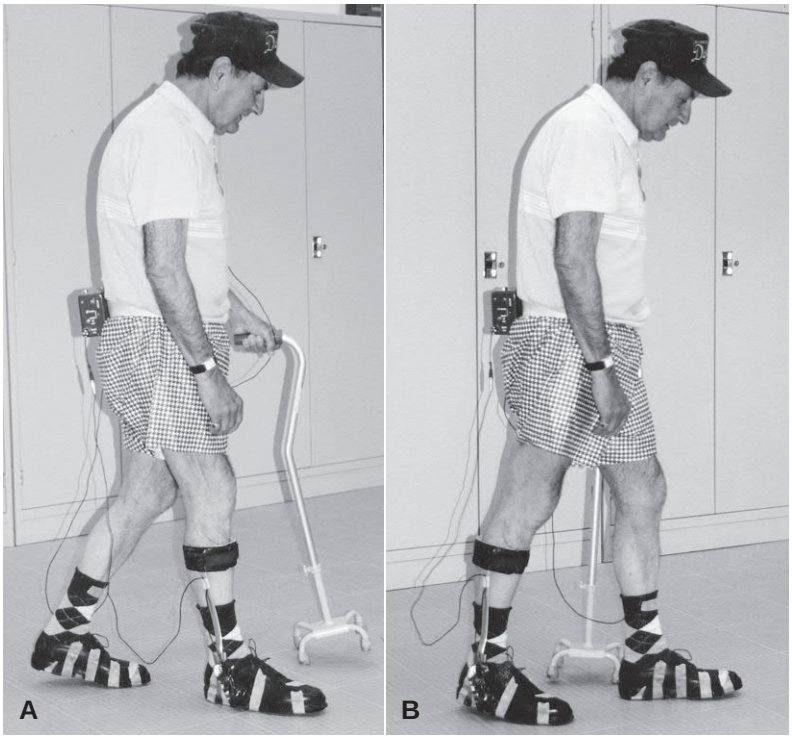


Fig. 5.13 A patient with hemiplegia after cerebral vascular accident, the first rocker from initial contact to foot flat (A) is abrupt as a result of extensor patterns and limb rigidity. Extensor pattern at the ankle (B) translates into a failure to yield into dorsiflexion toward the end of the second rocker. Third rocker heel elevation will also be reduced, and lack of mobility reduces the step length of the contralateral limb.

ankles remain in plantar flexion during stance (toe walking) and swing. Steele and colleagues concur that efficiency of flexed knee gait is not optimal; however, kinematics alone may not be the single most important indicator of increased energy consumption, although energy cost does increase with flexed knee gait.[128] The pathological combination of an equinus ankle, positive Trendelenburg hip, and stiff knee gait often produces various combinations of compensatory hiking of the pelvis, external rotation of the foot, and circumduction of the swing limb. This pattern has been attributed to tightness and overactivity of the distal hamstrings, alone or in combination with the hip flexors.[129,130]

Some individuals with diplegia ambulate with a *jump gait* pattern, using somewhat less hip and knee flexion than do individuals with crouch gait but with excessive ankle dorsiflexion rather than plantar flexion.[131] Jump gait is often a postoperative manifestation of bilateral Achilles tendon lengthening without concurrent release of hip and knee contractures. Common compensatory strategies in jump gait include vaulting and circumduction. In crouch and jump gait, the GRF line falls progressively behind the knee joint center during SLS of the stance phase. This creates an excessive demand on the quadriceps for stance phase stability. One surgical strategy used to correct jump gait combines hip flexion releases, hip flexion release lengthening of the distal hamstrings, and correction of external rotation. Postoperatively, the individual is fitted for floor reaction AFOs.[132] Ideally, the Achilles tendon is lengthened to neutral dorsiflexion position and the individual is protected in AFOs for 1 year postoperatively.

The *scissoring* pattern, which is also a common gait deviation in children with diplegia, is aggravated by spastic hip flexors and adductors because the smaller base of support reduces the efficiency of their line of pull. Orthotic solutions provide limited assistance in limb tracking and rotational control. Those that attempt to control rotation must cross the hip joint, adding significant weight and bulk and increasing difficulty in donning and doffing.

Case Example 5.3 **A Patient With Spastic Diplegic Cerebral Palsy**

K.E. is a 10-year-old boy with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy who has been referred to the gait laboratory for evaluation to assist his orthopedist in deciding whether corrective surgery is indicated. The boy currently ambulates independently, without assistive devices, wearing bilateral solid ankle AFOs (WeeFIM locomotion score of 6).

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given K.E.'s pattern of spasticity and weakness, what types of primary difficulties or deviations might you predict when he is not wearing his orthoses during the functional task of weight acceptance (IC and LR)? Of SLS (MSt and TSt)? Of swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)?
- Given K.E.'s pattern of spasticity and weakness, what compensatory strategies (pathological gait deviations) might he use to accomplish these functional tasks of gait?
- What additional quantitative measures, indicators of energy cost, qualitative measures, or function-based assessments might help determine whether surgical orthopedic intervention is warranted? Why would you select those measures?

EXAMINATION AND EVALUATION

K.E. is fitted with reflective markers for three-dimensional motion analysis of this gait. A typical crouch gait pattern (GP) is observed during observational gait analysis while his gait is being recorded for more detailed kinematic and kinetic analysis by computer software. Foot-switch analysis confirms diminished heel contact with no heel-only time on the left and no heel contact at all on the right.

Clinical examination of K.E.'s lower extremity function reveals a combination of overactive hamstrings and weak gastrocnemius and soleus muscles (Fig. 5.14). The flexion of hips and knees increases the need for proximal stabilization, resulting in compensatory hyperextension of the trunk and posterior arm placement (see Fig. 5.11B). Because the ankles are held in equinus, the final rocker propels tibial advancement despite limitation in ankle mobility. K.E. spends most of the stance phase in TSt and PSw; consequently, double limb support time is vastly increased.

K.E. has not had previous surgical release of his gastrocnemius muscles. Even with surgery, impairment of motor control may continue to be problematic so that dorsiflexion may not work in concert with the knee flexion to provide a heel-toe GP. Gastrocnemius release without concurrent release of the hip and knee contractures usually leads to short step lengths with a compensatory increase in cadence. Spastic hip flexors, also serving as adductors, create a mild scissors effect during each swing limb advancement. Ambulation with bilateral AFOs, which the client prefers, increases step length and reduces knee flexion compared with ambulation with no orthosis.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What specific problems does the examination and evaluation identify in each of the functional tasks of gait: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)? How do these problems relate to K.E.'s abnormal tone and motor control?
- In what ways do K.E.'s orthoses address or constrain each of the functional tasks of the gait cycle: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)? What is the interaction of his abnormal tone and impaired motor control with his orthoses on the efficacy and energy cost of his walking?

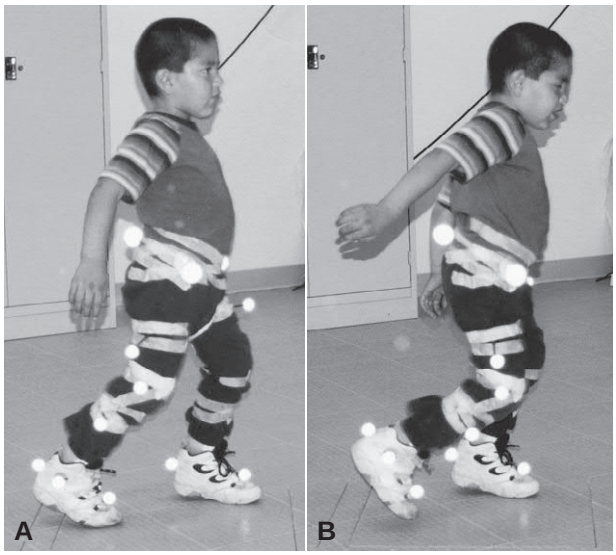


Fig. 5.14 A child with spastic diplegia, classic crouch gait (A) is characterized by increased hip and knee flexion in combination with toe walking. Postural substitutions in crouch gait (B) may include increased lumbar lordosis, trunk extension, and posterior arm placement.

CLINICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF GAIT IN CHILDREN WITH SPINA BIFIDA

Spina bifida (myelomeningocele) occurs when vertebral arches fail to unite very early in gestation. Clinically, this leads to partial or complete paralysis at or below the level involved. The most common impairment is a flaccid paralysis, with loss of proprioception and exteroception (pain, temperature sensation, light touch, and pressure sensation). Many children with spina bifida have significant ambulatory deficiencies; more than 50% require an orthosis of some kind to ambulate.[133] Assessment for orthotic support begins as soon as the child attempts to gain an erect posture.

Severity of gait dysfunction depends on the level of involvement of the spinal cord. When the L-5 and S-1 nerve roots are affected, the gluteus maximus, hip abductors, and triceps surae are lost; the hamstrings are present but weak; and sensory loss is limited to the plantar surface of the feet. The plantar flexor deficit requires setting limits to dorsiflexion range of motion through orthotic joint control. This limitation of dorsiflexion allows the individual to establish hip stability through hip extension accomplished with exaggerated trunk lordosis. Without it, the individual would fall forward unopposed. Lateral stability is achieved through crutches and a wide walking base.

When the L-3 and L-4 root nerves are affected, hamstring function, hip extension, knee flexion, plantar flexion, and dorsiflexion are completely lost. The resulting foot drop cannot be adequately compensated for in swing by hip and knee flexion. Hip flexion, adduction, and knee extension are intact but may be weak. At the L-3 level, weak knee flexion from the gracilis may also be present. These children benefit early from standing frames; later, they often are able to ambulate with orthotic assistance. Adequate stabilization of the foot and ankle is achieved through orthotic application of a locked ankle in neutral or slight dorsiflexion. Trunk lordosis is a compensatory strategy used to stabilize the hip during stance. The muscular imbalance at the hip increases the likelihood of flexion contracture, which in turn amplifies the need for even more compensatory lordosis. Extreme hip flexion contracture may ultimately preclude ambulation. If contractures at the hip, knee, and ankle are minimal and the child gains trunk control, he or she will be able to stand erect but will rely on trunk alignment for static balance and forearm crutches for further stability.

A child with lesions that involve L-1 and L-2 levels has little lower limb function other than weak hip flexors. Such children often begin upright function with a parapodium or swivel walker and can later progress to reciprocal gait orthoses. The swing-through gait with bilateral hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis has been shown to be less efficient than a reciprocal gait orthosis for thoracic level spinal bifida.[134]

Gait Patterns in Individuals With Amputation

Qualitative observational gait analysis is a broadly accepted approach to achieving a clinically optimal gait in individuals with amputation. Instrumented gait analysis provides a more repeatable accurate assessment of prosthetic function. In its broadest scope, the data derived increasingly serve as foundation guidelines for both prosthetic design and clinical application. The daily practice of assessment and management of prosthetic gait, however, depends on the subjective skills of the prosthetist and the targeted treatment protocol of the therapist.

Case Example 5.4 **A Child With Spina Bifida**

N.P. is an active 9-year-old boy with myelomeningocele at L-5 who returns to the gait laboratory as part of an ongoing research study to document changes in gait characteristics over time. He currently ambulates wearing bilateral AFOs set in a neutral ankle position, using Loftstrand crutches in a four-point reciprocal GP.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given N.P.'s pattern of weakness and sensory loss, what types of primary difficulties or deviations might you predict when he is not wearing his orthoses, during the functional task of weight acceptance (IC and LR)? Of SLS (MSt and TSt)? Of swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)?
- Given N.P.'s pattern of weakness and sensory loss, what compensatory strategies (pathological gait deviations) might he use to accomplish these functional tasks of gait?
- What additional quantitative measures, indicators of energy cost, qualitative measures, or function-based assessments might help determine if surgical orthopedic intervention is warranted? Why would you select those measures?

EXAMINATION AND EVALUATION

Comparative foot-switch testing reveals that, without crutches, stride length and velocity are reduced. External rotation of both limbs is present throughout the gait cycle (Fig. 5.15). With or without crutches, he has no measurable fifth metatarsal or toe contact on either limb in his typical stance phase weight-bearing patterns. Passive external rotation is present at the hip as well as abducted limb placement as he advances over the forefoot. His abducted limb placement and wide-based gait provide increased stability at a cost of excessive loading on the posteromedial aspect of the feet (see Fig. 5.12B). Like many children with spina bifida, he spends excessive time in heel contact, largely to the exclusion of lateral forefoot weight bearing. This loading and shear pattern often leads to callusing and eventual neuropathic breakdown in adult life. His fastest gait velocity (55 m/min) is approximately 60% of normal free-gait velocity. During swing phase, external rotation of the limb is marked. The flail foot is held in slight dorsiflexion during TSw through the support of the AFO.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What specific problems does the examination and evaluation identify in each of the functional tasks of gait: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)? How do these problems relate to N.P.'s flaccid paralysis and sensory impairment?
- In what ways do N.P.'s orthoses address or constrain each of the functional tasks of the gait cycle: weight acceptance (IC and LR), SLS (MSt and TSt), and swing limb advancement (PSw, ISw, MSw, and TSw)? What is the interaction of his flaccidity and sensory with his orthoses on the efficacy and energy cost of his walking?

Case Example 5.4 **A Child With Spina Bifida (Continued)**

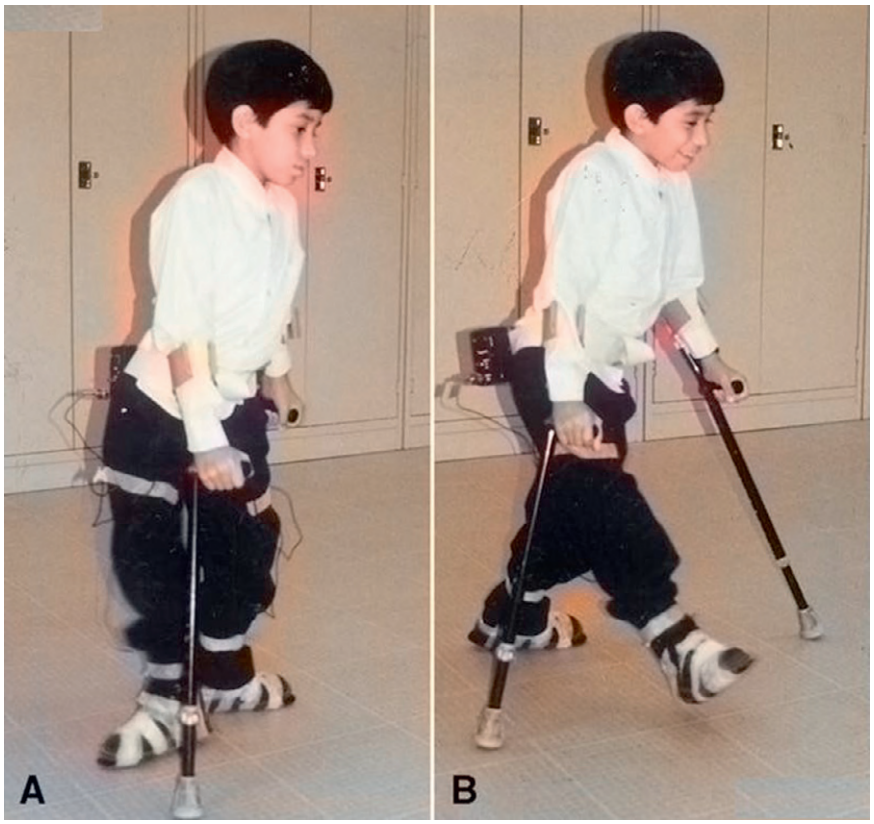


Fig. 5.15 In this child with myelomeningocele, weakness at the hip results in external rotation of the limbs in both stance and swing phase (A), which contributes to altered forward progression from the heel to the medial forefoot, with minimal weight bearing on the lateral foot (B).

The University of California at Berkeley prosthetic project, which began in the mid-1950s, represented the most concentrated period of prosthetic advancement. The comprehensive basic gait studies and their application to the biomechanics of amputee gait for transtibial and transfemoral amputations established fundamental design criteria.[135] Contributions of subsequent investigators continue to be largely based on the Berkeley criteria.

Extensive calculations and interpretations were required to relate normal and prosthetic gait data to the problems of prosthetic design. Data reduction was a slow process before relatively recent technological advancements because all motion measurements had to be performed by hand. There were no automated film analyzers to identify the motion patterns and no computers to perform rapid data processing. Therefore, the number of subjects studied was limited. The project also had the additional depth of considering all three planes of motion, in contrast to prior studies that analyzed only the sagittal plane of gait progression.[47,136] Subsequent investigators, with the aid of more advanced instrumentation, have replicated, expanded, and reconfirmed the validity of the Eberhart-Inman work and have not found it in error.

TRANSTIBIAL PROSTHETIC GAIT

In 1957 the Berkeley project was specifically commissioned to reconsider transtibial prosthetic gait and biomechanics; with that goal, an advisory conference was held.[137] Basic transtibial prostheses at that time were attached to the limb with a thigh lacer that included articulated knee joints and a foot with an articulated ankle. Detailed review of the normal and transtibial amputee-gait data resulted in a totally new approach that led to two developments: the patellar tendon-bearing (PTB) prosthesis and the solid-ankle, cushion heel foot.[138–140] The improved transtibial socket was a PTB design that closely followed the contours of the proximal tibia.[141] The PTB prosthesis replaced the thigh lacer with supracondylar fixation, again with the advantage of anatomical contour and total contact.

Studies of Transtibial Prosthetic Gait

Most studies of individuals with transtibial amputation, instrumented and noninstrumented, have focused on foot design, with the general exclusion of alignment. In more recent years, an increase in studies focusing one prosthetic alignment, specifically the impact of the alignment of the socket to the foot and the associated energy cost, have evolved in number and depth of meaning and implication for the overall well-being of the client.

Prosthetic foot designers attempt to passively reproduce, by material quality and design, the normal dynamic functional balance between mobility and stability provided by the anatomical foot. The greatest difference is between the relatively rigid compressible heel–type feet and the mobile hinge of the single-axis foot.[142] Optimization of prosthetic foot stiffness has been studied in relation to the associated metabolic costs in

unilateral transtibial amputee walking. For people navigating the challenges of a unilateral amputation, the development of gait abnormalities and compensations, as well as elevated metabolic cost, is unavoidable. Therefore, studies modeling the variable impact of foot stiffness on metabolic cost is an integral part to optimization the prosthetic device. Modeling analyses showed optimization in foot stiffness through stiffening the toe and forefoot while making the heel and ankle less stiff. The optimization improved prosthetic foot performance by offloading the sound side knee during early to MSt decreasing the metabolic cost.[143] Motion analysis has shown that the articulated ankle improves weight acceptance stability by providing significant plantar flexion, allowing an earlier foot flat posture; however, the arc of knee flexion and the timing and intensity of the quadriceps do not differ from that of the compressible heel–type foot.[144,145]

Kendell and colleagues identified six factors that that can be related to dynamic stability in lower limb prosthesis users: shifts in anterior-posterior center of pressure, shifts in mediolateral center of pressure, cell triggering, maximum lateral force placement, stride time, and double support time. These parameters influenced the adoption of GPs which facilitated forward progression without compromising the location of the center of pressure in either direction.[146] Stance phase limb progression is enhanced by an articulating ankle in two ways. In footswitch analysis, the mobile ankle had a longer period of single limb stance time, whereas total stance time was shorter compared with solid-ankle designs.[145] In addition, there was more prolonged hamstring action with the compressible heel foot; this implies that a forward lean was used to improve progression over the less yielding foot. These functional advantages of a mobile prosthetic foot would be significant in a marginal walker, but the heaviness of a single-axis foot creates an energy-cost penalty that also must be considered. The relationship between the body, specifically the musculature of the limb involved with controlling a prosthetic device, and the device and its respective components work in synergy to provide body support, forward propulsion, limb-swing initiation, and mediolateral balance impacts the metabolic costs required.

Beginning in the 1980s, the use of elastic materials and designs has been increasingly applied to prosthetic feet. The initial objective was to facilitate running because the presence of normal knee control gives the individual with transtibial amputation considerable functional potential.[147] Foot designs all emphasize controlled dorsiflexion mobility for greater push-off. It has been assumed that these dynamic, elastic prosthetic feet would be advantageous for the average walker by reducing the greater-than-normal energy cost currently experienced by individuals with amputation.[148] The most mobile designs, in terms of dorsiflexion range, are those with a long-bladed shaft such as the Flexfoot and Springlite. These bladed shaft designs have not lessened the muscular demands of weight acceptance. Their simulated "ankle plantar flexion" during limb loading is no better than the solid-ankle, cushion-heel foot. Both result in a plantar flexion that is markedly less than the normal controlled, yet rapid, ankle plantar flexion of 12 degrees used to reduce the propulsive effect of the heel rocker by allowing early forefoot contact. Both prosthetic feet cause a significant delay in attaining the stability of foot flat.[149] One modeling study demonstrated that the prosthesis as a whole provided body support in the absence of ankle muscles, braking from early to late MSt, decreasing the body's need to provide compensation for missing anatomy, and propulsion in late stance decreasing the energy recruitment needed. GRF and the associated muscle recruitment and activation identified the ability of the prosthesis to transfer energy from the residual limb to the trunk implying greater overall propulsion of the trunk, furthering the idea more effectively with ESAR feet over solid ankle cushion heel feet. Relieving the body in part by decreasing the musculoskeletal deficit as well as lessening the metabolic burdens influences the perceived quality and the functional quality in the design of the prosthesis.[150] Finite element analysis (FEA) has been used most recently to investigate the implications of ESAR feet without the cofounding factors of gait deviations. FEA modeling standardized the mechanical characteristics of ESAR feet through simulation. The FEA demonstrations showed impressive consistencies with older data surrounding the relationship between stiffness and energy stored and returned to the user.[151]

The intact limb uses a modest arc (15–20 degrees) of knee flexion to absorb the shock of contact with the floor,[5] whereas prosthetic feet rely on a cushion heel. The time needed for adequate cushion compression delays the drop of the forefoot to the floor. This perpetuates an unsteady, heel-only source of support that requires increased active muscular control of the knee and hip to ensure weight-bearing stability. This subtle source of instability is obscured by two findings. The stiffness of the foot, in particular the heel, can contribute to increased prosthesis range of motion, increase energy storage in early-stance and energy return in late-stance; however, the decrease in propulsion and swing initiation as a result increases the net metabolic requirements for additional muscle activation and body support maintenance. In addition, the mechanical efficiency of the device is influenced by the adjustment of the stiffness of the device.[152] In addition, heel cushion compression delays the rate of initial tibial advancement, resulting in reduced weight acceptance knee flexion for the transtibial amputee compared to normal. This difference is reflected in calculations of subnormal moments and powers.[153,154] These findings have been interpreted as a sign of reduced muscle demand, and a corresponding conservation of energy has been attributed to the development and implementation of dynamic ESAR feet. Direct EMG recordings, however, showed significantly higher than normal muscle demand for five different feet tested.[155,156]

Transtibial Alignment

The positional relationship between the socket and prosthetic foot is critical to achieve optimal progression in stance, yet also highly subjective. The goal is to promote tibial progression in stance and place the knee in a stable (minimally flexed) weight-bearing posture without causing hyperextension in late stance and encourage the lower limb to follow a normal path of motion in swing.

Static or "bench" alignment uses the subcutaneous crest of tibia (tibial blade) to establish alignment of the residual limb within the prosthesis. In the sagittal plane, this landmark, at its origin at the tibial tubercle, is typically angled approximately 5 degrees forward of the perpendicular to the tibial plateau that serves as the supporting surface for the knee joint. Hence, if the socket is aligned by the tibial

blade, the socket is set so that the tibia is tilted slightly forward to avoid a backward thrust during stance. This angular posture of the prosthetic socket, in conjunction with a deliberate anterior displacement (translation) of the socket relative to the foot, generally succeeds in encouraging tibial progression.

Even with this alignment, the individual with dysvascular transtibial amputation who typically exhibits some degree of weakness will shift the weight line anterior to the knee by simply leaning forward during LR in a postural movement akin to a quad avoidance gait. This results in reduced knee flexion throughout stance phase and delayed flexion in swing (Fig. 5.16). A hesitation of stance progression (the MSt dead spot) is a common phenomenon. A delay in the rollover pattern, common to the dysvascular transtibial amputee, is reflected in the shear pattern (see Fig. 5.16B).

Final positioning of the socket-foot relation is determined by observational analysis of the subject's gait and feedback from the prosthesis user. This process, referred to as *dynamic alignment*, examines smoothness of the rollover pattern and medial-lateral verticality of the foot, avoiding both extremes of inversion or eversion during progression. The absence of abnormal motions in swing such as a whip, compensatory motions to avoid scuffing the foot in swing (e.g., degree of pelvic elevation or vaulting), and an erect trunk posture are additional observational criteria used for assessment. Comfort and ease of walking are criteria of the individual

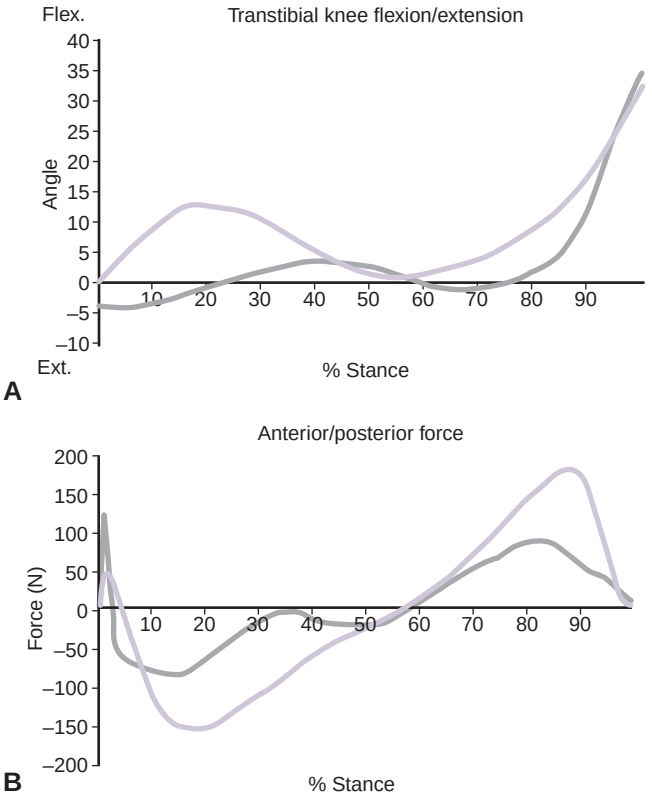


Fig. 5.16 (A) Patients with dysvascular transtibial amputation typically shift the weight line anterior to the knee early in stance, which results in reduced knee flexion throughout stance phase and delayed flexion in swing. (B) Patients with dysvascular transtibial amputation typically shift the weight line anterior to the knee early in stance, which results in typical midstance hesitation in the progression of rollover, reflected in the shear pattern. (Courtesy of VA Long Beach Gait Laboratory.)

with amputation. A study completed on individuals with transtibial amputation evaluated whether or not the client could perceive and effectively communicate feedback regarding induced perturbations to the prosthesis alignment. The data reported that subjects were able to communicate the extreme malalignments and demonstrated the ability to unknowingly shift loading and balance to compensate for smaller perturbations. Data analysis revealed that coronal adjustments were more noticeable to the subjects than sagittal or transverse adjustments and the data did not indicate whether or not the perception had anything to do with residual limb tissue volume or not. Overall, coronal translation and angulation alignment changes were perceived more often than sagittal alignment changes; however the subjects were not able to detect small changes in alignment that could be clinically significant.[157] Socket alignment changes and disruptions can be compensated for through balance and center of mass adjustments, as well as compensatory gait motions; however, the effects of malalignments on the kinetics and kinematics should not be ignored. Malalignments of the socket have been shown to propagate statistically significant changes in the socket reaction moments experienced in persons with transtibial amputations. Coronal perturbations caused significant changes in socket reaction moments at 30% and 75% of stance while sagittal perturbations triggered significant changes at 45% of stance phase.[158]

In optimizing the alignment in the coronal plane, there is an attempt to mimic the slight varus moment seen at the knee during MSt of normal human locomotion. This moment is usually achieved by a slight medial inset of the prosthetic foot relative to the socket, taking advantage of the tolerant weight-bearing areas in the proximal-medial and distal-distal regions of the residual limb where pressure is well tolerated. Inadequate inset of the foot, or worse, outset of the foot will generally result in excessive pressure on the very superficial cut end of the tibia (medial-distal) and the perineal nerve and bony prominence of the head of the fibula (lateral-proximal). Alignment affects the transmission of forces and moments from the limb through the prosthesis as well as from the ground up through prosthesis and ultimately to the limb; however, the relationship between alignment and the generation of reaction moments is not well established or implemented into the alignment process. The kinematic assessment is predominantly completed through observational gait analysis and client feedback. One study looked at the implications of a methodical alignment of the coronal plane first followed by the sagittal plane to study the associated socket reaction moments and observed gait deviations. The data revealed sagittal plane alignment (and malalignment) significantly affected coronal reaction moments in early stance while coronal plane alignments (and malalignments) did not produce significant sagittal reaction moments. This study concluded that implementing a systematic alignment approach would positively influence the reproducibility and consistency of the alignment process, with the recommendation to complete sagittal plane alignment first without concern that subsequent coronal plane alignment might alter or negate the prior adjustments.[159] Although observational analysis is appropriate for general clinical care, the alignment of individuals with amputation with complex fitting problems is best resolved through objective confirmation with force plate and motion data.

Initial Contact and Loading Response

Prosthetic control and success is achieved through several individual attributes as well as the interaction between them. The fit of the prosthetic socket, the alignment of the prosthesis, the prosthetic component choices utilized, and the contributions of the prosthetic user in the patterns of gait. Gait assessment for individuals with transtibial amputations must be critically assessed with these areas in mind, as well as the interdependent symbiotic relationships thereof.

Prior to early stance, the prosthetic foot swings through in anticipation of heel-first contact. As the prosthetic foot approaches contact with the floor the ball of the prosthetic foot is intended to be no more than an inch and a half above the ground's surface. Complications can arise if the prosthetic heel is not the primary aspect to come in contact with the ground; if the clients stride lengths are too long as a result of poor gait habit, if the suspension of the prosthesis is too tight not allowing full extension of the knee, or if the socket exhibits excess flexion restraining the knee from full extension, an inappropriately positioned foot at IC may result.[160] One case study found significant improvement in observed gait, mobility potential, and overall range of motion of the knee following multidisciplinary therapeutic approach. The Amputee Mobility Predictor increased from a score of 5 to 29, center of pressure data improved, passive range of motion steadily increased, activity level assessment revealed progression from K0 initially to K3 at the end of the study, and overall ambulation function improved.[161]

During IC, normal gait boasts 5 to 10 degrees of knee flexion on average.[162] Transtibial gait assessments strives to evaluate the achievement of similar metrics. Knee flexion in stance may be absent at times when full extension or excess flexion of the knee are observed. Full extension of the knee at IC can be a result of suspension issues, poor flexion alignment of the socket, or the relative alignment of the foot in relation to the socket may be inappropriate. Excess knee flexion at IC is measured as flexion greater than 10 degrees and can be produced by deficient suspension or a flexion contracture at the knee.[162] Kim and colleagues found that excess knee flexion negatively impacts gait ability, quality of life, and the potential eligibility for newer prosthetic technology.[161]

The spatial measurement of stride length in able-bodied gait reveals nearly equal lengths. In transtibial gait kinematics equal stride lengths are desired; however, unequal stride lengths can result from faulty defective suspension or poor gait habits.[160,162] One study by Sinitski and colleagues looked at the spatial characteristics of transtibial subjects in varied walking environments. The subjects adjusted their stride length and stride time to maintain stability in unfamiliar conditions; when walking on a self-paced treadmill, participants consequently adjusted their WS and walking strategy, in climbing a moderate slope compared with level walking. Stride length and stride time subsequently effect WS and ultimately metabolic cost, the spatial parameters of gait are important to monitor and control throughout the gait cycle.[163]

Viewed in the sagittal plane, the desired characteristics of LR include smooth controlled knee flexion and minimal vertical movement or piston action of the limb-socket relationship. Erratic, abrupt, uncontrolled, or delayed knee flexion can be detected when gait is viewed laterally. Erratic flexion of the knee may result from weak musculature.[160,162] Abrupt and uncontrolled knee flexion may arise from malalignment of anteroposterior positioning of the foot in relation to the socket, deficient alignment of the dorsi-plantarflexion positioning of the foot relative to the socket, if the heel of the prosthetic foot is excessively stiff or firm, or if the shoe does not house the prosthetic foot in a way that allows the needed movement and support.[160,162]

Occasionally, clients can display an extended knee with delayed progression through LR, sometimes described as "riding the heel" or continual pressure felt on the anterior distal aspect of the tibia. This presentation can be a product of malalignment of anteroposterior positioning of the prosthetic foot relative to the socket, inappropriate prosthetic foot selection, unsatisfactory socket flexion, or from a client who markedly utilizes the knee extensors.[160,162]

Knee control during gait is critical in the prevention of falls. Schafer and colleagues conducted a study of the impact of personalized training regimens on the rate of falls, as well as associated gait biomechanics.[164] This study concluded that subjects who received the personalized training plans had a significant reduction of falls over the 1-year study period compared with average annual fall rates. In addition, gait speeds increased from baseline, indicating potential impact of exercise interventions on gait kinematics.

Pistoning is described as the motion between the limb and the socket, which mimics the motion of a piston in the cylinder of an internal combustion engine. Piston action is produced in LR due to insufficient suspension, which allows the limb to slip vertically in relation to the socket as when weight is borne down through the limb. In addition, if the fit of the prosthesis does not maintain appropriate suspension, pistoning may also result.[160,162]

Midstance

At MSt, relative component alignment, alignment of the prosthesis relative to the body, and alignment of the body in space are observed to qualify gait parameters as well as the function of the device. Coronal plane observation yields superior views of MSt gait.

At MSt, the verticality of the pylon or shank of the prosthesis is evaluated. A pylon that leans medially can be produced by excess adduction in the alignment of the socket, or a prosthetic foot that is outset excessively. Alternatively, a pylon which leans laterally is produced by either a socket aligned in insufficient adduction, or a prosthetic foot that is unduly inset. Consequently, with a vertical pylon, the sole of the shoe (and the prosthetic foot) should be completely in contact with the ground at MSt. Commonly, a nonvertical pylon will be accompanied by a shoe that is not completely seated on the ground surface.[160,162] A device that is not optimally aligned, particularly at MSt when the maximum weight is born on the residual limb, implies the magnitude and means of weight transfer to the residual limb is directly impacted. One study looked at how the alignment of transtibial prosthetic devices influences the socket reaction moment impulse. Data showed alignment changes indicate significant alterations in the magnitude of the moment as well as the stance duration time, both of which may impact gait speed, metabolic cost, and long-term health of the residual and contralateral limbs.[165]

Width of the walking base is viewed in the coronal plane. The walking base is anticipated to be a minimum of 2 inches and a maximum of 4 inches when measured between the medial aspect of the heels as the foot passes the stance foot. A walking base that is less than the target minimum is said

to have a narrow walking base and is typically a result of the prosthetic foot being excessively inset relative to the socket alignment.[160] If the walking base exceeds the target maximum, it is described as a wide walking base and is commonly a result of the foot being too outset in relation to the socket. Additional causes may include poor gait habit, improper length of prosthesis, or an undetected hip pathology.[160,162] Aside from the biomechanical implications that a wide walking base can have there are additional interconnected costs that can be derived and from the width of a client's walking base. In a study conducted by Weinert-Aplin and colleagues, the relationship between center of mass motion in all three directions of motion, base of support and WS, and the metabolic cost of walking in both able-bodied individuals and different levels of lower limb amputee was considered. This investigation revealed that base of support and mediolateral center of mass displacement were the strongest correlates to metabolic cost and the positive correlations suggest increased mediolateral center of mass displacement or base of support will reduce walking efficiency.[37] Metabolic efficiency is a key consideration during all phases of gait, but is of particular interest during the stance phase of gait as the kinematics and kinetics directly contribute to the efficacy and acceptance of the device through associated quality-of-life implications.[166]

In normal human locomotion a varus moment at the knee is present at MSt as a result of the orientation of the GRF in relation to the knee. The GRF is present in nonabled bodied gait as well; however, the addition of the prothesis presents additional challenges and variables. At MSt, lateral displacement of the socket up to half an inch is an indication that the GRF is appropriately interacting with and influencing the body producing the desired varus moment at the knee. Lateral displacement exceeding half an inch indicates an excess varus moment at the knee. Excess lateral displacement can be produced by the prosthetic foot being disproportionately inset or the mediolateral dimension of the socket being too large.[160,162] Kobayashi and colleagues concluded that the varus moment impulse is a potential indicator of gait instability at MSt.[165] In contrast, if no displacement or medial displacement of the socket is observed at MSt, the desired varus moment at the knee is lacking and reveals the inappropriate or insufficient interaction between the GRF and the body. Medial displacement of the socket at MSt may result from a prosthetic foot that is extremely outset relative to the socket, pain on the residuum, a very short residuum, or an undetected knee pathology.[160] In addition, varus moment impulse is related the presence and magnitude of lateral trunk bending during stance on the prosthetic side.[165]

Lateral bending of the trunk toward the prosthetic side at MSt, displacing the head more than 1 inch, is an indication of the presence of complications with the alignment and fit of the prosthesis. A prosthesis that is of inappropriate length, a prosthetic foot that is disproportionately outset, or socket induced pain can result in compensatory trunk and head motion.[160,162]

Terminal Stance

TSt prepares the limb for initiation of swing phase. TSt is characterized by the completed progression over the prothesis accompanied by smooth flexion of the limb, with a flexion magnitude equal to the contralateral limb. As the heel of the prosthesis leaves the ground, the motion should be smooth and without any additional exertion; timing of this sequence is accomplished prior to IC of the contralateral limb.[160,162] Early or abrupt heel-off can be produced when the sagittal plane alignment of the foot in relation to the socket is incongruous, this compensation is commonly assessed by the perceived "drop-off" of the client at the end of stance. If heel-off is delayed, and the client experiences the feeling of "walking up a hill" or "being unable to get over the toe," the sagittal plane alignment of the foot in relation to the socket is most likely inappropriate.[160,162]

For new and seasoned clinicians alike understanding the influence of prosthetic socket fit, prosthetic alignment, prosthetic component selection, and the contributions of the prosthetic user in the success of the prosthesis and ambulatory function cannot be understated. Alignment and alignment changes effect socket moment impulse, impulse time intervals, and overall efficacy. When socket impulse exceeds the acceptable range, either defined by the wearer or physiological limits, compensations in GP or reduction of daily activity level result to decrease residual limb discomfort ultimately affecting overall function and quality of life.[165]

Preswing

As the limb continues to prepare for swing phase, body weight transfers smoothly to the contralateral limb without any perceptible rise or fall of the head and torso and the magnitude of flexion of the prosthetic knee is equal to that of the contralateral knee. Suspension of the socket retains the limb securely within the socket in preparation for the prosthesis to leave the ground. Sagittal plane assessment will reveal the rise or fall of the head and torso during PSw.

Inappropriate movement of the head and torso during PSw indicates that the alignment of the foot in relation to the socket may be misaligned or the provided socket flexion may be unwarranted; clients may describe this motion as falling too quickly to the contralateral side or "drop-off." Ineffective suspension or poor socket fit can result in the socket dropping away from the limb as body weight if off-loaded from the residual limb, described as pistoning, as swing phase is initiated.[160,162]

Swing Phase

Once the limb leaves the ground swing phase commences with the goals of heel rise equal to the contralateral limb, swinging the limb through on the line of progression free of any motion of the limb in the transverse plane (circumduction, medial, or lateral whips), with ample ground clearance of the prosthetic foot and adequate socket suspension. Swing phase assessment is best viewed in the sagittal plane and the coronal plane viewed posteriorly. Sagittal plane viewing provides feedback regarding heel rise, toe clearance as the prosthetic foot passes over the ground surface, and for assessing device suspension. ISw is characterized by heel rise of the prosthetic limb equal to that of the sound limb. Insufficient suspension or socket flexion can inhibit the appropriate heel rise during ISw.[160] At MSw, the limb passes over the ground without contact or additional force or energy to accomplish the task. Improper prosthesis length or device suspension can lead to the prosthetic foot not clearing the ground. In addition, limited knee flexion resulting from socket interference or physiological complications can also produce the same complication.[160,162] Socket suspension is imperative at all phases of the gait cycle; however, during the swing phase, should suspension be ineffective, the client will lose confidence in the device's safety and effectiveness, and may potentially

lead to significant harm. If pistoning is observed during swing phase, common causes may be socket fit or inadequate primary suspension.[160] Prosthetic toe clearance is imperative for protection from increased fall risk. Tripping is the predominant cause of falls and the rate of tripping increases with prosthetic use and even more so when adequate toe clearance or socket suspension is deficient.[167] Fifty-seven percent of older adults 65 years and older fell in a 2014 statistic, and of that 57% (nearly half of the falls) produced injuries that required medical care.[168] Toe clearance is a function of proximity of the prosthetic foot to the ground, swing limb velocity, and forward progression of the center of mass relative to the base of support. Research has eluded that the WS-related toe-ground clearance changes on the prosthetic side compared with the contralateral side may potentially increase the risk of tripping, further highlighting the need to adequately assess prosthetic fit and function as it relates to GPs.[169]

Coronal observations allow for assessment of the path of the limb relative to the line of progression, as well as detection of motion in the transverse plane as the limb travels through swing phase. Smooth acceleration and progression of the limb along the line of progression can be influenced negatively by a prosthesis that is too long, a prosthesis that is donned improperly and is internally or externally rotated, and if the suspension is not adequate or appropriate for the client.[160,162]

COMMON GAIT DEVIATIONS IN TRANSTIBIAL PROSTHETIC GAIT

Our understanding of prosthetic gait deviations and the dynamic alignment process has evolved over many decades. The important early work of Inman, described previously, served as a basis for subsequent development.[47] As the field of prosthetics has progressed the refinement of the various prosthetic gait deviations has continued to evolve. A brief description of the most common transtibial gait deviations is given in Table 5.1.[18]

Table 5.1 Common Gait Deviations in Transtibial Prosthetic Gait

Deviation	Description and Potential Causes
INITIAL CONTACT GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Excessive knee extension	Knee fully extended at IC. Typically, a result of incorrect suspension or socket fit.
Excessive knee flexion	Knee excessively flexed at IC. Often a result of poor socket suspension or a knee flexion contracture.
Excessive dorsiflexion	Seen when the ball of the foot is raised above the ground excessively. This can occur as a result of unequal stride lengths, suspension restricting knee motion, or poor socket alignment.
External rotation of foot	At the beginning of stance phase, the forefoot moves laterally. This movement may be a result of a prosthetic foot with a heel that is too firm, or external rotation of the limb due to poor gait habit or pain.
LOADING RESPONSE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Irregular knee flexion	Knee flexion is uncontrolled, abrupt, excessive, or inadequate from IC to loading response. Potential causes include weak musculature, device malalignment, inappropriate component choice, or poor gait habits.
Foot slap	When the forefoot rapidly plantar flexes following heel contact. Commonly this is a result of insufficient plantar flexion resistance inherent to the prosthetic foot.
Excessive heel compression	The prosthetic heel compresses excessively, delaying tibial advancement and rollover. This is caused by improper heel stiffness of the prosthetic foot.
MIDSTANCE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Hyperextension of knee	At MSt the knee progresses into a hyperextension moment. Hyperextension of the knee may be caused by weak musculature or ligamentous laxity of the knee, inappropriate prosthetic foot heel stiffness, or malalignment of the prosthetic foot in the sagittal plane.
Foot not flat on floor	At MSt the foot is not in complete contact with the floor. This can be caused by inappropriate socket alignment in the coronal plane or poor socket fit.
Excessive varus moment	At MSt the socket displaces laterally more than half an inch due to an excessive varus moment at the knee. This might be caused by inadequate alignment of the foot in relation to the socket, poor socket fit, or weak ligamentous structures of the knee.
Excessive valgus moment	At MSt the knee moves medially. This may be caused by inadequate alignment of the foot in relation to the socket, inversion of the prosthetic foot, or weak ligamentous structures of the knee.
Lateral trunk bending	At MSt the person leans laterally over the prosthetic side. This may be a result of inappropriate prosthesis height, residual limb pain, or poor device alignment.
Excessive abduction of prosthesis	Seen as excessive weight borne on the lateral aspect of the foot throughout stance. Common causes include excessive abduction of the socket (proximal socket-limb reference) relative to the individual's limb or excess eversion of the foot.
Excessive adduction of prosthesis	Seen as excessive weight borne on the medial aspect of the foot throughout stance. Common causes include excessive adduction of the socket (proximal socket-limb reference) relative to the individual's limb or excess inversion of the foot.
TERMINAL STANCE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Excessive knee extension	The knee is fully extended at TSt. Common causes are malalignment of the prosthetic foot in the sagittal plane, inappropriate stiffness of the keel of the prosthetic foot, insufficient socket flexion, or poor gait habit.
Erratic knee flexion	The knee flexes erratically at TSt. Often a result of weak musculature of the knee or an undetected knee pathology.
Inappropriate heel rise timing	The prosthetic heel may rise too rapidly or too slowly during TSt. Rapid and delayed heel rise typically results from malalignment of the prosthetic foot.

Table 5.1 Common Gait Deviations in Transtibial Prosthetic Gait (Continued)

Deviation	Description and Potential Causes
Drop-off	During the transfer of body weight to the sound side, flexion occurs too quickly and may be abrupt. This is most commonly a result of malalignment of the foot in the sagittal plane, poor socket alignment, or the inappropriate prosthetic foot choice.
SWING PHASE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Circumduction	A swinging of the affected limb laterally in a wide arc. Common causes include inappropriate length of prosthesis, undetected pathology of the hip or knee, or poor gait habit.
Insufficient heel rise	During swing phase the prosthetic heel rises less than the contralateral side. Often a result from insufficient suspension or improper socket alignment in the sagittal plane.
Vaulting	During swing phase on the affected side, the contralateral limb exhibits excessive plantar flexion or rising onto the toe of the unaffected foot. This may be caused by inappropriate length of prosthesis, inadequate suspension, poor gait habit, or residual limb pain.
Pistoning	A sense that the residual limb slips slightly out of the socket in swing and descends into the socket in stance. Causes may include loose socket fit, faulty suspension, or poor socket fit.
Lateral whip	During initial swing the foot "whips" laterally. A lateral whip may result from complications with the suspension system (particularly with cuff suspension) or the device may be donned with excess rotation.
Medial whip	During initial swing the foot "whips" medially. A medial whip may result from complications with the suspension system (particularly with cuff suspension) or the device may be donned with excess rotation.
Toe drag	During midswing the prosthetic foot touches the floor. This may be caused by the prosthesis length being too long, loose suspension, limited knee flexion from poor habits, or weak musculature.
ADDITIONAL GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Abducted gait	The person is observed to walk with a base of support that is excessively wide. This may result from malalignment of the foot, inappropriate prosthesis height, poor gait habit, or an undetected hip pathology.
Unequal stride length	Unequal stride lengths between affected side and sound side. This may result from poor device suspension or poor gait habit.
Excessive toe out	Observed when an individual progresses over the forefoot of the prosthetic foot too quickly from IC to preswing. The quick progression is a result of a shortened toe lever. This can be caused by a prosthetic foot being excessively externally rotated or external rotation of the limb due to poor gait habit or pain.

IC, Initial contact; *MSt*, midstance; *TSt*, terminal stance.

From California State University; Craig D. Pathological and Non-Pathological Movement Analysis. 2009; Available from: https://www.freewebs.com/dcraig3/index.htm. Accessed on 6/5/19; Smith DG, Michael JW, Bowker JH. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical Prosthetic and Rehabilitation Principles*. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 2004.

Case Example 5.5 **A Patient With a Unilateral Transtibial Amputation**

W.T. is a 59-year-old transtibial amputee secondary to peripheral vascular disease. He underwent the amputation in September 2009 and subsequently experienced a fall, causing secondary injuries to the residual limb. Previously, he underwent bilateral total knee arthroplasty, most recently on the right side in 2007. W.T. started physical therapy for gait training in March 2010 and completed it in July 2010. He has been referred for a gait evaluation due to complaints of right knee pain, as he has continued to become ambulatory with the prosthesis.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Considering the gait deviations associated with transtibial amputees, how could this impact his affected side in conjunction with the total knee arthroplasty?
- What type of options could be considered to minimize the impact on his intact joints? With this, consider the role of client education and possible compliance issues.
- What type of qualitative and quantitative information would you use to support your decision(s)?

EXAMINATION AND EVALUATION

On the day of evaluation, W.T. presented using a single point cane and after discussion with the staff complained of intermittent pain at the distal end of his residual limb. A further chart review revealed that since the time that he completed physical therapy multiple prosthetic feet have been trialed, along with additional modifications to the prosthetic socket to help increase comfort. There were also documented issues of client noncompliance, particularly in terms of the prosthesis wear schedule. The individual had periodically developed areas of redness on his residual limb and was advised to pay particular attention to this area and to document it when it occurred.

An initial assessment with video-based data collection was determined to be an appropriate first step. During the evaluation, the client was asked to walk multiple times over level ground at his self-selected WS while being videotaped. The principal findings were as follows: (1) Periodic knee hyperextension during MSt on the involved side, (2) the involved side knee is often not fully extended at IC, and (3) for the times that the knee is flexed going into stance, there is a rapid extension during MSt.

Taking into consideration the individual's history and current complaints about exacerbated knee pain with ambulation, it was determined that a trial of a custom knee brace modified to fit in conjunction with his prosthesis would be the next alternative. He was subsequently casted over the prosthesis to help ensure that the device would contour appropriately and not interfere with its function. By doing this, the brace would provide additional support when combined with the single point cane.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given the situation with this client, would further, instrumented, kinetic, and kinematic testing be warranted?
- If so, how would you conduct the testing session, and in which specific variables would you look for changes?

TRANSFEMORAL PROSTHETIC GAIT

Initial research of transfemoral amputation by the Berkeley group focused upon unilateral amputation because the problems of this group appeared more critical at that time.[135]

Motion analysis showed a fully extended knee starting in TSw and continuing through stance. The inadequate ankle plantar flexion that followed heel strike and threatened knee stability was attributed to dependence on an ankle bumper in place of the lost pretibial muscle control. Active ipsilateral thigh control and postural adaptation by the sound limb and trunk were identified as the variable mechanisms used by the individual with transfemoral amputation to ensure knee extension stability. Rotation of the fully extended limb rolling over the ankle before heel rise causes a maximum rise of the hip (and thus center of gravity), which was interpreted as vaulting. Compensatory actions by the sound limb were identified.

In swing, the inability of the prosthetic foot to generate a propelling force to initiate limb advancement was interpreted as a need to restrict the weight of the prosthesis so that the work of hip flexors would not be excessive. The individual with transfemoral amputation also demonstrated rapid hip extension in TSw to use tibial inertia as a means of completing knee extension in preparation for stance. These findings of excessive knee extension in stance and excessive hip action in swing formed the basis for others to design more sophisticated knee joints to replace the then-dominant single-axis constant friction joint.

The biomechanical response to the problem of residual limb discomfort was twofold. Torque absorbers were designed, but the solution was the combination of improved socket design, in addition to more normal joint mechanics. The loss of knee control creates compensatory kinematic and kinetic changes that result in asymmetries reflected in a variety of gait parameters. As the individual wearing a transfemoral prosthesis with a compressible heel-type foot levers over the heel rocker during LR, the knee may be at an increased risk of destabilization. When challenged by the potential for knee instability, the prosthetic wearer will attempt to preposition the hip before LR, with a change in body mechanics to shift the GRF to a more anterior position. These typical compensatory patterns can be measured directly through EMG, kinematics, or kinetics, or inferred by measuring heel-only load-bearing time through a temporal analysis.

Temporal Values

There are a several temporal values for which individuals with transfemoral amputation differ compared with those without amputation. A retrospective footswitch gait study conducted at the National VA Prosthetics Gait Lab, Long Beach, California, measured the self-selected velocity in 10 individuals with traumatic transfemoral amputation and compared it with the self-selected velocity of individuals without amputation. The individuals with amputation demonstrated a mean stride length of 1.16 m compared with an average of 1.59 m for individuals without amputation.[170] Overall timing of the transfemoral prosthetic gait cycle was slower for the individuals with amputation, requiring a mean of 1.25 seconds from IC to subsequent IC compared with 1.08 seconds for individuals without amputation. The mean velocity of the individuals with amputation was 55.8 m/min versus 88.3 m/min for individuals without amputation. James and Oberg found that a longer, slower gait cycle on the prosthetic side combined with a reduced step length on the sound side resulted in a velocity that was only 38% of nonamputee velocity.[171] As profound as these differences are, they are probably still subtle enough to remain unremarkable in a typical clinical environment. Murray measured transfemoral gait with a younger group of individuals with amputation and found similar but slightly more subtle differences between individuals with amputation and those without amputation.[172]

Transfemoral Alignment

As previously mentioned, prosthetic control and success is achieved through several individual attributes as well as the interaction between them. The fit of the prosthetic socket, the alignment of the prosthesis, the prosthetic component choices utilized, and the contributions of the prosthetic user in the patterns of gait. For persons with transfemoral amputations not only must the clinician take into consideration the socket-foot relationship, but also the socket-knee relationship and the knee-foot relationship. Gait assessment for persons with transfemoral amputations must be critically assessed with the areas mentioned, as well as the interdependent symbiotic relationships thereof.

Initial Contact and Loading Response

Prosthetic alignment assessed during IC of the gait cycle yields optimum achievement of smooth controlled plantarflexion and knee extension as well as equal stride length to the contralateral limb. Knee instability may be observed as a result of inadequate positioning or mechanical adjustment of the prosthetic knee, deficient socket alignment decreasing the efficiency of the hip extensors, or prosthetic user error. Prosthetic user error or interference is common throughout the life of the prostheses effecting comfort, efficacy, and safety. User interference resulting in knee instability can include inappropriate shoe wear producing alignment changes or an undetected hip pathology or weakness. In addition to knee instability, plantarflexion that is uncontrolled or erratic may be detected. Erratic and uncontrolled plantarflexion can be produced by use of inappropriate distal components or component adjustment, as well as the client lacking trust in the safety and stability of the prosthetic device. At times unequal step length may be assessed. Step length is a function of alignment and trust. Inappropriate socket flexion alignment or prosthetic knee adjustment can lead to a shorter prosthetic step while residual limb pain and lack of trust can also produce asymmetric stride lengths.[173,174]

As the limb continues to progress from IC to LR a stable foot that remains on the line of progression during plantar flexion, an upright trunk with minimal lateral displacement of the head, and the presence of sufficient pelvic stabilization are anticipated. Commonly, the prosthetic foot may externally rotate and deviate from advancement along the line of progression. External rotation of the foot may be produced by ineffective socket contouring and fit, inappropriate prosthetic foot choice or alignment, or weak musculature may be present, preventing necessary control of the prosthesis.

Similar to lateral trunk bending observed in transtibial gait, lateral deviation of the trunk and consequent deviation of the head that exceeds 2 inches are undesired and must be addressed. Prosthetic device causes of excess lateral trunk bending during LR include inadequate socket or prosthetic foot alignment and incorrect prosthesis length. Additional client causes can include weak hip musculature, short residual limb length decreasing available strength necessary for hip stabilization, or a painful residuum with pain being located distally and laterally.[173,174]

The initiation of heel contact at the beginning of stance phase in transfemoral gait has been reported to be characteristically delayed on the prosthetic side, which typically demonstrates a longer swing phase.[172] Contemporary hydraulic knee units, particularly those that provide a programmable chip that can establish optimal swing phase timing characteristics, have the potential to overcome this limitation. However, probably because of cost, they do not represent a typical prosthesis. Early gait studies of single-axis prosthetic feet showed that as the prosthetic limb made contact with the ground and began to load, an exaggerated knee extension was seen in the prosthetic limb that continued throughout early stance.[172] This phenomenon depends somewhat on knee design. There is little evidence that polycentric knees, such as four- and six-bar linkage knee units, and others that have been designed to be stable with a few degrees of built-in flexion compliance during stance, provide normal kinematics of the knee in stance. Most individuals with transfemoral amputation who use the polycentric designs walk with a nearly extended knee.

The total vertical forces occurring on the prosthetic side are less during the initial double limb support period than on the contralateral side during the terminal double limb support period. It has been theorized that this loading restraint requires costly compensations of the sound limb.[175] Knee instability, which produces these costly compensations, generally results from inappropriate positioning of the knee joint relative to the socket and prosthetic foot. The individual with transfemoral amputation relies on hip extensor strength and the reduced lever arm of the transected femur to stabilize the prosthetic knee by restraining the limb during LR. Profound hip extensor weakness can be catastrophic and preclude functional ambulation. Anterior translation of the prosthetic socket relative to the knee and foot has the effect of shifting the GRF anterior to the knee joint axis, thereby increasing stability. Socket flexion affects knee stability as well. Because efficient use of the gluteus maximus as a hip extensor requires the muscle group to be on stretch, the prosthetist deliberately places the socket in a position of flexion. Five degrees of socket flexion are generally considered clinically optimal in an individual with no contracture at the hip. In cases of hip contracture, the amount of flexion is limited by the length of the femoral remnant.[135]

Stability of the knee joint is unquestionably the most important factor in considering a knee unit. Uncontrolled knee flexion renders an otherwise perfect prosthesis useless. Thiele and colleagues investigated possible neurophysiological reasons for weakness in individuals with transfemoral amputation by recording EMG activity of the quadriceps during gait. The team did not find abnormal recordings and concluded that muscle weakness is caused by biomechanical, rather than neurophysiological, factors. This supports the long-held clinical view that, apart from the individual's general muscle tone, residual limb length is a crucial factor because of its effect as a lever arm against the socket wall and as a result of intact or ablated insertions of the hamstring tendons and their obvious detrimental effect on extensor strength.[176] A slight degree of socket flexion is also a factor affecting stability because socket flexion slightly elongates hip extensors, rendering them more effective. The relative positions of the prosthetic foot, knee, and socket to this line significantly affect stability of the knee when the individual walks. When the ground reaction line passes posterior to the knee center, the knee will collapse unless resisted by another force, usually the hip extensors forcing the femur against the socket wall.

Another potential destabilizing factor is limitation of free plantar flexion at heel contact, which may produce a knee flexion moment in early stance. This is why an articulated prosthetic foot (as opposed to a prosthetic foot, which attains a plantar grade position by means of heel compression) provides increased stability for those with transfemoral amputation. A general clinical guideline on an individual who demonstrates minimal knee stability is that the prosthetic foot should reach foot-flat position (mimicking plantar flexion during LR) as quickly as possible, short of demonstrating a foot slap characteristic. As soon as the foot plantarflexes fully during stance phase, the ground reaction line moves anteriorly from the point of foot-floor contact at the heel to approximately midfoot, enhancing stability at the knee. Because of this, a single- or multiaxis foot with a soft plantar flexion bumper is preferred for those with a short transfemoral residual limb, who have limited muscular control for knee stability. At times, the single-axis function can be combined with that of dynamic ESAR foot.

Midstance

As the individual moves into MSt, sound side hip elevation and trunk lean toward the affected side provide balance, limit the force on the lateral aspect of the residual limb, and reduce the demands of the residual limb abductors. The transition from braking to propulsive shear on the ipsilateral limb is characteristically delayed and unsteady (Fig. 5.17A). It is necessary to maintain optimal alignment to reduce any further potential to negatively influence the MSt transitions. MSt gait is most effectively observed in two planes, the sagittal plane and coronal planes respectively; these two vantage points allow the clinician to observe the degree of presence of pylon verticality and prosthetic foot contact with the ground, appropriate width of walking base, and reasonable lateral trunk flexion. Pylon verticality is affected when socket discomfort exists, poor socket fit and alignment are not corrected, or when the individual has weak musculature and does not feel safe using the device. Typically, in addition to a nonvertical pylon, the prosthetic foot will not be flat on the floor. Inversion and eversion of the prosthetic foot can be produced by inappropriate socket alignment or socket fit. Transfemoral walking base is best viewed in the coronal plane. A width of 2 to 4 inches when measured between the medial aspect of the heels as the foot passes the stance foot is desired. Excess or insufficient walking base is both unaesthetic, inefficient, and unsafe; undesired widths are caused by inappropriate device alignment.[173,174]

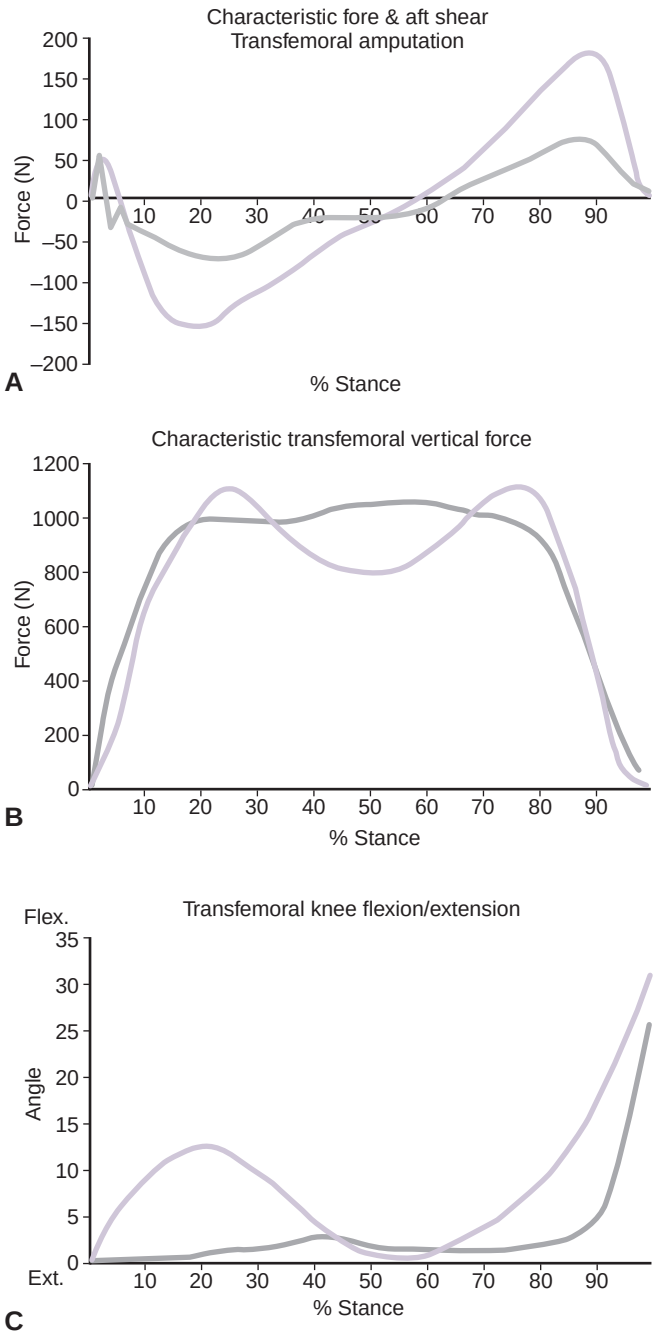


Fig. 5.17 (A) The transition from braking to propulsive shear on the ipsilateral limb during transfemoral prosthetic gait is characteristically delayed and unsteady. (B) Although there is a reduction in vertical force at midstance (Mst) of the sound limb as the prosthetic limb advances in swing, the prosthetic transfemoral limb demonstrates reduced upward velocity because the momentum of the contralateral swing limb lacks the vigor to lessen the vertical force of the affected stance limb during MSt. (C) Knee flexion of transfemoral prosthetic limb is reduced throughout stance. During preswing, delayed and reduced knee flexion, and consequent reduced heel rise on the ipsilateral limb is characteristic. (Courtesy of VA Long Beach Gait Laboratory.)

When both limbs are intact, the momentum of the contralateral swing limb results in a reduced vertical force at MSt of the stance limb. This is not so, however, for individuals with dysvascular transfemoral amputation, in which the reduced upward velocity and momentum of the contralateral swing limb does not have the vigor necessary to decrease vertical force of the prosthetic limb during MSt (see Fig. 5.17B). Maximum knee flexion and swing velocities of the sound side during swing phase, as well as the involved side during swing phase, can be positively improved through the use of microprocessor controlled knee units for some individuals.[177]

Stance phase knee flexion of the affected side is significantly reduced throughout stance (see Fig. 5.17C). During PSw, delayed and reduced knee flexion and consequent reduced heel rise on the ipsilateral limb are characteristic of the transfemoral amputee. Except in the case of those fitted with microprocessor stance control knees, it can be anticipated that many individuals with transfemoral amputation will progress through MSt with a nearly extended knee. Microprocessor-controlled hydraulic knees, particularly Otto Bock versions, have shown a trend toward improvements in stance knee flexion as well as increased velocity in stair descent.[178,179] This is an important development because it may provide increased energy efficiency in gait and avoid compensatory mechanisms, such as prepositioning of the femur before LR and MSt.

Terminal Stance

TSt is characterized by the smooth advancement of the center or mass without any observable rise or fall of the torso and head. In addition, step length of the uninvolved limb should be normal length and without excess lumbar lordosis. Pelvic rise or "hill climbing" and "drop off" are undesirable consequences observed in the sagittal plane. Pelvic rise is detected by noticeable elevation of the head and torso and is sometimes described by the individual as "difficult to ride over the foot." Pelvic rise is produced by inappropriate prosthetic foot alignment. Drop-off is evidenced when the torso and head drop markedly and is accompanied by a shorter rapid step on the uninvolved side. Drop-off is commonly a result of inadequate prosthetic foot alignment or compensatory gait habit. Increased lumbar lordosis is common in individuals with transfemoral amputation as a compensator strategy to overcome the constraints induced by traditional socket models.[180] During TSt the individual may exhibit additional lumbar lordosis in an effort to overcome insufficient socket alignment, improper socket fit, inherent hip musculature weakness or pathology, or a short residual limb which inadvertently decreases the function of the available lever arm.[173,174]

TSt on the prosthetic side is noted for its premature cessation. The prosthetic side generally shows a decrease in SLS time, whereas the sound side shows a concurrent increase in SLS time.[177] There is a persistence of knee extension on the prosthetic limb during contralateral sound side deceleration.[181,182] Delayed and reduced knee flexion, and consequent reduced heel rise on the ipsilateral limb, are characteristic of transfemoral prosthetic gait (see Fig. 5.17C). A failure to limit dorsiflexion in a single-axis foot at this juncture will have a destabilizing effect on the prosthetic knee joint during TSt. Without an appropriately placed dorsiflexion stop, nothing will dampen the forward progression of the tibia, and the tibial section may continue its anterior progression to the point of knee collapse.

Preswing

Characteristics of transfemoral gait in PSw include the hip, knee, and foot swinging through on the line of progression, heel rise of the prosthetic foot equal to the contralateral limb, and necessary suspension to maintain the socket securely on the limb. Typical causes for prosthesis progression that deviates from the line of progression are malalignment of the prosthetic knee, or socket alignment, and fit issues. A medial whip is observed when the prosthetic heel rises medially from the floor accompanied by lateral movement of the prosthetic knee. In contrast, a lateral whip is observed when the prosthetic heel rises laterally from the floor, accompanied by medial movement of the prosthetic knee. Excessive external and excessive internal rotations of the knee axis are to blame respectively. Socket rotations resulting in medial and lateral whips can result from inappropriate donning of the prosthesis or inadequate socket contouring and fit. Deviation from the line of progression can also be a result of weak musculature and inability to provide the necessary muscle control. Inadequate, delayed, or uneven heel rise is best observed in the sagittal plane. Heel rise deficiencies result from inappropriate prosthetic knee adjustment, a prosthesis that is aligned with too much inherent stability, or the individual may lack confidence to adequately operate the device. Lack of suspension can be detected in both the sagittal and coronal planes. As the body weight transfers to the contralateral limb and the prosthetic limb prepares to leave the ground the prosthesis must remain secure. Lack of adequate suspension may result in lack of toe clearance later in swing.[173,174]

During PSw in transfemoral gait, the vertical force of the sound side is abnormally high and greater than that of the prosthetic side.[175] Abrupt reversal from hip extension to hip flexion occurs because some hip extension is required for knee stability until the moment when the prosthetic knee has to flex to initiate swing. In normal gait, half the knee flexion required for swing phase is obtained passively during PSw.

During prosthetic PSw, inadequate forefoot support can lead to costly compensations in the double limb support period.[175] PSw is characterized by a rapid transfer of body weight to the contralateral limb. In normal gait, this transfer begins at 50% of the gait cycle and continues until the end of stance phase (approximately 62% of the gait cycle).

Individuals with transfemoral amputation often have a shortened sound side step length. This may be aggravated by insufficient socket flexion because the individual with transfemoral amputation uses any and all available lumbar lordosis to advance the sound limb. Failure to place the socket in flexion limits the availability of lumbar lordosis and prohibits a sound side step length that is at least somewhat close to normal. Even in an optimal prosthetic gait, typical sound side step length is reduced compared with the prosthetic side or that of normal gait.

Swing Phase

Similar to transtibial gait assessment, swing phase is observed through the lens of three smaller periods of time in the overall phase. ISw, MSw, and TSw compose the swing phase, and each subphase is categorized by unique attributes and expectations. Desired criteria of ISw includes smooth hip and knee flexion, while MSw criteria boasts a rhythmic progression over the prosthetic foot produced by the smooth peaking of the center of mass, as well as symmetric GPs for both limbs. Circumduction can be observed during swing phase resulting from inadequate knee unit adjustment, inappropriate prosthesis length or fit, insufficient suspension effectively lengthening the prosthesis, or lack of trust in the function of the device. Excessive elevation on the sound side limb during swing phase of the involved limb, also known as *vaulting*, may result from inadequate knee unit adjustment, inappropriate prosthesis length, insufficient suspension effectively lengthening the prosthesis, or poor gait habit. In conjunction with circumduction and vaulting occasionally, asymmetric gait is observed; the prosthetic foot may rise too high, and as a result additional time is spent on the sound side limb. Asymmetric gait during swing phase results from an adequate adjustment to the prosthetic knee.

Deceleration of the prosthetic limb is paramount in preparation of IC of the subsequent gait cycle. Deceleration should occur smoothly and without perceptible noise of knee extension or terminal impact, and equal step length is desired. Terminal impact is produced when the distal portion of the prosthetic limb travels with excess velocity as the knee reaches full extension. Terminal impact is a result of insufficient prosthetic knee adjustment, a knee unit that is in need of repair, or poor gait habit to ensure the knee is fully extended to prevent buckling. During TSt, unequal step length can result for many reasons. Component adjustment issues can produce knee hyperextension, elongating deceleration: a knee that does not reach full extension shortening deceleration and prematurely instigating IC, or a knee that bounces back after full extension allowing premature flexion prior to IC. Inappropriate socket alignment can produce a long sound side step or a short prosthetic step, or lack of accommodation for a hip pathology, whereas an individual who lacks confidence and trust may exhibit slow stride velocity, delayed contact with the floor to ensure full knee extension, or a short sound side step.[173,174]

Gait characteristics during swing phase when wearing a transfemoral prosthesis can be profoundly influenced by prosthetic alignment and design variations. The most challenging factor in achieving a functional swing phase is the lack of active dorsiflexion in most prosthetic designs. The Stewart-Vicars knee developed in 1947 and the more recent Hydracadence knee couple knee flexion with ankle dorsiflexion. However, this design concept has been largely ignored in recent years. With the prosthetic incorporation of active dorsiflexion in early swing, many costly postural substitutions, including vaulting and abducted or circumducted gait, could be minimized.

The swing velocity of the prosthetic limb is often slower than that of the sound limb.[171] The presence or lack of fluid control mechanisms variations in alignment stability, extension assist, and joint friction alignment mechanisms

can all influence swing phase timing. During MSw, the individual with transfemoral amputation demonstrates exaggerated hip elevation of the prosthetic side to enable swing clearance. In TSw, prosthetic swing time is much greater than sound limb swing time or normal gait swing time. Excessive prosthetic swing flexion is one of the commonly reported transfemoral prosthetic gait deviations. Contradiction in results of maximum knee flexion can easily be attributed to the wide variety of prosthetic dampening and extension assist designs, as well as other variations in prosthetic adjustment.[177]

COMMON GAIT DEVIATIONS IN TRANSFEMORAL PROSTHETIC GAIT

In 1951, New York University (NYU) published a method for observing amputee gait and described eight commonly seen gait deviations.[183] Years later, Hangar and associates at Northwestern University, under a grant from the Veterans Administration, developed an educational film that incorporated the eight deviations defined by NYU and expanded upon these.[19] A brief description of the most common transtibial gait deviations is given in Table 5.2.[18]

Table 5.2 Common Gait Deviations in Transfemoral Prosthetic Gait

Deviation	Description and Potential Causes
INITIAL CONTACT GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Knee instability	Uncontrollable knee flexion at from IC to LR. May be caused by anteriorly placed knee unit, excessive durometer of cushion heel or plantar flexion bumper, or weakness of hip extensors.
Foot slap	Rapid, uncosmetic plantar flexion movement at heel contact. Most commonly caused by insufficient plantar flexion resistance.
Unequal step length	Sound side step length is visibly shorter than the prosthetic step length. May be caused by inadequate preflexion of socket, hip flexion contracture. Associated with excessive lumbar lordosis and low back pain.
LOADING RESPONSE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Excessive heel compression	The prosthetic heel compresses excessively, delaying rollover. This is caused by improper heel stiffness of the prosthetic foot or alignment of the foot in the sagittal plane.
External rotation	Foot externally rotates at heel contact. May be caused by excessively firm heel cushion or a tight prosthetic socket (especially on a residual limb with extra soft tissue), poor muscle control, or inappropriate rotation of the foot.
MIDSTANCE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Lateral trunk bending	Significant leaning of the body over the hip during prosthetic MSt. Often caused by excessively outset prosthetic foot, distal lateral femoral discomfort, short prosthesis, excessively abducted socket, or gluteus medius weakness.
Foot flat is not accomplished	Inversion or eversion of the foot is present at MSt. Typically caused by inappropriate socket alignment in the coronal plane or poor socket fit.
Wide or narrow base of support	Base of support is either excessive or insufficient. Often caused by inappropriate coronal plane alignment of the foot.
Unequal toe out rotation	Toe out on the prosthetic side does not match that of the sound side. This is caused by improper rotation of the foot.
Knee hyperextension	Seen at MSt to compensate for perceived knee instability. Often caused by inadequate foot lever alignment, or improper alignment of the prosthetic foot in the sagittal plane.
TERMINAL STANCE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Delayed progression	Hesitation or delay in rollover of prosthetic forefoot between MSt and TSt. May be the result of improper alignment of the foot levers, inadequate alignment of the prosthetic foot in the sagittal plane, or shoes with inadequate heel.
Drop-off	During TSt the transfer of body weight to the sound side occurs too quickly and causes the torso to lower excessively. This is most commonly a result of malalignment of the foot in the sagittal plane, improper alignment of the foot levers, or poor gait habit.
Excessive lumbar lordosis	Observed when the sound side step is shortened and lumbar lordosis exhibits excess posterior concavity. Common causes include insufficient socket flexion, improper socket fit, hip flexion contracture, weak hip extensor and/or abdominal musculature, or the client has a very short residual limb.
SWING PHASE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Pelvic elevation	"Hip hiking" on prosthetic side from ISw to MSw, associated with increased energy cost of gait. Often caused by long prosthesis or inadequate knee flexion as swing begins.
Lateral whip	The heel of the prosthetic foot moves in a lateral arc as swing begins. Often caused by excessive internal rotation of the knee bolt, the socket is donned with excess internal rotation, poor socket fit, or weak musculature.
Medial whip	The heel of the prosthetic foot moves in a medial arch as swing begins. Often from excessive external rotation of the knee bolt the socket is donned with excess external rotation, poor socket fit, weak musculature, or interference from auxiliary suspension (Silesian belt or similar).

Table 5.2 Common Gait Deviations in Transfemoral Prosthetic Gait (Continued)

Deviation	Description and Potential Causes
Pistoning	A sense that residual limb slips slightly out of the socket in swing and descends into the socket in stance. Often the result of inadequate fit or suspension.
Inadequate heel rise	Heel rise is diminished in ISw, usually because of excessive mechanical resistance to knee flexion, prosthesis is aligned with too much stability, or inadequate pelvic rotation.
Excessive heel rise	Prosthetic foot rises abnormally upward during ISw, typically a result of inadequate resistance to knee flexion.
Circumduction	A wide lateral arch of the prosthetic limb during swing phase. Often the result of inadequate knee flexion, excessive medial brim pressure, inappropriate length of prosthesis, excessive mechanical resistance to flexion, prosthetic alignment too much stability, inadequate suspension, lack of confidence in prosthetic knee, or poor gait habit.
Vaulting	Rising up on the sound forefoot during MSt of the sound side in an effort to enhance prosthetic swing limb clearance. May result from a long prosthesis, excessive mechanical resistance to knee flexion, prosthesis aligned with too much stability, inadequate suspension, lack of confidence in prosthetic knee, or poor gait habit.
Terminal impact	An audible click at the end of TSw as knee unit fully extends with inappropriate mechanical resistance to flexion, or excessive assistance to extension, or by forceful knee extension by the prosthetic wearer.
Excessive knee extension	May be characterized by the heel not contacting the floor at the end of swing, the knee hyperextending. Often caused by insufficient trust in the prosthesis, or improperly adjusted knee extension resistance.
Knee flexion	Seen when the knee appears flexed or does not reach full extension, as well as when the knee bounces back after full extension prior to the end of swing phase.
Unequal step length	May be observed as a long or short sound side step. This may be caused by excessive or insufficient socket flexion respectively, or an undetected hip pathology.
ADDITIONAL GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Abducted gait	Wide walking base throughout the gait cycle. Often caused by pressure or discomfort on medial pubic ramus, small socket, or excessively long prosthesis.
Reduced velocity	An adaptation typically observed during initial training or with new components, often related to pain, fear, or insecurity.
TERMINAL STANCE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Excessive knee extension	The knee is fully extended at TSt. Common causes are malalignment of the prosthetic foot in the sagittal plane, inappropriate stiffness of the keel of the prosthetic foot, insufficient socket flexion, or poor gait habit.
Erratic knee flexion	The knee flexes erratically at TSt. Often a result of weak musculature of the knee, or an undetected knee pathology.
Inappropriate heel rise timing	The prosthetic heel may rise too rapidly or too slowly during TSt. Rapid and delayed heel rise typically results from malalignment of the prosthetic foot.
Drop-off	During the transfer of body weight to the sound side, flexion occurs too quickly and may be abrupt. This is most commonly a result of malalignment of the foot in the sagittal plane, poor socket alignment, or the inappropriate prosthetic foot choice.
SWING PHASE GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Circumduction	A swinging of the affected limb laterally in a wide arc. Common causes include inappropriate length of prosthesis, undetected pathology of the hip or knee, or poor gait habit.
Insufficient heel rise	During swing phase the prosthetic heel rises less than the contralateral side. Often a result from insufficient suspension or improper socket alignment in the sagittal plane.
Vaulting	During swing phase on the affected side, the contralateral limb exhibits excessive plantarflexion or rising onto the toe of the unaffected foot. This may be caused by inappropriate length of prosthesis, inadequate suspension, poor gait habit, or residual limb pain.
Pistoning	A sense that the residual limb slips slightly out of the socket in swing and descends into the socket in stance. Causes may include loose socket fit, faulty suspension, or poor socket fit.
Lateral whip	During ISw the foot "whips" laterally. A lateral whip may result from complications with the suspension system (particularly with cuff suspension) or the device may be donned with excess rotation.
Medial whip	During ISw the foot "whips" medially. A medial whip may result from complications with the suspension system (particularly with cuff suspension) or the device may be donned with excess rotation.

Continued on following page

Table 5.2 Common Gait Deviations in Transfemoral Prosthetic Gait (Continued)

Deviation	Description and Potential Causes
Toe drag	During MSw, the prosthetic foot touches the floor. This may be caused by the prosthesis length being too long, loose suspension, limited knee flexion from poor habits, or weak musculature.
ADDITIONAL GAIT DEVIATIONS	
Abducted gait	The person is observed to walk with a base of support that is excessively wide. This may result from malalignment of the foot, inappropriate prosthesis height, poor gait habit, or an undetected hip pathology.
Unequal stride length	Unequal stride lengths between affected side and sound side. This may result from poor device suspension or poor gait habit.
Excessive toe out	Observed when an individual progresses over the forefoot of the prosthetic foot too quickly from initial contact to preswing. The quick progression is a result of a shortened toe lever. This can be caused by a prosthetic foot being excessively externally rotated or external rotation of the limb due to poor gait habit or pain.

IC, Initial contact; *ISw*, initial swing; *LR*, loading response; *MSt*, midstance; *MSw*, midswing; *TSt*, terminal stance; *TSw*, terminal swing.

From California State University; Craig D. Pathological and Non-Pathological Movement Analysis. 2009; Available from: https://www.freewebs.com/dcraig3/index.htm. Accessed on 6/5/19; Smith DG, Michael JW, Bowker JH. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical Prosthetic and Rehabilitation Principles.* Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 2004.

Case Example 5.6 A Patient With a Hemipelvectomy Amputation

L. is a 38-year-old woman with a right hemipelvectomy amputation secondary to osteosarcoma. She has been referred to the gait laboratory for evaluation as a possible candidate for a microprocessor-controlled knee unit. For the past several years, she has been ambulatory without the use of assistive devices.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Considering L.'s level of amputation, what types of difficulties or deviations might you expect during the course of level over ground ambulation?
- What quantitative measures would serve as indicators of the likely gait deviations?

EXAMINATION AND EVALUATION

L. was fitted with reflective markers and underwent three-dimensional kinetic and kinematic testing. This testing was performed at her self-selected WS, and she was given a suitable amount of time to become acclimated to the testing environment before data collection. Observational assessment indicates a significant amount of vaulting and excessive pelvic movement but no indication of circumduction.

The temporal data show that she walks at a rate of 92 steps per minute and a velocity of 0.96 m/s. Along with this, her step length on the left side is 0.58 m, and the right side is 0.70 m, even though the total stride length for both sides is 1.24 m. Similarly, the total stride time for both sides was 1.3 s; however, the single limb support time was 0.55 s on the left side and 0.41 s on the right. The step time for the left was 0.59 s, and the right was 0.71 s. Similarly, toe-off occurred at 68.8% of the gait cycle on the left side, and it occurred at 57.9% on the right.

Kinematic data at the ankle showed a consistent pattern of abnormal plantar flexion on the left side occurring from approximately 14% of the gait cycle through 60% of the gait cycle. Overall knee flexion on the left side was within the overall expected range, as was hip flexion in swing. The right side knee flexion showed approximately 5 degrees of knee flexion during LR and a peak average knee flexion of 53 degrees. Exaggerated anterior-posterior pelvic tilt was also documented (Fig. 5.18).

Kinetically, the left side consistently showed greater anterior/posterior shear forces compared to the contralateral side, usually twice as much force exerted on the left compared to the right. Along with this, there was no clear twin peak maximum in the vertical component of the ground reaction force. Instead, there were multiple maxima over the course of a single stance phase (Fig. 5.19).

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Based on what is presented here, what possible advantages could a microprocessor controlled knee unit have over a conventional mechanical unit? When considering this, bear in mind that the specific microprocessor knee unit she is being evaluated for is designed to allow for adjustments in both flexion and extension resistance based on the individual's walking velocity.
- What kinematic, kinetic, and temporal changes could you expect to see with a change in knee unit?
- Considering that the potential improvements are not absolute, do the potential benefits warrant the issuance of the device?

Summary

The examples of gait deficiencies typical of neuromuscular conditions and in prosthetic gait that we have considered demonstrate the complexity and variety that challenge orthotists, prosthetists, and physical therapists working with individuals with gait problems. Each individual presents unique combinations of pathological and compensatory deficits that require a combination of the essential tools of simple quantitative measure (cadence and velocity, step length, stride length and width, and double support time), systematic qualitative gait analysis (Rancho Los Amigos observational gait assessment protocol), measures of energy cost (PCI), LOA (FAC), and functional measures (the TUG or GARS-M). These tools help the clinician differentiate primary pathological conditions from secondary compensations, guide orthotic recommendation and therapeutic intervention, and assess efficacy of treatment. Instrumented gait assessment is an important part of preoperative assessment and research in orthotic and

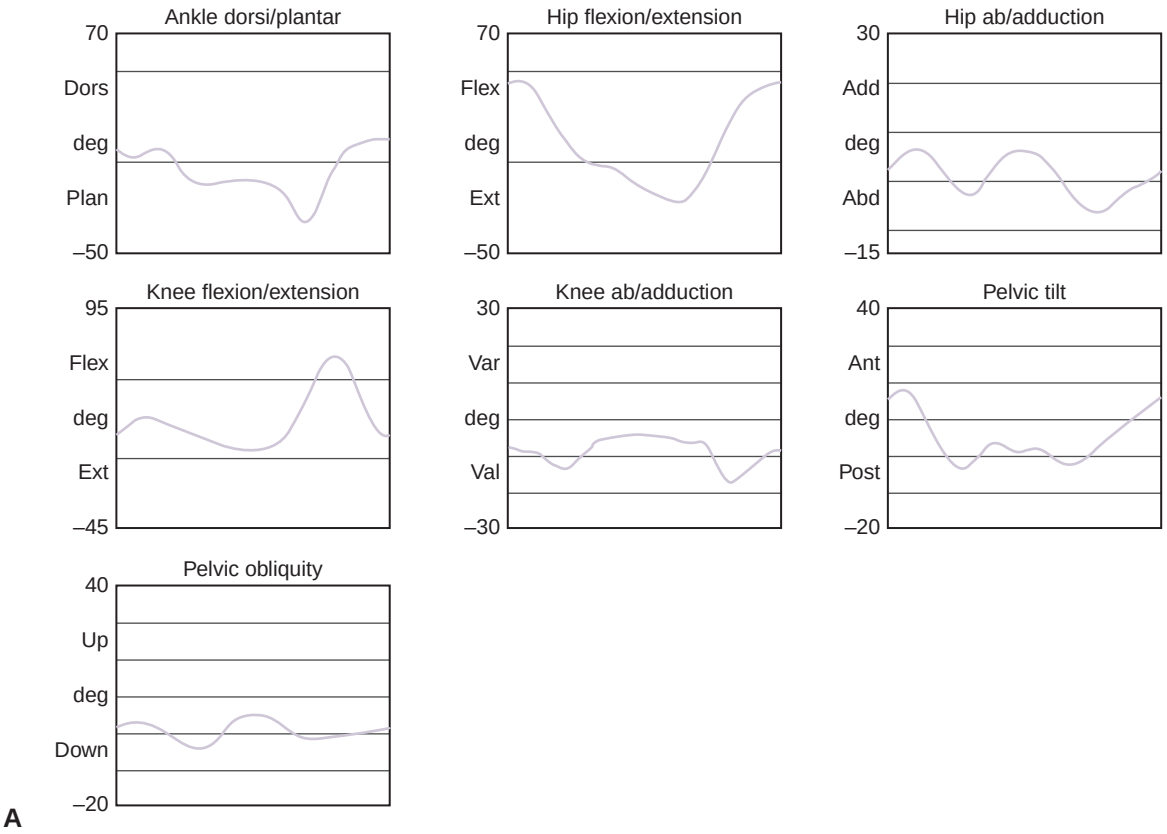


Fig. 5.18 A patient with right hemipelvectomy amputation: average motion data results for the left (A) and right side (B). Particularly note the ankle motion on the left side indicating the vaulting pattern.

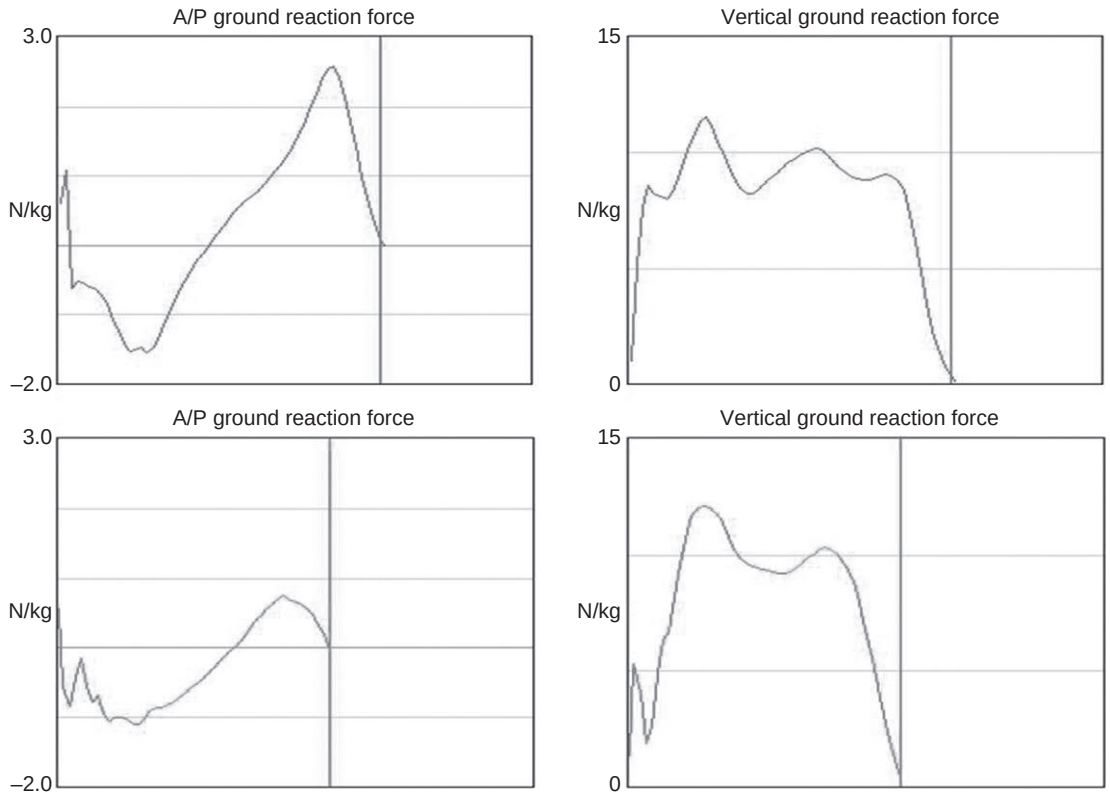


Fig. 5.19 A patient with right hemipelvectomy amputation: vertical and anterior-posterior (A/P) ground reaction force data for the left side (A) and right side (B). Note the difference in the vertical force patterns, especially the lack of two well-defined force peaks on the left side and the difference in magnitudes between the two peak force values on the left.

prosthetic design. In addition, the data collected in gait laboratories are accumulating into a database that can provide information necessary to build accurate outcome estimations for many groups of clients. The current challenge is for the clinic team to gain the broadest possible knowledge base in analytical gait assessment and to serve each individual as a team, considering each person as an individual.

References

1. Perry J, Burnfield JM. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function.* 2ed. Thorofare, NJ: SLACK Incorporated; 2010.
2. *Pathokinesiology Service and Physical Therapy Department: Observational Gait Analysis.* 4 ed, ed. L.A.R.a.E. Institute. 2002, Rancho Los Amigos National Rehabilitation Center Downey, CA.
3. J.M., A. and C. K. *Observational Gait Analysis: A Visual Guide.* Slack Incorporated; 2018.
4. Finley FR, Cody K, Finizie R. Locomotive patterns in elderly women. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1969;50(3):140–146.
5. Perry J, Burnfield, JM. *Gait analysis: normal and pathological function.* 2nd ed. Thorofare, NJ: SLACK. xvi; 2010:551.
6. LeVeau BF. *Biomechanics of Human Motion: Basics and Beyond for the Health Professions.* SLACK; 2010.
7. Saunders JB, Inman VT, Eberhart HD. The major determinants in normal and pathological gait. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1953;35-a (3):543–558.
8. Allali G, et al. Adapted timed up and go: a rapid clinical test to assess gait and cognition in multiple sclerosis. *Eur Neurol.* 2012;67 (2):116–120.
9. Okumiya K, et al. The timed "Up & Go" test and manual button score are useful predictors of functional decline in basic and instrumental ADL in community-dwelling older people. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 1999;47(4):497–498.
10. Perry J, et al. Normal and pathological gait. *AAOS Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices.* 2008;4:71–80.
11. Dunphy C, et al. Contralateral pelvic drop during gait increases knee adduction moments of asymptomatic individuals. *Hum Mov Sci.* 2016;49:27–35.
12. Neumann DA. Kinesiology of the Hip: A Focus on Muscular Actions. *Journal of Orthopaedic & Sports Physical Therapy.* 2010;40(2):82–94.
13. Aiona M, et al. Gait patterns in children with limb length discrepancy. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2015;35(3):280–284.
14. Kedem P, Scher DM. Evaluation and management of crouch gait. *Curr Opin Pediatr.* 2016;28(1):55–59.
15. Nonnekes J, et al. Neurological disorders of gait, balance and posture: a sign-based approach. *Nat Rev Neurol.* 2018;14(3):183–189.
16. Robinson G. A Study of Gaits. *Journal of the Kansas Medical Society.* 1925;25(12):402–406.
17. Boorstein SW. Abnormal Gaits as a Guide in Diagnosis. *Hebrew Physician.* 1937;1(1):221–227.
18. University, N. *Gait Analysis Instruction Film.* Nortwestern University Prosthetic and Orthotic Center; 1960.
19. Hanger H. *Personal Communication;* 1994.
20. Brunnström S. *Movement Therapy in Hemiplegia: A Neurophysiological Approach.* MD-Harper & Row; 1970.
21. Daly JJ, et al. Development and testing of the Gait Assessment and Intervention Tool (G.A.I.T.): a measure of coordinated gait components. *J Neurosci Methods.* 2009;178(2):334–339.
22. Zimbelman J, et al. Capability of 2 gait measures for detecting response to gait training in stroke survivors: Gait Assessment and Intervention Tool and the Tinetti Gait Scale. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2012;93(1):129–136.
23. Ferrarello F, et al. Tools for observational gait analysis in patients with stroke: a systematic review. *Physical Therapy.* 2013;93(12): 1673–1685.
24. Perry J. The mechanics of walking: a clinical interpretation. *Physical Therapy.* 1967;47(9):778–801.
25. Service, R.L.A.H.P. and P.T. Department. *Normal and Pathological Gait Syllabus.* The Hospital; 1978.

26. Department, P.S.a.P.T. Observational Gait Analysis. In: *Rancho Los Amigos National Rehabilitaton Center*. 4th ed. Downey, CA: Los Amigos Research and Educational Institute Inc; 2001.
27. Adams JM, Cerny K. *Observational Gait Analysis: A Visual Guide*. 1 ed. Slack Incorporated; 2018.
28. Marks AA. *Manual of artificial limbs...: an exhaustive exposition of prothesis*. New York: A. A. Marks; 1905:5–255. 1 p.l.
29. Braun M. Chicago: University of Chicago Press. *Picturing time: the work of Etienne-Jules Marey (1830-1904)*. 1994;.
30. Muybridge, E., *Muybridge's Complete human and animal locomotion: all 781 plates from the 1887 Animal locomotion by Eadweard Muybridge*. 1979.
31. Sutherland D. Historical perspective of gait analysis (lecture handouts); Interpretation of Gait Analysis Data (instructional course). *San Diego: Children's Hospital of San Diego*. 1994;2.
32. Ayyappa E. Gait lab technology: measuring the steps of progress. *O&P Almanac*. 1996;45:2.
33. Cutlip RG, et al. Evaluation of an instrumented walkway for measurement of the kinematic parameters of gait. *Gait & Posture*. 2000;12 (2):134–138.
34. Bilney B, Morris M, Webster K. Concurrent related validity of the GAITRite walkway system for quantification of the spatial and temporal parameters of gait. *Gait & Posture*. 2003;17(1):68–74.
35. Rao N, et al. The effects of two different ankle-foot orthoses on gait of patients with acute hemiparetic cerebrovascular accident. *Rehabil Res Pract*. 2014;2014:301469.
36. Ayyappa E, et al. Infusing Cutting Edge Technology Into Everyday Orthotic and Prosthetic Clinical Care. *JPO: Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics*. 2010;22(1):2–10.
37. Weinert-Aplin RA, et al. Medial-lateral centre of mass displacement and base of support are equally good predictors of metabolic cost in amputee walking. *Gait & Posture*. 2017;51:41–46.
38. Jayaraman C, et al. Impact of Powered Knee-Ankle Prosthesis on Low Back Muscle Mechanics in Transfemoral Amputees: A Case Series. *Front Neurosci*. 2018;12:134.
39. McDonald CL, et al. Energy expenditure in people with transtibial amputation walking with crossover and energy storing prosthetic feet: A randomized within-subject study. *Gait & Posture*. 2018;62:349–354.
40. Tanabe S, et al. Design of the Wearable Power-Assist Locomotor (WPAL) for paraplegic gait reconstruction. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol*. 2013;8(1):84–91.
41. Heyrman L, et al. Three-dimensional head and trunk movement characteristics during gait in children with spastic diplegia. *Gait Posture*. 2013;38(4):770–776.
42. Kaufman KR, Frittoli S, Frigo CA. Gait asymmetry of transfemoral amputees using mechanical and microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2012;27 (5):460–465.
43. Paul JC, et al. Feasibility of a cost-effective, video analysis software-based mobility protocol for objective spine kinematics and gait metrics: a proof of concept study. *PM R*. 2015;7 (3):336–339.
44. Paul SS, et al. Validity and Reliability of Two-Dimensional Motion Analysis for Quantifying Postural Deficits in Adults With and Without Neurological Impairment. *Anat Rec (Hoboken)*. 2016;299 (9):1165–1173.
45. Houglum PA, Bertoti D, Brunnstrom S. *Brunnstrom's clinical kinesiology*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 2012.
46. Rigney SM, Simmons A, Kark L. A prosthesis-specific multi-link segment model of lower-limb amputee sprinting. *J Biomech*. 2016;49 (14):3185–3193.
47. Inman VT, Ralston HJ, Todd F. *Human walking*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1981.
48. Sanford J, Patterson R, Popa DO. Concurrent surface electromyography and force myography classification during times of prosthetic socket shift and user fatigue. *Journal of Rehabilitation and Assistive Technologies Engineering*. 2017;4. 2055668317708731.
49. Lipschutz RDCPB. Impact of Emerging Technologies on Clinical Considerations: Targeted Muscle Reinnervation Surgeries, Pattern Recognition, Implanted Electrodes, Osseointegration, and Three-Dimensional Printed Solutions. [Abstract]. *JPO Journal of Prosthetics & Orthotics October 2017*. 2017;29(4S):35–39. Supplement 1.
50. Bus S. Innovations in plantar pressure and foot temperature measurements in diabetes. *Diabetes/metabolism research and reviews*. 2016;32 (S1):221–226.
51. Scarton A, et al. A methodological framework for detecting ulcers' risk in diabetic foot subjects by combining gait analysis, a new musculoskeletal foot model and a foot finite element model. *Gait & Posture*. 2018;60:279–285.
52. Holden MK, Gill KM, Magliozzi MR. Gait assessment for neurologically impaired patients. Standards for outcome assessment. *Phys Ther*. 1986;66(10):1530–1539.
53. Brandstater ME, Gowland C, Clark B. Hemiplegic gait: analysis of temporal variables. *Archives of physical medicine and rehabilitation*. 1983;64(12):583–587.
54. Wall J, Ashburn A. Assessment of gait disability in hemiplegics. Hemiplegic gait. *Scandinavian journal of rehabilitation medicine*. 1979;11 (3):95–103.
55. Olney SJ, Richards C. Hemiparetic gait following stroke. Part I: Characteristics. *Gait & posture*. 1996;4(2):136–148.
56. Corcoran P. Effects of plastic and metal leg braces on speed and energy cost of hemiparetic ambulation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1970; 51:69–77.
57. Lehmann JF, Condon SM, Price R. Gait abnormalities in hemiplegia: their correction by ankle-foot orthoses. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 1987;68(11):763–771.
58. Lee K, Johnston R. Effect of below-knee bracing on knee movement: biomechanical analysis. *Archives of physical medicine and rehabilitation*. 1974;55(4):179.
59. Mattson E. Energy Cost of Level Walking. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation medicine*. 1989;23(23):1–48.
60. Waters RL, et al. Energy-speed relationship of walking: Standard tables. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*. 1988;6(2):215–222.
61. Steffen TM, Hacker TA, Mollinger L. Age- and gender-related test performance in community-dwelling elderly people: Six-Minute Walk Test, Berg Balance Scale, Timed Up & Go Test, and gait speeds. *Phys Ther*. 2002;82(2):128–137.
62. van Iersel MB, et al. Gait velocity and the Timed-Up-and-Go test were sensitive to changes in mobility in frail elderly patients. *J Clin Epidemiol*. 2008;61(2):186–191.
63. Perry J, et al. Classification of walking handicap in the stroke population. *Stroke*. 1995;26(6):982–989.
64. Mangione KK, et al. Predictors of gait speed in patients after hip fracture. *Physiotherapy Canada*. 2008;.
65. Montero-Odasso M, Schapira M. Gait velocity as a single predictor of adverse events in healthy seniors aged 75 years and older. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 2005;60(10):1304–1309.
66. Rabadi MH, Blau A. Admission ambulation velocity predicts length of stay and discharge disposition following stroke in an acute rehabilitation hospital. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2005;19(1):20–26.
67. Salbach NM, et al. Responsiveness and predictability of gait speed and other disability measures in acute stroke. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2001;82(9):1204–1212.
68. Studenski S, Perera S, Wallace D. Physical performance measures in the clinical setting. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2003;51:314–322.
69. Purser JL, et al. Walking speed predicts health status and hospital costs for frail elderly male veterans. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2005;42(4):535–546.
70. Hardy SE, et al. Improvement in usual gait speed predicts better survival in older adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2007;55(11):1727–1734.
71. Toolbox NIH. Assessment of Neurological and Behavioral Function. Available from: http://neuroscienceblueprint.nih.gov/NIH_Toolbox.htm; 2010.
72. Fritz S, Lusardi M. White paper: "walking speed: the sixth vital sign" *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2009;32(2):46–49.
73. Waters RL, et al. Energy-speed relationship of walking: standard tables. *J Orthop Res*. 1988;6(2):215–222.
74. Waters RL, Hilsop HJ, Perry J. Energetics: application of the study and management of locomotor disabilities. *Orthop Clin North Am*. 1978;9.
75. Podsiadlo D, Richardson S. The timed "Up & Go": a test of basic functional mobility for frail elderly persons. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1991;39 (2):142–148.
76. American Geriatric Society. http://stopfalls.org/faqs/american-geriatrics-society. Accessed July 19, 2018.
77. Mathias S, Nayak US, Isaacs B. Balance in elderly patients: the "timed get-up and go" *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1986;6(67):387–389.
78. Posdiadlo D, Richardson S. The "timed up and go"; a test of functional mobility for frail elderly persons. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 2000;48(1):104–105.
79. Bischoff HA, et al. Identifying a cut-off point for normal mobility: a comparison of the timed 'up and go' test in community-dwelling and institutionalised elderly women. *Age Ageing*. 2003;32(3): 315–320.

80. Vereeck L, et al. Clinical assessment of balance: normative data, and gender and age effects. *Int J Audiol*. 2008;47(2):67–75.
81. Pondal M, del Ser T. Normative data and determinants for the timed "up and go" test in a population-based sample of elderly individuals without gait disturbances. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2008;31(2):57–63.
82. Bohannon RW. Reference values for the timed up and go test: a descriptive meta-analysis. *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2006;29(2):64–68.
83. Marchetti GF, et al. Temporal and spatial characteristics of gait during performance of the Dynamic Gait Index in people with and people without balance or vestibular disorders. *Phys Ther*. 2008;88(5): 640–651.
84. Thomas SG. Physical activity and its relationship to physical performance in patients with end stage knee osteoarthritis. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther*. 2003;33(12):745–754.
85. Thompson M. Performance of community dwelling elderly on the timed up and go test. *Phys Occup Ther Geriatr*. 1995;13(3):17–30.
86. Medley A. The effect of assistive devices on the performance of community dwelling elderly on the time up and go test. *Issues Aging*. 1997;20(1):3–7.
87. Matjacic Z. Dynamic balance training during standing in people with transtibial amputation; a pilot study. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2003;27 (3):214–220.
88. Schoppen T. Physical, mental, and social predictors of functional outcome in unilateral lower limb amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2003;84(6):803–811.
89. Ingemarsson AH. Walking ability and activity level after hip fracture in the elderly—a follow-up. *J Rehabil Med*. 2003;35(2):76–83.
90. Crotty M. Patient and caregiver outcomes 12 months after home-based therapy for hip fracture: a randomized controlled trial. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2003;84(8):1237–1239.
91. Campbell CM, Rowse JL, et al. The effect of cognitive demand on timed up and go performance in older adults with and without Parkinson disease. *Journal of Neurologic Physical Therapy*. 2003;27(1):2–7.
92. Morris S, Morris ME, Iansek R. Reliability of measurements obtained with the Timed "Up & Go" test in people with Parkinson disease. *Phys Ther*. 2001;81(2):810–818.
93. Shumway-Cook A, Brauer S, Woollacott M. Predicting the probability for falls in community-dwelling older adults using the Timed Up & Go Test. *Phys Ther*. 2000;80(9):896–903.
94. Hofheinz M, Schusterschitz C. Dual task interference in estimating the risk of falls and measuring change: a comparative, psychometric study of four measurements. *Clin Rehabil*. 2010;24(9):831–842.
95. Hofheinz M, Mibs M. The Prognostic Validity of the Timed Up and Go Test With a Dual Task for Predicting the Risk of Falls in the Elderly. *Gerontol Geriatr Med*. 2016;2:1–5.
96. Shumway-Cook A, et al. Predicting the probability for falls in community-dwelling older adults. *Phys Ther*. 1997;77(8):812–819.
97. McConvey J, Bennett SE. Reliability of the Dynamic Gait Index in individuals with multiple sclerosis. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 2005;86(1):130–133.
98. Hall CD, Schubert MC, Herdman SJ. Prediction of fall risk reduction as measured by Dynamic Gait Index in individuals with unilateral vestibular hypofunction. *Otol Neurotol*. 2004;25:746–751.
99. Whitney S, Wrisley D, Furman J. Concurrent validity of the Berg Balance Scale and the Dynamic Gait Index in people with vestibular dysfunction. *Physiother Res Int*. 2003;8:178–186.
100. Wrisley DM, et al. Reliability, internal consistency, and validity of data obtained with the functional gait assessment. *Phys Ther*. 2004;84(10):906–918.
101. Shumway-Cook A, et al. Expanding the scoring system for the Dynamic Gait Index. *Phys Ther*. 2013;93(11):1493–1506.
102. Matsuda PN, Taylor CS, Shumway-Cook A. Evidence for the validity of the modified dynamic gait index across diagnostic groups. *Phys Ther*. 2014;94(7):996–1004.
103. Holden MK, et al. Clinical gait assessment in the neurologically impaired. *Reliability and meaningfulness Phys Ther*. 1984;64(1): 35–40.
104. Mehrholz J, et al. Predictive validity and responsiveness of the functional ambulation category in hemiparetic patients after stroke. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88(10):1314–1319.
105. Nilsson L, et al. Walking training of patients with hemiparesis at an early stage after stroke: a comparison of walking training on a treadmill with body weight support and walking training on the ground. *Clin Rehabil*. 2001;15(5):515–527.
106. Sanchez-Blanco I, et al. Predictive model of functional independence in stroke patients admitted to a rehabilitation programme. *Clin Rehabil*. 1999;13(6):464–475.
107. Stevenson TJ. Using impairment inventory scores to determine ambulation status in individuals with stroke. *Physiother Can*. 1999;13 (6):168–174.
108. Pellicer MG, et al. Effectiveness of a multimodal exercise rehabilitation program on walking capacity and functionality after a stroke. *J Exerc Rehabil*. 2017;13(6):666–675.
109. Bergmann J, Krewer C, Bauer P, et al. Virtual reality to augment robot-assisted gait training in non-ambulatory patients with a subacute stroke: a pilot randomized controlled trial. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med*. 2018;54(3):397–407.
110. Brock KA, Goldie PA, Greenwood KM. Evaluating the effectiveness of stroke rehabilitation: choosing a discriminative measure. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2002;83(1):92–99.
111. Simondson J, Goldie PA, Greenwood KM. The mobility scale for acute stroke patients: concurrent validity. *Clin Rehabil*. 2003;17(5): 558–563.
112. Wolfson L, Whipple R, Amerman R, et al. Gait assessment in the elderly: a gait abnormality rating scale and its relationship to falls. *J Gerontol*. 1990;45(1):M12–M19.
113. VanSwearingen JM, et al. The modified Gait Abnormality Rating Scale for recognizing the risk of recurrent falls in community-dwelling elderly adults. *Phys Ther*. 1996;76(9):994–1002.
114. Lu X, et al. The reliability, validity and correlation of two observational gait scales assessed by video tape for Chinese subjects with hemiplegia. *J Phys Ther Sci*. 2015;27(12):3717–3721.
115. Vandenberg JM, et al. The modified gait abnormality rating scale in patients with a conversion disorder: a reliability and responsiveness study. *Gait Posture*. 2015;41(1):125–129.
116. Huang WN, VanSwearingen JM, Brach JS. Gait variability in older adults: observational rating validated by comparison with a computerized walkway gold standard. *Phys Ther*. 2008;88 (10):1146–1153.
117. VanSwearingen JM, et al. Assessing recurrent fall risk of community-dwelling, frail older veterans using specific tests of mobility and the physical performance test of function. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 1998;53(6):M457–M464.
118. Shum S-T, et al. Predicting walking function of patients one month poststroke using modified Rivermead mobility index on admission. *Journal of Stroke and Cerebrovascular Diseases*. 2014;23(8): 2117–2121.
119. Duncan PW, et al. Management of adult stroke rehabilitation care: a clinical practice guideline. *Stroke*. 2005;36(9):e100–e143.
120. Lee KB, et al. Six-month functional recovery of stroke patients: a multi-time-point study. *International journal of rehabilitation research Internationale Zeitschrift fur Rehabilitationsforschung Revue internationale de recherches de readaptation*. 2015;38(2):173.
121. Bayona HF, et al. A Simple Bedside Grading Scale Can Effectively Predict Severe Post-stroke Upper-extremity Spasticity. *Am Heart Assoc*. 2017;.
122. Reissman ME, Gordon KE, Dhaher YY. Manipulating post-stroke gait: Exploiting aberrant kinematics. *Journal of biomechanics*. 2018;67:129–136.
123. Moon D, Esquenazi A. Instrumented gait analysis: a tool in the treatment of spastic gait dysfunction. *JBJS reviews*. 2016;4(6).
124. Vachranukunkiet T, Esquenazi A. Pathophysiology of gait disturbance in neurologic disorders and clinical presentations. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation Clinics*. 2013;24(2):233–246.
125. von Schroeder HP, et al. Gait parameters following stroke: a practical assessment. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 1995;32(1):25–31.
126. Mehrholz J, Pohl M, Elsner B. Treadmill training and body weight support for walking after stroke. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. 2014;1.
127. Darekar A, et al. Efficacy of virtual reality-based intervention on balance and mobility disorders post-stroke: a scoping review. *Journal of neuroengineering and rehabilitation*. 2015;12(1):46.
128. Steele KM, Shuman BR, Schwartz MH. Crouch severity is a poor predictor of elevated oxygen consumption in cerebral palsy. *Journal of biomechanics*. 2017;60:170–174.
129. Dreher T, et al. Development of knee function after hamstring lengthening as a part of multilevel surgery in children with spastic diplegia: a long-term outcome study. *JBJS*. 2012;94(2):121–130.
130. Hicks J, et al. The effect of excessive tibial torsion on the capacity of muscles to extend the hip and knee during single-limb stance. *Gait & posture*. 2007;26(4):546–552.
131. Sangeux M, Rodda J, Graham HK. Sagittal gait patterns in cerebral palsy: The plantarflexor–knee extension couple index. *Gait & Posture*. 2015;41(2):586–591.

132. Kläusler M, et al. Long-term follow-up after tibialis anterior tendon shortening in combination with Achilles tendon lengthening in spastic equinus in cerebral palsy. *Gait & Posture*. 2017;58:457–462.
133. Knutsson E, Richards C. Different types of disturbed motor control in gait of hemiparetic patients. *Brain: a journal of neurology*. 1979;102 (2):405–430.
134. Arazpour M, et al. Effect of Orthotic Gait Training with Isocentric Reciprocating Gait Orthosis on Walking in Children with Myelomeningocele. *Topics in spinal cord injury rehabilitation*. 2017;23(2):147–154.
135. Radcliffe CW. Functional considerations in the fitting of above-knee prostheses. *Artif Limbs*. 1955;2(1):35–60.
136. Eberhart H, Elfman H, Inman V. The locomotor mechanism of the amputee. In: *Human Limbs and Their Substitues*. Hafner Press; 1968:472–480.
137. Wilson Jr AB. Recent advances in below-knee prosthetics. *Artificial limbs*. 1969;13(2):1–12.
138. Radcliffe CW, Foort J. *The patellar-tendon-bearing below-knee prosthesis*. Berkeley: Biomechanics Laboratory, Dept. of Engineering, University of California; 1961.
139. Wilson AB. *The prosthetics and orthotics program*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences; 1970.
140. Ayyappa, E., J. Sleeth, and A. Purdy, *Prosthetics Reference Guide*, V. Prosthetics Service Line, Editor. 2005, VAMC - Long Beach, CA: Long Beach, CA.
141. Foort J. The patellar-tendon-bearing prosthesis for below-knee amputees, a review of technique and criteria. *Artif Limbs*. 1965;9 (1):4–13.
142. Goh EY, et al. Reliability and concurrent validity of Four Square Step Test scores in subjects with chronic stroke: a pilot study. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2013;94(7):1306–1311.
143. Fey NP, Klute GK, Neptune RR. Optimization of prosthetic foot stiffness to reduce metabolic cost and intact knee loading during below-knee amputee walking: a theoretical study. *J Biomech Eng*. 2012;134 (11):111005.
144. Doane NE, Holt L. A comparison of the SACH and single axis foot in the gait of unilateral below-knee amputees. *Prosthetics and orthotics international*. 1983;7(1):33–36.
145. Culham E, Peat M, Newell E. Below-knee amputation: a comparison of the effect of the SACH foot and single axis foot on electromyographic patterns during locomotion. *Prosthetics and Orthotics International*. 1986;10(1):15–22.
146. Kendell C, et al. Indicators of dynamic stability in transtibial prosthesis users. *Gait & Posture*. 2010;31(3):375–379.
147. Burgess EM, et al. The Seattle prosthetic foot-A design for active sports: Preliminary studies. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1983;37(1):25–31.
148. McDonald C, et al. Energy expenditure in people with transtibial amputation walking with crossover and energy storing prosthetic feet: A randomized within-subject study. *Gait & Posture*. 2018;62:349–354.
149. Gardiner J, et al. Transtibial amputee gait efficiency: Energy storage and return versus solid ankle cushioned heel prosthetic feet. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research and Development*. 2017;53(6):1133–1138.
150. Silverman AK, Neptune RR. Muscle and prosthesis contributions to amputee walking mechanics: a modeling study. *J Biomech*. 2012;45(13):2271–2278.
151. Rigney SM, Simmons A, Kark L. Mechanical characterization and comparison of energy storage and return prostheses. *Medical Engineering & Physics*. 2017;41:90–96.
152. Fey NP, Klute GK, Neptune RR. The influence of energy storage and return foot stiffness on walking mechanics and muscle activity in below-knee amputees. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2011;26 (10):1025–1032.
153. Adamczyk PG, Kuo AD. Mechanisms of Gait Asymmetry Due to Push-Off Deficiency in Unilateral Amputees. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng*. 2015;23(5):776–785.
154. Adamczyk PG, Roland M, Hahn ME. Sensitivity of biomechanical outcomes to independent variations of hindfoot and forefoot stiffness in foot prostheses. *Hum Mov Sci*. 2017;54:154–171.
155. Mengelkoch LJ, Kahle JT, Highsmith MJ. Energy costs & performance of transtibial amputees & non-amputees during walking & running. *Int J Sports Med*. 2014;35(14):1223–1228.
156. Karimi M, et al. Sound side joint contact forces in below knee amputee gait with an ESAR prosthetic foot. *Gait & posture*. 2017;58:246–251.
157. Boone DA, et al. Perception of socket alignment perturbations in amputees with transtibial prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2012;49(6):843–853.
158. Boone DA, et al. Influence of malalignment on socket reaction moments during gait in amputees with transtibial prostheses. *Gait & Posture*. 2013;37(4):620–626.
159. Kobayashi T, et al. Effect of transtibial prosthesis alignment changes on out-of-plane socket reaction moments during walking in amputees. *J Biomech*. 2012;45(15):2603–2609.
160. California State University, D.H., *Gait Deviations for Transtibial Prosthetic Gait*. Date Unknown.
161. Kim S-B, et al. Relief of knee flexion contracture and gait improvement following adaptive training for an assist device in a transtibial amputee: a case study. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*. 2017;30(2):371–381.
162. Bowker JH, Michael JW, S. American Academy of Orthopaedic. *Atlas of limb prosthetics: surgical, prosthetic, and rehabilitation principles*. Mosby Year Book: St. Louis; 2002.
163. Sinitski EH, et al. Fixed and self-paced treadmill walking for able-bodied and transtibial amputees in a multi-terrain virtual environment. *Gait & Posture*. 2015;41(2):568–573.
164. Schafer ZA, Perry JL, Vanicek N. A personalised exercise programme for individuals with lower limb amputation reduces falls and improves gait biomechanics: A block randomised controlled trial. *Gait & Posture*. 2018;63:282–289.
165. Kobayashi T, et al. Effect of prosthetic alignment changes on socket reaction moment impulse during walking in transtibial amputees. *Journal of biomechanics*. 2014;47(6):1315–1323.
166. Paradisi F, et al. The Conventional Non-Articulated SACH or a Multiaxial Prosthetic Foot for Hypomobile Transtibial Amputees? A Clinical Comparison on Mobility, Balance, and Quality of Life. *Scientific World Journal*. 2015;2015:261801.
167. Blake A, et al. Falls by elderly people at home: prevalence and associated factors. *Age and ageing*. 1988;17(6):365–372.
168. Prevention, C.f.D.C.a. *Important Facts about Falls*. 2017 February 10, 2017 [cited 2018 June 21]; Available from: https://www.cdc.gov/homeandrecreationalsafety/falls/adultfalls.html.
169. De Asha AR, Buckley JG. The effects of walking speed on minimum toe clearance and on the temporal relationship between minimum clearance and peak swing-foot velocity in unilateral trans-tibial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2015;39(2):120–125.
170. Farivar S, Ayyappa E. Time-distance parameters of trans-femoral amputees. In: *Americal Academy of Orthotists and Prosthetists. 23rd Annual Meeting Academy and Scientific Symposium* Fl: Orlando; 1996.
171. James U, Oberg K. Prosthetic gait pattern in unilateral above-knee amputees. *Scandinavian journal of rehabilitation medicine*. 1973;5 (1):35–50.
172. Murray M, et al. Gait patterns in above-knee amputee patients: hydraulic swing control vs constant-friction knee components. *Archives of physical medicine and rehabilitation*. 1983;64(8):339–345.
173. California State University, D.H., *Gait Deviations for Transfemoral Prosthetic Gait*. Date Unknown.
174. Smith DG, Michael JW, Bowker JH. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic and Rehabilitation Principles*. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 2004.
175. Schaarschmidt M, et al. Functional gait asymmetry of unilateral transfemoral amputees. *Hum Mov Sci*. 2012;31(4):907–917.
176. Thiele B, James U, Stålberg E. Neurophysiological studies on muscle function in the stump of above-knee amputees. *Scandinavian journal of rehabilitation medicine*. 1973;5(2):67–70.
177. Bellmann M, et al. Immediate effects of a new microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knee joint: a comparative biomechanical evaluation. *Archives of physical medicine and rehabilitation*. 2012;93 (3):541–549.
178. Okita Y, et al. Kinetic differences between level walking and ramp descent in individuals with unilateral transfemoral amputation using a prosthetic knee without a stance control mechanism. *Gait & Posture*. 2018;63:80–85.
179. Whitehead JMA, et al. Does a microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knee affect stair ascent strategies in persons with transfemoral amputation? *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*. 2014;472 (10):3093–3101.
180. Rabuffetti M, Recalcati M, Ferrarin M. Trans-femoral amputee gait: Socket–pelvis constraints and compensation strategies. *Prosthetics and Orthotics International*. 2005;29(2):183–192.
181. van Keeken HG, et al. Principles of obstacle avoidance with a transfemoral prosthetic limb. *Medical Engineering and Physics*. 2012;34 (8):1109–1116.
182. van Keeken HG, et al. Stabilizing moments of force on a prosthetic knee during stance in the first steps after gait initiation. *Medical Engineering and Physics*. 2012;34(6):733–739.
183. Engineering, N.C.o. *Evaluation of Gait of AK Individuals with Amputation;* 1951.

6 Materials and Technology[☆]

GÉZA F. KOGLER, MICHAEL BRIDGES, JEREMY E. HILLIARD, and KEVIN K. CHUI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Compare and contrast the materials most often used in current orthoses and prostheses.
2. Describe how the basic mechanical properties of commonly used materials determine how they will be used in orthotic and prosthetic devices.
3. Describe the process of, and measures used in, the formulation of a biomechanically appropriate orthotic or prosthetic prescription that will address a patient's functional deficits.
4. Describe how a prosthetist or orthotist determines the appropriate prosthetic or orthotic controls needed for the management of a patient's impairments or functional limitations.
5. Delineate the steps in the fabrication or production of a custom orthosis or prosthesis.
6. Discuss the use of computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM) in the measurement for and fabrication of orthoses and prostheses.
7. Describe the factors influencing the development of central fabrication centers and the manufacture of prefabricated components, orthoses, and prostheses.

A fundamental concept and common goal within the professions of orthotics, prosthetics, and rehabilitation is the restoration of optimal form and function after injury or disease. In many cases, movement and mobility are compromised and the use of orthoses and prostheses can enable improved function. To accept this challenge, the fields of orthotics and prosthetics have evolved into uniquely specialized professions. In addition to training in the basic biologic and medical sciences, orthotists and prosthetists have an understanding of biomechanics, kinesiology, and the material sciences complemented by highly developed technical skills. Knowledge of the physical properties of materials and the techniques to manipulate and use them is essential to the design and fabrication of orthoses and prostheses. The topic is presented here as a general overview so that the rehabilitation clinician can develop a basic understanding of current design and fabrication processes used by orthotists and prosthetists.

Orthotics and Prosthetics in the 20th Century

Orthotics and prosthetics have a rich history of research and development. Many innovative devices have been designed to restore function and provide relief from various medical ailments. Although progress can be documented throughout human history, the most significant contributions to orthotics and prosthetics were made in the 20th century, stimulated by the aftermath of the world wars. Injured veterans who returned home from battle with musculoskeletal and neuromuscular impairments or traumatic amputation dramatically increased the demand for orthotic and prosthetic services. Although World War I stimulated some clinical progress in the two disciplines, notable scientific advancements did not occur until World War II. To improve the quality and performance of assistive devices at the end of World War II, particularly for veterans with amputation, the U.S. government sponsored a series of research and development projects under the auspices of the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) that would forever change the manner in which orthotics and prosthetics would be practiced.[1]

An extensive research effort was initiated by the NAS in late 1945, when a consensus conference revealed that few modern scientific principles or developments had been introduced in prosthetics.[2] Research and educational committees were formed between 1945 and 1976 to advise and work with the research groups. Universities, the Veterans Administration, private industry, and other military research units were subcontracted to conduct various prosthetic research projects. In summarizing the most notable achievements in prosthetics during this period, Wilson[3] cites the development of the total contact transfemoral socket; the quadrilateral socket design and hydraulic swing-phase knee-control units for the transfemoral prosthesis; the patellar tendon–bearing (PTB) transtibial prosthesis; the solid-ankle, cushioned-heel prosthetic foot; several new designs for the Syme prosthesis; and the Canadian hip-disarticulation prosthesis. He also notes the implementation of immediate postsurgical and early fitting as having a significant impact on the rehabilitation process for persons with lower extremity amputation. The most notable improvements in upper extremity prosthetics were the lyre-shaped three-jaw chuck terminal device and more efficient harnessing systems. In addition, modular components and advances in bioengineering have permitted increased use and availability of the myoelectric prosthesis since it was first proposed in 1950.[4]

[☆]The authors thank Mr. Kei Takamura, MSOP, Resident for his assistance with the pictures.

Of the wealth of scientific advances made during this intensive research period, the most important is the greater attention paid to the biomechanics of prosthetic alignment and socket design.[5] According to Wilson,[2] "The introduction of socket designs based on sound biomechanical analyses to take full advantage of the functions and properties of the stump in conjunction with the rationale for alignment undoubtedly represents the greatest achievement in prosthetics since World War II."

Although the focus of the NAS Artificial Limb Program was in prosthetics, it was anticipated that these efforts would also benefit orthotics. A formal research directive in orthotics did not begin until 1960. Biomechanical principles developed for the PTB prosthesis were immediately introduced in orthotics at the Veterans Administration Prosthetic Center, with the PTB orthosis to unload the foot-ankle complex axially.[6] The concept of fracture bracing or cast bracing began at approximately the same time and is now common practice for orthopedic management of fractures.[7,8] Clinical aspects of orthotic practice were also considered; a systematic approach to prescription formulation was established with the development of the technical analysis forms. Nomenclature to describe orthoses and their functions was standardized to identify the body segments they encompassed with the desired biomechanical control mechanisms.[9]

The introduction of new materials led to further advances in the field shortly after World War II. The use of thermosetting plastics in prosthetics permitted the development of the suction socket suspension system.[10] Transparent plastics offered a new approach to diagnostic and fitting evaluation techniques, such as the transparent prosthetic socket (test socket) and the transparent face mask for patients with thermal injuries. In orthotics, the addition of thermoplastics led to numerous innovative designs of ankle-foot orthoses (AFOs) in the 1960s and 1970s. The custom plastic AFO was an important technologic advance in lower extremity orthotics. The physical characteristics of thermoformable plastics allowed biomechanical controls to match the prescription for improved function. The mechanical properties of an orthosis could be controlled by the layout of the trimlines of a device or structural reinforcements through specially placed corrugations that could be incorporated into its surface geometry. Advances have been steady in the area of material engineering and continue to have an impact on orthotics and prosthetics. Numerous prosthetic feet have been introduced as elite athletes demand increased performance capabilities from their prosthetic components. Innovative designs for some prosthetic feet have been possible in part because of the diversity of carbon composite technology complemented by sound engineering design.

The development of computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM) systems for orthotics and prosthetics, which began in the 1970s, was another major technologic advance, considering the long tradition of custom hand-crafted devices in the profession. In the late 1980s and early 1990s, as computers became more economical, facilities began to integrate CAD/CAM systems into their practices. CAD/CAM systems have now been designed for most orthotic and prosthetic applications, often with specialized digitizers, scanners, and milling equipment to accommodate the unique needs of a particular device. The current trend within the profession is that orthotists and prosthetists use the CAD portion to digitize and manipulate the data, then subcontract the production of a device from a central fabrication company for the CAM portion. The art and workmanship that have distinguished the orthotists and prosthetists from other health professionals for most of the 20th century continue to evolve as CAD/CAM technologies improve the design, manufacture, and diagnostic aspects of the field.

Orthotics and prosthetics have played an important historical role in the development of medical and surgical orthopedics and rehabilitation. Fundamental concepts that evolved from orthotic and prosthetic advancements are now basic principles in rehabilitation. Orthotics and prosthetics have evolved as sister professions because the technical skills and knowledge base to prescribe, fabricate, and fit the respective mechanical devices are similar. Because of this, material and technologic advancements have been shared between these two rehabilitation specialties.

Materials

In the first part of the 20th century, orthoses were constructed primarily of metal, leather, and fabric, and prostheses were manufactured from wood and leather. In the last 60 years, however, tremendous technologic advancements have been made in the material sciences. The demand for strong and lightweight components in the aerospace and marine industries has produced a variety of new materials that possess mechanical properties suitable for use in the construction of orthoses and prostheses. New plastics have led to revolutionary advancements in the profession, permitting increased durability and strength and significant cosmetic improvements. Although a multitude of materials are currently available, traditional ones are still in wide use; material selection depends in part on the individual needs of each patient. In a rehabilitation team setting, the orthotist and prosthetist are responsible for choosing the appropriate materials and components for fabrication because their experience and training are specialized in this area.

This chapter presents an overview of the general types of materials used in orthotics and prosthetics for rehabilitation professionals. Publications by the American Society for Testing and Materials contain specific technical information.[11] Industry standards established by the International Organization for Standardization for consumer and patient protection give the strength requirements for orthotic and prosthetic components.[12]

The types of materials used most commonly in current orthotic and prosthetic practice include leather, metal, wood, thermoplastic and thermosetting materials, foamed plastics, and viscoelastic polymers. In deciding which materials are most appropriate for a patient, the orthotist or prosthetist considers the five important characteristics of materials: strength, stiffness, durability, density, and corrosion resistance.

A material's strength is determined by the maximum external load that the material can support or sustain. Strength is especially important in lower limb devices, in which loading forces associated with gait can be very high, or when heavy use of the orthotic or prosthetic device is

anticipated. Materials may have higher strength in different loading scenarios. Some materials may be more effective under tensile load while others may be better under compressive loads.

Stiffness is a measure of the resistance of the material to relative atomic separation. This measurement, named the Young modulus, is larger when materials are stiffer and is related to the amount of force that is required to displace the atomic structure of the material.[13] The stiffer a material, the less flexible it is and the less likely that deformation will occur during wear. When significant external stability is desirable (e.g., in a fracture brace or a rigid prosthetic frame), a stiff material is often chosen. When conformation to body segments is necessary (e.g., in a posterior leaf-spring AFO or a flexible transfemoral prosthetic socket), a more flexible material is used.

Durability (fatigue resistance) of a material is determined by its ability to withstand repeated cycles of loading or unloading during functional activities. Repeated loading compromises the material's strength and increases risk of failure or fracture of the material. Fatigue resistance is especially problematic in the interface of materials with different characteristics.

Density is the material's weight per unit of volume, a prime determinant of energy cost during functional activities while a patient wears a prosthetic or orthotic device. Although the goal is to provide as lightweight a device as possible, strength, durability, and fatigue resistance needs may necessitate a denser material.

Corrosion resistance is the degree to which the material is susceptible to chemical degradation. Corrosion may occur in a number of ways when a liquid reacts with a solid. In general, the surrounding liquid interacts with the bonds of the solid which in turn weakens the solid.[13] Many of the materials used for orthoses or prostheses retain heat, making perspiration a problem. For some patients who require lower extremity devices, incontinence may also be a concern related to the urine interacting with the various materials of the prosthesis. Materials that are impervious to moisture are easier to clean than porous materials.

The ease of fabrication is another important consideration for materials. Certain materials can be easily molded or adjusted for a custom fit; others require special equipment or techniques to shape the material.

LEATHER

Leather is manufactured from the skin and hides of various animals. Tanning methods and the type of hide determine the final characteristics of the leather. As an interface material for an orthosis or a prosthesis, vegetable-tanned leather is used to protect the skin from irritation. Chrome-tanned leather is used for supportive purposes when strength and resiliency are needed. Additional chemical processes can be incorporated during manufacturing to produce leathers that are waterproof, porous, flexible, or stiff. Useful qualities of leather include its dimensional stability, porosity, and water vapor permeability.[14] These features have made leather a frequently used material within orthopedics, and it continues to be a material of choice in many current devices. Currently, leather is used for supportive components such as suspension straps, belts, and limb cuffs. Leather is also used to cover metallic structures such as pelvic, thigh, and calf bands. For foot orthoses and shoe modifications, leather is often preferred over synthetic substitutes because of its superior "breathability" characteristics.

Another important attribute of leather is its moldability. Although numerous techniques are available to mold leather, the most common one in orthotics and prosthetics is to stretch it over a plaster cast after it has been mulled (dampened or soaked) in water. When the water evaporates from the molded leather, its dried shape is maintained, and the leather can be trimmed to the desired dimensions. To increase strength and durability, leather can be reinforced by lamination with plastics or other leathers. Similarly, if padding is desired over bony regions of the body, foamed plastics or felt can be sandwiched between layers of leather for comfort or to distribute applied forces over a larger surface area. Three basic skills are required for crafting orthotic or prosthetic components of leather: cutting, sewing, and molding. A technique specific to leather work is that of skiving, or thinning the edge on the flesh side of the hide. Finishing methods such as these contribute to the final appearance of the leather work and the device.

METALS

The types of metal used in the fabrication of orthoses and prostheses can be categorized into three groups: steel and its alloys, aluminum, and titanium or magnesium alloys. These metals may or may not share similar characteristics. If metals are incorporated into an orthosis or prosthesis, the choice of metal is determined by the needs and preferences of the particular patient.

Steel

The general term *steel* refers to any iron-based alloy material. Carbon alloys have carbon added to the iron ore. The term *alloy steel* is used when other materials are included in the material manufacture. Alloy steels are further defined as low-alloy or high-alloy steels. Steels are strong, rigid, ductile, and durable, but their high density (weight) and susceptibility to corrosion are major disadvantages. Many different types of steel are available to meet various engineering needs. To assist in identifying the composition and type of material, the American Iron Steel Institute–Society of Automotive Engineers has established a four-digit numbering system. The first two digits in the number indicate the type of steel, and the last two digits identify the carbon content. For alloy steels, the first digit identifies the major alloy and the second digit indicates the percentage of the major alloying element.

The carbon content of steel is the major determinant of its ductility and yield strength characteristics. Yield strength is the point where the amount of stress applied to a material corresponds with that material's elastic limit, the point where any extra load plastically changes the material and it will not return to its original shape.[13] Ductility is the property of a material to deform in the inelastic or plastic range under load before failing. Low carbon content (0.05%–0.10%) produces high ductility and a low yield strength.[15] As the carbon concentration increases, yield strength increases and ductility is reduced. Heat treatments can alter the properties of carbon steel by increasing yield strength

and reducing ductility. The mechanical properties of low-alloy steels fall between those of carbon steels and high-alloy steels. High strength/weight ratios are possible with the high-alloy steels, an important characteristic for repetitive loading situations. These types of steels are used for some orthotic and prosthetic joint components. High-alloy steels are not very resistant to corrosion and are often more difficult to fabricate.

Stainless steel is a steel alloy that contains 12% or more of chromium, a material that increases resistance to corrosion and oxidation. Chromium produces a light oxide film on the surface that deters deterioration of the base metal. Because durability and protection from corrosion are highly desirable, stainless steels are used extensively within orthotics and prosthetics to enhance longevity of devices. Two types of stainless steel, martensitic steel and ferritic steel, have chromium as the predominant alloying element, but martensitic steel is the only one used in orthotics and prosthetics because it can be hardened by heat treatment. Stainless steel is used for orthotic and prosthetic joints, support uprights, and band material.

Aluminum

Aluminum alloys are well suited for orthotics and prosthetics because of their high strength/weight ratio and resistance to corrosion. As with steels, the properties of aluminum depend on alloying compositions, heat treatments, and cold working. *Wrought* and *cast* are terms used to describe the two ways to produce aluminum devices. Wrought metals are hot or cold worked, meaning they are formed using tools like a large roller, a stamp, or even a hammer around a mold.[13] The shape of the piece is mechanically formed from the outside force of the forming device. Casting is a process where liquid metal is poured into a mold, oftentimes made out of sand, and the final device takes the shape of the mold. Alloys are further subdivided into those that are heat treatable and those that are not. The low ductility and low strength of cast aluminum are ideal for prefabricated prosthetic components and in some assemblies for moving parts.

Wrought aluminum alloys are used in orthotics and prosthetics for structural purposes such as prosthetic pylons, orthotic uprights, and upper extremity devices. The high-compression bending stresses of lower extremity prosthetics are well suited to the use of wrought aluminum alloys.

Although aluminum alloys are very resistant to atmospheric and some chemical corrosion, the acids and alkalis in urine, perspiration, and other bodily fluids deteriorate the natural protective oxides on the material's surface, making the aluminum susceptible to corrosion. To deter corrosion in aluminum and to resist abrasive wear, various hard coatings, such as anodic or oxide finishes, can be applied. Mechanical finishes, such as polishing, buffing, and sandblasting, offer attractive cosmetic appearances for devices.

Titanium and Magnesium

Components made of titanium alloys have become more prevalent in prosthetics but are rarely used in orthotics. Although titanium alloys are stronger than those of aluminum and have comparable strength to some steels, their density is 60% that of steel.[16] Because prosthetic components made of titanium are lighter in weight than steel counterparts, they require less energy expenditure by the patient during use. Titanium alloys are also more resistant to corrosion than are aluminum and steel. However, it is important to note that titanium alloys are often more difficult to machine and fabricate. Consequently, titanium is most often used in prefabricated prosthetic components, when strength and light weight are of concern. Titanium is also more expensive than aluminum and steel, which has been a limiting factor for its use.

Magnesium alloys are lighter than those of aluminum and titanium, are corrosion resistant, and have a lower modulus of elasticity than does aluminum. The modulus of elasticity (Young modulus) is defined as the ratio of unit stress to unit strain in a stress-strain curve's elastic range; materials with low modulus values are associated with lower rates of fatigue under conditions of repeated stress. Although some of these features are promising, magnesium alloys have not yet been widely used in orthoses and prostheses.

WOOD

Wood possesses many desirable characteristics for use in prosthetics. Its wide availability, strength, light weight, and ability to be shaped easily have continued to be of benefit in prosthetic socket and component construction, even with the introduction of thermoplastics. The wood used in prosthetics must be properly cured, free of knots, and relatively strong. Yellow poplar, willow, basswood (linden), and balsa are most commonly used. Hardwoods have been reserved for prosthetic applications in which structural strength is essential, most often in certain types of prosthetic feet or as reinforcement for knee units. The keel prosthetic foot is fabricated of maple and hickory. The solid-ankle, cushioned-heel prosthetic foot has a hardwood keel that is bolted to the prosthetic shank, creating a solid structural unit for standing and ambulation.

PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

One of the most important production-related characteristics of an orthotic or prosthetic material is its ability to be molded over a positive model. Because plastics can be readily formed, they are a very popular, widely used material for orthoses and prostheses. Plastics are grouped into two categories: thermoplastics and thermosetting materials.[17–19]

Thermoplastics

Thermoplastic materials are formable when they are heated but become rigid after they have cooled. Thermoplastics are classified as either low-temperature or high-temperature materials, depending on the temperature range at which they become malleable. Low-temperature thermoplastics become moldable at temperatures less than 149°C and can often be molded directly on the patient's limb, whereas high-temperature materials require heating to much higher temperatures and must be molded over a positive model of the patient's limb.[18] One advantage of thermoplastic materials is that they can be reheated and shaped multiple times, making possible minor adjustments of an orthosis or prosthesis during fittings. Thermoplastics are the material of choice for "shell" designs in which structural strength is

required. Some of the more popular materials used are acrylic, copolymer, polyethylene, polypropylene, polystyrene, and a variety of vinyls.

Certain low-temperature thermoplastics, those moldable at temperatures less than 80°C, can be applied and shaped directly to the body. Some of the most commonly available materials include Kydex (Kleerdex, Aiken, SC), Orthoplast (Johnson & Johnson, Raynham, MA), and Polysar (Bayer, Pittsburgh, PA). These materials are most often reserved for orthotic devices that are designed to provide temporary support and protection. Their susceptibility to repetitive stress, high loads, and temperature changes usually limits their use to spinal and upper extremity orthoses. Because these devices are molded directly on the patient, no casting is necessary, and the time required from measurement to finished product is greatly reduced. Another important convenience of low-temperature thermoplastic materials is that no special equipment is required; hot water heated in an electric frying pan, a heat gun, and sharp scissors are all that are necessary to produce a functional splint or orthosis.

High-temperature plastics are frequently used in the production of orthotics and prosthetics. The most commonly used materials include polyethylene, polypropylene, polycarbonate, acrylic, acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS), acrylics, polyvinyl acetate, polyvinyl chloride, and polyvinyl alcohol.

Polypropylene is a rigid plastic material that is relatively inexpensive, lightweight, and easy to thermoform. Polypropylenes, which can be further characterized as homopolymers or copolymers, are one of the most widely used plastics in orthotics. The material has a white, opaque color and is available in sheets of various thicknesses, from 1 mm to 1 cm. Polypropylene is impact resistant and can endure several million cycles of repetitive flexes. This attribute has been extremely useful in orthotics for hinge joints and spring assists in AFOs. However, the material is susceptible to ultraviolet light and extreme cold and is sensitive to scratches and nicks. In prosthetics, the light weight of polypropylene makes it ideal for components such as sockets, pelvic bands, hip joints, or knee joints. Polypropylene is commonly used for prefabricated AFOs and preformed modular orthotic systems.

The long fatigue life of polyethylene during repeated loading situations makes this material suitable for a number of orthotic and prosthetic applications. Prosthetic sockets, orthotic hinge joint components, and compression shells for clamshell design orthoses are common uses of polyethylene plastics. Several densities of polyethylene are available from various manufacturers. Low-density polyethylene is used for upper extremity and spinal orthoses under the trade names Vitrathene (Stanley Smith & Co, Ltd, Isleworth, UK) and Streifen (FG Streifeneder KG, Munich, Germany). High-density polyethylene, Subortholen (Wilhelm Julius Teufel GmbH, Stuttgart, Germany), is used for spinal and lower extremity orthoses. The ultra-high-density polyethylenes such as Ortholen (Wilhelm Julius Teufel) are used principally for lower extremity orthoses.

Thermoforming. Thermoforming is one of the most common techniques used in orthotic and prosthetic laboratories to fabricate the "user" interface components of a device (e.g., prosthetic socket, AFO). The process of thermoforming entails heating a sheet of thermoplastic material in an oven until it has reached its "plastic" state (i.e., ability to distort) and then forcing the material over a prescribed shape (i.e., positive mold) under pressure until it has cooled. Negative air pressure or vacuum is the typical method used to apply pressure and form the plastic over the mold, hence the terms "vacuum-form" are also used to describe the process. Once the plastic has cooled and returned to its solid state, the perimeter of the formed components is determined and trimmed out. The edges of the plastic are then finished on specialized grinding machines that have a diverse set of abrasive sanding and buffing cone options that are used to achieve a high-polish smoothed edge.

Thermosetting Materials

Thermosets are plastics that are applied over a positive model in liquid form and then chemically "cured" to solidify and maintain a desired shape. To enhance their structural properties, thermosets are often impregnated into various fabrics by a process of lamination. Although this group of plastics has inherent structural stability, their rigidity precludes modification by heat molding; their shape can only be changed by grinding. Thermosetting plastics cannot be reheated without destroying their physical properties. Some of the most common thermoset resins used to produce rigid orthoses are acrylic, polyester, and epoxy. Because acrylic resins are strong, lightweight, and somewhat pliable, they offer a different set of characteristics than those of polyester resins. With lamination, acrylic resin can create a thin but strong structural wall for a prosthetic socket or component of an orthosis. However, if frequent adjustments are anticipated, thermoforming plastics are chosen instead because thermoset cannot be heated to make adjustments to their shape.

Composites. Composites are the combination of two or more materials with distinctly different physical or chemical properties that together produce a material with enhanced performance characteristics relative to their material properties as a single substance. Numerous types of composites exist under this broad descriptive term, ranging from natural materials such as wood to manmade materials such as concrete. This chapter focuses on the combination of fibers and matrices associated with thermosetting plastics.

Fiber-reinforced plastics (FRPs), also referred to as *composites*, have revolutionized orthotics and prosthetics, primarily because they can be engineered to have mechanical properties with strength characteristics optimized for specific types of loading situations, thereby greatly improving the functionality of many types of orthoses and prostheses. The mechanical properties of reinforcement fibers, for the most part, dictate the mechanical properties of a composite through the orientation and position of the fibers. In general, FRPs offer high strength and stiffness qualities yet are also capable of incurring compressive or flexural stresses. Plastics can also be reinforced with other fillers, particulates, and short or chopped fibers, but FRPs are most widely used. This section focuses on fiber reinforcement for thermosets.

Polymer composites are made of a binder material (i.e., resin), referred to as the *matrix*, which is reinforced with fibers to improve strength and stiffness. The matrix of a

composite encapsulates the fibers to maintain their desired orientation and position and ensure that load sharing of fibers is well distributed through the material. The volume fraction of resin to fiber is an important determinant of the mechanical properties of a composite and its performance. In general, the volume of fiber should be higher than the volume of resin matrix. A fiber volume fraction that approaches 90.7% with a matrix volume fraction of 9.3% is considered an ideal ratio.[20]

By comparison, the fibers in composite materials are stronger than the matrix material and can handle stresses applied to them better than the weaker matrix material. Typical fiber reinforcements used in polymer composites are fiberglass, carbon/graphite, and Kevlar aramid fibers (DuPont, Wilmington, DE). Grades of different fiberglass include E, C, and S glass, which stand for electrical (E), chemical (C), and strength (S), respectively. S glass has a higher tensile strength than E and C glass. Carbon fiber is widely used in orthoses and prostheses having strength properties greater than steel while also being lightweight and very stiff. Carbon fiber has superior stiffness properties in both compression and tension but, because it has relatively low impact strength, it is often combined with other reinforcement fibers like fiberglass or Kevlar to improve its performance. Aramid fibers (e.g., Kevlar) have tensile strength properties that are five times greater than steel for the same weight.

Laminar composites or laminates are fabricated out of "continuous fibers" that may extend the length of a given part and are one of the most common FRPs used in orthotics and prosthetics. Continuous fiber reinforcements can be woven into the form of a fabric in many different weave patterns. By combining different types of fiber fabrics (e.g., carbon graphite, Kevlar) and stacking these plies into layers, the resultant laminate can possess properties for particular modes of loading. When engineering laminates for orthoses and prostheses, the practitioner or technician must understand the manner in which loads will be transmitted through a device so that appropriate layering and orientation of plies will be incorporated into the composite to meet its functional performance duties. A laminate code system is used to describe the direction and ply layer with the longer dimension of the laminate serving as the x-axis and the width serving as the y-axis. A fiber orientation angle is used to describe the orientation of plies with respect to the x-axis, which is designated as 0 degree. A laminate code describes the sequencing of each layer from top to bottom. An example of a laminate code where the top ply is 0 degree followed by subsequent plies oriented respectively at 45, 90, 45 degrees, with the bottom ply at 0 degree would be written as follows: $[0/45/90]_2$. Brackets define the code's beginning and end, and the subscript indicates the adjacent plies are oriented the same, which is essentially one half of the ply description. The purpose of having a variety of different fiber orientation angles in composite laminates is that the load can be carried through the fibers in a number of different positions. For example, if the fibers were only oriented in one direction, then structural loading of the material at a different angle could result in a failure. Therefore multidirectional laminates have the capacity to endure loads in an orthotic and prosthetic device in variety of positions.

Processing Technologies and Composite Fabrication. Orthotic and prosthetic devices often are a compilation of custom-molded interface shell components combined with additional premanufactured parts (e.g., prosthetic foot, pylon). Practitioners and their technical staff have the capability to fabricate the human interface portions of a device within their laboratories, although the processes and equipment in their labs are limited to only a few techniques. Manufacturers on the other hand have the capacity to consider a much wider variety of processing techniques for mass producing composite parts and thus take advantage of processing technologies that can maximize the performance potential of the material.

The most common method for processing FPR composites in orthotic prosthetic laboratories is a contact molding technique called a "vacuum bag" lamination. The technique is relatively simple and does not require any specialized equipment. A flexible membrane bag of plastic is tightly stretched over the positive mold part and sealed; then negative air pressure (i.e., vacuum) is applied between the bag and the mold, drawing the bag tightly to the surface of the mold. A hand layup of fiber cloth is placed on the mold in a predetermined manner with regard to the orientation and position of the fibers with an understanding of how loads will be transmitted through the structure when it is incorporated into a device. After the desired layup of fiber and cloth is achieved, a second flexible membrane bag is pulled over the mold, creating an enclosure that can accommodate the wet liquid resin (matrix) part of the composite. After the resin is poured into an opening of the second bag and sealed, vacuum inside the enclosure draws the outer bag toward the mold, pressing the resin through the fiber in a uniform manner to create a thin-walled structure of composite that has a high fiber-to-resin ratio. If the atmospheric pressure that presses on the outside bag is not adequate to achieve the desired fiber-to-resin ratio, then the vacuum bag mold construct can be placed into an autoclave to create higher pressures on the external bag. Because most orthotic prosthetic laboratories do not have autoclaves for such procedures, central fabrication laboratories equipped with such equipment are being used to a greater extent to maximize the benefits of pressure processing in composites.

Foamed Plastics

Foamed plastics can be used as a protective interface between the orthotic or prosthetic and the skin, especially over areas that are vulnerable to pressure, such as bony prominences. Foamed plastics are grouped into two classes: open and closed cell. Cells are created in rubber or polymers in a high-pressure gassing process.[18] The microcell structure allows the foamed plastic material to be displaced in several planes, which is an ideal physical property for the reduction of shear forces. In an open-cell foam, the cells are interrelated (as in a kitchen sponge); in a closed-cell foam, the cells are separate from each other. Because closed-cell foams are impervious to liquids, they are less likely to absorb body fluids such as perspiration or urine; however, they do act as insulators and can be hot when worn for extended periods.

An orthopedic grade of polyethylene foam was introduced in the 1960s by a British subsidiary of the Union Carbide Company.[21] These closed-cell foams are available

in a wide array of durometer hardness. (*Durometer* refers to a spring indenture post instrument that is used to measure the resistance to the compression/hardness of a material.) Polyethylene foams are commercially available under trade names such as Plastazote (Hackettstown, NJ), Pe-Lite, Evazote (Bakelite Xylonite Ltd., Croydon, UK), and Aliplast (Alimed Inc., Dedham, MA). Various polyethylene foams are used in the manufacture of soft and rigid orthoses, depending on the density of the material. Plastazote is a low-temperature, heat-formable foam that has been used successfully in the treatment and prevention of neuropathic foot lesions.[22–25] Its light weight and forgiving quality to bony prominences make it a desirable interface for the insensate foot. See Hertzman[22] for a complete review of the use of Plastazote in lower limb orthotics and prosthetics.

Closed-cell foams are also made with synthetic rubber or polychloroprene. Neoprene is available in various densities, making the low-durometer versions suitable as liners for orthoses, whereas the firmer materials are used for posts or soling for shoes. Spenco (Spenco Medical Corp., Waco, TX) is a microcellular neoprene foam that reduces shear forces to the foot's plantar surface and the occurrence of foot blisters in athletes.[26] The nylon (polyamide)-covered neoprene acts as a shock absorber while also reducing friction on the foot's plantar surface.[21] Although few of these materials are heat moldable, most can be conformed without difficulty to the shallow contours of foot orthoses. Lynco (Apex Foot Health Industries, Teaneck, NJ) is an open-cell neoprene foam that dissipates heat more efficiently than its closed-cell cousin; however, it does not attenuate shock as well as Spenco.[21]

Polyurethane open-cell foams are alternatives for top covers for foot orthoses. They provide good shock absorption and dissipate heat well. Some of the commercially available open-cell polyurethane foams include Poron (Rogers Corporation, Rogers, CT), PPT (Professional Protective Technology, Deer Park, NY), and Vylite (Steins Foot Specialties, Newark, NJ).

Several studies that compare materials used to fabricate orthoses have been conducted.[27–33] In 1982, Campbell and colleagues[27] conducted compression tests on 31 materials to determine their suitability for insoles in shoes. Materials were classified according to stiffness into the categories "very stiff," "moderately deformable," and "highly deformable." The moderately deformable group of plastics, which included 19 of the tested foamed plastics, was deemed the most beneficial as an insole material. Campbell and colleagues[27] concluded that these materials could relieve stress from bony prominences and transfer the loads to the adjacent soft tissues more effectively than could the very stiff or highly deformable materials. Studies evaluating shoe insole materials also report them to be effective at attenuating shock during walking in various ways.[33]

Viscoelastic Polymers

A viscoelastic solid is a material that possesses the characteristics of stress relaxation and creep. Stress relaxation occurs when a material that is subjected to a constant deformation requires a decreasing load with time to maintain a steady state.[34] Creep refers to the increase in deformation with time to a steady state as a constant load is applied.[34] Sorbothane (Sorbothane, Inc., Kent, OH), widely used as an insole material, is made of a noncellular polyurethane derivative that possesses good shock-attenuating characteristics.[34] Viscolas (Viscolas Corp., Soddy Daisy, TN), another type of viscoelastic solid, has been found to attenuate skeletal shock at heel strike in the tibia to half the normal load.[15,35] Two other viscoelastic polymers used to fabricate orthotic prosthetic components are Viscolite (Polymer Dynamics, Inc., Allentown, PA) and PQ (Riecken's Orthotic Laboratories, Evansville, IN).

Prescription Guidelines

The formulation of a prescription for an orthosis or prosthesis greatly influences the potential functional outcome for the patient. It is critical that rehabilitation objectives and design criteria be carefully considered. Physicians, physical and occupational therapists, orthotists, and prosthetists who are involved in developing a prescription for an orthotic or prosthetic device must have a sound understanding of orthotics and prosthetics to be successful in effectively treating patients with these devices, although there is currently a degree of variability regarding best practice guidelines in the literature.[36]

Assessment of functional deficit includes a thorough evaluation of the patient's present physical status, including muscle strength testing, range of motion measures, and documentation of other physical impairments that would affect the fit or performance of the device. Equally important to the physical examination is the consideration of any individual needs of the patient and an understanding of how the treatment will affect daily activities and the patient's ability to navigate the home environment. Included in these considerations must be an individual's ability to don and doff an orthosis or prosthesis and any related components.[37,38] To increase the success of treatment, the patient and other rehabilitation team members must reach a consensus on the type of device and the associated training and education required for optimal functional outcome.

ORTHOTIC PRESCRIPTION

The Committee on Prosthetics and Orthotics of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons developed a technical analysis form to standardize the process of patient evaluation. This evaluation protocol documents the biomechanical deficits of the patient and provides the basic information needed for orthotic prescription formulation. This systematic approach has two major objectives: to define the anatomic segments that the orthosis will encompass and to accurately describe the biomechanical controls needed for treatment. The underlying principle of this assessment is that orthoses should be designed to control only those movements considered abnormal while permitting free motion in anatomic segments that are not impaired.

Technical analysis forms were developed for three general regions of the body: the upper limb, lower limb, and spine. The forms are four pages long with the same basic approach for formulating an orthotic prescription. The first page has sections for recording general patient information and noting major physical impairments (Fig. 6.1). The major

Technical Analysis Form **Lower Limb** **Revised March 1973**

Name _____ No. _____ Age _____ Sex _____

Date of onset _____ Cause _____

Occupation _____ Present lower-limb equipment _____

Diagnosis _____

_____

_____

Ambulatory ☐ Nonambulatory ☐

Major impairments:

A. Skeletal
1. Bone and joints: Normal ☐ Abnormal _____
2. Ligaments: Normal ☐ Abnormal ☐ Knee: AC ☐ PC ☐ MC ☐ LC ☐
Ankle: MC ☐ LC ☐
3. Extremity shortening: None ☐ Left ☐ Right ☐
Amount of discrepancy: ASIS-Heel _____ ASIS-MTP _____ MTP-Heel _____

B. Sensation: Normal ☐ Abnormal ☐
1. Anesthesia ☐ Hypesthesia ☐ Location: _____
Protective sensation: Retained ☐ Lost ☐
2. Pain ☐ Location: _____

C. Skin: Normal ☐ Abnormal: _____

D. Vascular: Normal ☐ Abnormal ☐ Right ☐ Left ☐

E. Balance: Normal ☐ Impaired ☐ Support: _____

F. Gait deviations: _____

_____

G. Other impairments: _____

Legend

= Direction of translatory motion

60° = Abnormal degree of rotary motion

30° 1 cm. = Fixed position

= Fracture

Volitional force (V)
N = Normal
G = Good
F = Fair
P = Poor
T = Trace
Z = Zero

Hypertonic muscle (H)
N = Normal
M = Mild
Mo = Moderate
S = Severe

Proprioception (P)
N = Normal
I = Impaired
A = Absent

D = Local distension or enlargement

= Pseudarthrosis

= Absence of segment

Fig. 6.1 The technical analysis form provides a systematic method of data collection for the development of prescriptions for lower extremity orthoses. The first page of the form is used to record the patient's history and current impairments. *AC,* Anterior cruciate ligament; *ASIS,* anterior superior iliac spine; *LC,* lateral collateral ligament; *MC,* medial collateral ligament; *MTP,* medial tibial plateau; *PC,* posterior cruciate ligament. (From Committee on Prosthetics Research and Development. *Report of the Seventh Workshop Panel on Lower Extremity Orthoses of the Subcommittee on Design and Development.* Washington, DC: National Research Council–National Academy of Sciences; 1970; and McCollough NC III. Biomechanical analysis systems for orthotic prescription. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Orthotics: Biomechanical Principles and Application.* 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:35–75.)

impairment section characterizes any functional limitations, such as skeletal structure, sensation, or joint contracture. This information provides an overview of the patient's clinical presentation.

The second and third pages of the technical analysis form (Fig. 6.2) contain diagrams of the respective anatomic (limb or trunk) segments for which an orthotic prescription is being considered. Each skeletal region is represented in

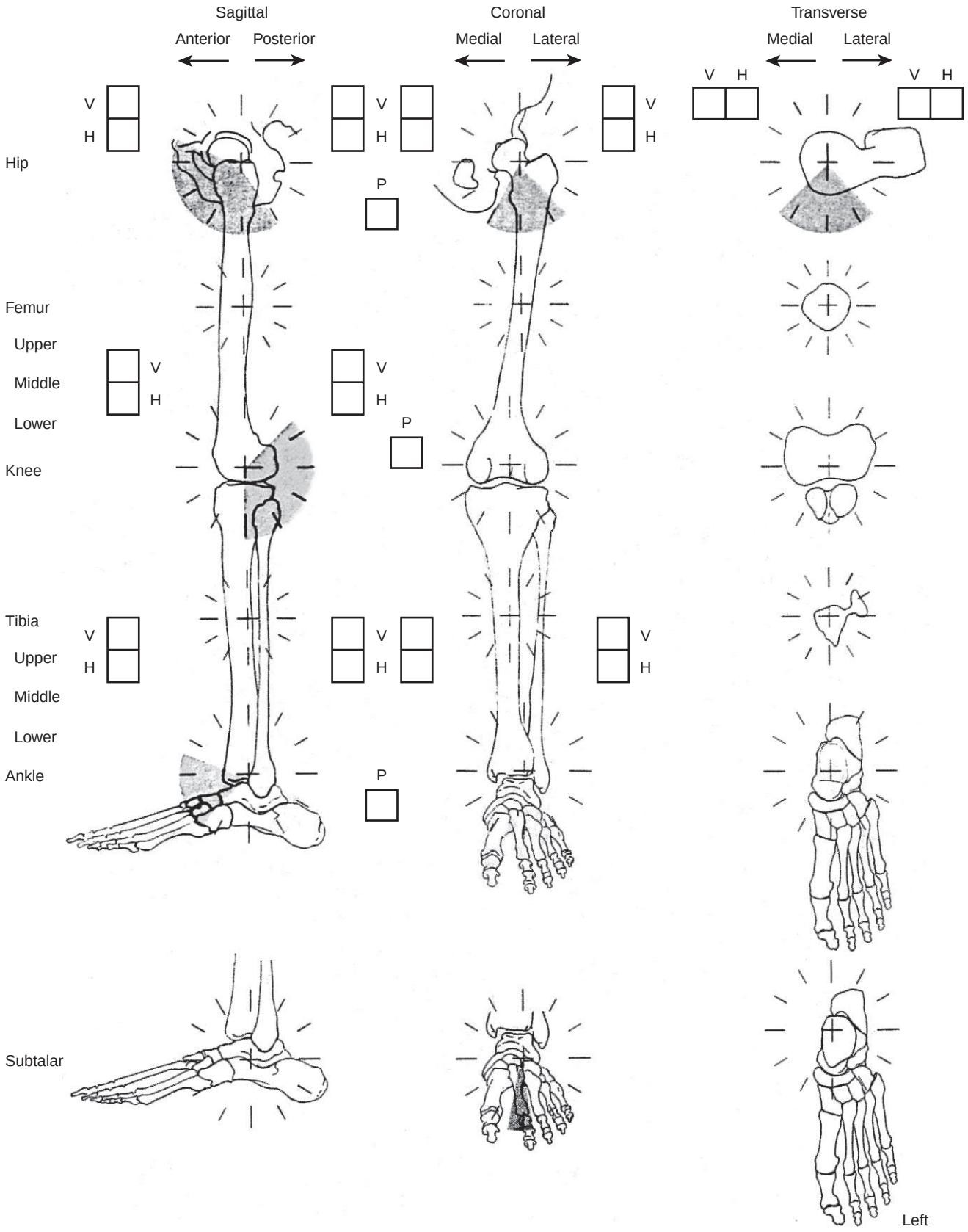


Fig. 6.2 Subsequent pages of the technical analysis form are used to detail characteristics of each limb or body segment for which the orthosis or prosthesis will be made. Information recorded on these pages includes existing deformity, proprioceptive capacity (P), restriction or hypermobility of joint rotary and translatory range of motion in all three planes of movement, volitional strength (V), and the level of hypertonicity (H). (From Committee on Prosthetics Research and Development. *Report of the Seventh Workshop Panel on Lower Extremity Orthoses of the Subcommittee on Design and Development*. Washington, DC: National Research Council–National Academy of Sciences; 1970; and McCollough NC III. Biomechanical analysis systems for orthotic prescription. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Orthotics: Biomechanical Principles and Application*. 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:35–75.)

three planes of motion: coronal, sagittal, and transverse. On either side of the figures, square boxes at the level of the joints are used to note volitional force, hypertonicity, proprioception, and range of motion. The fourth page consists of a summary of the functional disability, treatment objectives, orthotic recommendation, and a key for the biomechanical controls of function.

Voluntary movements of muscles are assessed by conventional muscle testing techniques. Muscle strength can be recorded with either the standard descriptive or numeric muscle grading systems, depending on regional preferences.

Two types of joint (limb) motion are recorded on the forms: rotary and translatory. According to McCollough,[39] all points of the distal segment move in the same direction, following the same path shape and distance during translatory motion. During rotary motion, one point of the distal segment (or its imaginary extension) remains fixed while other points move in an arc around it. Translatory motion is recorded with linear arrows in the direction of the distal segment's movement relative to its proximal counterpart. The linear arrows are placed below the circle (representing the joint axis) for translatory motion. If translatory force acts in the vertical axis, the linear arrow is placed to the side of the circle. Rotary motion and the related degree of range of motion are documented by an arrow within a protractor-type arrangement for each joint. The established normal range of motion for each joint is shaded on the form for comparative reference. If a fixed contracture or fusion of the joint is present, a double linear arrow is used.

Hypertonicity of muscle groups in each of the body segments is described by a functionally based letter scale.[39] A designation of mild tonicity is given when any hypertonus that is present is thought to be functionally insignificant. Moderate tonicity indicates that tone might have some functional value, such as assisting the patient in holding an item during minor tasks. A designation of severe tonicity indicates that normal function is not possible. The patient's proprioceptive ability is described in a similar way, as absent, impaired, or normal for each of the body segments of interest.

The final page of the technical analysis form (Fig. 6.3) contains space for an overview of functional impairments, a checklist of the orthotic treatment objectives, and a chart that details the orthotic recommendation. The desired orthotic control for each body segment is indicated by a specific letter; as many as seven types of orthotic controls can be incorporated into the design of an orthosis. The terms and descriptions of these controls are indicated in the key. If the orthotic recommendation section is completed correctly, the chart will indicate the body segments that the device will encompass and the desired biomechanical control of function needed. Any comments on the specific design requirements or materials, or both, can be detailed in the remarks section of the form.

For the orthotist, the prescription is the blueprint from which the design of a device is based. It specifies the force system requirements needed to achieve the treatment objectives independent of material selection or production processes. Although an in-depth biomechanical assessment may not always be necessary, a system based on these principles is a logical and objective method for formulating an orthotic prescription.

PROSTHETIC PRESCRIPTION

The formulation of a prosthetic prescription requires a different evaluative process. Prosthetic prescription depends on an in-depth understanding of components and materials as well as their indications and contraindications for use. Ideally, prosthetic prescription begins before amputation surgery, so the residual limb is of appropriate length and healing is adequate for optimal prosthetic use. Factors such as vascular supply, anticipated activity level, intelligence, vocation, social support, and age are also important to consider.[40] Range of motion, flexible and fixed contracture, functional strength, skin condition, girth measurements, pain, and sensation of the residual limb and the intact limb are evaluated.

An important part of prosthetic prescription is component selection.[41] The diversity of prosthetic foot-ankle units and knee mechanisms for lower extremity prosthetics, and the variety of terminal devices for the upper extremity, can present difficult decisions for those who are unfamiliar with their intended application. Therefore prosthetists are often relied on for recommendations on components because they are usually most familiar with the specifications and limitations. Many prosthetic teams have developed data collection forms to standardize the prosthetic prescription process. Redhead[42] suggests that the prescription for a prosthesis consider each of the major "prescription options." Examples of the specifications delineated by Redhead for a transfemoral prosthesis are type of limb, socket material and design, suspension, knee joints, knee controls, ankle joints, feet, and cosmesis.

Fabrication Process

Once a prescription for a custom orthosis or prosthesis has been created, the fabrication process begins. The traditional fabrication process is composed of six steps:

Step 1: Taking accurate measurements of the limb
Step 2: Making a negative impression (cast)
Step 3: Creating a three-dimensional (3D) positive model of the limb or body segment
Step 4: Modifying the positive model to incorporate the desired controls
Step 5: Fabricating the orthosis or prosthetic socket around the positive model
Step 6: Fitting of the device to the patient

In some instances, further modification or adjustment is necessary to achieve optimal fit and function of the device.

MEASUREMENT

Measurements are most often referenced from readily palpable bony landmarks. Important anthropometric measurements include the residual limb length, successive circumferences, and mediolateral and anteroposterior dimensions of the body segment for which the orthotic or prosthetic device is being created. Using this method, bony landmarks are identified as reference points and measurements are obtained at fixed distances from this reference. For instance, Boonhong performed this in subjects with transtibial amputation by identifying the tibial tubercle

Summary of functional disability _____

Treatment objectives:

Prevent/correct deformity ☐ Improve ambulation ☐
Reduce axial load ☐ Fracture treatment ☐
Protect joint ☐ Other _____

Orthotic Recommendation

Lower limb		Flex	Ext	Abd	Add	Rotation Int	Rotation Ext	Axial load
HKAO	Hip							
KAO	Thigh							
	Knee							
AFO	Leg							
	Ankle	(Dorsi)	(Plantar)					
	Subtalar					(Inver)	(Ever)	
FO	Foot Midtarsal							
	Met-phal							

Remarks:

Signature _____ Date _____

Key: Use the following symbols to indicate desired control of designated function:

F	= Free	Free motion
A	= Assist	Application of an external force for the purpose of increasing the range, velocity, or force of a motion
R	= Resist	Application of an external force for the purpose of decreasing the velocity or force of a motion
S	= Stop	Inclusion of a static unit to deter an undesired motion in one direction
v	= Variable	A unit that can be adjusted without making a structural change
H	= Hold	Elimination of all motion in prescribed plane (verify position)
L	= Lock	Device includes an optional lock

Fig. 6.3 The final page of the technical analysis form details the goals for the orthosis and the specific prescription for the desired device. Once the prescription is developed, the form serves as a guideline for fabricating and fitting the orthosis. *AFOs,* Ankle-foot orthoses; *FO,* foot orthosis; *HKAO,* hip-knee-ankle orthosis; *KAO,* knee-ankle orthosis; *V,* volitional force. (From Committee on Prosthetics Research and Development. *Report of the Seventh Workshop Panel on Lower Extremity Orthoses of the Subcommittee on Design and Development*. Washington, DC: National Research Council–National Academy of Sciences; 1970; and McCollough NC III. Biomechanical analysis systems for orthotic prescription. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Orthotics: Biomechanical Principles and Application.* 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:35–75.)

and obtaining circumferential measurements in 4-cm increments down to the distal end of the residual limb[43]; others have elected to measure in 4-cm increments beginning at the distal end of the residual limb.[44] Measurements are recorded on forms that are specific to the body segment being treated, such as the technical analysis form previously described. These measurements are used in two ways: as a reference when modifications to the positive cast are needed and as the way to determine the placement of the perimeter trimlines of the device.

Although clinically practical and easily performed with simple tools such as a tape measure, caution needs to be exercised when using anthropometric measurement methods, because they have been shown to have poor intrarater and interrater reliability.[45] Water immersion has also been described to determine residual limb volume. To perform this in patients with a transtibial amputation, de Boer-Wilzing et al. used a 15-cm glass cylinder filled with water that was placed on a hand-operated elevator. The distal part of the residual limb was inserted into the water-filled cylinder and the elevator raised until specified reference points touched the water's surface, thus displacing an amount of water equal to the volume of the residual limb.[44] However, although results are less variable, this method cannot be used when open wounds are present or if a patient has bilateral leg amputations.[46] In addition, a recent systematic review indicated that there are inadequate data for drawing conclusions in patients with other types of limb amputations.[47]

New technologies, such as laser scanning methods (including CAD/CAM scanning), have helped to decrease fitting errors, manufacture time, and overall cost of prosthetic sockets.[48] One group of authors reported a mean percentage error of 1.4% using a 3D scanner and very low intrarater and interrater reliability coefficients (05.% and 0.7%, respectively).[48]

NEGATIVE MOLD

A negative impression is a mold taken of an actual body part that is used to create the 3D positive cast or model necessary for fabrication of the orthosis or prosthesis. This negative impression is most often taken with a plaster-of-Paris bandage or fiber resin tape, although in some instances direct impressions are used as an alternative. Creation of a negative impression has four steps. First, a layer of tubular stockinet or a stocking is placed over the skin to create a protective interface and control the position of soft tissue structures within the cast (Fig. 6.4). Tubular stockinettes are available in sizes that range from small diameter for the pediatric limb to large diameter for the adult torso. When a direct impression technique is being performed, a topical separator such as petroleum jelly can be used as an interface to minimize the risk of capturing cuticle hair in the impression. Second, bony prominences or other important guiding landmarks are marked on the body segment with indelible ink. These marks transfer to the inside of the negative mold and from there to the surface of the positive model.

Once the limb or body segment has been prepared, a thin layer of plaster of Paris or fiber resin tape is applied (see Fig. 6.4B). This procedure differs from that of fracture casts in one important way: the goal is to achieve an "intimate" fit that captures the actual contours of the limb or body segment so that no protective padding is required. Failure to achieve a successful interface between the wearer and the device may result in discomfort, excessive tissue stress, skin irritation and destruction, and potential amputation revision.[49] Rolls of elasticized plaster can be wrapped circumferentially in no more than two or three layers. Alternatively, strips of the material can be laid along the length of the limb or body segment. Most impression casting materials are readily available in roll form, although special versions have been produced for specific types of impression procedures, such as the fiber resin sock for an AFO. As the molding material is applied, the clinician smooths the surface, following the normal shape of the limb. While the mold hardens,

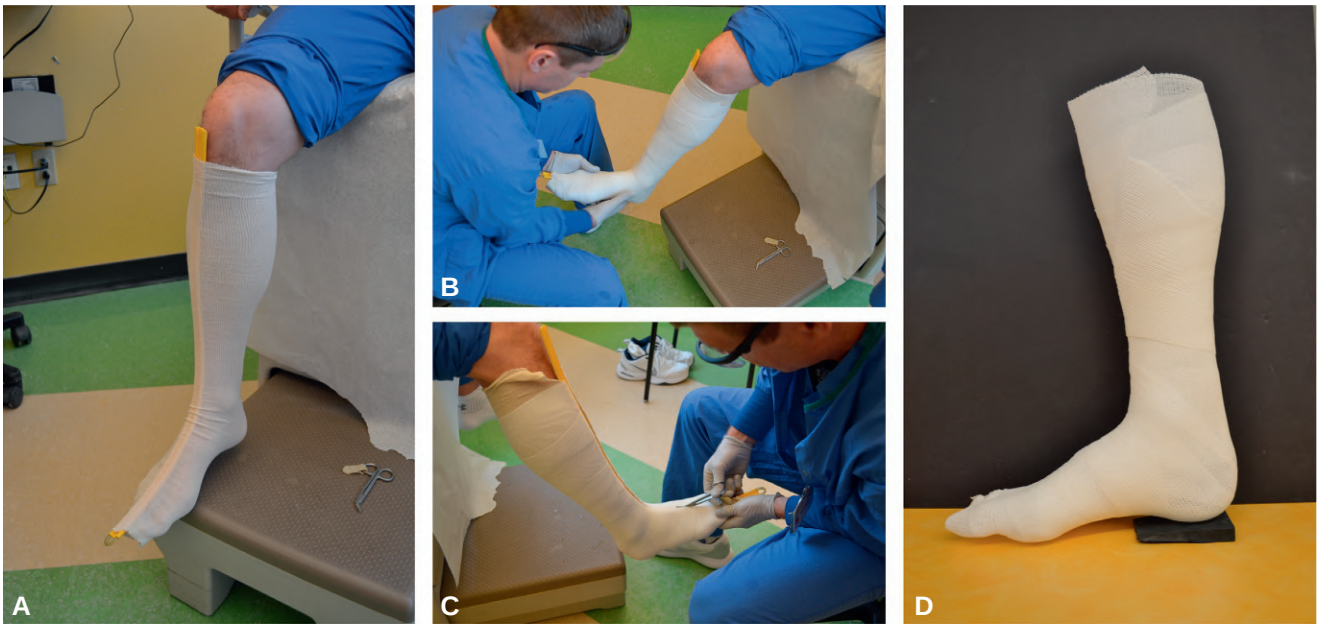


Fig. 6.4 The procedure for taking a conventional negative impression begins with placing a layer of cotton stockinette over the limb and marking bony prominences with an indelible water-soluble transfer pencil (A). Surgical tubing is positioned on the anterior aspect of the limb to serve as a guideline for cast removal and to protect the shin. The limb is positioned on a shoe "last" impression in preparation for circumferential application of a plaster-of-Paris bandage or fiber resin casting tape (B). The impression board allows the foot to assume the contours of a shoe during molding for an optimal foot/shoe/ankle-foot orthosis interface. Once the cast is "set," a cast saw is used to open the front of the cast (C), and the negative impression is carefully removed from the limb. The anterior edges are closed, and the ankle-foot alignment of the negative impression is verified with a plumb line (not shown in this picture) (D). (Courtesy Shriners Hospital for Children Portland.)

the clinician supports the limb or segment in the desired position, sometimes applying a light corrective force. As an example, the desired limb position of an orthosis incorporating the ankle joint might be in subtalar and talocrural neutral. If a PTB socket design is desired for a transtibial prosthesis, an extra force applied just distal to the patella marks its desired location on the resulting positive mold.

Once the cast is hardened sufficiently, it is carefully removed from the limb segment, preserving its shape and contours, and checked for alignment (see Fig. 6.4C and D). It is essential that the clinician who takes the negative impression has a thorough understanding of the forces that will be applied to the anatomic segments involved to ensure optimal fit and function of the orthosis or prosthesis. Estimates of soft tissue compression and skeletal alignment changes need to be carefully considered during the negative impression procedure. A skilled and experienced professional uses clinical judgment to create a negative impression, not only to capture the shape of the anatomic segment but also to apply an efficient force system to improve or maximize function. Basic design decisions must be made before the impression procedures so that any special accommodations required for the desired functional outcome can be incorporated.

Special negative impression techniques have been developed for specific purposes. Polystyrene foam impression blocks are one of the common methods of acquiring an impression of the plantar surface of the foot.[50] For patients who are recovering from facial burns, fabrication of a facial orthotic designed to deliver even, steady pressure during the period of scar maturation requires a highly detailed mold of the face. Alginate impressions, also referred to as *moulage techniques*, similar to those used in dentistry, are often used.

FABRICATING AND MODIFYING THE POSITIVE MODEL

Conventional methods for creating a positive cast are well established. The negative impression is prepared by sealing the mold so that it can accept liquid plaster of Paris. A separator material (e.g., silicone, soap) is added to the inner walls of the mold before the plaster of Paris is poured so that it can be removed more easily once the positive model has set. Once the cast has solidified, the negative impression is stripped away and discarded. The anatomic landmarks and reference points marked on the limb or body segment with indelible pencil and transferred from the patient to the negative impression are again transferred to the positive model. A mandrel (post) is embedded into the setting plaster of the positive model. This mandrel is used to hold the model for cast rectification and the rest of the production processes.

Model rectifications remove artifacts produced during the molding or impression process and bring the cast to specification of the measured values taken from the patient. Once the positive model has been rectified, further modifications can be made on the basis of the design of the orthosis or prosthesis being fabricated. During the negative impression procedure, soft tissue may have been manipulated for specific applications of force or pressure to be incorporated into the final orthosis or prosthesis. Although the positive model represents a 3D shape of a respective body segment, it cannot relay information about the density of the tissue that it will interface. In general, additional plaster is added where relief of pressure is desired (e.g., over bony prominences) (Fig. 6.5) or is removed where additional forces are to be applied. When the orthosis or prosthesis is formed over the model, an area of relief for a more intimate fit is achieved. Although some guidelines have been established regarding the amount of material to be removed or added to the positive model, the clinical experience of the prosthetist or orthotist is essential in this stage of the process. The positive model can also be modified to reconfigure surface geometry to improve the strength of the finished product.

Once design changes have been incorporated into the model, its surface is prepared for component production. This involves removing any surface imperfections with abrasive tools and abrasive sanding screen to ensure that the surface in contact with skin will be smooth. The positive cast is then ready to be used as a form from which different materials can be shaped to produce an interface component.

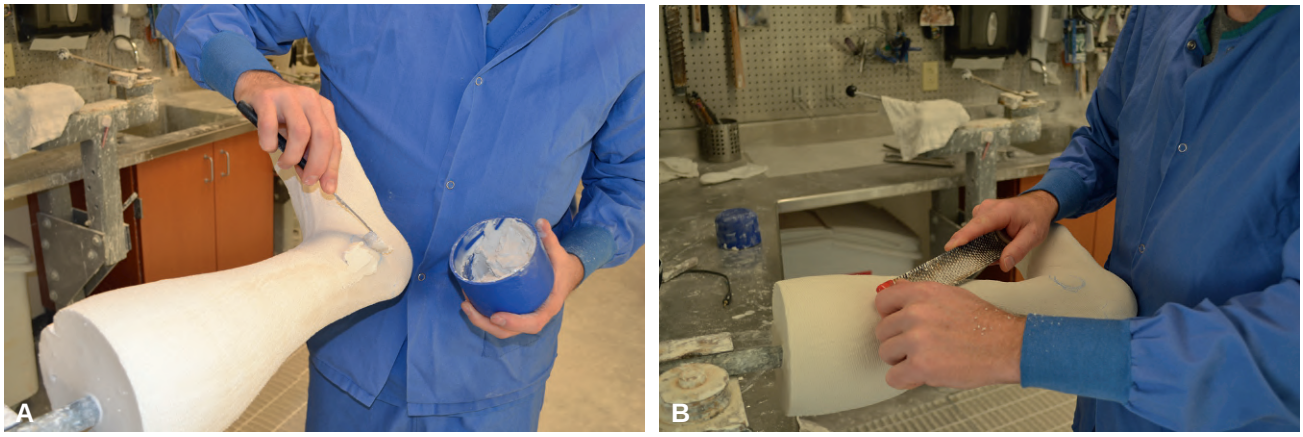


Fig. 6.5 In the rectification of a positive model, plaster of Paris added over pressure-sensitive areas, such as the lateral malleolus (A), results in a "relief" in the finished orthosis. Modification of the positive model by removal of material with a plaster rasp over pressure-tolerant areas (B) increases intimacy of fit for better loading or stabilizing of the limb. (Courtesy Shriners Hospital for Children Portland.)

FABRICATING THE ORTHOSIS OR PROSTHETIC SOCKET

The fabrication process used with the positive model depends on the material selected for the device. Thermoforming is a common production method used in orthotics and prosthetics. Thermoplastic sheet material is heated in an oven until it has reached its "plastic" state, then shaped over a positive model by changing the air pressure difference across its surface (vacuum forming) (Fig. 6.6). Once the plastic has cooled and returned to its solid state, trimlines are delineated on the formed plastic before the edges are finished and smoothed.

Computer-Aided Design/ Computer-Aided Manufacture

In the 1960s an alternative method of prosthetic fabrication that used computers was first introduced. Early CAD/CAM methods used stereophotography and digitization to create a numeric model, which guided a milling machine in the creation of a positive model of the residual limb.[2] A more complete concept of fabrication and manufacture of a prosthesis was developed at the University College London in the late 1970s and early 1980s.[51] After establishing a system for automated production of a prosthesis called Rapidform, the London research group conceived a completely automated fabrication process that used appropriate prosthetic alignment data.[52]

In the United States the Veterans Administration began funding research projects in the 1980s to investigate the potential of CAD/CAM in orthotics and prosthetics. Advances were also made in private industry as the availability of personal computers became widespread. Beginning in the late 1980s, manufacturers have designed a multitude of CAD/CAM systems for various applications in orthotics and prosthetics. Advances in computer hardware, processors, and software have made CAD/CAM systems fast and efficient, as well as an economical alternative for fabrication of devices for many orthotic and prosthetic practices.

Currently, most CAD systems use a scanning device to record digital information of a body segment for CAM. The primary components of a CAD/CAM system consist of a digitizing device, computer, and milling machine. Surface contours of the anatomic segment are recorded with various digitization devices: optical-laser scanners, surface-contacting stylus, and pneumatically operated mechanical posts. Digital information acquired from a scan of a body segment is processed by the computer and translated into a triordinate data point file. This file is used by the computer to create a graphic image in the form of a surface contour plot.[53] The data are then relayed to a milling unit to carve an orthosis or prosthesis for a positive model.

DATA ACQUISITION

Each of the many digitizers used for data acquisition is designed for a specific task or to handle certain anatomic regions. Noncontact laser digitizers capable of circumferential scanning are well suited for measurement of cylindrical shapes such as those found in limb prosthetics or spinal orthotics. An optical-laser camera mechanism images the surface topography of the body segment and records the measured data points in a computer. Special holding fixtures and bars to aid in patient comfort and safety are part of each system. An apparatus designed to scan the torso for a spinal orthosis usually requires a different setup than that of a limb prosthesis. Some scanners are capable of digitizing directly from the patient's body segment, whereas other systems take measurements from a negative impression or mold of the segment (Fig. 6.7). Compact, handheld contact digitizers have been introduced by several CAD/CAM manufacturers. These units allow the clinician to digitize a body segment by direct contact with the skin. Handheld contact digitizers are described as a wand, pen, stylus, or pointer. Contact digitizers often have special attachments to scan certain shapes or measurement tools, such as calipers, for acquiring anteroposterior or mediolateral dimensions. Their versatility permits data acquisition of complex shapes. In some systems, handheld digitizers can be used in conjunction with a laser scan.

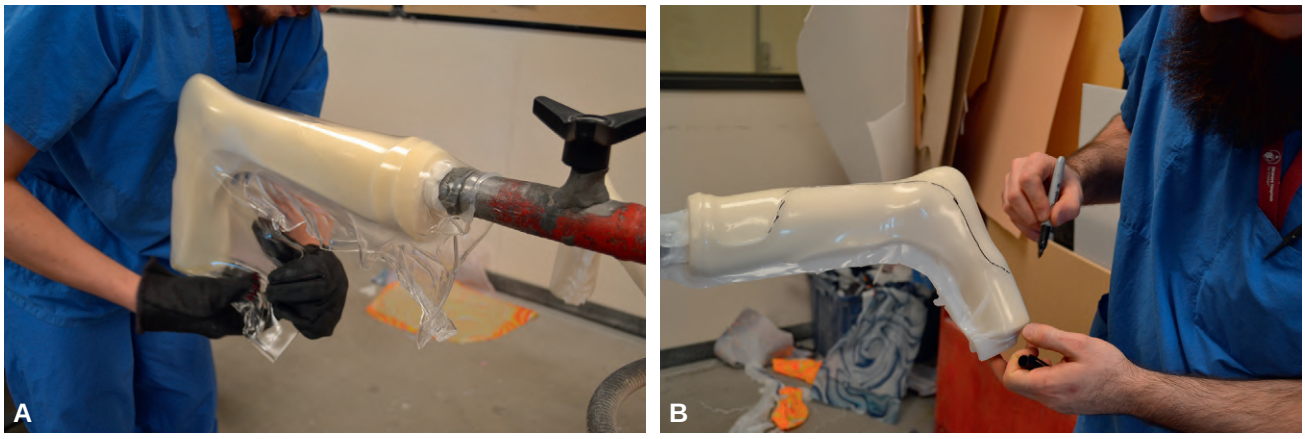


Fig. 6.6 Once a sheet of thermoplastic material has been heated, it is dropped over the rectified positive model (A) and the edges of the thermoplastic are sealed. Negative pressure created by a vacuum pump removes any trapped air and draws the polypropylene to the surface of the positive model. When the material has cooled, trimlines are drawn on the formed plastic (B) by using measurements taken during the initial evaluation and bony landmarks as guides. (Courtesy Shriners Hospital for Children Portland.)

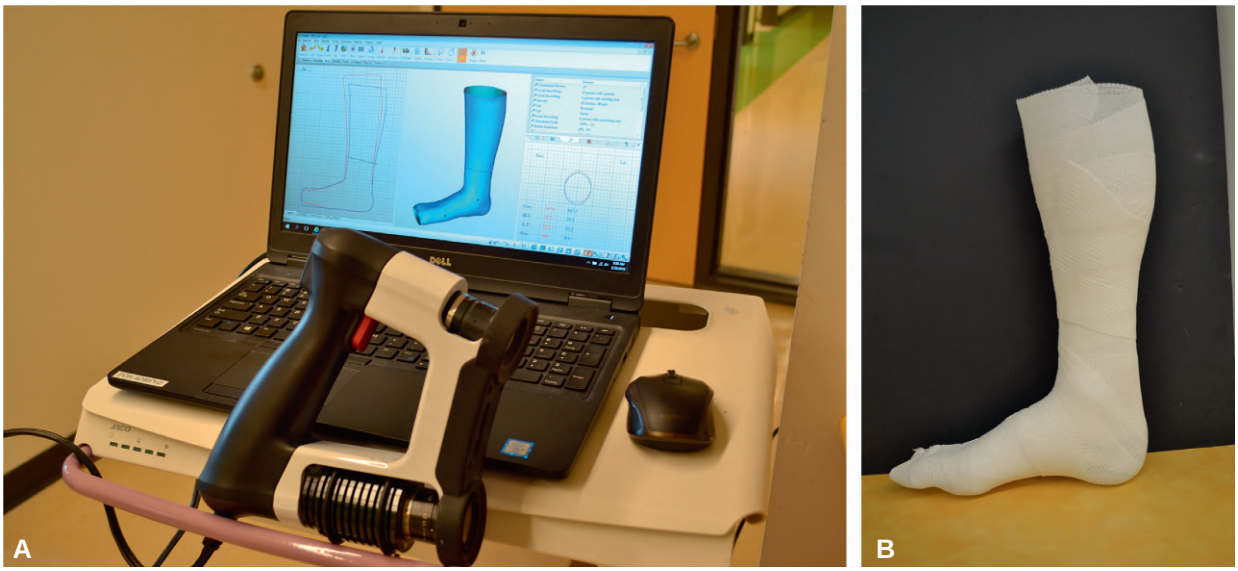


Fig. 6.7 Examples of computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture data acquisition systems. A digital model of the residual limb (A) can be captured by a laptop computer, appropriate signal processor components, and a handheld digitizer (VORUM—Spectra 3D Prosthetics and Orthotics Scanner, Vancouver, BC). Laser digitization (B) can be used to capture accurately the contours of a conventional negative impression of a residual limb. (Courtesy Shriners Hospital for Children Portland.)

The use of digitizers in the production of foot orthoses is also becoming more common. Several systems based on differences in technique and philosophy in foot orthosis design have been developed for data acquisition of the foot. For full weight-bearing or partial weight-bearing techniques, pneumatically operated mechanical posts are used to digitize the foot's plantar surface (Amfit Corp, Vancouver, WA). Orthotic contoured shapes such as metatarsal domes can be evaluated during the digitization procedure to determine optimal position and comfort before fabrication. An optical-laser scanner situated under an acrylic platform has also been used for scanning the foot when a weight-bearing technique is desired (Bergmann Orthotics Lab, Northfield, IL). Because this system is also capable of scanning the foot with non–weight-bearing methods without the platform, it is quite versatile in clinical practice.

In many instances, orthotists and prosthetists are restricted to surface geometry and palpation of underlying anatomic structures to interpret the position of skeletal and soft tissue structures of the body segment. Magnetic resonance imaging and computed tomography have been used to create a 3D computer model and assist in making design decisions for a mechanical device. Data from these scans are converted to a working format for specific graphic and modeling programs. Although this capability may not be practical for all applications, it may offer insight into areas of further research and development in the field.

SHAPE-MANIPULATION SOFTWARE

The ability to modify the 3D model of a patient's body segment permits the clinician to incorporate the desired biomechanical controls into an orthosis or prosthesis. The amount of force applied to a specific area depends in part on manipulation of the digital 3D model. Software packages are currently available to assist orthotists and prosthetists in designing the most appropriate modifications for a given patient. Generic modification templates or custom-designed templates can be used to make a wide range of revisions to the data. The clinician can incorporate reliefs for bony prominences of the limb or trunk or can change the geometry of the shape to enhance structural strength characteristics in the final orthosis or prosthesis. Trimlines can be delineated so that technicians who are involved in the assembly of components can complete a device without further instruction.

MILLING AND PRODUCTION

Once the digital model is in place, the milling apparatus creates the actual orthotic or prosthetic device. Because each type of orthosis or prosthesis usually has specific milling parameters, a different setup may be required for each. For instance, the long, rounded shape of a transtibial or transfemoral socket is often manufactured with a lathe-type milling machine (Fig. 6.8). In contrast, foot orthoses are manufactured by an end mill setup because their plate-like structure and production processes create different finishing needs. The production laboratory needs to be large enough to have separate milling stations for each type of orthosis or prosthesis. This manufacturing limitation has led to the establishment of laboratory production companies that mill the positive models and manufacture the orthoses or prostheses from computer data transmitted by modem. Computer production networks can often reduce fabrication time and decrease production times, making the use of CAD/CAM economically feasible even for small orthotic/prosthetic facilities. Special production equipment is available that partially automates the thermoforming processes of some components. In the thermoforming machine for prosthetic sockets, a preformed polypropylene shell travels upward on a mechanical platform to an oven that heats the plastic to its formable temperature. The heated shell is

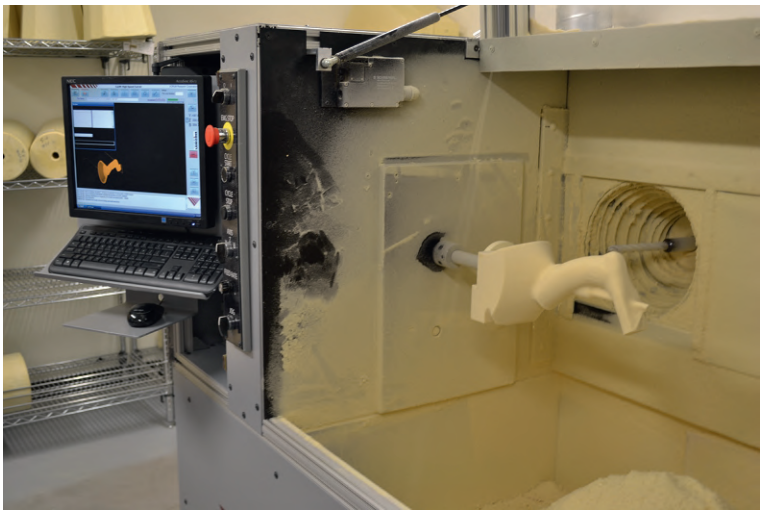


Fig. 6.8 A positive model for a transtibial prosthetic socket being carved on a computer-controlled milling/lathe machine (VORUM—3-Axis Carver, Vancouver, BC). (Courtesy Shriners Hospital for Children Portland.)

then lowered over the positive model of the residual limb and vacuum formed for an intimate fit.

CAD/CAM in orthotics and prosthetics will play an important role in clinical and research settings. Although the development of CAD/CAM in orthotics and prosthetics has a history that spans more than two decades, only since the 1990s has it become an integral part of some clinical practices. Systems that have been designed for virtually all prosthetic and orthotic applications can be integrated with computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, and other medical imaging technologies. The technological advancements of CAD/CAM offer orthotists and prosthetists an additional clinical fabrication and research tool. Although this sophisticated equipment can contribute greatly to certain clinical and manufacturing tasks, successful fitting of a device depends on proper data input and prescription formulation.

Central Fabrication and Mass Production

The techniques and processes associated with the fabrication of orthoses and prostheses described in this chapter can be relatively labor intensive and expensive. As managed care and insurance companies strive to reduce medical costs, the profession is under greater pressure to remain competitive by finding alternative production methods that are cost effective. One option is to maximize the clinical productivity of orthotists and prosthetists and limit their technical responsibilities. Central fabrication operations allow practitioners to develop clinical practices that do not require large technical facilities and space. Depending on the size of the practice, outsourcing the production portion of the business can be a more economical way to run an orthotic/prosthetic clinic. Some practitioners do not want to manage in-house technical operations that include additional technical staff, specialized equipment, and increased space requirements. Another advantage is that central fabrication may offer improvements in consistency and quality of devices.

CENTRAL FABRICATION FACILITIES FOR CUSTOM DEVICES

Central fabrication facilities typically specialize in the manufacture of custom orthoses and prostheses, often serving a large number of orthotic and prosthetic practices. These manufacturing services are available to produce almost every kind of orthosis and prosthesis, with many companies specializing in a specific area (e.g., spinal orthoses, knee orthoses, transtibial prosthetics). Some central fabrication operations offer the advantage of producing a device without the need for a negative impression, an additional cost savings in time and materials. A series of conventional measurements of patients combined with height and weight data is entered into a computer to generate a milled positive model for production. Orthotic systems in particular have been refined to produce excellent fitting devices that are comparable in function to custom-molded orthoses produced from a patient model. Although there will always be a need for custom-molded devices, technologic advancements in human factors, ergonomics, and computer modeling will improve generic sizing and contoured interface systems, permitting a larger portion of the population to be fit with prefabricated devices and components. Modular components of varying material properties are already a part of general practice in prosthetics.

MASS PRODUCTION

Mass-produced, prefabricated orthoses outnumber custom-molded orthoses fitted to patients for rehabilitative purposes. Orthopedic companies continue to develop orthotic and prosthetic products whose fit and performance approach that of custom-molded devices through diverse sizing systems and modular components. In the future, prefabricated modular component systems may bridge the gap between prefabricated and custom-molded devices by improving performance outcomes with custom-fitted systems and expanding their use in clinical practice. Although these advances in fit and function are possible for some problems, certain deformities and pathologic conditions will almost always require custom-molded or measured orthoses and

prostheses made by traditional or CAD/CAM methods of production.

Technologies Poised to Transform Prosthetics and Orthotics and Rehabilitation

Health care economics and reimbursement issues have impeded the pace of technologic advancements and patient access to new technologies in prosthetics and orthotics. The transfer of science and technology from other medical and engineering disciplines to prosthetics and orthotics will be important for continued innovation. Biosensor technologies, power actuation, and CAD/CAM are three areas primed to advance prosthetics, orthotics, and rehabilitation in the next decade. Orthotic and prosthetic practices are slowly transitioning from experiential practice-driven decision-making to one founded on biomedical sensor data from the user and their respective devices. Clinically relevant measures offer improved reliability to assess user performance and to determine treatment prognoses. Actuators can provide power assistance to augment movement and offer advantages that conventional passive prosthetic and orthotic systems cannot offer. Advances in 3D scanners and printers offer an alternative means for capturing the shape of a body segment for custom fitted interfaces, and 3D printers and computer numerically controlled milling machines and lathes could replace some of the traditional methods and processes (e.g., plaster-of-Paris molds) of fabrication. Although the application of newer technologies may be feasible, their adoption within the field will ultimately rest on treatment outcome results and monetary benefits to our health care delivery systems.

Biosensors. In comparison with other areas of medicine, prosthetics and orthotics have lagged behind in the use of biomedical instrumentation to assist in clinical decision-making, diagnostics, and monitoring user performance and outcomes. Considerable advances have been made in sensor technology, microprocessors, and data analyses that are applicable to orthotics and prosthetics. The reduction of sensor size and cost has permitted them to be embedded into orthoses and prostheses without compromising functionality for the user. Wireless systems (e.g., Bluetooth) that communicate through user-friendly interfaces (e.g., tablets) allow sensing systems to be used in the clinical setting, remotely in the home and community. Data on the actual use of an orthosis or prosthesis are important to monitor because compliance and dosage parameters (i.e., time of use) can help with treatment prognoses. In the orthotic management of scoliosis, temperature and force sensors embedded in thoracic lumbosacral orthoses provide clinicians with a relatively accurate account of patient use but can also reveal if the orthosis postural support is being optimized when in use.[54,55] The combined data of several sensors characterize the duration of use (i.e., time) and the manner in which the desired orthotic control is being achieved. As more sensor data are collected and studied in all domains of orthotics and prosthetics, the efficacy and efficiency of treatment interventions can be refined and improved on a foundation of clinically relevant measures.

Prostheses and orthoses interact with a respective body segment (e.g., leg, residuum) via a socket or shell-like interface, respectively. The specified geometry of the interface controls the manner in which loads are transmitted from the device to the human user. Therefore transducers that can quantify pressure and force data coupled with sensors that detect movement provide vital information for practitioners to optimize fit and function for the user.[56-58] In addition to gathering information from the human subject user, instrumented orthoses and prosthesis can collect data from the device itself for feedback and control systems to optimize function, user intent, and safety. Electromyography (EMG) sensors measure muscle activity, and if embedded into the interface, practitioners can consider a user's neuromotor response mechanism to the use of an orthosis or prosthesis. EMG data can also be used to determine control parameters for power actuation systems in devices.[59]

Power Assistance and Actuation. Traditionally, most orthoses and prostheses have designs that feature "passive" motion control mechanisms.[60] For instance, most ankle foot orthoses assist, resist, and/or limit ankle joint motion range mechanically with springs or elastic bands or through the controlled deflection of a strut element (e.g., posterior leaf spring AFO). Furthermore, passive resistance can be also be achieved via friction, pneumatics, hydraulics, and magnetorheologic dampening systems.[60] Although passive resistance has provided improvements in joint motion control in both orthotics and prosthetics, powered actuation can generate active joint movement. The use of different types of actuators to augment motion in orthoses and prosthesis is expanding at a rapid pace particularly with wearable exoskeletal robotic systems. Although technologic barriers still exist in creating systems for everyday use, there is promising applicability for powered assistance in the rehabilitation clinic/hospital setting for more controlled therapeutic interventions compared with traditional physical therapy techniques (e.g., care giver–assisted resistance training).[61,62]

Exoskeletal Robotics. Computer-controlled robotic systems have some distinct advantages over traditional rehabilitation therapies. Exoskeletal robots are often ideally suited for repetitive strength and/or stretching routines or when prescribed target dosages are needed. Although hands-on therapist-administered treatments have proven to be effective, robots have the potential to be more efficient due to their precision-controlled movement, and if instrumented with sensors they can provide valuable performance feedback data.

The biomechanical principles used to maximize fit, function, and comfort with orthoses are also applicable for exoskeletal robots. Actuators transmit power to mechanical armatures and levers linked to orthotic interface shells. Loads are transferred from external soft tissue structures (i.e., skin, muscle and fat) to the bone segments an anatomic joint (e.g., knee, ankle) to produce or limit motion. Exoskeletons can be equipped with sophisticated control systems that use various biomedical sensors for feedback to monitor motion.

Microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees (MPKs) represent one of the most significant technologic advances made in prosthetics. In particular the Ottobock C-Leg (Ottobock, Duderstadt, Germany), introduced in 1997, was the first MPK that had microprocessor control stance

and swing phases. Compared with non–micro-controlled prosthetic knees, users of MPKs report an improved perception of balance confidence, and scientific studies are currently showing the incidence of falls can be reduced between 64% and 80%.[63] Imbedded sensors are critical to the control system of MPKs. Similar control systems for knee control in knee-ankle-foot orthoses have also been developed.[64]

3D Scanners and Shape Manipulation Software. Inherently, the portion of the orthosis and prosthesis that interfaces with the body is often custom-molded to achieve an exacting fit. Traditionally, a facsimile of a limb segment or body part is created by taking a mold or capturing the shape by tracing the contour combined with a series of relevant measurements to duplicate the geometry. Recent developments in laser-based scanners and structured light technology have offered more options for digital imaging of surfaces for prosthetics and orthotics.[65,66] Handheld portable scanners with both technologies allow more diverse applications to which 3D scanning can offer clinical advantages for custom-molded devices. Three-dimensional scanners are becoming more accessible for the clinical practice setting since the costs of scanners has significantly decreased for a number of applications. Some versions of structured light scanners can be attached to tablets or mobile phones. Both scanner technologies are portable, have fast scan times, and take highly accurate measurements. Although these new scanner technologies can help to streamline capturing the shape of body part, computer software to modify the topography of the interface is crucial to perfecting fit and function.

Numerous industry-specific CAD/CAM software programs are available for the design and manufacturing of prostheses and orthoses. Because orthotic and prosthetic applications are diverse, ranging from cranial helmets to spine and extremity orthoses and limb prosthetics, the software programs for each region of the body are often different. As such, a clinical practice has to have several distinct software programs to accommodate full range clinical services it may offer. Hence the costs associated with having multiple systems has contributed to a slow adoption of CAD/CAM in clinical practices and is why traditional processes and methods are still in wide use.

Multiple software programs, scanners, and printers may be needed for a prosthetic and orthotic service to have a fully integrated CAD/CAM operation in prosthetics and orthotics. Each region of body presents with a unique set of conditions in which a practitioner may need to capture the shape of an anatomic surface. For individuals with limb loss, a handheld scanner can be ideally suited to capture the shape of the residuum. For orthotic management of the foot, clinicians may prefer scanning the foot in partial weight bearing (e.g., seated) because the plantar soft tissues compress during loading and the shape of the foot changes dramatically compared with its shape in non–weight bearing. Practitioners may actually scan a negative impression (i.e., mold) or a positive model of a body part rather than the actual patient to acquire a digital image file. Thus traditional prosthetic and orthotic techniques are blended with CAD/CAM technologies as practitioners try to maximize the advantages of both approaches.

3D Printers and Additive Manufacturing. Additive manufacturing and 3D printing are quickly gaining traction within the profession as the technologies and materials improve and can better meet the demands for clinical use. The early plastics used in 3D printing lacked the strength and reliability of the conventional composites and thermoplastics used in the industry and slowed the application of 3D printing into clinical practice. However, advances such as carbon fiber–infused plastics and the ability to structurally engineer (e.g., vary thickness) a component have allowed some 3D-printed parts to be applicable for definitive use rather than for prototyping purposes. A diversity of materials is available with a wide variety of mechanical properties. Some of the most common filament materials used are: polycarbonate, nylon, ABS, polylactic acid (PLA), polypropylene, thermoplastic elastomers (TPEs), thermoplastic polyurethane (TPU), polyethylene terephthalate with glycol (PETG), polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), and acrylic styrene acrylonitrile (ASA). The addition of carbon and wood fibers or metal powders infused into the base materials can further enhance properties of materials.[67]

Maintenance of Orthoses and Prostheses

Routine care and maintenance of orthoses and prostheses are important for proper function and long-term use of a device. An orthotic or prosthetic maintenance program usually includes servicing by the orthotist or prosthetist and the patient. The service schedule depends on the specific orthosis or prosthesis, the materials from which it is made, the durability of the components, and the knowledge and ability of the patient and caregivers. Patient instructions for the daily care of an orthosis or prosthesis should include cleaning and inspection. Proper patient education of basic fitting criteria and instructions on donning and doffing a device allow the patient to evaluate the fit of a device during routine use. Professionals in orthotic and prosthetic work environments also need to adopt strategies to decrease the risk of cross-contamination from devices such as hand washing (frequency and time spent), cleaning devices and tools, and implementation of an infection control coordinator.[68]

Orthoses and prostheses should be inspected weekly for any defects, stress risers (nicks, scratches), loose screws, or weakened rivets. Any device that has mechanical components and moving parts and is subjected to repetitive loading requires periodic servicing; it is less expensive to recognize and fix early signs of a problem than it is to replace a device that has failed because of a lack of proper maintenance. Informing patients of potential problems associated with the use of their orthoses or prostheses and how to resolve these problems can prevent serious situations from arising.

Most plastic components should be cleaned with a mild antibacterial soap and rinsed thoroughly with cold water. Extra moisture should be absorbed with a towel and the orthosis or prosthesis air dried. Heat can distort some plastics; patients should be warned not to use electric hairdryers to dry their devices. Similarly, devices should not be left near direct heat sources, such as radiators, wood/pellet stoves, or

any appliance that generates heat when running. They must also be protected from intense direct sunlight.

Leather liners and covers are cleaned weekly with a leather "saddle" soap. Leather softeners should not be used unless directed by the orthotist, because they can compromise function of some straps and cuffs. Water-repellent treatments and protectants for leather often contain skin irritants and should not be used on leather components that have direct contact with the body.

Most orthoses and prostheses are designed to apply a corrective or stabilizing force to a body segment during wear. For some patients, especially those with fragile skin or scarring, this pressure may increase the risk of skin irritation or damage. The risk of skin problems differs from device to device and depends on the general health and skin condition of the individual who is wearing the orthosis or prosthesis. To minimize problems with skin intolerance of these extra forces, most new orthotic or prosthetic users begin with an intermittent wearing schedule. A treatment plan that incorporates a gradual buildup of orthotic or prosthetic use can avert complications such as excessive redness, chafing, and blisters. For a patient with a high risk for or a history of skin problems, a variety of preventive measures (e.g., foam or silicone interface liners) can be incorporated into the orthotic or prosthetic system.

Most custom orthoses or prostheses are designed to achieve a very intimate fit with the body segments that they encompass. Changes in the physical condition of a patient can significantly alter the fit and function of a device. Compromised fit occurs most often when the patient has had significant growth, weight gain or loss, muscle atrophy, edema, structural degeneration, or trauma. Periodic evaluations are necessary to ensure that fit and function are maintained in the months and years after the initial fitting. Semiannual or annual checkups should be part of the treatment plans for definitive orthotic and prosthetic devices.

To maintain proper function of a lower extremity prosthesis, special attention is needed in several areas. The alignment of a prosthesis is usually based on a specific heel height; variation from the prescribed heel height (when footwear is changed) often leads to functional problems during gait. In the same way, moderate to excessive wear of the shoe at the heel also compromises performance. The condition of footwear must be carefully and frequently monitored. The prosthesis should be free of dirt, sand, and other debris to ensure that joint mechanisms and their movements are not inhibited. Socket attachment and suspension systems need daily attention because they are usually prone to accumulation of lint, dirt, and other debris. If the prosthesis or any of its components are subjected to water, the device should be thoroughly dried to prevent permanent damage. Rubber bumpers in prosthetic feet deteriorate over time and with use and must be replaced regularly. The prosthetist can advise patients on specific parts that require regular maintenance.

The socket portion of a prosthesis should be faithfully cared for to avoid potential skin problems, especially infection, on the residual limb. When a special liner is used with a prosthesis, specific instructions for cleaning are necessary because materials used vary greatly. For patients who are fitted with suction sockets or special socket attachment mechanisms, the joining components or threads should be cleaned with a soft brush or rag to remove debris.

Summary

This chapter explores the materials and methods most commonly used in the prescription, measurement, and production of orthoses and prostheses. The type of design, materials, and components are selected to best facilitate the functional goals of the patient. The foundation for effectiveness of the orthosis or prosthesis is careful measurement of the body segment (by casting or by CAD/CAM) and careful modification of the resulting model for optimal fit. For an individual who is being fit for his or her initial orthosis or prosthesis, shared decision-making of the rehabilitation team, including the patient and caregivers, is essential. An orthosis or prosthesis that is difficult to don or is uncomfortable to wear is more likely to be found standing in a closet or pushed under a bed than on the patient for daily use.

References

1. Committee on Artificial Limbs. *Terminal Research Reports on Artificial Limbs (Covering the Period from April 1, 1945 through June 30, 1947).* Washington, DC: National Research Council; 1947.
2. Wilson AB. History of amputation surgery and prosthetics. In: Bowker JH, Michael JW, eds. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1992:3–15.
3. Wilson AB. In: *Prosthetics and orthotics research in the U.S.A. International Conference on Prosthetics and Orthotics* Cairo: S.O.P. Press; 1972:268–273.
4. Rang M, Thompson GH. History of amputations and prostheses. In: Kostuik JP, Gillespie R, eds. *Amputation Surgery and Rehabilitation: The Toronto Experience.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1981:1–12.
5. Eberhart HD, Inman VT, Dec JB, et al. *Fundamental Studies of Human Locomotion and Other Information Relating to the Design of Artificial Limbs. A Report to the National Research Council.* Berkeley, CA: University of California; 1947.
6. Kay HW. Clinical applications of the Veterans Administration Prosthetic Center patellar tendon-bearing brace. *Artif Limbs.* 1971;15 (1):46–67.
7. Mooney V, Nickel VL, Harvey JP, et al. Cast-brace treatment for fractures of the distal part of the femur. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1970;52A (8):1563–1578.
8. Sarmiento A, Sinclair WF. Tibial and Femoral Fractures—Bracing Management. In: *Miami: University of Miami*; 1972.
9. Committee on Prosthetics Research and Development. *Report of the Seventh Workshop Panel on Lower Extremity Orthoses of the Subcommittee on Design and Development.* Washington, DC: National Research Council–National Academy of Sciences; 1970.
10. Eberhart HD, McKennon JC. Suction-socket suspension of the above-knee prosthesis. In: Klopsteg PE, Wilson PD, eds. *Human Limbs and Their Substitutes.* New York: McGraw-Hill; 1954.
11. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM). *Standards.* Philadelphia: ASTM; 2001.
12. International Organization for Standardization (ISO). *Prosthetics-Orthotics.* Paramus, NJ: ILI Infodisk; 2000.
13. Callister WJ, et al. *Materials Science and Engineering An Introduction.* 9th ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, Inc; 2014.
14. O'Flaherty F. Leather. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Orthopaedic Appliances Atlas.* Ann Arbor, MI: JW Edwards; 1952:17–28.
15. Redford II JB. *Orthotics Etcetera.* 3rd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1986.
16. Murphy EF, Burnstein AH. Physical properties of materials including solid mechanics. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Orthotics: Biomechanical Principles and Application.* 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:6–33.

17. Compton J, Edelstein JE. New plastics for forming directly on the patient. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1978;2(1):43–47.
18. Lockard MA. Foot orthoses. *Phys Ther.* 1988;68(12):1866–1873.
19. Peppard A, O'Donnell M. A review of orthotic plastics. *Athletic Training.* 1983;18(1):77–80.
20. Manganon PL. *The Principles of Materials Selection for Engineering Design.* Prentice Hall; 1999.
21. Levitz SJ, Whiteside LS, Fitzgerald TA. Biomechanical foot therapy. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg.* 1988;5(3):721–736.
22. Hertzman CA. Use of Plastizote in foot disabilities. *Am J Phys Med.* 1973;52(6):289–303.
23. Jopling UH. Observation on the use of Plastizote insoles in England. *Lepr Rev.* 1969;40:175–176.
24. Mondl AM, Gardiner J, Bisset J. The use of Plastizote in footwear for leprosy patients. A preliminary report. *Lepr Rev.* 1969;40(3):177–181.
25. Tuck UH. The use of Plastizote to accommodate foot deformities in Hansen's disease. *Lepr Rev.* 1969;40(3):171–173.
26. Spence WR, Shields MN. Insole to reduce shearing forces on the soles of the feet. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1968;49(8):476–479.
27. Campbell G, Newell E, McLure M. Compression testing of foamed plastics and rubbers for use as orthotic shoe insoles. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1982;6(1):48–52.
28. Campbell G, McLure M, Newell EN. Compressive behavior after simulated service conditions of some foamed materials intended as orthotic shoe insoles. *J Rehab Res.* 1984;21(2):57–65.
29. Leber C, Evanski PM. A comparison of shoe insole material in pressure relief. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1986;10(3):135.
30. Pratt DJ, Rees PH, Rodgers C. Assessment of some shock absorbing insoles. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1986;10(1):43.
31. Rome K. Behavior of orthotic materials in chiropody. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1990;80(9):471–478.
32. Foto JG, Birke JA. Evaluation of multidensity orthotic materials used in footwear for patients with diabetes. *Foot Ankle Int.* 1999;20(2):143.
33. Gillespie KA, Dickey JP. Determination of the effectiveness of materials in attenuating high frequency shock during gait using filter bank analysis. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2003;18(1):50–59.
34. Cinats J, Reid DC, Haddow JB. A biomechanical evaluation of sorbothane. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1987;(222):281–288. Sep.
35. MacLellan GE, Bybyan B. Management of pain beneath the heel and Achilles tendonitis with visco-elastic heel insert. *Br J Sports Med.* 1981;15(2):117.
36. Sadeghi-Demneh E, Forghany S, Onmanee P, Trinler U, Dillon MP, Baker R. The influence of standards and clinical guidelines on prosthetic and orthotic service quality: a scoping review. *Disability and Rehabilitation.* 2017;40(20):2458–2465.
37. Klarich J, Brueckner I. Amputee rehabilitation and preprosthetic care. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25(1):75–91.
38. Pomeranz B, Adler U, Shenoy N, Macaluso C, Parikh S. Prosthetics and orthotics for the older adult with a physical disability. *Clin Geriatr Med.* 2006;22:377–394.
39. McCollough IIINC. Biomechanical analysis systems for orthotic prescription. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Orthotics: Biomechanical Principles and Application.* 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:35–75.
40. Webster JB, Hakimi KN, Williams RM, Turner AP, Norvell DC, Czerniecki JM. Prosthetic fitting, use, and satisfaction following lower-limb amputation: a prospective study. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research and Development.* 2012;49(10):1493–1504.
41. Kistenberg RS. Prosthetic choices for people with leg and arm amputations. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25(1):93–115.
42. Redhead RG. Prescription criteria, fitting, check-out procedures and walking training for the above-knee amputee. In: Murdoch G, Donovan RG, eds. *Amputation Surgery and Lower Limb Prosthetics.* Oxford: Blackwell Scientific; 1988.
43. Boonhong J. Validity and reliability of girth measurement (circumference measurement) for calculating residual limb volume in below-knee amputees. *Chula Med J.* 2007;51:77–88.
44. de Boer-Wilzing VG, Bold A, Geertzen JH, Emmelot CH, Baars EC, Dijkstra PU. Variation in results of volume measurements of stumps of lower-limb amputees: a comparison of 4 methods. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2011;92(6):941–946.
45. Bolt A, de Boer-Wilzing VG, Geertzen JH, Emmelot CH, Baars EC, Dijkstra PU. Variation in measurements of transtibial stump model volume: a comparison of five methods. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;89(5):376–384.
46. Fernie GR, Holliday PJ. Volume fluctuations in the residual limbs of lower limb amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1982;63(4):162–165.
47. Armitage L, Kark L, Czerniec S, Kwah LK. Reliability and validity of measurement tools for residual limb volume in people with limb amputations: a systematic review. *Phys Ther.* 2019. pzz010.
48. Seminati E, Talamas DC, Young M, Twiste M, Dhokia V, Bilzon JLJ. Validity and reliability of a novel 3D scanner for assessment of the shape and volume of amputees' residual limbs. *PLoS ONE.* 2017;12(9). e0184498.
49. Dou P, Jia X, Suo S, Wang R, Zhang M. Pressure distribution at the stump/socket interface in transtibial amputees during walking on stairs, slope and non-flat road. *Clin Biomech.* 2006;21(10):1067–1073.
50. Schuster RO. Neutral plantar impression cast: methods and rationale. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1976;66(6):422–426.
51. Davies RM, Lawrence RB, Routledge PE, et al. The Rapidform process for automated thermoplastic production. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1985;9(1):27–30.
52. Davies RM. Computer aided socket design: the UCL system. In: Davies RM, ed. Annual Report of the Bioengineering Centre. Roehampton, England: The Bioengineering Centre; 1986:9–12.
53. Davis FM. In-office computerized fabrication of custom foot supports. The AMFIT system. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg.* 1993;10(3):393–401.
54. Bache BA, Iftikhar O, Dehzangi O. Brace treatment monitoring solution for idiopathic scoliosis patients. *Machine Learning and Applications (ICMLA) 16th IEEE International Conference on.* 2017;580–585.
55. Lou E, Hill DL, Raso VJ. A wireless sensor network system to determine biomechanics of spinal orthotic during daily living. *Journal of Medical and Biological Engineering and Computing.* 2010;48(3):235–243.
56. Jasni F, Hamzaid NA, Muthalif AGA, Zakaria Z, Shasmin HN, Ng SC. In-Socket Sensory System for Transfemoral Amputees Using Piezoelectric Sensors: An Efficacy Study. *Mechatronics IEEE/ASME Transactions on.* 2016;21(5):2466–2476.
57. Bolus NB, Teague CN, Inan OT, Kogler GF. Instrumented ankle–foot "orthosis: Toward a clinical assessment tool for patient-specific optimization of orthotic ankle stiffness". *Mechatronics IEEE/ASME Transactions on.* 2017;22(6):2492–2501.
58. Hochmann D, Opitz L. Method for instrumentation of orthotic joints for measurement of internal joint loads. *Current Directions in Biomedical Engineering.* 2017;3(1):35–38.
59. Tang Z, Zhang K, Sun S, Gao Z, Zhang I, Yang Z. An upper-limb power-assist exoskeleton using proportional myoelectric control. *Sensors.* 2014;14:6677–6694.
60. Shorter KA, Xia J, Hsiao-Wechsler E, Durfee WK, Kogler GF. Technologies for powered ankle-foot orthotic systems: Possibilities and challenges. *IEEE/ASME Trans Mechatronics.* 2013;18(1):337–343.
61. Veneman JF, Kruidhof R, Hekman E, et al. Design and evaluation of the LOPES exoskeleton robot for interactive gait rehabilitation. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng.* 2007;15:379–386.
62. Freivogel S, Mehrholz J, Husak-Sotomayor T, et al. Gait training with the newly developed "LokoHelp" system is feasible for non-ambulatory patients after stroke, spinal cord and brain injury, a feasibility study. *Brain Injury.* 2008;22:625–632.
63. Chen C, Hanson M, Chaturvedi R, Mattke S, Hillestad R, Liu HH. Economic benefits of microprocessor controlled prosthetic knees: a modeling study. *Journal of neuroengineering and rehabilitation.* 2018;15(6).
64. Pröbsting E, Kanneburg A, Zacharias B. Safety and walking ability of KAFO users with the C-Brace® orthotronic mobility system, a new microprocessor stance and swing control orthosis. *Prosthetics and orthotics international.* 2016;(1):65–77.
65. Jecić S, Drvar N. The assessment of structured light and laser scanning methods in 3D shape measurements, 4th Int. *Congr Croat Soc Mech.* 2003;237–244.
66. Aboali M, Manap NA, Darsono AM, Yusof MH. Review on Three-Dimensional (3-D) Acquisition and Range Imaging Technique. *International Journal of Applied Engineering Research.* 2017;12(10):2409–2421.
67. Tanikella NG, Wittbrodt B, Pearce JM. Tensile strength of commercial polymer materials for fused filament fabrication 3D printing. *Additive Manufacturing.* 2017;15:40–47.
68. Muller A, Fielder G. The Control of Infectious Disease in Orthotics and Prosthetics. *Journal of Prosthetics & Orthotics.* 2018;30(3):124–129.

7 Footwear: Foundation for Lower Extremity Orthoses☆

DANIEL A. RIDDICK, DANIEL H. RIDDICK, and MILAGROS JORGE

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Determine the proper fit of standard footwear for a patient's foot on the basis of necessary function of the foot during gait and the contour and alignment of the foot.
2. Recommend appropriate footwear styles and characteristics for patients with foot deformities and those who wear orthoses or prostheses.
3. Describe the shoe modifications and accommodative orthoses that can be used to address musculoskeletal problems affecting the foot and lower limb.
4. Describe the effect of selected problems and deformity of the forefoot, midfoot, or rearfoot on weight bearing and efficiency of the gait cycle and suggest appropriate footwear or orthotic interventions to reduce pain and improve function.
5. Identify special footwear needs for individuals with arthritis, gout, diabetes, peripheral vascular disease, hemiplegia, and amputation or congenital deformity of the foot and leg.

It can be said that the most essential element of clothing in any person's wardrobe is the shoe. No other article of clothing is designed to fit so precisely; moreover, continuous pressure from tight shoes can produce ulceration and deformities. Ill-fitting shoes can create shear forces that lead to skin breakdown, create and facilitate toe and foot deformities, and lead to falls.[1] Shoes perform the vital functions of transferring body weight to the floor during walking and of protecting the wearer from hazards in the environment. A well-designed shoe is the necessary foundation for many lower extremity orthotics and for prosthetic alignment and an energy-efficient gait. This chapter discusses the components and characteristics of shoes, ensuring proper fit, and choosing appropriate footwear for patients with foot dysfunction and deformity.

Components of a Good Shoe

A suitable pair of shoes minimizes stress on all portions of the feet, provides support, and acts as a shock absorber of ground reaction forces.[2] The basic parts of a shoe are the sole, upper, heel, and last. Each of these parts is further divided into component parts or areas that are required for proper shoe design (Fig. 7.1). Each component is crucial to the prescription of appropriate shoes for an individual's needs.

SOLE

The sole protects the plantar surface of the foot. The traditional sole consists of two pieces of leather sewn together with a layer of compressible cork in between. An additional layer, the insole, is situated next to the foot in most shoes. A heavy thick sole protects the foot against irregularities in the walking surface. The rigidity or stiffness of the sole is also important. Although it must be durable, the sole must not be so rigid as to interfere with the toe rocker of the metatarsophalangeal (MTP) hyperextension during terminal stance and preswing phases of gait.

Various areas of the sole are identified by location. The *welt* is the inside piece of the external sole; the *outsole* is the portion that is most external. The area that lies between the heel and the ball of the shoe, the *shank,* is commonly fabricated to provide reinforcement and shape using materials such as spring steel, steel and leatherboard, or wood strips between the welt and the outsole. The purpose of the shank is to prevent collapse of the material between the heel and the ball of the foot and to provide extra support. In most athletic shoes, the sole is rubber to provide maximal traction. Rubber soles absorb shock, thereby minimizing heel impact forces.

UPPER

The upper of the shoe—divided into the *vamp, tongue,* and *rear quarters*—covers the dorsum of the foot. The vamp extends from the insole forward. The tongue is an extension of the vamp in a blucher-style closure, but in the Balmoral or Bal-type Oxford, the tongue is separate (Fig. 7.2). The blucher-style closure can be opened slightly more than the Bal-Oxford closure to allow the foot into the shoe. The toe of the vamp is often covered with a separate piece of leather called the *tip.* The rearward line of the tip may be straight or winged. The vamp is joined to the quarters, which make up the sides and back of the upper. The two

☆The authors extend appreciation to Jennifer M. Bottomley, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

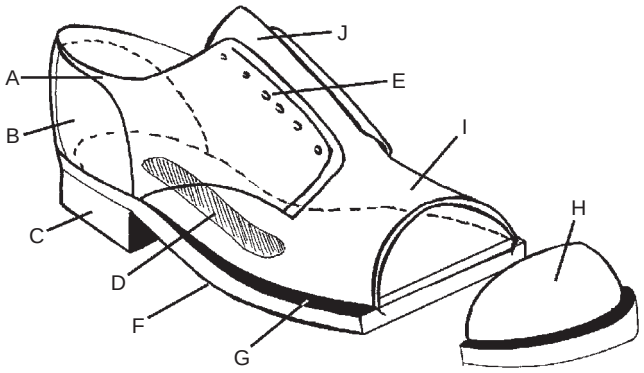


Fig. 7.1 Basic parts of a shoe. The upper is made up of the quarter *(A)* and its reinforcing counter *(B)*, which stabilize the rearfoot within the shoe; the closure *(E)* and the tongue *(J)* across the midfoot; and the shaft (vamp; *I*) and toe box *(H)*, which enclose the forefoot. The exterior outsole *(F)* is often reinforced with a steel shank *(D)* and is attached to the upper at the welt *(G)*. The standard heel *(C)* is ¾-inch high.

quarters are joined at a back seam. The design of the shoe dictates the shape and size of the quarters. For the Oxford shoe, the outside quarter is cut lower than the inside to avoid contact with the malleoli. In the Bal-type Oxford, the back edges of the vamp cover the forward edges of the quarter. The forward edges of the quarters are on the top of the vamp in the blucher style of shoe.

For individuals wearing orthoses and those with foot deformity, the blucher closure is preferable to the Bal-style closure because of its construction. The blucher closure has a separation between the distal margins of the lace stays, thus offering a wide inlet and making the shoes easier to put on and take off and having a readily adjustable circumference. High shoes, which encase the malleoli, provide additional mediolateral stability.

HEEL

The heel is located beneath the outer sole under the anatomic heel. The heel base is usually made of rigid rubber, plastic, or wood with a resilient plantar surface. As heel height increases, the ankle range of motion necessary to lower the forefoot to the floor increases. Weight-bearing pressures (vertical forces) on the forefoot and hallux also increase in midstance to late stance.[3] The individual with limited ankle motion may benefit from a compressible heel base to absorb shock and achieve plantarflexion during the early stance phase. A broad low heel maximizes stability and minimizes stress on the metatarsal heads. Most lower extremity orthoses and prosthetic feet are designed for a specific heel height. The efficacy of the orthosis or quality of the prosthetic gait can be significantly compromised if used with shoes that have higher or lower heels.

REINFORCEMENTS

Strategic shoe reinforcements contribute to foot protection. Toe boxing at the distal vamp shields the toes and prevents the anterior portion of the vamp from losing its shape. The toe box can also be increased in depth to protect and accommodate any toe deformities. The heel counter reinforces the quarters to help secure the shoe to the anatomic heel. The medial counter helps to support the medial arch of the shoe, and the heel counter aids in controlling the rearfoot. The convex shank piece stiffens the sole between the distal border of the shoe heel and the MTP joints and aids in supporting the longitudinal arch.

LASTS

Shoes are constructed over a model of the foot, called a *last*, which is styled from wood, plaster, or plastic. Manufacturers are now converting to computer-aided last designs. Regardless of the origin of the last, it determines the fit, walking ease, and appearance of the shoe. Commercial shoes are made over many different lasts in thousands of size combinations. Most shoes are made with a medial last, which means that the toe box is directed inward from the heel (Fig. 7.3). Shoes can also be made from conventional lasts, straight lasts, inflared or medial lasts, or outflared or lateral lasts.

ENHANCING FUNCTION

Shoes are an essential component of daily professional,[4] leisure, and recreational[5] life. Regardless of the reason for the use of a particular shoe, foot stability is critical to minimizing ankle injury, excessive pronation, and slippage of the heel during the gait cycle. A well-designed shoe provides a broad heel base, ankle collar, and close-fitting heel counter. A keystone of a good shoe is its ability to absorb shock. The construction of and materials used for the insole, midsole, and outer sole determine the amount of shock absorption that the shoe will provide.[6]

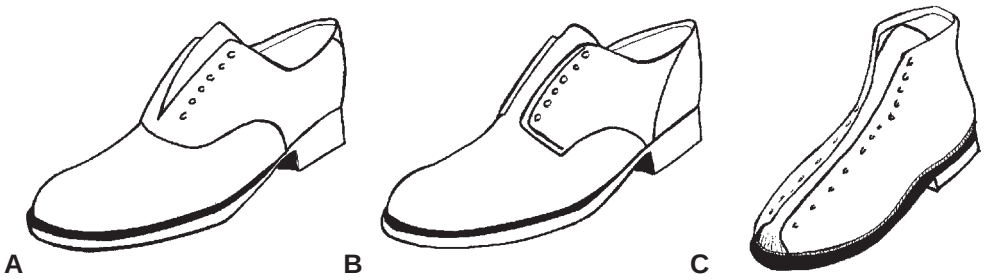


Fig. 7.2 Three types of shoe closures. (A) In the Bal Oxford, the tongue is a separate piece sewn to the vamp and anterior edges of the quarters. (B) In the blucher style, the tongue is an extension of the vamp and can be opened slightly wider. (C) For patients with rigid ankle orthoses, fixed deformity, or fragile neuropathic feet, the lace-to-toe (surgical) style may be necessary.

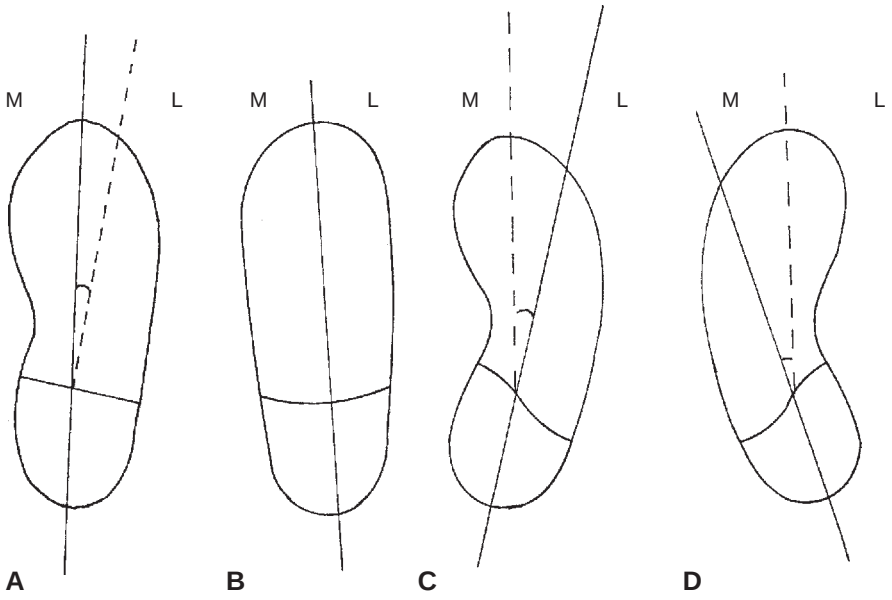


Fig. 7.3 The last determines the shape of the shoe. (A) In a conventional last, the forefoot is directly slightly lateral *(L)* to the midline. (B) A straight last is symmetric around the midline. (C) An inflared last directs the forefoot medially. (D) An outflared last directs the foot more laterally than a conventional last. *M*, Medial.

A good shoe must be flexible and provide stability with each step. Flexible construction is especially important in the sole to enhance the toe rocker in late stance phase. The sole should also provide adequate traction as it contacts the ground, especially in early stance as body weight is transferred onto the foot. A coefficient of friction that is sufficient to minimize slips and near slips is vital. Heel height can create stress on the forefoot during gait. Heels of more than 1½ inches exponentially increase weight-bearing forces on the metatarsal heads.[7]

The ability of a shoe to handle moisture is also an important consideration. For optimal foot health and comfort, perspiration must be wicked away and, at the same time, external moisture kept out.

The upper should be soft and pliable. Modern tanning techniques can create strong but supple uppers that surround the feet supportively and protectively without rubbing and chafing while also allowing the foot to breathe.

ORTHOTIC-RELATED FUNCTION

A molded insole contributes to foot stability, shock absorption, and a transfer of shear forces away from problem areas. Orthoses can enhance the function of the shoes. Chapter 8 presents the principles and practices of orthotic prescription in commonly occurring conditions of the foot.

Proper Fitting of a Shoe: "If the Shoe Fits"

The two primary determinants of proper shoe fit are the shoe's shape and size. *Shoe shape* refers to the shape of the sole and the upper. Proper fit is achieved when shoe shape is matched to foot shape. *Shoe size* is determined by arch length, not by overall foot length. The proper shoe size is the one that accommodates the first metatarsal joint in the widest part of the shoe. Properly fitting shoes are important in avoiding foot discomfort and deformity and are absolutely essential for individuals with arthritis, diabetes, and other foot disorders.[8]

Great variability is found in human foot size and shape. Mass-produced shoes, however, are formed over fairly standard lasts that give a shoe its special size and shape. In the well-fitting shoe, the shape determined by the last approximates the human foot. The design and construction of the shoe should allow for a roomy toe box; it should be wide enough for normal toe alignment and be ½ inch longer than the longest toe. Proper fit of the forefoot in the shoe can be a critical factor in reducing the incidence of bunions, hammertoes, and other forefoot deformities. In general, the shoe should be wide enough to accommodate the widest part of the forefoot. A tracing of the foot (standing) should fit within an outline of the shoe bottom.

Proper fit presupposes proper design, shape, and construction and is fundamentally wedded to availability in widths as well as lengths. It is important that the clinician cultivate a consumer mindset that realizes the medical importance of modifying the old cliché "if the shoe fits, wear it" to "if the shoe fits, wear it, and if it doesn't, order it in the correct size."

DETERMINING MEASUREMENTS

The average shoe salesperson does not offer to measure the foot, instead relying on the consumer to know his or her foot size. However, because foot size changes over time, periodic measurement of both feet for length and width is important. Many shoe styles that are available in retail shoe stores do not appropriately match the shape of an individual's foot. As a result, comfort and protection are compromised in the name of "style." This is especially problematic in the presence of foot deformity. Hallux valgus is a foot deformity that is aggravated by wearing shoes that are too narrow across

the metatarsal heads and triangularly shaped in the toe box. Shoes should be wide enough to allow the material of the upper that surrounds the widest region of the forefoot (i.e., the metatarsal heads) to be compressed at least 1/16 inch before bony contact is made. Likewise, there should be a space of at least ½ inch between the tip of the longest toe and the front of the toe box in weight bearing (generally the width of the thumb).

In the United States, 12 standard shoe widths are manufactured.[1] They range from the very narrow AAAAA to the very wide EEEE—that is, AAAAA, AAAA, AAA, AA, A, B, C, D, E, EE, EEE, EEEE. Because most retail stores stock shoes of midrange widths (A–E), patients with narrow or wide feet often have difficulty finding shoes of the optimal width.

Standard U.S. shoes are available in half-size increments, from an infant's size 0 to a man's size 16. The difference in length between half sizes is 1/16 inch. Standard shoe-sizing classifications are made by groups and lasts: infants' sizes 0 to 2; boys' sizes 2½ to 6; girls' sizes 2½ to 9; women's sizes 3 to 10; and men's sizes 6 to 12. Sizes larger than women's size 10 and men's size 12 must often be specially ordered. A U.S. women's shoe size is usually three half sizes smaller than the corresponding men's size (e.g., women's size 9 is the same as a men's size 7½).

European and U.K. manufacturers use a different numbering system. The comparison of European and U.K. women's to men's sizes is based on centimeters (e.g., women's size 38 EUR/5 UK is the same as men's size 40 EUR/5 UK). Table 7.1 compares the standard sizes for U.S., European, and U.K. shoe manufacturers and lists the measures for each size.

Table 7.1 Comparison of Standardized Shoe Sizes

United States	Europe	United Kingdom	Centimeters
WOMEN'S SIZES			
3	34	1	20
3½	34.5	1.5	20.5
4	35	2	21
4½	35.5	2.5	21.5
5	36	3	22
5½	36.5	3.5	22.5
6	37	4	23
6½	37.5	4.5	23.5
7	38	5	24
7½	38.5	5.5	24.5
8	39	6	25
8½	39.5	6.5	25.5
9	40	7	26
9½	40.5	7.5	26.5
10	41	8	27
MEN'S SIZES			
6	40	5	24
6½	40.5	5.5	24.5
7	41	6	25
7½	41.5	6.5	25.5
8	42	7	26
8½	42.5	7.5	26.5
9	43	8	27
9½	43.5	8.5	27.5
10	44	9	28
10½	44.5	9.5	28.5
11	45	10	29
11½	45.5	10.5	29.5
12	46	11	30

FOOT CONTOUR

Foot contour changes throughout the life cycle. Aging, pregnancy, obesity, and everyday stresses on the foot cause it to widen. Deformities such as bunions increase the width and shape of the foot, and splaying of the metatarsal heads creates a collapse of the transverse arch, further increasing the width of the forefoot.[9] Forefoot height may increase in the presence of toe deformities. Deformities such as pes planus[10] (foot flattening) or pes cavus[11] (high arches) change the contour of the midfoot. The shape of the foot must be considered and accommodated when an individual is measured for shoes. Often a "combined last" (where the last in the toe box is different from the rearfoot counter) is required to accommodate the contour of the foot. The relationship of the forefoot to the rearfoot is an important consideration in determining if the shoe shape, provided by the last, corresponds to the shape of the foot. Shoes with medial, straight, or lateral lasts can be ordered to best meet patient needs.

OBESITY AND EDEMA

Obesity in children[12] and adults[13] has been shown to affect the medial longitudinal, lateral longitudinal, and transverse arches of the foot as well as to increase the length and the width of the foot. The increased body weight puts even more strain on the plantar fascia and the ligaments of the plantar surface of the foot. Individuals exhibit overpronation with collapsing arches. With repetitive weight-bearing activities such as standing and walking, those structures begin to buckle under stress. The additional mechanical stress of carrying excess weight takes its toll on the feet, often resulting in problems such as plantar fasciitis, arthritis and bursitis, heel pain, neuroma, and gait changes.[14]

Proper shoe fitting is essential for preventing the secondary foot problems that stem from ill-fitting shoes. Overweight individuals should be encouraged to have their feet measured regularly, particularly if they have had a significant weight gain. It is often helpful to shop for shoes at the end of the day, when the feet are largest, and the shoe fitting should be done with the person standing to ensure that there is ½ inch between the end of the longest toe and the edge of the toe box. The shoes should be comfortable the moment they are worn.

Fluctuation in foot size in individuals with edema (e.g., those with kidney dysfunction or congestive heart failure or anyone who is taking diuretic medication) creates a challenge when shoes are being fitted. The contour of the foot is constantly changing. For someone with severe edema, a shoe/sandal with a Thermold Velcro closure (Fig. 7.4) is recommended to accommodate and support the foot and prevent the undue pressures imposed by a shoe that becomes too small during the course of the day. The consequences of ill-fitting shoes—especially shoes with a narrow tow box—are foot problems such as bunions, valgus deformity, and neuromas. Many of these problems can be prevented by the habitual use of properly fitting shoes.[1]

Fig. 7.4 Velcro closure shoe/sandal. Adjustable Velcro closures are recommended to accommodate edematous feet and prevent tissue damage due to high pressure. (Silvert's Stores, Concord, Ontario, Canada.)

Special Considerations

Feet come in many shapes, sizes, and conditions of health. The biomechanical and functional characteristics of feet change over an individual's lifetime and must also be reflected in shoe choice. An infant's foot must adapt to weight bearing, especially as walking becomes functional. The foot of a child continues to adapt as normal growth changes alignment of the pelvis, femur, and tibia. The influence of hormones during pregnancy also affects the structure and function of the foot. Finally, the combined influence of the aging process, obesity, and diseases that are common in later life can create special footwear needs for older adults.

PEDIATRIC FOOT

Many pediatric and lower extremity foot disorders are minimally symptomatic and do not require treatment, whereas others require more aggressive management. An understanding of the natural history of many of these disorders is important in establishing the appropriate footwear for toddlers and children as they begin to walk and run.[15–17]

In-toeing is a problem caused by positional factors in utero and during sleep, muscle imbalances due to paralytic disorders, and decreased range of motion in the lower kinetic chain. It may also be due to metatarsus adductus, internal tibia torsion, or internal femoral torsion.

Metatarsus adductus is characterized by a bean-shaped foot that results from adduction of the forefoot. In most children (approximately 90%), this disorder resolves spontaneously.[15] If it does not improve over the first 6 to 12 weeks of life, the treatment of choice is manual stretching and/or an outflared shoe. The bones of the foot are soft and can be corrected with positioning in the outflared shoe (reverse last) or Bebax shoe (Camp Healthcare, Jackson, MI).

Internal tibial torsion is a twist between the knee and the ankle. Generally this torsion disappears by 5 years of age. Torsion can be exacerbated by abnormal sitting and sleep postures with the foot turned inward. The Dennis Browne bar or the counterrotation splint is used in combination with a reverse last shoe to remodel the bones during growth. Persistent severe toeing created by internal tibial torsion requires a derotational osteotomy of the tibia/fibula in the supramalleolar region.

Internal femoral torsion can also be the cause of in-toeing with a twist between the knee and hip. Neither splints nor shoes are effective in treatment of torsion. Habitual sitting in the "W" position (e.g., when a child is watching television or playing games on the floor) can aggravate the problem. Children with internal femoral torsion should be encouraged to sit cross-legged as an alternative.

Out-toeing occurs in children who sleep in the frog position and have soft tissue contractures around the hip. This is usually a hip or a long bone torsion problem and is not affected by footwear.

Toe walking can be the result of an in utero shortening or a congenital shortening of the Achilles tendon but can also be an early sign of cerebral palsy, muscular dystrophy, or Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease.[18] Until 4 years of age, the ability to stretch the tendon is well preserved, and conservative treatment includes stretching, casting, ankle-foot orthoses, and/or a night splint. Z-plasty lengthening is performed if conservative interventions fail.[18] Shoe prescription objectives follow the same principles as those in the older adult with Achilles tendinitis.

Flexible and Rigid Flatfoot

Flatfoot or pes planus is defined at the loss of the medial longitudinal arch. Flatfoot is classified as either flexible or rigid. A flexible flatfoot has an arch that is present in open kinetic chain (non–weight bearing) and lost in closed kinetic chain (weight bearing). A rigid flatfoot has loss of the longitudinal arch height in open and closed kinetic chain.[19] Treatment of flatfoot disorders in children is approached through proper fitting shoes with good arch support and if necessary orthotic inserts in the shoes. Fitting children with standardized shoes that have good arches, be they dress shoes or athletic shoes, can support fallen arches and pronated feet. When additional support is necessary, insole orthotics can be added.[18,20] The shoe used to treat flatfoot is designed to correct heel valgus and supports the arch. Forefoot pronation is achieved by using a lateral shoe wedge combined with a medial heel wedge. A scaphoid pad supports the arch, and a strong medial counter prevents medial rollover. A Thomas heel is often used to provide additional support for the arch. In-shoe orthotics are prescribed to improve arch alignment, increase the duration of the stance phase of level walking, and reduce both the maximum foot pronation angle and tibial internal rotation.[18,19] Orthotics have been shown to reduce foot pain in children with flatfoot.[19]

The *calcaneovalgus* deformity is a congenital condition that is usually secondary to the individual's initial position in utero. The heel is in severe valgus and the foot is dorsiflexed so much that it rests against the anterolateral aspect of the tibia. Most cases correct spontaneously. Treatment of

the severe cases includes stretching and serial casting. Some rare severe cases, left untreated, persist into adolescence as pes planus.

An *accessory navicular bone* is a small ossicle at the medial tuberosity of the navicular. Individuals with an accessory navicular bone often complain of pressure and discomfort while wearing shoes. Often, placement of a prefabricated arch support in the shoe lifts the arch just enough to minimize rubbing on the shoe.

Hallux valgus (bunions) is most often the consequence of rearfoot valgus, leading to varus of the first metatarsal. The conservative approaches to treating this condition in children are orthoses and comfortable shoes, with a good heel counter to maintain the heel in subtalar neutral.

Curly toes involve the congenital shortening of the flexor tendons. Treated conservatively, flexors are stretched, and a rocker-like insole is used in the shoe to support the toes in extension. Shoes must have extra depth with plenty of room in the toe box.

Shoe prescription for these biomechanical problems of the foot and lower extremity in childhood is as valuable as a conservative corrective intervention. Overall, if a child's foot is developing normally and does not exhibit any signs of an abnormality, a soft-soled shoe is appropriate. If some degree of abnormality exists, a more supportive, rigid shoe is indicated for toddlers. In general, the stiffer the heel counter, the more effective the intervention.

The most common prescription shoe for young children is a straight-last shoe. This type of shoe is roomy enough to accommodate pads or wedges. In addition, a straight-last shoe does not generate any abnormal forces against the child's foot.

FOOT DURING PREGNANCY

During pregnancy, women may experience problems in their lower extremities, including edema, leg cramps, restless legs syndrome, joint laxity, and low back pain. As a result, foot pain is a common problem in pregnant women.[21,22] An important consideration is the provision of shoes with maximum shock absorption. Gel-cushioned running shoes are recommended, especially if women continue to jog or walk for exercise. Expectant mothers are also advised to exercise on soft surfaces to prevent problems caused by repetitive pounding on unforgiving surfaces.

High-heeled shoes exaggerate the lordotic curve and are inadvisable during pregnancy. As weight distribution shifts with advancing pregnancy, especially if edema occurs, many women choose to wear shoes with laces or a Velcro closure. Athletic and walking shoes provide good support, excellent cushioning, and a solid heel counter. If a heel is desired for special occasions, a 1-inch or lower-heeled shoe should be recommended. Even low but tiny tapered heels cause women to wobble as they walk.

Many women find that their feet have "grown" during pregnancy; after having returned to prepregnancy weight and clothing, their shoes no longer fit. Measurements often reflect an increase in shoe length of a half to a full size. The stress of extra body weight coupled with ligamentous laxity can reduce arch height, adding length to the feet. This process is a normal age-related change in foot structure, associated with wear and tear of the body over time, which is hastened during pregnancy. The hormonally induced tissue laxity of pregnancy leads to a broader forefoot as the metatarsal heads separate and the distal transverse arch flattens and to a longer foot as the longitudinal arch is less efficiently supported by soft tissue structures. For this reason, pregnant women are advised to wear a larger shoe size, with a square or deeper toe box or both, especially if edema is also a problem.

Gabriel et al., in a research study titled *Anthropometric Foot Changes During Pregnancy*, concluded that "the foot of the pregnant woman tends to flatten during gestational weeks 12 to 34, taking a more pronated posture, and the anthropometric changes in late pregnancy result in increases in foot length and forefoot width, changes that seem to be moderate."[23] The hormonal changes during pregnancy—which cause ligamentous laxity, flattening of the medial longitudinal arch, excessive pronation of the foot, and pregnancy-induced forward displacement of the center of gravity—cause foot pain, increased strain on the axial skeleton, and reduced efficiency of gait. Foot orthotics to support the metatarsal heads and medial longitudinal arch, placed in shoes with good shock-absorbing ability, can help decrease foot discomfort and prevent injury to the low back during pregnancy.[24]

FOOT IN LATER LIFE

Foot problems are among the most common complaints of older adults. Nearly one-third of community-dwelling adults 65 of age or older experience a fall.[25] Falls are the leading cause of both fatal and nonfatal injuries in older persons and often result in functional declines, institutionalization, and decreased quality of life. Researchers explain that the reasons for falls among the elderly are multifaceted and often the result of a combination of intrinsic (e.g., preexisting disease or chronic conditions, polypharmacy, muscle weakness, functional limitations, and vision impairment) and extrinsic risk factors such as hazards in the home and poor footwear. The increase risk of falls in the elderly has led to investigating factors that contribute to falls.[25] One of the factors associated with loss of balance and falls is the type of footwear worn.[26–28] Researchers investigated what elderly patients wear on their feet to help address the problem of frequent falls in the elderly population.[27] Elderly persons often wear poorly fitted shoes, slippers, and sandals that contribute to poor balance and increase the risk of falls. In the study, "Risk factors for falls in older citizens," the researchers identified bad footwear as an extrinsic factor that contributes to falls.[25] Persons in hospital settings wearing hospital slippers are at greater risk for falls.

Gait and foot problems in older adults are associated with diseases that are common in later life and with the aging process itself. Examples of conditions that can compromise gait and foot function include the residuals of congenital deformities, ventricular enlargement, spinal cord diseases, joint deformities, muscle contractures, peripheral nerve injuries, peripheral vascular disease, cerebrovascular accidents, trauma, ulcers, arthritis, diabetes, inactivity, and degenerative and chronic diseases. The anatomic and biomechanical considerations of podogeriatrics focus on the

interrelationships of the rearfoot, midfoot, and forefoot established by osseous, muscle, and connective tissue structures. The movement of one joint influences movement of other joints in the foot and ankle. Soft tissue structures establish an interdependency of the foot and ankle to the entire lower limb. As tissues age, they become stiffer, less compliant, weaker, and more vulnerable to breakdown.

Foot contour alters with aging; the foot gets wider, and bunions and splaying occur from collapse of the transverse arch. Forefoot height increases in the presence of toe deformities. Fat pads under the metatarsal joints atrophy and shift position distally, whereas the calcaneal fat pad atrophies and shifts laterally. These changes leave bony prominences that are vulnerable to breakdown.

In persons with type 2 diabetes, the development of Charcot joints (neuropathic arthropathy) is a relatively painless, degenerative, progressive neuropathic destruction of the bony architecture. The ankle mortis and the tarsal and metatarsal joints are most frequently affected.[29] a relatively painless, progressive, and degenerative destruction of the tarsometatarsal or MTP joints.

With the sensory losses that are common in type 2 diabetes, these joints are subjected to extreme stresses without the benefits of normal protective mechanisms. Capsular and ligamentous stretching, joint laxity, distention, subluxation, dislocation, cartilage fibrillation, osteochondral fragmentation, and fracture occur. Motor impairment contributes to wasting of muscles in the feet and permits digital contractures to compensate for dynamic muscular imbalances. Thus Charcot collapse may lead to the development of a rocker-bottom foot and increases the likelihood of developing hammertoe deformities.[29]

Many elderly persons with type 2 diabetes attribute their problem with walking to pain or a sense of unsteadiness, stiffness, dizziness, numbness, or impaired proprioception. Prevention of foot ulcers due to poor circulation, poor sensation, and ill-fitted footwear is critical for persons with diabetes. Persons with type 2 diabetes and dysvascular foot disease have greater need for specialized footwear such as custom-molded shoes.[30,31]

Physical therapists work with elderly individuals to reduce pain, improve circulation through exercise, increase muscle strength, improve balance and flexibility, and modify the reaction times of movements in order to maximize the individual's functional abilities and upright mobility. Assessing the elderly individual for appropriate footwear is a fundamental requirement for enabling him or her to become functional in ambulation.

The majority of foot problems in geriatric patients can be managed with proper shoe fitting and minimal shoe modifications. The most inexpensive footwear for this patient population comprises running or walking shoes. These are less expensive and fit within a fixed-income budget. They provide good foot support and can be purchased with Velcro straps for closure if hand function or foot edema is a problem. The Thermold shoe is also appropriate for many of the pathologic and structural deformities with which the older patient must deal that do not involve unhealed foot ulcers. When foot ulcers are present and prevention of limb loss is critical, more extensive therapeutic interventions are required, such as removable or nonremovable foot casts.[32]

Choosing Appropriate Footwear and Socks

A vast and somewhat bewildering variety of "off-the-shelf" footwear is available to consumers. Many shoes are designed with certain types of activities in mind. An understanding of their design and construction, as well as ensuring proper fit, can enhance foot health and minimizes the risk of foot dysfunction, injury, and pain.

ATHLETIC SHOE GEAR

Many people jump into fitness activities "feet first" and develop blisters, calluses, and other foot injuries because of inappropriate footwear. A well-fitting activity-appropriate athletic shoe enhances enjoyment of the activity by protecting and supporting the foot and minimizing injury. Athletic shoes are designed for specific activities. A running shoe is designed with a high-force heel impact and forward foot movement in mind; the various shoe models have specific features that are designed for different surface conditions and distances in running. Basketball shoes do not provide as much cushioning as do running shoes but instead focus on foot support during quick lateral movement. Aerobic shoes are also designed for lateral movement but provide more cushioning for the impact anticipated on the ball of the foot. Shoe soles are also designed for the surface on which the activity is performed. Some shoes are manufactured as cross-training shoes so that they can go from the workout in the gym to jogging, but they are not designed for high-mileage runners.

Determining the foot type is important in prescribing the best shoe. For individuals with a flat, low-arched foot, a shoe that provides maximum stability to prevent the foot from rolling in with each step is required. High-arched feet demand a shoe that is more flexible. "Normal" feet do best in a shoe that combines the last to accommodate the heel and the forefoot and that has forefoot flexibility. The size and shape of the toe box must also be considered. Enough room should be available in the toe box to prevent blisters, ulcers, and chafing of the toes. Shoes made from materials that "breathe," so that perspiration can escape, are desirable. Athletic shoes are best used only for their intended activity and should be replaced at regular intervals to maximize their effectiveness.

Most athletic footwear is available in medium widths, although a few manufacturers provide shoes in several widths. Children's athletic footwear is available in narrow, medium, and wide widths. Women's athletic footwear may be available in AA, B, and D widths. Men's athletic footwear may be available in B, D, EE, and EEE widths. The key element in proper fit of athletic shoes is comfort from the moment the shoe is put on, with no break-in period needed. The shoe should also provide adequate support and shock absorption for the sport or activity that is being pursued.

WALKING SHOES

A well-designed walking shoe provides stable rearfoot control, ample forefoot room, and a shock absorption heel and sole. This type of footwear may be specifically designed by an

athletic footwear manufacturer or even by an orthopedic footwear manufacturer. Walking shoes are available in various widths and in several different lasts. Long medial counters, Thomas heels, and crepe soles can be used to modify this type of shoe gear to meet specific needs.

DRESS SHOES

Despite the fashionable preference for shoes with narrow or pointed toes and slim high heels, the most foot-friendly dress shoe for women is a rounded-toe Mary Jane style with boxy heels. A good dress shoe approximates the shape of the individual's foot and provides flexibility and sufficient shock absorption. Prerequisites of a good dress shoe include a roomy toe box, low stable heel, proper width in the ball of the foot area, flexible outsole with skidproof bottoms, and arch support.

Triangular toe boxes and high heels, no matter how dainty, are best avoided because they can and do cause deformity. For a high-heeled shoe to stay on the foot, it must fit closely around the toes, resulting in no room for anything but the foot. The foot is virtually unsupported at the distal end of the shank, and extreme high pressure is present under the metatarsal heads. Heels higher than 2 inches make any kind of orthosis ineffectual. Because the angle of the foot causes the heel of the orthosis to lift up, high heels can transform an orthosis into a catapult. Although orthoses can help to relieve metatarsal and heel pain and provide arch support, they cannot offer any corrective features in a shoe that is designed so unnaturally for the human foot.

SOCKS

The sock is often overlooked when shoes of any kind are prescribed. Socks can aid in shock absorption, shield the skin from abrasion by the shoe stitching and lining, and prevent skin irritation from shoe dyes and synthetic leather materials. Additionally, clean, freshly laundered socks are integral to a sanitary foot environment. Unbleached white cotton socks are ideal because they lack dyes, are hypoallergenic, and absorb perspiration readily. Cotton socks also provide ample toe room, unlike socks that are made from stretchable fabric, which can crowd the toes.

The size and style of socks also influence foot health. Socks that are too short crowd the toes; those that are too long wrinkle within the shoe, creating potential shear pressure points. If knee-high socks are worn, the proximal band must not be unduly restrictive; similarly, the use of circumferential garters to hold socks can impede circulation to the foot. Any holes worn into a sock also potentially create shear pressures, and such a sock should be discarded. Mended holes in socks, because of the difference in thickness and materials, can irritate delicate or insensate soft tissue. An open hole at the toes pinches and constricts the digits, with excessive friction at the edges of the hole.

Specially designed socks that support and cushion the insensitive foot or athletic/military foot that is exposed to repetitive frictional forces are commercially available.[33] Use of these specially designed socks not only reduces the frictional shearing forces but also significantly decreases vertical ground reaction pressure forces, preventing blistering and ulceration.[30] Extra high-density padding functions as a natural fat pad, reducing the destructive effects of shearing forces and pressure and friction in the toe area. The concept of supportive socks is beneficial for patients with insensitive feet. It has also been used for individuals involved in aerobic exercise, baseball, basketball, cycling, golf, hiking, trekking and climbing, skiing, tennis, walking, and running.

Prescription Footwear, Custom-Molded Shoes, Accommodative Molded Orthoses, and Shoe Modifications

Alteration of foot function and alignment can be accomplished with one or more of the following strategies: use of foot orthoses[34] or prescription shoes[35] and modifications of shoes themselves.[36] These strategies are used to relieve pain and improve balance and function during standing and locomotion. Such alternatives are indicated when a transfer of forces from sensitive to pressure-tolerant areas is needed to reduce friction, shock, and shear forces; to modify weight transfer patterns; to correct flexible foot deformities; to accommodate for fixed foot deformities; and to limit motion in painful, inflamed, or unstable joints.

When special protective or prescription footwear is being considered, the functional objectives must be clearly stated so that the appropriate specific prescription can be developed. Careful examination of the foot helps the clinician identify pathologic conditions or mechanical factors, or both, that must be addressed and choose the appropriate materials and footwear styles to meet the patient's specific needs.

MOLDABLE LEATHERS

Thermold is an example of prescription footwear that can be used to protect feet that are vulnerable due to vascular insufficiency, neuropathy, or deformity. It is a cross-linked, closed-cell polyethylene foam laminated to the leather upper of the footwear that can be heat-molded directly to the foot. This makes modification for foot deformity easily managed and far less expensive than custom molding. Thermold shoes are also available in extra-depth styles, with a removable ¼-inch insole. Extra-depth shoes enable adequate room for custom-made insoles or orthoses to become an intricate adjunct to the footwear. In some instances, the Thermold can be used as an alternative to custom-molded footwear.

CUSTOM-MOLDED SHOES

Some foot problems cannot be accommodated in conventional footwear; the best solution then is custom-molded footwear. This footwear is molded directly over a plaster reproduction of the foot rather than a standard last. Special modifications—such as toe fillers, Plastazote, rocker bars, and elevations—can be added during manufacturing to meet the specific requirements of each foot. Because of this process, custom-molded shoes are made to conform to the foot shape in all respects (Fig. 7.5). Custom orthopedic shoes represent the ultimate combination of function and aesthetics. Incorporating biomechanics and craftsmanship,

Fig. 7.5 Examples of custom-molded shoes. These shoes are prescribed when foot deformities are too severe for accommodation in a conventional shoe. (Ottawa Foot Balance, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.)

custom-molded shoes can redistribute weight, restrict joint motion, facilitate ambulation, and decrease the probability of neuropathic ulceration.[34,37,38]

PLASTAZOTE SHOE OR SANDAL

For patients with insensitive or ulcerated feet, a "healing sandal" or Plastazote shoe is often prescribed. This custom shoe is fabricated using a plaster cast of the individual's foot for construction.[39] Temporary protective footwear, such as a Plastazote boot or shoe or a healing sandal, is often used while a neuropathic ulcer heals so as to allow for ambulation without pressure on the healing area, especially for patients who are unable to walk or who are noncompliant with non–weight-bearing ambulation.

SHOE MODIFICATIONS

Various shoe modifications can be used to address functional and anatomic deformities of the foot and leg. Clearly stated objectives, based on careful evaluation, ensure that the appropriate shoe modifications are chosen.

Lifts for Leg-Length Discrepancy

For patients with leg-length discrepancy of ⅜ inch or more, a full-length external lift can be mounted to the sole of the shoe on the shorter limb to equalize leg length and reduce proximal stresses at the hips and spine. If the length difference is less than ⅜ inch, the discrepancy can usually be accommodated with an orthotic heel wedge worn inside the shoe. If the discrepancy is a result of a unilateral equinus deformity, a heel wedge can be attached to the external surface of the shoe. Leg-length discrepancy is a common result of a hip fracture, congenital anomaly, or biomechanical imbalance such as pelvic rotation, hip anteversion or retroversion, or unilateral foot pronation. The level of the pelvis and absolute and relative measures of leg length should be part of a comprehensive gait evaluation.[40]

Heel Wedging

Wedging is used to alter lines of stress to facilitate a more normal gait pattern. The most effective wedges range from ⅛ to ¼ inches in thickness at their apex. Larger wedges tend to cause the foot to slide away from the wedge toward the opposite side of the shoe, drastically reducing the effectiveness of the modification. Wedging is useful for children with a rotational problem, such as tibial torsion. In adults, wedges are used for accommodation in conditions such as a fixed valgus deformity of the calcaneus (Fig. 7.6).

A medial heel wedge is used when flexible valgus of the calcaneus is present (Fig. 7.7A). As the wedge elevates the medial heel, a resultant varus tilt acts on the calcaneus, preventing excessive pronation of the foot. A lateral heel wedge is used when flexible varus of the calcaneus is present (see Fig. 7.7B). Elevation of the lateral heel decreases the medial drive on floor contact at heel strike, tipping the calcaneus into valgus. A full heel wedge is sometimes used in the presence of fixed or functional equinus deformity. The goal of wedging is to obtain a subtalar neutral position during the stance phase of gait.[41]

Sole Wedging

Wedging can also be used to modify midfoot and forefoot positions. A medial sole wedge produces an inversion effect on the forefoot. This wedge is positioned along the medial aspect of the footwear, from a point just proximal of the first metatarsal head to the midline of the footwear (see Fig. 7.7C). Conversely, a lateral sole wedge creates an eversion effect at the forefoot. This wedge is placed proximal to the fifth metatarsal head to the midline of the footwear. The apex of this wedge is the fifth metatarsal head (see Fig. 7.7D).

A Barton wedge (see Fig. 7.7E) is used in the presence of severe flexible pronation deformities, such as those seen in pes planus, when control of the midfoot is the goal. The Barton wedge, usually made with 3/16-inch leather, extends along the medial side of the foot to the midtarsal joint and tapers laterally just anterior to the cuboid bone. It provides support to the navicular and helps invert the calcaneus. It is used when it is necessary to shift body weight laterally. When a Barton wedge is used, the shoe must have a firm medial counter. The Barton wedge can be incorporated in an internally placed lateral heel wedge for patients with fixed calcaneal varus or clubfoot deformity. Because an internal wedge is closer to the target deformity, it creates a positive force of greater magnitude than is possible with the external Barton wedge. Instead of tilting the footgear, the wedge tilts the calcaneus into the desired position.[42]

Fig. 7.6 A heel wedge provides elevation of the heel for equinus deformity. (Dr Richard Blake of San Francisco.)

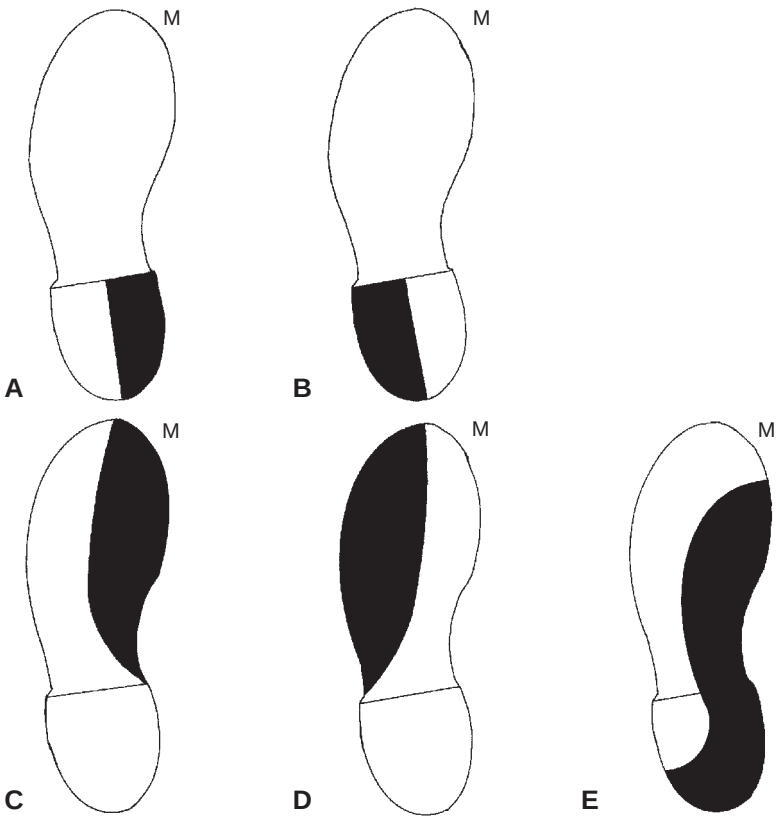


Fig. 7.7 Examples of heel and sole wedge modifications. A medial *(M)* heel wedge (A) is used when flexible valgus of the calcaneus is present; a lateral heel wedge (B) is used for flexible varus of the calcaneus. Medial sole wedges (C) create an inversion effect of the forefoot, whereas lateral sole wedges (D) create an eversion effect. A Barton wedge (E) supports the navicular bone and helps invert the calcaneus, shifting the body weight laterally.

Metatarsal Bars and Rocker Bottoms

A metatarsal bar is a block of material (usually stacked pieces of leather or rubber) attached to the sole of the shoe. Its placement proximal to the metatarsal heads significantly reduces pressure at the metatarsal heads during the push-off phase of the gait cycle.[43,44] The curved distal edge of the metatarsal bar is designed to follow the curve of the metatarsal heads. It is commonly used to adapt shoes worn by patients with transmetatarsal amputations, fixed arthritic deformities, diabetes, forefoot deformities such as hallux rigidus, and neuromas. The placement of a metatarsal bar or rocker facilitates push-off by simulating forward propulsion in the absence of metatarsal flexibility.

Rocker bottoms are made of either lightweight crepe or leather (Fig. 7.8). These modifications are flush with the heel and toe in an arch with an apex of ½ to ⅝ inch. The rocker bar redistributes body forces over the entire plantar surface of the foot while it is bearing weight. It facilitates a smooth roll during the stance phase of gait while reducing sheer stress and trauma to the midfoot and forefoot. It is often used to modify shoes worn by patients with partial foot amputations, arthritis, and diabetes. It is also used for patients who have any lower extremity orthosis that limits forward progression of the tibia over the foot and toes during the middle and late stance phases. For patients with diabetes, a rigid rocker sole (a steel-spring heel-to-toe with the toes extended and a rocking axis near the center of the foot) can be used to help distribute body weight and compel knee flexion at toe-off, thus reducing the length of stride and shear stress on the metatarsal heads.

Thomas Heels

"Thomas heel is a corrective shoe in which the heel is approximately 12 mm longer and 4 to 6 mm higher on the medial edge. This produces varus of the foot and prevents depression of the head of the talus."[45] The Thomas heel is designed to improve foot balance and relieve excessive pressure on the shank portion of the footwear. Applied as either a lateral or a medial flare of the heel, its goal is to increase stability during gait by assimilating subtalar neutral. A laterally flared heel is used with a rearfoot varus to decrease the incidence of inversion injuries. A medially

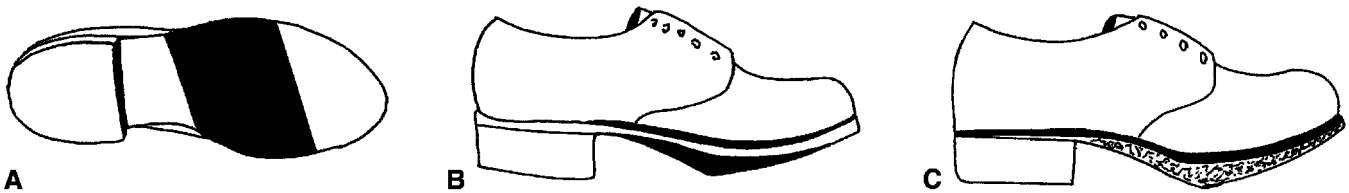


Fig. 7.8 Examples of rocker-bottom soles. A metatarsal bar (A) prevents undue pressure at the metatarsal heads during push-off in late stance. A rigid leather rocker sole (B) or an extended crepe rocker bar (C) redistributes body weight over the entire plantar surface, facilitating a smoother and more normal gait pattern while reducing stress and trauma in the forefoot.

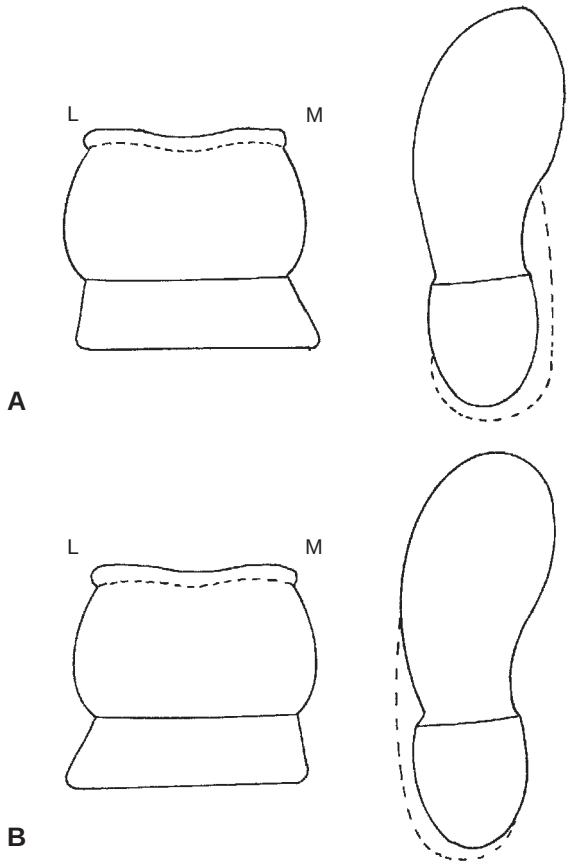


Fig. 7.9 Examples of Thomas heels. (A) A medial *(M)* flared heel provides a broader base of support and prevents eversion of the ankle. (B) A lateral *(L)* flared heel prevents inversion of the ankle.

flared heel is used with a rearfoot valgus to decrease the incidence of eversion injuries (Fig. 7.9). For instance, a medial flare from the heel to the sustentaculum tali prevents excessive pronation of the foot during gait.

Offset Heels and Shoe Counters

The offset heel is a modification used to help correct valgus or varus deformities. It offers a broad support base, especially at the superior surface of the heel, where the broad buildup against the shoe's counter provides reinforcement either medially or laterally. A heel counter is an extension along the medial or lateral borders of the shoe from the heel to the proximal border of the fifth or the first metatarsal head. This shoe modification strengthens the shank portion of the footwear for better control of the hind foot. The heel counter is often used in combination with the appropriate Thomas heel. A counter can also be placed medially or laterally in the midfoot region. A patient whose gait exhibits excessive pronation, as is common in rheumatoid arthritis (RA), may require a firm medial counter to prevent the shoe from collapsing medially and to assist in realigning the foot into a neutral position.

Attachments for Orthoses

For some patients with neuromuscular dysfunction (e.g., hemiplegia, paraplegia, multiple sclerosis), a traditional metal double-upright lower-extremity orthosis can be prescribed. If so, the shoe must be modified: a U-shaped orthotic bracket (stirrup) is attached to the shoe by means of three copper rivets, one on the heel and two in the shank. The metal is riveted through the outsole to the insole. To accomplish this, the heel is removed and the plate of the stirrup is attached. The groove is then cut through the heel, and the heel is reattached. The appropriate orthotic ankle joint is then attached to uprights of the stirrup.

Shoe Stretching

Shoes with leather uppers can be stretched almost one full width. Although a shoe cannot be truly lengthened, it can be made to feel longer with a toe box stretcher device that looks like the shape of the foot and is inserted into the shoe to expand it (Fig. 7.10). After the leather is moistened or softened, this device effectively raises and slightly rounds the toe box. Frequently the pressure of a flat toe box on the toes is more problematic than the length of the shoe. Specific points in the shoe can be softened and expanded by placing an "expansion knob" on the toe-box stretcher or using a ball-and-socket device. Site-specific stretching is particularly helpful for patients with toe deformities such as hallux valgus, hammertoe, mallet toe, claw toe, overlapping toes, and Taylor bunion deformity.[1]

Fig. 7.10 Tools used to stretch leather shoes. Stretching often provides adequate accommodation for deformities in conventional shoes. (Colonial Medical Assisted Devices, Nashua, NH.)

Blowout Patches and Gussets

Patients with foot deformities who prefer conventional shoes to Thermold shoes may find temporary pain relief if a blowout patch or gusset is applied to their shoe. The shoe leather around the area of deformity is cut away and replaced with a softer blowout patch or gusset of moleskin, soft leather, or suede.

Footwear for Common Foot Deformities and Problems

Conservative management of common forefoot, midfoot, and rearfoot deformities often involves modification of shoes, prescription footwear, or both. Specific footwear strategies for several common foot problems are described in the following section.

PROBLEMS IN THE FOREFOOT

The most common footwear variation used for abnormalities in the forefoot is a high toe box. High toe boxes are available in various types of footwear, including athletic sneakers, comfort shoes, Thermolds, and prescription footwear. To accommodate forefoot deformity optimally, the maximum height of the abnormal toes must be measured in a weight-bearing position. Tables of manufactured shoes by toe box space are available to guide the clinician in recommending shoes that most closely match a patient's needs.[46]

Metatarsalgia

Metatarsalgia is pain around the metatarsal heads that results from compression of the plantar digital nerve as it courses between the metatarsal heads. Excessive weight bearing with atrophy of the metatarsal fat pad can result in irritation of the nerves and potentially lead to the development of a neuroma. The three major objectives in shoe prescription for patients with metatarsalgia are to (1) transfer pressure from painful, sensitive areas to more pressure-tolerant areas, (2) reduce friction by stabilizing the MTP joint, and (3) stabilize the rearfoot and midfoot to reduce pressure on the metatarsal heads.[47] Characteristics of the shoe that will accomplish these goals include wide width to reduce pressure on the transverse metatarsal arch, long fitting to eliminate plantarflexed MTP joints, cushion soles to enhance shock absorption, and a high toe box to allow forefoot flexion and extension. Additionally, the shoe should include a long medial counter to stabilize the rearfoot, a lower heel to minimize pressure at the metatarsal heads, and preferably thermoldable leather to accommodate deformities. Shoe modifications often include a transverse metatarsal bar to redistribute pressure from metatarsal heads to metatarsal shafts and shorten stride and a rocker sole to reduce motion of painful joints.[48]

Sesamoiditis

Sesamoiditis is an inflammation around the sesamoid bones under the first metatarsal head. It often results from a loss of soft tissue padding under the first metatarsal head and from toe deformities such as hallux valgus and hallux rigidus. The objective of shoe prescription for patients with sesamoiditis is to redistribute weight-bearing forces from the first MTP joint and its sesamoids to the long medial arch and shafts of the lesser metatarsals. A transverse metatarsal bar is used to redistribute pressure from metatarsal heads to metatarsal shafts and to shorten stride. A rocker sole can be used to reduce motion of the painful hallux joint.

Morton Syndrome

The Morton toe/Morton foot syndrome was first described by Dudley J. Morton, an orthopedic surgeon, researcher, physician, and author.[49] Morton syndrome is the configuration of the foot in which the second toe is either the same size as the great toe or slightly longer than the great toe. The increase length of the second ray causes lateral instability. The three major objectives in shoe prescription for patients with Morton's syndrome are to (1) redistribute weight from the lesser metatarsals (especially the second and third) to the proximal phalanx of the hallux, (2) stabilize the rearfoot by maintaining subtalar joint neutral, and (3) accommodate forefoot varus as well as a possibly dorsiflexed first metatarsal. Shoe prescription includes a long medial counter for rearfoot support and stability, a straight or flared last to accommodate foot shape, a high wide toe box to reduce compression across the transverse metatarsal arch, a large enough shoe size to accommodate the long second toe, and a Thomas heel or wedge sole to support the medial longitudinal arch. A medial heel and medial sole wedge may be necessary when symptoms are severe.[49]

Morton (Interdigital) Neuroma

Morton neuroma is a painful condition of the foot characterized by neural degeneration and perineural fibrosis, most commonly seen between the third and fourth or the second and third metatarsals.[50] Overstretching of the digital nerves in extreme toe extension at the proximal phalanx can also result in the development of a neuroma. Two objectives should be considered for patients with Morton neuroma. First, the patient must obtain relief from the pain and burning, especially in the third interspace of the MTP joint. Second, compression of the digital nerve as it passes between the heads of the third and fourth metatarsals must be reduced. To achieve these goals, the shoe should be wide enough to eliminate transverse compression and have enough length to reduce plantarflexion of the MTP joints. A long medial counter can help to reduce pronation, a cushioned sole increases shock absorption, and a low heel unloads pressure on the metatarsals. Elastic laces may be helpful in allowing expansion of the forefoot. Shoe modifications for Morton neuroma might include a metatarsal bar to elevate the metatarsals and redistribute weight, a metatarsal rocker bar to immobilize the metatarsals, or a combination of both.[51,52]

Metatarsalgia of the Fifth Metatarsophalangeal Joint

Like the metatarsalgia described previously, metatarsalgia of the fifth MTP joint results in plantar digital nerve irritation at the interdigital space of the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads. When metatarsalgia of the fifth MTP joint is present, the goals of intervention are to redistribute weight

forces to the fifth metatarsal shaft and provide a broad base of support along the lateral border of the foot. The optimal shoe has a last with enough lateral flare to accommodate the lateral aspect of the foot and fifth metatarsal shaft, a firm lateral counter, and a firm leather or rubber sole. Possible shoe modifications include a lateral heel and sole flare ending proximal to the fifth metatarsal head to provide a broader base of support. Lateral heel and sole wedges may be useful for patients with flexible feet.

Hallux Rigidus (Limitus)

Degenerative joint disease of the first MTP joint causes pain, loss of mobility, and eventually fusion of the joint. Osteophyte formation on the dorsal aspects of the metatarsal head and base of the proximal phalanx can be quite painful and result in a loss of extension. For patients with hallux rigidus or limitus, the goals are to limit motion of the hallux and first MTP joint and to reduce pressure on the dorsal and plantar aspects of the hallux and first MTP joint.[53] To accomplish this, the shoe should have a high wide toe box and Thermold or soft leather uppers. When significant deformity is present, a steel shank from heel to phalanx of the hallux and a rigid rocker sole with compensating heel elevation may be necessary.

Hallux Valgus (Bunions)

Hallux valgus is characterized by a lateral deviation (abduction) of the hallux with a corresponding medial deviation (adduction) of the first metatarsal.[54] Deformity remains and worsens due to walking with a laterally rotated foot angle and walking in excess foot pronation, which are the common gait compensations.[46] Hallux valgus deformity is often associated with long-term wearing of shoes with a triangular toe box. Five objectives should be considered in the prescription of shoes for patients with hallux valgus: (1) to reduce friction and pressure to the first MTP joint, (2) to eliminate abnormal pressure from narrow-fitting shoes, (3) to reduce pronation of the foot from heel strike to midstance, (4) to correct eversion, and (5) to relieve strain on the posterior tibial tendon ligament. Patients with hallux valgus benefit from shoes with high wide toe boxes and Thermold or soft leather uppers. A combined last with increased last width in the toe box and a smaller heel for better control of the subtalar joint may also be indicated. Additionally, the choice of a shoe that is longer and wider helps to accommodate deformity; a lower heel to reduce forefoot pressure and a reinforced medial counter help prevent pronation.[46]

Hammertoes, Claw Toes, and Mallet Toes

Hammertoe deformity is characterized by hyperextension of the MTP joint, flexion of the proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joint, and extension of the distal interphalangeal (DIP) joint. This results in high load during weight bearing at the plantar metatarsal heads and at the plantar surface of the distal phalanx. Claw toe deformity features hyperflexion of the PIP and DIP joints, although the MTP joint can be hyperextended or hyperflexed.[55] Mallet toe deformity results from hyperextension of the MTP joint, flexion of the PIP, and a neutral position of the DIP so that weight bearing is on the tip of the distal phalanx. Deformities of the lesser toes can be problematic, especially for patients with compromised circulation and neuropathy. For these individuals, there are two major footwear goals: (1) to transfer pressure away from the metatarsal heads, the PIP joints, and the distal phalanx joints and (2) to encourage flexion of the MTP joints and extension of the PIP joints.[46] Patients with lesser toe deformities should wear shoes with a high wide toe box made of Thermold or soft leather to reduce the likelihood of microtrauma over the bony prominences. The shoe should also be long enough to allow flexion of MTP joints and extension of PIP joints rather than cramping the toes. Finally, a soft cushion outsole and low heel further reduce pressure on the metatarsal heads. Commonly used shoe modifications for lesser toe deformities include metatarsal bars to reduce pressure to metatarsal heads and shift weight bearing to metatarsal shafts as well as a rocker bar or rocker sole to accommodate rollover on fixed deformity.

PROBLEMS IN THE MIDFOOT

Shoe prescriptions, modifications, or both are also helpful in managing midfoot dysfunction and deformity. The most commonly encountered problems include pes planus, pes equinus, pes cavus, and plantar fasciitis.

Pes Planus

Pes planus is pronation of the midfoot that results in a failure of the foot to supinate during midstance. The longitudinal arch flattens, causing a splaying of the forefoot and lateral deviation of the metatarsals. This deformity can be either flexible or fixed (rigid).[10] For patients with a flexible pes planus, the goals of intervention are to reduce pronation from heel strike to midstance, correct eversion, relieve tension on the posterior tibial tendonitis, and relieve ligamentous strain. To do these things, the shoe should offer a long medial heel counter, a Thomas heel (medial extension) or a firm wedge sole, and a straight last. A custom shoe is recommended for severe cases. Shoe modifications may include a medial heel wedge to correct eversion and reduce pronation or a medial heel and sole flare in extreme cases.[46]

Because of the fixed nature of a rigid pes planus, the goals are somewhat different: to relieve ligamentous strain as well as arch pain and to correct eversion of the foot. The optimal shoe should offer a broad shank (extra wide midfoot), a straight last, and a long medial counter. Additionally, a wedge sole is applied to reduce the load on the metatarsal heads, stabilize the intertarsal joint, and provide a dorsiflexion assist.

Pes Equinus

In *pes equinus,* the plantarflexor muscles and Achilles tendon are tightened, which limits dorsiflexion of the ankle and results in a plantarflexion deformity.[56] For patients with a flexible pes equinus, the footwear prescribed attempts to reduce ankle plantarflexion, reduce the load on the metatarsal heads, and stabilize the subtalar joint. This can be accomplished in a shoe with a low heel. A rocker bottom can be applied to the sole to provide a dorsiflexion assist and further reduce load on the metatarsal heads.

When the pes equinus deformity is rigid or fixed, the goals of footwear intervention change. Instead of trying

to reduce plantarflexion, a posterior platform supports the rearfoot from heel strike to midstance and mimics the dorsiflexion needed at toe-off. It is important to contain the entire foot in the shoe, thus reducing the load on the metatarsal heads. For patients with unilateral deformity, it is also important to equalize the relative leg-length difference between the normal foot and the equinus foot through all phases of gait. The shoe prescription for patients with a fixed equinus deformity includes a Cuban (elevated) heel to provide a platform and deep quarter or high-top shoes. If modifications are necessary, they may include posterior heel elevation on the equinus side as well as on the contralateral limb to facilitate swing of the involved limb and reduce pelvic obliquity.

Pes Cavus

Pes cavus is an exaggerated longitudinal arch that can lead to a plantarflexed forefoot with retraction of the toes and severe weight-bearing stresses on the metatarsal heads and heel. Patients with pes cavus benefit from shoes that provide a broad platform for stability; reduce loading at the heels, lateral borders, and metatarsal heads; and accommodate the deformed foot within the shoe. The shoe should also have a firm heel counter to maintain rearfoot stability and a modified curved last to accommodate foot shape. Custom-molded shoes are recommended in severe cases. Possible shoe modifications for patients with pes cavus include a lateral flare to provide a platform for greater stability, a cushion sole to absorb shock on the heel and metatarsal heads, and a metatarsal bar to shift weight from the metatarsal heads.[57]

Plantar Fasciitis

Plantar fasciitis is inflammation of the plantar fascia at its insertion to the medial aspect of the calcaneus.[58] This inflammatory process can lead to the development of calcification at that insertion, commonly referred to as a *heel spur*. Plantar fasciitis is often a consequence of loss of the longitudinal arch in conditions such as pes planus or of undue stresses created in the forefoot with tightness of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles or an elevated longitudinal arch. To reduce the painful signs and symptoms of plantar fasciitis, the goals of intervention are to transfer weight-bearing pressure from painful to more tolerant areas, reduce tension on the plantar fascia and Achilles tendon, control pronation from heel strike to midstance, and maintain the subtalar joint in a neutral position. The shoe prescribed for plantar fasciitis has a long medial heel counter to limit heel valgus, a high heel to reduce tension on the plantar fascia and Achilles tendon, and adequate length to minimize compression and promote supination from midstance to toe-off. The types of shoe modifications that may be useful include a posterior heel elevation to reduce tension on the plantar fascia and Achilles tendon.[59]

PROBLEMS IN THE REARFOOT

The most common dysfunctions and deformities of the rearfoot that can be addressed by footwear prescription or modification include arthrodesis, Achilles tendinitis or bursitis, and Haglund's deformity (pump bump).

Arthrodesis

Arthrodesis is a loss of mobility at the ankle mortise, the junction of the talus with the tibia and fibula. This deformity prevents motion at the ankle in all planes and alters progression through the stance phase of gait; it may also compromise limb clearance in swing phase. When arthrodesis of the ankle is present, the major objectives are to provide effective shock absorption and controlled lowering of the forefoot at loading response, improve comfort and efficiency of push-off, and accommodate any shortening or residual equinus. Shoes that address the problems of arthrodesis have a reinforced counter and may have a medial or a lateral flared heel (or a combination of both) to provide greater stability. Some patients benefit from a high-top shoe as well. Modifications that protect the foot and facilitate a more normal gait pattern include application of a cushioned heel to absorb shock and simulate plantarflexion after heel strike and a rocker sole to mimic the dorsiflexion needed in the late stance phase.

Achilles Tendinitis, Bursitis, and the Haglund Deformity

Undue stresses on the Achilles tendon, direct pressure of a too-short shoe, and/or tightness of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles can result in tendinitis or bursitis. The *Haglund deformity* is an osseous formation at the insertion of the Achilles tendon at the calcaneus. The goals of shoe prescription for patients with Achilles tendinitis, bursitis, and/or Haglund deformity (pump bump) are similar: (1) to reduce tension on the Achilles tendon, (2) to provide dorsiflexion assist at heel strike and at toe-off, (3) to reduce abnormal pronation, and (4) to reduce pressure and friction (shear) at the insertion of the calcaneus. Patients with these problems require a slightly higher heel to reduce dorsiflexion, a long medial counter to limit subtalar motion, a longer shoe size to reduce compression pressure, and a backless shoe to prevent irritation of the pump bump. The types of shoe modifications that may be helpful include a posterior heel elevation to reduce tension on the Achilles tendon or a foam-filled posterior heel counter.

Diagnosis-Related Considerations in Shoe Prescription

Prescription footwear and shoe modifications are also extremely useful tools to protect joints, prevent skin problems, and enhance normal function of patients who are coping with arthritis, gout, diabetes, or peripheral vascular disease. Adaptations to footwear may also be helpful for patients with hemiplegia, partial foot amputations, or congenital deformities.

ARTHRITIS

Arthritis—whether degenerative, rheumatoid, or traumatic—leads to the destruction of joints. In working with patients with foot arthritis, the goals of intervention are to prevent or limit abnormal motion, accommodate for arthritic deformities, cushion impact loading, and reduce microtrauma within the joint.[60] A reinforced counter can help limit subtalar motion; a high-top shoe can also help

limit ankle motion. Extra-depth shoes may be needed to accommodate deformities of the midfoot and forefoot. Thermoldable leather is preferable if deformities need further accommodation. The application of a rocker bottom helps to improve push-off by shortening the distance between the heel and the MTP joint. It also reduces the total ankle motion required for push-off. Shock-absorbing accommodative orthoses can be placed inside the shoe, and a cushion heel can be added to absorb even more force at heel strike and limit ankle and subtalar motion. A flared heel can reduce medial and lateral movement at the subtalar joint. A Cochrane review, "Custom-made foot orthoses for the treatment of foot pain,"[34] found that custom foot orthoses compared with supportive shoes in persons with juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA) reduced foot pain after 3 months, but similar results were not achieved with the use of prefabricated neoprene shoe inserts. The review also found that in adults with RA, custom foot orthoses compared with no intervention reduced rearfoot pain after 3 months.

GOUT

For patients with gout, the treatment objectives are similar to those for patients with arthritis: preventing or limiting motion of painful or inflamed joints, accommodating foot deformities, and cushioning the impact of loading on the involved joints. A reinforced counter to limit subtalar motion or a high-top design to limit overall ankle motion should be considered. An extra-depth shoe of thermoldable leather is best able to accommodate deformities without creating pain and discomfort over sensitive joints. A rocker bottom can be applied to assist push-off, prevent pedal joint movement, and reduce ankle motion required for push-off. Shock-absorbing accommodative orthoses and cushion heels provide even more comfort and protection of inflamed joints during gait.

DIABETES

The loss of protective sensation in patients with diabetic neuropathy creates significant vulnerability to injury from repetitive microtrauma. Protection of the plantar surface of the diabetic foot from microtrauma is of paramount importance.[61] Patients with diabetic neuropathy often have significant weakness of intrinsic muscles. Forefoot deformities develop, including claw toes, which are susceptible to breakdown in areas of excessive shoe pressure. The risk of nonhealing, infection, and subsequent amputation is quite high; prevention is the most effective treatment strategy. Total-contact full-foot orthoses using soft, shock-absorbing materials helps distribute weight-bearing pressures over the entire plantar surface of the foot away from the vulnerable bony prominences. A Thermold leather shoe is recommended for the insensitive diabetic foot.[62]

PERIPHERAL VASCULAR DISEASE

Because the ability to heal is compromised in patients with peripheral vascular disease, any irritation or ulceration exponentially increases the risk of infection and subsequent amputation.[34] Here too, prevention of skin breakdown and protection of the vulnerable foot are the primary goals.[63] The ability to fit and protect the foot effectively is further challenged by fluctuating edema. A Thermold sandal with Velcro closure is often recommended for patients with peripheral vascular disease–related edema as a safe and effective alternative to standard shoes. If edema is not a problem, a soft Thermold shoe can protect the plantar surface of the foot from repetitive pressures and accommodate deformities that are at risk for shoe pressure–related trauma. Because hypersensitivity is often a problem with circulatory pathologic conditions in the lower extremities, a shoe that cushions the foot may be helpful. Elastic shoelaces allow expansion of the shoe for patients with minimal edema-related fluctuations in foot size.

HEMIPLEGIA

The patient with hemiplegia after a cerebrovascular accident (e.g., stroke) may have inadequate or excessive tone of the lower extremity. Many of these patients need orthotic intervention to control the foot and ankle in some or all phases of gait and to accommodate for any fixed deformities and to cushion impact loading at initial contact.[64,65] Footwear is selected to enhance orthotic function or, in some instances, to control mild dysfunction directly. A reinforced heel counter can help to limit subtalar motion and stabilize the foot on heel strike. A flared heel or high-top shoe may be recommended to enhance foot placement and stance stability. A rigid shoe shank may be required for some types of lower extremity orthoses. In the presence of an equinus deformity, a heel lift on the shoe provides total contact during weight bearing and facilitates stability. In severe deformities of the ankle, a custom-molded shoe may be the only option.

The most common ankle-foot orthoses used in hemiplegia tend to increase shoe length, width, and depth by a half to a whole size. Often the insole can be replaced with an insert foundation to garner a little more room for the orthosis within the shoe. Extra-depth shoes are particularly helpful for patients who are faced with difficulty in donning their orthoses and shoe because of upper extremity dysfunction in hemiplegia.

AMPUTATION AND CONGENITAL DEFORMITY

The foot that is shortened surgically or is congenitally deformed is a management challenge because the weight-bearing surface is reduced or altered, increasing the likelihood of tissue breakdown with repeated loading in gait. The type of protective footwear used can range from an over-the-counter extra-depth shoe for a mild deformity to a custom-molded shoe for a severe deformity. When the feet are of unequal size, it is more difficult to fit them without buying two pairs of shoes or having custom footwear made. If the difference between the feet is no more than one size in length, the larger size can be used with toe padding for the shorter deformed or amputated foot or with an orthosis to accommodate the deformity (Fig. 7.11). Frequently the shorter foot is also wider and must be accommodated by the appropriate orthosis custom-molded to the shoe. A toe filler will prevent the shortened foot from sliding within the shoe during gait but also increases the risk of skin breakdown. It is crucial that the first MTP joint be aligned with

Fig. 7.11 A toe filler can be used on a foot that has been shortened by amputation or congenital deformity. (Marathon Orthotics, Inc.)

the "toe break" point in the shoe. If the foot falls posterior to the toe break, stress is concentrated at the distal end of the foot, increasing the chance of pressure imposition by the "filler."

Reading the Wear on Shoes

For the clinician who is faced with decisions about modifying, repairing, or replacing footwear, examination of patterns of wear and erosion provides important information. Deterioration of the shoe itself impairs tactile sensibility and position sense judgment. Shoes that have outlasted their purpose often create abnormal forces and shearing that increase the risk of repetitive microtrauma to the skin and joints of the foot and ankle. Analysis of the wear and erosion of the shoe is a prescriptive tool in advising, prescribing, and modifying a shoe to fit individual needs.

Case Example 7.1 **A Patient With Diabetes Who Is Homeless and Has a Neuropathic Foot Ulcer**

J.H. is a 71-year-old homeless man living in a shelter with a 22-year history of type 2 diabetes mellitus treated with metformin. He presents with a large ulcer (6.552 cm^2) of the plantar surface of the midfoot with significant arch deformity of the right foot subsequent to an episode of Charcot arthropathy several years earlier. J.H. reports that the ulcer has been present for more than a year. He has complications resulting from diabetes, including retinopathy, peripheral neuropathy, and a history of numerous neuropathic ulcerations involving both feet. He also has a 24-year history of arterial hypertension and a documented myocardial infarction. He is currently managed with angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and calcium antagonists. It is unclear how regularly he has taken his medications, although they are available at no cost through the shelter's clinic. J.H. has been homeless for 7 years.

J.H. is referred to the health clinic at the homeless shelter for diabetic and hypertensive assessment and conservative treatment of the foot ulceration.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What tests and measures might the foot clinic team use to assess current status and changes in J.H.'s neuropathic wound, the deformity of his feet, the circulation and sensory status of his limbs, and his functional status and gait? What is the evidence of reliability and validity of these measures?
- What does the team need to understand about his current health status and diabetes control? How will they gather this information?
- What are J.H.'s immediate needs in terms of footwear? How might his needs change over time as his wound heals?
- Given his current health status and lifestyle, what factors will likely affect (both positively and negatively) clinical decision making about J.H.'s footwear, wound care, diabetes management, and follow-up care? How might the team prioritize goals and possible interventions?
- How would the team assess the efficacy of their interventions?

INITIAL RESULTS

Satisfactory metabolic control and blood pressure values were achieved during the initial week of medical management at the shelter clinic. J.H. was referred to Boston City Hospital (BCH) for a series of tests and measures on an outpatient basis. Although he was found to have bilateral diabetic retinopathy *(fundus oculi)*, there was no evidence of diabetic nephropathy. An echocardiogram pointed to left ventricular hypertrophy with a normal regional kinesis and an ejection fraction of 50%.

Electromyography showed normal conduction velocity and slight abnormalities of sensory action potentials in the nerves of both lower extremities. An elevated threshold of 40 V to biothesiometer and a partial loss of sensitivity (nine of nine areas tested were insensitive bilaterally) to a Semmes-Weinstein 5.07 monofilament are recorded. The transcutaneous oxygen tension was 30 mm Hg at the dorsum of the involved foot (right) and 15 mm Hg at the perilesional site. In the ulcerated limb, the ankle-brachial index measured with Doppler technique was 0.8. Duplex scanning showed widespread atheromasic lesions in the carotids and in the lower limb arteries without hemodynamically significant stenoses and no significant alterations in the venous distribution of the lower limbs.

J.H.'s ulcer on his right foot appeared superficial and was graded as a Wagner grade II ulcer. The ulcer was covered by a fibrinous exudate with keratotic margins. The microbiologic cultures were negative. A surgical debridement was performed at BCH and then J.H. was sent back to the shelter with instructions for local treatment before and after daily sharps debridement, consisting of the daily application of sterile paraffin gauze, as well as for "evaluation and conservative treatment" by a physical therapist.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- How might the team interpret the results of the tests performed at BCH? How will this information influence or inform wound care and recommendations for footwear for this patient?
- What additional information will the physical therapist and foot care clinic team have to gather?
- What are the primary goals of physical therapy/foot care intervention? What is the prognosis and anticipated outcome? What is the anticipated duration of this episode of care? How frequently might J. H. receive care?

Continued on following page

Case Example 7.1 A Patient With Diabetes Who Is Homeless and Has a Neuropathic Foot Ulcer (Continued)

- What interventions would be most appropriate to address the goals of wound healing and prevention of future recurrence of neuropathic ulcers?

PHYSICAL THERAPY EXAMINATION, EVALUATION, AND INTERVENTION

J.H. was examined at the shelter by a physical therapist on the Foot Clinic Team. He arrived at the clinic ambulating independently, without any assistive devices. The ulcer on the plantar surface of his midfoot measured 6.552 cm^2 in the Charcot joint deformity region of the right foot. The ulcer was determined to be secondary to repetitive trauma to this region due to shoes that had large holes in the midsections of the soles.

A total contact cast was applied. Selective padding of the cast included foam padding over the toes and an ulcerated area of the foot; felt pads over the malleoli and navicular prominence; and cotton cast padding around the proximal and anterior lower leg, heel, sides, and dorsum of the foot. A rubber heel mount was applied to the cast for ambulation. Fiberglass casting material was used to decrease the effects of the elements (weather) on a plaster cast for this homeless individual who spends much time outdoors. The cast is also bifurcated to allow high galvanic electrical stimulation to be used as a local treatment modality to the wound and to provide access for daily debridement, the application of dressings, and monitoring for secondary lesions. The cast was secured with Velcro straps. The patient was allowed to walk freely and was highly compliant, wearing the cast continuously.

The ulcer responded favorably to a combination of periodic surgical debridement, local wound care, and daily sharps debridement, a modified total contact casting protocol, and high galvanic electrical stimulation. After 6 weeks the ulcer had completely closed and J. H.'s condition remained stable. He was subsequently fitted with a total contact foot orthosis bilaterally and provided with a pair of Reebok walking sneakers with an extra width to accommodate the Charcot foot deformity bilaterally.

With proper intervention and attention to J.H.'s social situation, it is determined that the prognosis for preventing recurrence of his neuropathic foot ulcer wound is good and that he can be integrated into appropriate home, community, and work environments within the context of his disability. J.H. was placed in a permanent shelter/housing residence and obtained part-time employment as a guide at the Boston Museum of Science.

DISCUSSION

For individuals with neuropathic wounds, total-contact casting allows ambulation with protection from external stress and trauma. In addition, when such a cast is well molded and minimal padding is applied, the pressure is distributed evenly and maintained as long as the cast is worn. A total-contact cast also counteracts lymphatic congestion, which compromises the healing process. For J.H., the cast was bifurcated to allow for daily wound care while also providing consistent pressure relief and foot protection.

The major objectives of treatment after J.H.'s diabetic neuropathic wound healed were to protect the plantar surface from repetitive microtrauma and accommodate deformities that could be traumatized by excessive shoe pressures, which could result in ulceration and subsequent injury. A total-contact full-foot orthosis using soft shock-absorbing materials helped to distribute weight-bearing pressures over the entire plantar surface of the foot and away from the vulnerable bony prominences. A Thermold leather shoe or good walking sneaker is recommended for the insensitive diabetic foot.

Accommodative devices are insoles that are placed in shoes to balance the feet, allowing pressures to be evenly distributed and permitting support and shock absorption of the foot. An orthosis, in contrast, supports and also controls the foot by neutralizing pronatory forces. Following wound healing, a total-contact orthosis (Plastazote with a layer of ⅜-inch PPT) was fabricated for J.H. and placed in a pair of extra-depth Reebok walking shoes.

Accommodating shoe gear should be used by patients with diabetes, and walking barefoot should not be permitted. The shoe's upper should be soft, so as not to irritate any prominence or developing deformity. The accommodative insole used should be adaptable to changes as well. A combination of an expanded polyethylene, such as Plastazote, which can be heat-molded to provide total contact and then mounted on a shock-absorbing material such as PPT or covered with a neoprene, such as Spenco, which is soft and retains its shape, makes an excellent accommodative insole. This type of accommodative orthosis protects the foot from trauma to prominent areas and redistributes the forces to provide even weight bearing through total contact upon the plantar surface. When accommodative orthoses are used, the shoe must have adequate depth to accommodate it. Extra-depth shoes such as Thermold shoes or extra-depth sneakers allow not only the room needed for the accommodative insole but also modification of the upper through heat molding to accommodate lesser toe deformities. A rigid-sole rocker-bottom shoe might also be recommended to reduce pressures under the metatarsal heads during push-off. The apex of the rocker is positioned just proximal to the metatarsal heads, allowing for the shoe itself to provide forward propulsion of the foot.

Summary

The shoe is an essential interface between the foot and the ground. It protects the foot from trauma and supports the structures of the foot as an individual walks, runs, and changes direction. Fashionable footwear, especially for women, often compromises foot function rather than enhancing it. Foot function and footwear must have a developmental aspect as well—an understanding of how the foot changes over the life span and of the special needs of children, pregnant women, and older adults is essential. Knowledge about the components of shoes and their variations, the criteria for proper fitting, and the relationship between shoe design and activity-related demands is an important tool for clinical practice. Physical therapists are often called on to recommend footwear for patients with special needs. A baseline knowledge of shoe characteristics and modifications for certain types of deformities or diagnoses enhances this ability.

References

1. Cheskin M. Sizing Up Footwear. In: *Podiatry Management*; OCTOBER 2013:109–118.
2. Fuller EA. A review of the biomechanics of shoes. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg.* 1994;11(2):241–258.

3. Mandato MG, Nester E. The effects of heel height on forefoot peak pressure. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1999;89(2):75–80.
4. Hutson M, Rodriguez T. Dress for Success: How Clothes Influence Our Performance. *Scientific American*. January 1. https://www.scientificamerican.com/article/dress-for-success-how-clothes-influence-our-performance/; 2016. Accessed May 2, 2018.
5. Werd MB, Knight EL. Prescribing Athletic Footwear and Orthoses: The Game Plan. In: *Podiatry Management*: October 2015:107–114.
6. Even-Tzur N, Weisz E, Hirsch-Falk Y, Gefen A. Role of EVA viscoelastic properties in the protective performance of a sport shoe: computational studies. *Bio-Medical Materials and Engineering.* 16:289–299.
7. Coughlin MJ. Lesser toe abnormalities. *Oregon Health Science University Instr Course Lect.* 2003;52:421–444.
8. Hurst B, Branthwaite H, Greenhalgh A, Chockalingam N. Medical-grade footwear: the impact of fit and comfort. *Journal of foot and ankle research*. 2017;12–17. podiatry now/may 2017.
9. *Getting the Best out of Bothersome Bunions*. Harvard Women's Health Watch, Harvard Health Publications, Copyright 2017.file:///F:/References%20Chap%207/Getting%20the%20best%20out%20of%20bunions.pdf. Accessed May 3, 2018
10. Taspinar O, Kabayyelb DD, Ozdemirc F, et al. Comparing the efficacy of exercise, internal and external shoe modification in pes planus: A clinical and pedobarographic study. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation.* 2017;30:255–263.
11. Burns J, Landorf KB, Ryan MM, Crosbie J, Ouvrier RA. *Interventions for the prevention and treatment of pes cavus (Review) Cochrane Review*. The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2010.
12. Woźniacka R, Bac A, Matusik S, Zczygieł E, Ciszek E. Body weight and the medial longitudinal foot arch: high-arched foot, a hidden problem? *Eur J Pediatr*. 2013;172:683–691. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00431-013-1943-5.
13. Wong K. *Obesity and Foot Problems: A Vicious Cycle.* American Chiropractic. 40. www.americanchiropractic.com/. Accessed 3 May 2018.
14. Mickle K, Steele J. Obese older adults suffer foot pain and foot-related functional limitation. *Gait & Posture.* 2015;42(4):442–447.
15. Lowth M. *Gait Abnormalities in Children*. Online @, https://patient.info/doctor/gait-abnormalities-in-children; 2014. Accessed 6 May 2018.
16. Hass P, Sassan G. Lower extremity abnormalities in children. *Am Fam Physician.* 2003 Aug;168(3):461–468.
17. Davis JR, Blackhurst DW, Allen BL. Clinical evaluation of bowed legs in children. *J Pediatr Orthop B.* 2000;9(4):278–284.
18. Uygur F, Bek N, Kürklu B, Yilmaz O. Orthotic management of the lower limb in children with hereditary motor sensory neuropathy (HMSN). *Prosthetics and Orthotics International.* 2001;25:139–143.
19. Rome K, Ashford RL, Evans A. *Non-surgical interventions for paediatric pes planus (Review)*. Copyright © 2012 The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd
20. S-k Bok, Lee H, B-o Kim, Ahn S, Song Y, Park I. The Effect of Different Foot Orthosis Inverted Angles on Plantar Pressure in Children with Flexible Flatfeet. *PLoS One.* 2016;11(7). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0159831. e0159831.
21. Segal NA, Boyer ER, Teran-Yengle P, Glass N, Hillstrom HJ, Yack HJ. Pregnancy leads to lasting change in foot structure. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2013 Mar;92(3):232–240.
22. Smyth RM, Aflaifel N, Bamigboye AA. Interventions for varicose veins and leg oedema in pregnancy. *Cochrane Review 2015 Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2015 Oct 19;10:23. CD001066.
23. Gijon-Nogueron Gabriel A, Gavilan-Diaz Marta, Valle-Funes Virginia, Jimenez-Cebrian Ana Maria, Cervera-Marin Jose Antonio, Morales-Asencio Jose Miguel. (2013) Anthropometric Foot Changes During Pregnancy. *Journal of the American Podiatric Medical Association*. July 2013;103(4):314–321.
24. Ribeiro AP, Trombini-Souza F. de Camargo Neves Sacco I, et al. Changes in the plantar pressure distribution during gait throughout gestation. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2011;101(5):415–423.
25. Williams Grant R, Deal Allison M, Nyrop Kirsten A, et al. Geriatric assessment as an aide to understanding falls in older adults with cancer. *Supportive Care in Cancer*. Aug 2015;23(8):2273–2280.
26. Boelens C, Hekman EEG, Verkerke CJ. Risk factors for falls of older citizens. *Technology and Health Care*. 2013;21:521–533. 521. https://doi.org/10.3233/THC-130748.
27. Vass C, Edwards C, Smith A, Sahota O. Drummond A What do patients wear on their feet? A service evaluation of footwear in elderly patients. *International Journal of Therapy and Rehabilitation*. May 2015;22(5):225–232.
28. Horgan NF, Crehan F, Bartlett E, Keogan F, et al. The effects of usual footwear on balance amongst elderly women attending a day hospital. *J Age and Ageing*. 2009;38:62–67.
29. Houston DS, Curran J. Charcot foot. *Orthopaedic Nursing.* Jan/Feb 2001;20(Issue 1).
30. Richie Jr DH. Therapeutic hosiery: an essential component of footwear for the pathologic foot. *Podiatry Management.* Oct 2008;27(8):125–133.
31. Lewis J, Lipp A. *Pressure-relieving interventions for treating diabetic foot ulcers (Review)*. In: The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2013.
32. Prior T, Gardiner A, Thomas A, Maitland P. Footwear requirements of patients with diabetes mellitus. *Diabet Foot.* 2000;3(1):24–28.
33. Thor Lo Socks https://www.thorlo.com/Accessed May 8, 2018.
34. Hawke F, Burns J, Radford JA, du Toit V. *Custom-made foot orthoses for the treatment of foot pain (Review)*. In: The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2008.
35. Van Netten JJ, Jannink MJA, Hijmans JM, Geertzen JHB Postema K. Use and usability of custom-made orthopedic shoes. *JRRD.* 2010;47(1):73–82.
36. Bongiovanni F, Delara M. Shoe Modifications in Conjunction with Reconstructive Foot Surgery. *Podiatry Management*. Oct 2013;I:129–132.
37. Ball KA, Afheldt MJ. Evolution of foot Orthotics—Part 2: Research Reshapes Long-Standing Theory. *J Manipulative Physiol Ther*. 2002;25:125–134.
38. Oosterwaal1 M, Telfer S, Tørholm S, Carbes S, van Rhijn LW, Macduff R, Meijer K, Woodburn J. Generation of subject-specific, dynamic, multi-segment ankle and foot models to improve orthotic design: a feasibility study. *BMC Musculoskeletal Disorders*. 2011;12:256–266.
39. Mohamed O, Cerny K, Rojek L, Herbert K, Turner R, Waistell S. The effects of PLASTAZOTE and ALIPLAST/PLASTAZOTE orthoses on plantar pressures in elderly persons with diabetic neuropathy. *Journal of Prosthetics & Orthotics (JPO)*. 2004 Apr;16(2):55–65.
40. Danchik J. Examination and Treatment of the Short Leg. In: *The American Chiropractor*: March 2016:60–61.
41. Sweeney D, Nester C, Preece S, Mickle K. Effect of antipronation foot orthosis geometry on compression of heel and arch soft tissues. *JRRD.* 2015;52(5):543–552.
42. Kennedy S. If the Shoe Fits… Pedorthic Modifications for Optimal Function. https://opedge.com/Articles/ViewArticle/2006-04_07; 2006. Accessed 9 May 2018.
43. Menz1 HB, Auhl M, Tan JM, Levinger P, Roddy E, Munteanu1 SE. Predictors of response to prefabricated foot orthoses or rocker-sole footwear in individuals with first metatarsophalangeal joint osteoarthritis. *BMC Musculoskeletal Disorders*. 2017;18:185–194.
44. Brown D, Wertsch JJ, Harris GF, et al. The effect of rocker soles on plantar pressure. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2004;85(1):81–86.
45. *Medical Dictionary*, © 2009 Farlex and Partners. http://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/Thomas+heel Accessed May 8, 2018.
46. Caselli M. Prescription Shoes for Foot Pathology. In: *Podiatry Management*: October 2011:165–176.
47. Schuh R, Seegmueller J, Wanivenhaus A, Windhager R, Sabeti-Aschraf M. Comparison of plantar-pressure distribution and clinical impact of anatomically shaped sandals, off-the-shelf sandals and normal walking shoes in patients with central metatarsalgia. *International Orthopaedics*. Nov 2014;38(11):2281–2288.
48. Hackney J, Hunt GC, Lerche FF, Voi P, Smith JW. An External Shoe Modification for Reducing Metatarsal Head Pressure in People With Metatarsalgia. *Journal of Prosthetics & Orthotics (JPO)*. Jan 2010;22(1):37–42.
49. *Know how to effectively deal with Morton's foot syndrome* http://www.cupertinopodiatrist.com/Blogs/2013/November/know_how_to_effectively_deal_with_mortons_foot_syndrome.html Accessed May 10, 2018.
50. Rout R, Tedd H, Lloyd R, et al. Quality improvement in action Morton's neuroma: diagnostic accuracy, effect on treatment time and costs of direct referral to ultrasound by primary care physicians. *Quality in Primary Care*. 2009;17:277–282.
51. Schreiber K, Khodaee M, Poddar S. Tweed EM. What is the best way to treat Morton's neuroma? *Jfponline.com the journal of family practice*. Vol 60, No 3 March 2011 pp. 157, 158, 168.
52. Thomson CE, Gibson JNA, Martin D. *Interventions for the treatment of Morton's neuroma*. The Cochrane Library. In: The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.; 2011. Issue 4.

53. Shrader JA, Siegel KL. Non-operative management of functional hallux limitus in a patient with rheumatoid arthritis. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83 (10):831–844|.
54. Morales-Orcajo E, Bayod J, Becerro-de-Bengoa-Vallejo R, Losa-Iglesias L, Doblare M. Influence of first proximal phalanx geometry on hallux valgus deformity: a finite element analysis. *Med Biol Eng Comput*. 2015;53:645–653.
55. Schrier JCM, Verheyen CCP, Louwerens JW. Definitions of hammer toe and claw toe: an evaluation of the literature. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2009 May-Jun;99(3):194–197.
56. *What is Equinus Deformity?* https://www.manchesterfootandankleclinic.com/pes-equinus.html. Accessed May 10, 2018.
57. *Interventions for the prevention and treatment of pes cavus (review).* Cochrane Library. The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2010 Issue 12.
58. Howard PD, Boatright K, Hutchinson T, Saurman A, Mendez E, Wayno C. The Effect of Night Splints in the Treatment of Plantar Fasciitis: A Systematic Literature Review. *Orthopedic Practice*. 2017;29 (4):194–197.
59. *Plantar Fasciitis* https://www.footsmart.com/health-resource-center/foot/plantar-fasciitis Accessed May 10, 2018
60. Woodburn J, Barker S, Helliwell PS. A randomized controlled trial of foot orthoses in rheumatoid arthritis. *Journal of Rheumatology.* 2002;29(7):1377–1383.
61. Lewis J, Lipp A. *Pressure-relieving intervention for treating diabetic foot ulcers (Review)*. In: The Cochrane Collaboration and published in The Cochrane Library: 2013. Issue 1.
62. van Deursen RWM, Bouwman EFH. Diabetic foot care within the context of rehabilitation: keeping people with diabetic neuropathy on their feet. A narrative review. *Physical Therapy Reviews.* Jun-Aug 2017;22 (Issue 3/4):177–185.
63. Springett K, White RJ. Skin changes in the 'at risk'foot and their treatment. *British Journal of Community Nursing Wound Care*. December 2002;25–32.
64. Danielsson A, Sunnerhagen KS. Energy Expenditure in Stroke Subjects Walking with a Carbon Composite Ankle Foot Orthosis. *J Rehabil Med.* 2004;36:165–168.
65. Shrivastava S, Prabhu RKR, Kirubakaran R, Thomasraj J, Sundaram B. *Ankle foot orthosis for walking in stroke rehabilitation (Protocol)*. The Cochrane Library. In: The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.; 2014. Issue 8.

8 Foot Orthoses☆

ELICIA POLLARD

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the major anatomical structures of the foot as well as the basic biomechanical principles associated with these structures.
2. Describe the effects of extrinsic and intrinsic deformities and of abnormal pronation on the function of the foot during the various phases of gait.
3. Explain the strategies used to examine and evaluate intrinsic foot deformities.
4. Describe abnormal pronation and the pathological conditions that contribute to abnormal pronation in gait.
5. Describe components of a foot orthosis, goals of orthotic intervention, and specific purposes of the most common orthotic interventions.
6. Discuss controversy related to traditional orthotic theory.
7. Review literature related to the efficacy of foot orthoses for the management of common disorders.

History of the Functional Foot Orthosis

The use of foot orthoses as an effective treatment tool for biomechanical dysfunction of the feet evolved during the twentieth century and continues to be the subject of research and technology. A growing body of literature has found foot orthoses to be an effective treatment for lower extremity pain, lower limb dysfunction, and overuse injuries.[1-4] Early on, foot orthoses were used to redistribute plantar surface foot forces to alleviate discomfort in pressure-sensitive areas of the foot. Little consideration was given to the specific foot abnormality that led to the pathological condition.[5] In the early 1900s metal foot braces began to be used to control motion at specific joints of the foot and to prevent pathological conditions.[6] These devices, although functional, were often not well tolerated because of the rigidity of the materials and the mismatch between brace design and foot pathokinesiology. In 1948, Schreber and Weineman first identified forefoot invertus (varus) and evertus (valgus) as primary foot deformities that required correction by an orthosis.[7] In the 1960s, Merton Root developed neutral impression casting techniques, positive cast modifications, and posting (mechanical correction) techniques.[8] The standards that Root established have enhanced orthotic comfort and function. Since then, functional foot orthosis use has increased considerably to address lower limb muscle activation pathology of the mechanics of the foot and ankle in musculoskeletal disorders and neurological disorders.[9-14]

☆The author extends appreciation to Roberta Nole, Donald S. Kowalsky, Juan C. Garbalosa, and John Thompson, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Triplanar Structure of the Foot

The foot is a complex of bones interconnected by a series of multiplanar articulations supported by soft tissue structures. It is subdivided into three functional components: the rearfoot, the midfoot, and the forefoot.

Several important articulations of the foot (talocrural, subtalar, midtarsal, first and fifth rays) are triplanar; the axis of rotation in these joints is not perpendicular to any of the cardinal planes (sagittal, horizontal, frontal) of the human body. As a result, motion about triplanar joints leads to simultaneous movement in all three of these cardinal planes.[8] The amount of motion evident in any single plane is related to the pitch (inclination) of the triplanar axis from the respective cardinal plane. Triplanar motion occurs in three-dimensional space; the breakdown of triplanar motion into its three constituent cardinal plane movements is artificial.

Because motion about a triplanar axis is three-dimensional, motion occurs simultaneously in the three cardinal planes. Blocking any one component of triplanar motion in a single cardinal plane prevents movement in the other two planes as well. This "all-or-nothing" rule is the premise for orthotic posting or wedging.[8] Theoretically, the addition of a post or wedge to an orthosis blocks the frontal plane component of triplanar motion, which, in turn, blocks or limits the triplanar motion of pronation. The design principles of foot orthoses are founded on knowledge of the functional anatomy of the foot.

TALOCRURAL JOINT

The talocrural joint (TCJ) (articulation between tibia, fibula, and talus, connecting the foot to the lower leg) has a triplanar axis of rotation. In neutral position, the TCJ axis passes through the tips of the medial and lateral malleoli, pitched

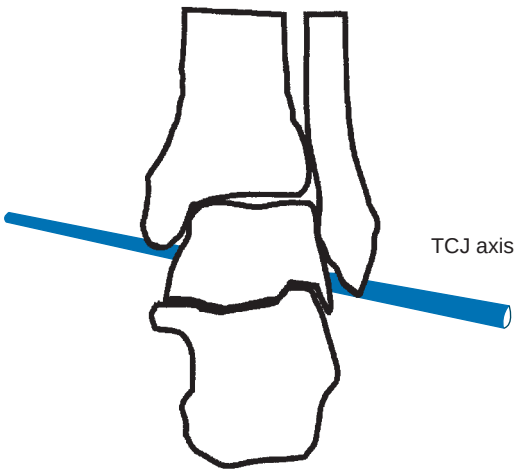


Fig. 8.1 Posterior view of the osseous components and axis of the talocrural joint *(TCJ)*. The osseous components of the TCJ are the tibia medially and superiorly, the fibula laterally, and the talus inferiorly. The axis of the joint passes in a posterolateral to anteromedial direction through the tips of the lateral and medial malleoli. (Courtesy Juan C. Garbalosa, University of Hartford, West Hartford, CT.)

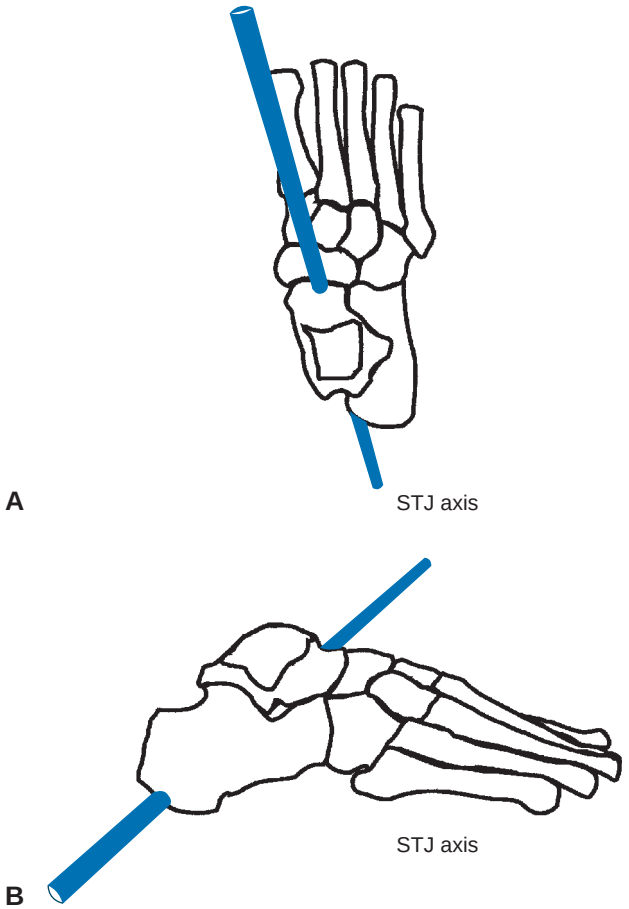


Fig. 8.2 Superior (A) and lateral (B) views of the osseous structures in the rearfoot: the superior talus and inferior calcaneus. Also pictured is the triplanar axis of the subtalar joint *(STJ)*. Note the inclination of the axis from all three cardinal planes of the body. (Courtesy Juan C. Garbalosa, University of Hartford, West Hartford, CT.)

10 degrees from the transverse plane and 20 to 30 degrees from the frontal plane (Fig. 8.1).[15-17] Although sagittal plane plantarflexion and dorsiflexion are primary motions at this joint, the slight inclination of the TCJ axis of rotation leads to concomitant transverse and frontal plane motion. During plantarflexion, the foot adducts and inverts; with dorsiflexion it abducts and everts. Normal range of motion (ROM) of the TCJ is between 12 and 20 degrees of dorsiflexion and 50 and 56 degrees of plantarflexion.[18] The medial (deltoid) and lateral collateral ligaments stabilize and limit motion that occurs at the TCJ.[19]

REARFOOT

The osseous structures of the rearfoot are the calcaneus (inferior) and the talus (superior) (Fig. 8.2). The articulation between the calcaneus and talus is the subtalar joint (STJ). Three joint surfaces are present in this articulation: posterior, anterior, and middle. The posterior joint surface has a concave talar and convex calcaneal portion, whereas the anterior and middle joint surfaces have convex talar and concave calcaneal arrangements.[20] This structurally based articular geometry, along with the interosseous talocalcaneal ligament, limits the amount and type of motion occurring at the STJ.[21,22] The medial and lateral collateral ligaments and the posterior and lateral talocalcaneal ligaments also offer support to the STJ.[23]

At the STJ, the triplanar axis of rotation is oriented in an anterosuperior to posteroinferior direction, pitched approximately 42 degrees from the transverse plane, 48 degrees from the frontal plane, and 16 degrees from the sagittal plane (see Fig. 8.2). The location of the STJ axis in the human foot varies greatly. Manter[24] reported that the inclination from the transverse and sagittal planes varies from 29 degrees to 47 degrees and from 8 degrees to 24 degrees, respectively.

The triplanar motions at the STJ are supination and pronation. Supination of the weight-bearing foot leads to dorsiflexion and abduction of the talus with simultaneous inversion of the calcaneus. Pronation of the weight-bearing foot results in plantarflexion and adduction of the talus and eversion of the calcaneus.[8] Because of the variability in location of the axis of rotation of the STJ, the component motions of supination and pronation vary as well. As the axis becomes more perpendicular to a particular cardinal plane, the motion occurring in that plane becomes more pronounced, whereas the other motions become less prominent.[25,26] This variability affects coupled motion between the joints of the foot and the lower leg. During pronation and supination of the rearfoot, the tibia and fibula rotate internally and externally in the transverse plane.[8,27,28] An increase in the frontal plane motion of the rearfoot could cause a simultaneous increase in the transverse plane motion of the lower leg.

MIDFOOT

The midfoot is composed of two bones: the cuboid and the navicular. The talonavicular and calcaneocuboid articulations between the midfoot and rearfoot form an important composite joint: the midtarsal joint (MTJ) or transverse tarsal joint. The articular surfaces of the talonavicular joint are convex–concave, whereas the surfaces of the calcaneocuboid joint are sellar shaped.[16,24] MTJ movement is supported and restricted by the bifurcate, short and

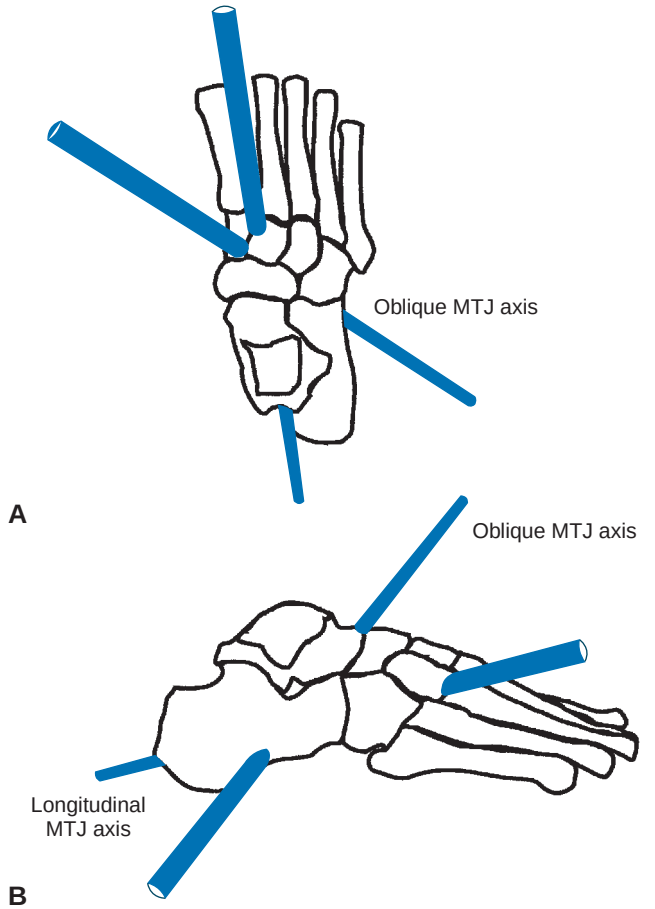


Fig. 8.3 A superior (A) and lateral (B) view of the osseous components of the midtarsal joint *(MTJ)*. The anterior portion of the MTJ is composed of the navicular and cuboid bones, whereas the posterior portion is composed of the calcaneus and talus. The two axes of the MTJ, the oblique and longitudinal axes, are also depicted. As in the subtalar joint, both axes of the MTJ are triplanar. (Courtesy Juan C. Garbalosa, University of Hartford, West Hartford, CT.)

long plantar, and plantar calcaneonavicular (spring) ligaments. The short and long plantar ligaments and the plantar calcaneonavicular ligaments also support the longitudinal and transverse plantar arches of the foot.[29]

Because the MTJ is a composite joint, motion occurs about two separate triplanar joint axes: a longitudinal and an oblique axis (Fig. 8.3). Movement of the forefoot about each joint axis can occur independently of the other. Manter[24] reported that the longitudinal axis is inclined superiorly 15 degrees from the transverse plane and medially 9 degrees from the sagittal plane, whereas the oblique axis is pitched superiorly 52 degrees from the transverse plane and medially 57 degrees from the sagittal plane. The predominant motion about the longitudinal axis is frontal plane inversion and eversion. Because of the slight deviation of the longitudinal axis from the three cardinal planes, small amounts of forefoot plantarflexion and dorsiflexion and adduction and abduction occur during inversion and eversion. Plantarflexion and dorsiflexion and abduction and adduction are the predominant movements around the oblique MTJ axis, with little concomitant inversion and eversion.[8,22]

These two joint axes produce the combined motion of supination and pronation of the MTJ. During supination and pronation, the forefoot inverts and everts about the longitudinal axis. The motion around the oblique axis is plantarflexion with adduction and dorsiflexion with abduction. The amount of motion possible at these MTJ axes is determined by the position of the STJ. In STJ supination, the two joint axes are nearly perpendicular so that MTJ mobility is restricted. This mechanism helps convert the forefoot into a rigid structure for propulsion during the push-off phase of gait (from heel rise through toe-off).[24,30] When the STJ is pronated, the joint axes are more parallel, allowing a greater degree of MTJ mobility.

FOREFOOT

The forefoot includes all structures distal to the navicular and cuboid bones; it is subdivided into five rays and toes. The first through third rays consist of a cuneiform and its associated metatarsal bone; the fourth and fifth rays consist only of a metatarsal. The tarsometatarsal joints—the primary joints of the ray complexes—have two opposing planar surfaces.[8,29] The hallux, or first toe, has two bones (a proximal and distal phalanx) and two corresponding joints (metatarsophalangeal [MTP] and interphalangeal [IP]). The lesser toes have three bones (proximal, middle, and distal phalanges) and three associated joints. The proximal articular surfaces of the MTP and IP joints are convex, and the distal articular surface is concave.[8] Numerous soft tissue structures support these joints.[29,31]

Although each ray has its own axis of motion, the first and fifth rays are of particular interest. The triplanar axes of rotation of these two joints are nearly perpendicular. The axis of the first ray is pitched at a 45-degree angle from the sagittal and frontal planes; the primary motions possible are plantarflexion with eversion and dorsiflexion with inversion. Because the axis of the first ray is minimally pitched from the transverse plane, insignificant transverse motion occurs.[8] In contrast, the axis of rotation of the fifth ray is oriented at a 20-degree angle from the transverse plane and a 35-degree angle from the sagittal plane. The resulting motions combine inversion with plantarflexion and eversion with dorsiflexion. Less motion is present about the axis of rotation of the fifth ray than of the first ray.[8] MTP joints have two separate axes of rotation: the vertical axis (abduction and adduction) and the transverse axis (plantarflexion and dorsiflexion).[8,16,29] Little frontal plane motion at MTP joints is normal; frontal plane motion leads to subluxation.[8]

PLANTAR FASCIA AND ARCHES OF THE FOOT

The plantar aponeurosis, one of the most functionally important soft tissue structures of the foot, is a sheath of fascia spanning most of the foot's plantar surface. Arising from the medial process of the calcanean tuberosity, it passes distally along the plantar aspect of the foot, then divides into five slips for its distal attachment at the base of the proximal phalanges by the plantar pads.[32] This fascial sheath plays an extremely important role in providing the stability needed by the foot during the toe-off phase of stance during gait and in supporting the longitudinal arch of the foot.

The medial longitudinal and transverse arches are formed by the ligamentous and osseous structures of a "normal" foot.[33] The medial longitudinal arch (MLA) extends from the calcaneus (posterior) to the first metatarsal head

(anterior) and is supported by the plantar aponeurosis, the short and long plantar ligaments, and the spring ligament. During weight bearing, the height of the arch is reduced as the supporting ligamentous structures are elongated. The transverse arch reaches across the foot from medial to lateral borders. The height of the arch varies along the length of the foot: its maximum height occurs at the cuboid-cuneiform bones of the midfoot, and its lowest point is at the metatarsal heads.

Function of the Foot in Gait

The foot and ankle complex has three major functions in the gait cycle: attenuating the impact forces, maintaining equilibrium, and transmitting propulsive forces. For optimal biomechanical and energy-efficient performance, the joints of the foot and ankle must work in harmony. In early stance, the foot-ankle complex absorbs energy generated at initial contact (IC) and decreases forces transmitted to proximal structures during loading. The foot and ankle must also adapt to surface conditions encountered by the foot as stance begins. In late stance, the foot and lower leg transmit propulsive forces generated by muscles of the lower extremity onto the ground. The ability of the foot and lower leg to accomplish these functions depends on the integrity of the various structures of the foot. Gait abnormalities occur when the foot and ankle complex is unable to compensate for deficits in motion or structure.

The kinematic, kinetic, and neuromuscular events of the normal human gait cycle have been described in many ways.[8,34,35] Most focus on five distinct events: IC or heel strike, loading response (LR) or foot flat, midstance (MSt), terminal stance (TSt) or heel-off, and preswing (PSw) or toe-off. See Chapter 5 for a more detailed description of the gait cycle.

SHOCK ABSORPTION

Musculoskeletal structures of the lower limb act from IC to MSt to attenuate impact forces.[8,34,36] Force plate recording of ground reaction forces (GRFs) estimates the foot's ability to absorb energy and decelerate the lower leg. The push of the foot against the floor creates a GRF with three components: vertical, medial, and lateral; and fore and aft forces. The vertical component of a typical GRF record has a bimodal shape (Fig. 8.4). The brief first peak results from the impact of the heel with the ground. Some of the vertical GRF is attributed to acceleration of the centers of mass of the foot and shank of the leg.

In early stance, from IC to LR, the STJ moves into pronation as the TCJ is plantarflexing.[8,34,37,38] The fibula and tibia internally rotate with respect to the foot.[26,27] Pronation of the STJ is controlled by eccentric contraction of the tibialis anterior, posterior tibialis, flexor hallucis longus, and flexor digitorum longus muscles.[8,34,39] Plantarflexion of the foot is controlled primarily by eccentric action of the tibialis anterior.[8,38] The combined muscle activity decelerates plantarflexion and pronation motion of the TCJ, STJ, and MTJ, slowing vertical and anterior movement of the center of mass of the foot and shank and decreasing impact forces encountered at IC.

The viscoelastic plantar fat pad absorbs some of the energy generated between IC and LR.[40] Pronation of the STJ flattens the arches of the foot, elongating plantar connective tissue structures. Because these tissues are viscoelastic, they also absorb some of the energy generated from IC to LR.

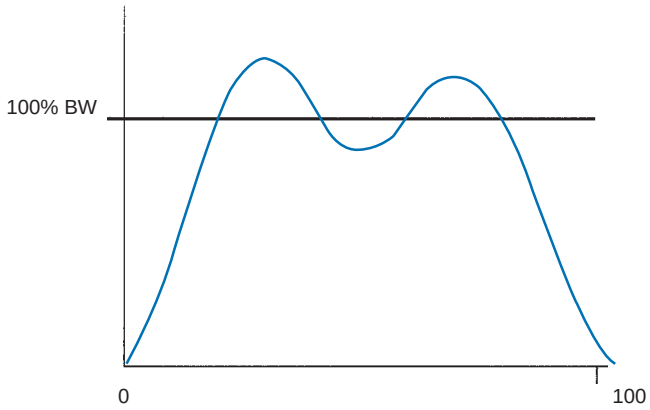


Fig. 8.4 Typical vertical ground reaction pattern during walking. Note the bimodal shape of the ground reaction force. The first peak occurs at initial contact, and the second peak occurs during the toe-off phase of gait. The recorded ground reaction force represents the whole-body center of mass acceleration. *BW*, Body weight. (From Valiant GA. Transmission and attenuation of heelstrike accelerations. In: Cavanagh PR, ed. *Biomechanics of Distance Running*. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 1990:225–249.)

ADAPTATION TO SURFACES

In everyday walking, the foot must be able to adapt quickly to many types of terrains and uneven surfaces. The key contributor to surface adaptation is STJ pronation, which unlocks the MTJ, permitting the joints of the foot to function in loose-packed positions and enabling the osseous elements to shift their relative positions.

At IC, the forefoot is in a supinatory twist (inverted) about the longitudinal MTJ axis. Eccentric action of the anterior tibialis decelerates plantarflexion of the forefoot, lowering it to the ground. The MTJ becomes fully supinated at LR as a result of eversion of the STJ and GRFs acting upward on the foot's medial border. Contraction of the extensor digitorum longus and peroneus tertius abducts and dorsiflexes (pronates) the forefoot, locking it about the oblique MTJ axis and preparing the forefoot to receive the loading forces encountered at MSt.[8]

PROPULSION

During MSt (LR to PSw), the STJ is maximally pronated and begins to resupinate. At this time, the GRF maintains the MTJ in a pronated position about its oblique axis. At the same time, a pronatory twist is initiated at the longitudinal axis by concentric action of the peroneals. The MTJ locks in a fully pronated position around the longitudinal axis just before heel rise as the STJ reaches its neutral position. The MTJ must remain locked in this position throughout propulsion as the peroneals contract to lift the lateral side of the foot from the ground and transfer weight medially to the other foot. As the heel is raised from the ground, the rearfoot continues to supinate (talus abducts and dorsiflexes) as the lower limb rotates externally. This coupled motion necessitates supination of the MTJ about the oblique axis to maximize joint stability and to convert the foot into a rigid lever for propulsion.

Supination of the STJ occurs with concentric action of the tibialis posterior, flexor hallucis longus, and flexor digitorum longus and soleus, as well as the antagonistic functioning of the peroneus brevis.[8,34] The concentric activity of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles causes vertical acceleration of the foot and lower leg. Propulsive forces generated by the foot and lower leg are transmitted to the floor.[8,34,38] The second peak of a GRF curve corresponds to propulsion in the late stance phase (see Fig. 8.4).

Supination of the STJ and locking of the MTJ about the longitudinal axis place the foot in a closed-packed position, transforming the foot into a rigid lever.[8,17,27,34,41] This transformation is aided by the action of the plantar aponeurosis as it wraps around the metatarsal heads. During TSt, the MTP joints extend (dorsiflex), creating a "windlass effect." This action compresses joints of the midfoot and forefoot, facilitating the transition from flexibility to rigidity required for effective push-off.

Biomechanical Examination

The biomechanical examination of the foot and ankle has three components: a non–weight-bearing assessment, a static weight-bearing assessment, and a dynamic gait analysis (Fig. 8.5). Five common intrinsic foot deformities are identified in the biomechanical examination: rearfoot varus, forefoot varus, forefoot valgus, equinus deformity, and plantarflexed first ray.

The theoretical model of biomechanical foot and ankle examination is based on the work of Root and colleagues.[8] Debate continues about the validity of Root's criteria for normalcy and the assumption that the STJ is in neutral position from MSt to TSt of the gait cycle. Reliability of the measurement techniques used to determine STJ neutral position has also been questioned.[42-45]Although controversial, Root's theory and his biomechanical evaluation and treatment techniques are used by many clinicians.

Root describes deviations from normal foot alignment as "intrinsic" foot deformities, which can lead to aberrant lower extremity function and musculoskeletal pathological conditions.[8,46] To prescribe an appropriate biomechanical foot orthosis, the source of the pathological condition or deformity must be determined by a detailed patient history and a comprehensive biomechanical examination.[47] This helps the clinician identify resultant pathomechanical abnormalities and determine the benefits of orthotic intervention.

Non–Weight-Bearing Open Chain Examination

During the non–weight-bearing open chain examination, the basic architecture of the foot and ankle is assessed. Any bony deformities or prominence of the joints or rays (toes) and any callosities are noted. The examiner uses a goniometer to locate the subtalar neutral (STN) position and identify any intrinsic foot deformities.

The non–weight-bearing goniometric examination is performed with the patient in the prone position, with the targeted lower extremity positioned with extended knee and the foot 6 to 8 inches off the treatment table. Placing the contralateral lower extremity in a figure-four position orients the ipsilateral lower extremity in the frontal plane, reducing the influence of proximal rotational limb disorders on measurement.[48]

EXAMINATION OF THE REARFOOT

Goniometric measurements of the non–weight-bearing examination assess the rearfoot with respect to STN position, as well as STJ mobility, based on calcaneal positioning in the frontal plane. Calcaneal frontal plane motion is the most readily examined component of triplanar STJ motion. To perform the examination, the stationary arm of a goniometer is aligned with an imagined bisection of the lower third of the limb (tibiofibular complex), the mobile arm is aligned with an imaginary bisection of the posterior surface of the calcaneus, and the axis of the goniometer is aligned at the STJ axis, just above the superior border of the calcaneus but beneath the level of the medial and lateral malleoli (Fig. 8.6).[48,49]

Subtalar Neutral Position

STN position can be manually estimated by palpation or by using a mathematical model developed by Root. If using palpation, the examiner identifies the anteromedial and anterolateral aspects of the talar head with the thumb and index fingers of the hand closest to the patient's midline, placing the thumb just proximal to the navicular tuberosity approximately 1 inch below and 1 inch distal to the medial malleolus (Fig. 8.7). In STJ pronation, the anteromedial talar head is most prominent beneath the thumb, and an anterolateral sulcus (the sinus tarsi) is apparent. The index finger is placed in this sulcus, where the talar head is found to protrude when the foot is fully supinated. The thumb and index finger of the other hand grasp the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads, moving the foot in an arc of adduction and inversion (supination) and abduction and eversion (pronation). STN is the point where the talar head is equally prominent anteromedially and anterolaterally.[46,48,49] The examiner then "loads" the foot by applying a dorsally directed pressure against the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads until slight resistance is felt. The loading procedure locks the MTJ against the rearfoot, mimicking GRFs of MSt.[8,50] The angular relation between the bisection of the calcaneus and the bisection of the lower third of the leg is measured with a goniometer (see Fig. 8.6), recorded on the evaluation form as rearfoot STN position.

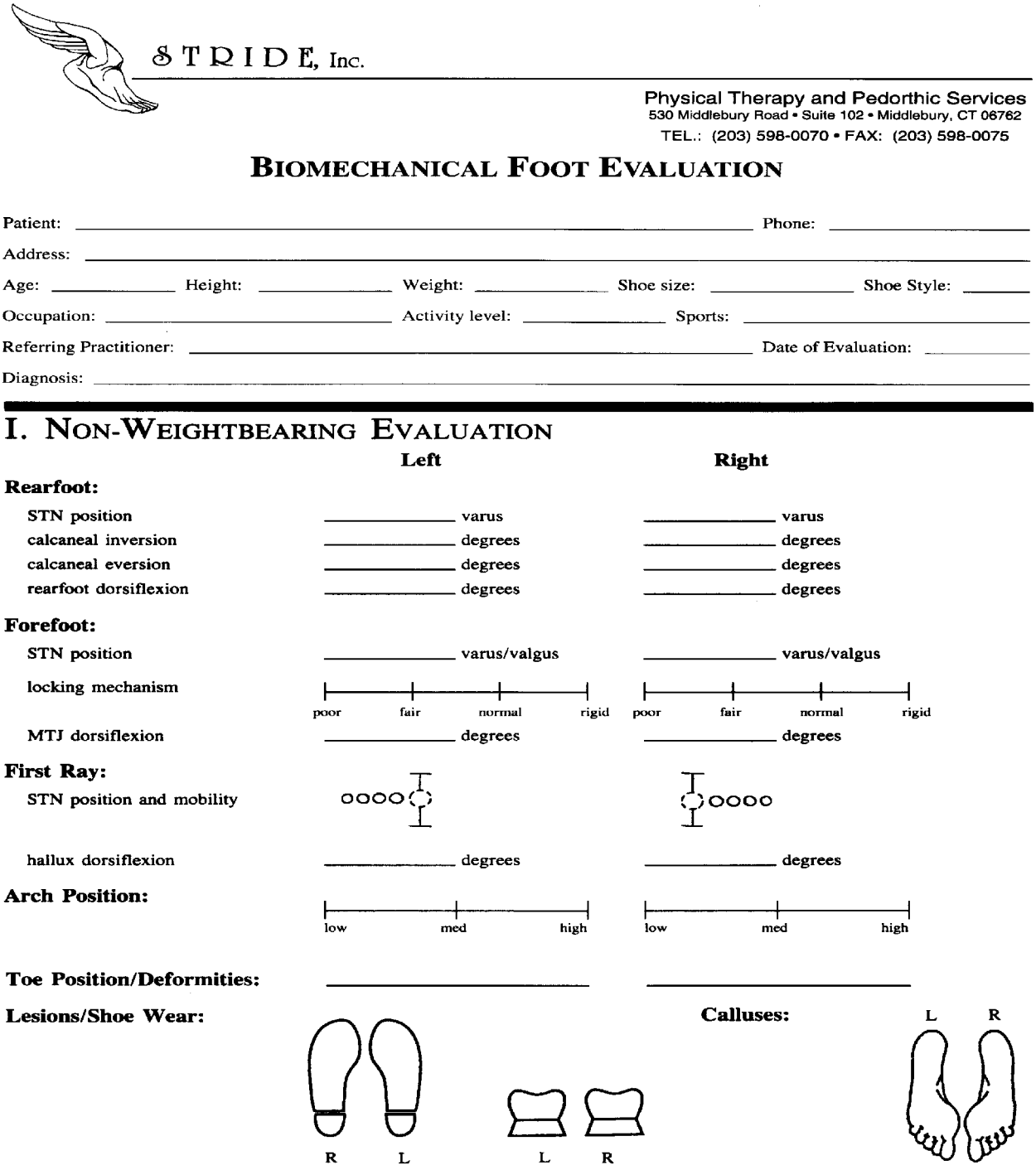
Root's mathematical model for determining STN position uses a quantitative goniometric formula.[8,46] First, end ROM calcaneal inversion and eversion are determined by goniometric measurement. Total calcaneal ROM is the sum of the inversion and eversion values. The STN position is determined as the calcaneus is moved into inversion at one third of the total calcaneal ROM. If end-range calcaneal inversion is 25 degrees and end-range calcaneal eversion is +5 degrees, total calcaneal ROM would be 30 degrees. STN position is calculated to be at 5 degrees calcaneal inversion, one third of the distance from its fully everted position.

Reliability and clinical validity of both models have been debated.[44,46,48,51-53] Although acceptable reliability is possible, it is influenced by examiner experience. Palpation to determine STN position is efficient in terms of time but requires more advanced manual skills and experience than the mathematical model. The mathematical model may be more reliable for the entry-level practitioner.

Calcaneal Range of Motion

Calcaneal inversion and eversion occur primarily at the STJ, with lesser contributions from the TCJ. Calcaneal ROM is assessed with the patient in the prone position with the same anatomical landmarks and lines of bisection as for STN assessment. The examiner grasps the calcaneus in one hand, fully inverts it in the frontal plane until end ROM is achieved, and then takes a goniometric measurement.[53] The procedure is repeated for calcaneal eversion. The TCJ must be maintained in a neutral to slightly dorsiflexed position while measuring to lock it in a closed-packed position and better isolate STJ motion.[54] Normative values of 20 degrees for calcaneal inversion and 10 degrees beyond vertical for eversion have been reported.[8]

Because values of calcaneal eversion are larger when assessed in a full weight-bearing position, some clinicians suggest that this position is more clinically valid.[42,53] Assessment of calcaneal eversion in the weight-bearing



STRIDE, Inc.

Physical Therapy and Pedorthic Services
530 Middlebury Road • Suite 102 • Middlebury, CT 06762
TEL.: (203) 598-0070 • FAX: (203) 598-0075

BIOMECHANICAL FOOT EVALUATION

Patient: _____ Phone: _____
Address: _____
Age: _____ Height: _____ Weight: _____ Shoe size: _____ Shoe Style: _____
Occupation: _____ Activity level: _____ Sports: _____
Referring Practitioner: _____ Date of Evaluation: _____
Diagnosis: _____

I. NON-WEIGHTBEARING EVALUATION

	Left	Right
Rearfoot:		
STN position	_____ varus	_____ varus
calcaneal inversion	_____ degrees	_____ degrees
calcaneal eversion	_____ degrees	_____ degrees
rearfoot dorsiflexion	_____ degrees	_____ degrees
Forefoot:		
STN position	_____ varus/valgus	_____ varus/valgus
locking mechanism	poor fair normal rigid	poor fair normal rigid
MTJ dorsiflexion	_____ degrees	_____ degrees
First Ray:		
STN position and mobility		
hallux dorsiflexion	_____ degrees	_____ degrees
Arch Position:	low med high	low med high

Toe Position/Deformities: _____ _____

Lesions/Shoe Wear:

R L L R

Calluses:

L R

Fig. 8.5 Biomechanical examination form outlining components of the non–weight-bearing and weight-bearing assessment. *Ante*, Femoral anteversion; *ASIS*, anterior superior iliac spine; *DLS*, double-limb stance; *Gastroc*, gastrocnemius; *G.T.*, greater trochanter; *ITB*, iliotibial band; *M.M.*, medial malleolus; *PSIS*, posterior inferior iliac spine; *Retro*, femoral retroversion; *SLS*, single-limb stance; *T.T.*, tibial tubercle; *VAL*, valgus; *VAR*, varus. (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.) Biomechanical examination form outlining components of the weight-bearing assessment.

II. Weightbearing Evaluation

	STN		RCS	
Tibia to Floor:	L	R	L	R
DLS	VAR / VAL	VAR / VAL	VAR / VAL	VAR / VAL
SLS	VAR / VAL	VAR / VAL	VAR / VAL	VAR / VAL

Calcaneus to Floor:

	STN	RCS
L	10 0 10 (Inversion — Eversion)	10 0 10 (Inversion — Eversion)
R	10 0 10 (Inversion — Eversion)	10 0 10 (Inversion — Eversion)

III. Soft Tissue Restrictions

	L	R
Iliopsoas		
Rectus Femoris		
ITB		
Hamstring		
Gastroc		
Soleus		

	L	R
Hip Rotation (Hips 90°, Knees 90°)		
Internal		
External		
Hip Rotation (Hips 0°, Knees 90°)		
Internal		
External		

IV. Postural Observations

	L		R	
Pelvis:		ASIS		ASIS
		PSIS		PSIS
		Iliac Crest		Iliac Crest
Femoral Torsion: (Craig/Ryder)		Ante/Retro		Ante/Retro
Knee:		Recurvatum		Recurvatum
		Genu Varum/Valgum		Genu Varum/Valgum
Tibial Torsion:		Int/Ext		Int/Ext
Leg Length:		ASIS - M.M.		ASIS - M.M.
		G.T. - M.M.		G.T. - M.M.
		G.T. - Med. Knee		G.T. - Med. Knee
		T.T. - M.M.		T.T. - M.M.
Arch Position:	Low — Med — High		Low — Med — High	
Toe Sign:				

Fig. 8.5, cont'd

position represents a total "functional" pronation and eversion that is the summation of motion occurring at the STJ and compensatory motion occurring extrinsic to the STJ (e.g., TCJ, MTJ). Passive assessment of calcaneal eversion in a non–weight-bearing examination remains the most accurate method to determine the degree of composite pronation acquired from the STJ itself.

Talocrural Joint Range of Motion

In normal walking, the TCJ is maximally dorsiflexed just before heel rise when the knee is fully extended and the STJ is in a nearly neutral position.[8,55] When and whether an actual STN position ever occurs during gait is disputed.[42] However, the use of a standard position of knee extension and STN offers a consistent point of reference when assessing TCJ dorsiflexion. According to most sources, a minimum of 10 degrees TCJ dorsiflexion is required for normal gait; anything less is classified as an equinus deformity.[8,55-58] A minimum of 20 degrees of plantarflexion is also required for normal gait.[8]

Ankle dorsiflexion is measured in a non–weight-bearing position with the STJ held in the neutral position and the knee extended. The examiner forcefully dorsiflexes the ankle with active assistance from the patient. Active assistance

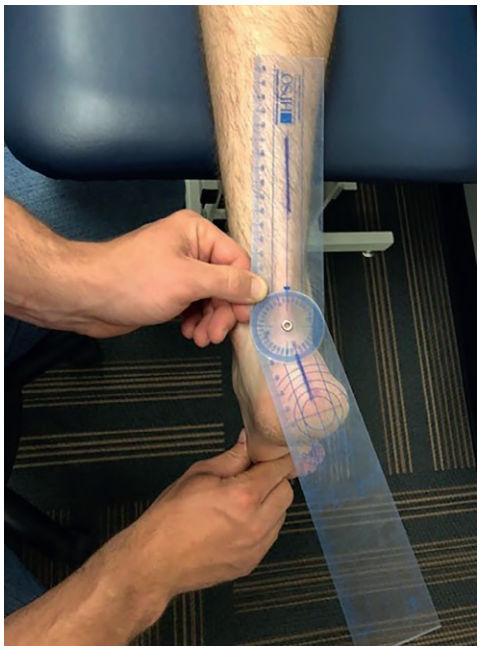


Fig. 8.6 Non–weight-bearing goniometric technique. A loading force applied by the examiner over the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads locks the forefoot on the rearfoot while the examiner's opposite hand operates the goniometer to measure subtalar neutral position and calcaneal range of motion. The examiner is seated at the distal end of the treatment table, with the chair height adjusted to position the patient's foot at chest level.

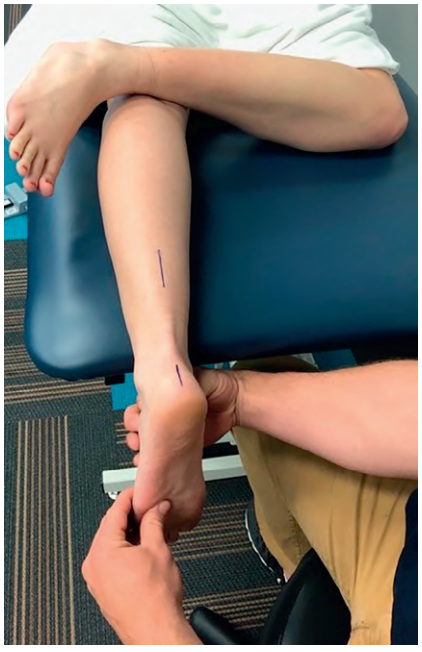


Fig. 8.7 To determine subtalar neutral position, the examiner moves the forefoot slowly between supination and pronation until the anteromedial and anterolateral surfaces of the head of the talus are equally prominent.

encourages reciprocal inhibition of the calf muscle group and is essential for accurate measurement.[55] The proximal arm of the goniometer is positioned along the lateral aspect of the fibula, the distal arm along the lateral border of the fifth metatarsal, and the axis distal to the lateral malleolus.[59] An alternative placement of the distal arm of the goniometer along the inferolateral border of the calcaneus may more effectively isolate true TCJ dorsiflexion (Fig. 8.8). This value is recorded as rearfoot dorsiflexion. Forefoot dorsiflexion is measured by repositioning the distal arm along the lateral aspect of the fifth metatarsal. This method allows the examiner to identify contributions or restrictions in sagittal plane motion from the oblique axis of the MTJ.

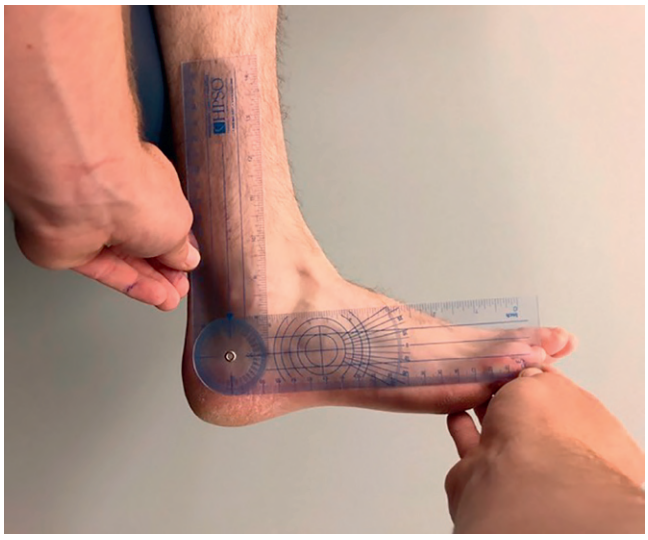


Fig. 8.8 Alignment of the distal arm of the goniometer along the inferior-lateral border of the calcaneus may provide a more accurate measure of talocrural joint dorsiflexion than the traditional alignment along the shaft of the fifth metatarsal used to measure overall ankle dorsiflexion.

If ankle dorsiflexion is less than 10 degrees when measured with the knee extended, remeasurement with the knee flexed may rule out soft tissue restriction of the gastrocnemius-soleus complex.[8,55] If dorsiflexion values are consistent in both positions, the limitation is likely a result of osseous equinus formation of the ankle.

During gait, ankle dorsiflexion occurs in a closed kinetic chain as the tibia and fibula rotate forward over a fixed foot. On the basis of this, some have suggested that assessing ankle dorsiflexion may be more accurate with the patient in a weight-bearing position.[42,57] The weight-bearing technique measures the angle between the tibia and the floor as the patient leans forward with the foot flat on the floor. Unwanted compensations are often difficult to control during weight bearing and may mask true TCJ limitations. The non–weight-bearing technique allows the examiner to assess end-feel and joint play, as well as mechanical blocks or joint laxity, providing additional information not accessible in the weight-bearing examination.

Rearfoot Deformities

Normal rearfoot position is one in which STN is 1 to 4 degrees of varus.[43,44,52,53] Values of more than 4 degrees are described as a rearfoot varus deformity. This deformity may be the result of ontogenetic failure of the calcaneus to derotate sufficiently during early childhood development.[8,50,60] Because this deformity is a torsional structural malalignment of the calcaneus, not a joint-related problem,

the TCJ and STJ lines remain congruent when observed in the non–weight-bearing STN position. As a structural deformity, it cannot be corrected or reduced by joint mobilization or a strengthening program. Instead, it is managed with a functional foot orthosis that partially supports the calcaneus in its inverted alignment while preventing excessive STJ pronation.

Assessment of calcaneal ROM predicts quality of motion and the integrity of the STJ. Measuring calcaneal motion into eversion allows the examiner to determine whether a rearfoot deformity is compensated or uncompensated (Fig. 8.9).

In a compensated rearfoot varus deformity, the calcaneus fully everts to vertical or beyond in weight bearing because the STJ possesses an adequate amount of pronatory motion to compensate for the deformity. A compensated rearfoot varus deformity of 10 degrees (STN position) requires that the STJ pronate or evert at least 10 degrees to enable the medial condyle of the calcaneus to achieve ground contact in weight bearing. Such excessive pronatory motion causes medial gapping and lateral constriction at the STJ line and a medial bulge of the talus as it moves into adduction and plantarflexion.

In an uncompensated rearfoot varus deformity, the calcaneus remains fixed in its inverted STN position with no eversion motion at the STJ. A partially compensated rearfoot varus deformity allows for partial STJ eversion so that the medial condyle of the calcaneus does not make complete contact with the ground on weight bearing. Alternative compensatory motion, extrinsic to the STJ, is necessary to achieve weight bearing on the medial aspect of the foot. One common compensation is an acquired soft tissue (valgus) deformity of the forefoot caused by a plantarflexed first ray. Other sources of compensatory motion can occur at the MTJ or proximally at the knee, hip, or sacroiliac joints.

An equinus deformity occurs when fewer than 10 degrees of ankle dorsiflexion are available as a result of osseous or muscular problems.[56,58,61,62] Clubfoot (talipe sequinovarus) is a congenital osseous deformity that includes varus deformity of both rearfoot and forefoot, rearfoot equinus, and an inverted and adducted forefoot.[63,64] The angular relation between the body and the head and neck of the talus is decreased, and the navicular is shifted medially. Muscular forms of equinus include congenital or acquired soft tissue shortening or muscle spasm.[58] Tissue contracture or shortening occurs in both contractile tissues (gastrocnemius, soleus, and plantaris) and noncontractile tissues (teno-Achilles and plantar fascia).[56,58]

Compensation for an equinus deformity occurs at the foot through pronation, perpetuating soft tissue contractures. The STJ is forced to pronate maximally to gain as much sagittal plane dorsiflexion as possible. Although foot pronation allows some dorsiflexion from the STJ, the amount is often inadequate. Pronation of the STJ unlocks the MTJ, creating an unstable midfoot while allowing further dorsiflexion and forefoot abduction from the oblique axis of the MTJ.[58] Other compensatory strategies for equinus deformity include knee flexion (especially in individuals with cerebral palsy), early heel rise, toe walking, shortened stride length of the contralateral lower limb, and toe-out walking.[34,46,58] Clinical consequences of long-term ankle equinus include many conditions normally associated with the excessively pronated foot: plantar fasciitis, heel spurs, bunions, and capsulitis.[58]

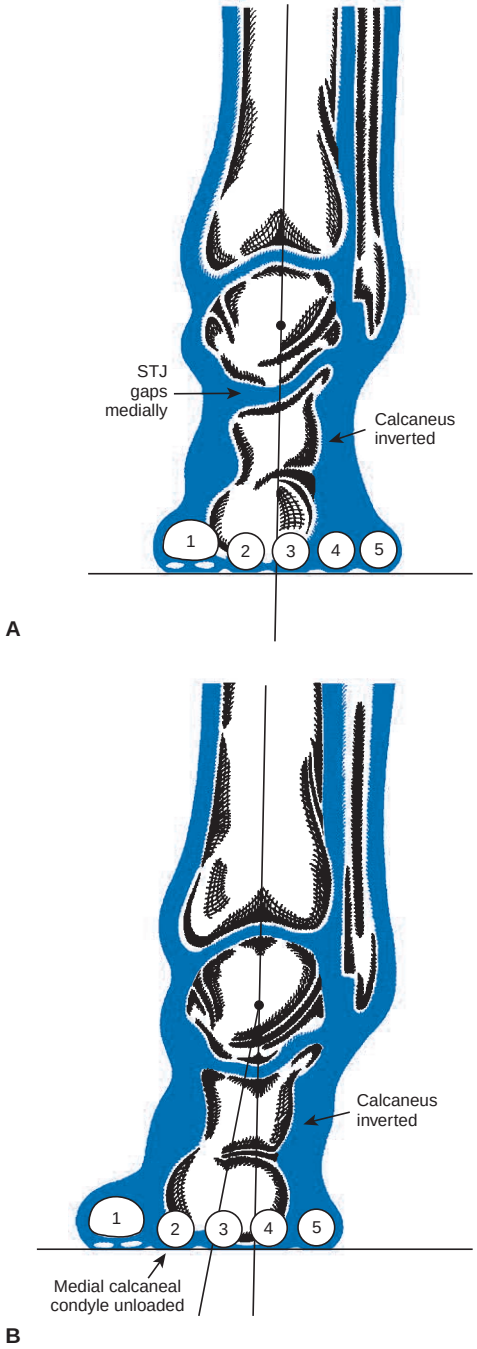


Fig. 8.9 (A) In relaxed calcaneal stance, compensation for a rearfoot varus is normally subtalar joint (STJ) pronation. (B) In an uncompensated rearfoot varus, the STJ cannot pronate and instead may develop compensatory midtarsal joint pronation about the longitudinal joint axis. (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.)

EXAMINATION OF THE FOREFOOT

Forefoot position is assessed with the STJ in neutral position. Because the first and fifth rays have independent axes of motion, forefoot orientation is defined by the planar relation of the second, third, and fourth rays to the bisection line of the calcaneus.

NEUTRAL FOREFOOT POSITION

If the forefoot is properly balanced, the plane of the three central metatarsals is perpendicular to the bisection of the calcaneus when in STN (Fig. 8.10). In a forefoot varus deformity, the forefoot is excessively supinated or inverted, whereas in a forefoot valgus the forefoot is excessively pronated or everted.

Mobility Testing: Locking Mechanism

To isolate the STN position in the non–weight-bearing examination, the examiner attempts to lock the MTJ by applying a dorsally directed loading pressure with the thumb and index fingers over the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads of the patient's foot (see Figs. 8.6 and 8.7). Loading force must be gently applied over the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads until tissue slack is taken up from the normally plantarflexed resting position of the ankle.[8,60] Overload of the forefoot leads to dorsiflexion and abduction of the foot, placing the forefoot in an excessively pronated position and giving a false valgus orientation.

Although many forefoot measurement devices are available, forefoot orientation can be accurately assessed with a standard goniometer.[65] To assess the forefoot to rearfoot relation, the proximal arm of the goniometer is aligned along the bisection of the calcaneus, with the axis just below its distal border. The distal arm is positioned in the plane of the three central metatarsal heads (Fig. 8.11). The angular displacement is recorded on the evaluation form under STN position for the forefoot assessment (see Fig. 8.5).

In normal walking, the MTJ locks as heel rise begins so that the foot is converted into a rigid lever for propulsion. This lock requires that the STJ be in the neutral position. Clinical assessment of MTJ mobility and the locking mechanism is an advanced manual skill. Observations made during weight-bearing assessment (e.g., toe sign, navicular drop test, talar bulge) provide an elementary method to identify an MTJ unable to lock.

An ineffective locking mechanism at the MTJ is often more clinically significant than the absolute degree of forefoot deformity. For example, a forefoot varus deformity of 3 degrees with a poor MTJ locking mechanism may be symptomatic, whereas an 8-degree forefoot varus deformity with a normal MTJ locking mechanism may not be.

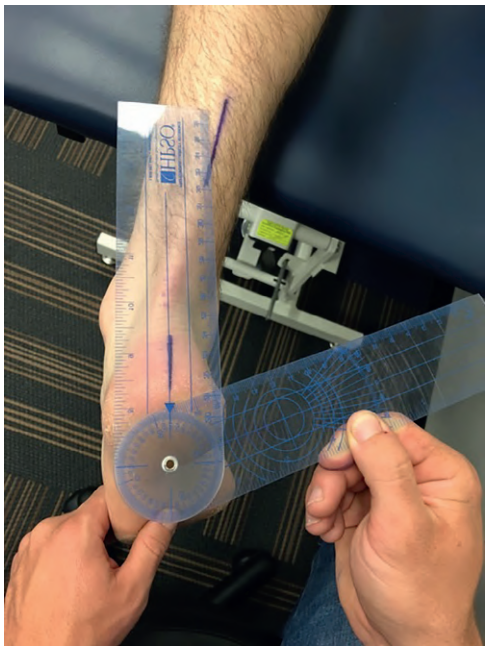


Fig. 8.11 Measurement of forefoot orientation in subtalar neutral position with a standard goniometer. The proximal arm of the goniometer is aligned with the bisection of the posterior surface of the calcaneus, and the distal arm parallels the plane of the metatarsal heads. The axis lies beneath the distal aspect of the calcaneus.

Identifying Forefoot Deformities

Although the prevalence of forefoot deformity, with or without symptoms, is well documented, less agreement exists regarding which types of deformity are most common.[52,66] If an individual has bilateral forefoot deformity, the deformities may not be of the same severity or type. MTJ deformities

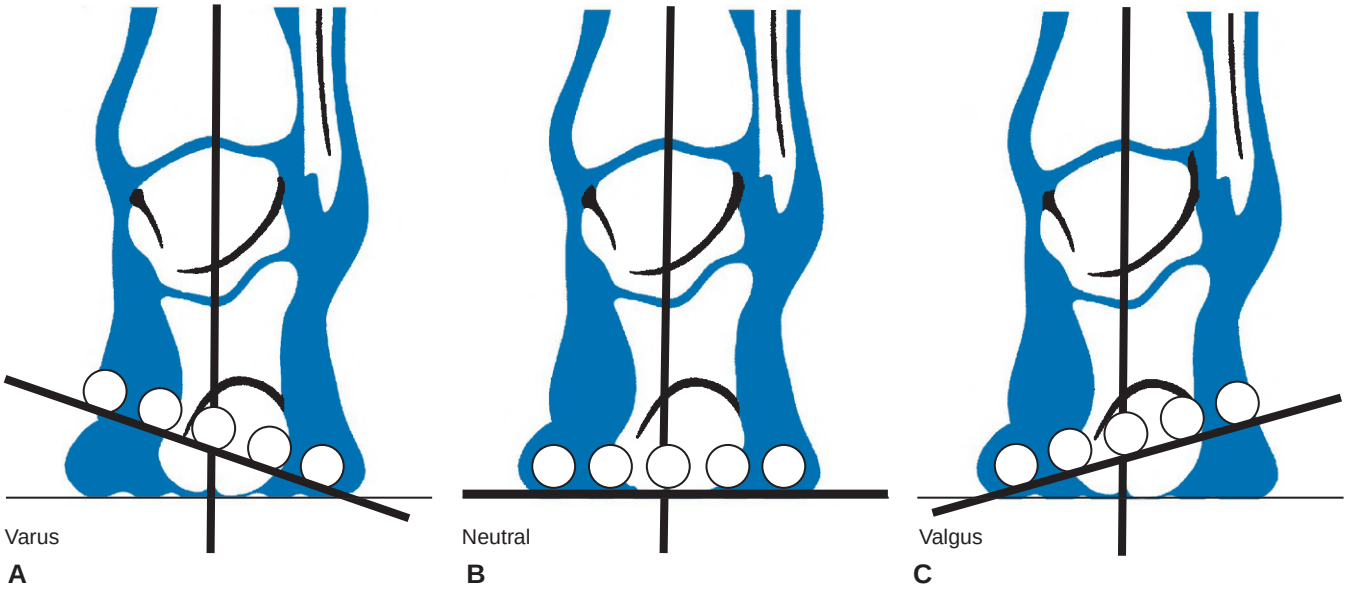


Fig. 8.10 In subtalar neutral position, the normal orientation of the forefoot to the calcaneus (B) is perpendicular. Excessive supination and inversion of the forefoot in subtalar neutral position indicates a forefoot varus (A), whereas excessive pronation and eversion of the forefoot indicates a forefoot valgus (C). (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.)

change the location of the lock of the forefoot against the rearfoot.[8] Although these osseous frontal plane deformities alter the direction of motion, they do not limit the total ROM of the MTJ.[8] In forefoot varus, locking of the forefoot occurs in an inverted position relative to the rearfoot.[8] Forefoot varus results from ontogenetic failure of the normal valgus rotation of the head and neck of the talus in relation to its body during early childhood development.[8,50,60]

Compensations for foot deformities are viewed in a relaxed weight-bearing position, which is referred to as relaxed calcaneal stance (RCS). When excessive pronation of the STJ compensates for the deformity on weight bearing, the condition is called a compensated forefoot varus (Fig. 8.12A). When the STJ cannot adequately pronate to accommodate an inverted forefoot, an uncompensated forefoot varus is present. The medial forefoot does not make contact with the ground, and the lateral forefoot is subjected to excessive pressure. A thick callus develops beneath the head of the fifth metatarsal, and the risk of stress fracture is increased. Plantarflexion of the first ray and pronation at the MTJ are common compensations that allow the medial forefoot to make contact with the ground (see Fig. 8.12B). Persistent MTJ stress may lead to joint damage and excessive forefoot abduction and eversion.

Forefoot valgus occurs in the frontal plane deformity, locking the forefoot in eversion relative to the rearfoot.[8] Root suggests that this deformity results from ontogenetic overrotation of the talar head and neck in relation to its body during early childhood development.[8,50,60] Forefoot valgus can be a rigid or flexible deformity. In rigid forefoot valgus, the compensatory weight-bearing mechanism occurs at the STJ as excessive supination or calcaneal inversion. It is a result of excessive premature GRFs at the first metatarsal head, causing rapid STJ inversion and increasing loading forces beneath the fifth metatarsal head. Thick callosities are often present beneath the first and fifth metatarsal heads. In contrast, flexible forefoot valgus is usually an acquired soft tissue condition. It most often occurs as a consequence of uncompensated rearfoot varus as an attempt to increase weight bearing along the medial foot. Because this deformity is flexible, no compensatory mechanism is necessary. Contact force beneath the first metatarsal head simply pushes it up out of the way, and the foot functions as if this condition were not present.

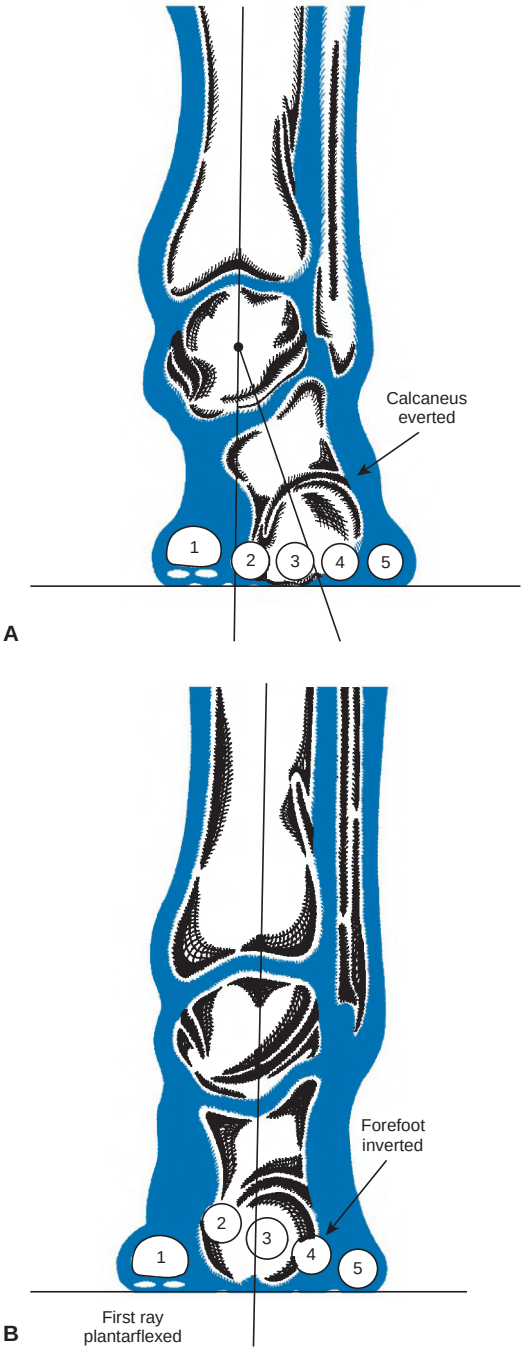


Fig. 8.12 (A) In relaxed calcaneal stance, compensation for a forefoot varus deformity is normally subtalar joint pronation, resulting in an everted calcaneus. (B) In an uncompensated forefoot varus, the subtalar joint is unable to compensate. Instead, the first ray plantarflexes to achieve weight bearing medially on the foot. (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.)

The First Ray

Assessment of first ray position is also carried out in the STN position. Ideally, the first ray lies within the common transverse plane of the lesser metatarsal heads. To examine the mobility of the first ray, the examiner holds the first metatarsal head between the thumb and index finger and performs a dorsal and plantar glide while stabilizing the lesser metatarsal heads with the other hand. Normally, first ray movement is at least one thumb width above and below the plane of the other metatarsal heads.[8]

As the stance phase is completed, activity of the peroneus longus creates a pronatory twist of the forefoot, stabilizing the medial column of the foot on the ground, locking the MTJ about its longitudinal axis, and converting the foot to a rigid lever for propulsion. Adequate plantarflexion of the first ray must be present for conversion from flexible forefoot to a rigid lever. Three factors determine how much first ray plantarflexion must occur: the amount of inversion of the foot at propulsion, the width of the foot, and the length of the second metatarsal.[8] The more the foot inverts during propulsion, the further the first ray must plantarflex to make ground contact. Elevation of the medial forefoot is related to foot width; wide feet require more first ray plantarflexion. An excessively long second metatarsal also increases the distance that the first ray must plantarflex to make ground contact.

In some instances, the first ray is inappropriately dorsiflexed above the plane of the other metatarsals, resulting

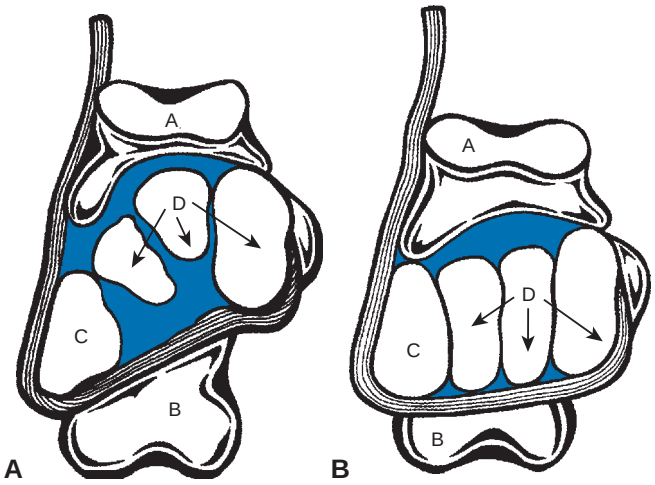


Fig. 8.13 (A) Cuboid pulley mechanism in a normal foot. (B) In an abnormally pronated foot, the mechanical advantage of the peroneals is impaired. *A,* Talus; *B,* calcaneus; *C,* cuboid; *D,* the cuneiforms. (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.)

in restriction of plantarflexion and impeding normal propulsion. The first ray may also be plantarflexed below the plane of the other metatarsals. In uncompensated rearfoot varus, for example, the eversion motion of the calcaneus is insufficient, the medial condyle fails to make contact with the ground, and excessive weight bearing is present on the lateral border of the foot. The peroneus longus contracts to pull the first metatarsal head toward the ground in an attempt to load the medial side of the foot. This action is possible because of the cuboid pulley system (Fig. 8.13).[8] When the STJ remains abnormally pronated in late stance phase, orientation of the cuboid tunnel is altered and the mechanical advantage of the peroneus longus is lost. The MTJ cannot lock, and the foot is unstable throughout propulsion.

The presence of a rigid plantarflexed first ray sometimes results in a functional forefoot valgus (Fig. 8.14). The compensatory mechanism for this condition is similar to that for rigid forefoot valgus: STJ supination or calcaneal inversion on weight bearing to lower the lateral aspect of the foot to the ground.

The Hallux

In normal gait, dorsiflexion of the hallux occurs during the late propulsive phase as the body moves forward over the foot. Sagittal plane motion of the hallux is assessed as passive ROM. The stationary arm of the goniometer is positioned along the medial first metatarsal and the mobile arm along the medial proximal phalanx of the hallux. The axis is medial to the first MTP joint.[54] Sufficient force is applied to bring the hallux to its end ROM. Normal range of hallux dorsiflexion is between 70 and 90 degrees.[8,59]

In hallux limitus deformity, pathomechanical functioning of the first MTP joint prevents the hallux from moving through its full range of dorsiflexion during propulsion. Repetitive trauma to the first MTP joint can lead to ankylosis, or hallux rigidus. Functional hallux limitus is a condition in which full first MTP ROM is present when non–weight-bearing, but a functional restriction of hallux dorsiflexion occurs during gait. Functional hallux limitus disrupts the normal windlass mechanism previously described.[67,68]

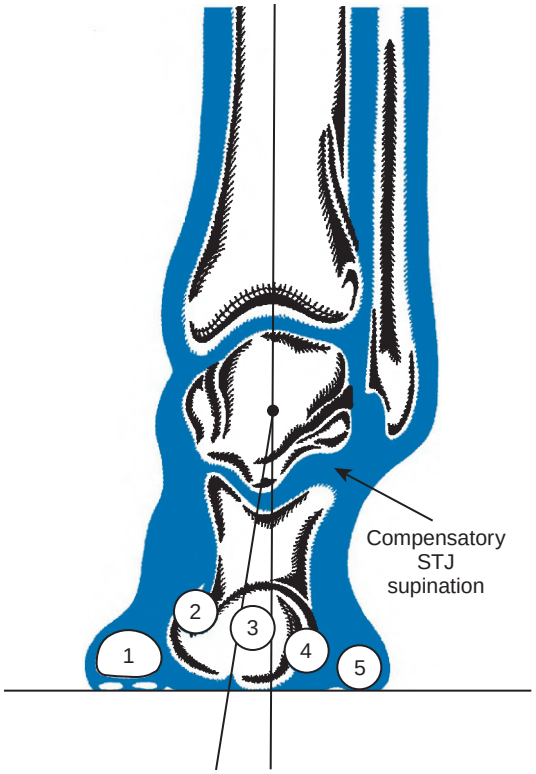


Fig. 8.14 Plantarflexed first ray deformity in relaxed calcaneal stance. Compensation occurs at the subtalar joint (STJ), with lateral gapping and medial compression. (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.)

Limitation of hallux dorsiflexion prohibits the normal progression of the foot and interferes with propulsion of the body over the hallux. Several gait compensations can overcome this limitation.[67,68] An abducted or toe-out gait pattern shifts propulsion to the medial border of the hallux. A pinched callus then develops from friction between the hallux and shoe during propulsion. Alternatively, the IP joint of the hallux may hyperextend, causing a callus in the sulcus of the IP joint.

Hallux abductovalgus (HAV) is a progressive, acquired deformity of the first MTP joint that eventually results in a valgus subluxation of the hallux.[8,50] This deformity is caused by abnormal STJ pronation with hypermobility of the first ray.[4] A common misconception is that HAV is hereditary. Although the congenital osseous abnormalities that lead to aberrant STJ pronation are hereditary, HAV occurs to compensate for these other deformities. Another misconception is that HAV is caused by restrictive footwear. Although inappropriate or restrictive footwear can accentuate or speed the progression of HAV deformity when present, the deformity is frequently observed in populations that do not typically wear shoes.[8,50]

ADDITIONAL OBSERVATIONS

Several other important observations are made as the non–weight-bearing examination is completed. Non–weight-bearing arch height is observed for later comparison to weight-bearing arch height as a composite estimate of foot pronation. Toes are inspected for positional deformities such as hammertoe, claw toe, crossover deformity, and the presence

of bunions or bunionettes. The plantar foot is checked for callus, plantar warts, or other signs of excessive pressure. The shoes are inspected for excessive or uneven wear patterns.

Static Weight-Bearing Closed Kinetic Chain Examination

The open chain kinetic motion evaluated in the non–weight-bearing examination is dramatically different from the functional sequence of events in the closed kinetic chain of standing and walking. Open kinetic chain pronation (calcaneal dorsiflexion, eversion, and abduction) and supination (calcaneal plantarflex, inversion, and adduction) are triplanar motions around the STJ.[8,16,32] During closed kinetic chain pronation, internal rotation of the leg is coupled with talar adduction and calcaneal plantarflexion and eversion. Closed kinetic chain supination couples external rotation of the leg with talar abduction and calcaneal dorsiflexion and inversion. In the open kinetic chain, movement is initiated in the distal segment (the foot). In the closed kinetic chain, motion is initiated proximally (at the tibia and talus). A thorough closed kinetic chain examination includes static postural observations, dynamic motion testing, and gait assessment.

Compensatory mechanisms that result from intrinsic deformities are assessed as the foot is subjected to GRFs during the static weight-bearing examination. This provides valuable insight regarding how the body compensates for the intrinsic foot deformities or impairments of normal foot joint function identified in the non–weight-bearing examination. Improper foot functioning can lead to a complex series of compensations that influence the mobility patterns of the foot and lower leg, as well as the knee, hip, pelvis, and spine.

The patient stands in a relaxed, weight-bearing posture (RCS). The examiner observes the patient's preferred stance, noting postural alignment and foot placement angle. The patient then adjusts the stance position, if necessary, to assume equal weight-bearing double-limb support, with feet 5 to 10 cm apart and oriented in neutral toe-in and toe-out foot placement angle. This adjusted posture, with neutral foot placement angle, offers a better frame of reference for assessing planar alignment and enhances the reliability and consistency of the measurement.[46] Postural alignment or body symmetry of the patient is evaluated in the frontal, sagittal, and transverse planes.

FRONTAL PLANE

Static weight-bearing examination in the frontal plane focuses on the angular relation of the calcaneus and the tibia and fibula with respect to the floor and the relation between the pelvis and the lower leg.

Calcaneal Alignment to the Floor

With the patient in double-limb stance posture, a line bisecting the posterior surface of the calcaneus is visualized and the angular relation between the line and the floor is taken. Because the infracalcaneal fat pad often migrates (related to prolonged weight bearing), care must be taken to avoid errors in visual assessment (Fig. 8.15). Palpation of the osseous medial, lateral, and inferior borders of the calcaneus helps to factor out fat pad migration and to improve measurement accuracy. Calcaneal alignment also can be quantified with a protractor to measure the degree of calcaneal tilt relative to vertical.[69]

The key question to answer is whether the calcaneus is inverted, vertical, or everted relative to the floor during stance; the actual angular degree is not as important as the relative orientation of the calcaneus. This component of the examination assesses the ability of the STJ to provide enough pronation to compensate for its neutral position. In the normal closed chain STN position, the calcaneus is in 1 to 4 degrees of varus (inversion). The STJ must have an equal amount of compensatory pronation to lower the medial condyle to the ground for a vertical calcaneus. If a

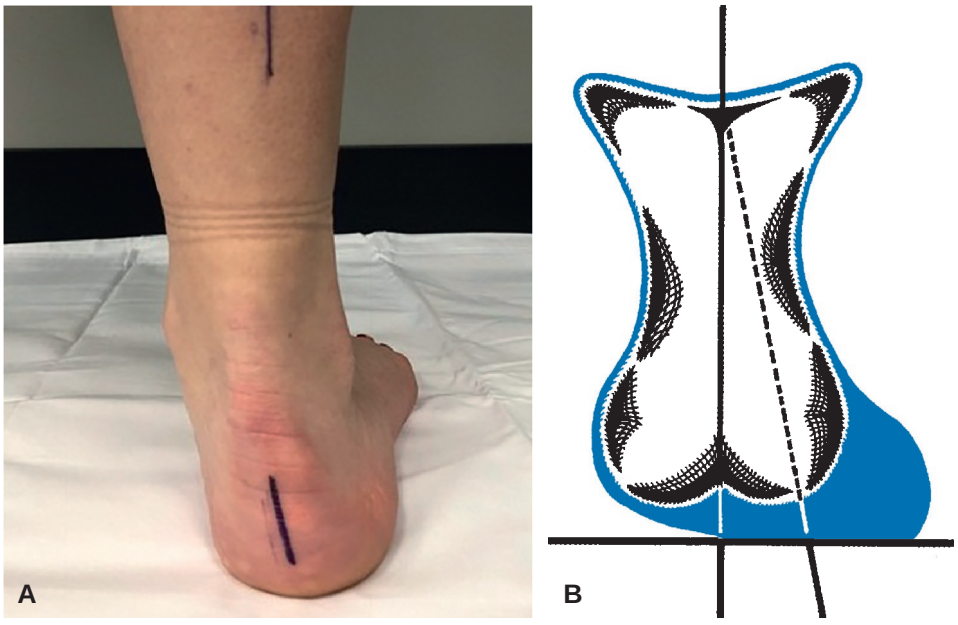


Fig. 8.15 (A) Calcaneal alignment to floor. (B) Lateral migration of the infracalcaneal fat pad can give the illusion of an everted calcaneal to floor alignment. (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.)

patient has uncompensated rearfoot varus of 10 degrees in STN as well as restricted calcaneal motion (-4 degrees) eversion, the STJ would not be able to achieve sufficient pronation or eversion in stance for normal calcaneal alignment. Instead, the calcaneus would be in an inverted alignment relative to the floor. Inverted calcaneal position also occurs when a rigid forefoot valgus or rigid plantarflexed first ray deformity is present. STJ supination is a compensatory mechanism for both deformities.

In contrast, forefoot varus deformity requires excessive compensatory STJ pronation; calcaneal eversion occurs in weight bearing. The position of the calcaneus with respect to the floor provides insight into the type of STJ compensation present and can be correlated with the biomechanical findings of the non–weight-bearing examination. If the STJ is unable to pronate enough to completely compensate for a deformity, additional pronatory motion occurs at the MTJ or by eversion tilting of the talus within the ankle mortise.[8,46,53] The functional rearfoot unit (calcaneus and talus) may assume a valgus (everted) position relative to the floor, even if calcaneal eversion is restricted.

Tibiofibular Alignment

Proximal structural malalignments, such as tibialvarum or valgum, contribute to abnormal foot pronation and overuse injuries. In osseous congenital tibialvarum, the distal third of the tibia is angled medially in the frontal plane, whereas in tibialvalgum, the distal tibia inclines away from the midline.[46]

Tibial alignment can be measured with either a standard goniometer (Fig. 8.16) or a bubble inclinometer; both assess the angular relation between the bisection of the distal third of the lower leg relative to the supporting surface.[46,70] Radiographic measurement of lower leg position is better correlated with clinically assessed tibiofibular position values than with isolated tibial position. Radiographic measurement may be the most accurate method to isolate true tibial varum.[71]

The test position is critical because variation in STJ alignment greatly influences tibiofibular varum measurement values. Tibiofibular varum values are larger in RCS than in the STN position because of the combined effects of osseous malalignment and varus leg alignment associated with compensatory STJ pronation in stance.[70-72] The incidence of tibiofibular varum appears to be high, although no clear normative values have been established.

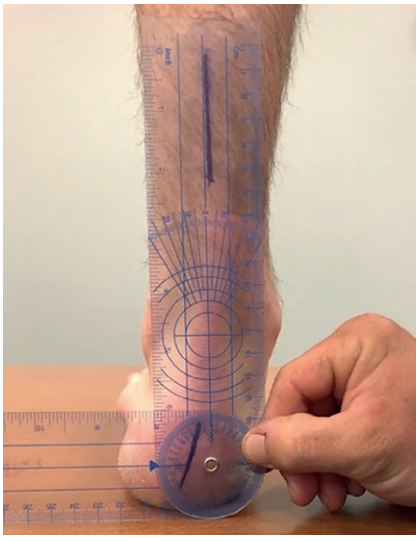


Fig. 8.16 Goniometric assessment of tibiofibular varum. The proximal arm of the goniometer is aligned with the bisection of the distal third of the tibiofibular complex, and the distal arm is level with the floor. The axis of measurement shifts with the degree of varum or valgum deformity and may not always fall directly behind the calcaneus.

The alignment of the distal third of the leg relative to the floor more accurately represents tibiofibular position than tibial position. Values assessed in STN reflect neutral tibiofibular alignment, whereas values assessed in RCS represent compensatory tibiofibular repositioning in response to STJ and MTJ pronation. High tibiofibular varum values measured in STN elevate the medial foot from the supporting surface, requiring excessive compensatory foot pronation during gait. High tibiofibular varum values in RCS suggest excessive foot pronation, although the source of that pronation cannot be isolated.

Alignment of the Pelvis and Lower Leg

The final component of the frontal plane assessment evaluates symmetry of the anterosuperior iliac spines, iliac crests, greater trochanters, gluteal folds, popliteal creases, genu varum or valgum deformities, fibular heads, patellae, and malleolar levels. Asymmetry often indicates sacroiliac joint dysfunction or leg length discrepancy, influencing foot position and function in the closed kinetic chain.

SAGITTAL PLANE

The second component of the weight-bearing examination considers function in the sagittal plane. The examiner looks for evidence of genu recurvatum or excessive knee flexion, navicular drop, talar bulge, and inadequate or excessive height of the longitudinal arch.

Knee Position

Viewing the patient's stance from the side, the examiner observes the verticality of the tibia. In genu recurvatum, the proximal tibia is aligned behind the axis of the TCJ, resulting in hyperextension of the knee and plantarflexion of the TCJ with relative shortening of the limb. Genu recurvatum also occurs as a compensation for equinus deformity at the ankle. When true leg-length discrepancy is present, two types of compensation are possible. If limb length difference is small, genu recurvatum may adequately shorten the longer limb. For larger limb length differences, knee flexion of the longer limb is often used to minimize asymmetry.

Navicular Drop

The position of the navicular is examined by using the navicular drop test, a composite measure of foot pronation focusing on displacement of the navicular tuberosity as a patient moves from closed kinetic chain STN to the RCS position.[73] Excessive navicular displacement is associated with the collapse of the MLA and may be correlated with midfoot pain or other symptoms of excessive foot pronation.[46] Subotnick[74] established an interdependency between MTJ and STJ function based on articulation of the navicular and cuboid with the talus and calcaneus. Brody[73] suggested that the navicular drop test is a valid assessment of STJ function in the closed kinetic chain. Although navicular drop occurs with STJ pronation that stems from intrinsic foot deformity, it can also be the result of muscle insufficiency or ligamentous laxity.[46]

To measure navicular drop, an index card is held perpendicular to the medial foot, the level of the navicular tuberosity is marked in STN position and in RCS, and the distance between the marks is calculated.[42] Normative studies report a mean navicular drop of between 7.3 and 9 mm.[43,75] A navicular drop of more than 10 mm is considered abnormal.[75]

Talar Bulge and Arch Height

When excessive STJ pronation is present in stance, the talus moves into adduction and plantarflexion. Displacement of the talar head causes an observable medial bulge in the region of the talonavicular joint.[76] The height of the MLA normally decreases moderately in weight bearing as a result of normal STJ pronation. Pes planus deformity (flatfootedness) is characterized by excessive collapse of the MLA. In hereditary rigid flatfoot, the MLA is low or absent in non–weight-bearing and weight-bearing positions. In flexible flatfoot, the height of the MLA is normal in non–weight bearing but drops excessively in weight bearing because of abnormal STJ pronation. In normal foot alignment, the medial malleolus, navicular tuberosity, and first metatarsal head fall along the Feiss line.[76] In a severely pronated foot, the navicular tuberosity lies below the Feiss line. In extreme cases the tuberosity may even rest on the floor.[76,77]

TRANSVERSE PLANE

The final component of the static weight-bearing examination considers foot function in the transverse plane. The examiner looks for signs of excessive pronation or forefoot adduction and torsional deformities of the lower extremities.

Toe Sign

A positive toe sign indicates excessive pronation or abduction of the foot in the transverse plane (Fig. 8.17). The sign is determined by the number of toes that can be seen in a posterior view when the patient is standing in RCS with a neutral foot placement angle.[68] Normally no more than 1.5 toes are visible beyond the lateral border of the foot. If more toes can be seen, abnormal pronation may be present, causing excessive transverse plane motion or abduction of the foot. A false-positive toe sign can occur in the presence of a relative toe-out foot placement angle associated with lateral rotational deformities (e.g., femoral retroversion) or muscle imbalances that limit internal rotation of the hip (e.g., tight piriformis). Ensuring that the patient's patellae are oriented in the frontal plane before assessing toe sign reduces the risk of false-positive findings.

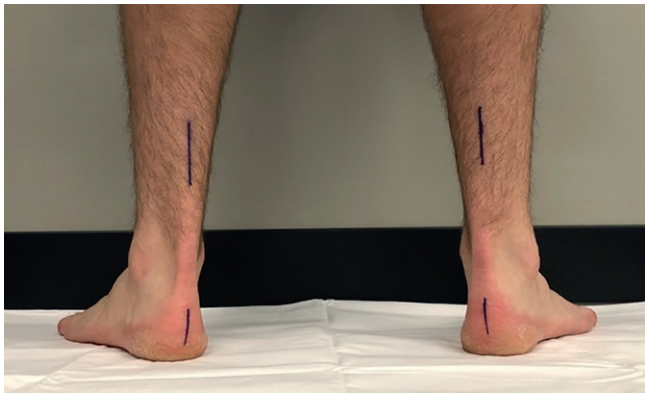


Fig. 8.17 Toe sign, demonstrating excessive transverse plane motion as evidenced by the abducted position of the forefoot.

Torsional Deformities

Transverse plane abnormalities of the femur and tibia also adversely affect normal foot functioning. The femoral shaft normally has 12 degrees of medial rotation relative to the femoral head and neck (Fig. 8.18). In femoral anteversion more than 12 degrees of rotation are present, whereas in retroversion, fewer than the expected 12 degrees of medial rotation are present.[76] In normal transverse plane tibial alignment, the fibular malleolus is situated posterior to the tibial malleolus, for 20 to 30 degrees of lateral rotation.[76] Internal tibial torsion or femoral anteversion increase medial rotational forces, leading to abnormal foot pronation. Excessive external tibial rotation or femoral retroversion increases lateral rotational forces, leading to abnormal foot supination.

To assess femoral torsion, the patient lies in the prone position with the knee in 90 degrees of flexion.[46] The examiner palpates the greater trochanter as the lower limb is passively moved laterally (representing hip internal rotation) and medially (representing hip external rotation). Femoral torsion is measured at the point where the greater trochanter is most prominent (Fig. 8.19). When there is "normal" anteversion of 12 degrees, tibial position will indicate slight internal rotation of the hip. A vertical tibia indicates femoral retroversion.

Tibial torsion is assessed with the patient in the supine position, with 90 degrees of ankle dorsiflexion and the leg placed neutrally in the frontal plane (Fig. 8.20). The examiner holds the stationary arm of the goniometer parallel to the table surface while the mobile arm is aligned with the TCJ axis as it passes through the medial and lateral malleoli. This angular displacement represents tibial torsion. Normally, 20 degrees of external tibial torsion are present.

Dynamic Gait Assessment

The final component of the clinical evaluation is the observation of foot function during walking. During the dynamic gait assessment, extrinsic factors that affect foot function (e.g., muscle imbalances or weaknesses, proximal structural deformities, kinesthetic or proprioceptive losses) are observed. Videotaping the individual while he or she is walking on a runway or treadmill may enhance the accuracy of the assessment. The function of the rearfoot, midfoot, and forefoot is examined at each of the subphases of the gait cycle, with special attention to compensatory gait mechanisms.

Functional Foot Orthoses

Although 4 to 6 degrees of triplanar STJ pronation are necessary to provide adequate shock absorption and accommodation to uneven ground terrain, persistent or recurrent abnormal pronation disrupts normal temporal sequencing of the gait cycle. This disruption creates an unstable osseous and arthrokinematic situation that contributes to pathological musculoskeletal conditions.[8,49]

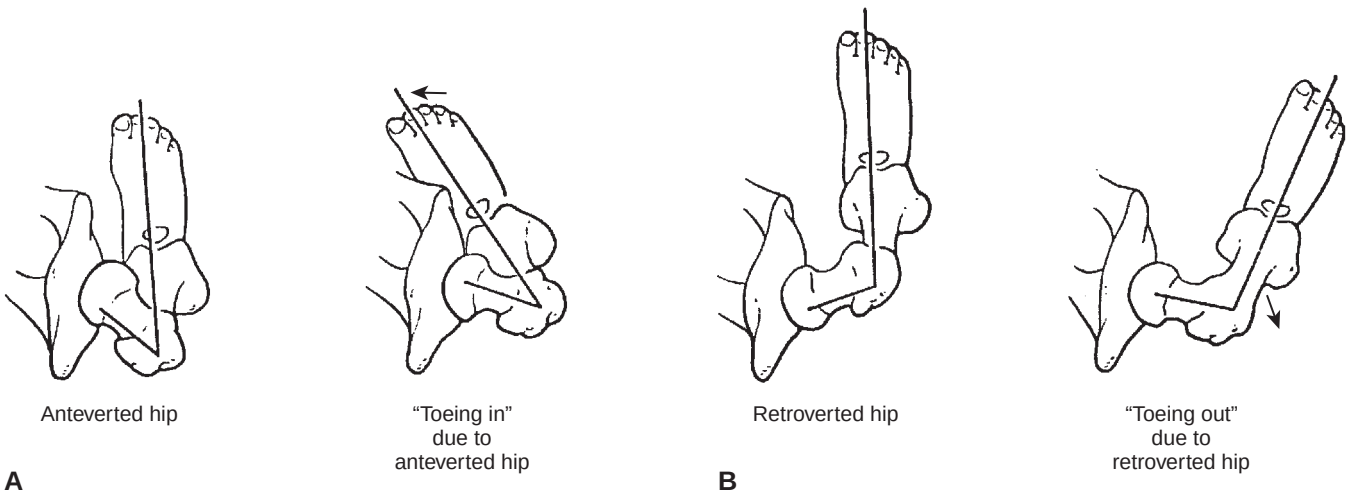


Fig. 8.18 (A) With excessive femoral anteversion, the limb appears to be internally rotated when the head of the femur is well seated in the acetabulum. (B) With femoral retroversion, the limb appears to be externally rotated when the femur is well seated in the acetabulum. (From Magee DJ. *Orthopedic Physical Assessment*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997: 475.)

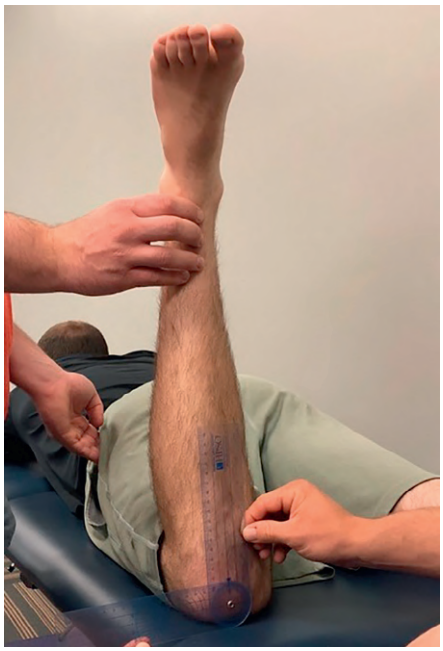


Fig. 8.19 Assessment of femoral torsion in prone position with a standard goniometer. The examiner palpates the greater trochanter and rotates the lower leg. Femoral torsion is measured at the point of greatest prominence of the greater trochanter.

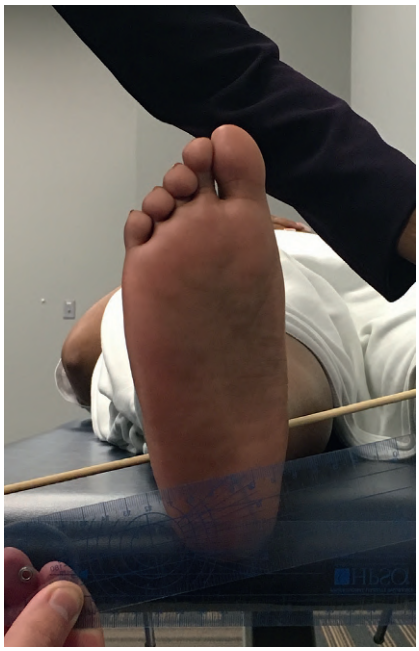


Fig. 8.20 Tibial torsion is measured as the angle between horizontal and the plane of the axis of the talocrural joint.

Compensatory motion occurs in the primary plane of a given deformity. In frontal plane deformities (e.g., rearfoot varus or forefoot varus), the typical compensatory motion is eversion at the STJ. In transverse plane deformities (e.g., torsional deformities of the hip, femur, or tibia), the typical compensatory motion is adduction at the STJ. In sagittal plane deformities (e.g., ankle equinus), the typical compensatory motion is dorsiflexion at the STJ. Root's model suggests that single-plane compensatory motion is beneficial, allowing adequate accommodation for a deformity.[4] However, because the STJ is a triplanar structure, movement in one plane leads to movement in the others as well. The associated motion of the other planes has the potential to become dysfunctional and destructive.[8]

A functional foot orthosis is an orthopedic device designed to promote structural integrity of the joints of the foot and lower limb by resisting the GRFs that cause abnormal skeletal motion during the stance phase of gait.[49] A functional foot orthosis attempts to control abnormal foot functioning during stance by controlling excessive STJ and MTJ motion, decelerating pronation, and allowing the STJ to function closer to its neutral position at MSt.[78-81] In contrast, an accommodative foot orthosis is used to distribute pressures over the plantar surface for individuals with fixed deformity or vulnerable neuropathic feet.

CRITERIA FOR ABNORMAL PRONATION

Five criteria are used to determine whether pronation is abnormal. Pronation is considered an abnormal mechanical condition when the following conditions are present:

1. STJ pronation is more than the normal 4 to 6 degrees.[8,39,80]
2. The foot pronates at the wrong time, disrupting the normal sequencing of events during closed kinetic chain motion.
3. Pronation is recurrent, with each step contributing to repetitive microtrauma to musculoskeletal structures.
4. Pronation happens at a location other than the STJ (e.g., when MTJ pronation compensates for limited STJ motion).
5. Unnecessary destructive compensatory motion occurs in the other planes of motion of the STJ.[8]

CAUSES OF ABNORMAL FOOT MECHANICS

Three pathological situations contribute to abnormal foot mechanics: structural malalignment, muscle weakness or imbalance, and loss of structural integrity.

Structural Malalignment

Structural malalignment can be intrinsic or extrinsic to the foot or caused by abnormal mechanical forces.[8] Rearfoot and forefoot varus and valgus, ankle equinus, and deformities of the rays are examples of intrinsic deformities. Congenital and developmental conditions, such as tibial varum or valgum, torsional deformities of the tibia or femur, and other conditions that occur above the foot and ankle are extrinsic deformities. The types of abnormal mechanical forces that might contribute to pathomechanical foot function include obesity, leg length discrepancies, and genu valgum or varum. Orthotic management for structural malalignment is preventive; control of aberrant or excessive STJ and MTJ motion forestalls the sequence of mechanical events associated with abnormal pronation or supination, minimizing the consequences of painful foot conditions.

Muscle Weakness or Imbalance

A variety of upper and lower motor neuron diseases result in muscular weakness, abnormal muscle tone, or paralysis of the foot, with resultant instability of foot structure and reduced mechanical efficiency during gait.[47] In Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease (hereditary sensory motor neuropathy), for example, weakness of intrinsic, peroneal, and anterior tibial muscles contributes to development of a "cavus" foot, with claw toes, metatarsus adductus, or other deformities of the rays.[47] When muscle weakness or imbalance is present, the examiner must identify its origin and extent, the specific soft tissue structures involved, the resultant mechanical foot deformities, and the potential to reduce them. An effective foot orthosis for a patient with muscular weakness deters the pathomechanical sequelae that result from such induced structural foot deformities.

Compromised Joint Integrity

Compromised joint integrity and mechanical instability also can be caused by pathological musculoskeletal conditions of the foot or ankle, including arthritis, acute trauma, or chronic repetitive injury. For example, in rheumatoid arthritis, joint deformity results from synovitis and pannus formation. Autodestruction of connective tissue weakens tendons, contributes to muscle spasm and shortening, and erodes cartilaginous surfaces. Eventually, joint dislocations occur.[82]

The loss of protective sensation associated with peripheral neuropathy also contributes to compromised joint integrity. Patients with diabetes mellitus, chronic alcoholism, or Hansen disease (leprosy) are particularly vulnerable. The inability to perceive microtrauma because of sensory compromise, weakness of intrinsic muscles of the foot, compromised autonomic control of the distal blood flow, and the poor nutritional and metabolic state of soft tissues combine to increase the risk of plantar foot ulceration. If neuropathic osteoarthropathy (Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease) occurs, significant bone and joint destruction, collapse of the midfoot, and a fixed rocker bottom deformity can result.[83] Plantar ulceration at the apex of the collapsed cuneiforms or cuboid is common.[84] Whenever mechanical instability is present, normal joint orientation is altered, and gait compensation shifts weight-bearing forces. A foot orthosis can be used to reduce pain, reduce weight-bearing stresses, control abnormal or excessive joint motion, or compensate for restricted motion.

Goals of Orthotic Intervention

A functional foot orthosis attempts to improve foot mechanics during walking, regardless of the cause of foot dysfunction, by the following actions:

- Controlling velocity of pronation
- Redistributing plantar pressures
- Supporting abnormal structural forefoot positions that lead to abnormal rearfoot function in stance
- Supporting abnormal rearfoot deformities that lead to excessive STJ pronation
- Resisting extrinsic forces of the leg that lead to aberrant pronation and supination of the foot
- Improving calcaneal positioning at IC
- Repositioning the STJ in the neutral position just before heel rise
- Fully pronating the MTJ, when the STJ is in the neutral position, to lock and stabilize the foot, converting it into a rigid lever for propulsion
- Allowing normal plantarflexion of the first ray and stabilizing the forefoot in response to the retrograde GRFs sustained during propulsion
- Providing a normal degree of shock absorption during LR

A functional foot orthosis does not support the MLA of the foot; STJ pronation is controlled by the pressure of the rearfoot post on the calcaneus at the sustentaculumt ali. The ultimate goal is to stop, reduce, or slow abnormal compensatory motion of the joints of the foot as the foot and leg interact with the GRFs.

Measurement and Fabrication

The information gathered in the non–weight-bearing and static weight-bearing examinations and in gait analysis provides direction for orthotic prescription. A simple plaster cast is used to make an accurate negative impression of the patient's foot in the STN position. A positive model based on this impression is then prepared. Thermoplastic materials are heat molded over the model to form an orthotic shell. Accommodative padding, soft tissue supplements, and covering materials are added to address the patient's functional foot problem. The orthosis is fitted to the patient, and its effect on foot function during gait is evaluated. An early wearing schedule is devised, and an appointment for a recheck visit is scheduled.

NEGATIVE IMPRESSION

If a foot orthosis is to control abnormal pronation and supination effectively and to minimize painful symptoms in gait, the negative foot impression must precisely duplicate the existing foot structure, including any intrinsic deformities. The goal of the foot impression is to capture the patient's STN position during the MSt phase of the gait cycle.

Comparison of Negative Casting Techniques Used for Fabrication of Foot Orthotics

Multiple strategies can be used to take negative impressions, including suspension techniques, modified suspension techniques, direct pressure techniques, foam impression systems, digital casting, and in-shoe vacuum casts. The negative impression techniques may be applied with the patient in semi–weight-bearing, weight-bearing, or non–weight-bearing positions. Foot measurements are greatly influenced by the technique used to obtain the impression.[85]

The foam box technique (Fig. 8.21) captures a negative impression of the foot with the patient in semi–weight-bearing. Typically, the patient is seated on a firm surface and the practitioner directs the foot to the foam box. After the foot makes contact with the foam and the desired position is established, the practitioner applies a downward pressure along the tibial axis moving the heel into the foam followed by the forefoot. The foot is then removed from the box leaving a negative impression in the foam. The foam box technique requires less technical skills and is more time efficient than plaster negative casting. It might be used when the goal is to fabricate an accommodative (soft) foot orthosis.[86,87]

Fig. 8.21 Negative cast impression using the foam box technique. (Courtesy Amfit, Inc., Vancouver, WA.)

The digital casting technique produces a digital foot impression and allows for a variety of positions depending on the scanning device, which might include an optic laser, digitizer, pressure mat system, or digital photography.[88,89] Computerized images of the foot can be viewed by the practitioner from multiple angles, and some software allows the practitioner to modify the images (Fig. 8.22). The CAD/CAM system uses a milling apparatus to create the actual orthosis.

Plaster casting has traditionally been the gold standard for obtaining negative cast impressions. Foot alignment during plaster casting is a critical factor for the effectiveness and quality of the foot orthoses. It is common practice to align the STJ in a "neutral" position.[90] Because maintenance of the STN position and correct loading of the forefoot are difficult to control in weight-bearing impression techniques, suspension and direct pressure non–weight-bearing techniques appear to be the most reliable methods for making accurate negative impressions. The direct pressure technique, one of the easiest procedures to learn, captures the STN position by loading the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads to mimic GRFs during MSt (Fig. 8.23). Alternative casting procedures are also available.[91,92]

Direct Pressure Impression Technique

The patient is placed in the prone position, in the figure-of-four position used for goniometric measurement. Two double-layer thickness wraps of 5-inch plaster bandage are used to make the negative cast. The first wrap is cut to surround the foot from just distal to the fifth metatarsal head, around the posterior heel, to just beyond the first metatarsal head. The second wrap is cut so that, when draped over the plantar surface of the forefoot, it overlaps the first wrap at the metatarsals.

The first wrap is thoroughly moistened with tepid water and any wrinkles in the mesh are smoothed. The top edge of the plaster splint is folded 0.5 inch, providing reinforcement to prevent distortion when the cast is later removed. The first wrap is draped over the heel, just below the malleoli, and along the borders of the foot to just beyond the first and fifth metatarsal heads. Because total contact with the sole of the foot is essential, the plaster is carefully smoothed along the sides of the foot, across its plantar surface, and around the curves of the malleoli. The second wrap is moistened and draped around the forefoot, overlapping the distal edges of the first layer. Any excess bandage is folded into the sulcus of the toes. This layer should also have a wrinkle-free total contact with the foot and toes.

Once both wraps are in place, the foot is positioned in the STN position by maintaining appropriate forefoot loading pressure at the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads. The plaster splint is sufficiently hardened when an audible click is produced when it is tapped. The negative cast is then

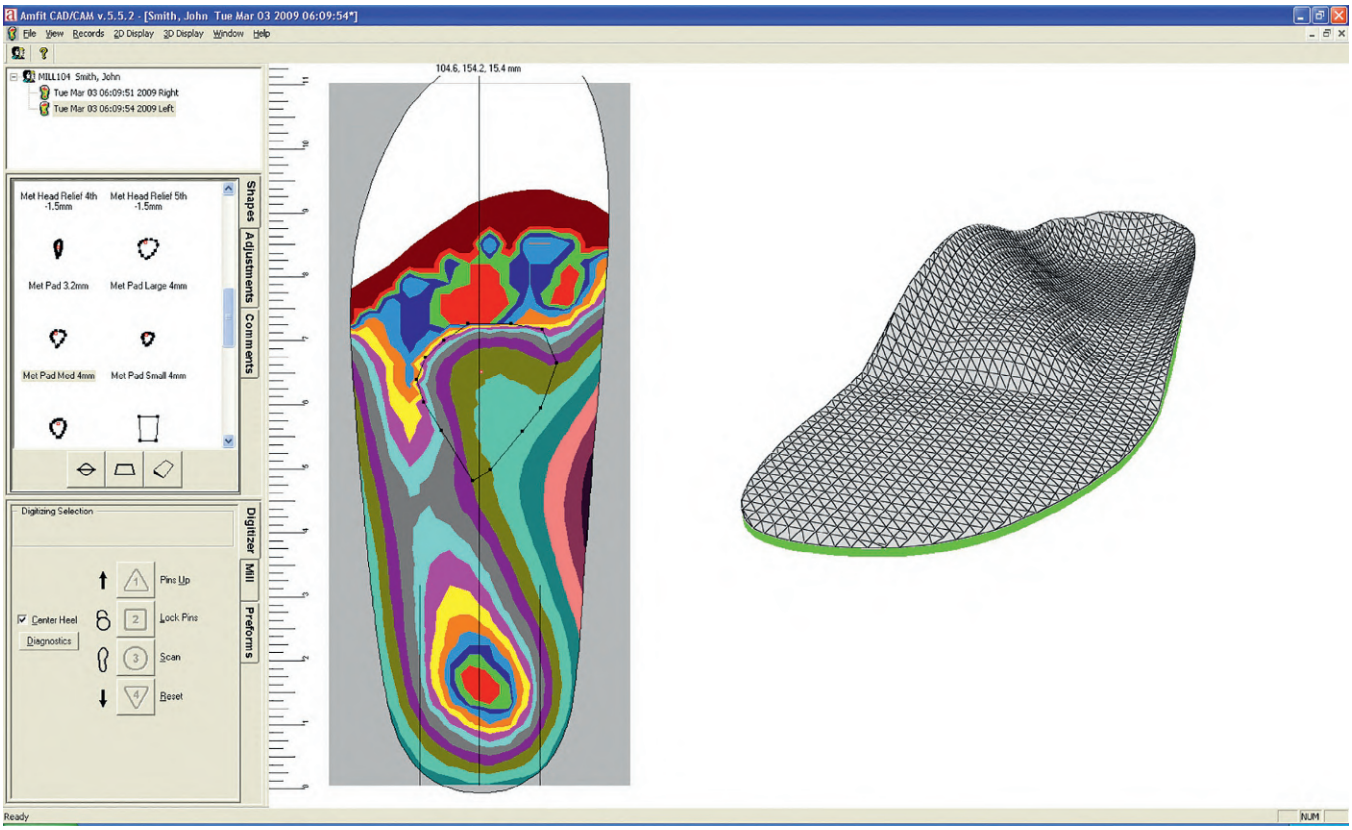


Fig. 8.22 Example of a negative cast impression using the digital casting technique. (Courtesy Amfit, Inc., Vancouver, WA.)

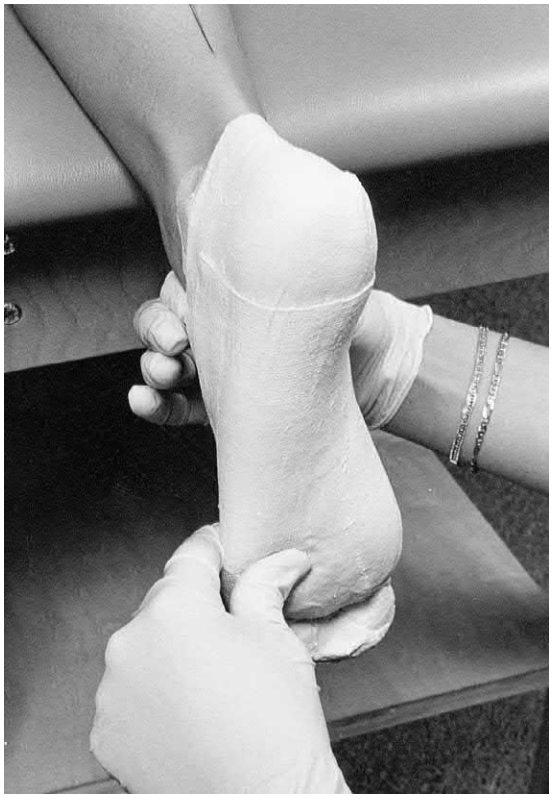


Fig. 8.23 Negative cast impression by the direct pressure technique. The foot is maintained in subtalar neutral position while the plaster hardens.

carefully removed. The skin is gently pulled around the reinforced top edge to loosen contact from the cast. A downward force over the superior border of the heel cup is exerted to free the heel from the cast. A gentle forward force is then provided to free the forefoot and to remove the cast from the foot.

Errors in Negative Casting

Accuracy in the negative impression is the key to an effective orthotic. Although the casting procedure is simple, three types of errors during the process can compromise the efficacy of orthotic design.

First, the foot may be inadvertently supinated at the longitudinal MTJ axis as a result of contraction of the anterior tibialis while the patient "helps" hold the foot still. Alternatively, the loading force may be applied too far medially at the forefoot, creating a false forefoot varus. An orthosis manufactured from such a cast can cause excessive pressure plantar to the distal aspect of the first metatarsal shaft. It can also lead to lateral ankle instability or the development of a functional hallux limitus or HAV deformities.[93]

The second common casting error occurs when the foot is excessively supinated at the oblique MTJ axis. Improper loading at the fourth and fifth metatarsal heads results in insufficient dorsiflexion of the forefoot. When this happens, transverse skin folds can be seen inside the negative cast at the MTJ. An orthosis manufactured from this cast creates an excessive sagittal plane angulation plantar to the calcaneocuboid joint (lateral longitudinal arch), with pain and irritation on weight bearing.[93]

The third error occurs when the STJ is excessively pronated during casting, placing the foot in a false forefoot valgus position. An orthosis manufactured from this cast does not capture the STN position and is ineffective in controlling the symptoms of abnormal pronation.[93]

POSITIVE CAST MODIFICATIONS

Once a satisfactory negative impression of the patient's foot has been obtained, a positive cast is made and then modified. The hardened negative impression is filled with liquid plaster and allowed to dry. The negative cast is peeled away, leaving a positive mold of the foot (Fig. 8.24). Modifications to the positive cast ensure an effective correction in foot alignment and function by redirecting forces through the foot. Those made to enhance comfort include plaster additions to relieve pressure-sensitive regions of the forefoot and MLA. Because the negative cast is taken in a non–weight-bearing position, it is also modified to allow for the elongation of the foot and expansion of the soft tissues in weight bearing. The cast is also modified to allow for normal plantarflexion of the first metatarsal during propulsion.[50,94] Intrinsic or extrinsic posts can be added for further correction of forefoot or rearfoot deformities.

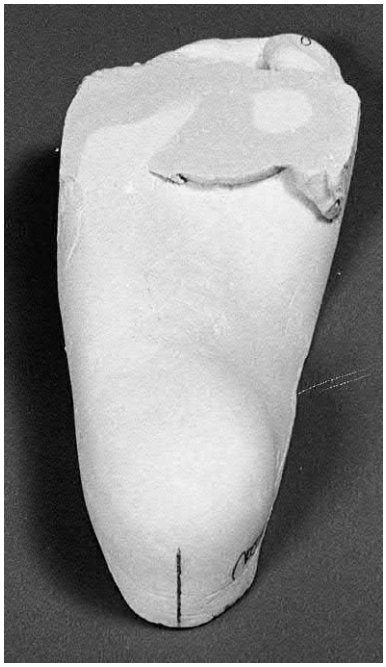


Fig. 8.24 The modification process of forefront position on a positive cast.

Forefoot Posting

Two techniques can be used to provide orthotic correction for forefoot deformity. Both are based on modification of the positive cast impression. The first, a traditional Root functional orthosis, uses an intrinsic correction. A plaster platform is applied to the positive cast at the level of the MTP joints to balance the abnormal forefoot to rearfoot relation (Fig. 8.25). A lateral platform corrects forefoot valgus, and a medial platform corrects forefoot varus.[50] When the shell is pressed over the modified positive mold, it creates a convexity at the distal anterior border of the orthosis. This posting technique achieves correction by effectively realigning the skeletal structure of the foot.[94] The intrinsic posting technique is often selected when shoe volume is limited, as in some women's footwear.

A second forefoot posting technique involves a variation of Root's original design, referred to as a standard biomechanical orthosis. In this technique, a neutral platform is formed on the positive mold, but the existing valgus or varus position of the forefoot is maintained. An extrinsic forefoot post or wedge is attached to the bottom of the orthotic shell to support the forefoot in its position of deformity. Unwanted compensatory motion is prevented by stabilizing the distal border of the orthosis (Fig. 8.26). Although an orthosis with an extrinsic correction takes up more space inside the shoe than an intrinsically corrected orthosis, it can be modified more easily if the individual has difficulty tolerating the original posting prescription.

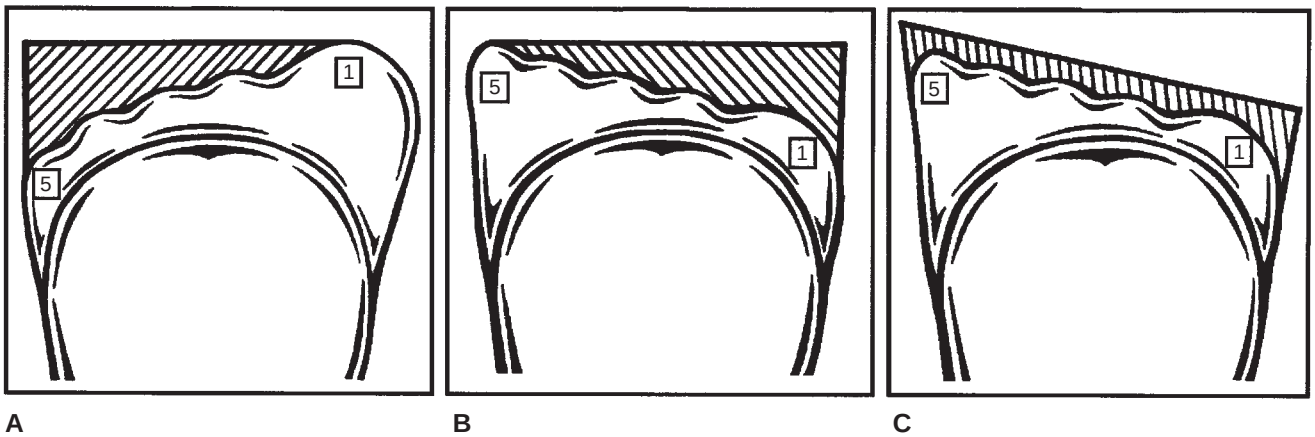


Fig. 8.25 Cross section at the level of the metatarsophalangeal joints, with first and fifth metatarsals labeled, demonstrating intrinsic modifications to the positive mold. (A) A lateral platform corrects forefoot valgus. (B) A medial platform corrects forefoot varus. (C) A neutral balancing platform maintains forefoot alignment and serves as a base for extrinsic posts. (Courtesy Stride, Inc., Middlebury, CT.)

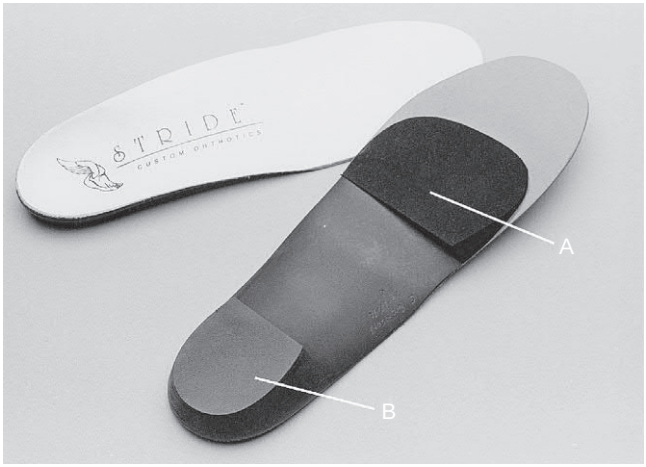


Fig. 8.26 Standard biomechanical orthosis with an extrinsic forefoot post *(A)* and an extrinsic rearfoot post *(B)*.

Rearfoot Posting

As the foot makes contact with the ground and moves through stance during gait, GRFs act on the joints of the foot. An orthosis acts as an interface between the ground and the foot, creating its own orthosis reactive force. In a foot that pronates excessively, the foot orthosis is designed to decrease STJ pronation during weight bearing by creating a supination moment acting medial to the STJ axis.[6] This can be accomplished by adding an extrinsic rearfoot post or wedge to the inferior surface of the heel cup or by modifying the plaster mold to incorporate an intrinsic rearfoot post to the heel cup of the orthosis. A rearfoot post effectively reduces rearfoot pronation (eversion) during the contact phase of gait as well as the angular velocity of eversion.[6,95,96]

Extrinsic rearfoot posts are attached to the bottom of the orthosis shell beneath the heel (see Fig. 8.26B). A medial wedge or rearfoot post increases orthosis reactive forces at the sustentaculum tali (medial to the STJ axis) to reduce abnormal STJ pronation. It also promotes stability of the heel by increasing the contact surface of the orthosis beneath the heel.[94,95] An intrinsic rearfoot post can be made with a medial heel skive technique. A plaster modification is performed on the medial aspect of the heel of the positive mold to increase the amount of varus (medial) sloping within the heel cup of the orthosis in an effort to control pronation.[6] An intrinsic rearfoot post reduces overall bulk of the orthosis for optimal fit within a shoe. A combination of intrinsic and extrinsic rearfoot posting permits more correction than possible with either method independently.

THE ORTHOTIC SHELL

To be effective, a functional orthosis must be made on the basis of a neutral position model of the patient's foot. Prefabricated foot supports do not offer adequate control of foot motion or resistance to GRFs and cannot fulfill all criteria of functional foot orthoses. A custom orthosis, made of rigid or semirigid materials, can offer maximal resistance to weight-bearing forces and optimal realignment of foot structure. Accommodative orthoses, made of softer materials, support the arches of the foot and provide relief to pressure-sensitive areas while offering minimal control of STJ motion.[97,98] A semifunctional orthosis is a hybrid of functional and accommodative orthoses that combines the motion effectiveness of a semirigid shell with soft posting and accommodative material to cushion the foot.

Many studies have evaluated the effectiveness of the different types of orthotic materials in controlling rearfoot mechanics and clinical symptoms.[97-101] Some suggest that orthotic materials be classified by degree of rigidity (soft, semirigid, rigid), but standards for the classification of materials are not well established.[5]

A rigid orthosis achieves maximal motion control and biomechanical correction of a foot deformity; it is lightweight, and takes up the least space within the shoe. Some clinicians are concerned that orthoses made of rigid materials are uncomfortable to the wearer. However, Anthony[50] suggested that those "who propose rigid devices to be patient intolerant are generally less acquainted with the theory of podiatric biomechanics and the correct diagnostics and prescription formularies that are critical for the provision of a truly functional foot orthosis."

Semirigid materials, such as polypropylene and TL-2100 (Performance Materials Corp., Camarillo, CA), are attractive alternatives to rigid orthotic shells. Polypropylene is a flexible olefin polymer that resists breakage. TL-2100 is a thermoplastic composite of resin and fiber that is harder and more rigid than polypropylene.[5]

Soft orthoses are often made of closed-cell foams manufactured from heat-expanded polyethylene. Examples of such foams include Aliplast and Nickleplast (Alimed, Inc., Dedham, MA) and Plastazote (Bakelite Xylonite Ltd, Croydon, UK), cross-linked polyethylene expanded foams available in many densities. Pelite (Fillauer, Inc., Chattanooga, TN) is a cross-linked, closed-cell foam that can be heat molded in the fabrication of semiflexible foot orthoses. Various rubberized or thermoplastic cork materials are also used.[1] Lightweight and available in different densities, these materials are effective in orthotics for which accommodation and shock absorption are desirable. However, these same features limit the durability and the useful life of the orthosis because these materials are prone to rapid and permanent shape deformation.[5]

For some individuals, extrinsic accommodative modifications are necessary to address a particular deformity. Examples of accommodative supplements are listed in Table 8.1.

Covering Materials

Once appropriate posts and supportive materials are attached to the shell of the orthosis, a covering material is applied to provide an interface with the skin of the foot. Vinyl is a commonly used orthosis-covering material. Spenco (Spenco Medical Corporation, Waco, TX) and various other fabric-covered neoprene materials are resistant to shearing and enhance shock absorption. They are often chosen as covering materials for certain sport orthoses when shear forces are expected to be high or for occupational situations that demand prolonged standing on hard surfaces.

Table 8.1 Accommodative Padding and Soft Tissue Supplements for Functional Foot Orthotics

Supplement	Description
Metatarsal mound	This is a dome-shaped addition in the form of a teardrop positioned with the apex just proximal to the metatarsal heads to support a collapsed transverse metatarsal arch. Often used to control symptoms of neuroma by reducing shearing of the metatarsals during the contact phase. Reduction of the shearing eliminates irritation to the interdigital nerves of the forefoot.
2–5 bar	A pad of uniform thickness placed beneath the second through fifth metatarsal heads relieves pressure beneath the first metatarsal head during propulsion. It is used when a rigid plantarflexed first ray is present.
Metatarsal head cutout	This is a U-shaped pad positioned beneath a rigid plantarflexed metatarsal head to relieve pressure from a painful callosity. It is often used for hammertoe deformity.
Morton extension	This is an extension of the plastic shell, or the addition of an inlay made of dense material, beneath the shaft of the first metatarsal to the sulcus of the hallux. It is often used for a dorsiflexed first ray or Morton toe.
Heel cushion	This is placed in the heel cup of the orthosis to enhance heel cushioning and shock absorption. It is often made of the soft tissue–supplementing material Poron (Rodgers Co., Rogers, CT.) or a viscoelastic polymer. It is used when irritation or atrophy of the infracalcaneal fat pad is present or for a calcaneal stress fracture.
Forefoot extension	A soft tissue–supplementing material, such as Poron, is added to the distal end of the orthotic shell to cushion the metatarsal heads or as a base for other forefoot inlays.
Scaphoid pad	This is a material of soft to medium density placed beneath the medial longitudinal arch to decelerate pronatory forces.

Managing Rearfoot Deformity

In a well-aligned foot, 4 to 6 degrees of STJ pronation occur during the stance phase of gait. In rearfoot varus, more than 6 degrees of STJ pronation are present. A fully compensated rearfoot varus deformity of 10 degrees pronates at the STJ 10 degrees during gait to lower the medial condyle of the calcaneus to the ground, but only 6 degrees of this pronation are considered excessive.

The appropriate orthotic design for rearfoot varus is a medial post or medial wedge. Complete orthotic correction is difficult to achieve and quite uncomfortable for the individual wearing the orthosis. Because of this, the initial goal is often to create an orthosis that provides 50% correction of a rearfoot deformity. For example, to correct the excessive 6 degrees of pronation, a medial rearfoot post or wedge of 3 degrees would be applied to the orthosis.

If an individual with a rearfoot varus deformity of 10 degrees is uncompensated to −5 degrees of calcaneal eversion, a medial or varus wedge of 3 degrees is not effective because the STJ would reach its end-range eversion motion (−5 degrees) before the orthosis provided support. To manage uncompensated rearfoot deformity effectively, the varus wedge must be large enough to prevent the STJ from reaching its end ROM. In this example, a larger medial rearfoot varus post or wedge of at least 5 degrees is necessary. When the rearfoot is aggressively posted (more than 3 or 4 degrees of varus posting), the distal medial aspect of the orthosis shell loses contact with the ground, as if a forefoot varus deformity were present. In these circumstances, a medial forefoot post is used to counteract the induced apparent forefoot varus.

Managing Forefoot Deformity

For forefoot varus deformities, a medial (varus) wedge or post is indicated. For forefoot valgus deformities, lateral (valgus) posts or wedges are used. Forefoot deformities can be corrected through intrinsic plaster modifications or extrinsic posting. For an orthosis to be accurately balanced so that it does not wobble, a forefoot deformity must be corrected to its fullest extent (e.g., an 8-degree forefoot varus deformity requires an 8-degree medial wedge or post).

The addition of a large extrinsic post to the distal end of the orthotic shell often creates problems with shoe fit. One possible solution is to correct large forefoot deformities with a combination of intrinsic and extrinsic techniques. In this example, a 4-degree medial intrinsic plaster platform and a 4-degree extrinsic medial forefoot post or wedge would provide the desired correction without bulkiness. For individuals with a forefoot varus deformity of 10 degrees or more, a semipronated or pronated negative cast can reduce the forefoot deformity to a more manageable degree.[91]

Plantarflexion of the first ray is managed according to the level of flexibility of the deformity. A fully flexible plantarflexed first ray deformity does not require orthotic intervention. A semirigid or rigid plantarflexed first ray deformity requires the addition of a metatarsal (second through fifth) bar inlay. The thickness of the inlay is determined by how far below the first metatarsal head lies relative to the plane of the remaining metatarsal heads. The orthotic intervention for patients with a rigid plantarflexed first ray and forefoot varus is an extended medial forefoot wedge. The forefoot post is modified with a cutout to accommodate the dropped first metatarsal head position. In some cases, a small forefoot varus deformity combined with a large, rigidly plantarflexed first ray deformity results in a functional forefoot valgus (see Fig. 8.14).

Orthotic Checkout and Troubleshooting

Delivery of an orthosis includes evaluation of its fit, comfort, and mechanical alignment. The orthotic shell should end just proximal to the metatarsal heads. The width is evaluated to ensure that normal first ray plantarflexion and propulsion are not compromised. The position of the orthosis within the shoe is also evaluated; its volume, impact on heel height, points of excessive pressure, and tendency to cause pistoning during gait are considered. On initial fitting, many individuals report that the orthosis feels slightly strange or unusual. However, the orthosis should not cause undue

discomfort. Fit and mechanical functioning of the orthosis are evaluated in standing and walking.

Patient education in appropriate break-in protocols and wearing schedules is an important component of orthotic delivery. A new orthosis is usually worn for 2 hours on day 1, 4 hours on day 2, 6 hours on day 3, and so forth, until the individual is able to wear the orthosis comfortably all day. A follow-up visit is scheduled after the orthosis has been worn for at least 2 weeks. By this time, the patient should feel comfortable with the orthosis for normal activities of daily living. Thereafter, progressively increased use of the orthosis for all activities, including sport and occupational use, should be well tolerated. Adjustments are occasionally necessary to optimize patient comfort and mechanical alignment.

Controversy With Root's Paradigm

Much discussion on the basic components of Root's theory has occurred in the past decade.[55,102-109] Root's theory is founded on "normal" foot structure and the concept of the STN position: the point of maximal congruence in the articulation of the talus and navicular.[8,16,32,65] STN position supposedly (1) minimizes stress to the surrounding joints and ligaments, (2) is the most efficient position regarding muscle function and attenuation of the impact forces at IC, and (3) represents the point at which the foot converts from a mobile adapter to a rigid lever.[8,46,65] According to Root's traditional theory, normal foot alignment occurs just before TSt during gait, when the STJ is in the neutral position and the MTJ is fully locked.[8]

The major criticisms of Root's paradigm raise concerns about the reliability of measurement of the STN position, the STN position during the gait cycle, and criteria for "normal" foot alignment.[42,45,66,104,108,110]

RELIABILITY OF MEASUREMENT

When considering available evidence about the reliability of foot measurements and the STN position, although acceptable levels of intrarater reliability exist,[43,44,51,53,110,111] interrater reliability of foot measurements and the STN position is low.[42,102,104,108] Diamond and colleagues[112] and Cook and colleagues[111] found that interrater reliability can be improved with training. McPoil and Hunt[42] noted that considerable confusion exists regarding the definition and measurement of STN position. They suggested that Root's STN position may misinterpret the work by Wright and colleagues,[113] who referenced relaxed standing position, not STN neutral, as the basis of their work. To further add to the confusion, the definition of STN position used in some reliability studies was not identical to Root's methods.[108] Based on the review of reliability studies, McPoil and Hunt[42] suggested that physical therapists are not able to agree on the position and motion of the STJ.

SUBTALAR POSITION IN STANCE

According to Root, ideal foot alignment occurs just before TSt during gait, when the STJ is in the neutral position and the MTJ is fully locked.[8,114] In a study of rearfoot motion of 51 healthy adults, McPoil and Cornwall[115] marked patients' lower leg and calcaneus with bisection lines and then filmed relative calcaneal and lower leg position while walking, while standing in a double-support relaxed standing, and while in the STN position. Their findings did not support Root's paradigm. They found that (1) the rearfoot is slightly inverted before IC, (2) the maximal rearfoot pronation was reached at the 37.9% point of stance phase, and (3) the neutral position of the rearfoot for the typical pattern of rearfoot motion should be the resting standing foot posture rather than STN position.[113] As a result, they suggested that the relaxed standing foot position rather than the STN position should be used during casting.[113]

Pierrynowski and Smith[116] used three-dimensional analysis and six experienced raters to study the pattern of rearfoot motion throughout the gait cycle relative to the STN position. The right lower extremities of nine patients were evaluated by each rater six to seven times, and the STN position was recorded. Patients then walked on a treadmill and were recorded for 30 seconds to allow the capture of approximately 25 walking cycles. For most patients, the rearfoot was everted throughout stance, with maximal eversion occurring at 44% of the gait cycle.[111] They found that the STN position occurs at 64% and 74% of the gait cycle, with the rearfoot inverted between these points. The rearfoot was everting from 0% to 44%, inverting from 44% to 70%, everting from 70% to 90%, and inverting from 90% to 100% of the gait cycle.[114] The authors concluded that the manufacture of foot orthoses should not be associated with the STN position.[116]

CRITERIA FOR NORMAL ALIGNMENT

Root described deviations from normal foot alignment as intrinsic foot deformities, which can lead to aberrant lower extremity function and musculoskeletal pathological conditions.[8,65] Root and colleagues[114] defined three criteria for normal foot and ankle alignment in the loaded STN position: (1) a bisection of the lower leg being in parallel to the bisection of the calcaneus, (2) the plane of the metatarsal heads being perpendicular to the bisection of the calcaneus, and (3) the distal third of the lower leg being perpendicular to the floor. McPoil and colleagues[42,102] examined 116 feet in 58 asymptomatic individuals, finding 8.6% with forefoot varus, 44.8% with forefoot valgus, 14.7% with a plantarflexed first ray, 83.6% with subtalar varus, and 98.3% with tibiofibular varum. Only 17% (116 feet) of the 58 individuals evaluated demonstrated normal criteria.[42] In an examination of forefoot to rearfoot relations of 120 healthy asymptomatic individuals, Garbalosa and colleagues[52] found that only 4.58% of the 234 feet studied exhibited normal criteria, 86.67% had forefoot varus, and 7.75% had forefoot valgus. Astrom and Arvidson[117] performed standardized clinical assessments on 121 healthy individuals, finding that none demonstrated an ideal foot position; most had a valgus position in the STN position (mean, 2 degrees), forefoot in varus (mean, 6 degrees), calcaneal valgus in stance valgus (mean, 7 degrees), and 6 degrees of tibial varus with respect to vertical. The evidence from these studies suggests that an "ideal" foot may be based on a questionable theoretical concept.

Foot Type and Lower Extremity Biomechanics

A question that has been the focus of recent research focuses on the relation between various foot types and the amount of pronation during gait. Recent reviews of the literature suggest this question might not have a simple answer. Dicharry and colleagues[118] compared static and dynamic measures of navicular drop in 72 healthy adults. Although the participants had significantly different static measures of various foot types, they only displayed small or no differences during running and walking. The findings suggest that features other than foot type affect dynamic joint function. According to Razeghi and Batt,[119] foot type alone cannot explain ankle and foot kinematics because of the interrelated function of the subtalar, talocrural, and knee joints. Goffar and colleagues[120] examined the relation between foot type and pressure distribution during loaded gait. Although specific foot types had characteristic force distribution patterns, an increase in load resulted in a consistent increase in force distribution over the entire foot during gait regardless of foot type. Ball and Afheldt[108] suggested that attempts to justify static classification of foot type schemes as a means of predicting dynamic joint function have had mixed results.

Foot Type and Lower Extremity Overuse Injuries

A number of published studies have provided conflicting evidence on the relation between foot type and lower extremity injuries.[121] Many researchers have reported an association between abnormal alignment of the foot and lower extremity and occurrence of lower extremity injuries. Dahle and colleagues[122] studied the relation between foot type (classified in standing as supinated, pronated, or neutral) and occurrence of ankle sprain and knee pain in 55 athletes during the football and cross-country seasons. Although the relation between foot type and subsequent ankle sprain was not supported, foot type was strongly related to knee pain; 48% of those with pronated feet and 50% of those with supinated feet had significant knee pain compared with 21% of those classified with neutral alignment. Gross and colleagues[123] examined the relationship between forefoot and rearfoot varus alignment to hip conditions in 385 older adults. Older adults with more forefoot varus were 1.8 times more likely to have ipsilateral hip pain, 1.9 times more likely to have hip pain or tenderness, and 5.1 times more likely to have undergone total hip replacement when compared with older adults with less forefoot varus. There was not a significant relationship between older adults with rearfoot varus and hip conditions. Powers and colleagues[124] compared the prone STN rearfoot position of 15 patients diagnosed with patellofemoral pain with 15 control subjects, reporting a statistically significant difference in rearfoot varus found in the patellofemoral group (8.9%) compared with control subjects (6.8%). In a retrospective study of the relation between foot posture and incidence of medial tibial stress syndrome (MTSS), Sommer and Vallentyne[125] measured the foot angle in 14 standing limbs with MTSS and 36 control limbs. They reported a mean foot angle of 137 degrees in symptomatic limbs compared with 145 degrees in asymptomatic limbs. They also reported that a standing foot angle of less than 140 degrees and a varus alignment of the rearfoot or forefoot, measured qualitatively in the STN position, were predictive of a previous history of MTSS.

Some reports do not support the relation between foot type and lower extremity injury. Donatelli and colleagues[126] reported no statistically significant relations among static or dynamic foot posture and injury status in professional baseball players. Razeghi and Batt[119] suggested that arch height may not influence injury occurrence. Similarly, Cowan and colleagues[127,128] found that individuals in the US Army with low arches might be less likely to have lower extremity injury. Considering the variety of reports in the literature, Razeghi and Batt[119] surmised that "the effect of foot type on the occurrence of lower extremity injuries has not been the subject of well-controlled studies and few, if any, causal correlations have been demonstrated."

FOOT STRIKE PATTERN DURING RUNNING AND LOWER EXTREMITY BIOMECHANICS

The current literature describes three foot-strike patterns that are predominant when running: rearfoot, midfoot, and forefoot. Rearfoot striking occurs when the heel contacts the surface first. During midfoot striking simultaneously the heel and ball of the foot contact the ground first, and forefoot striking happens when runners land on the ball of their foot first.[129-131]

How the foot contacts the ground affects lower extremity joint moments and causes different kinematics of the lower extremity and contrasting kinetics.[131] Goss and Gross[132] suggested that runners with initial foot strike anterior to the heel may reduce knee joint loading and vertical GRFs but upsurge ankle joint loading. Kulmala and colleagues[133] examined the biomechanical differences in forefoot strike patterns and rearfoot strike patterns. Runners with a forefoot strike pattern had lower peak hip and knee frontal plane moments, lower patellofemoral loading, and higher ankle plantarflexor and Achilles tendon loading than runners with rearfoot strikes. According to Williams and colleagues,[134] forefoot strike, with or without shoes, produced a significant shift from loading at the knee to the ankle when compared with rearfoot strike.

FOOT STRIKE PATTERN DURING RUNNING AND LOWER EXTREMITY INJURIES

Habitual foot strike pattern may affect common lower extremity injuries during running. Daoud and colleagues[131] studied the relation between foot strike patterns and injury rates among 52 runners on the Harvard University Cross Country team. Significantly higher rates of repetitive stress injury were found in runners on the college team with rearfoot strikes than those with forefoot strikes. Diebal and colleagues[135] examined whether adopting a forefoot running strike pattern would decrease pain and disability associated with chronic exertional compartment syndrome (CECS). Following a 6-week forefoot strike training program, 10

participants with CECS who habitually ran with a rearfoot strike pattern experienced significant decrease with pain and disability associated with the condition. Their running distance increased over 300%. One year after the program, participants' running speed and distance were greater than that observed at the conclusion of the 6-week intervention. Although participants were candidates for surgery before the training program, they all avoided surgery.

Orthoses and Lower Extremity Function

Overpronation has been implicated as a cause of many overuse injuries. Traditionally, a foot orthosis is used to help control abnormal foot functioning during the stance phase by controlling excessive STJ motion, decelerating pronation, and allowing the STJ to function closer to its neutral position during stance.[79-81] Literature regarding the efficacy of foot orthoses in controlling lower extremity and foot biomechanics is growing.[4,136,137] A systematic review and meta-analysis conducted by Richter and colleagues[138] reported that there is evidence for the use of foot orthoses to prevent lower limb overuse conditions.

EFFECT ON REARFOOT BIOMECHANICS

The use of foot orthoses is based on the premise that control of frontal plane rearfoot motion in stance provides a means of controlling pronation of the foot. Novick and Kelley[139] investigated the effects of medially posted rigid orthoses in 20 asymptomatic individuals during the LR phase of the gait cycle. They report a significant decrease in calcaneal angle (angle between the sagittal plane and bisected posterior tubercle of the calcaneus), calcaneal eversion angle (mathematical sum of the tibia vara angle plus the calcaneal angle), angular velocities and angular accelerations, as well as a shift medially in the center of pressure relative to the ankle joint. These findings that an orthosis is able to reposition the rearfoot concur with earlier studies examining the effects of orthoses on rearfoot mechanics.[98,101,140,141] MacLean and colleagues[142] examined the impact of custom foot orthoses on lower extremity mechanics of 15 female runners. The runners performed five running trials with and without the orthoses. The runners displayed a significant reduction in maximum rearfoot eversion angle (2 degrees) and rearfoot eversion velocity while wearing the orthoses.

Johanson and colleagues[143] examined the effects of three different orthotic posting methods on subtalar pronation during ambulation in 22 individuals with a forefoot varus deformity of at least 8 degrees. Individuals ambulated in running shoes with (1) unposted prefabricated shells with a polyurethane arch support and individualized shells posted (2) at the rearfoot, (3) at the forefoot, and (4) at both the rearfoot and forefoot. Forefoot posts were approximately 50% of the measured forefoot varus deformity, and the rearfoot posts were 80% of the forefoot post. Running shoes without shells were used as the control. Measurements of calf to calcaneus and calcaneus to vertical were recorded for each situation. Shells with and without posting decreased calcaneal angles compared with running shoes alone. Concurrent posts of rearfoot and forefoot decreased calcaneal angles similar to rearfoot posting alone; both decreased the angle more than forefoot posting alone. Similarly, Genova and Gross[144] found significant reduction in calcaneal eversion during static stance with shoes alone and shoes with orthoses, compared with the barefoot condition, in 13 individuals with barefoot standing calcaneal eversion angles of at least 10 degrees. The condition of the shoes and the orthoses was not statistically different in controlling eversion in static standing. Individuals demonstrated lower angles for maximal calcaneal eversion during stance and for calcaneal eversion at heel rise for the shoe with an orthosis compared with the shoe alone during fast walking on a treadmill. Branthwaite and colleagues[145] investigated the biomechanical effects of simple orthotic designs at rearfoot in nine individuals with varus deformities of the feet by using biplanar orthoses (medial wedging at the heel) or cobra pads (medial wedging and an arch support). A decrease in calcaneal eversion occurred with the biplanar orthosis compared with no insole, but no difference occurred with cobra insoles. Neither condition produced significant changes in the maximal eversion velocity.

The difficulty in predicting the biomechanical effects of orthoses on the rearfoot was demonstrated by Brown and colleagues,[146] who compared shoes only, over-the-counter arch supports, and custom-made semirigid orthoses to control rearfoot pronation in 24 patients with a forefoot varus deformity. Custom-made orthoses were posted at both the rearfoot and forefoot, with forefoot posts at 60% of the forefoot deformity and rearfoot posts at 50% of the forefoot deformity. Although a difference was found in the total pronation among the three groups, the authors suggest additional research is warranted to identify orthotic factors responsible for the biomechanical effects associated with the clinical successes of foot orthotics. Butler and colleagues[147] found that rigid or soft orthoses posted 6 degrees at rearfoot were unable to control calcaneal eversion excursion, peak eversion, and eversion velocity during running in individuals with normal foot alignment.

Miller and colleagues[148] suggested that mechanisms by which orthoses control rearfoot motions are not as clear as might be expected. The examination of GRFs during ambulation of 25 individuals with pes planus with or without a rearfoot device found no significant change in the mediolateral GRFs during the stance phase of gait. However, significant differences were found in the vertical and anterior posterior GRFs during various percentages of the stance phase.

Several variables that must be considered in interpreting these disparate findings, including the materials used, whether individuals are running or walking, foot alignment and biomechanics, and posting methods. Although rearfoot mechanics appear to be altered by foot orthoses, further investigation into the mechanisms responsible for these effects is needed.

EFFECT ON LOWER LIMB BIOMECHANICS

Foot orthoses influence lower extremity kinematics and kinetics as well as rearfoot mechanics. Eng and

Pierrynowski[100] examined the three-dimensional effects of soft foot orthoses during the contact, MSt, and propulsion phases of walking and running on the TCJs, STJs, and knee joints in 10 women with a history of patellofemoral joint pain and forefoot varus or calcaneal valgus greater than 6 degrees. Soft orthoses produced a modest decrease in frontal and transverse plane motion in the TCJs, STJs, and knee joints during walking and running. Knee joint motion in the frontal plane decreased during the early and MSt phases of walking but increased during the contact and MSt phases of running. This work demonstrates the complex coupling of lower extremity kinematics with motions of the STJ; reductions in subtalar motion in the frontal plane have an impact on knee function in both the frontal and transverse planes during walking.

McPoil and Cornwall[149] also studied the effects of soft and rigid orthoses on tibial rotation. Ten individuals with documented rearfoot or forefoot deformity ambulated with unposted, premolded, soft orthoses and rigid polyethylene orthoses posted according to the individual's deformity. Both orthoses decreased the rate and amount of tibial internal rotation during walking. Stacoff and colleagues[150] observed the effects of medially posted cork orthoses on calcaneal and tibial motions in five runners. Three-dimensional tibiocalcaneal rotations were assessed after inserting intracortical bone pins into the calcaneus and tibia. Although the effects on eversion and tibial rotation were small and variable, a statistically significant orthotic effect was present for total tibial rotation. The authors, noting that the differences were unsystematic across conditions and were specific to each individual, speculated that the effects of orthoses might be proprioceptive as well as mechanical.

Joseph and colleagues[151] studied the relationship between ankle pronation/eversion with excessive knee valgus and risk of anterior cruciate ligament injury in female athletes during drop jumps. Ten female athletes performed drop jump landings with and without a medially posted orthosis. A three-dimensional kinematics of the knee and ankle were measured during the jump. The authors reported a significant decrease in ankle pronation/eversion and knee valgus at IC when the athletes had a medial post in their shoes. Their findings support medial orthotic posts for potentially decreasing the risk of anterior cruciate ligament injury. Tillman and colleagues[152] evaluated the impact of orthotic posting on the tibial rotation induced by jumping from a 43-cm-high platform in seven women without foot malalignments by using three conditions (shoes only, shoes with orthoses posted 8 degrees medially, and shoes with orthoses posted 8 degrees laterally). Tibial internal rotation increased by 2.6 degrees with laterally posted inserts and decreased by 3.1 degrees with medially posted inserts. Nester and colleagues[153] examined the effects of medially and laterally wedged orthoses on the kinematics of the rearfoot, knee, hip, and pelvis during walking, reporting main effects on the rearfoot, with minimal effects at knee, hip, or pelvis. Laterally wedged orthoses increased pronation and decreased laterally directed ground forces, whereas medially wedged orthoses decreased pronation and increased the laterally directed ground forces.

Williams and colleagues[154] examined the effects of graphite "inverted" orthoses (orthoses used to provide more aggressive control of pronation by using an inverted position as opposed to a more vertical orientation), standard graphite orthoses posted with a 4-degree medial wedge, or shoes alone in 11 runners who had been initially fitted with the standard orthoses for various lower extremity injuries. Surprisingly, the three conditions produced no significant differences in the peak rearfoot eversion or rearfoot eversion excursion.

A significant decrease in the rearfoot inversion moment and work with the inverted orthosis suggests this orthotic design might decrease demand on the structures controlling eversion. However, increased internal tibial rotation and an adduction moment at the knee occurred with the inverted orthosis, raising concern that potential for lateral stress increases with this aggressive orthotic approach.

Kuhn and colleagues[155] examined quadriceps femoris Q-angle in 40 men with bilateral pes planus or hyperpronation syndrome before and after the insertion of foot orthotics. Of the 40 men, 39 had a significant decrease in bilateral Q-angle in the direction of correction after insertion of full-length flexible orthotics. Men with asymmetrical Q-angle measurements showed significantly greater symmetry of Q-angle measures after orthotic placement. Kuhn and colleagues[155] noted that hyperpronation can cause the tibia to internally rotate, leading to femur internal rotation and resulting in lateral tracking of the patella. They concluded that insertion of full-length flexible orthotics in men with hyperpronation significantly improves quadriceps femoris Q-angle.

Stackhouse and colleagues[156] studied biomechanics during running in 15 individuals with normal alignment. Individuals ran with both rearfoot and forefoot strike patterns and with and without semirigid orthoses with 6 degrees of rearfoot posting. The orthoses did not change rearfoot motion in either strike pattern but did reduce internal rotation and genu valgum by approximately 2 degrees through most of the stance phase. Although no statistically significant reduction occurred in the inversion moment and inversion work, the authors believed that the reductions they found were clinically relevant and might explain the reduction of injuries seen when orthoses are used.

Although evidence supports the fact that foot orthoses can and do influence lower extremity kinematics and kinetics, the variability of individual responses makes it difficult to determine exactly which biomechanical effects will occur. This variability also makes it difficult to forecast who is likely to benefit from orthotic intervention. Efficacy of foot orthoses is not solely the result of altered rearfoot kinematics, as proposed by Root. The contribution of the neuromuscular system to the effect of orthotic intervention is now being considered.

EFFECT OF THE NEUROMUSCULAR SYSTEM

Nigg and colleagues,[157] citing problems in previous studies (e.g., small skeletal changes produced by orthotic use, minimal decrease in impact forces, and nonsystematic effects caused by individual variability), proposed that mechanisms involving the neuromuscular system contribute to the way that foot orthoses alter lower extremity function. They were especially interested in sensitivity of the foot and pressure distribution on the foot surface, noting that (1) the foot

has many sensory receptors to detect forces and deformations acting on it, (2) the sensors detected input signals into the foot with patient-specific thresholds, and (3) individuals with similar sensitivity thresholds seem to respond to their movement patterns in a similar way. They suggested that force signals from the floor were filtered by the shoe, the orthosis, and finally by the plantar surface of the foot, which then transferred the filtered information to the central nervous system. The central nervous system, in turn, prompted dynamic responses in the lower extremity on the basis of patient-specific conditions. Comfort of the orthosis is an important consideration; a comfortable orthosis is likely to minimize muscular work during walking. According to Nigg and colleagues,[157] an optimal orthosis would reduce muscle activity, feel comfortable, and improve musculoskeletal and neuromuscular performance in walking.

Based on his analysis of the role of impact forces on foot function in gait, Nigg[158] proposed a new paradigm focusing on locomotor systems and strategies for impact and movement control. The dynamic systems model of motor control suggests that locomotor systems keep general kinematic and kinetic situations similar for any given task. Nigg suggests that a muscle tuning reaction occurs to cause forces that affect muscle activation before ground contact, and that muscle adaptation (to ensure a constant joint movement pattern) affects muscle activation during ground contact. The interplay of the realignment of the skeleton and locomotor system muscle tuning affects joint and tendon loading and, in turn, fatigue, comfort, work, and performance.

Electromyographic and Imaging Evidence

Mundermann and colleagues[159] studied 21 recreational runners who used a flat shoe insert, posting alone, custom-molded orthoses, and custom-molded orthoses and posting. They analyzed the effects of each condition on lower extremity kinematics, kinetics, and electromyographic data as well as comfort during use. Thirty-five percent of differences in comfort were explained by changes in 15 kinematic, kinetic, and electromyographic variables; these 15 variables correctly classified the corresponding orthotic condition in 75% of cases. Mundermann and colleagues[160] suggested that comfort not only reflected subjective perceptions but also was related to biomechanical variables. In an extension of their work, Mundermann and colleagues[160] observed that the effects of molding were more important than posting on change in kinematic and kinetic variables.

Hertel and colleagues[161] examined electromyographic activity of the vastus medialis, vastus lateralis, and gluteus medius during functional activities in 30 individuals with different foot types, comparing electromyographic activity in four conditions: no orthotic, 7 degrees medial rearfoot post, 4 degrees lateral rearfoot post, and neutral rearfoot post. Surface electromyographic activity data of the muscles was collected while the individuals performed single-leg squatting, lateral stepdown, and maximum vertical jump. During single-leg squat and lateral stepdown, higher vastus medialis and gluteus medius activity was noted with all orthotic conditions. During the vertical jump, less vastus lateralis was noted with all orthotic conditions. Foot type did not influence the outcome in any of the activities.

Kulig and colleagues[162] studied the influence of foot orthoses on tibialis posterior activation in six adults with pes planus. Exercises consisting of resisted foot adduction and plantarflexion were performed barefoot and then with foot orthoses and shoes a week later. Magnetic resonance images of tibialis posterior, tibialis anterior, peroneus longus, medial gastrocnemius, and soleus were obtained pre- and postexercise. When wearing foot orthoses and shoes, only the tibialis posterior was activated. When barefoot, the magnetic resonance image signal intensity of the tibialis posterior was lower, and five of the six participants activated the tibialis posterior and additional muscles. The researchers concluded that selective activation of the tibialis posterior can be improved in people with pes planus by wearing foot orthoses with shoes.[159]

Lack and colleagues[163] examined the effects of prefabricated foot orthoses on the muscle activity of the vastus medialis oblique, vastus lateralis, and gluteus medius while performing a step-up task in 20 participants with patellofemoral pain. Wireless surface electromyography recorded the muscle activity of the participant's affected leg, and no significant changes in muscle onset time were noted. Vastus lateralis and vastus medialis oblique peak amplitudes did not have a significant change, but gluteus medius peak amplitude was reduced.

Bird and colleagues[164] considered electromyographic activity of lumbar erector spinae and gluteus medius muscles with prefabricated foot wedges (a 5-degree lateral wedge, a 5-degree medial wedge, or a 2-cm heel wedge). Although no change in amplitude of electromyographic signal occurred, wedging at the heel and lateral forefoot led to earlier electromyographic activity of the erector spinae. Gluteus muscle activity was delayed with bilateral heel wedges, as was ipsilateral gluteus activity when a unilateral heel wedge was used. Although changes of onset for the erector spinae and gluteus medius averaged only 4% and 2% of the gait cycle, respectively, the researchers suggested that these changes are likely to be clinically significant over the course of a day.

Dedieu and colleagues[165] investigated the muscular activity pattern of 12 adults with calcaneal valgus and increased eversion at the midfoot. They analyzed the effect of custom-made insoles and a rearfoot post on the muscle activity of the tibialis anterior, soleus, gastrocnemius medialis, gastrocnemius lateralis, and peroneus longus. During walking with insoles, the duration of muscle activity was shorter and the start time was delayed.

Vanicek and colleagues[166] considered how foot orthoses affected the ability of six healthy alpine skiers to hold a skier's squat position and on the duration of fatigue of the vastus lateralis. Individuals were examined under three conditions: no orthoses, high-volume orthoses, and low-volume orthoses (based on the amount of foam incorporated into the orthosis). A decrease in median firing frequencies toward the end of contraction suggested that high-volume orthoses reduced myoelectric fatigue. However, no significant differences in the ability to sustain a squat occurred under the three conditions.

Balance and Postural Control

If neuromuscular systems play a role in the effectiveness of orthoses, changes in balance and posture control would be anticipated with their use. Guskiewicz and Perrin[167] examined the effects of custom orthoses in 13 patients with acute

ankle inversion sprains and in 12 noninjured patients. As anticipated, orthoses reduced postural sway in the medial and lateral and inversion and eversion directions, with a larger effect in patients who had the injury. The researchers propose that, by restricting undesirable motions, the orthoses enhanced the ability of joint mechanoreceptors to detect movement. In contrast, Hertel and colleagues[168] found that six different orthotic interventions (shoe only; molded Aquaplast orthoses [Aquaplast Thermoplastics, Wyckoff, NJ]; orthoses in the neutral, medially posted, and laterally posted positions; and a prefabricated, rigid, laterally posted heel wedge) did not influence postural sway in 15 patients with unilateral ankle sprains while they performed unilateral standing. None of the orthotic conditions decreased frontal or sagittal postural sway compared with shoes alone. Hertel and colleagues[169] also studied 15 healthy patients with normally aligned feet under the same six conditions, focusing on center of pressure length and velocity in both the frontal and sagittal planes during unilateral stance. In this study, sagittal plane motion was not different among the various conditions; however, medially posted orthoses reduced frontal plane motion more than the other conditions. Frontal plane center of pressure excursion increased with a prefabricated, rigid, laterally posted heel wedge compared with medially and neutrally posted conditions. Frontal plane velocity was lower with medial posting compared with a prefabricated, rigid, laterally posted heel wedge and neutral orthoses. However, the prefabricated, rigid, laterally posted heel wedge produced significantly greater frontal plane velocities than the medially or laterally posted conditions.

Gross and colleagues[170] have documented that placement of foot orthoses in the shoes of older adults can affect improvement in static and dynamic balance. Thirteen older adults over the age of 65 who reported at least one inexplicable fall during the past year participated in the study. Participants were tested for tandem stance, one-leg stance, tandem gait, and alternating step tests during preintervention and postintervention sessions. Improvements in balance performance were seen immediately after foot orthoses were placed in the older adults' shoes in all tests except tandem gait. Although participants reported tandem gait as being the most challenging task, their balance also improved with this performance measure. They took more than three times the number of steps in the postintervention session when compared with their baseline performance.

Percy and Menz[171] found that orthoses did not affect postural stability in 30 professional soccer players in bipedal, dominant leg, and tandem stance. Sway was assessed under four conditions: barefoot, soccer shoes only, soccer shoes with soft insoles, and soccer shoes with rigid orthoses. The researchers concluded that orthoses had no beneficial or detrimental effects in the elite athletes studied. In contrast, Olmsted and Hertel[172] found that foot orthoses differentially benefit those with various foot types. They assessed static and dynamic postural control in 30 patients grouped by rectus, planus, or cavus foot type. Patients wore custom-molded, semirigid foot orthoses for 2 weeks between baseline and posttest measurement. Improvement in reach occurred in three of eight directions on the Star Excursion Balance Test in those with cavus foot type. Patients with cavus foot type also demonstrated a decreased center of pressure velocity in static stance.

Rome and Brown[173] examined postural sway in 50 patients identified as pronators (per the Foot Posture Index) in a randomized clinical trial. Patients were assigned either to a control or an orthotic group. The orthotic group wore prefabricated, high-density ethyl vinyl acetate orthoses with low-density ethyl vinyl acetate rearfoot wedging for 4 weeks. At 4 weeks, medial-lateral sway decreased in the orthotic group; however, no differences in anterior-posterior sway or mean balance occurred between the groups. Collectively, these studies suggest that orthoses do affect electromyographic activity, balance, and postural control. Health professionals may be better able to identify those most likely to benefit from orthotic intervention if measures of postural control and neuromuscular function are incorporated along with the assessment of lower extremity and foot skeletal alignment.

Management of Overuse Injuries

Although the specific biomechanical and neurological effects of foot orthoses on walking and running are not completely understood, orthoses can and do reduce symptoms and improve function. Although current evidence does not include many randomized, controlled clinical trials, the available evidence does support efficacy of orthotic intervention in the management of lower extremity injuries.

PAIN ASSOCIATED WITH FOOT DEFORMITY

Burns and colleagues[174] examined the effect of custom foot orthoses on foot pain (and other factors) in individuals with cavus foot type. The study consisted of 154 individuals with 75 randomly selected to the custom foot orthoses group and 79 to the control group. At 3 months' follow-up,[172] individuals reported data with mean foot pain improvement of 31.2 points with custom foot orthoses and 20.3 points with the control. Individuals with the custom foot orthoses improved pain scores by 74% compared with 43% with the control group. D'Ambrosia[175] reported on 200 individuals who had used orthoses to manage a variety of running injuries, including posterior tibial syndrome, pes planovalgum, metatarsalgia, plantar fasciitis, and iliotibial band tendonitis. Almost all had severe pronation with forefoot varus before prescription of an orthosis. Rates of reported improvement were quite high: 73% in posterior tibial syndrome, 90% in pes planovalgum, 86% in metatarsalgia, 82% in plantar fasciitis, and 66% in iliotibial band syndrome. Of those with cavus foot type, only 25% showed improvement with orthotic use.

Donatelli and colleagues[176] received follow-up surveys from 53 (65%) of 81 individuals who had previously been fitted with custom-molded, semirigid orthoses for pes planus and chondromalacia, with 95% having a forefoot varus deformity. All respondents had a 6- to 8-week trial of temporary orthoses modified according to alterations in pain before receiving custom-molded, semirigid orthoses. Respondents were asked to describe or rate pain relief with orthoses, orthotic satisfaction, continued use of orthoses, and ability to return to previous level of activity. Pain relief was reported by 96% of respondents, 91% were satisfied with their orthoses, 94% were still wearing their orthoses (length of time with orthoses varied from 3 months to 2 years from time

surveyed), and 70% were able to return to their previous level of activity.

Moraros and Hodge[177] surveyed 525 individuals who used custom-fitted orthoses provided by podiatric physicians to determine effectiveness and patient satisfaction. Of the 453 records completed in useable form (89% response rate), the chief symptom was fully resolved in 62.5%, partially resolved in 32.8%, and unresolved in 4.7%. Overall satisfaction for fit and quality was 83.1%. Although limitations are inherent in survey research, the relatively high response rate and sample support the usefulness of orthoses in relieving painful foot symptoms.

PATELLOFEMORAL PAIN SYNDROME

The role of foot orthoses on patellofemoral pain has been the subject of several studies that have provided research data for a systematic review on the efficacy of foot orthoses in the treatment of patellofemoral pain.[178] Almonroeder and colleagues[179] reported mixed results of the effectiveness of foot orthoses in the treatment of patellofemoral pain. They found that the peak patellofemoral joint stress significantly increased, but the timing of the peak was delayed during running with a foot orthosis. According to Boldt and colleagues,[180] adding medial wedge foot orthoses in the shoes of female runners with patellofemoral pain syndrome (PFPS) had minimal effect on hip and knee joint mechanics.

Johnston and Gross[181] assessed the effect of foot orthoses on pain, stiffness, and function in 16 individuals with patellofemoral pain and excessive foot pronation. Following baseline assessments, the individuals were fitted with custom foot orthoses. Statistically significant improvements in pain and stiffness were found 2 weeks following the foot orthotic intervention, and improvements in physical function were noted at the 3-month follow-up.

Barton and colleagues[182] used a variety of weight-bearing measurements to compare foot and ankle characteristics of individuals with PFPS to those without the syndrome. In relaxed stance, individuals with PFPS had significantly greater pronated foot posture than the control group when determined by longitudinal arch angle and posture index measurements. The PFPS group also demonstrated greater ranges of motion when STJ neutral was used as a reference posture.

In a single subject design, Way[183] investigated the use of a custom-molded thermoplastic foot orthosis on PFPS in a 19-year-old collegiate softball player with a mild forefoot varus bilaterally and increased midfoot pronation during MSt and TSt. Intervention included pain-free stretching and strengthening exercises, modalities, and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory medication. The study design involved a 13-day baseline phase, a 17-day intervention phase (after which the patient removed orthoses for an 11-day withdrawal phase), and a second intervention phase in which orthoses were reintroduced for the last 32 days of the study. Pain was rated by a visual analog scale, and function was evaluated with the Functional Index Questionnaire. Pain decreased in each consecutive phase; function improved between phases for seven of the nine functional activities assessed in the Functional Index Questionnaire. On the basis of these findings, Way[183] suggested that orthotic intervention is appropriate for PFPS.

Saxena and Haddad[184] retrospectively reviewed 102 outcomes of interventions in individuals with chondromalacia patella, retropatellar dysplasia, or PFPS. Multiple interventions were noted, including semiflexible orthotics. Overall, 76.5% of patients demonstrated a reduction in pain and improved function, and 2% were asymptomatic after a 2- to 4-week intervention period.

Sutlive and colleagues[185] sought to identify characteristics of patients with PFPS likely to improve with a combination of orthoses and modified activity. They examined 50 patients in active military duty who had symptoms of PFPS during a partial squat or when ascending stairs. Measures included (1) rearfoot alignment in STN, (2) forefoot to rearfoot alignment, (3) navicular drop, (4) RCS, (5) Q angle, (6) tibial varum or valgum, (7) tibial torsion, (8) leg length, and (9) standard goniometric and postural test positions to determine ROM and tissue tightness. Patients wore unposted, premolded, full-length insoles with full arch support and heel cushioning for 21 days while concurrently limiting various activities. All completed a visual analog scale and a Global Rating of Change Questionnaire at baseline and at the end of the intervention period. Of 50 patients, 33 completed the study, with a total of 78 knees with PFPS (many had bilateral symptoms). Data from 27 patients who demonstrated 50% or more improvement in visual analog scale scores were examined to determine which patient characteristics could predict orthotic success. Likelihood ratios identified several predictors of successful outcome: forefoot valgus of 2 degrees or more, great toe extension of 78 degrees or less, and navicular drop of 3 mm or less. Of those with PFPS, the patients with these three characteristics were more likely to respond to orthotic intervention.

PLANTAR FASCIITIS

The use of foot orthoses in the management of plantar fasciitis also has been examined. A 12-month study by Landorf and colleagues[186] compared the effectiveness of sham, prefabricated, and custom orthoses on pain and function in 136 individuals with plantar fasciitis. Participants were allocated to one of the three groups (sham, prefabricated, or custom) by a computer-generated random assignment, and no other treatments were allowed during the 12-month trial. At 3 months, the prefabricated and customized groups experienced greater improvements in function and pain compared to the sham group, but only the orthotic effects on function were statistically significant. Compared to the sham, the mean pain score for the prefabricated and custom orthosis was 8.7 and 7.4 points better, and the mean function score was 8.4 and 7.5 points better, respectively. All three groups improved with function and pain compared with baseline status at 3 months and 12 months, and there were only slight differences between the groups at 12 months.

Gross and colleagues[187] studied 15 individuals with plantar fasciitis for at least 1 month. Eight patients had excessively pronated feet, and seven had a cavus foot type. Eleven of 15 had unsuccessfully used noncustom arch supports before enrollment in the study. At baseline, patients completed the pain and disability index of the Foot Function Index, were timed during a 100-m walk, and rated pain experienced during the walk with the visual analog scale. They received custom-fabricated, posted, multilayer

orthoses with a thermoplastic core and were reevaluated after 12 to 17 days of orthotic use. Although no differences in preintervention and postintervention walk times occurred, visual analog scale pain ratings after the walk were lower than baseline, with only one patient demonstrating increased pain after the walk test. The scores on the subsections of the Foot Function Index also improved after orthotic use, with improvement of 66% in the pain subscale and 75% in the disability subscale. All patients continued to wear their orthoses at a follow-up phone call made 2 to 6 months after testing.

McClinton and colleagues[188] examined ankle plantar flexor and toe flexor muscle performance in 27 individuals with plantar faciitis using the rocker-board plantarflexion test and modified paper grip test. They also assessed the association between muscle performance and duration of foot orthoses use. Participants demonstrated decreased muscle performance when compared with a control group of 27 individuals without plantar faciitis. Self-reported duration of foot orthosis use was inversely related to muscle performance. Participants who reported using foot orthoses longer, regardless if they used it consistently or sporadically, presented with greater impairments in plantar flexor muscle performance.

Seligman and Dawson[189] retrospectively evaluated 10 older individuals (mean age, 71 years) with heel pain from plantar fasciitis who used a heel pad made of Sorbothane (Sorbothane, Inc., Kent, OH) attached to a custom-molded, medium-density Plastazote insert reinforced with cork in the MLA. Duration of pain ranged from 6 months to several years; 5 of 10 patients previously tried other interventions. Pain was rated by a 10-point Likert pain rating scale. A significant difference occurred between baseline pain ratings (5.7/10) and postintervention pain ratings (1.85/10).

MORTON NEUROMA

Kilmartin and Wallace[190] found that orthotic intervention did not improve symptoms of Morton neuroma. A total of 23 individuals with pain of the third and fourth intermetatarsal space, aggravated by exercise and relieved by rest, were randomly assigned to two groups, with no consideration of foot type. Those in the supination group wore a Cobra orthosis with a thicker medial heel and arch filler. Those in the pronation group wore a reverse Cobra orthosis with a thicker lateral heel. Pain was measured by a visual analog scale. Sensory impairment and pain were objectively measured by tests that elicit neuroma pain. Function was assessed with the McMaster-Toronto Arthritis Patient Function Preference Questionnaire patient-specific measure of maximal function. No differences in pain or function occurred between the supination and pronation groups. Neither orthosis produced additional symptoms in the lower extremity.

The authors suggested that prescribing a custom orthosis based on foot type would have provided greater relief of symptoms.

LOW BACK PAIN

Dananberg and Guiliano[191] examined the effects of orthotic intervention in 32 patients with chronic low back pain. Patients completed the Quebec Back Pain Disability Scale at baseline after wearing foot orthoses for 1 month and after wearing orthoses for at least 6 months. The Quebec Scale provided a back pain score and a disability score. Permanent orthoses were fabricated on the basis of the results of temporary orthoses with modifications specific to each patient, in-shoe pressure analysis, gait video analysis, and clinical examination. At 1 month, significant reduction was observed in the mean pain and disability scores. Of the original 32 patients, 23 were contacted at the 6-month follow-up and reported significant improvement in function and reduction in pain. In comparing their outcomes with previous work by Kopec and colleagues,[192] who used the Quebec Back Pain Disability Scale to evaluate improvement in 178 patients undergoing standard back care interventions, the authors suggested that the use of foot orthoses enhanced outcomes over traditional back care. Of note, the protocol for evaluating patients for permanent orthoses was extensive.[192]

Although few randomized, controlled clinical studies have been undertaken, and most have been done with a small sample size in specific patient populations, current evidence supports that foot orthoses reduce symptoms of pain and improve function in individuals with overuse injury. In contrast, a current systemic review and meta-analysis of randomized control trials conducted by Chuter and colleagues[193] reported that there is insufficient evidence to support foot orthoses as a treatment or prevention for low back pain. Some evidence existed that control trials that concentrated on variables such as patient history and physical examination to identify patients with low back pain most suited for orthoses treatment had a greater effect on mitigating the pain.[193] Foot structure and type, orthotic materials, posting methods, and fabrication methods must be considered in determining who is likely to respond to orthotic intervention and in comparing the effectiveness of various orthotic interventions.

Summary

Although many components of Root's theory have been questioned, there is little doubt concerning the importance of his work in the field of foot biomechanics and orthotic intervention. Root's work provides a foundation for most of the research performed to gain a better understanding of the influence of the foot on lower extremity biomechanics and overuse injuries. Although research has provided some answers about mechanisms underlying the efficacy of orthotic intervention, many more questions also have been raised. Additional research is necessary before clinicians will be able to prescribe orthoses confidently based on likely outcomes.

Case Example 8.1 **Individual With Rearfoot and Forefoot Dysfunction**

M.L. is an active 50-year-old woman who recently began to train for a local 10-km race. She is referred by her family physician for evaluation and intervention because of thickened and painful plantar callus under the second and fourth metatarsal heads and on the lateral surface of the hallux in both feet. The discomfort has increased to a point that she is unable to complete the distances she needs to run to prepare for the upcoming race.

M.L. is 5 feet, 5 inches tall and weighs 132 lb. In relaxed standing, no leg-length discrepancy is apparent, although both patellae are rotated inward, slight hyperextension and recurvatum at the knee is present (left more than right), and both feet are markedly pronated.

The following values are recorded in the non–weight-bearing and weight-bearing examinations:

Non–Weight-Bearing Examination Component	Left	Right
Rearfoot STN position	6 degrees varus	7 degrees varus
Calcaneus inversion	18 degrees	22 degrees
Calcaneus eversion	12 degrees	14 degrees
Ankle dorsiflexion	9 degrees	7 degrees
Rearfoot dorsiflexion	2 degrees	0 degrees
Forefoot STN position	Mild valgus	Moderate valgus
Locking mechanism	Fair	Poor
First ray	Slightly plantarflexed	Slightly plantarflexed
Hallux dorsiflexion	75 degrees	80 degrees
Medial longitudinal arch	Medium height	Medium height

STN, Subtalar neutral.

Weight-Bearing Examination Component	Left	Right
Calcaneal/floor alignment	Eversion	Eversion
Tibiofibular position	40 degrees	37 degrees
Navicular drop (STN to relaxed calcaneal stance)	10 mm	12 mm
Navicular position (Feiss)	Slightly below	Moderately below
Toe sign	2.5 toes visible	3 toes visible
Femoral torsion	14 degrees	16 degrees
Tibial torsion	25 degrees	27 degrees

STN, Subtalar neutral.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What are the normative values for non–weight-bearing range of motion in the rearfoot (STN position, calcaneal inversion and eversion, dorsiflexion) and forefoot (STN position, midtarsal joint dorsiflexion, first ray position, and mobility)?
- What rearfoot and forefoot deformities do M.L.'s examination findings suggest?
- What are normal findings for the closed chain static weight-bearing examination?
- How should the findings for M.L.'s weight-bearing examination be interpreted?
- How do the findings of M.L.'s non–weighting-bearing and weight-bearing examinations relate to each other? What deformities are compensated versus uncompensated?

Case Example 8.2 **Individual With Rearfoot and Forefoot Dysfunction**

M.L. wants to continue training for her upcoming race without increasing her pain and further damaging soft tissue in her feet. An appropriate prescription is being created for her on the basis of the findings of her examination and the principles of orthotic design.

EXAMINATION FINDINGS

Relaxed standing: no apparent leg-length discrepancy, both patella rotated inward, slight hype knee (left more than right), marked pronation of both feet.

Non–Weight-Bearing Examination Component	Left	Right
Rearfoot STN position	6 degrees varus	7 degrees varus
Calcaneus inversion	18 degrees	22 degrees
Calcaneus eversion	12 degrees	14 degrees
Ankle dorsiflexion	9 degrees	7 degrees
Rearfoot dorsiflexion	2 degrees	0 degrees
Forefoot STN position	Mild valgus	Moderate valgus
Locking mechanism	Fair	Poor
First ray	Slightly plantarflexed	Slightly plantarflexed
Hallux dorsiflexion	75 degrees	80 degrees
Medial longitudinal arch	Medium height	Medium height

STN, Subtalar neutral.

Weight-Bearing Examination Component	Left	Right
Calcaneal/floor alignment	Eversion	Eversion
Tibiofibular position	40 degrees	37 degrees
Navicular drop (STN to relaxed calcaneal stance)	10 mm	12 mm
Navicular position (Feiss)	Slightly below	Moderately below
Toe sign	2.5 toes visible	3 toes visible
Femoral torsion	14 degrees	16 degrees
Tibial torsion	25 degrees	27 degrees

STN, Subtalar neutral.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What are the primary short-term and long-term goals of orthotic intervention for M.L.? Are the therapeutic goals for orthotic intervention similar to or different from M.L.'s goals? How quickly will the orthosis have an impact on the level of pain and function?
- What options should be considered in addressing her forefoot deformity in each foot? What type of posting (intrinsic vs. extrinsic, medial vs. lateral) is most appropriate? How much of a wedge or post should be recommended? Why? How might the recommendations for each foot be similar or different?
- What options should be considered in addressing the rearfoot deformity in each foot? What type of posting (intrinsic vs. extrinsic, medial vs. lateral) would be most appropriate? How much of a wedge or post should be recommended?Why? How might the recommendations for each foot be similar or different?
- What type of materials would be most appropriate to use in her orthosis? Why?
- Are fabricating orthoses for both her running shoes and her usual daily footwear advisable? Why or why not?
- What type of wearing schedule should be recommended? Should she alter her training schedule or expectations about participating in the upcoming race? Why or why not?
- How frequently should M.L. be followed up during this episode of care? How should the outcomes of orthotic intervention be assessed?

The effectiveness of biomechanical foot orthoses depends on a number of factors. An understanding of causes and effects of aberrant foot motion on pathological conditions of the foot is essential in determining the appropriate orthosis prescription and plan of care. Clinicians who do not carefully consider biomechanical principles and other factors that contribute to clinical signs and symptoms are likely to prescribe an ineffective or inappropriate orthosis. Information gathered from all three components of the biomechanical examination (non–weight-bearing, static weight-bearing, and dynamic gait assessment) is critical for orthotic design and prescription.

Historically, the principles and design of the Root functional orthosis and the biomechanical foot orthosis have had consistently effective clinical results. Root's model demands a keen understanding of foot biomechanics, careful prescription, and advanced fabrication skills. With this understanding and attention to detail, the end result may be a lightweight, durable, cost-effective foot orthosis that substantially reduces the detrimental effects of aberrant foot motion.

References

1. Wrobel JS, Fleischer AE, Crews RT, et al. A randomized controlled trial of custom foot orthoses for the treatment of plantar heel pain. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2015;105(4):281–294.
2. Najafi B, Wrobel JS, Burns J. Mechanism of orthotic therapy for the painful cavus foot deformity. *J Foot Ankle Res.* 2014;7:1–9.
3. Gabriner ML, Braun BA, Houston MN, et al. The effectiveness of foot orthotics in improving postural control in individuals with chronic ankle instability: A critically appraised topic. *J Sports Rehab.* 2015;24:68–71.
4. House C, Reece A, Roiz de Sa D. Shock-absorbing insoles reduce the incidence of lower limb overuse injuries sustained during royal marine training. *Military Medicine.* 2013;178(6):683–689.
5. Olson WR. Orthotic materials. In: Valmassy RL, ed. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Lower Extremities.* St. Louis: Mosby–Year Book; 1996:307–326.
6. Kirby KA. The medial heel skive technique. Improving pronation control in foot orthoses. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1992;82(4): 177–188.
7. Shuster RO. A history of orthopaedics in podiatry. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1974;64(5):322.
8. Root ML, Orien WP, Weed JH. *Normal and Abnormal Function of the Foot.* vol 2. Los Angeles: Clinical Biomechanics Corporation; 1977.
9. Lack S, Barton C, Woledge R, et al. The immediate effects of foot orthoses on hip and knee kinematics and muscle activity during a functional step-up task in individuals with patellofemoral pain. *Clin Biomech.* 2014;29:1056–1062.
10. Lo WT, Wong DP, Yick KL, et al. Effects of custom-made textile insoles on plantar pressure distribution and lower limb EMG activity during turning. *J Foot Ankle Res.* 2016;9:22.
11. Lack S, Barton C, Malliaras P, et al. The effect of anti-pronation foot orthoses on hip and knee kinematics and muscle activity during a functional step-up task in healthy individuals:A laboratory study. *Clin Biomech.* 2014;29:177–182.
12. Dingenen B, Peeraer L, Deschamps K, et al. Muscle-activation onset times with shoes and foot orthoses in participants with chronic ankle instability. *J Athl Train.* 2015;50(7):688–696.
13. Burns J, Wegener C, Begg L, et al. Randomized trial of custom orthosis and footwear on foot pain and plantar pressure in diabetic peripheral arterial disease. *Diabet Med.* 2009;86:893–899.
14. Erel S, Uygur F, Simsek IE, Yakut Y. The effects of dynamic ankle-foot orthoses in chronic stroke patients at three-month follow-up: a randomized controlled trial. *Clin Rehabil.* 2011;25(6):515–523.
15. Barnett CH, Napier JR. The axis of rotation at the ankle joint in man. Its influence upon the form of the talus and the mobility of the fibula. *J Anat (Lond).* 1952;86:1–9.
16. Hicks JH. The mechanics of the foot. Part I: the joints. *J Anat.* 1953;87:345–347.
17. Morris JM. Biomechanics of the foot and ankle. *Clin Orthop.* 1977;122 (1):10–17.
18. American Orthopedics Association. *Manual of Orthopedic Surgery.* Chicago: American Orthopedics Association; 1972.
19. Rasmussen O, Tovberg-Jevsen I. Mobility of the ankle joint. *Acta Orthop Scand.* 1982;53(1):155–160.
20. Jastifer JR, Gustafson PA. The subtalar joint: Biomechanics and functional representations in the literature. *The Foot.* 2014;24:203–209.
21. Norkin CC, Levangie PK. The ankle foot complex. In: Levangie PK, Edd CC, Norkin PT, eds. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 1992:379–419.
22. Lapidius PW. Kinesiology and mechanics of the tarsal joints. *Clin Orthop.* 1963;30:20–35.
23. Kjaergaard-Andersen P, Wethelund J, Nielsen S. Lateral talocalcaneal instability following section of the calcaneofibular ligament: a kinesiologic study. *Foot Ankle.* 1987;7(6):355–361.
24. Manter JT. Movements of the subtalar and transverse tarsal joints. *Anat Rec.* 1941;80:397–410.
25. Phillips RD, Christeck R, Phillips RL. Clinical measurement of the axis of the subtalar joint. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1985;75(3):119–131.
26. Green DR, Carol A. Planal dominance. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1984;74(2):98–103.
27. Perry J. Anatomy and biomechanics of the hindfoot. *Clin Orthop.* 1983;177(1):9–15.
28. Olerud C, Rosendahl Y. Torsion-transmitting properties of the hindfoot. *Clin Orthop.* 1987;(214):285–294.
29. Drake RL, Vogl WA, Mitchell AW. *Gray's Anatomy for Students.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 2014.
30. Elftman H. The transverse tarsal joint and its control. *Clin Orthop.* 1960;16:41–45.
31. Moore KL, Dalley AF, Agur AM. *Clinically Oriented Anatomy.* 7th ed Baltimore: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins; 2013.
32. Hicks JH. The mechanics of the foot. Part II: the plantar aponeurosis and the arch. *J Anat.* 1954;88:25–31.
33. Sarafian SK. Functional characteristics of the foot and plantar aponeurosis under tibiotalar loading. *Foot Ankle.* 1987;8(1):1–4.
34. Perry J. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function.* Slack: Thorofare, NJ; 1992.
35. Vaughn CL, Davis DL, O'Connor JC. *Dynamics of Human Gait.* Champaign, Ill: Human Kinetics; 1992.
36. James SL, Jones DC. Biomechanical aspects of distance running injuries. In: Cavanagh PR, ed. *Biomechanics of Distance Running.* Champaign, Ill: Human Kinetics; 1990:249–271.
37. Wright DG, Desai M, Henderson WH. Action of the subtalar and ankle-joint complex during the stance phase of walking. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1964;46A(2):361–382.
38. Perry J, Hislop HJ. *Principles of Lower Extremity Bracing.* Washington, DC: American Physical Therapy Association; 1967.
39. Close JR, Todd FN. The phasic activity of the muscles of the lower extremity and the effect of tendon transfer. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1959;41A(2):189–208.
40. Valiant GA. Transmission and attenuation of heelstrike accelerations. In: Cavanagh PR, ed. *Biomechanics of Distance Running.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 1990:225–249.
41. Chimenti RL, Joshua T, Hillin CD, et al. Adult-acquired flatfoot deformity and age-related differences in foot and ankle kinematics during the single-limb heel-rise test. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2014;44(4):283–290.
42. McPoil TG, Hunt GC. Evaluation and management of foot and ankle disorders. Present problems and future directions. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1995;21(6):381–388.
43. Picciano AM, Rowlands MS, Worrell T. Reliability of open and closed kinetic chain subtalar joint neutral positions and navicular drop test. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1993;18(4):553–558.
44. Smith-Oricchio K, Harris BE. Interrater reliability of subtalar neutral, calcaneal inversion and eversion. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1990; 12(1):10–15.
45. Jarvis HL, Nester CJ, Bowden PD, et al. Challenging the foundatons of the clinical model of foot function: further evidence that the root model assessments fail to appropriately classify foot function. *J Foot Ankle Res.* 2017;10:7.
46. Gross MT. Lower quarter screening for skeletal malalignment. Suggestions for orthotics and shoewear. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1995;21(6):389–405.

47. Pratt D, Tollafield D, Johnson G, et al. Foot orthoses. In: Wallace WA, ed. *Biomechanical Basis of Orthotic Management*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1993:70–98.
48. Wooden MJ. Biomechanical evaluation for functional orthotics. In: Donatelli RA, ed. *The Biomechanics of the Foot and Ankle*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 1996:168–183.
49. McPoil TG, Brocato RS. The foot and ankle. In: Gould JA, Davis GJ, eds. *Orthopaedics and Sports Physical Therapy*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:322–325.
50. Anthony RJ. *The Manufacture and Use of the Functional Foot Orthosis.* Basel, Switzerland: Karger; 1991.
51. Elveru RA, Rothstein JM, Lamb RC. Goniometric reliability in a clinical setting. Subtalar and ankle joint measurements. *Phys Ther.* 1988;68(5):672–677.
52. Garbalosa JC, McClure MH, Catlin PA, et al. The frontal plane relationship of the forefoot to the rearfoot in an asymptomatic population. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1994;20(4):200–206.
53. Lattanza L, Gray GW, Kantner RM. Closed versus open kinematic chain measurements of subtalar joint eversion. Implications for clinical practice. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1988;9(9):310–314.
54. Vitasalo JT, Kvist M. Some biomechanical aspects of the foot and ankle in athletes with and without shin splints. *Am J Sports Med.* 1983;2(3):125–130.
55. Tiberio D. Evaluation of functional ankle dorsiflexion using subtalar neutral position. *Phys Ther.* 1987;67(6):955–957.
56. Baggett BD, Young G. Ankle joint dorsiflexion. Establishment of a normal range. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1993;83(5):251–254.
57. Hillstrom HJ, Perlberg G, Sieglers S, et al. Objective identification of ankle equinus deformity and resulting contracture. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1991;81(10):519–524.
58. Hill RS. Ankle equinus: prevalence and linkage to common foot pathology. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1995;85(6):295–300.
59. Hoppenfeld S. *Physical Examination of the Spine and Extremities.* Appleton-Century-Crofts: Norwalk, Conn; 1976.
60. Tachdjian MO. *The Child's Foot.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 1985.
61. McGlamry ED, Kitting RW. Equinus foot. An analysis of the etiology, pathology, and treatment techniques. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1973;63:165.
62. Whitney AK, Green DR. Pseudo equinus. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1982;72:365.
63. Davidson RS. Deformities of the child's foot. In: Sammarco JG, ed. *Foot and Ankle Manual*. Philadelphia: Lea &Febiger; 1991:296.
64. Donatelli RA. Abnormal biomechanics. In: Donatelli RA, ed. *The Biomechanics of the Foot and Ankle*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 1990:32–65.
65. D'Ambrosia RD. Orthotic devices in running injuries. *Clin Sports Med.* 1985;4(4):611–619.
66. McPoil TG, Knecht HG, Schuit D. A survey of foot types in normal females between the ages of 18 and 30 years. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1988;9(12):346–349.
67. Dananberg HJ. Gait style as an etiology to chronic postural pain. Part I: functional hallux limitus. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1993;83 (8):433–441.
68. Dananberg HJ. Gait style as an etiology to chronic postural pain. Part II: postural compensatory process. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1993;83 (11):615–624.
69. Gastwirth BW. Biomechanical examination of the foot and lower extremity. In: Valmassy RL, ed. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Lower Extremities*. St. Louis: Mosby–Year Book; 1996:132–147.
70. Tomaro J. Measurement of tibiofibular varum in subjects with unilateral overuse symptoms. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1995;21(2):86–89.
71. McPoil TG, Schuit D, Knecht HG. A comparison of three positions used to evaluate tibialvarum. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1988; 78(1):22–28.
72. Lohmann KN, Rayhel HE, Schneiderwind P, et al. Static measurement of tibialvara. Reliability and effect of lower extremity position. *Phys Ther.* 1987;67(2):196–200.
73. Brody D. Techniques in evaluation and treatment of the injured runner. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 1982;13(3):541–558.
74. Subotnick SI. Biomechanics of the subtalar and midtarsal joints. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1975;65(8):756–764.
75. Mueller MJ, Host JV, Norton BJ. Navicular drop as a composite measure of excessive pronation. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1993;83 (4):198–202.
76. Norkin C, Levangie P. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis.* Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 1983.
77. Dahle LK, Mueller M, Delitto A, et al. Visual assessment of foot type and relationship of foot type to lower extremity injury. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1991;14(2):70–74.
78. Close JR, Inman VT, Poor PM, et al. The function of the subtalar joint. *Clin Orthop.* 1967;50(1–2):159–179.
79. Donatelli R, Hurlbert C, Conaway D, et al. Biomechanical foot orthotics. A retrospective study. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1988;10 (6):205–212.
80. Inman VT, Rolston HJ, Todd F. *Human Walking.* Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1981.
81. Johnson MA, Donatelli R, Wooden M, et al. Effects of three different posting methods on controlling abnormal subtalar pronation. *Phys Ther.* 1994;74(2):149–161.
82. Schumacher HR. *Primer of the Rheumatoid Diseases.* 10th ed. Atlanta: The Arthritis Foundation; 1993.
83. Harper MC. Failed treatment and residual deformity of the midfoot and hindfoot. In: Sammarco JG, ed. *Foot and Ankle Manual*. Philadelphia: Lea &Febiger; 1991:212–213.
84. Boulton A. Diabetic neuropathy. In: Frykberg RG, ed. *The High Risk Foot in Diabetes Mellitus*. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1991:49–59.
85. Laughton C, Davis IM, Williams DS. A comparision of four methods of obtaining a negative impression of the foot. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2002;92:261–268.
86. Redford J. *Orthotics: Clinical Practice and Rehabilitation Technology.* Philadelphia: Churchill Livingston; 1995.
87. DiGiovanni CW, Greisberg J. *Foot and Ankle: Core Knowledge in Orthopedics.* Philadelphia: Mosby; 2007.
88. Carroll M, Annabell M, Rome K. Reliability of capturing foot parameters using digital scanning and the neutral suspension casting technique. *J Foot Ankle Res.* 2011;4:1–7.
89. Schrank ES, Stanhope SJ. Dimensional accuracy of ankle-foot orthoses constructed by rapid customization and manufacturing framework. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48:31–42.
90. Lee W, Lee C, Leung A, et al. Is it important to position foot in subtalar joint neutral position during non-weight-bearing molding for foot orthoses? *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2012;49(3):459–466.
91. Valmassy RL. Advantages and disadvantages of various casting techniques. *J Am Podiatry Assoc.* 1979;69(12):707–712.
92. McPoil TG, Schuit D, Knecht HG. Comparison of three methods used to obtain a neutral plaster foot impression. *Phys Ther.* 1989;69 (6):448–450.
93. Kirby KA. Troubleshooting functional foot orthoses. In: Valmassy RL, ed. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Lower Extremities*. St. Louis: Mosby–Year Book; 1996:327–348.
94. Philips JW. *The Functional Foot Orthosis.* Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone; 1995.
95. Blake RL, Ferguson H. Extrinsic rearfoot posts. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1992;82(4):202–207.
96. Blake RL, Ferguson HJ. Effect of extrinsic rearfoot posts on rearfoot position. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1993;83(8):202.
97. Brown GP, Donatelli R, Catlin PA, et al. The effects of two types of foot orthoses on rearfoot mechanics. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1995;21 (5):258–267.
98. Smith LS, Clarke TE, Hamill CL, et al. The effects of soft and semi-rigid orthoses upon movement in running. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1986;76(4):227–233.
99. Eng JJ, Pierrynowski MR. The effects of soft foot orthotics on three-dimensional lower-limb kinematics during walking and running. *Phys Ther.* 1994;74(9):836–844.
100. Eng JJ, Pierrynowski MR. Evaluation of soft foot orthotics in the treatment of patellofemoral pain syndrome. *Phys Ther.* 1993;73 (2):62–70.
101. Rodgers MM, Leveau BF. Effectiveness of foot orthotic devices used to modify pronation in runners. *J Occup Sports Phys Ther.* 1982;4 (2):86–90.
102. McPoil TG, Hunt GC. *An Evaluation and Treatment Paradigm for the Future in Physical Therapy of the Foot and Ankle.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1995:1–10.
103. Sobel E, Levitz SJ. Reappraisal of the negative impressioncast and subtalar joint neutral position. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1997;8 (1):32–33.
104. Payne CB. The past present and future of podiatric biomechanics. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1998;88(2):53–63.

105. Payne C, Chuter V. The clash between theory and science of kinematic effectiveness of foot orthoses. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg.* 2001;18 (4):705–713.
106. Lee WE. Podiatric biomechanics. A historical appraisal and discussion of the Root model as a clinical system of approach in the present context of theoretical uncertainty. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg.* 2001;18 (4):555–684.
107. Ball KA, Afheldt MJ. Evolution of foot orthotics-part 1: coherent theory or coherent practice. *J Manipulative Physiol Ther.* 2002;25 (2):116–124.
108. Ball KA, Afheldt MJ. Evolution of foot orthotics-part 2: research reshapes long-standing theory. *J Manipulative Physiol Ther.* 2002;25(2):125–134.
109. Payne CB, Bird AR. Teaching clinical biomechanics in the context of uncertainty. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1999;89(10):525–530.
110. Pierrynowski MR, Smith SB, Mlynarczyk JH. Proficiency of foot care specialists to place the rearfoot at subtalaneutral. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1996;86:217–223.
111. Cook A, Gorman I, Morris J. Evaluation of the neutral position of the subtalar joint. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1988;78:449–451.
112. Diamond JE, Mueller MJ, Delitto A, et al. Reliability of a diabetic foot evaluation. *Phys Ther.* 1989;69:797–802.
113. Wright DG, Desai SM, Henderson WH. Action of the subtalar joint and ankle joint complex during the stance phase of walking. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1964;46A:361–382.
114. Root ML, Orien WP, Weed JH, et al. *Biomechanical Examination of the Foot,* vol 1. Los Angeles: Clinical Biomechanics; 1971.
115. McPoil TG, Cornwall MW. Relationship between neutral subtalar joint position and pattern of rearfoot motion during walking. *Foot Ankle Int.* 1996;15:141–145.
116. Pierrynowski MR, Smith SB. Rear foot inversion/eversion during gait relative to the subtalar joint neutral position. *Foot Ankle Int.* 1996;17 (7):406–412.
117. Astrom M, Arvidson T. Alignment and joint motion in the normal foot. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1995;22(5):216–222.
118. Dicharry JM, Franz JR, Croce UD, et al. Differences in static and dynamic measures in evaluation of talonavicular mobility in gait. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2009;39(8):628–634.
119. Razeghi M, Batt ME. Biomechanical analysis of the effect of orthotic shoe inserts; review of the literature. *Sports Med.* 2000;29 (6):425–438.
120. Goffar SL, Reber RJ, Christiansen BC, et al. Changes in dynamic plantar pressure during loaded gait. *Physical Therapy.* 2013;93(9):1175–1184.
121. Tong JW, Kong PW. Association between foot type and lower extremity injuries: systematic literature review with meta-analysis. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2013;43(10):700–714.
122. Dahle LK, Mueller M, Delitto A, et al. Visual assessment of foot types and relationship of foot type to lower extremity injury. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1991;14(2):70–74.
123. Gross KD, Niu J, Zhang YQ, et al. Varus foot alignment and hip conditions in older adults. *Arthritis Rheum.* 2007;56(9):2993–2998.
124. Powers CM, Maffucci R, Hampton S. Rearfoot posture in subjects with patellofemoral pain. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1995;22(4):155–160.
125. Sommer HM, Vallentyne SW. Effect of foot posture on the incidence of medial tibial stress. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 1995;27(6):800–805.
126. Donatelli R, Wooden M, Ekedahl SR, et al. Relationship between static and dynamic foot postures in professional baseball players. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1999;29(6):316–330.
127. Cowan DN, Jones BH, Robinson JR. Medial longitudinal arch height and risk of training-associated injury. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 1989;21 (suppl):S60.
128. Cowan DN, Jones BH, Robinson JR. Foot morphology and alignment and risk of exercise-related injury in runners. *Arch Fam Med.* 1993;2:273–277.
129. Rooney BD, Derrick TR. Joint contact loading in forefoot and rearfoot strike patterns during running. *J Biomech.* 2013;46:2201–2206.
130. Almeida MO, Davis IS, Lopes AD. Biomechanical differences of foot-strike patterns during running: a systemic review with meta-analyis. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2015;45(10):738–755.
131. Daoud AI, Geissler GJ, Wang F, et al. Foot strike and injury rates in endurance runners: a retrospective study. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2012;44(7):1325–1334.
132. Goss DL, Gross MT. A comparison of negative joint work and vertical ground reaction force loading rates in Chi runners and rearfoot-striking runners. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2013;43 (10):685–689.
133. Kulmala J, Avela J, Pasanen K, et al. Forefoot strikers exhibit lower running-induced knee loading than rearfoot strikers. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2013;45(12):2306–2313.
134. Williams DS, Green DH, Wurzinger B. Changes in lower extremity movement and power absorption during forefoot striking and barefoot running. *Int J Sports Phys Ther.* 2012;7(5):525–532.
135. Diebal AR, Gregory R, Alitz C. Forefoot running improves pain and disability associated with chronic exertional compartment syndrome. *Am J Sports Med.* 2012;40(5):1060–1067.
136. SY Ahn, Bok K, Kim BO, et al. The effect of talus control foot orthoses in children with flexible flatfoot. *J Amer Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2017;107 (1):46–53.
137. Gabriner ML, Braun BA, Houston MN, et al. The effectiveness of foot orthotics in improving postural control in individuals with chronic ankle instability: a critically appraised topic. *J Sports Rehabil.* 2015;24:68–71.
138. Richter RR, Austin TM, Reinking MF. Foot orthoses in lower limb overuse conditions: a systematic review and meta-analysis-critcal appraisal and commentary. *J Athl Train.* 2011;46(1):103–106.
139. Novick A, Kelley D. Position and movement changes of the foot with orthotic intervention during the loading response of gait. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1990;11(7):301–312.
140. Bates BT, Osternig LR, Mason B, et al. Foot orthotic devices to modify selected aspects of lower extremity mechanics. *Am J Sports Med.* 1979;7:338–342.
141. Clark TE, Fredrick EC, Hlavac HF. Effects of a soft orthotic device on rearfoot movements in running. *Podiatr Sports Med.* 1983;1 (1):26–33.
142. MacLean C, Davis IM, Hamill J. Influence of a custom foot orthotic intervention on lower extremity dynamics in healthy runners. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2006;21(6):623–630.
143. Johanson MA, Donatelli R, Woodon MJ, et al. Effects of three different posting methods on controlling abnormal subtalar pronation. *Phys Ther.* 1994;74(2):149–161.
144. Genova JM, Gross MT. Effect of foot orthotics on calcaneal eversion during standing and treadmill walking for subjects with abnormal pronation. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2000;30(11):664–675.
145. Branthwaite HR, Payton CJ, Chockalingam N. The effect of simple insoles on three-dimensional foot motion during normal walking. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2004;19(9):972–977.
146. Brown GP, Donatelli R, Catlin PA, et al. The effect of two types of foot orthoses on rearfoot mechanics. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1995;21 (5):258–267.
147. Butler RJ, Davis IM, Laughton CM, et al. Dual-function foot orthosis: effect on shock and control of rearfoot motion. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2003;24(5):410–414.
148. Miller CD, Laskowski ER, Suman VJ. Effect of corrective rearfoot orthotic devices on ground reaction forces during ambulation. *Mayo Clin Proc.* 1996;71(8):757–762.
149. McPoil TG, Cornwall MW. The effect of foot orthoses on transverse tibial rotation during walking. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2000;90 (1):2–11.
150. Stacoff A, Reinschmidt C, Nigg BM, et al. Effects of foot orthotics on skeletal motion during running. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2000;15:54–64.
151. Joseph M, Tiberio D, Baird JL, et al. Knee valgus during drop jumps in National Collegiate Athletic Association Division I female athletes: the effect of a medical post. *Am J Sports Med.* 2008;36(2):285–289.
152. Tillman MD, Chiumento AB, Trimble MH, et al. Tibiofemoral rotation in landing: the influence of medially and laterally posted orthotics. *Phys Ther Sport.* 2003;4(1):34–39.
153. Nester CJ, van der Linden ML, Bowker P. Effect of foot orthoses on the kinematics and kinetics of normal walking gait. *Gait Posture.* 2003;17 (2):180–187.
154. Williams DS, Davis IM, Baitch SP. Effect of inverted orthosis on lower extremity mechanics in runners. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2003;35 (12):2960–2968.
155. Kuhn RD, Yochum TR, Cherry AR, et al. Immediate change in the quadriceps femoris angle after insertion of an orthotic device. *J Manipulative Physiol Ther.* 2002;25(70):465–470.
156. Stackhouse CL, Davis IM, Hamill J. Orthotic intervention in forefoot and rearfoot strike running patterns. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2004;19(1):64–70.
157. Nigg BM, Nurse MA, Stefanyshyn DJ. Shoe inserts and orthotics for sport and physical activities. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 1999;31(suppl 7):S421–S428.

158. Nigg BM. The role of impact forces and foot pronation: a new paradigm. *Clin J Sport Med.* 2001;11(1):2–9.
159. Mundermann A, Nigg BM, Humble RN, et al. Orthotic comfort is related to kinematics, kinetics, and EMG in recreational runners. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2003;35(10):1710–1719.
160. Mundermann A, Nigg BM, Humble RN, et al. Foot orthotics affect lower extremity kinematics and kinetics during running. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2003;18(3):254–262.
161. Hertel J, Sloss BR, Earl JE. Effect of foot orthotics on quadriceps and gluteus medius electromyographic activity during selected exercises. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;86(1):26–30.
162. Kulig K, Burnfield JM, Reishchl S, et al. Effect of foot orthoses on tibialis posterior activation in persons with pes planus. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2005;37(1):24–29.
163. Lack S, Barton C, Woledge R, et al. The immediate effects of foot orthoses on hip and knee kinematics and muscle activity during a functional step-up task in individuals with patellofemoral pain. *Clin Biomech.* 2014;29:1056–1062.
164. Bird AR, Bendrups AP, Payne CB. The effect of foot wedging on electromyographic activity in the erector spinae and gluteus medius muscles during walking. *Gait Posture.* 2003;18(2):81–91.
165. Dedieu P, Drigeard C, Gjini L, et al. Effects of foot orthoses on the temporal pattern of muscular activity during walking. *Clin Biomech.* 2013;28:820–824.
166. Vanicek KN, Kingman J, Hencken C. The effect of foot orthotics on myoelectric fatigue in the vastus lateralis during a simulated skiers squat. *J Electromyogr Kinesiol.* 2004;14(6):693–698.
167. Guskiewicz KM, Perrin DH. Effect of orthotics on postural sway following inversion ankle sprain. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1996;23 (5):326–331.
168. Hertel J, Denegar CR, Buckley WE, et al. Effect of rearfoot orthotics on postural control in healthy subjects. *J Sports Rehabil.* 2001; 100:36–47.
169. Hertel J, Denegar CR, Buckley WE, et al. Effect of rearfoot orthotics on postural sway after lateral ankle sprain. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82(7):1000–1003.
170. Gross MT, Mercer VS, Lin F. Effects of foot orthoses on balance in older adults. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2012;42(7):649–657.
171. Percy ML, Menz HB. Effects of prefabricated foot orthoses and soft insoles on postural stability in professional soccer players. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2001;91(4):194–202.
172. Olmsted LC, Hertel J. Influence of foot type and orthotics on static and dynamic postural control. *J Sports Rehabil.* 2004;13(1):54–66.
173. Rome K, Brown CL. Randomized clinical trial into the impact of rigid foot orthoses on balance parameters in excessively pronated feet. *Clin Rehabil.* 2004;18(6):624–630.
174. Burns J, Crosbie J, Ouvrier R, et al. Effective orthotic therapy for the painful cavus foot. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2006;96(3):205–211.
175. D'Ambrosia RD. Orthotic devices in running injuries. *Clin Sports Med.* 1985;4(4):611–619.
176. Donatelli R, Hulbert C, Conaway D, et al. Biomechanical foot orthotics: a retrospective study. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1988;10 (6):205–212.
177. Moraros J, Hodge W. Orthotic survey preliminary results. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1993;83(3):139–148.
178. Hume P, Hopkins W, Rome K, et al. Effectiveness of foot orthoses for treatment and prevention of lower limb injuries. *Sports Med.* 2008;38 (9):759–779.
179. Almonroeder TG, Benson LC, O'Connor KM. Changes in patellofemoral joint stress during running with the application of a prefabricated foot orthotic. *Int J Sports Phy Ther. 2015*;10(7):967–975.
180. Boldt AR, Willson JD, Barrios JA, et al. Effects of medially wedged foot orthoses on knee and hip joint running mechanics in females with and without patellofemoral pain syndrome. *J Appl Biomech.* 2013;29(1):68–77.
181. Johnston LB, Gross MT. Effects of foot orthoses on quality of life for individuals with patellofemoral pain syndrome. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2004;34(8):440–448.
182. Barton CJ, Bonanno D, Levinger P, et al. Foot and ankle characteristics in patellofemoral pain syndrome: A case control and reliability study. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2010;40(5):286–296.
183. Way MC. Effects of a thermoplastic foot orthosis on patellofemoral pain in a collegiate athlete: a single subject design. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 1999;29(6):331–338.
184. Saxena A, Haddad J. The effect of foot orthoses on patellofemoral pain syndrome. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2003;93(4):264–271.
185. Sutlive TG, Mitchell SD, Maxfield SN, et al. Identification of individuals with patellofemoral pain whose symptoms improved after a combined program of foot orthosis use and modified activity: a preliminary investigation. *Phys Ther.* 2004;84(1): 49–61.
186. Landorf KB, Keenan A, Herbert RD. Effectiveness of foot orthoses to treat plantar fasciitis. *Arch Intern Med.* 2006;166(12): 1305–1310.
187. Gross MT, Byers JM, Krafft JL, et al. The impact of custom semirigid foot orthotics on pain and disability for individuals with plantar fasciitis. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2002;32(4):149–157.
188. McClinton S, Collazo C, Vincent E, et al. Impaired foot plantar flexor muscle performance in individuals with plantar heel pain and association with foot orthosis use. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2016;46 (8):681–688.
189. Seligman DA, Dawson DR. Customized heel pads and soft orthotics to treat heel pain and plantar fasciitis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2003;84 (10):1564–1567.
190. Kilmartin TE, Wallace WA. Effect of pronation and supination orthosis on Morton's neuroma and lower extremity function. *Foot Ankle Int.* 1994;15(5):256–262.
191. Dananberg HJ, Guiliano M. Chronic low-back pain and its response to custom made foot orthoses. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 1999;89 (3):109–117.
192. Kopec JA, Esdaile JM, Abrahamowicz M, et al. The Quebec Back Pain Disability Scale: measurement properties. *Spine.* 1995;20(3):341–352.
193. Chuter V, Spink M, Searle A, et al. The effectiveness of shoe insoles for the prevention and treatment of low back pain: a systemic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord.* 2014;15:140.

9 Principles of Lower Extremity Orthoses

ERIC FOLMAR, HEATHER JENNINGS, and MICHELLE M. LUSARDI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Define the functional objectives (reasons) that an ankle-foot orthosis (AFO), knee-ankle-foot orthosis (KAFO), or hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis (HKAFO) would be prescribed for persons with mobility dysfunction.
2. Explain the evaluative process used to determine appropriate prescription for individuals requiring a lower extremity orthosis.
3. Describe the biomechanical control systems for foot, ankle, knee, and/or hip designed into an AFO, a KAFO, or an HKAFO.
4. Describe how each type of lower extremity orthosis is designed to enhance achievement of stance phase stability, swing limb clearance, limb prepositioning, adequate step length, and efficiency of gait.
5. Describe how each of the most commonly prescribed AFO, KAFO, and HKAFO designs affect transition through the rockers of stance and swing phase of gait.
6. Compare and contrast the indications and limitations of prefabricated, custom-fit, and custom-molded lower extremity orthoses.
7. Apply knowledge of normal and pathologic gait, assessment of impairment, and functional potential in the selection of an appropriate lower extremity orthosis for patients with neuromuscular impairments.
8. Identify effective strategies for donning/doffing the orthosis, gait and mobility training, and orthotic maintenance for children and adults using lower extremity orthoses.
9. Select appropriate outcome measures to evaluate effectiveness of orthotic intervention and gait training for persons using lower extremity orthoses.

There are many factors to consider when selecting a lower extremity orthosis for individuals with musculoskeletal or neuromuscular dysfunction who have difficulty with mobility and walking. An orthosis may be designed to substitute for impaired muscle performance in the presence of weakness to improve foot clearance in the swing phase of gait.[1] An orthosis may be used to provide stance phase stability and support to enhance alignment of limb segments when there is structural instability of one or more lower extremity joints.[2] An orthosis may be designed to limit joint motion or unload forces during weight bearing to allow healing after surgery or prevent injury to vulnerable joints.[3] For persons with impaired motor control and abnormal tone, orthoses may enhance mobility by minimizing the impact of abnormal movement associated with hypertonicity by positioning limb segments for optimal function.[4,5] Alternatively, an orthosis may be used to minimize the risk of development of bony deformity and contracture associated with long-standing hypertonicity, especially in growing children.[6] Given the many different reasons that an orthosis might be prescribed, there is no "one size fits all" option: Health professionals must clearly define what they want an orthosis to accomplish, consider its practicality and cost, and sort through the many options available to select the design and components that will best meet the patient's needs and goals.

This chapter systematically reviews the design and the pros and cons of AFOs, KAFOs, and HKAFOs as a means to improve mobility and function for children and adults with neuromuscular dysfunction. We will start with a quick review of the gait cycle and its "rockers" as a foundation for understanding how an orthosis can provide stance-phase stability or enhance swing phase mobility. Then we will compare and contrast the various AFO designs, discuss contemporary KAFO components and design, explore traditional HKAFOs and their uses, and finally consider orthotic options for reciprocal gait for patients with significant neuromuscular disease or disability. We will apply our growing understanding of lower extremity orthoses in problem-based cases for children and adults with cerebral palsy, and weakness due to spinal cord compression, multiple sclerosis, diabetic amyotrophy, and Guillain-Barré syndrome.

What Type of Orthosis is Best?

When an individual with neuromuscular or musculoskeletal dysfunction has difficulty with mobility and walking, decisions about orthotic options are best made by collaborative interaction within the framework of an interdisciplinary team.[7] Members of this team include the person who will be using the orthosis, his or her family members or caregivers, any physicians involved in his or her care (e.g., a neurologist, orthopedist, or physiatrist), the physical and occupational therapists who are likely to be involved in functional training, and the orthotist who will design, fabricate, deliver, and maintain the orthosis. The combined knowledge and skills of all members of the team ensures that the prescription will best match orthotic design to the patient's functional needs (Table 9.1).[8] If the team is not able to gather in one place as decisions are being made, there must be effective strategies for communication in place so that each team member can contribute his or her unique perspective about why an orthosis is indicated and how the orthosis will facilitate the individual's functional ability.

Physical therapists examine the patient to provide information about muscle performance and motor control, range of motion, alignment of the limbs, and the gait cycle, with attention to both primary impairments and the compensation strategies the individual uses while walking, as well as how the orthosis might impact biomechanically on other daily motor tasks (e.g., a child's ability to get up and down from the floor).[9] Physicians bring to the team an understanding of the specific disease or disorder that the patient is dealing with, including the condition's natural history and likely prognosis, types of secondary musculoskeletal problems that are commonly encountered, and any cognitive, developmental, or multisystem involvement that may be associated with the disease.[10] Family members and the individual needing the orthosis are concerned with practical issues, such as who will be responsible for applying (donning) or removing (doffing) the device and the ease with which this can be accomplished, as well as information about the types of activities that the individual wants to be involved in while using the orthosis (lifestyle and leisure activities).[11] The orthotist uses knowledge of materials and biomechanics, information provided by team and family members, and results of the individual's physical examination to design and fabricate the orthosis that will best address the mobility problem that needs to be solved.[9]

The team must not overlook the significant contribution of the individual and caregiver in the prescription process.

Table 9.1 Components of the Preorthotic Prescription Examination Organized by ICF Categories

ICF Category	Domain		Concerns
Body structure and function	Joint integrity and stability		Ligamentous instability, joint deformity
	Range of motion		Soft tissue contracture, joint deformity
	Limb length and alignment		Rotational deformity, unequal limb length
	Muscle length		Fixed versus modifiable contracture
	Overall flexibility		Ability to don/doff; impact of orthosis on trunk, back
	Motor control		Quality of voluntary motion
	Muscle tone		Flaccidity, hypotonicity, hypertonicity, fluctuating tone
	Muscle performance		Strength, power, endurance
	Involuntary movement		Impact on tolerance of orthosis
	Coordination		Ability to don/doff
	Somatosensory function		Ability to detect skin irritation/damage
	Perceptual function		Ability to don/doff
	Upper extremity function		Ability to don/doff
	Postural control, balance		Ability to don/doff
	Visual function		Ability to perform skin checks, don/doff
	Cognitive function		Understanding of how to use orthosis
	Cardiovascular endurance		Ability to functionally use orthosis
Activity level	Gait analysis	Observational	Primary gait problems and compensations
		Kinematic	Primary gait problems and compensations
		Kinetic	Impact of orthosis on moment throughout gait cycle
		Energetics	Impact of orthosis on physical work of walking
		Assistive device	Safe function with orthosis and assistive device
		Various surfaces	Impact of resistance, unstable surface on gait
	Transitions	Sit to/from stand	Preparing to walk and returning to seated position
		To/from floor	Activities on the floor (especially for children/play)
		Managing falls	How to protect self and recover from fall
		Inclines/stairs	Degree of mobility in home and public environment
	Activities of daily living	Donning/doffing	Will assistance be necessary? Who will provide help?
		Self-care	How will orthosis impact on self-care ability?
		Toileting	Will orthosis need to be removed to use the bathroom?
		Dressing	Ability to manage clothes and shoes
Participation level	Home		Ability to take part in family activities, roles
	School		Mobility in classroom, hallways, outside play areas
	Work		Mobility in entrance, workspace, common areas
	Leisure		Mobility over surfaces, use of tools/devices
	Transportation		Ability to drive, use public transportation

ICF, The World Health Organization's International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health.

The use of an orthosis enhances, as well as constrains, lower limb function; for example, it requires considerable adjustment on the part of the person who will be wearing the orthosis. An understanding of the individual's or the caregiver's expectations about what the orthosis will accomplish is a key component of orthotic prescription and training. Discussion and education about what an orthosis will and will not do for the wearer can minimize potential mismatch of expectation versus actual outcome. Acceptance and functional use of the orthosis depend on just how well it meets identified needs and goals, as well as the cost of its use in terms of inconvenience and disruption of lifestyle.[12]

Careful consideration of the individual's diagnosis is also critical when selecting materials and designing the orthosis. Questions that the team should consider during the decision-making process include: Can we reasonably expect that an individual's musculoskeletal or neuromuscular status is stable and likely to remain the same over time? Does the disease typically have a progressive course, such that decline in function is anticipated over time? Or, as in the case of traumatic injury, will the person's condition and functional ability improve with time as healing occurs? What can be expected in terms of muscle function and strength, range of motion and joint function, and functional mobility and gait over time? How might growth and developmental status influence future orthotic needs? All of these must be accounted for in the design of the orthosis.

The selection of any orthotic device must include careful consideration of four factors:

1. The *advantages* or positive outcomes expected when using the orthosis (i.e., how it will improve mobility and gait, influence tone, or protect a limb or body segment).
2. Any disadvantages or *concessions* that may be associated with its use (i.e., the ways in which it may complicate daily activity, mobility, or preferred activities; the energy cost associated with its use; the relative expense of the device).
3. The *indications* that the orthosis may be useful to the individual (i.e., the match between the person's characteristics and needs and what the orthosis will provide).
4. The circumstances or characteristics of the individual that make use of the device detrimental or *contraindicated*.

Consideration of these four factors guides clinical decision-making when comparing and contrasting the various options for lower extremity orthoses. Characteristics of an ideal orthosis are summarized in Box 9.1.

To help an individual use the orthosis most effectively, the physical therapist must understand how the orthosis should fit with respect to its design (i.e., what are the optimal trim lines?) and force control systems (how does it act on the limb segments?) (Box 9.2). Every orthosis uses force applied to the limb to accomplish the goals of its design. An orthosis is most comfortable and effective when (Fig. 9.1):

1. The forces are distributed over large surface areas to minimize pressure on skin and soft tissue.
2. The forces are applied in such a way that a large moment arm reduces the amount of force needed to control the joint.
3. The sum of the primary force and opposing counterforces of each control system equals zero.

Box 9.1 Characteristics of an Ideal Orthosis

Function

- Meets the individual's mobility needs and goals
- Maximizes stance phase stability
- Minimizes abnormal alignment
- Minimally compromises swing clearance
- Effectively prepositions the limb for initial contact
- Is energy efficient with the individual's preferred assistive device

Comfort

- Can be worn for long periods without damaging skin or causing pain
- Can be easily donned and doffed (e.g., considering clothing, footwear, toileting)

Cosmesis

- Meets the individual's need to fit in with peers

Fabrication

- Can be made in the shortest period of time
- Uses a minimally complex design
- Has some degree of adjustability to enhance initial fitting
- For children, responds to growth or change over time
- Is durable: stands up to stresses/strains of daily activity

Cost

- Can be made with minimal initial cost and minimal cost for maintenance

Box 9.2 Principles Underlying Control Systems in Orthotic Design

1. Pressure = Force/Area
2. Torque = Force × Distance
3. Control direction of primary force and direction of counterforces
4. Equilibrium Σforces = 0

Determinants of Functional Gait

There are five factors that influence how well an individual is able to walk.[13] The first is *stance-phase stability*: The limb in contact with the ground must be stable enough to support body weight and respond to the ground reaction forces (GRFs) as the individual moves through stance phase. The second is *clearance in swing*: The advancing limb must clear the ground adequately during swing phase to minimize risk of stumbling and trips. Swing limb clearance is influenced by the ability to maintain a level pelvis by stance limb abductor muscles, as well as by action of the hip, knee flexors, and dorsiflexors of the swing limb as they relatively shorten the length of the swinging limb. The third is *swing phase prepositioning*: By the end of swing, the foot about to contact the ground must be positioned for an effective initial contact and loading response as stance begins. The fourth is *adequate step length*: There must be adequate motor control and range of motion at the hip, knee, ankle, and forefoot of both limbs so that optimal step length can occur. The fifth is *energy conservation*: If there are problems with timing, muscle performance, coordination, or postural control during the gait

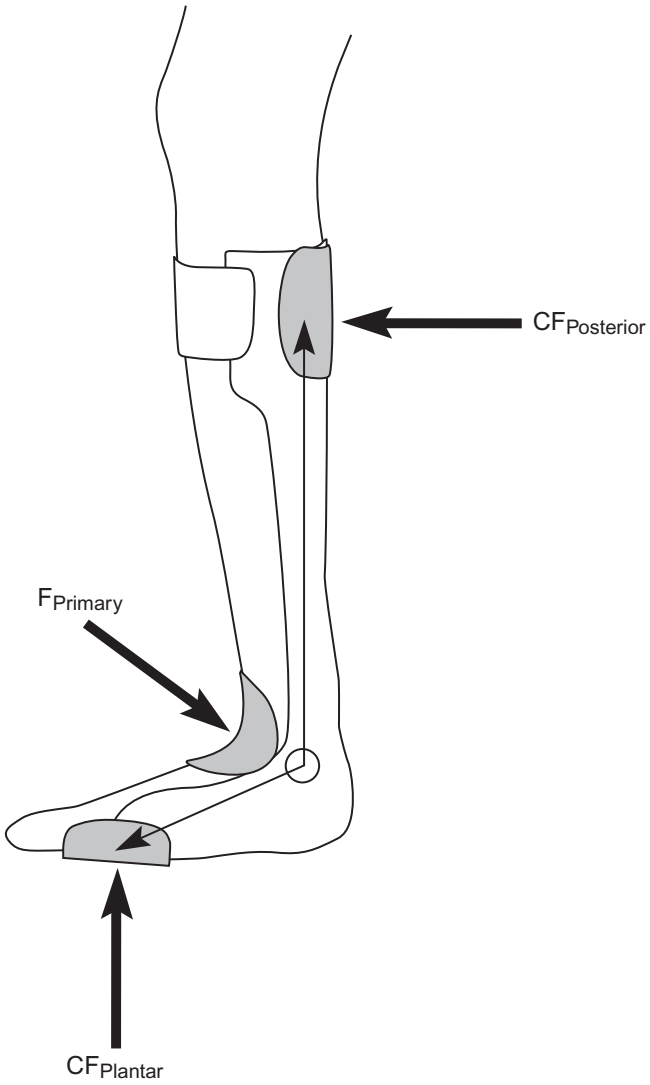


Fig. 9.1 Principles underlying the plantarflexion control system acting during swing phase in a rigid/solid ankle-foot orthosis. The large primary force *($F_{Primary}$)* is applied in a posterior-inferior direction over a large surface area (stippled area) anterior to the axis of the ankle joint, usually by the shoe's closure or reinforced by webbing across the anterior ankle. The two counterforces, applied in an upward *($CF_{Plantar}$)* and anterior *($CF_{Posterior}$)* direction, also over a large surface area, far from the axis of the ankle joint, create an effective moment arm so that less force is required to achieve the desired stabilization. The sum of the primary *(large arrow)* and two opposing counterforces *(small arrows)* is zero in a well-balanced orthosis.

cycle, the energy cost of walking rises substantially, and efficiency of ambulation is compromised.

If neuromuscular or musculoskeletal dysfunction substantially interferes with these determinants, functional ambulation may be an unrealistic goal without an appropriate orthosis. Refer to Chapter 5 for greater detail about characteristics of the normal and pathologic gait cycle.

Rockers of Stance Phase

Orthotists describe three transitional periods, or rockers, during stance phase of walking as the body progresses forward over the foot (Fig. 9.2).[14] During the *first (heel) rocker*, there is a controlled lowering of the foot from neutral ankle position at initial contact to a plantarflexed flat foot, as well as acceptance of body weight on the limb during loading response. When motor control and muscle performance is efficient, eccentric contraction of the quadriceps and anterior tibialis prevents "foot slap" and protects the knee as GRF is translated upward toward the knee. In the *second (ankle) rocker*, the tibia begins to rotate over the weight-bearing foot, from its initial 10 degrees of plantarflexion at the end of loading response, then through vertical into dorsiflexion as midstance is completed. Eccentric contraction of the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles "puts on the brakes" to control the speed of the forward progression of the tibia over the fixed foot throughout midstance. At the start of the *third (toe) rocker*, the forefoot has converted from its mobile adaptor function of early stance to a rigid lever for an effective late stance, and the heel rises off the ground so that body weight has to roll over the first metatarsophalangeal joint through push-off in terminal stance. During fast walking and running, acceleration occurs as active contraction of the gastrocnemius-soleus complex propels the foot and leg into swing phase.

All lower extremity orthoses provide some degree of external stability to foot and ankle joints; as a result, the smooth transition through the rockers of stance phase is often compromised.[15] Disruption of forward progression during stance negatively impacts step length, cadence, and single limb support time.[14] The optimal orthotic prescription must balance the need to provide external support with the possible compromise on forward progression and mobility: The orthotist strives to select an orthotic design that provides minimum necessary stability so that mobility will be the least compromised.[15] In many instances, modifications of footwear, such as the addition of a cushion heel (which simulates controlled lowering of the foot in loading response) or a rocker bottom sole (which simulates forward progression of the tibia over the foot throughout midstance), can substitute to some degree for the mobility lost when external control is necessary.[16] The rehabilitation team must weigh the impact of stability provided by an orthosis on progression through stance and its impact on a patient's functional status: At times, compromise is unavoidable if the patient's functional deficits are to be addressed effectively.

Prefabricated, Custom Fit, or Custom Molded?

How does the team determine whether an individual would benefit from a relatively less expensive prefabricated orthosis versus a more costly (in both time and money) custom-molded orthosis designed specifically for the person? There are a number of factors to consider in making this decision.

The effectiveness of an AFO is determined by to the intimacy and consistency of its fit. Intimacy of contact between limb and orthosis is best achieved in custom-molded designs.

Mass-manufactured, prefabricated orthoses are available in a wide spectrum of orthotic designs, by shoe size, and made of a number of different materials. The degree to which they can be modified or adjusted to fit an individual varies; this may be problematic for persons with foot deformity, extremely wide or narrow feet, large calf muscles, sensory impairments, or variable limb volume. They are

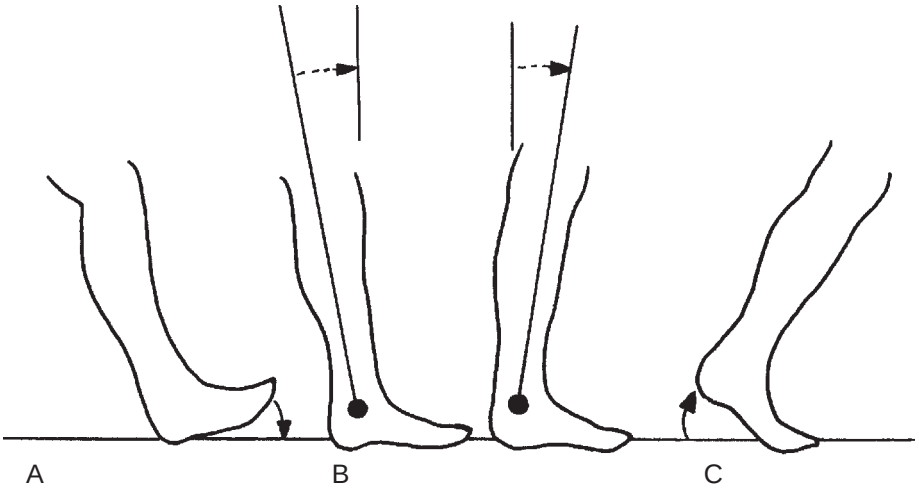


Fig. 9.2 Three transitional rocker periods occur as the body moves forward over the foot during stance. (A) During first rocker, the transition from swing into early stance, controlled lowering of the forefoot occurs, with a fulcrum at the heel. (B) During second rocker, controlled forward progression of the tibia over the foot occurs, with motion of the talocrural joint of the ankle. (C) In the third rocker, transition from stance toward swing occurs as the heel rises, with dorsiflexion of the metatarsophalangeal joints.

attractive to payers because they are significantly less expensive than custom-fit or custom-molded orthoses. However, many rehabilitation professionals are not satisfied with the ability of a prefabricated orthosis to provide optimal external support and control of motion over time: Durability is directly related to the quality of material used and by the lack of intimate fit to an individual's limb. Even a minimal amount of pistoning or heel elevation within the orthosis during walking can lead to skin irritation or breakdown and, in the presence of hypertonicity, an increase of underlying abnormal extensor tone. Therapists may opt to use a trial run with prefabricated orthoses as an evaluative tool to determine which orthotic design might best meet the patient's needs during the time that a custom orthotic is being prepared or when the patient's condition requires use of an orthosis for only a short time period[17] or when the patient condition is unstable. Because prefabricated orthoses do not fit the foot intimately, they should be used with extreme caution in persons with neuropathic foot conditions whose ability to perceive soft tissue irritation and damage is compromised.[18]

Another alternative is a manufactured orthosis that is then custom fit using heating or relieving techniques or the application of additional materials to obtain as close a fit to the individual's foot and limb as possible. Although custom-fit orthoses provide better control than similar prefabricated versions, they are not as effective in terms of fit and function as a custom-molded orthosis.[19] Custom-fit orthoses may be appropriate when change in functional status (either improvement or deterioration) is anticipated, such that the orthosis will need to be replaced or adjusted frequently.

Custom-molded orthoses provide the optimal control of the limb and, because of their intimate fit, are especially important for patients with impaired sensation, significant hypertonicity, or risk of progressive deformity associated with their condition. The orthotist constructs the orthosis around a rectified model of the person's limb, ensuring adequate pressure relief over vulnerable areas (i.e., bony prominences) and building in the desired stabilizing forces based on the orthotic prescription.[20] Refer to Chapter 6 for more details about the process of fabrication.

The only true contraindication of a custom-molded thermoplastic design is significantly fluctuating limb size associated with conditions that lead to edema of the braced extremity.[21] When limb size fluctuates, intimacy of custom-molded fit is lost: When the limb is at its lowest volume, excessive movement of the limb within the orthosis occurs, compromising orthotic control and increasing risk of skin irritation and damage. When the limb is significantly edematous, the AFO may become constricting, leading to pressure-related problems. For persons with congestive heart failure, advanced kidney disease on dialysis, or other conditions associated with unpredictable fluctuation in limb volume, the total contact of a custom-molded orthosis may be inappropriate and a conventional double upright orthotic design should be considered.

Appropriate Footwear

Whether the decision is to use a prefabricated, custom-fit, or custom-molded orthosis, the ultimate ability of the AFO to meet its therapeutic goals depends on the type and condition of the individual's footwear.[16] Refer to Chapter 7 for more information about key characteristics of shoes worn with an orthosis. Recognition of the need to consider footwear is not always intuitive to the individual, caregivers, or health professionals working on improving the ability to ambulate. It may be necessary for the individual to wear a shoe that is one-half to a whole size larger to accommodate an orthosis; a shoe that is too short or too tight can interfere with the biomechanical function of the orthosis. Shoe closure of an Oxford-style or athletic shoe (whether tied with laces or closed with Velcro) often provides the diagonally directed force that stabilizes the calcaneus in the heel cup of the orthosis; if the calcaneus moves out of position during walking, the effectiveness of orthotic control is compromised. Loafer-type shoes and most sandals do not provide adequate stabilizing forces during the stance phase of gait.

Although most thermoplastic AFO designs allow individuals to alternate among several pairs of shoes, changing heel heights dramatically alters the biomechanical function of the orthosis. The orthotist and therapist share responsibility for patient and family education about appropriate footwear, monitoring shoe condition to assess impact of wear and tear on its construction and stability, as well as ongoing evaluation of the effectiveness of the orthosis in meeting the individual's functional needs over time.

Ankle-Foot Orthoses

AFOs are, by far, the most frequently prescribed device used to control the lower extremity during each phase of the gait cycle for individuals with neuromuscular or musculoskeletal impairments that make walking difficult. It is important to note that the acronyms used to name lower extremity orthoses describe joints that are positioned within the orthosis. In reality, AFOs also effectively address stability of the knee joint (proximal to the orthosis) during stance.[22]

AFOs fall into two categories: *static orthoses* that prohibit motion in any plane at the ankle (e.g., solid AFO [SAFO], anterior floor reaction AFO, patellar tendon–bearing [PTB]/weight-relieving AFO). In contrast, *dynamic orthoses* allow some degree of sagittal plane motion at the ankle (e.g., posterior leaf spring [PLS] or spiral AFOs, articulating SAFOs). Whether static or dynamic, the primary goal of an AFO is to provide just enough external support for stability in stance and clearance in swing with minimal compromise of forward progression through the heel, ankle, and toe rockers of gait.[15] The actions, indications, and contraindications for the various AFO designs are summarized in Table 9.2.

Table 9.2 Summary of Indications for, Impact on Gait of, and Contraindications for Commonly Prescribed Lower Extremity Orthoses

Type of Orthosis	Category	Actions	Indications	Contraindications	Options
UCBL orthosis	Static	Stabilize subtalar and tarsal joints in stance	Rearfoot valgus/varus Flexible pes planus	Rigid foot deformity	Thermoplastic Gillette modification
DAFO	Dynamic	Stabilize subtalar and tarsal joints in stance	Flexible pes planus Mild to moderate spastic diplegic or hemiplegic CP Hypotonic CP	Rigid foot deformity	Thermoplastic
Supramalleolar	Dynamic	Stabilize subtalar and tarsal joints in stance Preposition foot for IC by heel	Flexible pes planus Mild to moderate spastic diplegic or hemiplegic CP Hypotonic CP	Significant equinovarus hypertonicity	Thermoplastic
Posterior Leaf Spring	Dynamic	Assist limb clearance in swing Preposition foot for IC by heel	Dorsiflexion weakness, impaired motor control, LMN flaccid paralysis of dorsiflexors	Moderate to severe hypertonicity	Thermoplastic
Carbon Graphite AFO	Dynamic	Assist limb clearance in swing preposition foot for IC by heel	Paralysis or impaired muscle performance of dorsiflexors	Moderate to severe hypertonicity	Custom or prefabricated
Neuro-orthoses	Dynamic	Assist limb clearance in swing Preposition foot for IC by heel	Dorsiflexion weakness or low tone	Flaccid paralysis Patient intolerance of electrical stimulation	Functional electrical stimulation
Articulating ankle	Dynamic	Assist limb clearance in swing Preposition foot for IC by heel Permit advancement of tibia (2nd rocker) in stance	Impaired motor control of ankle musculature Potential for recovery of neuromotor function	LMN paralysis (flaccidity) or hypotonicity as primary problem	Thermoplastic or metal double upright Dorsiflexion assist Plantarflexion stop Adjustable range into dorsiflexion can be incorporated Often requires shoe with cushion heel
SAFO	Static	Control ankle position throughout stance Provide stance phase stability via ankle-knee coupling Assist limb clearance in swing Preposition foot for IC by heel Distal trim line behind metatarsal heads or extended toeplate	Significant hypertonicity with seriously impaired motor control at ankle and knee	LMN paralysis (flaccidity) or hypotonicity as primary problem	Thermoplastic Basis for KAFO and HKAFO Requires cushion heel and rocker bottom shoe
Tone-inhibiting AFO	Static	Control ankle position throughout stance Provide stance phase stability via ankle-knee coupling Typically extended toeplate	Significant hypertonicity with seriously impaired motor control	LMN paralysis (flaccidity) or hypotonicity as primary problem	Thermoplastic, Basis for KAFO and HKAFO Requires cushion heel and rocker bottom shoe

Continued on following page

Table 9.2 Summary of Indications for, Impact on Gait of, and Contraindications for Commonly Prescribed Lower Extremity Orthoses (Continued)

Type of Orthosis	Category	Actions	Indications	Contraindications	Options
Anterior floor reaction AFO	Static	Provide stability in stance via ankle-knee coupling Control ankle position throughout stance	Weakness or impaired motor control at knee and ankle	Ligamentous insufficiency at the knee Genu recurvatum	Thermoplastic or carbon composite Custom made or custom fit
Weight-relieving AFO	Static	Protect lower leg and foot during stance by reducing weight bearing forces.	Healing soft tissue, ligamentous, or bone injuries of the lower leg, ankle, or foot	Mechanical instability of the knee, or injury to proximal tibia Patient intolerance of PTB weight-bearing forces (rare)	Thermoplastic and metal hybrid Custom or prefabricated

AFO, Ankle-foot orthosis; *CP,* cerebral palsy; *DAFO,* dynamic ankle-foot orthosis; *IC,* initial contact; *HKAFO,* hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis; *KAFO,* knee-ankle-foot orthosis; *LMN,* lower motor neuron; *PTB,* patellar tendon–bearing; *UCBL,* University of California Biomechanics Laboratory orthosis.

BIOMECHANICAL PRINCIPLES

The biomechanical principles of AFOs are founded on the functional anatomy of the ankle-foot complex. Dorsiflexion and plantarflexion of the ankle are multiplanar (i.e., movement occurs in all three planes of motion) as the talus rotates through the mortise of the ankle in both open chain movement and when the mortise moves over a relatively fixed (weight-bearing) talus in a closed chain movement.[23] The proximal surface of the mortise is shaped by the syndesmosis (fibrous articulation) between the distal tibia and fibula. The medial wall of the talocrural joint is formed by the medial malleolus, a downward extension of the tibia. The lateral wall, formed by the lateral malleolus of the fibula, is both longer and shifted posteriorly. Because of the shape of the articular surfaces of the talus in its mortise and the offset position of the malleoli, the axis of the ankle joint is slightly oblique, running in an anteromedial to posterolateral direction. As a result, dorsiflexion is accompanied by some degree of forefoot pronation and abduction along with hind foot valgus. Plantarflexion is accompanied by forefoot supination with adduction and hind foot varus. Note that during stance, movement occurs in a closed chain situation because the foot is fixed on the ground by weight-bearing forces, so that the mortise rolls over the head of the talus.

If an AFO has mechanical ankle joints, the axis of the mechanical joints should be aligned as closely as possible to the obliquely oriented anatomic axis of motion (Fig. 9.3). The mechanical joint heads are placed at approximately midline of the malleoli in the sagittal plane. This strategy reduces the likelihood of abnormal torque and shearing between the orthosis and limb as the individual wearing the orthosis walks. When there is incongruence between the anatomic and mechanical axes, excessive motion of the limb within the orthoses is likely, and action of the mechanical ankle joint is compromised.

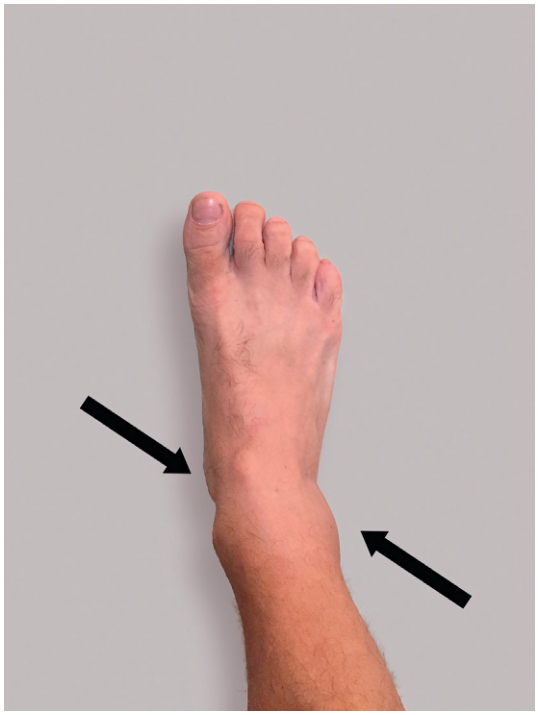


Fig. 9.3 Alignment of the mechanical ankle joint axes must reflect the degree of external rotation/tibial torsion that is present in the transverse plane.

Static Ankle-Foot Orthoses

Static AFOs are the most aggressive of the AFO designs in providing external support. They restrict ankle and foot motion in all three planes to provide significant stance-phase stability and swing limb clearance. However, because of their rigidity, these orthoses greatly compromise transitions through the first (heel), second (ankle), and, to less degree, third (toe) rockers of stance phase. Individuals using static AFOs do better functionally wearing a shoe with a cushion heel and rocker bottom to simulate these key transitions. The decision to recommend a static AFO should be made carefully, weighing the benefit of greater stability against the cost of lost mobility.

SOLID ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSES

The SAFO, also known as a rigid AFO, is typically fabricated from relatively thick thermoplastic and aims to hold the ankle and foot in as close to biomechanically neutral position (zero degrees of ankle dorsiflexion, subtalar and calcaneal neutral, with a balanced forefoot) as possible given the individual's functional anatomy.[24] The anteroposterior trim line of the SAFO falls at or near the midline of the medial and

Fig. 9.4 Custom-molded, solid ankle-foot orthosis holds the ankle in as close to optimal static alignment as possible for a given patient. Mediolateral ankle stability is a result of trim lines at the midline of the malleoli. The crossed Velcro strap anterior to the ankle helps to position the rear foot appropriately within the heel section of the orthosis.

lateral malleolus (Fig. 9.4). Medial and lateral corrugations may be incorporated into the shell of the orthosis to provide additional strength when hypertonicity or excessive weight creates loading forces that require a stronger orthosis. The proximal border is typically trimmed to fall 1½ inches below the apex of the head of the fibula for protection of the common peroneal nerve. The footplate is either trimmed just short of the plantar metatarsal heads or can be lengthened beyond the metatarsal distally into a toeplate if greater stability is required or hypertonicity is a concern.[4] Some orthotists recommend the addition of a tone-inhibiting bar if hypertonicity is severe.[25] There is a tradeoff to consider if the footplate is lengthened: It is much easier to fit into and put on shoes with a shorter footplate; assistance may be necessary to don shoes when the SAFO has a full toeplate.

SOLID ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSES CONTROL SYSTEMS

There are four distinct control systems incorporated into the SAFO design (Fig. 9.5). To resist plantarflexion during swing phase, there is a fulcrum force applied at the anterior ankle (by strapping or by the shoe's laces or Velcro closure) opposed by a distal counterforce upward under the metatarsal heads and a proximal counterforce at the posterior proximal surface of the AFO. To resist dorsiflexion during stance phase, there is an upward and inward compressive force at the posterior heel, opposed by a distal downward counterforce delivered by the shoe, and a proximal force applied by the anterior closure straps just below the knee. It is important to note that the locked ankle created by an AFO generates an extensor moment at the knee during stance. In this way, an SAFO can substitute for impaired motor control or muscle performance of knee extensors for persons with stroke, cerebral palsy, or other neuromotor dysfunction.

To resist varus and inversion of the foot, a medially directed force is applied just above and below the lateral malleolus, with laterally directed counterforces at the proximal medial tibia and the medial foot. To resist valgus and eversion of the foot, there is a laterally directed force applied above and below the medial malleolus, with medially directed counterforces just below the fibular head proximally and at the lateral foot distally.

The degree of control for the foot is also influenced by the position of the trim lines of the foot section. When there is midtarsal joint deformity with forefoot abduction or adduction to contend with, trim lines are adjusted to capture the shafts of the first and fifth metatarsals. If there is too much subtalar valgus, the height of the medial wall is increased, and a flange might be placed proximal to the medial malleolus. These strategies provide greater surface area for distribution of corrective forces applied by the orthosis so that the patient is more comfortable with the external stability it provides. If knee hyperextension at midstance is a problem for individuals with impaired motor control, the orthotist might fabricate the SAFO set in just a couple of degrees of ankle dorsiflexion, rather than neutral, to minimize excessive extension moment and preserve knee joint health over time. A Gillette modification can be added to the outer medial or lateral surface of the heel cup to influence excessive valgus or varus moment at the knee joint during stance. A medial or lateral post (similar to those used in a biomechanical foot orthosis) can be incorporated into the foot section to equalize forefoot to rearfoot relationships or to enhance biomechanical effects on the knee.

Progression Through Stance Phase

The SAFO biomechanically interferes with transitions through all three rockers of gait in stance phase because of the fixed ankle position inherent in the design.

The orthosis prevents the controlled lowering of the foot that usually occurs in the ankle/first rocker during loading response. If the shoe does not have a compressive cushion heel to mimic controlled lowering, the orthosis propels the tibia rapidly to achieve foot-flat position. The individual wearing the orthosis needs some eccentric ability of the quadriceps to counteract the rapid knee flexion moment that accompanies the SAFOs propulsive force acting on the tibia. This is especially true if the SAFO has been set in a few degrees of dorsiflexion to minimize risk of knee hyperextension in early stance.

The proximal anterior strapping used to hold the limb in the upper part of the SAFO acts with the fixed ankle position to prevent forward progression of the tibia over the weight-bearing foot during the second/ankle rocker that typically occurs during midstance. If the individual's shoe does not have rocker bottom characteristics, this check of forward momentum compromises effective preparation for push-off and transition from stance into swing phase and necessarily shortens stride length achieved by the swinging limb.

In nonpathologic gait, there are 60 degrees of extension at the hallux during the third, or toe, rocker of gait. For

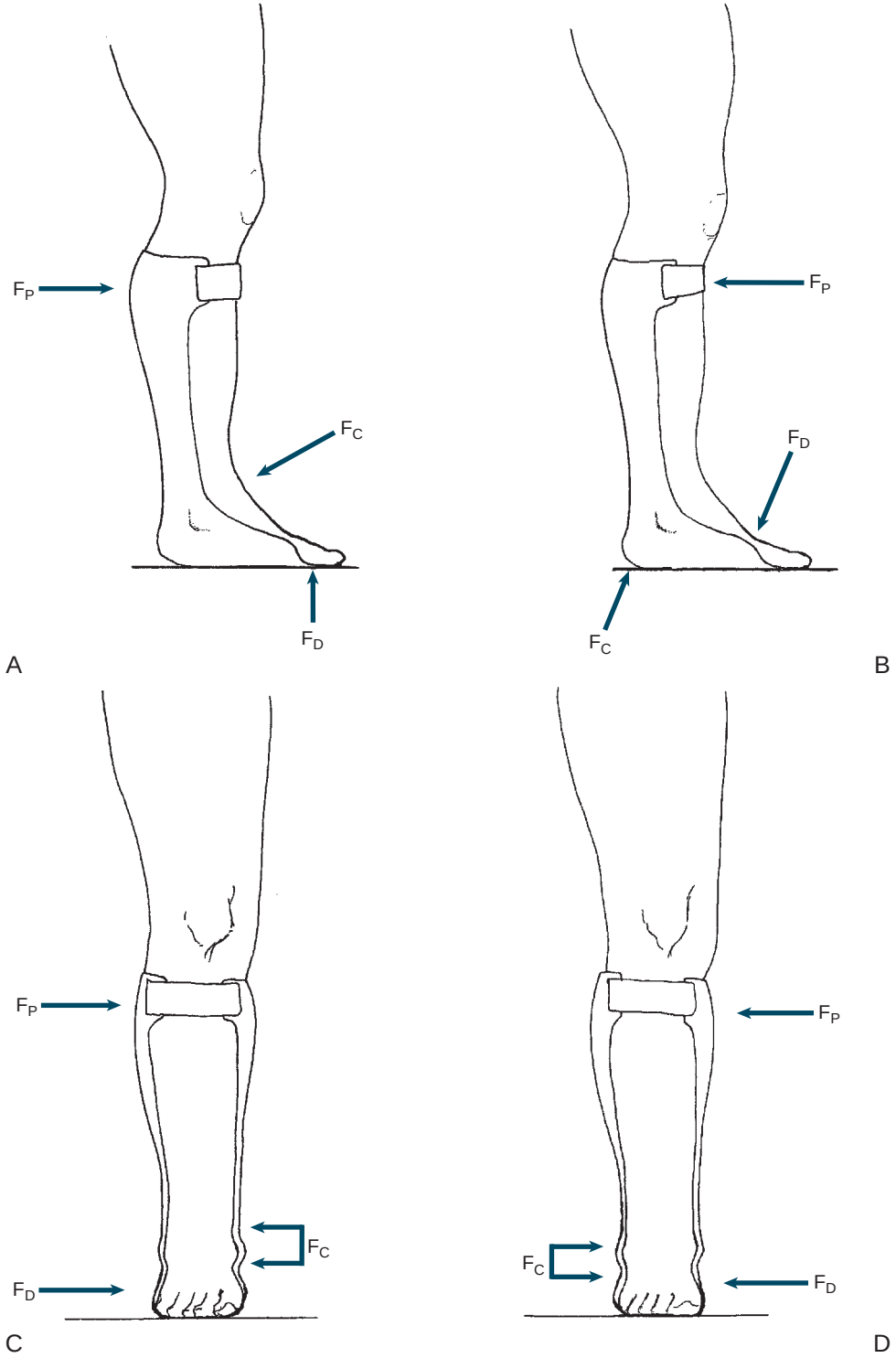


Fig. 9.5 The four force systems in a molded thermoplastic solid ankle-foot orthosis design. (A) Plantarflexion is controlled during swing phase by a proximal force *(F_P)* at the posterior calf band and a distal force at the metatarsal heads *(F_D)* that counter a centrally located stabilizing force *(F_C)* applied at the ankle by shoe closure. (B) For control of dorsiflexion during stance phase (i.e., forward progression of the tibia over the foot), F_P is applied at the proximal tibia by the anterior closure, F_D at the ventral metatarsal heads by the toe box of the shoe, and counterforce F_C at the heel, snugly fit in the orthosis. (C) The force system for eversion (valgus) locates F_D along the fifth metatarsal, F_P at the proximal lateral calf band, and F_C on either side of the malleolus. (D) To control inversion (varus) of the foot and ankle, F_D is applied by the distal medial wall of the orthosis against the first metatarsal, F_P at the proximal medial calf band, and F_C at the distal lateral tibia and calcaneus/talus on either side of the lateral malleolus.

persons wearing a SAFO with a footplate that extends into a stiff toeplate, the third/toe rocker of the foot will certainly be limited. A shoe with rocker bottom characteristics can assist a smoother rollover when extension of the hallux is limited.

INDICATIONS FOR SOLID ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSES

The SAFO design is often selected for individuals with moderate to severe hypertonicity where equinovarus

significantly impairs the ability to walk.[4,26-28] It may also be used for persons with unpredictable fluctuating muscle tone (athetosis) to provide external stability that makes ambulation possible in the presence of unpredictable variation in antigravity tone.[28] It may be recommended for persons with significant generalized lower extremity weakness or significant hypotonicity, providing external support as a substitute for impaired muscle performance that would otherwise prevent ambulation.[29,30] In both of these circumstances the SAFO is a substitute for severely impaired muscle activity. A custom-molded SAFO has also been used to protect the foot and ankle in the management of orthopedic conditions.[31]

ANTERIOR FLOOR REACTION ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSIS

All static AFO designs use moments that result from the GRF to provide stability during stance. An orthosis that has evolved from the basic SAFO design to better address impaired motor control of the knee and weakness of the quadriceps is the anterior floor reaction orthosis (FRO)[32,33] (Fig. 9.6A to D). The FRO is fabricated to hold the ankle in a few degrees of plantarflexion. This restricts the ability of the tibia to roll forward over the foot in the second/ankle rocker of gait, creating an extensor moment that stabilizes the knee during stance (Fig. 9.7A to C). If stability is also needed in late stance phase, a stiff toeplate can be added to reinforce the extension moment at the knee. The FRO and SAFO use the same force systems to control foot and ankle position. Whether the FRO is fabricated in a single piece (see Fig. 9.7A) or as a SAFO with the addition of a thermoplastic anterior shell (see Fig. 9.7B), padding is added where the FRO contacts the proximal surfaces of the tibia to make the extra extension force delivered by the orthosis more tolerable to the wearer.

The FRO is often used for children with neurologic conditions who demonstrate "crouch gait," who have paralysis, or who have weakness at the knee and ankle.[32-34] The FRO relies on a GRF vector that passes anterior to the anatomic knee joint. As knee and hip flexion contractures approach or exceed 10 degrees, the GRF vector nears or passes posterior to the anatomic knee joint and the FRO is less effective in stabilizing the knee during stance.[32] The FRO is contraindicated for persons with notable recurvatum during stance and those with cruciate ligament insufficiency; in these circumstances, the extra knee extension moment can further damage joint structure. Although the rigid control of ankle and knee enhances mechanical stability in stance, these external restrictions imposed by the FRO may compromise efficacy of postural responses. In those with balance impairment, an ambulatory assistive device (e.g., a cane, Lofstrand crutches, or rolling walker) may be needed for safety, especially if FROs are worn on both limbs.

WEIGHT-RELIEVING ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSES

The weight-relieving AFO, also known as a PTB-AFO, incorporates the intimate fit and load-bearing characteristics of a PTB prosthetic socket into a SAFO or traditional metal double upright AFO (discussed later) as a means of offloading or unloading weight-bearing forces during stance phase for individuals with a painful, unstable, or recently repaired ankle or foot.[35-37] The anterior shell of the AFO is modified to accept weight-bearing forces via the medial tibial flare and patellar tendon bar, along with total contact around the upper calf.

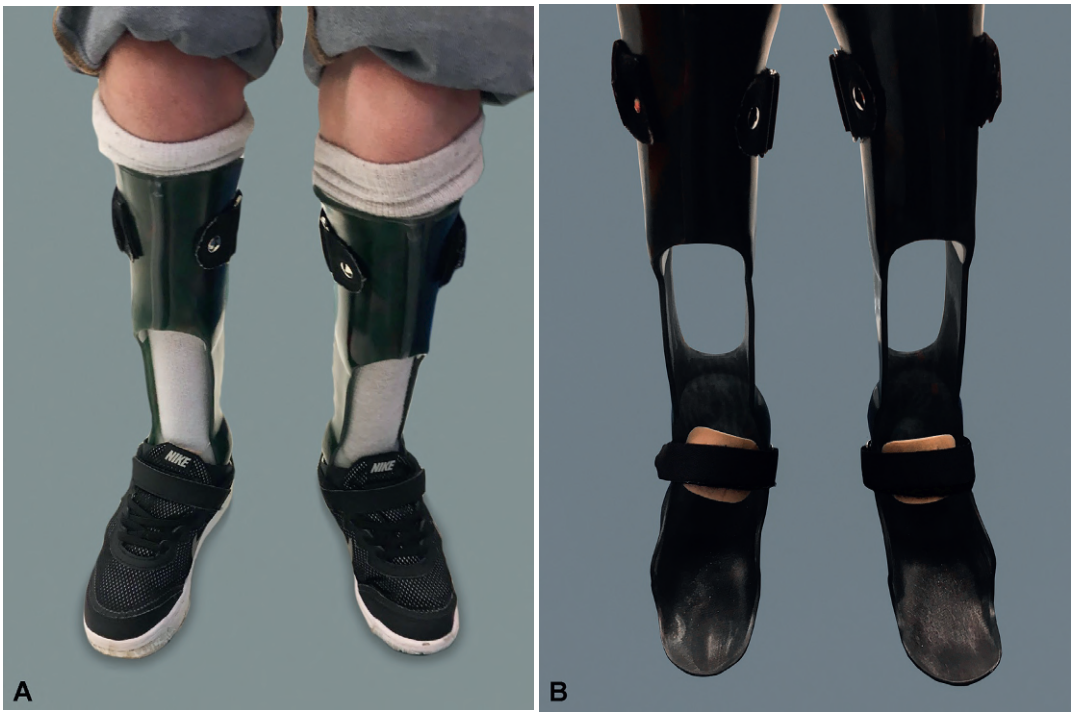


Fig. 9.6 (A and B) This floor reaction orthosis (FRO) was fabricated using carbon graphite and fiberglass in a thermosetting process because of the desire to provide maximum stiffness. The combination of a solid-ankle design and an anterior wall produces a knee extension moment at midstance and enhances stance phase stability.

Continued

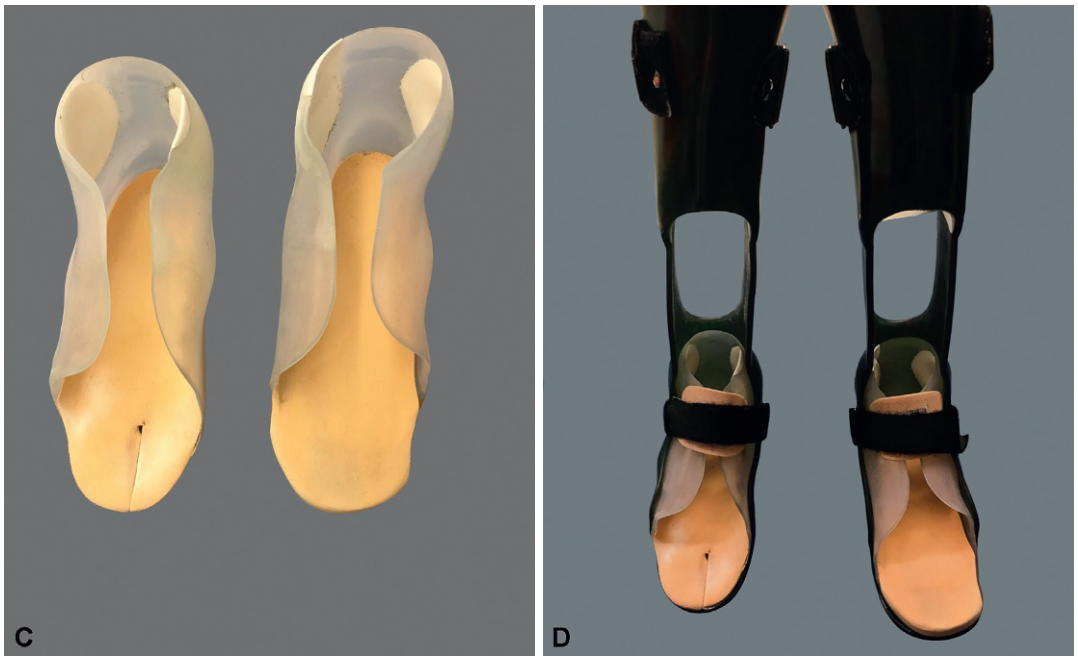


Fig. 9.6, cont'd (C and D) This FRO has a solid supramalleolar orthosis that provides medial lateral joint stability to the ankle through the rigid design and custom fit.

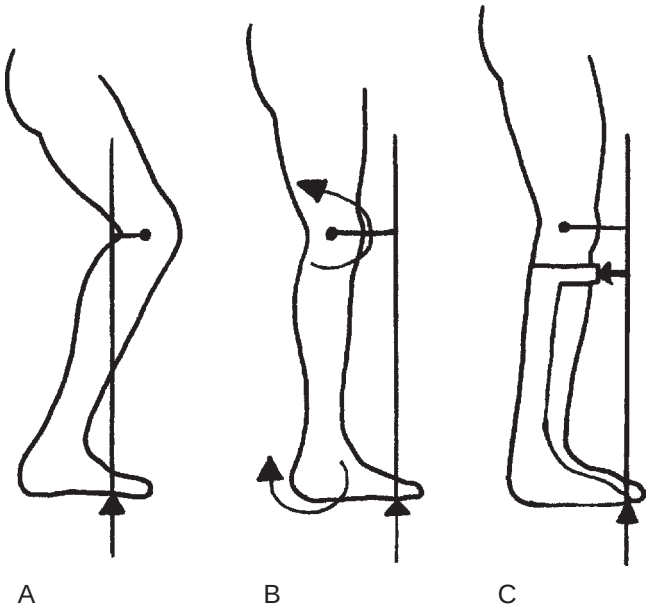


Fig. 9.7 (A) When a patient walks in a "crouch gait" pattern, the ground reaction force (GRF) vector passes behind the knee at midstance, creating a flexion moment at the knee, which must be counteracted to maintain upright position. (B) In normal gait, knee stability at midstance is assisted by a ground reaction moment as the body moves over the foot, and the GRF vector passes anterior to the knee. (C) The solid ankle-foot orthosis and the floor reaction orthotic designs use a fixed ankle position to harness the GRF, creating a large extension moment at the knee.

As with a PTB prosthetic socket, the proximal portion of the PTB-AFO is set in approximately 10 degrees of knee flexion (with respect to vertical) to load some of the body weight onto the anterior shell at the medial tibial flare and patellar tendon bar during stance. This axial force is then transmitted to the ground through the medial and lateral walls of the thermoplastic orthosis, which may be reinforced with metal uprights or through the medial and lateral uprights of a traditional double upright AFO. This strategy effectively reduces axial loading of the ankle and foot during gait.

Individuals wearing a weight-relieving AFO must have normal anatomic structure of the knee, adequate muscle performance and motor control of the quadriceps muscles for stability in early stance, and sufficient skin integrity to tolerate the loading forces applied by this orthotic design.

Dynamic Ankle-Foot Orthoses

Dynamic orthoses allow some degree of sagittal plane motion at the ankle; many permit dorsiflexion during stance phase to facilitate the ankle rocker of gait but restrict plantarflexion during swing phase to facilitate swing limb clearance, incorporating some type of orthotic ankle joint. These dynamic orthoses are available in both thermoplastic and more traditional metal double upright designs. These are reviewed in order from least restrictive to most supportive designs.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BIOMECHANICS LABORATORY ORTHOSIS

In the 1970s, researchers at the University of California Biomechanics Laboratory (UCBL) developed a custom-molded shoe insert, currently known as the *UCBL orthosis*, as an orthotic intervention for subtalar joint instability.[38] The UCBL controls flexible calcaneal deformities (rearfoot valgus or varus) and transverse plane deformities of the midtarsal joints (forefoot abduction or adduction) by "grabbing" the

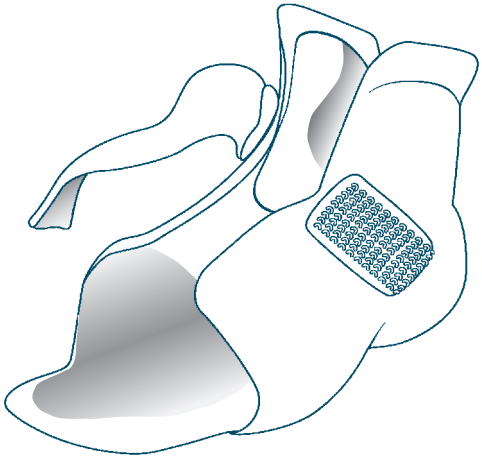


Fig. 9.8 The dynamic ankle-foot orthosis is a flexible polypropylene brace designed to optimize subtalar joint alignment through its supramalleolar design. (Reprinted with permission from Zablotny CM. Use of orthoses for the adult with neurological involvement. In Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME [eds], *Orthotics in Functional Rehabilitation of the Lower Limb*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1997:229.)

calcaneus and supporting the midfoot with high medial and lateral trim lines; it realigns the calcaneus, providing a more stable foundation for the articular surfaces of the talus, navicular, and cuboid bones in cases of instability.[39] The *Gillette modification*, an external post positioned either on the medial or lateral border of the heel cup, can be used to apply additional rotatory moments to the calcaneus during weight bearing. It is important to recognize that the UCBL orthosis acts primarily at subtalar and midfoot tarsal joints during weight bearing; it would not be appropriate for persons with swing phase clearance issues, which require the trim line of the orthosis be placed above the ankle joint.

DYNAMIC ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSIS

The dynamic ankle-foot orthosis (DAFO), also known as a flexible supramalleolar orthosis (SMO), is a custom-molded orthosis that has evolved from the UCBL shoe insert to better address sagittal plane control of the ankle and foot during stance and to facilitate foot clearance in swing.[40] Custom-molded from relatively thin thermoplastic, its proximal trim lines are just superior to the ankle joint, and its distal trim lines encase more of the forefoot than the UCBL (Fig. 9.8). By limiting movement of the midfoot and forefoot and by holding the foot in functional position, the DAFO provides a stable base for more effective motor performance and postural control during standing and ambulation.[41,42]

POSTERIOR LEAF SPRING ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSIS

The PLS AFO is a dynamic thermoplastic AFO designed to accomplish two things[43]:

- Support the weight of the foot during swing phase as a means of enhancing swing limb clearance
- Assist with controlled lowering of the foot during loading response in stance as part of the first/heel rocker

The PLS is one of the groups of AFOs that provide dorsiflexion assistance. In contrast to the SAFO, medial and

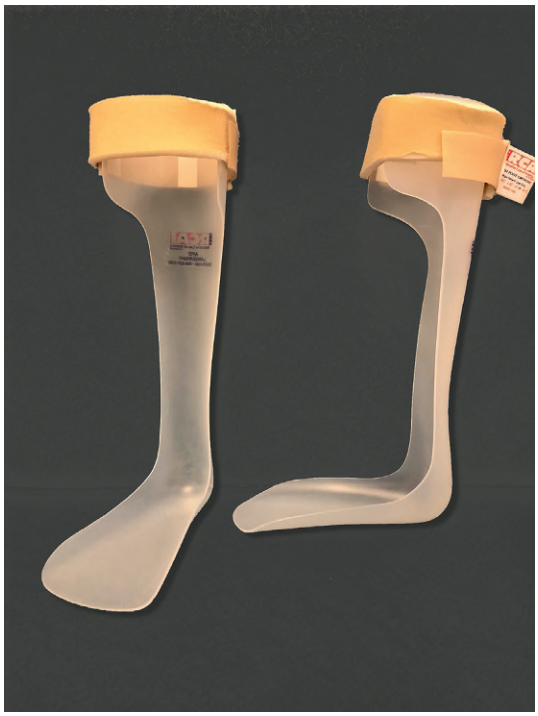


Fig. 9.9 The posterior position and arc of the trim lines at the ankle and the thickness of thermoplastic material used determine the degree of flexibility of the posterior leaf spring ankle-foot orthosis. This design assists with foot clearance by limiting plantarflexion during swing phase.

lateral trim lines are located well posterior to the midline of both malleoli so that the orthosis is flexible at the anatomic ankle joint (Fig. 9.9).[44] The degree of flexibility is determined by the thickness of the thermoplastic material used to construct the orthosis and width of the posterior upright in the distal third of the orthosis.[44] In custom-molded PLS orthoses, the orthotist tailors the stiffness of the orthosis using the trim line pattern that will best support the weight of the foot during swing, as well as the individual's needs for stability in stance.[44]

Once the heel contacts the ground at initial contact and the loading response begins, the flexible plastic of the PLS serves as a proxy for impaired or absent eccentric activity of the tibialis anterior muscle, slowing but not stopping the foot's descent toward the ground.[43] As stance phase continues, the flexible PSL allows the tibia to roll forward over the weight-bearing foot to accomplish a smooth ankle rocker of midstance to terminal stance. As the foot leaves the ground in initial swing, the PLS is able to hold the ankle at the desired neutral 90-degree position, which assists swing clearance and keeps the toes elevated so that next initial contact will be made at the heel. The flexibility inherent in the PLS provides a notable functional advantage over the SAFO.[45-47]

Owing to its narrow posterior upright and relatively shallow heel cup, a PSL is not as effective in stabilizing the calcaneus and talus during stance as are the SAFO, DAFO, or UCBL designs. This makes it less effective in controlling mediolateral foot position, especially for persons with flexible deformities of the forefoot, midfoot, or rearfoot.[48] In these circumstances the orthotist may opt to place medial and

lateral trim lines somewhere between the midmalleolar position of a SAFO and the narrower PLS to provide additional stability. This modification is sometimes referred to as a *semisolid AFO*. The modification provides better control of ankle motion but at the cost of limiting mobility during the ankle rocker of gait.[49] Note that the flexibility of a PLS and a semisolid AFO make them inappropriate for individuals with significant equinovarus or spasticity of the lower extremity: A high level of abnormal tone will overpower the control systems in these designs.

ADDITIONAL DORSIFLEXION ASSIST OPTIONS

There are a number of commercially available prefabricated and custom-molded AFO designs available as alternatives for individuals whose primary need is for dorsiflexion assistance as a substitution for weakness and/or impaired motor control at the ankle. Three of the more frequently used options are reviewed here: (1) dual carbon fiber spring orthosis (CFO), (2) wearable functional neuromuscular electrical stimulation units, and (3) novel commercially available alternative designs.

Carbon Fiber Spring Orthoses

The dual CFO, developed and tested primarily in Germany, is a modification of the traditional PLS design that cuts the PLS into a foot and calf section, then attaches overlapping carbon fiber springs (carbon fiber and Kevlar fibers impregnated with epoxy resin) between the sections (Fig. 9.10A).[50] Spring resistance is selected based on the individual's weight. This design aims not only to substitute for impaired or absent anterior compartment muscle activity but also to enhance the toe rocker of stance phase that is typically compromised by thermoplastic AFOs.[50] A more powerful push-off is attributed to loading of the spring during early and midstance as the tibia moves forward over the foot and releasing of the spring in transition from terminal swing to preswing.[51]

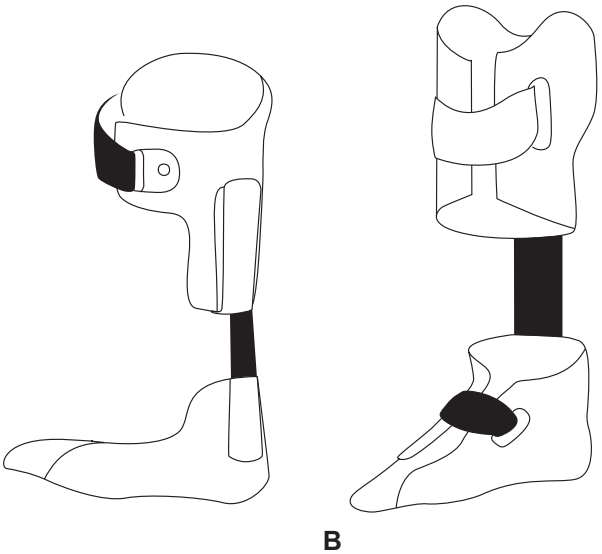


Fig. 9.10 (A) Note the carbon fiber springs inserted posteriorly between the foot and calf component of this carbon fiber orthosis. The springs provide dorsiflexion assistance for clearance in swing and prepositioning of the foot for initial contract, as well as preservation of the second and third rockers of stance phase. (B) The dual carbon fiber spring orthosis designed to provide assistance with plantarflexion/push-off for the transition from stance to swing for persons with weakness or paralysis of calf muscles/plantarflexors.

The CFO design has been adapted to enhance walking ability of children with neuromuscular conditions that contribute to impaired or absent plantarflexor muscle performance.[52,53] In this version, the carbon fiber spring is L shaped (see Fig. 9.10B) with its attachment to the foot component (a stiffer version of a supramalleolar DAFO) on the plantar surface rather than on the posterior heel. The slight distance between the spring and posterior foot section acts as a dorsiflexion stop during stance, allowing some dorsiflexion for ankle rocker until the two surfaces come into contact. The proximal carbon fiber spring is fit into a slot in the posterior of a custom-molded section that resembles the upper half of a total contact prosthetic socket. A vertical slot drilled into the proximal spring allows it to slide up and down for several centimeters during stance phase to minimize potential skin friction. This CFO appears to enhance transition through both ankle and toe rockers of gait and to provide assistance for push-off. This design has also been incorporated into a KAFO for children who require additional support or control at the knee and hip.[54]

Functional Neuromuscular Electrical Stimulation

For persons with impaired motor control resulting from disease or trauma of the central nervous system, several commercially available, wearable functional electrical stimulation (FES) units, also called *neuroprostheses*, are available (e.g., WalkAide, Hanger Orthopedic Group, Austin, TX; Odstock Dropped Foot Stimulator, Salisbury, UK; NESS L300 Foot Drop System, Bioness Inc., Valencia, CA). The individual wears a cuff that is positioned snugly just below the knee, rather than an orthosis that must fit into the shoe (Fig. 9.11). The cuff holds a small stimulator medially with electrodes positioned laterally over motor end points of the peroneal nerve.[55] Depending on the model, appropriate timing of the FES for dorsiflexion activity is determined by a switch worn in the shoe, an inclinometer, or an accelerometer. Most use surface electrodes to deliver the stimulus for muscle contraction, although cuffless versions with surgically implantable electrodes are available. Studies evaluating the device have demonstrated improved spatial and temporal characteristics and safety of walking in persons with acute and chronic stroke when worn as an orthosis alone or when integrated with rehabilitation interventions.[56,57] Similar findings support its use for persons with traumatic brain injury, multiple sclerosis, and Parkinson disease.[1,58-60]

Each of these devices must be adjusted to the individual's typical gait pattern. To be effective, all of these devices require an intact and healthy peroneal nerve. They would not be appropriate for persons with peripheral nerve injury or neuropathy.

Manufacturers note that such devices are contraindicated in individuals with demand pacemakers or defibrillators, healing fractures, metal implants in the limb, or history of phlebitis; the unit should be used with caution in persons with varicose veins, inflammation in or around the knee, or sensory impairment. Although most devices are resistant

Fig. 9.11 The Bioness L300 System, as an example of a wearable functional electrical stimulation unit, is used to trigger muscle contraction during appropriate points in the gait cycle. The L300 system (photo R) triggers dorsiflexion during swing phase. The L300+ system (photo L) incorporates a thigh component that can stimulate the knee flexors or extensors during swing and/or stance phase to assist with stance stability or swing limb advancement.

to splashes, immersion in water during bathing or swimming or saturation while shoveling snow, for example, will damage the unit, rendering it nonfunctional.

Commercially Available Dorsiflexion-Assist Designs

A number of manufacturers have developed carbon fiber orthoses to provide dorsiflexion assistance at the appropriate times in the gait cycle (e.g., Camp ToeOFF series, Allard USA, Rockaway, NJ; AFO Dynamic, Ossur Americas, Foothill Ranch, CA; Matrix and Matrix Max, Prolaborthotics USA, Napa, CA; WalkOn, Ottobock, Berlin, Germany; SpryStep, Townsend Thuasne USA, Bakersfield, CA). In contrast to thermoplastic designs, many of these orthoses use a cushioned anterior shin or medial shank piece, held in place by strapping, that transitions into a medial upright and continues into a full footplate (Fig. 9.12A to C). These orthoses are designed to preposition the foot for heel strike at initial contact, substitute for impaired anterior compartment to allow controlled lowering of the foot into foot-flat position during the heel rocker of loading response, provide some medial-lateral stability during stance while allowing forward progression of the tibia during the ankle rocker of stance phase, contribute to push-off in the transition from stance to swing, and support the weight of the foot for effective swing limb clearance.[61] Although there is some evidence that these dorsiflexion-assist designs have a positive impact on both the kinematics and energy cost of walking, there have been few published studies that directly compare them with traditional PLS orthoses or with articulating (hinged) thermoplastic AFOs or traditional metal double upright AFOs with dorsiflexion-assist orthotic ankle joints.[61]

Fig. 9.12 Examples of a carbon fiber composite dorsiflexion assist ankle-foot orthosis used to substitute for activity of the anterior compartment of muscles of the lower leg. (A) Townsend SpryStep and (B *right* and C) Allard ToeOFF offer support primarily for ankle dorsiflexion. They may offer some mild knee support during stance. There are some carbon fiber ankle-foot orthoses designed with increased strength that may assist greater with knee instability, such as Allard BlueRocker (B *left*), although not supportive enough to stabilize the moderately unstable stance knee.

Continued

Fig. 9.12, cont'd

HINGED THERMOPLASTIC ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSIS

The thermoplastic hinged (articulating) ankle-foot orthosis (HAFO) allows sagittal plane motion at the ankle by incorporating a mechanical ankle joint between the foot and calf sections of the orthosis. This variation of the SAFO was designed primarily to allow the tibia to roll over the weight-bearing foot during stance, for a smooth ankle rocker, at the same time holding the foot in optimal alignment to control the impact of tone-related equinovarus forces throughout the gait cycle (Fig. 9.13A to D). In children with cerebral palsy and in adults after stroke, these orthoses reduce energy cost of walking (compared with barefoot), as well as improve stride length, cadence, and walking speed.[47,62,63] As compared with the SAFO, the HAFO also improves mobility in many functional activities, such as rising from the floor, ascending and descending stairs, and walking up or down inclines.[45,46,48] There is some indication that HAFOs lessen the magnitude of abnormal muscle activation associated with spasticity in children with cerebral palsy.[64] HAFOs appear to reduce risk of falls in adults with long-standing hemiplegia after stroke, improve static postural control, and have less negative impact on dynamic postural control in standing than SAFOs.[65,66] However, for some children with moderate to severe spastic diplegic cerebral palsy, the mobility provided by a HAFO compromises stability in early stance, reinforcing crouch gait pattern, reducing walking speed, and increasing energy cost as compared with a SAFO.[62]

The shape, dimensions, and force control systems of the HAFO are almost exactly the same as those of a SAFO, except it has two separate pieces linked by an orthotic ankle joint rather than being a single, solid piece. The HAFO has a larger width at the ankle than the SAFO to accommodate the mechanical ankle joint.

Hinged AFOs can be fabricated to allow free motion at the ankle, to allow limited range of motion (i.e., allow dorsiflexion and stop plantarflexion, or the inverse), or to provide some assistance to dorsiflexion, depending on what orthotic ankle joint option motion best meets the individual's needs and maximizes the resources they bring to the task of walking. A variety of mechanical thermoplastic joints is commercially available (Fig. 9.14A to C). Those with true articulations (e.g., the Oklahoma joint) have a single axis of motion that should be aligned as closely as possible to the anatomic ankle joint; other orthotic joints (e.g., the Gillette joint) are flexible and nonarticulating.

Traditional metal orthotic ankle joints have been incorporated into thermoplastic HAFOs as well; these designs are referred to as *hybrid orthoses*. Simple single axis joints provide mediolateral stability without restriction of available dorsiflexion or plantarflexion; a motion stop can be incorporated if there is need to limit plantarflexion beyond neutral (for stability in early stance) or dorsiflexion (to limit weight bearing on the forefoot in later stance) as the individual's needs dictate. A bichannel adjustable ankle joint (also referred to as a *double action ankle joint* or a *double Klenzak joint*) (Fig. 9.15A to C) can be used to provide assistance and/or limit motion based on an individual's capabilities and needs for support. If motion assistance is desired, a coil spring is placed in the channel and a screw is used to adjust compression until the desired level of assistance is achieved. If motion is to be blocked, a solid steel pin is inserted instead of the spring to stop motion beyond a particular point in the range of motion. Because of its versatility and adjustability, the double action ankle joint is often chosen when change in a patient's functional status (improvement or deterioration) is anticipated. Orthotic ankle joints allow the orthotist to adjust the available range of motion from none (as in a SAFO) through an array of limited anteroposterior stop settings. This would be an advantage when motor control around the ankle and knee is expected to improve over time, for example, in individuals who are recovering from an acute stroke.

The HAFO allows free dorsiflexion; however, when motor control is compromised, such that additional support is needed during stance, the orthotist may choose to incorporate a mechanism, such as a check strap, to adjust the amount of dorsiflexion allowed (see Fig. 9.14B). If the check strap is maximally tightened, the orthosis functions like a SAFO. The check strap can be loosened, lengthened, or elasticized as neuromotor control improves, allowing only as much forward progression of the tibia in the heel rocker as is safe and functional for the individual. This adaptation makes the HAFO versatile and useful when return of neuromotor control or function is anticipated.

It is important to note that a prerequisite for using this orthosis is at least 5 degrees of true ankle dorsiflexion, accomplished without compromise of subtalar or midtarsal joint position; for this reason, a HAFO may not be an appropriate choice for persons with severe spasticity that limits

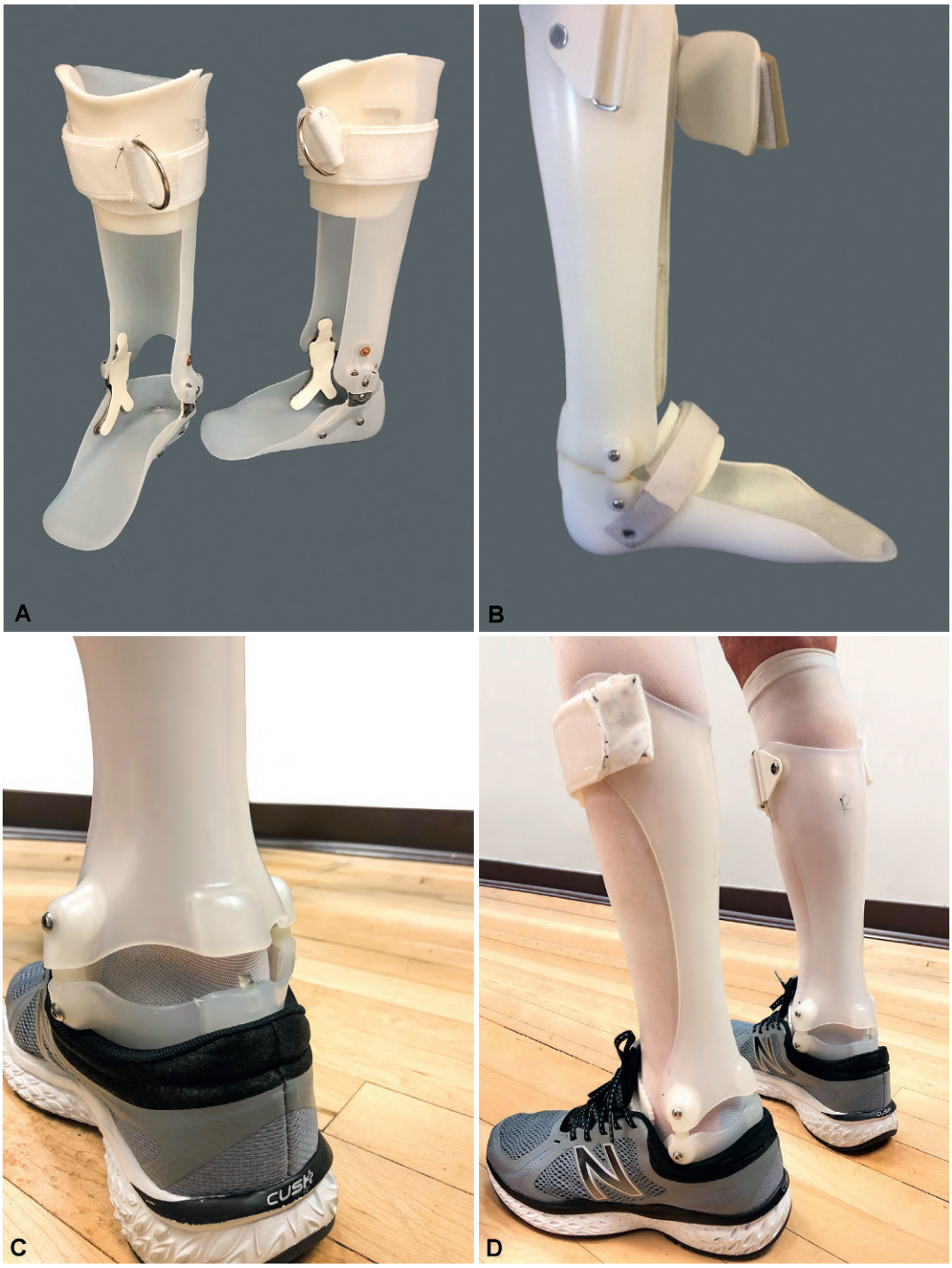


Fig. 9.13 (A) This hinged ankle-foot orthosis (HAFO), with compact double action ankle joint, allows forward motion of the tibia through the ankle rocker of stance phase and can be adjusted via springs or pins to allow more support or restriction. (B to D) This HAFO, with flexure ankle joints, has a built-in plantarflexion stop (when the posterior edges of the foot and calf section come into contact) and posterior strapping that can be adjusted to limit the amount of dorsiflexion available, based on the wearer's motor control and need for stability in stance.

ankle motion or those with significant instability or malalignment of the midfoot.

CONVENTIONAL DORSIFLEXION-ASSIST ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSIS

The conventional double upright counterpart to the PLS uses a spring mechanism incorporated into the mechanical ankle joints of the orthosis. The uprights are connected to the distal stirrup at the mechanical ankle joint, and the stirrup is fixed between the heel and sole of the shoe. A coiled spring and small ball bearing are placed in a channel in the distal uprights that runs toward the posterior edge of the stirrup. When the spring is compressed at initial contact and early loading response, it resists plantarflexion, allowing a controlled lowering of the foot to the floor, substituting for the heel rocker of early stance. Recoil of the spring when the foot is unloaded in preswing and initial swing assists

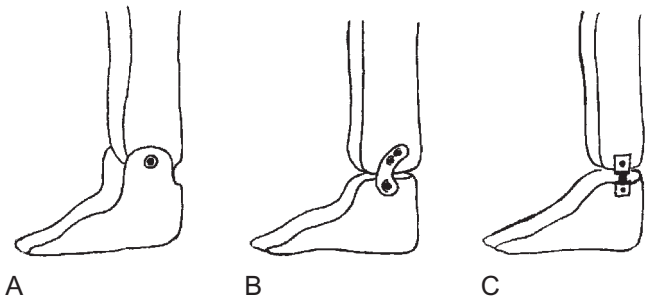


Fig. 9.14 Examples of thermoplastic ankle joints used in hinged ankle-foot orthosis. The overlap joint (A) and Oklahoma joint (B) are single axis joints, whereas the flexible Gillette mechanism (C) allows movement into dorsiflexion and plantarflexion without an actual articulation.

dorsiflexion for swing phase toe clearance.[62] The amount of dorsiflexion assist provided is determined by adjustment of a screw placed in the top of the channel to compress or decompress the spring further. Another option is the dual channel *(double Klenzak)* orthotic ankle joint (see Fig. 9.15); by placing a spring in one channel and a rod in the other, this mechanical ankle joint can provide adjustable dorsiflexion assistance and plantarflexion stop (in persons with impaired dorsiflexion muscle performance) or plantarflexion assistance and dorsiflexion stop (for those with motor control or muscle performance impairment of the gastrocsoleus complex).

Traditional or conventional double upright orthoses are typically used when the individual who needs dorsiflexion assistance and plantarflexion control has a comorbid condition that causes fluctuation in limb size (edema), such as congestive heart failure or the need for kidney dialysis, which would compromise the intimate fit of a thermoplastic orthosis. The downside of the double upright AFO is its less effective control of abnormal foot position and risk of skin irritation as the foot moves within the shoe. For persons with neuropathic foot conditions who are unable to directly perceive abnormal pressures and the discomfort of tissue stress, a custom-molded AFO that is intimately fit for the individual's foot would be the orthosis of choice unless significant fluctuating edema precludes this choice.

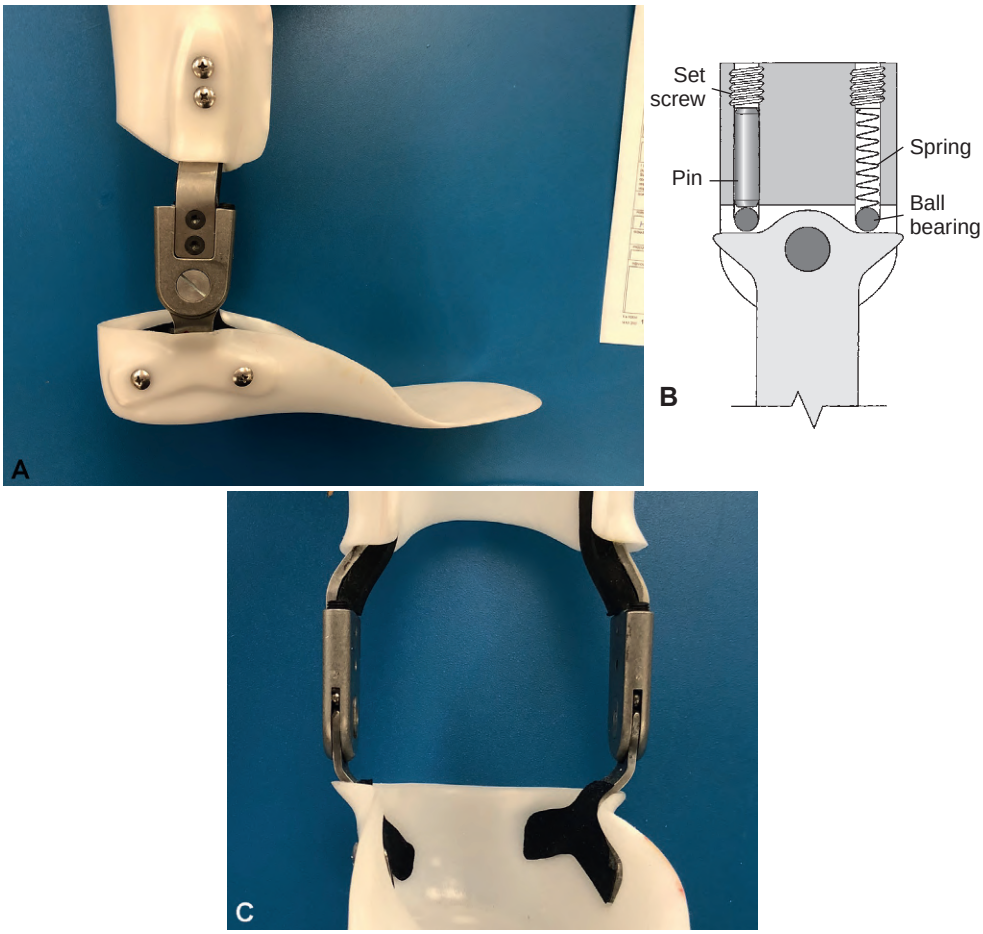


Fig. 9.15 (A) The double-action joint can be used in a conventional double upright, metal ankle-foot orthosis and a thermoplastic-metal hybrid ankle-foot orthosis. Motion is assisted if a spring is compressed within the channel or can be blocked by placement of a steel pin within the channel. (B) The internal anatomy of the double adjustable ankle joint. Ankle joint mobility restrictions (e.g., plantarflexion stop) result from the locations of the pins in the anterior and posterior channels of the orthotic joint. A spring may occupy one of the channels, as depicted here, to assist motion (e.g., dorsiflexion assistance). The ball bearings allow the brace uprights to pivot with ease over the brace stirrup. The set screw can be adjusted to change the relative positions of the rods in each of the channels. (C) The hinged ankle joint can also exist with a duel pin system to allow adjustment of the fixed angle and ankle range as the patient's functional status changes. The degree of limitation from the pins can be viewed anteriorly/posteriorly. ([B] From Zablotny CM. Use of orthoses for the adult with neurological involvement. In Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME [eds], *Orthotics in Functional Rehabilitation of the Lower Limb*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders; 1997:227.)

ANKEL-FOOT ORTHOSIS DESIGNS, TONE, AND POSTURAL CONTROL

Although some AFOs are described as having tone-reducing (TR-AFO) or tone-inhibiting (TI-AFO) effects and are prescribed for persons with hypertonicity (spasticity) from upper motor neuron diseases (stroke, cerebral palsy, traumatic brain injury), the evidence of this effect is primarily based on cross-sectional studies and case reports, rather than randomized controlled clinical trials.[67] Historically, such AFO designs have their roots in the principles of serial casting, which sought to lessen the impact of tonic plantar reflexes that reinforce extensor tone of the lower extremity in children with cerebral palsy.[68,69] An early review of how these principles were applied to AFO designs suggested that the orthosis incorporate the following[70]:

- A metatarsal bar or dome to alter loading on metatarsal heads
- A mechanism to encourage toe extension
- Additional loading on either side of the distal point of attachment of the Achilles tendon
- An ankle held in neutral subtalar and dorsiflexion position

Current evidence does not support a positive neurophysiologic consequence, and there is no alternative means to *quantify* muscle tone (the modified Ashworth Scale is a categoric measure, rather than a continuous measure).[71] Consensus statements of the International Society for Prosthetics and Orthotics suggest that the terms *tone reducing* or *tone inhibiting* should not be used to describe AFOs until stronger evidence of their efficacy for specific patient groups becomes available based on randomized controlled trials.[72]

Although the aim of AFO designs are to have a positive impact on quality and efficiency of walking (speed, stride, joint kinematics, kinetics, and energy cost), they vary in their impact on efficacy of postural responses and balance during functional activities while walking, standing, or moving between sitting and standing.[73,74] Because many individuals whose walking would improve if they used AFOs also have deficits in motor control that impact the efficacy of balance and postural responses and because risk for falling is high, it is important to consider the interaction of the orthosis with the individual's own movement resources.[75] A key question to consider is how the orthosis influences an individual's ability to dynamically control the body's center of mass within his or her base of support in standing and while transitioning and walking. Does the orthosis constrain, maintain, or improve the individual's limits of stability during functional tasks that are meaningful and important for that person? For some persons with motor control dysfunction, the limitation of ankle motion may enhance stability in stance enough to improve ability to perform functional tasks while standing. For others, the same AFO design may impair the ability to respond effectively to both internally generated and external perturbations that shift the center of mass toward the edges of the individual's limits of stability.

Studies evaluating the impact of AFOs on static and dynamic postural control are challenging to interpret because of variation in the AFO designs being evaluated, the outcome measures used to assess balance, and the patient groups included in the sample.[73] In general, the SAFO and semisolid AFOs positively impact on static balance but appear to delay or impair response to perturbations.[5,66,76] For persons with stroke using a PLS orthosis, evidence is relatively convincing that both static and dynamic postural control improve with use of the orthosis (when compared with no orthosis or to SAFO) as measured by Timed Up and Go (TUG) times, Berg Balance Scale score, and limits of stability testing.[77-79] There is little evidence about the impact of HAFOs and DAFOs on balance: The few available studies suggest a modest improvement in both static and dynamic postural control.[80]

How does this evidence impact clinical decision-making when selecting an orthotic design for a particular patient? The team must weigh the potential positive and negative influences of the orthosis on the ability to walk, as well as on postural control during all activities that are important to the individual who will be wearing the orthosis. There is not a clear best or worst AFO; instead the team must match the pros of the orthosis with the person's neuromuscular resources, physical characteristics, abilities, and desired activities, tempered by the prognosis associated with the condition or diagnosis.

When Should a Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthosis Be Considered?

The rehabilitation team considers KAFOs only when stability during stance cannot be effectively provided by one of the AFO options.[81] KAFOs are often prescribed when, in addition to impairment of ankle control, there is the presence of (1) hyperextension or recurvatum that jeopardizes structural integrity of the knee joint and/or (2) abnormal or excessive varus or valgus angulation that occurs during weight bearing in stance phase.[82] If not recognized and addressed appropriately, both threaten joint function and structure during walking and, with repeated abnormal loading, increase risk of permanent damage to supporting structures within the knee and development of degenerative joint disease.

The KAFO metal and leather design was used during the 1950s to make ambulation possible for those recovering from polio.[15] However, the weight of the orthosis increased energy cost of ambulation significantly and ultimately made use of a wheelchair the preferred method of mobility for those requiring bilateral KAFOs to walk.[83] The development of the lighter-weight Craig-Scott orthosis in the 1970s, the advent of thermoplastic custom-fit or custom-molded components in the 1980s, and emergence of stance-control (SC) orthotic knee joints since 2000 have contributed to reduction in energy cost of ambulation with KAFOs; walking while wearing these orthoses has become more reasonable.[81] However, currently, many individuals decide that walking with bilateral KAFOs is too slow and requires too much effort to be truly functional for daily use.

Many KAFO designs use a SAFO or an HAFO as the distal component and one or more thermoplastic thigh bars or cuffs as proximal components, with metal uprights with a variety of orthotic knee joints to interconnect them.[82]

CHALLENGES TO KNEE-ANKEL-FOOT ORTHOSIS USE

The key issues that must be addressed for safe ambulation with KAFOs are the same as those discussed earlier in the chapter for AFOs[83]:

- To provide stance-phase stability with minimal disruption of forward progression (especially through the ankle rocker of stance)
- To minimize disruption of swing limb clearance
- To prepare for an effective initial contact by holding the ankle in a neutral position

However, once the knee joint is encased in an orthosis, meeting these goals can be challenging, especially for persons who require bilateral KAFOs. These individuals typically have more proximal deficits in muscle performance, motor control, and postural control than those whose need for stability in stance and mobility in swing are addressed by any of the AFO designs.[84] Additional challenges that must be considered during the clinical decision-making process include:

- Position transfers (i.e., sit to stand) can become complex and demanding motor tasks
- Constraints on dynamic anticipatory and reactionary postural responses during activities in standing
- Need for additional stabilization in the form of an ambulatory assistive device (e.g. crutches, walkers)
- Decreased efficiency and/or increased energy expenditure with movement (which may significantly limit patients with underlying cardiovascular conditions or deconditioning).
- Difficulty with donning and doffing.

Any of these factors may lead to an individual abandoning the use of the orthosis. All of these should be considered when the cost of fitting, fabrication, and training for KAFO use is factored in.

KNEE FUNCTION AND ALIGNMENT

In early stance, under normal gait conditions, the GRF passes through the ankle, behind the knee, and through the hip, creating an external flexion moment at the knee (Fig. 9.16). To counteract this GRF-related flexion moment, the quadriceps muscles contract to prevent the knee from collapsing into further flexion, the hamstrings and hip abductors contract to stabilize hip position and maintain a level pelvis, and the gastrocnemius prepares to eccentrically control forward progression of the tibia.[85] This combination of muscle activity provides an internally generated knee extension moment that balances the external flexion moment at the knee generated by the GRF.[85] When musculoskeletal or neuromuscular impairment alters limb position or muscle activity at any lower extremity joint, the internal/external force system is no longer in equilibrium, and efficiency of walking and stability in stance will be compromised.[85] The magnitude of disruption of the equilibrium between externally and internally generated moments determines whether the individual will be able to use his or her own resources (often in compensatory patterns or deviations) to address the imbalance or if an AFO or KAFO is necessary for functional walking. Consideration of the magnitude of disruption of this equilibrium helps the team to determine whether an AFO can effectively influence the position of the GRF as it crosses the knee or if instead a KAFO is needed to restore equilibrium. If there is evidence of ligamentous instability that threatens anteroposterior or medial lateral stability at the knee or markedly abnormal varus or valgus of the knee, a KAFO would clearly be indicated.

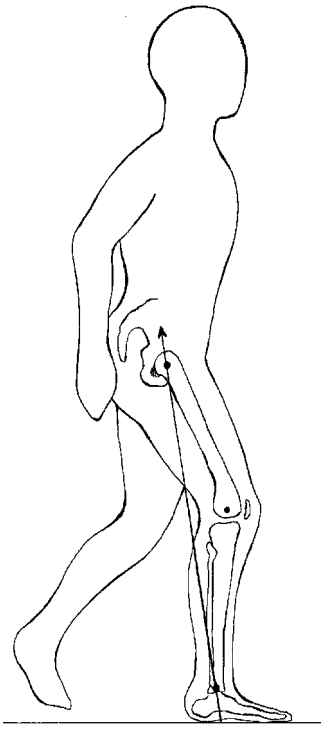


Fig. 9.16 The ground reaction force (GRF) passes through the ankle, behind the knee, and through the hip as loading response moves toward midstance, creating an external flexion moment at the knee. To achieve stability, muscle activity of the quadriceps, hamstrings, and gastrocnemius/soleus combine to create an internal extension moment to counterbalance the flexion moment of the GRF.

The evaluation process for KAFOs includes documentation of the individual's height and weight, the status of circulation and sensation in lower extremities, the condition and integrity of the skin, soft tissue density and bony prominences, as well as living, school, working, and leisure environments in which the KAFO is likely to be used. Specific attention is given to determination of available range of motion, ligamentous activity, fixed contractures, muscle performance, muscle and antigravity tone, leg length, and limb girth. The use of observational gait analysis, walking speed, other kinematic parameters, and, if appropriate, kinetic analysis is used to document preorthotic gait pattern. The team synthesizes this information to make a recommendation. The orthotist selects appropriate materials and components then fabricates and fits the orthosis, making adjustments as necessary.[84] The physical therapist and individual begin the process of functional training, with adjustments being made to the orthoses as indicated.

Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthosis Design Options

KAFOs, much like the AFOs that form their distal component, can be made of primarily metal materials (e.g., steel, aluminum, titanium alloys, carbon fiber), primarily thermoplastics, or as a hybrid combining both types of materials. Historically, the orthotic knee joints of a KAFO were locking

or free swinging; the development of SC knee units in the early 2000s have significantly changed function and energy cost for individuals who use SC-KAFO for function or for exercise.[86] Although a KAFO does not directly control hip motion, if the individual wearing bilateral KAFOs is trained to stand with a forward pelvis, lumbar lordosis, and an extended trunk, the GRF at midstance will pass anterior to the knee and posterior to the hip, creating an extensor moment that will enhance stability. In this position, the Y ligaments of the hip are elongated, contributing to an internal stabilizing force at the hips as well.[87] It is important to recognize that this strategy to achieve stable stance is not appropriate for children until musculoskeletal maturity is reached.[88] Use of this strategy may, if used frequently over a long period of time, contribute to the development of degenerative joint disease of the lumbar spine and chronic low back pain.

Like any orthosis, KAFOs can both facilitate and challenge function. What works for one person may be inappropriate for another who has different physical or emotional characteristics or a different medical condition. For persons who want to walk using a KAFO, the orthotist must be even more thoughtful about durability and weight, matching the alignment of anatomic and orthotic joints, the impact of the forces used in each of the control system across all planes of motion, the ease of donning and doffing the device, the adjustability of the orthosis, the need for maintenance or replacement of worn-out components, and whether the orthosis will be comfortable and cosmetically acceptable to the person who will wear it.[88]

CONVENTIONAL KNEE-ANKEL-FOOT ORTHOSES

During the early 1900s until the 1980s, most KAFOs were fabricated using a pair of uprights (stainless steel, titanium alloy, aluminum, or carbon composite) as a frame, with leather-covered posterior thigh and calf cuffs that buckled across the anterior thigh and leg to secure the orthosis on the limb, a pair of single axis locking orthotic knee joints, a pair of single axis dorsiflexion assistance orthotic ankle joints with a plantarflexion stop, and metal stirrups that attached between the heel and sole of the shoe (Fig. 9.17). At times, a leather anterior knee pad was added as an additional contact point for force application to stabilize the knee. These KAFOs were often worn over clothing during gait training and could later be worn under clothing if the individual so desired.

In most KAFO designs, a three-point pressure system is used to stabilize the knee in the sagittal plane to control flexion/extension: There is a single posteriorly directed force (applied by the anterior kneepad or by anterior thigh and calf straps, or both) and two anteriorly directed counterforces (applied by the posterior thigh band proximally and the shoe and posterior calf band distally) that keep the knee extended in stance. There are two additional force systems acting in the frontal plane: one to control valgus and one to control varus at the knee. Given the less-than-intimate fit of a conventional KAFO at the knee, the efficacy of the varus and valgus systems is likely to be less than optimal. The advantages of conventional KAFOs include their durability and adjustability; however, they tend to be heavier and less cosmetically pleasing than thermoplastic versions.

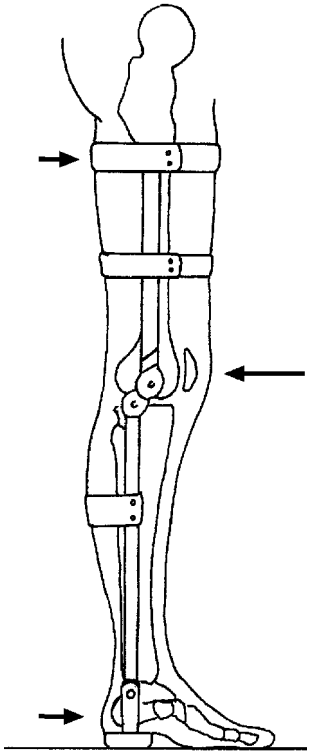


Fig. 9.17 Schematic diagram of the components and sagittal plane force system acting at the knee in a conventional knee-ankle-foot orthosis. The posteriorly directed force at the knee is counterbalanced by a pair of anteriorly directed forces at the posterior proximal thigh and posterior distal ankle.

In addition, if porous leather is used to cover thigh cuffs, the absorption of bodily fluids may render their KAFO malodorous over time. The advantages and disadvantages and the indications and contraindications of conventional KAFOs are summarized in Box 9.3.

Box 9.3 Advantages and Disadvantages of Conventional Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthoses

Advantages

- Strong
- Most durable
- Easily adjusted

Disadvantages

- Heavy
- Must be attached to shoe or shoe insert
- Less cosmetic
- Fewer contact points reduce control

Indications

- When maximum strength and durability are needed
- For individuals with significant obesity
- For individuals with uncontrolled or fluctuating edema (e.g., congestive heart failure, dialysis)

Contraindications

- When issues of energy expenditure make weight of the orthosis a factor
- When control of transverse plane motion is important

The Craig-Scott orthosis, also known as a *double-bar hip-stabilizing orthosis*, is a lightweight variation of a traditional KAFO designed for persons with paraplegia after spinal cord injury (SCI). The goal of this KAFO design is to maximize stability in stance with the minimal amount of bracing possible. A single thigh band and anterior strap are positioned just below the ischial tuberosity at the level of the greater trochanter; a single calf band and support are positioned just below the knee. Persons without active hip control are stable in standing with hip hyperextension, exaggerated lumbar lordosis, and a backward leaning trunk; stability is augmented by the orthosis' dorsiflexion-assist ankle joints and offset locking knee joints. With this combination of orthotic design and exaggerated posture, the GRF passes just anterior to the knee and posterior to the hip so that little or no muscular activity to provide internally generated counterforce is necessary. Although a reciprocal gait pattern with Lofstrand crutches typically requires the ability to volitionally activate hip flexions and quadratus lumborum (hip hikers) to initiate a step, persons with thoracic level SCI can use Craig-Scott orthoses and Lofstrand crutches using a two-point swing-through gait pattern.[87]

Conventional KAFOs are frequently used to preserve upright mobility for children with neuromuscular conditions (i.e., Duchenne muscular dystrophy).[89] A lightweight modular system that allows the orthotist to adjust the length of the uprights and quickly replace outgrown thigh or calf supports has been developed specifically for children with Duchenne muscular dystrophy.[90]

THERMOPLASTIC KNEE-ANKEL-FOOT ORTHOSES

A *molded thermoplastic* KAFO (also known as a hybrid thermoplastic and metal orthosis) is designed to have an intimate fit so that it can be worn under clothing and fits within the patient's shoe (Fig. 9.18). The distal component (a SAFO or an HAFO) and the proximal thigh component are vacuum formed over a rectified positive model of the patient's limb. The proximal component often encases the thigh from greater trochanter to femoral condyles and is closed with a pair of anterior Velcro straps. Orthotic knee joints and metal uprights (sidebars) connect the proximal and distal shells. The intimate total contact fit of molded thermoplastic allows significantly more effective control of the limb. The forces necessary for stabilization of the limb are distributed over a large surface area, reducing the possibility of discomfort or skin irritation. Such problems would arise only if the fit of the orthosis allows pistoning of the limb within the components while walking or if growth, weight gain, or edema makes the fit too snug, such that tissue is compressed and damaged while walking.

This design also controls the limb, using a series of overlapping three-point force systems. Flexion/extension control in the sagittal plane is the same one used in a conventional KAFO, except that the posterior counterforces are distributed over a wider surface area. The intimate fit provides more precise control in both the frontal and transverse planes; this is particularly important when dealing with segmental deviations arising from transverse plane rotation related to abnormal tone or longitudinal rotational deformity.[82]

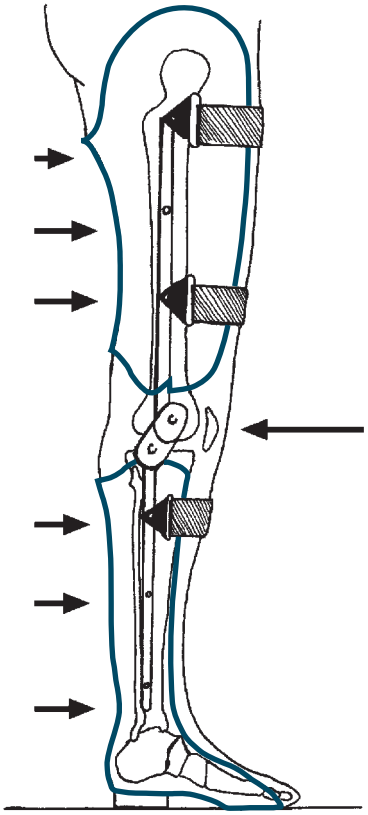


Fig. 9.18 Schematic diagram of the components and sagittal plane force systems that are necessary to control knee flexion/extension. Because the point of force application is distributed over the entire posterior surface of the intimately fitting orthotic shell, more precise and more comfortable control of the limb is possible.

Control of rotation is better accomplished with the total contact thermoplastic KAFO as compared with the double upright system of conventional KAFOs. However, this intimate fit is problematic for persons with medical conditions associated with fluctuating edema and changing limb volume (e.g., congestive heart failure, kidney dialysis), as well as those who cyclically gain and lose weight.

Similar to most thermoplastic AFOs, the use of different pairs of shoes (as long as heel height is constant) can also occur with thermoplastic KAFOs. However, one of the downsides of using thermoplastics is keeping cool while wearing them. As lightweight as they are, the large contact area inherent in thermoplastic KAFOs compromises dissipation of body heat; they may be uncomfortably warm. Advantages and disadvantages of thermoplastic KAFOs are summarized in Box 9.4.

CARBON COMPOSITE KNEE-ANKEL-FOOT ORTHOSES

Carbon composite materials have begun to be used in place of thermoplastics in KAFOs for persons with residual impairment for whom fatigue is a major concern (Fig. 9.19A and B).[91] On average, because carbon composite KAFOs

Box 9.4 Advantages and Disadvantages of Thermoplastic Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthoses

Advantages

- Lightweight
- Interchangeability of shoes
- Greater cosmesis worn under clothing

Disadvantages

- Can be hot to wear

Indications

- Intimate/total contact fit makes maximum limb control possible
- When energy expenditure makes weight of the orthosis an issue
- When control of transverse plane motion is needed

Contraindications

- Intimacy of fit is difficult when the individual is significantly obese
- Intimacy of fit is compromised when the individual has uncontrolled or fluctuating edema

(CC-KAFOs) are as much as 30% lighter in weight than other materials, the energy cost of walking with CC-KAFOs may be up to 10% less (as measured by maximum volume of oxygen [VO_2 max] and physiologic cost index).[92,93] Advantages of CC-KAFOs include improved cosmetics, increased walking speed, improved kinetic characteristics of walking, and exceptional durability.[92,93] It is important to note that the cost of CC-KAFOs may be nearly double that of a custom-molded thermoplastic KAFO.[92,93]

CONTROLLING THE ANKLE

The ankle joints used in KAFOs are the same as those that are available for AFOs: either nonarticulating solid (rigid) designs that hold the ankle in a fixed position (i.e., SAFO) or hinged orthotic joints that allow dorsiflexion (for forward progression of the tibia over the foot in stance), block plantarflexion, provide dorsiflexion assistance (to enhance swing phase clearance), or allow free dorsiflexion and plantarflexion within a specific range of motion.

The key question to consider in deciding which ankle control system is appropriate for a given individual is how orthotic control at the ankle and the GRF will impact knee function and forward progression during stance phase. If a locked ankle is necessary, the orthotist may opt to set the orthosis in several degrees of dorsiflexion to minimize compromise of forward progression and to allow the individual to achieve the stable hips-forward trunk-back stance position quickly (i.e., to achieve stability with the GRF passing anterior to the knee and posterior to the hip as soon as possible during stance). When ankle motion must be constrained to protect the joint, to control the impact of abnormal tone, or because of fixed deformity, the orthotist may use a rocker sole on the patient's shoe to simulate the normal rockers of gait. This strategy facilitates forward progression during stance by reducing the toe lever of the orthosis, improving the smoothness of the patient's gait, and reducing the likelihood of compensatory gait deviations.

An articulating or hinged orthotic ankle joint that allows some plantarflexion enhances the transition from initial contact to loading response (although the locked knee may compromise the shock absorption function of loading response). Similarly, a hinged orthotic ankle joint that

Fig. 9.19 (A and B) This carbon composite knee-ankle-foot orthosis has an anterior proximal shell with a posterior midshell and uses a stance control knee unit and a foot component similar to that of a hinged ankle-foot orthosis.

permits movement into dorsiflexion during stance enhances forward progression of the body over the foot during stance, especially when the orthotic knee is also locked.

CONTROLLING THE KNEE

Historically, if a patient with motor control or muscle performance impairment was unable to keep the knee stable in stance and an AFO was not able to provide the necessary stability, the only option was a KAFO with knee joints that remained locked at all times while walking.[94] This created a challenge for limb advancement in swing and often resulted in compensatory patterns such as circumduction or lateral leaning to the opposite side in an effort to clear the swinging leg. Although compensatory strategies accomplished the goal of limb clearance, they also markedly increased the energy cost of walking. Those who had functional motor control and muscle performance who required a KAFO to protect a mechanically unstable knee from extreme valgus or varus may be able to use unlocked single axis orthotic knee joints.

There are a number of options for orthotic knee joints that provide mechanical stability. The recent development of various SC-KAFO knee joints that allow free knee motion in swing but lock into extension during stance has had significant impact of KAFO prescription and use.[95,96] A brief overview of the mechanical joints is provided, and the impact of SC-KAFOs is considered in more detail. See Table 9.3 for a set of general guidelines for choosing the conventional orthotic knee joints based on the knee control they provide.

Single-Axis Knee Joints

The single-axis orthotic knee joint *(straight knee joint without drop lock or a free knee)* is essentially a simple hinge that allows full flexion and extension to neutral in the sagittal plane (most designs prevent hyperextension) while providing mediolateral stability (Fig. 9.20A). It is important that the medial and lateral orthotic joints be positioned at the approximate axis of the anatomic knee joint. Given the polycentric structure of the anatomic knee versus the single-axis structure of the orthotic knee joint, a small torque is likely, even if the single-axis orthotic joints are correctly positioned. For the majority of persons using the orthosis, this is not problematic. This knee joint is appropriate for those who have sufficient muscle performance resource to achieve knee stability in stance but need a KAFO to minimize or prevent recurvatum, protect a structural (mediolateral) unstable knee, or prevent excessive varus or valgus in stance.[96]

Single-Axis Locking Knee

When a locking mechanism is added to maintain knee extension, the KAFO with a single-axis knee joint becomes rigidly stable in all planes. A locked knee has traditionally been used for those whose motor control or muscle performance deficits make them unable to control the knee effectively during stance phase, such that they need additional external stability to prevent knee flexion as body weight is transferred onto the limb during stance.

The most commonly used locking mechanism is a simple ring or drop that captures the halves of the orthotic joint when fully extended, blocking subsequent movement into flexion or hyperextension (see Fig. 9.20B). A small ball bearing in the upright holds the drop lock in position until the individual or caregiver purposefully unlocks the orthosis. Optimally, there is a drop lock on both the medial and lateral uprights of the orthosis. Note that the knee must be fully extended for the lock to be engaged or disengaged; this can be challenging when transitioning between standing and sitting, especially for persons with limited hand function, significant lower extremity spasticity, or dependence on assistive devices when standing.

Table 9.3 Indications and Contraindications for Orthotic Knee Joint Designs

	ORTHOTIC KNEE DESIGN				
Desired Knee Control	**Single-Axis Unlocked**	**Single-Axis Locked**	**Offset Unlocked**	**Offset Locked**	**Variable Position Locked**
Stabilization of flail knee with use of knee extension moment and free knee joint motion	Contraindicated	Contraindicated	Indicated	Contraindicated	Contraindicated
Stabilization of flail knee without use of knee extension moment and free knee joint motion	Contraindicated	Indicated	Contraindicated	Indicated	Unnecessary
Control of genu recurvatum	Contraindicated	Indicated if orthosis will only be locked when ambulating	Indicated	Indicated when individual will lock knee intermittently	Contraindicated
Reduction of knee flexion contracture	Contraindicated	Lacks adjustability	Contraindicated	Lacks adjustability	Indicated
Control of genu valgum	Indicated	Indicated use of lock optional	Indicated	Indicated use of lock optional, unnecessary	
Control of genu varum	Indicated	Indicated use of lock optional	Indicated	Indicated use of lock optional, unnecessary	

Modified from *Short Course in Orthotics and Prosthetics—Course Manual.* Dallas, TX: University of Texas, Southwestern Medical Center; 1993: 8–22.

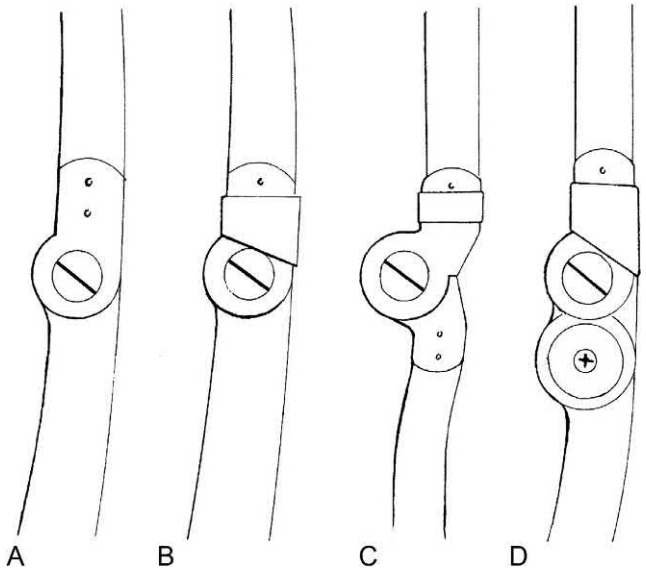


Fig. 9.20 Orthotic knee joints historically used in conventional and thermoplastic knee-ankle-foot orthoses. (A) A single-axis, or free, knee allows full flexion and extension while providing mediolateral and rotational stability to the knee joint. (B) A drop lock holds the knee in extension in standing, providing stability in all planes. It must be unlocked for knee flexion to occur when returning to sitting position. (C) Because the axis of the offset orthotic knee joint is positioned behind the anatomic knee axis, biomechanical stability of the orthosis is enhanced. It is available with and without a locking mechanism. (D) A variable-position, or adjustable, orthotic knee joint permits the orthotist to accommodate for changing range of motion or for fixed contracture at the knee.

An alternative lock that may be considered is a spring-loaded bail lock (also known as pawl or Swiss lock). The posterior bail connects the medial and lateral locks so that they can be locked or unlocked simultaneously. To unlock the KAFO when returning to sitting, the individual backs up against the edge of a seating surface (e.g., wheelchair, mat table, kitchen, or desk chair) and pushes the posterior bar into the seat to disengage the lock. This option is best used for persons with enough upper body strength and coordination to control the descent into sitting. There is a risk that the lock will disengage if the bail behind the knee is inadvertently bumped, and a fall will occur.

Offset Knee Joint

The offset knee joint (also known as a *posteriorly offset, free knee*) is aligned with its axis posterior to the axis of the anatomic knee (see Fig. 9.20C). In early stance, during double support, the ground reaction passes nearer to the axis of the orthotic joint, reducing the magnitude of the external flexion moment that is acting to flex the limb. With forward progression toward midstance, the GRF moves anterior to the orthotic joint, creating an extensor force that mechanically augments stance phase stability during single limb support. However, to be effective, the alignment between ankle and knee must be finely tuned. Transitions between sitting and standing become less problematic if the knee does not have to be unlocked. However, a drop lock or other locking mechanism can be added to stabilize the knee when the individual using the orthosis will be standing for long periods of time or when additional stability is advisable (e.g., when the patient is walking on uneven ground). An offset knee joint is often most suitable for those with lower motor neuron disease (e.g., poliomyelitis or low thoracic upper lumbar SCI).[96]

Variable Position Orthotic Knee Joint

The variable position locking orthotic knee joint *(dial lock, adjustable locking knee joint, serrated knee lock)* (see Fig. 9.20D) is used for those who are unable to fully extend the knee during stance because of knee flexion contracture. When there is a knee flexion contracture of more than 10 degrees, the GRF remains posterior to the anatomic knee joint during all of stance phase, and it becomes significantly more difficult for those with weakness or motor control impairment to generate the necessary muscle force for stance stability. For these individuals, the variable position knee joint is locked in the most extended position possible, providing an external mechanical stability.[15]

Stance-Control Orthotic Knee Joints

The initial SC options for KAFO orthotic knee joints were intended for individuals with a history of poliomyelitis who were coping with ineffective quadriceps activity, as well as postpolio syndrome.[97-99] Use of SC-KAFO has been extended to persons with stroke, brain tumor, acquired brain injury, incomplete SCI, spinal degenerative diseases, muscular dystrophy, multiple sclerosis, myopathy, radicular and peripheral nerve injury, and polyneuropathy. A variety of mechanisms (i.e., mechanical, hydraulic, or computer microchip electronic joints) are available (Fig. 9.21).[100-102]

Fig. 9.21 The Becker UTX is a mechanical stance-control knee-ankle-foot orthosis: The knee unit contains a cable-driven ratchet that locks the knee as it extends in terminal swing in preparation for stance phase and unlocks it at terminal stance to allow knee flexion necessary for limb clearance during swing phase. Note the lightweight lateral upright medial cable, anterior padded cuffs, and velcro-closing posterior straps.

All are designed to lock the orthotic knee joint in extension at initial contract and during most of stance, while unlocking the knee on heel rise during the toe rocker in the transition from terminal stance to preswing.[103] Hydraulic and electronic SC orthotic joints add resistance to knee flexion when the limb is loaded in less than a fully extended position, which potentially improves function when the wearer is ascending stairs or walking on uneven surfaces. Most SC orthotic knee joints are placed on the lateral upright of the KAFO. Pneumatic orthotic knee joints to assist with knee extension during swing are also available, added onto the medial or lateral uprights of the KAFO. Many of the SC knee units can be incorporated into KAFOs based on metal uprights, thermoplastic thigh and AFO components, or laminated designs. Characteristics of some of the commercially available SC and swing assist knee units are summarized in Table 9.4.

Most prescription guidelines for SC-KAFO indicate that the individual must demonstrate muscle strength of at least 3 of 5 on manual muscle testing at hip extensors and flexors and full extension of the anatomic knee joint. Contraindications for SC-KAFO use include fixed hip or knee flexion contracture, fixed plantarflexion contracture, significant spasticity, leg length discrepancy greater than 3 inches

Table 9.4 Stance-Control Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthosis Characteristics

Name	Manufacturer	Control System	Orthotic Components	Other Characteristics
Stance-control orthosis	Horton, Little Rock, AR.	Mechanical	Pushrod and cam system Thermoplastic stirrup at ankle causes pushrod to engage cam into friction ring to lock knee at initial contact, unloading in late stance repositions Pushrod to disengage cam from friction ring, allowing free knee flexion during swing	Dual uprights Three settings: locked, automatic, unlocked Lightweight but bulky May require larger shoe size to accommodate nested thermoplastic stirrup and AFO Most effective at constant walking speed and consistent stride length (not cadence responsive)
Free Walk	Otto Bock Healthcare, Duderstadt, Germany	Mechanical	Cable-driven pawl lock system Spring-loaded pawl locks the knee when in full extension during stance Unit unlocks with dorsiflexion of ankle in late stance to allow free knee flexion during swing	Single lateral upright with medial cable Very light weight Requires full knee extension to engage the lock, although uprights can be contoured to accommodate up to 10 degrees of knee flexion contracture Requires at least 5 degrees of mobility at ankle Requires at least 3/5 hip flexion and extension strength for safe and effective use Not appropriate for those with varus >10 degrees
UTX	Becker Orthopedic	Mechanical		
Swing Phase Lock 2	Fillauer Chattanooga, Tenn.	Mechanical	Gravity-activated pendulum system with weighted pawl lock Weighted pawl causes knee to lock when hip flexion in late swing Moves thigh anterior to body in preparation for initial contact in late stance, when thigh is posterior to body, weight pawl moves to unlocking position	Dual-upright, with SC gravity system in lateral upright Swing control spring to control/assist knee extension during swing phase can be incorporated into medial knee unit No cables or pushrods Not effective on stairs, inclines, uneven ground Four settings controlled by a remote push button switch: manual lock, manual unlock, automatic, or free swing
E-Knee	Becker	Microchip	Electromechanical system with pressure-sensitive footplate that feeds information to microprocessor to engage/disengage locking mechanism	Dual-uprights Can be used with thermoplastic and laminated materials Lithium battery must be charged daily Provides locking in increments of 8 degrees at any angle of knee flexion at initial contract No minimum strength or ROM requirements
Load Response	Becker	Mechanical	Spiral torsional spring designed to mimic shock absorption during loading response	Locking mechanism responsive for 0 to 18 degrees of knee flexion at initial contract Not effective for persons with fixed knee flexion contracture or valgus 15 degrees
GX-Knee	Becker	Mechanical and pneumatic	Pneumatic spring on lateral joint provides assistance with knee extension during swing phase	Does not provide mechanical stability in stance phase Requires 4/5 hip flexion and extension strength for safe use

Table 9.4 Stance-Control Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthosis Characteristics (Continued)

Name	Manufacturer	Control System	Orthotic Components	Other Characteristics
Full Stride	Becker	Mechanical	Cable-driven system	Requires full-knee extension to engage lock, although uprights can be contoured to accommodate knee flexion contracture Requires 5 degrees of ankle motion to achieve necessary cable excursion to operate locking mechanism
Safety Stride	Becker Orthopedic	Mechanical	Cable-driven system	Resists knee flexion in stance regardless of knee angle No minimum strength or ROM requirements GX swing assist system can be incorporated
Sensor Walk	Otto Bock Healthcare	Electromechanical	Unidirectional wrap-spring clutch-actuated by pressure sensors in heel and forefoot and motion sensor at knee	Heavy-duty custom KAFO accommodates up to 15 degrees of knee flexion contracture Powered by lithium-ion battery Locks knee joint when footplate indicates a stumble

AFO, Ankle-foot orthosis; *KAFO,* knee-ankle-foot orthosis; *ROM,* range of motion; *SC,* stance-control.
Modified from Operating instructions for the E-Mag and Free Walk orthosis. Ottobock, Germany. http://www.ottobock.com/cps/rde/xbcr/ob_com_en/im_646a214_gb_free_walk.pdf; Stance Control Overview Guide II, Becker Orthopedic. Troy, MI. http://www.beckerorthopedic.com/assets/pdf/stance:control.pdf; MO25-SPL Manual. Fillauer, Chattanooga, TN.http://www.fillauer.com/Orthotics/SPL2.html; Yakimovich T, Lemaire ED, Kofman J. Engineering design review of stance-control knee-ankle-foot orthoses. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2009;46(2):257–267.

(8 cm), valgus or varus deformity greater than 10 degrees, and excessive body weight (>220 lbs). Persons with cognitive impairment may not be able to comprehend how to safely use or maintain a SC-KAFO; SC options must be used with caution when cognitive ability and judgment are impaired.

The positive impact of SC knee joints on kinematics of walking is well documented. In addition to improving self-selected walking speed, cadence, and stride length, use of these orthotic knee joint improves symmetry of gait, reduces compensatory movement, and allows safer management of inclines and obstacles when compared with KAFOs with locked knees.[97-100] Persons who have used traditional KAFOs with locked knees for long periods before adopting SC designs benefit from additional functional training to be able to take full advantage of the mobility that a SC-KAFO provides.[104] The few studies that have examined wearers' experience with SC-KAFOs indicate better acceptance and general satisfaction with the devices in terms of effectiveness in improving mobility, dependability, and performance of the device and enhancing the wearer's sense of well-being.[105,106] The major concerns raised by wearers include ease of donning and doffing, weight of the orthosis, and cosmesis.[105,106]

MEDIALLY LINKED BILATERAL KNEE-ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSIS DESIGNS

For persons with mid to low thoracic and lumbar SCI, several options have been developed to link a pair of conventional KAFOs in an effort to allow reciprocal gait without having to brace about the hip in a conventional HKAFO (Fig. 9.22). The Walkabout Orthosis and the Moorling Medial Linkage Orthosis, both of which use a single-axis hinge between the two medial uprights of the KAFOs, are most effective for individuals with some residual volitional hip flexion who have sufficient thoracolumbar spinal mobility, especially into lateral flexion.[107-109] In both of these systems, the linkage system limits abnormal abduction of the limbs during gait. Preparation for swing limb advancement begins with an exaggerated lateral lean for weight

Fig. 9.22 Themoplastic hip-knee-ankle-foot orthoses (HKAFOs), typically lighter in weight than conventional HKAFOs, also have a pelvic band and orthotic hip and knee joints. Because they distribute forces over a wider thigh and calf band, an anterior knee stabilization pad may not be necessary. Many incorporate a solid or articulating ankle-foot orthosis design, fitting inside the shoe rather than in an external stirrup.

shift onto the stance limb; the wearer then initiates swing using residual hip hiking or hip flexion ability. When compared with reciprocal gait HKAFO (see later), medially linked KAFOs provided better ability (less assistance required) to accomplish sit-to-stand transitions, but walking speed tended to be slower, management of inclines more problematic, and performance on measures of balance somewhat less effective.[110,111] In addition, persons with SCI who wore both devices over a 3-month period reported that both were useful for standing and there was no functional advantage of medially linked KAFOs over reciprocal gait HKAFOs in terms of mobility.[112] Hybrid systems, consisting of medially linked KAFOs and FES, have also been used as an approach to improve the ability to walk for persons with SCI.[113]

KAFO Delivery and Functional Training

Once fabrication is completed, the orthotist inspects the KAFO to ensure that selected components work as intended, that finish work of plastic edges and metal components are effective, that the placement and contours are appropriate to the individual's limbs, and that orientation of the axis of the orthotic ankle and knee match anatomic joint axis. This initial fitting process not only identifies the fit of the orthosis in its intended functional upright and weight-bearing positions but also closely examines potential for soft tissue irritation in vulnerable areas of the person's skin. Length of the uprights and position and alignment of components are carefully inspected. The goal is a comfortable standing position with no discomfort or skin irritation. If minor problems are identified, the orthotist often makes simple adjustments of fit and alignment before functional training. The team then evaluates the ability of the orthosis to meet the functional goals of the orthotic prescription.

If the team determines that fit is acceptable and that orthotic goals (a combination of joint protection, structural stability, especially in stance, and functional mobility) have been met, functional training then begins. In most cases, especially if a patient is new to the use of an orthosis, a wearing schedule is developed, tailored to the patient's specific needs and physical condition, in which the patient gradually increases to full-time wear.

Whether the orthosis is of conventional KAFO design or is an SC-KAFO, physical therapy programs should include:

- exercises to strengthen muscle groups and improve control of hip, knee, and core (trunk) musculature to maximize ability to use the device;
- practice donning/doffing the device;
- rising to standing and returning to sitting;
- activities to facilitate anticipatory and reactionary postural control and balance;
- gait training under various task-environment conditions
- practice on stairs, uneven surfaces, and inclines;
- functional training in variety of environments

Training should also focus on developing a clear understanding of the fit of the orthosis on the limb, proper adjustment of stabilizing straps, education about appropriate footwear, and management of the locking mechanisms and function of the knee unit. Wearers and their caregivers must understand the care and maintenance of the orthosis, which is a mechanical device with moving parts that requires regular cleaning and occasional lubrication of its mechanical parts.

When Is a Hip-Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthosis Indicated?

There is much less evidence available in the clinical research literature to guide prescription and selection of HKAFOs than for selecting AFOs and KAFOs. Because HKAFOs encompass the hip, pelvis, and sometimes the trunk, they tend to be much more cumbersome to use, more challenging to don and doff, more expensive to fabricate, and require more maintenance than AFOs and KAFOs. HKAFOs only partially restore functional mobility, often with high energy cost. The additional control of joint motion achieved by moving proximally with a hip joint and pelvic band or an attached lumbosacral orthosis must be balanced against the practical challenges that the wearer will face when using the device.

Persons who use HKAFOs for standing and for the limited mobility that they provide typically have much more neuromotor system impairment that those who use AFOs and KAFOs. These orthoses are most often prescribed for children with neurologic involvement and individuals with SCI but may also be appropriate for those with progressive neuromuscular disorders—in effect, for any person for whom the ability to stand may not only enhance function for some functional tasks but also contribute to bone health, skin integrity, efficacy of digestion, urinary and bowel health, respiratory capacity, cardiovascular fitness and exercise response, and the psychological benefit that comes from being upright when interacting with peers.[114] Children, with their lower center of mass, may not be quite as concerned about the consequences of a fall, but for adults, upright standing in HKAFOs may be made more challenging by concerns about the potential to fall and related consequences.[115]

Hip-Knee-Ankle-Foot Orthosis Design Options

As in the case of AFOs and KAFOs, HKAFOs can be fabricated with many different materials (e.g., metals, thermoplastics, carbon composites) and with orthotic ankle, knee, and hip components. Historically, during the years immediately following the polio epidemic until the mid to late 1980s, orthotists fabricated HKAFOs by adding a hip joint and pelvic band to conventional KAFOs. To better meet the developmental and educational needs of children with neurologic conditions, conventional HKAFO designs evolved into standing frames, parapodiums, and swivel walkers. Building on this, a number of HKAFOs specifically designed

to mechanically facilitate reciprocal gait were developed to meet the needs of persons with SCI.

CONVENTIONAL HIP-KNEE-ANKLE-FOOT ORTHOSES

Fig. 9.22 illustrates the configuration of conventional HKAFOs. These devices are designed to hold both lower extremities in a stable extended position for upright standing; persons wearing this orthosis use either a hop-to gait with walkers or a swing-through gait with a pair of crutches for ambulation. Typically, HKAFOs require an assistive device to use upper extremity and trunk compensatory mechanisms to advance the orthosis. On rare occasions, a single HKAFO might be used for persons with neuromuscular or musculoskeletal impairment affecting one lower extremity. Even after the incorporation of lightweight thermoplastic or carbon composite materials, the energy cost of ambulation with conventional HKAFOs is significant and often functionally prohibitive.

The most distal component of the HKAFO is usually a solid or dorsiflexion assist articulating AFO. These are typically set in a few degrees of dorsiflexion to direct the tibia forward enough that the individual's weight line falls anterior to the knee and posterior to the hip when in a tripod standing position with crutches or a walker. Traditionally, the orthotic knee joint is locked into extension, although for persons with incomplete SCI capable of reciprocal gait, a SC knee joint might be considered. Thermoplastic thigh cuffs are effective in resisting torsional forces that would otherwise act on the limb in standing. A variety of commercially available orthotic hip joints include various single axis designs that can be used in locked position, allow free motion when unlocked, or allow motion only within a limited range. The axis of motion (center) of the orthotic hip joint must be positioned just proximal and anterior to the greater trochanter to best match the anatomic axis of motion of the hip. Because orthotic hip joints are fixed to the pelvic band and to lateral uprights of the thigh section, they effectively restrict abduction/adduction and rotation of the limb as well. Single-axis hip joints meet the needs of most individuals who require HKAFOs to stand and to ambulate. There are also several types of dual-axis hip joints with separate mechanical control systems for flexion/extension and for abduction/adduction. The proximal pelvic band is positioned between the trochanter and iliac crest. The pelvic band provides solid support from a position slightly medial to the anterior superior iliac spines (ASIS) and around the posterior pelvis. The pelvic band can be fabricated from metal, laminated components, or thick thermoplastic and is typically closed anteriorly by a belt or webbing with a Velcro fastener.

For stability in standing, the individual typically stands in a tripod position, with crutch tips diagonally 12 to 18 inches forward and a slightly exaggerated lumbar lordosis. This position ensures that the individual's center of gravity (weight line) falls posterior to the hip joint, creating an extension moment at the hip, achieving stability by alignment. To achieve forward motion, the individual uses the "head-hips" principle with shoulder joints acting as a fulcrum (Fig. 9.23A to F). A quick forceful "pike" (chin tuck and forward inclination of the trunk) while pushing downward through the handles of the assistive device elevates the lower extremities from the ground. This is immediately followed by head, neck, and back extension to "throw" the lower extremities forward for the next initial contact. As soon as the feet contact the ground, the individual quickly advances the crutches to once again reach the stable "tripod" position.

To effectively use HKAFOs, hip and knee joints of the lower extremity must be flexible enough to be positioned in extension. Although exaggerated lumbar lordosis may compensate for mild hip flexion contracture in achieving upright position, over time and with repeated forceful loading of swing through gait, this lordosis will likely contribute to development of disabling low back pain. Prevention of flexion contracture or deformity of the hips and knees is a key component of physical therapy intervention, especially for growing children with neurologic conditions.

HIP GUIDANCE ORTHOSIS AND PARAWALKER

The hip guidance orthosis (HGO) and the Orthotic Research and Locomotor Assessment Unit (ORLAU) Parawalker allow individuals with impaired muscle performance (those unable to accomplish the lifting of body weight needed for swing through gait pattern with crutches) to "walk" with crutches with a lateral weight shift. The HGO and Parawalker require the use of an ambulatory assistive device; training usually begins in the parallel bars and progresses to over ground level surfaces using a rolling walker or bilateral Lofstrand crutches. The HGO orthotic hip joint is stable when weight is borne through the lower extremity during stance but allows a pendular swing of the unweighted extremity for swing clearance. This occurs because of the rigid support that the HGO provides during single limb stance, keeping the limbs parallel in the coronal plane, which enhances swing limb clearance as the opposite limb advances.[116] In the original evaluation of the HGO prescribed for children with myelomeningocele, the ability to sit unsupported (hands free) for extended periods was the best predictor of successful use of the HGO.[117] The Parawalker, similar in design, provides more proximal support to the thorax and trunk (making it even more rigid) and uses a smaller orthotic hip joint. Because of its higher proximal trim line, the Parawalker can be used for standing and limited mobility (i.e., therapeutic walking) for persons with SCI at upper thoracic levels.[118-120]

RECIPROCAL GAIT ORTHOSES

The reciprocal gait orthosis (RGO), originally designed for children with myelomeningocele and currently used for adults with SCI, extends a pair of thermoplastic KAFOs upward to include a pelvis and thoracic bands; providing rigid stability for stance, it uses a cable-coupling system to provide hip joint motion for swing phase (Fig. 9.24).[121,122] Its dual cable system operates by reinforcing extension of the stance limb as the swing limb flexes forward when unloaded by lateral weight shift. This reciprocal dual cable also reduces risk of "jack-knifing" during ambulation by preventing both hips from flexing at the same time. Like the HGO and Parawalker, the RGO requires the person

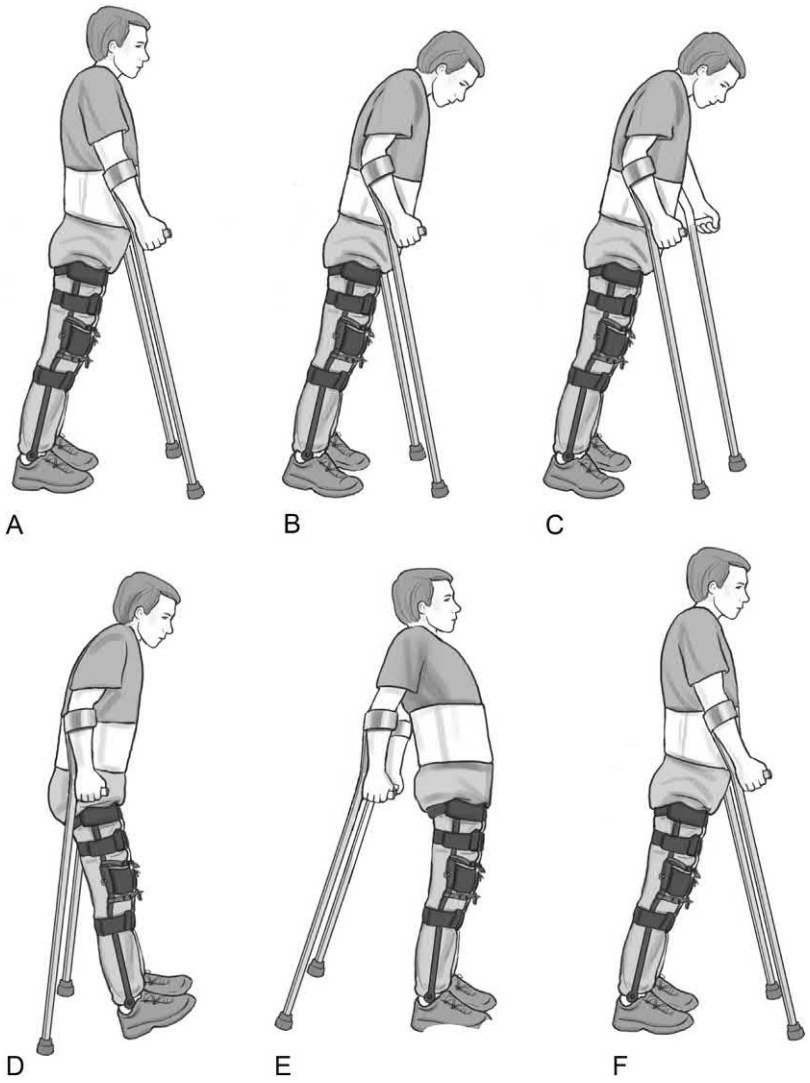


Fig. 9.23 Illustration of the head-hips principle in swing through gait using bilateral knee-ankle-foot orthoses and Lofstrand crutches, with shoulder joints acting as the fulcrum for movement. (A) Resting position is a stable hips forward, shoulders back posture, with a tripod formed by the individual's feet and the tips of the crutches. (B) Mobility is initiated with a quick and forceful chin tuck that (C) is combined with downward pressure through the crutches to unweight the feet. (D) A backward head movement then propels the lower body forward until (E) the hips are forward and shoulders are back to once again assume a stable inverted tripod position. Finally (F) the individual quickly propels off of the crutches to move them anteriorly to the stable starting position. (From Mulcahey MJ. Managemenr of the upper limb in individuals with tetraplegia. In Sisto SA, Sliwinski MM [eds]. *Spinal Cord Injuries: Management and Rehabilitation*. St. Louis: Mosby; 2009: 388.)

to use an assistive device (rolling walker, bilateral Lofstrand crutches, bilateral canes), relying on upper extremity motor control and muscle performance to a large degree to operate the system. The advanced RGO (ARGO) is an adaptation of the design, using a single cable, and engineered to allow standing with unilateral or no upper extremity support.[123,124] A prototype for an adjustable AGRO has been described; this would provide opportunity for a trial of ambulation with ARGO during rehabilitation to assist decision-making about capacity to use the device before a custom ARGO is fabricated.[125] There is some evidence that persons with neuromuscular conditions who consistently use an RGO or ARGO for therapeutic walking are less likely to develop significant secondary complications (i.e., contractures, decubitus ulcers, and/or scoliosis) than those with similar conditions who do not.[126]

HYBRID ORTHOSES: FUNCTIONAL ELECTRICAL STIMULATION

The most recent investigations of reciprocal orthoses for persons with upper motor neuron SCI have added FES to HGO/Parawalker and RGO/ARGO designs.[127,128] SC orthotic knee joints (described in the section on KAFOs) have also been incorporated in hybrid RGO-FES systems to afford a more natural pattern of swing limb advancement.[129] The major benefit of hybrid RGO-FES systems appears to be in greater distance covered, lower energy cost (as measured by physiologic cost index), and somewhat faster walking speed.[125,127,128] It is important to note that, although such hybrid systems are promising, they do not fully restore the ability to walk at preinjury levels. Walking speeds with hybrid devices have been reported to be

Fig. 9.24 The reciprocal gait orthosis uses a dual cable system to couple flexion of one hip with extension of the other. This coupling assists forward progression of the swing limb while ensuring stability of the stance limb.

between 0.20 and 0.45 m/s, whereas limited community walking becomes possible when walking speed is greater than 0.6 m/s, and usual waking speed for healthy adults ranges from 1.0 to 1.3 m/s, depending on height.[128-130]

Implications for Rehabilitation

The costs and benefits need to be carefully weighed when considering whether an orthosis that would facilitate therapeutic reciprocal walking would be appropriate for an individual with paralysis. The individual and/or the caregivers must clearly understand that these devices cannot fully restore the ability to walk at what would be considered community level. They must explore and embrace the goals of therapeutic walking: enhancement of bone health, cardiovascular conditioning, and digestive and urinary health, among others. For many individuals, gaining the motor skills necessary for safe use of the device may require substantial time and effort; training times reported in the literature range from 45 to 80 hours over a period of weeks to months. They must be ready to adhere to stretching protocols to ensure sufficient range of motion at the hip, knee, and ankle so that the device will both fit and operate optimally. They must be prepared to work to improve muscle performance and postural control of trunk and upper extremities so that they can use the orthosis most effectively. They must be willing to maintain a stable weight so that the orthosis will fit over many months or years. They must have the postural control necessary to (eventually) don and doff the orthosis without substantial assistance. They must understand the design of the orthosis and the function of its components enough to recognize when maintenance, adjustment, or repair is necessary. This is quite a bit to commit to; it is often wise to have the person interested in pursuing use of such an orthosis interact with someone else who has successfully used one to get a clear sense of what is required and what the potential outcomes are.

Outcome Measures in Orthotic Rehabilitation

How do the health care team, the individual using an orthosis and their caregivers, and the payers of the health care system determine successful use of a lower extremity orthosis, whether it be as simple as a UCBL insert for a child with mild diplegic cerebral palsy, an adult using an articulating AFO, a person with postpolio syndrome using a SC-KAFO, or a person with SCI using an ARGO? Initial criteria to consider might include:

- Can the person don and doff the orthosis independently?
- Does the person understand how the orthosis should fit on the limb, and can the person recognize signs that fit may not be appropriate (especially for growing children and for adults with peripheral or central sensory impairment)?
- Can the person transition from sitting to standing and back to sitting safely, independently, and with reasonable effort?
- Does the person have sufficient postural control to use the device not only on level nonresistant surfaces (e.g., tile or wood floors) but also on other surfaces (e.g., carpet, grass, inclines, stairs), which are likely to be encountered in the course of daily life?
- Children often play on the floor, and adults are often concerned with risk of falls. Can the person transition from the floor to standing safely, independently, and with reasonable effort? If not, can the person direct those who would offer assistance?
- Does the person know how to manage his or her body and assistive devices in case of a fall?
- Does the person understand the care and maintenance requirements of the device?

These questions, while ensuring that the individual is able to use the orthosis safely, do not sufficiently address the efficacy of the orthosis in enhancing the individual's ability to walk. Although observational gait analysis might allow the orthotist and physical therapist to evaluate changes an orthosis effects at each subphase of the gait cycle, this description of the quality of walking is not enough evidence to justify orthotic intervention. A variety of outcome measures must be used to address efficacy of an orthosis and the physical therapy intervention that facilitates its use.

WALKING SPEED

Probably the most robust indicator of the ability to walk is walking (gait) speed. Although technology such as motion analysis and the GAITRite system provide precise data about gait velocity, walking speed can be quickly and easily captured using a stopwatch over a known distance.[130,131] There is clear evidence for validity, reliability, and responsiveness of walking speed (measured over a 10-m distance), as well as information about typical walking performance values, correlations with fall risk and criteria for limited versus full community ambulation ability for most of the medical diagnoses in which a lower extremity orthosis may be prescribed (stroke, SCI, cerebral palsy, traumatic brain injury, among others).[130,132-140] Documenting comfortable and maximum walking speed at intervals without and with the orthosis at time of delivery and change in walking speed over the course of physical therapy intervention, along with discussion of the change in walking speed with respect to age-base and disease-reference norms, provide powerful information about efficacy of intervention.

ENDURANCE DURING WALKING

The ability to sustain walking over a period of time is also a key outcome of orthotic and physical therapy intervention. The most frequently used measure of endurance while walking is the 6-minute walk test (6 MWT), in which the distance that an individual walks during a 6-minute period is measured. Also valid is a 2-minute walking test. Clinometric properties of the 6 MWT have been evaluated for persons with stroke, SCI, cerebral palsy, traumatic brain injury, myelomeningocele, and chronic poliomyelitis.[141-146]

A self-report indicator of effort of physical activity that has also been used extensively in the clinical research literature is Rating of Perceived Exertion (RPE). In his original work, Borg presented a scale ranging from 6 (no effort) to 20 (maximum effort)[147]; a modified version, which uses a 1 to 10 scale (for adults) or color-coded schematic pictures of the face (for children and those with cognitive dysfunction) may be more interpretable for patients.[148,149] The question that use of RPE scale addresses is, "Does the orthosis reduce the perceived work (effort) of walking?" RPE scales have been used to assess efficacy of therapeutic intervention for persons with stroke, brain injury, SCI, and cerebral palsy.[128,150,151]

MOBILITY AND BALANCE WHILE WALKING

The ability to change direction and transition between surfaces (i.e., sit to stand) is also a key aspect of successful use of a lower extremity orthosis. During the TUG test, an individual must rise from a seated position, walk forward over a 3-m distance, turn around, walk back to the chair, and return to sitting, either at a usual pace or as quickly and safely as able.[152] Because most lower extremity orthoses constrain joint movement, and many of those who use them have neuromuscular impairments that place them at risk for falling, the TUG may provide a snapshot of dynamic postural control during walking with an orthosis. The TUG has been successfully used to assess functional status and predict outcomes in persons with neurologic and orthopedic conditions.[143,153-159] Self-reported measures, such as the Falls Efficacy Scale and Activities-Specific Balance Confidence (ABC) Scale, can supplement performance-based outcomes to measure the change in a patient's fear of falling pre- and post-bracing.[160-163]

Summary

This chapter explores the biomechanical design and component options of lower extremity orthoses used to facilitate the ability to walk for persons with a variety of neuromuscular impairments and at various ages and developmental stages of the life span. We have discovered that no orthosis can make walking "normal," although an appropriate orthosis can make walking more functional and less energy costly. We currently can evaluate how an orthosis will impact each of the rockers of stance phase, as well as the ability to clear the limb during swing phase. We currently have ideas about how footwear, such as an athletic shoe that provides a cushion heel and a rocker bottom, may compensate if an orthosis limits forward progression over the foot during stance. We have discovered that the selection of an appropriate orthosis involves input from many members of the rehabilitation team, not the least being the person who will wear the orthosis and his or her caregivers. We certainly have gained an appreciation that there is no "one size fits all" when it comes to choosing an orthosis but that orthotic prescription requires thoughtful deliberation about both the functional benefits and tradeoffs, as well as the financial cost of the device. We have learned that using an orthosis effectively requires much more than simply putting it on; there must be adequate time filled with appropriately challenging activities so that motor practice can build skill, postural control, and endurance necessary for functional walking. Finally, we have begun to consider strategies to assess outcomes of orthotic and physical therapy interventions for persons who require an AFO, KAFO, or HKAFO to accomplish their mobility goals.

Acknowledgments

The authors recognize professional colleagues Robert S. Lin, CPO (Director of Pediatric Clinical Services and Academic Programs, Hanger Orthopedic Group at the Connecticut Children's Medical Center, Hartford, CT.), Thomas V. DiBello, BS, CO (President, Dynamic Orthotics and Prosthetics, Inc., Houston, TX), and James H. Campbell, PhD, CO (Director of Research and Development, Engineering and Technical Services, Becker Orthopedic, Troy MI), whose excellent chapters on ankle-foot orthoses, knee-ankle-foot orthoses, and hip-knee-ankle-foot orthoses in the previous editions of this text provided a solid foundation for the this integrative chapter.

Case Examples

Recommendations are intended as ideas and guides for the clinician, not an all-inclusive or complete answer.

Case Example 9.1

P.M. is a 7-year-old child with a primary diagnosis of spastic diplegic cerebral palsy. He is anxious to keep up with his nonimpaired peers at school, but his moderate "crouch gait" (despite using Lofstrand crutches as assistive devices) limits his mobility and endurance. He is referred by his neurologist for evaluation in the interdisciplinary "brace clinic" at the local children's medical center.

On physical examination, P.M. is found to have moderate tightness and soft tissue shortening of his plantarflexors, distal hamstrings, adductors, and hip flexors. Although he exhibits moderate extensor-pattern spasticity in both lower extremities, sagittal and coronal plane motions of his hip, knee, and ankle are within 10 degrees of normal. Structurally, he exhibits 25 degrees of femoral anteversion and 15 degrees of internal tibial torsion. However, upon barefoot weight bearing, his foot progression angles appear to be normal, at approximately 10 degrees external (outward) angle.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What are the most likely gait problems in each subphase of gait that might be effectively addressed by an AFO?
- What musculoskeletal (alignment and flexibility) and neuromuscular (control) impairments or characteristics, as well as developmental issues, will have to be considered by the team as they sort through orthotic options for this child?
- Which of the orthotic options (static vs. dynamic) might you choose for this child? What are the possible benefits and tradeoffs of each?
- How might you assess if the orthosis chosen is accomplishing the desired outcomes?

RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE TEAM

Given the finding of dynamic pes planus and valgus deformity and the boy's propensity to crouch during stance, the team recommends bilateral polypropylene SAFO be custom molded for P.M. When P.M. receives his AFOs, he attends several sessions of outpatient gait training. His gait pattern demonstrates improved plantarflexion–knee extension couples, with virtually all of the preorthosis knee persistent knee flexion eliminated. Subtalar joint alignment is also improved, with an effective support of the medial longitudinal arch.

FOLLOW-UP CARE

Three weeks later, the patient's mother schedules a follow-up visit because she observes, "The AFO is causing P.M.'s feet to turn in." On this return visit, observational gait assessment reveals an apparent 30-degree internal (inward) foot progression bilaterally. This is causing difficulty with clearance of the advancing limb during swing phase. Examination of the fit and alignment of the AFOs reveal appropriate design and fit, with effective subtalar neutral position.

The team recommends computerized gait analysis to be performed to determine the underlying factors leading to this significant change in foot progression angle despite appropriately fit and designed SAFO. The team suspects that this altered foot progression angle is most likely the result of underlying musculoskeletal deformities (tibial torsion and femoral anteversion) unmasked when compensatory motion of the subtalar and midtarsal joints during stance is restricted by the AFOs. In effect, when foot alignment is well supported by the AFO, the effect of excessive tibial torsion and femoral anteversion during gait become more evident.

It is not possible for an AFO to effectively address or control gait problems arising from existing underlying transverse plane (rotational) deformity. The team and family begin to consider the possibility of femoral/tibial derotation osteotomy as a solution to the gait problems that have emerged.

Case Example 9.2

A 40-year-old man presented to the emergency department with severe shooting back pain radiating down both legs (right greater than left) weakness of the feet, saddle anesthesia, and urinary incontinence for 2 to 3 weeks with worsening over the past 4 days. Magnetic resonance imaging revealed multilevel degenerative disease with severe central canal stenosis at L2-L3 and L3-L4, thoracic spine spondylosis with severe stenosis, and spinal cord compression C3-C7. He underwent C3-C7 and L2-L5 laminectomies. Persistent weakness and foot drop bilaterally postoperatively.

Past Medical History: remote history of motor vehicle accident with severe right knee trauma.

Social history: Patient lives with fiancé in second-floor apartment with one flight of outdoor stairs with a single railing to enter plus one flight of stairs without a railing to the third-floor bedroom and bathroom. Prior to injury, patient was independent with activities of daily living, instrumental activities of daily living, and mobility.

Patient goals: To walk. To return to his apartment. To resume his studies to complete his undergraduate degree including mobility on campus.

He is now admitted to the acute rehabilitation spinal cord injury unit for functional retraining. Present examination findings include:

Sensation: Intact light touch, localization throughout bilateral lower extremities

Proprioception: Impaired right great toe and ankle. Intact left great toe and ankle.

Integumentary: Intact

Range of motion: Right ankle dorsiflexion (DF) to neutral. Left ankle DF -6 degrees.

Strength MMT: Hip grossly 2-3/5. Knee extension 4/5. Knee flexion 2/5. Ankle 0/5 in all planes except left plantarflexion 1/5.

Gait: 40 feet with bilateral Lofstrand crutches with excessive knee flexion during weight acceptance, hyperextension thrust at early to midstance transition, excessive knee extension and genu varus during midstance and terminal stance phase, excessive plantarflexion throughout swing phase causing reduced foot clearance, excessive forward pelvic rotation and hip hike bilaterally during swing phase,

Continued on following page

Case Example 9.2 **(Continued)**

B Trendelenburg hip drop, with step lengths short with swing heel landing near stance toe.

- What are the critical phases of gait where the patient's body structure/function impairments are evident?
- Which of these gait abnormalities could be supported/reduced through the use of an orthosis?
- What are the positive outcomes expected when using an orthosis for this patient (i.e., how will it improve mobility and gait, influence tone, or protect a limb or body segment)?
- How might you assess whether the orthosis chosen is accomplishing the desired outcomes?

TEAM RECOMMENDATIONS

Weakness is evident during *weight acceptance* as demonstrated by excessive knee flexion and again during midstance as hyperextension thrust is a compensation to lock the knee into a stable position due to the inability to effectively use strength to stabilize tibia advancement. Weakness is also negatively affecting *swing limb advancement* reflexed in excessive plantarflexion and need for hip hike compensation.

An orthosis could stabilize the distal limb during stance, improving weight acceptance and reducing abnormal knee forces during forward progression. It could assist with functional shortening of the limb by limiting excessive plantarflexion, which could reduce the need for hip hiking and pelvic rotation compensations to clear the limb in swing.

An orthosis can be expected to reduce excessive biomechanical forces from abnormal foot and tibial position, as well as improve gait efficiency, reducing energy consumption and allowing further ambulation tolerance and greater independence.

Valid and highly recommended outcome measures for a patient with spinal cord injury that could be used to assess the patient's outcomes with the orthoses include the following: Walking Index for Spinal Cord Injury II (WISCI II), 10-meter walk test, Timed Up and Go, 6-minute walk test (Neuro EDGE SCI incomplete).

Case Example 9.3

An 81-year-old man presented to the hospital with weakness and was diagnosed with Guillain-Barré syndrome. He was treated with intravenous immunoglobulin/prednisone. His course was complicated by limb and bulbar weakness and aspiration pneumonia. He was transferred to an acute rehabilitation hospital for functional retraining.

Past Medical History: Hypertension, hyperlipidemia, prostate cancer s/p prostatectomy, small left rotator cuff tear

Social history: Patient lives at home with wife in a two-level home plus basement. There are three steps to enter with a railing from the garage or three steps to enter the front entrance with no railing. The bedroom is located on the first floor as is the bathroom; however, the shower has a 6-inch lip to enter. There is one flight of 8 + 8 steps with railing to access the patient's second-floor home office. Prior to injury, the patient was independent with ADLs, IADLs, and mobility. He was playing tennis 3 days per week and bicycling during warm-weather months.

Patient's goals: To get in and out of bed independently. To walk. To negotiate stairs to his second-floor office. To return to tennis.

Present examination findings include:

Sensation: Absent to diminished throughout bilateral lower extremities
Proprioception: Absent at bilateral great toe and ankles
Spasticity: 0/4 (modified Ashworth Scale)
Integumentary: Intact
Range of motion: Hamstring muscle lengths limited to approx. 80 degrees bilaterally via straight leg raise.
Strength MMT: Right hip grossly 1/5. Left hip flexion 1/5 otherwise left hip 0/5. Bilateral knee extension 1/5. Bilateral hip flexion 2-/5. Right ankle DF 0/5. Left ankle DF 1/5. Bilateral ankle plantarflexion 1/5. Upper extremity strength is grossly 3/5 except hand function is limited to 2/5 bilaterally with impairments in fine motor control.
Bed mobility: Supine to sit with maximal assist of one person
Transfers: Sit to stand dependent via standing frame or maximal assist of two persons

- What type of orthosis is most appropriate to consider for early standing and gait training with this patient?
- What are the positive outcomes expected when using an orthosis for this patient (i.e., how will it improve mobility and gait, influence tone, or protect a limb or body segment)?
- What are the expected disadvantages or tradeoffs that may be associated with use of an orthosis (i.e., the ways in which it may complicate daily activity, mobility, or preferred activities; the energy cost associated with its use; the relative expense of the device)?
- What are the indications that the orthosis may be useful to the patient (i.e., the match between the person's characteristics and needs and what the orthosis will provide)?
- Considering the prognosis for recovery with this patient, how might the patient's orthosis be progressed/changed as his motor control improves?

TEAM RECOMMENDATIONS

Prognostic indicators for patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome suggest that 80% are able to ambulate within 6 months and 84% are able to ambulate at 1 year. Therefore the SAFO can progress with the patient by adding a hinged or articulating ankle joint to allow tibial progression during stance or by cutting back the trim lines to lessen stability.

Factors impacting the decision for early orthosis include significant muscle weakness, absent sensation and proprioception, and no tone present. Given lower extremity muscle strengths grossly in the absent (0) to poor (1) range, this patient will need a highly stable orthosis to maintain the ankle and knee in position to effectively stand. His upper extremities are also weak, limiting the patient's ability to rely on them for support in standing further, indicating the need for a highly stable brace. With no tone present, the patient will not be able to rely on tone to substitute for lack of strength. There do not need to be any considerations for a brace that will minimize spasticity. The absence of sensation and proprioception suggests that the brace must be well fitting to reduce pressure and shear forces that could occur during mobility.

Case Example 9.3 **(Continued)**

Considerations for bracing selection could range from, at simplest, a custom-molded solid AFO to a more complex KAFO. In the interest of selecting the least restrictive prescriptive orthoses, a solid AFO would be an appropriate initial brace to provide stability to the ankle and knee by limiting tibia mobility, thus stabilizing the leg in standing.

A solid AFO will provide two primary patient benefits: stability in stance and assistance with clearance in swing.

The ankle ROM restrictions will provide distal stability to the limb in stance, limiting the degrees of freedom and allowing the patient and therapist to focus on proximal stability training at the core and trunk. The fixed ankle position will assist with swing limb clearance by limiting excessive plantarflexion during swing phase.

There may be increased caregiver burden for donning and doffing due to upper extremity weakness and impaired fine motor control.

The patient is unable to stand without an external standing device or two-person assist. Stabilizing the distal limb by orthoses may allow the patient increased standing tolerance and increased frequency of standing if it can be reduced to the assistance of a single caregiver.

Meythaler JM. Rehabilitation of Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1997;78(8):872–879; Rajabally YA, Uncini A. Outcome and its predictors in Guillain-Barré syndrome. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry*. 2012;83(7):711–718.

Case Example 9.4

A 70-year-old man presented to the hospital with left leg pain of 3 months' duration and weakness over the past several weeks due to diabetic amyotrophy now with worsening of right leg weakness.

Past Medical History: arteriosclerosis, diabetes mellitus, umbilical hernia (repaired), bradycardia

Social history: Patient lives with his wife in a two-story home with 15 steps to enter from the garage level to the first floor. He has an additional flight of stairs to the second floor, where his bedroom and full bathroom are. On the first floor are a small living area, couch, and bathroom with shower stall. Patient has been staying on the couch on the first floor due to 11 falls in the past month on stairs. A few months prior to presentation, patient was regularly hiking on weekends and working as a homeland security agent. One month prior to injury he began using a right AFO short solid AFO due to foot drop and a cane. More recently he also began using a rolling walker.

Patient goals: To get his legs strong and to not have any more falls.

Present examination findings include:

Sensation: Absent light touch to bilateral feet, diminished light touch and localization throughout bilateral lower extremities distal to knee left worse than right.

Proprioception: Absent bilateral hallux. Diminished bilateral ankles.

Integumentary: Intact

Range of motion: Within functional limits but noted bilateral hamstring muscle length limitations.

Strength MMT: Left lower extremity grossly 2-/5 except knee extension 1/5.

Right hip flexion, adduction, and extension 4/5. Right hip abduction

3-/5. Right knee 3/5. Ankle dorsiflexion and plantarflexion 0/5.

Gait: 250 ft with rolling walker with minimal assistance except minimal to moderate assistance to recover when knees buckle. Patient wearing Right personal short semisolid AFO and left loaner Allard ToeOFF (carbon fiber) AFO. Gait is remarkable for left knee buckling when center of mass is anterior to the left foot during terminal stance, similar but less severe presentation of right knee. Decreased left heel strike at initial contact, absent foot clearance on left.

- Which of these gait abnormalities could be supported/reduced through the use of an orthosis?
- What are the positive outcomes expected when using an orthosis for this patient? (i.e., how will it improve mobility and gait, influence tone, or protect a limb or body segment).
- What are the expected disadvantages or tradeoffs that may be associated with use of an orthosis? (i.e., the ways in which it may complicate daily activity, mobility, or preferred activities; the energy cost associated with its use; the relative expense of the device)?
- Considering the prognosis for recovery with this patient, how might the patient's orthosis be progressed/changed as his motor control improves?

TEAM RECOMMENDATIONS

Given the patient's continued buckling with an AFO and his degree of weakness, a KAFO may be the most appropriate device to effectively assist with foot clearance and heel strike by stabilizing the ankle in near neutral while also providing limitations of tibial advancement and knee flexion during stance phase.

Use of an orthosis will allow control of knee and ankle joint range during weight bearing in stance phase. Limiting the range of both joints will prevent significant knee buckling, improving the patient's ability to ambulate safely, build confidence, and reduce fall risk.

Use of a KAFO is more complex for the patient to don and doff as part of activities of daily living. It is less cosmetically appealing compared with a less significant brace, such as an AFO. The brace will limit ROM during sitting tasks. The KAFO has more bulk and weight than an AFO, only which can increase energy demands during gait.

The prognosis for recovery of strength is fair to good for persons with diabetic amyotrophy; therefore, as the patient's motor control improves, the KAFO can be progressed to an AFO, providing more degrees of freedom for movement, reduced energy demand, and a less cumbersome donning/doffing process.

Case Example 9.5

A 69-year-old man presented to outpatient rehabilitation clinic with gait abnormalities in the setting of multiple sclerosis.

Past Medical History: hypertension, neurogenic bladder, rotator cuff syndrome, dyslipidemia, low back pain, osteoarthritis of the knee

Social history: Patient lives with his wife in a two-level home with stair slide to access the second floor. He is able to ambulate independently with a rolling walker. He has a manual wheelchair for community distances but rarely uses it.

Patient goals: To walk better. To walk in the community more.

Present examination findings include:

Sensation: Present but diminished light touch and localization in bilateral lower extremities distal to the knee.

Proprioception: Present bilateral ankle and hallux.

Integumentary: Intact

Range of motion: Within functional limits except bilateral ankle dorsiflexion limited to neutral.

Spasticity: 1+ bilateral ankle plantarflexors; 1+ bilateral hip adductors via modified Ashworth Scale.

Strength MMT: Lower extremities are grossly 2 to 3/5 throughout via functional observation except bilateral ankle dorsiflexion 2-/5 and bilateral ankle plantarflexion 2/5. Unable to formally manual muscle test due to inability to isolate single plane movement during testing in setting of increased lower extremity tone.

Gait: 40 ft with rolling walker and close supervision. Gait is remarkable for bilateral excessive plantarflexion during swing phase resulting in toe drag throughout; bilateral hip adduction with narrow base of support; short step lengths bilaterally; limited knee flexion during midswing phase and excessive knee extension, even hyperextension during stance phase.

- What are the critical phases of gait where the patient's body structure/function impairments are evident?
- Which of these gait abnormalities could be supported/reduced through the use of an orthosis?
- What are the positive outcomes expected when using an orthosis for this patient (i.e., how will it improve mobility and gait, influence tone, or protect a limb or body segment)?
- What are the expected disadvantages or tradeoffs that may be associated with use of an orthosis (i.e., the ways in which it may complicate daily activity, mobility, or preferred activities; the energy cost associated with its use; the relative expense of the device)?
- Considering this patient's diagnosis, how might the patient's orthosis be progressed/changed over time?

TEAM RECOMMENDATIONS

The patient's dorsiflexion weakness is evident during *swing limb advancement*. Plantarflexor spasticity may also be a contributing factor to the excessive plantarflexion seen during swing phase. Both of these body structure/function impairments result in a functionally long limb. Combined with weakness of the more proximal limb muscles and adductor tone, the patient has insufficient foot clearance.

Ankle dorsiflexion can be easily supported through the use of an orthosis. One option for this patient could be a neuroprosthesis such as Bioness 300 or WalkAid. Peripheral nerve integrity should be intact given the patient's diagnosis with an upper motor neuron disease process. Stimulation applied to the common peroneal nerve/anterior tibialis timed with swing phase can increase functional strength of ankle dorsiflexion and potentially reduce effects of antagonist spasticity. This will in effect make the limb shorter and easier to clear during swing, as well as provide a more normal heel strike at initial contact.

If adductor tone and proximal muscle weakness are limiting his ability to achieve hip and knee flexion during swing, a thigh component such as the Bioness L300+ can be added to the hamstring to cause knee flexion during swing phase, further shortening the limb and allowing improved swing limb advancement. It is important to note that hamstring flexion during swing phase is not normal muscle activity during gait, rather hamstrings would normally only be active eccentrically as the patient approaches terminal swing. In this case, the neuroprosthesis is being used as a compensatory strategy to reduce the energy associated with foot clearance and reduce risk of falls from inability to clear the limb.

Use of a neuroprosthesis will provide improved gait efficiency by reducing effort for swing limb advancement, reduce fall risk by improving limb clearance, and possibly provide functional strength recovery with continued stimulation use.

Neuroprostheses are associated with greater cost than more traditional bracing styles and therefore likely require a higher level of documentation of medical necessity and possibly greater advocacy on the part of the patient to obtain clinic/insurance coverage. In addition, the maintenance requirements are higher for battery life and electrode life, and some require the pad to be damp, which could require the patient to redampen midday.

The patient's cognition and sensation should be monitored over time. The use of a neuroprosthesis requires greater insight of the patient to ensure proper maintenance and wear and skin integrity checks. This patient has a degree of impaired sensation. This is not a contraindication for use of a neuroprosthesis but must be considered with other factors to ensure the patient maintains a healthy integumentary system. If the patient's sensation decreases, it will require greater cognitive awareness to monitor skin regularly. If the patient's cognition declines, he may require assistance from a caregiver for skin checks or require another type of brace if he cannot individually manage it.

References

1. Sheffler LR, Bailey SN, Chae J. Spatiotemporal and kinematic effect of peroneal nerve stimulation versus an ankle-foot orthosis in patients with multiple sclerosis: a case series. *Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;1(7):604–611.
2. Rosenbloom KB. Pathology-designed custom molded foot orthoses. *Clin Podiatr Med Surg.* 2011;28(1):171–187.
3. Trepman E, Donnelly P. Patellar tendon-bearing, patten-bottom caliper suspension orthosis in active Charcot arthropathy: crutch-free ambulation with no weight bearing in the foot. *Foot Ankle Intl.* 2002;23(4):335–339.
4. Lin SS, Sabharwal S, Bibbo C. Orthotic and bracing principles in neuromuscular foot and ankle problems. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2000;5(2):235–264.
5. Pavlik AJCO. The effect of long-term ankle-foot orthosis use on gait in the poststroke population. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2008;20(2):49–52.
6. Woo R. Spasticity: Orthopedic Perspective. *J Child Neurol.* 2001;16(1):47–53.

7. Lemaire E, Necsulescu L, Greene G. Service delivery trends for a physical rehabilitation outreach program. *Disabil Rehabil*. 2006;28 (21):1349–1359.
8. Morris C, Newdick H, Johnson A. Variations in the orthotic management of cerebral palsy. *Child Care Health Dev*. 2002;28 (2):139–147.
9. Bedotto RA. Biomechanical assessment and treatment in lower extremity prosthetics and orthotics: a clinical perspective. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am*. 2006;17(1):203–243.
10. Davids JR, Rowan F, Davis RB. Indications for orthoses to improve gait in children with cerebral palsy. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg*. 2007;15(3):178–188.
11. Capjon H, Bjork IT. Rehabilitation after multilevel surgery in ambulant spastic children with cerebral palsy: children and parent experiences. *Dev Neurorehabil*. 2010;13(3):182–191.
12. Basford JR, Johnson SJ. Form may be as important as function in orthotic acceptance: a case report. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2002;83 (3):433–435.
13. Perry JBJ. Basic Functions. In: Perry J, Burnfield JM, eds. *Gait Anlysis: Normal and Pathological Function*. 2nd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2010.
14. Perry J. Normal and pathological gait. In: Hsu HD, Michael JW, Fisk JR, eds. *Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2008.
15. Michael JW. Lower Limb Orthoses. In: Hsu HDMJ, Fisk JR, eds. *Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2008:343–356.
16. Janisse DJ. Shoes and Shoe Modifications. In: MJ Hsu HD, Fisk JR, eds. *Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2008:325–334.
17. McHugh B. Analysis of body-device interface forces in the sagittal plane for patients wearing ankle-foot orthoses. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1999;23(1):75–81.
18. Chambers RB, Elftman N, Bowker JH. Orthotic management of the neuropathic and dysvascular patient. In: Hsu HDMJ, Fisk JR, eds. *Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2008:391–410.
19. Mavroidis C, Ranky RG, Sivak ML, et al. Patient specific ankle-foot orthoses using rapid prototyping. *J Neuroeng Rehabil*. 2011;8(1).
20. Brncick M. Computer automated design and computer automated manufacture. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am*. 2000;11(3):701–713.
21. Edelstein JE, Bruckner J. Ankle foot orthoses. In: Edelstein EJ, Bruckner J, eds. *Orthotics: A Comprehensive Clinical Approach*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2002:39–57.
22. Franceschini M, Massucci M, Ferrari L, Agosti M, Paroli C. Effects of an ankle-foot orthosis on spatiotemporal parameters and energy cost of hemiparetic gait. *Clinical rehabilitation*. 2003;17(4):368–372.
23. Meadows BBR, Owens E. Biomechanics of the hip, knee, and ankle. In: Hsu HDMJ, Fisk JR, eds. *Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier; 2008:299–310.
24. Hanna D, Harvey RL. Review of preorthotic biomechanical considerations. *Topics in stroke rehabilitation*. 2001;7(4):29–37.
25. Iwata M, Kondo I, Sato Y, Satoh K, Soma M, Tsushima E. An ankle-foot orthosis with inhibitor bar: effect on hemiplegic gait. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2003;84(6):924–927.
26. Buckon CE, Thomas SS, Jakobson-Huston S, Moor M, Sussman M, Aiona M. Comparison of three ankle-foot orthosis configurations for children with spastic diplegia. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2004;46 (9):590–598.
27. Maeda N, Kato J, Azuma Y, et al. Energy expenditure and walking ability in stroke patients: Their improvement by ankle-foot orthoses. *Isokinet Exerc Sci*. 17(2), 57-62.
28. Brophy LS. Gait in cerebral palsy. *Ortho Phys Ther Clin N Am*. 2001;10 (1):55–76.
29. Morris C. A review of the efficacy of lower-limb orthoses used for cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2002;44(3):205–211.
30. Khan F. Rehabilitation in Guillian Barre syndrome. *Aust Fam Physician*. 2004;33(12):1013–1017.
31. Froberg A, Komi P, Ishikawa M, Movin T, Arndt A. Force in the achilles tendon during walking with ankle foot orthosis. *Am J Sports Med*. 2009;37(6):1200–1207.
32. Rogozinski BM, Davids JR, Davis 3rd RB, Jameson GG, Blackhurst DW. The efficacy of the floor-reaction ankle-foot orthosis in children with cerebral palsy. *J Bone Joint Surg Am*. 2009;91 (10):2440–2447.
33. Polliack AAP, Elliot S, Caves CBSCO, McNeal DRP, Landsberger SES. Lower Extremity Orthoses for Children with Myelomeningocele: User and Orthotist Perspectives. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2001;13(4):123–129.
34. Kelley CPTMSNCS, DiBello TVBSCOF. Orthotic Assessment for Individuals With Postpolio Syndrome: A Classification System. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2007;19(4):109–113.
35. Luc M, Bensoussan L, Viton JM, et al. Gait recovery in a distal spinal muscular atrophy patient wearing a patellar tendon-bearing orthosis and orthopaedic shoes. *J Rehabil Med*. 2007;39(2):181–184.
36. Khaira HS, Coddington T, Drew A, Roberts PN, Imray CH. Patellar tendon bearing orthosis–application as adjunctive treatment in healing of lower-limb tissue loss. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg*. 1998;16 (6):485–488.
37. Rodriguez-Merchan EC. Ankle surgery in haemophilia with special emphasis on arthroscopic debridement. *Haemophilia*. 2008;14 (5):913–919.
38. VT I. Dual axis ankle control systems and the UCBL shoe insert: biomechanical considerations. *Bull Prosthet Res*. 1969; (10-11):130–146.
39. Carlson JBC. An effective design for controlling the unstable subtalar joint. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1979;33(1):39–49.
40. Hylton NMRPT. Postural and Functional Impact of Dynamic AFOs and FOs in a Pediatric Population. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 1989;2(1):40–53.
41. Romkes J, Brunner R. Comparison of a dynamic and a hinged ankle-foot orthosis by gait analysis in patients with hemiplegic cerebral palsy. *Gait Posture*. 2002;15(1):18–24.
42. Naslund A, Tamm M, Ericsson AK, von Wendt L. Dynamic ankle-foot orthoses as a part of treatment in children with spastic diplegia–parents' perceptions. *Physiother Res Int*. 2003;8(2):59–68.
43. Ounpuu S, Bell KJ, Davis 3rd RB, DeLuca PA. An evaluation of the posterior leaf spring orthosis using joint kinematics and kinetics. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 1996;16(3):378–384.
44. Sumiya T, Suzuki Y, Kasahara T. Stiffness control in posterior-type plastic ankle-foot orthoses: effect of ankle trimline. Part 2: Orthosis characteristics and orthosis/patient matching. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1996;20(2):132–137.
45. Sienko Thomas S, Buckon CE, Jakobson-Huston S, Sussman MD, Aiona MD. Stair locomotion in children with spastic hemiplegia: the impact of three different ankle foot orthosis (AFOs) configurations. *Gait Posture*. 2002;16(2):180–187.
46. Radtka SA, Oliveira GB, Lindstrom KE, Borders MD. The kinematic and kinetic effects of solid, hinged, and no ankle-foot orthoses on stair locomotion in healthy adults. *Gait Posture*. 2006;24(2):211–218.
47. Lewallen JCO, Miedaner JMSPT, Amyx SCO, Sherman JP. Effect of three styles of custom ankle foot orthoses on the gait of stroke patients while walking on level and inclined surfaces. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2010;22(2):78–83.
48. Buckon CE, Thomas SS, Jakobson-Huston S, Sussman M, Aiona M. Comparison of three ankle-foot orthosis configurations for children with spastic hemiplegia. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2001;43(6):371–378.
49. Bielby SA, Warrick TJ, Benson DCO, et al. Trimline severity significantly affects rotational stiffness of ankle-foot orthosis. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2010;22(4):204–210.
50. Desloovere K, Molenaers G, Van Gestel L, et al. How can push-off be preserved during use of an ankle foot orthosis in children with hemiplegia? A prospective controlled study. *Gait Posture*. 2006;24 (2):142–151.
51. Van Gestel L, Molenaers G, Huenaerts C, Seyler J, Desloovere K. Effect of dynamic orthoses on gait: a retrospective control study in children with hemiplegia. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2008;50(1):63–67.
52. Bartonek A, Eriksson M, Gutierrez-Farewik EM. A new carbon fibre spring orthosis for children with plantarflexor weakness. *Gait Posture*. 2007;25(4):652–656.
53. Wolf SI, Alimusaj M, Rettig O, Doderlein L. Dynamic assist by carbon fiber spring AFOs for patients with myelomeningocele. *Gait Posture*. 2008;28(1):175–177.
54. Bartonek A, Eriksson M, Gutierrez-Farewik EM. Effects of carbon fibre spring orthoses on gait in ambulatory children with motor disorders and plantarflexor weakness. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2007;49 (8):615–620.
55. Stein RB, Chong S, Everaert DG, et al. A multicenter trial of a footdrop stimulator controlled by a tilt sensor. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2006;20(3):371–379.
56. Sheffler LR, Hennessey MT, Naples GG, Chae J. Peroneal nerve stimulation versus an ankle foot orthosis for correction of footdrop in

stroke: impact on functional ambulation. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2006;20(3):355–360.
57. Dunning K, Black K, Harrison A, McBride K, Israel S. Neuroprosthesis peroneal functional electrical stimulation in the acute inpatient rehabilitation setting: a case series. *Phys Ther*. 2009;89(5):499–506.
58. Ring H, Treger I, Gruendlinger L, Hausdorff JM. Neuroprosthesis for footdrop compared with an ankle-foot orthosis: effects on postural control during walking. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis*. 2009;18 (1):41–47.
59. Barrett CL, Mann GE, Taylor PN, Strike P. A randomized trial to investigate the effects of functional electrical stimulation and therapeutic exercise on walking performance for people with multiple sclerosis. *Mult Scler*. 2009;15(4):493–504.
60. Mann GE, Finn SM, Taylor PN. A pilot study to investigate the feasibility of electrical stimulation to assist gait in Parkinson's disease. *Neuromodulation*. 2008;11(2):143–149.
61. Danielsson A, Sunnerhagen KS. Energy expenditure in stroke subjects walking with a carbon composite ankle foot orthosis. *J Rehabil Med*. 2004;36(4):165–168.
62. Brehm MA, Harlaar J, Schwartz M. Effect of ankle-foot orthoses on walking efficiency and gait in children with cerebral palsy. *J Rehabil Med*. 2008;40(7):529–534.
63. Fatone S, Gard SA, Malas BS. Effect of ankle-foot orthosis alignment and foot-plate length on the gait of adults with poststroke hemiplegia. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2009;90(5):810–818.
64. Romkes J, Hell AK, Brunner R. Changes in muscle activity in children with hemiplegic cerebral palsy while walking with and without ankle-foot orthoses. *Gait Posture*. 2006;24(4):467–474.
65. Cakar E, Durmus O, Tekin L, Dincer U, Kiralp MZ. The ankle-foot orthosis improves balance and reduces fall risk of chronic spastic hemiparetic patients. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med*. 2010;46(3): 363–368.
66. Cattaneo D, Marazzini F, Crippa A, Cardini R. Do static or dynamic AFOs improve balance? *Clinical rehabilitation*. 2002;16(8):894–899.
67. Kobayashi TP, Leung AKLP, Hutchins SWP. Design and effect of ankle-foot orthoses proposed to influence muscle tone: A review. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2011;23(2):52–57.
68. Duncan WR, Mott DH. Foot reflexes and the use of the "inhibitive cast". *Foot Ankle*. 1983;4(3):145–148.
69. Bertoti DB. Effect of short leg casting on ambulation in children with cerebral palsy. *Phys Ther*. 1986;66(10):1522–1529.
70. Lohman M, Goldstein H. Alternative Strategies in Tone-Reducing AFO Design. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 1993;5(1):21–24.
71. Blackburn M, van Vliet P, Mockett SP. Reliability of measurements obtained with the modified Ashworth scale in the lower extremities of people with stroke. *Phys Ther*. 2002;82(1):25–34.
72. Morris C, Condie D. *Recent developments in healthcare for cerebral palsy: Implications and opportunities for orthotics*. Copenhagen: International Society for Prosthetics and Orthotics; 2009.
73. Ramstrand N, Ramstrand S. The effect of ankle-foot orthoses on balance-a systematic review. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2010;22(10):4–23.
74. Malas BS. The effect of ankle-foot orthoses on balance: a clinical perspective. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2010;22(10):24–33.
75. Stevens P. Prevalence of balance compromise in commonly treated patient populations: An introduction to the academy's state of the science conference on the effects of ankle-foot orthoses on balance. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2010;22(10):1–3.
76. Kott KM, Held SL. Effects of orthoses on upright functional skills of children and adolescents with cerebral palsy. *Pediatr Phys Ther*. 2002;14(4):199–207.
77. Wang RY, Yen L, Lee CC, Lin PY, Wang MF, Yang YR. Effects of an ankle-foot orthosis on balance performance in patients with hemiparesis of different durations. *Clin Rehabil*. 2005;19(1):37–44.
78. Wang RY, Lin PY, Lee CC, Yang YR. Gait and balance performance improvements attributable to ankle-foot orthosis in subjects with hemiparesis. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;86(7):556–562.
79. de Wit DC, Buurke JH, Nijlant JM, Ijzerman MJ, Hermens HJ. The effect of an ankle-foot orthosis on walking ability in chronic stroke patients: a randomized controlled trial. *Clinical Rehabil*. 2004;18 (5):550–557.
80. Pohl M, Mehrholz J. Immediate effects of an individually designed functional ankle-foot orthosis on stance and gait in hemiparetic patients. *Clinical Rehabil*. 2006;20(4):324–330.
81. Hebert JS. Ambulatory KAFOs: A physiatry perspective. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2006;18(7):169–174.
82. Kaufman KR, Irby S. Ambulatory KAFOs: A biomechanical engineering perspective. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2006;18(7):175–182.
83. Merkel KD, Miller NE, Westbrook PR, Merritt JL. Energy expenditure of paraplegic patients standing and walking with two knee-ankle-foot orthoses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1984;65(3):121–124.
84. Michael JW. KAFOs for Ambulation: An Orthotist's Perspective. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2006;18(7):187–191.
85. Perry J. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function*. Thorofare, NJ: Slack, Inc; 1992.
86. Zissimopoulos A, Fatone S, Gard SA. Biomechanical and energetic effects of a stance-control orthotic knee joint. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2007;44(4):503–513.
87. Kubota KL, Eberly V, Mulroy SJ. Lower extremity orthotic prescription. In: Field-Fote E, ed. *Spinal Cord Injury Rehabilitation*. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2009:191–314.
88. Kermoian RJM, Butler EE, Skinner S. Development of Gait. In: Rose J, Gamble JG, eds. *Human Walking*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:119–130.
89. Bakker JP, de Groot IJ, Beckerman H, de Jong BA, Lankhorst GJ. The effects of knee-ankle-foot orthoses in the treatment of Duchenne muscular dystrophy: review of the literature. *Clinical Rehabil*. 2000;14 (4):343–359.
90. Taktak DM, Bowker P. Lightweight, modular knee-ankle-foot orthosis for Duchenne muscular dystrophy: design, development, and evaluation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1995;76(12):1156–1162.
91. Hachisuka K, Makino K, Wada F, Saeki S, Yoshimoto N, Arai M. Clinical application of carbon fibre reinforced plastic leg orthosis for polio survivors and its advantages and disadvantages. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2006;30(2):129–135.
92. Brehm MA, Beelen A, Doorenbosch CA, Harlaar J, Nollet F. Effect of carbon-composite knee-ankle-foot orthoses on walking efficiency and gait in former polio patients. *J Rehabil Med*. 2007;39 (8):651–657.
93. Hachisuka K, Makino K, Wada F, Saeki S, Yoshimoto N. Oxygen consumption, oxygen cost and physiological cost index in polio survivors: a comparison of walking without orthosis, with an ordinary or a carbon-fibre reinforced plastic knee-ankle-foot orthosis. *J Rehabil Med*. 2007;39(8):646–650.
94. Fatone S. A review of the literature pertaining to KAFOs and HKAFOs for ambulation. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2006;18(7):137–168.
95. McMillan AG, Kendrick K, Michael JW, Aronson JM, Horton GW. Preliminary evidence for effectiveness of a stance control orthosis. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2004;16(1):6–13.
96. Edelstein JE. Orthotic assessment and management. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation: Assessment and Treatment*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Davis; 2007:1213–1248.
97. Hebert JS, Liggins AB. Gait evaluation of an automatic stance-control knee orthosis in a patient with postpoliomyelitis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2005;86(8):1676–1680.
98. Yakimovich T, Lemaire ED, Kofman J. Preliminary kinematic evaluation of a new stance-control knee-ankle-foot orthosis. *Clin Biomech*. 2006;21(10):1081–1089.
99. Irby SE, Bernhardt KA, Kaufman KR. Gait of stance control orthosis users: the dynamic knee brace system. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2005;29 (3):269–282.
100. Davis PC, Bach TM, Pereira DM. The effect of stance control orthoses on gait characteristics and energy expenditure in knee-ankle-foot orthosis users. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2010;34(2):206–215.
101. Lemaire ED, Goudreau L, Yakimovich T, Kofman J. Angular-velocity control approach for stance-control orthoses. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng*. 2009;17(5):497–503.
102. Yakimovich T, Kofman J, Lemaire E. Design, construction and evaluation of an electromechanical stance-control knee-ankle-foot orthosis. *Conference Proceedings: IEEE Engineering in Medicine and Biology*. 2005;3:2333–2340.
103. Yakimovich T, Lemaire ED, Kofman J. Engineering design review of stance-control knee-ankle-foot orthoses. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2009;46 (2):257–267.
104. Irby SE, Bernhardt KA, Kaufman KR. Gait changes over time in stance control orthosis users. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2007;31(4):353–361.
105. Bernhardt KA, Irby SE, Kaufman KR. Consumer opinions of a stance control knee orthosis. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2006;30(3): 246–256.
106. Peethambaran A. The relationship between performance, satisfaction, and well being for patients using anterior and

posterior design knee-ankle-foot-orthosis. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2000;12 (1):33–45.
107. Middleton JW, Yeo JD, Blanch L, Vare V, Peterson K, Brigden K. Clinical evaluation of a new orthosis, the 'walkabout', for restoration of functional standing and short distance mobility in spinal paralysed individuals. *Spinal cord*. 1997;35(9):574–579.
108. Middleton JW, Fisher W, Davis GM, Smith RM. A medial linkage orthosis to assist ambulation after spinal cord injury. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1998;22(3):258–264.
109. Kawashima N, Taguchi D, Nakazawa K, Akai M. Effect of lesion level on the orthotic gait performance in individuals with complete paraplegia. *Spinal Cord*. 2006;44(8):487–494.
110. Harvey LA, Smith MB, Davis GM, Engel S. Functional outcomes attained by T9-12 paraplegic patients with the walkabout and the isocentric reciprocal gait orthoses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1997;78 (7):706–711.
111. Abe K. Comparison of static balance, walking velocity, and energy consumption with knee-ankle-foot orthosis, walkabout orthosis, and reciprocating gait orthosis in thoracic-level paraplegic patients. *J Prosthet Ortho*. 2006;18(3):87–91.
112. Harvey LA, Newton-John T, Davis GM, Smith MB, Engel S. A comparison of the attitude of paraplegic individuals to the walkabout orthosis and the isocentric reciprocal gait orthosis. *Spinal Cord*. 1997;35(9): 580–584.
113. Shimada Y, Hatakeyama K, Minato T, et al. Hybrid functional electrical stimulation with medial linkage knee-ankle-foot orthoses in complete paraplegics. *Tohoku J Exp Med*. 2006;209(2):117–123.
114. Edelstein JE. Orthotic options for standing and walking. *Top Spinal Cord Inj Rehabil*. 2000;5(4):11–23.
115. John LT, Cherian B, Babu A. Postural control and fear of falling in persons with low-level paraplegia. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2010;47(5): 497–502.
116. Jefferson RJ, Whittle MW. Performance of three walking orthoses for the paralysed: a case study using gait analysis. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1990;14(3):103–110.
117. Rose GK, Stallard J, Sankarankutty M. Clinical evaluation of spina bifida patients using hip guidance orthosis. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 1981;23(1):30–40.
118. Stallard J, McLeod N, Woollam PJ, Miller K. Reciprocal walking orthosis with composite material body brace: initial development. *Proc Inst Mech Eng H*. 2003;217(5):385–392.
119. Stallard J, Major RE. The case for lateral stiffness in walking orthoses for paraplegic patients. *Proc Inst Mech Eng H*. 1993;207(1):1–6.
120. Major RE, Stallard J, Farmer SE. A review of 42 patients of 16 years and over using the ORLAU Parawalker. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1997;21 (2):147–152.
121. Dall PM, Muller B, Stallard I, Edwards J, Granat MH. The functional use of the reciprocal hip mechanism during gait for paraplegic patients walking in the Louisiana State University reciprocating gait orthosis. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1999;23(2):152–162.
122. Johnson WB, Fatone S, Gard SA. Walking mechanics of persons who use reciprocating gait orthoses. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2009;46(3): 435–446.
123. MJ IJ, Baardman G, Hermens HJ, Veltink PH, Boom HB, Zilvold G. The influence of the reciprocal cable linkage in the advanced reciprocating gait orthosis on paraplegic gait performance. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1997;21(1):52–61.
124. Baardman G, MJ IJ, Hermens HJ, Veltink PH, Boom HB, Zilvold G. The influence of the reciprocal hip joint link in the Advanced Reciprocating Gait Orthosis on standing performance in paraplegia. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1997;21(3):210–221.
125. Scivoletto G, Mancini M, Fiorelli E, Morganti B, Molinari M. A prototype of an adjustable advanced reciprocating gait orthosis (ARGO) for spinal cord injury (SCI). *Spinal Cord*. 2003;41(3):187–191.
126. Douglas R, Larson PF, D'Ambrosia R, McCall RE. The LSU reciprocation gait orthosis. *Orthopedics*. 1983;6(7):834–839.
127. Solomonow M, Aguilar E, Reisin E, et al. Reciprocating gait orthosis powered with electrical muscle stimulation (RGO II). Part I: Performance evaluation of 70 paraplegic patients. *Orthopedics*. 1997;20 (4):315–324.
128. Marsolais EB, Kobetic R, Polando G, et al. The Case Western Reserve University hybrid gait orthosis. *J Spinal Cord Med*. 2000;23(2): 100–108.
129. Stein RB, Hayday F, Chong S, et al. Speed and efficiency in walking and wheeling with novel stimulation and bracing systems after spinal cord injury: a case study. *Neuromodulation*. 2005;8 (4):264–271.
130. Fritz S, Lusardi M. White paper: "walking speed: the sixth vital sign". *J Geriatr Phys Ther*. 2009;32(2):46–49.
131. Turner-Stokes L, Turner-Stokes T. The use of standardized outcome measures in rehabilitation centres in the UK. *Clin Rehabil*. 1997;11 (4):306–313.
132. Carvalho C, Sunnerhagen KS, Willen C. Walking speed and distance in different environments of subjects in the later stage post-stroke. *Physiother Theory Pract*. 2010;26(8):519–527.
133. Bowden MG, Balasubramanian CK, Behrman AL, Kautz SA. Validation of a speed-based classification system using quantitative measures of walking performance poststroke. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2008;22(6):672–675.
134. Jackson AB, Carnel CT, Ditunno JF, et al. Outcome measures for gait and ambulation in the spinal cord injury population. *J Spinal Cord Med*. 2008;31(5):487–499.
135. van Hedel HJ, Group ES. Gait speed in relation to categories of functional ambulation after spinal cord injury. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2009;23(4):343–350.
136. van Hedel HJ, Wirz M, Curt A. Improving walking assessment in subjects with an incomplete spinal cord injury: responsiveness. *Spinal Cord*. 2006;44(6):352–356.
137. Martin L, Baker R, Harvey A. A systematic review of common physiotherapy interventions in school-aged children with cerebral palsy. *Phys Occup Ther Pediatr*. 2010;30(4):294–312.
138. Kurz MJ, Stuberg W, DeJong SL. Body weight supported treadmill training improves the regularity of the stepping kinematics in children with cerebral palsy. *Dev Neurorehabil*. 2011;14(2):87–93.
139. van Loo MA, Moseley AM, Bosman JM, de Bie RA, Hassett L. Inter-rater reliability and concurrent validity of walking speed measurement after traumatic brain injury. *Clin Rehabil*. 2003;17(7):775–779.
140. Moseley AM, Lanzarone S, Bosman JM, et al. Ecological validity of walking speed assessment after traumatic brain injury: a pilot study. *J Head Trauma Rehabil*. 2004;19(4):341–348.
141. Fulk GD, Echternach JL, Nof L, O'Sullivan S. Clinometric properties of the six-minute walk test in individuals undergoing rehabilitation poststroke. *Physiother Theory Pract*. 2008;24(3):195–204.
142. Ditunno Jr JF, Barbeau H, Dobkin BH, et al. Validity of the walking scale for spinal cord injury and other domains of function in a multicenter clinical trial. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2007;21(6):539–550.
143. van Hedel HJ, Wirz M, Dietz V. Assessing walking ability in subjects with spinal cord injury: validity and reliability of 3 walking tests. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2005;86(2):190–196.
144. Thompson P, Beath T, Bell J, et al. Test-retest reliability of the 10-metre fast walk test and 6-minute walk test in ambulatory school-aged children with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2008;50 (5):370–376.
145. Hassan J, van der Net J, Helders PJ, Prakken BJ, Takken T. Six-minute walk test in children with chronic conditions. *British journal of sports medicine*. 2010;44(4):270–274.
146. Gylfadottir S, Dallimore M, Dean E. The relation between walking capacity and clinical correlates in survivors of chronic spinal poliomyelitis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2006;87(7):944–952.
147. Borg GA. Psychophysical bases of perceived exertion. *Med Sci Sports Exerc*. 1982;14(5):377–381.
148. Lamb KL, Eston RG, Corns D. Reliability of ratings of perceived exertion during progressive treadmill exercise. *Br J Sports Med*. 1999;33 (5):336–339.
149. Groslambert A, Hintzy F, Hoffman MD, Dugue B, Rouillon JD. Validation of a rating scale of perceived exertion in young children. *Int J Sports Med*. 2001;22(2):116–119.
150. Eng JJ, Chu KS, Dawson AS, Kim CM, Hepburn KE. Functional walk tests in individuals with stroke: relation to perceived exertion and myocardial exertion. *Stroke*. 2002;33(3):756–761.
151. Kelly S. Oxygen cost, walking speed, and perceived exertion in children with cerebral palsy when walking with anterior and posterior walkers. *Pediatr Phys Ther*. 2002;14(3):159–161.
152. Podsiadlo D, Richardson S. The timed "Up & Go": a test of basic functional mobility for frail elderly persons. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*. 1991;39(2):142–148.
153. Ng SS, Hui-Chan CW. The timed up & go test: its reliability and association with lower-limb impairments and locomotor capacities in people with chronic stroke. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2005;86(8): 1641–1647.

154. Erel S, Uygur F, Engin Simsek I, Yakut Y. The effects of dynamic ankle-foot orthoses in chronic stroke patients at three-month follow-up: a randomized controlled trial. *Clin Rehabil*. 2011;25(6):515–523.
155. Andersson AG, Kamwendo K, Seiger A, Appelros P. How to identify potential fallers in a stroke unit: validity indexes of 4 test methods. *J Rehabil Med*. 2006;38(3):186–191.
156. Gan SM, Tung LC, Tang YH, Wang CH. Psychometric properties of functional balance assessment in children with cerebral palsy. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair*. 2008;22(6):745–753.
157. Katz-Leurer M, Rotem H, Keren O, Meyer S. Balance abilities and gait characteristics in post-traumatic brain injury, cerebral palsy and typically developed children. *Dev Neurorehabil*. 2009;12(2):100–105.
158. Williams EN, Carroll SG, Reddihough DS, Phillips BA, Galea MP. Investigation of the timed 'up & go' test in children. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2005;47(8):518–524.
159. van Hedel HJ, Wirz M, Dietz V. Standardized assessment of walking capacity after spinal cord injury: the European network approach. *Neurol Res*. 2008;30(1):61–73.
160. Dewan N, MacDermid JC. Fall Efficacy Scale-International (FES-I). *J Physiother*. 2014;60(1):60.
161. Powell LE, Myers AM. The Activities-specific Balance Confidence (ABC) Scale. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci*. 1995;50A(1):M28–M34.
162. Zissimopoulos A, Fatone S, Gard S. The effect of ankle-foot orthoses on self-reported balance confidence in persons with chronic poststroke hemiplegia. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38(2):148–154.
163. van Vliet R, Hoang P, Lord S, Gandevia S, Delbaere K. Falls efficacy scale-international: a cross-sectional validation in people with multiple sclerosis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2013;94(5):883–889.

10 Neurological and Neuromuscular Disease Implications for Orthotic Use☆

DONNA M. BOWERS and KEVIN K. CHUI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the contribution of the major components of the central nervous system (CNS) and the peripheral nervous system (PNS) to functional, goal-directed movement.
2. Describe the impact of CNS and PNS pathologies commonly encountered in physical therapy and their implications for orthotic practice.
3. Explain the interaction of muscle tone and muscle performance on goal-directed, functional movement.
4. Describe the characteristics of muscle tone in the CNS and PNS pathologies most commonly encountered in physical therapy and implications for orthotic practice.
5. Describe the contributions of various CNS and PNS components to, and key determinants of, effective postural control.
6. Describe the contributions of various CNS components to, and key determinants of, mobility and coordination during functional activity.
7. Discuss the roles of orthopedic and neurosurgical procedures, central and peripherally acting pharmacological agents, and various orthotic options for the management of hypertonicity.
8. Plan a strategy for examination and evaluation of persons with CNS and PNS dysfunction to determine the need for an orthosis or adaptive equipment.
9. Describe strategies for orthotic use to reduce the risk of developing secondary musculoskeletal impairments in persons with hypertonicity.
10. Describe strategies for orthotic and adaptive equipment use to support postural control in persons with hypotonicity.

Movement Impairment in Neurological and Neuromuscular Pathology

Pathologic conditions of the neuromuscular system manifest in a sometimes confusing array of clinical signs and symptoms. To select the most appropriate therapeutic interventions, be it exercise to promote neuroplasticity and neurorecovery, functional training, or the use of various orthoses and assistive devices to accommodate for impairment of a body system or structure, the clinician must develop a strategy to "classify" the movement disorder that has produced the observed impairments and functional limitations.[1] The clinician must understand the medical prognosis and potential progression of the disease process, as well as the lifestyles and risk factors that might contribute to secondary impairments that limit function over time (even if the disease is "nonprogressive") and their impact on the individual's growth and development. The context of a person's impairments, physical activity limitations, and desire to participate in chosen pursuits must be accounted for in deciding a course of physical therapy interventions, including the use of orthotics[1–3]

Health professionals use a number of organizational strategies as frameworks for decision making during rehabilitation of individuals with pathologic conditions leading to neuromuscular dysfunction. Many neurologists use a medical differential diagnosis process to determine that the lesion is located within the central nervous system (CNS) or involving structures of the peripheral nervous system (PNS) or the muscle itself.[4] They do this by triangulating evidence gathered through focused patient histories, which leads to examination of tone, deep tendon reflexes, observation of patterns of movement, postural control, and specific types of involuntary movement.[4–6] They may also interpret results of special tests such as nerve conduction studies, electromyography (EMG), computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).[7,8] These tests might pinpoint areas of denervation, ischemia, or demyelinization and help the health professionals arrive at a medical diagnosis.

In collaboration with neurologists, rehabilitation professionals are most interested in the functional consequences

☆The authors extend appreciation to Michelle M. Lusardi, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

associated with the various neuromotor conditions. They examine the ways in which the resultant altered motor control (from the neurological pathologic condition) affects postural control, mobility and locomotion, and coordination (error control) during functional activities.[9,10] Rehabilitation professionals are not only concerned about function at the present time but also consider the long-term impact of neuromotor impairment on the person's joints and posture, especially in children who are growing with abnormal tone and postures.[11,12]

This chapter considers the ways that key components of the CNS and PNS contribute to functional movement. We explore the concepts of muscle tone and muscle performance, considering how their interaction influences an individual's ability to move. We investigate how abnormalities of tone resulting from CNS and PNS pathologic conditions are described in clinical practice. We consider the determinants of postural control and of coordination and how CNS and PNS pathologic conditions might lead to impairments of balance and movement. We provide an overview of the ways that commonly encountered CNS pathologic conditions impact muscle tone, muscle performance, postural control, movement, and coordination as a way of understanding how an orthosis or adaptive equipment might help improve an individual's ability to walk and use their arms/hands for functional movement in order to participate in meaningful activities and roles.[2] We consider how the physical therapy examination contributes to the determination of a need for an orthosis or adaptive equipment. We also explore the clinical decision-making process by asking key questions about how an orthosis might help (or hinder) function. Finally, we apply what we have learned using five clinical cases to develop orthotic prescriptions.

Differential Diagnosis: Where Is the Problem?

Most neurological and neuromuscular diseases affect either the CNS or the PNS; only a few diseases, such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, affect both CNS and PNS. Diseases of the CNS and of the PNS may contribute to motor or sensory impairment; however, there are patterns and characteristics of dysfunction that are unique to each. Selection of the appropriate orthosis, seating/wheelchair system, or assistive devices is facilitated when the therapist, orthotist, members of the rehabilitation team, patient, and patient's family understand the typical function and consequences of the disease process of the neurological subsystem that is affected.

THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The CNS is a complex of dynamic and interactive subsystems that mediates purposeful movement and postural control, vital autonomic vegetative and physiological functions, and learning of all types.[13] Readers are encouraged to refer to a recent neuroanatomy or neuropathology textbook to refresh their understanding of CNS structure and function. Knowledge of the roles of various CNS structures and their interactions (for perception, problem solving, motor planning, and coordination) is foundational for evidenced-based clinical decision making when considering orthoses for individuals with neuromuscular dysfunction.

Some diseases affect a single CNS system or center (e.g., Parkinson disease affects the function of the basal ganglia in regulating agonist/antagonist muscle activity; a lacunar stroke in the internal capsule may interrupt transmission only within the pyramidal/corticospinal pathway) leading to a specific array of signs/symptoms characteristic of that system or center. Other pathologic conditions disrupt function across several systems: a thromboembolic stroke in the proximal left middle cerebral artery may disrupt volitional movement and sensation of the right side of the body, as well as communication and vision. Several exacerbations of multiple sclerosis may lead to plaque formation in the cerebral peduncles/pyramidal system, superior cerebellar peduncle/error control system, restiform body/balance system, and fasciculus gracilis/lower extremity sensation; in this case, it can be challenging but imperative to sort through the various types of impairments that may result in order to select the most appropriate therapeutic or orthotic intervention for the individual.

Pyramidal System

The *pyramidal system* is responsible for the initiation of volitional movement and plays a major role in the development of skilled and manipulative activities.[14] The cell bodies of pyramidal neurons are located in the postcentral gyrus/primary motor cortex. The motor cortex in the left cerebral hemisphere influences primarily the right side of the body (face, trunk, and extremities); the right cortex influences the left body. The axons of pyramidal neurons form the corticobulbar and corticospinal tracts, projecting toward alpha (α) motor neurons in cranial nerve nuclei and anterior horn of the spinal cord. To reach their destination, these axons descend through the genu and posterior limb of the internal capsule, the cerebral peduncles, the basilar pons, the pyramids of the medulla, and finally the opposite lateral funiculus of the spinal cord. A lesion at any point in the pyramidal system has the potential to disrupt volitional movement. The degree of disruption varies with the extent and functional salience of the structures that are damaged, manifest on a continuum from mild weakness (paresis) to the inability to voluntarily initiate and direct movement (paralysis).[14]

Immediately following insult or injury of the pyramidal system, during a period of neurogenic shock, there may be substantially diminished muscle tone and sluggish or absent deep tendon reflexes.[14] As inflammation from the initial insult subsides, severely damaged neurons degenerate and are resorbed, while minimally damaged neurons may repair themselves and resume function.[15,16] The more neurons that are destroyed, the greater the likelihood that hypertonicity will develop over time due to the altered balance of descending input of pyramidal and extrapyramidal systems. As the recovery period continues, individuals may begin to move in abnormal synergy patterns whenever volitional movement is attempted.[17,18] When the damage to the system is less extensive, individuals may eventually recover some or all volitional motor control; the more extensive the damage to the system, the more likely there will be residual motor impairment.[15,18]

Extrapyramidal System

The extrapyramidal system is made up of several subcortical subsystems that influence muscle tone, organize patterns of

movement from among the many possible movement strategies, and make both feedforward adjustments (in anticipation of movement) and refining feedback adjustments (in response to sensations generated as movement occurs) during performance of functional tasks.[19] The motor planning subsystem is a series of neural loops interconnecting the premotor and accessory motor cortices in the frontal lobes, the nuclei of the functional basal ganglia (caudate, putamen, globus pallidus, substantia nigra, subthalamus), and several nuclei of the thalamus. Damage to the premotor and accessory motor cortex leads to apraxia, the inability to effectively sequence components of a functional task and to understand the nature of a task and the way to use a tool in performance of the task.[20] If there is damage to the caudate and putamen (also called the *corpus striatum*), underlying muscle tone may fluctuate unpredictably (athetosis) and involuntary dancelike movements (chorea) are likely to occur.[21] Damage to the subthalamic nuclei can lead to forceful, often disruptive, involuntary movement of the extremities (ballism) that interrupts purposeful activity.[22] Damage to the substantia nigra characteristically leads to resting tremor, rigidity of axial and appendicular musculature (hypertonicity in all directions), and bradykinesia (difficulty initiating movement, slow movement with limited excursion during functional tasks), which are most commonly seen in persons with Parkinson disease.[23] Motor impairments resulting from damage to the ventral anterior nucleus and related thalamic nuclei are less well understood but may contribute to less efficient motor planning, especially when the individual is learning or performing novel tasks.[24]

Extrapyramidal structures influence muscle tone and readiness to move via a network of interconnections among motor centers in the brainstem. The reticulospinal tracts, originating in the lower pons and medulla, are thought to influence tone by acting on gamma (γ) motor neurons and their associated muscle spindles. They play a major role in balancing the stiffness required for antigravity position and the flexibility necessary for movement of the limbs through space during functional activity and are likely the effectors for tonic hindbrain reflexes.[19,25] The vestibulospinal tracts, also originating from the pons and medulla, influence anticipatory postural adjustment in preparation for movement and reactionary postural adjustments as movement occurs. These tracts are thought to be the "effectors" for postural control and balance.[19,26] The tectospinal tracts, originating in the collicular nuclei of the dorsal midbrain, influence linkages between the head and extremities (especially arms and hands) so that the visual and auditory systems can be used effectively to orient the head and body during tasks that require visual (eye-hand) and auditory (ear-hand) guidance.[16,26]

Coordination Systems

The error control, or coordination subsystem, has several interactive components.[27,28] Feedforward information (how movement is likely to occur) from the forebrain's motor cortex is relayed through the thalamus to the deep nuclei of the cerebellum via the middle cerebellar peduncle (brachium pontis). Feedback information generated during movement ("in flight") travels from the muscle spindle and anterior horn of the spinal cord via the inferior cerebellar peduncle (restiform body), as does sensory information from static and dynamic vestibular receptors (head position and movement in space) and the vestibular nuclei in the brainstem. Through the interaction of Purkinje cells in the cerebellar cortex and neurons in the deep cerebellar nuclei, the cerebellum judges how "in sync" these various types of information are (essentially asking the questions, "Did the movement occur as planned? Was the outcome of the movement as intended?") and suggests refinements for more precise and coordinated movement.[29] These adjustments are relayed to the red nucleus in the midbrain via the superior cerebellar peduncle (brachium conjunctiva) and are forwarded back to the thalamus and the motor cortex, as well as to the spinal cord via the rubrospinal tract. The rubrospinal tract is thought to be essential for refinement and correction of direction and control of movement as it occurs.[29]

Somatosensory and Perceptual Systems

The somatosensory system is composed of a set of ascending pathways, each carrying a specific sensory modality from the spinal cord and brainstem to the thalamus and postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex, reticular formation, or cerebellum. The anterolateral (spinothalamic) system carries exteroceptive information from mechanoreceptors that monitor protective senses (e.g., pain, temperature, irritation to skin and soft tissue).[25,30] This tract originates in the dorsal horn (substantia gelatinosa) of the spinal cord and the spinal trigeminal nucleus, crosses the midline of the neuraxis to ascend in the lateral funiculus of the spinal cord to the contralateral ventral posterior thalamus, and then continues to the postcentral gyrus. The dorsal column/medial lemniscus carries information from encapsulated receptors that serve as internal monitors of body condition and motion.[25,31] This tract ascends from the spinal cord to reach the nuclei gracilis and cuneatus in the medulla of the brainstem, then crosses midline to ascend to the contralateral ventral posterior thalamus and on to the posterior central gyrus. The postcentral gyrus (somatosensory cortex) is organized as a homunculus, with each region of the body represented in a specific area.[25,32] Sensation from the lower extremities (lumbosacral spinal cord) is located at the top of the gyrus near the sagittal fissure. Moving downward toward the lateral fissure, the next area represented is the trunk (thoracic spinal cord), followed by upper extremities and head (cervical spinal cord), and finally face, mouth, and esophagus (trigeminal nuclei) just above the lateral fissure. A lesion such as a multiple sclerosis (MS) plaque in one of the ascending pathways may result in a discrete area of loss of exteroception or of conscious proprioception in one area of the body; a lesion on the somatosensory cortex can lead to a more profound, multimodality impairment on the opposite side of the body.

Although sensory information is logged in at the postcentral gyrus, the location of the somatosensory cortex, interpretation and integration of this information occurs in the somatoperceptual system in the parietal association areas, with specialization in the right hemisphere.[30,32] These association areas give meaning to the sensations that are generated as people move and function in their environments. This is where people understand the relationships among their various extremities and trunk (body schema), as well as their relationship to and position within our physical environment. Damage to the parietal lobes leads to problems ranging from left-right confusion to the inability to

recognize and monitor the condition of a body part (neglect, agnosia), depending on how much of the association area is involved.[33,34]

Visual and Visual-Perceptual Systems

The visual system begins with processing of information gathered by the rods and cones in the multiple layers of specialized neurons in the retina, located in the posterior chamber of the eye. Axons from retinal ganglion cells are gathered into the optic nerve, which carries information from that eye toward the brain. At the optic chiasm there is reorganization of visual information, such that all information from the left visual field (from both eyes) continues in the right optic tract, and that from the right field continues in the left tract. This information is relayed, through the lateral geniculate body of the thalamus, via the optic radiations, to the primary visual cortex on either side of the calcarine fissure of the midsagittal occipital lobe.[35] Damage to the retina or optic nerve results in loss of vision from that eye. Damage to the optic chiasm typically leads to a narrowing of the peripheral visual field (bitemporal hemianopsia); a lesion of one of the optic tracts or radiations leads to loss of part or all of the opposite visual field (homonymous hemianopsia). Damage to the visual cortex can result in cortical blindness, in which visual reflexes may be intact but vision is impaired.[36]

Visual information is interpreted in the visual association areas in the remainder of the occipital lobe.[37] The visual association areas in the left hemisphere are particularly important to interpretation of symbolic and communication information, while spatial relationships are of more interest in the right hemisphere. Specific details about the environment, especially about speed and direction of moving objects with respect to the self and of the individual with respect to a relatively stationary environment, are important contributors to functional movement and to the development of skilled abilities.[38] Interconnections between the parietal and occipital association areas serve to integrate visual and somatic/kinesthetic perception and provide important input to motor planning and motor learning systems.[39]

Effective visual information processing is founded on three interactive dimensions: visual spatial orientation, visual analysis skills, and visual motor skills.[40] Developmentally, visual spatial orientation includes spatial concepts used to understand the environment, the body, and the interaction between the body and environment that are part of functional activity (e.g., determining location or direction with respect to self, as well as respect to other objects or persons encountered as people act in their environment). Visual analysis skills allow people to discriminate and analyze visually presented information, identify and focus on key characteristics or features of what people see, use mental imagery and visual recall, and respond or perceive a whole when presented with representative parts. The visual motor system links what is seen, to how the eyes, head, and body move; allowing one to use visual information processing skills during skilled, purposeful activities. This also provides the foundation for movements requiring eye-hand coordination, both large upper extremity movements such as throwing, and fine movement skills such as typing or manipulation of objects.[37]

Executive Function and Motivation

The ability to problem solve, consider alternatives, plan and organize, understand conceptual relationships, multitask, set priorities, and delay gratification, as well as the initial components of learning, are functions of the frontal association areas of the forebrain.[10,41,42] These dimensions of cognitive function are often described by the phrase *higher executive function*. Quantitative and other analytical skills are thought to be primarily housed in the frontal association areas of the left hemisphere, while intuitive understanding and creativity may be more concentrated in the right hemisphere. Most people tap the resources available in both hemispheres (via interconnections through the corpus callosum) during daily life, although some may fall toward one end or another of the analytical–intuitive continuum. Individuals with acquired brain injury involving frontal lobes often exhibit subtle deficits that have a significant impact on their ability to function in complex environments, as well as under conditions of high task demand; difficulty in these areas certainly compromises functional efficiency and quality of life.[43,44]

The neuroanatomical structures that contribute to the motivational system include the nuclei and tracts of the limbic system, prefrontal cortex, and temporal lobes; all play major roles in managing emotions, concentration, learning, and memory.[45] The motivational system not only has an important impact on emotional aspects of behavior but also influences autonomic/physiological function, efficacy of learning, interpretation of sensations, and preparation for movement (Fig. 10.1).[46] Dimensions of limbic function that influence motivation and the ability to manage challenges and frustration include body image, self-concept, and self-worth as related to social roles and expectations, as well as the perceived relevance or importance (based on reward or on threat) of an activity or situation.[47,48] *Central set* is a phrase used to describe the limbic system's role as a motivator and repository of memory on readiness to move or act.[46] Central set helps people predict movement needs relevant to a given situation or circumstance (considering both the physical and affective dimensions of the environment in which they are acting) from past experience.[49]

Consciousness and Homeostasis

The ability to be alert and oriented when functioning in a complex environment is the purview of the consciousness system and is a function of interaction of the brainstem's reticular formation, the filtering system of thalamic nuclei, and the thought and problem solving that occur in the association areas of the telencephalon, especially in the frontal lobes.[50] The reticular activating system, found in the inferior mesencephalon and upper pons of the brainstem, is the locus of sleep-wake and level of alertness.[51] The thalamus and the reticular formation help people habituate to repetitive sensory stimuli while they focus on the type of sensory information that is most germane to the task at hand.[52] The frontal association areas add content to one's consciousness: the ability to reason and to adapt to challenges encountered as one moves through daily life.[53] Alteration in quality and level of consciousness and behavior are indicators of evolving problems within the CNS.[54] Increasing intracranial pressure, the result of an expanding mass

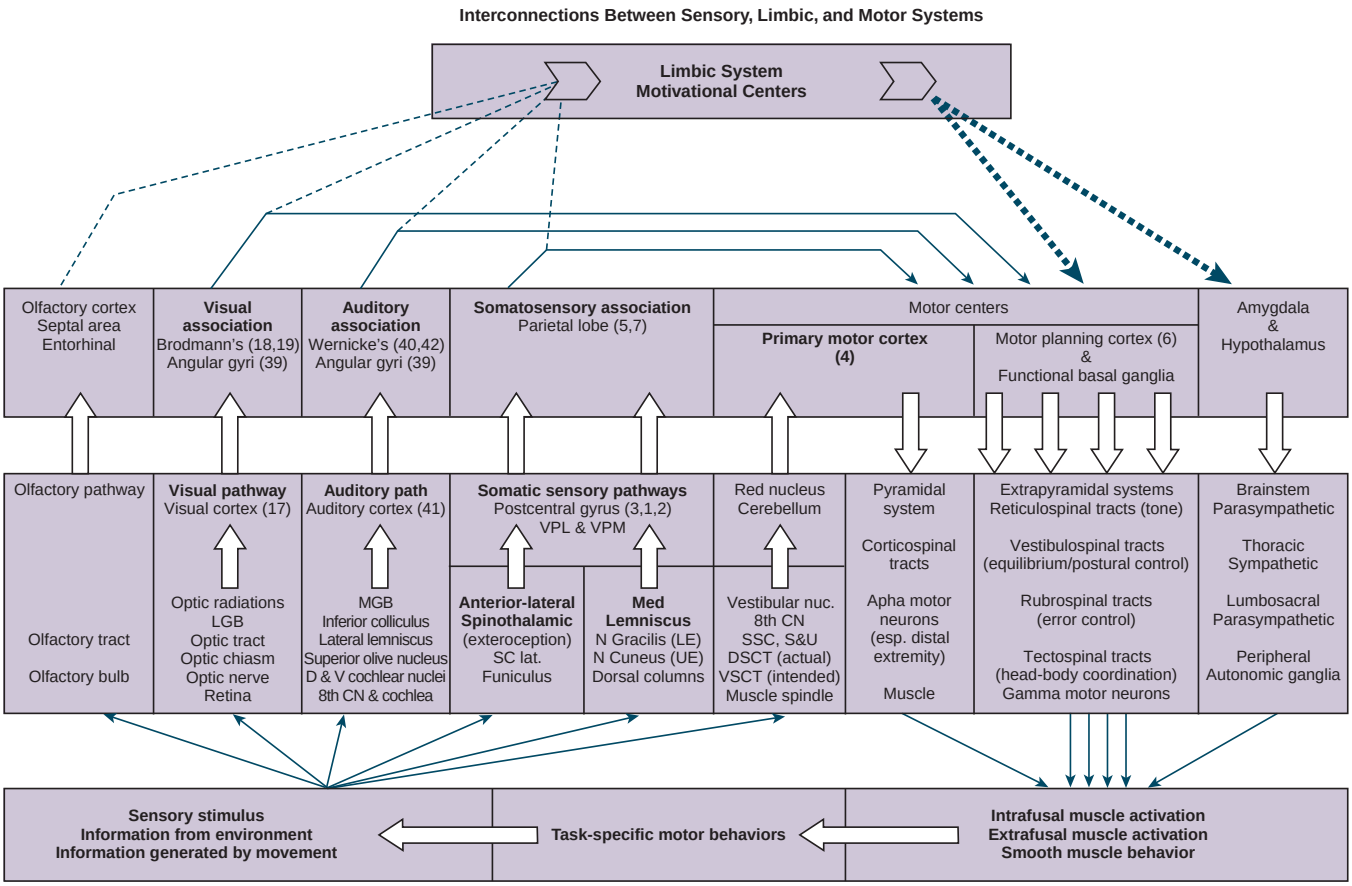


Fig. 10.1 A conceptual model of the interactions and interconnections among sensory, limbic, and motor systems that influence functional movement. *CN*, Cranial nerve; *D*, dorsal; *DSCT*, dorsal spinocerebellar tract; *N Cuneus*, nucleus cuneus; *N Gracilis*, nucleus gracilis; *S&U*, saccule & utricle DB; *SC lat*, spinal cord lateral; *SSC*, somatosensory cortex; *V*, ventral; *VPL*, ventral posterolateral nucleus; *VPM*, ventral posteromedial nucleus; *VSCT*, ventral spinocerebellar tract.

or inflammatory response following trauma or ischemia, may be initially manifest by confusion or agitation; progression into a state of lethargy, stupor, or unresponsiveness (coma) indicates deteriorating compromise of the CNS structures.[55]

Homeostasis and the ability to respond to physiological stressors are functions of the components of the autonomic nervous system.[56] The nuclei of the hypothalamus serve as the command center for parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous system activity via projections to parasympathetic cranial nerve nuclei in the brainstem, the sympathetic centers of the intermediate horn in the thoracic spinal cord, and the parasympathetic centers in the lumbosacral spinal cord. The hypothalamus has extensive interconnections with the limbic system, bridging physiological and emotional/psychological aspects of behavior and activity.[57] The hypothalamus also integrates neural-endocrine function through interconnections with the pituitary gland.[58] Clearly, this relatively small area of forebrain plays a substantial integrative role in physiological function of the human body. Damage or dysfunction to this area therefore has significant impact on physiological stability and stress response.

PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

The PNS serves two primary functions: to collect information about the body and the environment and to activate muscles during functional activities. Afferent neurons collect data from the various sensory receptors distributed throughout the body and transport this information to the spinal cord and brainstem (sensory cranial nerves) for initial interpretation and distribution to CNS centers and structures that use sensory information in the performance of their various specialized roles.[25,33] The interpretation process can have a direct impact on motor behavior at the spinal cord level (e.g., deep tendon reflex) or along any synapse point in the subsequent ascending pathway (e.g., righting and equilibrium responses) as sensory information is transported toward its final destination within the CNS.[59] Efferent neurons (also described as lower motor neurons or, more specifically, α and γ motor neurons) carry signals from the pyramidal (voluntary motor) and extrapyramidal (supportive motor) systems to extrafusal/striated and intrafusal (within muscle spindle) muscle fibers that direct functional movement by enacting the CNS's motor plan.[26,60,61]

The cell bodies of these α and γ motor neurons live in the anterior horn of the spinal cord and in cranial nerve somatic motor nuclei. In the spinal cord, α and γ axons project through the ventral root, are gathered into the motor component of a spinal nerve, and (in cervical and lumbosacral segments) are reorganized in a plexus before continuing toward the targeted muscle as part of a peripheral nerve. In the brainstem, α and γ axons project to target muscles via motor cranial nerves (oculomotor, III; trochlear, IV; motor trigeminal, V; abducens, VI; facial, VII; glossopharyngeal, IX; spinal accessory, XI; hypoglossal, XII).[62] When α

and γ axons reach their target set of muscle fibers (motor unit), a specialized synapse—the neuromuscular junction—triggers muscular contraction.[63]

Pathologic conditions of the PNS can be classified by considering two factors: the modalities affected (only sensory, only motor, or a combination of both) and the anatomical location of the problem (at the level of the sensory receptor, along the neuron itself, in the dorsal root ganglion, in the anterior horn, at the neuromuscular junction, or in the muscle itself).[64,65] Poliomyelitis is the classic example of an anterior horn cell disease; Guillain-Barré syndrome is a demyelinating infectious-autoimmune neuropathy that impairs transmission of electrical impulses over the length of motor and sensory nerves. The polyneuropathy of diabetes (affecting motor, sensory, and autonomic fibers) is the classic example of a metabolic neuropathy. Radiculopathies (e.g., sciatica) result from compression or irritation at the level of the nerve root, while entrapment syndromes (e.g., carpal tunnel) are examples of compression neuropathies over the more distal peripheral nerve. Myasthenia gravis, tetanus, and botulism alter function at the level of the neuromuscular junction. Myopathies and muscular dystrophies are examples of primary muscle diseases.[65]

Determinants of Effective Movement

Regardless of the underlying neurological or neuromuscular disease, rehabilitation professionals seek to understand the impact of the condition on an individual's underlying muscle tone and motor control (ability to initiate, guide, sustain, and terminate movement), muscle performance (strength, power, endurance, speed, accuracy, fluidity), and postural control and balance (ability to stay upright, to anticipate how to make postural adjustment during movement, and to respond to unexpected perturbations) in order to move effectively during goal-directed, functional movement necessary for daily life.

MUSCLE TONE AND MUSCLE PERFORMANCE

Effectiveness of purposeful movement is determined by the interaction of underlying muscle tone and muscle performance. *Muscle tone* can be conceptualized as the interplay of compliance and stiffness of muscle, as influenced by the CNS. Ideally the CNS can set the neuromotor system to be *stiff* enough to align and support the body in functional antigravity positions (e.g., provide sufficient baseline postural tone). At the same time, it allows the system to be *compliant* enough in the limbs and trunk to carry out smooth and coordinated functional movement, and effectively respond to changing environmental conditions or demands as daily tasks are carried out.[66,67] In the tone continuum of stiffness to compliancy, the interplay of stiffness and compliance is optimal at the center, such that motor performance is well supported (Fig. 10.2, horizontal continuum). At the low-tone end of the continuum, where there is low stiffness and high compliance, individuals are challenged by inadequate postural control and inability to support antigravity movement, and by the inability to support proximal joints for effective use of limbs, particularly in antigravity motions. At the high tone end of the continuum, where there is high stiffness and low compliance, freedom and flexibility of movement are compromised. Among individuals, postural tone varies with level of consciousness, level of energy or fatigue, and perceived importance (salience) of the tasks they are involved with at the time.[26,68]

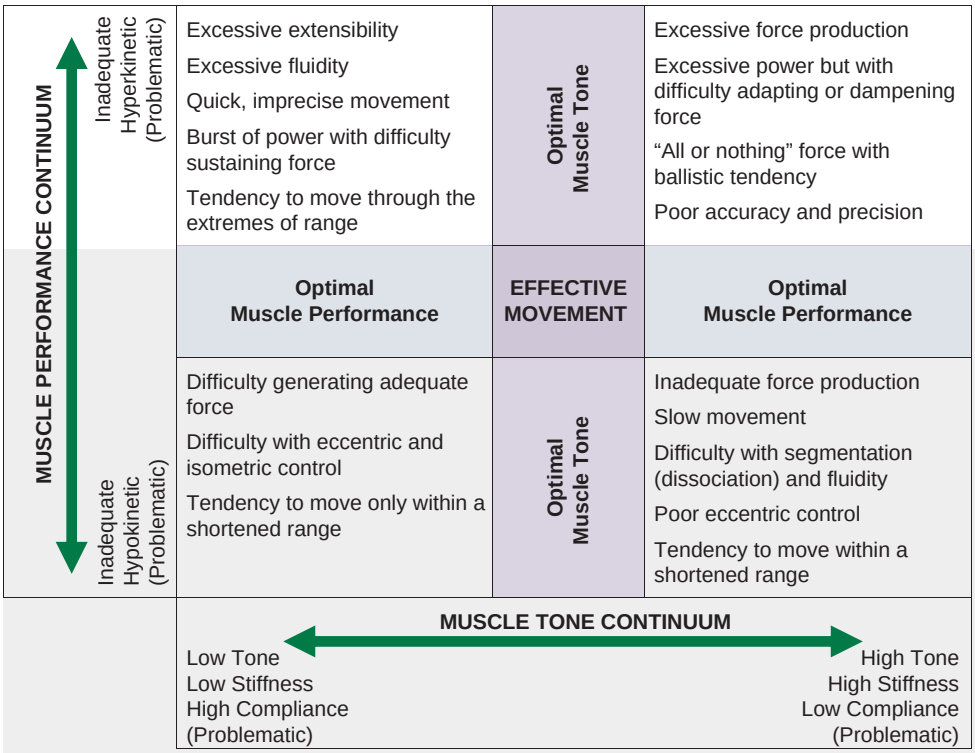


Fig. 10.2 A conceptual model of the interrelationship of muscle tone and muscle performance as they interact to influence functional movement. The muscle tone ranges from excessively compliant (easily extensible on passive movement) to excessively stiff (resistant to passive movement). The muscle performance continuum ranges from hypokinetic (exhibiting minimal movement during task activity) to hyperkinetic (exhibiting excessive movement during task activity). Movement is most effective at the intersection of optimal muscle tone (with balanced stiffness and compliance) and optimal muscle performance (with appropriate force production and adaptability of speed and power).

Effective purposeful movement occurs when *muscle performance* meets the demands of the movement task. The components of muscle performance are the ability to (1) produce sufficient force (strength); (2) produce at the rate of contraction required for the task at hand (speed); (3) sustain the concentric, holding/isometric, or eccentric contraction necessary to meet task demands (muscle endurance); (4) ramp up or dampen force production in response to task demands (accuracy and power); and (5) coordinate mobility and stability of body segments to complete the task (fluidity).[69] Muscle performance can also be conceptualized as having a continuum with optimal control of its components around the center and inadequate control on either side: hypokinesis (little movement) at one extreme, and hyperkinesis (excessive movement) at the other (see Fig. 10.2, vertical continuum).

While muscle tone and muscle performance are distinct contributors to movement, they are certainly interactive.[70,71] Movement is most effective and efficient if an individual's resources fall within the center of each continuum. A problem with muscle tone, muscle performance, or a combination of both leads to abnormal and less effective and efficient movement. Consider what will happen if there is a combination of low tone and inadequate hypokinetic muscle performance: individuals will have difficulty with postural control and proximal support for limb movement, force production, power, and eccentric and isometric control, such that movement tends to occur in shortened ranges, and for short periods of time (less sustainability of contraction/endurance). For example, an infant with Down syndrome (with low tone) struggles to sustain adequate support of the shoulder girdle in prone on elbows in order to lift one arm to reach for a toy (hypokinesis).

In the presence of low tone and hyperkinetic muscle performance, movement is fast but imprecise, with bursts of power that cannot be sustained. For example, a toddler with Down syndrome (with low tone) who is beginning to walk takes rapid and inconsistent steps (hyperkinesis). In contrast, the presence of high tone and hypokinetic muscle performance, movement is slow and stiff, with inadequate force production, compromised segmentation, impaired eccentric control (difficulty letting go), and constrained range. For example, an individual with Parkinson disease takes short steps and has little reciprocal arm swing when walking.

In the presence of high-tone and hyperkinetic muscle performance, there tends to be "all or nothing" force production, with somewhat ballistic and inaccurate movement occurring between the extremes of ranges. For example, a child with spastic quadriplegic cerebral palsy (CP) rising from sitting to standing often employs rapid mass extension (lower extremity and trunk), compromising his or her ability to move toward flexion in order to effectively rise; the child would also have difficulty lowering back into sitting without collapsing. Although muscle performance, especially the ability to generate force, does tend to decline with aging, the impact of inactivity is even more profound; all aspects of muscle performance can improve with appropriate training, even in the very old.[72–74]

Traditionally, an individual's muscle tone has been described clinically as hypertonic or spastic, rigid, hypotonic or low, flaccid, or fluctuating.

Hypertonus

Hypertonus is a term used to describe muscles that are influenced to be too stiff or are excessively biased toward supporting antigravity function. Spasticity is a type of hypertonus that typically occurs when there is damage to one or more CNS structures of the pyramidal motor system and is encountered as a component of many neuromuscular pathologies.[26,75–79] Decrements in underlying tone and muscle performance, in bipedal humans with impairment of the pyramidal system, most often occurs in a *decorticate* pattern: The upper extremity is typically biased toward flexion, such that the limb can be easily moved into flexion but not into extension (decreased compliance of flexors). The lower extremity is biased toward extension, such that the impaired compliance of extensors makes movement into flexion difficult (Fig. 10.3).[80] In persons with severe acquired brain injury the entire body may be biased toward extension, a condition or posture described as *decerebrate* pattern spasticity (Sherrington originally described this phenomenon as decerebrate rigidity).[80] Both decorticate and decerebrate conditions are unidirectional in nature; there is an increase of muscle stiffness and resistance to passive elongation (impaired compliance) in one group of muscles (agonists) with relatively normal functioning of opposing muscle groups (antagonists).

Spasticity is a velocity-dependent phenomenon. Under conditions of rapid passive elongation, spastic muscle groups "fight back" with increased stiffness, a result of a hypersensitive deep tendon reflex loop (Fig. 10.4). This has been described as *clasp-knife spasticity*, in which the spastic limb

Fig. 10.3 Hypertonicity following cerebrovascular accident. (A) The extensor pattern hypertonus in the affected lower extremity precludes swing-limb shortening normally accomplished by hip and knee flexion; instead, the individual uses an abnormal strategy such as pelvic retraction and hip hiking to advance the involved limb; swing is assisted by the ankle-foot orthosis (AFO) to prevent plantarflexion at the ankle. (B) The affected upper extremity shows a flexed posture. Although the extensor bias in the lower extremity may cause hyperextension at the knee, the AFO provides a counter force to allow knee flexion.

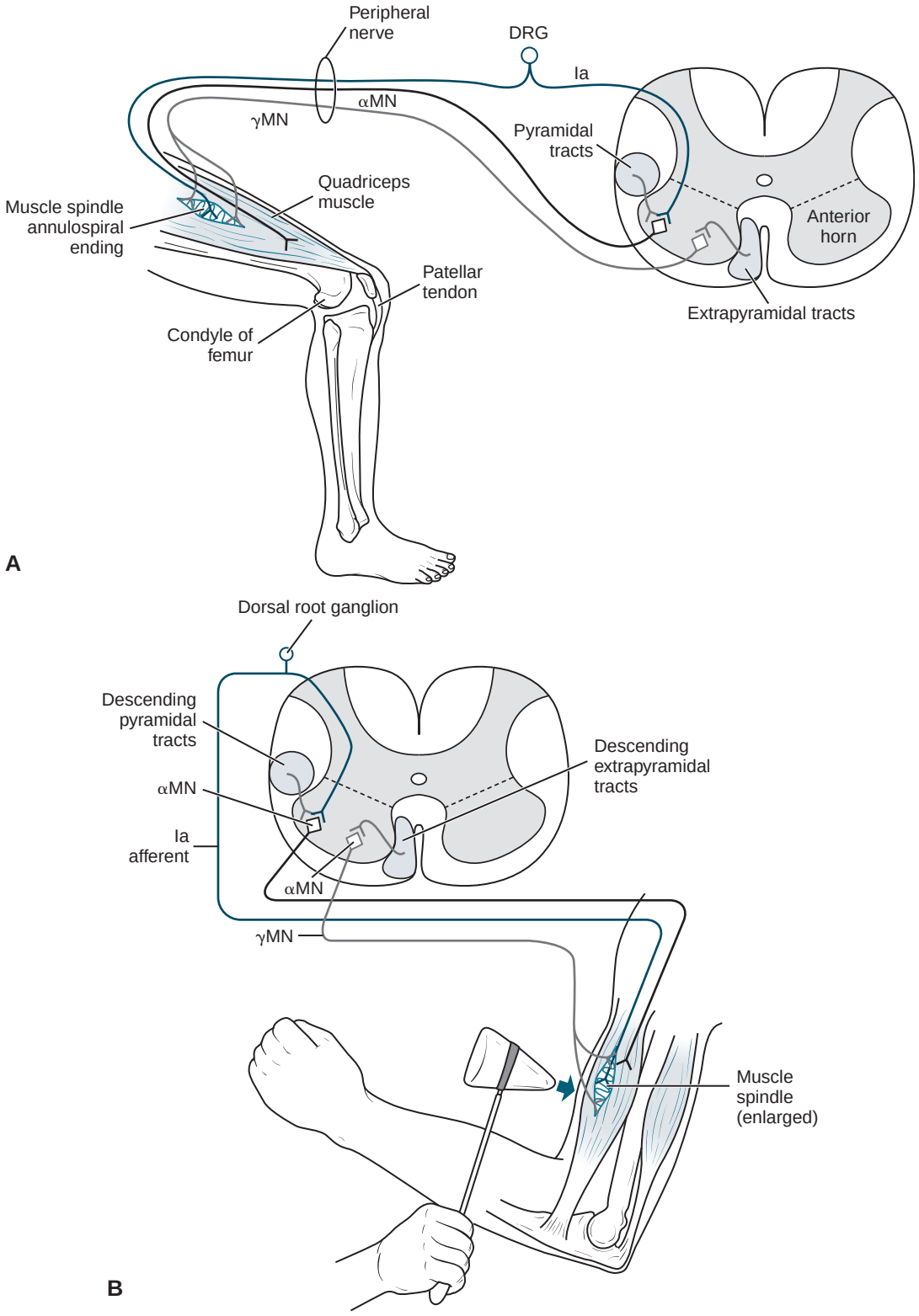


Fig. 10.4 Diagram of the deep tendon reflex loop: stimulation of the annulospiral receptor within muscle spindle of the quadriceps (A) and biceps brachii (B) (via "tap" on the patellar tendon with a reflex hammer) activates 1a afferent neurons, which in turn assist motor neurons in the anterior horn of the spinal cord. These motor neurons project to extrafusal muscle fibers in the quadriceps, which contract, predictably, as a reflex response. Sensitivity of muscle spindle (threshold for stimulation) is influenced by extrapyramidal input, reaching γ motor neurons *(γMNs)* in the anterior horn, which project to intrafusal muscle fibers within the muscle spindle itself. *αMN,* αMotor neuron; *DRG*, dorsal root ganglion.

"gives" after an initial period of resisting passive movement in the way that a pocket knife initially resists opening when near its initially closed position but then becomes more compliant once moved past a threshold position as it is opened. Growing evidence indicates that the stiffness encountered during passive movement has both neurological (spasticity) and musculoskeletal (changes in muscle and associated soft tissue) components that combine to increase the risk of contracture development.[81,82]

Given the unidirectional nature of severe hypertonus, it is common for persons with severe hypertonus to develop chronic atypical postures. The limb or body segment assumes an end-range position that the limb would not normally be able to assume (e.g., equinovarus with marked supination in an individual with severe acquired brain injury, equinovalgus with marked pronation in a child with CP).[80,81] If persistent, these fixed postures are associated with a significant likelihood of secondary contracture development.[83]

Hypertonicity is also associated with deficits in muscle performance, most notably diminished strength (force production), diminished ability to produce power (force production with increased speed), diminished ability to effectively isolate limb and body segments (segmentation), diminished excursions of movements within joints (i.e., moving within a limited range of motion [ROM]), and inefficiency with altering force production or timing of contractions to meet changing (fluid) demands of tasks (accuracy and functionality).[84–86] Muscle performance deficits can contribute to an imbalance of forces around a joint that leads to habitual abnormal patterns of movement. These habitual patterns are often biomechanically inefficient and, over time, contribute to the development of secondary musculoskeletal impairments such as adaptive shortening or lengthening of muscles and malalignment of joints.[83] Strengthening exercises can have a positive impact on function, even in the presence of hypertonicity.[85–87] Orthotics and adaptive equipment play a crucial role to position and support trunk, limbs, and joints to prevent or minimize development of contractures in individuals with hypertonicity.

Rigidity

Individuals with Parkinson disease and related neurological disorders often demonstrate varying levels of rigidity: a bidirectional, co-contracting hypertonicity in which there is resistance to passive movement of both agonistic and antagonistic muscle groups.[23,88] Co-contraction of flexor and extensor muscles of the limbs and trunk creates a bidirectional stiffness that interferes with functional movement. Rigidity is often accompanied by slowness in initiating movement (bradykinesia), decreased excursion of active ROM, and altered resting postures of the limbs and trunk (Fig. 10.5). The rigidity of Parkinson disease can be overridden under certain environmental conditions: Persons with moderate to severe disease can suddenly run reciprocally if they perceive danger to themselves or a loved one; once this initial limbic response has dissipated, they will resume a stooped and rigid posture, with difficulty initiating voluntary movement, limited active ROM, and bradykinesia. Because rigidity creates a situation of excessive stability of the trunk and limbs, orthoses are not typically a component in the plan of care for persons with Parkinson disease.[89]

Fig. 10.5 A person with Parkinson disease showing typical standing posture; note the forward head, kyphotic and forward flexed trunk, and flexion at hip and knees. The upper extremities are held in protraction with flexion. The altered position of the body's center of mass, when combined with rigidity and bradykinesia, significantly decreases the efficacy of anticipatory postural responses during ambulation, as well a response to perturbation.

Hypotonus

Hypotonus (low muscle tone) describes a reduced stiffness of muscle that does not effectively support upright posture against gravity or to produce adequate force during contraction; as a result, hypotonic muscles are more compliant than they are stiff.[90] In children, hypotonia can arise from abnormal function within the CNS (approximately 75%) or from problems with peripheral structures (peripheral nerve and motor units, neuromuscular junction, the muscle itself, or unknown etiology).[91] Hypotonia can be congenital (seen as "floppy" infants), transient (e.g., in preterm infants), part of the clinical presentation of CP, Down syndrome and other genetic disorders, as well as autism spectrum disorders.[91–96]

Hypotonic muscles are considerably more compliant on rapid passive elongation (i.e., less resistant to passive stretch) than muscles with typical tone, as well as those with hypertonus/spasticity. Because their postural muscles are less stiff, individuals with hypotonicity often have difficulty when assuming and sustaining antigravity positions.[97] To compensate for their reduced postural tone, individuals with hypotonicity may maintain postural alignment by relying on ligaments and connective tissue within joint capsule and muscle to sustain upright posture. With overreliance on ligaments in extreme ends of range, further degradation to joint structures often occurs. Additionally, individuals may rely on the upper extremities for postural support, such as a child who uses arms to aid in floor sitting or an adult who holds onto a table when standing. This reliance on upper extremities diminishes the ability to use those extremities for functional tasks. This has implications for

Fig. 10.6 Postural control is often inefficient in children (and adults) with hypotonicity or low tone. This 18-month-old child has insufficient muscle tone to maintain her trunk in an upright position; note the curvature of the thoracic and lumbar spine, with weight bearing on the sacrum (sacral sitting with kyphosis). This leads to shortening of the hamstrings over time, note right knee flexion.

seating and standing systems, or orthotic use to provide external support that will allow individuals to use their upper limbs for play, work, and daily activities[91] (Fig. 10.6).

In addition to postural control dysfunction, individuals with hypotonia often have difficulty with coordination of movements. This may be due to the decreased efficacy of afferent information collected by a lax muscle spindle during movement execution.[90] Children with hypotonia often have impaired control of movements at midrange of muscle length, suggesting that kinesthetic information is not being used efficiently to guide movement or that the ability to regulate force production throughout movements is compromised. In either case, muscle performance is notably less efficient, especially in activities that require eccentric control (e.g., controlled lowering of the body from a standing position to sitting on the floor).[91,97] Individuals with hypotonia have difficulty regulating force production and collaboration between agonists and antagonists is not well coordinated.[97]

Immediately after an acute CNS insult or injury there is often a period of neurogenic shock in which the motor system appears to shut down temporarily, with apparent loss of voluntary movement (paralysis) and markedly diminished or absent deep tendon reflex responses.[98–100] This phenomenon is observed following cervical or thoracic spinal cord injury and early on following significant stroke. During this period, individuals with extreme levels of hypotonus are sometimes (erroneously) described as having flaccid paralysis. Most individuals with acute CNS dysfunction will, within days to weeks, begin to show some evidence of returning muscle tone; over time, many develop hyperactive responses to deep tendon reflex testing and other signs of hypertonicity.[99] If they continue to have difficulty activating muscles voluntarily for efficient functional movement, these individuals are described as demonstrating spastic paralysis. Orthotics can be used to support joints in individuals with hypotonia to minimize degradation. For example, a child with hypotonia may use bilateral supramalleolar orthotics to provide improved postural support of the foot and ankle.[91]

Flaccidity

The term *flaccidity* is best used to describe muscles that cannot be activated because of interruption of transmission or connection between lower motor neurons and the muscles they innervate.[60,101] True flaccidity is accompanied by significant atrophy of muscle tissue, well beyond the loss of muscle mass associated with inactivity; this is the result of loss of tonic influence of lower motor neurons on which muscle health is based.[102]

The flaccid paralysis seen in persons with myelomeningocele (spina bifida) occurs because incomplete closure of the neural tube during the early embryonic period (soon after conception) prevents interconnection between the primitive spinal cord and neighboring somites that will eventually develop into muscles of the extremities.[103] The flaccid paralysis observed in persons with cauda equina level spinal cord injury is the result of damage to axons of α and γ motor neurons as they travel together as ventral roots to their respective spinal foramina to exit the spinal column as a spinal nerve.[104] After acute poliomyelitis, the loss of a portion of a muscle's lower motor neurons will lead to marked weakness; the loss of the majority of a muscle's lower motor neurons will lead to flaccid paralysis.[65] In Guillain-Barré syndrome, the increasing weakness and flaccid paralysis seen in the early stages of the disease are the result of demyelination of the neuron's axons as they travel toward the muscle in a peripheral nerve.[105] After injection with botulinum toxin, muscle tone and strength are compromised because of the toxin's interference with transmitter release from the presynaptic component of the neuromuscular junction.[106] Orthotics and adaptive equipment play a critical role in providing antigravity support for upright positioning and locomotion in individuals with flaccidity. Additionally, orthotics are used to prevent contracture in joints with unbalanced muscle activity. This allows individuals to participate in desired activities in the home, school, or community. For example, a child with a thoracic level myelomeningocele may require adaptive seating for school, while a child with lumbar level myelomeningocele may require orthotics for lower extremity support for ambulation, and a positioning device to prevent contractures of the hip adductors.[103]

Fluctuating Tone: Athetosis and Chorea

Athetosis is the descriptor used when an individual's underlying muscle tone fluctuates unpredictably.[107] Athetosis is characterized by random changes in postural tone, with variations from hypertonus to hypotonus. Athetosis, although less common than spastic CP, can have as significant (and often more pronounced) an impact on daily function.[108] Although etiology of athetosis is not well understood, it is most frequently described as a type of basal ganglia or thalamic dysfunction associated with bilirubin toxicity or significant perinatal anoxia.[107] Persons with athetosis typically demonstrate truncal hypotonia, with fluctuating levels of hypertonus in antigravity musculature and the extremities. In some individuals, movements appear to have a writhing dancelike quality (choreoathetosis) in addition to the tonal influences. Others may compensate

for postural instability by assuming end-range positions, relying on mechanical stability of joints during functional activity. Although persons with athetosis are less likely to develop joint contracture than those with long-standing hypertonicity, they are more likely to develop secondary musculoskeletal complications that compromise stability of joints, a result of extreme posturing, imbalance of forces across joint structures, and the need to stabilize in habitual postural alignment patterns for function.[109] Orthotic usage in individuals with athetosis must be evaluated carefully to consider the balance of supportive versus restrictive influences of the device.

POSTURAL CONTROL

Postural control has three key dimensions: (1) *Static postural control* is defined as the ability to hold antigravity postures at rest; (2) *dynamic anticipatory postural control* is the ability to sustain a posture during movement tasks that shift (internally perturb) the center of mass (COM); and (3) *dynamic reactionary postural control* is the ability to be able to withstand or recover from externally derived perturbations without loss of balance.[110] One has functional postural control if the COM can be maintained within one's base of support (BOS) under a wide range of task demands and environmental conditions. This requires some level of ability across the triad of static, anticipatory, and reactionary control.

The key interactive CNS systems involved in postural control include extrapyramidal and pyramidal motor systems, visual and visual-perceptual systems, conscious (dorsal column/medial lemniscal) and unconscious (spinocerebellar) somatosensory systems, the vestibular system, and the cerebellar feedback/feedforward systems.[111,112] Clinical measures used to assess efficacy of static postural control include timing of sitting or standing activities and measures of center of pressure excursion in quiet standing.[113] The Clinical Test of Sensory Interaction and Balance sorts out the contribution of visual, vestibular, and proprioceptive systems' contribution to balance, as well as the individual's ability to select the most relevant sensory input when there is conflicting information collected among these systems.[114]

Measures of anticipatory postural control consider how far the individual is willing to shift his or her COM toward the edge of his or her sway envelope.[115,116] Clinically, anticipatory postural control is often quantified by measuring reaching distance in various postures.[117–120] Measures of dynamic reactionary postural control consider the individual's response to unexpected perturbations (e.g., when pushed or displaced by an external force, when tripping/slipping in conditions of high environmental demand).[119–121] Although these three dimensions of postural control are interrelated, competence in one does not necessarily ensure effective responses in the others.[122]

Many individuals with neuromuscular disorders demonstrate inefficiency or disruption of one or more of the CNS subsystems necessary for effective postural control and balance.[123] An individual with mild to moderate hypertonicity or spasticity often has difficulty with anticipatory and reactionary postural control, especially in high task demand situations within a complex or unpredictable open environment.[124] Difficulty with muscle performance, such as impairment of control of force production or the imbalance of forces acting across a joint, might constrain anticipatory postural control in preparation for functional tasks such as reaching or stepping. Impairment of the ability to segment trunk from limb or to individually control joints within a limb may affect the individual's ability to react to perturbations in a timely or consistent manner.[125]

Persons with hypotonicity, on the other hand, often have difficulty with sustaining effective postural alignment in antigravity positions such as sitting and standing. They are likely to demonstrate patterns of postural malalignment such as excessive lumbar lordosis and thoracic kyphosis.[97] Because of difficulty with muscle force production (especially in midrange of movement), individuals with hypotonia also have difficulty with anticipatory postural control.[90] A lack of on-demand motor control contributes to difficulty moving within one's postural sway envelope; this may be observed as a tendency to stay in one posture for long periods of time, with infrequent alterations in position during tasks.[94] Reactionary control may also be altered, particularly with respect to the use of equilibrium reactions and the reliability of protective responses. Individuals with hypotonia have difficulty when a task requires them to absorb small-amplitude perturbations; they must use equilibrium or balance strategies more frequently than persons with adequate muscle tone.[90] Additionally, a lack of stability in joints, from both tonal and ligamentous laxity, contributes to an inability to safely stop an accelerating body part as it comes into contact with a surface during a loss of balance episode.[94]

MOVEMENT AND COORDINATION

Many functional activities require us to move or transport the entire body (e.g., mobility or locomotion) or a segment of the body (e.g., using one's upper extremity to bring a cup toward the mouth to take a drink) through space.[126,127] The locomotion task that receives much attention in rehabilitation settings is bipedal ambulation—the ability to walk. For full functional ability, individuals must be able to manage a variety of additional locomotion tasks: running, skipping, jumping, and hopping.[128] To fully understand an individual's functional ability, therapists and orthotists must also consider the environmental context in which ambulation is occurring.[129] What are the physical characteristics of the surface on which the individual needs to be able to walk or traverse? Is it level, unpredictably uneven, slippery or frictional, or structurally unstable? Is the ambulation task occurring where lighting is adequate for visual data collection about environmental conditions? Does it involve manipulation of some type of object (e.g., an ambulatory assistive device, a school backpack, shopping bags, suitcases)? Is it occurring in a familiar and predictable environment (e.g., at home) or in a more unpredictable and challenging open environment such as a busy school, supermarket, mall, or other public space? The task demands of locomotion in complex and challenging environments create more demand on the CNS structures involved in motor control (perceptual-motor function, motor planning, cerebellar error control), as well as on the musculoskeletal effectors (muscles and tendons, joints, ligaments, and bones) that enact the motor plan necessary for successful completion of the task that relies on body transport. Individuals with neurological and neuromuscular system problems related to

muscle tone, muscle performance, and postural control are typically less efficient, less adaptable, and more prone to fall when walking, especially if there are competing task demands and the environment is complex and challenging.[130]

The use of a limb segment can also be defined by the nature of the task and the circumstances in which the movement is performed. Upper extremity functional tasks can involve one or more components: reaching, grasping, releasing, manipulating, or any combination of these four purposes.[126] Upper extremity tasks can also be defined by considering the function to be accomplished by the movement: grooming, dressing, meal preparation, self-care, or writing. Many upper extremity mobility tasks are founded on effective postural control (e.g., making appropriate anticipatory postural adjustments as the COM shifts while throwing, lifting, lowering, or catching an object).[126] Complex mobility tasks require simultaneous locomotion and segmented use of extremities (e.g., reaching for the doorknob while ascending the steps toward the front door, throwing or catching a ball while running during a football or baseball game). For individuals with neurological and neuromuscular system dysfunction, the ability to safely and efficiently perform complex mobility tasks is often compromised due to abnormal muscle tone, impaired muscle performance, and poor postural control.[130]

Coordination can be thought of as the efficacy of execution of the movement necessary to complete a task. A well-coordinated movement requires effective simultaneous control of many different dimensions of movement: the accuracy of a movement's direction and trajectory; the timing, sequencing, and precision of muscle activation; the rate and amplitude of force production; the interaction of agonistic and antagonistic muscle groups; the ability to select and manage the type of contraction (concentric, holding, or eccentric) necessary for the task; and the ability to anticipate and respond to environmental demands during movement.[131] Coordination can be examined by considering the individual's ability to initiate movement, sustain movement during the task or activity, and terminate movement according to task demands.[132]

For movement and coordination to be functional, one must have muscle performance that is flexible/adaptable to varying demands.[133] Mobility or transport tasks cannot be performed independently (safely) unless the individual is able to (1) transition into and out of precursor positions (e.g., getting up from the floor into a standing position, rising from a chair), (2) initiate or begin the activity (e.g., take the first step), (3) sustain the activity (control forward progression with repeated steps), (4) change direction as environmental conditions demand (e.g., step over or avoid an obstacle), (5) modulate speed as environmental conditions demand (e.g., increase gait speed when crossing the street), and (6) safely and effectively stop or terminate the motion, returning to a precursor condition or position (quiet standing, return to sitting).[133]

For individuals with neuromuscular disorders who have difficulty with muscle performance, abnormal underlying tone, or impaired postural control, coordination of functional movement can be compromised in several ways. In order to approach and complete a movement task, the individual might rely on abnormal patterns of movement with additional effort and energy cost.[134] Many individuals with hypertonicity initiate movement with strong bursts of muscle contractions but have difficulty sustaining muscle activity and force of contraction through the full ROM necessary to perform a functional movement.[98,108] Deficits in timing and sequencing of muscle contractions, as well as difficulty with dissociation of limb and body segments, also contribute to difficulty with performance of functional tasks.[135] An adult with hemiplegia following a cerebrovascular accident may be able to initiate a reach toward an object but not be able to bring the arm all the way to the target.[136] The same individual may have difficulty with timing and segmentation, leading to inability to open the hand before reaching the target in preparation for grasping the object.[137,138] The muscle performance of many children with CP is compromised by inappropriate sequencing of muscle contractions when activation of synergists and antagonists happens simultaneously.[84,108] Conversely, an individual with hypotonus who has difficulty with stabilization often moves quickly with diminished accuracy and coordination.[90]

The following tables provide an overview of incidence/prevalence, etiology and risk factors, clinical presentation, and impact on muscle tone, muscle performance, postural control, and movement for of the most common pathologies that might include use of an orthosis: stroke (Table 10.1), CP (Table 10.2), spina bifida (Table 10.3), MS (Table 10.4), and spinal cord injury (Table 10.5).

Table 10.1 Stroke

Also known as	Brain attack, cerebrovascular accident
Incidence	Approximately 795,000/year in the United States[a] ~610,000 are first attacks. ~185,000 are recurrent attacks
Prevalence	2.7% of total US population have had stroke[a] Prevalence of stroke by age and sex: 20–39 years: Males = 0.3%, Females = 0.6% 40–59 years: Males = 1.8%, Females = 2.4% 60–79 years: Males = 6.5%, Females = 6.1% 80+ years: Males = 13.8%, Females =14.9%
ETIOLOGY AND RISK FACTORS	
Ischemic Stroke (87%)	
Thrombus	Hypertension, high blood cholesterol and other lipids, diabetes, overweight and obesity, smoking/tobacco use, nutrition, physical inactivity, family history/genetics, chronic kidney disease, sleep apnea, psychosocial factors

Table 10.1 Stroke (Continued)

Embolism	Disorders of heart rhythm (e.g., atrial fibrillation), atherosclerosis in carotid/vertebral arterial systems; previous embolic stroke
Hemorrhagic Stroke (10%)	
Intracranial hemorrhage	Uncontrolled hypertension, ruptured aneurysm
STROKE SYNDROMES (BY ARTERY)	
Middle cerebral (most common)	Contralateral hemiparesis/hemiplegia, lower face, UE > LE Contralateral sensory loss of lower face, UE > LE Contralateral homonymous hemianopia (optic tract) Possible dysarthria and dysphagia R hemisphere: visual-spatial or somatic perceptual impairment L hemisphere: communication impairment (various aphasias)
Lenticulo-striate (lacunar MCA)	Contralateral hemiparesis/hemiplegia, lower face, UE = LE Cortical functions (perception, communication) intact
Anterior cerebral	Contralateral hemiparesis/hemiplegia LE > UE Sensation often intact or only mildly impaired (contralateral) Incontinence "Alien hand" syndrome (involuntary/unintended movement) Motor (nonfluent/Broca) aphasia may occur
Posterior cerebral	Contralateral homonymous hemianopsia (optic radiations) Visual inattention L hemisphere: alexia (unable to read), with ability to write preserved
Thalamogeniculate (lacunar PCA)	Contralateral sensory loss, often severe Sensory ataxia (uncoordinated movement due to lack of proprioception) Thalamic pain and hyperpathia syndrome
Basilar (complete)	Loss of consciousness, coma High mortality
Superior cerebellar	Ipsilateral ataxia, falling to side of lesion Intention tremor Contralateral loss of pain temperature sensation from body Contralateral loss of proprioception Ipsilateral Horner syndrome (meiosis, ptosis, anhidrosis)
Anterior-inferior cerebellar	Ipsilateral facial paralysis (both upper and lower face) Ipsilateral loss of pain and temperature of entire face Contralateral loss of pain and temperature from body Loss of taste sensation, loss of corneal reflex, ipsilateral hearing loss, nystagmus, vertigo, nausea Ataxia and incoordination of limb movement Ipsilateral Horner syndrome (meiosis, ptosis, anhidrosis)
Vertebral	Contralateral loss of pain, temperature sensation from body
Posterior-inferior cerebellar (Wallenberg syndrome) (lateral medullary syndrome)	Ipsilateral loss of pain and temperature sensation from face Ipsilateral Horner syndrome (meiosis, ptosis, anhidrosis) Dysphonia, dysphagia, dysarthria, diminished gag reflex Nystagmus, diplopia, vertigo, nausea Ipsiversive falling (toward side of lesion), incoordination, ataxia
PROGNOSIS	Ischemic: severity depends on site of occlusion within arterial tree and the size of the area that is without blood flow Embolic: risk of recurrence is higher than in thrombosis; risk of hemorrhage at site of embolism Hemorrhagic: highest morbidity and mortality Static event, with evolving symptoms in weeks/months following initial damage, due to initial inflammatory response and subsequent tissue remodeling/healing.
MUSCLE TONE	Initial hypotonus (sometimes appearing to be flaccid) due to neurogenic shock. Some individuals remain hypotonic, most develop various levels of hypertonus in weeks/months following event. Hyperactive deep tendon reflexes evolve over time
MUSCLE PERFORMANCE	Upper extremity often biased toward flexion, with lower extremity biased toward extension. Impaired force production, speed and power, eccentric/isometric control, accuracy, and fluidity
POSTURAL CONTROL	Frequently impaired, especially if lesion included gray matter of R hemisphere, with perceptual dysfunction
MOBILITY AND COORDINATION	Asymmetry in ability to use trunk, limbs during functional activity; tendency to move in abnormal "synergy" (flexion UE, extension LE). Frequently require AFO and ambulatory device

AFO, Ankle/foot/orthosis; *L,* left; *LE,* lower extremity; *MCA,* middle cerebral artery; *PCA,* posterior cerebral artery; *R,* right; *UE,* upper extremity.
[a]Benjamin EJ, Blaha MJ, Chiuve SE, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics—2017 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*. 2017;135(10): e146–e603.

Table 10.2 Cerebral Palsy

Prevalence in the United States	1 in every 323 children born in the United States[a]
Prevalence in developed countries worldwide	2.0–2.5 per 1000 births[b]
Etiology	Associated with prenatal (34%), perinatal (43%), and postnatal (6%) events of hypoxia, infection, ischemia, or trauma affecting the brain[b]
Risk factors	Collection of multiple risk factors rather than one event; cerebral vascular accidents within a neonate's first 28 days most significant cause; premature birth contributes to one half or fewer of cases; low birth weight, perinatal or neonatal respiratory distress/anoxia, uterine or placental pathologies[b]
CLASSIFICATION OF CEREBRAL PALSY	
Topographic distributions:[b]	
Diplegia	Lower extremities affected more than upper extremities
Hemiplegia or hemiparesis	Unilateral upper and lower extremities
Quadriplegia or tetraplegia	All four extremities
Movement disorder distributions:[b] Spastic (77.4%)[a,b]	Involvement of motor cortex and sensorimotor cortical tracts (gray and white matter). Spasticity and hyperreflexia contribute to impaired posture and movement
Dyskinetic (5%–10%)[a] (dystonic or athetonic)	Involvement of the basal ganglia. Contributes to atypical posture and involuntary and sometimes stereotypical movement
Ataxic/cerebellar (5%)	Involvement of the cerebellum. Contributes to instability and altered posture, uncoordinated and imprecise movements
Mixed	Elements of spasticity and dyskinesia
GROSS MOTOR FUNCTION CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM[b,c]	Standard for describing motor disability in children with cerebral palsy. Includes Levels I through V in children between 6th and 12th birthday and children between 12th and 18th birthday
Children Between 6th and 12th Birthdays	Level I Walk at home, school, outdoors, and in the community. Can navigate stairs. Can run and jump. Difficulty with speed, balance, and coordination Level II Walk in most settings and navigate stairs with railing. May have difficulty with long distances, uneven terrain, inclines, obstacles, or crowded spaces. May need physical assistance, hand-held mobility device, or wheeled mobility for long distances. Minimal ability to run and jump. May need adaptations for recreational activities Level III Walk with a hand-held mobility device in indoor settings, navigate stairs with rail and assistance. Use wheeled mobility for long distances. Need adaptations for recreational activities Level IV Mobility requires physical assistance or powered mobility in most settings. Require adaptive seating and body support walker for home and school activities. For community activities, require transportation in manual or powered wheelchair Level V Require transportation in manual wheelchair, adaptive seating and standing systems. Require full assist for transfers and self-care
Children Between 12th and 18th Birthdays	Level I Walk at home, school, outdoors, and in the community. Can navigate stairs and curbs. Can run and jump. Difficulty with speed, balance, and coordination Level II Walk in most settings; environmental factors and personal preference influence mobility choices. May require hand-held mobility device for safety and assistance or rail for stairs. May use wheeled mobility for long distances in community. May need adaptations for sports and recreational activities Level III Walk with hand-held mobility device; need assistance or rail for stairs. Need physical assistance or upper extremity support for transfers. At school may use self-propelled manual wheelchair or powered mobility. In community are transported in manual chair or powered mobility Level IV Use wheeled mobility in most settings. Physical assist required (one to two persons) for transfers. Indoors may walk with assistance or body support walker. Outdoors are transported in manual chair or powered mobility Level V Transported in manual chair in all settings. Require adaptive seating and standing systems. Self-mobility is severely limited even with assistive technology

[a]*Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*. Cerebral palsy. http://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/cerebralpalsy/facts.html. Accessed 15.06.18.
[b]Wright M, Wallman L. Cerebral palsy. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical Therapy for Children*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2012:577–627.
[c]Palisano R, Rosenbaum P, Bartlett D, Livingston M. Content validity of the expanded and revised Gross Motor Function Classification System. *Dev Med Child Neurol*. 2008;50(10):744–750.

Table 10.3 Spina Bifida

Prevalence	Prevalence for babies born with spina bifida is highest in babies born to women of Hispanic decent: 3.80 per 10,000 births; Next non-Hispanic white: 3.09 per 10,000 births; and last Black or African American: 2.73 per 10,000 births[a]
Etiology	Unknown; genetics and environmental factors may play role[a]
Risk factors	Folic acid deficiency in early pregnancy[a,b,c] Maternal alcohol intake during pregnancy (occurs with fetal alcohol syndrome) Use of valproic acid for seizure management during pregnancy[b,c] Having high temperatures early in pregnancy
TYPES OF SPINA BIFIDA[a,b,c]	
Occulta	Abnormal formation of lumbar or sacral vertebrae, with intact spinal cord and spinal nerves, and full skin coverage. May be a progressive deterioration of function in late childhood into adulthood
Meningocele	Vertebral defect such that meninges and cerebrospinal fluid protrude but spinal cord, cauda equina, and spinal nerves remain within the spinal column. Vertebral defect may or may not be covered by skin. Often associated with minor to mild impairment of motor and sensory function
Myelomeningocele	Defect such that meninges and incompletely closed spinal cord protrude; associated with lower motor neuron dysfunction (flaccid paralysis) and complete sensory loss below level of lesion; may have spasticity of muscles innervated by spinal nerves just proximal to level of lesion. Urinary and fecal incontinence common, risk of neuropathic wounds high; risk of osteoporosis of lower extremities high
PROGNOSIS	Incomplete closure of neural tube soon after conception; leading to flaccid paralysis and total sensory impairment of all structures innervated at and below level of lesion. May be concurrent with hydrocephalus, often managed by ventriculoperitoneal shunt. Associated with multiple secondary musculoskeletal deformities including hip dysplasia, hip dislocation, knee valgus or varus, rearfoot valgus, forefoot equinovarus, scoliosis and kyphosis, osteoporosis, overuse injuries of upper extremities.[c] Static, nonprogressive condition; however postural impairments and decreasing levels of mobility occur with aging, particularly in adolescence and young adulthood. Depending on level of lesion, voluntary bladder and bowel control may also be impaired or absent
MUSCLE TONE	Typically flaccid paralysis below the segmental level of the lesion.[c] 9%–25% may have spasticity associated with central nervous system abnormalities
MOBILITY AND COORDINATION	Ranges from bipedal ambulation to wheeled mobility and may change depending on setting and mobility needs. Ambulation distances typically assessed by home, school, or community needs. Orthoses range from ankle/foot orthotic to reciprocating gait orthoses (hip/knee/ankle/foot orthotic). May or may not need assistive device. Wheeled mobility often needed for long distances including school and community venues Evaluation criteria to determine feasibility for ambulation and/or wheelchair mobility[c]: Household distances—evaluate for endurance; effectiveness of transfers; directionality; management of obstacles including doors; thresholds; efficiency/speed; safety; accessibility to all rooms/areas of house School distances—evaluate for endurance; effectiveness of transfers; stairs; curbs; ramps; indoor and outdoor surfaces; management of obstacles including classroom furniture, cafeteria furniture; doors and thresholds; efficiency/speed; safety; accessibility to all rooms/areas of school including bathrooms, special classrooms such as auditoriums, stages, art rooms, computer rooms, gymnasium, and playground Community distances—evaluate for endurance and sufficient speed for public places including medical offices, stores; entertainment and recreational venues; parks and outdoor spaces; effectiveness of transfers; stairs, curbs, and ramps; indoor and outdoor surfaces; management of obstacles including structures, furniture, and people; efficiency/speed; safety; accessibility to all areas of public buildings including bathrooms, lobbies, and parking areas

[a]*Centers for Disease Control and Prevention*. https://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/spinabifida/data.html. Accessed 17.06.18.
[b]Murray CB, Holmbeck GN, Ros AM, Flores DM, Mir SA, Varni JW. A longitudinal examination of health-related quality of life in children and adolescents with spina bifida. *J Pediatr Psychol*. 2015;40(4):419–430.
[c]Hinderer KA, Hinderer SR, Shurtleff DB. Myelodysplasia. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical Therapy for Children*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2012:703–755.

Table 10.4 Multiple Sclerosis

Incidence	10,000 new cases of MS are diagnosed yearly in the United States[a]
Prevalence	~ 400,000 people living with MS in the United States,[b,d] but it may be close to 1,000,000[c] Nationally, 90 per 100,000[b] to 149.2 per 100,000[d] Varies by location: 110–140 per 100,000 above the 37th parallel and 57–78 per 100,000 below the 37th parallel[c] Varies by gender: 224.2 per 100,000 for females and 149.2 per 100,000 for males[d] Varies by region: 192.1 per 100,000 in the East, 111.6 per 100,000 in the South, 165.0 per 100,000 in the Midwest, and 110.7 per 100,000 in the West[d]
Etiology	Unknown; CNS demyelinating disease affecting CNS subsystem

Continued on following page

Table 10.4 Multiple Sclerosis (Continued)

Risk factors	May be exposure to slow virus, environmental toxin, possible autoimmune components, risk higher among siblings (genetic predisposition), more common in women than men, more common among persons in northern latitudes; more common among Caucasians. Most commonly diagnosed in early to mid-adulthood
CLASSIFICATIONS OF MS[c]	
Possible MS	An individual experiences a clinically isolated syndrome (CIS): a single neurologic episode that lasts at least 24 hours, and is caused by inflammation/demyelination in one or more sites in the CNS, especially if lesions are present on MRI
Relapsing remitting (85%)	Cycle of exacerbations (new signs/symptoms) followed by partial to complete recovery during which there is no apparent worsening of the disease process
Progressive	Steadily worsening of symptoms from time of diagnosis, with incomplete recovery between exacerbations
PROGNOSIS	Unpredictable exacerbations result from inflammation and destruction of myelin around pathways within the CNS. Residual impairments are the consequence of slowed transmission of neural impulses across plaques interrupting connections between CNS structures May impact on any subsystem within CNS (voluntary motor, postural control, coordination, memory, perception, sensation) Definitive diagnosis made if there have been at least two different episodes of impairment, involving two different neurological subsystems, affecting two different parts of the body, at two different periods of time Variable course, with many different types of impairment accruing over time with repeated exacerbations Typically, onset of initial symptoms in young and mid-adulthood. Often diagnosis by exclusion; when neurological signs/symptoms cannot be attributed to other disease processes
MUSCLE TONE	Varies, depending on location and size of residual plaque. Some individuals may exhibit normal tone and deep tendon reflexes, in the presences of perceptual, postural, or coordination impairment. Others may demonstrate hypertonus and hyperactive reflexes is various muscles. Others may have hypotonus and impaired muscle performance
MUSCLE PERFORMANCE	Varies, depending on the location of MS plaque. If in pyramidal system, may have weakness, impaired muscle endurance, poor eccentric control, among others. If in cerebellar systems, may demonstrate ataxia, intention tremor, among others
POSTURAL CONTROL	Postural control and equilibrium responses may be impaired due to a combination of pyramidal and/or extrapyramidal motor system impairment, sensory impairment or somatosensory, spinocerebellar, or visual pathways, or damage of major integrative while matter structures such as the corpus callosum, or medial longitudinal fasciculus
MOBILITY AND COORDINATION	Mobility and locomotion may be impaired, along with postural control, depending on location of lesion. Some individuals with impaired muscle performance benefit from AFOs (for support and positioning of lower extremity in gait) associated with weakness or hypertonicity. Many choose to use ambulatory aides and assistive devices for function and safety. Some with significant multisystem impairment benefit from seating and wheeled mobility systems

Note that the US government does not track or report the incidence and prevalence of MS (https://www.nationalmssociety.org/About-the-Society/MS-Prevalence).

AFO, Ankle/foot orthosis; *CNS*, central nervous system; *MRI*, magnetic resonance imaging; *MS*, multiple sclerosis.

[a]Rumrill PD. Multiple sclerosis: medical and psychosocial aspects, etiology, incidence, and prevalence. *J Vocat Rehabil.* 2009;31(2):75-78.

[b]*Cleveland Clinic—Center for Continuing Education.* http://www.clevelandclinicmeded.com/medicalpubs/diseasemanagement/neurology/multiple_sclerosis/. Accessed 08.08.18.

[c]*National Multiple Sclerosis Society.* https://www.nationalmssociety.org/About-the-Society/News/Preliminary-Results-of-MS-Prevalence-Study. Accessed 08.08.18

[d]Dilokthornsakul P, Valuck RJ, Nair KV, et al. (2016). Multiple sclerosis prevalence in the United States commercially insured population. Neurology. 2016;86:1014–1021.

Table 10.5 Spinal Cord Injury

Incidence	~17,730 new cases in the United States per year, ~5.4 per 100,000[a]
Prevalence	~291,000 persons in the United States are living with SCI (range = 249,000 to 363,000)[a]
Etiology	Usually traumatic (e.g., vehicle crashes [39.3%], falls [31.8%], violence - primarily gunshot wounds [13.5%], sports/recreation activities [8%]), sometimes infectious (e.g., transverse myelitis) or ischemic (e.g., complication of abdominal aortic aneurysm repair)
Risk factors	Young age, male gender (~78%), drunk driving, participation in extreme sports, all-terrain vehicle accidents, military injury
SCI SYNDROMES	
Complete UMN[a] 12.3% Complete quadriplegia 19.6% Complete paraplegia	Quadriplegia (cervical cord injury) or paraplegia (thoracic cord injury) with spastic paralysis Consequence of compression, contusion, or ischemia of spinal cord as a result of vertebral fracture or dislocation sustained in fall, collision, diving, gunshot wound, or other high-impact event Exacerbated by resultant inflammatory process Spinal cord below level of lesion survives but is unhooked from brain and brainstem, only able to operate reflexively (e.g., neurogenic bladder and bowel function)
Incomplete[a] 47.6% Incomplete quadriplegia 19.9% Incomplete paraplegia	Similar mechanism of injury but with sparing of one or more areas of spinal cord such that there is some volitional motor function and sensation along with more typical UMN (for cervical and thoracic vertebral lesions) or LMNs (for lumbosacral vertebral

Table 10.5 Spinal Cord Injury (Continued)

	lesions) (e.g., central cord syndrome: upper extremity involvement > lower extremity involvement, often with preserved volitional bladder and bowel function) Becoming more common with advances in emergency care on newly injured persons Paraplegia consequence of compression, contusion of lumbosacral nerve roots (cauda equina) within the lower spinal canal, resulting in flaccid paralysis and sensory loss below the level of lesion
Prognosis	Improved emergency and acute medical management often result in incomplete lesion, with varying combinations of return of function and spastic paralysis
MUSCLE TONE	
Complete UMN	Initial hypotonicity during period of neurogenic shock. Many develop significant hypertonicity in the months after injury; some may have muscle spasm needing pharmacological intervention. Sudden increase in resting tone may signal unrecognized skin irritation, bladder distention or infection, or bowel impaction. At risk of secondary musculoskeletal deformity (contracture) due to longstanding abnormal tone and limited mobility
Incomplete	Also may demonstrate hypotonicity in the days immediately following injury. Some volitional muscle function may be apparent early on; spasticity may develop in other muscles over time. Muscles with spasticity similar to complete UMN injury
Complete LMN	Considered a lower motor neuron lesion with flaccid paralysis and absence of deep tendon reflexes at and below level of lesion
MUSCLE PERFORMANCE	
Complete UMN	Impaired and inadequate; reflexive function only
Incomplete	Muscles that remain innervated often initially weak; responsive to interventions to enhance force production, muscle endurance, power
Complete LMN	No muscle function and areflexic below level of lesion
POSTURAL CONTROL	
Complete UMN	Disconnection of lower motor neuron pool below level of lesion results in loss of volitional movement, as well as automatic postural responses, despite hypertonus. Deep tendon reflexes are often brisk, sometimes resulting in sustained clonus
Incomplete	Varies from significantly impaired to minimally impaired, depending on location and extent of lesion
Complete LMN	Postural control of trunk intact, although flaccid paralysis of lower extremities limit stability in standing without external support of orthoses
MOBILITY AND COORDINATION	
All types	May temporarily use spinal orthosis (CO, CTO, TLSO) until surgical stabilization of damaged vertebrae is well healed. Often require seating and wheelchair systems for mobility Persons with cervical level lesions may require upper extremity splints and adaptive equipment for activities of daily living, or resting splints or orthoses to manage abnormal tone and prevent contracture
Complete LMN	Persons with low thoracic and lumbosacral lesions may use AFO, KAFO, or HKAFO along with assistive device (rolling walker, crutches) for ambulation, either as part of rehabilitation or of fitness program; energy cost of ambulation for community distances often high enough to be impractical

AFO, Ankle/foot orthosis; *CO*, cervical orthosis; *CTO*, cervical thoracic orthosis; *HKAFO*, hip/ankle/foot orthosis; *KAFO*, knee/ankle/foot orthosis; *LMN*, lower motor neuron; *SCI*, spinal cord injury; *TLSO*, thoraco/lumbo/sacral orthosis; *UMN*, upper motor neuron.
[a]*National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, Facts and Figures at a Glance. Birmingham, AL: University of Alabama at Birmingham, 2019. Accessed 03.11.19.*

When considering an upper or lower extremity orthosis or an adaptive equipment system to support the trunk for individuals with neurological or neuromuscular dysfunction, the rehabilitation team must clearly define what they hope the orthosis will accomplish and consider the needs of the individual and family. Goals for orthosis and adaptive equipment usage include provision of stability for trunk, limb segment, or specific joint for postural control; provision of stability for improved efficiency of movement, reduction of the influence of hypertonicity on movement, minimization/prevention of the development of contractures, and increasing participation in desired activities of the individual. There is no perfect orthosis or adaptive equipment piece that will address all dimensions of movement dysfunction; there are always trade-offs that must be taken into account.

Management of Neuromuscular Impairments

Effective care of persons with movement dysfunction secondary to neurological and neuromuscular pathologies requires collaboration of health professionals from many disciplines: neurologists, orthopedist, physiatrists, physical and occupational therapists, and orthotists, among others.[139–141] Physicians and surgeons manage spasticity and correct orthopedic deformity with medication and surgery. Nurses are involved in wellness care, as well as medical and surgical management. Rehabilitation professionals facilitate return of function after an acute event and provide functional training and postoperative rehabilitation for individuals across the spectrum of neurological and

neuromuscular pathologies. Orthotists contribute their knowledge of orthotic options to improve gait and function. The multidisciplinary approach leads to greater satisfaction with care and less risk of abandonment of orthoses and assistive devices by the person for which they were made.[142]

MEDICAL AND SURGICAL CARE

Medical management of CNS dysfunction often includes prescription of pharmacological agents. Physicians can select from a range of centrally acting tone-inhibiting medications (e.g., baclofen [Lioresal]) or pharmacological interventions that target lower motor neurons, peripheral nerves, or muscle (e.g., botulinum toxin injection, intrathecal baclofen) for individuals with significant hypertonicity.[143–149] A host of medications have become available to reduce the likelihood of exacerbation, delay disease progression, and manage fatigue for persons with MS.[150,151] Many individuals with CNS disorders also must cope with seizure management; many antiepileptic drugs affect tone, arousal, and ability to learn.[152] It is important for physical therapists and orthotists to be aware of the potential impact of neuroactive medications on an individual's ability to concentrate and learn, overall health status, and neuromotor control.[153,154] A summary of pharmacological agents used in the management of hypertonicity resulting from CNS disease in the management of MS and for seizure disorders is presented in Table 10.6.

Alternatively, physicians may recommend various neurosurgical procedures and orthopedic surgeries to correct deformity, improve flexibility, or reduce level of abnormal tone, with the goal of enhancing mobility and improving performance of functional tasks. Neurectomy and neurotomy, for example, may be used to manage severe equinovarus and upper extremity spasticity after stroke and for children with CP.[155–159] Selective dorsal rhizotomy effectively reduces problematic hypertonicity for children with CP but does not seem to reduce the future risk of developing deformity, which would then require orthopedic surgery.[160–162] Intrathecal baclofen pumps have been used as a strategy to manage severe spasticity in persons with traumatic brain injury, stroke, spinal cord injury, and CP.[163–165]

Despite pharmacological and positioning interventions, musculoskeletal deformities can still develop, particularly

Table 10.6 Pharmacological Interventions for Individuals With Neurological and Neuromuscular System Impairments

Trade Names	Generic Name (Class)	Administration	Indications	Adverse Effects
MANAGEMENT OF DYSTONIA AND CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM-RELATED SPASM[a]				
NeuroBloc Myobloc	botulinum B toxin (neurotoxin)	Intramuscular	Facial spasm, spasmodic torticollis, blepharospasm	Pain at injection site, ptosis, eye irritation, weakness of neck muscles, dysphagia, dry mouth, heartburn
MANAGEMENT OF HYPERTONICITY, CLONUS, AND TICS[a]				
Botox Dysport	botulinum A toxin (neurotoxin)	Intramuscular or perineural injection, intrathecal	Chronic severe spasticity or dystonia	Pain or bruising at injection site, muscle weakness, tiredness, drowsiness, nausea, anxiety
Catapres	clonidine (antihypertensive)	Oral or transdermal	Spasticity in MS	Dry mouth, gastrointestinal disturbances, fatigue, headache, nervousness, insomnia, skin irritation (transdermal)
Ceberclon Klonopin Rivotril Valpax	clonazepam (benzodiazepine)	Oral	Spasticity in CP, dystonic, chorea, akathisia (also for seizures, panic attacks)	Sedation, dizziness, unsteadiness, incoordination, memory problems, muscle or joint pain, blurred vision, frequent urination
Dantrium	dantrolene sodium (skeletal muscle relaxant)	Oral or injection	Chronic severe spasticity of UMN origin	Drowsiness, dizziness, generalized weakness, malaise, fatigue, nervousness, headache
Ethanol	ethyl alcohol (neurotoxin)	Intramuscular or perineural injection	Severe spasticity, with serial casting follow-up	Neuritis, hyperesthesia, or paresthesia
Lioresal	baclofen (skeletal muscle relaxant)	Oral, injection, or intrathecal	Chronic severe spasticity for conditions including SCI, ABI, MS; not effective in CP	Sedation, confusion, hypotension, dizziness, ataxia, headache, tremor, nystagmus, paresthesia, diaphoresis, muscular pain or weakness, insomnia, behavioral changes
Neurontin	gabapentin	Oral	Adjunct to other antispasticity medications for SCI and MS	Drowsiness, dizziness, ataxia, fatigue, nystagmus, nervousness, tremor, diplopia, memory impairment
Phenol	phenol	Intramuscular or perineural injection	Severe lower limb spasticity (with serial casting follow-up) pain control	Damage to other neural structures
Robaxin	methocarbamol	Oral or injection	Short-term relief of muscle spasm or spasticity	Sedation, drowsiness, lightheadedness, fatigue, dizziness, nausea, restlessness

Table 10.6 Pharmacological Interventions for Individuals With Neurological and Neuromuscular System Impairments (Continued)

Trade Names	Generic Name (Class)	Administration	Indications	Adverse Effects
Valium	diazepam	Oral or injection	Short-term relief of muscle spasm or spasticity	Sedation, drowsiness, fatigue, ataxia, confusion, depression, diplopia, dysarthria, tremor
Zanaflex Sirdalud	tizanidine (skeletal muscle relaxant)	Oral	Spasticity from MS or SCI	Sedation, drowsiness, fatigue, dizziness, mild weakness, nausea, hypotension, GI irritation
MANAGEMENT OF DYSESTHESIA/NEUROPATHIC PAIN[b]				
Carbatrol Epitol Tegretol Dilantin Neurontin Zonegran Norpramin	carbamazepine phenytoin gabapentin zonisamide desipramine (anticonvulsants)	Oral	Trigeminal neuralgia, pelvic pain, intense episodic/lancinating/burning pain, pins/needles, cramping, dysesthetic extremity pain, tonic spasms, other neurogenic pain, nocturnal spasms	See Seizure Medications
Adapin Sinequan Triadapin Zonalon Elavil Imavate Janimine Tofranil Vivactil	doxepin amitriptyline imipramine protriptyline (tricyclic antidepressants)	Oral	Chronic neurogenic pain (e.g., dysesthetic extremity pain such as burning, tingling)	Drowsiness, blurred vision, dizziness, GI and urinary disturbances, tachycardia, hypotension, weight gain, fatigue, headache
MANAGEMENT OF SEIZURES[c]				
Amytal	amobarbital (barbiturate)	Intravenous	Status epilepticus	Sedation, nystagmus, ataxia, vitamin K and folate deficiency
Ativan	lorazepam (benzodiazepine)	Intravenous	Status epilepticus	Sedation, ataxia, changes in behavior
Atretol Convline Epitol Macrepan Tegretol	carbamazepine (iminostilbene)	Oral	Complex partial seizures, tonic-clonic seizures, trigeminal neuralgia, bipolar disorder	Ataxia, diplopia, drowsiness, fatigue, dizziness, vertigo, tremor, headache, nausea, dry mouth, anorexia, agitation, rashes photosensitivity, heart failure
Celontin	methsuximide (succinimide)	Oral	Alternative to ethosuximide for absence seizures	Nausea, vomiting, headache, dizziness, fatigue, lethargy, dyskinesia, bradykinesia
Cerebyx	fosphenytoin (hydantoin)	Intravenous	Status epilepticus	GI irritation, confusion, sedation, dizziness, headache, nystagmus, ataxia, dysarthria
Depacon	Sodium valproate (carboxylic acid)	Oral or injection	All types of seizures	Ataxia, tremor, sedation, nausea, vomiting, hyperactivity weakness, incoordination, risk of hepatotoxicity
Depakene	valproic acid (carboxylic acid)	Oral	Absence seizures, as adjunct for other seizure types	Nausea, sedation, ataxia headache nystagmus, diplopia, asterixis, dysarthria, dizziness, incoordination, depression, hyperactivity, weakness, risk of hepatotoxicity
Depakote	divalproex sodium (carboxylic acid)	Oral	Complex partial seizures, absence seizures, as adjunct for other seizure types	Headache, asthenia, nausea, somnolence, tremor, dizziness diplopia, risk of hepatotoxicity
Diamox	acetazolamide (sulfonamide)	Oral	Absence seizures, myoclonic seizures	Drowsiness, dizziness
Dilantin Diphen Diphentoin Dyantoin Phenytex	phenytoin (hydantoin)	Oral or injection	Status epilepticus, tonic-clonic seizures, simple complex seizures	Ataxia, slurred speech, confusion, insomnia, nervousness, hypotension, nystagmus diplopia, nausea, vomiting
Felbatol	felbamate (2nd generation)	Oral	Partial seizures, absence seizures Used for severe seizure disorders unresponsive to other medications	Aplastic anemia, liver failure, insomnia, headache, dizziness, loss of appetite, nausea, vomiting

Continued on following page

Table 10.6 Pharmacological Interventions for Individuals With Neurological and Neuromuscular System Impairments (Continued)

Trade Names	Generic Name (Class)	Administration	Indications	Adverse Effects
Gabitril	tiagabine (2nd generation)	Oral	Partial seizures	Generalized weakness, dizziness, tiredness, nervousness, tremor, distractibility, emotional lability
Keppra	levetiracetam (2nd generation)	Oral	Adjunct for partial seizures in adults	Sedation, dizziness, generalized weakness
Klonopin Rivotril	clonazepam (benzodiazepine)	Oral or injection	Myoclonic seizures, absence seizures, kinetic seizures	Drowsiness, dizziness, ataxia, dyskinesia, irritability, disturbances of coordination, slurred speech, diplopia, nystagmus, thirst
Lamictal	lamotrigine (2nd generation)	Oral	Partial seizures, tonic-clonic seizures	Dizziness, headache, ataxia, drowsiness, incoordination, insomnia, tremors, depression, anxiety, diplopia, blurred vision, GI disturbances, agitation, confusion, rash
Luminol Solfoton	phenobarbital (barbiturate)	Oral or injection	Status epilepticus, all seizure types except absence seizures	Drowsiness, lethargy, agitation, confusion, ataxia, hallucination, bradycardia, hypotension, nausea
Mebaral	mephobarbital (barbiturate)	Oral	Tonic-clonic seizures, simple and complex partial seizures	Drowsiness, sedation, nystagmus, ataxia, folate and vitamin K deficiency
Mesantoin	mephenytoin (hydantoin)	Oral	Partial seizures, tonic-clonic seizures used if Dilantin is not effective	Similar to Dilantin, but more toxic
Milontin	phensuximide (succinimide)	Oral	Alternative to Zarontin for absence seizures	Nausea, vomiting, headache, dizziness, fatigue, lethargy, bradykinesia, dyskinesia
Mysoline	primidone (barbiturate)	Oral	All seizure types except absence seizures, essential tremor	Ataxia, vertigo, drowsiness, depression, inattention, headache, nausea, visual disturbances
Nembutal	pentobarbital (barbiturate)	Intravenous	Tonic-clonic seizures, simple and complex partial seizures	Sedation, nystagmus, ataxia, vitamin K and folate deficiency
Neurontin	gabapentin (2nd generation)	Oral	Partial seizures in adults and children older than 3 years, neuropathic pain	Drowsiness, dizziness, ataxia, fatigue, nystagmus, nervousness, tremor, diplopia, memory impairment
Peganone	ethotoin (hydantion)	Oral	Tonic-clonic seizures; used if Dilantin is not effective	Similar to Dilantin, but more toxic
Seconal	secobarbital (barbiturate)	Intravenous	Tonic-clonic seizures, partial seizures	Sedation, nystagmus, vitamin K and folate deficiency
Topamax	topiramate (2nd generation)	Oral	Partial seizures, adjunct to tonic-clonic seizures	Ataxia, confusion, dizziness, fatigue, paresthesia, emotional lability, confusion, diplopia, nausea
Thosutin Zarontin	ethosuximide (succinimide)	Oral	Absence seizures	Drowsiness, headache, fatigue, dizziness, ataxia, euphoria, depression, myopia, nausea, anorexia
Tranxene	clorazepate (benzodiazepine)	Oral	Adjunct for partial seizures	Sedation, ataxia, changes in behavior
Trileptal	oxcarbazepine (iminostilbene)	Oral	Partial seizures, tonic-clonic seizures	Ataxia, drowsiness, nausea, dizziness, headache, agitation, memory impairment, asthenia, ataxia, confusion, tremor, nystagmus
Valium Valrelease	diazepam (benzodiazepine)	Injection	Status epilepticus, severe recurrent seizures	Drowsiness, fatigue, ataxia, confusion, depression, dysarthria, syncope, tremor, vertigo
Zonegran	zonisamide (2nd generation)	Oral	Adjunct for partial seizures in adults	Sedation, ataxia, loss of appetite, fatigue

ABI, Acquired brain injury; *CP*, cerebral palsy; *GI*, gastrointestinal; *MS*, multiple sclerosis; *NMJ*, neuromuscular junction; *SCI*, spinal cord injury; *UMN*, upper motor neuron.

[a]Ciccone CD. Skeletal muscle relaxants. In: Ciccone CD, ed. *Pharmacology in Rehabilitation.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2016:179–197.

[b]Jensen T, Madsen C, Finnerup N. Pharmacology and treatment of neuropathic pains. *Curr Opin Neurol.* 2009;22(5):467–474.

[c]Ciccone CD. Antiepileptic drugs. In: Ciccone CD, ed. *Pharmacology in Rehabilitation.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2016:115–130.

in the growing child. Surgical interventions are used to correct musculoskeletal defaults of the spine and limbs, realign joints for better mechanical advantage, improve ease of caregiving and hygiene management, promote cosmesis, or reduce and prevent pain. Tendon lengthenings or transfers are commonly used to correct contractures and provide greater functional ROM to improve the ability to walk in children with CP.[84,166–169] Derotation osteotomies are another option that have traditionally been used to improve or correct deformity and improve walking ability in children with CP.[170–173] Because children with CP and acquired brain injury who have significant hypertonicity are at risk for developing neuromuscular scoliosis, various spinal surgeries are used to improve spinal alignment and reduce pelvic obliquity, to improve physiological and daily function, and to reduce caregiver burden.[174–176] Rather than subject children with CP to multiple surgeries over time, many centers perform multiple procedures at the same time.[177,178] To achieve maximum benefit, rehabilitation is a necessary component following any of these surgeries.[84,179–181]

Individuals with significant spasticity are commonly managed with a combination of these strategies to most effectively diminish the impairment, improve the functional ability, and help them participate in activities that are important to them.[182–184] Increasingly, instrumented gait analysis is being used inform clinical decision making in selecting the most appropriate intervention or combination of interventions for ambulatory individuals with functional limitation secondary to neuromuscular pathologies and their associated secondary impairments.[185–188]

REHABILITATION

Rehabilitation professionals use a variety of examination strategies to determine the nature and extent of dysfunction across systems that are associated with a particular pathological condition. The components of a complete evaluation when considering orthotic or equipment decisions include asking specific history questions, a biomechanical analysis of the limb(s)/segment(s), examination of neuromotor status, motor control, functional movement ability, integumentary integrity, sensory processing, cognitive function, and psychosocial factors. See Table 10.7 for an example.[9,189] The physical therapist evaluates this information to (1) determine an appropriate movement-related physical therapy diagnosis, (2) predict potential outcomes (prognosis), and (3) structure an appropriate plan of care.[189–191]

Physical therapists use adaptive equipment, orthoses, and seating as key components of an effective plan of care for persons with neuromotor/neurosensory system dysfunction.[192–196] Consideration of the use of an orthotic or other equipment must be made in the context of the patient's activity needs/desires and participation in life activities that contribute to quality of life.[197]

Orthoses are used to:

1. align or position limb segments to enhance voluntary limb movement and improve function (e.g., an ankle-foot orthosis [AFO] to provide prepositioning of the foot during swing limb advancement and stability during the stance phase of gait);
2. minimize the influence of abnormal tone on posture and movement (tone-inhibiting designs);
3. provide individuals with a variety of comfortable and safe positions in which they can sleep, eat, travel, work, or play;
4. promote joint alignment and minimize risk of contracture development and other secondary musculoskeletal sequelae (especially in growing children);
5. protect a limb following orthopedic surgery performed to correct deformity or instability;
6. enhance alignment following pharmacological intervention with botulinum toxin; and
7. provide alternative methods for mobility.

The risk for developing secondary musculoskeletal impairments is high in the presence of hypertonicity.[108,197–200] Passive stretching programs alone are generally ineffective as a management strategy for reducing risk for contracture development.[201,202] Prolonged positioning for several hours a day is a critical adjunct to stretching.[203–205] Adaptive equipment can be used to provide structural alignment for prolonged periods of time to maintain extensibility of muscles, decrease the effect of muscle imbalance across joints, and provide postural support, particularly to increase effectiveness in daily activities such as feeding and play.[206–208] An adaptive seating system, for example, would provide upright postural support for sitting; maintain spinal alignment and pelvic positioning; support optimal hip, knee, and ankle positions; and promote the best position for upper extremity function.[206–210] Positioning devices for supported standing are often used to maintain extensibility of muscles, to promote bone mineral density through weight bearing, and to promote musculoskeletal development such as acetabular depth in a developing child with hypertonicity (Fig. 10.7).[211–213] Other examples of positioning devices include prone, supine, and sidelyer systems, bathing and toileting seating systems, and a variety of mobility alternatives such as gait trainers.[214–217] Although there are many options for adaptive equipment designed to assist function and caregiving for persons with neurological and neuromuscular dysfunction, knowledge about options and limitations in funding limit access for many who might otherwise benefit from such devices.[218–221]

Serial corrective casts have long been used as a primary intervention for individuals with significant hypertonus to provide a prolonged elongation of soft tissue over a long time period. They increase the length of a contracted muscle and its supportive tissues and reset the threshold for response to stretch reflex.[155–160,203] Some splints or dynamic orthoses are used primarily at night to provide 8 or more hours of stretch on a regular basis; others can be worn during daily activities to provide a longer period of stretch (Fig. 10.8).[222–226] More recently, serial casting and dynamic splinting have been used in conjunction with pharmacological interventions for the management of spasticity in both children and adults with severe hypertonicity (Fig. 10.9).[203,222,227,228] Although the pharmacological agent may reduce the degree of spasticity in hypertonic muscles, concomitant shortening of the muscles and tendons must be addressed while the neurological influence is altered, as should concomitant deficits in other dimensions of muscle performance and motor control.[229–231] A young child with CP—spastic diplegia, for example—may receive botulinum injections to the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles to reduce the severity of spasticity as an alternative to early orthopedic surgery.[232,233]

Table 10.7 Elements of a Physical Therapy Examination in Consideration for Prescription/Use of Orthoses, Adaptive Equipment, or Serial Casting

Examination Element	Examination Strategies	Implications for Orthosis, Equipment or Cast
Chief complaint: What is the *MOVEMENT PROBLEM* that brings the individual to physical therapy?	Interview of individual and caregivers	Ambulation/gait dysfunction—consider need for LE orthosis. Reach, grasp, manipulation dysfunction—consider need for UE orthosis
History of current illness, past medical history: How did the *MOVEMENT PROBLEM* develop or evolve? Explore duration of the presenting problem; previous and concurrent pharmacological management; previous and concurrent orthopedic or neurosurgical management; previous orthotic management; Current health status; Comorbidities and their management	Review of medical record Interview with individual and caregivers Consultation with clinical colleagues	Consider what strategies are currently working or not. Consider combination of strategies that might be possible. For example, hypertonicity reduction medication coupled with an orthosis
Biomechanical evaluation: ROM, flexibility (especially of multijoint muscles), muscle length, alignment of joints, pelvis, and spine, torsional/rotational deformity of hip, femur, tibia,	Goniometric measurement; Evaluation of muscle length (e.g., Thomas test, straight-leg raise); integrity of ligaments and supportive structures; radiograph; inclinometer	Consider strategies for contracture management. For example, Botox injection followed by serial casting or orthosis. If contracture may be "permanent" or severe, consider accommodation needs for positioning. For example, heel wedge to accommodate fixed plantarflexion contracture
Postural alignment in sitting and standing	Spatial relationships of head, upper trunk/limb girdle, mid trunk, lower trunk/pelvic girdle, extremity symmetry	Consider seating or standing adaptations and/or seating/standing systems
Anthropomorphic characteristics	Height, weight, limb length, limb girth, body mass	Implications for sizing
Neuromotor status: Muscle tone (compliance vs. stiffness) Deep tendon reflex testing Antigravity stiffness/postural tone Involuntary movement	Resistance to passive movement at various speeds Palpation tone scales (e.g., modified Ashworth), descriptive category (hypertonic/spastic, rigid, hypotonic, fluctuating, flaccid) amplitude of response, pattern of response (distal-proximal), symmetry of response	Consider strategies and combination of strategies to manage hypertonicity
Motor control: Recruitment/adaptation of contractions Segmentation of limbs, joints within a limb	Ability to move between concentric, eccentric, and holding contractions during functional activity Ability to initiate, sustain, and terminate contraction and movement. Influence of abnormal synergy or abnormal developmental reflexes	Determine if trunk or extremities require positioning or orthosis to provide control (minimize tonal influence, support body structure)
Muscle performance: Strength Speed/power Accuracy Timing Fluidity Muscle endurance Relationship of agonist/antagonist	Observation of antigravity movement Manual muscle testing, dynamometer Isokinetic testing Description: hypokinetic, functional, hyperkinetic Control for concentric, eccentric, isometric contractions, repetitions to test endurance	Consider postural support requirements for UE tasks; trunk and LE support requirements for LE tasks
Postural control	Static balance tests (e.g., timed single limb stance) Anticipatory balance tests (e.g., reach distances, ability to change direction) Reactionary balance test: perturbation	Consider postural support requirements for UE tasks; trunk and LE support requirements for LE tasks
Functional movement ability, functional task abilities ADL	Ability to adapt movement strategies in different environmental conditions and to different task demands. Observation of movement during task Self-report of individual or caregiver Various ADL scales Ability to don/doff orthosis	Consider orthoses to improve efficiency, effectiveness of movement. Consider equipment that may assist in task completion

Table 10.7 Elements of a Physical Therapy Examination in Consideration for Prescription/Use of Orthoses, Adaptive Equipment, or Serial Casting (Continued)

Examination Element	Examination Strategies	Implications for Orthosis, Equipment or Cast
Dexterity, coordination, agility	Observation of performance during functional activity Special tests Developmental scales and profiles	Consider orthoses to improve efficiency, effectiveness of movement
Transitional movements and transfers To/from floor Sit to stand Bathroom transfers Car transfers	Assistance required Level of difficulty Task analysis to identify where in movement difficulty occurs and contributors to difficulty	Consider LE orthosis for standing and movement needs; consider seating needs, wheelchair usage. Consider mechanical lift needs
Mobility and locomotion	Observational gait analysis, with and without orthosis Gait speed, other kinematic measures Use of assistive devices Level of assistance required Gait lab kinetic measures (moments, torques, force plate, activity via video, and EMG analysis	Consider orthosis needs for gait cycle impairments. Consider assistive device needs
UE function and use of hands	Observation during various fine and gross UE motor tasks	Consider UE orthosis needs
Cardiovascular endurance	Heart rate, blood pressure, oxygen saturation during activity Ratings of perceived exertion during tasks 6-Minute walk test Fatigue scales	Consider orthosis for efficiency, to decrease energy expenditure
Environmental assessment (home, work, school, leisure)	Environmental safety checklists Interview with individual and caregivers about characteristics of environments in which individual must function	Consider environmental adaptations
Integumentary integrity Skin condition	Inspection for neuropathic, dysvascular, or traumatic wounds Document callus and scarring Document pressure sensitive areas Document protective sensation, insensate weight-bearing areas	Consider protection of vulnerable areas; consider custom fit to minimize/prevent wound development
Sensory organization and processing Sensory integrity	Adequacy of vision (acuity, peripheral vision, tracking, visual field loss) Screening for exteroception, proprioception ability Document insensate areas, especially of hands/feet Document paresthesia and dysesthesia	Consider protection of vulnerable areas; consider custom fit to minimize/prevent wound development
Perceptual function Visual spatial perception Awareness of position in space Awareness of body parts	Observation of movement during functional tasks Developmental tests, measures Special perceptual tests, measures	Consider workstation, home adaptations
Cognitive function: Ability to learn and remember Ability to problem solve Motivation Distractibility/focus Ability to manage frustration, uncertainty	Reports of teachers, clinicians; neuropsychological testing; Observation when presented with challenge; Self-report of individual and caregivers	Consider ability to manage orthosis, cleaning and maintenance of devices. Consider ability to don/doff orthosis. Consider ability to know if fit feels wrong and ability to seek appropriate assistance
Communication	Adequacy of hearing and auditory processing; Ability to understand language; Ability to use language; Oral-motor function (dysarthria); Impact of position on voice	Consider ability to understand and follow instructions for proper fit, wearing schedules
Psychosocial factors Desired participation in leisure or play activities, school or work-related activities. Family and caregiver Quality of life	Typical activities and roles: demands and barriers encountered for activities. Availability and capacity of others to assist with respect to use of orthosis Self-efficacy scales Patient/caregiver satisfaction with orthosis/device	Consider use of orthosis, adaptive equipment for different environments. Consider training of caregiver if needed

ADL, Activities of daily living; *EMG*, electromyographic; *LE*, lower extremity; *ROM*, range of motion; *UE*, upper extremity.

Truman H, Racette W. Orthotics: evaluation, intervention, and prescription. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:1037–1052.

SELECTING THE APPROPRIATE ORTHOSIS

Rehabilitation professionals play an active role in deciding what type of orthosis would be most appropriate for an individual with neuromuscular impairment. A number of factors contribute to the decision-making process; the collective wisdom of physical and occupational therapists, orthotists, physicians, family, and the patient who might benefit from orthotic intervention is necessary for appropriate and effective casting or orthotic intervention.[192,234,235]

Fig. 10.7 Example of adaptive equipment (stander) available to assist appropriate alignment and function in the presence of impairment of muscle tone, muscle performance, postural control, or difficulty with movement and coordination.

The primary goal of orthotic or adaptive equipment prescription is to select the device and components that will best improve function, given the individual's pathologic condition and prognosis, desired activities, and participation needs, both in the immediate situation and over time. To do this, the cast, splint, or orthosis might provide external support, control or limit ROM, optimally position a limb for function, reduce the risk of secondary musculoskeletal complications, or provide a base for adaptive equipment that would make function more efficient. What evidence is available to support clinical decision making with respect to orthotic prescription? Although many professionals rely on expertise gained by working with persons with neuromotor impairment over years of clinical practice, a growing number of articles on orthotic design for particular patient populations in the rehabilitation and orthotic research literature are available to guide decision making not only for individuals with hypertonicity but also for those with spinal cord injury, myelomeningocele, and muscular dystrophy.[195,234–241] Evaluation of the effectiveness of the orthotic intervention is becoming increasingly important in clinical decision making. Several articles related to specific outcome measures for effectiveness of orthotic use and patient satisfaction have recently been published.[242–245]

This chapter has discussed general orthotic and adaptive equipment usage; however, lower extremity orthotics are often a significant component of physical therapy practice, particularly for ambulation and gait dysfunction. When the primary goal of orthotic intervention is to improve safety and functionality during ambulation, it is imperative to identify where in the gait cycle abnormal tone or muscle performance is impaired (refer to Chapter 5 for more information on critical events in each subphase of gait, as well as detailed information about strategies to examine gait). Systematic consideration of

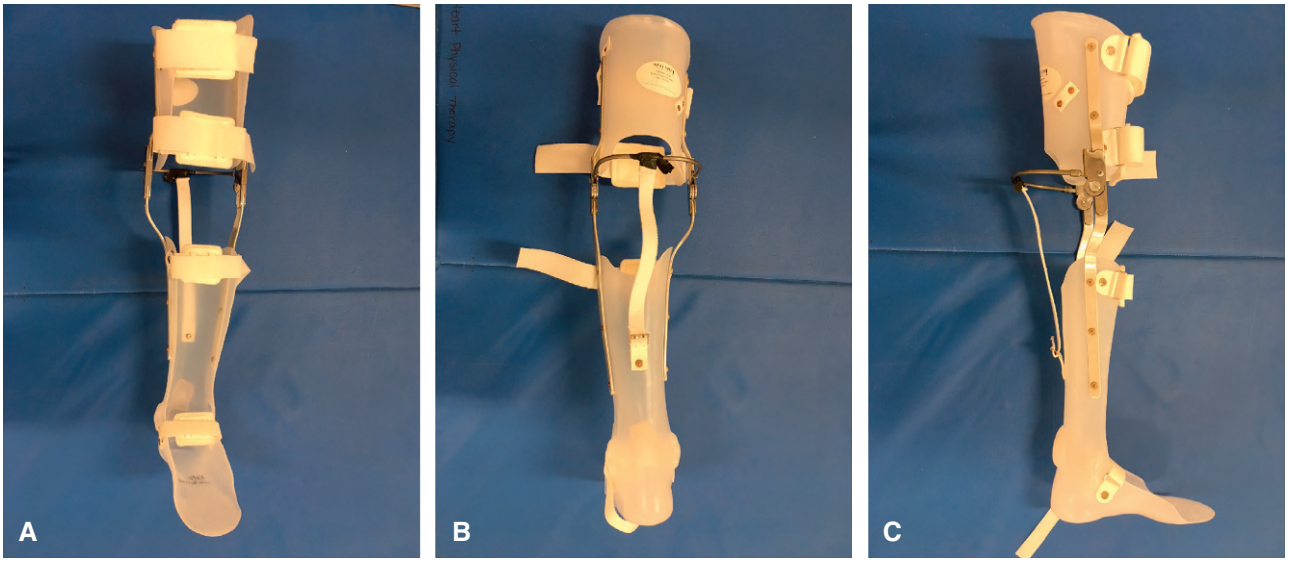


Fig. 10.8 Example of knee/ankle/foot orthosis *(KAFO)* with knee extension stop. (A) Front view. (B) Back view. (C) Side view.

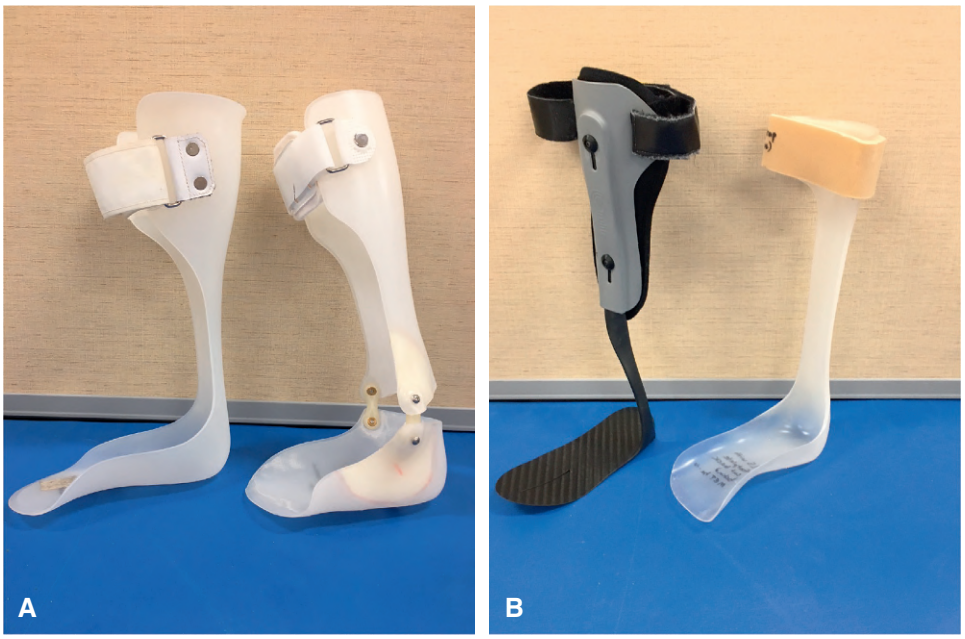


Fig. 10.9 Examples of ankle/foot orthoses *(AFO)*. (A) Pictured on the left is a custom molded solid AFO and pictured on the right is a custom molded hinged AFO. (B) Pictured on the left is a carbon fiber floor reaction AFO and pictured on the right is a custom molded posterior leaf spring AFO.

a series of questions can help identify where within the gait cycle (considering both stance and swing phases) problems occur.[246–248]

Rehabilitation professions must recognize that no orthosis will normalize gait for persons with neurologically based gait difficulties. Whenever an external device is placed on a limb, it is likely to solve one problem while at the same time creating other constraints on limb function. The therapist, orthotist, and patient collectively problem solve during the orthotic prescription phase to prioritize the difficulties the individual is having during gait and then select the design and components that will allow the person to be most functional while walking, with the least additional constraint on other mobility and functional tasks.

The rehabilitation team at Rancho Los Amigos National Rehabilitation Center has developed an algorithm that is particularly useful in guiding clinical decision making and sorting through possible orthotic options for adults with neuromotor impairment (ROADMAP: Recommendations for Orthotic Assessment, Decision Making, and Prescription).[192] When considering orthotic interventions for persons having difficulty with ambulation, this team suggests asking the following questions:

1. Is there adequate ROM in the lower extremities to appropriately align or position limb segments in each subphase of gait?
2. Does the individual have the motivation and cognitive resources necessary to work toward meeting the goal of ambulation?
3. Does the individual have enough endurance (cardiovascular and cardiopulmonary resources) to be able to functionally ambulate? If endurance is not currently sufficient, might it be improved by a concurrent conditioning program?
4. Does the individual have adequate upper extremity, trunk, and lower extremity strength; power; motor control; and postural control for ambulation (with an appropriate assistive device, if necessary)? If these dimensions of movement are not currently sufficient, might they be improved with concurrent rehabilitation intervention?
5. Is there sufficient awareness of lower limb position (proprioception, kinesthesia) for controlled forward progression in gait? If not, might alternative sensory strategies be learned or used to substitute for limb position sense?

If the answers to most of these questions are "yes," the individual is considered to be a candidate for orthotic intervention. The next determinant is knee control and strength: If the individual has antigravity knee extension with the ability to respond to some resistance (manual muscle testing grade of 3+ strength), even if there is impaired proprioception in the involved limb, then an AFO may be appropriate. If there is impairment of strength or of proprioception (or both), then the team is more likely to recommend a knee/ankle/foot orthosis (KAFO). Box 10.1 is an example of a decision tree used to guide the selection of components.

Especially important is that the individual who will use the orthosis and caregivers, as appropriate, are actively involved in the decision-making process. To make an informed decision, the person needing an orthosis must understand both the benefits and constraints associated with the orthotic designs and components being considered. He or she must be able to consider the range of orthotic options, as well as medical/surgical intervention and additional rehabilitation interventions that might affect his or her ability to walk. The entire team must consider what the individual who will be wearing the orthosis wants to accomplish, as well as the preferences he or she might have in terms of ease of donning/doffing, wearing schedule, and cosmesis of the device being recommended. Beginning with a trial orthosis, perhaps

Box 10.1 Decision Tree for Orthotic Options

Is a KAFO Indicated?

- Is there at least antigravity with some resistance (MMT 3+/5 strength) in quadriceps bilaterally?
- Is proprioception intact bilaterally?

If yes: continue with the assessment for ankle-foot orthosis (AFO)
If no: KAFO may improve gait—continue assessment process

Which KAFO Components Are the Most Appropriate?

- Is there at least antigravity with some resistance (MMT 3+/5 strength) in one lower extremity?
- Is proprioception intact in at least one lower extremity?

If no: consider trial of bilateral KAFOs or a reciprocal gait orthosis
If yes: unilateral KAFO may be indicated—continue assessment to determine if knee locking mechanism is necessary

Can the Knee Be Fully Extended, Without Pain, During Stance?

If no: consider KAFO with knee lock
If yes: consider KAFO with variable knee mechanism and continue assessment

Is There at Effective Active Control of Knee Extension During Stance?

If no: consider stance control knee mechanism
If yes: consider free motion knee mechanism. Continue with AFO decision tree to determine appropriate ankle control strategy

Is an AFO Indicated?

- Is there impairment of ankle strength?
- Is there impairment of proprioception?
- Is there hypertonicity of plantarflexors?
- Is there a combination of all of the above?

If no: may not require lower extremity orthosis
If yes: lower extremity orthosis may improve gait—continue assessment process

Which AFO Design and Components Are the Best Option?

- Does impaired strength hamper foot position in stance or swing?
- Does impaired proprioception hamper foot placement in stance or swing?
- Does hypertonicity/spasticity hamper foot position in stance or swing?

If no: consider adjustable articulating ankle joint (allows full DF and PF)
If yes: consider limiting or blocking ankle motion and continue assessment process

Is There More Than Minimal Impairment of Static and Dynamic Postural Control in Standing?

- Is there significant spasticity?
- Is proprioception significantly impaired?

If no: consider adjustable articulating ankle joint that blocks PF beyond neutral ankle position and continue assessment
If yes: consider solid-ankle AFO or adjustable articulating ankle that is fully locked (consider rocker bottom shoe)

- Is there also plantarflexion strength $\leq$MMT 4 in standing?
- Is there also excessive knee flexion and dorsiflexion during stance?
- Is there also excessive plantarflexion with knee hyperextension during stance?

If no: consider adjustable articulating ankle joint with PF stop, and continue assessment
If yes: consider adjustable articulating ankle joint with PF stop and limited DF excursion, and continue assessment

- Is there also dorsiflexion strength $\leq$4 in standing?

If no: consider adjustable articulating ankle with PF stop, limited DF excursion instance, no DF assist necessary
If yes: consider adjustable articulating ankle with PF stop, limited DF excursion, and DF assist for effective swing phase

DF, Dorsiflexion; *KAFO*, knee-ankle-foot orthosis; *MMT*, manual muscle testing; *PF*, plantarflexion.

a prefabricated or multiadjustable version would be helpful before finalizing the orthotic prescription, especially if it is unclear whether ambulation will eventually be possible. Certainly, most individuals with neuromuscular conditions that compromise their ability to walk benefit from a chance to experience what ambulation with an orthosis requires, given their individual constellation of impairments. Some may decide that using orthoses and an appropriate assistive device for functional ambulation throughout the day meets their mobility needs. Others may opt, because of the energy cost of walking with knee-ankle-foot orthoses or hip-knee-ankle-foot orthoses, to use a wheelchair for primary mobility and reserve the use of orthoses to exercise bouts aimed at building cardiovascular endurance. Some may decide that orthotic intervention will not meet their needs and pursue other avenues to address mobility and endurance issues. Once a decision is made and the orthosis or adaptive equipment has been procured, education and practice are key components to successful adoption and usage of the device. The patient and the family/caregiver need specific training for each device including don/doff, putting patient into or out of the device, visual inspection for proper fit, and wear/use schedules. Additionally, training must include the assessment of skin integrity after use. Following trail usage and time for practice with the device for a period of time, the rehabilitation team must assess the patient/family/caregiver satisfaction with the product. Education, time, and practice with the product are the best indicators of long-term usage with functional benefits.[242–245]

Summary

This chapter reviews several factors that influence the need for orthotics and adaptive equipment usage in the presence of neurological and neuromuscular disorders. The factors discussed include the functions and roles of structures and systems in both the CNS and the PNS; the impairments that are likely to occur when particular structures or systems are damaged by injury or disease process; abnormalities of tone and muscle performance; influence of impaired motor control on an individual's ability to move effectively and

efficiently (including ambulation); the likelihood of developing secondary musculoskeletal impairments; and some of the pharmacological and surgical options available to manage hypertonicity and correct deformity that may develop over time. Strategies to determine gait cycle dysfunction in an individual with various neuromotor impairments are explored, as well as the orthotic options that might best address those limitations that the individual faces. This chapter provides a strong foundation for physical therapy examination and considerations for orthotic/equipment prescription. Next, the reader should consider physical therapy interventions that follow orthotic acquisition. The following case examples provide an opportunity for readers to focus on wearing, using, and caring for the prescribed orthosis, including (1) strategies to enhance motor learning when a new ambulatory aid (orthosis and/or assistive device) is introduced, (2) practice using the device under various environmental conditions (surfaces, obstacles, people moving within the environment), and (3) the ability to use the orthosis and ambulatory assistive device during functional activities, beyond walking, at comfortable gait speed.

Case Example 10.1 **A Young Child With Spastic Diplegic Cerebral Palsy**

T.H. is a 4-year-old child who was born prematurely at 32 weeks' gestation and was diagnosed with spastic diplegic cerebral palsy (CP) at 10 months of age. She is being evaluated for potential botulinum A injection as a strategy to manage significant extensor hypertonicity that is increasingly limiting her ability to ambulate as she grows. At present she uses bilateral articulating ankle-foot orthoses with a plantarflexion stop and a posterior rolling walker for locomotion at home and at preschool. Her articulating orthoses allow her to move into some dorsiflexion as she transitions to and from the floor during play. She has difficulty pushing to stand from half-kneel secondary to poor force production of hip and knee extensors. Muscle endurance is impaired, contributing to a crouch gait position, especially as she tires after a full day of activity. She falls frequently when she tries to run. She has been monitored in a CP clinic at the regional children's hospital; the team is concerned that she is developing rotational deformity of the lower extremities, as well as plantarflexion contracture and forefoot deformity due to her longstanding hypertonicity.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- In which subphases of the gait cycle is function or safety compromised when T.H. ambulates without her orthoses?
- In what way does T.H.'s hypertonicity contribute to her difficulty with floor mobility and ambulation?
- In what ways does T.H.'s inadequate muscle performance contribute to her difficulty with floor mobility and ambulation? What are the most likely dimensions of muscle performance that are impaired, given her diagnosis of spastic diplegia?
- Are there primary or secondary musculoskeletal impairments that are influencing her function and safety during ambulation? How do her age and future growth influence her risk for developing secondary impairments?
- Given her constellation of impairments, how can ambulation become more efficient and effective?
- What orthotic options (design, components) are available to address T.H.'s impairment of locomotion and related functional limitations? What are the pros and cons of each?
- What alternative or concurrent medical (surgical/pharmacological) interventions might assist improvement in safety and function for T.H.?
- What additional rehabilitation interventions might assist improvement in function and safety for T.H.?
- How do you anticipate T.H.'s orthotic needs might change as she develops and grows?
- What outcome measures are appropriate to assess efficacy of orthotic, therapeutic, pharmacological, or surgical intervention for T.H.?

Case Example 10.2 **A Child With Spastic Quadriplegic Cerebral Palsy**

J.T. is an 11-year-old boy with significant spastic quadriplegic cerebral palsy (CP) who is in the midst of a preadolescent growth spurt. He currently uses a custom seating system in a wheelchair for assisted mobility at school and in the community. At home he divides his time between an adaptive seating system and using a ceiling-mounted tracking system for assisted standing and mobility. J.T.'s mom reports that it is becoming increasingly difficult to transfer him in and out of the chair and help him with self-care activities because of upper extremity flexor tightness, increasing hip and knee flexion contractures, plantarflexion tightness, and his growing size.

In addition, when supine, J.T.'s resting position is becoming more obviously "windswept," with excessive right hip external rotation and excessive left hip internal rotation, causing a pelvic obliquity and rotation in his spine. He receives physical therapy at school several times each week to help him with functional abilities in the classroom and around school, with additional outpatient visits focusing on improving postural control and muscle performance. Both of his therapists are becoming concerned about his increasing limitation in range of motion (ROM), as well as the risk for increasing hip rotational deformity and spinal deformity as he grows. His outpatient therapist accompanies J.T. and his mother to the CP orthotics clinic at the regional children's medical center to explore the possibility of functional bracing or dynamic orthoses, or both, to manage the musculoskeletal complications that are developing because of his spasticity. They also have questions about surgical and pharmacological intervention.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- In what way does J.T.'s hypertonicity contribute to his difficulty with mobility/locomotion and other functional activities?
- In what ways does J.T.'s impaired muscle performance contribute to his difficulty with functional activities?
- In what ways does J.T.'s impaired postural control contribute to his difficulty with locomotion/ambulation? What are the

Continued on following page

Case Example 10.2 A Child With Spastic Quadriplegic Cerebral Palsy (Continued)

most likely dimensions of his impairment in postural control, given his diagnosis of spastic quadriplegic CP?
- Are any primary or secondary musculoskeletal impairments influencing J.T.'s function and safety during mobility and transfer tasks?
- Given his constellation of impairments, what compensatory strategies is J.T. likely to use to accomplish his functional tasks at school and at home?
- Which of J.T.'s anticipated or observed impairments are remediable? Which will require accommodation?
- What orthotic options (design, components) are available to address J.T.'s impairments and functional limitations? What are the pros and cons of each?
- What adaptive equipment options are available to address J.T.'s impairments and functional limitations? What are the pros and cons of each?
- Given the pelvic obliquity and spinal rotation, what secondary musculoskeletal complications need to be monitored as J.T. grows? How might these concerns be addressed by seating or orthoses?
- What alternative or concurrent medical (surgical/pharmacological) interventions might assist improvement in safety and function for J.T.?
- What additional rehabilitation interventions might assist improvement in function and safety for J.T.?
- How do you anticipate J.T.'s orthotic and equipment needs might change as he develops and grows?
- What outcome measures are appropriate to assess efficacy of orthotic, equipment, therapeutic, pharmacological, or surgical intervention for J.T.?

Case Example 10.3 A Young Adult With Acquired Brain Injury and Decerebrate Pattern Hypertonicity

P.G. is a 17-year-old girl who sustained significant closed-head injury in a motor vehicle accident 3 weeks ago. She was admitted to the brain injury unit at the regional rehabilitation hospital earlier this week. Now functioning at a Rancho Los Amigos Cognitive Level 5 (confused and inappropriate), P.G. exhibits significant decorticate posturing whenever she attempts to move volitionally (right greater than left). She has marked limitations in passive range of motion (ROM) at the elbow and wrist, as well as equinovarus at the ankle, both of which are limiting her ability to stand and effectively propel her wheelchair. While sitting, she falls when she tries to throw a ball to her therapist. Her gait is characterized by large range ballistic extensor thrust throughout stance, which impedes forward progression. She is most focused and responsive to intervention when involved in ambulation-oriented activities. Currently, her hypertonicity is being managed with oral baclofen (Lioresal). However, her therapists are concerned that contracture formation continues. During rehabilitation rounds, the physiatrist, neurologists, and therapists agree that a trial of serial casting should be added to her regimen to enhance her rehabilitation.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- In which subphases of the gait cycle is function or safety compromised when G.P. attempts to ambulate?
- In what way does G.P.'s hypertonicity contribute to her difficulty with postural control and locomotion/ambulation?
- In what ways does G.P.'s impaired muscle performance contribute to her difficulty with postural control and locomotion/ambulation? What are the most likely dimensions of her impairment in muscle performance, given her diagnosis of acquired brain injury?
- Are any primary or secondary musculoskeletal impairments influencing her function and safety during ambulation? What do you think is likely to develop as she recovers from her head injury?
- Given her constellation of impairments, what compensatory strategies is G.P. likely to use to accomplish the task of locomotion?
- Which of G.P.'s anticipated or observed impairments are remediable? Which will require accommodation?
- What orthotic options (design, components) are available to address G.P.'s impairment of locomotion and related functional limitations? What are the pros and cons of each?
- What orthotic options (design, components) are available to address G.P.'s impairment of specific joints? What are the pros and cons of each?
- What alternative or concurrent medical (surgical/pharmacological) interventions might assist improvement in safety and function for G.P.?
- What additional rehabilitation interventions might assist improvement in function and safety for G.P.?
- How do you anticipate G.P.'s orthotic needs might change as she recovers over the next year?
- What outcome measures are appropriate to assess efficacy of orthotic, therapeutic, pharmacological, or surgical intervention for G.P.?

Case Example 10.4 Two Individuals With Recent Stroke

You work in the short-term rehabilitation unit associated with the regional tertiary care hospital in your area. This week two gentlemen recovering from stroke sustained 3 days ago were admitted to the unit for a short stay in preparation for discharge home. Both indicate that their primary goals at this time are to be able to walk functional distances within their homes, manage stairs to enter/leave the house, and get to bedrooms on the second floor. You anticipate that they will receive intensive rehabilitation services for 5–8 days, with home care for follow-up after discharge.

M.O., 73 years old with a history of hypertension, mild chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and an uncomplicated myocardial infarction 2 years ago, has been diagnosed with a lacunar infarct within the left posterior limb of internal capsule. On passive motion, he has been given modified Ashworth scores of 3 in his right upper extremity and 2 in his right lower

Case Example 10.4 **Two Individuals With Recent Stroke (Continued)**

extremity. When asked to bend his knee (when supine), he demonstrates difficulty initiating flexion, and when he finally begins to move, his ankle, knee, and hip move in a mass-flexion pattern; he is unable to isolate limb segments. When asked to slowly lower his leg to the bed, he "shoots" into a full lower extremity synergy pattern. He rises from sitting to standing with verbal and tactile cueing, somewhat asymmetrically, relying on his left extremities. Once upright, he can shift his center of mass (COM) to the midline, holding an effective upright posture, but feels unsteady when shifted beyond midline to the right. With encouragement and facilitation, he can shift weight toward his right in preparation for swing-limb advancement of the left lower extremity, and he is pleased to have taken a few steps, however short, in the parallel bars. Before his infarct, he was an avid golfer and enjoyed bowling. He is fearful that he will never be able to resume these activities.

E.B. is a 64-year-old recently retired car mechanic with an 8-year history of diabetes mellitus previously controlled by diet and oral medications who has required insulin since his stroke. Magnetic resonance imaging indicates probable occlusion in the right posteroinferior branch of the middle cerebral artery, with ischemia and resultant inflammation in the parietal lobe. Because E.B. has been afraid of hospitals for most of his life, he resisted seeking medical care as his symptoms began, arriving at the emergency department 12 hours after the onset of hemiplegia. He currently displays a heavy, hypotonic, somewhat edematous left upper extremity. He is unusually unconcerned about the fact that he has had a stroke and tells you that he should be able to function "well enough" when he returns home to his familiar environment. On examination, he demonstrates homonymous hemianopsia, especially of the lower left visual field, and impaired kinesthetic awareness of his left extremities. You observe that he appears to be unaware when his lower upper extremity slips off the tray table of his wheelchair and his fingers become entangled in the spokes of the wheel as he propels forward using his right leg. When assisted to standing in the parallel bars, he does not seem to be accurately aware of his upright position, requiring moderate assistance to keep him from falling to the left. When asked to try to walk forward a few paces, he repeatedly advances his right lower extremity, even when prompted to consider the position and activity of his lower left extremity.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- In what ways are the stroke-related impairments observed in these two gentlemen similar or different? How can you explain these differences?
- In what subphases of the gait cycle is function or safety compromised when each of these gentleman attempts to ambulate?
- In what way does each gentleman's abnormal tone contribute to his difficulty with postural control and locomotion/ambulation?
- In what ways does each gentleman's impaired muscle performance contribute to his difficulty with postural control and locomotion/ambulation? What are the most likely dimensions of each man's impairment in muscle performance, given his etiologic condition and location of stroke?
- Are any primary or secondary musculoskeletal impairments influencing each man's function and safety during ambulation? How does each man's age and concomitant medical conditions influence his risk for developing secondary impairments?
- Given each gentleman's constellation of impairments, what compensatory strategies are likely to be used to accomplish the task of locomotion in each man?
- Which of each gentleman's anticipated or observed impairments are remediable? Which will require accommodation?
- What orthotic options are available to address each gentleman's impairment of locomotion and related functional limitations? What are the pros and cons of each?
- What alternative or concurrent medical (surgical/pharmacological) interventions might help improve in safety and function for each individual?
- What additional rehabilitation interventions might help improve function and safety for M.O. and E.B.?
- How do you anticipate each gentleman's orthotic needs, which might change as he recovers from central nervous system damage?
- What outcome measures are appropriate to assess the efficacy of orthotic, therapeutic, pharmacological, or surgical intervention for each gentleman?

Case Example 10.5 **A Young Adult With Incomplete Spinal Cord Injury**

Z.C. is a 23-year-old man who sustained an incomplete C7 spinal cord injury 3 weeks ago when he lost control and crash-landed during a failed acrobatic stunt during a half-pipe snowboard competition at a local ski resort. After being stabilized on site, he was quickly airlifted to a regional spinal cord injury/trauma center. Methylprednisolone was administered within 1.5 hours of injury, and his cervical fractures were repaired by fusion (C5 through T1) the day after injury; he now wears a Miami J cervical orthosis. He was admitted to your rehabilitation center 5 days ago. He demonstrates no activity of triceps brachii bilaterally but reports dysesthesia in the C7 and C8 dermatomes and can point his index finger on the left. He is aware of lower limb position in space and can activate toe flexors and extensors, plantarflexors, knee extensors, and hip flexors and abductors at 2+/5 levels of strength. Deep tendon reflex at the Achilles heel is brisk bilaterally, whereas more proximal lower extremity reflexes are diminished. He demonstrates positive Babinski reflex bilaterally. Biceps and wrist extensor deep tendon reflexes, initially diminished, are now rated 2+; the triceps reflex, initially diminished, is now quite brisk. He requires moderate assistance of 1 to come to sitting from supine but can hold a static posture in sitting, demonstrating a limited sway envelope when attempting to shift his weight anteriorly, posteriorly, and mediolaterally. He requires moderate assistance of 1 to rise from seated in his wheelchair to a standing position in the parallel bars. He is determined to "walk" out of the facility on discharge, which is anticipated after 3 more weeks of rehabilitation.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given Z.C.'s history and present point in recovery from spinal cord injury, what is the anticipated prognosis concerning his functional performance and ability to ambulate?

Continued on following page

Case Example 10.5 A Young Adult With Incomplete Spinal Cord Injury (Continued)

- In what subphases of the gait cycle is function or safety likely to be compromised when Z.C. attempts to ambulate?
- In what way does Z.C.'s abnormal tone contribute to his difficulty with postural control and locomotion/ambulation? What strategies would be useful in documenting/assessing the severity and type of his abnormal tone?
- In what ways does Z.C.'s impaired muscle performance contribute to his difficulty with postural control and locomotion/ambulation? What are the most likely dimensions of his impairment in muscle performance, given his etiologic condition and level of injury?
- Are any primary or secondary musculoskeletal impairments likely to influence Z.C.'s function and safety during ambulation? How do Z.C.'s age and concomitant medical conditions influence his risk for developing secondary impairments?
- Given Z.C.'s constellation of impairments, what compensatory strategies is he likely to use to accomplish the task of locomotion?
- Which of Z.C.'s anticipated or observed impairments are remediable? Which will require accommodation?
- What orthotic options (design, components) are available to address Z.C.'s difficulty with locomotion and related functional limitations? What are the pros and cons of each?
- What alternative or concurrent medical (surgical/pharmacological) interventions might assist improvement in safety and function?
- What additional rehabilitation interventions might assist improvement in function and safety for Z.C.?
- How do you anticipate Z.C.'s orthotic needs might change as he recovers from his spinal cord injury?
- What outcome measures are appropriate to assess the efficacy of orthotic, therapeutic, pharmacological, or surgical intervention for Z.C.?

References

1. American Physical Therapy Association. Guide to Physical Therapist Practice 3.0. Alexandria, Va: American Physical Therapy Association. http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org.
2. Towards a Common Language for Functioning, Disability and Health. *ICF The International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health. WHO/EIP/GPE/CAS/01.* Geneva: World Health Organization; 2002.
3. Sullivan KJ. Role of the physical therapist in neurologic differential diagnosis: A reality in neurologic physical therapist practice. *Journal of Neurologic Physical Therapy.* 2007;31(4):236–237. https://search.proquest.com/docview/213738665?accountid=41004.
4. Lewis SL. An approach to neurological symptoms. In: Weiner WJ, Goetz CG, Shin RK, Lewis SL, eds. *Neurology for the Non-Neurologist.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010:20–42.
5. Kass JS, Mizrahi EM. *Neurology Secrets.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2017.
6. Biller J, Grueer G, Brazis PW. *DeMyer's The Neurological Examination: A Programmed Text.* 6th ed. New York: McGraw Hill; 2010.
7. Yamad T, Meng E. *Practical guide for clinical neurophysiologic testing.* Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2011.
8. Schaefer P, Loevner L, Sanelli P. *Neuroimaging: the essentials.* Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer; 2015.
9. American Physical Therapy Association. *What are tests and measures? Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org.
10. Umphred DA, Lazarro RT, Roller M, Burton GU. Differential diagnosis phase 2: examination and evaluation of functional movement activities, body functions and structures, and participation. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:179–190.
11. Hahn, Earle PhD, APRN, GCNS-BC,GNP-BC, CD Joan. Minimizing health risks among older adults with intellectual and/or developmental disabilities: Clinical considerations to promote quality of life. *J Gerontol Nurs.* 2012;38(6):11–17.
12. Hutchings BL. *Factors influencing functional ability among community-dwelling adults aging with developmental disabilities.* New Brunswick: Rutgers The State University of New Jersey; 2011.
13. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Physiology of motor control. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:44–79.
14. Mosconi T, Graham V, Neiberg M. Cerebral cortex. In: Mosconi T, Graham V, eds. *Neuroscience for rehabilitation.* New York: McGraw-Hill; 2017:211–259.
15. Mang CS, Campbell KL, Ross CJD, Boyd LA. Promoting neuroplasticity for motor rehabilitation after stroke: considering the effects on aerobic exercise and genetic variation on brain-derived neurotrophic factor. *Phys Ther.* 2013;93(12):1707–1716.
16. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Physiological basis of motor learning and recovery of function. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:80–105.
17. Suri R, Rodriguez-Porcel F, Espay A, et al. Post-stroke Movement Disorders: The Clinical, Neuroanatomic, and Demographic Portrait of 284 Published Cases. *Journal Of Stroke And Cerebrovascular Diseases: The Official Journal Of National Stroke Association [serial online] May.* 2018;21.
18. Ryerson SD. Movement dysfunction of hemiplegia. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013: 711–752.
19. Mosconi T, Graham V, Nuclei Basal, Mosconi T, Graham V. *Neuroscience for rehabilitation.* New York: McGraw-Hill; 2017:175–189.
20. Gravenhorst RM, Walter CB. Cognitive mechanisms of visuomotor transformation in movement imitation: Examining predictions based on models of apraxia and motor control. *Brain Cogn.* 2009;71 (2):118–128.
21. Galbreath AD, Goldstein LB. Dysnomia, ataxia, choreoathetosis, sensory impairment, and gait imbalance after lentiform nucleus stroke. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis.* 2009;18(6):494–496.
22. Hemiballismus Grandas F. *Handbook Clin Neurol.* 2011;100:249–260.
23. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, Hall WC, LaMantia AS, Mooney RD, Platt ML, White LE. Modulation of movement by the basal ganglia. In: Neuroscience. 6th ed. Sinauer Associates, Inc: Sunderland; 2017.
24. Haber SN, Calzavara R. The cortico-basal ganglia integrative network: the role of the thalamus. *Brain Res Bull.* 2009;78(2/3):69–74.
25. Mosconi T, Graham V. The Spinal Cord. In: Mosconi T, Graham V, eds. *Neuroscience for rehabilitation.* New York: McGraw-Hill; 2017:65–94.
26. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, Hall WC, LaMantia AS, Mooney RD, Platt ML, White LE. *Upper motor neuron control of the brainstem and spinal cord. In: Neuroscience.* 6th ed. Sinauer Associates, Inc: Sunderland; 2017.
27. Shinoda Y, Sugiuchi Y, Izawa Y, et al. Long descending motor tract axons and their control of neck and axial muscles. *Prog Brain Res.* 2006;151:527–563.
28. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, Hall WC, LaMantia AS, Mooney RD, Platt ML, White LE. *Modulation of movement by the cerebellum. In: Neuroscience.* 6th ed Sinauer Associates, Inc: Sunderland; 2017.
29. Mosconi T, Graham V. Cerebellum. In. In: Mosconi T, Graham V, eds. *Neuroscience for rehabilitation.* New York: McGraw-Hill; 2017:157–174.

30. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, Hall WC, LaMantia AS, Mooney RD, Platt ML, White LE. The somatic sensory system: touch and proprioception. In: Neuroscience. 6th ed. Sinauer Associates, Inc: Sunderland; 2017.
31. Van de Winckel A, Wenderoth N, Feys H, et al. Frontoparietal involvement in passively guided shape and length discrimination: a comparison between subcortical stroke patients and healthy controls. *Experimental Brain Research [serial online].* July 2012;220 (2):179–189.
32. Karageorgiou E. Neglect and extinction in kinesthesia and thesesthesia: understanding proprioceptive inattention. *Neurocase [serial online].* 2016;22(2):145–153.
33. Luvizutto G, Rizzati G, Bazan R, et al. Treatment of unilateral spatial neglect after stroke using transcranial direct current stimulation (ELETRON trial): study protocol for a randomized controlled trial. *Trials [serial online].* October 3, 2016;17(1):479.
34. Zoltan B. *Vision, Perceptions and Cognition: A Manual for the Evaluation and Treatment of the Adult with Acquired Brain Injury.* 4th ed. Slack Inc: Thorofare, NJ; 2007.
35. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, Hall WC, LaMantia AS, Mooney RD, Platt ML, White LE. The Vision: The eye. In: Neuroscience. 6th ed Sinauer Associates, Inc: Sunderland; 2017.
36. Chaikin LR. Disorders of vision and visual perceptual dysfunction. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 201:863-894.
37. Schwartz SH. *Visual Perception: A Clinical Orientation.* New York: McGraw Hill; 2010.
38. Isableu B, Ohlmann T, Cremieux J, et al. Individual differences in the ability to identify, select and use appropriate frames of reference for perceptuo-motor control. *Neuroscience.* 2010;169(3):1199–1215.
39. Medendorp WP. Spatial constancy mechanisms in motor control. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci.* 2011;366(1564):476–491.
40. Scheiman M. *Understanding and Managing Vision Deficits: A Guide for Occupational Therapists.* 3rd ed. Slack Inc: Thorofare, NJ; 2011.
41. Anderson A, Jacobs R, Anerson P, eds. *Executive Functions and the Frontal Lobe: A Lifespan Perspective.* New York: Taylor & Francis; 2010.
42. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, Hall WC, LaMantia AS, White LE. Association cortex and cognition. In: *Neuroscience.* 5th ed Sunderland: Sinauer Associates, Inc; 2012:587–606.
43. Sliver JM, McAllister TW, Yudofsky SC, eds. *Textbook of Traumatic Brain Injury.* 2nd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing; 2011.
44. Winkler PA. Traumatic brain injury. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:753–790.
45. Rudy JW. *The Neurobiology of Learning and Memory.* 2nd ed. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates inc.; 2013
46. Umphred DA. The limbic system: influence over motor control and learning. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:99–140.
47. Cunningham WA, Van Bavel JJ, Johnsen IR. Affective flexibility: evaluative processing goals shape amygdala activity. *Psychol Sci.* 2008;19 (2):152–160.
48. Reeve JM. *Understanding Motivation and Emotion.* 5th ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons; 2009.
49. Gentsch A, Weber A, Synofzik M, Vosgerau G, Schütz-Bosbach S. Towards a common framework of grounded action cognition: Relating motor control, perception and cognition. *Cognition [serial online].* 146:81–89.
50. Kiernan JA. Reticular formation. In: Kiernan JA, ed. *Barr's The Human Nervous System: An Anatomical Viewpoint.* 9th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:141–156.
51. Lin JS, Anaclet S, Sergeeva O, et al. The waking brain: an update. *Cell Mol Life Sci.* 2011;68(15):2499–2512.
52. Fernández-Gil MA, Palacios-Bote R, Leo-Barahona M, et al. Anatomy of the brainstem: a gaze into the stem of life. *Semin Ultrasound CT MR.* 2010;31(3):196–219.
53. Laureys S, Tononi G. *The Neurology of Consciousness: Cognitive Neuroscience and Neuropathology.* London: Academic Press; 2009.
54. Liebmann O, Simon B. Evaluating the patient with altered level of consciousness. *Emerg Med.* 2006;38(2):35–36 39–42.
55. Poster JB, Saper CB, Schiff ND, et al. *Plum and Posner's Diagnosis of Stupor and Coma.* 4th ed. New York: Oxford; 2007.
56. Janig W. *Integrative Action of the Autonomic Nervous System: Neurobiology of Homeostasis.* New York: Cambridge University Press; 2008.
57. Hall JE. Behavioral and motivational mechanisms of the brain: the limbic system and the hypothalamus. In: *Guyton and Hall Textbook of Medical Physiology.* 12th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2011:711–720.
58. Bear MF, Connors BW, Paradiso MA. Chemical control of the brain and behavior. In: Bear MF, Connors BW, Paradiso MA, eds. *Neuroscience: Exploring the Brain.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2006:481–508.
59. Gescheider GA, Wright JH, Verrillo RT. *Information Processing Channels in the Tactile Sensory System.* New York: Psychology Press/Taylor & Francis Group; 2009.
60. Purves D, Augustine GJ, Fitzpatrick D, Hall WC, LaMantia AS, Mooney RD, Platt ML, White LE. *Lower motor neurons circuits and control. In: Neuroscience.* 6th ed. Sinauer Associates, Inc: Sunderland; 2017.
61. Schmidt RA, Lee TD. Central contributions to motor control. In: Schmidt R, Lee T, Winstein C, Wulf G, Zelaznik H, eds. *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2018.
62. Neiberg M, Graham V, Mosconi T. The brainstem, cranial nerves, and visual pathways. In: Mosconi T, Graham V, eds. *Neuroscience for rehabilitation.* New York: McGraw-Hill; 2017:95–156.
63. Keynes RD, Aidley DJ, Huang CL. *Nerve and Muscle.* 4th ed. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press; 2011.
64. Hughes R. Peripheral nerve diseases: the bare essentials. *Practical Neurol.* 2008;8(6):396–405.
65. Cohen JA, Mowchun J, Grudem J. *Peripheral Nerve and Muscle Diseases (What Do I Do Now?).* New York: Oxford University Press; 2009.
66. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. A conceptual framework for clinical practice. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:135–149.
67. Takakusaki K. Forebrain control of locomotor behaviors. *Brain Res Rev.* 2008;57(1):192–198.
68. Fort P, Bassetti CL, Luppi PH. Alternating vigilance states: new insights regarding neuronal networks and mechanisms. *Eur J Neurosci.* 2009;29(9):1741–1753.
69. Schmidt RA, Lee TD. Principles of speed and accuracy. In: Schmidt R, Lee T, Winstein C, Wulf G, Zelaznik H, eds. *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis.* 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2018.
70. Gardiner PF. *Advanced Neuromuscular Exercise Physiology.* Champaign: Ill: Human Kinetics; 2011.
71. Paterson DH, Jones GR, Rice CL. Ageing and physical activity: evidence to develop exercise recommendations for older adults. *Appl Physiol Nutr Metab.* 2007;32(2E):S69–S108.
72. Marcus RL, Westlen-Boyer K, LaStayo P. Impaired muscle performance. In: Giccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy.* 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2012:263–271.
73. Hurley BF, Hanson ED, Sheaff AK. Strength training as a countermeasure to aging muscle and chronic disease. *Sports Med.* 2011;41 (4):289–306.
74. Hvid L, Aagaard P, Justesen L, et al. Effects of aging on muscle mechanical function and muscle fiber morphology during short-term immobilization and subsequent retraining. *J Appl Physiol.* 2010;109 (6):1628–1634.
75. Nielsen JB, Crone C, Hultborn H. The spinal pathophysiology of spasticity—from a basic science point of view. *Acta Physiol (Oxf).* 2007;189(2):171–180.
76. Ryu JS, Lee JW, Lee SI, et al. Factors predictive of spasticity and their effects on motor recovery and functional outcomes in stroke patients. *Top Stroke Rehabil.* 2010;17(5):380–388.
77. Wu YN, Ren Y, Goldsmith A, et al. Characterization of spasticity in cerebral palsy: dependence of catch angle on velocity. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2010;52(6):563–569.
78. Hsieh JT, Wolfe DL, Connolly S. Spasticity after spinal cord injury: an evidence-based review of current interventions. *Top Spinal Cord Injury Rehabil.* 2007;13(1):81–97.
79. Sosnoff JJ, Shin S, Motl RW. Multiple sclerosis and postural control: the role of spasticity. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;91(1):93–99.
80. Brashear A, Elovic E, eds. *Spasticity: Diagnosis and Management.* New York: Demos Medical; 2011.
81. Sheean G, McGuire JR. Spastic hypertonia and movement disorders: pathophysiology, clinical presentation, and quantification. *PMR.* 2009;1(9):827–833.

82. Dietz V, Sinkjaer T. Spastic movement disorder: impaired reflex function and altered muscle mechanics. *Lancet Neurol.* 2007;6 (8):725–733.
83. Harvey L, Katalinic O, Herbert R, Moseley A, Lannin N, Schurr K. Stretch for the treatment and prevention of contracture: an abridged republication of a Cochrane Systematic Review. *Journal Of Physiotherapy (Elsevier) [serial online].* April 2017;63(2):67–75.
84. Wright M, Wallman L. Cerebral Palsy. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* 4th ed. St Louis: Elsevier Saunders; 2012:577–627.
85. Borges CA, Castao KC, Souto PA, et al. Effect of resisted exercise on muscular strength, spasticity and functionality in chronic hemiparetic subjects: a systematic review. *J Appl Res.* 2009;9 (4):147–158.
86. Dorsch S, Ada L, Alloggia D. Progressive resistance training increases strength after stroke but this may not carry over to activity: a systematic review. *Journal Of Physiotherapy (Elsevier) [serial online].* April 2018;64(2):84–90.
87. Coroian F, Jourdan C, Laffont I, et al. Upper Limb Isokinetic Strengthening Versus Passive Mobilization in Patients With Chronic Stroke: A Randomized Controlled Trial. *Archives Of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation [serial online].* February 2018;99(2):321–328.
88. Ahlskog JE. *Parkinson's Disease: Treatment Guide for Physicians.* New York: Oxford University Press; 2009.
89. Ransmayr G. Physical, occupational, speech and swallowing therapies and physical exercise in Parkinson's disease. *J Neural Transm.* 2011;118(5):773–781.
90. Hypes B. *Heads Up on Hypotonia: Understanding Complexities of Hypotonia and Strategies for Treatment.* Therapeutic Services Inc: Brooklyn, NY; 2008.
91. McEwen IR, Meiser MJ, Hansen LH. Children with motor and intellectual disabilities. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* 4th ed. St Louis: Elsevier Saunders; 2012:539–576.
92. Stephens BE, Liu J, Lester B. Neurobehavioral assessment predicts motor outcome in preterm infants. *J Pediatr.* 2010;156(3):366–371.
93. Deon LL, Gaebler-Spira D. Assessment and treatment of movement disorders in children with cerebral palsy. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 2010;41(4):507–517.
94. Rigoldi C, Galli M, Mainardi L, et al. Postural control in children, teenagers and adults with Down syndrome. *Res Dev Disabil.* 2011;32 (1):170–175.
95. Goldstein S, Reynolds CR. *Handbook of Neurodevelopmental and Genetic Disorders in Children.* 2nd ed. New York: Guilford Press; 2011.
96. Wilson R, Enticott P, Rinehart N. Motor development and delay: advances in assessment of motor skills in autism spectrum disorders. *Current Opinion In Neurology [serial online].* April 2018;31(2):134–139.
97. Darrah J, O'Donnell M, Jin X, et al. Designing a Clinical Framework to Guide Gross Motor Intervention Decisions for Infants and Young Children With Hypotonia. *Infants & Young Children: An Interdisciplinary Journal Of Early Childhood Intervention [serial online].* July 2013;26 (3):225–234.
98. Taylor M, Wrenn P, O'Donnell A, O'Donnell A. Presentation of neurogenic shock within the emergency department. *Emergency Medicine Journal [serial online].* March 2017;34(3):157–162.
99. Wissel J, Schelosky LE, Scott J, et al. Early development of spasticity following stroke: a prospective, observational trial. *J Neurol.* 2010;257(7):1067–1072.
100. Mallek J, Inaba K, Demetriades D, et al. The incidence of neurogenic shock after spinal cord injury in patients admitted to a high-volume level I trauma center. *American Surgeon [serial online].* May 2012;78 (5):623–626.
101. Young PA, Yound PH, Tolbert DL. *Lower motor neurons; flaccid paralysis. Clinical Neuroscience.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/ Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 200847–64.
102. Krosschell KJ, Pesavento MJ. Congenital spinal cord injury. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 5th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2007:567–604.
103. Hinderer KA, Hinderer SR, Shurtleff DB. Myelodysplasia. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* 4th ed. St Louis: Elsevier Saunders; 2012:703–755.
104. Atrice MB, Morrison SA, McDowell SL, Ackerman PM, Foy TA, Tefertiller C. Traumatic spinal cord injury. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013 459-420.
105. Parry GJ, Steinberg MD. *Guillain-Barré Syndrome: From Diagnosis to Recovery.* St. Paul, MN: American Academy of Neurology Press; 2007.
106. Osterbauer PJ. Botulinum neurotoxin. In: Dobbs MR, ed. *Clinical Neurotoxicology: Syndromes, Substances, Environments.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 2009:421–426.
107. Singer HS, Jankovic J, Mink JW, Gilberts DL, eds. *Chorea, athetosis and ballism. In Movement Disorders in Childhood.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 2010:76–95.
108. Wright MJ, Wallman L. Cerebral palsy. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, eds. *Physical Therapy for Children.* 4th ed. St. Louis: Saunders; 2012:577–626.
109. Jensen MP, Molton IR. *Aging With a Disability.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 2010.
110. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Normal postural control. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/ Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:153–182.
111. Allison LK, Fuller K. Balance and vestibular disorders. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:653–710.
112. Takakusaki K, Okumura T. Neurobiological basis of controlling posture and locomotion. *Adv Robot.* 2008;22(15):1629–1663.
113. Attrey P, Mukesh. Stroke Stand Test- Reliability in Static Balance Assessment. *Indian Journal Of Physiotherapy & Occupational Therapy [serial online].* January 2017;11(1):130–135.
114. Pagnacco G, Oggero E, Carrick FR. Repeatability of posturographic measures of the MCTSIB static balance tests a preliminary investigation. *Biomed Sci Instrum.* 2008;44(1):41–46.
115. Santos MJ, Knekar N, Aruin AS. The role of anticipatory postural adjustments in compensatory control of posture: 1. Electromyographic analysis. *J Electromyogr Kinesiol.* 2010;20(3):388–397.
116. Santos MJ, Kanekar N, Aruin AS. The role of anticipatory postural adjustments in compensatory control of posture: 2. Biomechanical analysis. *J Electromyogr Kinesiol.* 2010;20(3):398–405.
117. Duncan PW, Studenski S, Chandler J, et al. Functional reach: a new clinical measure of balance. *J Gerontol.* 1990;45(6): M192–M197.
118. Newton RA. Validity of the multi-directional reach test: a practical measure for limits of stability in older adults. *J Gerontol.* 2001;56A (4):M248–M252.
119. Dewar R, Claus A, Tucker K, Ware R, Johnston L. Reproducibility of the Balance Evaluation Systems Test (BESTest) and the Mini-BESTest in school-aged children. *Gait & Posture[serial online].* June 2017;55:68–74.
120. Madhavan S, Bishnoi A. Comparison of the Mini-Balance Evaluations Systems Test with the Berg Balance Scale in relationship to walking speed and motor recovery post stroke. *Topics In Stroke Rehabilitation [serial online].* December 2017;24(8):579–584.
121. Wallén M, Sorjonen K, Löfgren N, Franzén E. Structural Validity of the Mini-Balance Evaluation Systems Test (Mini-BESTest) in People With Mild to Moderate Parkinson Disease. *Physical Therapy [serial online].* November 2016;96(11):1799–1806.
122. Dunsky A, Zeev A, Netz Y. Balance Performance Is Task Specific in Older Adults. *Biomed Research International [serial online].* September 5, 2017;1–7.
123. A,Woollacott MH, Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Abnormal postural control. In: *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:228–259.
124. Sosnoff JJ, Shin S, Motl RW. Multiple sclerosis and postural control: the role of spasticity. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;91(1):93–99.
125. Duarte N, Collange Grecco L, Franco R, Zanon N, Oliveira C. Correlation between Pediatric Balance Scale and Functional Test in Children with Cerebral Palsy. *Journal Of Physical Therapy Science [serial online].* June 2014;26(6):849–853.
126. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Normal reach, grasp and manipulation. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:465–489.
127. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Reach, grasp and manipulation: changes across the lifespan. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:490–516.
128. Stout JL. Gait: development and analysis. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RJ, eds. *Physical Therapy for Children.* 4th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2012.

129. Corrigan R, McBurney H. Community ambulation: environmental impacts and assessment inadequacies. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2008;30 (19):1411–1419.
130. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Abnormal mobility. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/ Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:376–406.
131. Schmidt RA, Lee TD. Coordination. In: Schmidt R, Lee T, Winstein C, Wulf G, Zelaznik H, eds. *Motor Control and Learning: A Behavioral Emphasis*. 6th ed. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2018.
132. Schmitz TJ. Examination of coordination. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2007:193–225.
133. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Aging and mobility. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/ Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:360–375.
134. Richards CL, Malouin F, Dumas F. Patterns of locomotor recovery after stroke. In: Stein J, Harvey RL, Macko RF, eds. *Stroke Recovery and Rehabilitation*. New York: Demos Medical; 2009:245–268.
135. Smits DW, Gorter JW, Ketelaar M, et al. Relationship between gross motor capacity and daily-life mobility in children with cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2010;52(3):60–66.
136. Duff SV, Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott M. Clinical management of patient with reach, grasp, and manipulation disorders. In: Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH, eds. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice*. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/ Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2017:544–587.
137. Winstein CJ, Wolf SL. Task-oriented training to promote upper extremity recovery. In: Stein J, Harvey RL, Macko RF, et al. *Stroke Recovery and Rehabilitation*. New York: Demos Medical; 2009:267–290.
138. Zackowski KM, Dromerick AW, Sahrman SA, et al. How do strength, sensation, spasticity, and joint individuation relate to the reaching deficits of people with chronic hemiparesis? *Brain.* 2004;127 (5):1035–1046.
139. Lynn AK, Turner M, Chambers HG. Surgical management of spasticity in persons with cerebral palsy. *Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;1 (9):834–838.
140. Miller EL, Murray L, Richards L, et al. Comprehensive overview of nursing and interdisciplinary rehabilitation care of the stroke patient: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Stroke.* 2010;41(10):2402–2448.
141. Stevenson VL, Playford ED. Rehabilitation and MS. *Int MS J.* 2007;14 (3):85–92.
142. Verza R, Carvalho ML, Battaglia MA, et al. An interdisciplinary approach to evaluating the need for assistive technology reduces equipment abandonment. *Mult Scler.* 2006;12(1):88–93.
143. Simon O, Yelnik AP. Managing spasticity with drugs. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med.* 2010;46(3):401–410.
144. Elbasiouny SM, Moroz D, Bakr MM, et al. Management of spasticity after spinal cord injury: current techniques and future directions. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair.* 2010;24(1):23–33.
145. Caty GD, Detrembleur C, Bleyenheuft C, et al. Effect of simultaneous botulinum toxin injections into several muscles on impairment, activity, participation, and quality of life among stroke patients presenting with a stiff knee gait. *Stroke.* 2008;39(10):2803–2808.
146. Damiano DL, Alter KE, Chambers H. New clinical and research trends in lower extremity management for ambulatory children with cerebral palsy. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2009;20(3):469–491.
147. Love SC, Novak I, Kentish M, et al. Botulinum toxin assessment, intervention and after-care for lower limb spasticity in children with cerebral palsy: international consensus statement. *Eur J Neurol.* 2010;17(suppl 2):9–37.
148. Johnson J, Jarrett L, Porter B, et al. Strategies and challenges in managing spasticity. In: Halper J, ed. *Advanced Concepts in Multiple Sclerosis Nursing Care*. 2nd ed. New York: Demos Medical Publishing; 2007:145–174.
149. Francisco GE, McGuire JR, Stein J, et al. Physiology and management of spasticity after stroke. In: Stein J, Harvey R, Macko E, et al. *Stroke Recovery & Rehabilitation*. New York: Demos Medical Publishing; 2009:413–436.
150. Ryan M. Drug therapies for the treatment of multiple sclerosis. *J Infus Nurs.* 2009;32(3):137–144.
151. Derwenskus J. Current disease-modifying treatment of multiple sclerosis. *Mt Sinai J Med.* 2011;78(2):161–175.
152. Ciccone CD. Antieplilectic drugs. In: *Ciccone CD. Pharmacology in rehabilitation*. 5th Ed Philadelphia: FA Davis Co; 2016:115–130.
153. Papavasiliou AS. Management of motor problems in cerebral palsy: a critical update for the clinician. *Eur J Paediatr Neurol.* 2009;13 (5):387–396.
154. Burke-Doe A, Smith TJ. Impact of drug therapy on patients receiving neurological rehabilitation. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:1085–1102.
155. Bollens B, Deltombe T, Detrembleur C, et al. Effects of selective tibial nerve neurotomy as a treatment for adults presenting with spastic equinovarus foot: a systematic review. *J Rehabil Med.* 2011;43 (4):277–282.
156. Palacio A, Milliez PY, Le Jean T, et al. Direct neurectomy of the motor branches of the tibial nerve in hemiplegic adults: an assessment with a mean follow-up period of 11 years. *Ann Phys Rehabil Med.* 2010;53 (6/7):417–433.
157. Maarrawi J, Mertens P, Luaute J, et al. Long-term functional results of selective peripheral neurotomy for the treatment of spastic upper limb: prospective study in 31 patients. *J Neurosurg.* 2006;104 (2):215–225.
158. Sindou MP, Simon F, Mertens P, et al. Selective peripheral neurotomy (SPN) for spasticity in childhood. *Child Nerv Syst.* 2007;23(9):957–970.
159. Fitoussi F, Ilharreborde B, Presedo A, et al. Shoulder external rotator selective neurotomy in cerebral palsy: anatomical study and preliminary clinical results. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2010;19(1):71–76.
160. van Schie PE, Schothorst M, Dallmeijer AJ, et al. Short- and long-term effects of selective dorsal rhizotomy on gross motor function in ambulatory children with spastic diplegia. *J Neurosurg Pediatr.* 2011;7 (5):557–562.
161. Tedroff K, Lowing K, Jacobson DN, et al. Does loss of spasticity matter? A 10-year follow-up after selective dorsal rhizotomy in cerebral palsy. *Dev Med Child Neurol.* 2011;53(8):724–729.
162. Langerak NG, Hillier SL, Verkoeijen PP, et al. Level of activity and participation in adults with spastic diplegia 17-26 years after selective dorsal rhizotomy. *J Rehabil Med.* 2011;43(4):330–337.
163. Dvorak EM, Ketchum NC, McGuire JR. The underutilization of intrathecal baclofen in poststroke spasticity. *Top Stroke Rehabil.* 2011;18 (3):195–202.
164. Keenan E. Spasticity management, part 3: surgery and the use of intrathecal baclofen. *Br J Neurosci Nurs.* 2010;6(1):12–18.
165. Ward A, Hayden S, Dexter M, et al. Continuous intrathecal baclofen for children with spasticity and/or dystonia: goal attainment and complications associated with treatment. *J Pediatr Child Health.* 2009;45(12):720–726.
166. Rutz E, Baker R, Tirosh O, et al. Tibialis anterior tendon shortening in combination with Achilles tendon lengthening in spastic equinus in cerebral palsy. *Gait Posture.* 2011;33(2):152–157.
167. de Morais Filho MC, Kawamura CM, Kanaji PR, et al. The relation of triceps surae surgical lengthening and crouch gait in patients with cerebral palsy. *J Pediatr Orthop B.* 2010;19(3):226–230.
168. Bernthal NM, Gamradt SC, Kay RM, et al. Static and dynamic gait parameters before and after multilevel soft tissue surgery in ambulating children with cerebral palsy. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2010;30 (2):174–179.
169. Bouwhuis C, van der Heijden-Maessen H, Boldingh E, Bos C, Lankhorst G. Effectiveness of preventive and corrective surgical intervention on hip disorders in severe cerebral palsy: a systematic review. *Disability & Rehabilitation [serial online].* January 15, 2015;37 (2):97–105.
170. Dreher T, Thomason P, Graham H, et al. Long-term development of gait after multilevel surgery in children with cerebral palsy: a multicentre cohort study. *Developmental Medicine & Child Neurology [serial online].* January 2018;60(1):88–93.
171. Westwell M, Õunpuu S, DeLuca P. Effects of orthopedic intervention in adolescents and young adults with cerebral palsy. *Gait Posture.* 2009;30(2):201–206.
172. Õunpuu S, Solomito M, Bell K, Pierz K. Long-term outcomes of external femoral derotation osteotomies in children with cerebral palsy. *Gait & Posture [serial online].* July 2017;56:82–88.
173. Boyer E, Novacheck T, Schwartz M. Changes in hip abductor moment 3 or more years after femoral derotation osteotomy among individuals with cerebral palsy. *Developmental Medicine & Child Neurology [serial online].* September 2017;59(9):912–918.
174. Imrie MN, Yaszay B. Management of spinal deformity in cerebral palsy. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 2010;41(4):531–547.

175. Jones-Quaidoo S, Yang S, Arlet V. Surgical management of spinal deformities in cerebral palsy. *Journal Of Neurosurgery: Spine [serial online].* December 2010;13(6):672–685.
176. Keeler KA, Lenke LG, Good CR, et al. Spinal fusion for spastic neuromuscular scoliosis: is anterior releasing necessary when intraoperative halo-femoral traction is used? *Spine.* 2010;35(10):E427–E433.
177. Thomason P, Baker R, Dodd K, et al. Single-event multilevel surgery in children with spastic diplegia: a pilot randomized controlled trial. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2011;93(5):451–456.
178. Akerstedt A, Risto O, Odman P, et al. Evaluation of single event multilevel surgery and rehabilitation in children and youth with cerebral palsy—a 2-year follow-up study. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010;32 (7):530–539.
179. Heydemann J, Abousamra O, Franzone J, Kaufman B, Sees J. What's New in the Management of Foot Deformities in Children With Cerebral Palsy. *Journal Of Pediatric Orthopedics [serial online].* January 2018;38(1):e20–e24.
180. Kondratek M, McCollum H, Garland A. Long-term physical therapy management following a single-event multiple level surgery. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2010;22(4):427–438.
181. Capjon H, Bjork IT. Rehabilitation after multilevel surgery in ambulant spastic children with cerebral palsy: children and parent experiences. *Dev Neurorehabil.* 2010;13(3):182–191.
182. Miller F. Spinal deformity secondary to impaired neurologic control. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2007;80(suppl 1):143–147.
183. Balemans A, van Wely L, Becher J, Dallmeijer A. Longitudinal Relationship Among Physical Fitness, Walking-Related Physical Activity, and Fatigue in Children With Cerebral Palsy. *Physical Therapy [serial online].* July 2015;95(7):996–1005.
184. Zwinkels M, Takken T, Ruyten T, Visser-Meily A, Verschuren O. Body mass index and fitness in high-functioning children and adolescents with cerebral palsy: What happened over a decade? *Research In Developmental Disabilities [serial online].* December 2017;71:70–76.
185. Slaman J, Roebroeck M, van den Berg-Emons R, et al. Can a Lifestyle Intervention Improve Physical Fitness in Adolescents and Young Adults With Spastic Cerebral Palsy? A Randomized Controlled Trial. *Archives Of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation [serial online].* September 2014;95(9):1646–1655.
186. Rasmussen H, Pedersen N, Petkov Y, et al. The use of instrumented gait analysis for individually tailored interdisciplinary interventions in children with cerebral palsy: a randomised controlled trial protocol. *BMC Pediatrics [serial online].* December 7, 2015;15:1–13.
187. del Pilar Duque Orozco M, Abousamra O, Miller F, et al. Reliability and validity of Edinburgh visual gait score as an evaluation tool for children with cerebral palsy. *Gait & Posture [serial online].* September 2016;49:14–18.
188. de Vries G, Roy K, Chester V. Using three-dimensional gait data for foot/ankle orthopaedic surgery. *Open Orthop J.* 2009;3:89–95.
189. Truman H, Racette W. Orthotics: Evaluation, Intervention, and Prescription. In: Umphred DA, ed. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2013:1037–1052.
190. Westcott SL, Goulet C. Neuromuscular system: structures, functions, diagnoses, and evaluation. In: Effgen SK, ed. *Meeting the Physical Therapy Needs of Children.* Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2005:185–244.
191. American Physical Therapy Association. *Basics of Patient/Client Management: The Five Elements of Patient/Client Management. Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Alexandria VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org.
192. Valdes K, Naughton N, Algar L. Linking ICF components to outcome measures for orthotic intervention for CMC OA: A systematic review. *Journal Of Hand Therapy [serial online].* October 2016;29(4):396–404.
193. Masterson K. Exploring the World of Pediatric Adaptive Equipment. *Rehab Management: The Interdisciplinary Journal Of Rehabilitation [serial online].* April 2014;27(3):14–16.
194. Looper J, Benjamin D, Nolan M, Schumm L. What to measure when determining orthotic needs in children with Down syndrome: a pilot study. *Pediatric Physical Therapy [serial online] 2012 Winter.* 2012;24 (4):313–319.
195. Freeman J, Marsden J, Rapson R, Kent B. The clinical effectiveness and personal experience of supported standing for children with cerebral palsy: a comprehensive systematic review protocol. *JBI Database Of Systematic Reviews & Implementation Reports[serial online].* July 2014;12(7):101–118.
196. American Physical Therapy Association. *What Are Interventions? Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org.
197. Lowes LP, Sveda M, Gajdosik CG, Gajdosik RL. Musculoskeletal development and adaptation. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical therapy for children.* 4th ed. St Louis: Elseveir Saunders; 2012:175–204.
198. Malhotra S, Pandyan AD, Rosewilliam S, et al. Spasticity and contractures at the wrist after stroke: time course of development and their association with functional recovery of the upper limb. *Clin Rehabil.* 2011;25(2):184–191.
199. Sullivan KJ, Mulroy S, Kautz SA, et al. Walking recovery and rehabilitation after stroke. In: Stein J, Harvey RL, Macko RF, et al. *Stroke Recovery and Rehabilitation.* New York: Demos Medical; 2009:323–342.
200. Leung J, Harvey L, Moseley A, Whiteside B, Simpson M, Stroud K. Standing with electrical stimulation and splinting is no better than standing alone for management of ankle plantarflexion contractures in people with traumatic brain injury: a randomised trial. *Journal Of Physiotherapy (Elsevier) [serial online].* December 2014;60 (4):201–208.
201. Katalinic OM, Harvey LA, Herbert RD. Effectiveness of stretch for the treatment and prevention of contractures in people with neurological conditions: a systematic review. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(1):11–24.
202. Swanton R, Kinnear B. There is robust evidence that stretch interventions do not prevent or reverse joint contractures in people with neurological conditions. *Aust Occup Ther J.* 2011;58(2):134–135.
203. Dursun N, Gokbel T, Akarsu M, Dursun E. Randomized Controlled Trial on Effectiveness of Intermittent Serial Casting on Spastic Equinus Foot in Children with Cerebral Palsy After Botulinum Toxin-A Treatment. *American Journal Of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation [serial online].* April 2017;96(4):221–225.
204. Harvey LA, Glinsky JA, Katalinic OM, et al. Contracture management for people with spinal cord injuries. *NeuroRehabilitation.* 2011;28 (1):17–20.
205. Gao F, Ren Y, Roth EJ, et al. Effects of repeated ankle stretching on calf muscle–tendon and ankle biomechanical properties in stroke survivors. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2011;26(5):516–522.
206. Ryan S. An overview of systematic reviews of adaptive seating interventions for children with cerebral palsy: where do we go from here?? *Disability & Rehabilitation: Assistive Technology [serial online].* March 2012;7(2):104–111.
207. Kurne S, Gupta A. Impact of Long-term Use of Adaptive Seating Device on Children with Cerebral Palsy and their Families in Mumbai, India. *Disability, CBR & Inclusive Development[serial online].* September 2016;27(3):117–131.
208. Ryan S. Lessons learned from studying the functional impact of adaptive seating interventions for children with cerebral palsy. *Developmental Medicine & Child Neurology[serial online].* March 2, 2016;58:78–82.
209. Hahn ME, Sihemkins SL, Gardner JK, et al. A dynamic seating system for children with cerebral palsy. *J Musculoskel Res.* 2009;12 (1):21–30.
210. Ryan S, Campbell K, Rigby P, Fishbein-Germon B, Hubley D, Chan B. The impact of adaptive seating devices on the lives of young children with cerebral palsy and their families. *Archives Of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation [serial online].* January 2009;90(1):27–33.
211. Paleg GS, Smith B, Glickman LB. Systematic review and evidenced-based clinical recommendations for dosing of pediatric standing programs. *Ped Phys Ther.* 2013;25(3):232–247.
212. Dalén Y, Sääf M, Ringertz H, et al. Effects of standing on bone density and hip dislocation in children with severe cerebral palsy. *Adv Physiother.* 2010;12(4):187–193.
213. Farrell E, Naber E, Geigle P. Description of a multifaceted rehabilitation program including overground gait training for a child with cerebral palsy: a case report. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2010;26 (1):56–61.
214. Peredo DE, Davis BE, Norvell DC, et al. Medical equipment use in children with disabilities: a descriptive survey. *J Pediatr Rehabil Med.* 2010;3(4):259–267.
215. Hong CW. Assessment for and provision of positioning equipment for children with motor impairments. *Int Ther Rehabil.* 2005;12 (3):126–131.
216. McDonald R, Surtees R, Wirz S. The International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health provides a model for adaptive seating interventions for children with cerebral palsy. *British Journal Of Occupational Therapy [serial online].* July 2004;67(7):293–302.
217. Magasi S, Wong A, Miskovic A, Tulsky D, Heinemann A. Mobility Device Quality Affects Participation Outcomes for People With

Disabilities: A Structural Equation Modeling Analysis. *Archives Of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation [serial online].* January 2018;99 (1):1–8.
218. Weinstein M, Lloyd M, Finch K, Laszacs A. Underappreciated challenges to pediatric powered mobility - Ways to address them as illustrated by a case report. *Assistive Technology [serial online].* June 2018;30(2):74–76.
219. Canning B. Innovations in practice. Funding, ethics, and assistive technology: should medical necessity be the criterion by which wheeled mobility equipment is justified? *Topics In Stroke Rehabilitation [serial online] Summer.* 2005;12(3):77–81.
220. Gulley SP, Rasch EK, Chan L. The complex web of health: relationships among chronic conditions, disability, and health services. *Public Health Rep.* 2011;126(4):495–507.
221. O'Neil ME, Costigan TE, Gracely EJ, et al. Parents' perspectives on access to rehabilitation services for their children with special healthcare needs. *Pediatr Phys Ther.* 2009;21(3):254–260.
222. Effectiveness of intermittent serial casting on spastic wrist flexion deformity in children with cerebral palsy treated by botulinum toxin-A. *Developmental Medicine & Child Neurology [serial online]. 59:35.*
223. Jain S, Mathur M, Joshi JR, et al. Effect of serial casting in spastic cerebral palsy. *Indian J Pediatr.* 2008;75(10):997–1002.
224. McNee AE, Will E, Lin JP. The effect of serial casting on gait in children with cerebral palsy: preliminary results from a crossover trial. *Gait Posture.* 2007;25(3):463–468.
225. Romeiser L. Rehabilitation techniques to maximize spasticity management. *Top Stroke Rehabil.* 2011;18(3):203–211.
226. Marshall S, Teasell R, Bayona N. Motor impairment rehabilitation post acquired brain injury. *Brain Inj.* 2007;21(2):133–160.
227. Yaşar E, Tok F, Safaz I, et al. The efficacy of serial casting after botulinum toxin type A injection in improving equinovarus deformity in patients with chronic stroke. *Brain Inj.* 2010;24(5):736–739.
228. Canavese F, Botnari A, Dubousset J, et al. Serial elongation, derotation and flexion (EDF) casting under general anesthesia and neuromuscular blocking drugs improve outcome in patients with juvenile scoliosis: preliminary results. *European Spine Journal [serial online].* February 2016;25(2):487–494.
229. Izquierdo G. Multiple sclerosis symptoms and spasticity management. *new data Neurodegenerative Disease Management [serial online].* November 2, 2017;7:7–11.
230. Hughes C, Howard I. Spasticity management in multiple sclerosis. *Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation Clinics Of North America [serial online].* November 2013;24(4):593–604.
231. Karri J, Mas M, Francisco G, Sheng I. Practice patterns for spasticity management with phenol neurolysis. *Journal Of Rehabilitation Medicine (Stiftelsen Rehabiliteringsinformation)[serial online].* July 2017;49(6):482–488.
232. McGuire J. Intrathecal baclofen for the management of spasticity after a traumatic brain injury. *Brain Injury Professional [serial online].* June 2011;8(2):18–20.
233. Management of spasticity with botulinum toxin for patient with stroke – based on ICF framework. *Journal Of Rehabilitation Medicine (Stiftelsen Rehabiliteringsinformation) [serial online].* June 2, 2012;47.
234. Fatone S. Orthotic management in stroke. In: Stein J, Harvey R, Macko R, et al. *Stroke Recovery & Rehabilitation.* New York: Demos Medical Publishing; 2009:515–530.
235. Lannin NA, Ada L. Neurorehabilitation splinting: theory and principles of clinical use. *NeuroRehabilitation.* 2011;28(1):21–88.
236. Webster JB, Miknevich MA, Stevens P, et al. Lower extremity orthotic management in neurologic rehabilitation. *Crit Rev Phys Rehabil Med.* 2009;21(1):1–23.
237. Rehabilitation with Isocentric Reciprocating Gait Orthosis on Functional Ambulation in Patients with Spinal Cord Injury. *Journal Of Prosthetics & Orthotics (JPO) [serial online].* April 2017;29 (2):80–87.
238. Arazpour M, Gholami M, Bahramizadeh M, Sharifi G, Bani M. Influence of Reciprocating Link When Using an Isocentric Reciprocating Gait Orthosis (IRGO) on Walking in Patients with Spinal Cord Injury: A Pilot Study. *Topics In Spinal Cord Injury Rehabilitation [serial online] Summer2017.* 2017;23(3):256–262.
239. Malas BS. What variables influence the ability of an AFO to improve function and when are they indicated? *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2011;469(5):1308–1314.
240. Shipley JS, Shipley RW. Orthotic considerations for pediatric pathologies. *J Nurse Life Care Planning.* 2010;10(1):213–217.
241. Skalsky A, McDonald C. Prevention and management of limb contractures in neuromuscular diseases. *Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation Clinics Of North America [serial online].* August 2012;23 (3):675–687.
242. Swinnen E, Lefeber N, Kerckhofs E, et al. Male and female opinions about orthotic devices of the lower limb: A multicentre, observational study in patients with central neurological movement disorders. *Neurorehabilitation [serial online].* January 2018;42(1):121–130.
243. Swinnen E, Lafosse C, Van Nieuwenhoven J, Ilsbroukx S, Beckwée D, Kerckhofs E. Neurological patients and their lower limb orthotics: An observational pilot study about acceptance and satisfaction. *Prosthetics & Orthotics International (Sage Publications, Ltd.) [serial online].* February 2017;41(1):41–50.
244. Yasukawa A, Malas B, Martin P. Caregiver Satisfaction for Orthotic Management of a Severely Involved Child with Cerebral Palsy Seen at Age 7 Years and 19 Years. *Journal Of Prosthetics & Orthotics (JPO)[serial online].* April 2016;28(2):78–82.
245. Fisk J, DeMuth S, Fise T, et al. Suggested Guidelines for the Prescription of Orthotic Services, Device Delivery, Education, and Follow-up Care: A Multidisciplinary White Paper. *Military Medicine [serial online].* 181:11–17.
246. Moon Y, Sung J, An R, Hernandez M, Sosnoff J. Gait variability in people with neurological disorders: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Human Movement Science [serial online].* 47:197–208.
247. Böhm H, Matthias H, Braatz F, Döderlein L. Effect of floor reaction ankle–foot orthosis on crouch gait in patients with cerebral palsy: What can be expected? *Prosthetics & Orthotics International (Sage Publications, Ltd.)[serial online].* June 2018;42(3):245–253.
248. Samadian M, Arazpour M, Ahmadi Bani M, Pouyan A, Bahramizadeh M, Hutchins S. The influence of orthotic gait training with an isocentric reciprocating gait orthosis on the walking ability of paraplegic patients: a pilot study. *Spinal Cord [serial online].* October 2015;53(10):754–757.

11 Orthoses for Knee Dysfunction ☆

S. TYLER SHULTZ

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the various types and classifications of knee orthoses.
2. Appreciate normal knee function.
3. Identify common knee conditions for which bracing is a component of conservative intervention.
4. Compare and contrast the purposes, indications, and limitations of prophylactic, functional, and rehabilitative knee orthoses.
5. Apply current research evidence to clinical decision making with regard to knee bracing as an intervention, including biomechanical and functional implications.
6. Use evidence of effectiveness to select the most appropriate knee orthosis to a given patient scenario.
7. Provide clinical rationale for utilizing knee orthoses as an intervention for impairments at the tibiofemoral and patellofemoral joints.

Introduction

Knee orthoses are used as a common intervention in orthopedic and physical therapy practice, not only for the treatment of knee impairments, but also for injury prevention. The clinical goals of using knee orthoses include pain reduction, joint protection, functional or recreational improvement, and injury prevention. However, the effectiveness of bracing to meet these clinical goals by providing joint unloading, external stability, or patellofemoral tracking is not universally accepted by clinicians.[1]

Knee orthoses can be organized by their intended function: prophylactic, functional, and rehabilitative knee braces. Prophylactic knee braces are designed and used to protect athletes from sustaining debilitating injuries, usually ligamentous, without inhibiting overall knee function and mobility.[2] Prophylactic bracing continues to be used despite inconclusive evidence supporting brace ability to protect the user from injury.[2,3] Clinically, these braces tend to be used with individuals who are deemed to be at high risk for knee injury, based on their chosen sport and individual history of previous knee dysfunction. Functional knee orthoses (FKOs) attempt to provide external support and biomechanical stability to the joint. FKOs can be further categorized based on impairment or limitation in knee structure with which they are intended to help. FKOs that are designed for individuals who have ligamentous instability, for example, provide external support that would limit the same knee motion as the ligament. These braces can also serve a rehabilitative function, as seen with patients who have suffered anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) rupture and have undergone surgical repair. Furthermore, rehabilitative braces function to provide protection and progressive range of motion (ROM) to the joint (Fig. 11.1). Rehabilitative braces include unloading braces and patellofemoral braces. These braces are used to decrease joint load across the tibiofemoral and patellofemoral joints and reduce pain in the arthritic joint. Orthoses for patellofemoral disorders are rehabilitative braces that often attempt to correct patellar tracking (Fig. 11.2). Each of these different types of braces can be custom-designed for patients or prefabricated. This chapter will describe in further detail the design, function, effectiveness, and clinical decision making involved with the use of these knee orthoses.

In order for a clinician to select and prescribe the appropriate knee orthoses for a patient, a patient-centered approach must be used. The clinician needs not only to understand the purpose for bracing, but also to have an underlying mastery of normal knee structure and function. For example, the knee brace prescribed to an individual following a tear of the ACL would be different than the brace used to treat medial knee osteoarthritis (OA). The implications of a pathologic condition of the knee, as well as the functional goals of braces, will be presented. Indications for bracing in the management of patients with knee injury and dysfunction are also discussed. Clinical scenarios will be presented to assist in developing clinical decision-making regarding brace use in different patient presentations.

Anatomy of the Knee

The articulations at the tibiofemoral joint and the patellofemoral joint form the knee complex. An understanding of the anatomy and biomechanics of each respective joint is critical in knowing the potential stresses and implications of pathologic conditions of the knee that can occur at the knee complex.

☆The author extends appreciation to Anthony E. "Toby" Kinney and Ellen Wetherbee, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Fig. 11.1 Example of a common style of postoperative brace. Notice the longer areas of support to the thigh and calf areas. The sidebars are connected with a hinge that allows for limiting or progressing range of motion available at the joint. (Courtesy Breg. Retrieved from https://www.breg.com/wp-content/uploads/product_images/Post_Op.png.)

Fig. 11.2 Example of an open patella neoprene knee sleeve. (Courtesy of DonJoy)

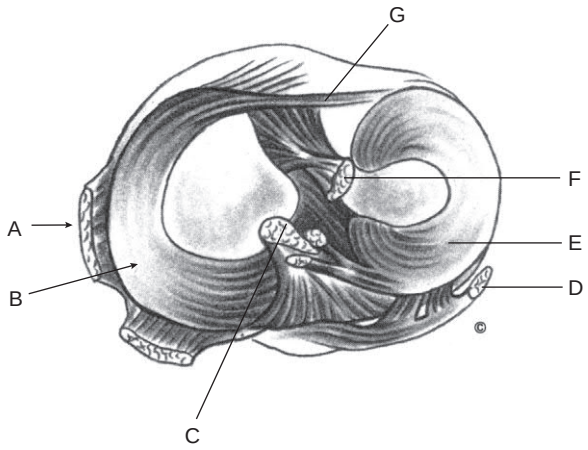


Fig. 11.3 In this view of the surface of the tibia, we can identify the medial collateral ligament *(A)*, the C-shaped medial meniscus on the large medial tibial plateau *(B)*, the posterior cruciate ligament with the accessory anterior and posterior meniscofemoral ligaments *(C)*, the tendon of the popliteus muscle *(D)*, the circular lateral meniscus on the smaller lateral tibial plateau *(E)*, the anterior cruciate ligament as it twists toward the inside of the lateral femoral condyle *(F)*, and the transverse ligament *(G)*. (From Greenfield BH. Rehabilitation of the Knee: A Problem Solving Approach. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1993.)

THE TIBIOFEMORAL JOINT

The knee joint is a hinge-like articulation between the medial and lateral condyles of the femur and the medial and lateral tibial plateau (Fig. 11.3). Because of the shape and asymmetry of the condyles, the instantaneous axis of knee flexion/extension motion changes through the arc of motion. As the knee moves from extension to flexion, the instant center pathway moves posteriorly.[4] In open chain movements (non–weight-bearing activities), the tibia rotates around the femoral condyles. In closed chain movements (weight-bearing activities), an anatomical locking mechanism is present in the final degrees of extension as the longer medial femoral condyle rotates medially on the articular surfaces of the tibia. Consequently, if the instant center of pathway changes, it will alter the optimal joint mechanics and therefore result in abnormal knee stressors. The alignment between an adducted femur and relatively upright tibia creates a vulnerability to valgus stress in many weight-bearing activities. The capsule that encases the knee joint is reinforced by the collagen-rich medial and lateral retinaculum. The medial and lateral menisci rest on the tibial plateau. They are fibrocartilaginous, nearly ring-shaped disks that are flexibly attached around the edges of the tibial plateau (see Fig. 11.3). These menisci increase the concavity of the tibial articular surface, enhancing congruency of articulation with the femoral condyles to facilitate normal gliding and distribute weight-bearing forces within the knee during gait and other loading activities.[5] The menisci also play an important role in nutrition and lubrication of the articular surfaces of the knee joint.

Stability to the tibiofemoral joint is provided by sets of ligaments. The medial (tibial) collateral ligament (MCL) and the lateral (fibular) collateral ligament (LCL) are extrinsic ligaments. The collateral ligaments counter valgus and varus forces that act on the knee. In addition, two intrinsic ligaments of the tibiofemoral joint, the ACL and the posterior cruciate ligaments (PCL) check translatory forces that displace the tibia on the femur. The location of attachments makes each of these ligaments most effective at particular points in the knee's normal arc of motion.[5] Additionally, contraction of the quadriceps and knee flexor muscle groups produce compressive forces that help stabilize the knee. Muscles of the hip and lower leg also make contributions to the mechanics of the femur and tibia, respectively, which impact the movements of the knee complex.

Medial Collateral Ligament

The MCL is a strong, flat membranous band that overlays the middle portion of the medial joint capsule (Fig. 11.4).

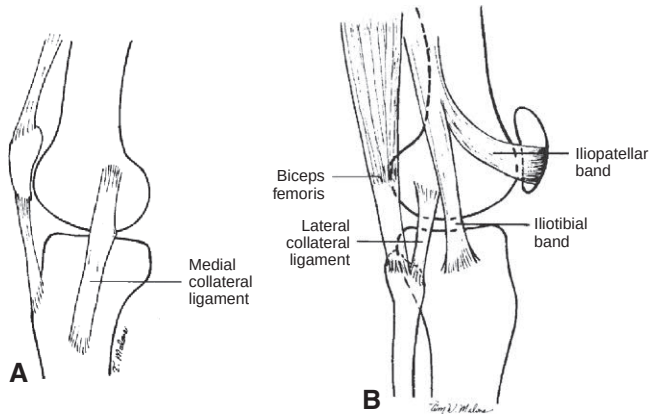


Fig. 11.4 (A) A medial view of the right knee showing structures that provide medial support to the right knee. (B) A lateral view of the right knee illustrating structures that give lateral support to the knee. (Reprinted with permission from Levangie PK, Norkin CC. The knee. In: *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2017.)

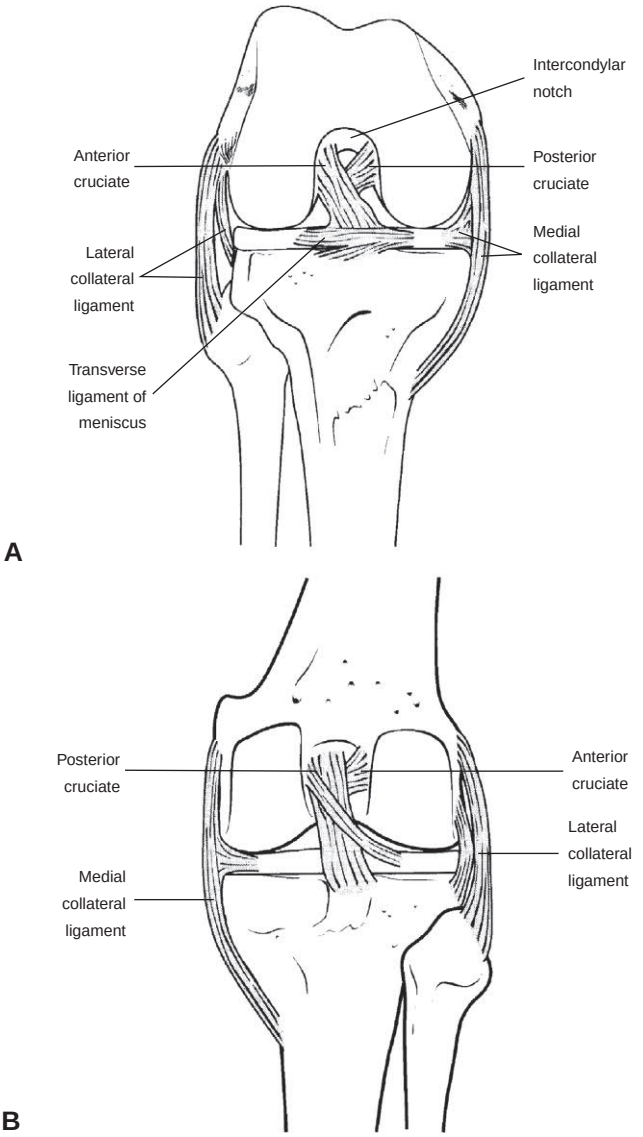


Fig. 11.5 (A) Anterior view of the tibiofemoral joint in 90 degrees of knee flexion showing the menisci and the ligamentous structures that stabilize the knee. (B) Posterior view of the knee in extension. (Reprinted with permission from Antich TJ. Orthoses for the knee; the tibiofemoral joint. In: Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME, eds. *Orthotics in Functional Rehabilitation of the Lower Limb*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1997.)

It is most effective in counteracting valgus stressors when the knee is slightly flexed to fully extended. Approximately 8 to 10 cm in length, it originates at the medial epicondyle of the femur and attaches to the medial surface of the tibial plateau. The MCL can be subdivided into a set of oblique posterior fibers and anterior parallel fibers.

A bundle of meniscotibial fibers, also known as the *posterior oblique ligament*, runs deep to the MCL, from the femur to the midperipheral margin of the medial meniscus and toward the tibia. These fibers connect the medial meniscus to the tibia and help form the semimembranosus corner of the medial knee. Additionally, the medial patellar retinacular fibers play a reinforcing role.[6]

Lateral Collateral Ligament and Iliotibial Band

The LCL resists varus stressors and lateral rotation of the tibia and is most effective when the knee is slightly flexed. The LCL runs from the lateral femoral condyle (the back part of the outer tuberosity of the femur) to the proximal lateral aspect of the fibular head (see Fig. 11.4). The tendon of the popliteus muscle and the external articular vessels and nerves pass beneath this ligament.

Another lateral structure that acts on the knee complex is the iliotibial band (ITB). The ITB is positioned slightly anterior to the LCL and is taut in all ranges of knee motion. Its lateral position allows it to stabilize against varus forces along with the LCL.

Anterior Cruciate Ligament

The ACL runs at an oblique angle between the articular surfaces of the knee joint and prevents forward shift and excessive medial rotation of the tibia as the knee moves toward extension (Fig. 11.5). The ACL attaches to the tibia in a fossa just anterior and lateral to the anterior tibial spine and to the femur in a fossa on the posteromedial surface of the lateral femoral condyle. The ACL's tibial attachment is somewhat wider and stronger than its femoral attachment. Some authors divide the fasciculi that make up the broad, somewhat flat ACL into two or three distinct bundles. The ligament's anteromedial band, with fibers running from the anteromedial tibia to the proximal femoral attachment, is most taut in flexion and relatively lax in extension. The posterolateral bulk (PLB), which begins at the posterolateral tibial attachment, is most taut in extension and relatively lax in flexion. An intermediate bundle of transitional fibers between the anteromedial band and PLB tends to tighten when the knee moves through the midranges of motion. This arrangement of fibers ensures tension in the ACL throughout the entire range of knee motion. The ACL is most vulnerable to injury when the femur rotates internally on the tibia when the knee is flexed and the foot is fixed on the ground during weight-bearing activities.[7]

Posterior Cruciate Ligament

The PCL restrains posterior displacement of the tibia in its articulation with the femur, especially as the knee moves

toward full extension.[5] The PCL is shorter and less oblique in orientation than the ACL; it is the strongest and most resistant ligament of the knee. PCL fibers run from a slight depression between articular surfaces on the posterior tibia to the posterolateral surface of the medial femoral condyle (see Figs. 11.3 and 11.5). Like the ACL, the PCL can be divided into anterior and posterior segments. The larger anterior medial band is most taut between 80 and 90 degrees of flexion and is relatively lax in extension. The smaller PLB travels somewhat obliquely across the joint, becoming taut as the knee moves into extension. The PCL plays a role in the locking mechanism of the knee as tension in the ligament produces lateral (external) rotation of the tibia on the femur in the final degrees of knee extension. The PCL may also assist the collateral ligaments when varus or valgus stressors are applied to the knee.[5]

Coursing along with fibers from the MCL is the meniscofemoral ligament, which stretches between the posterior horn of the lateral meniscus and the lateral surface of the medial femoral condyle. The anterior meniscofemoral band (ligament of Humphry) runs along the medial anterior surface of the PCL and may be up to one third its diameter. The posterior meniscofemoral band (ligament of Wrisberg) lies posterior to the PCL and may be as much as one half its diameter. The meniscofemoral ligaments pull the lateral meniscus forward during flexion of the weight-bearing knee to maintain as much articular congruency as possible with the lateral femoral condyle.

POSTEROLATERAL CORNER OF THE KNEE

The lateral meniscus is somewhat more mobile than the medial meniscus because of the anatomy of the posterolateral corner of the knee. The arcuate complex and posterolateral corner run from the styloid process of the fibula, joining the posterior oblique ligament on the posterior aspect of the femur and tibia. The arcuate ligament is firmly attached to the underlying popliteus muscle and tendon. The tendon of the popliteus muscle separates the deep joint capsule from the rim of the lateral meniscus.

PATELLOFEMORAL JOINT

The *patella*, a sesamoid bone embedded in the tendon of the quadriceps femoris, is an integral part of the extensor mechanism of the knee. The patella functions as an anatomical pulley, increasing the knee extension moment created by contraction of the quadriceps femoris by as much as 50%. It also guides the forces generated by the quadriceps femoris to the patellar ligament, protects deeper knee joint anatomy, protects the quadriceps tendon from frictional forces, and increases the compressive forces to which the extensor mechanisms can be subjected.[5]

Although the anterior surface of the patella is convex, the posterior surface has three distinct anatomical areas: a lateral, medial, and odd facet. The lateral and medial facets are separated by a vertical ridge. The odd facet articulates with the medial condyle at the end range of knee extension (Fig. 11.6). The posterior patellar surface is covered with hyaline articular cartilage, except for the distal apex, which is roughened for the attachment of the patellar tendon. Pressure between the patella and trochlear groove of the femur increases substantially as the knee flexes. During knee

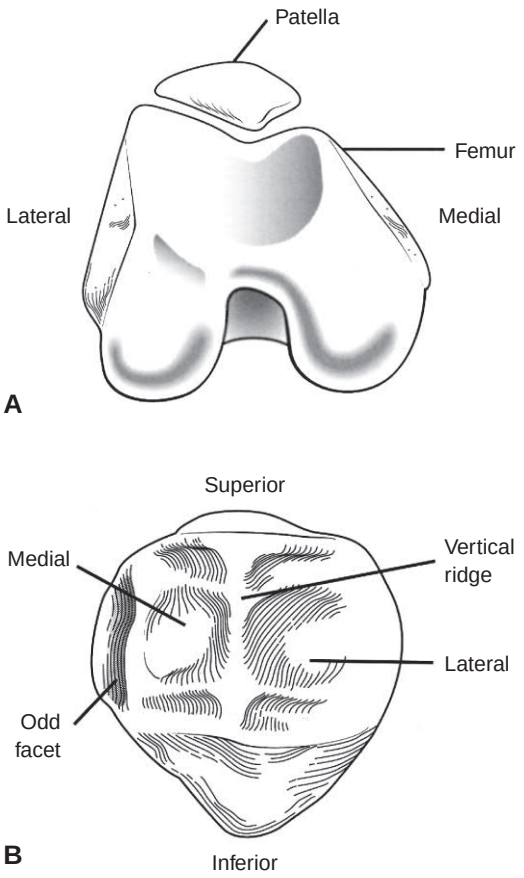


Fig. 11.6 (A) The normal position of the patella in the intercondylar groove of the distal femur. (B) Underside of the patella with its three facets and vertical ridge. (Reprinted with permission from Belyea BC. Orthoses for the knee: the patellofemoral joint. In: Nawoczenski DA, Epler ME, eds. *Orthotics in Functional Rehabilitation of the Lower Limb*. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1997.)

flexion, the patella moves in a complex but consistent three-dimensional pattern of flexion/extension rotation, medial/lateral rotation, medial/lateral tilt, and a medial/lateral shift relative to the femur.[8,9] These motions occur biomechanically in the X, Y, and Z planes.

The stability of the patella is derived from the patellofemoral joint's static structural characteristics and dynamic (muscular) control. Static stability is a product of the anatomy of the patella – the depth of the intercondylar groove, and the prominent and longer lateral condyle of the femur. The sulcus angle, formed by the sloping edges of the condyles, is normally between 114 and 120 degrees; however, it can vary significantly from person to person.[10] Wiberg[11] divides the patellofemoral joint into six types based on the size and shape of facets (Table 11.1). The depth of the patellar trochlea and the facet pattern are important in patellar stability.

Dynamic stability of the patellofemoral joint is derived primarily from activity of the quadriceps femoris as well as from the tensile properties of the patellar ligament (Fig. 11.7). The four components of the quadriceps muscle act together to pull the patella obliquely upward along the shaft of the femur, whereas the patellar ligament anchors it almost straight downward along the anatomical axis of the lower leg. The tibial tubercle is typically located at least 6 degrees lateral to the mechanical axis of the femur.

Table 11.1 Classification of Patellar Types, Listed From Most to Least Stable

Patellar Type	Description
I	Equal medial and lateral facets, both slightly concave
II	Small medial facet, both facets slightly concave
II/III	Small, flat medial facet
III	Small, slightly convex medial facet
IV	Very small, steeply sloped medial facet with medial ridge
V (Jagerhut)	No medial facet, no central ridge

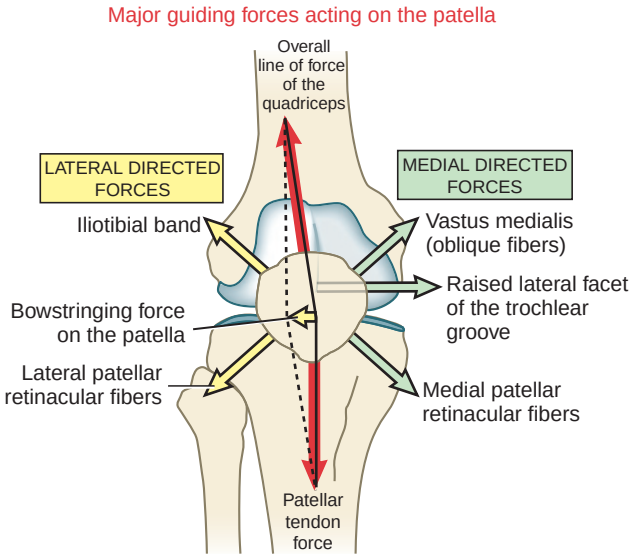


Fig. 11.7 A schematic diagram of structures that act on the patella. (Reprinted with permission from Neumann DA. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Rehabilitation*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier, 2017.)

Because the structure of the patellofemoral articulation and the muscular/ligamentous forces that act on the patella are complex, patellar dynamics involve much more than simple cephalocaudal repositioning as the knee is flexed or extended. Van Kampen and Huiskes[9] describe the three-dimensional motions of the patella as flexion rotation, medial rotation, wavering tilt, and lateral shift. All of these patellar movements (except flexion) are influenced by the rotation of the tibia and the dynamic stabilization of the muscles that act on the patella.

Biomechanics of Knee Motion

Although it is beyond the scope of this chapter to comprehensively cover the biomechanics of knee motion, it is important to have a basic foundation of knee biomechanics to understand the use of knee orthoses as an intervention for pathologic conditions of the knee. Evaluating and managing injuries of the knee requires an in-depth understanding of the biomechanical characteristics of the knee joint. The *kinematics of the knee* describe its motion in terms of the type and location and the magnitude and direction of the motion. The *kinetics of the knee* describe the forces that act on the knee, causing movement.[5] Kinetic forces are classified as either external forces that work on the body (e.g., gravity) or as internal body-generated forces (e.g., friction, tensile strength of soft tissue structures, muscle contraction).

Motion in the tibiofemoral joint can be best understood by separating the motion into its physiological and accessory components. Physiological motion can be controlled consciously, most often through voluntary contraction of muscle. Osteokinematic (bone movement) and arthrokinematic (joint surface motion) are examples of physiological motion. Accessory motion occurs without conscious control and cannot be reproduced voluntarily. Joint play, which is elicited by passive movement during examination of a joint, is an example of an accessory motion. The magnitude and type of accessory motion possible are determined by the characteristics of a particular articulation and the properties of the tissues that surround it. The arthrokinematics of the tibiofemoral joint will vary depending upon whether the lower extremity is in a weight-bearing or loaded position. For example, with tibial-femoral extension the tibia moves anteriorly relative to the femur, and with femoral-tibia extension the femoral condyles slide from anterior to posterior, while rolling anteriorly.[6]

One of the important accessory component motions of the tibiofemoral joint is its *screw home* or locking mechanism. In the final degrees of knee extension, the tibia continues to rotate around the large articular surface of the medial femoral condyle. This motion cannot be prevented or changed by volitional effort; it is entirely the result of the configuration of the articular surfaces. When the knee is flexed to or beyond 90 degrees, however, conscious activation of muscles can produce physiological (osteokinematic) external (lateral) or internal (medial) rotation of the tibia on the femur.

Three osteokinematic motions are possible at the tibiofemoral joint. Knee flexion/extension occurs in the sagittal plane around an axis in the frontal plane (x-axis). Internal/external rotation of the tibia on the femur (or vice versa) occurs in the transverse plane around a longitudinal axis (y-axis). Abduction and adduction occur in the frontal plane around a horizontal axis (z-axis). The arthrokinematic movements of the tibiofemoral joint are rolling, gliding, and sliding (Fig. 11.8). It is important to note that the roll-glide ratio is not constant during tibiofemoral joint motion: Approximately 1:2 in early flexion, the roll-glide ratio becomes almost 1:4 in late flexion.[12] Rolling and gliding occur primarily on the posterior portion of the femoral condyles. In the first 15 to 20 degrees of flexion, a true rolling motion of the femoral condyles occurs in concert with the tibial plateau. As the magnitude of flexion increases, the femur begins to glide posteriorly on the tibia. Gliding becomes more significant as flexion increases.

From a kinematic standpoint, the ACL and PCL operate as a true gear mechanism controlling the roll-glide motion of the tibiofemoral joint. With rupture of either or both of the cruciate ligaments, the gear mechanism becomes ineffective, and the arthrokinematic motion is altered. In an ACL-deficient knee, the femur is able to roll beyond the posterior half of the tibial plateau, increasing the likelihood of damage or tear of the posterior horn of the medial or lateral meniscus.

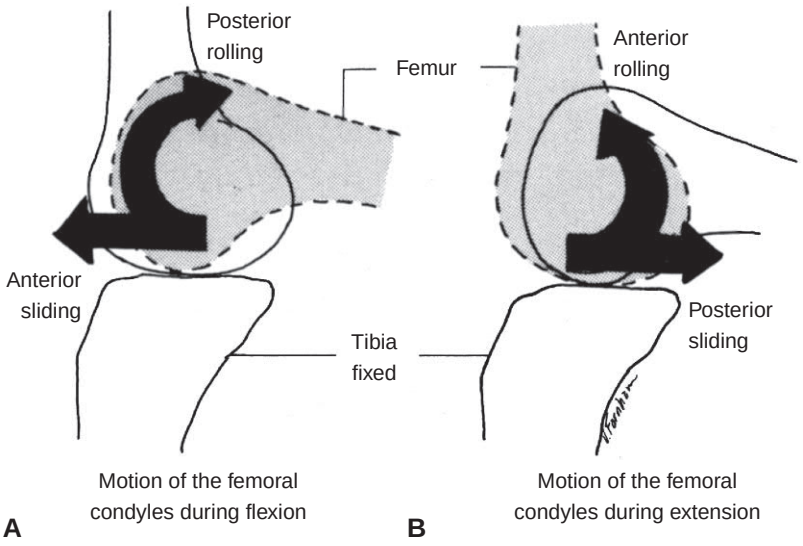


Fig. 11.8 Diagram of femoral motion on a fixed tibia. (A) As the knee flexes, the femoral condyles roll posteriorly *(curved arrow)* while gliding/sliding forward *(straight arrow)*. (B) As the knee extends, the condyles roll forward *(curved arrow)* while gliding posteriorly *(straight arrow)*. (From Hartigan E, Lewek M, Snyder-Mackler L. The knee. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC [eds], *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: David, 2011, p. 355.)

Because the knee has characteristics of a hinge joint and an arthrodial joint, two types of motion (translatory and rotatory) can occur in each plane of motion (sagittal, frontal/coronal, transverse). For this reason, knee motion is described as having six degrees of freedom. The three translatory motions of the knee include anteroposterior translation of 5 to 10 mm, mediolateral translation of 1 to 2 mm, and compression-distraction motion of 2 to 5 mm. The three rotatory motions occur in flexion/extension, varus/valgus, and internal (medial)/external (lateral) rotation.[5,12]

Knee Orthoses Components

Commercially available knee orthoses are comprised of different components, depending on the purpose of the brace (Fig. 11.9). Braces to unload or protect the joint will likely have some type of sidebar support and connect with either a freely moving hinge or one that can be set to limit knee ROM (see Fig. 11.1). Sidebars can be constructed of plastic, metal, or a composite substance. Sidebars can prevent varus and valgus motion at the joint. Straps are provided to help secure the brace to the lower extremity, often utilizing hook-and-loop closure. Other orthoses may include components that rest on the anterior or posterior aspect of the lower leg to limit anterior or posterior translation of the tibia, an important treatment consideration following cruciate ligament injury.

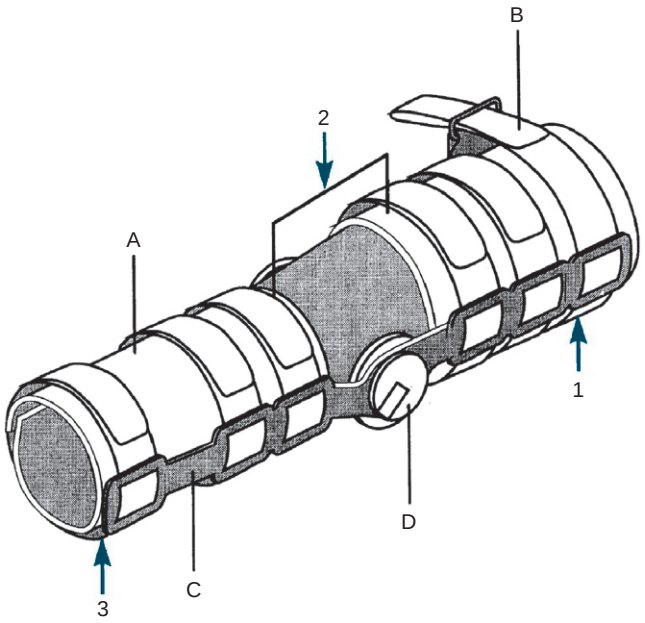


Fig. 11.9 The components of most commercially available rehabilitation knee orthoses include open cell foam interface that encases the calf and thigh *(A)*; a nonelastic adjustable Velcro strap for closures *(B)*; lightweight metal, composite, or plastic sidebars *(C)*; and single-axis or polycentric hinge that can be locked or adjusted to allow or restrict motion *(D)* within the therapeutically desired range of motion. The force systems of these orthoses apply a pair of anteriorly directed forces at the proximal posterior thigh *(1)* and distal posterior calf *(3)*, against a posteriorly directed force *(2)* applied over or on either side of the patella. Varus and valgus stressors are resisted by the sidebars. (Reprinted with permission from Redford JB, Basmajian JV, Trautman P. Lower limb orthoses. In: *Orthotics: Clinical Practice and Rehabilitation Technology*. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 1995;195:230.)

Prophylactic Knee Orthoses

Knee injuries are extremely common, accounting for at least 60% of sporting injuries.[1] Among knee injuries in athletes, soft tissue injury to knee ligaments are of particular concern. Ligamentous injury often results in extensive lost playing time and cost due to surgical repair and rehabilitation. Prophylactic knee orthoses (PKOs) are knee braces that are designed to mitigate or altogether prevent soft tissue injury, usually ligamentous, to the healthy knee (Fig. 11.10). However, the use of these braces for injury prevention purposes continues to be debated in scientific literature.[1]

PKOs are nonadhesive devices that are external to the joint itself. Usually worn by athletes, these braces are designed to prevent injury to the soft tissue structures of the knee from contact or noncontact injuries. It is important to note that there is significant variation in brace design

Fig. 11.10 CTi Custom Knee Brace from Ossur. Example of a custom fit PKO. This brace is custom fabricated for a more precise fit. This brace can be further individualized based on the physical activity requirements of the patient. (© Össur.)

among manufacturers, but the basic goal of ligament protection remains the same despite design. To prevent injury to the MCL or LCL, a brace would need to limit the amount of valgus or varus force, respectively, that the joint receives. For ACL protection, the PKO needs to limit anterior tibial translation forces. For clinicians, understanding the design and intended purpose of a brace in conjunction with the physical demands of the athlete's sport is critical to prescribing an appropriate PKO.

BIOMECHANICAL IMPLICATIONS

The application of a PKO can have effects on joint kinetics and kinematics, proprioception of the knee joint, as well as muscle activation, limb stiffness, and athletic performance. Specific brace design may have an impact on any or all of these factors in a healthy knee.[13]

Noncontact ligamentous knee injuries often occur when an athlete makes a cutting maneuver or lands on a hard surface after jumping, such as with a basketball rebound. Ewing et al.[14] examined the effects of simulating a jump landing from various heights on lower extremity joint kinetics among healthy athletes with and without prophylactic bracing. The results indicate that bracing altered hip flexion angle at initial contact and peak dorsiflexion angle, notably more in female athletes than in male athletes. These results are significant, as the hip and ankle have been shown to play a crucial role in decelerating the center of mass and protecting the knee during landing. The increase in hip flexion angle observed in this study could serve to protect the ACL during landing, especially in female athletes. The authors observed that ground reaction forces (GRFs) were not altered by the use of a PKO. Other significant observations included increases in peak hip extension moment, peak hip negative power, and hip negative work that were observed with PKO use.

Sinclair et al.[3] examined the effects of PKO use on knee joint kinetics and kinematics during netball specific movements. Netball is physically demanding and is characterized by high-level athletic movements such as jumping and cutting performed on a hardwood surface. The authors examined joint kinetics during running, jumping, and cutting maneuvers in athletes with and without PKO. They found that joint kinetics showed no significant change in braced or unbraced conditions. They did however observe significant reduction in transverse plane kinematics—internal and external rotation ROM—when wearing the brace during all maneuvers. Less significantly, the test subjects reported increased perceived knee stability.

Mortaza et al.[2] examined the isokinetic force production of knee flexion and extension in healthy subjects wearing a PKO, neoprene sleeve, or no brace. The authors reported no effect of bracing on the subject's muscle strength and power during flexion and extension movements. Although the PKO did not enhance muscle performance, the finding that the PKO did not diminish muscle performance is significant.

Baltaci et al.[13] found that across five different types of PKOs, maximal muscle force was enhanced. It is believed that the reduction in ROM produced by these braces allowed for an increase in maximal force production. The differences in muscle performance reported by the Mortaza and Baltaci studies may be due to the difference in assessment method. Whereas Mortaza et al.[2] examined muscle performance with isokinetic testing, Baltaci et al.[13] examined force produced during closed chain knee extension force production only.

One proposed model for how PKOs can provide stability to the knee is by increasing lower limb muscle stiffness. Ewing et al.[15] found an increase in active stiffness of the hamstrings and vasti muscles during landing procedures in healthy individuals. Hobara et al.[16] found that PKO use increased lower limb stiffness during hopping as compared with no brace but not significantly different than when individuals used an ankle brace. These findings suggest that muscle activation patterns are not altered with brace use but decrease lower limb muscle stiffness.[15,16] The connection between lower limb muscle stiffness and ligament protection is not well understood at this time.

Proprioception is highly complex and involves the coordination of multiple receptors found in the joint capsule, ligaments, and skin with the central nervous system. Lack of proprioception is thought to be related to episodes of instability and joint injury.[17,18] Increasing proprioception of a joint through the use of a brace may reduce injury risk by improving overall joint control.[17] A review by Dargo et al.[19] found that the addition of neuromuscular and proprioceptive exercises to a prevention program decreased the incidence of knee injury and ACL rupture. The addition of proprioceptive and neuromuscular exercises to an ACL rehabilitation program can help prevent injury recurrence.[20]

Bottoni et al.[17] tested proprioception by comparing athletes' ability to determine movement at the knee without a brace, with a PKO, and with a neoprene sleeve. This repeated-measures study found that the use of a PKO or a neoprene sleeve had no influence, either positively or

negatively, on the proprioception of the knee. However, the test subjects were not tested in a weight-bearing position; applying these findings to closed chain or athletic movements is difficult. Baltaci also examined proprioception in healthy individuals wearing PKOs, however they tested in a weight-bearing position. The authors report an enhancement in knee proprioception with five different PKOs compared with an unbraced condition.[13] In a systematic review and meta-analysis performed by Ghai et al.,[21] the effects of PKOs on joint proprioception and stability were reported. The authors report that conflicting evidence exists to support the notion that PKOs have an effect on joint proprioception. Several high-quality studies report enhancements in proprioception, whereas negligible effects were reported in others. These results speak to the impact that different PKO designs can have on knee function.

EVIDENCE OF EFFECTIVENESS

When considering the use of a PKO in a healthy patient population, it is important to consider that there is no published data available on the role of bracing in preventing ligamentous injury in healthy knees.[22] As previously discussed, the effects these braces have on joint kinematics, proprioception, and muscle performance should not hinder a healthy athlete's performance, so any additional ligamentous protection gained from brace use would be beneficial.

However, the use of bracing has been advocated in athletes who are determined to be at high risk for ligamentous knee injury or in those individuals who are ACL deficient or have ACL reconstructed knees. Intrinsic risk factors include a narrow intercondylar notch, weak ACL, generalized joint laxity, lower extremity alignment, and gender—with women being more at risk than men.[23] Extrinsic risk factors include quadriceps and hamstring strength imbalances, altered neuromuscular control, and the athlete's playing style and surface.[23] In a systematic review by Bodendorfer et al.,[1] several factors for identifying at-risk population are identified: being between the ages of 13 and 18, and participating in pivoting and jumping sports (basketball, football, soccer, and skiing among others). The authors conclude that this population may benefit from prophylactic bracing but recognize the limitation in available data at this time. In individuals who are ACL deficient, bracing can be an effective way to prevent further injury that could be sustained for extra anterior tibial translation. Bracing following ACL reconstruction and its efficacy is further discussed later in the chapter.

Two large scale epidemiological studies have examined the injury rates among football players wearing PKOs.[24,25] Both studies found that bracing can be effective in preventing MCL injury in football players. Sitler et al.[25] found that although the brace may reduce MCL injury rate, it did not significantly affect severity when an injury was sustained. The Albright et al.[24] study also supported prophylactic bracing for MCL injury prevention in football players, especially in linemen and linebackers. These individuals would be considered at high risk based on the criteria set forth by Bodendorfer et al.[1] A more recent systematic review by Salata et al.[26] found that bracing did not have a significant effect on MCL injury rate in football players, and cited a lack of evidence to support PKO use in the healthy population.

Potential negative effects of PKO use are not fully understood. An older study by Highgenboten et al.[27] found increased metabolic demand in individuals wearing knee braces, which was related to the weight of the brace. Brace design has continued to evolve in response, using more light-weight materials to reduce the metabolic demands associated with brace use. Further research to determine the metabolic demands of newer, lightweight braces is warranted. Additionally, healthy patients who wear PKOs often report an increased sense of security.[3] This sense of security may be false, as the ability for these braces to prevent injury in healthy individuals is not fully understood.

RECOMMENDATIONS

In some individuals, brace use may increase not only muscle performance, but also increase lower limb stiffness and knee proprioception without significantly changing joint kinetics.[2,3,13-15] Currently, there is a lack of current research to suggest that PKOs significantly reduce knee function, or reduce ligamentous injury risk. In a normal healthy population, PKO use is not warranted based on the available literature at this time. However, in those individuals identified as high risk for ACL injury, bracing may offer a viable way to reduce injury risk and should be recommended. Clinicians should recognize individuals who are high risk and prescribe an appropriate PKO in an effort to mitigate injury risk.

Orthoses for Anterior Cruciate Ligament Insufficiency

The anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments function to provide stabilization of the knee joint in multiple directions. The ACL attaches superiorly to the femur on the posterior medial aspect of the lateral condyle. Distally, the ACL attaches anteriorly and laterally to the intercondylar notch of the tibia. The primary role of the ACL is to limit anterior translation of the tibia on the femur, and the PCL functions to limit posterior translation of the tibia on the femur.[28] Additionally, the ACL provides some stability in the transverse and frontal planes, limiting both tibial rotation and abduction.[28] Besides these mechanical functions, the ACL also plays an important role in knee joint proprioception.[29] The critical function of the cruciate ligaments from a mechanical and proprioceptive perspective is complex, and beyond the scope of this chapter. However, a basic understanding of the joint mechanics is necessary to appreciate the design and function of orthoses, as well as prescribing appropriate devices to individuals with ACL injury.

As discussed previously in this chapter, the purpose of a PKO is to prevent injury to the soft tissue structures of the knee from contact or noncontact injuries. In the event that an injury to the ligamentous support structures of the knee does occur, an FKO is often prescribed (Fig. 11.11A). The purpose of an FKO is to provide the mechanical stabilization that is usually provided by intact support structures. For example, a patient who has suffered an ACL rupture may be provided with a brace to prevent anterior translation of the tibia. Utilizing an FKO can serve two main purposes: First, it may be used to protect the joint from further injury

Fig. 11.11 (A) Axiom Elite Ligament Knee Brace by Breg. Example of a knee brace that could be used for either prophylactic purposes or following collateral ligament repair. The rigid metal frame and dual hinges provide support and protection. (B) Rebound ACL Brace by Ossur. Example of a knee brace that is used for nonsurgical treatment of ACL rupture or following surgery for ACL reconstruction. (A, Courtesy Breg. Retrieved from: https://www.breg.com/wp-content/uploads/product_images/Axiom_Elite_Standard_Straight-001-705x705.png. B, © Össur.)

that may occur due to the lack of ligamentous support. The chronic instability and altered kinematics may lead to increased injury risk of other ligaments, the meniscus, or the articular cartilage.[6] Secondly, an FKO can be used to protect a surgical repair of a ligament or other support structure in the knee while it heals or during athletic activities.

ACL INSUFFICIENCY

ACL injuries are the most common ligamentous knee injuries.[1,29] Due to the complex role of the ACL in mechanical stabilization and proprioception, individuals who are ACL deficient often report symptoms of instability and "giving way" in the knee. Although many individuals elect to undergo surgical repair of the ACL, there is a subset of the population that is able to return to previous levels of function without an intact ACL. This group is collectively known as "copers," whereas those with continued reports of instability are deemed non-copers. FKO use in copers would serve the purpose of protecting the joint from further injury by providing an external mechanical force to the joint to replicate the normal function of the ACL (see Fig. 11.11B). Several studies have explored the ability of an FKO to replicate those normal functions.

Biomechanical Implications

Giotis et al.[30] examined the effects of bracing on tibial rotation during high load activities in ACL patients. By comparing the ACL intact knee to the ACL-deficient knee during several different tasks, the authors were able to determine if excessive tibial rotation was occurring and if bracing could potentially limit those effects. Subjects were tested during stair descent with pivoting, and a drop landing followed by a pivot. The results of this analysis reveal that there is increased tibial rotation in the ACL-deficient knee compared with the intact knee, and that bracing the deficient knee resulted in a significant decrease in tibial rotation.

Jalali et al.[31] used video fluoroscopy to examine the effect that knee bracing has on anterior tibial translation during lunging in individuals who are ACL deficient. In this study, the braces used were custom fabricated but were characteristic of an FKO. No significant differences were reported for anterior tibial translation in braced and unbraced conditions. This lack of findings is significant as often the purpose of an FKO is to provide the anterior stability of the knee lost by ACL rupture. Additionally, one might assume that a custom fabricated FKO would be superior in providing this support as compared to an off-the-shelf brace.

Pierrat et al.[32] also examined the ability of FKOs to reduce anterior tibial translation in individuals who are ACL deficient. Contrary to the Jalali et al.[31] study, the authors examined the amount of anterior translation during low grade loads and used off-the-shelf braces. They found that at a low force, which resulted in low anterior displacement, an FKO can replace the mechanical role of the ACL.[32] However, they determined that an FKO cannot fully replace the role of the ACL, as braces generally reach a firm "stop" in a linear manner, whereas the intact ACL increases stiffness as load increases in a nonlinear manner. It is likely that these braces are not effective for higher knee loads or activities that produce higher levels of anterior tibial displacement, although further research is necessary.

Functional Implications

Palm et al.[29] studied the effect of ACL deficiency on knee joint proprioception and postural control. They reported a

significant difference in overall postural stability between injured and noninjured knees, with injured knees having less stability. Fernandes et al.[33] also found decreased postural control in ACL-deficient athletes during static and dynamic activities. The Palm et al. study examined the effect of a commercial knee sleeve, which consisted mainly of a compressive sleeve with patellar pads. After application of the sleeve, the authors noted an increase in overall postural stability by nearly 22%, finding that this increased postural control to a level similar to that of the uninjured knee.[29] Clinically, a bulkier FKO is often used to manage patients who have isolated ACL deficiency. The results of this study indicate that a simple sleeve can improve the overall stability and postural control in these individuals and may be sufficient when compared with bulkier FKOs.

Mortaza et al.[34] examined the effect that FKOs have on the isokinetic muscle performance and functional performance in individuals who have ACL-deficient knees. Functional tests included single-leg crossover hopping distance and vertical jump height. The results indicated that FKO use did not have any positive or negative effect on knee performance in either of the examined groups. However, small effects of the brace on peak knee extension torque and power were measured. The authors conclude that although not statistically significant, these findings have rehabilitation implications in reducing muscle function asymmetry during the rehabilitation process.

Recommendations

Although these studies demonstrate that an FKO does not limit the anterior tibial translation that often causes a feeling of joint instability, they may still be helpful by increasing postural stability and proprioception.[29,31,32] Additionally, they may also be helpful for low-load activities or when limiting tibial rotation to avoid further injury is the main goal of use.[1,32,35] It is important to remember an FKO cannot match the nonlinear stiffening exhibited by the healthy ACL as demand is increased.[32] Therefore it is important for the clinician to consider the use of FKOs in the rehabilitation of ACL-deficient individuals. For example, if an individual is planning to undergo ACL repair, and the goal is to limit the subjective feeling of instability, a brace may be useful to increase postural stability and proprioception. In the preoperative ACL patient, a simple sleeve can often provide this support without the bulkiness of a traditional FKO.[29] In those individuals who elect to not have surgery to repair the ACL, bracing can provide support for low-level activities, but likely not enough external support for high loading activities.

POSTOPERATIVE ACL RECONSTRUCTION

Immediately after surgery for ACL reconstruction, current practice is to provide bracing to protect the quadriceps-inhibited knee from a sudden flexion moment in weight bearing.[36,37] For this reason many surgeons opt to prescribe an FKO for the purpose of protecting the surgical repair from re-rupture. Over the course of rehabilitation, bracing may serve the additional purpose of providing more stability as the patient progresses to more intense exercise or sport specific training.[37] Despite being common practice, FKO use during the rehabilitation phase following ACL repair has become more controversial over the past years as more information is gathered about the effect bracing has on the ACL-reconstructed knee.[36]

Biomechanical Implications

In an in vivo, prospective controlled study, Giotis et al.[30] collected data on the amount of tibial rotation present during high-loading activities in ACL-reconstructed knees. Tibial rotation was measured during immediate pivoting after stepping down from a stair and immediate pivoting after landing from a jump down from a step. The researchers measured tibial rotation in both the operative and nonoperative knees, with a knee sleeve, a knee orthosis, and no bracing. It was determined that excessive tibial rotation remains during dynamic pivoting maneuvers following ACL reconstruction, and bracing can reduce this rotation, but does not restore normative function. This study protocol was used to examine the same effects in individuals who are ACL deficient and found similar results.[35] It is important to consider that this study used only male participants who had bone-patellar tendon-bone graft, and who were on average 26 months postoperative.[30] It may be difficult to apply these findings to females or other graft types, however, it is important to consider the long-term effects on tibial rotation following ACL injury.

In a follow-up study, Giotis et al.[38] examined the same outcomes in individuals who underwent ACL repair with a hamstring tendon graft. Again, only male patients who were a minimum of 24 months postoperative were examined. In this population a similar finding was reported; tibial rotation during high-level dynamic activities was reduced when wearing a brace but not to the extent of a healthy ACL. In both graft types, using an orthosis resulted in superior outcomes as compared to the knee sleeve, and the knee sleeve was superior to the unbraced condition.[30,38]

Limiting anterior tibial translation in addition to tibial rotation to reduce stress on the repaired ACL may also be a theoretic reason for bracing in the postoperative population. Multiple studies have shown that bracing is not an effective way to replicate the physiologic function of an intact ACL in this regard.[31,32] Due to this, excessive tibial translation has not been extensively studied in a postoperative population. LaPrade et al.[39] examined the differences between dynamic and static braces on the posteriorly directed forces from the brace on the proximal tibia during open and closed chain knee movements in healthy individuals. Dynamic braces were found to be superior to static braces, most closely matching physiological ACL function. As previously reported, the ACL stiffens in a nonlinear way during active knee ROM, and dynamic bracing attempts to match this phenomenon.[32]

Role in Rehabilitation

Common impairments following ACL reconstruction include pain, effusion, muscle weakness, and ROM loss, among others. The use of bracing during the rehabilitation phase following ACL repair is generally not supported in the literature to reduce these impairments.[37,40,41] In a review by Nyland et al.,[37] the authors conclude that the evidence supporting postsurgical brace use tends to decrease across the healing continuum following ACL repair. A systematic review by Kruse et al.[40] found that bracing after ACL repair is neither necessary nor beneficial and may actually

increase the cost of the procedure. Additionally, the review found that bracing did not result in significant benefits in ROM or laxity. In a long-term prospective study, Mayr et al.[41] found that postoperative bracing showed no advantage in regard to anteroposterior laxity or visual analog pain scale among those individuals who used a postoperative brace, with pain levels being less in those who did not use a brace. Postoperative bracing has also been found to have no effect on joint effusion.[42] During gait in adolescent patients, bracing had no effect on altered kinematic and kinetic asymmetries between surgical and noninjured limbs.[43] A review by Sugimoto et al.[44] found inconsistent evidence that bracing provided improvements in joint position sense in this population.

Despite these findings, there may be patients who would benefit from brace use. One such population is those with kinesiophobia, or fear of re-injury.[45,46] Harput et al.[45] found that bracing provided a reduction in kinesiophobia, allowing patients to have improved knee function and return to preinjury levels when compared with kinesiology taping or no brace conditions. A systematic review by Lowe et al.[46] suggests using a brace following ACL reconstruction after return to sport for ligament protection and to reduce kinesiophobia. It is the role of the clinician to recognize those individuals who demonstrate kinesiophobia and may benefit from complementary brace use in addition to comprehensive rehabilitation following ACL reconstruction.

Although the findings of recent research suggest bracing after ACL reconstruction is unnecessary, it remains commonplace for patients and surgeons to utilize braces following surgery. Nyland et al.[37] noted that during rehabilitation, "safe training without brace use is essential to stimulate joint loads needed for tissue healing, collagen health, restoration of biomechanical tissue integrity, and to develop a more responsive neuromuscular control system." It remains the job of the rehabilitation team to appropriately prescribe exercises and activities that result in the intended healing, without reliance on external bracing. Weaning patients from brace use requires careful consideration of the patients' function, kinesiophobia level, and patient confidence. This decision should always be made with the collaboration of the patient and the surgeon.

Once the patient has successfully completed a comprehensive rehabilitation program and is ready to return to sport, functional bracing may once again be utilized. A review by Lang et al.[47] found that brace use for the first 6 to 12 months following return to sport can increase the athlete's confidence. The systematic review by Lowe et al.[46] arrived at a similar conclusion, suggesting brace use for 6 to 12 months following return to sport to decrease kinesiophobia and improve patient confidence, allowing for return to previous level of competition.

Preventing reinjury to the ACL once an athlete returns to play is another primary goal of rehabilitation. The review by Lowe et al.[46] found limited evidence to suggest bracing decreases the rate of re-injury. However, individuals who participate in high-risk activities would benefit from brace use to reduce reinjury rates.[1] Adolescent patients may also benefit from bracing to prevent rerupture, as they have higher rates of reinjury compared with other populations, however, there is not conclusive evidence to suggest bracing can or cannot prevent reinjury.[47]

Recommendations

Postoperative bracing can reduce tibial rotation, but not restore it, regardless of graft type in patients following isolated ACL repair.[30,35,38] Bracing is not effective in matching physiological ACL function of limiting anterior tibial translation, as a mature repair will provide this function.[31,32,39] No brace effectively mimics native ACL function. Therefore bracing is not generally supported to address the common impairments seen following ACL repair.[37,40,41] The American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons (AAOS) finds there is moderate evidence for lack of evidence for FKO use following ACL reconstruction.[48] Patients with kinesiophobia after surgery, those who participate in high-risk sports, or adolescent athletes may benefit the most by using bracing after surgical repair.[1,45-47] Given the increasingly high rates of surgical success and continued surgical innovation, there is generally no conclusive scientific evidence to support the routine use of an FKO following ACL repair, especially when patients complete a comprehensive rehabilitation program.[1,36]

Orthoses for Osteoarthritis

In healthy tibiofemoral and patellofemoral joints, the articular surfaces are covered in articular cartilage. The role of the articular cartilage is to provide for smooth movement of the knee by reducing friction and providing even force distribution across joint surfaces. Articular cartilage by nature is both avascular and aneural in adult humans. This cartilage is composed of a complex matrix of water, chondrocytes, and proteoglycans.[28] OA is characterized by a disruption or alteration of the cartilage matrix, usually resulting in surface fibrillation, fissures, and eventual removal of cartilage from the underlying bone.[28] OA is a common source of knee pain and discomfort and is associated with high rates of disability. The development and progression of OA is multifactorial, and there are multiple models that outline the development and progression of the disease that are beyond the context of this chapter.

OA that develops in either the tibiofemoral or patellofemoral joint causes considerable pain and disability and imposes a major economic burden on those affected and society as a whole.[49] The inability of the cartilage to sustain loads and distribute forces in the tibiofemoral joint often results in degradation of the cartilage and a reduction of joint space, known as collapse, in one or more compartments of the knee. This breakdown can cause pain and swelling, with unicompartmental collapse causing a change in the alignment of the joint.[50] OA that affects the medial compartment of the tibiofemoral joint may cause an increase in genu varus alignment, whereas lateral collapse may cause an increase in genu valgus alignment. Patients with knee OA report joint pain and demonstrate ROM loss. These symptoms are typically exacerbated in weight-bearing activities, such as the stance phase of gait, negotiating stairs, or getting up from sitting. Conservative interventions, such as exercise, bracing, injections, or medications are commonly used in managing knee OA, with total or unicompartmental joint arthroplasty utilized when symptoms cannot be managed with conservative interventions.

Braces have been designed to help alleviate these symptoms, as well to address inappropriate joint loading as a

Fig. 11.12 Ossur unloader one brace. This is an example of a medial unloading brace used in the treatment of moderate to severe osteoarthritis of the knee. The location of the hinge, sidebars, and straps provide leverage to unload a single compartment in the knee. (© Össur.)

result of unicompartmental collapse. Unloading braces are designed for this specific purpose, and consist of external stays, hinges, and straps (Fig. 11.12). As with PKOs and FKOs, they can be used off-the-shelf or custom made for a specific individual. They aim to decrease the compressive load, or "unload" the surface, and restore joint alignment.[51] They can be used to address varus or valgus alignments. Valgus unloading braces used to reduce the load on the medial compartment are more common, as medial compartment OA with varus alignment is the most common type of unicompartmental knee OA.[52] The use of these braces has become more popular as clinicians and patients attempt to reduce pain and avoid or prolong the need for joint arthroplasty. In contrast to unloading bracing, some clinicians opt for soft brace use, especially for those patients with mild to moderate OA.[49] A systematic review with meta-analysis showed promising benefit, with moderate improvements in pain and small to moderate improvements in function.[49] Based on the current research, the OA Research Society International guidelines for managing knee OA gives unloader bracing a recommendation score of 76% for reducing pain.[53] The AAOS found inconclusive evidence regarding brace use and were not able to recommend for or against brace use in the treatment of OA.[54] Some of the inconsistency with regards to brace prescription may be explained by the highly individualized nature of the presentation and progression of OA, as well as the lack of long-term controlled research.

BIOMECHANICAL IMPLICATIONS

The ability for valgus bracing to provide this desired unloading effect has long been unclear, and the focus of much research and clinical debate.[52,55-57] In a systematic review and meta-analysis, Moyer et al.[52] found that valgus bracing can decrease knee joint loads, with moderate- to high-effect sizes. Specifically, these changes in biomechanics were found during walking and through multiple mechanisms. The authors of this study offered the following mechanisms of action: direct medial compartment load, indirect load distribution, muscle co-contraction, and increase in medial knee joint space. However, this research was not able to identify individuals who would respond well to bracing or what prescriptive criteria should include. In the patellofemoral joint, bracing has been shown to alter the patellar position in a static weight-bearing position.[58] Patellofemoral joint OA is further discussed later in this chapter.

Instability of the tibiofemoral joint in patients with OA can result in altered muscle activation patterns as the muscles attempt to dynamically stabilize the joint. However, this change in muscle activation patterns may also increase the joint load, ultimately becoming counterproductive. Fantini et al.[59] examined the effects an unloader brace would have on muscle activation patterns during gait among individuals with medial knee OA. The researchers found significant decreases in muscle activity during walking with an unloading brace, suggesting the external brace provided additional mechanical stabilization. Petersen et al.[55] found similar results, finding that brace use and the resulting decrease in muscle co-contraction may contribute to decreased pain. When studied in a healthy population, a similar study found no change in muscle activation patterns in braced and unbraced conditions.[60] In a sample of individuals with end-stage OA, utilizing a newly designed pneumatic unloader knee brace over the course of 3 months resulted in a significant increase in quadriceps and hamstring strength compared to the unbraced group.[61] These findings suggest that an unloading brace may provide for mechanical stability in those with knee OA but does not have a similar effect in those with healthy joints. New or novel designs of unloading braces need further examination to determine their effects on muscle activation and strength.

The varus alignment that develops as a result of medial compartment collapse changes the force distribution within the tibiofemoral joint. Due to this malalignment, the GRFs experienced during ambulation is shifted medially; this shift is known as the knee adduction moment (KAM) and results in increased load in the medial tibiofemoral compartment.[55] Reduction of the KAM is one of the proposed mechanisms of action described by Moyer et al.[52] A significant reduction in KAM through the use of an unloading brace has been described in various biomechanical studies among individuals with OA.[55,57,62-66] In a systematic review by Petersen et al.[55] the authors found consensus among the research that a valgus unloader brace significantly reduced the KAM forces in the arthritic knee. The reduction in KAM force from unloading brace use has been shown to be up to 26%, and up to 10% with soft brace use.[63,66] Fu et al.[64] found an even larger reduction in KAM when knee bracing was used in conjunction with lateral wedging insoles with arch support. When compared with FKO bracing, unloading braces seem to be more effective in reducing the KAM.[65] New brace technology that combines valgus effect with tibial external rotation and distraction to further decrease medial joint compression has shown promising

effects on KAM, but further research will be needed to establish the effectiveness of this design.[57]

EVIDENCE OF EFFECTIVENESS

In many cases the biomechanical changes that come from unloader brace use as described by Moyer et al.[52] translate into pain reduction for patients with knee OA. With decreased pain, conservative intervention approaches can then focus on addressing other impairments and improving overall function. Soft braces may provide for pain reduction and improved function in those individuals with mild OA; however an unloading brace is likely to be required in individuals with joint deformity[49,67] (Fig. 11.13). Meta-analysis of randomized trials supports the ability of an unloading brace to reduce pain and improve overall function.[68] A recent systematic review by Gohal et al.[69] found that valgus unloader braces are an effective treatment for reducing pain in this population.

More specifically, unloader braces have been shown to improve gait. Improving walking as a treatment outcome has been rated as very important in up to 89% of this population.[70] The systematic review by Petersen et al.[55] found that the reduction in pain experienced by brace users resulted in increased walking speed, increased step length, and in some cases, increased gait symmetry. Similar findings are discussed in a literature review conducted by Maleki et al.[71] who identified increased gait speed and increased step length in individuals using unloading braces. Due to the reduction in the KAM, patients have been shown to increase gait speed and overall knee ROM during the stance phase of gait.[63] In a survey of unloading brace users, Briggs et al.[70] found significant improvements in quality of life, pain, stiffness, and overall function. In patients with mild OA, using a soft brace was found to result in decreased 10 m Walk and Get-up and Go times, indicating increased speed.[67] This study also found an increase in patient confidence in level and perturbed walking.[67] Braces that provide for a decrease in pain and improvement in patient function allows for patients to maintain a healthy activity level and to increase overall physical health.[70]

Other orthoses that may be used in conservative management include lateral wedged insoles. When compared to valgus bracing, lateral wedged insoles have been found to produce a similar reduction on KAM forces, pain reduction, and gait parameters.[72,73] When used in conjunction, valgus unloading braces and lateral wedged insoles produce greater reductions in KAM than either used independently.[64] The addition of stochastic resonance electrical stimulation to a knee sleeve has been shown to not offer significant improvements over the sleeve use itself.[74] The use of a transcutaneous joint stimulator was shown to be ineffective in reducing pain in isolation but offers some improvements when used with an unloader brace.[75] These results suggest that electrical stimulation in isolation is not likely to produce the desired treatment effect, but could be augmented by the addition of an unloading brace.

Aside from the beneficial treatment effect of these braces, like all treatments, they do not come without potential side effects. Negative side effects of brace use are not commonly researched and are occasionally reported when present. Potential side effects include small reductions in available active range of motion and skin irritation from poorly fitting braces. As a general rule with knee orthoses, brace fit can be improved with the use of a custom brace versus an off-the-shelf model. Another possible limitation to effectiveness is

Fig. 11.13 (A) Hinged knee brace with straps produced by Donjoy. This brace provides moderate compression with increased support from dual hinged sidebars. This brace would be appropriate for patients with mild to moderate OA. (B) OA Fullforce Knee Brace by DonJoy. Notice the longer lateral support on the femoral component of the brace. When combined with straps and hinges, this brace unloads the medial aspect of the knee. (A, Courtesy of DonJoy; B, Courtesy DJO Global. Retrieved from https://www.djoglobal.com/sites/default/files/styles/product_large/public/11-1578_OAFullforce_hires.jpg?itok=ubXIPAFS.)

patient adherence to brace usage and brace cost.[76] Unloading braces in particular tend to be larger and bulkier than smaller sleeves, which may limit a patient's ability to effectively don and doff the brace. Long-term (>1 year) brace usage has shown to be low, at 28% in this population.[76] There is no clear prescriptive criteria for the use of bracing in OA either, which may present a limitation in providing braces to appropriate patients.

RECOMMENDATIONS

Recent research suggests that unloading braces can alter tibiofemoral and patellofemoral joint positions, both statically and dynamically.[52,58] Unloading braces are also effective in decreasing muscle co-contraction, providing an increase in joint stability without sacrificing muscle strength.[55,59,61] Additionally, both unloader and soft braces reduce the KAM force experienced during gait, which distributes forces more uniformly in the joint, thereby reducing pain.[55,57,62-66] These biomechanical changes result in decreased pain and improved function, specifically gait parameters. These improvements result in increased quality of life and confidence in patients with knee OA.[70] Further research is needed to examine the effects that new brace designs to the market have on biomechanics, pain, and function among this patient population.[57,61] The majority of these recent studies focus on relatively short-term effects of brace use. Due to the chronic and progressive nature of OA, it would be beneficial to examine both the long-term effects of brace use and the possibility for slowing the progression of the disease.[77]

Conservative intervention continues to be the first line of treatment for patients with knee OA. Physical therapy, exercise, weight reduction, bracing, and antiinflammatory medications are among the most common conservative interventions.[78,79] Physical therapy carries an Osteoarthritis Research International recommendation grade of 89%, regular exercise carries a grade of 96%, and bracing was graded at 76%.[53] Despite the inconclusive opinion from the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, the addition of a brace to these interventions may prove to be useful, but more long-term randomized studies are necessary. Identifying which patients will benefit from the addition of bracing to a conservative program can be difficult for many practitioners and may present as a barrier to brace use. Establishment of an industry-wide validated model of brace implementation would prove to be greatly beneficial. However, clinicians may be able to match patient impairments with the known biomechanical effects of certain braces to produce a desired treatment effect. As a general rule, those with a passively correctable varus or valgus deformity as a result of unicompartmental OA are ideal patients for unloader brace use.[78] In those patients with mild OA, a soft brace may be an effective treatment.[51]

Orthoses for Patellofemoral Disorders

It is important to consider the contributions of the patellofemoral joint to both normal tibiofemoral joint motion and painful conditions of the knee. The patella is a sesamoid bone positioned in the tendon of the quadriceps femoris. On its posterior, it has two large facets medially and laterally, and a small odd facet on the medial aspect.[28] These facets articulate with the medial and lateral femoral condyles during flexion and extension movements of the knee, respectively. When the knee is extended and the quadriceps relaxed, there is relatively little contact between the patella and the femur. Normal alignment finds the patella positioned just laterally to the femoral trochlear notch at rest.[28] Under normal conditions the patella functions to increase the moment arm of the quadriceps tendon, therefore the patella is critical to normal function of the quadriceps muscle and tibiofemoral joint.[28] During tibiofemoral flexion, the patella glides distally on the femur. At the same time the patellofemoral joint surface experiences an increase in compressive force.[28] During knee extension, the patella glides superiorly on the femur. In addition to superior and inferior translation, there is movement of the patella medially and laterally, as well as tilting and rotation during tibiofemoral flexion and extension.[28] The term "patellar tracking" is often used to describe this complex set of motions that occur at the patellofemoral joint. Compressive force at the patellofemoral joint is also affected by other factors besides tibiofemoral joint angle, such as weight-bearing or external loading. Abnormal knee function and pain have been hypothesized to be caused by problems with static or dynamic patellofemoral alignment, tracking, and force distribution across the joint surface or a combination thereof. Models that explain normal and abnormal patellofemoral joint motion and force distribution are far more complex, however, and are beyond the scope of this chapter. Having knowledge regarding normal function is important to understanding the purpose of patellofemoral orthoses.

Patellofemoral orthoses, like other knee braces, are a form of conservative treatment that are frequently used in conjunction with other nonoperative measures. They function to reduce the pain experienced in the anterior knee and retropatellar area in individuals with patellofemoral pain syndrome (PFPS) or patellofemoral OA by modifying patellar position.[80] Designs of orthoses for this purpose are highly variable and range from simple straps to knee sleeves to full patellar support braces (see Figs. 11.2 and 11.14). Patellofemoral braces are generally less bulky than tibiofemoral counterparts and can be worn under trousers.[81] There are significant differences in prescriptive criteria and little consensus among health care professionals regarding the use of these orthoses.[82]

PATELLOFEMORAL OSTEOARTHRITIS

OA that affects the patellofemoral joint can be a significant cause for anterior and retropatellar pain. Due to the compressive nature of the patellofemoral joint, patellofemoral OA tends to be a particularly painful condition. Bracing in this population is thought to decrease contact stress across the patellofemoral joint by encouraging proper alignment or tracking, thereby reducing painful compression.[58,81] Restoring normal forces across a larger surface area on the facets of the posterior patella may reduce focal stress through any one area that has degenerative changes. Bracing is also thought to increase proprioceptive input and facilitate a feeling of stability, which may encourage

Fig. 11.14 Patella strap by DonJoy. Example of a compressive strap worn directly over the patellar tendon. (Courtesy DJO Global. Retrieved from: https://www.djoglobal.com/sites/default/files/styles/product_large/public/images/products/patella-front.jpg?itok=ukUDqXKl.)

participation in physical activity.[50] Unlike bulky FKOs or other tibiofemoral braces, knee sleeves used in this population are typically soft and can be worn underneath long pants.

Biomechanical Implications

Weakness of the quadriceps is a common impairment that is observed in individuals with OA of the knee. In a recent secondary analysis of a randomized controlled trial, Callaghan et al.[83] studied the effect of wearing a knee brace on quadriceps strength in individuals who have patellofemoral OA. This study utilized an off-the-shelf knee sleeve, which allowed full ROM of the knee. This type of brace is commonly used in the treatment of patellofemoral pain syndrome (PFPS) and for general knee joint support. After 6 and 12 weeks, there was found to be no difference in maximum voluntary contraction or arthrogenous muscle inhibition, meaning the use of the brace did not reduce the strength or activation of the quadriceps.

Correcting improper patellar tracking or position may also be a goal in the treatment of patellofemoral OA. In a small scale ($n = 26$), patella position and patellofemoral joint space were measured using MRI.[58] The results of this study indicate that bracing increases the contact area between the posterior patella and femoral trochlea, thereby distributing forces in a more even manner when compared to a nonbraced condition.[58] Although promising, this research was conducted in a static position, which reduces the clinician's ability to apply the results to more dynamic functional activities that are often impaired, such as ambulation.

In another randomized study by Callaghan et al.[81] pain and bone marrow lesion size was measured in the patellofemoral compartment in patients with patellofemoral OA. Participants were randomized to braced or nonbraced conditions for a treatment duration of 6 weeks. At the end of the study, there was a significant improvement in pain with activity as scored on the Knee Osteoarthritis Outcome Score (KOOS) in the group that used bracing. Additionally, a significant decrease in bone marrow lesion size was observed in the brace group. The short-term results of this study represent a very significant finding, as OA is a chronic condition, suggesting that components can be addressed in as little as 6 weeks.

Conservative Management

The positive results on the KOOS of the previous study by Callaghan et al.[81] are in contrast to those reported by Yu et al.,[84] who found that the addition of a patellofemoral brace to a multidisciplinary program did not provide additional benefits. Participants in this study were assessed at multiple intervals up to 1 year. The authors report that the addition of bracing as an intervention did not result in superior outcomes in terms of pain or function as compared with a nonbraced rehabilitation program at any follow-up point. A randomized clinical trial by Crossley et al.[85] demonstrated improvements in KOOS scores, indicating improved pain and function after 3 months of conservative treatment. Although the conservative management in this study did not include brace use, it does support the efficacy of conservative interventions in the treatment of patellofemoral OA.

Recommendations

OA affecting the patellofemoral joint frequently results in pain and decreased function in affected individuals. Conservative management of a multidisciplinary nature has been shown to improve these outcomes in both short- and long-term follow-up studies.[84,85] The effects of the addition of a brace to conservative management is not well understood. Current literature suggests that brace use will not weaken or inhibit quadriceps function, can change the static position of the patella, and possibly have a positive effect on bone marrow lesion size.[58,81,83] No large-scale negative effects of brace use have been reported in the recent literature. Bracing for patients with patellofemoral OA may be used to complement a conservative multidisciplinary approach to improve pain and function.

PATELLOFEMORAL PAIN SYNDROME

PFPS is a global term used to describe pain that occurs in the anterior patellar or retropatellar areas. Symptoms in the area are generally worsened during prolonged sitting, descending stairs, walking down slopes, athletic activities, squatting, or kneeling.[23,80,82,86,87] The repetitive nature of these activities contributes to the onset of symptoms. PFPS is a common disorder of the knee, affecting 10% to 20% of the general population, with females, especially athletic women being more commonly affected.[88,89] Due to the complex nature of normal patellar function, it is likely that there is a wide variety of biomechanical reasons that patellar tracking becomes abnormal.[90] Despite etiology of PFPS remaining unclear, the basic premise of PFPS is that abnormal movement of the patella in the femoral trochlear results in altered force distribution and pain in the

joint.[80,91] When possible, identifying the underlying cause of altered tracking would be beneficial for directing conservative treatment, including orthoses use, for those with PFPS. For example, if a patient demonstrates excessive lateral tracking of the patella, a brace designed to apply a medially directed force may be used to keep the patella situated in the femoral trochlea. Additional conservative treatment might include quadriceps strengthening, stretching of lateral thigh and knee structures, and avoidance of painful activities. A review of conservative management alone and in combination with orthoses use is provided later in this chapter.

Biomechanical Implications

Patellar strapping is commonly used to control pain in individuals with PFPS related to patellar tendinopathy.[92] These straps have been researched with regards to proprioception, pain, muscle activity, and dynamic alignment.[86,92-94] Unfortunately, the vast amount of literature pertaining to these orthoses is under powered. In those individuals who have patellar tendinopathy and low proprioceptive acuity, a patellar strap has been shown to demonstrate similar improvements in proprioception.[92] However, those with normal proprioceptive acuity and PFPS did not demonstrate any improvement by utilizing a patellar strap.[92] A randomized controlled trial conducted by de Vries et al.[93] demonstrated that patellar straps were found to decrease pain during athletic activities but were not superior to placebo taping. Patellar straps have also been shown to decrease vastus lateralis muscle activation prior to single limb landing, possibly resulting in decreased tensile stress on the patellar tendon.[94] In a later study, Rosen et al.[86] found that patellar straps reduced pain in single limb landing and resulted in improved patellar alignment.

Sinclair et al.[87] examined the use of a knee sleeve on controlling patellar tracking and pain during common sport movements, such as running and cutting, in athletes. The results of their study suggest significant reduction of patellofemoral force, resulting in decreased pain and improved overall function. When used for longer periods of time, a knee sleeve has been shown to improve knee pain and improve gait parameters in individuals with PFPS, and significant increase in gait speed, step length, and knee flexion angles have been reported.[95]

Conservative Management

Effective exercise interventions should target the underlying impairments found to contribute to patellofemoral pain. Commonly, targeted strengthening of the quadriceps, hip extensors, and hip abductors are utilized.[23,90] Limiting patellofemoral loading during exercise interventions is advocated. Other frequently used interventions include muscle stretching of the hamstrings, hip flexors, quadriceps, triceps surae, and ITB.[23] Patient education of the nature of PFPS, avoidance of aggravating activities, and indications for brace use should also be included.[90]

Petersen et al.[91] conducted a randomized clinical trial of over 150 participants to examine the effects physical therapy alone and in combination with knee bracing had on pain and function in individuals with PFPS. Both groups in the study demonstrated improvements in pain and functional outcome measures in the short and long term. However, the group that received bracing and physical therapy in combination demonstrated greater improvements in pain and function in the short term. At a 1-year follow-up, both groups demonstrated similar improvements. The findings of this larger scale, higher powered study are significant for brace prescription. They suggest that early intervention with a combination of bracing and physical therapy is important and leads to greater short-term improvements. Barton et al.[90] arrived at a similar conclusion, that bracing can be an effective intervention for short-term pain relief, but is likely not as effective in the long term. In a Cochrane review by Smith et al.[80] the authors conclude that there is very low-quality evidence that using a knee orthosis in combination with physical therapy may not reduce pain.

Recommendations

The overall low quality of available evidence and dissonance among the evidence that does exist shows the need for improved and continued research methodology to help guide clinicians' utilization of orthoses for PFPS. Additionally, it makes the task of prescribing such an orthosis challenging. Solinsky et al.[82] explored the factors influencing brace prescription for PFPS across sports medicine professionals (physicians, physical therapists, and athletic trainers). The findings suggest that there is little consensus among the professions and significant differences in prescription criteria, as well as bracing frequency. This implies that depending on which professional a patient encounters, they are likely to be assessed and prescribed orthoses in a different manner. PFPS should initially be managed with conservative intervention, which is individually tailored to the impairments of the patient and may include the use of a patellofemoral orthosis. When used, orthoses should be used in conjunction with selected exercise and behavior modification interventions.

Summary

This chapter reviews the normal structure and function of the tibiofemoral and patellofemoral joints and the common pathologic conditions that affect these joints. The different categories of orthoses for the knee complex are prophylactic orthoses, functional orthoses, and rehabilitation orthoses. Emphasis was placed on unloading knee orthoses and patellofemoral orthoses as a subcategory of rehabilitation orthoses. A review of the literature was presented. Although there continues to be debate among the research and clinicians regarding the use of these orthoses, improvements in the quality and strength of recommended orthoses has improved compared with previous orthoses. Identifying appropriate patients who would benefit from brace use is key to brace prescription. Interprofessional communication among the patients and the health care team, with input from the patient, is essential. This chapter discusses the application of the current research to allow the clinician to make the best possible decision for their patient's care. It is important for clinicians to continue to view knee orthosis use in a complementary sense to other conservative interventions, such as a comprehensive evidence-based rehabilitation program.

The intent of this chapter is to provide clinicians with the ability to evaluate the design and the intended treatment effects of a given knee orthosis and for appropriate application in the clinical setting. This chapter also highlights evidence in current research, including gaps in present knowledge. These gaps include the long-term effects of knee orthosis use and effects of new or novel brace design with the hopes of encouraging participation in ongoing research on the topic.

Case Example 11.1

M.G. is an 18-year-old college freshman who is referred to you with the diagnosis of an acute left anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) tear for management of knee pain and swelling. She reports feeling a large pop in her knee followed by immediate swelling after an awkward landing playing intramural volleyball. Complete ACL tear was confirmed with MRI. The incident happened 1 week ago, and she has been on bilateral crutches since. She would like to return to playing intramural volleyball and softball and is scheduled for surgical repair in 4 weeks.

On examination, she demonstrates significant weakness of the left quadriceps and hamstrings, significant knee joint effusion, knee flexion of 100 degrees, knee extension lacking 8 degrees, and difficulty with weight bearing, ambulation, balance, and stairs. She reports a feeling of instability, like her knee is going to buckle, when she tries to ambulate without assistance.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

1. Given M.G.'s history and current presentation, what additional tests and measures would aide in your evaluation process? What other functional tests could be performed?
2. What are your short-term goals with this patient, knowing that she will undergo surgical repair in 4 weeks?
3. Based on M.G.'s goals and your understanding of current literature, what would your recommendations for brace use be at this time?

M.G. comes back to your clinic to begin postoperative rehabilitation 14 days after her surgery. Surgery was successful and uncomplicated, using a hamstring autograft. She demonstrates appropriate healing at this point. She was provided with a functional knee brace postoperatively. She has been compliant with brace use and her home exercise program. She reports a feeling of increased knee stiffness and demonstrates active flexion of 80 degrees and active extension lacking 3 degrees. She has a follow up with the orthopedic surgeon tomorrow.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

1. Based on current research, is the use of an FKO warranted at this point in her rehabilitation? If not, how would you address that with the patient and her physician?
2. M.G. is curious regarding the use of a brace once she returns to playing recreational sports. What advice can you give her? How might you include bracing in your plan of care at that point?

RECOMMENDATIONS

The use of an FKO in the postoperative rehabilitation phase is not supported by current evidence to reduce impairments associated with surgery.[37,40,41,48] After successfully treating M.G. postoperatively, she has returned to pain-free daily function and light running with no pain or reactive effusion. Among other interventions, you have incorporated neuromuscular training to facilitate proprioception and dynamic strengthening to prepare her for return to sport. Based on her selected sports, sex, and age, you identify that she may be at higher risk for reinjury of the ACL and recommend that she obtain an FKO to wear while she plays sports.[1,46,47]

Case Example 11.2

F.L. is 72-year-old retired construction worker referred to your clinic for the management of right knee pain. Radiographs obtained from his physician reveal medial compartment tibiofemoral OA with considerable joint space narrowing. His knee pain has been getting progressively worse over the past 2 years. He walks 9 holes of golf twice per week and reports considerable pain on the medial aspect of the knee with prolonged standing and walking. At this point, F.L. cannot stand for more than 20 minutes without pain. He also has pain and stiffness with going up and down stairs and getting up from sitting. He reports that he has had two joint injections to the knee over the past 6 months, which provided short-term relief. Previously, he had used a neoprene knee sleeve which provided on-and-off results.

You treat F.L. with a physical therapy regimen centered on strengthening and joint mobility to improve his overall function. After 4 weeks of treatment, F.L. demonstrates minimal improvements in pain and function. F.L.'s physician recommends that F.L. undergo a total knee arthroplasty. However, F.L. does not want to have the procedure because of the associated risks and lengthy postoperative rehabilitation. He asks for your recommendation about other conservative interventions.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

1. What are your short- and long-term physical therapy goals with this patient?
2. Given your knowledge of the disease process of osteoarthritis, what is his prognosis?
3. Based on the patient's goals and expectations and utilizing your understanding of current research, what is your recommendation regarding brace use with F.L.? What evidence supports your decision?
4. Besides brace use, what are other conservative interventions that may be appropriate for this patient?

RECOMMENDATIONS

Utilizing the most current evidence available, you decide that wearing a valgus unloading brace may help diminish F.L.'s pain and increase his functional ability and his quality of life. You work closely with an orthotist to determine the most appropriate brace for this individual case. During the process, you educate F. L. that the evidence suggests that he can expect short-term benefits from brace use, but the long-term outcomes are not well understood. You emphasize that he should continue with his current regimen of strengthening, mobility exercises, and aerobic exercise in addition to using the valgus unloading brace.

References

1. Bodendorfer BM, Anoushiravani AA, Feeley BT, Gallo RA. Anterior cruciate ligament bracing: evidence in providing stability and preventing injury or graft re-rupture. *Phys Sportsmed.* 2013;41(3):92–102. https://doi.org/10.3810/psm.2013.09.2020.
2. Mortaza N, Ebrahimi I, Jamshidi AA, et al. The Effects of a Prophylactic Knee Brace and Two Neoprene Knee Sleeves on the Performance of Healthy Athletes: A Crossover Randomized Controlled Trial. *PLoS ONE.* 2012;7(11). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0050110.
3. Sinclair JK, Vincent H, Richards JD. Effects of prophylactic knee bracing on knee joint kinetics and kinematics during netball specific movements. *Phys Ther Sport.* 2017;23(Supplement C):93–98. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ptsp.2016.08.005.
4. Nordin M, Frankel V. *Basic Biomechanics of the Musculoskeletal System.* 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2012.
5. Levangie PK, Norkin CC. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis Co.; 2011
6. Neumann D. *Kinesiology of the Musculoskeletal System: Foundations for Rehabilitation.* 3rd ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier; 2017.
7. Terry G, Hughston J, Norwood L. Anatomy of the iliopatellar band and iliotibial tract. *Am J Sports Med.* 1986;14(1):39–45.
8. Grabiner M, Koh T, Draganich L. Neuromechanics of the patellofemoral joint. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 1994;26(1):10–21.
9. Van Kampen A, Huiskes R. The three-dimensional tracking pattern of the human patella. *J Orthop Res.* 1990;8(3):372–382.
10. Larson R, Cabaud H, Slocum D. The patellar compression syndrome: surgical treatment by lateral retinacular release. *Clin Orthop.* 1978;34:158–167.
11. Wiberg G. Roentgenographic and anatomic studies on the femoropatellar joint: with special references to chondromalacia patellae. *Acta Orthop Scandanavica.* 1941;12:319–409.
12. Muller W. *The Knee: Form, Function, and Ligament Reconstruction.* Berlin: Springer-Verlag; 1985.
13. Baltaci G, Aktas G, Camci E, Oksuz S, Yildiz S, Kalaycioglu T. The effect of prophylactic knee bracing on performance: balance, proprioception, coordination, and muscular power. *Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc.* 2011;19(10):1722–1728. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00167-011-1491-3.
14. Ewing KA, Begg RK, Galea MP, Lee PVS. Effects of Prophylactic Knee Bracing on Lower Limb Kinematics, Kinetics, and Energetics During Double-Leg Drop Landing at 2 Heights. *Am J Sports Med.* 2016;44(7):1753–1761. https://doi.org/10.1177/0363546516637178.
15. Ewing KA, Fernandez JW, Begg RK, Galea MP, Lee PVS. Prophylactic knee bracing alters lower-limb muscle forces during a double-leg drop landing. *J Biomech.* 2016;49(14):3347–3354. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbiomech.2016.08.029.
16. Hobara H, Hashizume S, Kobayashi Y. Effects of prophylactic ankle and knee braces on leg stiffness during hopping. *Open Access J Sports Med.* 2017;8:107–112. https://doi.org/10.2147/OAJSM.S132275.
17. Bottoni G, Herten A, Kofler P, Hasler M, Nachbauer W. The effect of knee brace and knee sleeve on the proprioception of the knee in young non-professional healthy sportsmen. *The Knee.* 2013;20(6):490–492. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knee.2013.05.001.
18. Mir SM, Talebian S, Naseri N, Hadian M-R. Assessment of Knee Proprioception in the Anterior Cruciate Ligament Injury Risk Position in Healthy Subjects: A Cross-sectional Study. *J Phys Ther Sci.* 2014;26(10):1515–1518. https://doi.org/10.1589/jpts.26.1515.
19. Dargo L, Robinson KJ, Games KE. Prevention of Knee and Anterior Cruciate Ligament Injuries Through the Use of Neuromuscular and Proprioceptive Training: An Evidence-Based Review. *J Athl Train.* 2017;52(12):1171–1172. https://doi.org/10.4085/1062-6050-52.12.21.
20. Zech A, HÜbscher M, Vogt L, Banzer W, HÄnsel F, Pfeifer K. Neuromuscular Training for Rehabilitation of Sports Injuries: A Systematic Review. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 2009;41(10):1831–1841. https://doi.org/10.1249/MSS.0b013e3181a3cf0d.
21. Ghai S, Driller M, Ghai I. Effects of joint stabilizers on proprioception and stability: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Phys Ther Sport.* 2017;25(Supplement C):65–75. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ptsp.2016.05.006.
22. Rishiraj N, Taunton JE, Lloyd-Smith R, Regan W, Niven B, Woollard R. Functional knee brace use effect on peak vertical ground reaction forces during drop jump landing. *Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc.* 2012;20(12):2405–2412. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00167-012-1911-z.
23. Dutton M. *Orthopaedic Examination, Evaluation, and Intervention.* 4th ed. China: McGraw-Hill Education; 2017.
24. Albright JP, Powell JW, Smith W, et al. Medial collateral ligament knee sprains in college football. Effectiveness of preventive braces. *Am J Sports Med.* 1994;22(1):12–18. https://doi.org/10.1177/036354659402200103.
25. Sitler M, Ryan J, Hopkinson W, et al. The efficacy of a prophylactic knee brace to reduce knee injuries in football. A prospective, randomized study at West Point. *Am J Sports Med.* 1990;18(3):310–315. https://doi.org/10.1177/036354659001800315.
26. Salata MJ, Gibbs AE, Sekiya JK. The Effectiveness of Prophylactic Knee Bracing in American Football. *Sports Health.* 2010;2(5):375–379. https://doi.org/10.1177/1941738110378986.
27. Highgenboten CL, Jackson A, Meske N, Smith J. The effects of knee brace wear on perceptual and metabolic variables during horizontal treadmill running. *Am J Sports Med.* 1991;19(6):639–643. https://doi.org/10.1177/036354659101900615.
28. Oatis C. *Kinesiology: The Mechanics and Pathomechanics of Human Movement.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer; 2017.
29. Palm H-G, Brattinger F, Stemueller B, Achatz G, Riesner H-J, Friemert B. Effects of knee bracing on postural control after anterior cruciate ligament rupture. *The Knee.* 2012;19:664–671.
30. Giotis D, Zampeli F, Pappas E, Mitsionis G, Papadopoulos P, Georgoulis AD. Effects of knee bracing on tibial rotation during high loading activities in anterior cruciate ligament-reconstructed knees. *Arthrosc J Arthrosc Relat Surg Off Publ Arthrosc Assoc N Am Int Arthrosc Assoc.* 2013;29(10):1644–1652. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arthro.2013.07.258.
31. Jalali M, Farahmand F, Mousavi SME, et al. Fluoroscopic Analysis of Tibial Translation in Anterior Cruciate Ligament Injured Knees With and Without Bracing During Forward Lunge. *Iran J Radiol Q J Publ Iran Radiol Soc.* 2015;12(3): e17832. https://doi.org/10.5812/iranjradiol.17832v2.
32. Pierrat B, Oullion R, Molimard J, et al. Characterisation of in-vivo mechanical action of knee braces regarding their anti-drawer effect. *The Knee.* 2015;22(2):80–87. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knee.2014.12.001.
33. Fernandes TL, Felix ECR, Bessa F, et al. Evaluation of static and dynamic balance in athletes with anterior cruciate ligament injury – A controlled study. *Clinics.* 2016;71(8):425–429. https://doi.org/10.6061/clinics/2016(08)03.
34. Mortaza N, Abu Osman NA, Jamshidi AA, Razjouyan J. Influence of Functional Knee Bracing on the Isokinetic and Functional Tests of Anterior Cruciate Ligament Deficient Patients. *PLoS ONE.* 2013;8(5). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0064308.
35. Giotis D, Zampeli F, Pappas E, Mitsionis G, Papadopoulos P, Georgoulis AD. The effect of knee braces on tibial rotation in anterior cruciate ligament-deficient knees during high-demand athletic activities. *Clin J Sport Med Off J Can Acad Sport Med.* 2013;23(4):287–292. https://doi.org/10.1097/JSM.0b013e31827ee800.
36. Rodríguez-Merchán EC. Knee Bracing After Anterior Cruciate Ligament Reconstruction. *Orthopedics.* 2016;39(4):e602–e609. https://doi.org/10.3928/01477447-20160513-04.
37. Nyland J, Mattocks A, Kibbe S, Kalloub A, Greene JW, Caborn DNM. Anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction, rehabilitation, and return to play: 2015 update. *Open Access J Sports Med.* 2016;7:21–32. https://doi.org/10.2147/OAJSM.S72332.
38. Giotis D, Paschos NK, Zampeli F, Pappas E, Mitsionis G, Georgoulis AD. Bracing can partially limit tibial rotation during stressful activities after anterior crucial ligament reconstruction with a hamstring graft. *Orthop Traumatol Surg Res OTSR.* 2016;102(5):601–606. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.otsr.2016.04.005.
39. LaPrade RF, Venderley MB, Dahl KD, Dornan GJ, Turnbull TL. Functional Brace in ACL Surgery: Force Quantification in an In Vivo Study. *Orthop J Sports Med.* 2017;5(7). https://doi.org/10.1177/2325967117714242.
40. Kruse LM, Gray B, Wright RW. Rehabilitation after anterior cruciate ligament reconstruction: a systematic review. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2012;94(19):1737–1748. https://doi.org/10.2106/JBJS.K.01246.
41. Mayr HO, Stüeken P, Münch E-O, et al. Brace or no-brace after ACL graft? Four-year results of a prospective clinical trial. *Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc Off J ESSKA.* 2014;22(5):1156–1162. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00167-013-2564-2.
42. Lindström M, Wredmark T, Wretling M-L, Henriksson M, Felländer-Tsai L. Post-operative bracing after ACL reconstruction has no effect

on knee joint effusion. A prospective, randomized study. *The Knee.* 2015;22(6):559–564. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knee.2015.04.015.
43. Dai B, Butler RJ, Garrett WE, Queen RM. Anterior Cruciate Ligament Reconstruction in Adolescent Patients: Limb Asymmetry and Functional Knee Bracing. *Am J Sports Med.* 2012;40(12):2756–2763. https://doi.org/10.1177/0363546512460837.
44. Sugimoto D, LeBlanc JC, Wooley SE, Micheli LJ, Kramer DE. The Effectiveness of a Functional Knee Brace on Joint-Position Sense in Anterior Cruciate Ligament-Reconstructed Individuals. *J Sport Rehabil.* 2016;25(2):190–194. https://doi.org/10.1123/jsr.2014-0226.
45. Harput G, Ulusoy B, Ozer H, Baltaci G, Richards J. External supports improve knee performance in anterior cruciate ligament reconstructed individuals with higher kinesiophobia levels. *The Knee.* 2016;23(5):807–812. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knee.2016.05.008.
46. Lowe WR, Warth RJ, Davis EP, Bailey L. Functional Bracing After Anterior Cruciate Ligament Reconstruction: A Systematic Review. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2017;25(3):239–249. https://doi.org/10.5435/JAAOS-D-15-00710.
47. Lang PJ, Sugimoto D, Micheli LJ. Prevention, treatment, and rehabilitation of anterior cruciate ligament injuries in children. *Open Access J Sports Med.* 2017;8:133–141. https://doi.org/10.2147/OAJSM.S133940.
48. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons. *Management of Anterior Cruciate Ligament Injuries. OrthoGuidelines.* http://www.orthoguidelines.org/guideline-detail?id=1259. Accessed 22 February 2018.
49. Cudejko T, van der Esch M, van der Leeden M, et al. Effect of Soft Braces on Pain and Physical Function in Patients With Knee Osteoarthritis: Systematic Review With Meta-Analyses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* July 2017. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apmr.2017.04.029.
50. Duivenvoorden T, Brouwer RW, van Raaij TM, Verhagen AP, Verhaar JA, Bierma-Zeinstra SM. Braces and orthoses for treating osteoarthritis of the knee. In: *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews.* John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2015. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD004020.pub3.
51. Coudeyre E, Nguyen C, Chabaud A, et al. A decision-making tool to prescribe knee orthoses in daily practice for patients with osteoarthritis. *Ann Phys Rehabil Med.* February 2018;https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rehab.2018.01.001.
52. Moyer RF, Birmingham TB, Bryant DM, Giffin JR, Marriott KA, Leitch KM. Biomechanical effects of valgus knee bracing: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage.* 2015;23(2):178–188. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.joca.2014.11.018.
53. Zhang W, Moskowitz RW, Nuki G, et al. OARSI recommendations for the management of hip and knee osteoarthritis, Part II: OARSI evidence-based, expert consensus guidelines. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage.* 2008;16(2):137–162. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.joca.2007.12.013.
54. Jevsevar D. Treatment of osteoarthritis of the knee: evidence-based guideline, 2nd ed. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2013;21(9).
55. Petersen W, Ellermann A, Zantop T, et al. Biomechanical effect of unloader braces for medial osteoarthritis of the knee: a systematic review (CRD 42015026136). *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg.* 2016;136(5):649–656. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00402-015-2388-2.
56. Steadman JR, Briggs KK, Pomeroy SM, Wijdicks CA. Current state of unloading braces for knee osteoarthritis. *Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc Off J ESSKA.* 2016;24(1):42–50. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00167-014-3305-x.
57. Laroche D, Morisset C, Fortunet C, Gremeaux V, Maillefert J-F, Ornetti P. Biomechanical effectiveness of a distraction–rotation knee brace in medial knee osteoarthritis: Preliminary results. *The Knee.* 2014;21(3):710–716. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knee.2014.02.015.
58. Callaghan MJ, Guney H, Reeves ND, et al. A knee brace alters patella position in patellofemoral osteoarthritis: a study using weight bearing magnetic resonance imaging. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage.* 2016;24(12):2055–2060. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.joca.2016.07.003.
59. Fantini Pagani CH, Willwacher S, Kleis B, Brüggemann G-P. Influence of a valgus knee brace on muscle activation and co-contraction in patients with medial knee osteoarthritis. *J Electromyogr Kinesiol.* 2013;23(2):490–500. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jelekin.2012.10.007.
60. Ebert JR, Hambly K, Joss B, Ackland TR, Donnelly CJ. Does an Unloader Brace Reduce Knee Loading in Normally Aligned Knees? *Clin Orthop.* 2014;472(3):915–922. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11999-013-3297-8.
61. Cherian JJ, Bhave A, Kapadia BH, Starr R, McElroy MJ, Mont MA. Strength and Functional Improvement Using Pneumatic Brace with Extension Assist for End-Stage Knee Osteoarthritis: A Prospective, Randomized trial. *J Arthroplasty.* 2015;30(5):747–753. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arth.2014.11.036.
62. Larsen BL, Jacofsky MC, Brown JA, Jacofsky DJ. Valgus bracing affords short-term treatment solution across walking and sit-to-stand activities. *J Arthroplasty.* 2013;28(5):792–797. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arth.2012.09.022.
63. Lamberg EM, Streb R, Werner M, Kremenic I, Penna J. The 2- and 8-week effects of decompressive brace use in people with medial compartment knee osteoarthritis. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016;40(4):447–453. https://doi.org/10.1177/0309364615589537.
64. Fu HCH, Lie CWH, Ng TP, Chen KW, Tse CY, Wong WH. Prospective study on the effects of orthotic treatment for medial knee osteoarthritis in Chinese patients: clinical outcome and gait analysis. *Hong Kong Med J Xianggang Yi Xue Za Zhi.* 2015;21(2):98–106. https://doi.org/10.12809/hkmj144311.
65. Dessery Y, Belzile ÉL, Turmel S, Corbeil P. Comparison of three knee braces in the treatment of medial knee osteoarthritis. *The Knee.* 2014;21(6):1107–1114. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knee.2014.07.024.
66. Schween R, Gehring D, Gollhofer A. Immediate effects of an elastic knee sleeve on frontal plane gait biomechanics in knee osteoarthritis. *PloS One.* 2015;10(1): e0115782. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0115782.
67. Cudejko T, van der Esch M, van der Leeden M, et al. The immediate effect of a soft knee brace on pain, activity limitations, self-reported knee instability, and self-reported knee confidence in patients with knee osteoarthritis. *Arthritis Res Ther.* 2017;19(1). https://doi.org/10.1186/s13075-017-1456-0.
68. Moyer RF, Birmingham TB, Bryant DM, Giffin JR, Marriott KA, Leitch KM. Valgus bracing for knee osteoarthritis: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. *Arthritis Care Res.* 2015;67(4):493–501. https://doi.org/10.1002/acr.22472.
69. Gohal C, Shanmugaraj A, Tate P, et al. Effectiveness of Valgus Offloading Knee Braces in the Treatment of Medial Compartment Knee Osteoarthritis: A Systematic Review. *Sports Health.* March 2018. https://doi.org/10.1177/1941738118763913 1941738118763913.
70. Briggs KK, Matheny LM, Steadman JR. Improvement in quality of life with use of an unloader knee brace in active patients with OA: a prospective cohort study. *J Knee Surg.* 2012;25(5):417–421. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0032-1313748.
71. Maleki M, Arazpour M, Joghtaei M, Hutchins SW, Aboutorabi A, Pouyan A. The effect of knee orthoses on gait parameters in medial knee compartment osteoarthritis: A literature review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016;40(2):193–201. https://doi.org/10.1177/0309364614547411.
72. Jones RK, Nester CJ, Richards JD, et al. A comparison of the biomechanical effects of valgus knee braces and lateral wedged insoles in patients with knee osteoarthritis. *Gait Posture.* 2013;37(3):368–372. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gaitpost.2012.08.002.
73. Arazpour M, Bani MA, Maleki M, Ghomshe FT, Kashani RV, Hutchins SW. Comparison of the efficacy of laterally wedged insoles and bespoke unloader knee orthoses in treating medial compartment knee osteoarthritis. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2013;37(1):50–57. https://doi.org/10.1177/0309364612447094.
74. Collins A, Blackburn T, Olcott C, Jordan JM, Yu B, Weinhold P. A kinetic and kinematic analysis of the effect of stochastic resonance electrical stimulation and knee sleeve during gait in osteoarthritis of the knee. *J Appl Biomech.* 2014;30(1):104–112. https://doi.org/10.1123/jab.2012-0257.
75. Hungerford DS, Maclaughlin EJ, Mines CM, et al. Synergistic effect of using a transcutaneous electrical joint stimulator and an unloading brace in treating osteoarthritis of the knee. *Am J Orthop Belle Mead NJ.* 2013;42(10):456–463.
76. Squyer E, Stamper DL, Hamilton DT, Sabin JA, Leopold SS. Unloader knee braces for osteoarthritis: do patients actually wear them? *Clin Orthop.* 2013;471(6):1982–1991. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11999-013-2814-0.
77. Cherian JJ, Jauregui JJ, Leichliter AK, Elmallah RK, Bhave A, Mont MA. The effects of various physical non-operative modalities on the pain in osteoarthritis of the knee. *Bone Jt J.* 2016;98-B(1 Suppl A):89–94. https://doi.org/10.1302/0301-620X.98B1.36353.
78. Hussain S, Neilly D, Baliga S, Patil S, Meek R. Knee osteoarthritis: a review of management options. *Scott Med J.* 2016;61(1):7–16. https://doi.org/10.1177/0036933015619588.
79. Poddar SK, Widstrom L. Nonoperative Options for Management of Articular Cartilage Disease. *Clin Sports Med.* 2017;36(3):447–456. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csm.2017.02.003.

80. Smith TO, Drew BT, Meek TH, Clark AB. Knee orthoses for treating patellofemoral pain syndrome. In: *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2015. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD010513.pub2.
81. Callaghan MJ, Parkes MJ, Hutchinson CE, et al. A randomised trial of a brace for patellofemoral osteoarthritis targeting knee pain and bone marrow lesions. *Ann Rheum Dis.* 2015;74(6):1164–1170. https://doi.org/10.1136/annrheumdis-2014-206376.
82. Solinsky R, Beaupre GS, Fredericson M. Variable Criteria for Patellofemoral Bracing Among Sports Medicine Professionals. *PM&R*. 2014;6(6):498–505. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pmrj.2014.01.008.
83. Callaghan MJ, Parkes MJ, Felson DT. The Effect of Knee Braces on Quadriceps Strength and Inhibition in Subjects With Patellofemoral Osteoarthritis. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2015;46(1):19–25. https://doi.org/10.2519/jospt.2016.5093.
84. Yu SP, Williams M, Eyles JP, Chen JS, Makovey J, Hunter DJ. Effectiveness of knee bracing in osteoarthritis: pragmatic trial in a multidisciplinary clinic. *Int J Rheum Dis.* 2016;19(3):279–286. https://doi.org/10.1111/1756-185X.12796.
85. Crossley KM, Vicenzino B, Lentzos J, et al. Exercise, education, manual-therapy and taping compared to education for patellofemoral osteoarthritis: a blinded, randomised clinical trial. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage.* 2015;23(9):1457–1464. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.joca.2015.04.024.
86. Rosen AB, Ko JN, Brown C. Single-limb landing biomechanics are altered and patellar tendinopathy related pain is reduced with acute infrapatellar strap application. *The Knee.* 2017;24(4):761–767. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.knee.2017.03.003.
87. Sinclair JK, Selfe J, Taylor PJ, Shore HF, Richards JD. Influence of a knee brace intervention on perceived pain and patellofemoral loading in recreational athletes. *Clin Biomech.* 2016;37(Supplement C):7–12. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clinbiomech.2016.05.002.
88. Laprade J, Culham E. Radiographic Measures in Subjects Who Are Asymptomatic and Subjects With Patellofemoral Pain Syndrome. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2003;414:172. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.blo.0000079269.91782.f5.
89. Taunton JE, Ryan MB, Clement DB, McKenzie DC, Lloyd-Smith DR, Zumbo BD. A retrospective case-control analysis of 2002 running injuries. *Br J Sports Med.* 2002;36(2):95–101.
90. Barton CJ, Lack S, Hemmings S, Tufail S, Morrissey D. The 'Best Practice Guide to Conservative Management of Patellofemoral Pain': incorporating level 1 evidence with expert clinical reasoning. *Br J Sports Med.* 2015;49(14):923–934. https://doi.org/10.1136/bjsports-2014-093637.
91. Petersen W, Ellermann A, Rembitzki IV, et al. The Patella Pro study — effect of a knee brace on patellofemoral pain syndrome: design of a randomized clinical trial (DRKS-ID:DRKS00003291). *BMC Musculoskelet Disord.* 2014;15:200. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2474-15-200.
92. de Vries AJ, van den Akker-Scheek I, Haak SL, Diercks RL, van der Worp H, Zwerver J. Effect of a patellar strap on the joint position sense of the symptomatic knee in athletes with patellar tendinopathy. *J Sci Med Sport*. April 2017. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsams.2017.04.020.
93. de Vries A, Zwerver J, Diercks R, et al. Effect of patellar strap and sports tape on pain in patellar tendinopathy: A randomized controlled trial. *Scand J Med Sci Sports.* 2016;26(10):1217–1224. https://doi.org/10.1111/sms.12556.
94. Rosen AB, Ko J, Simpson KJ, Brown CN. Patellar tendon straps decrease pre-landing quadriceps activation in males with patellar tendinopathy. *Phys Ther Sport*. 2017;24(Supplement C):13–19. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ptsp.2016.09.007.
95. Arazpour M, Notarki TT, Salimi A, Bani MA, Nabavi H, Hutchins SW. The effect of patellofemoral bracing on walking in individuals with patellofemoral pain syndrome. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2013;37(6):465–470. https://doi.org/10.1177/0309364613476535.

12 Orthoses in Orthopedic Care and Trauma☆

MELISSA THACKER, BRADLEY CONNER, and MICHELLE M. LUSARDI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Review the characteristics of normal bone structure and function across the life span.
2. Describe the most common musculoskeletal injuries that occur at various points in the life span.
3. Identify orthotic interventions for congenital and growth-related musculoskeletal impairments.
4. Classify fracture of bone by type and severity and describe the interventions most often used by orthopedists and orthopedic surgeons on the basis of fracture type.
5. Discuss the different orthotic options for fracture management: joint immobilization, fracture bracing, and external stabilization in common orthopedic injuries to the extremities.
6. Delineate the roles of health care team members in the rehabilitation and orthotic management of individuals with congenital and acquired musculoskeletal impairment.

Orthoses play a significant role in orthopedic and rehabilitative care of individuals with many different types of musculoskeletal pathologic conditions and impairments. Dysfunction of the musculoskeletal system can be the result of congenital or developmental disorders or can be acquired as a result of overuse injury, systemic disease, infection, neoplasm, or trauma at any point in the life span. This chapter focuses on the use of orthoses to manage congenital and developmental musculoskeletal problems in children and fractures of long bones of the lower extremity.

The understanding of how orthoses are helpful in the care of those with musculoskeletal impairments is founded on knowledge of the development and physiology of musculoskeletal tissues (bone, cartilage, ligaments, menisci, muscles, and their tendons or aponeuroses); the kinesiological relationships among these tissues; and an understanding of how these tissues remodel in response to physical stressors (forces).[1,2] This chapter begins with an overview of the anatomy of bone, its growth and remodeling, and the principles behind the rehabilitation (examination and intervention) of persons with disorders of bone. Then the authors look specifically at disorders of the hip joint and orthotic/orthopedic strategies for limb fractures.

Bone Structure and Function

In anatomy classes and texts, students learn that the mature adult human skeleton is composed of 206 bones (Fig. 12.1), ranging from the long bones of the extremities, the blocklike vertebrae of the spine, the encasing protective ribs and skull, and the multiarticulating carpals and tarsals of the wrist and ankles that enable positioning of the hands and feet for functional activities.[3,4] Bony prominences formed during development from the force of muscle contraction at tendinous origins and insertions are identified.[1] Students scrutinize articular surfaces to understand how joints move, consider the hyaline cartilage that protects the joint from repeated loading and shear during activity, and learn to examine the ligaments that maintain alignment for normal joint function. From a skeletal model or examination of bone specimens in anatomy laboratory, it is not intuitively apparent that living bone is a dynamic and metabolically active tissue serving multiple purposes and physiological roles.[5] These include storage and homeostasis of calcium, phosphate, magnesium, sodium, and carbonate (via ongoing osteoblastic and osteoclastic activity in conjunction with kidney function); production of erythrocytes, granular leukocytes, and platelets in the marrow; physical growth and development (by responsiveness to the pituitary hormones at the epiphyseal plate); provision of a protective and functional frame for the organs of the thorax and abdomen (how would people breathe without ribs?); and body weight support when the body is either at rest or in motion during functional activities.[6]

Bone is a dense, regular, connective tissue derived from embryonic mesoderm. It contains a combination of specialized cells (osteoblasts, osteocytes, osteoclasts) embedded in a matrix of minerals (70%), protein (22%), and water (8%). The many bones of the human body can be described as long or short tubular bone (e.g., the femur, tibia, metatarsals, phalanges), flat bone (e.g., the pelvis or skull), irregular bone (e.g., the tarsals and carpals), sesamoid bone embedded within tendons (e.g., patella), or accessory bones (e.g., ossicles of the middle ear). Alternatively, they can be classified as primarily cortical (dense) or cancellous (trabecular) bone

☆The authors extend appreciation to William J. Barringer, Melvin L. Stills, Joshua L. Carter, and Mark Charlson, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

on the basis of the density and arrangement of their components. Long bones are subdivided into regions, each of which has its own blood supply (Fig. 12.2). The diaphysis (shaft) is supplied by one or more nutrient arteries that penetrate the layers of the bony cortex, dividing into central longitudinal arteries within the marrow cavity. The flared metaphyses serve as an area of transition from cortical to cancellous bone and are supplied by separate metaphysical arterioles. The epiphyses are metabolically active areas of cancellous bone with supportive trabeculae, with an extensive capillary network derived from epiphyseal arteries. The epiphysis is actively remodeled over the life span in response

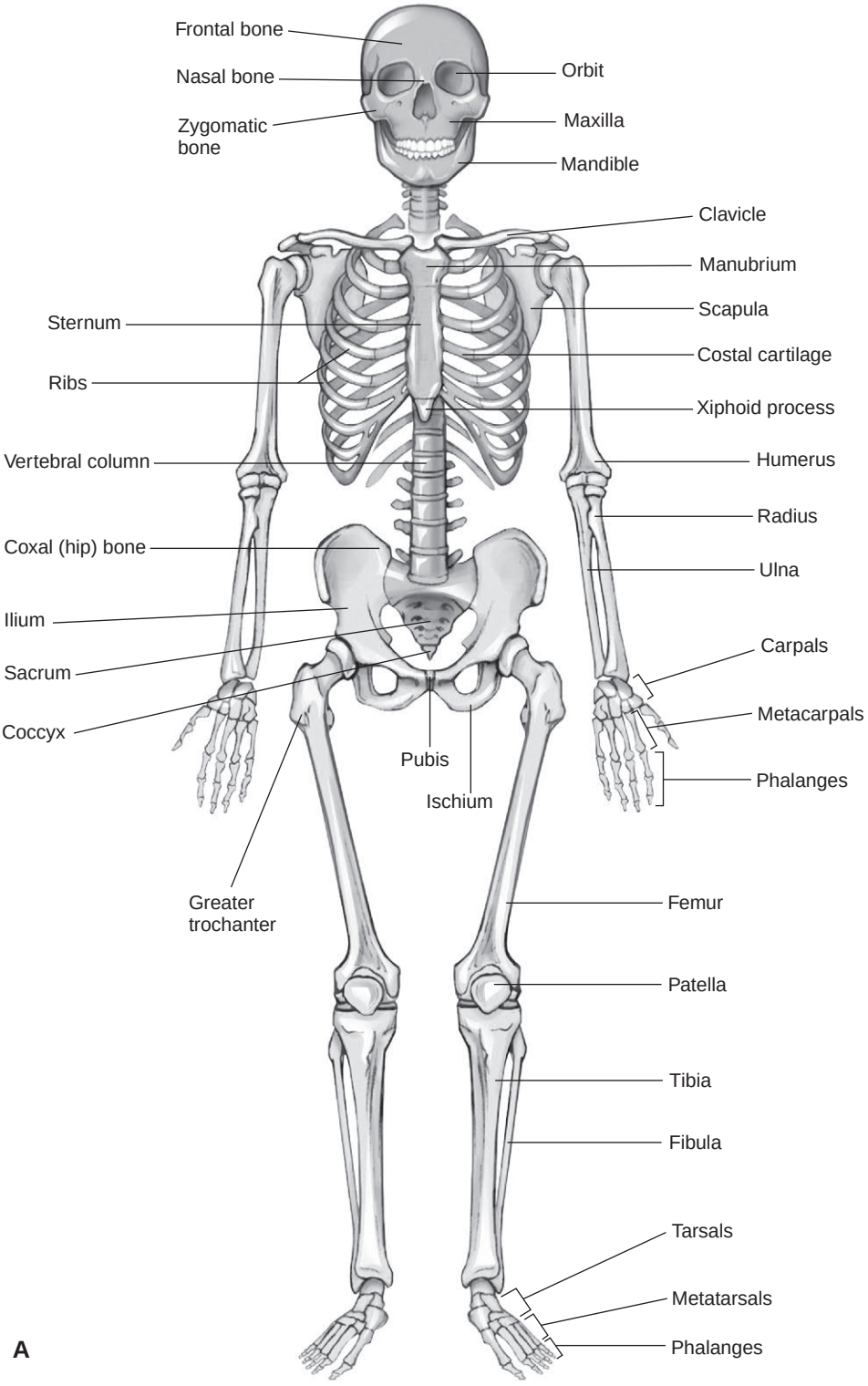


Fig. 12.1 The bones of the human skeleton. (A) Anterior view.

Continued

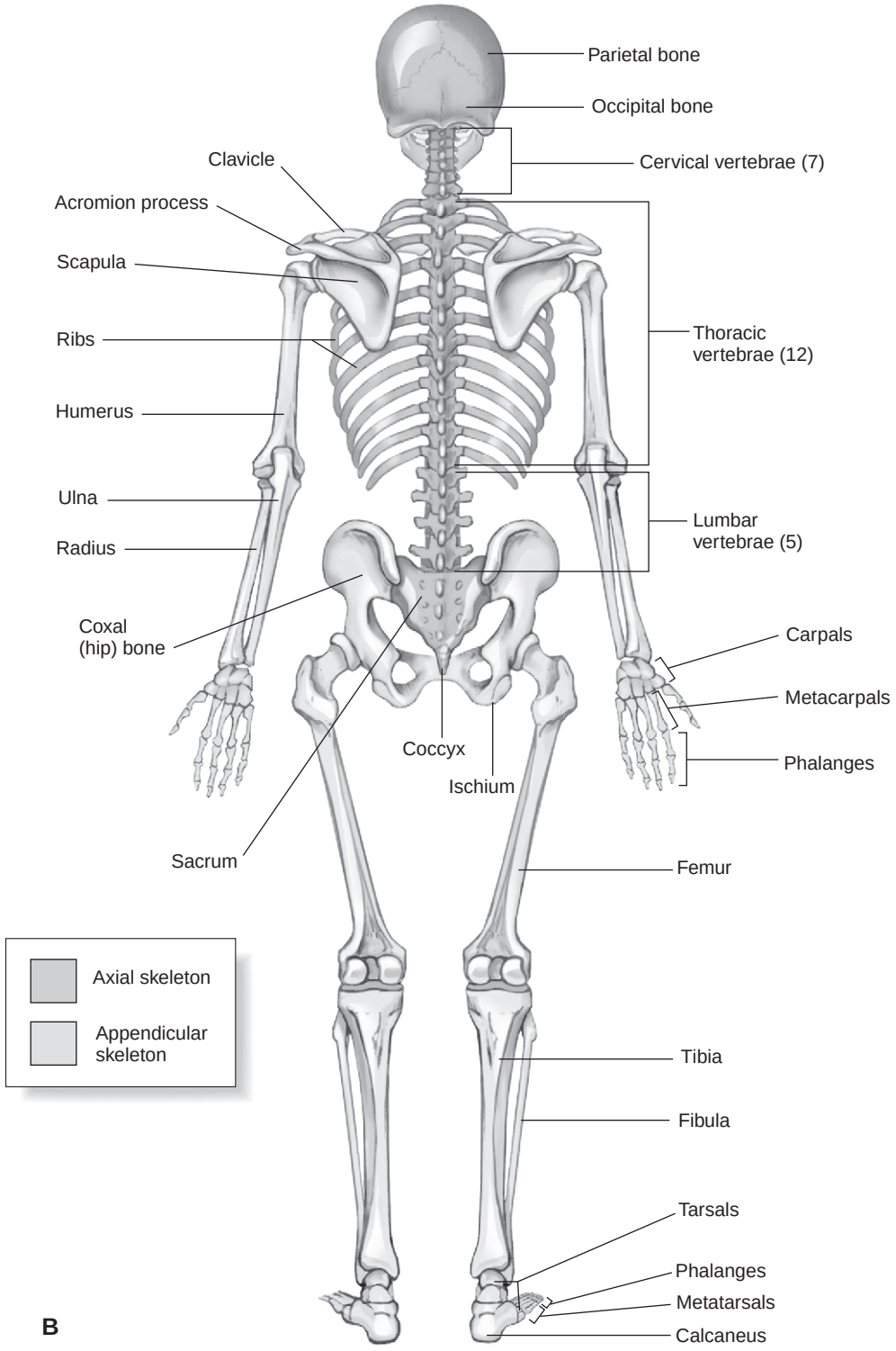


Fig. 12.1, cont'd (B) **Posterior view.** (From Thibodeau GA, Patton KT. *Anatomy and Physiology*. 5th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2003.)

to weight bearing and muscle contraction during activity.[7] In childhood and adolescence, before skeletal maturation, the bony metaphyses and epiphyses are connected by cartilaginous epiphyseal (growth) plate, which calcifies and fuses throughout various periods of development. The periosteum is a layer of less dense, vascularized connective tissue that overlies and protects the external surface of all bone and houses osteoblastic cells necessary for bone deposition and growth. The periosteum is replaced by articular (hyaline) cartilage within the joint capsule. The endosteum, a thin connective tissue lining of the marrow cavity of long bones and the internal spaces of cancellous bone of the marrow

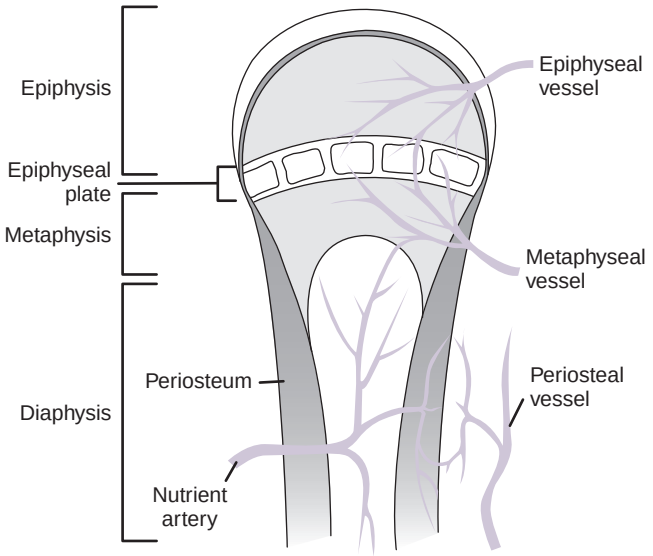


Fig. 12.2 Diagram of the regions (epiphysis, epiphyseal plate, metaphysis, and diaphysis) of a long bone and their arterial vascular supply. (Modified from Lundon K. *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science, Principles for Clinical Management of Bone.* Boston: Butterworth Heinemann; 2000.)

space, also houses osteoblasts. Both linings are active as part of osteogenesis during growth and fracture healing.

Cortical bone is the most highly mineralized type of bone found in the shafts (diaphyses) of the long bones of the body and serves as the outer protective layer of the metaphysis and epiphysis of tubular bone, as well as the external layers of flat, irregular, and sesamoid bones. Most of the bones in the human skeleton (80%–85%) are primarily cortical with cancellous/trabecular bone in the metaphyseal and epiphyseal region. Cross section of a long tubular bone reveals three layers of cortical bone: the inner or endosteal region next to the marrow cavity, the metabolic intracortical or haversian region with its haversian canals surrounded by concentric layered rings (osteons) and Volkmann canals containing a perpendicularly arranged anastomosing capillary network, and the dense outer periosteal region (Fig. 12.3).

Cancellous (trabecular) bone with its honeycomb or spongy appearance is much more metabolically active and much less mineralized than cortical bone. Cancellous bone is composed of branching bony spicules (trabeculae) arranged in interconnecting lamellae to form a framework for weight bearing (Fig. 12.4A). In the vertebral bodies, for example, trabeculae are arranged in an interconnecting horizontal and vertical network oriented perpendicular to the lines of weight-bearing stress into a boxlike shape (see Fig. 12.4B). In contrast, trabeculae in the proximal femur form an archlike structure to support weight-bearing forces between the hip joint and femoral shaft in living bone, cavities between trabeculae are filled with bone marrow. When bone becomes osteoporotic, the cavities enlarge due to loss of bone mass.

Three types of cells are embedded within the various compartments of bone. *Osteoblasts*, bone building cells, synthesize and secrete the organic matrix of bone (osteoid) that mineralizes as bone matures. They are located under periosteum and endosteum and are active in times of bone growth and repair. *Osteocytes* are matured and inactive osteoblasts that have become embedded within bone matrix. Osteocytes remain connected to active osteoblasts via long dendritic processes running through the canaliculi (small channels) within the bone matrix. Both osteoblasts and osteocytes are responsive to circulating growth hormones, growth factors, and cytokines, as well as mechanical stressors and fluid flow within the bone itself.[8,9] Osteocytes are thought to be involved in mineral exchange, detection of strain and fatigue, and control of mechanically induced remodeling.[10] *Osteoclasts*, derived from precursor cells in bone marrow, are macrophage-like cells that can move throughout bone to resorb bone by releasing minerals from the matrix and removing damaged organic components of bone.[11,12]

The epiphyses of long bones, the vertebrae, and large flat bones house nociceptors and mechanoreceptors and a network of afferent sensory neurons that contribute to exteroceptive (primarily pain) pathways.[13] The periosteum has a particularly rich neural network with branches that continue along with penetrating nutrient arteries into the haversian canals into the diaphysis.

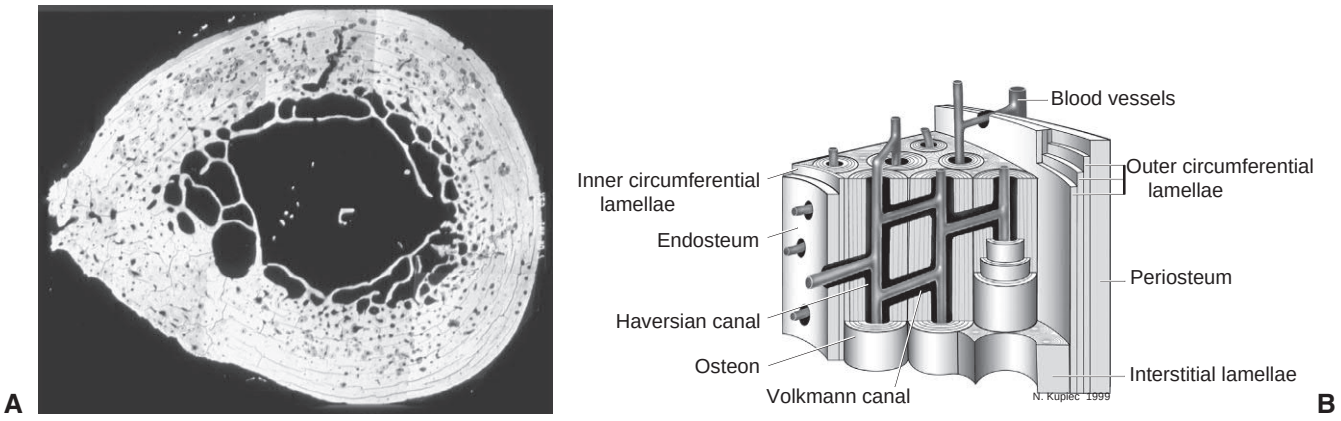


Fig. 12.3 (A) A cross section through the diaphysis of a long bone, with the external periosteal layer, the middle haversian/intracortical layer, the inner endosteal layer, and the marrow cavity. (B) Diagram of a cross section through the diaphysis of a long bone. (From Lundon K. *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science: Principles for Clinical Management of Bone.* Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000.)

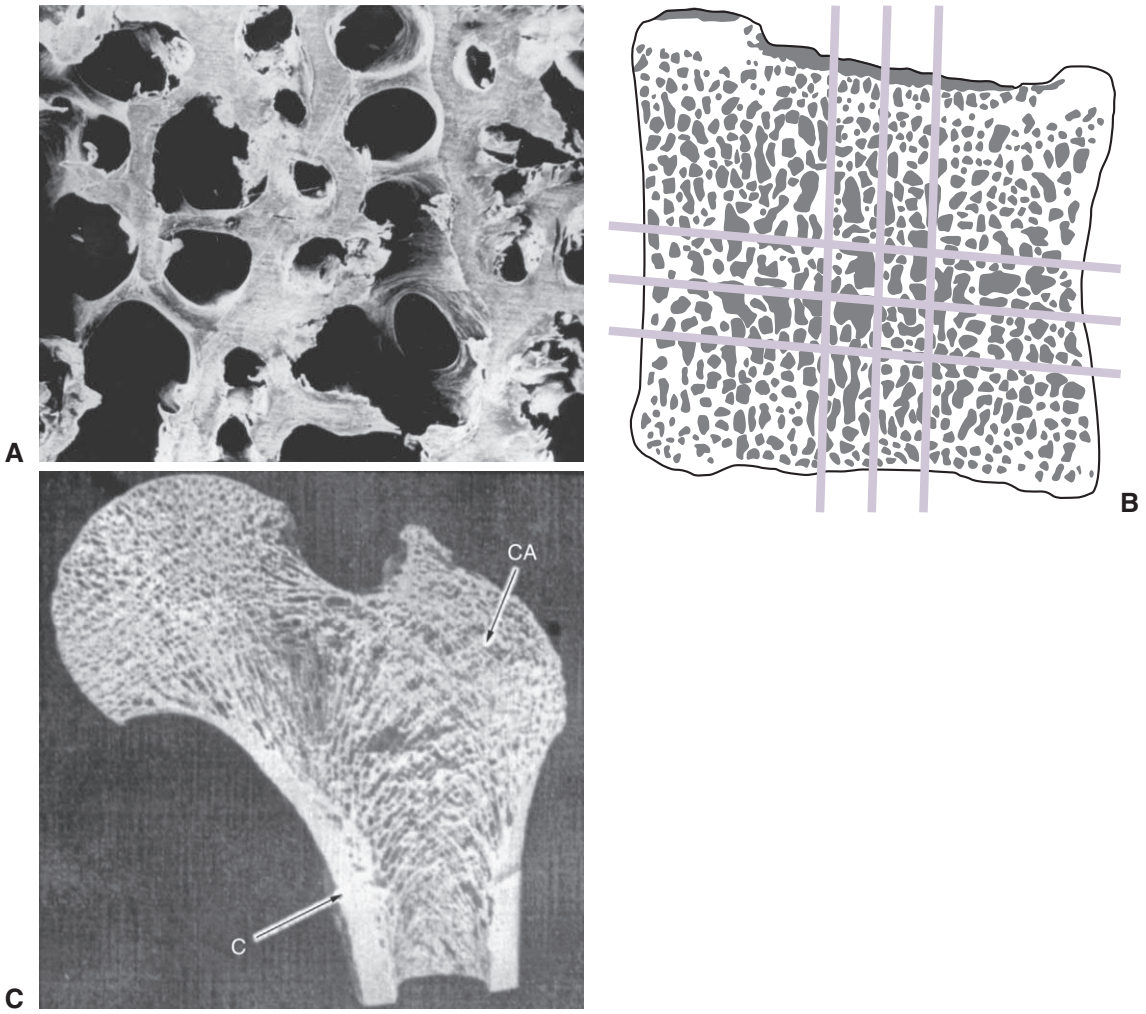


Fig. 12.4 (A) Scanning electron microscope view of cancellous/trabecular bone. (B) The trabecular pattern in a healthy lumbar vertebra demonstrates bone tissue's response to vertical and horizontal forces during upright activity. (C) The relationship of form and function is demonstrated by the arched bridgelike trabecular pattern in this cross section of the proximal femur. *C*, Cortical bone; *CA*, cancellous bone. (From Lundon K. *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science: Principles for Clinical Management of Bone.* Boston: Butterworth Heinemann; 2000.)

Bone Growth and Remodeling Over the Life Span

During childhood and adolescence, growth occurs through the process of modeling, in which bones increase in length and diameter and are reshaped until the epiphyseal plates calcify and skeletal maturity is achieved (typically in mid-adolescence for females and early adulthood for males).[14] In adulthood, bone health is maintained by the ongoing process of remodeling, in which there is a balance and coupling between osteoblastic deposition of new bone substance and osteoclastic resorption of existing bone.[15] This ongoing process of turnover means that the internal architecture of living bone is actively restructured and replaced at a rate of approximately 5% per year in cortical bone and up to 20% per year in cancellous bone.[5] The rate of bone formation, resorption, and turnover is influenced by both systemic hormones and other substances (e.g., parathyroid hormone, calcitonin, vitamin D from the kidney, growth hormone, adrenocorticosteroids, estrogen, progesterone, androgens); local cell-derived growth factors; and availability of essential nutrients (calcium, fluoride, vitamin A, vitamin D, and vitamin E).[16–18] These substances, along with blood or urinary levels of certain enzymes active during turnover and metabolites of bone resorption, are monitored as biomarkers to track progression of bone diseases associated with high rates of bone resorption (e.g., Paget disease, osteoporosis, hyperparathyroidism) and to determine efficacy of medical-pharmaceutical interventions for these diseases.[19–21]

In the prenatal period and in infancy, the flat bones of the skull develop as the fetal mesenchyme that forms the periosteum begins to ossify (intramembranous ossification). Most long bones, as well as the vertebrae and pelvis, develop from a cartilaginous framework or template. In this process of endochondral bone formation, cartilage cells mature and eventually ossify.[7] During childhood and adolescence, bones grow in both length and diameter and are dynamically modeled toward their mature configurations.[22] During puberty, accumulation of bone mass accelerates; by the end of puberty, as much as 90% of mature bone mass is established.[23] For young children with abnormal skeletal development, orthoses attempt to capitalize on the dynamic modeling process, applying external forces to influence bone

shape and length.[24] For approximately 15 years following puberty, after closure of the epiphyseal plates of the long bones, bone mass continues to increase—a process described as *consolidation*.[22] Gender differences in peak bone mass have been well documented: Average peak bone mass in women is approximately 20% less than that of men. Early in the midlife period, both men and women enter a period of gradual endochondral bone loss that appears to be genetically determined; the rate of bone loss is also influenced by hormonal status, nutrition, smoking and alcohol use, and activity level.[25–28] It is estimated that males will lose between 15% and 40% of cancellous bone mass and 5% to 15% of cortical bone mass over their lifetime. In women, menopause accelerates the rate of bone loss; there may be up to a 50% decrease from peak cancellous bone mass and 30% decrease in cortical bone mass over their lifetimes.[29] Significant loss of bone mass is associated with increasing vulnerability to fracture, especially among postmenopausal women.

Orthoses in the Management of Hip Dysfunction

Hip orthoses are important in the management of hip disorders in infants and children, as well as in the postsurgical care of children and adults. An understanding of the designs of and indications for various hip orthoses is essential for physicians and rehabilitation professionals working with individuals who have orthopedic problems of the pelvis, hip joint, or proximal femur. For children with developmental dysplasia of the hip (DDH) or Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease (LCPD), hip orthoses are the primary intervention for prevention of future deformity and disability. Hip orthoses are essential elements of postoperative care and rehabilitation programs for children with musculoskeletal and neuromuscular conditions who have had surgical intervention for bony deformity or soft tissue contracture. Hip orthoses can also be major postoperative interventions for adults who have had repair of a traumatic injury or a complex total hip arthroplasty. In cases of recurrent hip dislocations, hip orthoses may be indicated to provide external support to prevent future occurrence of dislocation. The efficacy of orthotic intervention is influenced by patient and caregiver adherence: The key to successful use of these orthoses is clear, and open communication exists among the physician, therapist, orthotist, and family concerning the primary goals of the orthosis, its proper application and wearing schedule, and the possible difficulties that may be encountered. Positive health care outcomes and happy patients and families are contingent on the ability of the health care team to communicate.

WHEN ARE HIP ORTHOSIS INDICATED?

Most nontraumatic hip joint dysfunction or pathology occurs either in childhood or in late adult life and is frequently related to one or more of the four following factors:

1. Inadequate or ineffective development of the acetabulum and head of the femur in infancy
2. Avascular necrosis of the femoral head associated with inadequate blood supply during childhood
3. Loss of cartilage and abnormal bone deposition associated with osteoarthritis
4. Loss of bone strength and density in osteoporosis

Orthotic intervention is an important component in the orthopedic management of many of these conditions. Most often, hip orthoses are used to protect or position the hip joint by limiting motion within a desirable range of flexion/extension and abduction/adduction. It is important to note that hip orthoses alone are not effective in controlling internal/external rotation of the hip joint. If precise rotational control is desired, a hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis (HKAFO) must be used.

HIP STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

The hip (coxofemoral) joint is a synovial joint formed by the concave socketlike acetabulum of the pelvis and the rounded ball-like head of the femur (Fig. 12.5). Because of the unique bony structure of the hip joint, movement is possible in all three planes of motion: flexion/extension in the sagittal plane, abduction/adduction in the frontal plane, and internal/external rotation in the transverse plane. Most functional activities blend movement of the femur on the pelvis (or of the pelvis on the femur) across all three planes of motion.

The hip joint has two important functions. First, it must support the weight of the head, arms, and trunk during functional activities (e.g., erect sitting and standing, walking, running, stair climbing, and transitional movements

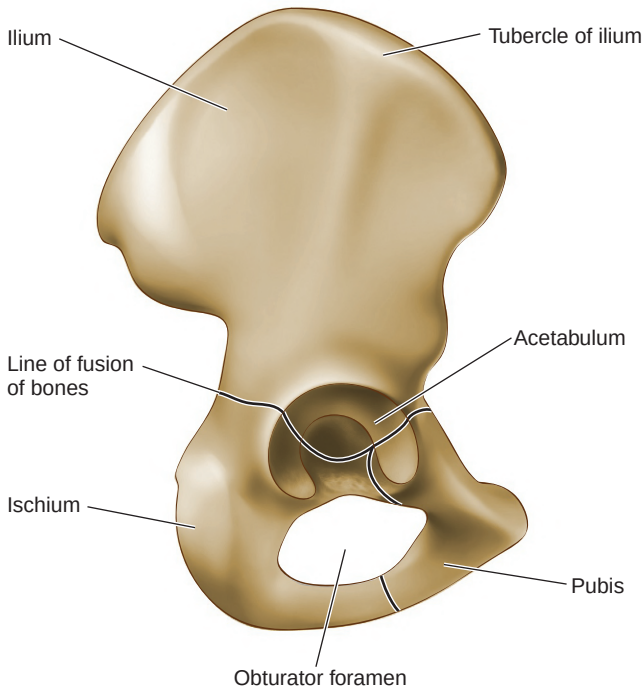


Fig. 12.5 Anatomy of the hip. (From Berry DJ, Lieberman JR. *Surgery of the Hip*. Volume 2, Sections VII–XII. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2013.)

in activities of daily living). Second, it must effectively transmit forces from the pelvis to the lower extremities during quiet standing, gait, and other closed chain activities.[30]

The acetabulum is formed at the convergence of the pubis, ischium, and ilium. Its primary orientation is in the vertical, facing laterally, but it also has a slight inferior inclination and an anteverted, or anterior-facing, tilt. Developmentally, the depth of the acetabulum is dynamically shaped by motion of the head of the femur during leg movement and weight bearing. The acetabulum is not fully ossified until late adolescence or early young adulthood. The articular surface of the acetabulum is a horseshoe-shaped, hyaline cartilage–covered area around its anterior, superior, and posterior edges. A space along the inferior edge, called the acetabular notch, is nonarticular, has no cartilage covering, and is spanned by the transverse acetabular ligament. The acetabular labrum is a fibrocartilaginous ring that encircles the exterior perimeter of the acetabulum, increasing joint depth and concavity. The center of the acetabulum, the acetabular fossa, contains fibroelastic fat and the ligamentum teres, and is covered by synovial membrane.

The femoral components of the hip joint include the femoral head, the femoral neck, and the greater and lesser trochanters. The spherical articular surface of the femoral head is covered with hyaline cartilage. Because the femoral head is larger and somewhat differently shaped than the acetabulum, some portion of its articular surface is exposed in any position of the hip joint. The femur and acetabulum are most congruent when positioned in a combination of flexion, abduction, and external rotation. The proximal femur, composed primarily of trabecular bone, is designed to withstand significant loading while also permitting movement through large excursions of range of motion. The orientation of the femoral head and neck in the frontal plane, with respect to the shaft of the femur, is described as its angle of inclination (Fig. 12.6).

In infancy the angle of inclination may be as much as 150 degrees but decreases during normal development to approximately 125 degrees in mid-adulthood and to 120 degrees in later life.[31] The orientation of the proximal femur

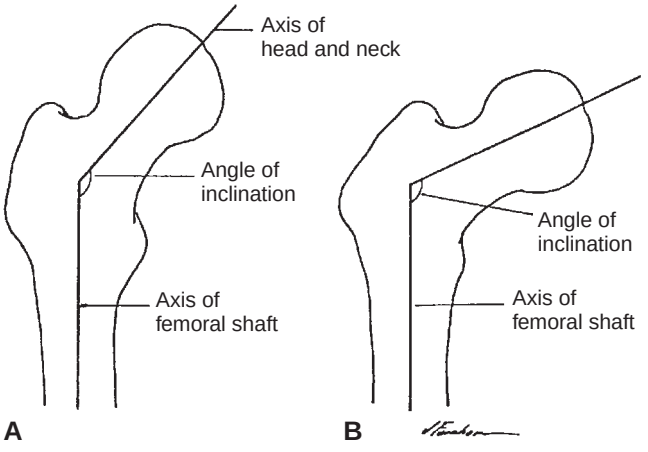


Fig. 12.6 (A) Normal angle of inclination between the neck and shaft of the femur is 125 degrees in adults. A pathological increase in the angle of inclination is called *coxa valga,* and a pathological decrease in the angle of inclination (B) is called *coxa vara.* (From The hip complex. In: Norkin CC, Levangie PK, eds. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1992:305.)

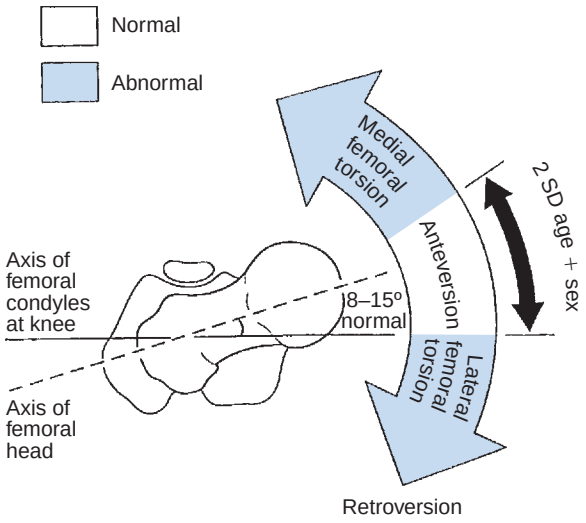


Fig. 12.7 Normal relationship between the axis of the femoral neck and the axis of the femoral condyles (viewed as if looking down the center of the femoral shaft) is between 8 and 15 degrees. Excessive anteversion leads to medial (internal) femoral torsion. Insufficient angulation, retroversion, is associated with lateral (external) femoral torsion. (From Staheli LT. Medical femoral torsion. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 1980;11:40.)

to the shaft and condyles in the transverse plane, called the *angle of anteversion*, is also a key determinant of hip joint function (Fig. 12.7). Anteversion may be as much as 40 degrees at birth, decreasing during normal development to approximately 15 degrees in adulthood.[31] These two angulations determine how well the femoral head is seated within the acetabulum and, in effect, the biomechanical stability of the hip joint. The functional stability of the hip joint is supported by a strong fibrous joint capsule and by the iliofemoral, ischiofemoral, and pubofemoral ligaments. Fibers of the capsule and ligaments are somewhat obliquely oriented, becoming most taut when the hip is in an extended position.

INFANTS AND CHILDREN WITH DEVELOPMENTAL DYSPLASIA OF THE HIP

DDH is the current terminology for a condition previously called *congenital dislocation of the hip*. This new term includes a variety of congenital hip pathologies including dysplasia, subluxation, and dislocation. This terminology is preferred because it includes those infants with normal physical examination at birth who are later found to have a subluxed or dislocated hip, in addition to those who are immediately identified as having hip pathologies.[32–34]

INCIDENCE AND ETIOLOGY OF DEVELOPMENTAL DYSPLASIA OF THE HIP

Instability of the hip due to DDH occurs in 11.7 of every 1000 live births, with most of these classified as hip subluxation (9.2/1000), followed by true dislocation (1.3/1000) and dislocatable hips (1.2/1000).[33,35] Commonly, female, family history, and breech presentation are reported as risk factors for DDH.[36–38] A higher incidence of DDH is also found among newborns with other musculoskeletal abnormalities

including torticollis, metatarsus varus, clubfoot, or other unusual syndromes.[36,37,39] Other factors have been identified in late presenting DDH. Late presenting DDH is defined as a diagnosis after 3 months of age. In late presenting DDH, a history of swaddling and cephalic presentation were found to have increased risk of DDH. Cephalic presentation incidence was attributed to a decrease in monitoring due to normal birth presentation. With late presenting DDH, the likelihood of irreducible hip dislocations is high.[40]

At birth the acetabulum is quite shallow, covering less than half of the femoral head. In addition, the joint capsule is loose and elastic. These two factors make the neonate hip relatively unstable and susceptible to subluxation and dislocation. Normal development of the hip joint in the first year of life is a function of the stresses and strains placed on the femoral head and acetabulum during movement. In the presence of subluxation or dislocation, modeling of the acetabulum and femoral head is compromised. The most common clinical signs of DDH include asymmetry of the gluteal folds, unequal length of the femur bone (Galeazzi sign), dislocation of the hip with adduction (Barlow maneuver), and repositioning of the femur into the acetabulum with abduction associated with an audible "click" or "clunk" (Ortolani sign; Fig. 12.8).[41] On clinical examination, a "clunk" (Ortolani sign) felt when upward pressure is applied at the level of the greater trochanter on the newborn or infant's flexed and abducted hip (see Fig. 12.8) indicates that a dislocated hip has been manually reduced.[42] The goal of orthotic management in DDH is to achieve optimal seating of the femoral head within the acetabulum while permitting the kicking movements that assist shaping of the acetabulum and femoral head for stability of the hip joint.[43,44] This is best achieved if the child is routinely positioned in flexion and abduction at the hip. If DDH is recognized early and appropriate intervention is initiated, the hip joint is likely to develop normally. If unrecognized and untreated, DDH often leads to significant deformity of the hip as the child grows, resulting in compromised mobility and other functional limitations.

EARLY ORTHOTIC MANAGEMENT OF DEVELOPMENTAL DYSPLASIA OF THE HIP: BIRTH TO 6 MONTHS

In 1958 Professor Arnold Pavlik of Czechoslovakia described an orthosis for the treatment of dysplasia, subluxation, and dislocation of the hip.[45,46] The orthosis he developed, the Pavlik harness, relies on hip flexion and abduction to stabilize the hip at risk. Although a multitude of braces and orthoses have been used historically in the treatment of hip instability, including hip spica casts, the Frejka pillow, the Craig splint, the Ilfeld splint, and the von Rosen splint, the Pavlik harness has become widely accepted as a mainstay for the initial treatment for the unstable hip in neonates from birth to 6 months of age.

At first glance, the Pavlik harness seems a confusing collection of webbing, hook-and-loop material, padding, and straps. In reality, this dynamic orthosis (Fig. 12.9) has three major components:

1. A shoulder and chest harness that provides a proximal anchor for the device
2. A pair of booties and stirrups used as the distal attachment
3. Anterior and posterior leg straps between chest harness and booties used to position the hip joint optimally

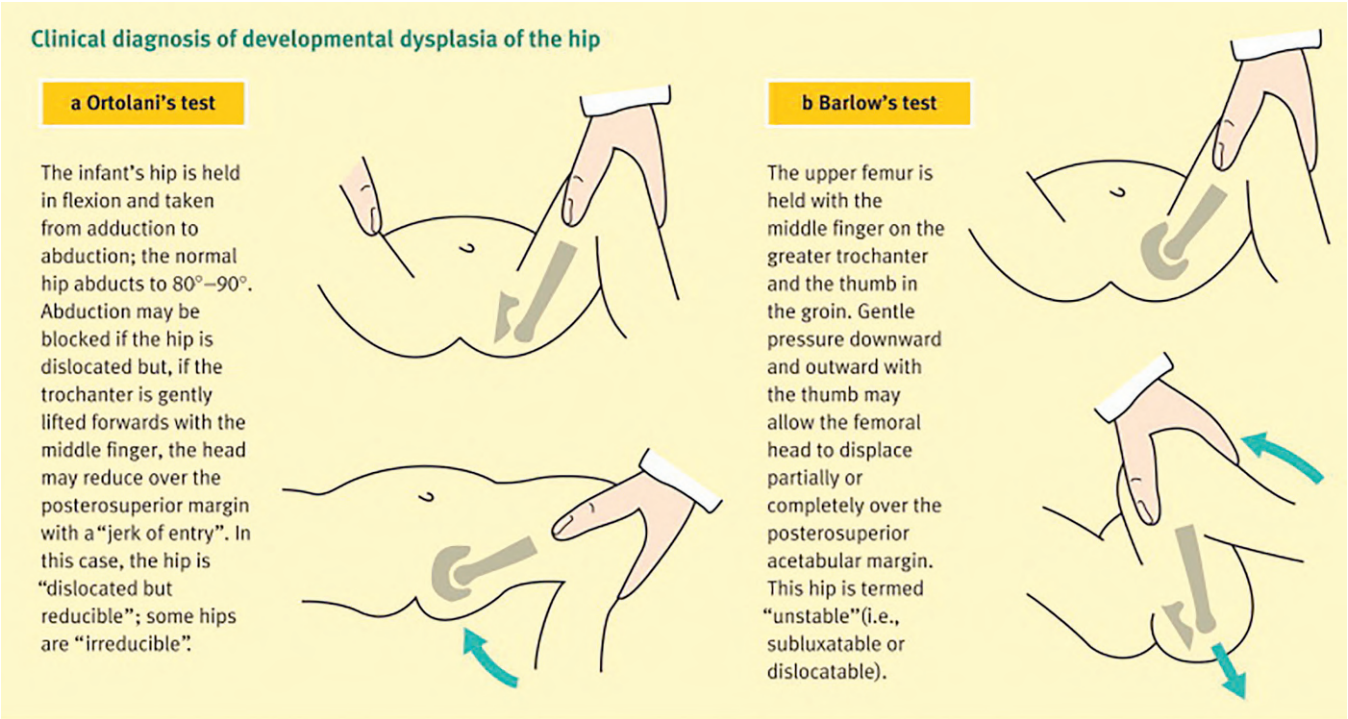


Fig. 12.8 Clinical diagnosis of developmental dysplasia of the hip. (From Campion JC, Benson M. Developmental dysplasia of the hip. *Surgery.* 2007;25[4]:176–180, Copyright 2007 Elsevier Ltd.)

Fig. 12.9 A Pavlik harness positions the infant's lower extremities in hip flexion and abduction in an effort to position the femoral head optimally within the acetabulum, assisting normal bony development of the hip joint. The anterior leg straps allow hip flexion but limit hip extension; the posterior flaps allow abduction but limit adduction. (Courtesy of Wheaton Brace Company.)

The anterior strap allows flexion but limits extension, whereas the posterior strap allows abduction but limits adduction. The child is free to move into flexion and abduction, the motions that are most likely to assist functional shaping of the acetabulum in the months after birth.[45–47] To be effective, however, the fit of the harness must be accurately adjusted for the growing infant and the orthosis must be properly applied. The family/caregiver must be involved in an intensive education program when the newborn is being fit with the Pavlik harness. Nurses, physical and occupational therapists, pediatricians, and orthopedic residents who work with newborns also need to understand the function and fit of this important orthosis. The guidelines for properly fitting a Pavlik harness include the following key points[43,48]:

1. The shoulder straps cross in the back to prevent the orthosis from sliding off the infant's shoulders.
2. The chest strap is fit around the thorax at the infant's nipple line.
3. The proximal calf strap on the bootie is fit just distal to the knee joint.
4. The anterior leg straps are attached to the chest strap at the anterior axillary line.
5. The posterior leg straps are attached to the chest strap just over the infant's scapulae.

In a correctly fit orthosis, the lower extremity is positioned in 100 to 120 degrees of hip flexion, as indicated by the physician's evaluation and recommendation. The limbs are also positioned in 30 to 40 degrees of hip abduction. The distance between the infant's thighs (when the hips are moved passively into adduction) should be no more than 8 to 10 cm. In a well-fit orthosis, extension and adduction are limited, whereas flexion and abduction are freely permitted: The infant is able to kick actively within this restricted range while wearing the orthosis. This position and movement encourage elongation of adductor contractures, which in turn assists in the reduction of the hip and enhances acetabular development. Three common problems indicate that the fit of the harness requires adjustment[43,49]:

1. If the leg straps are adjusted too tightly, the infant cannot kick actively.
2. If the anterior straps are positioned too far medially on the chest strap, the limb is positioned in excessive adduction rather than the desired abduction.
3. If the calf strap is positioned too far distally on the lower leg, it does not position the limb in the desired amount of hip flexion.

Optimal outcomes in infants with DDH are associated with early aggressive intervention of the unstable hip using the Pavlik harness.[50,51] Families and health care professionals must seek proper orthopedic care to avoid misdiagnosis and mistreatment. One of the most common misdiagnoses is mistaking dislocation for subluxation and implementing a triple- or double-diapering strategy for intervention. Although this strategy does position the infant's hip in some degree of flexion and abduction, bulky diapers alone are insufficient for reducing dislocation.

Initially, most infants wear the Pavlik harness 24 hours a day. The parents can be permitted to remove the harness for bathing, at the discretion of the orthopedist. Importantly, especially early in treatment, the fit and function of the orthosis must be reevaluated frequently to ensure proper position in the orthosis. The many straps of the Pavlik harness can be confusing to even the most caring of families. The proper donning and doffing sequence should be thoroughly explained and demonstrated to the family. Additional strategies to enhance optimal reduction of the hip such as prone sleeping should be encouraged.

Families must be instructed in proper skin care and in bathing the newborn or infant wearing the orthosis. Initially, they may be advised to use diapers, but not any type of shirt, under the orthosis. The importance of keeping regularly scheduled recheck appointments for effective monitoring of hip position and refitting of the orthosis as the infant grows cannot be overstressed to the parents or caregivers.[51–53] Missed appointments often result in less than optimal positioning of the femoral head with respect to the acetabulum, a less than satisfactory outcome of early intervention, and the necessity of more invasive treatment procedures as the child grows.

As a general rule, the length of treatment in the harness is equal to the child's age when a stable hip reduction is achieved plus an additional 3 months. Thus if a stable reduction is achieved at 4 months of age, the total treatment time would be 7 months. Over time, when hip development is progressing as desired, the wearing schedule can be decreased to night and naptime wear. This often welcomed change in wearing time can begin as early as 3 months of age if x-ray, ultrasound, and physical examination demonstrate the desired bone development. When the orthopedist determines that the hip is normal according to radiographs and ultrasound and is satisfied with the clinical

examination, the orthosis can be discontinued. If development of the hip is slow or the infant undergoes rapid growth, it may be advisable to continue the treatment with another type of hip abduction orthosis designed for older and larger babies, to maintain the position of flexion and abduction for a longer period of time.

MANAGEMENT OF DEVELOPMENTAL DYSPLASIA OF THE HIP: AGE 6 MONTHS AND OLDER

For older infants and toddlers (4–18 months) whose DDH was unrecognized or inadequately managed early in infancy, intervention is often much more aggressive and may include an abduction brace, traction, open or closed reduction, and hip spica casting.[33,54–56] For infants who are growing quickly or whose bone development has been slow, an alternative to the Pavlik harness is necessary. After the age of 6 months, especially as the infant begins to pull into standing in preparation for walking, the Pavlik harness can no longer provide the desired positioning for reduction. Often, the infant is simply too large to fit into the harness. By this time, families who have been compliant with harness application and wearing have grown to dislike it and are ready for other forms of intervention.

A custom-fit prefabricated thermoplastic hip abduction orthosis is often the next step in orthotic management of DDH. This orthosis consists of a plastic frame with waist section and thigh cuffs, waterproof foam liner, and hook-and-loop material closures. The static version is fixed at 90 degrees of hip flexion and 120 degrees of hip abduction (Fig. 12.10). An adjustable joint can be incorporated into the abduction bar; however, hip flexion is maintained at 90 degrees. This orthosis appears to be static, but the child is able to move within the thigh sections while the safe zone for continued management of hip position is maintained.

Many families view the hip abduction orthosis as an improvement over the Pavlik harness: The caregivers and the infant are free from cumbersome straps, the orthosis is easily removed and reapplied for diaper changing and hygiene, and the orthosis itself is waterproof and easier to keep clean. Parents and caregivers can hold the infant without struggling with straps, and the baby is able to sit comfortably for feeding and play.

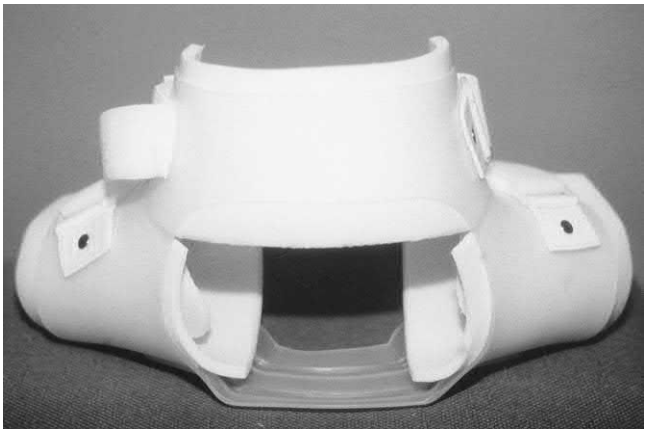


Fig. 12.10 A posterior view of a static hip abduction orthosis that positions the infant in 90 degrees of hip flexion and 120 degrees of hip abduction.

Because most hip abduction orthoses are prefabricated, the knowledge and skills of an orthotist are necessary to ensure a proper custom fit for each child. To determine what the necessary modifications are, the orthotist evaluates three areas:

1. The length of the thigh cuffs. Thigh cuffs are trimmed proximal to the popliteal fossae. Cuffs that are too long can lead to neurovascular compromise if the child prefers to sleep in a supine position, as the risk of compression of the legs against the distal edge of the cuffs is present.
2. The width of the anterior opening of the waist component. Although the plastic is flexible, the opening may need to be enlarged for heavy or large-framed infants.
3. The foam padding of the thigh and waist components. All edges must be smooth to avoid skin irritation or breakdown, and the circumference of the padding should fit without undue tightness.

Modifications may require reheating or trimming of the plastic or foam padding. Usually this fitting takes place in the orthotist's office or the clinic setting, where the necessary tools are readily available. Once the fit is evaluated and modified as appropriate for the individual child, the parents or caregivers are instructed in proper donning/doffing and orthotic care.

The static hip abduction orthosis is used in either of two ways. First, the orthosis may be a continuation of the course of treatment established by the Pavlik harness, as determined by the orthopedist's evaluation of the child's hip. As a continuation of treatment, the orthosis can be worn day and night; most often, however, it is reserved for nighttime use while the child is sleeping.[41,43,54] The use of the orthosis at night is believed to assist development of acetabular growth cartilage. If the orthosis is worn consistently for several months and evidence of effective reduction and reshaping of the joint is present, it is less likely that more aggressive forms of treatment will be necessary as the child grows.

The second application for the hip abduction orthosis is for follow-up management for children with DDH who require an orthopedic intervention such as traction, surgical reduction, or casting. In this case the orthosis provides external stability to the hip during the postoperative weeks and months, while the baby regains range of motion and continues to grow and progress through the stages of motor development. This extra stability reduces parental and physician concern about dislocation and other undesired outcomes of the orthopedic procedure.

The static hip abduction orthosis has obvious advantages over plaster or synthetic hip spica casts, including greater ease in diaper hygiene and bathing, and is often welcomed by families as a positive next step in treatment. Fitting requires the knowledge and skills of an orthotist familiar with proper fitting techniques and who can manage potentially irritable babies just freed from a confining hip spica cast.

GOALS OF ORTHOTIC INTERVENTION FOR CHILDREN WITH DEVELOPMENTAL DYSPLASIA OF THE HIP

To be effective, orthotic intervention for DDH must have a set of clearly described treatment objectives against which success can be measured. The components necessary for effective orthotic interventions for children with DDH include the following:

1. Clearly presented verbal, psychomotor, and written instructions for the child's family or caregivers, with an additional goal of minimizing stress in an already stressful situation.
2. Effective communication among members of the health care team about the appropriate use and potential pitfalls of the orthosis. This often includes education about the orthosis provided by the orthotist and careful monitoring of family compliance and coping by all members of the team (orthotists, orthopedists, pediatricians, therapists, nurses, and other health professionals who may be involved in the case).
3. Safe and effective hip reduction to minimize the necessity of more aggressive casting or surgery. This requires proper orthotic fit and adjustment, as well as consistency in wearing schedules.

The ultimate goal is to facilitate normal development of the hip joint, providing the child with a pain-free, stable, functional hip that will last throughout his or her lifetime.

COMPLICATIONS OF ORTHOTIC MANAGEMENT OF DEVELOPMENTAL DYSPLASIA OF THE HIP

In most cases the Pavlik harness, perhaps followed by abduction splint use as the child grows, is a successful intervention for DDH. A small percentage of infants with DDH managed by the Pavlik harness (<8%) develop complications, the most serious of which is avascular necrosis of the femoral head, which may be caused by overtightening the posterior straps to force a position of abduction.[33,52-59] Children who have complications differ from those without complications in a number of ways. They tend to have larger acetabular angles (>35 degrees) and less total coverage of the femoral head within the acetabulum (<20%) on radiography or ultrasound, have an irreducible dislocation at initiation of orthotic intervention, have delayed diagnosis and intervention (older than 3 months of age), and have not demonstrated a prior ossific nucleus on radiograph or ultrasound.[52,53,57,60] A concern of continued research into the development of DDH screening protocols is the over screening and overtreatment, which is leading to a rise in avascular necrosis development.[36]

ORTHOTIC MANAGEMENT OF LEGG-CALVÉ-PERTHES DISEASE

LCPD is a pathologic condition of the hip that affects otherwise healthy school-aged children. Although the clinical signs and symptoms of LCPD, as they differ from tuberculosis involving the hip, were first described by Arthur T. Legg in 1910,[61] the etiology of this condition is not clearly understood and its treatment and orthopedic management continue to be controversial. The hallmark of LCPD is a flattening of the femoral head, thought to be a result of an avascular necrosis insult. Left untreated, LCPD leads to permanent deformity and eventual osteoarthritis in the adult hip. The disease is four times as common in boys between the ages of 4 and 8 years old as in girls, although outcomes in girls tend to be less satisfactory.[62–64] LCPD generally involves only one hip; only approximately 12% of cases are bilateral. It is rare within the black population. Exposure to smoking in utero, obesity, low socioeconomic status, and repetitive high impact activities have also been associated as risk factors with the development of LCPD.[65–68] Several options for orthotic management of LCPD have evolved. All are designed to help maintain a spherical femoral head and normal acetabulum.

Etiology of Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease

The etiology of LCPD remains controversial more than 100 years after it was first described. Most researchers believe that LCPD is a result of some event or condition that compromises blood flow to the femoral head and leads to avascular necrosis. The exact mechanism that triggers this compromise is unknown. Some theories focus on an acute trauma that damages the vascular system of the femoral head, whereas others suggest that repeated episodes of a transient synovitis may compromise blood flow.[63,69,70] Another theory suggests an abnormality of thrombolysis in children who develop LCPD.[71] A genetic predisposition to delayed bone age that exposes vessels to high rates of compression as they pass through cartilage to the bony head has also been suggested.[69] Although the exact etiology of LCPD remains a mystery, it is certainly linked to episodes of avascular necrosis in the femoral head. The goal of intervention in children with LCPD is to assist revascularization of the femoral head and to restore normal anatomical shape and alignment of the hip joint.

Evaluation and Intervention for Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease

LCPD should be suspected in children with one or more of the following signs or symptoms[72,73]:

1. A noticeable limp, often with a positive Trendelenburg sign
2. Pain in the hip, groin, knee, or a combination of these locations
3. Loss of range of motion of the hip joint

When these symptoms are present, radiographic, ultrasound, or magnetic resonance imaging studies of the hip are used to discriminate between LCPD (Fig. 12.11) and other hip disorders (e.g., slipped capital femoral epiphysis, fracture, rheumatic disease, infection).[74] These studies are used by the orthopedist to determine severity and progression of the disease, considering the stage of the disease, the shape of the femoral head, the degree of congruence with the acetabulum, and the length and angle of the femoral neck.[75,76] A variety of classification systems have been developed to rate severity of involvements. The Catterall system describes four groups on the basis of the location of involvement and identifies four "head at risk" signs for the orthopedist or radiologist to focus on in interpreting radiographs.[77] Studies of the interrater and concurrent reliability of the Catterall systems have not all been

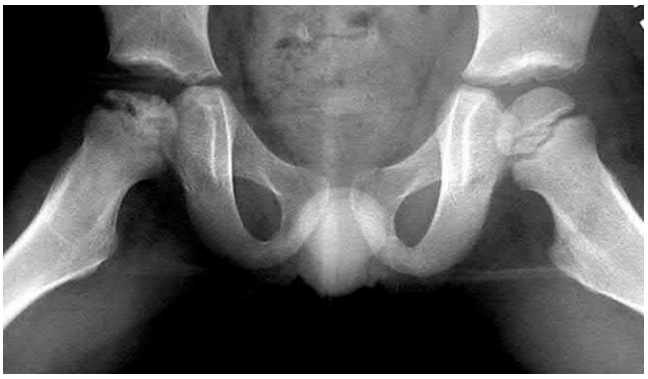


Fig. 12.11 A radiograph of a child with Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease comparing the shape and density of the head of the femur and of the capital epiphysis on the normal *(right side of image)* and affected *(left side of image)* right hip.

positive.[78–80] The Salter-Thompson system rates severity of involvement on the basis of the location and extent of subchondral fracture that may be observed early in the disease process.[81,82] The Herring system examines the condition of the lateral pillar of the femoral head on radiographs.[74,80,83] Refer to texts on orthopedic conditions in pediatrics for further information about classification.[69,70] LCPD is a self-limiting process that often resolves in 1 to 3 years. The disease progresses through three stages:

1. Necrotic stage: avascular necrosis
2. Fragmentation stage: resorption of damaged bone
3. Healing/reparative stage: revascularization, reossification, and bony remodeling

Factors that influence the eventual outcome of the disease include age at onset, severity of damage to the femoral head and epiphysis, and quality of congruency of the acetabulum and femoral head.[63,64,69,70]

Because the disease process is self-limiting, the optimal intervention strategy is controversial. The three most commonly used avenues of treatment for LCPD are observation, surgical intervention, and conservative orthotic management. Decisions about treatment are often guided by age of the child, extent of femoral head deformity, and severity of incongruency between the femoral head and acetabulum.[69,70,84] More recent data suggest that patients younger than 6 years of age at the time of disease onset are best managed nonsurgically, whereas the treatment for patients older than 8 years may involve surgery and is less well defined.[85]

For children with minimal bony deformity, observation and exercise may be the most appropriate intervention.[86] Because the child is likely to continue to limp until sufficient revascularization and remodeling have occurred (which may require several years), parents may be uneasy, preferring instead a more aggressive intervention. Parents are reassured when close clinical follow-up is performed, with periodic reexamination by x-ray evaluation to monitor progression of the disease process.

Surgical intervention is based on the principle of containment, optimally positioning the femoral head within the acetabulum. Proximal femoral derotation osteotomy is used to decompress and center the femoral head within the acetabulum for more functional weight bearing in an extended position.[87,88] A pelvic osteotomy, which repositions the acetabulum over the femoral head, is sometimes necessary when a significantly enlarged or subluxed femoral head cannot be effectively repositioned by femoral derotation osteotomy.[89,90] Shelf arthroplasty to reshape the acetabulum to better accept the femoral head has also been used as an intervention.[91–93] The outcome of surgery is likely to be most positive for children who have full hip range of motion preoperatively. Parents must understand the goals and risks of the surgical procedure and must be actively involved in postoperative rehabilitation efforts.

The goal of conservative orthotic management of LCPD is similar to that of surgical intervention: to contain the femoral head within the acetabulum during the active stages of the disease process so that optimal remodeling can occur.[44,93] Much debate has taken place concerning whether surgery, observation and therapy (LINK), or orthotic intervention is most efficacious. If both are viable methods of treatment, the end result should be the same: a well-shaped femoral head and pain-free hip. Comparing the efficacy of surgical versus orthotic management of LCPD is challenging because of relatively low incidence as well as differences in study design and definition of control for variables such as age of onset, duration of the disease, gender, and inadequate interobserver reliability of classification systems.[94,95] Although two reports published in 1992 question the efficacy of orthotic treatment,[96,97] other studies advocate orthotic treatment even in severe cases of the disease. Because studies have reported success, as well as lack of success for all three types of intervention (noncontainment/observation, surgery, and the use of orthoses), the most appropriate management of LCPD has not been clearly determined.

Orthotic Management in Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease

Currently the most commonly used orthosis in the nonoperative management of LCPD is the Atlanta/Scottish-Rite hip abduction orthosis (Fig. 12.12). The design of this

Fig. 12.12 An Atlanta/Scottish-Rite hip abduction orthosis used in the conservative management of Legg-Calve-Perthes disease. This orthosis has three components: the pelvic band, the free-motion hip joints, and thigh cuffs. This orthosis has an abduction bar to provide increased stability and maintains desired position of abduction. (*J Pediatr Orthop.* 2011;31[2]:Supplement.)

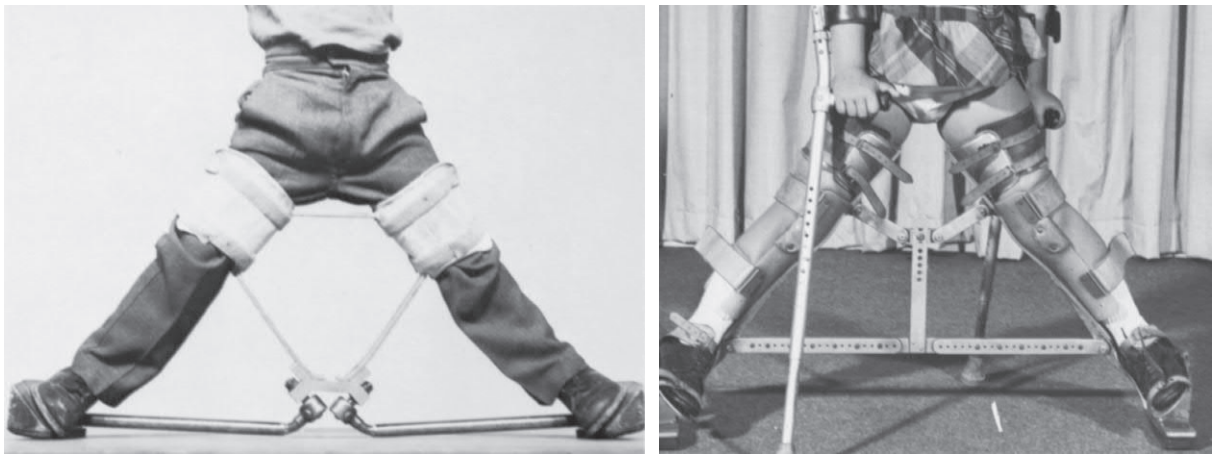


Fig. 12.13 Earlier designs for hip abduction knee-ankle-foot orthoses used to manage Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. The Toronto hip-knee-ankle foot orthosis (A) and Newington orthoses (B) were more cumbersome to don and to function with than the Atlanta/Scottish-Rite hip abduction orthoses. (From Goldberg B, Hsu JH, eds. *Atlas of Orthotics and Assistive Devices*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1997.)

orthosis allows the child to walk and be involved in other functional activities while containing the femoral head in the acetabulum with abduction of the hips.[98–100] The Atlanta/Scottish-Rite orthosis has three components: a pelvic band, a pair of single-axis hip joints, and a pair of thigh cuffs. An abduction bar may also be included, interconnecting the thigh cuffs with a ball-and-socket joint as an interface. This orthosis holds each hip in approximately 45 degrees of hip abduction, permits flexion and extension of the hip, and can be worn over clothing. While in the orthosis, the hips are abducted and flexed but the patient has no limitation in knee range of motion and therefore can sit or walk without difficulty. The orthosis is not designed to control internal rotation of the hip. This type of orthosis is most effective if the child who is wearing it has close to normal range of motion at the hip joint. Limitations in range of motion cause the child to stand asymmetrically in the orthosis, which effectively reduces the amount of abduction and containment of the femoral head.

Historically (in the 1960s and 1970s), a number of other orthoses were developed on the basis of the principles of containment of the femoral head. The Toronto orthosis (Fig. 12.13A) and the Newington orthosis (Fig. 12.13B) hold both limbs in 45 degrees of abduction with internal rotation but, unlike the Atlanta/Scottish Rite orthosis, require the use of crutches for safe mobility.[101,102] These orthoses are cumbersome to wear and significantly affect the ease of daily function. Because the efficacy of the Atlanta Scottish-Rite orthosis is as high as or higher than the efficacy of the Toronto and Newington orthoses, the latter two orthoses are not commonly used in current management of children with LCPD.[44,103] In addition, orthoses like an "A-frame" may be used after several weeks of Petrie casting, another nonsurgical treatment option enforcing hip abduction.[85] The use of the "A-frame" device with daily ROM exercises has been found to be successful following adductor tenotomy and abduction casting for improving spherical congruency of the femoral head.[104]

If the disease process progresses and the hip begins to lose additional range of motion, the orthotist may be the first to recognize this problem. The parents may bring the child to the clinic for an orthotic adjustment because the thigh cuffs have become uncomfortable. If loss of additional range of motion is noticed by parents or by therapists who are working with the child, an immediate referral to the orthotic clinic or physician is necessary. The Atlanta/Scottish-Rite orthosis is not designed to increase range of motion; its primary function is to hold the hips in abduction comfortably. Using the orthosis to restore range of motion defeats the purpose of the orthotic design and compromises treatment principles.

Communication among the orthopedist, orthotist, therapist, and family is essential. Parents must understand that this is a demanding form of treatment. Typically, the orthosis is worn continually for 12 to 18 months. Once radiographic evidence of femoral head reossification is seen, time in the orthosis is gradually reduced.

Absolute compliance with the wearing schedule is necessary for maximum effectiveness: A well-designed and well-fit orthosis can only work if it is being used. The first few days and weeks in the orthosis are often stressful for the parent and the child. With the hips held in an abducted position, routine tasks including walking may require assistance until the child learns effective adaptive strategies. Physical therapists may work with the child on crutch-walking techniques on level surfaces, stairs, inclines, and uneven surfaces. They may make suggestions for adaptation of the home and school environments so that sitting and transitions from flooring, chairs, and standing quickly become manageable. If family education and support efforts are effective and enable parents and children to weather this difficult initial stage in orthotic management well, the likelihood of compliance in the remaining months of intervention is significantly enhanced. Expectations for continued care and follow-up, including adjustments following growth and increases in range of motion, should be conveyed to family and caregivers to ensure success.

PEDIATRIC POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Numerous musculoskeletal and neuromuscular conditions, in addition to LCPD and developmental dysplasia, may necessitate surgical intervention for children with hip and

lower extremity dysfunction or deformity. Orthoses that control hip and leg position are often used in the weeks and months after surgery as an alternative to traditional plaster casts or as a follow-up strategy once casts are removed. Although a cast may be applied in the operating room for immediate postoperative care, orthoses are often fit soon afterward and effectively shorten the time that a child spends in a cast. Hip orthoses are used when immobilization and support will be required for a long period of time, when complications arise, or when a child's special needs demand their use.

One of the major benefits of an orthosis (as compared with a plaster cast) is in regard to hygiene, especially for children who have not yet developed consistent bladder and bowel control. Additional benefits of postoperative hip orthoses include the following:

1. Being much lighter than traditional casts, hip orthoses reduce the burden of care for parents and caregivers who must lift or carry the child.
2. Hip orthoses can be removed for inspection of surgical wounds and for bathing and skin care.
3. Hip orthoses can be removed for physical therapy, range of motion, mobilization, strengthening, or other appropriate interventions.
4. Thermoplastic orthoses are waterproof; therefore, residues of perspiration or urine can be easily cleaned and sanitized with warm soap and water.
5. A well-fit orthosis is less likely to cause skin irritation or breakdown and, unlike a cast, can often be adjusted if areas of impingement develop.
6. The position and amount of abduction can be easily adjusted.
7. A hip orthosis can be custom designed for a patient with complicated needs, especially those who have had multiple surgical procedures.

Postoperative Hip Orthoses

Two basic designs are available for children's postoperative orthoses. The first is composed of thigh cuffs that fit between the knee and hip joint, an abduction bar, and hook-and-loop material closures (Fig. 12.14). This orthosis can be fabricated from measurements taken before surgery and fit with no delay as soon as the cast is removed. It can also be fit in lieu of a cast if the surgical procedure was minor or when static positioning of the hip is required. This type of orthosis is commonly used after adductor release or varus osteotomy with adductor release or for the management of a septic hip. A postoperative hip orthosis is most often used for extended periods of nighttime-only wear but in some circumstances can also be worn during the day.[105] In many clinics this orthosis is used after hip procedures in children with cerebral palsy.

Parents and caregivers find the postoperative hip orthosis a welcome relief from a cast. Despite its simple appearance, families should be given special instructions about how the orthosis is worn and cared for. These orthoses typically will have removable liners that can be cleaned to ensure proper hygiene. It can be worn over clothing or pajamas or next to the skin if necessary. It should not cause skin irritation or discomfort on either side of the hip joint. If the patient experiences any hip joint pain, the orthotist should consult with the orthopedist to determine if the angle of abduction can be safely adjusted. Overzealous attempts to abduct the hip can cause pain and reduce compliance. Occasionally, this orthosis may be difficult to keep in place even though it has been properly fit. A simple suspension belt can be added to ensure optimal positioning.

The second option for postoperative care is a modification of a knee-ankle-foot orthosis (KAFO). This orthosis is composed of two thermoplastic KAFOs without knee joints but with an abduction bar and hook-and-loop material closures (Fig. 12.15). Fabrication of this type of orthosis requires that plaster or fiberglass impressions be taken: Simple length and circumferential measurements are not adequate to ensure proper fit. Ideally, these impressions are taken at the first postoperative cast change. The orthosis is then fabricated, and fitting occurs during the next clinic appointment. Taking the impressions before surgery is not advisable. Postoperatively, each joint will be at a new angle, compromising

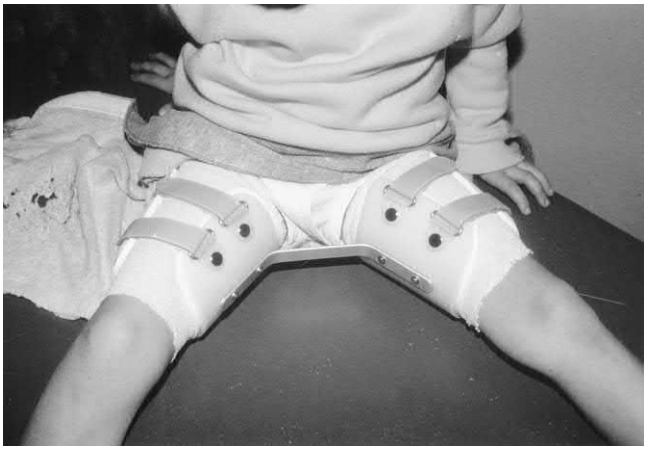


Fig. 12.14 A postoperative hip abduction orthosis has two components: a pair of thigh cuffs held in position by an abduction bar.

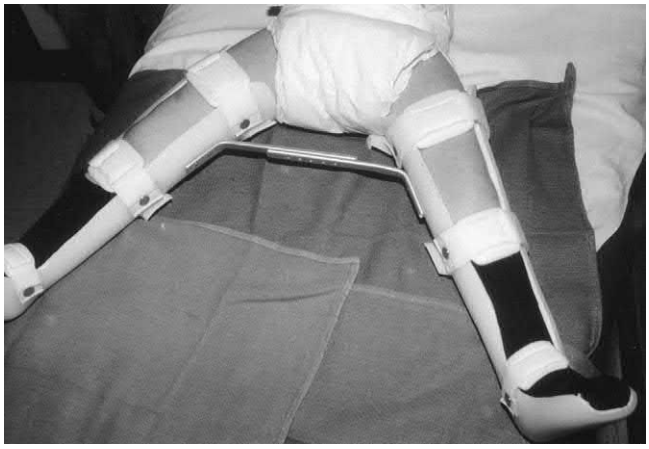


Fig. 12.15 For postoperative management of children after extensive bony and soft tissue surgery, knee-ankle-foot orthoses with the addition of an abduction bar are often used subsequent to cast removal. Rotation of the hip is well controlled by the intimate fit of the orthosis, including the ankle-foot complex. When precise control of the hip is necessary, the postoperative hip abduction orthosis encompasses the pelvis as well.

the fit of the orthosis based on preoperative impressions. This type of orthosis is recommended for patients who have had bony procedures around the hip, as well as extensive soft tissue procedures such as hamstring or heel cord release, which require protection in the early stages of healing. In our clinic, this orthosis is most often used for children with cerebral palsy or myelomeningocele. In some circumstances, when more precise control of the hip joint is desirable, the orthosis can be extended upward to include the pelvis.

Because of the intimate fit of this orthosis, parents and caregivers must be given careful education concerning proper fit and cleaning. Especially important is a careful inspection of the posterior aspect of the calcaneus: This area is vulnerable to skin breakdown from prolonged pressure and may be overlooked during skin checks that focus on the healing surgical wounds. Because the foam lining and thermoplastic material do not breathe, perspiration cannot effectively evaporate. The orthosis should be removed periodically for cleaning to minimize the risk of skin maceration or infection from microorganisms that thrive in warm moist environments.

The postoperative orthosis has proven useful in the overall orthopedic management of children with musculoskeletal or neuromuscular diseases. The orthosis is an effective substitute for heavy casts, especially when skin irritation and incontinence are concerns. The postoperative hip orthosis helps ensure healing in the optimal joint position and reduces the likelihood of recurrence of the deformity that prompted surgical intervention.

MANAGEMENT OF THE ADULT HIP

Orthotic intervention for the hip in the adult population is limited, focusing on two groups of patients. Hip orthoses are most commonly used as postsurgical and postcast care of adult patients who have sustained a complex hip or proximal femoral fracture from a traumatic event such as a motor vehicle accident, industrial accident, or fall. In some circumstances a hip orthosis can be used for older adults after a total hip procedure, revision of a total hip, or fracture associated with total hip arthroplasty.[106,107] Although injury that affects the hip can occur at any point in the life span, most adults with trauma-related fractures who are managed with hip orthoses are young and middle-aged, and many of those who are undergoing a new or revised total joint arthroplasty are 65 years or older. As the number of older adults increases in the U.S. population, so will the number of hip fractures. One estimate suggests that as many as 512,000 hip fractures will occur in the United States by the year 2040.[108]

In both of these circumstances, stabilization of the orthopedic injury and rehabilitation planning are important issues. Patients with this type of injury of the hip often require extensive physical therapy programs. Clinicians must understand age-related pathophysiological changes that affect the healing musculoskeletal system, the impact and detrimental effects of prolonged bed rest, and the optimal point at which an orthosis should be integrated into the overall treatment plan.

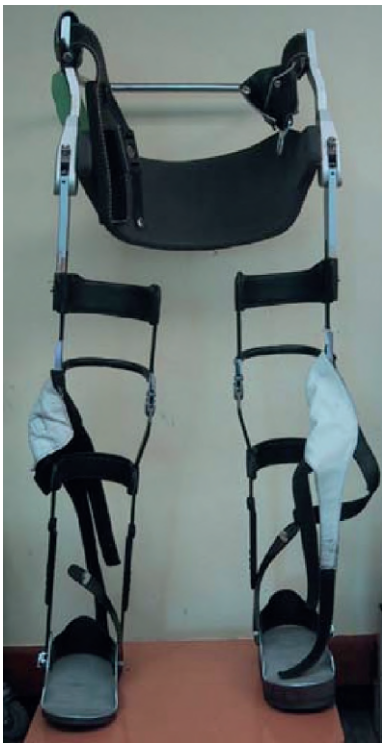


Fig. 12.16 Lateral view of a hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis, prescribed for postoperative management after a complex total hip arthroplasty. Note the pelvic band, free hip joint, supportive thigh cuff, and free knee joint. The ankle-foot orthosis component is necessary for effective control of rotary forces through the femur and hip joint. (From Luqmani R, Robb J, Porter D, et al. *Textbook of Orthopaedics, Trauma, and Rheumatology*. 2nd ed. Edinburgh: Mosby; 2013.)

Total Hip Arthroplasty

Although a hip orthosis is usually not indicated in most simple, elective total hip arthroplasties, in some circumstances this orthosis can assist healing and rehabilitation. Hip orthoses can be used for patients with significant osteoporosis in whom femoral fracture occurs during total joint surgery or for those who require emergency total joint replacement as a result of trauma. Hip orthoses are also used for patients who are undergoing revision of a total hip replacement as a consequence of recurrent dislocation or of aseptic loosening of the femoral component. If control of rotation is desired, an HKAFO can be prescribed to provide additional support and protection to healing structures.

Most HKAFOs have a pelvic band and belt and an adjustable hip joint that can be locked or can allow free motion or limit motion within a specific range (Fig. 12.16). An adjustable anterior panel can be added to the thigh section if a fracture has occurred during the surgical procedure and requires additional protection. The knee joint can also be locked, free motion, or adjustable for specific ranges of motion, depending on the patient's need. The ankle-foot orthosis (AFO) component is necessary to provide maximum control of unwanted rotation of the hip.

Typically, HKAFOs are custom fabricated on the basis of an impression of the patient's limb. This increases the likelihood of an optimal fit and allows customization of the orthosis to meet the specific needs of the patient. If this approach is

not amenable to certain health care environments, prefabricated custom-fit HKAFOs and hip orthoses are available as alternatives to custom-molded orthoses.[107] These orthoses are fabricated from components that are then custom fit on the basis of the patient's limb measurements. Most postoperative hip orthoses are designed to limit flexion and adduction of the hip joint. They try to prevent dislocation by supporting the optimal position of the hip joint within a safe range of motion and by providing a kinesthetic reminder when patients attempt to move beyond these ranges.[107] Many of the prefabricated hip orthoses that are commercially available are unable to provide maximum control of rotation because they do not encompass the foot. Careful evaluation of the patient is required to determine which alternative is most appropriate. In both cases, the orthosis is worn whenever the patient is out of bed and, in some instances, while the patient is in bed as well. The orthosis is usually worn for at least 8 weeks after total hip revision.

Because lower extremity orthoses add weight to a lower extremity that is already compromised, orthotists must be sensitive to the selection of lightweight materials and components. This is especially true for older patients, who may have limited endurance because of cardiac or respiratory disease. Although the initial orthosis may restrict joint motion to provide external stability to a vulnerable hip joint, the orthotic hip, knee, and ankle joints can be adjusted to meet the patient's needs as the rehabilitation program progresses. Hip orthoses and HKAFOs may be important adjuncts for rehabilitation in the following ways:

1. A well-fit hip orthosis provides protection against dislocation in patients who are predisposed to this problem.
2. Hip orthoses protect and support healing fracture sites, often allowing earlier mobility and gait training than would otherwise be possible.
3. Early and safe weight bearing for older patients with dislocation or fracture reduces the risk of secondary complications associated with prolonged bed rest or immobility.
4. The orthotic hip, knee, and ankle joints can be adjusted to restrict or permit motion to match the patient's specific needs at initial fitting and as the treatment program progresses.

Following surgical intervention after fracture or total joint arthroplasty, the focus of the rehabilitation program shifts to mobility training, strengthening, flexibility, and endurance. The decision to recommend a hip orthosis is individual, influenced by the severity of the musculoskeletal problem, the patient's particular circumstances, and the experience and preferences of the health professionals involved in postoperative care. Few definitive guidelines or documentation are available concerning the efficacy of hip orthoses in the postoperative management of hip fracture or arthroplasty. An orthosis is best used to augment the goals of rehabilitation, including the return to preoperative ambulatory status, safe and protected weight bearing during ADLs, facilitation of union of the fracture site, and ultimately return to presurgical social and self-care independence.

Another population that may benefit from a hip abduction orthosis is patients that have had recurrent hip dislocations. In these patients, there may be a ligamentous laxity that has developed due to history of dislocations with or without an incidence of hip replacement. Surgical intervention may not be indicated in these situations, although the external stabilization of a hip abduction orthosis may help allow a limited range of motion. Range of motion limitations are directed by the treating physician in opposing motions that contributed to the dislocation. Utilizing hip abduction orthoses in these situations will provide external stabilization and allow for return to daily activity with kinesthetic reminder of limitations on hip joint motion. Patients will wear this orthosis at all times and will be directed to work with a physical therapist for strengthening of hip muscles once sufficient healing of hip joint has taken place.

Posttrauma Care

The other group of individuals who may benefit from hip orthoses are those who have experienced traumatic fractures of the femur, hip, or pelvis as a result of motor vehicle accidents, industrial accidents, or falls from great heights. Most of these patients are fit with their orthosis after stabilization of the fracture with internal fixation. The HKAFO is similar in design to the orthosis described for older patients after hip fracture or arthroplasty. Depending on the need for external support and stability, the hip joint can be locked to prevent flexion and extension or may allow motion within a limited range. For some patients, it may be necessary to incorporate a lumbosacral spinal orthosis to achieve the desired control of pelvic and hip motion. The AFO component provides control of hip rotation in the transverse plane.

When complete immobilization is warranted after orthopedic trauma of the lower spine, pelvis, and hip, a custom-molded thermoplastic version of a hip spica cast can be fabricated. This hip orthosis has anterior and posterior components, extending from the mid- to lower thoracic trunk to just above the femoral condyles of the fractured extremity and to the groin of the intact extremity. This design provides maximum stability and can be used in lieu of or after casting. The position of the lower extremity within the orthosis is determined by the type and extent of the surgical repair. When the patient is lying in the supine position, the anterior component can be removed for skin inspection and personal care. Similarly, the posterior component can be removed when the patient is prone. This is an advantage for patients with open wounds or difficulty with continence and is especially appreciated if immobilization will be required for an extended period.

Many patients who are recovering from musculoskeletal trauma involving the pelvis and hip joint require physical therapy for gait and mobility training after surgery and an intensive rehabilitation program to regain preinjury muscle strength, range of motion, and functional status. The orthopedic surgeon and therapists, as well as the patient and family, must clearly understand the advantages provided and the mobility limitations imposed by postsurgical hip orthoses. An optimal orthosis can assist rehabilitation if fabricated with lightweight but durable components that can be adjusted as the patient progresses, while meeting the individual patient's need for stability or supported mobility of the hip. An appropriate hip orthosis also

enhances early mobility and protected weight bearing, reducing the risk of loss of function related to bed rest and deconditioning.

Fracture Management

A fracture occurs when there is disruption in the continuity of bone.[109] Fractures are common consequences of trauma from falls, sports, work-related injuries, motor vehicle accidents, or violence.[110–112] Many disorders and diseases (e.g., osteopenia, malnutrition, paralysis, osteoporosis) and medications (e.g., corticosteroids), as well as primary or metastatic malignancies of bone, increase vulnerability to fracture.[113,114] Habitual activity level over the life span, health habits (e.g., smoking), and gender and age (e.g., bone density and menopausal status) influence bone density and, subsequently, the risk of fracture during daily activity.[115–118] Orthopedic intervention for fractures is dictated by the severity of the fracture, as well as etiology. Simple fractures, those with minimal fragmentation or displacement, are often managed with closed reduction followed by initial management in a plaster or fiberglass splint to provide stabilization, while allowing for swelling, and then a period of immobilization in a plaster or fiberglass cast or a custom-fit, prefabricated fracture orthosis until bony union is achieved.[119] More complex fractures, those with multiple fragments or significant displacement, often require open (surgical) reduction with internal fixation (ORIF; with plates, screws, or wires), prosthetic replacement (arthroplasty), or stabilization in an external rigging or fixator until there has been sufficient bony healing.[120]

The care provided to individuals recovering from a fracture is founded on understanding the mechanism of injury, fracture classification, and process of bone repair and healing.[121,122] The orthopedic surgeon and orthotist choose from a variety of casts, cast braces, splints, and fracture orthoses to provide the most effective fracture management strategy for each patient on the basis of the fracture type and location, degree of reduction, skin condition, mobility needs, and likelihood of compliance. Geographical and personal preferences regarding design, device selection, and treatment influence the choice of fracture management strategy, as do the training and experience of the health professionals involved. Few strategies for immobilization can provide 100% rigid fixation. Absolute immobilization is only possible with direct skeletal attachment. A variety of factors influence the quality of fit and function of any cast, cast brace, splint, or fracture orthosis. Each device has the potential to contribute to a successful result but only if used appropriately, with absolute attention to detail by each of the treatment team members.

MECHANISMS OF FRACTURE HEALING

Three distinct stages of physiological fracture healing occur: inflammation, repair, and remodeling.[122] Fracture damages bone, its periosteum, nutrient vessels, marrow, and often surrounding soft tissue and muscle. Disruption of vascular supply leads to ischemia and necrosis of bone cells and other injured tissues. These damaged tissues release inflammatory mediators into intracellular space, triggering an inflammatory response: A shift in plasma from capillary to intracellular space leads to significant edema. Migration of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, macrophages, and lymphocytes to the injured area is the first step in clearing necrosis. A hematoma forms; in a simple nondisplaced fracture on the shaft of a long bone, this hematoma provides the initial reconnection of edges of the fracture (Fig. 12.17A). In more complex fractures, the process of reducing the fracture to align bony fragments further irritates tissues, augmenting the inflammatory response that is the first necessary step in fracture healing. This initial inflammatory response to fracture can last 5 or more days, depending on the severity of injury and extent of tissue disruption.

The next stage of healing is the repair stage, a period of cell migration, proliferation, and granulation. The combination of chemotactic factors and bone matrix proteins

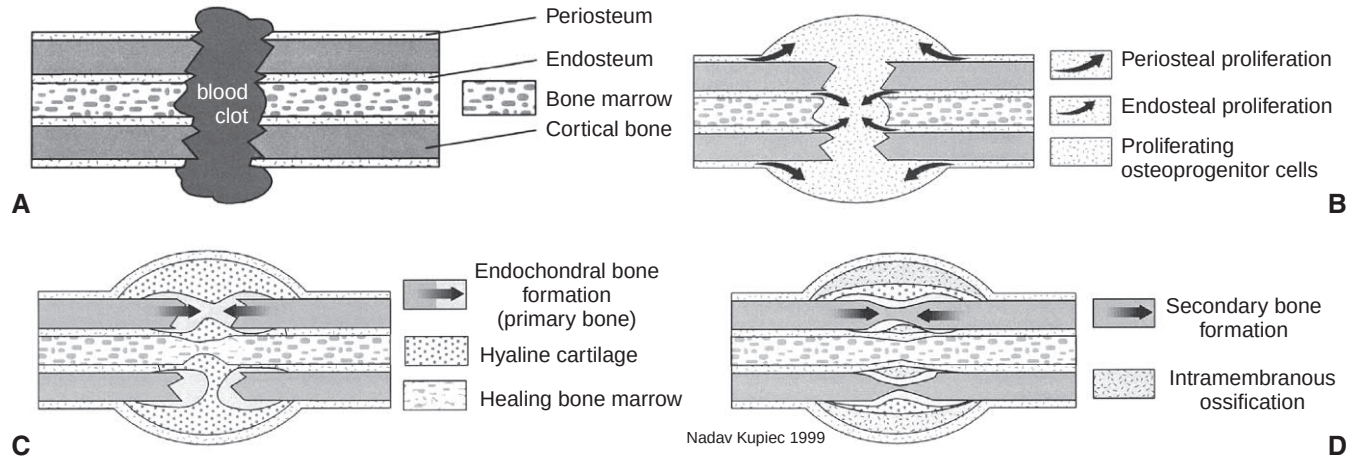


Fig. 12.17 Healing and repair of a long bone fracture. (A) Disruption of blood vessels in the bone, marrow, periosteum, and surrounding tissue at the time of injury results in extravasation of blood at the fracture site and the formation of hematoma. (B) Initiation and development of the fracture callus. (C) Note the simultaneous occurrence of chondrogenesis, endochondral ossification, and intramembranous bone formation in different regions of the fracture site. (D) Union of a long bone fracture. (From Lundon K. *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science: Principles for Clinical Management of Bone.* Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000.)

released by damaged bone and during inflammation triggers the initiation of bony repair. The hematoma organizes into a fibrin "scaffold," and cells within the hematoma begin to release growth factors and other proteins that trigger cell migration and proliferation of osteoblasts from the periosteum and endosteum, as well as synthesis of a fracture callus matrix for bony repair (see Fig. 12.17B and C).[123] Initially the pH of the area around the fracture is acidic, and the fracture callus is primarily cartilaginous. As the repair stage progresses, the pH becomes more alkaline, creating an environment that enhances activity of the alkaline phosphatase enzyme, and subsequently mineralization of the cartilage of the fracture callus into woven bone tissue (see Fig. 12.17D). The deposition of new cartilage within the callus is accompanied by both endochondral and intramembranous ossification. Clinical union of the fracture during the repair stage can last up to 3 months postinjury (hence the need for long periods of immobilization).

The final stage of healing is the remodeling stage, during which the new bone woven within the callus is reshaped into the more mature lamellae of long bone and excess callus resorbed. During this phase, osteoclasts are active to reshape trabeculae and lamellae along the lines of weight-bearing forces. The process of maturation of the callus into a fully repaired bone can last a year or more, especially in complex fractures, whether managed by casting or ORIF. Factors that influence the duration of the remodeling stage include age, severity of injury, nutritional status, concurrent chronic illness, and medication use (especially corticosteroids).[124]

FRACTURE CLASSIFICATIONS

Fractures are classified as either open or closed injuries on the basis of the presence of an open communication between the fracture and the outside world through a disruption of the soft tissues and skin.[125] In a closed fracture, the soft tissue envelope of muscles and skin around the bone fracture site is completely intact. Although muscle around the fracture site may be significantly damaged, the intact skin provides a barrier that prevents bacterial invasion of the injured muscle or bone. When an open or compound fracture occurs, the soft tissue envelope has been violated: The wound leaves muscle and fractured bone open to the environment and susceptible to infection. In many cases, bone may actually protrude through the skin. Open injuries are orthopedic emergencies; patients are taken urgently to the operating room for debridement of the wound and fracture. Severely damaged or contaminated tissue is removed, and the wound is carefully cleaned in an effort to avoid infection and provide optimal circumstances for healing.[120] The fracture is then stabilized with a cast or surgical implant.

Gustilo and Anderson[125] have developed a classification system applied interoperatively that rates the severity of open or compound fractures. The least severe is a type I injury, in which a small wound with minimal soft tissue damage (1 cm) communicates with the fracture. The wound in a type II fracture is generally between 1 and 12 cm, and significant soft tissue injury may be present underneath the laceration or wound. In a more severe, type III injury, the wound diameter is often greater than 12 cm, there is considerable periosteal stripping, and barely enough muscle or skin is present to cover the injured or fractured bone adequately. Type III open fractures are subdivided into another three categories—A, B, and C—on the basis of whether the soft tissue can cover the bone and whether neurological or vascular involvement is present in association with the open fracture. It should be noted that more important than the size of the skin defect is the damage to soft tissues and periosteum in determining type. Therefore a 1-cm open hole in a crushed and comminuted fracture may well be classified as a type III.

The particular location and pattern of fracture determine whether the fracture is stable and can be effectively managed with a cast or brace, or unstable, requiring surgical intervention. A fracture with concurrent joint dislocation creates an extremely unstable condition, requiring surgical management of the fracture/dislocation and a long period of rehabilitation.

Fractures (whether closed or open) are described as displaced or nondisplaced on the basis of the degree of malalignment or overlap that is observed on a radiograph (Fig. 12.18). They are described as complete or incomplete, depending on whether the bone has fully transected. In children, a greenstick fracture is an incomplete oblique or spiral fracture that extends only partially through bone. Exact location of the fracture is also important: Fractures of the diaphysis or metaphysis of a long cortical bone are extraarticular (Fig. 12.19), whereas those involving the epiphysis within the joint capsule are intraarticular. Intraarticular fractures, especially when displaced, have a high likelihood of causing posttraumatic arthritis, and often require surgical reconstruction of the joint surface.

Extraarticular fractures (Fig. 12.20A) can be transverse (mostly perpendicular to the axis of the bone), oblique (diagonal to the axis of the bone), or spiral (typically a result of

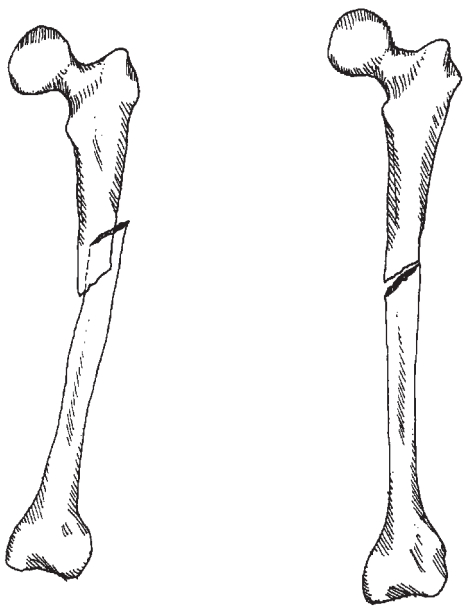


Fig. 12.18 Diagram of a displaced and nondisplaced fracture of the diaphysis of the femur. (From Gustilo RB. *The Fracture Classification Manual*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1991.)

torsional forces), depending on the direction of force contributing to the injury and the resulting alteration in bone configuration. When one or more substantive fragments are seen on the radiograph, the fracture is segmental; if there are multiple small fragments, the fracture is comminuted. In high-impact, complex fractures, there is often enough destruction of bone that there will be loss of bone length or substance. Fractures of the metaphysis are determined to be nondisplaced or displaced, simple, compressed, or comminuted (see Fig. 12.19). Before and during puberty (during times of rapid bone growth), there can be displacement of the proximal or distal epiphysis from the metaphysis through the cartilaginous epiphyseal plate (Fig. 12.21); the proximal (subcapital) epiphysis of the femur is particularly vulnerable.

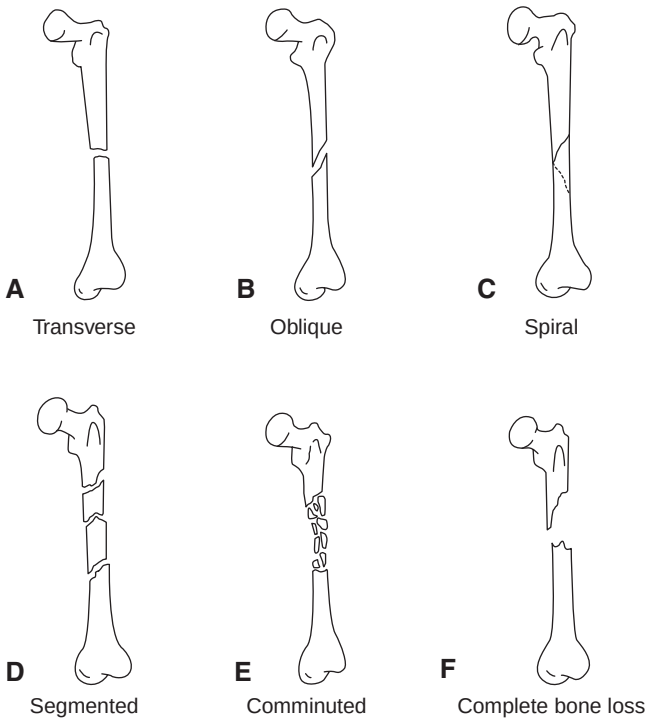


Fig. 12.19 Examples of types of long bone fractures illustrated in the diaphysis of the femur. A transverse fracture (A) is primarily perpendicular to the long axis of the bone, whereas an oblique fracture (B) diagonally transects the bone. A spiral fracture (C) is the result of a rotary force during injury. Segmental fractures (D) have one or more noncontinuous segments, whereas a comminuted fracture (E) has multiple small fragments. In cases of significant trauma, there may actually be loss of bone substance (F). (Modified from Gustilo RB. *The Fracture Classification Manual*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1991.)

Intraarticular fractures (Fig. 12.20B) are classified as linear, comminuted, impacted, or having a percent of bone loss (Fig. 12.22); complex intraarticular fractures involve both proximal and distal components of the joint (Fig. 12.23) and typically require ORIF.

In the proximal femur, fractures of the metaphysis are described as intertrochanteric fractures (extracapsular, linear or oblique, through or between the trochanters) or femoral neck fractures (intracapsular across the neck of the femur) or comminuted (with multiple fragments of neck and or trochanters; Fig. 12.24). These fractures fall into the category of hip fractures, and typically require ORIF or replacement with a femoral prosthesis (hemiarthroplasty) or even a total hip arthroplasty (Fig. 12.25). Fractures of the acetabulum are the result of either a longitudinal force through the femur into the pelvis or an upward oblique lateral force through the greater trochanter; if the hip happens to be adducted at the time of injury, this may lead to posterior dislocation (Fig. 12.26).

Fractures of the pelvis are classified as stable or unstable on the basis of the extent of damage that disrupts the circumferential integrity of the pelvis (Fig. 12.27). Persons with unstable fractures of the pelvis are at risk for life-threatening hemorrhage, as well as residual genitourinary

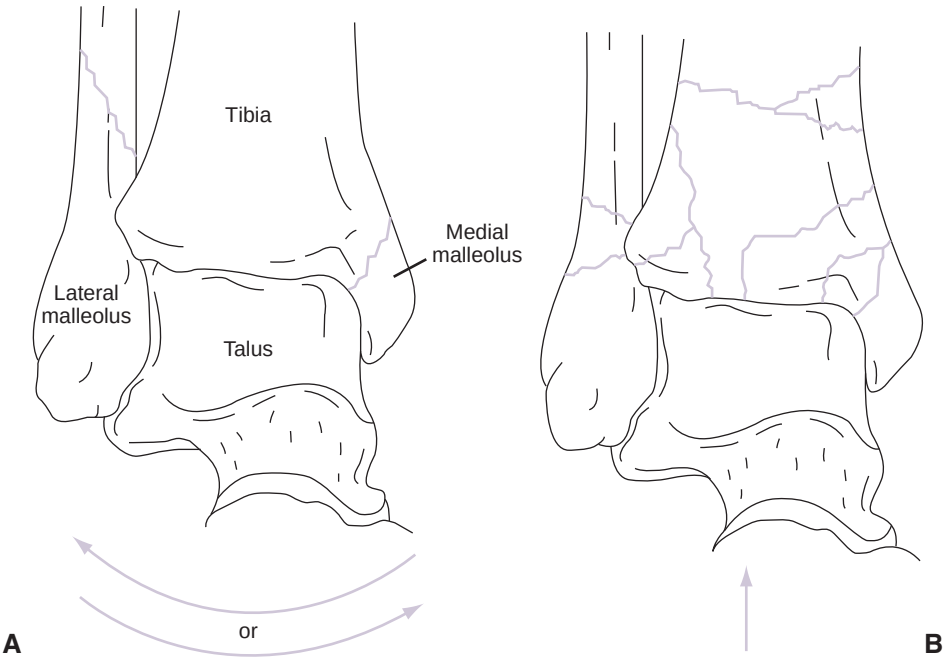


Fig. 12.20 (A) Extraarticular metaphyseal fracture of the malleoli of the tibia and fibula is often the result of rotational injuries. (B) Intraarticular fractures of the ankle mortis (also called *plafond* or *pylon fractures*) result from high-energy compressive injury. (Modified from Clark CR, Bonfiglio M, eds. *Orthopaedics: Essentials of Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.)

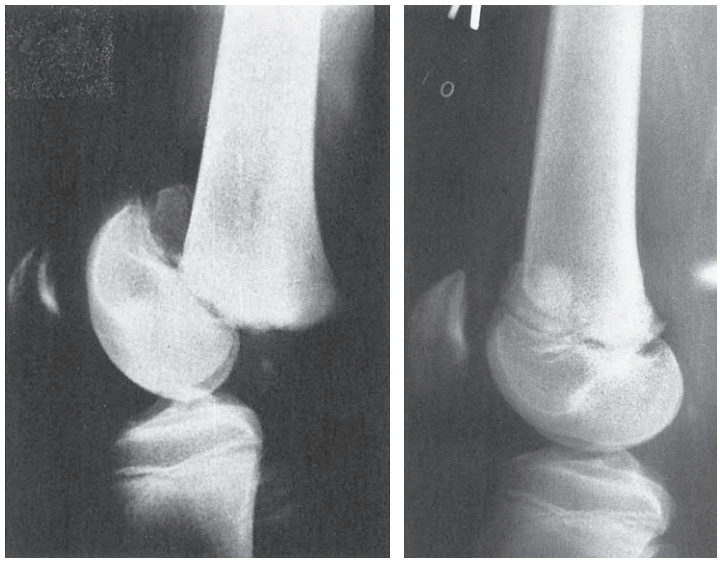


Fig. 12.21 Lateral view of an avulsed distal femoral condyle (A) before and (B) following closed reduction. (From Clark CR, Bonfiglio M, eds. *Orthopaedics: Essentials of Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.)

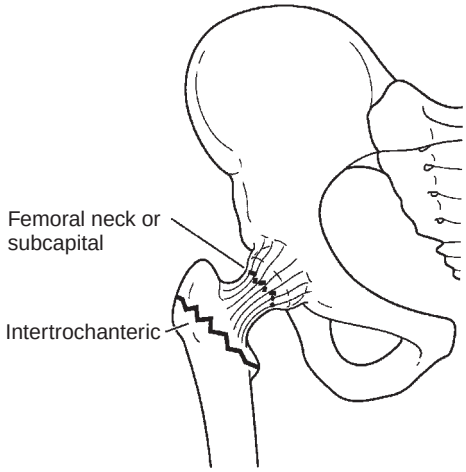


Fig. 12.22 Femoral neck fractures are intracapsular and traverse the blood supply to the femoral head. Intertrochanteric fractures spare the blood supply but are a greater risk for failure of fixation. (From Clark CR, Bonfiglio M, eds. *Orthopaedics: Essentials of Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.)

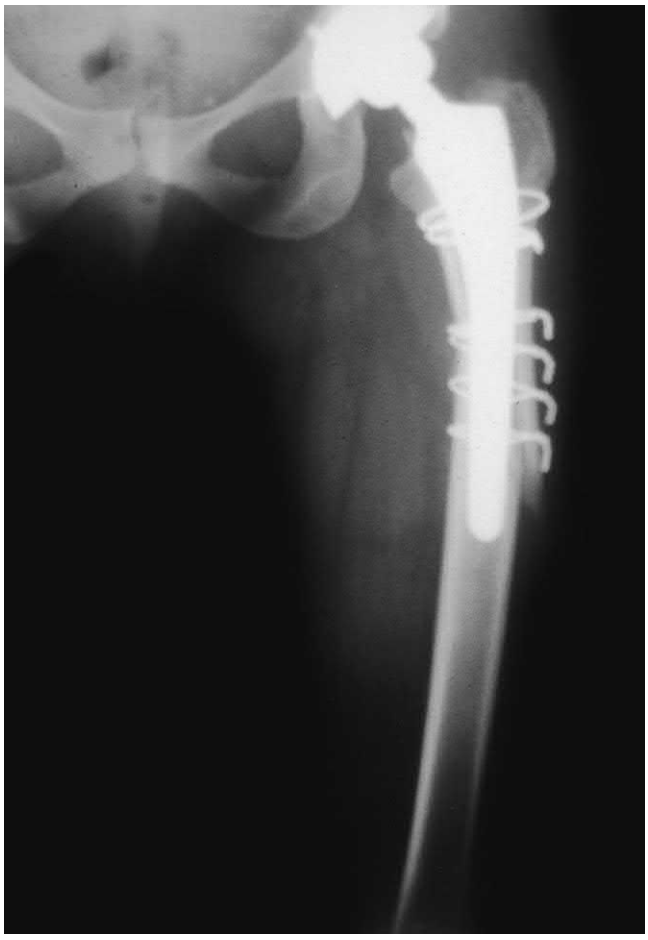


Fig. 12.23 A radiograph of a repaired complex fracture of the proximal femur with prosthetic total hip replacement and open reduction with internal fixation with circumferentially wrapped wires to stabilize a spiral fracture of the proximal femoral diaphysis.

or neurological complications, given the vessels, nerves, muscles, and organs that are housed within the pelvis.[126]

Fractures of irregularly shaped bones such as the tarsals and vertebrae tend to fall into three categories. Stress fractures result from repetitive loading of the bone, are often nondisplaced, and can disrupt either the inner scaffolding of the cancellous bone or the outer shell of cortical bone. Simple stress fractures typically heal well with immobilization; more complex stress fractures may require surgical stabilization. Pathological fractures occur when there is underlying disease (e.g., osteoporosis, Charcot osteopathy, neoplasm) that compromises bone density or metabolism. In pathological fractures the trabeculae are overwhelmed by the magnitude of force exerted through the bone, and the bone is compressed or fractured into fragments. Management of pathological fractures can be challenging, as bone healing is often compromised by the underlying disease process. Traumatic fractures are often comminuted; depending on severity, they may be managed by immobilization in a cast or orthosis, ORIF, or placement of an external fixation apparatus (Fig. 12.28).

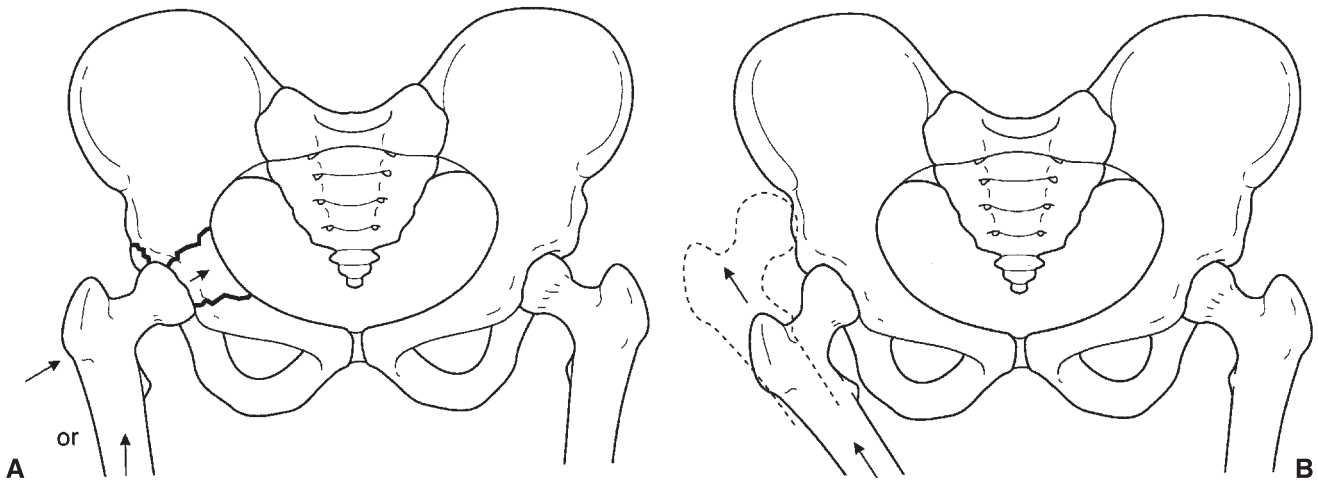


Fig. 12.24 (A) Acetabular fractures occur from a lateral blow over the greater trochanter or a proximally directed force transmitted up the length of the femur. (B) If the limb is injured with the hip in adduction and flexion, a posterior hip dislocation is likely. (From Clark CR, Bonfiglio M, eds. *Orthopaedics: Essentials of Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.)

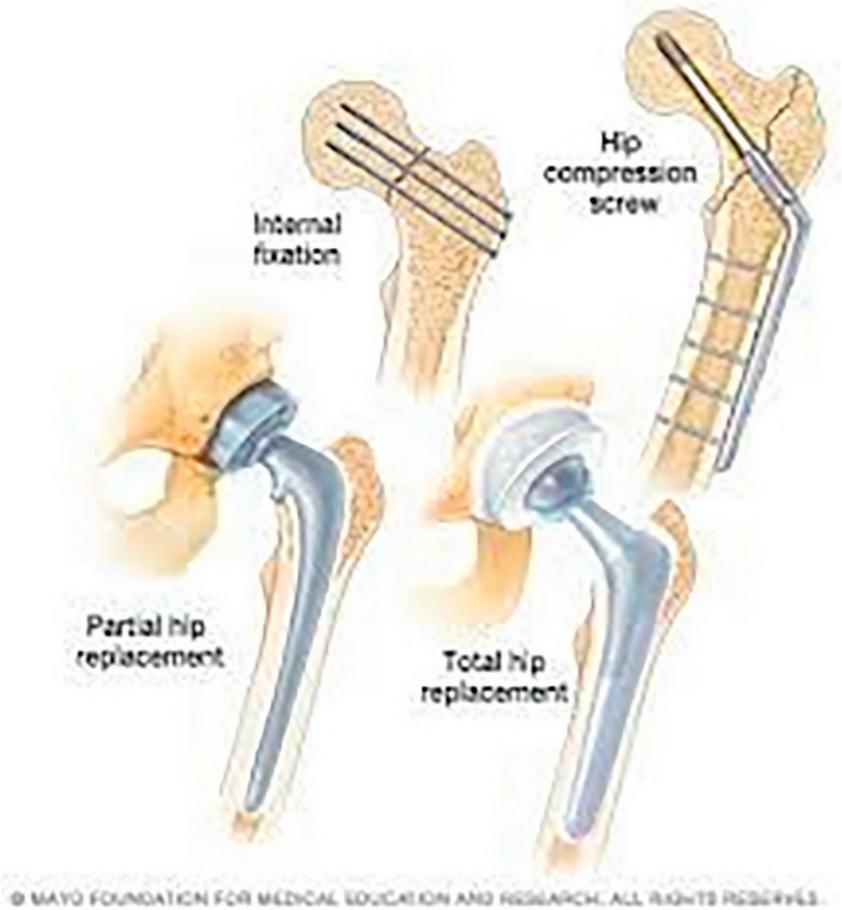


Fig. 12.25 Surgical management of femoral neck fractures. (Used with permission of Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research. All rights reserved.)

CASTS AND SPLINTS

The primary goal of fracture management is to restore musculoskeletal limb function of the injured extremity with optimal anatomical alignment, functional muscle strength, sensory function, and pain-free joint range of motion. The most common methods used for immobilization of closed fractures include casts, splints, fracture orthoses, or a hybrid cast-orthosis.[119,127] Immobilization may also be used after ORIF of open fractures.

In choosing the appropriate immobilization strategy for an individual's fracture, the orthopedist considers several

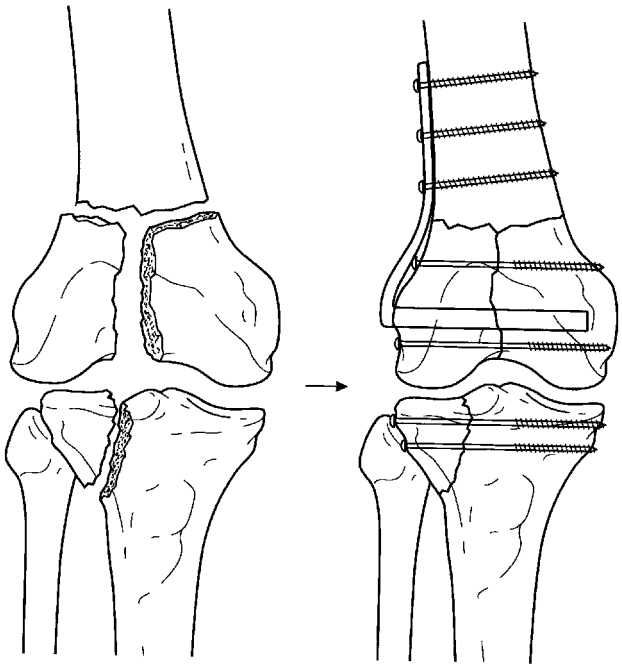


Fig. 12.26 Major intraarticular fractures of the distal femur and proximal tibia are typically managed by surgical open reduction with internal fixation using a combination of bone screws or nail and an external plate. (From Clark CR, Bonfiglio M, eds. *Orthopaedics: Essentials of Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.)

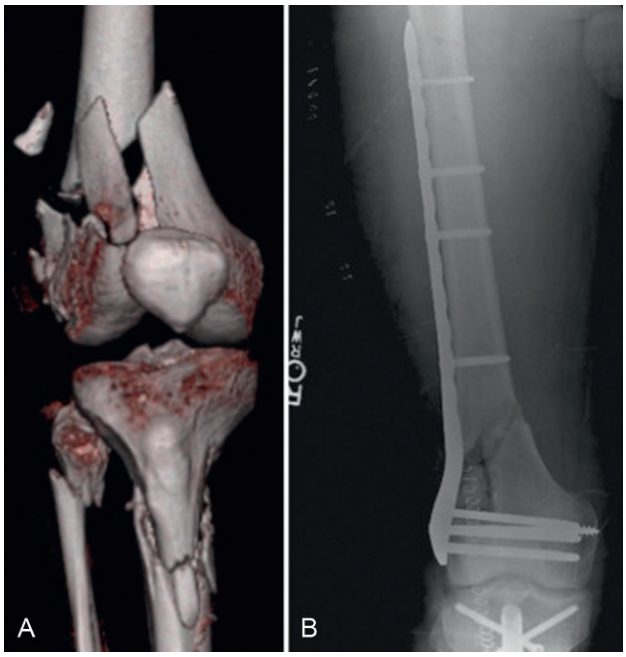


Fig. 12.28 Comminuted fracture of the femur with internal fixation. (A) Preoperative three-dimensional reconstruction of comminuted distal femur fracture. (B) Postoperative x-ray after surgery with lateral locked plate. (From Stancil R, Haidukewych GJ, Sassoon AA. Distal femur fractures. In: Scott WN, ed. *Insall & Scott Surgery of the Knee*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2018.)

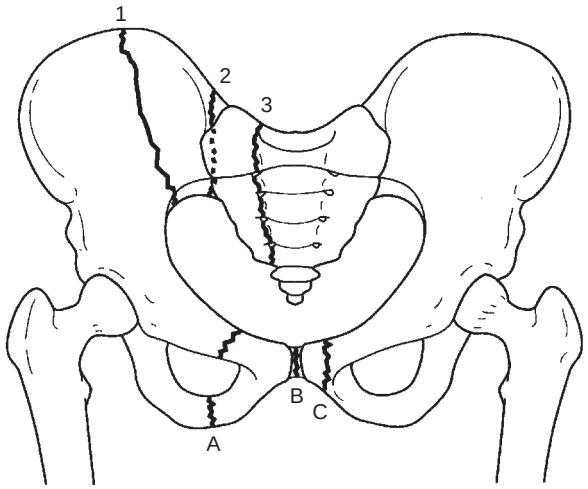


Fig. 12.27 Unstable pelvic fractures occur when pubic rami fractures *(A)*, symphysis disruption *(B)*, or pubic body fractures *(C)* are accompanied by fractures through the iliac wing *(1)*, sacroiliac joint *(2)*, or sacrum *(3)*. (From Clark CR, Bonfiglio M, eds. *Orthopaedics: Essentials of Diagnosis and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone; 1994.)

issues. The first is the stability of the fracture site and how well a device will be able to maintain fracture reduction and achieve the desired anatomical result. The condition of the skin and soft tissue is also an important consideration, especially if wounds are present that must be accessed for proper care. Limb volume must be evaluated, especially if edema is present or anticipated: How will limb size change over time in the device? Length of immobilization time varies as well: Is the device designed for a short-term problem, or will protection of the limb be necessary for an extended period? Will the device need to be removed for hygiene or wound care? Can the limb be unprotected while sleeping or when not ambulating? Availability (time to application) may also influence decision making. Casts and cast braces can be applied quickly. Custom orthoses need additional fabrication and fitting time; an alternative means of protection is often required while the device is being fabricated.

The individual's ability to comply consistently and reliably with weight-bearing restrictions and other aspects of fracture management must also be considered. Factors such as cognitive ability, emotional status, motivation, and physical ability, as well as the availability of assistance and environmental demands, influence the decision to provide additional external support. An unstable fracture managed by ORIF may not require additional support for those with sufficient strength and balance who have a clear understanding of the healing process. If the individual with a fracture cannot understand the need to protect the involved limb from excessive loading or is physically unable to do so, additional external support is essential. If compliance is questionable, the device of choice is usually a nonremovable cast or cast brace.

To effectively stabilize a fracture, the joints above and below the fracture site must be immobilized. The period of immobilization varies with fracture severity and location; in most cases the cast remains in place from 6 to 8 weeks or until a radiograph indicates that bone healing has progressed sufficiently for safe weight bearing and function. The time for immobilization is often less for children, due

to their rapid healing response. Although immobilization is essential for effective bone healing, it also has significant consequences on other tissues: While in a cast, patients are likely to develop significant joint stiffness (contracture), as well as disuse atrophy and weakness of the muscles of the immobilized limb. Once the cast is removed, rehabilitation professionals are called on to help the patient regain preinjury muscle performance, flexibility, and range of motion.

A cast is a rigid, externally applied device that provides circumferential support to an injured body part.[108] Casts immobilize a body segment to maintain optimal skeletal alignment (Figs. 12.29 and 12.30). Once a cast has been applied, a radiograph can be used to assess the effectiveness of skeletal alignment. The cast may need to be modified, wedged, or replaced to improve alignment.[128]

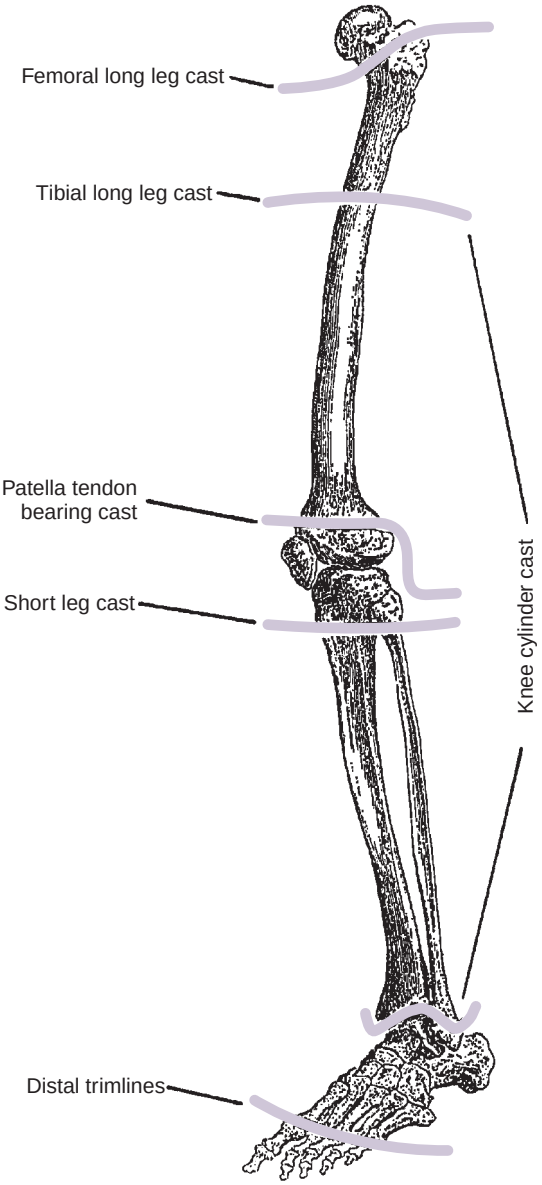


Fig. 12.29 Proximal and distal trimlines used in standard lower extremity casts. Typically, the joints above and below the fracture site are immobilized. Trimlines can be extended to provide better control and stabilization.

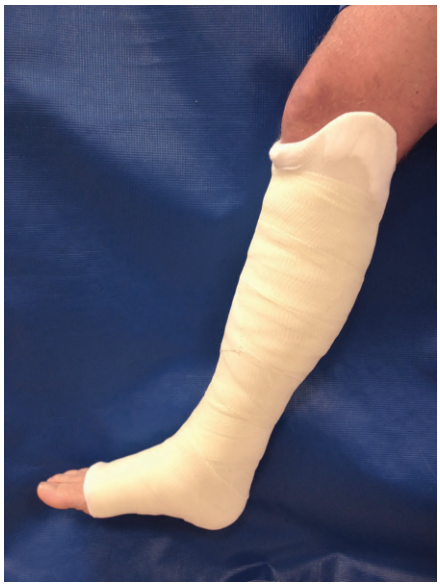


Fig. 12.30 Medial view of a patella tendon-bearing cast (From Bruce Reider AB, Davies GJ, Provencher MT. *Orthopaedic Rehabilitation of the Athlete: Getting Back in the Game.* Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2015.)

A splint is a temporary supportive device, usually fabricated from rigid materials, held in position on the fractured extremity with bandages or straps. Splints can be used for temporary immobilization before casting or surgical stabilization. They can be used to maintain fracture reduction while waiting for swelling to diminish or fracture blisters to clear or to provide comfort. The most commonly used splints include sugar tong splints (a long, U-shaped, padded plaster forearm splint named for its similarity to the tool used to pick up sugar cubes), short or long leg splints, thumb spica splints, ulnar or radial gutter splints, and coaptation splints.[117]

Casting and Splinting Materials

Before the 1800s, fracture casts were made from linen bandages soaked in beaten egg whites and lime. The modern era in fracture care began with the discovery of plaster of Paris (calcium sulfate), first used in the Turkish Empire as reported by Eaton in 1798.[129] Plaster of Paris was used in Europe in the early 19th century, and a Flemish surgeon (Mathijsen) is credited with combining the use of plaster of Paris and cloth bandages to form casts for the treatment of fractures in 1852.[128–130]

Plaster of Paris is created when heat is used to dehydrate gypsum. When water is added to plaster of Paris powder, the dehydration process is reversed, and crystals of gypsum are formed again. The new crystals interlock in a chemical exothermic (heat-producing) process.[131] The setting process is complete when heat is no longer being produced, although the cast remains wet to the touch until the excess water used in the process evaporates. Maximum cast strength is not reached until the plaster is completely dry. Drying time varies with the thickness of the cast, ambient humidity, and the type of plaster used. In most instances maximum cast strength is reached in approximately 24 hours.

Various types of plaster of Paris with different working characteristics are available. Manufacturers may add accelerators to the material that shorten the setting time: The limb has to be held still for less time while the plaster sets. Although this may be advantageous when a cast is applied to the limb of an anxious child or when an unstable fracture is cast, it also means that less working time is available to manipulate the extremity and optimally shape the cast. Setting time can be prolonged slightly if cold water is used. If warm or hot water is used to reduce setting time, care must be taken to protect the limb from injury from the higher heat that can be generated during the setting process.[128] Cast temperatures as high as 68.5°C have been reached with water temperatures of 40°C; burns can occur if cast temperature is maintained at 44°C for 6 hours or more.[132,133] To minimize any potential for burns in cast or splint application, room temperature tepid water (24°C) is recommended. If higher water temperatures have been used, the newly casted limb must not be placed on a pillow or other type of support that is likely to retain or reflect heat. Cast burns can also occur when insufficient padding has been placed between the plaster of Paris and the surface of the skin. Cast burns are avoidable if simple procedures are followed.

Cast strength is determined by three factors: the type of casting material used, the thickness of the cast, and the effectiveness of lamination among the layers of the cast material. The cloth mesh material that serves as the carrier for the plaster of Paris provides little strength for the cast. A plaster cast must be kept absolutely dry to prevent it from becoming soft and ineffective in immobilization.

The difficulties associated with the use of plaster of Paris have led to the development of newer and improved casting materials. Polyurethane-impregnated casting tapes have gained widespread popularity because of their superior strength, light weight, shorter setting time, cleaner application, and low exothermic reaction. Polyurethane casts are also radiolucent, permitting x-ray evaluation of fracture site healing while the limb remains encased in the cast.

Polyurethane is a plastic material that can be impregnated into a fabric substrate. Although the polyurethane bonds the layers of substrate together, it is actually the substrate that determines the strength of the cast. A variety of substrate materials are available. The weave determines how elastic the material will be during cast application and how strong the cast will be when set. Cotton, polyester, fiberglass, polypropylene, and blends of these materials and others are used in synthetic casting tapes.[131,132,134,135]

Immersing the synthetic casting tape in room temperature water for 10 seconds begins a heat-producing exothermic reaction and causes the material to harden (polymerize). Setting is complete for most synthetic casting materials in 5 to 10 minutes. Because of this short setting time, the rolls of bandage material cannot be opened until they are ready to be applied as a cast. The application process requires skill and must move quickly to ensure adequate molding time. Unlike plaster of Paris, the plastic bandage does not need to be massaged to ensure proper lamination between the layers of material. Also unlike plaster of Paris, which can easily be washed from the hands or clothing, polyurethane is not easily removed: Adequate protective padding must be placed around the patient's limb and protective gloves worn to safeguard the applicator's hands. Polyurethane resin in its natural state is tacky. An additive may be incorporated into the casting tape to reduce its tackiness. In some cases the manufacturer provides special gloves with an antitacky additive to further minimize the tack.[131] The exothermic polymerization of polyurethane resin produces much less heat (44.9°C in 40°C water) than that of setting plaster of Paris. In addition, heat is quickly dissipated so that burns are much less likely to occur when synthetic materials are used. To further minimize the risk of burns, immersion of cast tape in room temperature water (24°C) is recommended.[128, 132,136]

Cast Application

Stockinet is the first layer of a cast, applied over the skin, before any padding is added. The most common stockinet material is cotton. Synthetic materials such as polyester or polypropylene or Gore-Tex can be chosen in place of cotton because they do not retain water like cotton materials do. Stockinet also helps position dressings over wounds and provides extra circumferential control of soft tissue within the cast. Stockinet is folded over the proximal and distal edges to finish the cast (and prevents inadvertent removal of cast padding by a nonresponsible individual or a child).

Next, a layer of cast padding is added over the stockinet. A variety of materials are available to pad casts. Sheet cotton comes in various forms and is used to provide a barrier between the rigid walls of the cast and surface of the skin. Some cast materials have been elasticized for easier application and conformation, and others require more technique to ensure that they uniformly conform to the body part being casted.

Although synthetic cast tapes are not affected by water, cast padding or stockinet does retain water. The risk of skin maceration and breakdown is present if the inside of a cast remains damp for long periods of time. Some manufacturers market cast padding that reportedly permits exposure to water; however, manufacturer recommendations must be followed carefully.

The thickness of cast padding varies; ⅛ to ¼ inch is sufficient for most individuals. The goal is to protect bony prominences and soft tissue from the rigid walls of the cast while effectively immobilizing the fracture site. Soft tissue usually does well with a fairly thin, uniform two- or three-layer wrap. Extra padding is added to smooth and protect the irregular surfaces around bony prominences. Excessive padding reduces the ability of the cast to provide adequate immobilization. A well-molded cast that accurately follows the anatomical contours of the extremity requires less padding. Cast padding also provides a barrier so that the cast can be removed more easily when it needs to be changed or is no longer necessary.

Lower Extremity Casts

The short leg cast is used in the management of fractures involving the distal tibia or fibula, or both; the ankle joint; or the rear foot or midfoot. The foot is positioned in a

functional neutral ankle position (90 degrees) or in slight dorsiflexion. This positioning prevents a plantarflexion contracture from developing by the time of cast removal. The foot can also be casted in a plantarflexed position to accommodate repair of an Achilles tendon rupture. The proximal trimline falls at the level of the tibial tubercle; the distal trimline usually encloses the metatarsal heads. The area around the fibular head is protected by adding extra cast padding to minimize the risk of compression of the peroneal nerve. A cast shoe should be used to protect the bottom of the cast if weight bearing is to be permitted.

For persons with midshaft fractures of the tibia, a patellar tendon–bearing (PTB) cast may be applied. This design incorporates a patellar tendon bar, which directs some of the limb loading force to the external shell of the cast, thus protecting the full length of the tibia against bending moments (see Fig. 12.30). This type of cast or orthosis is not effective, however, in reducing axial loading of the tibia or hind foot. The PTB is most often used when extra stability is desired for individuals who will be allowed some degree of weight-bearing activity. The cast is applied with the ankle maintained in neutral or slightly dorsiflexed position to minimize potential hyperextension moment at the knee in stance. Trimlines are similar to those used for a PTB transtibial prosthetic socket: at the midpatella (or sometimes suprapatella) anteriorly but trimmed and slightly flared posteriorly to permit knee flexion of at least 90 degrees. Proximally, the cast is well molded to the tibia in the area of the medial flare and around the patella.[137,138] Care must be taken to ensure that no pressure is placed on the peroneal nerve.

A knee cylinder cast is often applied when there have been fractures of the patella or surgical repair of the knee joint when the knee must be immobilized in full extension. To ensure the necessary stability for the knee joint, the proximal trimline encompasses the lower two thirds of the thigh and the distal trimline the entire tibial segment to just above the malleoli. The cast can be applied using either plaster of Paris or synthetic casting tape. To limit the risk of pistoning when the person wearing the cast is standing or walking, the cast is carefully molded to fit the contours of the medial femoral condyle.

For closed fractures of the upper tibia, knee joint, or lower femur, a long leg cast provides the necessary stability for healing. Depending on the site of fracture and its relative stability, the limb is immobilized in nearly full extension or in a bent-knee position.[138] A straight knee cast is usually applied with a slight (5-degree) knee flexion angle to enhance patient comfort. Bent knee casts are usually chosen when non–weight bearing must be ensured during ambulation or to aid in controlling rotation of the tibia. With the relatively mobile arrangement of soft tissue that surrounds the femur, it is challenging to provide adequate immobilization, especially for persons who are particularly muscular or overweight. For this reason, control of rotational forces through the femur within a long leg cast is questionable. If the cast is being used to stabilize the tibia, the proximal trimline is at the junction of the middle and proximal third of the femur. If the cast is being used to stabilize the distal femur, the proximal trimline is at the level of the greater trochanter. Distally, the cast immobilizes the ankle and extends to a point just beyond the metatarsal heads. The fibular head should be well padded within the cast to minimize the risk of entrapment of the peroneal nerve.

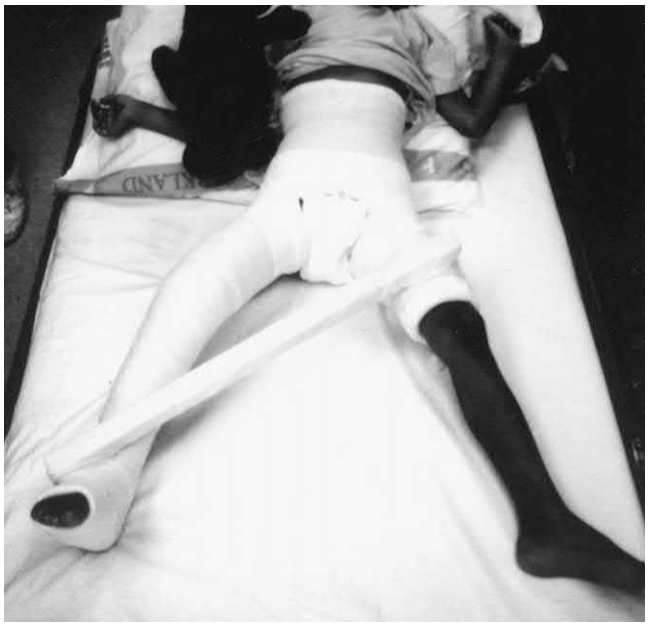


Fig. 12.31 This child has been placed in a 1½ hip spica cast to stabilize a fracture of the proximal femur. Note the opening for personal hygiene and the additional diagonal support bar incorporated between the short and long sections of the cast.

A hip spica cast, which encases the hip and pelvis in addition to the lower extremity, is necessary for effective control of fractures of the proximal femur and of the hip joint[139] (Fig. 12.31). The hip spica cast is the primary method of treatment of femoral fractures in children under 5 years of age and is used in adults when a prefabricated hip orthosis is not appropriate. Several variations of the hip spica cast are available. In a single hip spica cast, the plaster or synthetic cast material is anchored around the entire pelvis and lower trunk but immobilizes only the hip and knee of the involved side, allowing fairly unrestricted hip motion of the opposite limb. In a 1½ hip spica cast, the cast encases the entire lower extremity on the affected side, as well as the lower trunk, pelvis, and thigh on the uninvolved side. Usually the knee on the affected side is completely immobilized; however, an articulated knee joint can be incorporated if specific circumstances so dictate. In most instances, the hip joint of the affected limb is immobilized in 30 degrees of flexion and 30 degrees of abduction, and the perineal edges are trimmed back to allow for personal care and hygiene. The knee is usually positioned in 30 degrees of flexion. The proximal cast encases the lower to middle trunk (to the level of the costal margin or nipple line), depending on the amount of spinal immobilization required. The 1½ hip spica cast is often reinforced by the incorporation of a lightweight diagonal bar between the short and long extremity segments. Ambulation is possible but often quite challenging, requiring significant upper body strength to manage the adapted crutch-walking gait that the cast position makes necessary.

Cast Removal

A cast cutter or saw with a vibrating disk is used to cut the cast during cast removal. Modern cast cutter blades reciprocate back and forth approximately ⅛ inch in either direction. The vibrating blade easily cuts rigid materials such as metal, wood, plaster, or synthetic cast materials but does not cut through materials that are elastic or mobile. If used properly, a cast cutter does not cut skin. Incorrect or inappropriate use of a cast cutter can seriously cut or burn a patient. To reduce the risk of injury, the blade should not directly contact the patient's skin. Friction between the blade and cast significantly heats the blade, creating a potential for burns. A sharp new blade has less potential for burning the patient than a blade that has become dull or worn out. The noise of the cast cutter can be quite frightening to children or other particularly anxious patients. A careful explanation and a demonstration of the cast cutter's action are the first steps in the process of cast removal.

To remove a cast safely, the cutter is used in a repetitive in-out motion, to progressively open the cast, instead of sliding the blade through the cast. This strategy reduces the risk of a cut or burn on the patient's skin.[140] Safety strips may be incorporated into the cast at the time of application to allow for a safe path for the saw blade to penetrate through without damaging skin. These strips are especially important when friable liners like Gore-Tex are used under the cast. Safe technique involves the operator's thumb serving as a fulcrum on the cast as downward pressure is applied through the wrist. The thumb also controls the depth of the blade. Care is taken to avoid positioning the cast cutter in areas where skin is vulnerable: over a bony prominence or where significant edema or fragile healing skin is present. As the blade breaks through the inner wall of the cast, the sensation of reduced resistance to downward pressure, as well as a change in sound, occurs. Once an area of cast has been cut, the blade is repositioned farther along the cast and the process is repeated until the cast can be pried open completely. Bandage scissors are used to cut through padding and stockinet, and the limb is then extracted from the open cast. For infants and young children with small limbs, an alternative strategy can be used: A plaster of Paris cast can be removed by soaking it in water. This method works particularly well when a corrective clubfoot cast is removed from an infant's limb.

HYBRID CAST BRACES

Hybrid cast braces were first developed as a method of management of proximal tibial and distal femoral fractures near the knee just after World War I but then fell out of use until the mid-1960s (Fig. 12.32).[141–143] In some centers, the cast brace is the method of choice for the management of nondisplaced tibial plateau fractures. The cast brace is often used for additional support of fractures near the knee or of the femur that have been stabilized via ORIF surgery for external fixation (Fig. 12.33). This method is also used to control motion after knee ligament injury or reconstruction.

Cast braces incorporate orthotic components (e.g., hinge joints, range of motion locks) into a plaster or synthetic cast in an effort to provide additional stability to a healing limb.[144–152] The cast brace can be applied using either plaster of Paris or synthetic cast materials. Depending on the nature of the fracture and its stability, the orthotic knee joints incorporated into the cast brace may be chosen to provide limited, controlled, or free-knee range of motion. Because the anatomical center rotation of the knee moves in an arc centered over the femoral condyles, it is essential that the mechanical joints be carefully aligned with the anatomical knee joint to reduce the abnormal stress that occurs across the joint and fracture site.[153,154]

Many orthotists and orthopedic surgeons choose a polycentric orthotic knee joint because its motion more closely follows anatomical motion and reduces the torque-related stress that results from a single-axis mechanical joint. Palpating the condyles on a patient who has had recent trauma about the knee is difficult; the midpatella is a somewhat less precise alternative landmark for alignment. A properly placed polycentric metal joint will be proximal to the joint line and slightly posterior to the midline. Orthotic knee joints are positioned close to but not quite contacting skin. This is especially important medially, where contact between the knees during functional activity is likely.

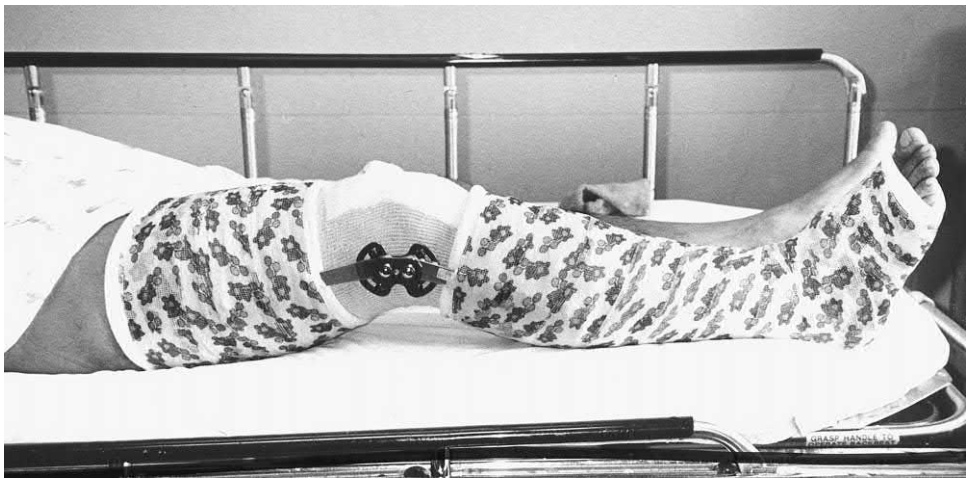


Fig. 12.32 A tibial cast brace with polycentric adjustable range of motion hinges. The patient has undergone an open reduction with internal fixation surgery after fracture of the tibial plateau. Note that synthetic cast tape is available in a wide variety of colors and patterns.

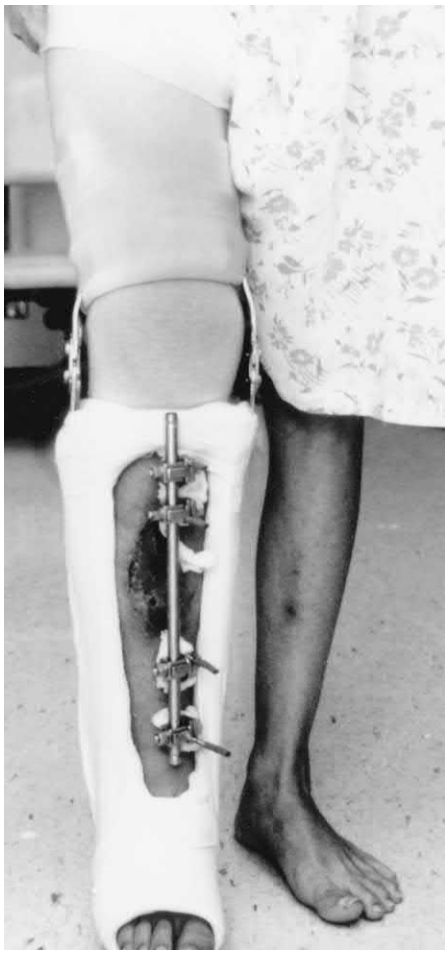


Fig. 12.33 This cast brace provides medial/lateral stability for a comminuted grade 3 open tibial fracture. The length of the tibia is being maintained by an external fixation device. The patient also sustained a closed femoral fracture, which has been supported by an intramedullary rod fixation. Because the proximal portion of the cast must not terminate near a fracture line, the femoral portion of the cast has been extended up to the level of the trochanter to avoid stress on the femoral fixation.

Medial and lateral uprights are incorporated into the cast above and below the orthotic knee joint to provide protection against unwanted varus and valgus stress and to help control anteroposterior displacement of the tibia or femur.

The distal tibial cast holds the ankle in a neutral position and extends distally to encompass the metatarsal heads. The proximal trimline of the tibial cast is typically at the tibial tubercle, and the distal trimline of the femoral cast is an equal distance from the midpatella. Posteriorly, both tibial and femoral casts are trimmed to permit at least 90 degrees of knee flexion. If warranted, a slight varus or valgus stress can be applied at the time of cast brace application, or a varus/valgus strap can be added to aid in unloading a knee compartment. For persons with fractures of the upper tibia and knee, the proximal component encases the lower two-thirds of the femur. If fracture of the femur has occurred, the proximal component extends upward to the level of the greater trochanter. To be effective, careful molding of the proximal portion of the cast around the trochanter and medial wall is required. For fractures of the mid to upper femur, an orthotic hip joint and pelvic band must be added to ensure alignment and stability.

FRACTURE ORTHOSES

A custom-fabricated or custom-fit fracture orthosis is designed to maintain a body part in an optimal anatomical position, limit joint motion, and unload weight-bearing forces.[155–158] The major advantage of a fracture orthosis, as compared with a cast brace, is that the orthosis can be removed for wound or skin care. Fracture orthoses are fabricated from high-temperature thermoplastic materials. They are designed to provide total contact, circumferential control of a fracture while allowing the individual with a healing fracture to have functional mobility. Fracture stability is enhanced in two ways: by hydrostatic pressure forces created as the rigid walls of the orthosis compress soft tissue and muscles in the extremity and by the lever arm created by extension of the orthosis above and below the fracture site. Fracture orthoses do not entirely unload the lower extremity during weight bearing. If complete unloading or reduced loading is required to protect the fracture site, an appropriate assistive device (crutches or a walker) and a single limb gait pattern must be used.[150]

Two types of fracture orthoses are available: (1) those that are custom fabricated from a mold of the patient's limb and (2) prefabricated orthoses that are custom fit to match the patient's needs. Because of the wide variation in anatomical characteristics among individuals, it is not always possible to use a prefabricated orthosis. Likewise, because of anatomical similarities in the human skeleton, it is not always necessary to create a custom-fabricated device. In certain instances, an orthosis must be precisely fit to provide the desired stabilization of the fracture; in other cases, the orthosis must be heavily padded so that a precise fit is less important. The orthotic prescription must clearly designate the motions to be permitted and controlled, the corrective forces to be applied, and a precise diagnosis and description of the fracture.

Types of Fracture Orthoses

Fracture orthoses are named by the joints they encompass and the motion that they are designed to control. An AFO with an anterior shell is used to control ankle and distal tibia motion (Fig. 12.34). It encases the injured limb completely, limiting motion of the foot or ankle for patients with distal tibial or fibular fractures. The AFO fracture orthosis has two advantages: It can be removed for wound care and hygiene, and it can be worn with standard lace-up shoes if weight bearing is permitted. The application of a cushion heel and rocker sole may be necessary on the shoe to compensate for limited heel, ankle, and toe rocker motion during gait. Because total contact is essential, this thermoplastic orthosis is vacuum molded over a positive impression of the patient's limb. The anterior shell may be lined with soft-density foam to accommodate bony deformity or insufficient soft tissue. Perforated thermoplastic material is often used for the anterior section as a means of ventilation for

Fig. 12.34 Ankle-foot fracture orthosis with a patellar tendon-bearing design incorporated to protect the tibia for bending moments during weight bearing. This orthosis is typically utilized to encourage healing for fractures of the middle third of the tibia. This orthosis is typically with a shoe as orthosis has a low-profile footplate to prevent distal migration of orthosis. (Courtesy Alimed.)

Fig. 12.35 An example of a commercially available short leg walker with a rocker bottom sole that can be used for individuals with Achilles tendon repair, stable healing fractures of the distal tibia/fibula, ankle, or foot, or with severe ankle sprains. (Courtesy DJO Global)

patient comfort. The proximal anterior trimline is at the tibial tubercle. Adequate clearance must be provided for the head of the fibula and the peroneal nerve. The distal posterior section usually extends to just beyond the metatarsal heads on the plantar surface, whereas the anterior section is trimmed just proximally. A stocking or thin sock is worn to protect the skin and for comfort. The anterior section is held in place with a series of hook-and-loop material straps. Shoes must be worn if weight bearing is permitted.

A number of prefabricated short leg walkers are also commercially available; these devices are designed to substitute for a short leg cast and are intended to be removable by the patient. They are heavily padded and, if properly fit, provide excellent immobilization of the distal tibia, ankle, rear foot, and forefoot (Fig. 12.35). The various designs are similar, but manufacturers' instructions should be followed to maximize their effectiveness. The short leg walker's advantage is that it can be removed for wound and skin care. Its disadvantage may be slightly less effective immobilization. The ankle is positioned at a neutral (90-degree) angle. Some designs have an adjustable orthotic ankle joint that permits a controlled, limited range of motion, to assist forward progression during walking. The components of a short leg walker include a rigid foot piece that is attached to a pair of metal or thermoplastic uprights and a proximal cuff that helps to suspend a foam liner. Short leg walkers are manufactured in various styles and sizes. To ensure proper fit, the manufacturer's recommendations must be followed carefully.

The PTB fracture orthosis is the removable version of the PTB cast, providing significant protection from bending and rotatory torque for the tibia during weight-bearing activities. This thermoplastic orthosis is most often vacuum molded over a positive mold of the patient's limb for optimal total contact fit. Ankle position within the orthosis is often in slight dorsiflexion, once again to minimize hyperextension moment at the knee during the stance phase of gait. Trimlines are similar to those of an AFO with anterior shell, with the proximal trimline extending somewhat more proximally to the proximal pole of the patella anteriorly, medially, and laterally. The posterior trimline should permit free knee flexion beyond 90 degrees. Hook-and-loop material straps are used to secure the anterior and posterior sections together. The anterior and the posterior sections can be hinged at the proximal edge for improved anteroposterior control.

The purpose of the knee-ankle-foot fracture orthosis is to provide long-term protection for fractures of the distal to middle femur or for fractures about the knee. This orthosis is often used as an alternative to a hybrid cast brace for persons who have had ORIF for fractures of the proximal tibia, knee, or distal femur. The orthosis is removable for wound care and personal hygiene and when protection is not required. Depending on the location of the fracture, the orthosis can be designed to limit range of motion or to permit full motion of the knee. Drop locks can be used to stabilize the knee in full extension during ambulation. The design of the orthosis also protects the knee from excessive mediolateral and anteroposterior shear stress during ambulation. If maximum stability is necessary, a solid-ankle design can be incorporated; if mobility of the ankle is desired, an articulated ankle joint with an appropriate motion stop mechanism can be used. The orthosis requires total contact within the femoral and tibial components. Proximal trimlines follow the anatomical contours of the proximal femur to the greater trochanter to provide femoral protection. To stabilize the knee or proximal tibia, encasement of the lower two thirds of the femur is sufficient. The orthosis alone cannot effectively unload the

Fig. 12.36 A hip section has been utilized with this fracture knee ankle foot fracture orthosis to provide better control of hip abduction/adduction and rotation. This may be beneficial for complex injuries of lower extremity that may include a proximal femur fracture. Lateral stability from metal uprights helps to support femur in ambulation. Orthotic hip joints may be utilized to limit hip flexion and extension as well as adjust for abduction/adduction. (Courtesy Orthomerica Products.)

femur, tibia, or foot: If axial unloading is desired, appropriate assistive devices (crutches or walker) must be used.

For individuals with proximal femoral fractures, a hip joint and pelvic band are often incorporated into a total contact KAFO (Fig. 12.36) in an effort to control motion and rotational forces through the femur. Depending on the patient's specific needs, hip flexion/extension motion can be restricted or free; abduction/adduction is usually restricted. The placement of the orthotic hip joint is approximately 1 cm anterior and 1 cm proximal to the tip of the greater trochanter in most adults. Knee and ankle motion can be free or limited, given the location and stability of the fracture. A variety of single-axis or polycentric orthotic hip joints can be incorporated. A pelvic belt is used to maintain the orthotic hip joint in proper functional position. The belt should fit midway between the crest of the ilium and the greater trochanter.

EXTERNAL FIXATION DEVICES

External fixation devices have evolved primarily to care for initial management of complex open or severely comminuted, unstable fractures that are most often the result of high-energy injury or multiple trauma (see Figs. 12.28 and 12.33).[159–163] In particular, external fixation is used for severe metaphyseal fractures, severe intraarticular fractures, when there has been nonunion, in cases of substantial bone loss with allograft, and for fractures in osteoporotic bone.[161,164] They are particularly useful when fracture disrupts pelvic stability.[165–167]

Pins are placed into bone on either side of the fracture and then clamped onto lightweight rods in an external frame. The external frame can be a single rod, a set of articulated rods that cross the joint axis, circumferential, or a combination of these options.[168–172] The goal is to provide optimal skeletal alignment while providing visual access to healing skin and muscle. The external fixator permits active range of motion of the joint above and below the fracture. It is removed when soft tissues have adequately healed and radiographs demonstrate healing of the fracture. Casts or orthoses can be used to provide immobilization after fixator removal to support and protect the fracture until healing is complete.

POSTFRACTURE MANAGEMENT AND POTENTIAL COMPLICATIONS

The postfracture issues and complications that are of concern to the managing physician and rehabilitation team include vascular injury, compartment syndrome, appropriate weight-bearing status, loss of reduction, delayed or nonunion, infection, implant failure (for ORIF), compression neuropathy, and skin breakdown. Each patient who presents to the emergency department with a fracture must be assessed for potential vascular injury and risk of developing compartment syndrome by careful physical examination. Whether a splint, cast, surgical ORIF, or placement of external fixators has been used to stabilize the fracture, the condition of the extremity must be monitored carefully by the physician, rehabilitation professional, patient, and family caregivers.

Fractures or dislocations around joints may have a concomitant arterial injury that can bruise or completely disrupt an artery, compromising or completely interrupting blood flow beyond the site of fracture.[173–175] This creates a grave situation: The physician has a window of less than 6 to 8 hours in which to restore blood supply and nutrition to the distal muscle and bone before significant tissue death occurs. The longer the period of ischemia, the greater the likelihood of delayed healing, infection, and necrosis. This is commonly seen in patients with blunt trauma due to the associated injuries, fractures, and dislocations. Severe damage may lead to amputation of injured limb.[176]

Compartment syndrome evolves when bleeding or inflammation exceeds the expansive capacity of semirigid muscle or soft tissue anatomical spaces (compartments) of the fractured limb.[177–179] Once interstitial pressure exceeds a critical level, blood vessels and muscles are compressed, and oxygen supply to the muscles is significantly compromised. Irreversible muscle or nerve damage occurs if compartment syndrome continues for longer than 6 to 8 hours. Presenting signs and symptoms include extreme pain and significant swelling of the extremity with taut skin. Passive motion of the fingers or toes causes excruciating

pain. Compartment syndrome is considered a medical emergency: The treating physician must be notified immediately so that a fasciotomy can be performed to relieve excessive compartment pressures. All health professionals who are involved in the treatment of extremity trauma should be aware of the signs and symptoms of compartment syndrome. If unrecognized and untreated, compartment syndrome has devastating results.

One of the most important considerations for lower extremity fractures is weight-bearing status. A patient's weight-bearing status (full weight bearing, weight bearing as tolerated, partial weight bearing, toe-touch weight bearing, or non–weight-bearing) is determined by the physician on the basis of the stability of the fracture and the immobilization method used. Once a patient is stable after an operation or a cast has been applied and is properly set, rehabilitation professionals work with the patient and family on mobility and gait training. The rehabilitation professional selects the appropriate assistive device for a patient's weight-bearing status, given the patient's physical and cognitive status and the characteristics of his or her usual living environment. Communicating quickly to the referring physician any signs of developing complications or difficulty with compliance that might put the fracture site at risk is important.

Loss of reduction of the fracture is a serious complication and can occur whether a splint, cast, ORIF, or external fixator has been used to realign and stabilize the limb.[169,179–181] A progressive angular deformity or abnormal position of the limb suggests loss of reduction and must be quickly reported to the managing physician. Even if reduction appears to be appropriate, inadequate immobilization within a splint or cast can lead to delayed union, nonunion (nonhealing), or malunion (healing in an abnormal position).

Any patient who has sustained an open fracture is at risk of developing infection of skin, deep tissue and muscle, or even bone. Both intravenous and local antibiotics are administered in the emergency department and operating room to minimize likelihood of infection from contamination sustained at the time of injury.[182–186] Infections may also be iatrogenic.[183,187] An infection is a serious complication that requires aggressive antibiotic treatment or debridement, or both. If an infection occurs after ORIF, the implanted hardware may have to be removed and an external fixation device applied. For individuals with external fixation, the pins provide a tract for infectious organisms directly into bone.[188] Appropriate wound and pin care is essential to minimize the risk of infection.[189] Osteomyelitis, or infection of bone, is a serious situation that can result in deformity; joint destruction; and, in some circumstances, amputation.[189–192] Patients who have undergone ORIF are at risk of implant failure if repeated loading causes fatigue and ultimately exceeds the strength of the implant material and design.[193–195] Loosening or breakage of implanted screws, plates, or other devices also indicates excessive motion of the fracture site and increases the risk of delayed healing or nonunion. The patient's ability to function within weight-bearing limits established by the physician must be carefully assessed and monitored to reduce the risk of implant failure.

Complications also occur in patients whose fractures are managed by casting. The patient's neurovascular function is documented before cast application and carefully monitored while the cast is in place. In the distal lower extremity, the peroneal nerve is susceptible to prolonged pressure (compression-induced peroneal palsy) as it wraps around the head of the fibula.[119,196,197]

Complaints of edge pressure or toes being squeezed can be solved with cast modifications; however, excessive pressure and discomfort inside the cast often require removal and reapplication of a new cast.[198] On initial application, a cast is designed to have a snug but not tight fit. Signs of distal vascular compromise such as delayed capillary refill on compression of the nail bed suggest that the cast may be excessively tight.[119,198] It is not uncommon for cast fit to loosen over time as a result of several factors: initial edema resolves, compressive forces modify soft tissue composition, disuse atrophy occurs, and cast padding compresses over time. Fit must be carefully monitored over time: A loose cast provides less control of the skeleton, and fracture reduction may be lost. Pistoning of a loose cast on the extremity is likely to lead to skin breakdown and shear over bony prominences.

Casts applied postoperatively while the patient is anesthetized are usually univalved (split down the front) to accommodate postoperative swelling.[120] Excessive swelling is accompanied by significant pain. Limb elevation is the first defense against excessive swelling and pain; however, the cast can be opened further or bivalved to relieve extreme pressure.[3] The risk of compartment syndrome must always be considered: If the patient experiences significant pain on passive motion of the fingers or toes, the physician must be contacted immediately. Failure to recognize and appropriately treat a compartment syndrome results in muscle necrosis and possible loss of the limb.[177]

Occasionally, a window can be cut into a cast to inspect a wound or relieve a pressure area. If the limb is edematous, it is likely that soft tissue will begin to protrude through the window, resulting in additional skin irritation and breakdown. For this reason, any piece of cast that is removed to make a window must be reapplied and secured to the cast after modifications have been made.[198]

Patients with foot pain try to reposition the foot within the cast to make it more comfortable. Inappropriate plantar flexion of the foot within the cast creates excessive pressure on the posterior heel and dorsum of the foot. Discomfort can be reduced if the patient is able to push the relaxed foot gently downward while pulling the cast upward, as if pulling on a boot. If this fails to relieve pressure, the cast must be removed and reapplied.[198]

Foreign objects introduced into a cast are the most common cause of discomfort and pressure. In an attempt to relieve itching of dry skin, patients are sometimes tempted to insert coat hangers, rulers, sticks, pens, and similar objects into the cast to scratch the itchy areas. This strategy often leads to displacement of cast padding, creating lumps and bumps where smooth surface contact is essential. Objects can break off or become trapped within the cast as well. The best way to relieve itching is by tapping on the cast or blowing cool air into it.

Another common complication is skin maceration, which is the result of prolonged exposure to water or a moist environment within the cast. Although, ideally, a cast is kept completely dry, many become wet at some point after application. Plaster casts that become wet lose significant stability and must be replaced. Synthetic casts can be towel dried as much as possible and then further dried using a cool setting on a blower or hairdryer.

Summary

In this chapter the reader has discovered that orthoses play an important role in the management of traumatic (e.g., fracture) and developmental (e.g., DDH, LCPD) musculoskeletal conditions. Each member of the interdisciplinary rehabilitation team has a contribution to make to the care of individuals with pathologic conditions of the musculoskeletal system, as well as shared responsibility to monitor for changes in function and potential complications. Although many prefabricated orthoses are available, knowledge of appropriate fit, design, and dynamics of the orthoses is essential so that the device will most closely match the intention of intervention. Precise communication about the goals of the orthosis (e.g., to fully immobilize the limb or to allow joint motion within a restricted range), wearing schedule (e.g., all the time or during particular activities), and weight-bearing status while using the orthosis has a major impact on efficacy of the orthotic intervention. All team members participate in patient and family education about the orthosis and its purpose, maintenance and cleaning, signs that indicate problems, and strategies to put in place should problems arise.

References

1. Levangie PK. Biomechanical applications to joint structure and function. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC, eds. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2011:3–68.
2. Mueller MJ, Maluf KS. Tissue adaptation to physical stress: a proposed "physical stress theory" to guide physical therapist practice, education, and research. *Phys Ther.* 2002;82(4):383–403.
3. Williams PL, ed. *Gray's Anatomy*. 38th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1995.
4. Netter FH, Hansen JT. *Atlas of Human Anatomy.* 3¼rd ed. ICON Learning Systems: Teterboro, NJ; 2002.
5. Lundon K. Anatomy and biology of bone tissue. In: *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science: Principles for Clinical Management of Bone*. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000:5–23.
6. Curwin S. Joint structure and function. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC, eds. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2005:69–111.
7. Lundon K. Changes in bone across the lifespan. In: *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science: Principles for Clinical Management of Bone*. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000:33–47.
8. Bidwell JP, Alvarez M, Feister H, et al. Nuclear matrix proteins and osteoblast gene expression. *J Bone Miner Res.* 1998;13(2):155–167.
9. Rodan GA. Control of bone formation and resorption: biological and clinical perspective. *J Cell Biochem.* 1998;30–31(suppl):55–61.
10. Lanyon LE. Osteocytes, strain detection, bone modeling and remodeling. *Calcif Tissue Int.* 1993;53(suppl 1):S102–S107.
11. Suda T, Nakamura I, Eijirio J, et al. Regulation of osteoclastic function. *J Bone Miner Res.* 1997;12(6):869–879.
12. Blair HC. How the osteoclast degrades bone. *BioEssays.* 1998;20 (10):837–846.
13. Payne R. Mechanisms and management of bone pain. *Cancer.* 1997;80(suppl 8):1608–1613.
14. Stevens DA, Williams GR. Hormone regulation of chondrocyte differentiation and endochondral bone formation. *Mol Cell Endocrinol.* 1999;151(1–2):195–204.
15. Mundy GR. Bone resorption and turnover in health and disease. *Bone.* 1987;8(suppl 1):S9–S16.
16. Watkins BA. Regulatory effects of polyunsaturates on bone modeling and cartilage function. *World Rev Nutr Diet.* 1998;83:38–51.
17. Rosen GJ. Insulin-like growth factors I and calcium balance: evolving concepts of an evolutionary process. *Endocrinology.* 2003;144(11): 4679–4681.
18. Lundon K. Physiology and biochemistry of bone tissue. In: *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science: Principles for Clinical Management of Bone*. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000:25–32.
19. Jilka RL. Cytokines, bone remodeling, and estrogen deficiency; a 1998 update. *Bone.* 1998;23(2):75–81.
20. Christenson RH. Biochemical markers of bone metabolism; an overview. *Clin Biochem.* 1997;30(8):573–593.
21. Seibel MJ, Baylink DJ, Farley JR, et al. Basic science and clinical utility of biochemical markers of bone turnover—a Congress report. *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes.* 1997;105(3):125–133.
22. Riggs B, Melton L. Involutional osteoporosis. *N Engl J Med.* 1986;314 (26):1676–1686.
23. Sabateir JP, Guaydiersouquieres G, Laroche D, et al. Bone mineral acquisition during adolescence and early adulthood: a study of 574 healthy females 10–24 years of age. *Osteoporosis Int.* 1996;6 (2):141–148.
24. Crawford AH, Ayyangar R, Durrett GL. Congenital and acquired disorders. In: Goldberg B, Hsu JH, eds. *Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 3¼rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1997:479–500.
25. Shipman AJ, Guy GW, Smith I, et al. Vertebral bone mineral density, content and area in 8789 normal women aged 33–73 who have never had hormone replacement therapy. *Osteoporosis Int.* 1999;9 (5):420–426.
26. Stevens DA, Williams GR. Hormonal regulation of chondrocyte differentiation and endochondral bone formation. *Mol Cell Endocrinol.* 1999;151(1–2):195–204.
27. Torgerson DJ, Campbell MK, Reid DM. Lifestyle, environmental, and medical factors influencing peak bone mass in women. *Br J Rheumatol.* 1995;34(7):620–624.
28. Mazess RB, Barden HS. Bone density in pre-menopausal women: effects of age, dietary intake, physical activity, smoking, and birth control pills. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 1991;53(1):132–142.
29. WHO Scientific Group on Prevention and Management of Osteoporosis. Prevention and management of osteoporosis. World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser. 2003;921:1–164.
30. Levangie PK. The hip complex. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC, eds. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2005:355–392.
31. Steinberg ME, ed. *The Hip and Its Disorders*. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1991.
32. Guille JT, Pizzutillo PD, MacEvew GD. Development dysplasia of the hip from birth to six months. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2000;8 (4):232–242.
33. Vitale MG, Skaggs DL. Developmental dysplasia of the hip from six months to four years of age. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2001;9 (6):401–411.
34. Ilfeld FW, Westin GW, Makin M. Missed or developmental dislocation of the hip. *Clin Orthop.* 1986;276–281. Feb(203).
35. Mubarik SJ, Leach JL, Wenger DR. Management of congenital dislocation of the hip in the infant. *Contemp Orthop.* 1987;15:29–44.
36. Shorter D, Hong T, Osborn DA. Screening programmes for developmental dysplasia of the hip in newborn infants. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2011, Issue 9. Art. No .: CD004595. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004595.pub2.
37. Pollet V, Percy V, Prior HJ. Relative Risk and Incidence for Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip. *J Pediatr.* 2017 Feb;181:202–207. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpeds.2016.10.017. Epub 2016 Nov 18.
38. Mulpuri K, Song KM, Gross RH, et al. The American academy of orthopaedic surgeons evidence-based guideline on detection and nonoperative management of pediatric developmental dysplasia of the hip in infants up to six months of age. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2015 Oct 21;97(20):1717–1718. https://doi.org/10.2106/JBJS.O.00500.

39. Joiner ER, Andras LM, Skaggs DL. Screening for hip dysplasia in congenital muscular torticollis: is physical exam enough? *J Child Orthop.* 2014 Mar;8(2):115–119. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11832-014-0572-5. Epub 2014 Feb 28.
40. Mulpuri K, Schaeffer EK, Andrade J, et al. What risk factors and characteristics are associated with late-presenting dislocations of the hip in infants? *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2016 May;474(5):1131–1137.
41. Leach J. Orthopedic conditions. In: Campbell SK, Vander Linden DW, Palisano RT, eds. *Physical Therapy for Children.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2000:398–428.
42. Lotito FM, Rabbaglietti G, Notarantonio M. The ultrasonographic image of the infant hip affected by developmental dysplasia with a positive Ortolani's sign. *Pediatr Radiol.* 2002;32(6):418–422.
43. Walker JM. Musculoskeletal development: a review. *Phys Ther.* 1991;71(12):878–889.
44. Riester JA, Eilert RE. Hip disorders. In: Goldberg B, Hsu JD, eds. *Atlas of Orthotic and Assistive Devices.* St Louis: Mosby; 1997:509–526.
45. Pavlik A. The functional method of treatment using a harness with stirrups as the primary method of conservative therapy for infants with congenital dislocation of the hip. *Clin Orthop.* 1992;4–10. Aug(281).
46. Mubarak SJ. Pavlik: the man and his method. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2003;23(3):342–346.
47. Song KM, Lapinsky A. Determination of hip position in the Pavlik harness. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2000;20(3):317–319.
48. Wenger DR, Rang M. Developmental dysplasia of the hip. In: Wenger DR, Rang M, eds. *The Art and Practice of Children's Orthopaedics.* New York: Raven; 1993:272–280.
49. Mubarak S, Garfin S, Vance R, et al. Pitfalls in the use of the Pavlik harness for treatment of congenital dysplasia, subluxation, and dislocation of the hip. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1981;63A(8):1239–1247.
50. Kim HW, Weinstein SL. Intervening early in developmental hip dysplasia: early recognition avoids serious consequences later. *J Musculoskel Med.* 1998;15(2):70–72, 77–81.
51. Harding MG, Harke HT, Bowen JR, et al. Management of dislocated hips with Pavlik harness treatment and ultrasound monitoring. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1997;17(2):189–198.
52. Inoue T, Naito M, Nomiyama H. Treatment of developmental dysplasia of the hip with the Pavlik harness: factors for predicting unsuccessful reduction. *J Pediatr Orthop B.* 2001;10(3):186–191.
53. Leman JA, Emans JB, Millis MB, et al. Early failure of Pavlik harness treatment for developmental hip dysplasia: clinical and ultrasound predictors. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2001;21(3):348–353.
54. Hedequist D, Kasser J, Emans J. Use of an abduction brace for developmental dysplasia of the hip after failure of the Pavlik harness. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2003;23(2):175–177.
55. Wahlen R, Zambelli PY. Treatment of the developmental dysplasia of the hip with an abduction brace in children up to 6 months old. *Adv Orthop.* 2015;2015. 103580https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/103580. Epub 2015 Feb 26.
56. O¨ Hakan, MD meroğlu, Nusret Ko¨se MD, Anil Akceylan MD. Success of Pavlik Harness treatment decreases in patients $\geq$ 4 months and in ultrasonographically dislocated hips in developmental dysplasia of the hip. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2016;474:1146–1152.
57. Segal LS, Boal DK, Borthwick L, et al. Avasucular necrosis after treatment of DDH: the protective influence of the ossific nucleus. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1999;19(2):177–184.
58. Suzuki S, Kashiwagi N, Kasahara Y, et al. Avascular necrosis and the Pavlik harness: the incidence of avascular necrosis in three types of congenital dislocation of the hip as classified by ultrasound. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 1996;78(4):631–635.
59. Carey TP, Guidera KG, Ogden JA. Manifestations of ischemic necrosis complicating developmental dysplasia. *Clin Orthop.* 1992;Aug(281):11–17.
60. Luhman SJ, Schoenecker PL, Anderson AM, et al. The prognostic importance of the ossific nucleus in the treatment of congenital dysplasia of the hip. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1998;80(12):1719–1727.
61. Legg AT. An obscure affection of the hip joint. Boston Med Surg J. 1910;162:202.
62. Canale ST. Osteochondroses. In: Canale ST, Beatty JH, eds. *Operative Pediatric Orthopedics.* St. Louis: Mosby–Year Book; 1991:743–776.
63. Stulberg SD, Cooperman DR, Wallensten R. The natural history of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 63(7):1095–1108.
64. Guille JT, Lipton GE, Szöke G, et al. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease in girls: a comparison of results with those seen in boys. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1998;80A(9):1256–1263.
65. Perry DC, Thomson C, Pope D, Bruce CE, Platt MJ. A case control study to determine the association between Perthes' disease and the recalled use of tobacco during pregnancy, and biological markers of current tobacco smoke exposure. *Bone Joint J.* 2017. Aug;99-B(8):1102–1108. https://doi.org/10.1302/0301-620X. 99B8.BJJ-2016-1282.R1.
66. Lee JH, Zhou L, Kwon KS, Lee D, Park BH, Kim JR. Role of leptin in Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *J Orthop Res.* 2013 Oct;31(10):1605–1610. https://doi.org/10.1002/jor.22415. Epub 2013 Jul 5.
67. Neal DC, Alford TH, Moualeu A, Jo CH, Herring JA, Kim HK. Prevalence of Obesity in Patients With Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2016 Sep;24(9):660–665. https://doi.org/10.5435/JAAOS-D-16-00120.
68. Georgiadis AG, Seeley MA, Yellin JL, Sankar WN. The presentation of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease in females. *J Child Orthop.* 2015 Aug;9(4):243–247. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11832-015-0671-y. Epub 2015 Jul 26.
69. Herring JA, Tachdjian MO. *Tachdjian's Pediatric Orthopaedics.* 3rd¼ ed. Philadelphia: Saunders.
70. Guile JT, Bowen JR. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. In: Dee R, ed. *Principles of Orthopaedic Practice.* 2nd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill; 1997:723–734.
71. Balasa VV, Gruppo RA, Glueck CJ, et al. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease and thrombophilia. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2004;86(12):2642–2647.
72. Hamer AJ. Pain in the hip and knee. *BMJ.* 2004;328(7447):1067–1069.
73. Gerberg LF, Micheli LJ. Nontraumatic hip pain in active children. *Phys Sports Med.* 1996;24(1):69–74.
74. Eich GF, Supertis-Furga A, Umbricht FS, et al. The painful hip: evaluation of criteria for clinical decision making. *Eur J Pediatr.* 1999;158(11):923–928.
75. Herring JA, Kim HT, Browne R. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease part 1: classification of radiographs with use of the modified lateral pillar and Stulberg classifications. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2004;86(10):2103–2121.
76. Yazici M, Aydingoz U, Aksoy MC, et al. Bipositional MR imaging for the evaluation of femoral head sphericity and containment in Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *Clin Imaging.* 2002;26(5):342–346.
77. Catterall A. Natural history, classification, and x-ray signs in Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *Acta Orthop Belg.* 1980;46(4):346–351.
78. Christensen F, Soballe K, Ejsted R, et al. The Catterall classification of Perthes disease: an assessment of reliability. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 1986;68(4):614–615.
79. Hardcastle PH, Ross R, Hamalalnen M, et al. Catterall grouping of Perthes disease: an assessment of observer error and prognosis using the Catterall classification. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 1980;62(4):428–431.
80. Ritterbusch JF, Shantharam SS, Gellnas C. Comparison of lateral pillar classification and Catterall classification of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1990;13(2):200–202.
81. Salter RB, Thompson GH. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease: the prognostic significance of the subchondral fracture and a two group classification of the femoral head involvement. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1984;66(4):479–489.
82. Sponseller PD, Desai SS, Mills MB. Abnormalities of proximal femoral growth after severe Perthes disease. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 1989;71(4):479–489.
83. Podeszwa DA, Stanitski CL, Stanitski DF, et al. The effect of pediatric orthopedic experience on interobserver and intraobserver reliability of the Herring lateral pillar classification of Perthes disease. *J Pediatric Orthop.* 2000;20(5):562–565.
84. Herring JA, Kim HT, Browne R. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *part II: Prospective multi-center study on the effect of treatment outcome J Bone Joint Surg.* 2004;86(10):2121–2134.
85. Kim HKW. Legg-Calve-Perthes disease. J Am Acad Orthop Surg. 2010;676–686 Nov(18).
86. MacEwen GD. Conservative treatment of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease conditions. In: Fitzgerald FH, ed. *The Hip: Proceedings of the*

13th Open Scientific Meeting of the Hip Society. St. Louis: Mosby; 1985:17–23.
87. Wenger DR, Ward WT, Herring JA. Current concepts review: Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1991;73(5):778–788.
88. Poussa M, Yrjonen T, Holkka V, et al. Prognosis after conservative and operative management of Perthes disease. *Clin Orthop.* 1993;(297):549–553. Dec.
89. Noonan KJ, Price CT, Kupiszewski SJ, et al. Results of femoral varus osteotomy in children older than 9 years of age with Perthes disease. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2001;21(2):198–204.
90. Paterson DC, Leitch JM, Foster BK. Results of innominate osteotomy in the treatment of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *Clin Orthop.* 1991;(266):93–103. May.
91. Kruse RW, Gulle JT, Bowen JR. Shelf arthroplasty in patients who have Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease: a long term study of results. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1991;73(9):1338–1347.
92. Willett K, Hudson I, Catterall A. Lateral shelf acetabuloplasty: an operation for older children with Perthes disease. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1992;12(5):563–568.
93. Grzegorzewski A, Synder M, Kmieć K, Krajewski K, Polguj M, Sibiński M. Shelf acetabuloplasty in the treatment of severe Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease: good outcomes at midterm follow-up. *Biomed Res Int.* 2013;2013. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/859483. Epub 2013 Nov 27.
94. Grzegorzeski A, Bowen JR, Guille JT, et al. Treatment of the collapsed femoral head by containment in Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2003;23(1):15–19.
95. Herring JA. Current concepts review. The treatment of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease; a critical review of the literature. J Bone Joint Surg. 1994;76A(3):448–458.
96. Martinez AG, Weinstein SL, Deat FR. The weight bearing abduction brace for the treatment of Legg-Perthes disease. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1992;74A(1):12–21.
97. Meehan TL, Angel D, Nelson JM. The Scottish-Rite abduction orthosis for the treatment of Legg-Perthes disease. A radiographic analysis. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1992;74A(1):2–12.
98. Purvis JM, Dimon JH, Meehan PL, et al. Preliminary experience with the Scottish Rite hospital abduction orthosis for Legg-Perthes disease. *Clin Orthop.* 1980;(150):49–53. July-Aug.
99. Meehan PL, Angel D, Nelson JM. The Scottish Rite abduction orthosis for the treatment of Legg-Perthes disease: a radiographic analysis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1992;74(1):2–12.
100. Martinez AG, Weinstein SL, Dietz FR. The weight bearing abduction brace for the treatment of Legg-Perthes disease. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1992;74(1):12–21.
101. Bobechko WP, McLaurin EA, Motloch WM. Toronto orthosis for Legg-Perthes disease. *Artif Limbs.* 1968;12(2):36–41.
102. Curtis HD, Gunther SF, Gossling HR, et al. Treatment for Legg-Perthes disease with the Newington ambulation abduction brace. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1974;56(6):1135–1146.
103. Edelstein JE, Orthotics Brukner J. *A Comprehensive Clinical Approach*. Thorofare. In: *NJ: Slack*: 2002.
104. Rich MM, Schoenecker PL. Management of Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease using an A-frame orthosis and hip range of motion: a 25-year experience. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2013 Mar;33(2):112–119. https://doi.org/10.1097/BPO.0b013e318281ab44.
105. Drennan JC. *Orthopaedic Management of Neuromuscular Disorders*. Philadelphia: Lippincott; 1983.
106. Walker WC, Keyser-Marcus LA, Cifu DX, et al. Inpatient interdisciplinary rehabilitation after total hip arthroplasty surgery: a comparison of revision and primary total hip arthroplasty. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82(1):123–133.
107. Lima D, Magnus R, Paproshy WG. Team management of hip revision patients using a post-op hip orthosis. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 1994;6(1):20–24.
108. Cummings SR, Rubin SM, Black D. The future of hip fractures in the United States: numbers, costs, and potential effects of postmenopausal estrogen. Clin Orthop. 1991;(252):163–166. March.
109. Schultz RJ. *The Language of Fractures.* 2nd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1990.
110. Islam SS, Biswas RS, Nambiar AM, et al. Incidence and risk of work-related fracture injuries; experience of a state-managed worker's compensation system. *J Occup Environ Med.* 2001;43(2):140–146.
111. Tiderius CJ, Landin L, Duppe H. Decreasing incidence of fractures in children. *Acta Orthop Scand.* 1999;70(6):622–626.
112. Estrada LS, Alonso JE, McGwin G, et al. Restraint use and lower extremity fracture in frontal motor vehicle collisions. *J Trauma.* 2004;57(2):323–328.
113. Edwards BJ, Bunta AD, Madision LD, et al. An osteoporosis and fracture intervention program increases the diagnosis and treatment for osteoporosis for patients with minimal trauma fractures. *Jt Comm J Qual Patient Saf.* 2005;31(5):267–274.
114. Jacofsky DF, Haidukewych GJ. Management of pathological fractures of the proximal femur: state of the art. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2004;18(7):459–460.
115. Ringsberg KA, Gardsell P, Johnell O, et al. The impact of long-term moderate physical activity on functional performance, bone mineral density, and fracture incidence in elderly women. *Gerontology.* 2001;47(1):15–20.
116. Boden BP, Osbahr DC, Jimenez C. Low risk stress fractures. *Am J Sports Med.* 2001;29(1):100–111.
117. Vanderschueren D, Boonen S, Bouillon R. Action of androgens versus estrogens in male skeletal homeostasis. *Bone.* 1998;23(5):391–394.
118. Seeman E. Meunier PH, ed. *Advances in the study of osteoporosis in men*: 1998:211–232. ed. *Osteoporosis: Diagnosis and Management*. London: Dunitz.
119. Charnley J. *The Closed Treatment of Common Fractures.* 4th ed. London: Cambridge University Press; 2002.
120. Cole AS, McNally MA. The management of open fractures. In: Bulstrode CJ, Buchwalker J, Carr A, et al. *Oxford Textbook of Orthopedics and Trauma*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2002: 1636–1651.
121. DeCoster TA. Fracture classification. In: Bulstrode CJ, Buchwalker J, Carr A, et al. *Oxford Textbook of Orthopedics and Trauma*. New York: Oxford University Press; 2002:1575–1580.
122. Lundon K. Injury, regeneration, and repair in bone. In: *Orthopedic Rehabilitation Science: Principles for Clinical Management of Bone*. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000:93–113.
123. Reddi AH. Initiation of fracture repair by bone morphogenetic proteins. Clin Orthop. 1998;S66–S72. Oct(355 suppl).
124. Hayda RA, Brighton CT, Esterhai JL. Pathophysiology of delayed healing. *Clin Orthop.* 1998;S31–S40. Oct(355 suppl).
125. Gustilo RB, Anderson JT. Prevention of infection in the treatment of one thousand and twenty-five open fractures of long bones. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1976;58(4):453–458.
126. Rose DD, Rowven DW. Perioperative considerations in major orthopedic trauma: pelvic and long bone fractures. *Am Assoc Nurse Anesth J.* 2002;70(2):131–137.
127. Gugenheim JJ. External fixation in orthopedics. *JAMA.* 2004;291(17):2122–2134.
128. Harkess JW, Ramsey WC, Harkess JW. Principles of fracture and dislocations. In: Rockwood CA, Green DP, Bucholz RW, eds. *Rockwood and Green's Fractures in Adults*. 3¼rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1991:1–180. 1.
129. Bick EM. *Source Book of Orthopaedics.* New York: Hafner; 1968.
130. Wytch R, Mitchell C, Ratchie IK, et al. New splinting material. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1987;11(1):42–45.
131. Richard RE. Polymers in fracture immobilization. In: Salamore JC, ed. *The Polymeric Materials Encyclopedia*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1996.
132. Lavalette RN, Pope M, Dickstein H. Setting temperatures of plaster casts. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1982;64(6):907–911.
133. Wytch R, Mitchell CB, Wardlaw D, et al. Mechanical assessment of polyurethane impregnated fiberglass bandage for splinting. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1987;11(3):128–134.
134. Wytch R, Ashcroft GP, Ledingham WM, et al. Modern splinting bandages. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1991;73(1):88–91.
135. Wytch R, Ross N, Wardlaw D. Glass fiber versus non-glass fiber splinting bandages. *Injury.* 1992;23(2):101–106.
136. Pope M, Callahan G, Leveled R. Setting temperature of synthetic casts. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1985;67A(2):262–264.
137. Mooney V. Cast bracing. *Clin Orthop.* 1974;102:159–166.
138. Brown PW. The early weight-bearing treatment of tibial shaft fractures. *Clin Orthop.* 1974;105. 167–178.
139. Beatty JH. Congenital anomalies of the hip and pelvis. In: Crenshaw AH, ed. *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1987:2721–2722.

140. Hilt NE, Cogburn SB. Cast and splint therapy. In: Hilt NE, Cogburn SB, eds. *Manual of Orthopaedics*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1980:459–516.
141. Pellegrini VD, In Evarts CMComplications. *Rockwood CA, Green DP, Bucholz RW, eds.* Rockwood and Green's Fractures in Adults, *Vol 1. 3rd¼ed.* Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1991390–393.
142. Connolly JF, Dahne E, Lafollette B. Closed reduction and early cast-brace ambulation in the treatment of femoral fractures. Part 2. J Bone Joint Surg. 1973;55A(8):1581–1599.
143. Moll JH. The cast brace walking treatment of open and closed femoral fractures. *South Med J.* 1973;66(3):345–352.
144. Lenin BE, Mooney V, Ashy ME. Cast-bracing for fractures of the femur. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1977;59S(7):917–923.
145. Maggot B, Gad DA. Cast bracing for fractures of the femoral shaft. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1981;63B(1):12–23.
146. Stills M, Christiansen K, Bucholz RW, et al. Cast bracing bicondylar tibial plateau fractures after combined internal and external fixation. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 1991;3(3). 106–113.
147. DeCoster TA, Nepola JU, El-khoura GY. Cast brace treatment of proximal tibia fractures. *Clin Orthop.* 1988;(231). 196–204.
148. Sutcliffe JR, Wilson-Storey D, Mackinlay GA. Children's femoral fractures: the Edinburgh experience. *J R Coll Surg Edinb.* 1995;40 (6):411–415.
149. Segal D, Mallik AR, Wetzler MJ, et al. Early weight bearing of lateral tibial plateau fractures. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1993;232–237. Sept (294).
150. Tang SF, Au TL, Wong AM, et al. Modified fracture brace for tibial fracture with varus angulation: a case report. Prosthet Orthot Int. 1995;(2):115–119. Aug.
151. Hardy AE. The treatment of femoral fractures by cast-brace application and early ambulation. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 1983;65(1):56–65.
152. Hohl M, Johnson EE, Wiss DA. Fractures of the knee. In: *In: Rockwood CA, Green DP, Bucholz RW, eds.* Rockwood and Green's Fractures in Adults. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1991:1725–1761. 2.
153. Kapandji IA. *The Knee. The Physiology of the Joints.* 25th ed. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1991.
154. Snyder-Macker L, Lewek M. The knee. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC, eds. *Joint Structure and Function—A Comprehensive Analysis*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2005:393–436.
155. Moore TJ. Functional bracing of lower extremity fractures. In: Goldberg B, Hsu JD, eds. *Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1997:401–408.
156. Goss J. Developments in orthotic deweighting technology. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin North Am.* 2000;11(3):497–508.
157. Pritham Beatty JH. Congenital anomalies of the hip and pelvis. In: Crenshaw AH, ed. *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1987:2721–2722.
158. Stills ML. Vacuum-formed orthosis for fractures of the tibia. *Orthot Prosthet.* 1976;30(2):43–55.
159. Sarmiento A. On the behavior of closed tibial fractures. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2000;14(3):199–205.
160. Chapman MW. Open fractures. In: Rockwood CA, Green DP, Bucholz RW, eds. Rockwood and Green's Fractures in Adults. *Vol 1.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1991:223–264.
161. Pacheo RJ, Saleh M. The role of external fixators in trauma. *Trauma.* 2004;6:143–160.
162. Weigel DP, Marsh JL. High energy fractures of the tibial plateau: knee function after longer follow-up. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2002;84 (9):1541–1551.
163. Babar IU. External fixation in close comminuted femoral shaft fractures in adults. *J Coll Physicians Surg Pak.* 2004;14(9):553–555.
164. Haidukewych GJ. Temporary external fixation for the management of complex intra- and periarticular fractures of the lower extremity. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2002;16(9):678–685.
165. Chui FY, Chuang TY, Lo WH. Treatment of unstable pelvic fractures: use of a transiliac sacral rod for posterior lesions and anterior lesions. *J Trauma.* 2004;57(1):141–145.
166. Ponsen KJ, van Dijke GA, Joosse P, et al. External fixators for pelvic fractures. *Acta Orthop Scand.* 2003;74(2):165–171.
167. Yang AP, Iannacone WM. External fixation for pelvic ring disruptions. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 1997;28(3):331–344.
168. Hayek TE. External fixators in the treatment of fractures in children. *J Ped Orthopaed B.* 2004;13(2):103–109.
169. Garcia-Cimbrelo E. Circular external fixators in tibial nonunions. *Clin Orthopaed Relat Res.* 2004;1(419):65–70.
170. Gordon JE. A comparison of monolateral and circular external fixation of diaphysial tibial fractures in children. *J Pediatr Orthopaed.* 2003;12(5):338–345.
171. Krieg JC. Proximal tibial fractures: current treatment, results, and problems. *Injury.* 2003;34(suppl 1):A2–A10.
172. Robberts CS, Dodds JC, Perry K, et al. Hybrid external fixation of the proximal tibia: strategies to improve frame stability. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2003;17(6):415–420.
173. Stannard JP, Sheils TM, Lopez-Ben RR, et al. Vascular injuries in knee dislocations: the role of physical examination in determining the need for arteriography. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2004;86(5):910–915.
174. Rozycki GS, Tremblay LN, Feliciano DV, et al. Blunt vascular trauma in the extremity: diagnosis, management, and outcome. *J Trauma Inj Infect Crit Care.* 2003;55(5):814–824.
175. Lin C, Wei F, Levin LS, et al. The functional outcome of lower-extremity fractures with vascular injury. *J Trauma Inj Infec Crit Care.* 1997;43(3):480–485.
176. Lang NW, Joestl JB, Platzer P. Characteristics and clinical outcome in patients after popliteal artery injury. *J Vasc Surg.* 2015 Jun;61 (6):1495–1500. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jvs.2015.01.045. Epub 2015 Mar 7.
177. Olson SA, Rhorer AS. Orthopaedic trauma for the general orthopaedist: avoiding problems and pitfalls in treatment. Clin Orthop Relat Res. 2005;(433):30–37. April.
178. Altizer L. Compartment syndrome. *Orthop Nurs.* 2004;23(6): 391–396.
179. Leyes M, Torres R, Guillén P. Complications of open reduction and internal fixation of ankle fractures. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2003;8 (1):131–147.
180. Im GI, Shin YW, Song YJ. Potentially unstable intertrochanteric fractures. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2005;19(1):5–9.
181. Narayanan UG, Hyman JE, Wainwright AM, et al. Complications of elastic stable intramedullary nail fixation of pediatric femoral fractures, and how to avoid them. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2004;24 (4):363–369.
182. Zalavras CG, Patzakis MJ. Open fractures: evaluation and management. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2003;11(3):212–219.
183. Benirschke SK, Kramer KA. Wound healing complications in closed and open calcaneal fractures. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2004;18 (1):1–6.
184. Dunkel N, Pittet D, Tovmirzaeva L, Suvà D, Bernard L, Lew D, Hoffmeyer P, Uçkay I. Short duration of antibiotic prophylaxis in open fractures does not enhance risk of subsequent infection. *Bone Joint J.* 2013 Jun;95-B(6):831–837. https://doi.org/10.1302/0301-620X.95B6.30114.
185. Hull PD, Johnson SC, Stephen DJ, Kreder HJ, Jenkinson RJ. Delayed debridement of severe open fractures is associated with a higher rate of deep infection. *Bone Joint J.* 2014 Mar;96-B(3):379–384. https://doi.org/10.1302/0301-620X.96B3.32380.
186. Matos MA, Lima LG, de Oliveira LA. Predisposing factors for early infection in patients with open fractures and proposal for a risk score. J Orthop Traumatol. 2015 Sep;16(3):195-201. doi: https://doi.org/10.1007/s10195-015-0345-z. Epub 2015 Feb 27.
187. Khatod M, Botte MJ, Hoyt DB, et al. Outcomes in open tibia fractures: relationship between delay in treatment and infection. *J Trauma Inj Infect Crit Care.* 2003;55(5):949–954.
188. Weitz-Marshall AD, Bosse MJ. Timing of closure of open fractures. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2002;10(6):379–384.
189. Parameswaran AD, Roberts CS, Seligson D, et al. Pin tract infection with contemporary external fixation: how much of a problem? *J Orthop Trauma.* 2003;17(7):503–509.
190. Temple J, Santy J. Pin site care for preventing infections associated with external bone fixators and pins. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2004. CD004551.
191. Thordarson DB, Ahlmann E, Shepherd LE, et al. Sepsis and osteomyelitis about the ankle joint. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2000;5(4): 913–928.
192. Holtom PD, Smith AM. Introduction to adult posttraumatic osteomyelitis of the tibia. Clin Orthop Relat Res. 1999;(Mar (360):6–13.
193. Bedi A, Toan Le T. Subtrochanteric femur fractures. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 2004;35(4):473–483.

194. Bhandari M, Audige L, Ellis T, et al. Operative treatment of extra-articular proximal tibial fractures. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2003;17 (8):591–595.
195. Sadowski C, Lübbeke A, Saudan M, et al. Treatment of reverse oblique and transverse intertrochanteric fractures with use of an intramedullary nail or a 95 degrees screw-plate: a prospective, randomized study. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2002;84(3):372–381.
196. Russell TA, Taylor JC, LaVelle DG. Fractures of the tibia. In: Rockwood CA, Green DP, Bucholz RW, eds. *Rockwood and Green's Fractures in Adults.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 1991:1915–1982. 2.
197. Weiss AP, Schenck RC, Sponseller PD, et al. Peroneal nerve palsy after early cast application for femoral fractures in children. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1992;12(1):25–28.
198. Morgan S, Upton J. *Plaster casting: patient problems and nursing care.* Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann; 1990.

13 Orthoses for Spinal Dysfunction ☆

THERESA E. LEAHY and SHARIDY MACCORD

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Identify the nomenclature for spinal orthoses.
2. Describe the basic structural and functional anatomy of the spine and its alignment.
3. Discuss the three-column concept of spine stability as it pertains to spine trauma.
4. Identify the types of injury and pathology for which spinal orthoses are used.
5. List the different types and functional use of spinal orthoses.
6. Describe the potential complications associated with the use of spinal orthoses and methods of prevention.
7. Evaluate different areas of the spine as being amenable to bracing.
8. Discuss indications and contraindications for using spinal orthoses.
9. Describe basic pathophysiology of scoliosis and its implications.
10. Identify common braces used in the treatment of scoliosis.
11. Discuss the prescription process for a spinal orthoses.
12. Value the importance of a multidisciplinary team approach in treating disorders of the spine.

External orthoses are used to manage a variety of spinal conditions. The general purpose of a brace is to limit the motion of a spinal region, decreasing the amount of load applied to the region treated. Orthoses are most frequently used when there is concern that loading the spine may result in deformity (i.e., treating an unstable fracture), when the spine is compromised in a way that requires additional support for healing (i.e., postsurgical management or osteoporosis), when the patient is experiencing low back pain (LBP) that can be relieved by either limiting motion or increasing abdominal support, or there is existing spinal deformity such as scoliosis. Another major function of a spinal orthosis is to serve as a psychologic reminder to restrict trunk or neck motion or at least to encourage the patient to move cautiously.[1]

For spinal conditions, an orthosis is defined as an external device applied to the body to restrict motion in a particular body segment or spinal region. The American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons standardized the nomenclature used for describing orthoses in spinal management in 1973 and divided them broadly into five categories (Table 13.1)[2]:

- Sacroiliac
- Lumbosacral
- Thoracolumbosacral
- Cervical thoracic
- Cervical

Orthoses may also be classified by their rigidity (i.e., rigid, semirigid, or flexible) or by a combination of their materials and whether they are prefabricated or custom-fit types. Historically, orthoses have been named according to their inventor or city of invention. This chapter provides an overview of spinal anatomy and biomechanics as they apply to orthotic use, highlights tips to ensure optimal fit and avoid complications, and discusses each of the three major spinal regions that are amenable to orthotic management and the orthoses used in each region as well as the various types of pathology for which brace treatment is used. This chapter describes common spinal orthoses grouped by region (cervical, thoracic, and lumbosacral) and the clinical conditions that are most often assisted by the use of spinal orthoses.

Managing a patient who may benefit from a spinal orthosis requires an interdisciplinary team approach. Direct communication between the patient, physician, orthotist, nurse, physical therapist, and other rehabilitation personnel is necessary to ensure that the health care professionals, the patient, and caregivers all understand the rationale, limitations, and expected outcomes when the prescription and use of an orthosis is being planned. To avoid complications and promote optimal care, specific instructions must accompany the management of a spinal orthosis. Rehabilitation professionals are responsible for designing therapeutic interventions that optimize function while also carefully observing the precautions and the treatment goals relevant to the management of persons using spinal orthoses. Understanding the design of and rationale for the orthosis being used is critical to the overall success of the program.

Anatomy and Biomechanics

The spine consists of 7 cervical vertebrae, 12 thoracic vertebrae, 5 lumbar vertebrae, 5 sacral vertebrae, and 3 to 4 coccygeal segments. Load-sharing discs are interposed between adjacent vertebrae in the cervical, thoracic, and

☆The authors extend appreciation to Jeff Coppage and S. Elizabeth Ames, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Table 13.1 Nomenclature for Spinal Orthoses

Acronym	Name
RIGID THERMOPLASTIC OR METAL ORTHOSES OR BOTH	
SIO	Sacroiliac orthosis
LSO	Lumbosacral orthosis
TLSO	Thoracolumbosacral orthosis
CTLSO	Cervicothoracolumbosacral orthosis
CTO	Cervicothoracic orthosis
CO	Cervical orthosis
SOFT GARMENTS AND SUPPORTS	
SI belt	Sacroiliac belt
LS corset	Lumbosacral corset
DL corset	Dorsolumbar corset
Soft collar	Nonreinforced cervical collars made from foam or any low modulus material

lumbar segments; in the sacral and coccygeal regions, the segments are fused. Two adjacent vertebrae and the intervertebral disc define the functional spinal unit (FSU). Multiple FSUs are combined in a superstructure capable of lateral bending, flexion, extension, and axial rotation. The various levels of the spine differ in their contribution to the spine's overall range of motion (ROM). In the cervical spine, the majority of motion in the sagittal plane (flexion/extension) occurs through Occiput–C2, C4–5, and C5–6.[3] The majority of axial rotation occurs at the level of C1–2 and is made possible by the unique anatomy of the atlantoaxial articulations. Lateral bending of the cervical spine is more evenly distributed, with the upper subaxial cervical spine contributing only slightly more than other regions. Sagittal motion in the thoracic spine increases in a cranial-to-caudal direction. The upper segments provide approximately 4 degrees at each level and the lower segments provide approximately 6 degrees, increasing to approximately 12 degrees per level at the thoracolumbar (TL) junction.[3] Axial rotation is greatest in the upper thoracic spine and gradually decreases caudally. Segmental contribution to lateral bending is fairly well distributed over the length of the thoracic spine. The lumbar spine contributes more flexion/extension but significantly less axial rotation. These regional differences in motion are related to anatomic differences, primarily articular process orientation, between the thoracic and lumbar vertebrae. The ligamentous structures of the spinal column play an important role in spinal kinematics by augmenting overall spinal stability while maintaining flexibility.

The normal spine is essentially vertical in the coronal plane but exhibits four curves in the sagittal plane. The terms *kyphosis* and *lordosis* are used to describe sagittal curves. *Kyphosis* refers to a curve in the sagittal plane with a posterior convexity (forward bend). The thoracic and sacral portions of the spine demonstrate kyphosis. The normal amount of thoracic kyphosis ranges from 20 to 50 degrees.[4] The term *lordosis* describes a curve in the sagittal plane with an anterior convexity (posterior bend). The cervical and lumbar portions of the spine demonstrate lordosis. The mean lordosis in the cervical spine is 35 to 40 degrees.[5,6] The normal range of lordosis in the lumbar spine is from 20 to 60 degrees.[4] Although multiple curves are present, an overall sagittal balance is maintained. The sagittal balance of the spine can be assessed using a plumb-line or gravity-line technique. In a normal balanced spine, a plumb line from the center of the C7 should fall ±2 cm from the sacral promontory in the sagittal plane.[7] These curves, as well as appropriate coronal and sagittal balance, allow for increased flexibility and shock-absorbing capacity while maintaining necessary stiffness and stability.[3]

The major load on the spine under normal physiologic conditions is axial. Axial loading causes compression of the vertebral column and its individual FSUs. The natural kyphotic and lordotic curves of the spine increase in magnitude, and components of individual FSUs (vertebrae and intervertebral discs) deform slightly in response to compression.[3] Soft tissue (ligaments and musculature) as well as bony architecture serve to limit the degree to which the gross architecture of the spine can be deformed, and the properties intrinsic to the vertebrae and intervertebral discs counter the effects of compressive forces. The spine must resist tension and shear forces in addition to axial loads. The properties of the spine conform to the Wolff law, which states that form follows function. Studies of the spine reveal that the spine as a whole can resist higher compressive loads than tension or shear forces.[3] Furthermore, segments of the spine that experience greater compressive loads have been found to be capable of withstanding higher loads before failure. Biomechanical studies demonstrate that the ability of the spine to withstand forces increases in a cephalocaudal direction, such that the lumbar spine, which must withstand the total weight of the body above it, has the greatest compressive strength.[8,9] The vertebral body (anterior column and anterior aspect of the middle column) provides the majority of this resistance to compression, which translates into increased overall stability in fractures in which the vertebral body is intact and a greater likelihood that bracing may not be necessary. This structure-function relationship is vital to understanding the rationale behind bracing and other treatments of back pain, spinal deformity, or spine injury.

The Three-Column Concept

An understanding of spinal injury and stability is vital to understanding the role played by bracing and various orthoses. The concept of the three-column spine was initially described by Denis[10] in 1984 and is widely used in defining spinal stability. Denis used the three-column model as a basis for his classification of traumatic spinal injuries. The three columns are the anterior, middle, and posterior columns (Fig. 13.1). The anterior column consists of the anterior aspect of the vertebral body, anterior annulus fibrosus, and anterior longitudinal ligament. The middle column includes the posterior longitudinal ligament, posterior annulus fibrosus, and posterior aspect of the vertebral body. The posterior column consists of the posterior vertebral arch as well as the supraspinous and interspinous ligaments, facet joints, and ligamentum flavum. There is debate as to whether injury to the posterior column or the middle column is the main factor that destabilizes thoracolumbar spinal fractures[3,11–15]; a combination of both, however, results in a highly unstable spine. Compression fractures and burst fractures are the most common clinical entities where orthoses are considered. Denis defined these types of fractures using the three-column concept (Box 13.1).

Compression fractures are defined as failure and wedging of the anterior column and occur with axial forces combined with spinal flexion about an axis located in

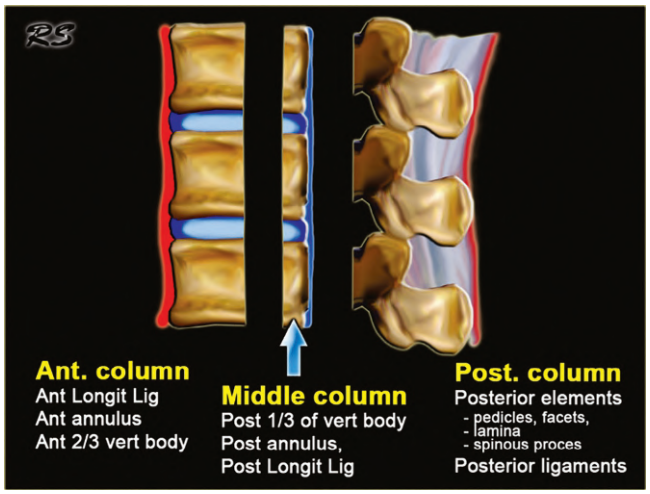


Fig. 13.1 Three-column concept (radiology assistant www.radiologyassistant.nl).

the middle column. The middle column remains intact, which provides stability and prevents retropulsion of bony fragments into the spinal canal. Some degree of partial failure of the posterior ligamentous structures may be present due to the tension forces of the initial forced flexion. Depending on the degree of anterior column failure, some compression fractures may undergo progressive collapse and lead to increasing posttraumatic kyphosis.[16] Compression fractures with greater than a 50% loss of vertebral body height are more likely to have instability due to associated posterior ligamentous involvement, which may result in progressive injury and kyphotic deformity because of the compressive forces conveyed by an upright posture.[3,16]

Burst fractures generally involve failure of the anterior and middle columns due to axial loading with or without additional moments, depending on the fracture pattern.[17] Although these fractures are defined as two-column involvement, Holdsworth[13] described an associated greenstick fracture of the lamina (posterior column). These injuries are referred to as *three-column burst fractures.* Involvement of the middle column is significant because it may lead to retropulsion of bony fragments in the spinal canal and subsequent spinal cord injury. Controversy exists regarding which burst fractures are "stable" and amenable to bracing and which require surgery. A recent randomized trial of hyperextension casting followed by brace management compared with operative management demonstrated that patients treated operatively experienced improved functionality more rapidly than those who were immobilized, but long-term outcomes in terms of deformity, chronic pain, and neurologic status were equivalent.[18]

Fit and Function of the Spinal Orthosis

All spinal orthoses have several common effects on the spinal region they treat. Their primary action is to reduce gross spinal motion, and the degree to which they accomplish this depends on both their materials and design. Secondary effects include the stabilization of individual FSUs, reducing the ROM of one vertebra relative to another. Spinal orthoses also apply closed chain forces designed to counter a deforming force, such as providing hyperextension to a fracture that is vulnerable in flexion. Finally, they reduce loads on the spine itself by preventing specific actions, such as bending and twisting to reduce stress on surgical implants. Each region of the spine has specific needs based on its

Box 13.1 Classification System for Traumatic Fractures of the Thoracolumbar Spine

Compression Fractures (Denis Type 1)

Mechanism of Injury: Spinal Flexion With Compression

Subtype	I-A	Anterior fracture only
	I-B	Anterior fracture with lateral components

Burst Fractures (Denis Type II)

Mechanism of Injury: Spinal Compression With Flexion

Subtype	II-A	Fracture of both end plates or retropulsion, or both, of the posterior wall as a free fragment
	II-B	Fracture of the superior end plate, occasional retropulsion of inferior wall as a free fragment
	II-C	Fracture of the inferior end plate
	II-D	Burst fracture with rotational injury
	II-E	Burst fracture with lateral flexion injury

Seat Belt Injuries (Denis Type III)

Mechanism of Injury: Spinal Flexion With Distraction

Subtype	III-A	(Chance fracture) single segment, posterior or middle column opening
	III-B	(Slice fracture) single segment, posterior and middle column opening through soft and bony tissue
	III-C	Two segments, posterior and middle column opening through soft and bony tissue
	III-D	Two segments, posterior and middle column opening through soft tissue only

Fracture Dislocations (Denis Type IV)

Mechanism of Injury: Translation, Flexion, Rotation, With Shear

Subtype	IV-A	Flexion and rotation injury with disruption through bone or intervertebral disc, or both
	IV-B	Due to shear (anterior-posterior or posterior-anterior) with fracture and dislocation of facet joints
	IV-C	Ligamentous injury to posterior and middle column, with failure (marked instability) of the anterior column
	IV-D	Oblique shear forces resulting in significant instability of involved segment (bone or disc)

predominant motions, loads, anatomic features, and physical condition.

The shape of a spinal orthotic, much like the natural shape of the spine, has an intimate relationship with its desired function. Braces often help to restore or exaggerate natural spinal structure. When thoracolumbar body casts were more commonplace in clinical practice, the casts were applied with patients positioned supine on a casting table with a belt under the lumbar spine such that they were casted in a position of hyperextension.[19] This hyperextension (hyperlordosis) has been used in many types of braces (i.e., Jewett and cruciform anterior spinal hyperextension [CASH] brace) because it removes or decreases the amount of flexion, which reduces compressive force on the fractured vertebral body and limits distraction of the posterior elements. Hyperextension braces achieve the intended positioning by using a three-point mold involving three points of applied force: one posteriorly and two anteriorly, with one located cephalad to the level of the posterior force and one caudal.[3] An analogy to this concept is if one were trying to break a pencil using two hands with the thumbs in the center and fingers located at either end. The resultant bending that would result is analogous to the intended effect of the three-point mold. The desired effect is prevention of the progressive kyphotic deformity associated with significant compression and burst fractures. Another example of three-point molding is seen in corrective braces used for the treatment of scoliosis except that the forces are directed in a coronal instead of a sagittal plane. It is imperative to ensure that the contour and fit of the brace promotes adequate alignment of the spine and avoids potential complications associated with forces applied to the body for long periods of time.

To be effective, an orthosis must have intimate contact with bony prominences.[20] The biomechanical principles of bracing the spine itself can be understood in these terms; in reality, however, using an orthosis to treat a human condition is subject to other variables. Compliance and the psychologic effects of bracing can be significant issues, including the development of a psychologic dependence on the orthosis.[21–26] The financial burden can be significant, with costs ranging from $32 to greater than $5000.[1] Physical issues also apply, particularly in an increasingly obese population. The ability of a brace to apply appropriate forces, either stabilizing or corrective, depends on its ability to act on the structures of the spine. This, in turn, depends on the soft tissue envelope in the contact areas around the spine. Too little or too much pressures transmitted through soft tissues can result in significant physical complications including skin breakdown, loss or reduction of spinal alignment, pain due to the brace, weakening of the immobilized muscles, and soft tissue contractures.[26–32] The prescription and use of a spinal orthotic should always be governed by an appropriate monitoring system and rehabilitation program. Orthoses must be modified periodically, and a comfortable and appropriate fit is critical to preventing skin problems and ensuring compliance.

Compliance with brace wear is a significant clinical issue, particularly because the orthosis is specifically designed to restrict motion, which is neither an accommodating nor pleasant approach to therapy. Studies in adolescent patients with scoliosis wearing "smart braces" that can track wear time indicate compliance rates of 9% to 30%; similar studies have not been done for orthoses used for other conditions. In the current health care environment, most patients with significant spinal conditions recover at home rather than in rehabilitation facilities. Orthosis designs that increase the difficulty of donning or doffing decrease patients' ability to use the brace effectively if they are not supervised and assisted daily. The only orthoses that ensure compliance are fiberglass casts, which are very rarely used today.

REGIONAL ORTHOSES

Cervical

The cervical spine is the most intuitively easy structure to consider bracing in that the bony occiput, mandible, sternum, and clavicles provide appropriate supporting structures. Unfortunately this advantage is offset by the limited surface area available for contact and the fact that the mandibles and clavicles are often in motion during normal activities. The complexity of the cervical soft tissues—vessels, airway, esophagus—is a disadvantage in that significant forces cannot be applied directly to the spine without significant visceral effects. Orthoses for the cervical spine can be limited to the subaxial spine itself—in the form of a cylinder that fits around the neck with a trimline at the occiput, mandible, and sternoclavicular structures—or it may extend proximally and distally (halo vest) or just distally onto the thoracic cage for additional control (cervicothoracic orthosis [CTO]).

Cylindrical cervical braces limit a variable degree of motion, depending on the design, and primarily provide proprioceptive feedback as a reminder to limit the ROM of the neck. Available choices are many, and this list is not exhaustive; commonly used choices include the soft collar, the Stifneck (Laerdal, Armonk, NY), the Philadelphia, the Miami J, and the NecLoc (Össur, Foothill Ranch, CA) (Fig. 13.2).

Soft collars tend to be the most comfortable of the available cervical collars but provide little stability to the cervical spine. The collar is a piece of soft foam rubber covered with stockinette or another gentle fabric with a Velcro-type fastener. These collars have been shown to provide up to 10% restriction to cervical motion in all planes.[33–35] Conversely, Miller et al.[36] analyzed differences in functional motion of the cervical spine between no collar, a soft collar, and a rigid collar during the performance of 15 different activities of daily living[a] (ADLs). The authors found that there was no significant difference in limitation of sagittal ROM between the soft and rigid collars during 13 of the 15 ADLs tested (significant differences were noted while reversing a car and sitting down in a chair). No significant differences were noted during lateral bending, and the difference in restriction of rotational movement was significant only while reversing a car. However, a study examining cervical ROM in 50 healthy adults performing cardinal plane and rotational neck movements while wearing no collar, a soft collar, or a neck brace did find

[a]ADLs tested include standing to sitting, backing up a car, putting on socks, tying shoelaces, reading a magazine in one's lap, cutting food with knife and fork and bringing food to the mouth, rising from a sitting position, washing hands in a standing position, shaving facial hair (men)/applying makeup (women), washing hair in shower, picking up object from floor (bending technique), picking up object from floor (squatting technique), walking, walking up stairs, walking down stairs.

Fig. 13.2 (A) Soft collar. (B) Philadelphia collar. (C) Miami J collar. (D) NecLoc. (© Össur.)

differences between devices in the amount of motion allowed.[37] Whitcroft and colleagues found the soft cervical collar to reduce movement by an average of 17.4%, whereas the cervical brace reduced movement by 62.9%.[37] Differences between the two brace types were least in lateral bending. The authors concluded that a soft cervical collar is not sufficient after a whiplash injury when cervical immobilization is desired. The soft cervical orthosis is used primarily as a comfortable reminder to the patient to limit exaggerated neck movements and may be useful in cases of minor whiplash, cervical spondylosis, or as a postoperative adjunct with a stable spine.[3] Soft collars are inappropriate for an unstable cervical spine.

A great deal more support is required in patients with injuries that compromise spinal stability. This prompted the development of the reinforced cervical collar, which is a commercially produced, prefabricated orthosis that combines some of the soft materials found in soft collars with a semi-rigid contoured plastic external frame. Many different types of reinforced collars are available, such as the Philadelphia, Aspen (Aspen Medical Products, Irvine, CA), Miami J, NecLoc (Össur, Foothill Ranch, CA), and Stifneck. Most reinforced collars have anterior and posterior shells with inner padding and trim; they close around the neck and fasten with Velcro-type fasteners. The collars are contoured such that they abut the sternum, clavicles, trapezius,

and upper thoracic spine inferiorly and the mandible and occiput superiorly, which provides some degree of end-point control. Most have openings anteriorly to accommodate respiratory and ventilator equipment.

Although there are many similarities among the various cervical collars, studies have found significant differences in the degree to which the collars restrict the motion of the cervical spine. The ability of a cervical collar to provide cervical stability is very important in that approximately 3% to 25% of spinal cord injuries occur after the initial spinal injury.[38] Multiple studies have evaluated the various reinforced collars for their ability to promote cervical stability as well as to avoid complications. Askins and Eismont[38] studied five common reinforced cervical collars by using anteroposterior and lateral radiographs to assess the motion of the cervical spine in normal healthy volunteers. They found the NecLoc to be statistically superior with respect to the limitation of cervical motion in all planes, followed by the Miami J collar, as compared with Philadelphia and Aspen collars. Kaufman and colleagues[39] found the NecLoc to provide superior restriction of motion compared with both the Philadelphia collar and a soft collar. Ducker[40] found the NecLoc and Miami J collars to be statistically superior to the Stifneck, Philadelphia, and soft collars. Tescher et al. compared four collars (Aspen, Aspen Vista, Miami J, and Miami J Advanced) for cervical stability and tissue-interface pressure (TIP).[41] These researchers found the Aspen to be more restrictive than the Aspen Vista and Miami J but not significantly different from the Miami J Advanced. They report that, despite statistical difference between the collars, all provided restriction of cervical ROM, and they question the clinical significance of the differences. They further report that TIP increases for all collars with increasing patient body mass index and that the Miami J produced the lowest overall pressures.[41]

In addition to requiring adequate stability in selecting a reinforced cervical collar, the treating physician must consider fit and skin protection. Fisher[29] studied the importance of proper fit of a cervical orthosis and found that an inappropriately fitted collar was equivalent to not wearing any collar at all. Bell and colleagues[32] analyzed the effects that ill-fitted Miami J collars have on the degree of cervical motion restriction. They found that in flexion/extension, braces that were either too large or too small allowed increased motion; however, only extension in the brace that was too large produced a statistically significant increase in allowed motion. Both the too small and too large braces allowed significantly more motion in left and right axial rotation. The too large and too small braces allowed significantly more lateral bending motion to the right, but only the too small brace allowed a significant increase in left lateral bending. Plaisier and colleagues[28] evaluated common cervical collars and the pressures they exerted on craniofacial tissues with respect to capillary closing pressure. The pressure at the collar-skin interface was measured using an electropneumatic sensor placed between the collar and skin. This measurement was compared with a value of 32 mm Hg, which represents capillary closing pressure as defined by Berne and colleagues.[42] Significant differences were found between collars in the amount of pressure exerted on the tissues. The Stifneck collar produced pressures in excess of capillary closing pressure at most collar-tissue interfaces, whereas the Miami J collar exerted pressures well below the capillary closing pressure.

Braces that are required immobilize the occipitocervical spine need fixation to the skull and significant rotational control. The most commonly used example is the halo vest (Fig. 13.3). Facial fracture fixation with traction applied through a skull ring was developed by Bloom during World War II to treat pilots with facial fractures and severe burns. The device was then adapted by Nickel and first reported in 1959.[8] Primary features include a ring anchored to the skull with skeletal pins and connected to a body jacket by four vertical uprights. Changes in material design and advances in plastics technology have allowed significant modifications to the halo vest—molded thermoplastic jackets, radiolucent rings and uprights, shaped rings open posteriorly for patient comfort while supine, and multidirectional adjustments in the connecting mechanisms—but the principles of fixation have remained the same. Six to eight transcranial pins provide secure proximal fixation (end-point control), and full contact support around the thorax and torso provide the distal fixation.

The ring of the halo is positioned 1 cm above the eyebrows and the tips of the ears, with care taken to keep the ring well clear of the skin surface. Four pins are inserted into the outer table of the skull with 6 to 8 lb/in of torque.[43] The anterior pins are placed at the equator (widest point) of the skull above the lateral third of the eyebrow to avoid the frontal sinus, supraorbital and supratrochlear nerves, and temporalis muscle. Posteriorly, pins are placed 1 to 2 cm posterior to the ear diagonally opposite the anterior pins. This provides secure fixation to allow for manipulation in flexion/extension and in translation.

The halo vest itself was originally a plaster cast that fit over the torso with a trim line at or slightly above the inferior costal margin of the last rib.[44] Advances in materials allow for bivalved thermoplastic shells that can be released

Fig. 13.3 Halo vest. (© Össur).

with the patient supine to allow for hygiene, and some designs are fleece-lined. A four-pad halo vest that completely avoids the shoulder girdle has been proposed to avoid scapular movements transferring loads to the neck.[45,46] Two anterior and two posterior rods link the vest to the ring through a series of connectors. Modern connectors allow translation in multiple planes with the ability to lock them into position once reduction has been achieved.

Complications can occur with the use of a halo vest, including pressure sores, loss of reduction (particularly in injuries involving the posterior elements), and pin infection and loosening.[47-51] A higher rate of complications occurs in older patients. In a review of 53 patients with a mean age of 79.9 years, Horn and colleagues[52] recorded 31 complications in 22 patients. Serious complications included respiratory distress and dysphagia; these were the cause of death in 6 of 8 patients who died within the treatment period and were thought to have some relation to the halo treatment. Modern halo vests should always have a wrench attached to the front for quick removal in case of a cardiac emergency.

Studies comparing the halo with other types of cervical bracing in terms of the ability to limit motion have had variable findings. Johnson et al.[53] found that the halo allowed only 4% of normal sagittal motion, 1% of normal rotation, and 4% of lateral bending in normal subjects. A cadaveric study of simulated odontoid fractures demonstrated that the halo was superior in all planes versus a Miami J collar, a Minerva brace, and a soft collar.[34] In studies comparing subjects in various positions and activities, a maximum reduction of sagittal motion of only 30% was demonstrated.[54] A study of injured patients by Benzel et al.[55] demonstrated paradoxically increased movement at the injured levels in the halo versus a Minerva brace, which they attributed to the pull of the neck muscles with attempted flexion or extension against the rigidly fixed head. Ivancic and Telles[56] studied neck motion in a normal versus a loosely applied halo vest in the supine and prone positions using a cadaveric cervical spine between an anthropometric dummy and surrogate head. Results showed significantly increased motion in the loose vest with respect to the normal vest. The authors conclude that such increased motion may play a role in delayed unions and nonunions of cervical spine fractures.

The halo vest is useful in providing reduction and provisional stabilization of injuries or conditions causing instability at the occipitocervical junction, and it can be used to provide additional support after these patients have surgery. It is best used for reducing angular and translational deformities in cervical spinal fractures at the proximal and distal regions of the spine; in the midportion, studies have shown that a halo actually increases the forces on the injured vertebrae.[55] It is commonly used for complex combined C1 and C2 fracture patterns where internal stabilization is not possible without extension to the occiput, which results in severe loss of motion.[57,58] It is used to provide additional stability after complex surgical reconstructions or noninstrumented fusion or wiring constructs after surgery at C1–2 and may be used to supplement instrumented fusions in situations with poor bone quality or significant instability, as in patients with osteoporosis or rheumatoid arthritis.[59] The halo is no longer used as frequently in subaxial (i.e., C3–C7) trauma due to advances in spinal instrumentation. It is still considered the treatment of choice for some types of fractures of the axis (e.g., hangman's fractures) and in some flexion/compression injuries.[60,61] A fracture of the odontoid process at C2 is a common injury in older patients and historically has often been treated with a halo vest.[62–64] Currently the optimal treatment for these patients is controversial, with some authors reporting that simple collar immobilization provides equivalent results.[65-71] Significantly higher mortality has been reported in older patients treated with a halo compared with those treated with a cervical collar.[63,72] Daentzer and Florkemieier[73] performed a retrospective study of 29 patients divided into two groups based on age younger or older than 65 years and found that, although clinical and radiographic results were equivalent between the two groups, the interval to healing and rate of complications were higher in the older-than-65 age group.

Rehabilitation of the patient with a halo is challenging. The fixed head position affects the ability to use visual cues, and the weight of the vest and position of the head combine to change the patient's center of mass. Ambulatory patients in halo vests may exhibit a forward-flexion posture to accommodate this; a cane or walker may be required while the halo is in place. Likewise, there is a readjustment period after the halo has been removed, which may require postural reeducation as part of the rehabilitation strategy.

CERVICOTHORACIC AND THORACIC ORTHOSES

CTOs can be divided into two categories: those that use the thoracic spine to support treatment of a subaxial cervical spine or upper thoracic spine problem and those that support treatment at the upper cervical spine. Examples in the first category include thoracic extensions added to a cylindrical cervical orthosis (i.e., Extended Miami J) or an orthosis that utilizes pads on the chin and occiput to connect to the trunk with four stiff uprights or circumferential supports (i.e., Minerva). The Minerva brace (Fig. 13.4) is the most effective method for immobilizing C1–2 and has been shown to limit flexion/extension by approximately 79%, axial rotation by 88%, and lateral bending by 51%.[74] The cervicothoracic area is a particularly challenging area to immobilize in that it is a transitional area between the very mobile and lordotic cervical spine and the kyphotic thoracic spine. Little data exist in the literature regarding immobilization of the upper thoracic spine; for those conditions not requiring surgery, an extended cervical orthosis can be used.[1] The Minerva brace, Sternal Occipital Mandibular Immobilizer (SOMI) brace (Fig. 13.5), or a custom-molded CTO can be used for conditions extending as far caudally as T5. In general, increasing the length of the orthosis down the trunk enhances its capabilities.[53]

The most common condition that affects the thoracic spine is the vertebral compression fracture (VCF). Approximately 700,000 VCFs occur each year, and it is estimated that 25% of American women will experience at least one VCF in their lifetimes.[75] Most patients will have a benign course, but up to 30% are significantly symptomatic and seek treatment for pain that limits function in either the short or long term.[76] A study of patients with multiple VCFs found significant decreases in trunk extension torque, spinal motion, functional reach, mobility skills, and walking distance compared with the normal age-matched population.[77] The treatment of a VCF is aimed at pain relief

Fig. 13.4 Minerva brace (Otto Bock HealthCare LP, Austin, TX).

Fig. 13.5 SOMI brace (Courtesy of Trulife).

rather than at fracture treatment, as with other types of fracture management. The main objective is to improve quality of life and decrease pain.

Treatment of painful fractures may necessitate a short period of bed rest followed by gradual mobilization. Bracing with an orthosis may be beneficial for the first 6 to 8 weeks until the acute pain resolves. Unfortunately bracing is often poorly tolerated. The efficacy of bracing a VCF has not been established.[78] For osteoporotic women in general, one study demonstrated that wearing a TL orthosis that emphasized postural control for 6 months resulted in improved back extensor and abdominal flexor strength, decreased kyphosis, less pain, greater well-being, and fewer limitations.[79] One study suggested efficacy for this orthosis in patients with VCF and demonstrated potentially better tolerance than other braces.[80] Further study is required to outline optimal general management strategies for using spinal orthoses in this population.[81] Typically a symptomatic patient requesting bracing is trialed in an extended cervical orthosis, a hyperextension TL brace (CASH or Jewett, see later), or a CTO depending on the level involved.[55] If the orthosis is not helpful, it is discarded.

THORACOLUMBAR

The thoracolumbar region is the most common region of the spine affected by traumatic fracture and the most likely region to benefit from orthotic support for the surgically treated spine. The integrity of the vertebral body is of primary importance to resisting compressive forces and axial loads, and this region is a transitional zone that should be neutral in alignment. Fractures involving the anterior body greatly decrease the spine's ability to withstand compressive load and tend to collapse into kyphosis, particularly if the posterior elements are also involved (i.e., a burst fracture). This results in displacement of the patient's sagittal balance, spinal deformity, pain, and, in the worst cases, neurologic deficit. Fractures of this area may be treated with orthoses or surgically, and there is some consensus in the literature for surgical management when the vertebral body is severely comminuted, the patient has a neurologic deficit, or the initial fracture alignment is unacceptable.[78,82] Advances in spinal instrumentation and techniques such as interbody support have improved the surgeon's ability to counteract kyphosis, but at the thoracolumbar junction this requires a combined thoracolumbar surgical approach through the thoracic and abdominal cavities, which carries significant morbidity. Surgeons often choose to use posterior spinal instrumentation alone in these cases. Posterior instrumentation is least effective in resisting kyphosis, so orthoses that reduce kyphotic forces on the thoracolumbar spine may be used to supplement internal fixation techniques.

When an orthosis is used for the management of a thoracolumbar fracture, the same principles apply. Optimal management includes a strategy to resist anterior flexion and therefore the development of a kyphotic deformity. Orthoses are best used for fractures from T10 to L2, although some types of orthoses can be adjusted to control up to T8. Several thoracolumbar hyperextension orthoses are designed to unload the anterior column.[1] The most common types are the Jewett brace (Fig. 13.6A) and the CASH

Fig. 13.6 (A) Jewett brace. (B) Cash brace (Otto Bock HealthCare LP, Austin, TX).

brace (see Fig. 13.6B). Both of these braces are available in prefabricated styles from various manufacturers. The Jewett orthosis has an aluminum frame anteriorly that is stabilized on the pubis, sternum, and lateral midline of the trunk against a posterior pad. The frame is open and is particularly suitable for patients with coexisting abdominal trauma or obesity. Trunk flexion is limited by a single three-point pressure system with posteriorly directed forces at the sternum and pubis opposing an anteriorly directed force applied by the posterior pad. Therefore it is contraindicated in patients with sternal fractures or an inability to tolerate direct pressure from the posterior pad. The goal of the Jewett is to prevent flexion while still allowing active hyperextension. The CASH brace uses the same three-point system. It has an adjustable-length anterior cross with sternal and pelvic pads at the end of the vertical bar and lateral pads on the horizontal bar. It also uses an anteriorly directed force provided by a posterior belt. Both the Jewett and CASH braces are options for those patients who cannot tolerate the constriction of a molded thermoplastic thoracolumbosacral orthosis (TLSO), but they are contraindicated in patients with injuries including significant three-column instability such as the thoracolumbar burst fracture.

The TLSO is the recommended treatment for significant fractures at the thoracolumbar junction that are being treated conservatively. TLSOs can be used to manage fractures from T6 to L4. Molded TLSOs provide total contact designed to restrict ROM in all planes. In one study, a custom-molded thermoplastic TLSO showed 94% restriction in lateral bending and 69% restriction of flexion/extension in the lumbar spine.[83] In the thoracic spine, there was 49% restriction of flexion/extension and 38% restriction of lateral bending. The thoracic spine normally also allows rotation, and a reduction of 60% in total rotation was also shown. The superior trim lines of the TLSO are at the sternal notch and have an anteroinferior trim

line at the groin; they are carefully shaped to envelop the pelvis, arching slightly laterally anteriorly to accommodate the thigh while sitting and trimmed low at the sacrococcygeal junction posteriorly. The superoposterior trim line falls just below the spine of the scapula. The custom molds are made of a ventilated thermoplastic, which may be lined with closed cell foam to increase comfort. They can be bivalved with side closures to facilitate donning and doffing and are generally worn over a light T-shirt for comfort and hygiene. Straps over the shoulders may increase the rigidity, particularly if a semi-flexible or prefabricated model is chosen. TLSOs are also available in prefabricated models, although for maximum control of motion a custom mold is preferred. There is some controversy as to whether the made-to-measure or prefabricated orthoses fit and function as well as the custom-fabricated ones.

LUMBOSACRAL

Immobilization of the lumbosacral spine presents a unique set of challenges. It is a transition zone between the highly mobile lordotic lumbar spine and the rigid sacropelvic structures; it has the largest absolute range of flexion/extension and bears the most load of any of the spinal regions. A rigid lumbosacral orthosis (LSO), which is simply a shorter version of the TLSO described earlier, is appropriate for bracing fractures at L2, L3, and L4; but the FSUs at L4–5 and L5–S1 require special treatment. Fidler and Plasmans[84] found that a unilateral thigh extension is necessary to effectively immobilize L4–5 and L5–S1. A thigh extension is generally a cuff attached by two longitudinal struts that have hinges, allowing a variable degree of flexion at the hip to facilitate toileting and sitting; generally it is set at allowing 20 to 30 degrees of flexion at a maximum. The mean percentage of motion allowed in the brace was 32% at L4–5 and 70% at L5–S1 in a brace without the extension; adding the extension resulted in an additional 15% to 30% reduction of motion.[85,86] At best, restriction at the L5–S1 level still allows 40% of normal range. For this reason fractures at these levels are best treated with surgery (using an orthosis for postoperative support if necessary) if the treating physician desires to mobilize that patient during the healing period.

Up until the last few years, LSOs have commonly been used in the postoperative period. Advances in spinal instrumentation, with the advent of pedicle screws and interbody techniques, now allow many patients to go without bracing postoperatively. Pedicle screws connect the anterior load-bearing portion of the spine with a posterior construct by crossing the middle column and provide better limitation of motion and load sharing than previous hook/rod constructs. Interbody techniques place a block of bone between the vertebral bodies, either through placement by an intra-abdominal approach or with hybrid approaches accessing the disc space from the posterior part of the spine. The placement of bone in the middle and anterior columns facilitates healing because increased surface area and favorable biomechanical conditions allow the bone graft to experience compression forces. A recent randomized trial that assessed the benefit of wearing a lumbar corset for 8 weeks after lumbar fusion did not find a significant advantage or disadvantage with respect to healing rates or patient comfort.[87] Today postoperative bracing is reserved for patients who feel more comfortable with support (a lumbar corset) or those with poor bone quality or technical issues leading to concerns about healing or the stabilization provided by the instrumentation.

Patients with acute LBP may find the additional support and postural reminder of a lumbar corset helpful for pain reduction. Lumbar corsets are generally semi-rigid or flexible braces (Fig. 13.7A). Their function is to reduce gross trunk motion and increase intracavitary pressure in the abdomen by transmitting a three-point pressure system to the lumbar

Fig. 13.7 (A) Lumbar corset (AliMed, Inc. www.alimed.com). (B) Chairback orthosis (Don Joy DJO Global http://djomerchandise.com/).

spine. They are designed to support the trunk in a neutral sagittal alignment and provide a kinesthetic reminder to limit motion. The lumbar corset has little resistance to gross body motion during sitting and standing.[88] Typically the anterior borders of the lumbosacral corset are superior to the symphysis pubis and inferior to the xiphoid process. The posterior borders extend between the sacrococcygeal junction of the pelvis and the inferior angle of the scapulae; some may incorporate shoulder straps. The Chairback Orthosis (see Fig. 13.7B) is an lumbosacral corset with both a thoracic and a pelvic band connected by two paraspinal bars for optimized sagittal control. A pair of lateral bars can also be added for improved coronal control (the Knight orthosis).

The literature on the effectiveness of the corset is conflicting. In 2001, a systematic review of randomized and nonrandomized controlled trials demonstrated no evidence that spinal orthoses were effective in the prevention or management of LBP.[89] An orthosis should be used in conjunction with a rehabilitation program focused on core strengthening and stabilization in these patients.

Spinal orthoses have been found to have a deconditioning effect on the paraspinal muscles and trunk stabilizers. Electromyographic studies have found conflicting results, with some demonstrating a significant reduction in muscle activity in the brace and others finding either unchanged or increased activity.[85,90] An exercise regimen should be maintained when the clinical situation allows and the orthosis should be discontinued as soon as possible.

Cervicothoracolumbosacral

Cases in which patients sustain multiple traumas to the cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral segments of the spine may require the use of more complicated orthotic design. The cervicothoracolumbosacral orthosis (CTLSO) may be used to address the issues of stabilization and motion control involving multiple spinal segments. Use of CTLSOs is not limited to cases of multiple spinal segment trauma. It may also be employed pre- or postoperatively as a supplement to surgical procedures of the cervical spine requiring the level of control provided by a TLSO combined with a cervical component such as the Minerva collar or a SOMI proximal cervical component. Donning, doffing, and skin care issues for CTLSOs are consistent with those for CTOs and TLSOs.

Sacroiliac Joints

Estimates vary regarding the role that the sacroiliac (SI) joints play in the incidence of LBP. Estimates of LBP originating in the SI joints range between 22%[91,92] and 30%[93] of cases. The SI joints are vital links between the spinal column and the lower extremities.[94] They are the critical connection for the successful transference of upper body weight to the legs.[94] The etiology of SI joint pain covers a wide range, including rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, tumor, infection, pregnancy, and trauma.[95,96] An orthosis for the treatment of SI joint pain is the sacroiliac orthosis (SIO), also known as an SI or pelvic belt. The mechanism involved is a compressive or "squeezing" force across the pelvis that is transferred to the SI joints as a stabilizing force to reduce joint laxity, restrict motion, and thereby reduce pain.[94,97-99] Positioning of the SI belt during donning is key to the successful mitigation of pain related to the SI joint. The SI belt should be positioned and then tightened just proximal to the greater trochanters.[94,99,100] The position of the belt has been found to play a greater role in the reduction of SI joint laxity than the belt's tension.[101]

Scoliosis

Scoliosis is a general term that refers to a three-dimensional spinal deformity characterized by coronal displacement of vertebral bodies away from the axis of gravity combined with abnormal vertebral rotation (Fig. 13.8). There are many types of scoliosis as well as many etiologies. Today, the only type of scoliosis that is typically and frequently managed with a spinal orthosis is the idiopathic curve. Adolescent idiopathic scoliosis (AIS) refers to a curvature and rotational deformity of the spine that develops with growth. It can occur in the upper thoracic, thoracic, thoracolumbar, or lumbar spine or some combination. There is often a primary curve (the curve with abnormal growth) and a compensatory curve, which is a second region of the spine curving in the opposite direction to the primary curve to keep the head centered over the pelvis. The age of the child, the growth remaining, and the curve pattern all have implications for prognosis.

PREVALENCE AND NATURAL HISTORY

Idiopathic scoliosis has been studied and documented for many years and maintains a consistent prevalence of approximately 1% to 2% of school-age children.[102-104] Ninety percent of children have adolescent-onset curves, although this figure may be falsely elevated because younger children are not routinely evaluated.[105] The prevalence of curves that do not require treatment (<20 degrees) is 20 to 30 per 1000, the prevalence of moderate curves amenable to bracing (20–30 degrees) is 3 to 5 per 1000, and the prevalence of large curves likely to go on to surgical management is 2 to 3 per 1000 people.[104] The prevalence of curves is greater in females, particularly with respect to curves over 20 degrees (6.4 F:1 M).[106] The single right thoracic curve is the most prevalent pattern.[107] The most important determinants of the likelihood of progression are those that reflect skeletal maturity: age, menarchal status, and the presence of mature growth centers on

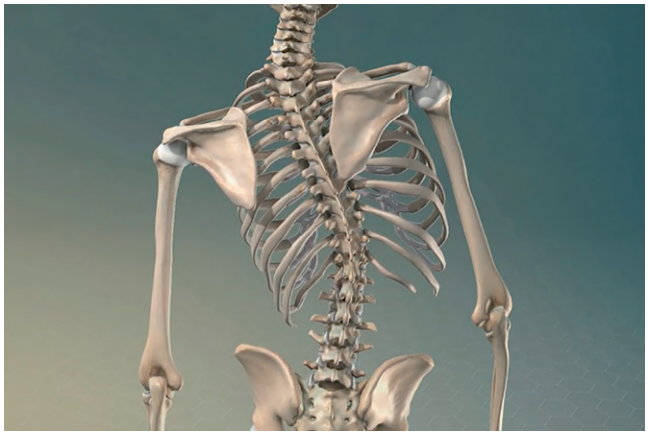


Fig. 13.8 Skeleton with scoliosis trunk shift (Dr. Spivak executivespinesurgery.com).

radiographs of the pelvis (Risser sign) or hand. The likelihood of progression determines the need for treatment; those at highest risk are those with a younger age at diagnosis, a curve that appears before the onset of menstruation, a double curve pattern, and a curve that is documented to change more than 5 degrees on serial radiographs taken at 6-month intervals. Curve magnitude and rotation are both correlated with increased progression rates.[108] This is the basis for the recommendation that curves greater than 50 degrees in a growing child be treated surgically.

BIOMECHANICS

Curves progress when buckling loads change during growth, along with other hormonal and developmental factors. A straight, flexible column fixed at the base and free at the other end subjected to axial forces will buckle, which in the spine results in a combination of curvature and rotation. The loads at which these processes occur are related to the length and rigidity of the spine. The adolescent growth spurt results in a significant increase in spinal length and may result in increased flexibility as well, which contributes to the drastic increases in curve progression commonly observed during the adolescent years. As the curve progresses, a feedforward cycle is created. With curve progression, the spine is subjected to increasingly abnormal force vectors and deviates further from the normal anatomic alignment at which it is best equipped to resist such loading. Braces used for scoliosis are designed to interrupt this feedforward cycle.

There are three primary mechanisms by which an orthosis exerts forces on a developing spine: end-point control, curve correction, and transverse loading.[109] End-point control is the ability of the orthosis to constrain the spine. An example is the neck ring at the proximal end of the Milwaukee brace, which can control the position of the upper thoracic spine relative to the pelvis. Curve correction has the greatest effect because it stiffens the spine and reduces the curve, which in turn decreases the load on the spine and slows the rate of deformation. Transverse loading at the apex is the primary mode of correction within modern orthoses, but it begins to lose efficacy as the curves get larger.[110] It is important to note that brace treatment often does not significantly correct the existing curve but rather prevents it from increasing in size during growth. Some degree of curve correction should be achieved within the brace (ideally 50% or more) because the curve will regress back to its initial magnitude once the brace is removed.[111,112] The overall concept is to halt curve progression.

EVALUATION

The first step in evaluating a child with a spinal curvature is a thorough orthopedic history including age, growth patterns, family history of spinal problems, the age at which the curve was discovered, and any treatment that has previously been used. The primary goal of an orthosis in treating a scoliotic deformity is to control remaining spinal growth so that the spine reaches maturity with an acceptable curvature. There is no role for using an orthosis to prevent scoliosis, and the ability of an orthosis to make a curvature ultimately smaller is limited.[113-115] Scoliosis progresses as the spine grows, so an adolescent at the end of spinal growth has very little risk of progression, and there is no role for bracing a curve that has already reached a size where surgery is indicated.[116] Therefore it is critical to identify children with scoliosis at the early stages. A national screening program has been adopted in many countries for this purpose.

Physical examination and radiographs are used to measure the size, flexibility, and effects of each spinal curvature. The Scoliosis Research Society has adopted a set of terms and definitions to describe scoliosis as well as to describe the multitude of spinal conditions that can lead to scoliosis. Curves can be described either by etiology of the structural changes (Box 13.2) or by the spinal level of the anatomic apex of the curve. In a cervical scoliosis, the apex of the

Box 13.2 Classification System for Idiopathic and Neuromuscular Structural Scoliosis

Idiopathic

Infantile (0–3 Years)

Resolving
Progressive

Juvenile (3–10 Years)

Adolescent (Older Than 10 Years) Neuropathic

Neuromuscular

Upper motor neuron
- Cerebral palsy
- Spinocerebellar degeneration
- Friedreich ataxia
- Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease
- Roussy-Lévy disease
- Syringomyelia
- Spinal cord tumor
- Spinal cord trauma
- Other

Lower motor neuron
- Poliomyelitis
- Other viral myelitides
- Trauma
- Spinal muscular atrophy
- Werdnig-Hoffmann disease
- Kugelberg-Welander disease
- Myelomeningocele (paralytic)
- Dysautonomia (Riley-Day syndrome)

Other

Myopathic
Arthrogryposis
Muscular dystrophy
- Duchenne's (pseudohypertrophy)
- Limb-girdle
- Fiber-type disproportion

Congenital hypotonia
- Myotonic dystrophica
- Other

curve is at or between the vertebral body of C1 and C6. In a cervicothoracic curve, the apex is at C7, C8, or T1. A thoracic curve has an apex at or between T2 and T11. A thoracolumbar curve reaches its apex at the T12 or L1 vertebral body. A lumbar curve occurs at L2, L3, or L4, whereas a lumbosacral curve reaches its apex at L5 or S1. Numerous descriptive terms are also used in the diagnosis, evaluation, and management of scoliosis (Table 13.2). These standards and definitions are used throughout this chapter.

Scoliosis can also be described by etiology. A child or adolescent who develops scoliosis after relatively typical growth and development is diagnosed as having idiopathic scoliosis. An individual who develops scoliosis as a secondary complication of nervous system or muscle disease is described as

Table 13.2 Glossary and Definitions of Terms in Scoliosis

Term	Definition
Adolescent scoliosis	Spinal curvature presenting at or about the onset of puberty and before maturity.
Adult scoliosis	Spinal curvature that develops after skeletal maturity.
Angle of thoracic inclination	The angle between the horizontal plane and inclination plane across the posterior rib cage at the greatest prominence of a rib hump, assessed with the trunk flexed 90 degrees at the hips.
Apical vertebra	The most rotated vertebra in a curve; the most deviated vertebra from the vertical axis of the patient.
Body alignment 1. Alignment of the midpoint of the occiput over the sacrum in the same vertical plane as the shoulders over the hips 2. In radiography, when the sum of the angular deviations of the spine in one direction is equal to that in the opposite direction (also described as balance or compensation)	
Café au lait spots	Light-brown, irregular areas of skin pigmentation; if they are sufficient in number and have smooth margins, they suggest neurofibromatosis.
Cobb angle or method	On radiograph, the uppermost and lowermost vertebrae in the curve are identified; a perpendicular line (curve measurement) is drawn from the transverse axes of these vertebrae, and the angle formed at their intersection (Cobb angle) measures the severity of the curve; if vertebral end plates are poorly visualized, a line through the bottom or top of the pedicles can be used.
Compensatory curve	A curve, which can be structural, above or below the major curve that tends to maintain normal body alignment.
Congenital scoliosis	Scoliosis due to congenitally anomalous vertebral development.
Double major scoliosis	Scoliosis with two structural curves.
Double thoracic curves	Two structural curves within the thoracic spine.
End vertebra 1. Uppermost vertebra of a curve, the superior surface of which tilts maximally toward the concavity of the curve 2. The most caudal vertebra, the inferior surface of which tilts maximally toward the concavity of the curve	
Fractional curve	Compensatory curve that is incomplete because it returns to the erect; its only horizontal vertebra is its caudad or cephalad one.
Full curve	Curve in which the only horizontal vertebra is at the apex.
Gibbus	Sharply angular kyphos.
Hyperkyphosis	Sagittal alignment of the thoracic spine in which more than the normal amount of kyphosis is present (a kyphos).
Hypokyphosis	Sagittal alignment of the thoracic spine in which less than the normal amount of kyphosis is present but not so severe as to be lordotic.
Hysterical scoliosis	Nonstructural deformity of the spine that develops as a manifestation of a conversion reaction.
Idiopathic scoliosis	Structural spinal curvature for which no cause is established.
Iliac epiphysis or apophysis	Epiphysis along the wing of an ilium.
Inclinometer	Instrument used to measure the angle of thoracic inclination or rib hump.
Infantile scoliosis	Spinal curvature that develops during the first 3 years of life.

Continued

Table 13.2 Glossary and Definitions of Terms in Scoliosis—cont'd

Term	Definition
Juvenile scoliosis	Spinal curvature that develops between the skeletal age of 3 years and the onset of puberty (10 years).
Kyphos	Change in alignment of a segment of the spine in the sagittal plane that increases the posterior convex angulation; an abnormally increased kyphosis.
Kyphoscoliosis	Spine with scoliosis and a true hyperkyphosis; a rotatory deformity with only apparent kyphosis should not be described by this term.
Kyphosing scoliosis	Scoliosis with marked rotation such that lateral bending of the rotated spine mimics kyphosis.
Lordoscoliosis	Scoliosis associated with an abnormal anterior angulation in the sagittal plane.
Major curve	Term used to designate the largest structural curve.
Minor curve	Term used to refer to the smallest curve, which is always more flexible than the major curve.
Nonstructural curve	Curve that has no structural component and that corrects or overcorrects on recumbent side-bending radiographs.
Pelvic obliquity	Deviation of the pelvis from the horizontal in the frontal plane; fixed pelvic obliquities can be attributable to contractures either above or below the pelvis.
Primary curve	First or earliest of several curves to appear if identifiable.
Risser sign	Rating system used to indicate skeletal maturity, based on degree of ossification of the iliac epiphysis.
Rotational prominence	In the forward-bending position, the thoracic prominence on one side is usually due to vertebral rotation, causing rib prominence; in the lumbar spine, the prominence is usually due to rotation of the lumbar vertebrae.
Skeletal age (bone age)	Age obtained by comparing an anteroposterior radiograph of the left hand and wrist with the standards of the Greulich and Pyle atlas.
Structural curve	Segment of the spine with a lateral curvature that lacks normal flexibility; radiographically, it is identified by the complete lack of a curve on a supine film or by the failure to demonstrate complete segmental mobility on supine side-bending films.
Vertebral end plates	Superior and inferior plates of cortical bone of the vertebral body adjacent to the intervertebral disc.
Vertebral growth plate	Cartilaginous surface covering the top and bottom of a vertebral body, which is responsible for linear growth of the vertebra.
Vertebral ring apophyses	Most reliable index of vertebral immaturity, seen best in lateral radiographs or in the lumbar region in side-bending anteroposterior views.

having neuromuscular scoliosis. Clinical examination includes an assessment of the patient's posture, noting any asymmetry in trunk alignment, shoulder height, scapular prominence, and pelvic rotation. Special attention is paid to the degree of thoracic kyphosis and lumbar lordosis as well as any tendency toward trunk shift to the right or left (spinal decompensation) (Fig. 13.9A). The Adams forward-bending test assesses the rotation of each curve by the degree of prominence over the apices, and the patient can be flexed laterally while bent forward to assess the degree of curve flexibility (see Fig. 13.9B). Complete neurologic, skin, and cardiac examinations are then performed.

The timing of orthotic treatment is an important determinant of efficacy. The principles have remained the same regardless of the orthosis used. First, treatment should be initiated before skeletal maturity, when there is growth remaining, because bracing is effective only in a growing child; curves less than 20 degrees are generally observed, but once a curve is greater than 20 degrees and/or demonstrates significant progression, bracing is initiated. Second, most braces should be worn full time, which was defined by Blount[117] as 23 hours per day and more recently confirmed by a meta-analysis of available studies.[118] Third, the brace should be worn until skeletal maturity. Last, there should be a weaning period accompanied by a rehabilitation program to rebuild muscle strength once skeletal maturity has been reached. A predictive model using in-brace correction and scoliometer measurements has been created to help identify those individuals who are likely to demonstrate progression of the curvature despite bracing.[119] This tool may be useful in management planning.

TYPES OF BRACES

Milwaukee Brace

In 1944 Blount and Schmidt developed the Milwaukee brace. As a CTLSO, it was initially employed as a postoperative modality but soon found a more important role. Since 1954 it has been used in the nonoperative treatment of idiopathic scoliosis.[120] The brace consists of a pelvic section, which helps to reduce lumbar lordosis, and an attached "superstructure." The superstructure consists of three metal uprights that are attached to a neck ring superiorly. It provides an end point of control to make the spine structurally more rigid and better aligned; it also provides a means of attachment for the spinal pads (Fig. 13.10). This style is considered a full-time brace and should be worn 23 hours a day. The initial design incorporated distraction; however, this has since been modified due to problems with malocclusion of the jaw. Subsequent to the Milwaukee

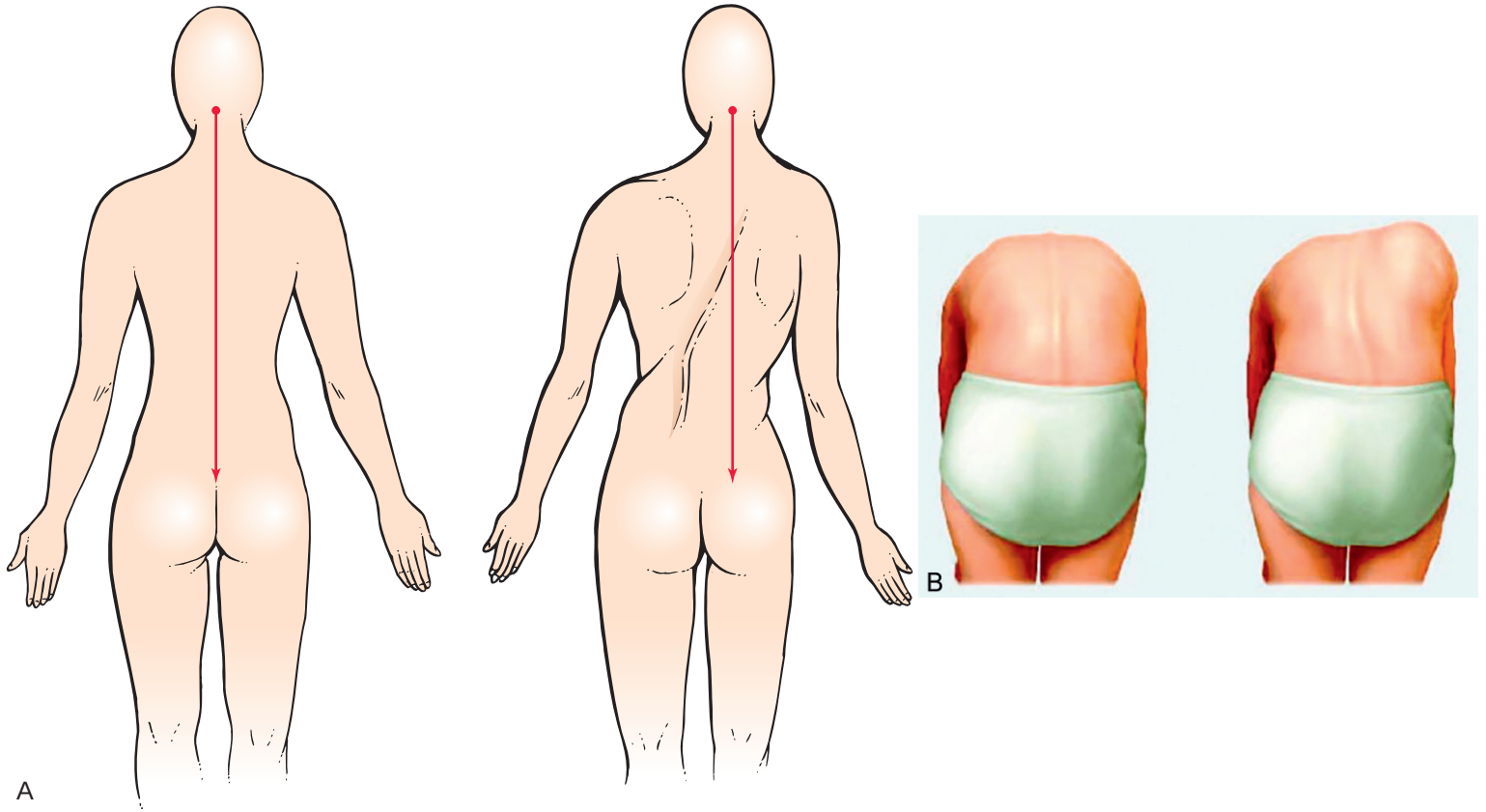


Fig. 13.9 (A) *Left,* normal skeletal alignment. *Right,* lateral trunk shift—scoliosis. (B) Adam's Forward Bend Test. (A, From Schwartz, M. *Textbook of Physical Diagnosis*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier; 2014. B, Modified from Fine, NF and Stokes, OM. Clinical Examination of the Spine. *Surgery*. 2018;36[7]:357–361.)

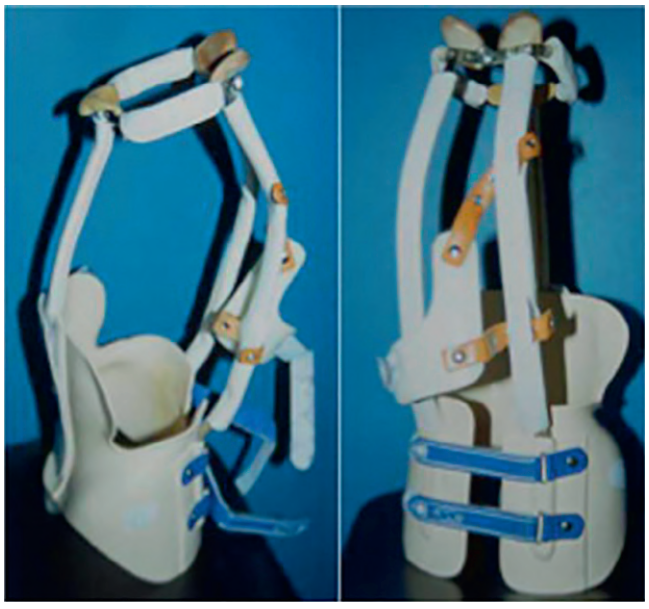


Fig. 13.10 Milwaukee brace. (From Palazzo C, Salihan F, Rivel M. Schuermann's disease: an update. Joint Bone Spine. 2013;81[3]:209–214.)

brace, various low-profile TLSOs have been introduced. Most of these spinal orthoses are named for the city in which they were developed (e.g., Boston brace, Miami orthosis, Wilmington brace, Lyon brace). These spinal orthoses share one characteristic: all control the alignment of the thoracolumbosacral spine but have no superstructure. The Milwaukee brace is mentioned here primarily for its historic significance. It remains the most effective brace for upper thoracic curves but requires a dedicated patient and family for compliance.

Boston Thoracolumbosacral Orthosis

In 1972, in response to patient concerns about the bulkiness and neck ring of the Milwaukee brace, Hall created a lower-profile modular TLSO known as the *Boston brace*.[121] Watts and Hall[122] reported on the Boston brace in 1977. It is a rigid underarm TLSO that, with various modifications, has become the most prevalent type of orthosis used. The original Boston brace consisted of multiple modules that were fabricated in different sizes and could be combined to provide a custom-fitted brace that did not require as much time or expertise on the part of the orthotist.[121] Several studies have demonstrated equivalent results with the use of the Boston brace or its related products compared with the Milwaukee brace, with the possible exception of use for high thoracic curves.[111,112,123-125] Boston braces are popular because of their low-profile and partially open design, which is comfortable and well tolerated.

Charleston Nighttime Brace

This brace was created in 1979 by Reed and Hooper.[121] It is manufactured so that a curvature is maximally corrected while the patient sleeps; the correction is so significant that it is not comfortable when worn in an upright position.[126] Price and colleagues[126] reported on the prevention of progression of curvature in 66% of patients with curves less than 49 degrees and significant growth remaining. One comparative study between the Boston and Charleston orthoses showed the Boston orthosis to be more effective in all curve patterns but the Charleston orthosis to have equal efficacy in 25- to 35-degree single thoracolumbar or lumbar curves.[127] The theoretical advantages of the Charleston orthosis in terms of body image and socialization issues are intuitive but have not been shown in rigorous studies; likewise, compliance problems are similar to those with other braces.

SpineCor

Traditionally, corrective spinal orthoses used in the treatment of adolescent and juvenile scoliosis have been rigid or semirigid devices. Rigid orthoses have been shown to be effective for some patients with AIS but are associated with drawbacks related to cosmesis and physical discomfort, which tend to compromise patient compliance. In the early 1990s, Coillard and Rivard developed the SpineCor brace, a dynamic bracing system that uses nonrigid harness-like bands to apply corrective forces to the patient's torso. The components of the brace include a pelvic base, two thigh bands, two crotch bands, a cotton bolero, and four corrective elastic bands that may be arranged in a number of different configurations depending on the specific deformity being treated. The pelvic base is a belt that includes three pieces of soft thermoplastic material. Fitting patients with the brace is done in a systematic fashion using supplementary computer software; a training course is offered to providers for education on proper fitting technique.

Coillard and Rivard, the developers of the SpineCor brace, published the initial clinical results in 2003.[128] They reported on the treatment results of 195 patients between 6 and 14 years of age with idiopathic scoliosis curves between 15 and 50 degrees and Risser stages 0 to 3. Success in their study was defined as either a correction or stabilization of about 5 degrees or more. Failure was defined as worsening of the curve by more than 5 degrees. The authors found that at 2 years of follow-up, there was an overall correction of greater than 5 degrees in 55% of patients, curve stabilization in 38%, and worsening by greater than 5 degrees in 7% of patients. This equates to 93% success at 2 years. At 4 years of follow-up, the probability of success was 0.88 to 0.92. Coillard and Rivard published results of the same prospective cohort again in 2007 using the Scoliosis Research Society scoliosis research inclusion criteria.[129] A total of 170 patients were included in the study. The authors reported that successful treatment was achieved in 59.4% of patients at the time of brace discontinuation, with 22.9% requiring fusion during the treatment period, at which point 1.2% of patients had curves exceeding 45 degrees at maturity. These initial results reported by the developers of the SpineCor brace were promising; however, further studies by independent investigators have yielded some conflicting results.

Weiss and Weiss[130] published the results of a small study that compared treatment with a SpineCor brace with TLSO bracing. The authors compared 12 SpineCor patients with 15 TLSO patients and found that the SpineCor patients, with a starting Cobb angle of 21 degrees, progressed an average of 10 degrees after 21 months of treatment, versus 0.2 degrees in the TLSO patients who had a starting Cobb angle of 33

degrees. Wong and colleagues[131] compared 22 SpineCor patients with 21 TLSO patients and demonstrated that only 68% of SpineCor patients maintained curve progression of less than or equal to 5 degrees compared with 95% of TLSO patients. Gammon and colleagues[132] compared 35 patients treated with a TLSO with 32 patients treated with the SpineCor brace and found no significant difference between the two outcomes with respect to progression of less than or equal to 5 degrees (60% in TLSO and 53% in SpineCor) or success in avoiding curve progression past 45 degrees (80% in TLSO and 72% in SpineCor). However, a retrospective study of 243 patients with AIS treated with either the SpineCor or the Boston brace revealed greater curve progression in the SpineCor group.[133] A higher percentage of patients in the SpineCor group had curve progression equal to or greater than 6 degrees (76% compared with 55% in the Boston brace group). Additionally the average curve progression was 14.7 degrees (±11.9 degrees) in the SpineCor group compared with 9.6 degrees (±13.7 degrees) in the Boston brace group.[133]

An important aspect of any brace is the degree of physical comfort and cosmetic considerations. As is true with the literature regarding the efficacy of the SpineCor brace versus TLSO bracing, the literature addressing the impact of the SpineCor brace on comfort and cosmesis is scant. In their 2008 study comparing the SpineCor brace with TLSO bracing, Wong and colleagues[131] administered a questionnaire at 3, 9, and 18 months of treatment to gain information about patient acceptance of the brace. The only significant differences noted were problems with toileting (greater in the SpineCor group) and donning/doffing the orthosis (greater in the TLSO group).

Orthotic Prescription

An orthosis should initially improve the magnitude of the curve.[134] An orthosis that provides some correction theoretically decreases the load on the developing vertebrae, increasing the likelihood of long-term control of the deformity.[135] Over time the orthosis should be capable of preventing curve progression for long periods, frequently until the patient reaches skeletal maturity. Finally, an orthosis should be designed to be well tolerated and allow normal social and physical development; even then, compliance with brace wear is a significant issue for adolescents.[136-139] The effectiveness of an orthosis has been shown to be directly related to time spent in the brace, so the patient's willingness to wear the brace is of utmost importance.[118,127,140-142] "Smart braces" that measure compliance have demonstrated that even the most apparently compliant patient spends much less time in the brace than actually prescribed.[137,139,143-146]

The prescribing physician should specify the particular requirements for the orthosis based on the deformity, the goals of treatment, and his or her assessment of the likelihood for compliance. The exact type of brace, generally CTLSO or TLSO, with specifications of thoracic pad placement, lumbar pad placement, need for axillary slings, anterior gussets, trochanteric extensions, kyphosis pads, and the like depends on the type of deformity being treated. Each pad requires a specified location, mediolateral orientation, and placement instructions. The choice between a CTLSO and TLSO is dictated by the location of the curve, with high thoracic curves most effectively treated by the former. A TLSO has a much lower profile and is therefore more socially acceptable. The orthosis may be prefabricated and adjusted to fit or custom-molded for patients who require additional adaptability.

The time in the orthosis is slowly increased over several weeks and then assessed both physically and radiographically by the prescribing physician. Specific pressure point relief and corrective pad adjustments may be required periodically because these patients are in a period of rapid spinal growth. For the youngest patients, multiple braces may be required before growth concludes.

Different goals are applied for patients with scoliosis of a neuromuscular origin such as cerebral palsy or muscular dystrophy. In these cases spinal bracing is frequently ineffective in significantly altering the progression of deformity but may still be useful when surgery is contraindicated.[147] Goals for the use of a spinal orthosis in such patients include maximizing sitting postural control, alleviation of pain, and facilitation of function and daily care.[147]

COMPLICATIONS

Complications with scoliosis orthoses are generally mild from a physical standpoint. However, bracing for AIS has been associated with psychologic stress[148] and decreased pulmonary function.[149,150] Since compliance is a major factor in bracing success, efforts are being made to develop low-profile braces that may reduce wearer stress. A study of 63 adolescent patients demonstrated significantly lower stress levels when they were wearing the Cheneau light brace than when wearing their originally prescribed bulkier braces while obtaining equivalent correction in the brace.[148] Further studies are needed to examine compliance. A meta-analysis of 237 AIS patients determined that patients with thoracic curves who underwent preoperative brace treatment had significantly lower forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiration (FEV_1) than those who did not have bracing before surgery.[150] Other potential complications include compression of the abdominal viscera, which can result in increased intragastric pressure, leading to gastroesophageal reflux and potentially esophagitis.[151] Mild to moderate decreases in kidney function have been described but have not been found to have significant long-term consequences.[152] On the other hand, brace treatment in adolescence has been found to produce psychologic disturbances that are measurable into adult life.[153,154] Finally, the successful use of bracing requires a supportive, constructive family and a similar relationship between the physician and the adolescent.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The key to scoliosis treatment is to identify which children are likely to develop curve progression, avoiding treating those with curves that will remain in the 25- to 35-degree range through their growth and therefore not require any intervention. Epidemiologic studies and skeletal maturity indicators have traditionally been used for this purpose and continue to be refined.[102,116,155-157] Recently genes

that control the growth of scoliotic curves have been identified.[158-161] With this new information in combination with traditional methods, it may become possible to predict with a high degree of certainty which children will develop significant curves. Surgical treatments that harness asymmetric growth in the spine are also becoming available.[162-170] This combination of techniques may allow intervention before bracing becomes necessary. Meanwhile brace manufacturers are developing many new devices with the goals of decreasing deformity while increasing comfort, compliance, and chest expansion for pulmonary function.

Summary

Spinal orthoses are used to treat patients with a variety of spinal disorders ranging from LBP to complex spinal trauma and deformity. Selection of the appropriate orthosis for a specific patient is based on many factors, such as the indication for bracing and its severity, the age and body habitus of the patient, his or her willingness and ability to commit to a potentially long and difficult treatment course, and the patient's decisions after weighing the risks and benefits of orthotic treatment against other treatment modalities. These challenging treatment decisions are best managed by a multidisciplinary team comprising the treating physician, orthotist, physical and occupational therapists, and patient as well as his or her personal support network. Frequent follow-up and close communication between all members of the treatment team is essential to ensure thorough patient and family education, ensure adequate fit of the orthosis, evaluate for treatment efficacy, monitor for complications, and provide psychosocial support to the patient. Adequately addressing all of the issues surrounding orthotic treatment of spinal disease requires a thorough understanding of the natural history of the pathology being treated, the indications for bracing and use of specific braces, the mechanism of action of the orthosis, potential outcomes of the treatment, and potential complications and methods to minimize them. Comparative studies, long-term outcome analysis, and biomechanical studies have helped to promote understanding of and appropriate and effective use of spinal orthoses. Despite the large body of knowledge about these topics, there are still many unknowns surrounding spinal orthoses and their role in treating disorders of the spine. This chapter provides a brief overview of the basic functional anatomy of the spine, the fundamentals of spinal trauma and scoliosis, the various types of braces and their mechanisms of action and indications, and the potential complications. The ability to use spinal orthoses safely and effectively requires a comprehensive understanding of these topics.

References

1. Agabegi SS, Asghar FA, Herkowitz HN. Spinal orthoses. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2010;18(11):657–667.
2. American Association of Orthopaedic Surgeons. *Atlas of Orthotics.* St. Louis: CV Mosby; 1975.
3. White AA, Panjabi MM. *Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott;1990.
4. Bernhardt M, Bridwell KH. Segmental analysis of the sagittal plane alignment of the normal thoracic and lumbar spines and thoracolumbar junction. *Spine (Phila).* 1989;14(7):717–721.
5. Harrison DD, Harrison DE, Janik TJ, et al. Modeling of the sagittal cervical spine as a method to discriminate hypolordosis: results of elliptical and circular modeling in 72 asymptomatic subjects, 52 acute neck pain subjects, and 70 chronic neck pain subjects. *Spine (Phila).* 2004;29(22):2485–2492.
6. Hardacker JW, Shuford RF, Capicotto PN, et al. Radiographic standing cervical segmental alignment in adult volunteers without neck symptoms. *Spine (Phila).* 1997;22(13):1472–1480.
7. Knight RQ, Jackson R, Stanley E, et al. Scoliosis Research Society: *White paper on sagittal Balance.* Available at www.srs.org; September 2002.
8. Perry J, Nickel VL. Total cervical spine fusion for neck paralysis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1957;39:111–139.
9. Bell GH, Dunbar O, Beck JS, et al. Variation in strength of vertebrae with age and their relation to osteoporosis. *Calcif Tissue Res.* 1967;1(75).
10. Hsu J, Michael J, Fisk J. *AAOS Atlas of Orthoses and Assistive Devices.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby-Elselvier; 2008.
11. Whitesides Jr TE. Traumatic kyphosis of the thoracolumbar spine. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1977;128:78–92.
12. Lindahl S, Willen J, Nordwall A, et al. The crush-cleavage fracture. A "new" thoracolumbar unstable fracture. *Spine (Phila).* 1983;8(6):559–569.
13. Holdsworth F. Fractures, dislocations, and fracture-dislocations of the spine. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1970;52(8):1534–1551.
14. James KS, Wenger KH, Schlegel JD, et al. Biomechanical evaluation of the stability of thoracolumbar burst fractures. *Spine (Phila).* 1994;19(15):1731–1740.
15. Panjabi MM, Oxland TR, Kifune M, et al. Validity of the three-column theory of thoracolumbar fractures. A biomechanic investigation. *Spine.* 1995;20(10):1122–1127.
16. Ferguson RL, Allen Jr BL. An algorithm for the treatment of unstable thoracolumbar fractures. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 1986;17(1):105–112.
17. Denis F. Spinal instability as defined by the three-column spine concept in acute spinal trauma. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1984;189:65–76.
18. Wood KB, Bohn D, Mehbod A. Anterior versus posterior treatment of stable thoracolumbar burst fractures without neurologic deficit: a prospective, randomized study. *J Spinal Disord Tech.* 2005;18(suppl):S15–S23.
19. Weninger P, Schultz A, Hertz H. Conservative management of thoracolumbar and lumbar spine compression and burst fractures: functional and radiographic outcomes in 136 cases treated by closed reduction and casting. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg.* 2009;129(2):207–219.
20. Lumsden 2nd RM, Morris JM. An in vivo study of axial rotation and immoblization at the lumbosacral joint. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1968;50(8):1591–1602.
21. Weiss HR, Werkmann M, Stephan C. Brace related stress in scoliosis patients—comparison of different concepts of bracing. *Scoliosis.* 2007;2:10.
22. Sapountzi-Krepia DS, Valavanis J, Panteleakis GP, et al. Perceptions of body image, happiness and satisfaction in adolescents wearing a Boston brace for scoliosis treatment. *J Adv Nurs.* 2001;35(5):683–690.
23. Misterska E, Glowacki M, Harasymczuk J. Brace and deformity-related stress level in females with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis based on the Bad Sobernheim Stress Questionnaires. *Med Sci Monit.* 2011;17(2):CR83–CR90.
24. MacLean Jr WE, Green NE, Pierre CB, et al. Stress and coping with scoliosis: psychological effects on adolescents and their families. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1989;9(3):257–261.
25. Andersen MO, Andersen GR, Thomsen K, et al. Early weaning might reduce the psychological strain of Boston bracing: a study of 136 patients with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis at 3.5 years after termination of brace treatment. *J Pediatr Orthop B.* 2002;11(2):96–99.
26. Sypert GW. External spinal orthotics. *Neurosurgery.* 1987;20(4):642–649.
27. Powers J, Daniels D, McGuire C, et al. The incidence of skin breakdown associated with use of cervical collars. *J Trauma Nurs.* 2006;13(4):198–200.
28. Plaisier B, Gabram SG, Schwartz RJ, et al. Prospective evaluation of craniofacial pressure in four different cervical orthoses. *J Trauma.* 1994;37(5):714–720.
29. Fisher S. Proper fitting of the cervical orthosis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1978;59(11):505–507.
30. Webber-Jones JE, Thomas CA, Bordeaux Jr RE. The management and prevention of rigid cervical collar complications. *Orthop Nurs.* 2002;21(4):19–27.

31. van den Hout JA, van Rhijn LW, van den Munckhof RJ, et al. Interface corrective force measurements in Boston brace treatment. *Eur Spine J.* 2002;11(4):332–335.
32. Bell KM, Frazier EC, Shively CM, et al. Assessing range of motion to evaluate the adverse effects of ill-fitting cervical orthoses. *Spine J.* 2009;9(3):225–231.
33. Hartman JT, Palumbo F, Hill BJ. Cineradiography of the braced normal cervical spine. A comparative study of five commonly used cervical orthoses. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1975;109:97–102.
34. Richter D, Latta LL, Milne EL, et al. The stabilizing effects of different orthoses in the intact and unstable upper cervical spine: a cadaver study. *J Trauma.* 2001;50(5):848–854.
35. Podolsky S, Baraff LJ, Simon RR, et al. Efficacy of cervical spine immobilization methods. *J Trauma.* 1983;23(6):461–465.
36. Miller CP, Bible JE, Jegede KA, et al. Soft and rigid collars provide similar restriction in cervical range of motion during fifteen activities of daily living. *Spine (Phila).* 2010;35(13):1271–1278.
37. Whitcroft KL, Massouh L, Amirfeyz R, Bannister GC. A comparison of neck movement in the soft cervical collar and rigid cervical brace in healthy subjects. *J Manipulative Physiol Ther.* 2011;34:119–122.
38. Askins V, Eismont FJ. Efficacy of five cervical orthoses in restricting cervical motion. A comparison study. *Spine (Phila).* 1997;22(11): 1193–1198.
39. Kaufman W, Lunsford TR, Lunsford BR, et al. Comparison of three prefabricated cervical collars. *Orthot Prosthet.* 1986;39:21–28.
40. Ducker T. *Restriction of cervical spine motion by cervical collars. Scientific exhibit presented at the 58th annual meeting of the American Association of Neurologic Surgeons*: *In 58th annual meeting of the American Association of Neurologic Surgeons. Nashville, Tenn*; 1990.
41. Tescher AN, Rindflesch AB, Youdas JW, Terman RW, Jacobson TM, Douglas LL, et al. Comparison of Cervical Range-of-Motion Restriction and Craniofacial Tissue-Interface Pressure With 2 Adjustable and 2 Standard Cervical Collars. *Spine (Phila).* 2016;41(6): E304–E312.
42. Berne RM, Levy MN, eds. *Physiology*. St Louis: CV Mosby; 1983.
43. Bono CM. The halo fixator. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2007;15 (12):728–737.
44. Wang GJ, Moskal JT, Albert T, et al. The effect of halo-vest length on stability of the cervical spine. A study in normal subjects. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1988;70(3):357–360.
45. Krag MH, Beynnon BD. A new halo-vest: rationale, design, and biomechanical comparison to current halo-vest designs. *Spine (Phila).* 1988;13:228–235.
46. Fukui Y, Krag MH, Huston D, et al. Halovest 3-D dynamic loads: full crossover comparison of 3 vest types. *Spine (Phila).* 2002;27: 241–249.
47. Garfin SR, Botte MJ, Waters RL, et al. Complications in the use of the halo fixation device. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1986;68(3):320–325.
48. Koch RA, Nickel VL. The halo vest: an evaluation of motion and forces across the neck. *Spine (Phila).* 1978;3(2):103–107.
49. Nickel VL, Perry J, Garrett A, et al. The halo. A spinal skeletal traction fixation device. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1968;50(7):1400–1409.
50. Whitehill R, Richman JA, Glaser JA. Failure of immobilization of the cervical spine by the halo vest. A report of five cases. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1986;68(3):326–332.
51. Botte MJ, Garfin SR, Byrne TP, et al. The halo skeletal fixator. Principles of application and maintenance. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1989;239:12–18.
52. Horn EM, Theodore N, Feiz-Erfan I, et al. Complications of halo fixation in the elderly. *J Neurosurg Spine.* 2006;5(1):46–49.
53. Johnson RM, Hart DL, Simmons EF, et al. Cervical orthoses. A study comparing their effectiveness in restricting cervical motion in normal subjects. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1977;59(3):332–339.
54. Lind B, Sihlbom H, Nordwall A. Forces and motions across the neck in patients treated with halo-vest. *Spine (Phila).* 1988;13(2):162–167.
55. Benzel EC, Hadden TA, Saulsbery CM. A comparison of the Minerva and halo jackets for stabilization of the cervical spine. *J Neurosurg.* 1989;70(3):411–414.
56. Ivancic PC, Telles CJ. Neck motion due to the halo-vest in prone and supine positions. *Spine (Phila).* 2010;35(10):E400–E406.
57. Longo UG, Denaro L, Campi S, et al. Upper cervical spine injuries: indications and limits of the conservative management in Halo vest. A systematic review of efficacy and safety. *Injury.* 2010;41(11):1127–1135.
58. Kakarla UK, Chang SW, Theodore N, et al. Atlas fractures. *Neurosurgery.* 2010;66(3 suppl):60–67.
59. Dickman CA, Sonntag VK. Surgical management of atlantoaxial nonunions. *J Neurosurg.* 1995;83(2):248–253.
60. Vaccaro AR, Madigan L, Bauerle WB, et al. Early halo immobilization of displaced traumatic spondylolisthesis of the axis. *Spine (Phila).* 2002;27(20):2229–2233.
61. Fisher CG, Dvorak MF, Leith J, et al. Comparison of outcomes for unstable lower cervical flexion teardrop fractures managed with halo thoracic vest versus anterior corpectomy and plating. *Spine (Phila).* 2002;27(2):160–166.
62. Elgafy H, Dvorak MF, Vaccaro AR, et al. Treatment of displaced type II odontoid fractures in elderly patients. *Am J Orthop.* 2009;38 (8):410–416.
63. Tashjian RZ, Majercik S, Biffl WL, et al. Halo-vest immobilization increases early morbidity and mortality in elderly odontoid fractures. *J Trauma.* 2006;60(1):199–203.
64. Pryputniewicz DM, Hadley MN. Axis fractures. *Neurosurgery.* 2010;66(3 suppl):68–82.
65. Seybold EA, Bayley JC. Functional outcome of surgically and conservatively managed dens fractures. *Spine (Phila).* 1998;23(17): 1837–1846.
66. Lennarson PJ, Mostafavi H, Traynelis, et al. Management of type II dens fractures: a case-control study. *Spine (Phila).* 2000;25 (10):1234–1237.
67. Ryan MD, Taylor TK. Odontoid fractures in the elderly. *J Spinal Disord.* 1993;6(5):397–401.
68. Greene KA, Dickman CA, Marciano FF, et al. Acute axis fractures. Analysis of management and outcome in 340 consecutive cases. *Spine (Phila).* 1997;22(16):1843–1852.
69. Polin RS, Szabo T, Bogaev CA, et al. Nonoperative management of types II and III odontoid fractures: the Philadelphia collar versus the halo vest. *Neurosurgery.* 1996;38(3):450–457.
70. Apuzzo ML, Heiden JS, Weiss MH, et al. Acute fractures of the odontoid process. An analysis of 45 cases. *J Neurosurg.* 1978;48(1):85–91.
71. Glaser JA, Whitehill R, Stamp WG, et al. Complications associated with the halo-vest. A review of 245 cases. *J Neurosurg.* 1986;65 (6):762–769.
72. Majercik S, Tashjian RZ, Biffl WL, et al. Halo vest immobilization in the elderly: a death sentence? *J Trauma.* 2005;59(2):350–358.
73. Daentzer D, Florkemeier T. Conservative treatment of upper cervical spine injuries with the halo vest: an appropriate option for all patients independent of their age? *J Neurosurg Spine.* 2009;10(6): 543–550.
74. Sharpe KP, Rao S, Ziogas A. Evaluation of the effectiveness of the Minerva cervicothoracic orthosis. *Spine (Phila).* 1995;20(13): 1475–1479.
75. Melton 3rd LJ. Epidemiology of spinal osteoporosis. *Spine (Phila).* 1997;22(24 suppl):2S–11S.
76. Wasnich RD. Vertebral fracture epidemiology. *Bone.* 1996;18(3 suppl):179S–183S.
77. Lyles KW, Gold DT, Shipp KM, et al. Association of osteoporotic vertebral compression fractures with impaired functional status. *Am J Med.* 1993;94(6):595–601.
78. Kim DH, Vaccaro AR. Osteoporotic compression fractures of the spine; current options and considerations for treatment. *Spine J.* 2006;6(5):479–487.
79. Pfeifer M, Begerow B, Minne HW. Effects of a new spinal orthosis on posture, trunk strength, and quality of life in women with postmenopausal osteoporosis: a randomized trial. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2004;83(3):177–186.
80. Kaplan RS, Sinaki M. Posture Training Support: preliminary report on a series of patients with diminished symptomatic complications of osteoporosis. *Mayo Clin Proc.* 1993;68(12):1171–1176.
81. Lane JM, Johnson CE, Khan SN, et al. Minimally invasive options for the treatment of osteoporotic vertebral compression fractures. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 2002;33(2):431–438.
82. Shen M, Kim Y. Osteoporotic vertebral compression fractures: a review of current surgical management techniques. *Am J Orthop.* 2007;36(5):241–248.
83. Buchalter D, Kahanovitz N, Viola K, et al. Three-dimensional spinal motion measurements. Part 2: A noninvasive assessment of lumbar brace immobilization of the spine. *J Spinal Disord.* 1988;1(4): 284–286.
84. Fidler MW, Plasmans CM. The effect of four types of support on the segmental mobility of the lumbosacral spine. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1983;65(7):943–947.

85. Nachemson A. Orthotic treatment for injuries and diseases of the spinal column. *Phys Med Rehabil.* 1987;1:11–24.
86. Vander Kooi D, Abad G, Basford JR, et al. Lumbar spine stabilization with a thoracolumbosacral orthosis: evaluation with video fluoroscopy. *Spine (Phila).* 2004;29(1):100–104.
87. Yee AJ, Yoo JU, Marsolais EB, et al. Use of a postoperative lumbar corset after lumbar spinal arthrodesis for degenerative conditions of the spine. A prospective randomized trial. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2008;90(10):2062–2068.
88. Lantz SA, Schultz AB. Lumbar spine orthosis wearing. I. Restriction of gross body motions. *Spine (Phila).* 1986;11(8):834–837.
89. Jellema P, van Tulder MW, van Poppel MN, et al. Lumbar supports for prevention and treatment of low back pain: a systematic review within the framework of the Cochrane Back Review Group. *Spine (Phila).* 2001;26(4):377–386.
90. Cholewicki J, Reeves NP, Everding VQ, et al. Lumbosacral orthoses reduce trunk muscle activity in a postural control task. *J Biomech.* 2007;40(8):1731–1736.
91. Polly DW, Cher D. Ignoring the sacroiliac joint in chronic low back pain is costly. *Clinicoecon Outcomes Res.* 2016;8:23–31.
92. Sembrano JN, Polly DW. How often is low back pain not coming from the back? *Spine.* 2009;34(1):E27–E32.
93. Hammer N, Mobious R, Schleifenbaum S, et al. Pelvic belt effects on health outcomes and functional parameters of patients with sacroiliac joint pain. *PLoS One.* 2015;10(8). e0136375.
94. Vleeming A, Schuenke MD, Masi AT, et al. The sacroiliac joint: an overview of its anatomy, function and potential clinical implications. *Journal of Anatomy.* 2012;221(6):537–567.
95. Polly DW, Swofford J, Whang PG, et al. Two-year outcomes from a randomized controlled trial of minimally invasive sacroiliac joint fusion vs. non-surgical management for sacroiliac joint dysfunction. *Int J Spine Surg.* 2016;10:28. https://doi.org/10.14444/3028.
96. Polly DW, Cher D, Wine KD, et al. Randomized controlled trial of minimally invasive sacroiliac joint fusion using triangular titanium implants vs nonsurgical management for sacroiliac dysfunction: 12-month outcomes. *Neurosurgery.* 2015;77(5):674–691.
97. Kim JM, Je HD, Kim HD. Effects of pelvic compression belts on the kinematics and kinetics of the lower extremities during sit-to-stand maneuvers. *J Phys Ther Sci.* 2017;29(8):1311–1317.
98. Beales DJ, O'Sullivan PB, Briffa NK. The effects of manual pelvic compression on trunk motor control during an active straight leg raise in chronic pelvic girdle pain subjects. *Manual Therapy.* 2010;15:190–199.
99. Yoshihara H. Sacroiliac joint pain after lumbar/lumbosacral fusion: current knowledge. *Eur Spine J.* 2012;21(9):1788–1796.
100. Mens J, Damen L, Snijders CJ, Stam HJ. The mechanical effect of a pelvic belt in patients with pregnancy-related pelvic pain. *Clin Biomech.* 2006;21:122–127.
101. Damen L, Spoor CW, Snijders CJ, Stam HJ. Does a pelvic belt influence sacroiliac joint laxity? *Clin Biomech.* 2002;17:495–498.
102. Kane WJ. Scoliosis prevalence: a call for a statement of terms. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1977;126:43–46.
103. Lonstein JE, Bjorklund S, Wanninger MH, et al. Voluntary school screening for scoliosis in Minnesota. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1982;64 (4):481–488.
104. Willner S, Uden A. A prospective prevalence study of scoliosis in Southern Sweden. *Acta Orthop Scand.* 1982;53(2):233–237.
105. Riseborough EJ, Wynne-Davies R. A genetic survey of idiopathic scoliosis in Boston, Massachusetts. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1973;55 (5):974–982.
106. Weinstein SL, Ponseti IV. Curve progression in idiopathic scoliosis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1983;65(4):447–455.
107. Duval-Beaupere G, Lamireau T. Scoliosis at less than 30 degrees. Properties of the evolutivity (risk of progression). *Spine (Phila).* 1985;10(5):421–424.
108. Kehl DK, Morrissy RT. Brace treatment in adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. An update on concepts and technique. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1988;229:34–43.
109. Patwardhan AG, Bunch WH, Meade KP, et al. A biomechanical analog of curve progression and orthotic stabilization in idiopathic scoliosis. *J Biomech.* 1986;19(2):103–117.
110. Bunch WH, Patwardhan A, eds. Biomechanics of Orthoses. In: *Scoliosis: Making Clinical Decisions*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1989.
111. Emans JB, Kaelin A, Banel P, et al. The Boston bracing system for idiopathic scoliosis. Follow-up results in 295 patients. *Spine (Phila).* 1986;11(8):792–801.
112. Willers U, Normelli H, Aaro S, et al. Long-term results of Boston brace treatment on vertebral rotation in idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 1993;18(4):432–435.
113. Hassan I, Bjerkreim I. Progression in idiopathic scoliosis after conservative treatment. *Acta Orthop Scand.* 1983;54(1):88–90.
114. Kahanovitz N, Levine DB, Lardone J. The part-time Milwaukee brace treatment of juvenile idiopathic scoliosis. Long-term follow-up. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1982;167:145–151.
115. Mellencamp DD, Blount WP, Anderson AJ. Milwaukee brace treatment of idiopathic scoliosis: late results. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1977;126:47–57.
116. Lonstein JE, Carlson JM. The prediction of curve progression in untreated idiopathic scoliosis during growth. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1984;66(7):1061–1071.
117. Blount WP, Schmidt AC. The Milwaukee brace in the treatment of scoliosis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1957;47:693.
118. Rowe DE, Bernstein SM, Riddick MF, et al. A meta-analysis of the efficacy of non-operative treatments for idiopathic scoliosis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1997;79(5):664–674.
119. Chalmers E, Westover L, Jacob J, et al. Predicting success or failure of brace treatment for adolescents with idiopathic scoliosis. *Med Biol Eng Comput.* 2015;53:1001–1009.
120. Blount WP, Schmidt AC, Keever ED, et al. The Milwaukee brace in the operative treatment of scoliosis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1958;40A (3):511–525.
121. Fayssoux RS, Cho RH, Herman MJ. A history of bracing for idiopathic scoliosis in North America. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2010;468 (3):654–664.
122. Watts HG, Hall JE, Stanish W. The Boston brace system for the treatment of low thoracic and lumbar scoliosis by the use of a girdle without superstructure. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1977;126: 87–92.
123. Bassett GS, Bunnell WP, MacEwen GD. Treatment of idiopathic scoliosis with the Wilmington brace. Results in patients with a twenty to thirty-nine-degree curve. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1986;68(4): 602–605.
124. Hanks GA, Zimmer B, Nogi J. TLSO treatment of idiopathic scoliosis. An analysis of the Wilmington jacket. *Spine (Phila).* 1988;13(6): 626–629.
125. Olafsson Y, Saraste H, Sodelund V, et al. Boston brace in the treatment of idiopathic scoliosis. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1995;15(4):524–527.
126. Price CT, Scott DS, Reed FR, et al. Nighttime bracing of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis with the Charleston bending brace. *J Prosthet Orthop.* 1987;17:703–707.
127. Katz DE, Richards BS, Browne RH, et al. A comparison between the Boston brace and the Charleston bending brace in adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 1997;22(12):1302–1312.
128. Coillard C, Leroux MA, Zabjek KF, et al. SpineCor–a non-rigid brace for the treatment of idiopathic scoliosis: post-treatment results. *Eur Spine J.* 2003;12(2):141–148.
129. Coillard C, Vachon V, Circo AB, et al. Effectiveness of the SpineCor brace based on the new standardized criteria proposed by the scoliosis research society for adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2007;27(4):375–379.
130. Weiss HR, Weiss GM. Brace treatment during pubertal growth spurt in girls with idiopathic scoliosis (IS): a prospective trial comparing two different concepts. *Pediatr Rehabil.* 2005;8(3):199–206.
131. Wong MS, Cheng JC, Lam TP, et al. The effect of rigid versus flexible spinal orthosis on the clinical efficacy and acceptance of the patients with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 2008;33(12): 1360–1365.
132. Gammon SR, Mehlman CT, Chan W, et al. A comparison of thoracolumbosacral orthoses and SpineCor treatment of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis patients using the Scoliosis Research Society standardized criteria. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2010;30(6):531–538.
133. Gutman G, Benoit M, Joncas J, Beauséjour M, et al. The effectiveness of the SpineCor brace for the conservative treatment of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. Comparison with the Boston brace. *The Spine Journal.* 2016;16:626–631.
134. Uden A, Willner S, Pettersson H. Initial correction with the Boston Thoracic Brace. *Acta Orthop Scand.* 1982;53(6):907–911.
135. Bunch WH, Patwardhan AG, Vanderby R, et al. Stability of scoliotic spines. *Orthop Trans.* 1983;8(1):145.
136. Morton A, Riddle R, Buchanan R, et al. Accuracy in the prediction and estimation of adherence to bracewear before and during

treatment of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2008;28(3):336–341.
137. Nicholson GP, Ferguson-Pell MW, Smith K, et al. Quantitative measurement of spinal brace use and compliance in the treatment of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Stud Health Technol Inform.* 2002;91:372–377.
138. Takemitsu M, Bowen JR, Rahman T, et al. Compliance monitoring of brace treatment for patients with idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 2004;29(18):2070–2074.
139. Nicholson GP, Ferguson-Pell MW, Smith K, et al. The objective measurement of spinal orthosis use for the treatment of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 2003;28(19):2243–2251.
140. Katz DE, Durrani AA. Factors that influence outcome in bracing large curves in patients with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 2001;26(21):2354–2361.
141. Howard A, Wright JG, Hedden D. A comparative study of TLSO, Charleston, and Milwaukee braces for idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 1998;23(22):2404–2411.
142. Lou E, Hill D, Raso J, et al. Prediction of brace treatment outcomes by monitoring brace usage. *Stud Health Technol Inform.* 2006;123:239–244.
143. Vandal S, Rivard CH, Bradet R. Measuring the compliance behavior of adolescents wearing orthopedic braces. *Issues Compr Pediatr Nurs.* 1999;22(2–3):59–73.
144. Lou E, Raso JV, Hill DL, et al. The daily force pattern of spinal orthoses in subjects with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2002;26(1):58–63.
145. Lou E, Raso JV, Hill DL, et al. Correlation between quantity and quality of orthosis wear and treatment outcomes in adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2004;28(1):49–54.
146. DiRaimondo CV, Green NE. Brace-wear compliance in patients with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 1988;8(2):143–146.
147. Roberts SB, Tsirikos AI. Factors influencing the evaluation and management of neuromuscular scoliosis: A review of the literature. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation.* 2016;29:613–623.
148. Weiss HR, Werkmann M, Stephan C. Brace related stress in scoliosis patients – Comparison of different concepts of bracing. *Scoliosis.* 2007;2:10. https://doi.org/10.1186/1748-7161-2-10.
149. Kataris G, Loukos A, Valavanis J. The immediate effect of a Boston brace on lung volumes and pulmonary compliance in mild adolescent idiopathic scoliosis. *Eur Spine J.* 1999;8:2–7.
150. Ran B, Fan Y, Yuan F, Guo K, Zhu X. Pulmonary function changes and its influencing factors after preoperative brace treatment in patients with adolescent idiopathic scoliosis: A retrospective case-control study. *Medicine.* 2016;96:43. e5088.
151. Kling Jr TF, Drennan JC, Gryboski JD. Esophagitis complicating scoliosis management with the Boston thoracolumbosacral orthosis. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1981;159:208–210.
152. Aaro S, Berg U. The immediate effect of Boston brace on renal function in patients with idiopathic scoliosis. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1982;170:243–247.
153. Apter A, Morein G, Munitz H, et al. The psychologic sequelae of the Milwaukee brace in adolescent girls. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1978;1131:156–159.
154. Nachemson A, Cochran TP, Fallstrom K, et al. Somatic, social and psychologic effects on treatment for idiopathic scoliosis. *Orthop Trans.* 1983;7:508.
155. Sanders JO, Browne RH, McConnell SJ, et al. Maturity assessment and curve progression in girls with idiopathic scoliosis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2007;89(1):64–73.
156. Bruszewski J, Kamza Z. Incidence of scoliosis based on an analysis of serial radiography. *Chir Narzadow Ruchu Ortop Pol.* 1957;22(2):115–116.
157. Rogala EJ, Drummond DS, Gurr J. Scoliosis: incidence and natural history. A prospective epidemiological study. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1978;60(2):173–176.
158. Ogilvie JW, Braun J, Argyle V, et al. The search for idiopathic scoliosis genes. *Spine (Phila).* 2006;31(6):679–681.
159. Cheng JC, Tang NL, Yeung HY, et al. Genetic association of complex traits: using idiopathic scoliosis as an example. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2007;462:38–44.
160. Miller NH. Genetics of familial idiopathic scoliosis. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2007;462:6–10.
161. Ward K, Ogilvie J, Argyle V, et al. Polygenic inheritance of adolescent idiopathic scoliosis: a study of extended families in Utah. *Am J Med Genet A.* 2010;152A(5):1178–1188.
162. Braun JT, Akyuz E, Udall H, et al. Three-dimensional analysis of 2 fusionless scoliosis treatments: a flexible ligament tether versus a rigid-shape memory alloy staple. *Spine (Phila).* 2006;31(3):262–268.
163. Braun JT, Hines JL, Akyuz E, et al. Relative versus absolute modulation of growth in the fusionless treatment of experimental scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 2006;31(16):1776–1782.
164. Braun JT, Hoffman M, Akyuz E, et al. Mechanical modulation of vertebral growth in the fusionless treatment of progressive scoliosis in an experimental model. *Spine (Phila).* 2006;31(12):1314–1320.
165. Puttlitz CM, Masaru F, Barkley A, et al. A biomechanical assessment of thoracic spine stapling. *Spine (Phila).* 2007;32(7):766–771.
166. Lavelle WF, Samdani AF, Cahill PJ, et al. Clinical outcomes of nitinol staples for preventing curve progression in idiopathic scoliosis. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2011;31(1 suppl):S107–S113.
167. Betz RR, Ranade A, Samdani AF, et al. Vertebral body stapling: a fusionless treatment option for a growing child with moderate idiopathic scoliosis. *Spine (Phila).* 2010;35(2):169–176.
168. Guille JT, D'Andrea LP, Betz RR. Fusionless treatment of scoliosis. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 2007;38(4):541–545.
169. Newton PO, Farnsworth CL, Faro FD, et al. Spinal growth modulation with an anterolateral flexible tether in an immature bovine model: disc health and motion preservation. *Spine (Phila).* 2008;33(7):724–733.
170. Newton PO, Upasani VV, Farnsworth CL, et al. Spinal growth modulation with use of a tether in an immature porcine model. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2008;90(12):2695–2706.

14 Orthoses in the Management of Hand Dysfunction☆

BRIAN J. WILKINSON

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Define *immobilization*, *mobilization*, and *restriction orthoses* and give examples of orthoses in each category.
2. Explain the differences among static, dynamic, serial static, and static progressive orthoses and discuss which may be appropriate during each of the three wound-healing stages.
3. Identify the arches and creases of the hand and recognize their significance.
4. Distinguish a 90-degree angle of pull and explain its relevance in the application of force.
5. Describe the handling and various physical characteristics of thermoplastic materials used in fabricating orthoses and discuss how they affect this process.
6. Explain the importance of patient education as it relates to proper orthosis wear, care, and safety.

Man, through the use of his hands, as they are energized by the mind and will, can influence the state of his own health.

Mary Reilly, EdD, OTR, FAOTA

The hand is the body's primary mechanism for engaging with its surrounding environment. A hand afflicted with disease or injury can greatly impair an individual's ability to function, even if operational muscles and joints are present more proximally. Therefore a therapist's ability to provide sound clinical intervention can optimize the use of the hand and have a significant effect on a person's overall function. One noteworthy intervention at a therapist's disposal is the use of an adaptive orthosis. The appropriate inclusion of orthoses during specific phases of tissue healing, depending on the patient's diagnosis, can be an effective adjunct to traditional therapy techniques for restoring intended use to the affected extremity. Treatment decisions should integrate knowledge and clinical experience along with information specific to the individual patient, including diagnosis, general medical status, and any prescriptions that have been issued by a qualified referral source. Clinicians must also have a firm understanding of the principles associated with the design and fabrication of orthoses, including the unique characteristics of the materials and models selected for intervention. Collectively, the integration of these factors will help to facilitate the best possible therapeutic outcome for the patient.

This chapter focuses on the fabrication of orthoses for the hand and upper extremity and includes a discussion of the relevant nomenclature, materials, and mechanical and anatomic principles; it also provides case examples of interventions involving orthoses within a context that emphasizes critical thinking.

Nomenclature

In the medical literature, the terms *splint*, *brace*, *support*, and *orthosis* have similar definitions and are often considered synonymous.[1,2] This can create confusion among medical providers, therapists, students, insurance companies, and those who fabricate these devices. Are splints made by a therapist? Is an orthosis made by an orthotist? In 1989, the American Society of Hand Therapists (ASHT) put together a task force to address issues such as establishing proper nomenclature and redefining the term *orthosis* in an attempt to enhance and clarify communication among all disciplines.[1] This task force developed a Splint Classification System (SCS) and addressed the perceived similarity of the words *splint*, *brace*, *support*, and *orthosis*. The task force's review confirmed that these words were so similar in nature that they were often used interchangeably in the literature, not just by clinical practitioners. Another key issue that challenged the task force was how to define these devices in order to provide universal recognition and approval. Currently, there is an ongoing shift in nomenclature from the word *splint* to *orthosis* as a means of following the guidelines for billing and reimbursement of the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS). Therefore the word *orthosis* is used throughout this chapter and has been recommended to be adopted in all clinical and billing documentation as well.[3]

Traditionally, orthoses have been described according to their form (e.g., thumb spica splint, wrist cock-up splint, ulnar gutter splint).[4] This form-based nomenclature, however, can lead to confusion and misunderstanding regarding the actual orthosis requested or utilized. By contrast, the SCS

☆The author extends appreciation to Noelle M. Austin and Marylynn Jacobs, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

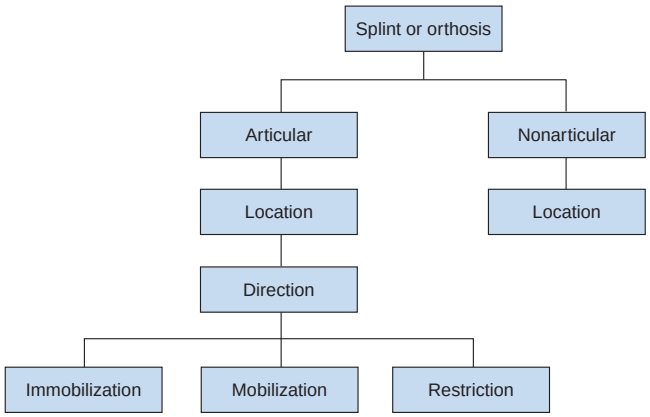


Fig. 14.1 The American Society of Hand Therapists Splint Classification System.

meticulously describes most universally used orthoses according to their specific function (e.g., thumb immobilization splint, wrist/hand extension mobilization splint). This function-based approach to identifying orthoses provides clinicians with a clearer concept of what the orthosis must look like and what its function should be. The specific categories described by the SCS are outlined in Fig. 14.1.

ARTICULAR AND NONARTICULAR ORTHOSES

Orthoses are classified into two broad categories: articular and nonarticular. Articular orthoses, the most common type of fabricated orthoses, are those that cross one or more joints. Examples of articular orthoses include a wrist immobilization orthosis, proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joint extension mobilization orthosis, and elbow flexion restriction orthosis. The word *articular* is implied in the orthosis description and is not necessary to be included in the name of this type of orthosis.

Nonarticular orthoses do not cross a joint; instead, they stabilize the body segment to which they are applied. The ASHT recommends that clinicians include the term *nonarticular* before an orthosis description because its intended use is not implied. For example, an orthosis used to stabilize the humerus would be called a *nonarticular humeral orthosis*, and an orthosis designed to stabilize a metacarpal would be called a *nonarticular metacarpal orthosis*. Without this designation, the orthosis fabricator may not know whether to include or exclude proximal or distal joints in the process of designing an appropriate orthosis.

LOCATION

Location refers to the specific body part or articular surfaces included in the orthosis. The primary joint is considered the target joint, whereas the secondary joints are included for protection, stabilization, or comfort. When several primary joints are involved (e.g., crush injury to the hand), the description of the orthosis can be simplified by grouping all the involved joints together, such as in the descriptive terms *hand orthosis* or *digit orthosis*.

DIRECTION

Direction refers to the primary route of the force applied when the orthosis has been donned. This includes such terms as *flexion, extension, radial* or *ulnar deviation, supination, pronation, abduction*, and *adduction*. Information regarding direction is essential because it identifies the desired joint positioning of the orthosis. Specific notation of the direction is also necessary when fabricating a mobilization orthosis; accurate force application is essential to achieve the directional goal of joint or soft tissue mobility.

PURPOSE OF ORTHOSIS

The purpose or intent of the orthosis is the single most important aspect documented in the description. The purpose of the orthosis can be to (1) immobilize a structure, (2) mobilize a tissue, or (3) restrict a partial aspect of targeted joint motion.

Immobilization

The purpose of an immobilization orthosis is simply to place a structure in its anatomic or most comfortable resting position. Immobilization orthoses are perhaps the most common and simple types, although they can be used for complex injuries as well. Immobilization orthoses seek to effectively restrain the joints they cross.

Mobilization

Mobilization refers to moving or stretching specific soft tissues or joints to facilitate change. The benefits of using mobilization orthoses as a treatment modality have been well documented in the literature.[5-8] The effectiveness of mobilization does not rely on stretching tissue but rather on the facilitation of cell growth. The target tissue lengthens when the living cells of the contracted tissues are stimulated (by the application of force) to grow. This stimulation occurs when steady tension is applied through the orthosis over a specific period of time. The living cells recognize the tension applied and permit the older collagen cells to be actively absorbed and replaced with new collagen cells that are oriented in the direction of tension; this is a phenomenon known as *physiological creep*.[9-16] Tissue growth has been clearly demonstrated in cultures in which the elongation of certain body parts, such as the earlobes and lips, is popular. In these cultures, dowels are used to serially increase the diameter of the intended structure, slowly allowing expansion and accommodation of the tissue through new tension and diameter. Another common example includes the use of braces and retainers in the dental field to realign teeth over a period of time. In general, there are three choices of orthotic design aimed to mobilize tissue, including serial static, static progressive, and dynamic orthoses.

Restriction

Restriction orthoses restrict or block an aspect of targeted joint motion. Generally these are simple orthoses that are applied in a manner that seeks to limit motion. Therapists can construct static and dynamic orthoses or use forms of taping to become types of restrictive orthoses because they can be made to restrict some portion of joint motion while allowing full, unrestricted motion in the opposite direction.

Examples

Fig. 14.2 demonstrates the critical impact that the words *immobilization, mobilization,* and *restriction* can have when

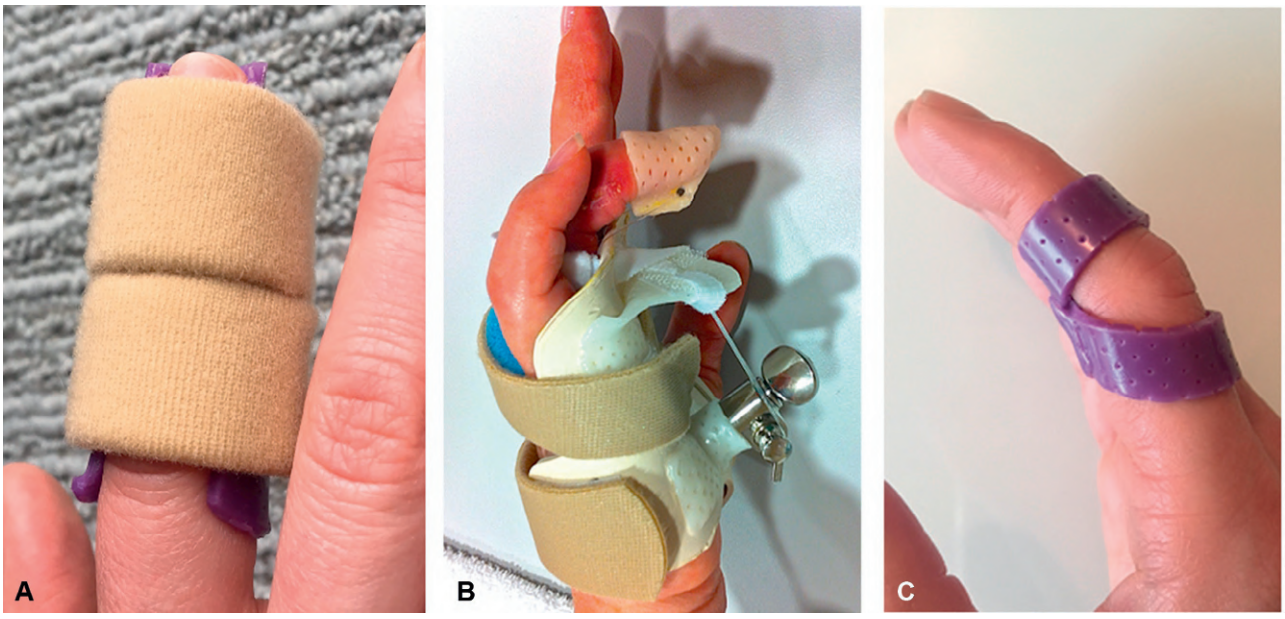


Fig. 14.2 Three different proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joint orthoses. (A) PIP immobilization orthosis. (B) PIP flexion mobilization orthosis. (C) PIP extension restriction orthosis.

describing an orthosis. Within the PIP immobilization orthosis (see Fig. 14.2A), the PIP joint is immobilized in a comfortable resting position to allow the involved structures to heal; this is commonly used for a PIP ligament sprain. The PIP flexion mobilization orthosis stretches the PIP joint into flexion to address a PIP extension contracture using a static progressive approach (see Fig. 14.2B). The PIP joint is restricted from full extension but allowed to flex fully within the boundaries of the PIP extension restriction orthosis; this is commonly used for swan-neck deformities when the PIP joint tends to collapse into hyperextension (see Fig. 14.2C).

Design Descriptors

Design descriptors are used to increase the clarity of a specific orthosis request and to provide detail in documentation to medical providers or reimbursement sources. The design descriptors are non-SCS nomenclature but are commonly used by the hand therapy and surgery community.[17] The most commonly used descriptors are summarized in Box 14.1.

Box 14.1 Descriptors of Orthosis Designs

Digit-based: Originates from the digit, allowing metacarpophalangeal joint motion
Hand-based: Originates from the hand, allowing wrist motion
Thumb-based: Originates from the thenar eminence or thumb, incorporating one or more joints of the thumb
Forearm-based: Originates from the forearm, allowing elbow motion
Circumferential: Encompasses the entire circumference of the involved body part or limb segment
Gutter: Includes only the radial or ulnar portion of the limb
Radial: Incorporates the radial aspect of the limb
Ulnar: Incorporates the ulnar aspect of the limb
Dorsal: Traverses the dorsal (posterior) aspect of the hand, wrist, or forearm
Volar: Traverses the volar (palmar, anterior) aspect of the hand, wrist, or forearm
Anterior: Traverses the anterior aspect of the body part
Posterior: Traverses the posterior aspect of the body part

Choices of Orthotic Designs

The choices of orthotic design include familiar terminology: *static, serial static, dynamic,* and *static progressive orthoses*. Once selected, an orthotic design should ultimately achieve the goal of immobilization, mobilization, or restriction of a specific tissue.

Static Orthoses. Static orthoses are perhaps the most common types made. These orthoses have a rigid base, immobilizing the joints they traverse (Fig. 14.3). A static orthosis provides stabilization, protection, and support to a body segment such as the elbow, wrist, or finger. These orthoses can be used as a treatment adjunct in the form of an exercise device by blocking a distal or proximal joint to increase the mobility of another joint or to improve uninhibited tendon excursion.

Serial Static Orthoses. Serial static orthoses or casts are applied with the joints, soft tissue, or musculotendinous units they cross in a lengthened position (near maximum) and are worn for extended periods of time (Fig. 14.4). Tissue held in this end-range position should react and accommodate by stretching into the desired direction of correction. Serial static orthoses are often removed during therapy and exercise sessions so that the clinician and patient can work on the involved structures with interventions such as heat application, continuous ultrasound, joint mobilization, and range-of-motion (ROM) activities. The orthosis

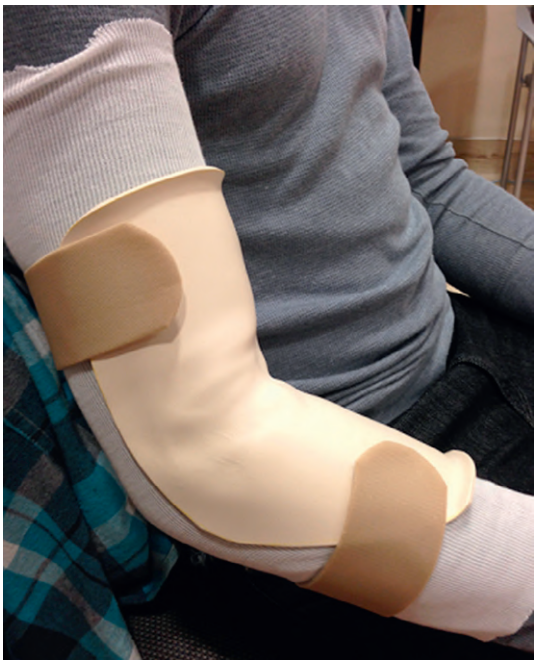


Fig. 14.3 Anterior elbow mobilization orthosis used to limit elbow flexion.

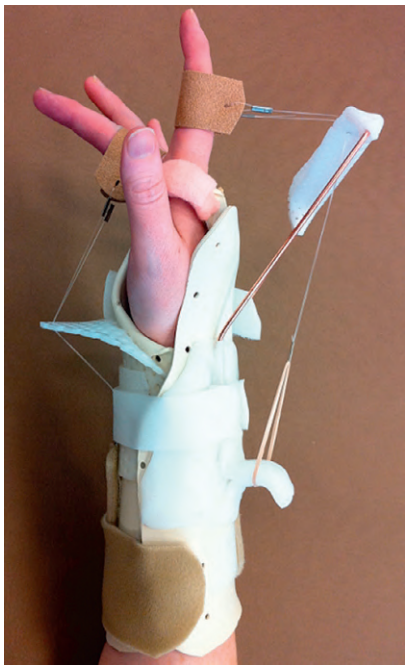


Fig. 14.5 Metacarpophalangeal extension mobilization orthosis using a rubber band to apply a dynamic force.

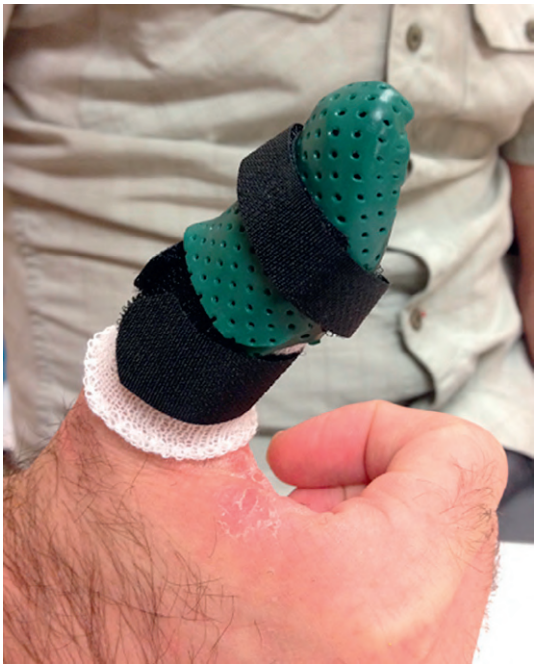


Fig. 14.4 Thumb interphalangeal extension mobilization orthosis designed to address a flexion contracture using a serial static approach.

or cast is then remolded to maintain any gains achieved during the course of the therapy session. This design may provide greater patient compliance because of improved comfort and ensures that the targeted tissue is being continually stressed without the risk of the tissue rebounding (reverting back to original shortened state) upon removal of the orthosis. Some therapists adopt a serial static approach in which the orthosis is worn continuously for several days and then removed in therapy. In other cases, using these orthoses at night may help preserve any gains made during the day through exercise and movement. Nonremovable serial static orthoses may also be a better choice for patients who are young, who have cognitive or behavioral issues, or who have variable tone and spasticity.

Dynamic Orthoses. Dynamic orthoses implement an elastic-type force to mobilize specific tissues so that they can achieve increased ROM (Fig. 14.5). Most dynamic orthoses also have a base that permits the attachment of various outriggers and components, which can further advance their intended function. The mobilizing forces applied through a dynamic orthosis are elastic (stretchy) in nature and include such items as rubber bands, springs, or a wrapped elastic cord. The dynamic force applied is maintained as long as the elastic component can contract, even when the tissue reaches the end of its elastic boundary.[18]

Static Progressive Orthoses. Static progressive orthoses achieve tissue mobilization by applying low-load force to the tissue's end range in one direction over a long period of time (Fig. 14.6).[5] The goal is that the tissue will eventually accommodate to this position. The fabrication of a static progressive orthosis is similar to that of a dynamic orthosis, but the force applied is static or nonelastic. The mobilization force can be generated through static line, nonelastic strapping materials, hinges, turnbuckles, and various types of inelastic tape. When the desired joint position is achieved and the tension on the static progressive component is set, the orthosis will not continue to stress the tissue beyond its elastic limit.[18] Force can be altered by the patient or therapist through progressive adjustments. Owing to the manner in which force is manipulated to facilitate tissue change, some patients may tolerate static progressive

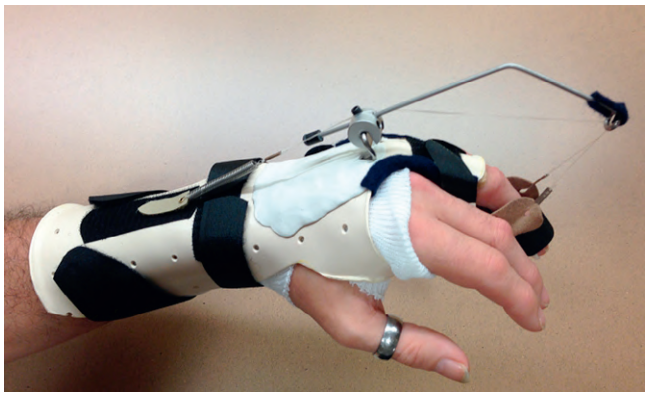


Fig. 14.6 Spring-loaded proximal interphalangeal extension mobilization orthosis using a static line and component to apply a static progressive force.

orthoses better than those that are dynamic. One reason may be that the joint position is constant while the tissue accommodates gently and gradually to the tension without the added influences of gravity and motion.[18,19]

Objectives for Orthotic Intervention

The most essential objective for orthotic fabrication may not always be straightforward. There may also be multiple objectives for orthotic intervention as in a wrist and hand immobilization orthosis (resting hand orthosis) used on a patient with rheumatoid arthritis. The orthosis may be constructed to immobilize inflamed arthritic joints yet place the metacarpophalangeal (MP) joints serially in a gently extended and radially deviated position to minimize ulnar drift and periarticular deformity. Astute critical thinking is a necessary aspect of orthosis fabrication; multiple injuries, wound status, age, and lifestyle are a few of the key factors that must be taken into consideration. More skilled clinicians can appreciate that there can be several purposes for one orthosis; therefore creative problem solving must be used when orthotic devices for the more involved and complex injury are being fabricated.

Immobilization Orthoses. Orthoses designed to hold or immobilize a joint or limb segment can be used to do the following[17]:

- Provide symptom relief
- Protect and position edematous structures
- Aid in maximizing functional use
- Maintain tissue length
- Protect healing structures and surgical procedures
- Provide support and protection for soft tissue healing
- Maintain and protect the reduction of a fracture
- Improve and preserve joint alignment
- Block and transfer both muscle and tendon forces
- Influence a spastic muscle
- Prevent possible contracture development

Mobilization Orthoses. Orthoses designed to change or mobilize tissues or structures are used to do the following[17]:

- Remodel preexisting, dense, mature scar tissue
- Elongate soft tissue contractures, adhesions, and musculotendinous restrictions
- Increase passive joint ROM
- Realign or maintain joint and ligament profile
- Substitute for weak or absent motion
- Maintain reduction of an intra-articular fracture with preservation of joint mobility
- Provide indicated resistance for exercise

Restriction Orthoses. Orthoses designed to restrict or limit motion may be used to do the following[17]:

- Limit motion after nerve injury or repair
- Limit motion after tendon injury or repair
- Limit motion after bone or ligament injury or repair
- Limit motion after integumentary injury or repair
- Provide and improve joint stability and alignment
- Assist in functional use of the hand

Anatomy-Related Principles

Therapists treating the upper extremity must have a thorough understanding of the complex anatomic features of the hand and upper extremity in order to effectively manage patients with dysfunction. Disturbance of the delicate relationship between the bones, muscles, nerves, and other soft tissue structures, either by disease or trauma, can result in a marked interruption of normal function. Knowledge of normal anatomic features and how pathologic conditions affect them is an important factor in aiding therapists as they make appropriate clinical decisions regarding treatment interventions.[11,20-22]

ARCHES OF THE HAND

The configuration of the bones in the hand, along with the tension of the muscles and ligaments in this region, contributes to the creation of an arch system composed of the proximal transverse, distal transverse, and longitudinal arches (Fig. 14.7).[18,23] This arch system is vital to positioning the hand in a manner that allows for normal function related to grasp and prehension.[18,24] Incorporation of these arches within an orthosis is an essential tactic that promotes maximal function and allows for optimal comfort.

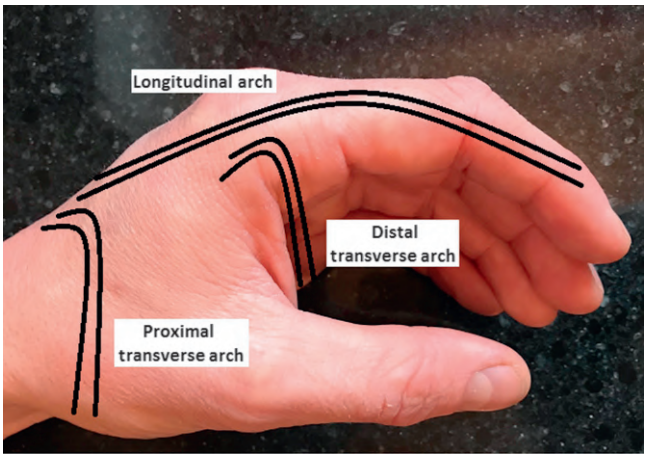


Fig. 14.7 Fixed proximal transverse arch, flexible distal transverse arch, and mobile longitudinal arch of the hand.

Additionally, preservation of the arches helps to prevent undesired migration of the orthosis during use of the upper extremity.

The fixed proximal transverse arch is created by the configuration of the distal row of the carpal bones and the volar carpal ligament, which is inherently taut. This region is also referred to as the carpal tunnel, through which the long flexors and median nerve pass before they terminate in the hand.[25] This secure structure provides mechanical advantage to the flexors, ultimately helping to maximize grasp function.

The mobile distal transverse arch is located at the level of the metacarpal heads. This arch is adaptive by the mobile fourth and fifth carpometacarpal (CMC) joints along the ulnar side of the hand as well as the highly mobile thumb trapeziometacarpal joint.[26] The increased mobility of the peripheral digits further allows for better grasping ability.

The longitudinal arch spans the length from the metacarpal to the distal phalanx. A disruption of this arch commonly occurs in patients who have sustained an ulnar nerve injury, resulting in the loss of intrinsic muscle function. Because of interrupted motor input in the muscles associated with this innervation, the hand takes on an intrinsic minus position when the MP joints are hyperextended and the PIP and distal interphalangeal joints are flexed (claw-like deformity).[27]

PALMAR CREASES

The typical arrangement of creases is easily visible on the volar surface of the hand (Fig. 14.8). The thickened palmar skin is fixed to the underlying structures by fibrous connections that aid in the formation of these creases.[26]

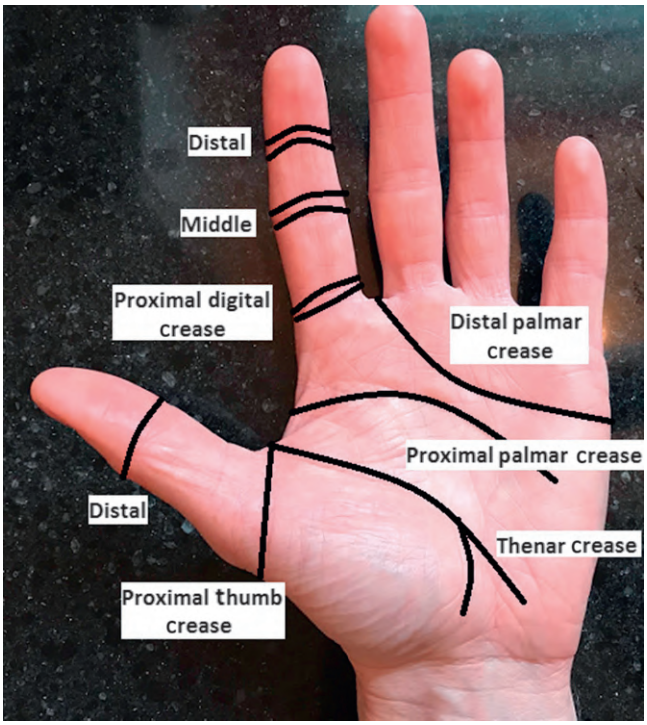


Fig. 14.8 The creases of the hand provide helpful landmarks during the process of fabricating an orthosis.

Those individuals who fabricate orthoses need to familiarize themselves with the location of these creases and how each one correlates with the underlying anatomy; these creases are commonly used as anatomic guides when an orthosis pattern is being created. For example, when a wrist immobilization orthosis is being fabricated, the distal and proximal palmar creases must be left uninhibited by the distal end of the orthosis in order to allow for unrestricted ROM at the MP joints. However, care must be taken not to leave too much anatomy unsupported because the mechanical advantage of the orthosis can then be altered adversely.[17]

METACARPAL LENGTH AND MOBILITY

Dual obliquity is a concept relating to the anatomy of the metacarpals.[28] Because of the differing lengths of the metacarpals (radial side of hand longer than ulnar), an oblique angle is formed compared with the distal ends of the radius and ulna when an object is held in the hand (Fig. 14.9A). In addition, the object is angled in accordance with the distal transverse arch and the increasing mobility of the ulnar metacarpals (see Fig. 14.9B). This dual obliquity should be incorporated into an orthosis so that it provides a comfortable and functional structure that effectively resists migration.

POSITIONING THE HAND

When the fabricator is deciding how to position the hand within an orthosis, many factors must be considered, including the patient's diagnosis, healing time frame, and goals of intervention. In addition to facilitating the healing of any affected tissues, being mindful of proper positioning within an orthosis can help to prevent future joint and soft tissue contractures. The two most common positions described in the literature include the position of function and the position of rest.[29] See Fig. 14.10 for the general joint angles described for each position.

The antideformity position, commonly referred to as *safe position* in the clinical setting, considers the unique anatomic characteristics of the MP and PIP joints. The length of the collateral ligaments at the MP joint varies according to the position of the MP joint (Fig. 14.11).[18] The collateral ligaments are slack with MP joint extension, whereas tension in the collateral ligaments increases with greater amounts of MP joint flexion. Placing these joints in flexion within an orthosis helps to prevent MP joint extension contractures (resulting in limited flexion postimmobilization). If the joints are placed in extension with resulting MP contractures, disruption of the longitudinal arch can greatly impair the patient's grasping ability.

Similarly, at the PIP joint level, the volar plate is placed on tension with PIP joint extension, whereas flexion at the PIP joint places the volar plate at risk for shortening (see Fig. 14.11A and B).[30] Shortening of the volar plate can result in debilitating PIP joint flexion contractures, which can significantly affect the ability not only to grasp but also release objects. Therefore careful positioning of the PIP joint in extension (as long as this is not contraindicated) is crucial to maintain the length of the volar plate tissue.

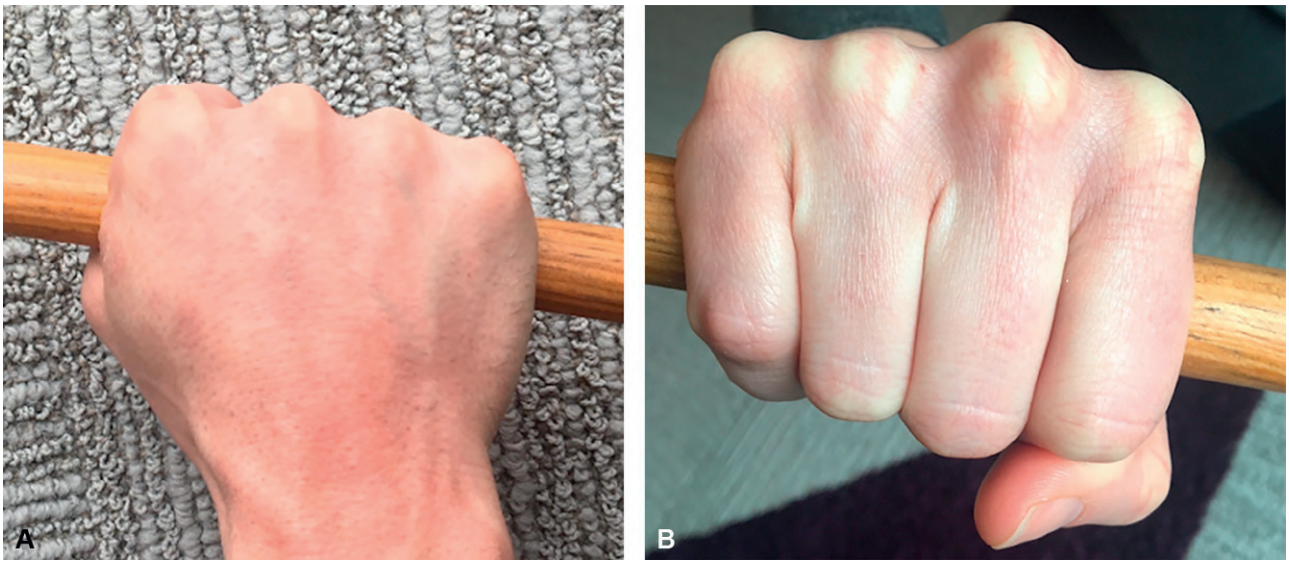


Fig. 14.9 The dual obliquity of the hand from the dorsal (A) and transverse (B) perspectives.

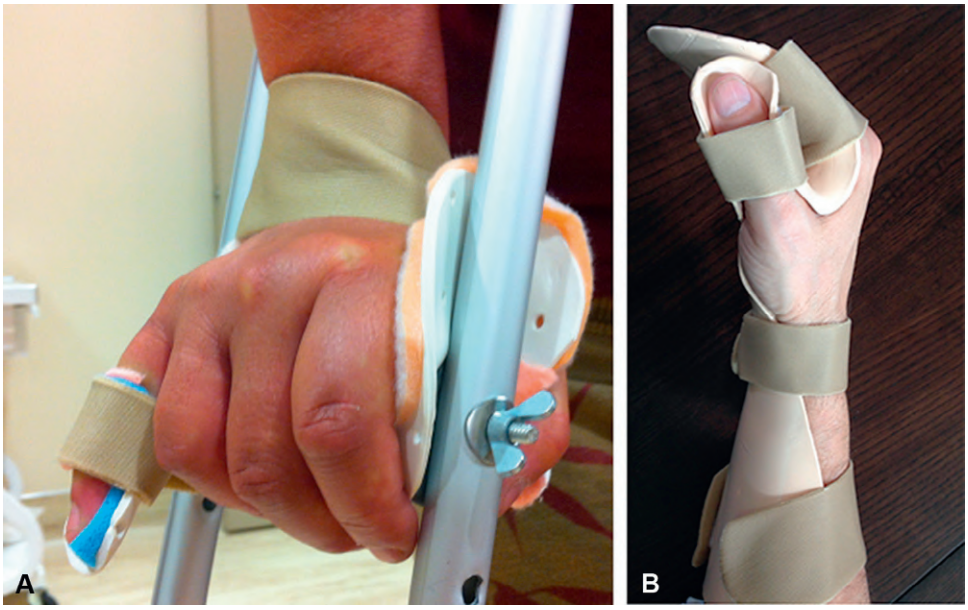


Fig. 14.10 The functional position of the hand (A) places the wrist in 20 to 30 degrees of extension, the metacarpophalangeal (MP) joints in 35 to 45 degrees of flexion, the proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joints in 45 degrees of flexion, the distal interphalangeal joints in a relaxed flexed position, and the thumb in palmar abduction. The antideformity position of the hand (B) places the wrist in 20 to 30 degrees of extension, the MP joints in 60 to 90 degrees of flexion, the PIP and distal interphalangeal joints in extension, and the thumb in palmar abduction.

TISSUE PRECAUTIONS

In the upper extremity, a number of areas exist where bony protuberances or superficial nerves are highly susceptible to compression from an orthosis (Box 14.2).[31] If these areas are not accounted for during the fabrication process, the orthosis will likely become uncomfortable for the patient and there will be an increased potential for noncompliance. Special consideration must be given to patients with impaired sensation (those with peripheral nerve injury, neuropathy, nerve root compression, or central nervous system disorders). Those with limited or absent sensation do not have the normal ability to feel or detect areas of excess pressure; rather, they must rely on routine visual inspection to assess the integrity of both skin and soft tissue.

Because superficial bony prominences have minimal soft tissue coverage, they are especially vulnerable to compressive forces; excessive external pressure can place the tissue at risk for irritation and eventual breakdown (necrosis). Older adults may be at the greatest risk because they have minimal subcutaneous fat combined with extremely fragile skin, making bony areas more susceptible to injury. If complications arise, patients may report pain, redness, and irritation over the bony area. To prevent such occurrences when they must be included in an orthosis, these at-risk bony areas can either be padded with foam/gel or flared away during the molding process (Fig. 14.12).[17]

Therapists must also appreciate peripheral nerve anatomy and how orthoses and strapping may place excessive pressure over regions where nervous tissue becomes relatively superficial, potentially leading to unintended nerve compression.[32] If this complication arises, patients may report pain, redness, paresthesia (tingling), and numbness

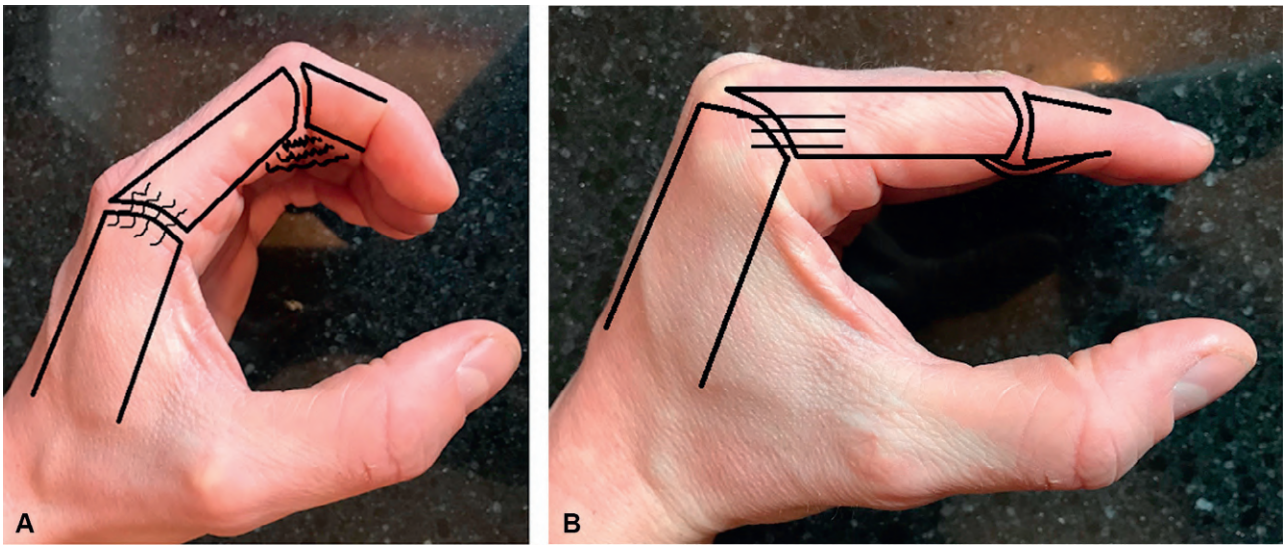


Fig. 14.11 Changes in the length of soft tissue associated with joint positioning. (A) Placing the metacarpophalangeal (MP) joint in extension will cause the MP collateral ligaments and the proximal interphalangeal (PIP) volar plate to become "slack" and at risk of becoming shortened over time. (B) Placing the MP joint in flexion elongates both the MP collateral ligaments and the volar plate of the PIP joint to minimize risk of shortening (contractures) of these structures.

Box 14.2 Superficial Structures Vulnerable to Pressure

Bony Prominences

- Olecranon process at the elbow
- Lateral and medial epicondyles of the humerus
- Ulnar and radial styloid processes at the wrist
- Base of the first metacarpal
- Dorsal thumb and digit metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints
- Pisiform bone

Superficial Nerves

- Radial nerve at the radial groove of the humerus
- Ulnar nerve at the cubital tunnel
- Superficial branches of the ulnar and radial nerves at the distal forearm
- Median nerve at the carpal tunnel
- Digital nerves on the volar aspect of the digits

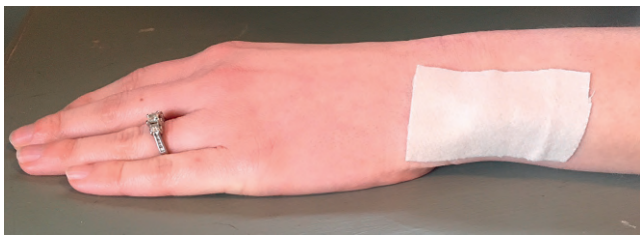


Fig. 14.12 Padding bony prominences, such as the ulnar styloid process, prior to molding an orthosis can decrease the risk of creating undesired areas of high pressure, thus reducing the potential for skin irritation or breakdown.

in that nerve's distribution. Timely modification of the orthosis is therefore necessary to prevent long-term nerve irritation. Orthotic fabrication over positioned gel or the use of wider straps to disperse the pressure more evenly are two techniques that may be useful to limit this complication.[17]

Also of note is the potential for compression of vascular structures when an orthosis is worn or an elasticized product is applied.[33] Symptoms of vascular compromise—including color changes, temperature changes, pain, or a sensation of throbbing—should be dealt with in an immediate manner. The identification of these symptoms is especially important if any surgical reconstruction of vascular structures has been performed. Wide straps and slings to distribute pressure over greater surface areas along with the appropriate use of elasticized wraps can aid in preventing this problem.[24] Most importantly, educating the patient regarding the potential signs and symptoms of bony and neurovascular compromise is key to preventing any long-term problems that may be created through the application of an orthosis.

Tissue Healing

The phases of specific tissue healing (e.g., bone, nerve, tendon, ligament) aid in directing the appropriate selection of an orthosis as well as its fabrication and wearing schedule.[18,34,35] Appreciation of the role that an orthosis can play during each phase is a critical step in the decision-making process (i.e., knowing when to rest versus when to mobilize tissue). Clinicians must recognize that although the stages of tissue healing are described as chronologic in nature, overlap in their sequential incidence can occur. For example, in a patient who has suffered a traumatic conveyor belt injury

and sustained soft tissue, bone, tendon, and nerve damage, the healing rate of each specific tissue may differ depending on the severity of each injury even though all exist in the same hand. As the healing stages overlap, so may the time frames for implementing a specific type of orthosis.

STAGES OF TISSUE HEALING

Therapists must understand how each specific injury affects the surrounding tissues. For example, immobilization orthoses may be indicated throughout the length of the healing process but are most commonly used during the inflammatory stage. The three main stages of tissue healing are the inflammatory, proliferative (fibroplasia), and remodeling (maturation) phases (Fig. 14.13).

During the inflammatory phase, an influx of white blood cells occurs to cleanse the area (edema).[36,37] Clinically the tissue feels soft, boggy, and easy to mobilize. This stage typically lasts for 1 week or less. Rest is normally more important than exercise during the inflammatory stage, so immobilization orthoses are appropriate in the days immediately after tissue injury or surgery.[24]

During the proliferative phase, collagen is generated and the wound gains strength. The clinician begins to see and feel more tissue resistance (from scarring), although the tissue is still soft and movable despite inherent tension. This phase typically lasts from 1 to 6 weeks. Mobilization orthoses that gently stretch tissue can be effective during this time frame because they provide gentle stress that can facilitate tissue growth, resulting in tissue lengthening.[1,13]

The last phase of tissue healing is referred to as the remodeling phase. During this stage, the collagen is organized as it remodels along lines of stress. The tensile strength of the tissue is also greatly enhanced. Clinically, the tissues involved feel dense, hard, and inelastic. Tissues may actually shorten because of a decrease in elasticity; therefore stretching is a valuable tool to address undesirable contractures. Superficial scars also begin to soften during this stage. This stage begins as early as 6 weeks and can last up to 12 to 24 months. Serial static and static progressive approaches (or a combination of the two through day and night orthoses) to mobilize tissue during this phase are most appropriate.[18]

FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE TISSUE HEALING

Tissue healing is influenced by several noteworthy factors. For example, tissue that is deprived of oxygen requires a longer healing time, and this directly influences the necessary wearing time of an orthosis. Therapists must thoroughly discuss the patient's medical history and lifestyle habits with the patient to determine any factors that may exist to delay or impair tissue healing. Tobacco (nicotine), for example, diminishes the body's ability to heal, decreasing the blood flow and nutrition supplied to the tissue.[38] Excessive alcohol intake can impair the immune system, leading to malnourishment and liver damage.[17,39] Overall there are many varied factors that influence the rate of tissue healing (Box 14.3).[17]

Mechanical Principles

Before fabricating an orthosis, therapists must understand basic mechanical principles and be able to integrate these details into the orthotic design and construction process.[17,24,29,33,40] This section briefly reviews the most common principles to consider. Careful attention to the following principles will improve the fabrication, functionality, and fit of an orthosis.

LEVERS

Levers are rigid structures through which a force can be applied to produce rotational motion about a fixed axis.[17] A lever system is composed of a fulcrum, or fixed axis, and two arms: the effort arm and resistance arm. The effort arm, also referred to as the force arm, is the segment of the lever between the fulcrum and the effort force that is

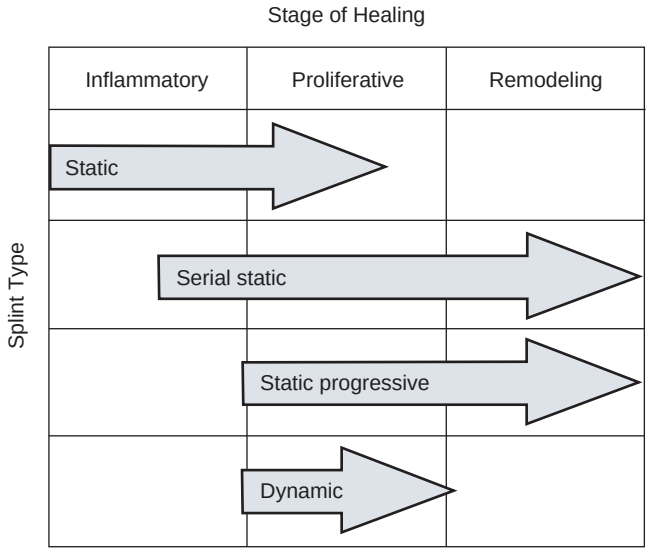


Fig. 14.13 An algorithm for the uses of various types of orthoses associated with the stages of normal tissue healing.

Box 14.3 Factor That Influence Tissue Healing

Common Factors

- Age
- Nutritional status
- Tobacco use
- Diabetes
- Edema
- Infection
- Rheumatoid arthritis

Less Common Factors

- Alcohol use
- Sickle cell disease
- Steroids
- Radiation therapy
- Peripheral vascular disease
- Raynaud disease
- Systemic lupus erythematosus

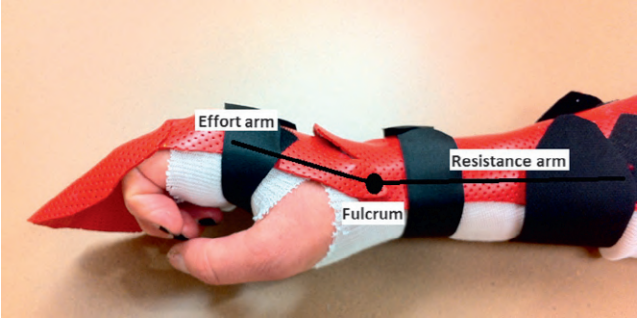


Fig. 14.14 The fulcrum of an orthosis is placed at the axis where joint motion occurs. The resistance arm is applied by the proximal segment of the orthosis, while the effort arm is applied by the distal segment of the orthosis.

attempting to impose action on a structure. In orthotic design, the fulcrum corresponds to the anatomic axis of the target joint, the effort arm is the segment of the orthosis that applies the effort force, and the resistance arm is the segment of the limb that resists the effort force. Ideally, the effort and resistance forces work in concert to create a balance of opposing torques about the fulcrum. However, cases occur in which the axis of rotation (fulcrum) has been impaired from disease or injury (e.g., fracture, rheumatoid arthritis), and achieving this desired equilibrium can be difficult.

Most orthoses are categorized as first-class levers, in which the fulcrum is located between the effort and resistance arms (Fig. 14.14). Common examples of first-class lever systems are a seesaw, a pair of scissors, or the atlanto-occipital joint in the neck. The goal an orthosis is being designed is to create the most efficient system for the desired work to occur. The length of the resistance arm greatly influences the mechanical advantage of the force applied. In the case of designing an orthosis, the effort arm can also influence mechanical advantage by how carefully it is molded around a body part.

Both the effort and resistance arms should be vigilantly formed by incorporating arches, clearing for creases, and allowing adequate surface area for the maximal distribution of created pressure. As forces actively influence a joint, a balance-counterbalance effect must occur. If the opposing force (effort arm) is not distributed well to counterbalance the distal forces (resistance arm), the orthosis may not rest adjacent to its designated body part. This condition may create high-pressure areas, shear stress, or an unproductive application of force. Clinicians can achieve mechanical advantage through careful application of orthotic principles and meticulous attention to detail while molding these devices. Clinically, orthoses tend to be most comfortable when they are well molded and adequate length and depth have been incorporated. Short, narrow, or shallow orthoses can cause increases in localized pressure and may add to overall discomfort.

STRESS

Stress can occur in various forms. The most common types that relate directly to orthoses are compression, shear, tension, bending, and torsion.[17] Compressive stress (also referred to as pressure) is defined as force per unit area. In the process of creating and planning the design of an orthosis, therapists must understand the various forms of stress that can be produced by the external forces. For example, compression can be minimized by increasing the surface area (designing an orthosis base that is wider and longer) over which the force can be maximally distributed. Optimizing the conformity of materials to the shape of the body part can also serve to minimize any compressive stress that is created.

A number of factors can result in creating areas of high pressure. Narrow strap width, especially in conjunction with "shallow" orthoses, can produce high compressive stress on the supported soft tissue. The borders of an orthosis should lie flush with the skin surface traversed by the strap. The strap should not bridge the two borders of the orthosis; it should come in direct contact with the skin.

The slings used in mobilizing orthoses are another possible source of compression stress that should be considered, especially if edema or neurovascular issues are evident in the patient's extremity. Compression to the lateral, dorsal, or volar aspects of the digit can be avoided by using several techniques. One option involves attaching the orthosis line to each side of a sling (two pieces of line) and then joining the two pieces after they pass through the pulley. This design prevents the circumferential compression created when a single line is threaded through both ends of the sling. Alternatively, a custom-fabricated thermoplastic "pan" can be placed under the sling as a support. The digital pan disperses the compressive forces applied through the sling by lifting the borders away from the skin and increasing the surface area of force application (see Fig. 14.2B).

Shear stress results from a parallel force applied to a surface and produces a tendency for an object to either deform or slide along the surface.[17] When a mobilization orthosis is being fabricated, the mobilizing force (which utilizes leverage through the proximal base of the orthosis) usually traverses the length of the orthosis and terminates distally at the body segment. If the proximal portion (base) of the orthosis is not adequately secured to the limb with appropriate strapping, there will be an undesirable migration or dragging and shearing of the proximal base over the skin when the mobilization force is applied distally (Fig. 14.15). Being careful to incorporate the arches of the hand as well as to procure a well-contoured orthosis during the molding process can help to prevent such migration. In some cases a nonskid material such Dycem foam tape (Dycem Technologies Limited, Bristol, England) or Moleskin (Consumer Health, Scranton, PA) to line the orthosis can also help to keep the orthosis stable on the extremity.

ANGLE OF FORCE APPLICATION

The angle of force application is critical to the proper design and fabrication of mobilization orthoses. Ideally, the force should be applied at a 90-degree angle relative to the body segment being mobilized (Fig. 14.16) because this maximizes the therapeutic effect of the force being applied.[17,18] With a pure 90-degree orientation to the part being mobilized, there are virtually no forces disseminated in other directions (minimizing undesired compression or distraction). However, if the angle is not set at 90 degrees, a portion

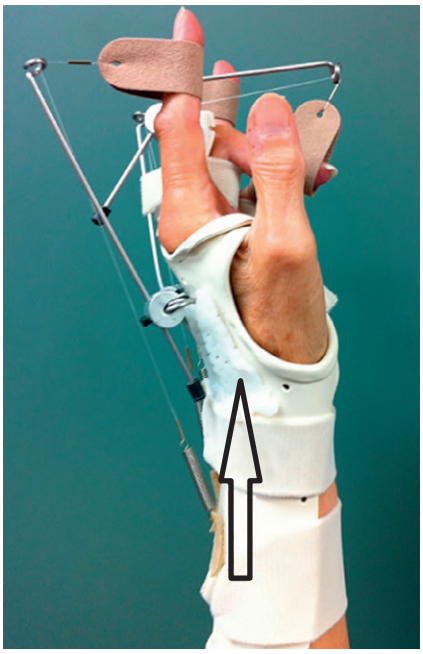


Fig. 14.15 When tension is applied to this proximal interphalangeal extension mobilization orthosis, shear stress is created as the proximal orthosis migrates distally on the forearm.

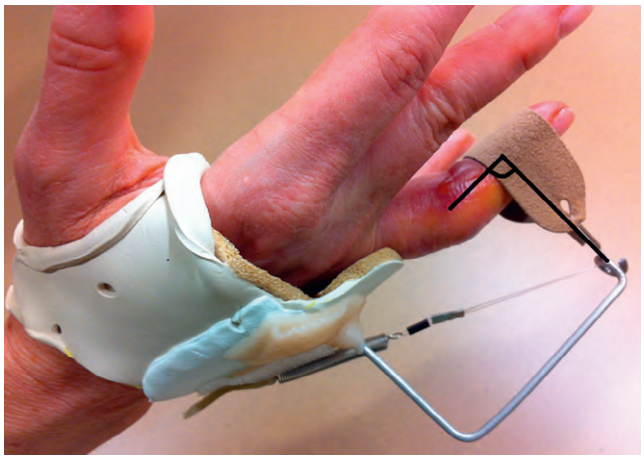


Fig. 14.16 Note the optimal 90-degree angle formed by the middle phalanx and the monofilament line in this proximal interphalangeal extension mobilization orthosis.

of the force is dissipated elsewhere, thus diminishing the therapeutic effect and causing potentially harmful compression or shear stress.

Clinically the use of custom-made or prefabricated line guides or pulleys can be helpful in achieving a 90-degree angle of force application. The therapist must view the orthosis from all angles to make sure that the line of application is directed centrally over the segment and oriented properly in all planes. To improve flexion of the digits with a mobilization orthosis, the anatomic configuration of the hand requires the line of force application to converge toward the scaphoid. If this orientation is not incorporated into the design of the orthosis, excessive stress will be placed on the digital joints, causing discomfort and potential harm. Occasionally a force applied in either a radial or ulnar direction is indicated, as with postoperative MP joint arthroplasties or sagittal band repairs. Except for special circumstances such as these, the line of application should be centrally located over the longitudinal axis of the bone being mobilized.

FORCE APPLICATION

When elastic force is being used to mobilize stiff structures, therapists must carefully consider the therapeutic objectives.[29,41-43] For example, there is a critical difference in achieving the goal of mobilizing a mature, dense joint contracture versus that of stabilizing the MP joints in extension after an MP joint arthroplasty. Both situations may require an elastic force. However, both the amount of force and the materials used to achieve these goals can vary considerably.[14] The amount of force necessary to mobilize various tissues depends on such factors as individual tolerance, diagnosis, stage of tissue healing, chronicity of the problem, severity of contracture, density of contracture ("end feel"), patient's age, smoking, alcohol use, and other health-related issues. Ranges of 100 to 300 g have been suggested for mobilization of the small joints of the hand, whereas higher parameters (>350 g) may be more effective for larger structures.[1,18] This 300-g threshold of force is based on what is tolerated per unit of surface area of the skin, not the tolerance of the contracted tissue to tension. In most cases, skin tolerance becomes the limiting factor in determining the appropriate quantity of tension, not the risk of injury to the specific targeted tissue. The therapist can almost always rely on the tissue's response to the tension to help determine the effectiveness of the mobilizing forces. Signs of too much stress include the onset of edema, skin blanching, vascular changes, impaired sensation, and exacerbated pain. The amount of time the force is applied is another factor to consider with mobilization orthoses.[15,44] In general, the goal is to provide a low load stress to the tissue over a long period of time.

Material and Equipment

Numerous companies market and distribute supplies for orthotic fabrication (Box 14.4); these include many types of thermoplastic materials, strapping, component systems, and other equipment. The best way to become educated regarding what is on the market is by spending time reviewing the catalogs/websites and contacting local sales representatives to request samples of desired materials. In addition, attending workshops on orthotic fabrication and hand therapy conferences can be a helpful means of gaining knowledge while providing opportunities to practice skills that can be used in the clinical setting.

THERMOPLASTIC MATERIALS

Low-temperature thermoplastics are most commonly used by therapists to fabricate custom orthoses. These materials are sold in sheets or precut designs and are softened in warm water prior to application to the intended body part. Once a low-temperature thermoplastic has been formed to the contour of the body, the material cools and hardens into shape.

Box 14.4 Distributors of Orthotic Fabrication Products

AliMed
297 High Street, Dedham, MA 02026
www.alimed.com
DeRoyal
200 Debusk Lane, Powell, TN 37849
www.deroyal.com
North Coast Medical
780 Jarvis Drive, Suite 100, Morgan Hill, CA 95037
www.ncmedical.com
Orfit Industries America
350 Jericho Turnpike, Suite 101, Jericho, NY 11753
www.orfit.com
Performance Health
28100 Torch Parkway, Suite 700, Warrenville, IL 60555
www.performancehealth.com
UE Tech
PO Box 2145, Edwards, CO 81632
www.uetech.com
WFR Corporation
30 Lawlins Park, Wyckoff, NJ 07481
www.reveals.com
3-Point Products
118 Log Canoe Circle, Stevensville, MD 21666
www.3pointproducts.com

When fabricating a splint, therapists can select from a wide range of thermoplastic materials; this often creates confusion for novice practitioners who must choose which type to use for a specific case. The fabricator must have a sound understanding of the characteristics of the various thermoplastics in order to make an informed decision, taking into account the desired purpose of the orthosis as well as the patient's diagnosis. In addition to considering the patient's needs, therapist must consider other factors, including his or her own level of fabrication experience, the availability of materials, and any existing cost constraints.

Few studies have examined the characteristics of thermoplastic materials in order to categorize their differences.[45-47] However, a knowledge of the different categories of thermoplastic materials as well as their handling and physical characteristics can help therapists make more informed selections during the process of fabrication.

Handling Characteristics

Handling characteristics refers to the way a material behaves during the molding process. The three most important characteristics of orthosis materials that must be considered are conformability and resistance to stretch, memory, and bonding characteristics.

Conformability and Resistance to Stretch. The ability for a material to conform to a body part is related to its level of resistance to stretch (Fig. 14.17).[48,49] A helpful system for organizing thermoplastic materials is to group them into categories according to their degree of resistance to stretch (Table 14.1).[48,49] Materials with minimal resistance to stretch are highly conforming and may not be the best choice for novice fabricators. Reduced hands-on contact during the fabrication process is preferred because these types of materials tend to contour well without much guidance. In the clinic, high-stretch materials may be appropriate for a patient who has a high level of pain and would not tolerate an extensive hands-on molding process or for those orthoses in which achieving an intimate fit would be crucial in order to maximize comfort. Smaller orthoses that are more straightforward—such as those for a finger or hand—can be made more easily with these highly conforming materials. Regardless of the selected material, gravity-assisted positioning during the molding process is essential to achieving the proper shape.

Materials with maximal resistance to stretch are minimally conforming and inherently demand more hands-on work from the fabricator to obtain a better fit of the orthosis. Therapists with nominal experience in the fabrication of orthoses may do better with these materials because they tolerate more aggressive handling. These materials are appropriate when larger orthoses are being made, as in orthoses for the elbow or in situations in which fabrication against gravity is not an option (e.g., patients who are wheelchair-

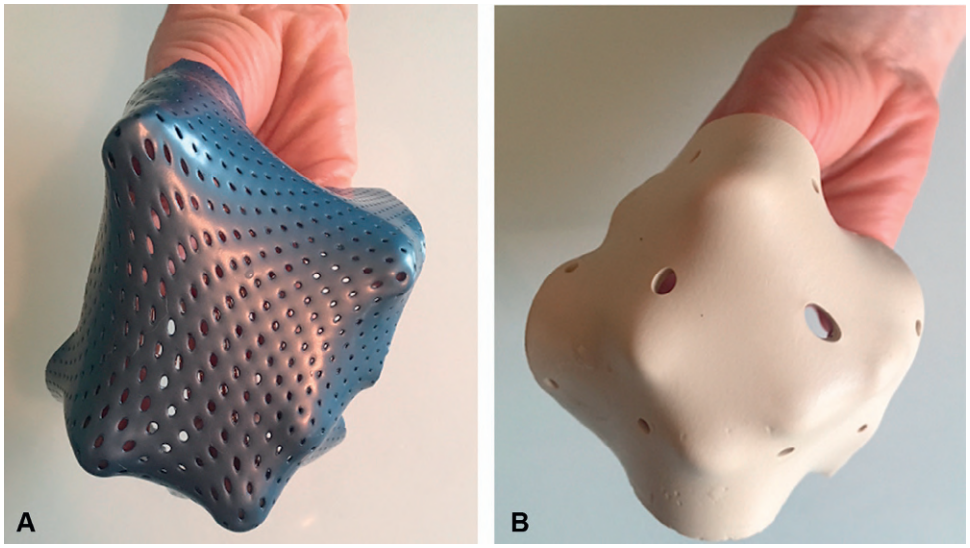


Fig. 14.17 The drape, or contouring quality of the material, placed over the hand on the left (A) illustrates a low resistance to stretch, whereas the less pliable material on the right (B) is more resistant to stretch.

Table 14.1 Characteristics of Thermoplastic Materials

	STRETCH RESISTANCE		
Company Name	**Minimum**	**Moderate**	**Maximal**
AliMed	Polyform Multiform Multiform Clear	Orthoplast II Polyflex II	Ezeform Orthoplast
DeRoyal	LMB Drape	LMB Blend	
North Coast Medical	NCM Clinic	Encore NCM Preferred NCM Vanilla NCM Spectrum Prism	Omega Max Solaris Omega Plus Orfibrace Omega Black
Orfit Industries	Orficast OrfiCast More Orfit NS Orfit Classic Soft Aquafit NS Soft Tecnofit Orfizip NS	Orfilight Orfit Strips Orfit Colors NS Orfit Flex NS	Orfit Eco Orfibrace NS Orfit Classic Stiff Dynasyst Aquafit NS Stiff
Performance Health	Polyform Aquaplast ProDrape	Polyflex II Kay-Splint II Aquaplast Watercolors Tailorsplint Kay-Splint III Orthoplast II CuraDrape	Ezeform Aquaplast-T Resilient Aquaplast-T Watercolors Synergy San-Splint FabricForm
WFR Corporation	Reveals XS	Reveals Reveals Colors	Reveals LS

bound). Because these materials do not contour with precision, they may be the best choice during fabrication over wound dressings in which the dimensions of the underlying material may be altered with each dressing change.

Memory. *Memory* refers to a material's ability to revert to its original shape once heated, ranging from 0% to 100% memory.[48,49] Materials with this property are good choices for orthoses that must frequently be remolded, as when fabricating a serial static orthosis that must be reheated and reformed to the body part as ROM varies. Caution must be used when removing the orthosis from the body part after molding to ensure that the material has cooled completely; otherwise the material may shrink to the point where proper fit is lost. Also, spot heating of thermoplastic orthoses is not advised, owing to the possibility of unintentionally altering regions adjacent to the targeted area.

Bonding. *Bonding* is the ability of a material to adhere to itself when heated fully.[48,49] The presence of a protective coating, however, can prevent this occurrence. The coating allows two pieces of material to be pulled apart after the orthosis is formed, which can be particularly useful when a circumferential design is being applied, as around the thumb (Fig. 14.18). If bonding is desired, the coating must either be removed with solvent or disrupted by scratching the surface to allow for adherence; the latter is commonly required for attaching mobilization components. The coating may also make the orthosis easier to clean. Without a coating, the material may stick to a wound dressing, the patient's body hair, or itself. When material without a coating is being used, apply a barrier, such as a wet paper towel or a small quantity of hand lotion, between the two pieces to prevent unwanted adherence.

Physical Characteristics

Physical characteristics are evident on visual inspection. The most relevant ones include the material's thickness, the presence of perforations, and the color of the material.[17]

Thickness. Low-temperature thermoplastics are available in a variety of thicknesses, including 1/16, 3/32, and 1/8 inches.[48,49] The appropriate thickness for an orthosis depends on the body segment, diagnosis, and required rigidity of the orthosis. For example, an elbow immobilization orthosis for a patient who sustained a fracture and underwent surgical fixation would best be made from a thicker 1/8-inch material for a more rigid type of support. In another case, such as a hand-based thumb orthosis for an elderly patient with arthritis, it might be better to use a thinner 1/16-inch material to achieve a light, compact type of support. The goal should be to provide the least bulky, lightest-weight orthosis possible that allows the device to perform its intended function optimally. Thinner materials are generally quicker to heat and faster to harden than their thicker counterparts.

Perforations. Thermoplastic materials with perforations allow for air exchange and produce a lighter-weight orthosis compared with those made with solid materials.[48,49]

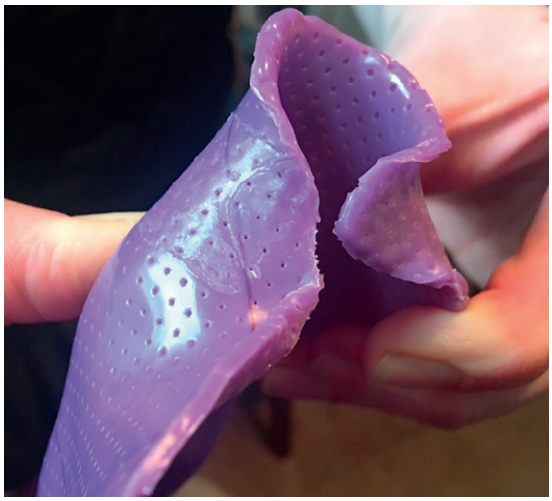


Fig. 14.18 The presence of coating on this material allows the circumferential segment around the thumb to be pulled apart after cooling to form a potential "trap door" on this wrist and thumb mobilization orthosis.

Materials with a high density of perforations create an orthosis that is flexible (less rigid), which may not be appropriate for patients with specific diagnoses. Caution must be used to ensure that the edges of the orthosis, derived from a thermoplastic sheet where the pattern is cut through its perforations, are smoothed to prevent unintended irritation of the patient's skin. This is commonly achieved with the use of a heat gun paired with manually rounding of the edges.

Colors. A wide array of colors are available, making the fabrication process even more creative.[47,48] Providing choices in thermoplastic material and strap colors can improve compliance with orthosis use in all populations, most notably with pediatric clients. Issuing orthosis straps in a color other than white can also help patients to find orthoses that have been misplaced within bed linens. It is recommended to accept requests from patients during this aspect of the fabrication process in order to make them feel that they have contributed to the construction of the orthosis and thus increase their personal acceptance of the need for wearing it.

Categories of Orthosis Materials

Thermoplastic materials can be categorized according to their chemical composition.[45-47] This determines the way the material behaves during the fabrication process and affects how the completed orthosis functions. Thermoplastic materials may be made of plastics (e.g., Polyform [Performance Health, Warrenville, IL] or Multiform [AliMed, Dedham, MA]), rubber or rubber-like materials (e.g., Ezeform [Performance Health] or Orthoplast [AliMed]), combination plastic and rubber-like materials (e.g., Tailorsplint, PolyFlex II [Performance Health], or Encore [North Coast Medical, Morgan Hill, CA), and elastic materials (e.g., Aquaplast [Performance Health] or Reveal [WFR Corporation, Wyckoff, NJ]).

Plastic materials typically have a low resistance to stretch, allowing the completion of an orthosis that is highly contoured. Rubber or rubber-like materials are highly resistant to stretch but offer more control during the fabrication process. Combination plastic and rubber-like materials offer the blended advantages of each in terms of conformability and control during the molding process. Elastic materials possess memory and may be suitable for the novice orthosis fabricator who wishes to have the ability to remold the orthosis if necessary.

Orthoses may also be fabricated from alternative materials.[17,48,49] These include lined materials (e.g., Silon-LTS [Performance Health], or Multiform Soft [Alimed]), mesh-type materials (e.g., X-Lite [Performance Health]), casting materials (e.g., plaster of Paris or QuickCast [Performance Health]), and soft materials (e.g., neoprene or Kinesio Tape [Performance Health]).

STRAPPING

Many different strapping systems are offered through distributors.[48,49] The choice of appropriate strapping depends on the patient's diagnosis, the type of orthosis design, and availability of the material in a manner very similar to the choice in selecting a thermoplastic material. Strapping is essential to secure the orthosis to the body part properly. If the strapping is not adequate, the orthosis can be uncomfortable or ineffective in achieving its desired goals. Generally adhesive hook-and-loop material (e.g., Velcro; Velcro USA, Manchester, NH) is applied to the orthosis base, and strapping material secures the segment within the orthosis. The most commonly used strapping mechanisms consist of traditional loop, foam, neoprene, or elasticized straps. In small areas where adhesive hooks may tend to pull off, rivets may be used to secure the loop material to the thermoplastic pattern permanently (Fig. 14.19).

Other adjuncts to strapping include D-rings that offer the ability to easily adjust the tension on the straps or circumferential wrapping (with an elasticized bandage) for those patients with significant edema. Straps should be wide and conforming so that they distribute pressure maximally but not wide to the point that they inhibit the ROM of adjacent joints.[17,24] The patient should be educated in how to apply the straps tightly enough to secure the orthosis without compromising the neurovascular system.

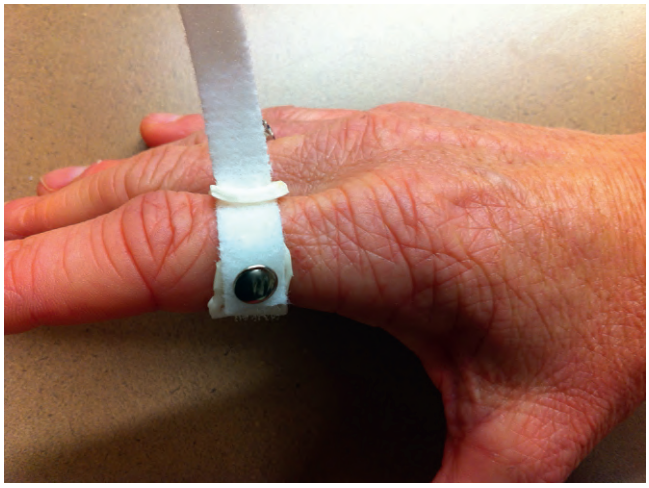


Fig. 14.19 A rivet can be applied to permanently secure strapping to the orthosis by forming holes in the thermoplastic material and in the strap with a hole punch; pliers are used to set the rivet in place.

PADDING AND LINING

Padding and lining products are available in a wide variety of thicknesses, textures, and materials.[48,49] Therapists may use padding in specific regions during the orthotic fabrication process to accommodate bony prominences or superficial nerves. Ideally, the padding should be applied to the target area before molding the orthosis so that the modified device can contour to its adjusted proportions. Attaching the padding after the orthosis has been made can potentially cause a shift in pressure distribution and lead to problematic areas of high stress. Foam padding can also be adhered to straps at strategic places in order to improve joint position and to prevent migration of the orthosis.

Lining an orthosis with an adhesive product may be indicated in rare cases, such as when the patient has very fragile skin. Application of these adhesive liners should be done sparingly because of hygienic concerns; they are not easily cleaned or removed. As an alternative, disposable liners on the body part can be a way to improve comfort within an orthosis by placing a barrier between the skin and the thermoplastic material (see Fig. 14.19). Cotton and elasticized stockinettes are the most commonly used products in the clinic.

COMPONENTS

Component systems are an important element of mobilization orthoses.[48,49] Rehabilitation catalogs help therapists stay abreast of what is available for their use. In general, outrigger systems are designed to help provide optimal force application to a body part. Ideally, these devices should be highly adjustable to allow the therapist to maintain the crucial 90-degree angle of force application. If the commercial systems are not accessible, therapists can fabricate equivalent prototypes using wire and scrap pieces of thermoplastic material. Four basic elements of an outrigger system are used in a digit mobilization orthosis: the proximal attachment device, the mobilization force, the pulley system, and finger slings (Fig. 14.20).

The proximal attachment device provides the means to secure the mobilization force to the orthosis. The mobilization force, whether it be static line (static-progressive approach) or elastic (dynamic approach), traverses through a pulley system to maintain the desired 90-degree angle of force application. Distally, the force is imparted to the body part, in this case the finger, by a sling or loop.

Mobilization orthoses can be challenging to fabricate for a novice therapist. Learning through practice and obtaining feedback from more experienced colleagues are important ways to improve fabrication skills. Patients must consistently receive follow-up clinic visits to assess and modify the orthosis if a positive outcome is sought; these orthoses need frequent adjustments as the tissue responds to the stress applied by the device.

EQUIPMENT

Having access to quality tools in the clinic can help to make the orthotic fabrication process easier for the therapist. Sharp scissors designated solely for thermoplastic use are essential. If the scissors are used for all products, most notably adhesive products, the blades can retain the residue and make cutting the thermoplastic material difficult. Scissors with a nonstick, ceramic coating are available and are quite effective when cutting adhesive-backed products. Dull scissors do not provide a clean cut, which can lead to frustration and the creation of unsightly orthoses. Other tools that are helpful to keep on hand include a hole punch and a set of blunt-nose pliers for rivet application, a hand drill for creating holes or a series of perforations, and a heat gun to make minor adjustments to a formed orthosis.

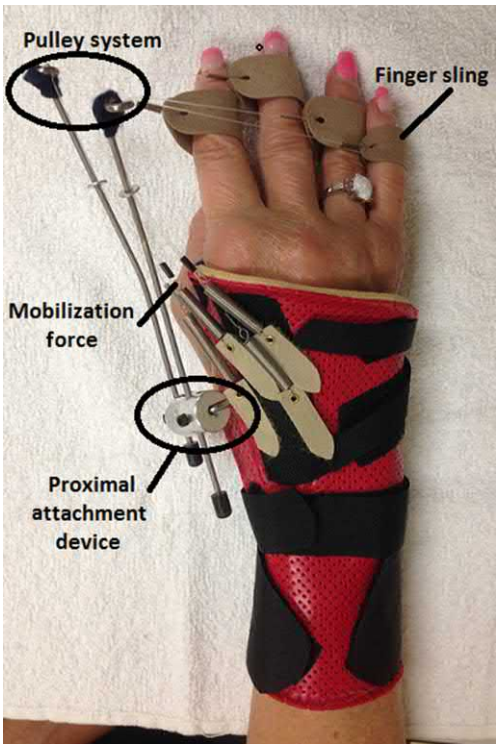


Fig. 14.20 Elements of this forearm-based metacarpophalangeal joint mobilization orthosis include a proximal attachment device, a mobilization force through a pulley system, and finger slings.

Overview of the Orthotic Fabrication Process

A comprehensive prescription from the referral source is essential to implementing the appropriate orthotic application and optimizing the therapeutic effect of the device. In addition to the patient's name, the prescription must contain the following information:

- Diagnosis, including surgical procedures if applicable
- Date of injury and any associated surgical procedure
- Any precautions or contraindications that must be followed
- Orthosis-related goals, including purpose, joint positions, and wearing schedule

Having access to the relevant imaging such as radiographs as well as the patient's surgical report can help the therapist to gain a clear understanding of the tissues involved. As always, good communication with the referral

source is essential in terms of gathering and sharing information regarding a patient's status.

After obtaining all critical information regarding the patient's diagnosis and the prescribed orders, the therapist should perform a comprehensive evaluation. This begins with a patient interview for gathering subjective information and continues with a review of systems and a detailed physical examination.[9,22] The therapist uses the results of the history and examination to form a clinical judgment and establish a movement dysfunction diagnosis, including a list of impairments and functional limitations. From these problems, the therapist determines the prognosis for the fulfillment of functional goals and formulates an appropriate plan of care.

To prepare a comprehensive plan of care, therapists must use critical thinking skills to integrate their working knowledge with the information obtained from the referral source and the patient. The therapist has many modalities that can be used to treat the patient, only one of which is orthotic fabrication. Not all patients are appropriate for orthoses; determining if and when orthoses may be appropriate presents a consistent challenge for the therapist. Some patients may require orthoses initially whereas others may need one later in the process of their rehabilitation. An individualized approach is necessary to address each patient's unique needs.[50]

If an orthosis is indicated, the patient must be thoroughly educated regarding its proper use. This education must always include a written handout outlining the specifics of wear, care, and safety. The key points to stress include the following:

- Purpose of orthosis specific to the patient's diagnosis
- Key indicators of potential adverse responses to the device and information about what to do if any occur
- Expected functional limitations that might result from wearing the orthosis and suggestions of how to compensate for imposed limitations
- Routine wearing schedule
- Information about washing or cleaning the orthosis
- Information or diagrams related to how to properly don and doff the orthosis (if applicable)
- Precautions and contraindications related to the patient's diagnosis and indicators of tissue tolerance (signs and symptoms of neurovascular compromise, soft tissue complication or bony irritation)
- Avoidance of heat to prevent deformity of the orthotic structure
- Contact information (the therapist's name and clinic phone number) with encouragement to reach out if any questions or problems arise with use

Case Example 14.1 A Patient With Osteoarthritis of the First Carpometacarpal Joint

R.W. presents to the hand surgeon with a progressive, insidious onset of thumb pain near its base. Symptoms of aching and tenderness are exacerbated by activities such as turning keys, opening jars, holding open a book, and writing. Deformity from joint subluxation at the first carpometacarpal (CMC) joint with concurrent degenerative osteoarthritis (OA) is evident (Fig. 14.21). The patient also has a positive grind test; this involves the manual application of axial compressive force of the base of the first metacarpal into the trapezium (the test has a high specificity for CMC OA when crepitus and the reproduction of pain are present). R.W. receives a steroid injection into the CMC joint space to decrease localized inflammation and is given a prescription for hand therapy.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given this patient's current presentation, what additional tests and measures might be important to include in the evaluative process?
- What is an appropriate movement dysfunction–related diagnosis for this patient?
- What is a likely prognosis for this patient? What are the anticipated patient goals for intervention? What are suitable, realistic goals for rehabilitation? How long is it expected to take in order to achieve the goals collectively formulated by the patient and therapist?

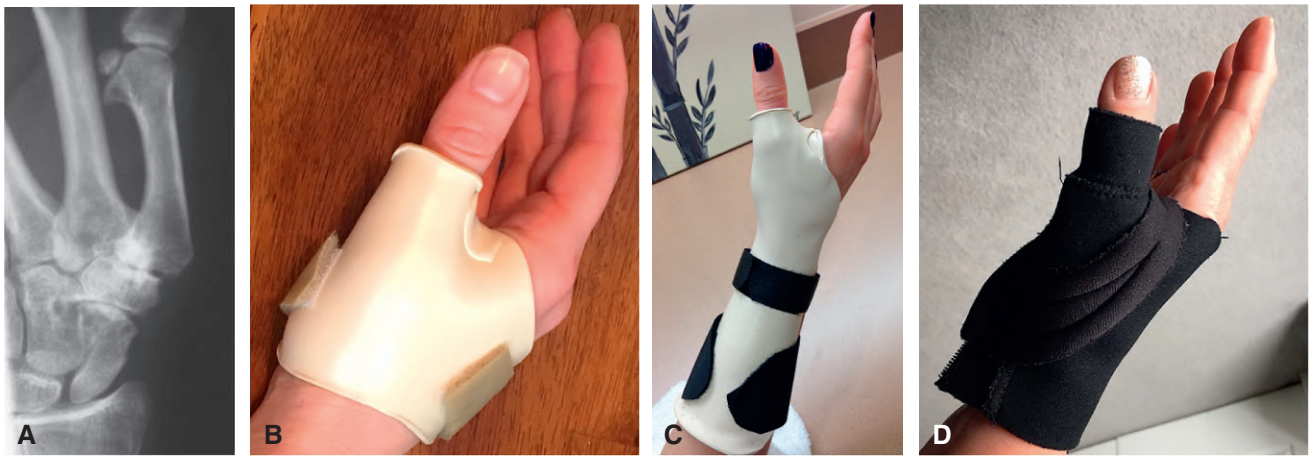


Fig. 14.21 (A) A radiograph indicating osteoarthritis at the carpometacarpal (CMC) joint of the thumb. (B) A custom thumb orthosis designed to reduce stress on the CMC joint during activities of daily living (ADLs). (C) After ligament reconstruction and arthroplasty, a forearm-based wrist and thumb immobilization orthosis is used during the proliferative stage of healing. (D) When adequate healing and fixation have occurred, the patient transitions into a neoprene orthosis to provide external support to the thumb during ADLs.

Continued on following page

Case Example 14.1 A Patient With Osteoarthritis of the First Carpometacarpal Joint (Continued)

- On the basis of the patient's goals and expectations as well as the therapist's understanding of the underlying disease process, what recommendations would be indicated for intervention at this point in time? What evidence from the current literature supports these recommendations? What should be prioritized from the list of possible interventions?
- What type of follow-up would be recommended? How might the goals and interventions change as the patient progresses through the stages of tissue healing? How would one assess the outcomes of any implemented interventions?

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR A PATIENT WITH OSTEOARTHRITIS OF THE FIRST CARPOMETACARPAL JOINT

A custom thumb orthosis is fabricated from a lightweight thermoplastic material (thickness: 1/16 inch) (see Fig. 14.21B). R.W. is instructed to use this device during daytime activities to decrease stress on the affected joint during functional tasks involving the thumb. The bulk of the skilled intervention is centered around education to equip the patient to adequately self-manage this chronic condition; the patient is thoroughly instructed in activity modification and joint protection principles. Some of the strategies include avoiding forceful, repetitive, and sustained pinching along with using pens and kitchen utensils with larger handles.

Despite these interventions, R.W. continues to have unmanaged symptoms and returns to the physician to discuss her medically related treatment options. R.W. undergoes a ligament reconstruction with tendon interposition (LRTI) arthroplasty, which includes a trapezium excision with a slip of the flexor carpi radialis interposed between the scaphoid and the first metacarpal.[24] For the initial 3-week postoperative period after LRTI, in the inflammatory stage of healing during which tissue rest is indicated, a rigid cast is used to immobilize the treatment region. As healing progresses into the proliferative stage, around the 3-week period, the patient is placed in a removable forearm-based wrist/thumb immobilization orthosis that is removed for periodic ROM exercises (see Fig. 14.21C).

At approximately 6 weeks after surgery, as the healing continues to progress and no complications arise, the patient uses a prefabricated neoprene thumb orthosis to aid in the transition out of the rigid thermoplastic orthosis (see Fig. 14.21D). The neoprene material offers restrictive compression combining warmth and gentle support during functional tasks. At 12 weeks after surgery, the therapist encourages the weaning of all orthoses until they are fully discontinued and R.W. returns to normal activities without significant pain. Her comprehensive maintenance program includes therapeutic exercise centered on the recruitment of the first dorsal interosseous muscle to promote inherent stability of the first metacarpal during functional use.[51]

Case Example 14.2 A Patient With a Fracture of the Distal Radius

D.A. presents to the hand surgeon's office after a fall onto an outstretched hand (FOOSH). The radiograph reveals a comminuted fracture of the distal radius requiring surgical fixation. The surgeon performs an open reduction and internal fixation and implants a plate and screws for anatomic reinforcement (Fig. 14.22). At 5 days postsurgery, the patient is referred to hand therapy in order to receive a protective orthosis and initiate an early ROM program.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given this patient's current presentation, what additional tests and measures might be important to include in the evaluative process?
- What is an appropriate movement dysfunction–related diagnosis for this patient?
- What is a likely prognosis for this patient? What are the anticipated patient goals for intervention? What are suitable,

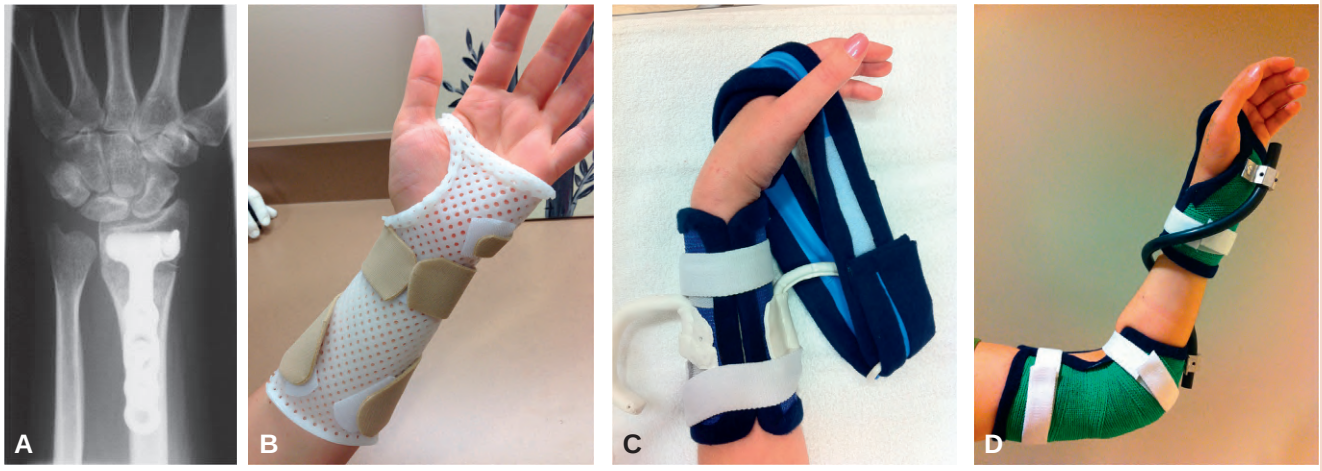


Fig. 14.22 (A) A radiograph of open reduction and internal fixation of a comminuted wrist fracture. (B) A forearm-based wrist immobilization orthosis used during the initial stages of healing. When adequate healing has occurred, a wrist flexion mobilization orthosis (C) and a forearm supination mobilization orthosis (D) are fabricated to help increase functional range of motion.

Case Example 14.2 A Patient With a Fracture of the Distal Radius (Continued)

realistic goals for rehabilitation? How long is it expected to take to achieve the goals collectively formulated by the patient and therapist?

- On the basis of the patient's goals and expectations as well as the therapist's understanding of the underlying disease process, what recommendations would be indicated for intervention at this point in time? What evidence from the current literature supports these recommendations? What should be prioritized from the list of possible interventions?
- What type of follow-up would be recommended? How might the goals and interventions change as the patient progresses through the stages of tissue healing? How would one assess the outcomes of any implemented interventions?
- Given the history of a FOOSH injury, is the patient at further risk for re-injury to the affected area of their upper extremity? Is there an underlying condition affecting the patient's balance that presents as a red flag for safety?

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR A PATIENT WITH OPEN REDUCTION AND INTERNAL FIXATION OF WRIST FRACTURE

A forearm-based wrist immobilization orthosis is fabricated with a ⅛-in-thick material to obtain a rigid support to be used during the proliferative stage of healing (see Fig. 14.22B). D.A. is instructed to remove the orthosis six times a day for gentle ROM of the forearm, wrist, and digits. As expected, all forearm and wrist motions are significantly limited, and mild edema is localized to the area. During this phase, D.A. is encouraged to move the digits frequently between exercise sessions with the orthosis in place and to incorporate the hand in light activities of daily living.

At 4 weeks after surgery, because a radiograph has revealed adequate healing along with stable fixation provided by the plate and screws, the wrist orthosis is discontinued (except for heavy-resisted or repetitive activities) and therapy progresses with the addition of gentle passive ROM. All movements of the extremity improve except wrist flexion and forearm supination, which are significantly restricted during passive stretching. At 6 weeks, these limitations continue to be problematic and the physician recommends the addition of a wrist flexion mobilization orthosis (see Fig. 14.22C) and a forearm supination mobilization orthosis (see Fig. 14.22D).

The wrist flexion mobilization orthosis is fabricated with a delta cast material with a cloth sling to provide the mobilization force through a static progressive approach. This method is selected because of the high degree of stiffness present in the wrist. The supination mobilization orthosis is fabricated with a tubing mechanism to facilitate the stretching force. The patient is instructed to wear each device four times a day for 30 minutes, consistently increasing the passive stretch on the affected tissues as tolerated. The previously used wrist immobilization orthosis continues to be used at night as a serial static device and is remolded to position the wrist at maximal flexion; this seeks to maintain the collective gains made during all waking hours.

After 4 weeks of consistent use, D.A. plateaus her active ROM at 55 degrees of wrist flexion and 70 degrees of supination, which is deemed to be functional and, because of the severity of the injury, also quite acceptable.

Summary

The fabrication of an orthosis is a commonly used intervention for clinicians who treat an impaired upper extremity. Gaining an appreciation for how different orthoses can be created for specific purposes aids in achieving maximal patient outcomes. This chapter reviewed many aspects of orthotic fabrication, including nomenclature, tissue healing, and anatomic and mechanical principles and provided an overview of the various products available to a qualified therapist. Through comprehensive study and practice, the fabrication and application of orthoses can be another tool used successfully in the clinic to benefit the patient, the therapist, and referring provider.

References

1. American Society of Hand Therapists. Splint Classification System. Garner, NC: *The American Society of Hand Therapists;* 1992.
2. Fess EE. A history of splinting: to understand the present, view the past. *J Hand Ther.* 2002;15(2):97–132.
3. Coverdell J. An editorial note on nomenclature: Orthosis versus splint. *J Hand Ther.* 2012;25:3–4.
4. Tenney CG, Lisak JM. *Atlas of Hand Splinting.* Boston: Little, Brown; 1986.
5. Schultz-Johnson K. Static progressive splinting. *J Hand Ther.* 2002;15(2):163–178.
6. Raphael J, Skirven T. Contractures and splinting. In: *Atlas of Hand Clinics.* Philadelphia: Saunders; 2001 Vol 6(1).
7. Yang G, Mcglinn EP, Chung KC. Management of the Stif Finger : Evidence and Outcomes. *Clin Plastic Surg.* 2014;41:501–512.
8. Schwartz DA. Fabrication of a Dynamic or Static Progressive Composite Finger Flexion Orthosis. *J Hand Ther.* 2018;31(1):157–158.
9. Bell-Krotoski JA. Tissue remodeling and contracture correction using serial plaster casting and orthotic positioning. In: Mackin EJ, Callahan AD, Osterman AL, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity.* 6th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2011:1599–1609.
10. Darby IA, Laverdet B, Bonté F, Desmoulière A. Fibroblasts and myofibroblasts in wound healing. *Clinical, Cosmetic and Investigational Dermatology.* 2014;7:301–311.
11. Brand P, Hollister A. *Clinical Mechanics of the Hand.* 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby Year Book; 1999.
12. Colditz JC. Therapist's management of the stiff hand. In: Skirven TM, Osterman AL, Fedorczyk JM, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity.* 6th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2011:894–921.
13. Uğurlu Ü, Özdoğan H. Effects of serial casting in the treatment of flexion contractures of proximal interphalangeal joints in patients with rheumatoid arthritis and juvenile idiopathic arthritis: A retrospective study. *J Hand Ther.* 2016;29(1):41–50.
14. Marrel M, Jörn Good U, Marks M, Herren DB, Goldhahn J. Isoforce: A new outrigger system for static progressive orthotic interventions of the proximal interphalangeal joint with constant force transmission—Results of a biomechanical study. *J Hand Ther.* 2016;29(4):451–458.
15. Cantero-Téllez R, Cuesta-Vargas AI, Cuadros-Romero M. Treatment of Proximal Interphalangeal Joint Flexion Contracture: Combined Static and Dynamic Orthotic Intervention Compared With Other Therapy Intervention: A Randomized Controlled Trial. *J Hand Surg-American Volume.* 2015;40(5):951–955.
16. Bell Krotoski JA. Tissue remodeling and contracture correction using serial plaster casting and orthotic positioning. In: Skirven TM, Osterman AL, Fedorczyk JM, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity.* 6th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2011:1599–1609.
17. Jacobs M, Austin NM. *Orthotic Intervention for the Hand and Upper Extremity: Splinting Principles and Process.* 2nd ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2014.

18. Coppard BM, Lohman H. *Introduction to Orthotics: A Clinical Reasoning & Problem-Solving Approach.* St Louis: Elsevier; 2015.
19. Schultz-Johnson KS. Splinting the wrist: mobilization and protection. *J Hand Ther.* 1996;9(2):165–175.
20. Skirven TM, Osterman AL, Fedorczyk JM, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity.* 6th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2011.
21. Wolf SW, Hotchkiss RN, Pederson WC, et al., *Green's Operative Hand Surgery.* 7th ed New York: Elsevier; 2016.
22. Stanley BG, Tribuzi SM, eds. *Concepts in Hand Rehabilitation.* Philadelphia: FA Davis; 1992.
23. Lippert LS. *Clinical Kinesiology and Anatomy.* 6th ed. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 2017.
24. Kiel J. *Basic Hand Splinting: A Pattern Designing Approach.* Boston: Little, Brown; 1983.
25. Ghasemi-rad M. A handy review of carpal tunnel syndrome: From anatomy to diagnosis and treatment. *World Jour Rad.* 2014;6 (6):284–300.
26. Pratt NE. Anatomy and kinesiology of the hand. In: Skirven TM, Osterman AL, Fedorczyk JM, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity.* 6th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2011:3–17.
27. Cooper C. *Fundamentals of Hand Therapy: Clinical Reasoning and Treatment Guidelines for Common Diagnoses of the Upper Extremity.* 2nd ed. St Louis: Elsevier; 2014.
28. Early MB. *Physical Dysfunction Practice Skills for the Occupational Therapy Assistant.* 3rd ed. St Louis: Elsevier; 2013.
29. Wilton J. *Hand Splinting Orthotic Intervention.* 2nd ed. Western Australia: Vivid; 2013.
30. Austin N. The wrist and hand complex. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC, eds. *Joint Structure and Function: A Comprehensive Analysis.* 5th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2011.
31. Fess EE. Splints: mechanics versus convention. *J Hand Ther.* 1995; 8(2):124–130.
32. Cannon NM, Foltz RW, Koepfer J, et al., *Manual of Hand Splinting.* New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1985.
33. McKee P, Rivard A. Foundations of Orthotic Intervention. In: Mackin EJ, Callahan AD, Osterman AL, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity.* 6th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2011:1565–1580.
34. Maxey L, Magnusson J. *Rehabilitation for the Postsurgical Rehabilitation Patient.* St Louis: Elsevier; 2013.
35. Fess EE, McCollum M. The influence of splinting on healing tissue. *J Hand Ther.* 1998;11(2):157–161.
36. Strickland JW. Biologic basis for hand and upper extremity splinting. In: Fess EE, Gettle KS, Philips C, et al., eds. *Hand and Upper Extremity Splinting: Principles and Methods.* 3rd ed St. Louis: Mosby Year Book; 2005:87–103.
37. Rowan MP, Cancio LC, Elster EA, et al., Burn wound healing and treatment: Review and advancements. *Critical Care.* 2015;19(1):1–12.
38. Gill JF, Yu SS, Neuhaus IM. Tobacco smoking and dermatologic surgery. *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology.* 2013;68 (1):167–172.
39. Rund C. Postoperative care of skin graft, donor sites, and myocutaneous flaps. In: Krasner D, et al., eds. *Chronic Wound Care: A Clinical Source Book for Healthcare Professionals.* 5th ed Wayne, NJ: Health Management Publication; 2012.
40. McKee P, Morgan L. *Orthotics in Rehabilitation.* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2009.
41. Bell Krotoski JA, Breger-Stanton D. The forces of dynamic orthotic positioning: ten questions to ask before applying a dynamic orthosis to the hand. In: Skirven TM, Osterman AL, Fedorczyk JM, et al., eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity.* 6th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2011:1581–1587.
42. Flowers KR. A proposed decision hierarchy for splinting the stiff joint, with an emphasis on force application parameters. *J Hand Ther.* 2002;15(2):158–162.
43. McClure PW, Blackburn LG, Dusold C. The use of splints in the treatment of joint stiffness: biological rationale and an algorithm for making clinical decisions. *Phys Ther.* 1994;74(12):1101–1107.
44. Glasgow C, Wilton J, Tooth L. Optimal daily total end range time for contracture: resolution in hand splinting. *J Hand Ther.* 2003;16 (3):207–218.
45. Lee DB. Objective and subjective observations of low-temperature thermoplastic materials. *J Hand Ther.* 1995;8(2):138–143.
46. Breger Lee DE, Buford WL. Properties of thermoplastic splinting materials. *J Hand Ther.* 1992;5(3):202–211.
47. Breger Lee DE, Buford WL. Update in splinting materials and methods. *Hand Clin.* 1991;7(1):569–585.
48. *Performance Health Digital Catalog.* Bolingbrook, IL 2018.
49. North Coast Medical Inc. *Hand Therapy Catalog.* San Jose, CA; 2012–2013.
50. Bettoni E, et al., A systematic review of questionnaires to assess patient satisfaction with limb orthoses. *Prosthetics and Orthotics International.* 2016;40(2):158–169.
51. McGee C, et al., First dorsal interosseous muscle contraction results in radiographic reduction of healthy thumb carpometacarpal joint. *Journal of Hand Therapy.* 2015;28(4):375–381.

15 Orthoses in Burn Care

R. SCOTT WARD

SPLINTING, ORTHOTICS, AND PROSTHETICS IN THE MANAGEMENT OF BURNS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Identify the elements of burn injury that contribute to decision-making regarding the application of splints, orthotics, and prosthetics.
2. Describe how wound care may affect the use and application of splints, orthotics, and prosthetics.
3. Discuss components of rehabilitation interventions that may incorporate or affect the use of splints, orthotics, and prosthetics.
4. Describe the use of splints and orthotics in the care of patients with burn injuries.
5. Describe the use of prosthetics for patients with amputations associated with burn injuries.

Rehabilitation of a patient with burns involves programs that focus on restoring functions compromised by the burn injury.[1] Treatment strategies used by therapists address five important goals:

1. Improve or promote wound healing by reducing wound infection
2. Prevent or reduce deformity
3. Increase mobility and strength to achieve maximal function
4. Reduce effects of hypertrophic scarring
5. Educate the patient about recuperation

The rehabilitation plan for patients with burns centers on wound care, positioning, range-of-motion (ROM) exercises, splinting, strengthening exercises, endurance and functional exercises, gait training, and scar control. Burn care has historically emphasized the need for a comprehensive team approach to achieve maximal clinical results, and current data demonstrate the effectiveness of a multidisciplinary approach to care.[1,2]

Burn Injury

Each year in the United States, 475,000 to 500,000 individuals sustain and seek medical care for burn injuries and an estimated 3275 of these injuries result in death.[3] Estimates are that burn injuries result in approximately 40,000 hospitalizations per year.[3] The American Burn Association has outlined criteria for determining the severity of burn injury, which include cause of the injury, burn depth, total body surface area (TBSA) burned, location of the burn, preburn medical history or complicating factors, and patient age.[4,5] A burn injury of any given size is more severe for patients who are very young or very old. The deeper the injury, the more serious the burn. Involvement of the face, eyes, ears, perineum, hands, and feet make the injury more critical. Associated trauma, smoke inhalation injury, and poor preinjury health status are factors that increase severity of the injury.[6] An appropriate understanding of the nature of burn injury and the location and depth of the burn wound is important in understanding and anticipating the possible problems a patient may face during rehabilitation.

CAUSES OF BURNS

Types of burn injury include flame, scald, flash (radiant heat explosions), contact, chemical, electrical, and other (e.g., irradiation, radioactivity) burns.[7] Scald and flame injuries are common causes of burn injury. Preschool-aged children are at the highest risk for suffering scald injuries.[8-10] Flame burns are generally the leading cause of burn injury in other age groups.[8,11] Chemical and electrical burns present differently than other burn injuries. Burns resulting from chemical agents require identification of the causative agent so that proper neutralization of the chemical can take place. Assessment of the depth of chemical burns is difficult at first, but these wounds are predictably deep.[12] An electrical injury may have areas of significant surface burn; however, these areas are often the result of associated flash burns. Small, deep wounds where the current enters or exits the body are more typical.[13] The major complication with rehabilitative consequence of electrical injury is musculoskeletal necrosis, which frequently results in the need for amputation.[14,15]

BURN DEPTH

Thomsen[16] has studied Indian writings dating back to approximately 600 BC that describe four levels or degrees

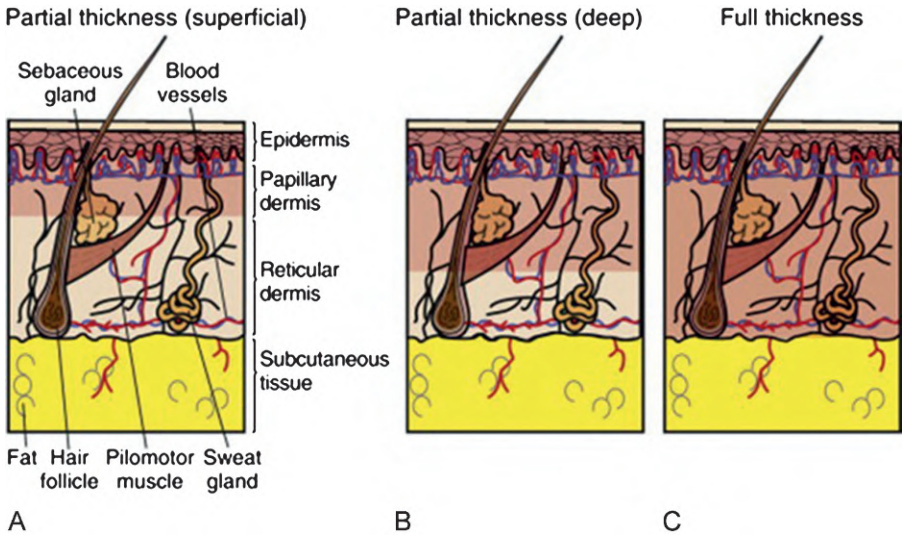


Fig. 15.1 The depths of burn injury. (A) Partial thickness (superficial). (B) Partial thickness (deep). (C) Full thickness. Coral background indicates the depth of the burn injury. (From Edlich RF, Bailey TL, Bill TJ. Thermal Burns. In Max JA, Wall R, Hockberger R. (Eds). *Rpsen's Emergency Medicine: Concepts and Clinical Practice*, 5th ed. Philadelphia, Mosby; 2002:802–813.)

of burn depth and declare that deep burns heal slowly and with scarring.[16] There are two methods to describe burn depth: by degree (first-, second-, or third-degree) or thickness (superficial, partial-thickness, or full-thickness).[17] The thickness terminology is more commonly used in clinical practice. A superficial injury corresponds to a first-degree injury, a partial-thickness to a second-degree injury, and a full-thickness to a third-degree injury (Fig. 15.1).

Clinical characteristics associated with the injury thickness are helpful in identification of the depth of burn.[17] Superficial (first-degree) injuries involve only the epidermis. They are often painful, erythematous, and mildly edematous. Superficial burn injuries usually heal in 3 to 7 days, and they rarely result in scarring. Superficial partial-thickness burns (superficial second-degree) compromise the epidermis and upper dermis. These burns are very painful, very red, and often have blisters or weeping wounds. Superficial partial-thickness burns usually heal in 14 to 21 days and rarely develop scar. In deep partial-thickness burns (deep second-degree), deeper layers of the dermis are damaged. The wound may or may not be painful, it may be cherry red or pale, and the skin is still pliable. Deep partial-thickness burns require more than 21 days to heal spontaneously and will scar. In full-thickness burns (third-degree), all layers of the skin are destroyed. The wound generally has a tan or brown appearance and exhibits a leathery texture. Full-thickness wounds are painless and need several weeks to heal without surgical intervention. Deep partial-thickness burns are often managed by skin grafting; full-thickness injuries require skin grafting. A deeper burn generally correlates with an increased severity of injury.

SURGICAL MANAGEMENT OF BURNS

Small burn wounds may be excised and primarily closed; however, most burn wounds require excision of the burn followed by coverage of the site with a skin graft.[18] Excision of the burn wound is ordinarily performed tangentially; that is, thin layers of the burn are removed until viable tissue is reached.[18,19] Autografts (split-thickness grafts) are harvested from undamaged areas of the body for coverage of the excised wound.[18,19] Skin grafts placed on tangentially excised wounds demonstrate good long-term functional results.[20] Full-thickness skin grafts can also be used. Interestingly, split-thickness grafts scar more than full-thickness grafts.[20]

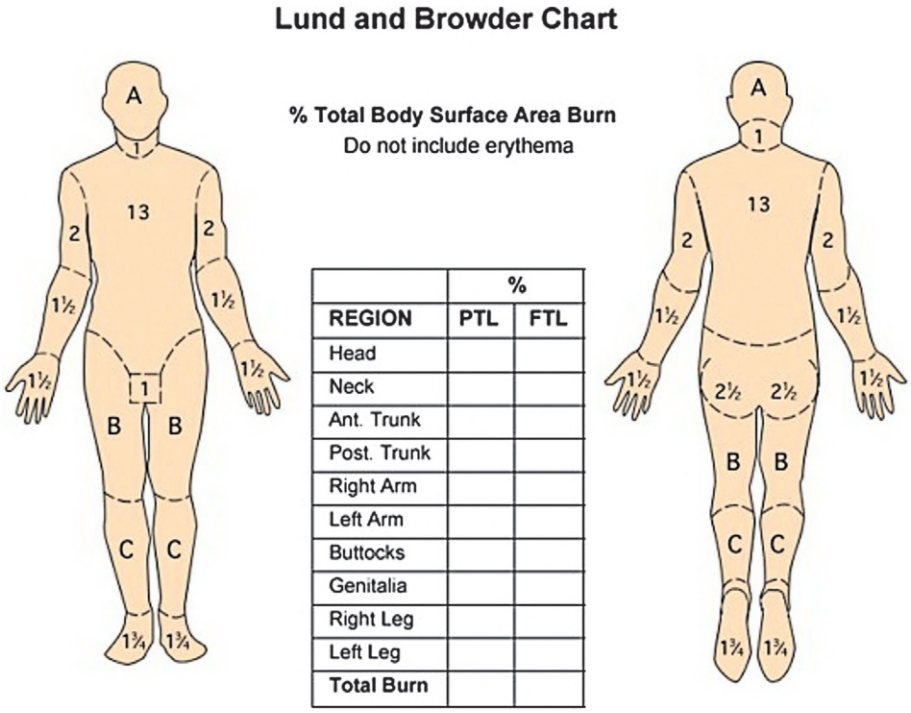
Progress has been made in the use of skin substitutes and cultured skin for the coverage of the excised burn.[18,21-23] Areas treated in this fashion tend to be fragile and susceptible to breakdown.[24] Wounds treated with cultured epithelium do not aggressively scar; however, little information is available about the rehabilitative ramifications of this treatment approach.[25]

BURN SIZE

Burn wound size is reported as a percentage of the TBSA that is injured. Lund and Browder[26] describe a method for estimating percentage of TBSA. Variations in body part ratios during development and diversified proportions of individual anatomic parts are considered in the estimation (Fig. 15.2). The "rule of nines" is another technique for estimating surface area by dividing the body into 11 different areas equal to 9% each; the genitalia make up the remaining 1% of the total 100% estimate.[27] A burn injury increases in severity as the percentage of TBSA burn increases. Large burns usually require longer convalescence, which in turn increases the rehabilitative needs of the patient.

LOCATION OF THE BURN

Burns of the face, perineum, hands, and feet create special problems.[6] Burns of the face are distressing because there may be cosmetic disfigurement, visual impairment, or compromised nutrition (intake of food). Injuries of the face are often accompanied by inhalation injuries. Hands and feet have broad functional importance that can be substantially compromised after burn injury. Severity of injury is significantly magnified as the total surface area of the hand or foot encompassed by the burn increases. Any burn that crosses a joint increases the risk for functional compromise and creates challenges in rehabilitation.



REGION	% PTL	% FTL
Head		
Neck		
Ant. Trunk		
Post. Trunk		
Right Arm		
Left Arm		
Buttocks		
Genitalia		
Right Leg		
Left Leg		
Total Burn		

AREA	Age 0	1	5	10	15	Adult
A = ½ of head	9½	8½	6½	5½	4½	3½
B = ½ of one thigh	2¾	3¼	4	4½	4½	4¼
C = ½ of one lower leg	2½	2½	2¾	3	3¼	3½

Fig. 15.2 Lund and Browder chart. (From Thermal Burns. *Elsevier Point of Care*, 2018)

Wound Care

The time it takes to heal a burn wound is directly related to depth of the injury. The more superficial a wound, the faster it heals. Surgical intervention, such as skin grafting, is often used to reduce healing time for deep wounds. Wound infection can significantly delay healing and lead to increased scar formation.[28]

TOPICAL AGENTS AND WOUND DRESSING

The outermost layer of epidermis (stratum corneum) in intact skin is too dry to support microbial growth and serves as an effective barrier to microbial penetration. As a result, skin infections seldom occur unless the skin is opened.[29] Because this protective barrier is compromised or destroyed in burn injury, the risk for infection is greatly increased. Personal protective equipment, particularly gloves, gowns, and masks, must be worn when caring for patients with burn wounds.[30] Topical agents may be applied to these open wounds after each cleansing and débridement to prevent or manage infections. Topical agents are particularly important for ischemic wounds in which systemic delivery of natural substrates to fight infection is compromised.[29,31,32] A well-applied dressing minimizes discomfort and allows mobility.

Mild lotions help relieve dryness and itching in maturing healed wounds.[29] The use of moisturizers helps prevent healed wounds from cracking or splitting. Because alcohol is a desiccant to the skin and exacerbates dryness, lotions that contain alcohol should be avoided. Fragrance-free moisturizers are recommended; most hypersensitivity reactions are triggered by perfumes. Moisturizers can also be beneficial when applying a splint, orthotic, or prosthetic device to a patient with healed burns or scar because they help protect the skin from desiccation and shear.

Rehabilitative personnel often take an active role in the wound care of a patient with burns. Involvement in wound care provides a better understanding of the reasons for discomfort. Familiarity with wound care procedures is often necessary for outpatient therapy sessions.[33,34] Adjustments in the treatment plan are often necessary as the wound heals and tolerance of certain rehabilitative procedures changes. Consideration of the effects of pressure, shear, and friction on a healing wound or newly healed, fragile skin is especially important when splints, orthotics, prosthetics, or other external devices are being used.

Psychology of Burn Injury

An acute burn injury creates emotional distress. Treatment of the burns is often traumatic as well; stress and anxiety continue during the period of recovery. The psychological consequences of burn trauma in the adult include depression, posttraumatic stress disorder, despair, fear, anxiety, and survivor's guilt.[35-38] Children often feel guilt and manifest loss of interest in play, unpredictable sadness, avoidance, and regression.[39-41]

Psychological adaptation in early phases after burn injury includes denial (often manifest by a feeling of calmness) and concern about prognosis, pain, personal issues, and dependence on burn care staff (depression).[40,42] Individuals who become actively involved in the process of rehabilitation and self-care often are more encouraged and optimistic about the future.[39,42]

Rehabilitation professionals can facilitate psychological function and recovery of patients with burns in several ways. Encouraging independence by allowing individuals as much control over medical procedures as possible helps them to focus on recovery and empowers them to a certain degree.[42,43] Patients feel more comfortable with caregivers if they have the opportunity to get to know one another outside painful treatment settings.[39,43] Support and understanding demonstrate a caring attitude. Tactful but honest answers to questions about prognosis, cosmesis, and functional outcome help establish trust.[39] Ongoing education about the recovery process helps the patient develop realistic expectations about recovery.

Rehabilitation Intervention

Early surgical intervention, availability of nutritional support, and pharmaceutical advances have improved survival after burn injury, and the American Burn Association has reported a survival rate of 96.8% from 2005 to 2014.[3] As a result of improvement in care, treatment, and survival of burned patients, more physical therapists will become responsible for treating these patients for a significant portion of their rehabilitation in settings other than a hospital burn center (e.g., outpatient clinics, community hospitals).

This improvement, in turn, has increased the emphasis on and need for rehabilitation of patients with burns. Physical therapists and occupational therapists are important members of the burn care team.

After examination and evaluation, the team establishes goals and designs and implements an appropriate plan of care. Important rehabilitation goals for patients with burns might include the following as put forward in *The Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*: (1) wound and soft tissue healing is enhanced; (2) risk of infection and complications is reduced; (3) risk of secondary impairments is reduced; (4) maximal ROM is achieved; (5) preinjury level of cardiovascular endurance is restored; (6) good to normal strength is achieved; (7) independent ambulation is achieved; (8) independent function in activities of daily living (ADLs) is increased; (9) scar formation is minimized; (10) patient, family, and caregiver understanding of expectations and goals and outcomes is increased; (11) aerobic capacity is increased; and (12) self-management of symptoms is improved.[44]

Burn rehabilitation interventions emphasize patient independence through achievement of maximal functional recovery.[45]

WOUND HEALING AND SCAR FORMATION

Unhealed burn wounds can create challenges during rehabilitation. Most problems in burn rehabilitation are caused by the ceaseless contraction and hypertrophy of immature burn scars.[46] Scar contracture can lead to visible cosmetic deformity of involved body parts, particularly of the face and hands. Oosterwijk reported that there is a 38% to 54% prevalence of scar contracture at discharge from the hospital.[47] Functional limitations are common when the scar crosses a joint. The contraction of scar has been classically associated with a type of fibroblast called myofibroblasts, which have contractile properties.[48-50]

Burn wound healing encompasses three phases: inflammatory phase, proliferative phase, and maturation, or remodeling, phase.[51] The inflammatory phase is characterized by the formation of new blood vessels, an initial defense against infection, and migration of fibroblast and epithelial cells into the injured area. Treatment focuses on proper wound care to encourage vascular regrowth and retard contamination of the site. The proliferative phase is marked by continued revascularization, rebuilding, and strengthening of the wound site as a result of vigorous synthesis of collagen by fibroblasts, and reepithelialization.[52] Treatment is directed toward promoting epithelialization and encouraging proper alignment of newly deposited collagen fibers. During the maturation phase, the wound site is further strengthened by protracted deposition of collagen fibers by active fibroblasts. Treatment during maturation stresses lengthening the scar, reconditioning the patient, and returning the patient to preburn functional levels. Activity and rehabilitation interventions aimed at opposing wound and scar tightness and education about the process of recovery are critical in all phases of healing.

While fibroblasts deposit collagen during the proliferative phase, macrophages and endothelial cells release enzymes that degrade collagen. The severity of scar formation is determined by the balance between collagen synthesis and lysis: the more that collagen deposition exceeds its breakdown, the more likely a significant scar will form.[53,54] A hypertrophic scar is raised above the normal surface of skin (Fig. 15.3).[55-57] A keloid occurs when the scar extends beyond the initial boundaries of the wound.[55-57]

An immature scar is raised, red, leathery, and stiff. As the scar matures, it becomes pale, relatively soft and flattened, and more yielding.[58-60] The process of scar maturation requires 6 to 18 months after wound closure; scars actively contract during maturation.[58,59,61] Contraction is most vigorous in the early months of maturation but continues throughout this period of remodeling.

Superficial and partial-thickness burns usually do not scar; full-thickness burns almost always do. Full-thickness wounds closed by a skin graft scar significantly less than a similar wound allowed to heal spontaneously. Very dark-skinned or very fair-skinned individuals and those with familial history of susceptibility to scarring are more

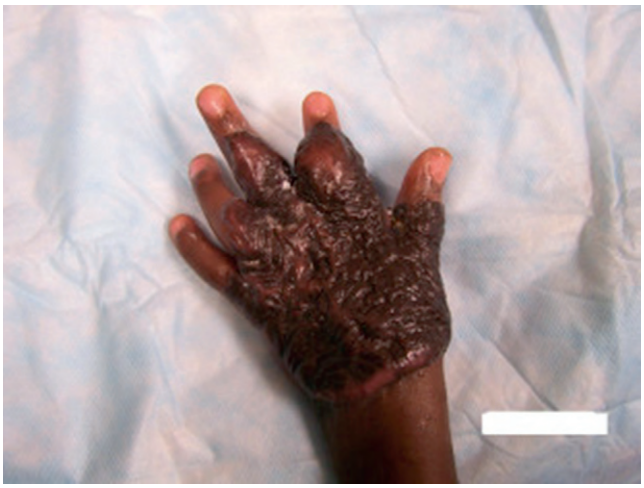


Fig. 15.3 Hypertrophic scarring of burned hand. (From Dodd H, Fletchall S, Starnes C, Jacobson K. Current Concepts of Burn Rehabilitation Part II. *Clinics in Plastic Surgery* 2017;44(4):713–728.)

likely to form hypertrophic scar.[62-65] The larger the burn, the greater the likelihood of scar formation.[64-66] A contracture occurs when a portion or distortion of the shortening scar becomes fixed or semifixed.[65] The axilla, elbow, hand knee, ankle, face, and neck are common and most problematic sites of scar contracture formation.[63,65,67-69] One of the most important goals of burn rehabilitation is to prevent, counteract, and minimize the adverse effects of scar contraction.[67-69]

OPERATIVE SCAR MANAGEMENT

Surgery is used to correct scar contractures that have created specific functional deficits or deformities.[70] Surgical techniques used to release scar contracture include split-thickness or full-thickness skin grafts, skin flaps, Z-plasties, and tissue expansion.[70,71] Most surgeries are deferred until at least 6 months after the burn or until the scar is sufficiently mature.[70,71] Although surgery alleviates contracture-related problems, it also creates a new wound with its own subsequent scar maturation process. Rehabilitation is necessary after a majority of reconstructive surgeries to again avert the effects of contraction.

NONOPERATIVE SCAR MANAGEMENT

The nonoperative control of hypertrophic scarring most commonly involves pressure therapy and the application of silicone gel sheeting. The use of continuous pressure for the treatment of burn scars was described in 1971.[72] Continuous pressure is commonly used, yet the data supporting its use are not without debate.[73] Pressure has also been shown to relieve other aggravating discomforts of the healing burn wound, such as itching and blistering.[74-77] ROM is not significantly impeded with pressure garments despite the restriction felt by patients (particularly initially) when fit with pressure garments.[78]

Pressure therapy is indicated when healing requires more than 14 days or if skin grafting has been performed. There are several strategies to assess burn scar condition. The Patient and Observer Scar Assessment Scale uses ratings from the patient and an observer about the state of the scarring.[79] The Vancouver Scar Scale developed by Sullivan and colleagues describes severity of the scar by rating pigmentation, vascularity, pliability, and height of the scar tissue (Box 15.1).[80]

Early pressure therapy is used to control edema in a wound even if there is no ensuing scar formation. Some of the most common elastic materials used on newly healing, still fragile wounds include elastic bandages, Coban self-adherent wrap (3M Medical, St. Paul, MN), or elasticized cotton tubular bandages such as Tubigrip (SePro Healthcare, Inc., Montgomeryville, PA).[81-83] These materials are useful while the patient is waiting for the arrival of custom-fit, antiburn scar supports.[81-83]

Individuals with scars are commonly fitted with custom-fit pressure garments for the duration of the maturation phase of healing. Custom-fit, antiburn scar supports are available from manufacturers such as Bio-Concepts (Phoenix, AZ), Barton-Carey Medical Products (Perrysburg, OH), Gottfried Medical (Toledo, OH), and Medical Z (San Antonio, TX). Although the measuring procedure varies by manufacturer, most require measurements

Box 15.1 Vancouver Scar Scale Ratings for Assessing Burn Scar

Pigmentation

0 = Normal (scar color closely resembles that of the rest of the body)
1 = Hypopigmentation
2 = Hyperpigmentation

Pliability

0 = Normal
1 = Supple (flexible with minimum resistance)
2 = Yielding (gives way to pressure)
3 = Firm (inflexible, not easily moved, resistant to manual pressure)
4 = Banding (ropelike tissue that blanches with extension on the scar)
5 = Contracture (permanent shortening of scar, producing deformity or distortion)

Vascularity

0 = Normal (scar color closely resembles that of the rest of the body)
1 = Pink
2 = Red
3 = Purple

Height

0 = Normal (flat)
1 = Raised less than 2 mm
2 = Raised less than 5 mm
3 = Raised more than 5 mm

Modified from Sullivan T, Smith J, Kernoda J, et al. Rating the burn scar. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1990;11(3):256–260.

approximately every 1 to 11/2 inches along each extremity, with special guidelines for the torso, face, and hands. Burn scar supports can be fabricated to fit almost any body part, including the face, torso, upper extremity, hand, and lower extremity. Some burn centers fabricate rigid or semirigid face masks (essentially orthotics) in an attempt to gain a better match with facial contours.[84]

Pressure garments and devices are worn through the entire process of scar maturation, to be discontinued only when the scar has completely matured.[1] Fit of pressure garments is regularly reassessed to ensure the desired therapeutic effect. Regular follow-up provides an opportunity for the patient to discuss other ongoing rehabilitative problems associated with the burn.

Silicone gel sheets or pads can be put right on a maturing scar and have demonstrated efficacy in helping with the successful management of hypertrophic scar.[73] Silicone gel sheeting is generally applied over small areas or on scar where it is otherwise difficult to provide sufficient pressure. The mechanism of action for the effect of silicone gel on scar is not known.[85,86]

Burn Rehabilitation Interventions

Many different types of rehabilitation interventions are appropriate in the care of patients with burns. Although many interventions are briefly described in the following section, the emphasis is on the use of splints, orthoses, and prosthetic devices.

THERAPEUTIC EXERCISE

Exercise helps minimize negative outcomes of burn injury and burn scar formation by improving mobility and function.[87,88] As important and effective as exercise is in burn rehabilitation, some individuals may be reluctant to exercise (and some therapists may be reluctant to encourage them) because of the anticipation of increased pain or anxiety about damaging newly healing tissue. Exercise programs for patients with burns are principally directed at the prevention of burn scar contractures and the side effects of inactivity and disuse. Additional consequences of immobilization in these patients can include progressive contracture of the joint capsule and pericapsular structures, atrophy and contracture of muscle, deleterious effects on articular cartilage, and possible decrease in bone strength. Exercise is a significant health promotion, disability prevention, and quality-of-life component in the rehabilitation of patients with burns.[88]

Assessment of location and depth of burn injury identifies those areas most at risk of burn scar contracture. This assessment also guides design of an exercise program to improve mobility, strength, and functional status. Past and present medical conditions influence rehabilitative expectations; a previous orthopedic injury may have already reduced ROM of a particular joint, whereas a concomitant inhalation injury may limit exercise tolerance.

Active Exercise

After a burn, exercise may be difficult because of edema, pain (particularly over areas of partial-thickness burns), the loss of skin elasticity in the burned tissue, and wound contraction.[45,87] Early on, edema is a major contributor to stiffness of joints; active exercise is valuable in reducing the edema.[34,89] Positioning and compressive wraps or devices are used for edema control in addition to exercise. Pain tolerance varies widely among individuals. The therapist is challenged to help the patient understand the importance of activity despite the pain involved. Many individuals have relief of their pain and stiffness after exercise periods, which may encourage them to participate in the subsequent therapy sessions. Persons who understand the advantages of exercise may be asked to confer with and encourage newly injured individuals or those having difficulty with their exercises.

General stiffness from the loss of skin elasticity and wound contracture is a short-term problem but often persists during the process of scar maturation, especially for those who form a hypertrophic scar. Exercise targeting those areas most vulnerable to scar formation identified in the initial evaluation must begin as early as possible after admission.[45,90] Early presentation of an exercise routine aids edema control, relieves stiffness, and prevents loss of strength and ROM. The early introduction of active exercise reinforces the importance of exercise to the individual, who will incorporate daily exercise as an important contributor to overall recovery. Because of the wide scope of benefits derived from active exercises, they are the preferred form of ROM exercises for patients with burns. In a survey of physical and occupational therapists, 96% reported instituting active ROM exercises within 24 hours of acute burn center admission.[91]

Patients are also encouraged to perform independent ADLs.[45,89] Self-reliance is important after burn injury, and independence can increase the patient's self-confidence.[45,89] It is likely that the more patients can do, particularly in directing their exercise programs, the more compliant they will become.[90] Independence in an exercise program is therefore an important goal for those recovering from burn injury.

The primary goals of active exercise for patients with acute burns are opposition of tissue contraction and strengthening. For an individual with a burn crossing the antecubital fossa and weakness of the biceps brachii, exercise is focused on preservation of elbow-extension ROM and functional strength of the muscle. If a patient with a burn encompassing the lower leg and ankle also has weakness and atrophy of the triceps surae, appropriate strengthening exercises may be performed but certainly not at the sacrifice of active ankle ROM.

Conditioning exercises can be incorporated to improve the cardiovascular status of the patient.[92,93] Occupation-specific training programs may be a part of the long-term rehabilitation plan as patients plan to return to their jobs. This type of activity may be directed at one or a few specific functions or may incorporate a traditional work-hardening program.

Gait Training

The functional nature of ambulation makes it an important exercise for burned lower extremities.[94] Ambulation assists with edema control, ROM, and strengthening in all lower extremity joints. Ambulation also helps with the function of other physiologic systems such as the cardiovascular,

gastrointestinal, and renal systems. Individuals with lower extremity burns exhibit gait deviations related to compromised joint function, such as incomplete hip and knee flexion in initial swing and incomplete knee extension in terminal swing. Initial contact may be made with the entire foot (foot flat) instead of the heel, and loading response may be compromised by lack of plantar flexion ROM or an unwillingness to perform the controlled knee flexion necessary for shock absorption. Excessive knee flexion in midstance, poor or absent heel-off and weight shift in terminal stance, and inadequate knee flexion in preswing are often present.[34] Differences in individual gait deviations in gait phases are generally based on variations in the location, size, and depth of the burn injury and levels of pain. Any gait deviation caused by the burn may accentuate the need for vigilant gait training of a patient with burns who also has a lower extremity prosthesis. Exercise is an important adjunct to gait training because it can address specific movement limitations of the lower limbs.

Passive Exercise and Stretching

Passive exercise is included in therapy regimens when patients are unable to move on their own or cannot actively complete normal ROM. Passive ROM and slow, gentle stretching exercises that elongate healing soft tissues are used to preserve and improve joint ROM.[95] Eighty-four percent of physical and occupational therapists reported initiating passive ROM stretching exercises within the first 24 hours after burn center admission.[91] Blanching of the scar indicates an appropriate amount of stretch. Although the scar should be stretched to the point of tolerance, joint movement should not be forced because of possible tissue damage and the potential for heterotopic ossification.[96-98]

Positioning or splints are used after a stretching session to maintain the achieved ROM. Suitable stretching positions must also consider scars that cross multiple joints and therefore affect a broad kinematic chain.

Most of the exercise equipment typically found in rehabilitation settings are appropriate for patients with burns. The therapist must decide when certain equipment will be most beneficial and incorporate the use of this resource into the plan of care. The use of latex rubber tubing for strengthening and overhead reciprocal pulleys for increasing ROM are a few examples of simple equipment that have been described in the literature.[99-101] Bicycle ergometers for either the upper or lower extremities assist with motion, provide resistance, and allow for some cardiovascular workout.

PHYSICAL AGENTS

Because of the variety of treatment goals important for burn rehabilitation, many different types of modalities may be used for appropriate intervention. Functional electrical stimulation (neuromuscular electrical stimulation), transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, ultrasound, and paraffin are physical agents that have been reported to be used in burn care. Hydrotherapy has been reported in the literature to be used for dressing removal and exercise.[102] However, hydrotherapy is no longer indicated for wound cleansing.[103,104] If hydrotherapy is chosen as a thermal modality, precautions similar to those used for any open wound care are necessary to reduce the chance of cross-contamination.

Functional electrical stimulation has been successfully used to treat hands that have responded poorly to typical treatment.[105] Burn pain has been altered by transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation in some cases.[106] Ultrasound has been used to treat pain and ROM impairments in patients with burns; however, the efficacy of ultrasound in either decreasing pain or improving motion is still a matter of some debate.[107-109] The gentle heat provided by paraffin, as well as the potential skin softening from the mineral oil in the paraffin, may be reasons for the use of this modality in burn care.[110]

Healing skin and recently healed skin are often very sensitive. Scar tissue has varying levels of sensory deficit.[111,112] Accordingly, heat, cold, coupling agents, and electrode adhesives may lead to skin breakdown. Caution must be exercised when applying any modality; thorough pretreatment and posttreatment inspection of the site is warranted.

POSITIONING

Positioning is an important component of any burn rehabilitation program. Positioning is used for acute burn and postsurgical edema control and to prevent or treat scar contractures.[113,114] The initial burn therapy evaluation identifies sites at risk for contracture formation; appropriate counteractive positions become part of the therapy plan. Contracture prevention is more successful when a program of positioning and activity is instituted as soon after burn as possible.[45,65,114]

Postexercise positioning extends the effects of activity; positioning is also fundamental for individuals who cannot move or exercise. Manufactured positioning devices, such as arm boards that attach to the side of the bed, are available to assist in proper positioning of extremities. Positioning need not be expensive or require intricate equipment. Avoiding the use of a pillow behind the head is a simple way of decreasing neck flexion and facilitating a neutral alignment of the head and neck. A pillow or several folded blankets placed under the arms can effectively elevate the burned limb while keeping the elbows extended and supporting the hands. At least some horizontal flexion of the shoulders is indicated to minimize prolonged stretch of the brachial plexus.[115,116] A washcloth, towel, or gauze roll placed in the palm helps hold the hand in a functional position. Pillows, high-top tennis shoes, towels, blankets, and foot boards help position the foot with a neutral ankle.[45] Positioning requires monitoring and cooperation of clinical team members and family to ensure maintenance of the desired positions. Suggestions of positions for a patient with burns are shown in Box 15.2.

Splinting and Orthotics

Hippocrates described burn scars as "tetanus," and Wilhelm Fabry illustrated a splint to treat a hand for hyperextension scar contractures.[16] In the early to mid-1900s, patients with burns were placed in splints immediately on admission to the hospital in an effort to prevent contraction; splints were removed for brief periods to permit wound care. Most burns were not covered by skin graft until at least 5 weeks after injury. The advent of surgical excision and grafting in the mid-1900s decreased the time required for a burn to

Box 15.2 Preferred Positions for Patients with Burns

Neck	Extension, no rotation
Shoulder	Abduction (90–110 degrees)
	External rotation
	Horizontal flexion (10–15 degrees)
Elbow and forearm	Extension with supination
Wrist	Neutral or slight extension
Hand	Functional position (dorsal burn)
	Finger and thumb extension (palmar burn)
Trunk	Straight postural alignment
Hip	Neutral extension/flexion
	Neutral rotation
	Slight abduction
Knee	Extension
Ankle	Neutral or slight dorsiflexion
	No inversion
	Neutral toe extension/flexion

heal. As a result, prophylactic splinting became a less common procedure, and in the late 1970s and early 1980s active exercise became the primary treatment method used by physical therapists working with burn patients.[45] However, the use of splints has become a critical adjunct to active exercise and positioning of individuals with burns. The term *splint* is used in burn care more often than *orthotic*, even though the terms and the devices they represent are nearly synonymous.

Splints may have a multiplicity of purposes.[114,117] Splinting is often used to protect fragile wounds or newly grafted burn wounds. Splints are also used to position joints to maintain achieved ROM or as dynamic devices to apply gentle prolonged stretch to increase ROM. Splints cannot replace active exercise; contractures will form even in desirable positions if a patient is constantly splinted in a particular position. Static splints are designed to maintain a position of choice by immobilizing the joint.[114,118,119] Dynamic splints are designed to exercise or mobilize a joint.[119-122] A splint may also enhance the pressure applied to a scar by a pressure support. If unusual pain (other than from gentle tissue elongation or stretch), sensory impairment, or wound maceration occurs at the site of the splint, it must be removed and the fit adjusted.[123]

A splint should be fabricated with a proper, secure fit to minimize friction injuries or skin breakdown at pressure points. Pressure points over bony prominences are particularly vulnerable in this regard. Large, broad surface contact areas better distribute forces and reduce the likelihood of pressure-related tissue injury. The splint is worn only when it will not impede the functional activities or requisite exercises of the patient; splints are often donned during rest periods and at night when the patient is sleeping. The corners and edges of the splint are rounded and sometimes padded to avoid shear stresses. The design of the splint may also need to be adapted for orthopedic hardware such as surgical pins or for intravenous line sites. The splint design should, whenever possible, allow for ease of application and removal to enhance compliance among staff and family members who otherwise might struggle while maneuvering the splint. Careful consideration should be given as to the rationale for the application of a splint in any clinical case.[124]

Materials used in fabricating splints include thermoplastics, plaster, and elastomer compounds. Thermoplastics resource companies include Orthoplast (Johnson and Johnson, New Brunswick, NJ), Orfit (Orfit Industries, Jericho, NY), Supracor (Supracor Inc., San Jose, CA), and Hexalite (Reebok International, Canton, MA). Hexalite and plaster are most often used to make temporary splints. Thermoplastic material, which can be remolded to adjust fit, is an ideal splinting material for patients with burns. The amount of material to be used is determined by measuring the area to be splinted and the design of the splint. The splint is then molded to the individual. When the splinting material is set, or hardened, the splint should be inspected for correct fit to avoid pressure- and shear-related problems. Splints are often padded with gauze or any of the numerous cushion or foam materials available. For areas where fragile skin is problematic, foam is a soft alternative splinting material; however, it does not provide the same resistance to force that more rigid materials do. The advantages and disadvantages, as well as indications and contraindications of therapist-fabricated splinting and burn care, are summarized in Box 15.3. Although a number of appropriate splint designs for each anatomic site are possible, some are chosen more commonly than others and the choices are based on clinical indications and are not generally evidence based.[124]

NECK

The possible consequences of anterior neck burns include flexion contracture, facial disfiguration, loss of cosmetic contours of the neck, and difficulty with

Box 15.3 Advantages, Disadvantages, Indications, and Contraindications of Therapist-Fabricated Splints in Burn Care

Advantages

Maintains or increases (serial or dynamic) joint position
Can be used during any phase of healing
Custom formed for each individual
Adjustable
May protect tissue (e.g., exposed tissues such as tendon or joint capsule, or skin from pressure)

Disadvantages

Potential for skin breakdown
Shearing may occur if not properly fit or fixed over a joint
May be difficult for nontherapist to apply

Indications

Need for positioning specific joints
Wound or scar contraction
Decreased joint range of motion
Need for safeguarding anatomic structures
Need for conforming scar tissue
Uncommunicative or nonresponsive patient

Contraindications

Direct application onto fragile tissue
Constrictive fixation strapping or wraps

mastication.[114,123,125] A molded neck conformer splint helps to prevent neck flexion contracture and provides compression on the forming scar. A rectangular piece of low-temperature thermoplastic splinting material is cut to span the distance from ear to ear along the jaw line and from below the lower lip to the sternoclavicular notch. After heating, the splint is molded directly on the patient's neck. Padding is added to protect vulnerable areas, and a hook-and-loop material strap is attached over the back of the neck to secure the splint.[123] Because this type of splint is occlusive and covers many bony prominences, the splint must be frequently removed to inspect the skin for any areas of irritation or breakdown.

For wounds that do not involve much of the chin, soft cervical collars have also been successful in providing positioning, pressure, and contour.[123,125] Although soft collars are more comfortable to wear, they do not extend over the chin for increased moment arm resistance. Commercially available Philadelphia collars may be an alternative. Watusi splints can also be designed to assist with conforming neck scarring and maintaining neck position.[126]

AXILLA AND SHOULDER

Burns involving the axilla and shoulder may lead to adduction contracture and webbing of the axillary folds. This type of deformity contributes to difficulty in reaching and overhead use of the arm, components of many functional activities. A custom-fit conforming splint is often used to inhibit development of such contracture and webbing. Conforming splints for axillary burns support the entire arm, from the wrist through the axilla, and extend down the trunk to at least waist level.[127] The splint wraps around the trunk from umbilicus to spine, one third of the circumference of the chest, at the axilla around both folds, and one half of the circumference of the arm at the brachium, elbow, and wrist.[123,128,129] The splint is molded directly to the patient (flaring at the iliac crest may be necessary), and appropriate padding is applied. Hook-and-loop material strapping or other wraps around the trunk, shoulder, arm, and wrist secure the splint. A more traditional airplane splint may also be used to counteract the problems at the shoulder (Fig. 15.4). Clavicle straps or soft foam may also be used to help conform the axillae.[130]

ELBOW AND FOREARM

The most common deformities caused by burns involving the elbow and forearm are elbow flexion and pronation contractures. The elbow joint is most often fit with a conformer splint designed as either an anterior or posterior gutter or trough (Fig. 15.5).[114,123,125,128] The splint is fit to the arm from the proximal third of the brachium to the distal third of the forearm. Partial circumference measurements are taken at the proximal and distal sites and the elbow. The splint is molded directly on the patient, with padding added. The splint should be flared or "bubbled" at the bony prominences of the elbow. The splint is held in place by hook-and-loop material straps or by circular gauze or elastic wrapping. Commercially available three-point extension or air splints may also be used.

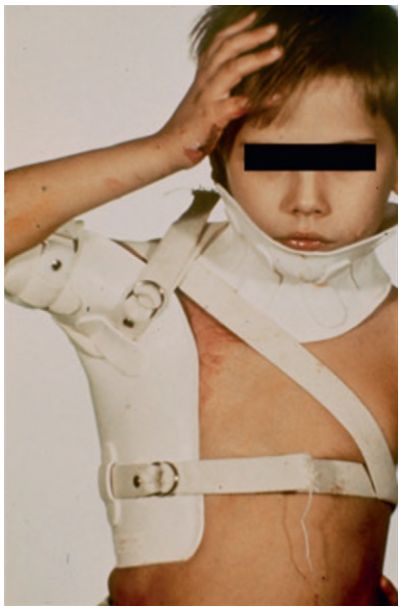


Fig. 15.4 Three-piece airplane splint designed to reduce the likelihood of development of an axillary contracture during burn healing. (From Serghiou MA, Ott S, Cowan A, Kemp-Offenberg J. Burn Rehabilitation Along the Continuum of Care. In: *Total Burn Care* 2018;47:476–508 e4. Elsevier.)

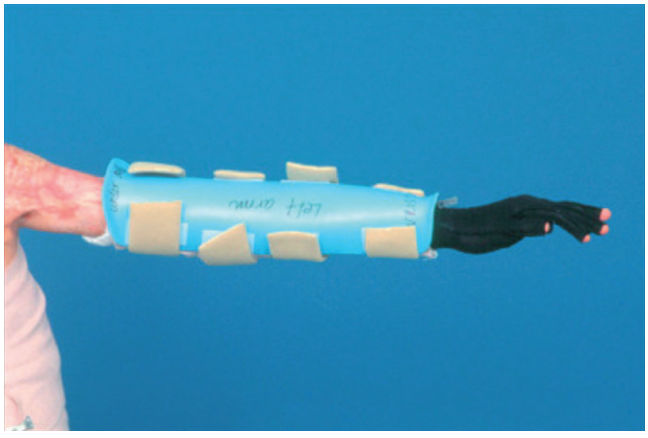


Fig. 15.5 Elbow gutter splint used to prevent contracture of the anticubital forearm region during burn healing. (From Capek KD, Zapata-Sirvent R, Huang TT. Contractual deformities involving the shoulder (Axilla), Elbow, Hip and Knee Joints in Burned Patients. In: *Total Burn Care* 2018;53:513–588.e1. Elsevier.)

WRIST AND HAND

Burns of the wrist may lead to contractures in extension or flexion or ulnar or radial deviation, depending on the location of the burn. The prevention of flexion or extension contractures of the hand and fingers is important, as is maintenance of the web space of the thumb. Many different designs of wrists and hand splints exist; the best option for a particular individual is based on the anticontracture position of the joint or joint complex that is involved. Splints should be as simple in design and application as possible, include plans for reevaluation and allowances for modification as needed, and include clear instructions to the patient and caregivers for precautions, wearing schedule, and proper fit.[114]

The most common splint used at the wrist and the hand is the antideformity splint.[123,125,128,131-133] This splint is designed to position the wrist and hand in the functional position. A modification of this splint, the pan splint, positions all finger joints in extension (Fig. 15.6). Splints that conform to the thumb, thumb web space, and the index finger can help to preserve the thumb web space.[123,125,128] Dorsal- or palmar-resting extension splints, used when the wrist has been burned but the hand is not damaged, may be custom molded or are commercially available. Finger gutter or trough splints are used to treat individual fingers, on the basis of the same principles used in elbow conformer splints.

Another easily fabricated splint that is useful to minimize formation of either flexion or extension contractures when multiple joints of the fingers have been burned is the sandwich splint.[125,134] Foam padding is attached to two pieces of splinting material that have been cut large enough to cover the hand. The burned hand is "sandwiched" between these two padded supports, which are held in place with a circumferential wrap (Fig. 15.7).[134]

TRUNK AND PELVIS

Patients with burns involving the anterior trunk are at risk for developing kyphosis. Clavicular straps in a figure-of-eight design have been used to position the shoulders in retraction and counteract the flexion forces in healing upper trunk burns.[114,116] Commercially available corsets or thoracolumbar spinal orthotics may be prescribed to help maintain posture for individuals with burns of the mid and lower trunk if it is being compromised by scar contracture.

For burns of the pelvis, groin, and hip, the problem is the likelihood of hip flexion and adduction contractures. Hip abduction splints reinforced with a spreader bar or an anterior hip spica splint may be necessary for some patients.[125]

Fig. 15.6 Thermoplastic pan hand splint. (From Serghiou MA, Ott S, Cowan A, Kemp-Offenberg J. Burn Rehabilitation Along the Continuum of Care. In: *Total Burn Care* 2018;47:476–508 e4. Elsevier.)

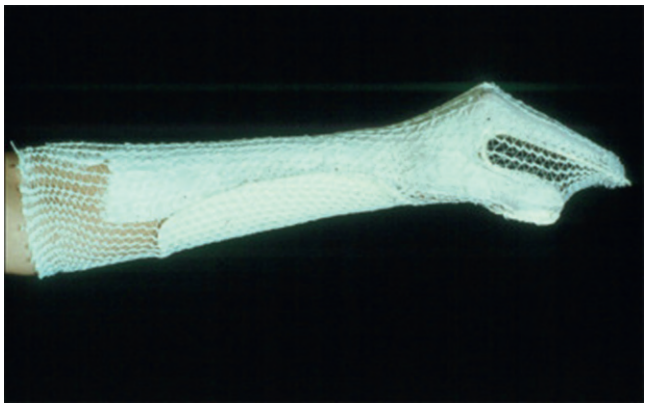


Fig. 15.7 Positioning splint for contracture management. (From Dewey WS, Richard RL, Parry IS. Positioning Splint and Contracture Management. In: *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation Clinics of North America*; 2011;22 (2):229–247.)

LOWER EXTREMITY

Flexion contracture is an important concern at the knee. Splinting of the knee is similar to that of the elbow, adjusted to fit the longer segments of the lower extremity.[123,125,128,135] Although knee conformer splints are most often chosen for patients with burns involving the knee, three-point extension splints or air splints have also been used to reduce risk of flexion contracture as the burn scar matures.

Burns of the ankles and feet often present challenges for splinting similar to those of the wrist and hand because of the complexity of structure and arthrokinematics. The location of the burn dictates whether the patient is at risk for contracture in either a plantar flexion or dorsiflexion direction (or both). Posterior foot drop splints, or anterior or posterior ankle conformers, are the most commonly fabricated ankle splints.[123,125,128] The distance from toes to calf is measured, and limb half-circumferences determine the width of the splint. After the desired splint pattern is cut from thermoplastic material, the splint is molded directly on the patient. Necessary padding is applied, and the splint is flared at the malleoli and often on the posterior heel. Successful treatment of burns to the dorsum of feet can be difficult.

Another important consideration is the extrapolation of splint designs for other anatomic areas to a seemingly unrelated location. In 2001, Guild[136] reported an application of the designs from various splints for dorsal hand burns to a

splint for the treatment of burns of the dorsal foot. The splint has a base and a dorsal thermoplastic piece that fits over the toes and is secured with a hook-and-loop material strap. This splint is intended to minimize or prevent contractures of the dorsal foot during scar maturation. "Bunny boots" and other commercial foot drop splints can also be used for positioning ankles that have been burned.[123] Molded leather shoes can be useful in positioning both the ankles and toes of involved feet.[125] High-top gym shoes provide a less expensive but similar option for foot splinting.[39,125] Toe conformer splints can be fabricated for the dorsal surface of the foot to prevent toe extension contracture.

FACE AND MOUTH

Burns of the face can affect the eyes and eyelids, the contours of the face, and the soft tissue around the mouth.[137,138] Splints designed to support the functional contours of specific areas of the face are often fabricated. The most commonly applied facial splints for burns are an elastic fabric face mask, the use of silicone gel inserts under a fabric face mask, or a transparent face mask. Transparent face masks are becoming the standard of pressure care for the face and are generally fabricated from a pattern of the head and face often through computer-aided design.[139,140] The transparency of the mask allows visualization of the areas of the face for signs of pressure, such as blanching, to help control the contour of the scarring.[139,140,141] This type of splint helps to decrease scar hypertrophy and minimize or prevent ectropion (eversion) deformity of the lower eyelids and the lips.

Contracture of the mouth (microstomia) is particularly troublesome because it interferes with feeding (and subsequently nutrition), speaking, and dental care.[142,143] Microstomia prevention splints, designed to apply pressure or stretch to commissures and fibrotic oral muscles, are commercially available or may be custom made (Fig. 15.8).[144-147] This type of splint or appliance is worn at all times when the patient is not eating or receiving oral care or is speaking.[147] In cases in which contracture affects the actual opening of the mouth, cone-shaped splints of thermoplastic material can be used to increase the opening of the mouth progressively. The cone is placed between the teeth after the mouth is opened. As the mouth is able to open wider, the narrower portions of the cone are cut off and the patient progresses to a wider part of the splint to widen the opening of the mouth.

ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS

Simple materials such as tongue depressors secured with gauze wrapping at various joints have been described as "splints."[148] Elastic wraps have also been used to increase ROM much like dynamic splints.[149,150] These methods may be useful as temporary devices but are not effective substitutes for more stable splinting materials.[149]

For patients with existing contractures, a serial splinting protocol is often used to assist in stretching the deformity. Plaster casts, thermoplastic materials, and Dynasplints (Dynasplint Systems Inc., Severna Park, MD) have been successfully used in this manner.[151,152] Individually fabricated dynamic splints are also helpful for individuals with contracture after burns.

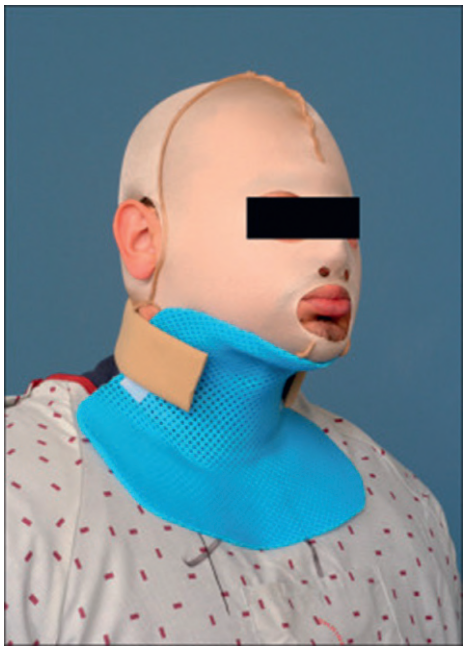


Fig. 15.8 Facial Pressure Garment with neck contour splint to prevent neck musculature contracture. (From Serghiou MA, Ott S, Cowan A, Kemp-Offenberg J. Burn Rehabilitation Along the Continuum of Care. In: *Total Burn Care* 2018;47:476–508 e4. Elsevier.)

Any splint worn over an open wound may be a transfer agent for microorganisms from the burn.[153] In fact, organisms can be cultured from splint surfaces 50% of the time.[154] Effective strategies for cleaning burn splints are imperative. Simple washing and drying of the splint is not always effective in eliminating all organisms. The use of quaternary ammonia (1 oz per gallon of water) has been found to be 100% effective as a cleaning agent and is the recommended splint-cleaning strategy.[154]

Occasionally, special rehabilitative complications arise after burn injury, especially in patients who have sustained deep thermal wounds or an electrical injury. The most commonly encountered complications are exposed tendons and peripheral neuropathy with motor or sensory deficit. Splints can be useful in protecting or supporting these areas. Exposed tendons must be kept moist with an ointment-based gauze or biologic dressing. The limb is splinted in a position where the tendon is slack, and aggressive exercise is avoided.[95] Idiopathic neuropathy has been reported to occur at various rates ranging from 2% to 52% depending on the study.[155] Secondary neuropathies may be caused by direct thermal injury, edema of soft tissue, inflammation, immobilization, and heterotopic ossification.[156] In addition, overelongation or compression of a peripheral nerve through the aggressive use and improper application of dressings and splints can lead to peripheral neuropathy; such problems can be prevented by careful systematic monitoring of a patient's position, tightness of dressings, and the fit of splints.[95,155–158] Splints may also be fit to overcome a temporary or long-term neurologic deficit such as a drop foot.

Case Example 15.1 **A Patient With Burns of Both Upper Extremities**

M.J. is a 17-year-old girl who was injured in a house fire 3 weeks ago and sustained 11% total body surface area burns to her face and both upper extremities. Facial burns were partial thickness in depth and spontaneously healed within 2 weeks. The burn injuries affecting both arms from midbrachium down each forearm and the dorsum of each hand were full thickness and required skin grafting for wound closure. Skin grafting procedures were completed during the first 2 weeks of hospitalization in a series of three surgeries.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What tests and measures would be most appropriate to document and track changes in M.J.'s range of motion (ROM), strength, endurance, and functional status? How might they need to be modified or adapted because of the severity of her burns?
- How will the medical care of her healing partial-thickness facial burns and her full-thickness, grafted upper extremity burns be similar or different in terms of pain control, likelihood of scarring, and wound care? What factors might influence maturation of burn scars in this young woman?
- At this point in time, what are the primary rehabilitation goals for this young woman? How do rehabilitation goals change over the stages of wound healing (inflammatory, proliferative, and maturation)?
- What joints are most at risk for developing contracture in the early phases of healing? What positions would be optimal to reduce risk of contracture development? What type of orthosis might you recommend at this time? What other interventions would be important to consider as she progresses through the stages of wound healing?
- What passive and active exercise strategies might you recommend to enhance ROM, flexibility of healing tissues, strength, and endurance?
- What education and supportive strategies might be necessary?
- How long would you expect M.J. to be involved in rehabilitation activities? How will you assess whether your interventions are accomplishing the rehabilitation goals?

INTERVENTIONS AND OUTCOMES

When M.J. is not immobilized after surgery, she is involved in a treatment program that includes upper extremity mobility exercises and strengthening exercises and an aerobic conditioning exercise program. Early ROM is generally mildly limited because of edema and wound contraction. After the skin-grafting procedures, ROM at all affected joints is improving, with the exception of declines in left elbow extension and left hand metacarpophalangeal flexion (digits 2 through 5). An anterior elbow-conforming splint is fabricated for the left arm, and a functional position splint with approximately 40 degrees of metacarpophalangeal flexion is made for the left hand. Both splints are made of thermoplastic material and secured with hook-and-loop material strapping. These splints are applied during rest periods, naps, and the night to prevent further loss of ROM. When awake, M.J. participates in therapy sessions and a home program of passive stretching and active exercise of all the affected joints, with emphasis on the troublesome left elbow and hand. Use of the splints is discontinued after 2 weeks because the ROM has improved to normal.

Amputation and Prosthetics in Burn Rehabilitation

Electrical burn injuries are more likely to lead to amputation than any other type of burn. Significant damage occurs as electrical current passes through nerve tissue, vascular tissue, and other deep structures. The current can cause destruction of cells, coagulation of tissues, thrombosis of blood vessels, neuropathies, and tissue necrosis. Other types of burn injuries and frostbite injuries may necessitate amputation if the wound is very deep or has associated tissue trauma. However, some amputations can be the consequence of an unrelenting infection.

Patients with burns who require limb amputation may have complications that delay prosthetic fitting and training as a result of multiple wound or scar sites, skin grafting on the residual limb, repeated surgical procedures (not necessarily associated with the residual limb), and burn-induced catabolic atrophy. Individuals with burns are also susceptible to the same postoperative complications faced by any patient with a new amputation: edema, phantom pain, and formation of neuroma or bone spur. Patients with amputation as a result of electrical injury may be susceptible to the formation of bone spurs.[159] A burn that is larger than 20% TBSA is more vulnerable to development of heterotopic ossification.[159-162] However, the number of cases that become clinically challenging is low (1%–3%).[159-162] Edema after burn injury is generally a short-term problem and seldom creates long-term delays in prosthetic training. There are no reports that suggest individuals with burns with amputations are more likely to develop phantom limb pain than other patients with amputation.[163]

Any of these complications may intensify discomfort or the amount of work and time required for prosthetic training, which can be reasons for limited use or rejection of the prosthesis. Despite these concerns, patients with burn-related amputations are successfully rehabilitated with standard protocols.[164-166]

SKIN CONDITION

For individuals with skin graft sites on the residual limb, fragility of skin (its tolerance of pressure and shear forces) is an important concern. Blisters or small open wounds may appear where a skin graft or a fragile scar breaks down as a result of forces on the residual limb during gait. Wearing of the prosthesis is often discontinued until the new wound is adequately healed. Wounds or skin grafts on areas associated with the prosthesis use, such as the shoulder or scapula under an upper extremity prosthesis harness, may demonstrate these same initial problems with wound breakdown. Even though the presence of a skin graft or fragile scar may delay or prolong prosthetic training, most patients with burn-related amputation are eventually successful in using their prostheses on skin-grafted limbs.[164-168] New "antishear" prosthetic socket suspension and lining materials may be especially helpful for individuals with burn-related amputation.

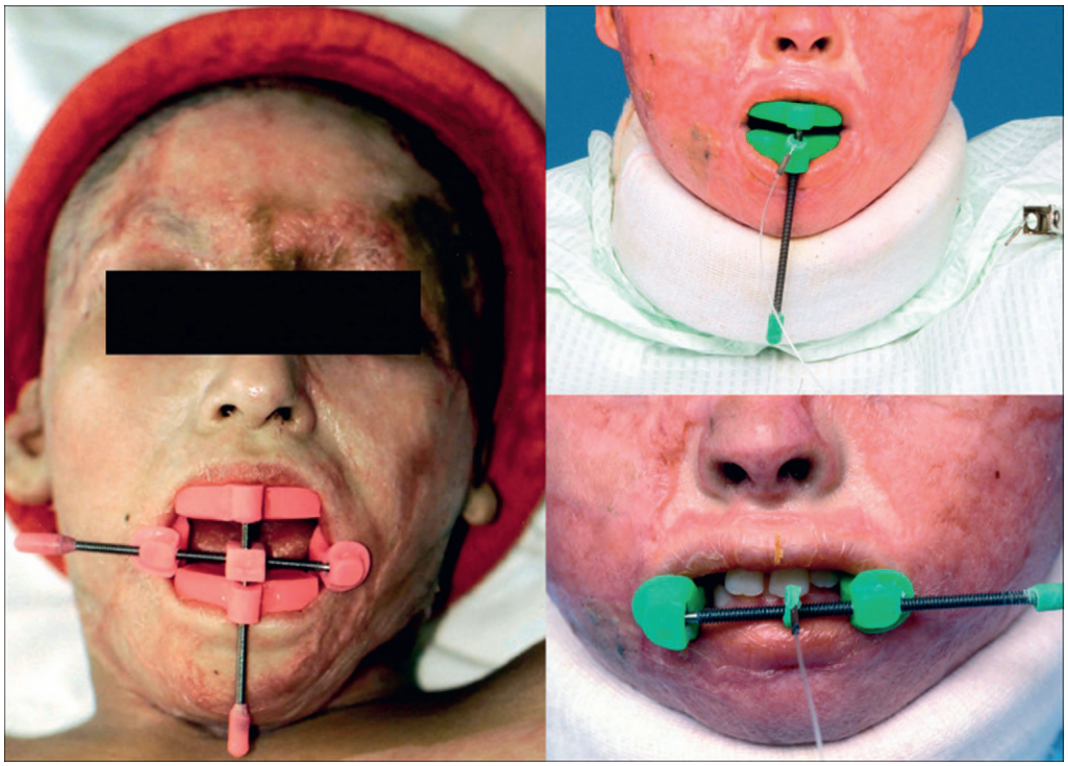


Fig. 15.9 Microstomia prevention appliance. (From Serghiou MA, Ott S, Cowan A, Kemp-Offenberg J. Burn Rehabilitation Along the Continuum of Care. In: *Total Burn Care* 2018;47:476–508 e4. Elsevier.)

CONTRACTURE

The typical postamputation contracture in patients with burns is a result of muscle and soft tissue shortening related to a decreased moment arm of the affected extremity. When there is a maturing burn scar or graft site over the joint of the residual limb, the risk of contracture significantly increases (Fig. 15.9).[68,69] Such contractures may form more rapidly with the additional shortening force of the contracting scar tissue. The prevention of joint contracture after amputation requires vigilant positioning, stretching, and exercise, which may be augmented by knee extension splints for individuals with transtibial amputation.[114]

DELAYED FITTING

For patients with large TBSA burns, repeated surgical skin-grafting procedures are often necessary to cover the burn wound adequately. Repeated surgical procedures often delay prosthetic fitting and training. Individuals may be placed on postoperative bed rest for 2 to 7 days to ensure initial healing of the grafted area. To protect the new graft site and promote healing, the limb may be temporarily positioned in a less than optimal position for prosthetic use. Continued monitoring by the therapist, along with conscientious wrapping of the residual limb, can help to overcome some of the problems caused by successive surgeries.

STABILIZATION OF BODY WEIGHT

It is common for patients with burns to lose weight because of hypermetabolism. A large burn can nearly double the body's metabolic requirements. Although individuals with significant burns receive nutritional supplementation, this often slows but does not prevent catabolic weight loss. Most individuals regain the weight lost in the catabolic process; this may require a series of revisions or refabrications of temporary sockets until weight stabilizes enough to fit a permanent prosthesis.

Case Example 15.2 **A Patient With Amputation After Electrical Burns**

C.T. is a 32-year-old man who was injured when a metal ladder he was using to trim tree branches made contact with overhead electrical wires. He sustained 35% total body surface area burns to his face, trunk, both upper extremities (including the right axilla), and his right lower leg. A right transhumeral amputation and a right transtibial amputation were required because of significant tissue damage from the electrical current. The amputations were performed on the third day after the burn; both residual limbs required several revisions of the amputation sites. Both residual limbs were successfully covered with a skin graft by the sixth day after the initial amputation.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What tests and measures would be most appropriate to document and track changes in C.T.'s range of motion (ROM), strength, endurance, and functional status? How might they need to be modified or adapted because of the severity of his burns?

Continued on following page

Case Example 15.2 **A Patient With Amputation After Electrical Burns (Continued)**

- Given the cause of his burns, what are the possible issues related to wound healing, contracture formation, and preprosthetic care that will influence your clinical decision-making? What are the most pressing rehabilitation goals considering both his burns and his amputations in this early period of rehabilitation? In the months ahead?
- What will pain management and wound healing be like for someone like C.T., who has undergone amputation after electrocution, compared with someone with thermal burns who has had skin grafting?
- What factors will influence C.T.'s readiness for prosthetic fitting for this transtibial limb? For his transhumeral limb? What is C.T.'s prognosis for prosthetic use at both transtibial and transhumeral levels? How might the presence of skin grafts influence the prosthetist's recommendation for socket type and suspension of the prostheses? How will maturation of the residual limb and likely changes in body weight over time influence prosthetic fit and function?
- What are the key components in your preprosthetic plan of care for C.T.'s residual limbs? How might tissue healing influence his progression through prosthetic training? What passive and active exercise strategies might you recommend to enhance ROM, flexibility of healing tissues, strength, and endurance?
- What education and supportive strategies might be necessary for this young man with serious burns and amputation?
- How long would you expect C.T. to be involved in rehabilitation activities? How will you assess whether your interventions are accomplishing the rehabilitation goals?

INTERVENTIONS AND OUTCOMES

Although C.T. was fitted with a transtibial prosthesis within 3 weeks of skin grafting, the fitting of C.T.'s initial upper extremity prosthesis must be postponed because of the time required to obtain closure of the remaining burn wounds on the right upper extremity (6 weeks). Given the extent of his burns, signal sites for a myoelectric (externally powered) prosthesis are difficult to identify; thus C.T. is fit with a conventional body-powered transhumeral prosthesis with a hook as a terminal device. Deep burns on both shoulders and the left trunk further delay (10 weeks) this fitting because of intolerance of the newly healed skin to the prosthetic harness.

C.T. quickly becomes functional with his transtibial prosthesis, although susceptibility to pressure requires a special antishear, pressure-distributing liner. During the fitting and training delays for his transhumeral prosthesis, an aggressive treatment program, including mobility exercises and strengthening exercises, is directed at the right upper extremity. The residual limb is also shaped with compression wraps and stockinet. C.T. also participates in similar mobility and strengthening exercises for other affected areas, as well as an aerobic exercise program aimed at improving his endurance.

Twelve weeks after injury, C.T. is fit for and begins formal training with his prosthesis (dual-control cable system). There is one incident of skin breakdown under the harness over the left scapula. This area is dressed and padded with dense foam. There are no further incidences of skin breakdown. C.T. is discharged from physical therapy associated with the amputation 15 weeks after injury.

Case Example 15.2 **A Patient With Amputation After Electrical Burns (Continued)**

During his episode of care for rehabilitation and prosthetic training, C.T. endured several delays in management of his amputations as a result of the care related to other burn injuries, particularly those in strategic anatomic regions. It was important to maintain focus on preparation of the transtibial residual limb for containment within and functional use of the prosthesis and to prepare his transhumeral residual limb and opposite arms for the figure-of-eight harness and control system. Much of C.T.'s rehabilitation care concentrated on mobility ROM and strength (especially of his upper extremities and the shoulder girdle) and endurance training.

Education

The patient with burns is the most important member of the rehabilitative burn care team. Family members and any others who will be caregivers outside the hospital must be included as early as possible to learn about the process of burn recovery and rehabilitation. Effectiveness of education is reflected by the individual's and caregiver's ability to demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the rehabilitation program.[169] Skin care, exercise programs, use of pressure supports, positioning techniques, and splint protocols are the obvious items that need to be taught to the patient.[170,171] Reinforcement, reasoning, and reassurance are key words to remember when designing an educational process.

Summary

Optimal care of individuals recovering from burn injury taps the knowledge and skills of many different health care providers. Rehabilitation professionals are actively involved in many facets of postburn care, such as wound care and surgical grafting procedures; education about the burn rehabilitation process; and preventive care to minimize risk of hypertrophic scarring, contractures, deformity, and subsequent disability. Postburn rehabilitation care requires knowledge of and expertise in splint design and fabrication, exercise prescription (stretching and flexibility, strengthening, endurance), adaptive and assistive devices for gait and ADLs, and, often, prosthetic prescription and training.

References

1. Helm PA, Head MD, Pullium G, et al. Burn rehabilitation: a team approach. *Surg Clin North Am*. 1978;58(6):1263–1278.
2. Win TS, Nizamoglu M, Maharaj R, et al. Relationship between multidisciplinary critical care and burn pateints survival: a propensity matched national cohort analysis. *Burns*. 2018;44:57–64.
3. American Burn Association: Burn Incidence and Treatment in the US: 2016 Fact Sheet. American Burn Association, Chicago, IL, 60611 Retrieved January 2, 2018, from www.ameriburn.org.
4. Ryan MR, Schoenfeld DA, Thorpe WP, Sheridan RL, Cassem EH, Tompkins RG. Objective estimates of the probability of death from burn injuries. *NEJM*. 1998;338:362–366.
5. Bessey PQ, Arons RR, Dimaggio CJ, Yurt RW. The vulnerabilities of age: burns in chilren adn older adults. *Surgery*. 2006;140:715–717.

6. Burn Center Referral Criteria. In: *Guidelines for the Operation of Burn Centers Resources for Optimal Care of the Injured Patient*. Chicago: Committee on Trauma, American College of Surgeons; 2006:79–86. IL.
7. Van Rijin OJL, Bouter LM, Meertens RM. The aetiology of burns in developed countries: review of the literature. *Burns*. 1989;15 (4):217–221.
8. Pruitt Jr BA, Wolf SE, Mason JRAD, Herndon DN. Epidemiological, demographic and outcome characteristics of burn injury. In: *Total Burn Care*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2012:20–23.
9. Dissanaike S, Rahimi M. Epidemiology of burn injuries: highlighting cultural and socio-demographic aspects. *Int Rev Psychiatry*. 2009;21:505–511.
10. Guzel A, Aksu B, Aylanc H, Duran R, Karasalihoglu S. Scalds in pediatric emergency department: a 5-year experience. *J Burn Care Res*. 2009;30:450–456.
11. Renz BM, Sherman R. The burn unit experince at Grady Memorial Hospital: 844 cases. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1992;13:426–436.
12. Herbert K, Lawrence JC. Chemical burns. *Burns*. 1989;15 (6):381–384.
13. Arnaldo BD, Hunt JL, Sterling JP, Purdue GF. Electrical injuries. In: Herndon DN, ed. *Total Burn Care*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2012:437–438.
14. Haberal M. Electrical burns: a five years experience. *J Trauma*. 1986;26(2):103–109.
15. Cancio LC, Jimenez-Reyna JF, Barillo DJ, Walker SC, McManus AT, Vaughan GM. One hundred ninety-five cases of high-voltage electric injury. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2005 Jul-Aug;26(4):331–340.
16. Thomsen M. It all began with Aristotle: the history of the treatment of burns. *Burns Incl Therm Inj*. 1988. suppl:S1-S46.
17. Richard RL, Ward RS. Burns. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA; 2014:1092–1095. F.A Davis.
18. Lee JO, Dibildox M, Jimenez CJ, et al. Operative wound management. In: Herndon DN, ed. *Total Burn Care*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2012:158–161.
19. Mosier MJ, Gibran NS. Surgical excision of the burn wound. *Clin Plast Surg.* 2009 Oct;36(4):617–625.
20. Jones T, McDonald S, Deitch EA. Effect of graft bed on long-term functional results of extremity skin grafts. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9 (1):72–74.
21. Sheridan R. Closure of the excised burn wound: autografts, semipermanet skin substitutes, and permanent skin substitutes. *Clin Plast Surg*. 2009;36:643–651.
22. Chern PL, Baum CL, Arpey CJ. Biologic dressings: current applications and limitations in dermatologic surgery. *Dermatol Surg*. 2009;35:891–906.
23. Fohn M, Bannasch H. Artificial skin. *Methods Mol Med*. 2007;140:167–182.
24. Hansbrough J, et al. Clinical trials of a biosynthetic temporary skin replacement, Dermagraft-Transitional Covering, compared with cryopreserved human cadaver skin for temporary coverage of excised burn wounds. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1997;18:43.
25. Stern R, McPherson M, Longaker MT. Histologic study of artificial skin used in the treatment of full-thickness thermal injury. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1990;11(1):7–13.
26. Lund CC, Browder NC. The estimation of areas of burns. *Surg Gynecol Obstet*. 1944;79:352–358.
27. Artz C, Saroff HS. Modern concepts in the treatment of burns. *JAMA*. 1955;159:411–417.
28. Schultz G, Mozingo D, Romanelli M, Claxton K. Wound healing and TIME: new concepts and scientific applications. *Wound Repair Regen*. 2005;13:1–11.
29. Ward RS, Saffle JR. Topical agents in burn and wound care. *Phys Ther*. 1995;75(6):526–538.
30. Weber J, McManus A. Infection control in burn patients. *Burns*. 2004;30:A16–A24.
31. Saffle JR, Schnebly WA. Burn wound care. In: Richard RL, Staley MJ, eds. *Burn Care and Rehabilitation: Principles and Practice*. Philadelphia; 1994:19–176. F.A. Davis.
32. Sevgi M, Toklu A, Vecchio D, Hamblin MR. Topical antimicrobials for burn infections – an update. *Recent Pat Antiinfect Drug Discov*. 2013;8:161–197.
33. Wright PC. Fundamentals of acute burn care and physical therapy management. *Phys Ther*. 1984;64(8):1217–1231.
34. Ward RS. The rehabilitation of burn patients. *CRC Crit Rev Phys Med Rehabil.* 1991;2(3):121–138.
35. Steiner H, Clark WR. Psychiatric complications of burned adults: a classification. *J Trauma.* 1977;17(2):134–143.
36. Williams EE, Griffiths TA. Psychological consequences of burn injury. *Burns.* 1991 Dec;17(6):478–480.
37. Smith JS, Smith KR, Rainey SL. The psychology of burn care. *Journal of Trauma Nursing*. 2006;**13**(3):105–106.
38. Rosenburg L, Lawrence JW, Rosenburg M, et al. Psychosocial recovery and reintegration of patients with burn injuries. In: Herndon DN, ed. *Total Burn Care*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2012:749–751.
39. Goodstein RK. Burns: an overview of clinical consequences affecting patient, staff, and family. *Comp Psychiatry*. 1985;26(1):43–57.
40. Stoddard FJ. Body image development in the burned child. *J Am Acad Child Psychiatry*. 1982;21(5):502–507.
41. Mahaney MB. Restoration of play in a severely burned three-year-old child. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1990;11(1):57–63.
42. Watkins PN, Cook EL, May SR, et al. Psychological stages of adaptation following burn injury: a method for facilitating psychological recovery of burn victims. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9(4):376–384.
43. Tollison CD, Still JM, Tollison JW. The seriously burned adult: psychologic reactions, recovery and management. *J Med Assoc Ga*. 1980;69 (2):121–124.
44. Guide to Physical Therapist Practice, ed. 2. American Physical Therapy Association, Alexandria, VA, 2001.
45. Schnebly WA, Ward RS, Warden GD, et al. A nonsplinting approach to the care of the thermally injured patient. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1989;10(3):263–266.
46. Ward RS. Pressure therapy for the control of hypertrophic scar formation after burn injury: a history and review. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1991;12(3):257–262.
47. Oostervijk AM, Mouton LJ, Schouten H, al et. Prevalence of scar contractures after burn: a systematic review. *Burns*. 2017;43:41–49.
48. Li B, Wang JH. Fibroblasts and myofibroblasts in wound healing: Force generation and measurement. *J Tissue Viability*. 2009;.
49. Shin D, Minn KW. The effect of myofibroblast on contracture of hypertrophic scar. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2004;113:633–640.
50. Nedelec B, Ghahary A, Scott PG, Tredget EE. Control of wound contraction. Basic and clinical features. *Hand Clin*. 2000;16:289–302.
51. Hardy MA. The biology of scar formation. *Phys Ther*. 1989;69 (12):1014–1024.
52. Steed DL. Wound-healing trajectories. *Surg Clin North Am*. 2003;83:547–555. vi-vii.
53. Ladin DA, Garner WL, Smith DJ, Jr. Excessive scarring as a consequence of healing. Wound Repair Regen 1995;3:6-14.
54. Armour A, Scott PG, Tredget EE. Cellular and molecular pathology of HTS: basis for treatment. *Wound Repair Regen*. 2007;15(Suppl 1): S6–17.
55. Burd A, Huang L. Hypertrophic response and keloid diathesis: two very different forms of scar. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2005;116: 150e–157e.
56. Kose O, Waseem A. Keloids and hypertrophic scars: are they two different sides of the same coin? *Dermatol Surg*. 2008; 34:336–346.
57. Slemp AE, Kirschner RE. Keloids and scars: a review of keloids and scars, their pathogenesis, risk factors, and management. *Curr Opin Pediatr*. 2006;18:396–402.
58. Hunt TK. Disorders of wound healing. *World J Surg*. 1980;4 (3):289–295.
59. Clark JA, Cheng JCY, Leung KS, et al. Mechanical characterization of human postburn hypertrophic skin during pressure therapy. *J Biomech*. 1987;20(4):397–406.
60. Rudolf R. Wide spread scars, hypertrophic scars, and keloids. *Clin Plast Surg*. 1987;14(2):253–260.
61. Gangemi EN, Gregori D, Berchialla P, et al. Epidemiology and risk factors for pathologic scarring after burn wounds. *Arch Facial Plast Surg.* 2008 Mar-Apr;10(2):93–102.
62. Rockwell WB, Cohen IK, Erlich HP. Keloids and hypertrophic scars: A comprehensive review. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1989;84:827–837.
63. Scars Davies D. hypertrophic scars, and keloids. *Br Med J*. 1985;290 (6474):1056–1058.
64. Deitch EA, Wheelahan TM, Rose MP. Hypertrophic burn scars: analysis of variables. *J Trauma*. 1983;23(10):895–898.
65. Rudolf R. Construction and the control of contraction. *World J Surg*. 1980;4(2):279–287.
66. Stern PJ, Law EJ, Benedict FE, et al. Surgical treatment of elbow contractures in postburn children. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1985;76 (3):441–446.
67. Schneider JC, Holavanahalli R, Helm P, Goldstein R, Kowalske K. Contractures in burn injury: defining the problem. *J Burn Care Res.* 2006 Jul-Aug;27(4):508–514.

68. Goverman J, Mathews K, Goldstein R. et. al. Adult contractures in burn injury: a urn model system national database study. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38:e328–e336.
69. Goverman J, Mathews K, Goldstein R, et al. Pediatric contractures in burn injury: a urn model system national database study. *J Burn Care Res*. 2017;38:e192–e199.
70. Wainwright DJ. Burn reconstruction: the problems, the techniques, and the applications. *Clin Plast Surg.* 2009 Oct;36(4):687–700.
71. Kreymerman PA, Andres LA, Lucas HD, Silverman AL, Smith AA. Reconstruction of the burned hand. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 2011 Feb;127(2):752–759.
72. Larson DL, Abston S, Evans EB, et al. Techniques for decreasing scar formation and contractures in the burned patient. *J Trauma*. 1971;11 (10):807–823.
73. Friedstat JS, Hultman CS. Hypertrophic burn scar management: what does the evidence show? A systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *Ann Plast Surg*. 2014;72:S198–S201.
74. Kischer CW, Shetlar MR, Shetlar CL. Alteration of hypertrophic scars induced by mechanical pressure. Arch Dermatol 1975;111(1): 60–64.
75. Leung PC, Ng M. Pressure treatment for hypertrophic scars. *Burns*. 1980;6:224.
76. Ward RS. Pressure therapy for the control of hypertrophic scar formation after burn injury: a history and review. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1991;12(1):257–262.
77. Torring S. Our routine in pressure treatment of hypertrophic scars. *Scand J Plast Reconstr Surg*. 1984;18(1):135–137.
78. Ward RS, Hayes-Lundy C, Reddy R, et al. Influence of pressure supports on joint range of motion. *Burns*. 1992;18(1):60–62.
79. Draaijers LJ, Tempelman FRH, Botman YA, al et. The patient and observer scar assessment scale: A reliable and feasible tool for scar evaluation. *Plast Reconstr Surg*. 2004;113:1960–1965.
80. Sullivan T, Smith J, Kerrnode J, et al. Rating the burn scar. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1990;11(3):256–260.
81. Lowell M, Pirc P, Ward RS, et al. Effect of 3M Coban Self-Adherent Wraps on edema and function of the burned hand: a case study. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2003 Jul-Aug;24(4):253–258. discussion 252.
82. Ward RS, Reddy R, Brockway C, Hayes-Lundy C, Mills P. Uses of Coban self-adherent wrap in management of postburn hand grafts: case reports. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1994 Jul-Aug;15(4):364–369.
83. Rose MP, Deitch EA. The clinical use of a tubular compression bandage, Tubigrip, for burn-scar therapy: a critical analysis. *Burns Incl Therm Inj*. 1985 Oct;12(1):58–64.
84. Powell BW, Haylock C, Clarke JA. A semi-rigid transparent face mask in the treatment of postburn hypertrophic scars. *Br J Plast Surg.* 1985 Oct;38(4):561–566.
85. O'Brien L. Pandit A. Silicon gel sheeting for preventing and treating hypertrophic and keloid scars. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2006.
86. Berman B, Perez OA, Konda S, et al. A review of the biologic effects, clinical efficacy, and safety of silicone elastomer sheeting for hypertrophic and keloid scar treatment and management. *Dermatol Surg*. 2007;33:1291–1302. discussion 302-3.
87. Porter C, Hardee J, Herndon D, Suman OE. The role of exercise in the rehabilitation of patients with severe burns. *Exerc Sport Sci Rev*. 2015;43(1):34–40.
88. Grisbrook TL, Reid SL, Edgar DW, et al. Exercise training to improve health related quality of life in long term survivors of major burn injury: a matched controlled study. *Burns*. 2012;38:1165–1173.
89. Howell JW. Management of the acutely burned hand for the nonspecialized clinician. *Phys Ther*. 1989;12(12):1077–1089.
90. Parrot M, Ryan R, Parks DH, et al. Structured exercise circuit program for burn patients. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9(6):666–668.
91. Whitehead C, Serghiou M. A 12-year comparison of common therapeutic interventions in the burn unit. *J Burn Care Res.* 2009 Mar-Apr;30(2):281–287.
92. de Lateur BJ, Magyar-Russell G, Bresnick MG, et al. Augmented exercise in the treatment of deconditioning from major burn injury. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2007 Dec;88(12 Suppl 2):S18–S23.
93. Wurzer P, Voight CD, Clayton RP. et.al. Long-term effects of physical exercise during rehabilitation in patients with severe burns. *Surgery*. 2016;160(3):781–788.
94. Trees DW, Ketelsen CA, Hobbs JA. Use of a modified tilt table for preambulation strength training as an adjunct to burn rehabilitation: a case series. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2003 Mar-Apr;24(2):97–103.
95. Helm PA, Kevorkian CG, Lushbaugh M, et al. Burn injury: rehabilitation management in 1982. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1982;63(1): 6–16.
96. Chen HC, Yang JY, Chuang SS, Huang CY, Yang SY. Heterotopic ossification in burns: our experience and literature reviews. *Burns.* 2009 Sep;35(6):857–862 Epub 2009. May 29.
97. Crawford CM, Vaeghese G, Mani M, et al. Heterotopic ossification: are range of motion exercises contraindicated? *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1986;6(4):323–327.
98. VanLaeken N, Snelling CFT, Meek RN, et al. Heterotopic bone formation in the patient with burn injuries: a retrospective assessment of contributing factors and methods of investigation. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1989;10(4):331–335.
99. Tafel JA, Thacker JG, Hagemann JM, et al. Mechanical performance of exertubing for isotonic hand exercise. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1987;8 (4):333–335.
100. Johnson CL. Physical therapists as scar modifiers. *Phys Ther*. 1984;64 (9):1381–1387.
101. Richard RL, Miller SF, Finley RK, et al. Home exercise kit for the shoulder. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1987;8(2):144–145.
102. Carrougher GJ. Burn wound assessment and topical treatment. In: Carrougher GJ, ed. *Burn Care and Therapy*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1998:142.
103. Hayek, S, El Khatib, El Khatib A, Atiyeh, B: Burn wound cleansing: a myth or a scientific practice. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/?term=burn+wound+cleansing+and+shower Ann Burns Fire Disasters 31:19, 2010.
104. American Physical Therapy Association. *Choosing wisely: Five things physical therapists and patients should question*. (updated 2015). Retrieved March 9, 2017 from, http://www.choosingwisely.org/societies/american-physical-therapy-association/; 2014.
105. Apfel LM, Wachtel TL, Frank DH, et al. Functional electrical stimulation in intrinsic/extrinsic imbalanced burned hands. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1987;8(2):97–102.
106. Lewis SM, Clelland JA, Knowles CJ, et al. Effects of auricular acupuncture-like transcutaneous nerve stimulation on pain levels following wound care in patients with burns: a pilot study. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1990;11(4):322–329.
107. Bierman W. Ultrasound in the treatment of scars. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1954;35:209–214.
108. Baryza MJ. Ultrasound in the treatment of postburn skin graft contracture: a single case study. *Phys Ther*. 1996;76:S54.
109. Ward RS, Hayes-Lundy C, Reddy R, et al. Evaluation of therapeutic ultrasound to improve response to physical therapy and lessen scar contracture after burn injury. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1994;15(1): 74–79.
110. Head M, Helm P. Paraffin and sustained stretching in treatment of burn contracture. *Burns*. 1977;4(2):136–139.
111. Ward RS, Saffle JR, Schnebly WA, et al. Sensory loss over grafted areas in patients with burns. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1989;10 (6):536–538.
112. Ward RS, Tuckett RP. Quantitative threshold changes in cutaneous sensation of patients with burns. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1991;12 (6):569–575.
113. Serghiou M, Cowan A, Whitehead C. Rehabilitation after a burn injury. *Clin Plast Surg.* 2009;36:675–686.
114. Dewey SD, Richard RL, Parry IS. Positioning, splinting, and contracture management. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am*. 2011;22:229–247.
115. Cooper S, Paul EO. An effective method of positioning the burn patient. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1988;9(3):288–289.
116. Heeter PK, Brown R. Arm hammock for elevation of the thermally injured upper extremity. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1986;7(2):144–147.
117. Richard R, Ward RS. Splinting strategies and controversies. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 2005;26:392–396.
118. Waymack JP, Fidler J, Warden GD. Surgical correction of burn scar contractures of the foot in children. *Burns*. 1988;4(2):156–160.
119. Duncan RM. Basic principles of splinting the hand. *Phys Ther*. 1989;69(12):1104–1116.
120. Richard RL. Use of Dynasplint to correct elbow flexion burn contracture: A case report. *J Burn Care Rehabil*. 1986;7:151–152.

121. Richard RL, et al. Dynamic versus static splints: A prospective case for sustained stress. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1995;16:284–287.
122. Richard R, Miller S, Staley M, Johnson RM. Multimodal versus progressive treatment techniques to correct burn scar contractures. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2000;21:506–512.
123. Malick MH, Carr JA. *Manual on Management of the Burn Patient.* Pittsburgh: Harnarville Rehabilitation Center; 1982: 32–62.
124. Richard R, Ward RS. Splinting strategies and controversies. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2005 Sep-Oct;26(5):392–396.
125. Daugherty MB, Carr-Collins JA. Splinting techniques for the burn patient. In: Richard RL, Staley MJ, eds. *Burn Care and Rehabilitation Principles and Practice*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis; 1994:242–317.
126. Mathew Jose R, Varghese S, Nandakumar UR. Modified Watusi splint: a simple and economical device. *Br J Plast Surg.* 2002;55 (3):270.
127. Manigandan C, Gupta AK, Venugopal K, et al. The wrist in axillary burns—a forgotten focus of concern. *Burns.* 2003;29(5):497–498.
128. Walters C, Laurel MD. *Splinting the Burn Patient.* RAMSCO; 1987. 9–97.
129. Manigandan C, Gupta AK, Venugopal K, et al. A multi-purpose, self-adjustable aeroplane splint for the splinting of axillary burns. *Burns.* 2003;29(3):276–279.
130. Godleski M, Holden MS, Luby D, et al. Clinical Outcomes From a Foam Wedge Splinting Program for Axillary Contracture Prevention in the Intensive Care Unit. *J Burn Care Res.* 2014;35:e379–e386.
131. Kwan MW, Ha KW. Splinting programme for patients with burnt hand. *Hand Surg.* 2002;7(2):231–241.
132. Van Straten O, Sagi A. "Supersplint": a new dynamic combination splint for the burned hand. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2000;2:71–73.
133. Tilley W, McMahon S, Shukalak B. Rehabilitation of the burned upper extremity. *Hand Clin.* 2000;16(2):303–318.
134. Ward RS, Schnebly WA, Kravitz M, et al. Have you tried the sandwich splint? A method of preventing hand deformities in children. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1989;10(1):83–85.
135. Yildirim S, Avci G, Akan M, et al. Anterolateral thigh flap in the treatment of postburn flexion contractures of the knee. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 2003;19(4):225–233.
136. Guild S. A new splinting approach for dorsal foot burns. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2001;22:454–456.
137. Kung TA, Gosain AK. Pediatric facial burns. *J Craniofac Surg.* 2008 Jul;19(4):951–959.
138. Lehman CJ. Splints and accessories following burn reconstruction. *Clin Plast Surg.* 1992;19(3):721–731.
139. Rogers B, Chapman T, Rettele J, et al. Computerized manufacturing of transparent face masks for the treatment of facial scarring. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2003;24:91–96.
140. Parry I, Hanley C, Niszczak J, et al. Harnessing the transparent face mask orthosis for facial scar management: A comparison of methods. *Burns.* 2013;39:950–956.
141. Van-Buendia LB, Allely RR, Lassiter R, et.al. What's behind the mask? A look at Blood flow changes with prolonged facial pressure and expression using laser doppler imaging. J Burn Care Res 2010;31:441-447.
142. Taylor LB, Walker J. A review of selected microstomia prevention appliances. *Pediatr Dent.* 1997 Sep-Oct;19(6):413–418.
143. Moore DJ. The role of the maxillofacial prosthetist in support of the burn patient. *J Prosthet Dent.* 1970;24(1):68–76.
144. Dougherty ME, Warden GD. A thirty-year review of oral appliances used to manage microstomia, 1972 to 2002. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 2003 Nov-Dec;24(6):418–431. discussion 410.
145. Wust KJ. A modified dynamic mouth splint for burn patients. *J Burn Care Res.* 2006 Jan-Feb;27(1):86–92.
146. Heinle JA, Kealey GP, Cram AE, et al. The microstomia prevention appliance: 14 years of clinical experience. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1988;9(1):90–91.
147. Sela M, Tubiana L. A mouth splint for severe burns of the head and neck. *J Prosthet Dent.* 1989;62(6):679–681.
148. Kaufman T, Newman RA, Weinberg A, et al. The kerlix tongue depressor splint for skin-grafted areas in burned children. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1989;10(5):462–463.
149. Wilder RP, Doctor A, Paley RJ, et al. Evaluation of cohesive and elastic bandages for joint immobilization. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1989;10 (3):258–262.
150. Richard RL, Miller SF, Finley RK Jr, et al. Comparison of the effect of passive exercise vs static wrapping on finger range of motion of the hand. J Burn Care Rehabil 1987;8(6): 576-578.
151. Richard RL. Use of the Dynasplint to correct elbow flexion burn contracture: a case report. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1986;7(2):151–152.
152. Bennett GB, Helm P, Purdue GF, et al. Serial casting: a method for treating burn contractures. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1989;10(6): 543–545.
153. Faoagali JL, Grant D, Pegg S. Are thermolabile splints a source of nosocomial infection? *J Hosp Infect.* 1994 Jan;26(1):51–55.
154. Wright MP, Taddonio TE, Prasad JK, et al. The microbiology and cleaning of thermoplastic splints in burn care. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1989;10(1):79–83.
155. Strong AL, Agarwal S, Cederna PS, Levi B. Peripheral neuropathy and nerve compression syndromes in burns. *Clin Plastic Surg.* 2017;44: 793–803.
156. Lee MY, Liu G, Kowlowitz V, et al. Causative factors affecting peripheral neuropathy in burn patients. *Burns.* 2009 May;35(3):412–416. Epub 2008 Oct 31.
157. Tu Y, Lineaweaver WC, Zheng X, et al. Burn-related peripheral neuropathy: A systematic review. *Burns.* 2017;43:693–699.
158. Kowalske K, Holavanahalli R, Helm P. Neuropathy after burn injury. *J Burn Care and Rehabil.* 2001;22:353–357.
159. Helm PA, Walker SC. New bone formation at amputation sites in electrically burn-injured patients. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1987;68(5 part 1):284–286.
160. Munster AM, et al. Heterotopic calcification following burns: A prospective study. *J Trauma.* 1972;12:1071.
161. Rubin MM, Cozzi GM. Heterotopic ossification of the temporomandibular joint in a burn patient. *J Oral Maxillofac Surg.* 1986;44:897.
162. Chen HC, et al. Heterotopic ossification in burns: Our experience and literature reviews. *Burns.* 2009;235(6):857.
163. Thomas CR, Brazeal BA, Rosenberg L, Robert RS, Blakeney PE, Meyer WJ. Phantom limb pain in pediatric burn survivors. *Burns.* 2003 Mar;29(2):139–142.
164. Ward RS, Hayes-Lundy C, Schnebly WS, et al. Rehabilitation of burn patients with concomitant limb amputation: case reports. *Burns.* 1990;16(5):390–392.
165. Ward RS, Hayes-Lundy C, Schnebly WS, et al. Prosthetic use in patients with burns and associated limb amputation. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1990;11(4):361–364.
166. Meier RH. Amputations and prosthetic fitting. In: Fisher SA, Helm PA, eds. *Comprehensive Rehabilitation of Burns.* Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1984:267–310.
167. Rosenfelder R. The below-knee amputee with skin grafts. *Phys Ther.* 1970;50(9):1338–1346.
168. Wood MR, Hunter GA, Millstein SG. The value of stump split skin grafting following amputation for trauma in adult upper and lower limb amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1987;11(2):71–74.
169. Wallace LM, Lees J. A psychological follow-up study of adult patients discharged from a British burn unit. *Burns.* 1988;14(1):39–45.
170. Kaplan SH. Patient education techniques used at burn centers. *Am J Occup Ther.* 1985;39(10):655–658.
171. Neville C, Walker S, Brown B, et al. Discharge planning for burn patients. *J Burn Care Rehabil.* 1988;9(4):414–418.

16 Prescription Wheelchairs: Seating and Mobility Systems ☆

SUSAN H. VENTURA and KATHERINE BENDIX

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the three components of prescription wheelchairs.
2. Develop recommendations to meet minimal to moderate seating and mobility needs.
3. Identify clients in need of referral to specialized wheelchair clinics.
4. Apply biomechanical principles to establish customized solutions for common seating and mobility problems.
5. Apply basic principles of wheelchair prescription to generate the least costly and least complex prescriptions.
6. Generate documentation to detail medical justification for prescribed seating and mobility solutions.
7. Educate clients and others about the importance of proper fit and function of wheelchair components.

There are approximately 2.2 million people in the United States who rely on wheelchairs for functional mobility.[1] They range from very young children who are unable to attain the ability to ambulate, to very old adults who have lost the ability because of various disabling conditions. Some clients need temporary assistance with mobility for illnesses or injuries that cause impairments that are expected to resolve over time. Others will need them for the remainder of their lives.

Contrary to common understanding, wheelchairs are a complex form of assistive technology. Well-prescribed wheelchairs can optimize environmental access and participation,[2] whereas poorly considered prescriptions can cause problems ranging from discomfort to very serious injury.[3] Careful measurements and the provision of supports needed to optimize postural alignment and access to mobility features are important, even for clients who will use the most basic wheelchairs.

A wheelchair is composed of a seating system (the postural support structure), a frame (the supporting structure), and a mobility system (the propelling structure) (Fig. 16.1).[4] All three components provide different functions but must form an integrated unit for efficient and safe wheeled mobility and optimization of the client's functional potential.

No single strategy works for every client. Each person is unique, with his or her own set of problems and goals, so each requires an individualized approach to problem solving.[5] The use of some basic principles to guide the wheelchair prescription process will help ensure comprehensive coverage of concerns as well as avoid overprescription and costly errors.

☆The authors extend appreciation to Barbara Crane, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Principles of Seating and Mobility

PRINCIPLE 1: ADDRESS SEATING BEFORE MOBILITY

The degree to which the client can maintain a balanced, upright posture with dynamic stability while seated in the wheelchair will determine the outcomes of many functional activities, including the method used to propel the wheelchair. For example, if "propping" with the upper extremities is needed to maintain postural alignment, the client will be unable to simultaneously use his or her upper extremities to propel the wheelchair. Seating solutions should be identified before making a final decision about mobility options.[6]

PRINCIPLE 2: STRIVE FOR OPTIMAL POSTURAL ALIGNMENT

It is helpful to envision an anatomically advantageous seated posture when designing seating solutions, even though variations from this position are common. Truly optimal solutions are those that meet the medical, functional, and personal goals of each client. The seated posture illustrated in Fig. 16.2 can be considered optimal for wheelchair positioning in the same way that the anatomical position is considered optimal when standing. It provides a reference point from which to describe deviations and provides a goal for the provision of seating supports. The optimal seated position for wheelchair use is characterized by a neutral pelvic position in which there is no rotation, no obliquity, and a slight anterior tilt. The hips are flexed to a minimum of 90 degrees with neutral to slight abduction and neutral to slight external rotation.

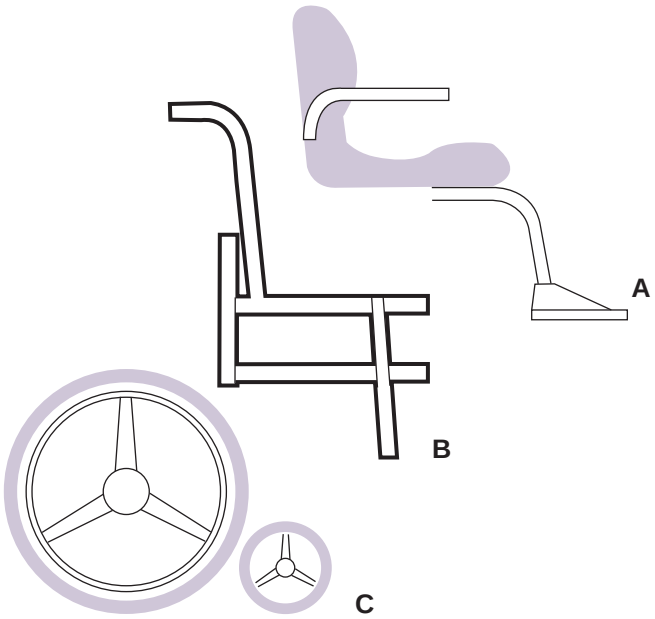


Fig. 16.1 The three components of the wheelchair include the postural support (A), the supporting structure (B), and the propelling structure (C).

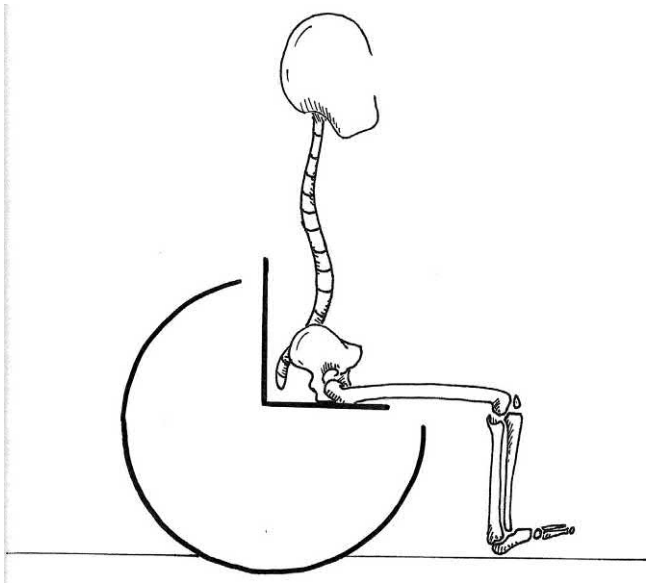


Fig. 16.2 Optimal postural alignment in wheelchair sitting. (Courtesy Annmarie Sherrick.)

The knees are flexed to a minimum of 90 degrees, and the ankles and feet are supported on footplates. The trunk is positioned in midline with preservation of the natural curves of the spine. The head is supported over level shoulders to allow the eyes to be forward facing and horizontal. When voluntary motor control is present in the upper extremities, they should be relaxed and supported at rest to minimize shoulder and neck strain and be unencumbered by contact with the seating or mobility systems during functional activities. Clients who have limited motor control may need external support to maintain the upper extremities in neutral alignment. The optimal wheelchair seated position described here provides a stable base of support, minimizes postural discomfort and stress, and optimizes functional potential from the seated position.

PRINCIPLE 3: APPLY SEATING SOLUTIONS IN A PROXIMAL TO DISTAL DIRECTION

Postural support must be introduced thoughtfully, beginning with the base of support, which is composed of the pelvis and the lower extremities. Capturing the best possible pelvic alignment often corrects postural problems in more distal areas of the body. This approach will help ensure that only the essential amount of external support is provided, which will result in the least costly and least restrictive solution.[7] Best outcomes are those that allow the client to move freely to take advantage of available motor control to participate to the greatest possible degree in all mobility-related activities of daily living (MR-ADLs).[8] For example, the presence of a flexible scoliosis in the thoracic spine does not necessarily call for the addition of lateral trunk supports. As discussed later, this common postural deviation may be easily eliminated with adjustments made within the seat cushion to correct a flexible pelvic obliquity.

PRINCIPLE 4: PROVIDE CORRECTION BEFORE ACCOMMODATION

The evaluation process will reveal whether postural problems are fixed or flexible. The goal is always to provide the greatest amount of correction possible without causing discomfort or risk of injury. It is common to discover semiflexible postural problems when working with clients who have long-standing impairments. In those cases, the goal is to find the balance between correction and accommodation while aiming to achieve midline orientation of the trunk and upper body and the best possible dynamic stability. Fixed postural deformities require custom contoured solutions to prevent the progression of deformity when possible; distribute weight-bearing forces over the largest possible surface area; and upright, balanced sitting for functional activities.

PRINCIPLE 5: MEASURE ACCURATELY

It is of vital importance to identify the client's optimal postural alignment before taking measurements. This will ensure proper sizing of the wheelchair and its component parts. Measurements of the client should be checked against simulated solutions. In some cases, the client's existing equipment can be used to form the basis of determining the best size and configuration of the new equipment. Clients who are being assessed for the first time will need to be provided with simulation by using a close approximation or mockup of what will be prescribed. Waugh and Crane provide an excellent online resource to guide therapists through the process of measuring the client and support surfaces.[9]

The Seating System

The seating system can be considered an orthosis. It is a device that applies external forces to achieve dynamic stability, correction, or compensation for loss or absence of

function.[8,10] A seating system provides the support needed to achieve optimal postural alignment for safe, comfortable, and functional wheelchair positioning.

Table 16.1 provides an overview of considerations for the evaluation process used to establish seating interventions. The table is arranged by body segment, beginning with the pelvis, which is central to the base of support in sitting. The need for seating interventions should be considered first at the pelvis and then progress in a more distal direction as outlined. Each body segment described includes the desired posture (relative to the optimal seated position described previously), common deviations seen at that body segment, possible causes for the deviations, common presenting symptoms, and examination procedures that may be helpful in identifying the underlying causes for the deviations observed.

Care must be taken to provide the least possible external support to facilitate the use of any available voluntary motor control to avoid interference with functional activities. It is

Table 16.1 Postural Evaluation by Body Segment: Possible Causes and Examination Procedures

Body Segment	Desired Posture	Common Deviations	Possible Causes	Common Symptoms	Examination Procedures
Pelvis	▪ Slight anterior tilt ▪ Neutral lateral tilt ▪ Neutral rotation ↓ ▪ Shifts center of gravity anterior to spine → ▪ Assists with upright posture	Posterior tilt (sacral sitting)	Physical: ▪ Proximal hypotonia ▪ Extensor hypertonia ▪ Limited hip flexion ▪ Tight hamstrings Equipment: ▪ Seat belt on or above ASIS ▪ Seat depth too long ▪ Hammock effect of sling seat and back	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Breakdown of the skin over the sacrum Pain: ▪ Back and neck Posture: ▪ Compensatory kyphosis ▪ Hips and knees extended, adducted and internally rotated	Posture: ▪ Compare pelvic position sitting in wheelchair to sitting on a firm mat Flexibility: ▪ Assess active and passive range of motion of pelvis and hip joints ▪ Measure thigh length on both sides Wheelchair: ▪ Assess condition and appropriateness of wheelchair components
		Obliquity	Physical: ▪ Asymmetrical strength or muscle tone ▪ Fixed (structural) scoliosis Equipment: ▪ Hammock effect of sling seat ▪ Solid seat insert or cushion tilted on one seat rail	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Breakdown of the skin over the lower ischial tuberosity Pain: ▪ Hip, back, neck Posture: ▪ Scoliosis ▪ Asymmetrical height of pelvic crests	
		Forward rotation of the pelvis on one side	Physical: ▪ Lumbar scoliosis with rotational component Equipment: ▪ Thigh length discrepancy with seat depth fitted to the longer side ▪ Seat too high for person who propels with one LE (rotates pelvis forward to functionally lengthen the stronger LE for propulsion)	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Ischial or trochanteric breakdown Pain: ▪ Low back Posture: ▪ Pelvis drifts to one side of w/c ▪ Functional or actual leg length discrepancy	
Hips	▪ Flexion at or >90 degrees ▪ Neutral to slight abduction Neutral to slight external rotation ↓ ▪ Discourages flexor or	Extension, adduction, internal rotation	Physical: ▪ Posterior pelvic tilt ▪ Extensor tone ▪ Limited hip flexion ▪ Hip dislocation ▪ Windswept deformity (high side of pelvis) Equipment: Seat depth too short	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Sacral breakdown Pain: ▪ Hips, back and/or neck Posture: ▪ Compensatory kyphosis ▪ Posterior pelvic tilt ▪ Knee extension, ankle plantarflexion	▪ ROM assessment of both hips ▪ Isolated motor control ▪ Tonal assessment ▪ Reflex assessment ▪ Tonic labyrinthine supine ▪ Tonic labyrinthine prone ▪ Symmetrical tonic neck reflex

Table 16.1 Postural Evaluation by Body Segment: Possible Causes and Examination Procedures (Continued)

Body Segment	Desired Posture	Common Deviations	Possible Causes	Common Symptoms	Examination Procedures
	extensor synergies ■ Wide base of support increases stability				■ Asymmetrical tonic neck reflex
		Excessive flexion, abduction, external rotation	Physical: ■ Anterior pelvic tilt ■ Proximal hypotonia or weakness ■ Windswept deformity (low side of pelvis) Equipment: ■ Abductor pommel too wide or too far proximal	Skin/soft tissue: ■ Pressure on distal, lateral thigh(s) as they press against the w/c sides Pain: ■ Low back Posture: ■ "Frog leg" position	■ ROM assessment of both hips ■ Isolated motor control ■ Tonal assessment ■ Reflex assessment ■ Tonic labyrinthine supine ■ Tonic labyrinthine prone ■ Symmetrical tonic neck reflex ■ Asymmetrical tonic neck reflex
Knees	Flexion near 90 degrees ↓ ■ Discourages extensor tone ■ Minimizes stress on 2-joint muscles	Excessive knee flexion	Physical: ■ Short hamstrings ■ Hypertonic hamstrings Equipment: ■ Footrests too far back on w/c	Skin/soft tissue: ■ Pressure on popliteal fossa Pain: ■ Paresthesias legs and feet Posture: ■ Feet slip off footrest posteriorly	■ ROM assessment both knees ■ Isolated motor control ■ Muscle tone, reflexes ■ Equipment—footrest hangers and footplates
		Excessive knee extension	Physical: ■ Dominant extensor tone Equipment: ■ Footrests too far forward on w/c ■ Seat depth too long	Skin/soft tissue: ■ Sacral pressure Pain: ■ (See posterior pelvic tilt) Posture: ■ Feet are too far forward on footplates ■ (See posterior pelvic tilt)	
Feet	■ Neutral dorsiflexion/plantarflexion Plantigrade foot, supported on footplate ↓ ■ Avoids stimulation of reflex activity ■ Helps to maintain functional ankle ROM	Excessive dorsiflexion with eversion	Physical: ■ Component of LE flexor synergy ■ Stimulation of plantar-grasp reflex Excessive knee flexion ■ Limited ankle plantarflexion Equipment: ■ Excessive pressure on metatarsal heads from poorly placed footplates	Skin/soft tissue: ■ DF contractures ■ Pronated foot Pain: ■ Fatigue and discomfort in the ankles Posture: ■ Heel(s) the only part of the foot in contact with footplates	■ ROM assessment both feet and ankles ■ Isolated motor control ■ Muscle tone, reflexes ■ Equipment—footrest hangers and footplate adjustability
		Excessive plantarflexion with inversion	Physical: ■ Component of LE extensor synergy ■ Stimulation of positive supporting reaction or other primitive reflex pattern ■ Limited ankle dorsiflexion Equipment: ■ Footrests too low ■ Feet not fully supported on footplates	Skin/soft tissue: ■ Plantarflexion contractures ■ Supinated foot Postural: ■ "Drop foot"	

Continued on following page

Table 16.1 Postural Evaluation by Body Segment: Possible Causes and Examination Procedures (Continued)

Body Segment	Desired Posture	Common Deviations	Possible Causes	Common Symptoms	Examination Procedures
Spine	"Plumb line" posture with slight lumbar and cervical lordosis, slight thoracic kyphosis ↓ ▪ Minimize stress on trunk musculature ▪ Provides mechanically stable alignment, minimizing available lateral flexion and rotation of spine	Scoliosis	Physical: ▪ Compensatory righting for a pelvic obliquity ▪ (See pelvic obliquity) Equipment: ▪ (See pelvic obliquity)	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Breakdown in skin fold created by concavity ▪ Unilateral ischial breakdown Pain: ▪ Hip, back, neck Posture: ▪ Pelvic obliquity ▪ Windswept hips ▪ "Habitual" leaning to one side	▪ Assess symmetry of shoulders, pelvic crests ▪ Assess alignment of spinous processes ▪ Assess flexibility of spine ▪ Assess equipment ▪ Seat, back, belt ▪ Footrest hangers and footplates
		Excessive kyphosis thoracic and lumbar spine and excessive lordosis of the cervical spine	Physical: ▪ Compensatory righting for a posterior pelvic tilt ▪ (See posterior pelvic tilt) Equipment: ▪ (See posterior pelvic tilt)	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Breakdown thoracic spinous processes Pain: ▪ Neck and back Posture: ▪ Posterior pelvic tilt ▪ Hip extension, adduction, internal rotation	
Shoulder Girdle	Neutral with regard to scapulae protraction or retraction	Scapular protraction	Physical: ▪ Increased flexor tone in upper extremities ▪ Hypotonia Equipment: ▪ Sling back support ▪ Concave back support	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Breakdown inferior border of scapulae Pain: ▪ Rhomboids area Posture: ▪ "Winging" of scapulae	▪ Assess alignment, symmetry and position of scapulae relative to spinous processes ▪ Assess active scapulae muscle control ▪ Assess passive scapulae motion ▪ Assess equipment—back support
		Scapular retraction	Physical: ▪ Increased extensor tone in upper extremities ▪ Hypotonia with proximal "fixing" Equipment: ▪ Inadequate block against strong extensor pattern	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Breakdown, spine of scapulae Pain: ▪ Upper back Posture: ▪ Shoulders externally rotated, adducted and retracted	
Head	Midline vertical, eyes horizontal	Laterally flexed	Physical: ▪ Scoliosis with compensatory righting ▪ Less than fair head control ▪ Asymmetrical muscle tone Equipment: ▪ Inadequate proximal support (pelvis, trunk, or head)	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Irritation from backrest or headrest causing skin breakdown or hair loss Pain: ▪ Neck Posture: ▪ Uneven shoulder height (scoliosis) ▪ Even shoulder height (lack of head control)	▪ ROM of the neck ▪ Head control ▪ Functional assessment ▪ Muscle tone ▪ Equipment ▪ Proximal support structures ▪ Back support ▪ Head support
		Increased cervical lordosis	Physical: ▪ Increased flexion of trunk with compensatory righting to bring the eyes to midline, horizontal	Skin/soft tissue: ▪ Irritation of skin near the occipital protuberance	

Table 16.1 Postural Evaluation by Body Segment: Possible Causes and Examination Procedures (Continued)

Body Segment	Desired Posture	Common Deviations	Possible Causes	Common Symptoms	Examination Procedures
			Equipment: ▪ Inadequate proximal support	Pain: ▪ Neck Posture: ▪ Kyphotic spine Or ▪ Increase lumbar lordosis	
Upper Extremities	Relaxed, free for propulsion or other functional activities	Required for postural support on tray or arm rests	Physical: ▪ Paralysis of upper extremities Equipment: ▪ Inadequate proximal support	Skins/soft tissue: ▪ Breakdown near elbows Pain: ▪ Shoulders Posture: ▪ Leaning on one or both UEs	▪ Observation ▪ Functional assessment ▪ Isolated motor control ▪ Tonal assessment ▪ Reflex assessment ▪ Tonic labyrinthine supine ▪ Tonic labyrinthine prone ▪ Symmetrical tonic neck reflex ▪ Asymmetrical tonic neck reflex

Always begin postural evaluation with assessment of the pelvis and move in a proximal to distal direction from the base of support. These are general guidelines only—optimal position varies according to medical and functional needs.

also important to distribute the forces associated with corrective components of the seating system over the greatest possible surface area to ensure comfort and soft tissue protection.[8] This is especially true for clients who have both motor and sensory impairments, because they are at increased risk for pressure-related damage to the skin and underlying soft tissues.[11,12]

Pressure ulcers occur when unprotected weight-bearing results in ischemia of the skin and soft tissues, especially those surrounding bony prominences. The propensity for developing pressure ulcers is exacerbated by many factors, including cumulative pressure and shear forces caused by sitting for extended periods of time, the experience of high pressures for short periods of time, impaired sensory and motor function, and poor sitting posture.[13] Other mediating factors include the presence of heat and moisture buildup between the skin and the seating system, illness, and inadequate nutrition and hydration.[14-16] Chronic problems with pressure ulcers can have a devastating effect on quality and extent of life,[17,18] so prevention is of paramount importance in developing seating interventions. Proper size and set up of the wheelchair are essential to pressure management.[19] Equally important are the strategic use of external postural supports that offer pressure-relieving properties, client education/training in weight shifting and monitoring strategies, and, if needed, the addition of active seating options such as tilt or recline.[12]

As already mentioned, all seating interventions begin by addressing seating concerns at the pelvis and lower extremities, as these regions of the body form the base of support in sitting. Key to success is identifying appropriate seat and back supports to assist with positioning the pelvis, distribution of weight-bearing forces over the largest possible pressure-tolerant areas, and/or offloading any areas that have a history of soft-tissue breakdown.[20]

Both passive and active pressure-relieving technologies are available. Passive technologies are the most commonly prescribed and consist of wheelchair cushions and related seating components that increase the surface area for weight-bearing through the processes of envelopment and/or redistribution of weight-bearing forces. Areas at high risk for breakdown include the ischial tuberosities, the sacrum, and greater trochanters, while more pressure tolerant areas include the distal femurs and fleshy areas of the buttocks. Many pressure-relieving cushions, such as the one shown in Fig. 16.3, accomplish both goals by

Fig. 16.3 Hybrid cushion includes a contoured base for redistribution of pressures and air-filled bladder to achieve envelopment. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

Fig. 16.4 Power wheelchair with power tilt. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

Fig. 16.5 Power wheelchair with power reclining back and elevating leg rests. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

combining a shape that redistributes weight-bearing forces with air- or fluid-filled inserts to achieve envelopment.

Active technologies include dynamic seat cushions and/or the use of wheelchair frames that permit tilt, recline, or standing. Dynamic seat cushions typically consist of a series of alternating chambers. A motor pumps air or fluid through chambers to change the configuration of the support surface gently and continuously, much like an alternating-pressure mattress used in hospital beds for clients who are unable to change position. Power or manual tilt (Fig. 16.4), recline (Fig. 16.5), or standing systems (Fig. 16.6) alternate weight-bearing surfaces by changing the client's position in space to periodically off-weight areas of concern.

Comfort and functional outcomes are as important as postural alignment and soft-tissue protection.[21] Clients need to feel secure in their seating systems to function optimally. Individuals who experience discomfort or feelings of insecurity when seated report dissatisfaction with their equipment, which may lead to equipment abandonment.[22]

The process of identifying priorities for seating systems can be quite challenging. It may be necessary to make

Fig. 16.6 Power wheelchair with power standing feature. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

compromises to achieve the overall best outcome for the client. For example, consider a client who has been using an air-filled cushion with excellent pressure management, but this cushion does not provide the necessary corrective forces to achieve optimal postural alignment. The team may recommend an alternative intervention that meets all identified needs, but the client may resist that option. The obligation of the team is to educate the client about the risks and benefits of recommended and preferred equipment so he or she can make an informed choice. Health professionals should remember that the client is the only one who can decide what is best for his or her circumstances. Forcing choices on an individual is likely to have negative consequences. The best solution is one that meets all the needs identified to the greatest extent possible but yields to optimal client satisfaction.

Clinicians need to be familiar with the types of commercially available seating options so they can educate their clients and make appropriate recommendations. Familiarity with specific manufactured products is less important than understanding the properties offered by the different options. The rehabilitation technology supplier member of the team is available for consultation to match desired outcomes to specific makes and models.

What is of utmost importance is for clinicians to be able to identify seating problems and whether they are flexible or fixed. Flexible deformities can be corrected within the seating system, whereas fixed deformities cannot be corrected so will need accommodation. Table 16.2 provides an overview of common fixed and flexible problems that occur at each segment of the body, beginning with the pelvis. Generic solutions are proposed, and these can be matched to commercially available products with the help of the rehabilitation technology supplier. Categories of available seating components and their properties are discussed here.

Table 16.2 Common Problems and Possible Solutions for Wheelchair Seating

Body Segment	Common Problems	Possible Solution(s)
Pelvis	Flexible posterior tilt	▪ Supportive seat and back with belt placed between 60 and 90 degrees to seat rails (distal to ASIS) ▪ "Squeeze" frame (inclinable seat) to increase hip flexion and capture the pelvis in good alignment
	Fixed (structural) posterior pelvic tilt	▪ Accommodate the pelvis by opening up the seat to back angle >90 degrees
	Flexible obliquity	▪ Supportive seat and back with belt placed between 60 and 90 degrees to seat rails (distal to ASIS)
	Fixed obliquity	▪ Accommodate by building up under the high side of the obliquity
Hips	Hip adduction	▪ Proper pelvic position ▪ Removable abductor pommel placed at most distal point on seat at midline
	Hip extension—flexible	▪ Proper pelvic position ▪ Increase flexion past 90 degrees with inclinable seat
	Hip extension—fixed	▪ Accommodate by opening up to seat to back angle
Thigh	Thigh length discrepancy	▪ Proper pelvic position ▪ Asymmetrical seat or cushion depth
Knees	Flexion contracture Extension contracture	▪ Accommodate with shorter seat depth and footplates that extend posteriorly ▪ Accommodate with elevating leg rests (preferably fixed vs. adjustable to prevent asymmetries) and unnecessary addition of weight
Feet	Fixed deformities	▪ Support with foot cradle, adjustable angle footplate, heel loops, toe straps, as needed
Spine	Poor trunk control, no asymmetries	▪ Proper pelvic alignment ▪ Lateral supports mounted on high back ▪ Tilt in space wheelchair
	Fair trunk control, no asymmetries	▪ Lateral supports mounted to a high back
	Flexible scoliosis	▪ Proper pelvic position ▪ Three- (to four-) point pressure system
	Fixed scoliosis	▪ Proper pelvic position, three-point pressure system for support ▪ Total contact system may be needed to ensure skin protection
	Flexible kyphosis	▪ Proper pelvic position ▪ Lumbar support on tilt in space system ▪ Clavicular pads if needed
	Fixed kyphosis	▪ Accommodate with concave backrest and soft, supportive materials
Shoulder Girdle	Excessive protraction	▪ Firm back ▪ Clavicular pads ▪ Lap tray
	Excessive retraction	▪ Concave back support, lap tray, humeral wings on tray
Head and Neck	Poor head control	▪ Proper pelvic alignment ▪ Tilt in space wheelchair frame ▪ Posterior headrest ▪ Increase support with lateral and anterior support as needed and tolerated
	Fair head control Cervical hyperextension	▪ Removable head rest, used especially for travel ▪ Proper alignment of pelvis and spine

Always begin at the pelvis when attempting to solve postural problems.

SEATING COMPONENTS

Seating components vary according to shape, size, and component materials. Garber[23] divides wheelchair seating into two basic categories based on purpose: (1) seating for positioning and (2) seating for pressure management. This classification helps clarify the functional division in seating products, but it is too simplistic for most seating systems. It fails to recognize that many clients require management of *both* positioning and pressure. These two needs should be considered in combination, especially for clients who have both motor and sensory loss.

The two main components of the seating system are the seat and back supports. These work together to support the pelvis in a neutral position in all three planes of available movement: anterior/posterior tilt in the sagittal plane, rotation in the horizontal plane, or obliquity in the frontal plane. Most clients, even those who use wheelchairs on a temporary basis, will benefit from some form of support beyond the upholstery offered on standard wheelchairs.[24] The seat and back material that is standard on most wheelchairs offers little resistance to forces that impact pelvic positioning, which may include gravity, tonic reflex activity, and hypertonicity.

The three most common postural deviations of the pelvis include the posterior pelvic tilt, pelvic obliquity, and pelvic rotation.[25] Each of these deviations impact posture in other regions of the body. The most common is the posterior pelvic tilt, which occurs in response to the gravitational pull on the pelvis in unsupported sitting. A posterior pelvic tilt is accompanied by flexion of the lumbar and thoracic regions and hyperextension of the cervical spine, because automatic righting reactions work to center the upper body over the

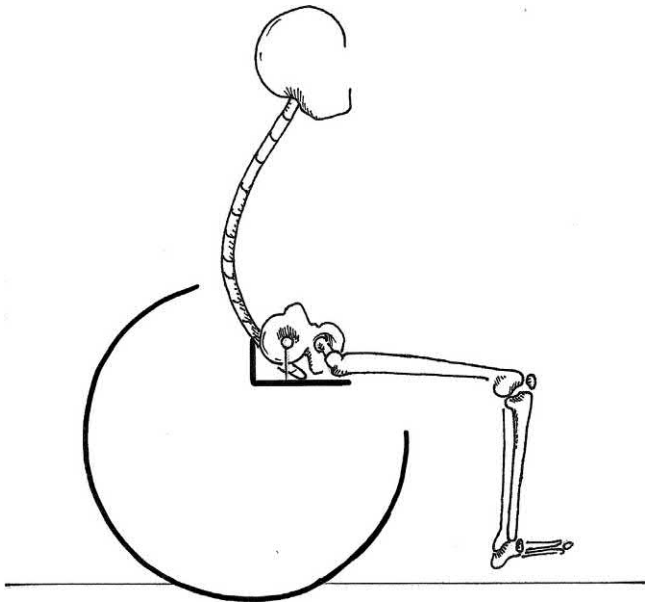


Fig. 16.7 Posterior pelvic tilt and associated postural deformities, including flexion of lumbar and thoracic spines and hyperextension of the cervical spine. (Courtesy Annmarie Sherrick.)

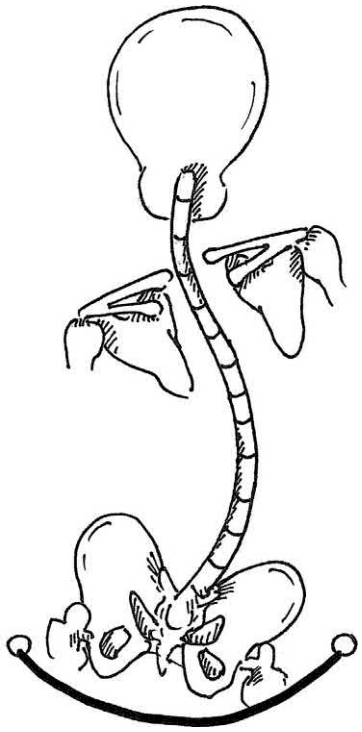


Fig. 16.8 Left pelvic obliquity with compensatory right C-curve scoliosis. (Courtesy Annmarie Sherrick.)

base of support and right the eyes to a forward facing, horizontal orientation.[26] The posterior pelvic tilt and associated postural deformities are illustrated in Fig. 16.7. This posture is associated with muscle fatigue and abnormally high disk pressures, both of which contribute to discomfort and pain after prolonged sitting.[27]

Another common postural deviation stems from the pelvic obliquity, which is shown in Fig. 16.8. This posture is often associated with clients who have asymmetrical muscle tone. For example, clients who have increased muscle tone on the right side of the body may present with a right pelvic obliquity—that is, the pelvic crest on the right side of the body sits higher compared to the left side. This position of the pelvis results in asymmetrical positioning of the hips and thighs, as well as a scoliosis of the spine, with the convexity of the curve occurring on the opposite side. Correction of the pelvic obliquity with well-prescribed seat and back supports may resolve the other asymmetries without additional seating interventions, depending on the degree to which the asymmetries are flexible. Pelvic obliquity caused by abnormal muscle tone may be accompanied by pelvic rotation, depending on the distribution of hypertonicity that is acting on the pelvis and lower extremities.

Table 16.1 outlines possible causes of the posterior pelvic tilt, pelvic obliquity, and pelvic rotation. It is important to look beyond the presenting symptoms to identify the cause of pelvic deviations, because the information obtained will help determine whether the seating system will need to provide correction or accommodation. Further, the extent to which external postural support is needed in other areas of the seating system will depend on the amount of correction that can be achieved at the pelvis.

When postural deviations are flexible, correction can generally be accomplished through the action of three counteractive forces: an inferior force from the seat cushion to capture the ischial tuberosities, a posterior force from a back support to capture the posterior superior iliac spines of the pelvis, and an anterior corrective force that can be established either with an anterior positioning strap or the introduction of hip flexion into the seating system (so the knees sit higher than the hip joints). These three counteracting forces will work together to achieve neutral pelvic alignment if adequate flexibility is present.

Accommodation of pelvic deviations is needed when deformities are fixed, because application of external forces to an immovable pelvis will likely result in excessive pressure buildup, pain, and ultimately soft tissue injury such as a pressure ulcer. Care must be taken to provide a supportive seat and back, but the goal shifts from achieving correction to achieving comfort and support. These goals are achieved with the use of soft, accommodative materials that are capable of enveloping bony prominences, distributing weight-bearing pressures to the largest possible pressure-tolerant surface area, and creating an upright, balanced posture that maximizes the functional capacity of the client.

Commercially available seating components vary in their ability to provide the correction or accommodation needed, and clients will respond differently to available options, depending on body shape and composition, perceptions of comfort, aesthetic preferences, and other factors. Successive trials with different options may be needed to identify the best solutions for individual clients.

The lowest cost seating components are solid, padded seats and backs. They are the easiest to manufacture and may provide some benefits over standard fabric upholstery. However, their planar (noncontoured) shape is not effective in accommodating contoured body surfaces, which creates the potential for high pressure buildup in the areas of bony prominences. Fortunately, many manufacturers offer

contoured seating components, which distribute weight-bearing forces more effectively.[28]

Two types of contoured surfaces exist: (1) precontoured (generically contoured) and (2) custom contoured. The design of precontoured seats and backs is based on average anthropometric measurements,[29] and they come in a variety of sizes to fit most wheelchairs and clients.

See Fig. 16.9 for an example of precontoured seat and back cushions. These seat/back options are designed to support neutral alignment of the pelvis and the natural curves of the spine. Some back supports also provide lateral supports to assist with side-to-side balance, as shown in Fig. 16.10. The effectiveness of these surfaces for either postural support or pressure management depends not only on the properties of their component materials but also on the precision of fit, so careful measurement and matching the client to available options is key to successful outcomes.

Custom-contoured surfaces are constructed directly from the shape of the client. Many technologies are available to assist with the development of custom-contoured cushions, including hand-shaping foam, computer-assisted design/computer-assisted manufacturing systems, and "foam-in-place" technologies, among others.[30] These systems are designed to record the shape of the client's body as precisely as possible to manufacture support surfaces that match the contours of that individual. Custom-contoured systems are generally reserved for use with clients who have severe, fixed musculoskeletal deformities and little ability to move actively. They offer the best option for distribution of weight-bearing forces but are quite costly, restrictive, heavy, and offer no ability to be modified if the client's needs change.

It is important to gain knowledge about the properties associated with the materials used to manufacture the component parts of seating systems. The most commonly used materials include foams, air, gel, or a combination of these.

Fig. 16.9 Precontoured seat and back. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

Fig. 16.10 Back rest with lateral supports. (Courtesy Sunrise Medical, Fresno, California.)

The properties and characteristics (including advantages and disadvantages) of each material must be carefully considered according to its ability to provide the necessary support while minimizing the risk factors associated with the development of pressure and soft tissue injuries. These include the materials' ability to distribute weight-bearing forces, reduce shear and friction, and control temperature and moisture.[16,20,31]

Foams are the most common component material used in making support surfaces. Two types of foam are available: elastic (available as either a closed-cell or open-cell material) and viscoelastic. Both types have advantages that make them well suited for use in postural supports as well as disadvantages that must be considered. Elastic foams deform in proportion to the applied load, which helps them reduce peak pressure over bony prominences.[31] They do not, however, provide good envelopment, and they tend to insulate heat and keep it near the body. Viscoelastic foams are temperature sensitive, meaning they become softer and more compliant at higher temperatures.[31] This characteristic helps them provide even better pressure distribution than elastic foams, but clinicians must carefully assess individual clients' reactions to the warming effect in areas of concern.

Fluid-filled cushions are often composed of materials such as air, gel, or viscous fluids that are enclosed in one or more compartments.[31] Most of these products provide greater immersion into the cushion, thus distributing pressure over larger areas of the body and reducing pressures at bony prominences (see Fig. 16.3). The type of material used in the cushion influences both skin temperature and the moisture buildup where the support surface contacts the body.[32] Understanding the different kinds of materials helps the clinician select an appropriate seat cushion for pressure management and positioning.

Covers used for seating components are also important to consider, because they can alter the performance

characteristics of the underlying supportive materials.[32] An inflexible cover will prevent a cushion from providing optimal envelopment, and those that have high friction coefficients will override the benefits of cushion materials that were selected for their low friction coefficients. Cover materials also needs to be resilient, easy to clean, in some cases moisture resistant, and aesthetically pleasing to the client.

Once the team has identified the best seat and back supports to achieve optimal proximal alignment, consideration can be given to more distal body segments, beginning with the lower extremities. Table 16.1 provides evaluation guidelines for all remaining regions of the body. Table 16.2 presents common problems and possible solutions, and Table 16.3 describes different seating components and accessories with their relative advantages and disadvantages.

It is generally desirable to minimize stress or stretch on the hamstring muscles when positioning the lower extremities, so the knees should be flexed to 90 degrees or more with the footrests positioned as close to the wheelchair frame as possible without interfering with the caster wheels. This also accomplishes a related goal of achieving the smallest possible overall turning radius of the wheelchair. Footrest options will generally depend on the selection of the frame of the wheelchair. Some are integral components of the frame (Fig. 16.11), whereas others are designed to be removable for ease of transfers and other functional activities as shown in Fig. 16.12.

It is important to account for the thickness of the seat cushion when determining the length of the footrest to be ordered. Manufacturers consider "minimal footrest extension" to be the distance between the standard upholstery and the top of the footplate, but this does not account for the thickness of an added seat cushion. For example, if the client's measurement between the popliteal fossa and

Table 16.3 Advantages and Disadvantages of Various Wheelchair Components

Wheelchair Component	Options	Advantages	Disadvantages
Leg and foot supports	▪ Swing-away foot rests	▪ Lightweight support for lower extremities ▪ Removable for transfers	▪ Add to weight of wheelchair (vs. platform) ▪ Require maintenance ▪ Require management by wheelchair user
	▪ Flip-up foot platform	▪ Lightweight ▪ Few moving parts ▪ Very stable ▪ Often allows increased knee flexion angle; more comfortable and compact for user	▪ Very little adjustability ▪ Both lower extremities supported at same angle ▪ Unable to accommodate moderate or severe ankle contractures ▪ Not removable; may interfere with transfers for some users
	▪ Manual elevating leg rests	▪ Allows multiple leg positions ▪ May prevent some dependent edema (true edema management also requires recline or tilt to elevate the legs above the heart level) ▪ May increase lower extremity comfort	▪ Heavier than standard leg supports ▪ Many moving and adjustable parts; higher maintenance needs ▪ More strength and dexterity needed to manage
Arm supports	▪ Flip-back arm rests	▪ Stable arm support ▪ Typically lightweight ▪ Easy to manage	▪ Multiple moving parts ▪ Require maintenance to work properly ▪ May not be adjustable enough for all individuals
	▪ Tubular swing-away arm rest	▪ Extremely lightweight ▪ Easy for wheelchair user to manage ▪ Requires very little hand dexterity and strength	▪ May not feel stable to user ▪ May not tolerate extreme or repeated stresses ▪ Attachment hardware requires maintenance
	▪ Detachable, adjustable-height arm rest	▪ Support upper extremities in multiple positions ▪ Removable for transfers	▪ Heavier ▪ More moving parts; higher maintenance requirement ▪ May be difficult for users to manager, especially to replace parts on the wheelchair
	▪ Desk-length arm rest	▪ Allow wheelchair user to approach tables, sinks, desks for improved function ▪ Lighter in weight than full-length arm supports	▪ May not provide adequate support during transfers ▪ Do not provide full arm support
	▪ Full-length arm rest	▪ Provide full arm support ▪ Provide improved support during transfers	▪ Heavier than desk-length arm ▪ Do not allow close approach to tables, sinks, or desks
Wheel locks	▪ Pull-to lock	▪ Allow closer access for transfers to surfaces ▪ Move away from wheels so hands do not hit with propulsion	▪ May be more difficult to lock
	▪ Push-to lock	▪ Lock easily and securely	▪ May interfere with propulsion ▪ May interfere with transfers
	▪ Under-seat or scissor locks	▪ Complete clearance for hands during propulsion ▪ No interference in transfers	▪ Significantly better balance and coordination required for locking and unlocking ▪ More difficult to adjust

Fig. 16.11 Rigid frame ultralight wheelchair with integrated foot support. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

Fig. 16.12 Manual wheelchair with cross-brace folding mechanism. (Courtesy Sunrise Medical, Fresno, California.)

the foot is 17″ and he or she will be sitting on a 3″ cushion, the minimum footrest extension needed on the chair as delivered will be 14″.

Trunk positioning can be considered once the base of support is optimized (pelvis and lower extremities). The seat and back supports chosen to achieve optimal pelvic positioning will likely have a positive impact on resultant posture of the trunk, but it may be necessary to provide additional postural support if motor control of the upper body is limited. For example, lateral trunk supports may be needed to support the client in midline. These may be provided as integral components to the back rest or attached to the frame to enable some adjustability (see Fig. 16.10).

Back height is an important consideration. The minimum recommended height of a back support is one that captures the posterior superior iliac spines of the pelvis to provide pelvic stability. Clients who have functional use of the upper extremities for manual propulsion or other activities will need a back support that is no higher than the inferior angle of the scapulae to permit freedom of movement of the shoulder girdles. Back supports that reach the top of the shoulders are generally reserved for clients who have poor trunk control and no functional movement of the upper extremities.

The specific height chosen will depend on how much trunk support is needed and whether other accessories, such as lateral trunk supports or a head rest, will be used because they will need a point of attachment. "Back height" specified by wheelchair manufacturers is the distance between the top of the standard seat upholstery and the top of the standard back upholstery. The measurement needed for the wheelchair prescription must account for the seat cushion thickness, just as it had to be considered for the footrest measurement. Here, the prescribed height of the back support will be the patient's measurement from the bottom of the buttocks in sitting to the height of the desired back support on the client, *plus* the thickness of the cushion. For example, if the patient needs a back support that reaches a height that is just below the inferior angle of the scapulae and their body measurement from buttocks to inferior angle is 14″, the total prescribed back height will be 17″.

Head or neck supports are needed for clients who have poor head control or if the wheelchair will be equipped with the ability to tilt or recline. Head and neck rest pads come in a variety of shapes and styles. There are also many hardware attachment options. The type that is prescribed will depend on related functional needs of the client.

Upper extremity support will vary from none to those that provide full support of the forearms and hands of clients who have no active motor control of the upper extremities. Some considerations include the need to have removable armrests to facilitate independent and obstacle-free transfers, adjustable height to assist with different functional activities, and those that can move with the backrest as the wheelchair is reclining. Options, advantages, and disadvantages are presented in Table 16.3.

The Frame

The wheelchair frame is closely integrated with both the seating and mobility systems of the wheelchair. It provides a solid base for the attachment of seating components and facilitates the client's access to the mobility structures. Table 16.4 provides an overview of wheelchair configurations for clients needing long-term, permanent solutions for seating and mobility.

Manual wheelchair frames can be folding or rigid in structure. Folding frame wheelchairs have two side

Table 16.4 Wheelchair Configurations for Clients Needing Long-Term, Permanent Solutions

Wheeled Mobility Device	Advantages	Disadvantages	Possible Application
Semiadjustable manual wheelchair (lightweight)	▪ Simple to use ▪ Folds for transportation ▪ Lighter weight than standard wheelchair ▪ Partial adjustability ▪ Easier to propel ▪ Durable ▪ Will accommodate custom seating	▪ Not custom fit ▪ Lack of axle adjustability may limit manual propulsion by user ▪ Still may be too heavy for many users	▪ Intermittent or temporary use ▪ Possible use for in-home applications if environment tolerates
Fully adjustable manual wheelchair with a folding frame (ultra-lightweight)	▪ Very light frame ▪ Maximal adjustability, especially of rear axle position ▪ Custom fit to user ▪ Accommodates custom seating ▪ Accommodates to uneven ground by flexing ▪ Folds side to side for easy transportation	▪ Many adjustable or removable parts ▪ More complex design, requires more maintenance ▪ Some propulsion energy lost in flex of frame	▪ Full-time wheelchair user with permanent disability ▪ User wants to transport in trunk of vehicle ▪ Environment includes travel over uneven surfaces
Fully adjustable manual wheelchair with a rigid frame (ultra-lightweight)	▪ Very light frame ▪ Maximal adjustability, especially of rear axle position ▪ Custom fit to user ▪ Fewer removable or adjustable parts than folding frame ▪ Accommodates custom seating	▪ Does not accommodate to uneven terrain as easily as folding frame ▪ May be more difficult to transport in trunk of car (less compact when folded)	▪ Full-time wheelchair user with permanent disability ▪ User wants most efficient system for propulsion ▪ Used mainly indoors or on even terrains
Power assist manual wheelchair	▪ Light frame ▪ Maneuvers such as manual wheelchair ▪ Minimizes stress on shoulders	▪ Heavier than nonpower assist ▪ More difficult to disassemble for transport	▪ Lightweight manual wheelchair user with limited endurance or shoulder limitations ▪ Manual wheelchair user with long-distance ambulation needs or difficulty managing outdoor terrain independently
Tilt-in-space frame wheelchair	▪ Allows rotation in space for pressure management or other benefits ▪ Available for both manual and powered wheelchairs	▪ Frame often heavier and bulkier ▪ Usually does not fold for transportation ▪ If on manual wheelchair, typically has small rear wheels, requiring an attendant to propel	▪ Wheelchair user requires rotation in space for pressure management or other medical reason, such as respiratory disease
Reclining frame wheelchair	▪ Allows for change in seat-to-back angle, often to full supine position ▪ Available for both manual and powered wheelchairs	▪ Frame often heavier and bulkier ▪ Rear wheels set further back to provide larger base of support when in recline position ▪ Difficult to propel if used with manual wheelchair	▪ Used when a need for change in seat to back angle is required ▪ Used for pressure management ▪ May be used for self-care in wheelchair ▪ May be used when supine bed transfers are required ▪ Often used when building sitting tolerance during initial rehabilitation
Powered scooter	▪ Allows simple-to-learn powered mobility ▪ Good outdoor access ▪ Swivel seat for ease of transfers ▪ Baskets and other accessories for function, such as shopping	▪ Only one access method ▪ Large turning radius; difficult to use in many homes ▪ Does not accommodate custom seating; few seating support options	▪ Used with individuals who have limited endurance ▪ Often used for primarily outdoor mobility purposes
Powered wheelchair	▪ Full access to powered mobility for both indoor and outdoor use ▪ Multiple access methods possible ▪ Accommodates custom seating supports ▪ Accommodates power seating options, such as tilt or recline	▪ Heavy ▪ Requires van for transportation ▪ Less maneuverable than manual wheelchair ▪ Requires more initial training for optimal safety and function	▪ Individuals who cannot propel manual wheelchair effectively ▪ Used for indoor and outdoor mobility for long distances ▪ May be used in work or school applications for part-time manual wheelchair users

frames attached by a center cross brace to permit folding the chair from side to side. Rigid frame chairs consist of side frames that are welded together to act as a single unit. Rigid frame chairs can be reduced in size for transportation purposes by folding the back onto the seat and removing the rear wheels if the chair is equipped with quick-release axles. Rigid frame wheelchairs are more efficient to propel because they are lighter in weight and none of the propulsion force applied by the user is absorbed by moving parts.

Standard weight manual wheelchairs (such as those used in hospitals) typically have steel frames. They are very durable but also heavy to propel and lift. Lightweight wheelchairs are usually made of aluminum, and ultralight wheelchairs are typically composed of aluminum, titanium, or carbon fiber. Aluminum is widely available, easy to weld, and typically less costly, but it can rust and corrode when exposed to the elements. Aluminum provides a stiffer ride, and this can offer some advantage on smooth terrain. Titanium has a very high strength-to-weight ratio, and therefore less material is needed to build a frame. The result is an overall lighter frame that does not corrode and has inherent vibration dampening. Titanium costs more than aluminum, so justification of the medical need to third-party payers can be challenging. Carbon fiber offers many functional advantages to other options because it is extremely light and durable, but it remains cost-prohibitive in most cases.

Some manual wheelchair frames offer options, such as adjustable rear axle plates and front caster housings, to move the seating system forward, back, up, or down on the wheel base to increase propulsion efficiency, enhance maneuverability, and reduce the risk of overuse injuries.[33] Some clients will be unable to achieve functional independence with manual wheelchairs regardless of how lightweight or optimally configured, so power wheelchairs must then be considered.

A power wheelchair is composed of a power base over which the seating system is placed. The power base houses the motors, batteries, and software options. Both manual and power wheelchairs can be equipped with special function frames, such as tilt, recline, standing, or elevation. These features require additional medical justification and assist with pressure redistribution, positioning, pain management, physiological functions, comfort, and functional independence.[34,35]

Recliner frames, such as the one shown in Fig. 16.5, permit an increase in the seat-to-back angle. They are typically paired with elevating leg rests to allow the client to assume a full supine position. This can be advantageous for pressure redistribution, self-catheterization, change in hip angle for pain management, and to allow for gravity to assist with positioning. Caution should be used when prescribing recliner frames for clients who have spasticity, as the change in the hip angle can trigger spasms and disrupt overall positioning. Movement to and from sitting can also increase shear forces, which contribute to the development of pressure ulcers.

A tilt frame allows the client to remain in one position because the seat-to-back angle is fixed. Pressure redistribution is accomplished by tilting the upper portion of the frame over the lower portion, as shown in Fig. 16.4. Tilt is often a better option for clients with hypertonicity for the reasons mentioned previously.

Seat elevators are only available on power chairs. They allow the client to raise or lower the seat height relative to the ground, which can increase functional independence in activities such as transfers.

Standing frames, such as the one shown in Fig. 16.6, are available on both manual and power wheelchairs. They are integrated into the base and allow the client to achieve a standing position while being supported by the seat and back of the wheelchair. Standing is associated with many physiological benefits, including tone management, an increase in bone density, facilitation of bowel and bladder regulation, and pressure redistribution. It also provides advantages for environmental access and social participation.

The Mobility System

The mobility structure provides the means of propelling the wheelchair. It is composed of the drive wheels, caster wheels, tires, and client interface component, such as the hand rims on a manual wheelchair or joystick on many power wheelchairs. Goals of the mobility system focus on the facilitation of movement within the client's environment and commonly include the following:

1. Provide independent mobility in all environments of interest to the client.
2. Provide speed and agility that equals or exceeds gross motor abilities of "typically functioning" age-related peers.
3. Maximize participation in all MR-ADLs.
4. Minimize energy expenditure and prevent injury through ergonomically sound design.

Selection of the client's most reliable source of motor control is key to prescribing the most appropriate mobility system.[4] The access method can be entirely manual, entirely power, or manual with power assistance. Table 16.5 summarizes the indications, advantages, and disadvantages of the various wheeled technologies.

MANUAL WHEELCHAIRS

Manual wheelchairs typically have two sets of wheels. The two large wheels range in size from 20″ to 26″ and are located in the rear. Two smaller caster wheels can range from 3″ to 8″. They are connected to the front of the wheelchair frame by caster housings. Casters swivel to permit steering and maneuverability of the chair. Rear wheels are composed of tires mounted on rims that are connected to their hubs by metal spokes (called *spoked wheels*) or synthetic spokes (called *mag wheels*). Push rims (sometimes called *hand rims*) are attached to the outside of the wheels. They are slightly smaller in diameter than the wheels and are the access point for propulsion and maneuverability.

Factors to consider when selecting the most appropriate wheels include weight and the environment in which they will most often be used. Spoked wheels are lighter but require more maintenance and are not well-suited for moist environments. Mag wheels require little maintenance but

Table 16.5 Mobility Options: Considerations, Common Problems, and Possible Solutions

Propulsion Type	Indications	Considerations	Common Problems	Possible Solution(s)
Manual wheelchair: bilateral upper extremity	Clients who have adequate UE strength to achieve functional mobility (speed, distance, endurance)	▪ Weight of chair ▪ Adjustability to optimize positioning and UE alignment for propulsion ▪ Availability of accessories needed, including appropriate wheel/caster sizes, tires, footrests, etc. to fit environmental and lifestyle needs	Physical: ▪ Shoulder and wrist pain ▪ Excessive shoulder abduction ▪ Short propulsion stroke Equipment: ▪ Inadequate seating system ▪ Seat too wide ▪ Seat too high ▪ Rear axle position too far back ▪ Wheelchair tipping backward on inclines	▪ Lightweight frame and accessories to decrease strain ▪ Narrower wheelchair to optimize UE to push rim alignment ▪ Upright postural alignment with appropriate seating system ▪ Align seating system to achieve elbow flexion of 100–120 degrees when hands are at the top of the push rims ▪ Rear axle in line with or anterior to center of shoulder joint ▪ Education for proper propulsion ▪ technique to decreased coefficient of drag on push rim ▪ Consider use of antitippers during training phase
Manual wheelchair: unilateral upper and lower extremity	Hemiplegia	▪ Rear wheel alignment for UE propulsion ▪ Low seat to allow LE propulsion	Physical: ▪ Posterior pelvic tilt ▪ Short propulsion strokes on rear wheel ▪ Inadequate heel → toe progression during propulsion Equipment: ▪ Casters interfering with feet ▪ Nonfunctional thigh not fully supported due to height of footrest to allow for ground clearance ▪ Footrest supporting non-functional LE bottoms out on ramps	▪ Pelvic belt and/or shorter seat depth to prevent posterior pelvic tilt during foot propulsion ▪ Top of cushion to floor measurement less than or equal to patient measurement of popliteal fossa to bottom of foot ▪ Optimize seat width and axle position for UE propulsion ▪ Split seat to allow for hip flexion, increased thigh support, and more clearance for footrest on side of impairment ▪ 6″ or smaller caster to increase clearance for foot propulsion
Manual wheelchair: unilateral upper extremity (UE) (one arm drive)	Impaired motor control in all but one UE	▪ Requires larger hand to grasp and propel two rims on stronger side ▪ Added weight to frame and additional step for folding ▪ High risk for overuse syndrome	Physical: ▪ Shoulder and wrist pain ▪ Difficulty maneuvering chair on all surfaces and tight spaces	▪ Consider power options
Power assist wheels	Manual wheelchair user with shoulder pain Impaired shoulder or hand function	▪ Increased weight of each wheel increases difficulty when folding or propelling in fully manual mode ▪ Allows for mobility over a variety of terrain with less strain to shoulder/wrist joints ▪ Requires additional maintenance ▪ Increased overall width of chair to accommodate power components in axles	Physical: Increased shoulder pain experienced when loading wheelchair into vehicle	▪ Consider wheelchair van ▪ Second set of lightweight rear wheels to use as a backup

Table 16.5 Mobility Options: Considerations, Common Problems, and Possible Solutions (Continued)

Propulsion Type	Indications	Considerations	Common Problems	Possible Solution(s)
Power wheelchair: joystick controller	Unable to propel manual wheelchair but has consistent and reliable volitional control capable of activating a joystick	▪ Environmental access—requires ramps and elevators ▪ Increased maintenance requirements over manual ▪ Permits independence for clients who cannot propel manual wheelchairs ▪ Limited options for community transportation ▪ Proportional control of the wheelchair is possible	Equipment: ▪ Joystick in the way of transfers and pulling up to tables Physical: ▪ Difficulty with control when ataxia is present	▪ Consider swing away hardware for obstacle free transfers ▪ Adjust wheelchair programming to decrease responsiveness to involuntary movements ▪ Consider manual wheelchair as a backup
Power wheelchair: sip and puff	No reliable motor control of upper or lower extremities	▪ Requires increased training/ maintenance ▪ Oral motor control is needed ▪ Nonproportional control so minimal option to vary speed "on the fly" ▪ Difficulty conversing when driving the chair ▪ Additional steps in activation needed to access power seat functions	Equipment: Difficulty tracking on uneven ground Physical: ▪ Disruption of seated position can cause client to lose access to controller ▪ Client fatigue	▪ Consider specialized path correction system ▪ Provide secondary emergency shutoff system ("kill switch") to avoid accidents ▪ Modify drive parameters to fine tune driving ▪ Train client and caregivers in the use of positional markers to increase reliable access to controller ▪ Chest strap and pelvic belt to ensure proper alignment ▪ Attendant control as a backup ▪ Manual wheelchair as backup
Power wheelchair: head array system	Availability of reliable head/ neck control	▪ Requires increased training, set up and maintenance ▪ Nonproportional control so cannot vary speed "on the fly" ▪ Additional steps in activation needed to access power seat functions	Equipment: ▪ Difficulty tracking on uneven ground ▪ Equipment malfunction with greater number of more intricate parts Physical: ▪ Hairstyle and head wear can impact proximity switches ▪ Neck pain and fatigue	▪ Consider specialized path correction system ▪ Modify drive parameters to fine tune driving ▪ Chest strap and pelvic belt to maintain proximity to switches ▪ Optional attendant control ▪ Shorter hairstyle/low ponytail/no hats ▪ Manual wheelchair as a backup

add weight to the wheelchair, and performance may be affected by extreme temperatures.

Standard wheelchairs offer few options in the selection of wheel size or configuration. Most are equipped with 24″ rear wheels and 8″ front casters. Higher cost models, including lightweight and ultralightweight wheelchairs, can be equipped with different-sized wheels and casters, as well as adjustable rear axle and caster housings. These features permit the adjustment of the client's orientation in space to improve alignment for positioning or propulsion efficiency. The degree to which these features can be adjusted depends on the wheelchair frame. Figs. 16.12 and 16.13 illustrate the differences between the standard and ultralight options for adjustability.

Adjustable rear axle and caster housings are important for clients who use wheelchairs on a full-time basis, because they are at a higher risk of developing overuse injuries with associated pain and loss of function from repetitive movements.[21,36,37] The two main areas of focus are the shoulders (e.g., rotator cuff tears) and wrists (e.g., carpal tunnel syndrome).[38]

Ease of bilateral upper extremity manual wheelchair propulsion is maximized when the wheelchair is as light and as small as possible and the client's weight is distributed rearward (with the seat moved back in relation to the rear wheels) to decrease rolling resistance.[39] Research has determined that the optimal upper extremity to push rim position allows for 100 to 120 degrees of elbow flexion when the client's hand is resting on the top of the push rim (Fig. 16.14). This position tends to maximize efficiency in propulsion and minimize overuse impact on the shoulders.[39,40]

Wheelchair propulsion biomechanics, wheelchair configuration, and training are all important considerations in the prevention of injuries. Clients will need training to effectively manage wheelchairs that are configured to maximize propulsion efficiency. The client's center of gravity will be shifted to a position that is lower than what it would be in a standard wheelchair, and this may make transfers more challenging. The center of gravity is also shifted further back, which will make it easier for the chair to tip backward (into a "wheelie"). This feature makes it easier to navigate curbs and other common environmental barriers, but it

Fig. 16.13 Ultralight wheelchair with rigid frame. (Courtesy Sunrise Medical, Fresno, California.)

Fig. 16.15 Anti-tip tubes with wheels. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

Fig. 16.14 Optimal upper extremity to push rim position for manual wheelchair propulsion. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

may be necessary to utilize anti-tip tubes (Fig. 16.15) during the initial training period to prevent the client from tipping over backward when propelling the wheelchair up ramps and other inclines.

Clients who propel manual wheelchairs will also require training to consistently use proper propulsion techniques.[41] Long, smooth strokes limit excessive forces on upper extremity joints and decrease the rate of loading on the push rims. In contrast, short, choppy pushes are associated with higher energy expenditure and the development of repetitive use syndromes. Allowing the hands to drop below the rims during the "recovery" (nonpropulsion) phase of the stroke aids in smooth motion and protects the shoulders from injury.[39]

Clients who do not have functional use of both upper extremities can use other propulsion techniques.[42] Those with hemiplegia typically use one upper and lower extremity to achieve functional manual wheelchair propulsion. The stronger upper extremity manages the push rim on the rear wheel for propulsion in tandem with the lower extremity, which also manages directional control and variations in speed and acceleration. Clients who lack reliable motor control in both upper extremities may propel their wheelchairs with their feet, bypassing the use of the push rims altogether. Lower extremity propulsion mandates careful prescription of the seat height to achieve optimal heel-toe progression, and this typically requires smaller rear wheels and casters, as well as adjustable axle plates and caster housings.

Clients who have functional use of only one upper extremity *may* be able to propel manual wheelchairs with one arm drive or lever drive systems.[43] These options connect the axles of both drive wheels (either with a dual push rim or a lever system) so that the client can control both wheels and have effective directional control from one side of the chair. This method is very taxing, however, and can only be used for short distances. A power wheelchair option is typically a better solution.

Power assist wheels may be an alternative for some clients who are at high risk for overuse injuries but are not

quite ready to consider the accessibility challenges associated with power wheelchairs.[44] Power assist wheels are interchangeable with the rear wheels on manual wheelchairs, and this is easily accomplished on chairs equipped with quick-release axles. The difference between a manual rear wheel and a power assist rear wheel is the presence of batteries and motors within the hubs of the wheels. The client propels power assist wheels with the push rims in the same way, but the physical effort is boosted by the power assist motors, making it possible to travel longer distances and/or travel over more challenging terrains with less risk of repetitive strain injuries. Power assist wheels are heavier than standard wheels, so it is more difficult to remove them if folding the wheelchair for car transport. It is also challenging to propel or have a caregiver push the wheelchair if the power assist wheels are broken. However, clients may easily interchange them with nonmotorized wheels when power assist wheels need maintenance or repair.

POWER WHEELCHAIRS

One of the most important decisions for any client is that of manual versus power mobility. Both mobility systems have advantages and disadvantages, and overall function is greatly affected by this decision. Conditions and impairments that often indicate need for power mobility include the following:

1. Severe upper extremity or upper trunk weakness leading to an inability to propel any type of manual wheelchair
2. Ataxic or uncoordinated movement of the upper extremities
3. Endurance limitations, whether from neuromuscular or cardiopulmonary impairment
4. Progressive conditions that will likely lead to loss of upper extremity strength or poor endurance (e.g., amyotrophic lateral sclerosis or multiple sclerosis)
5. Orthopedic problems in the upper extremity joints (e.g., arthritis or preexisting rotator cuff or carpal tunnel impairments)
6. Environments that require long-distance travel on a regular basis or travel over rough terrain

Once a determination has been made that power mobility is necessary, one of the next decisions is the access method for control of the device.[45]

Scooters are the least complicated versions of power mobility devices. Propulsion is activated by the client through a tiller that is directly connected to the front wheel of the device. Scooters are typically only appropriate for clients who require minimal assistance with positioning and travel on very limited terrains, including indoor surfaces and smoother outdoor surfaces.

Power wheelchairs can be equipped with mid-wheel drive (Fig. 16.16), front wheel drive (Fig. 16.17), or rear wheel drive (Fig. 16.18). The drive wheels are connected to the motors that control the speed and acceleration of the wheelchair in response to a joystick or other client access method, including switch arrays, sip and puff, and head-controlled devices, among others. These options make it likely that even clients with significant impairments and functional limitations can achieve independent mobility. For example, clients who have Duchene muscular dystrophy tend to lose gross motor control while retaining fine motor control of the fingers. A joystick can be programmed to respond to the smallest joystick excursions to achieve full speed of the wheelchair. Other motor impairments can be accommodated, such as the need to ignore extraneous movements caused by tremors or muscle spasms.[46,47]

Assessment for the appropriate method of access depends first on achieving the best seating solutions to optimize any available source of reliable motor control. Some input methods, such as sip and puff and head control systems, require longer training periods. A thorough evaluation with multiple episodes of training may be required before the best access method is selected.

Fig. 16.16 Mid-wheel drive power wheelchair. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

Fig. 16.17 Front wheel drive power wheelchair. (Courtesy Permobil Inc.)

Fig. 16.18 Rear wheel drive power wheelchair. (Courtesy Sunrise Medical, Fresno, California.)

Special care is needed for the prescription of power wheelchairs. Clinicians must be able to provide adjustments in many of the drive parameters, including but not limited to speed, acceleration, starting and stopping, turning and changing directions, locking, unlocking, and free-wheeling.

Regardless of the type of wheelchair that is being recommended, a detailed client assessment is needed to identify which options are appropriate for each client. Clients with significant impairments and functional limitations will benefit from the experience of specially trained clinicians who work with complex rehabilitation technology on a regular basis. Errors in prescription or ordering will come at great costs to the client, not only in dollars but in overall functional potential. Less experienced clinicians are encouraged to refer clients to wheelchair clinics for recommendations and prescriptions.

The Seating and Mobility Assessment Process

The seating and mobility assessment is a highly complex process involving multiple component evaluations, tests, and measures.[21] The client's needs should be considered in the broadest possible context. This will ensure appropriate recommendations, provide meaningful outcome measures, and justify requests for third-party payment.[48-50]

Specially trained clinicians, organized in a team structure, are usually responsible for performing seating and mobility assessments. The team may include a physical therapist, occupational therapist, speech-language pathologist, a physician, a rehabilitation technology supplier, and other professionals identified as important by the client. It is particularly helpful if one or more of the rehabilitation professionals and the rehabilitation technology supplier are Assistive Technology Professionals/Seating and Mobility Specialists (ATP/SMSs). These two credentials are provided by the Rehabilitation Engineering and Assistive Technology Society of North America (RESNA) to recognize expertise in wheelchair prescription.[51] Some third-party payers will not consider requests for payment of certain types of wheelchairs unless an ATP/SMS is involved in the recommendation and delivery of the wheelchair.[52] The team engages in assessment, prescription, and training. All aspects of the process must be carefully documented to ensure funding, tracking of client needs over time, and accuracy of the medical record.

SUBJECTIVE/HISTORY

A detailed history is an essential component of a seating and mobility assessment. Information collected typically includes all medical diagnoses and related health information, experience with assistive technology in the past, a description of the client's usual daily activities, the home and other environments in which the equipment will be used, transportation needs of the client, and details about potential funding sources. The information collected will help the team establish goals and interventions and often translates into the best justification for any recommendations.

DIAGNOSES AND RELATED HEALTH INFORMATION

All diagnoses and related impairments and limitations are relevant to the assessment process. First, determine if the client relies solely on a wheelchair for mobility or if some ambulation potential exists (with or without assistive devices). Third-party payment may be in jeopardy if the team fails to establish a clear justification of need for the seating and mobility systems. It is important to know the dates of onset of the client's diagnoses and whether impairments are static or progressive in nature.

Information about associated health concerns is also important. Note the presence of difficulties with breathing, cardiovascular or circulatory problems, seizure disorders, bowel and bladder incontinence, nutrition and digestion, medications and side effects, previous or planned surgeries, orthopedic concerns such as subluxation or dislocation of the hip or shoulder, osteoporosis, other orthotic interventions (including leg, foot, or trunk orthoses), history of pressure ulcers or other skin conditions, sensation, pain, visual deficits, hearing deficits, and cognitive and behavioral problems.[53] Diagnostic information and related health concerns have a direct impact on the selection of seating and mobility components, as well as approval of insurance coverage of prescribed equipment.

PRIOR EXPERIENCE WITH ASSISTIVE TECHNOLOGY

It is helpful to fully understand the client's experiences with assistive technology. Some clients will be referred for assessment of need for a first wheelchair, but others will have important experiences that need specific exploration. The age, make, and model of any devices currently in use should be recorded, along with the sizes of all items and their present condition. It is important to note the client's posture and function while using this equipment and to determine and document why the person has been referred for assessment. Helpful considerations might include the following:

1. Did the client outgrow the equipment?
2. Did the equipment meet or exceed its expected life span?
3. Has there been a change in medical condition or functional status?
4. What does the client like/dislike about the current equipment?
5. How is the current equipment used, and is that use appropriate and effective?
6. What, if any, experience has the client had with other equipment?
7. What are the client's goals for any modifications or new seating or mobility devices?
8. Does the client use any other assistive technology that will need to interface with the seating and mobility systems, such as an augmentative communication device or respiratory equipment?

MOBILITY-RELATED ACTIVITIES OF DAILY LIVING

The client's home environment or other environments in which the equipment will be used must be understood, including those accessed for school, work, or recreation.[21] Ask the client to describe typical activities of daily living that will involve the use of the wheelchair, including methods of transfer, optimal height of the wheelchair seat for transfers to other surfaces, and techniques used to accomplish self-care, vocational, and avocational activities.

Information about the mode of community transportation (e.g., car, adapted van, public transportation, school-provided transportation) is important to ensure that the new seating and mobility systems will be compatible with what is still in use. Even small differences in the size and configuration of new devices can create problems. Consider van tie-down systems and the clearance available if the client enters a van using an automatic lift. It is better to anticipate these needs than to discover them once a new wheelchair is delivered.

FUNDING SOURCES

Most clients will seek third-party payment for seating and mobility systems. Prescribers will need to be familiar with the rules and regulations of potential payers from the start of the prescription process to ensure that any necessary documentation is targeted to the requirements of the funding agency. The most common payers are Medicare (federal insurance), Medicaid (state insurance), and private health insurance companies. Some clients may be eligible for benefits from the Veteran's Administration if the need for a wheelchair is related to illnesses or injuries that resulted from service in the armed forces. Medicare and Medicaid are government agencies that are regulated by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid (CMS). Federal regulations that affect Medicare change periodically in response to policy changes, and states have some flexibility to alter Medicaid rules beyond those established by CMS. Clinicians can rely on their rehabilitation technology suppliers to keep them up-to-date about coverage trends.

PHYSICAL EXAMINATION AND ASSOCIATED CONSIDERATIONS

The physical examination begins with observation of the client as he or she enters the clinic. Make note of any postural deviations, difficulties with wheelchair propulsion, overall movement quality, and evidence of discomfort. Information gleaned from the subjective assessment helps the team to hone in on potential areas of concern, even those that go beyond the scope of the seating and mobility assessment team. For example, the history of pressure ulcers will need to be addressed with the prescription of an appropriate seating system and a means to achieve intermittent pressure relief, but it also may be appropriate to refer the client to other health professionals for counseling on nutrition, bowel and bladder management, or other medical issues.

A gross assessment can be made by conducting a review of major systems, including a quick screen of the functions associated with cardiovascular, pulmonary, integumentary, musculoskeletal, neuromuscular systems, as well as the communication and cognitive abilities of the individual.[54]

Components of the cardiovascular and pulmonary assessments include determination of blood pressure, heart rate, pulse oximetry, respiratory rate, and edema. Skin condition must be assessed, particularly those areas of the body that are prone to pressure buildup within the seating system. Direct observation of any affected areas is essential.

Gross assessment of musculoskeletal and neuromuscular status includes a quick screen of available range of motion in all major joints and recording of the client's height and weight. The client's ability to propel and other aspects of wheelchair management provides general information about the neuromuscular system. Cognitive function and the client's ability to communicate can be observed while collecting information throughout the assessment process.

TESTS AND MEASURES USED IN SEATING AND MOBILITY ASSESSMENTS

The gross review of systems helps determine anything that requires more comprehensive assessment with specific tests and measures. The examination should take place with the client in different positions, including assessment of postural alignment in the current wheelchair, sitting and supine on a mat, and simulation of any proposed interventions.

Many tests and measures are used during the seating and wheeled mobility examination process. Some are necessary for all clients, and others are used only in particular instances and are determined based on the client's presenting symptoms. See Table 16.1 for common symptoms encountered during seating assessments. The Table is arranged according to body segments (beginning with the pelvis) and presents possible physical and equipment causes for presenting symptoms, as well as examination procedures that can be used to identify underlying causes.

Many of the tests and measures used are incorporated into the mat evaluation, with observation of the client in seated and supine positions. The team assesses the following

with the client seated on the edge of the mat: postural asymmetries, sitting balance, available range of motion in the spine and pelvis, functional abilities (e.g., transfers and reaching), and the influence of abnormal muscle tone and reflex activity on posture and function.

Results obtained in sitting are compared with those discovered in the supine mat evaluation. This position is often used for measuring specific joint range of motion, strength, coordination, and the influence of abnormal muscle tone and reflexes (and how this differs in supine compared with sitting). Attention must be paid to isolated hip joint mobility; orthopedic deformities such as pelvic asymmetries, hip joint subluxations or dislocations; and flexibility of the spine and pelvic regions.[21]

Examination in both supine and sitting positions offers an important means to assess the flexibility of postural deformities. Gravitational pull on the body influences postural reactions differently in each position. Postural deformities that are present during the sitting assessment but disappear in the supine mat evaluation can be considered flexible and may be correctible in the seating system. In contrast, postural asymmetries that are present in sitting and remain unchanged in supine should be considered fixed. Attempts to correct them in the seating system will result in pain and/or soft tissue injury.

Simulation techniques are helpful.[53] Hand simulation is often performed with the client seated on the mat. The therapist uses his or her hands to mimic forces that can be applied by components of the seating system. This technique helps the therapist determine if external supports will provide the desired effect on the client's posture, how much force is required, and the optimal location and direction of the force that needs to be applied.[21]

A seating simulator offers a means to verify the results of the hand simulation. This device is a highly adjustable wheelchair frame with many interchangeable components.[55] It is first preset to provide the desired supports; then the client sits in it so the therapist can determine if the settings produce the desired postural and functional outcomes.

The third simulation method involves the use of commercially available seating and mobility products that offer a close approximation of those that are being considered by the team. This approach provides the advantage of testing the actual components that may be prescribed to determine their effectiveness in meeting the established goals and helpful evidence to support funding requests made to third-party payers.

A variety of more specialized tests and measures may be indicated for some clients. These include pressure mapping (Fig. 16.19),[56] custom contour seat simulation, pulse oximetry and other circulatory assessments during simulation, and functional wheelchair propulsion testing.[57] These specific measures are generally not appropriate for all seating and mobility assessments but can be mixed and matched according to the needs of the client. All these tests and measures provide the therapist with the necessary information required for the evaluation and determination of final equipment selections.

Examination findings should be organized according to body segment for easy translation into necessary interventions. Table 16.1 details the desired seated posture for each body segment, common deviations and associated symptoms, possible physical and equipment causes, and the examination procedures that should be used to determine the underlying cause of deviations. Specific information about neuromuscular, musculoskeletal, cardiopulmonary, and integumentary status is collected using standardized tests and measures as the client progresses through the examination process. It is helpful to decide which tests and measures can be performed in each position (sitting in the existing equipment, sitting on the edge of the mat, and laying supine) to minimize the need to have the client change positions.

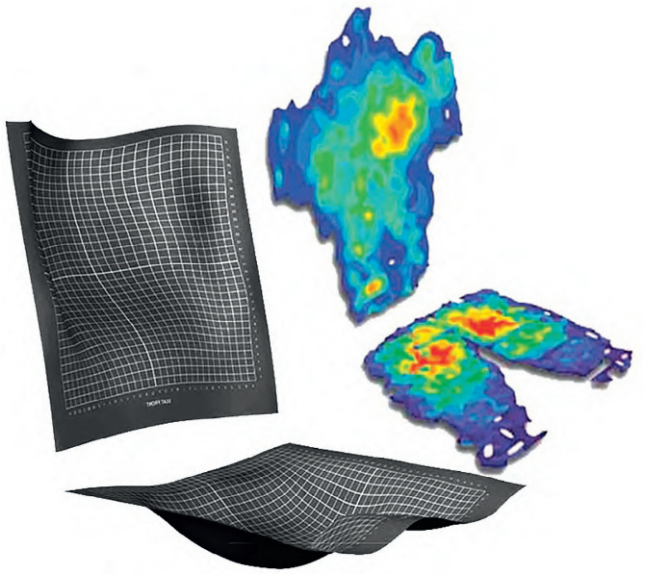


Fig. 16.19 Image of CONFORMat. (CONFORMat™ image courtesy of Tekscan, Inc., South Boston, MA)

Neuromuscular

Evaluators should make note of any weakness, incoordination, influence of abnormal muscle tone causing asymmetries, and/or hyperflexed or hyperextended posturing causing variations from the optimal postural alignment in sitting. It is important to compare seated postures in current equipment to seated postures on the mat, because inappropriate equipment may be a contributing cause to presenting problems. The results of the neuromuscular assessment are an important factor in identifying an appropriate intervention. For example, asymmetrical muscle tone in the trunk can cause lateral trunk flexion and ultimately scoliosis if left unchecked. The use of carefully placed lateral trunk supports in combination with a tilt-in space frame may inhibit the reflex activity responsible and help to keep the client aligned after intermittent spasms. It is important to note whether neuromuscular conditions are static or progressive, because seating and mobility systems designed for individuals with progressive disorders will need to be easily modified to meet the client's needs over the expected life of the wheelchair, which is typically 3 to 5 years.

Musculoskeletal

The musculoskeletal assessment will reveal the need to correct or accommodate postural deformities. Every attempt should be made to correct flexible postural problems to prevent them from becoming fixed problems. For example, the common postural deviations caused by a flexible posterior pelvic tilt can often be corrected by providing three carefully placed external forces to maintain the pelvis in neutral alignment. Clients who present with fixed postural deformities will need accommodation to envelope and protect any rigid bony prominences and distribute weight-bearing forces to prevent discomfort and soft tissue injury.

Cardiopulmonary

Some clients will present with impairments and limitations in the cardiovascular system, which may translate into the need to provide extra soft-tissue protection if the client has vascular problems that limit the ability to heal. More commonly, cardiopulmonary impairments limit endurance and may indicate the need for a power wheelchair for functional mobility, even when upper extremity function may be adequate to propel a manual wheelchair.

Integumentary

Any existing problems with the integumentary system should be addressed by making accommodations to protect areas of existing skin or soft tissue injury to minimize the risk of future damage. This is accomplished by prescription of a cushion that is capable of offloading any areas of the body that have a history of skin breakdown and distributing all seating pressures across the largest possible surface area of more pressure-tolerant body parts.[20,21]

Comorbidities

Many clients who rely on the permanent use of a wheelchair for seating and mobility will present with impairments and limitations of more than one system. Interventions then may require a careful risk/benefit analysis about how much correction, accommodation, and compensation is needed. For example, a client with significant musculoskeletal deformities, paralysis, and abnormal muscle tone will present with many challenges that must be addressed. It will be important to balance multiple needs to optimize outcomes of function, comfort, skin protection, and other factors identified as important by the client.

The data collected during the examination process is matched to commercially available seating and mobility components to develop a seating system that corrects or accommodates postural problems identified, a wheelchair frame that can provide the desired body-in-space positioning, and a mobility system capable of providing the client with a safe and efficient means of locomotion in all environments of interest.

Ordering the Wheelchair

Inadequate support or improper fit of the wheelchair can lead to a variety of problems for both seating and mobility, so even those clients who require a wheelchair on a temporary or part-time basis should be prescribed a wheelchair that fits properly and provides a minimally supportive seat and back to avoid injury or secondary impairments. Manufacturers of standard wheelchairs provide guidelines for measuring clients and their environments of intended use to ensure the best fit possible. See Table 16.6 for standard wheelchair dimensions and Table 16.3 for accessories that can be used to personalize the wheelchair to help meet the client's individual and environmental needs.

Clients who require full-time, permanent use of a wheelchair will require more than basic fit and support to address impairments and limitations and should be referred to a team of specialists at a wheelchair clinic as previously discussed.[50] All members of the team help to generate the plan of care, specific interventions, and a comprehensive wheelchair prescription that will meet all needs identified through the evaluation process. Each team member plays a vital role in helping ensure the best outcome through service coordination, ongoing communication with all parties involved, and clear documentation of the process.

The physical or occupational therapist typically assumes the role of lead coordinator of the process. He or she helps to ensure that the prescription moves through all required steps so the client can receive the equipment in a timely manner. The therapist works closely with the rehabilitation technology supplier to identify specific manufacturers' products to meet the client's goals and needs identified in the assessment process. The therapist incorporates those details into a letter of medical necessity. This document is the key to obtaining approval of third-party payment.

The letter of medical necessity must be clear, concise, and comprehensive, as well as consistent with the guidelines for coverage specified by the funding source. The purpose of this letter is to provide a clear picture of the client and the equipment being recommended. This letter must contain several elements.

The introductory paragraph should describe the client in detail, including the diagnoses and associated limitations and impairments, onset dates, prognosis, a summary of the history and the systems review, as well as the reason for any unusual requests. For example, most wheelchairs are expected to last a minimum of 3 to 5 years. Requests

Table 16.6 Standard Wheelchair Configurations for Clients Needing Short-Term, Temporary Solutions

Frame	Seat Size	Seat to Floor	Back Height	Seat and Back	Armrests Styles	Footrest
Adult Sizes	16–22″ wide (in 2″ increments) by 16 or 18″ deep	19 ¾″	16 ½″	Sling style upholstery	▪ Fixed full or desk length ▪ Removable full or desk length	▪ Fixed with flip up footplates ▪ Swing away/removable footrests ▪ Swing away/removable elevating leg rests with calf pads
Hemi Height	18 × 16 or 16 × 16	17 ½″	16 ½″			

to pay for new equipment within that timeframe must be accompanied by a convincing argument as to why the replacement is needed.

Next, detailed information is provided about the specific tests and measures used during the examination and outcomes of the evaluation. These include, but are not limited to, the individual's functional status, strength, range of motion, musculoskeletal deformities, neuromuscular status, abnormal muscle tone or reflex findings, and the results of the simulation processes. This information can be organized and reported on a standardized form or in a narrative style.

The seating and mobility assessment will have revealed problems associated with the musculoskeletal, neuromuscular, integumentary, and cardiopulmonary systems. It is important for the therapist to document the relationship between the impairments and limitations identified and the seating and mobility interventions that are being recommended to justify the medical need for each component of the seating and mobility system. Each part of the system must be specified and accompanied by medical and/or functional justification to support the selection. Third-party payers may also require an explanation about why lower cost options were not effective for the client.

Finally, a summary of the client information and contact information for the primary therapist and the prescribing physician should be provided so that the funding source may contact these individuals if any questions arise during the review process. Meticulous preparation of the letter of medical necessity may mean the difference between efficient funding of the seating and mobility system and a long, drawn-out review process that could delay the delivery of equipment by several months.

The rehabilitation technology supplier assumes primary responsibility for all aspects of the intervention once the letter of medical necessity has been provided. He or she is responsible for submitting the medical documentation to the third-party payer, along with a detailed cost invoice of all parts of the wheelchair being requested. The rehabilitation technology supplier also acts as the conduit for any questions that arise during the review process. Once funding is approved, the rehabilitation technology supplier orders the prescribed equipment (often from several different manufacturers), assembles the equipment according to the specifications prescribed, and notifies the therapist that the seating and mobility system is ready for delivery. The client then returns to the seating clinic for fitting, adjustment, and training. Delivery is a critical element in the intervention process and directly affects the outcomes related to the use of the equipment.

Delivering the Wheelchair

Delivery of equipment may occur several months after the examination and prescription process for all but very basic wheelchair prescriptions. It is important for the therapist to ensure that the status and needs of the client have not changed since the initial seating and mobility assessment. The delivery process includes making necessary adjustments as well as training the client and any caregivers in the use, maintenance, and care of the equipment.[50] Instructions should be provided in multiple formats (i.e., verbal, demonstration, and in writing) and must include review of the owner's manuals provided by the equipment manufacturers. The client should have the opportunity to function in and use the equipment during the delivery process to ensure that the goals established during the examination process have been effectively attained.

Regardless of the type of wheelchair selected or the access method chosen, intensive training of the person using the wheelchair is necessary.[50] Training takes place across settings and over time. Wheelchair skills are typically introduced during inpatient rehabilitation, but training usually continues after discharge until the new client gains independence with advanced skills. Initial training may begin with loaner or temporary equipment used to assess options and designs that will allow optimal mobility before a wheelchair prescription is finalized. Additional training is typically necessary once the permanent wheelchair and associated equipment have been delivered.

Clients who use manual wheelchairs need training in the safe use of equipment, which includes effective management of obstacles in all environments typically accessed (home, community, work, and leisure settings). They need to learn how to perform or direct basic maintenance of the equipment (including cleaning procedures and maintaining moving parts) and know when and whom to contact if something out of the ordinary occurs with the wheelchair.

Clients who use power wheelchairs often require more extensive periods of training to achieve optimal safety, mobility, and function.[45] This training must include management of indoor terrain and obstacles, such as turning in tight spaces, managing door frames and transitions between flooring surfaces, and negotiating other indoor obstacles, such as elevators. Training should also include outdoor terrain, such as ramps, curbs, side slopes, grassy surfaces, gravel surfaces, and safe operation on crowded sidewalks or when crossing streets. If a power seating system is prescribed (e.g., tilt or recline), the client must be educated regarding the proper and safe use of this system, including how often to use it and under what conditions it should (and should not) be used.

Although the assessment and prescription for a wheelchair usually takes place in a specialty clinic, functional training after delivery of the equipment is typically provided by outpatient or home care therapy services. Therapists who are unfamiliar with any aspects of the new equipment or training protocol can obtain assistance from the prescribing clinicians and/or rehabilitation technology supplier.

Follow-Up

The final component of an adaptive seating evaluation is reexamination, also known as follow-up.[50] Periodic reexamination of equipment and client needs is essential to maintain optimal function. Most seating and mobility equipment has a usable life span of 3 to 5 years, but shorter life spans can be expected if the client is particularly active or if the equipment is used in harsh or demanding environments. It is important to establish appointments for reexamination to evaluate whether the client's needs continue

to be met by the equipment. It is also important for the client to be prepared to independently assess the need for follow-up with clinicians or the rehabilitation technology supplier. The client is the most knowledgeable person regarding the adequacy of the equipment over time, so it is important to provide the information needed to recognize the need for adjustments, modifications, repairs, and eventual replacement.

State of the Art

The science and art associated with wheelchair prescription is still in its infancy. There is a great deal of interest among clinicians to increase the availability of evidence to support clinical decision-making in the practice of wheelchair seating and mobility.[58,59] Some work has been done to develop and validate outcome measures to facilitate evidence-based practice in this field,[57,60,61] but few randomized, controlled clinical trials have been conducted.[62,63]

More effort has been focused on the development of national seating and wheelchair standards. RESNA has been actively working toward the development of wheelchair position papers, as cited throughout this chapter. These guides are intended to provide objective information to consumers and clinicians about the safety and performance of wheelchairs. The standards established have provided a platform for research into characteristics of wheelchairs that are most beneficial to consumers and assist with justification for third-party payment of higher-quality products based on ultimate cost effectiveness.[64]

Summary

Wheelchairs are essential aids for daily living for people with mobility impairments. They have the capacity to impact virtually every aspect of life in a positive or negative way, including health, happiness, vocational potential, avocational pursuit, and environmental access. Recommendations must be considered carefully and be as unique as the individual for whom the wheelchair is being prescribed. Even clients who require the most basic wheelchairs deserve careful assessment to ensure proper fit and function over the expected life of the wheelchair. Insurance companies typically cover the cost of a wheelchair every 3 to 5 years, so it is of critical importance to make sound recommendations to ensure client safety, comfort, and function.

References

1. National Institute of Child Health and Human Development. National Institutes of Health (NIH) Research Plan on Rehabilitation. In: *Eunice Kennedy Shriver*; 2016. https://www.nichd.nih.gov/publications/pubs/Documents/NIH_ResearchPlan_Rehabilitation.pdf.
2. Smith EM, Sakakibara BM, Miller WC. A review of factors influencing participation in social and community activities for wheelchair users. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol.* 2016;11(5):361–374.
3. Giesbrecht EM, Mortenson WB, Miller WC. Prevalence and facility level correlates of need for wheelchair seating assessment among long-term care residents. *Gerontology.* 2012;58(4):378–384.
4. Cook AM, Hussey SM. Seating systems as extrinsic enablers for assistive technologies. In: Cook AM, Hussey SM, eds. *Assistive Technologies: Principles and Practice.* vol 1. 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2002:165–211.
5. Engstrom B. Seating and Mobility for the Physically Challenged. In: *Risks and Possibilities When Using Wheelchairs.* vol 1. 2nd ed. Sweden: Posturalis Books; 2002.
6. Clark J, Morrow M, Michael S. Wheelchair postural support for young people with progressive neuromuscular disorders. *Int J Ther Rehabil.* 2004;11(8):365–373.
7. Babinec M, Cole E, Crane B, et al. RESNA position on the application of wheelchairs, seating systems, and secondary supports for positioning versus restraint. *Assist Technol.* 2015;27(4):263–271.
8. Hastings JD, Rogers Fanucchi E, Burns SP. Wheelchair configuration and postural alignment in persons with spinal cord injury. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2003;84(1):528–534.
9. Waugh K, Crane B. *A Clinical Application Guide to Standardized Wheelchair Seating Measures of the Body and Support Surfaces.* Denver, CO: Assistive Technology Partners, University of Colorado School of Medicine; 2013. https://www.assistivetechnologypartners.org.
10. Chen CL, Teng YL, Lou SZ, et al. User satisfaction with orthotic devices and service in Taiwan. *PLoS One.* 2014;9(10). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0110661. e110661.
11. Stinson M, Ferguson R, Porter-Armstrong A. Exploring repositioning movement in sitting with 'at risk' groups using accelerometry and interface pressure mapping technologies. *J Tissue Viability.* 2018;27(1):10–15.
12. Bergman-Evans B, Cuddigan J, Bergstrom N. Clinical practice guidelines: prediction and prevention of pressure ulcers. *J Gerontol Nurs.* 1994;20(9):19–26.
13. Stephens M, Bartley CA. Understanding the association between pressure ulcers and sitting in adults. *J Tissue Viability.* 2018;27(1):59–73.
14. Bergstrom N, Braden BJ, Laguzza A, et al. The Braden Scale for predicting pressure sore risk. *Nurs Res.* 1987;36(4):205–210.
15. Houghton PE, Campbell KE, Panel CPG. Canadian Best Practice Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Pressure Ulcers in People with Spinal Cord Injury. *A resource handbook for clinicians.* 2013. http://www.onf.org.
16. International review. Pressure ulcer prevention: pressure, shear, friction and microclimate in context. In: *A consensus document.* London: Wounds International; 2010. http://www.woundsinternational.com/consensus-documents/view/international-review-pressure-ulcer-prevention-pressure-shear-friction-and-microclimate-in-context-1.
17. Allman RM. Pressure ulcer prevalence, incidence, risk factors, and impact. *Clin Geriatr Med.* 1997;13(3):421–436.
18. Cuddigan J, Berlowitz DR, Ayello AE. Pressure ulcers in America: prevalence, incidence, and implications for the future. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2001;14(4):208–215.
19. Ham R, Aldersea P, Porter D. *Wheelchair Users and Postural Seating: A Clinical Approach.* vol 1. New York: Churchill Livingstone; 1998.
20. Call E, Hetzel T, McLean C, et al. Off loading wheelchair cushion provides best case reduction in tissue deformation as indicated by MRI. *J Tissue Viability.* 2017;26(3):172–179.
21. Minkel JL. Seating and mobility considerations for people with spinal cord injury. *Phys Ther.* 2000;80(7):701–709.
22. Weiss-Lambrou R. Satisfaction and comfort. In: Scherer MJ, ed. *Assistive Technology: Matching Device and Consumer for Successful Rehabilitation.* Washington, DC: American Psychological Association; 2002:77–94.
23. Garber SL. Wheelchair cushions: a historical review. *Am J Occup Ther.* 1985;39(7):453–459.
24. Rader J. Individualized wheelchair seating: Reducing restraints and improving comfort and function. *Top Geriatr Rehabil.* 1999;15(2):34–47.
25. Lacoste M, Therrien M, Prince F. Stability of children with cerebral palsy in their wheelchair seating: perceptions of parents and therapists. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol.* 2009;4(3):143–150.
26. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott MH. Development of Postural Control – Chapter 8. In: *Motor control: translating research into clinical practice.* Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2012.
27. Zacharkow D. *Posture: Sitting, Standing, Chair Design and Exercise.* Charles C. Thomas: Springfield, IL; 1988.
28. Hobson DA. Seating and mobility for the severely disabled: Technology overview and classification. In: Leslie J, ed. *Rehabilitation Engineering.* Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press; 1988:201–218.
29. Paquet V, Feathers D. An anthropometric study of manual and powered wheelchair users. *Int J Ind Ergon.* 2004;33(3):191–204.

30. St. Georges M, Valiquette C, Drouin G. Computer-aided design in wheelchair seating. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 1989;26(4):23–30.
31. Brienza DM, Geyer MJ. Understanding support surface technologies. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2000;13(5):237–244.
32. Stewart SFC, Palmieri V, Cochran GVB. Wheelchair cushion effect on skin temperature, heat flux, and relative humidity. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1980;61(5):229–233.
33. DiGiovine C, Rosen L, Berner T, et al. *RESNA position on the application of ultralight manual wheelchairs.* Arlington, VA: Rehabilitation Engineering and Assistive Technology Society of North America; 2012. https://www.resna.org/sites/default/files/legacy/resources/position-papers/UltraLightweightManualWheelchairs.pdf.
34. Dicianno BE, Arva J, Lieberman JM, et al. RESNA position on the application of tilt, recline, and elevating legrests for wheelchairs. *Assist Technol.* 2009;21(1):13–22.
35. Dicianno BE, Morgan A, Lieberman J, et al. Rehabilitation Engineering & Assistive Technology Society (RESNA) position on the application of wheelchair standing devices: Current state of the literature. *Assistive Technology.* 2016;28(1):57–62.
36. McLaurin CA, Brubaker CE. Biomechanics and the wheelchair. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1991;15(1):24–37.
37. Curtis KA, Drysdale GA, Lama D, et al. Shoulder pain in wheelchair users with tetraplegia and paraplegia. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1999;80(4):453–457.
38. Boninger ML, Cooper RA, Roberson RN, et al. Wrist biomechanics during two speeds of wheelchair propulsion: an analysis using a local coordinate system. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1997;78(4):364–372.
39. Koontz AM, Boninger ML. Proper propulsion. *Rehab Manag.* 2003;16(6):18–22.
40. van der Woude LH, Veeger DJ, Rosendal RH, et al. Seat height in hand rim wheelchair propulsion. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 1989;26(4):31–50.
41. van der Woude LH, Veeger HE, Rozendal RH. Propulsion technique in hand rim wheelchair ambulation. *J Med Eng Technol.* 1989;13(1–2):136–141.
42. van der Woude LH, Dallmeijer AJ, Janssen TWJ, et al. Alternative modes of manual wheelchair ambulation: an overview. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;80(10):765–777.
43. Mandy A, Redhead L, McCudden C, et al. A comparison of vertical reaction forces during propulsion of three different one-arm drive wheelchairs by hemiplegic users. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol.* 2014;9(3):242–247.
44. Kloosterman M, Snoek GJ, Lucas HV, et al. A systematic review on the pros and cons of using a pushrim-activated power-assisted wheelchair. *Clin Rehabil.* 2012;27(4):299–313.
45. Leaman J, Hung M. A comprehensive review of smart wheelchairs: past, present, and future. *IEEE T Hum-Mach Syst.* 2017;47(4):486–499.
46. Rosen L, Arva J, Furumasu J, et al. RESNA position on the application of power wheelchairs for pediatric users. *Assist Technol.* 2009;21(1):218–226.
47. Rosen L, Plummer T, Sabet A. *RESNA position on the application of power mobility devices for pediatric users: Update 2017.* Arlington, VA: Rehabilitation Engineering and Assistive Technology Society of North America; 2017. https://www.resna.org/sites/default/files/legacy/Position-Papers/RESNA%20Ped%20Power%20Paper%2010_25_17%20-BOD%20approval%20Nov2_2017.pdf.
48. Mortenson WB, Miller WC, Miller-Pogar J. Measuring wheelchair intervention outcomes: Development of the Wheelchair Outcome Measure. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol.* 2009;2(5):275–285.
49. Kenny S, Gowran RJ. Outcome measures for wheelchair and seating provision: a critical appraisal. *Br J Occup Ther.* 2014;77(2):67–77.
50. Arledge S, Armstrong W, Babinec M, et al. *RESNA wheelchair service provision guide.* Arlington, VA: Rehabilitation Engineering and Assistive Technology Society of North America; 2011. https://www.resna.org/sites/default/files/legacy/resources/position-papers/RESNAWheelchairServiceProvisionGuide.pdf.
51. Rehabilitation Engineering and Assistive Technology Society of North America. *Assistive technology professional certification.* https://www.resna.org/certification; 2018.
52. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid. *Documentation checklist for prior authorization request.* https://www.cms.gov/Research-Statistics-Data-and-Systems/Monitoring-Programs/Medicare-FFS-Compliance-Programs/DMEPOS/Downloads/DMEPOS_PA_Documentation_Checklist_2017-03-24.pdf.
53. Zollars JA, Knezevich J. *Special seating: an illustrated guide.* Minneapolis, MN: Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry; 1996.
54. American Physical Therapy Association. Guide to Physical Therapist Practice. *Phys Ther.* 2001;81(1):21–138.
55. Trefler E, Taylor SJ. Prescription and positioning: evaluating the physically disabled individual for wheelchair seating. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1991;15:217–224.
56. Ferguson-Pell M, Cardi MD. Prototype development and comparative evaluation of wheelchair pressure mapping system. *Assist Technol.* 1993;5(2):78–91.
57. Kirby RL, Swuste J, Dupuis DJ, et al. The Wheelchair Skills Test: a pilot study of a new outcome measure. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83(1):10–18.
58. Rader JD, Jones D, Miller L. The importance of individualized wheelchair seating for frail older adults. *J Gerontol Nurs.* 2000;26(11):24–32. 46–47.
59. Scherer MJ. Outcomes of assistive technology use on quality of life. *Disabil Rehabil.* 1996;18(9):439–448.
60. Aissaoui R, Boucher C, Bourbonnais D, et al. Effect of seat cushion on dynamic stability in sitting during a reaching task in wheelchair users with paraplegia. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82(2):274–281.
61. May LA, Butt C, Minor L, et al. Measurement reliability of functional tasks for persons who self-propel a manual wheelchair. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2003;84(4):578–583.
62. Conine TA, Hershler C, Daechsel D, et al. Pressure ulcer prophylaxis in elderly patients using polyurethane foam or Jay wheelchair cushions. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 1994;17(2):123–137.
63. Geyer MJ, Brienza DM, Karg P, et al. A randomized control trial to evaluate pressure-reducing seat cushions for elderly wheelchair users. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2001;14(3):120–129.
64. Axelson P, Minkel J, Chesney DA. *Guide to Wheelchair Selection: How to Use the ANSI/RESNA Standards to Buy a Wheelchair.* Washington, DC: Paralyzed Veterans of America; 1994.

17 Etiology of Amputation ☆

MILAGROS JORGE

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the epidemiology of nontraumatic, traumatic, and congenital amputation.
2. Identify the major causes of limb loss in the United States.
3. Discuss major risk factors for dysvascular/neuropathic-related amputation.
4. Explain the differences in risk factors of amputation among various racial and ethnic groups.
5. Describe health promotion efforts for the prevention of dysvascular disease.
6. Identify key issues considered by the rehabilitation team when they are caring for persons with limb loss.

Throughout the history of medicine, amputation has been a relatively frequently performed medical procedure and has often been the only available alternative for complex fractures or infections of the extremities. The earliest amputations were generally undertaken to save lives; however, their outcomes were often unsuccessful—many resulted in death from shock caused by blood loss or the onset of infection and septicemia in those who survived the operation. In these early amputations, removal of the compromised limb segment as quickly as possible was essential. With the advent of antisepsis, asepsis, and anesthesia in the mid-19th century, physicians focused increasingly on the surgical procedure and conservation of tissue.[1] Today, when amputation is necessary, surgery is undertaken with consideration for the functional aspects of the residual limb. This chapter reports on the etiology of amputation or limb loss in the United States and other Western nations. The epidemiology of amputation and factors contributing to changes in the incidence and prevalence of limb loss are presented. An overview of key concerns regarding the rehabilitative process and expected outcomes for persons with limb pathology resulting in limb loss are discussed.

Epidemiology of Amputation

Surveillance data on persons living with limb loss are limited because there is no national database in the United States for compiling data specific to persons with amputation. Information on persons with amputation is derived from a variety of sources including information on hospital discharge diagnoses. The National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) is the principal source of information on the health of Americans and is one of the major data collection programs of the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS), which is part of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).[2] The 1996 NHIS is the most current database; it has the most comprehensive information on amputation and persons living with limb loss.[3] The NHIS revised instrument is currently under construction and is slated for dissemination in 2019.[4]

Based on the 1996 NHIS, the number of Americans living with limb loss is estimated at 1.6 million.[5] According to the Amputee Coalition, each year in the United States an estimated 185,000 persons lose a limb.[6] Limb loss occurs for a variety of reasons including dysvascular diseases, trauma, cancer, and congenital anomalies (Figs. 17.1 and 17.2). In 2008, Ziegler-Graham and colleagues[7] conducted an epidemiologic study that estimated the prevalence of limb loss in the United States for the period 2005 to 2050. According to statistical analysis based on the figure that 1.6 million Americans were living with limb loss in 2005, it was estimated that the number of persons living with limb loss would increase to 3.6 million by the year 2050. It is anticipated that the number of persons living with amputation will more than double in the next 45 years. Increases in life span and health-related age factors will figure significantly in the greater number of persons living with limb loss (Fig. 17.3). (See Case Examples 17.1 to 17.3.)

The leading cause of amputation is dysvascular disease. Predisposing factors for amputation include diabetes, hypertension, and dyslipidemia. Health conditions that affect the blood vessels—such as peripheral vascular disease (PVD), peripheral artery disease (PAD), and diabetes—are the leading causes of amputation. Dysvascular disease accounts for approximately 82% of all limb-loss hospital discharges.[8] Most of these were lower extremity amputations, which are performed 11 times more frequently than upper extremity amputations.[9]

More amputations occur among men than among women, and amputation rates increase steeply with age.[10] The health condition most frequently related to amputation is dysvascular disease, including PVD and PAD complicated by neuropathy. Although PVD and neuropathy are frequently associated with type 2 diabetes, vascular disease also occurs independently of diabetes. However, diabetes is the leading cause of nontraumatic

☆The author extends appreciation to Caroline C. Nielsen, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

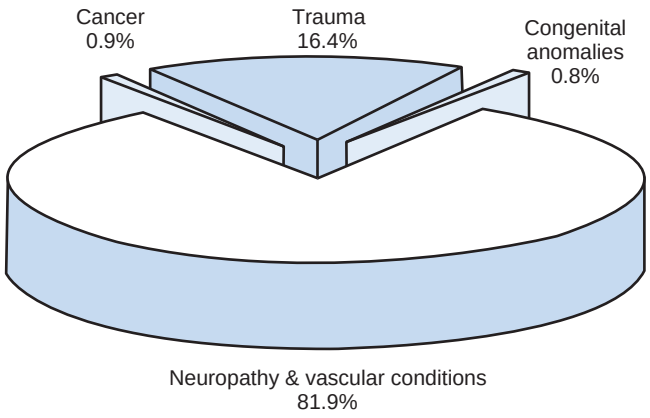


Fig. 17.1 Causes of amputation in percent. The majority of amputations result from a disease process. (Data from Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, Mackenzie EJ. Limb amputation and limb deficiency: epidemiology and recent trends in the United States. *South Med J.* 2002;95[8]:875–883)

lower extremity amputation.[11] The number of persons with diabetes and prediabetes in the U.S. population continues to rise. According to the National Diabetes Statistics for 2017, an estimated 30.3 million people of all ages, or nearly 10% of the U.S. population, had diabetes in 2015.The percentage of adults with diabetes increased with age, reaching a high of 25.2% among those aged 65 years.[12]

The increasing frequency of amputation for PVD likely reflects the growth in the older population (see Fig. 17.4).[13] This increase is likely to continue with current population projections. The population in the age group 45 to 64 years is projected to increase by 23.8% between 2002 and 2020, and the population at greatest risk for amputation, those 65 to 85 years of age and older, is expected to increase by 71%.[13] The population of individuals older than 85 years of age is projected to increase at the highest rate.

Diabetes and smoking are the strongest risk factors for developing PAD. Other well-known risk factors are advanced

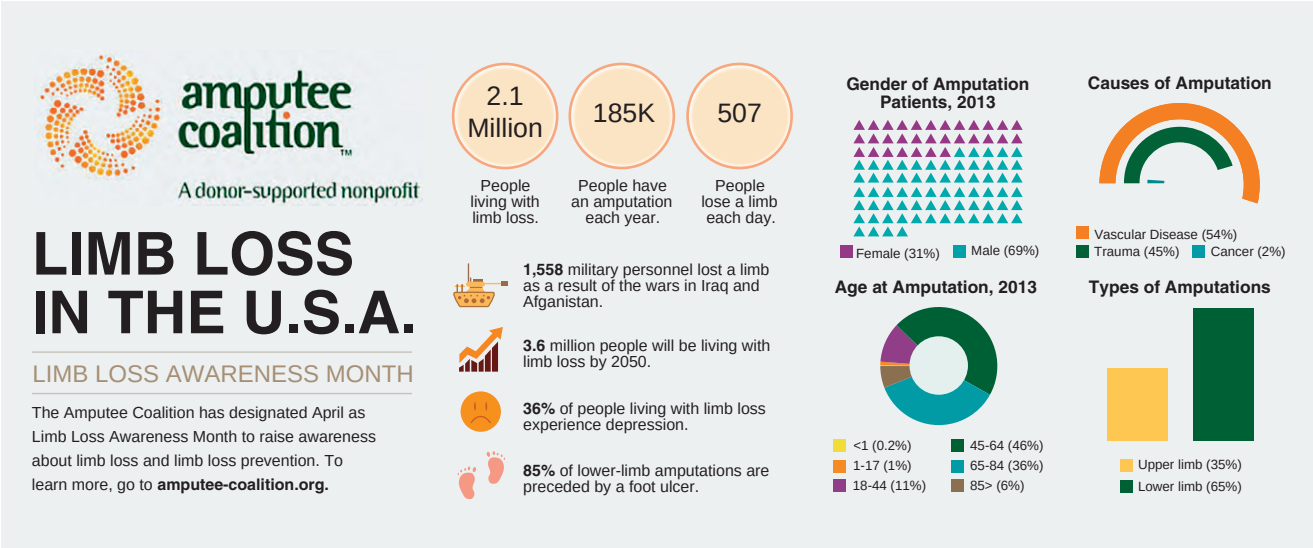


Fig. 17.2 Amputee Coalition of America statistics for year 2013 per 100,000 amputations. (From Limb Loss in the USA facts graph from the Amputee Coalition of America 2013.)

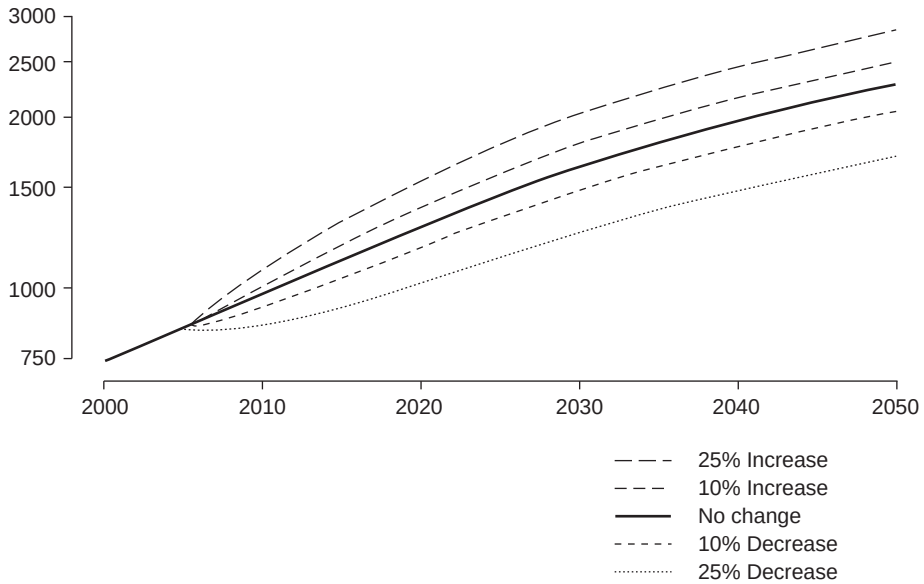


Fig. 17.3 Projected number of Americans living with limb amputation secondary to dysvascular disease (log scale) from years 2000 to 2050. (From Ziegler-Graham K, MacKenzie EJ, Ephraim PL, et al. Estimating the prevalence of limb loss in the United States: 2005 to 2050. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89:426.)

age, hypertension, and hyperlipidemia.[14] The number of Americans with diabetes with limb loss will continue to rise because of the persistent reports that diabetes is a national health problem.

Diabetes is the leading cause of new cases of nontraumatic lower extremity amputations among adults.[15] The number of hospital discharges for nontraumatic lower extremity amputation with diabetes as a listed diagnosis increased from 45,000 in 1991 to 86,000 in 1996. From 1988 to 2006, the number of hospital discharges for persons with diabetes who had experienced amputation increased by 20%.[10,11] The relationship between diabetes and PVD with diabetes is well established. PVD has variable clinical presentations ranging from asymptomatic to severe ischemia and claudication (Fig. 17.4). Because of the known complications of dysvascular disease in persons with diabetes and PAD, education efforts have been enhanced regarding the care of persons with diabetes in an effort to prevent diabetic foot ulcers.[16] More recent data provided by the CDC indicate a decline in lower limb amputations for persons with diabetes.[17] The CDC report is based on the findings of researchers who investigated the number of hospitalizations for nontraumatic lower extremity amputation in persons aged 40 and older with a diagnosis of diabetes in the years from 1988 to 2008.[18] However, the authors reported that throughout the entire study period (1988–2008), diabetes-related nontraumatic lower extremity amputations were higher among persons 75 years of age or older, men more than women, and blacks more than whites. Despite the reports of decline in recent years, the reality is that with the projected increase in the number of persons with diabetes and with the rise in the life span for octogenarians, there is a need for intensive prevention and treatment that will avoid loss of limbs for persons with dysvascular disease.

The second leading cause of amputation is trauma. Traumatic amputation is most common in the young adult age group (20–29 years of age). The leading causes of trauma-related amputation are injuries involving machinery (40.1%), power tools and appliances (27.8%), firearms (8.5%), and motor vehicle crashes (8%).[4] The incidence of trauma-related major amputation continues to decrease over time. This reduction is attributable to the implementation of new safety regulations, the development of safer farm and industrial machinery, improved safety in work conditions, and medical advancement in techniques for salvaging traumatized limbs. Whenever there is a period of significant armed conflict, the number of veterans with traumatic amputation increases. U.S. engagement in military operations in Afghanistan, Iraq and Syria, including Operation Freedom's Sentinel (OFS–Afghanistan), Operation Inherent Resolve (OIR–Iraq and Syria), Operation New Dawn (OND–Iraq), Operation Iraqi Freedom (OIF–Iraq), and Operation Enduring Freedom (OEF–Afghanistan), has caused 1645 service men and women to sustain traumatic amputations or limb loss.[12] As reported in the 2015 U.S. Congressional Research Report, "A Guide to U.S. Military Casualty Statistics," U.S. military engagements that have persisted continuously for the past 15 years have resulted in numerous traumatic amputations.[19] Table 17.2 and Fig. 17.1 provide data on "Individuals With Battle-Injury Major Limb Amputations" for OEF, OFS, OIF, OND, and OIR from October 7, 2001 to June 1, 2015.

The third cause of limb loss is cancer related—primary cancer or secondary cancer due to metastatic disease. There are a number of cancers that can affect the limbs and may present the need for amputation.[20–22] Primary bone cancers are very rare; they account for less than 0.2% of all carcinomas. The three most common forms of bone cancer are (1) osteosarcoma, (2) chrondosarcoma, and (3) Ewing sarcoma. In 2017, the estimated number of new bone and joint cancer cases was reported as 3260 total new cases; 1820 males and 1440 females. The estimated number of deaths from bone and joint cancers was reported as 1550 total cases: 890 males and 660 females.[23]

Primary bone cancers are extremely rare—less than 0.2% of all cancers.[23] The tumor most commonly associated with amputation is osteosarcoma, which primarily affects children and adolescents in the 11- to 20-year-old age group.[24] Currently amputation is no longer the primary intervention for osteosarcoma, and the current rate of amputation for this disease is less than 1%. With the development of new surgical techniques for limb salvage, including bone graft and joint replacement, and advancements in chemotherapy and radiation, the incidence of amputation as a consequence of osteosarcoma has decreased significantly. Amputation is reserved for when the tumor is located in an anatomic region that is not amenable to limb salvage.

Congenital limb deficiencies as well as the amputations used to adjust or correct them are relatively rare, and little has changed over time in the birth prevalence of such deficiencies. Rates ranging from 3.8 to 5.3 per 10,000 births have been reported.[25] This percentage has remained relatively stable and represents less than 1% of all amputations.

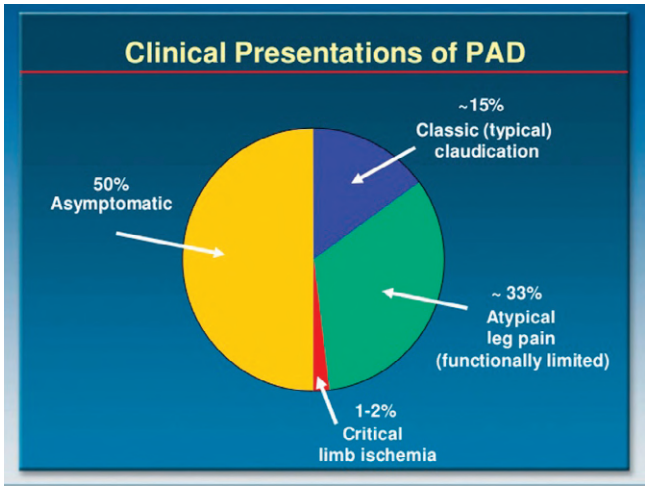


Fig. 17.4 Clinical presentation of peripheral artery disease *(PAD)*. The clinical presentation of PAD can be variable and may not produce symptoms of limb pain. It can produce typical claudication pain, atypical leg pain, or critical limb ischemia. (Slide from presentation by Dr. James S. Stills Duke Medical Center https://www.slideshare.net/DukeHeartCenter/diagnosis-and-management-of-peripheral-arterial-disease.)

Levels of Amputation

Amputation can be performed as a disarticulation of a joint or as a transection through a long bone. The level of amputation is usually named by the joint or major bone through which the amputation has been made (Table 17.1).[25] An

Table 17.1 Terminology Used to Describe the Site of Lower Extremity Amputation

Site	Terminology
Toe	Phalangeal
Forefoot	Ray resection (one or more complete metatarsal) Transmetatarsal (across the metatarsal shaft)
Midfoot	Partial foot (e.g., Chopart, Boyd, Pirogoff)
At the ankle	Syme
Below the knee	Transtibial (long, standard, short)
At the knee	Knee disarticulation
Above the knee	Transfemoral (long, standard, short)
At the hip	Hip disarticulation
At the pelvis	Hemipelvectomy

Table 17.2 Classification of Longitudinal Congenital Limb Deficiencies

Limb Segment	Upper Extremity Bone Segment[a]	Lower Extremity Bone Segment[a]
Proximal	Humeral	Femoral
Distal	Radial Central Carpal Metacarpal Phalangeal	Tibial Central Tarsal Metatarsal Phalangeal
Combined (indicated by the bone segments that remain)	Partial or complete Specific carpal, ray, or phalanx remaining	Partial or complete Specific carpal, ray, or phalanx remaining

[a]May be partial or complete.
Modified from May BJ. *Amputations and Prosthetics: A Case Study Approach.* Philadelphia: Davis; 1996:221.

amputation that involves the lower extremity can affect an individual's ability to stand and walk, requiring the use of prosthetics and, often, an assistive device for mobility. Amputation involving the upper extremity can affect other activities of daily living, such as feeding, grooming, dressing, and a host of activities that require manipulative skills. Because of the complex nature of skilled hand function, prosthetic substitution for upper limb amputation does not typically restore function to the same degree that lower extremity prosthetics do.

The amputation surgeries that are most commonly performed today involve the lower extremity below the knee (including transtibial, foot, and toe amputations), accounting for 97% of all hospital discharges following dysvascular limb loss (Table 17.2). This high percentage reflects the prevalence of PVD of the lower extremities. Transfemoral amputations account for approximately 26% of all dysvascular amputations.[25,26] In general the proportion of lower limb amputations in relation to upper limb amputations is increasing. This most likely reflects an increase in the number of older persons with lower extremity amputations rather than an actual decrease in the number of upper extremity amputations.

Because dysvascular disease typically affects both lower extremities, a significant number of individuals eventually undergo amputation of both lower extremities. Approximately 50% of persons undergoing diabetes-related amputation will have a contralateral amputation within 3 to 5 years.[27] Between 25% and 45% of persons with amputations have had amputations of both lower extremities, most often at the transtibial level in both limbs or a combination of transtibial amputation of one limb and transfemoral amputation of the other.[13]

Today the majority of transtibial and transfemoral amputations are performed with an understanding of wound healing and the functional needs and constraints of prosthetic fitting so that rehabilitation outcomes are usually positive. Other levels of amputation, although less commonly performed, continue to pose challenges for the surgeon, prosthetist, physical therapist, and patient during prosthetic fitting and rehabilitation.

Causes of Amputation

Currently the most likely reasons for amputation are poor wound healing associated with diabetes[4,28] and dysvascular disease,[26] trauma,[4,16] or cancer.[23] Children with congenital limb deficiencies are a special population and may require surgical revision during or after periods of significant growth or after conversion to a more functional level for prosthetic fitting.

DIABETES AND PERIPHERAL ARTERY DISEASE

Diabetic foot ulceration is a common complication of diabetes that often results in lower extremity amputation.[29] Elevated blood sugars associated with diabetes damage blood vessels and nerve fibers and impair circulation. Nerve damage causes peripheral neuropathy, a condition of loss of sensation to the feet. The loss of protective sensation in the feet would not alert an individual to foreign substances in their shoes, such as pebbles or gravel. This lack of awareness can lead to blisters or other minor injuries. Once the skin is broken, sores on the feet may not heal because of poor circulation. The CDC confirms that neuropathy is a major contributor to diabetic amputations.[29]

The prevalence of PAD in persons with diabetes is four times greater than that in persons without diabetes.[29] Dysvascular disease is the most common contributing factor to lower extremity amputations. Dysvascularity accounts for 87% of all amputations in the United States.[26] In epidemiologic studies, two symptoms are classic indicators of vascular insufficiency: intermittent claudication and loss of one or more lower extremity pulses. Intermittent claudication is a significant cramping pain, usually in the calf, that is induced by walking or other prolonged muscle contraction and relieved by a short period of rest. In arteriosclerosis obliterans, at least one major arterial pulse (the dorsalis pedis artery at the ankle, popliteal artery at the knee, or femoral artery in the groin) is often absent or markedly impaired (see Fig. 17.4).[30] The major risk factors for the development of PAD are the same as those for cardiovascular and cerebrovascular disease, most notably poorly managed hypertension, high serum cholesterol and triglyceride levels, and a history of tobacco use. Peripheral neuropathy and PAD

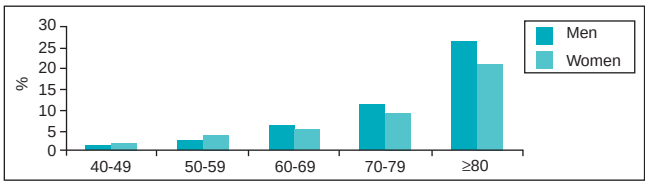


Fig. 17.5 Clinical impact. Age-related prevalence of peripheral artery disease. The prevalence of peripheral artery disease increases with age, and it affects men more than women. (From Allison MA, Ho E, Denenberg JO, et al. Ethnic-specific prevalence of peripheral arterial disease in the United States. *Am J Prev Med.* 2007;32:328–333.)

are the major predisposing factors for lower extremity amputation in individuals with diabetes.[31]

The prevalence and incidence of PAD are both sharply age related, rising more than 10% among patients in their 60s and 70s. With aging of the global population, it seems likely that PAD will be increasingly common in the future (Fig. 17.5). The prevalence of more severe or symptomatic disease seems to be higher among men than among women.[31] The "2016 American Heart Association/American College of Cardiology (AHA/ACC) Guideline on the Management of Patients With Lower Extremity Peripheral Artery Disease" states that diabetes is an important risk factor for the development of PAD. The presence of diabetes increases the risk of adverse outcomes among patients with PAD, including progression to chronic limb ischemia and amputation.[33] The age-adjusted rate of lower extremity amputation among persons with diabetes in the United States is approximately 28 times that of the nondiabetic population. More than 50% of the lower limb amputations in the United States are diabetes related.[29] Although major improvements have been made in noninvasive diagnosis, surgical revascularization procedures, and wound-healing techniques, between 2% and 5% of individuals with PAD and without diabetes and between 6% and 25% of those with diabetes eventually undergo an amputation.[24,25]

The incidence of lower extremity amputation among persons with diabetes is almost 50% higher for men than for women.[4,31] Clinical factors that contribute to lower limb amputation in persons with diabetes include lower extremity infection due to nonhealing neuropathic foot ulcers, severe ischemic pain, absent or decreased pulses, local necrosis, osteomyelitis, systemic toxicity, acute embolic disease, and severe venous thrombosis.

In individuals with diabetes, the prevalence and severity of dysvascularity increases significantly with age and the duration of diabetes, particularly in men. Initial amputation may involve a toe or foot; subsequent revision to transtibial or transfemoral levels is likely to occur with progression of the underlying disease. In individuals with diabetes, dysvascular disease increases the risk of a nonhealing neuropathic ulcer, infection, or gangrene, all of which increase the likelihood of amputation. Some 20% to 50% of patients will have amputation of the contralateral leg in 1 to 3 years.[32] Patients with diabetes who are 65 years of age or older account for most diabetes-related lower extremity amputations. African Americans are at greater risk for both diabetes and PAD. Consequently African Americans are at increased risk for lower extremity amputation.[33]

Peripheral neuropathy is the most common risk factor for foot ulcers in people with diabetes.[34] Neuropathy is as important and powerful as dysvascular disease as a predisposing factor for lower extremity amputation. More than 80% of all nontraumatic amputations in diabetic patients are the result of foot ulcers.[35] Peripheral neuropathy is suspected when one or more of the following clinical signs are present: (1) deficits of sensation (loss of Achilles and patellar reflexes, decreased vibratory sensation, and loss of protective sensation), (2) motor impairments (weakness and atrophy of the intrinsic muscles of the foot), and/or (3) autonomic dysfunction (inadequate or abnormal hemodynamic mechanism, tropic changes of the skin, and distal loss of hair).[20] The resulting loss of thermal, pain, and protective sensation increases the vulnerability of the foot to acute high-pressure and repetitive low-pressure trauma. Patients may also experience significant numbness or painful paresthesia of the foot and lower leg. Individuals with peripheral neuropathy may not be aware of minor trauma, pressure from poorly fitting shoes along the sides and tops of their feet, or pressure from thickening plantar callus, all of which contribute to the risk of ulceration, infection, and gangrene. Motor neuropathy and associated weakness and atrophy contribute to the development of bony deformity of the foot. The bony prominences and malalignments associated with foot deformity change weight-bearing pressure dynamics during walking, further increasing the risk of ulceration. Peripheral neuropathy is one of the most crucial precursors of foot ulceration, especially in the presence of dysvascular disease. Nonhealing or infected neuropathic ulcers precede approximately 80% of nontraumatic lower extremity amputations in individuals with diabetes.[35]

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) defines diabetic peripheral neuropathy as "the presence of symptoms and/or signs of peripheral nerve dysfunction in people with diabetes after the exclusion of other causes."[36] There is no gold standard for diagnosing diabetic peripheral neuropathy.[36] Its symptoms are similar to those of peripheral neuropathy of other sources: numbness or reduced ability to feel pain, muscle weakness, difficulty walking, and serious foot problems.

Lower extremity amputation continues to be a major health problem for persons with dysvascular disease, diabetes mellitus, and peripheral neuropathy. When limb loss occurs in these individuals, it is associated with significant morbidity, functional limitation and disability, mortality, and high health care costs. Approximately 185,000 persons undergo amputation each year in the United States.[7] The average cost per hospitalization for an amputation is approximately $30,000. The cost of health care for persons with chronic diseases such as diabetes and PAD is estimated by the ADA at $330 billion per year.[37] A major cost associated with diabetic medical care is that of lower limb amputation.

In the United States, public health concerns are under the auspices of the CDC,[38] which includes the NCHS[39] and the Department of Health and Human Services. Healthy People 2020 is a public health initiative with four overarching goals: (1) to attain high-quality, longer lives free of preventable disease, disability, injury, and premature death; (2) to achieve health equity, eliminate disparities, and improve the health of all groups; (3) to create social and physical

environments that promote good health for all; and (4) to promote quality of life, healthy development, and healthy behaviors across all life stages.[38] Reducing the incidence of lower extremity amputations in persons with diabetes is a key health care objective in terms of quality of life and the containment of health care costs. It is estimated that the current prevalence of 1.6 million persons living with limb loss will more than double to 3.6 million by the year 2050.[7] However, planned health promotion initiatives at national, state, and local levels that address health concerns—such as the rise in obesity and diabetes and the clinical impact of diabetes as well as other factors that influence dysvascular disease, such as smoking—aim to improve patient outcomes and reduce the occurrence of amputation. The development of evidence-based clinical guidelines for the management of dysvascular disease,[40] diabetes mellitus,[41] peripheral neuropathy,[28] and clinical research–supported recommendations for the management of diabetic foot ulcers addresses critical factors such as disease prevention,[42] access to health care,[26] interventions,[43] and patient education.[42] These are intended to reduce the incidence of nontraumatic limb loss.

Case Example 17.1 **A Patient With Dysvascular Disease–Related Amputation**

T.S. is a 67-year-old African American man with a 10-year history of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Until 2 years ago, he smoked one pack of cigarettes daily, but he quit after coronary artery bypass grafting following an acute myocardial infarction. He became insulin-dependent at the time of his myocardial infarction and cardiac surgery. His comorbid medical problems include hypertension, managed pharmaceutically with a beta blocker, and moderate vision loss secondary to diabetic retinopathy.

T.S. underwent complete transmetatarsal amputation of the left foot 6 months earlier because of a nonhealing plantar ulcer under the second and third metatarsal heads that had progressed to osteomyelitis. Three weeks earlier, intermittent claudication of the right calf became severe enough to warrant medical attention. On evaluation, T.S. was noted to have a neuropathic ulcer under his first metatarsal head, probing to bone. Doppler studies were monophasic, suggesting that the vascular supply required for healing was inadequate. Arteriography indicated a markedly diminished distal arterial flow to the foot but an adequate arterial supply to the mid-tibial level. T.S. had failed a revascularization attempt with stent placement.

After an interdisciplinary meeting involving his internist (who helps him manage his diabetes), cardiologist (who helps him manage his hypertension and heart disease), vascular surgeon (who oversaw this evaluation), physical therapist and prosthetist (who explained the process of rehabilitation), social worker (who explained services and support available to those with amputation), and family, T.S. concurred with the recommendation for an "elective" transtibial amputation. Two weeks after his surgery, he was impatiently waiting for his wound to heal to the point where he could begin prosthetic training.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What possible medical and physiologic factors contributed to this patient's loss of limb?
- What impact will his current health status and comorbid conditions have on his prognosis for rehabilitation, both in terms of eventual outcome and in the duration of this episode of care?
- What plan of care for the preprosthetic phase of his rehabilitation would you propose?
- How would the International Classification of Functioning disablement framework apply to T.S.?

Amputation Rates and Racial and Ethnic Populations

Evidence indicates that certain racial and ethnic groups are at increased risk for lower extremity amputation. This increased risk appears to be linked to a higher prevalence of diabetes complicated by PAD. The ADA reports that "African Americans and Hispanics are over 50% more likely to have diabetes as non-Hispanic whites."[37] African Americans are two to four times more likely to lose a limb as a result of diabetes complications.[25] Hispanic Americans are diagnosed with diabetes at twice the rate of whites.[39] Based on the 2012 data available, hospital admissions for lower extremity amputations in Hispanic persons 18 years of age and older with diabetes were 50% higher than those for non-Hispanic whites.[44] Research into the epidemiology of race and ethnicity is advancing to further elucidate the essential contributing factors. The Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos—sponsored by the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute and six other centers as well as the National Institutes of Health indicates that the prevalence of diabetes in the Hispanic community has variability based on country of origin, length of stay in the Unites States, as well as access to health care.[44]

American Indians and Alaska Natives have a two to five times higher prevalence of diabetes than the overall population in the United States.[45] The National Limb Loss Information fact sheet reports that "Amputation rates among American Indians are 3 to 4 times higher than those for the general population."[46] Why these populations have a significantly higher rate of lower extremity amputation is unclear. Potential contributors include a genetic or familial predisposition to diabetes, a higher prevalence of hypertension and smoking, or both. Health promotion and education efforts that target this high-risk population (including programs aimed at the effective management of diabetes, minimization of other risk factors, and special foot care programs for early detection of neuropathic and traumatic lesions) are effective strategies to reduce the likelihood of amputation. Further research is necessary to better understand the causes of racial differences in amputation rates and to identify and promote health initiatives that will alleviate this excess risk among minority populations.

Outcomes of Dysvascular Conditions and Amputation

The morbidity and mortality risks associated with systemic diseases, such as diabetes and vascular disease, continue after amputation. As a result, death in the years immediately

after amputation is not uncommon. One third of elderly persons receiving lower limb amputation die within a year of surgery.[47,48] Because neuropathy and PVD occur in a symmetric distribution, the risk of subsequent reamputation of the ipsilateral site or amputation of the contralateral lower extremity is high. Dillingham and colleagues report that 26% of patients required another amputation procedure within a 12-month period.[48] The most common causes of death in persons with amputation include complications of diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and renal disease.

Evidence is growing that the incidence of lower extremity amputation in persons with diabetes can be significantly reduced through particular kinds of preventive care. Large clinical centers have demonstrated the effect of early intervention for the diabetic population by using an interdisciplinary team approach to preventive care. Interventions to prevent neuropathy and PVD target smoking cessation programs as well as dietary, exercise, and pharmaceutical interventions to obtain better control of hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and hyperglycemia. These efforts are likely to further reduce the incidence of amputation, heart disease, and stroke among people with diabetes. For those with existing diabetic neuropathy or PVD, intensive foot care programs should focus on the prevention of ulceration and early intervention to prevent the expansion of small lesions as well as their infection and the development of gangrene.[40] Foot care programs are most effective if they develop in a team setting and focus on patient education. Surgical revascularization procedures are performed to avoid amputation in persons with chronic foot ulceration. The revascularization procedures include vascular bypass, angioplasty, stent placement, and end-stage limb-salvage procedures.[24]

The decision to undergo amputation often follows a long struggle to care for an increasingly frail foot by the patient, family, and health care providers. In this circumstance, elective amputation is often perceived by both patient and family as a positive step toward a more active and less stressful life. The interdisciplinary team approach best addresses the complex needs of the individual with diabetes, including clinical evaluation, determination of risk status, patient education, footwear selection, decision making about amputation, and rehabilitation after surgery.

TRAUMATIC AMPUTATION

Traumatic amputation is defined as an injury to an extremity that results in immediate separation of the limb or will result in loss of the limb as a result of accident or injury.[49] Traumatic loss of a limb, the second most common cause of amputation, occurs most frequently as a result of motor vehicle accidents, farming accidents, the use of power tools or firearms, or after severe burns and electrocution. Trauma-related amputation occurs most commonly among young adult men but can happen at any age to individuals of either sex. Because the mechanism of injury in traumatic amputation is variable, this type of amputation is usually classified or categorized according to the severity of tissue damage. The extent of injury to the musculoskeletal system depends on three interacting factors: (1) movement of the object that caused the injury; (2) the direction, magnitude, and speed of the energy vector; and (3) the particular body tissue involved.

Table 17.3 Indications and Contraindications for Replantation of Amputations

INDICATIONS FOR REPLANTATION
■ Amputations in children
■ Multiple finger and hand amputations
■ Thumb
■ Single-finger injuries
■ Ring avulsion injuries
CONTRAINDICATIONS TO REPLANTATION
■ Severe crush injury
■ Prolonged warm ischemia, especially of muscle
■ Severe contamination
■ Medical comorbidities that can affect anesthesia, healing, therapy, or ability to cooperate with care
■ Life-threatening injuries
■ Refusal to accept blood transfusions or blood products in cases of major amputations

The indications and contraindications are not absolute, and the decision for replantation is best made by the patient and physician after a discussion of the potential outcome, benefits, risks, possible complications, and available alternatives to the replantation. This discussion is very dependent on the surgeon's judgment of the potential outcome in a given patient.
From https://www.microsurgeon.org/replantation.php. Accessed April 23, 2018.

In partial traumatic amputations, at least half the diameter of the injured extremity is severed or damaged significantly. This kind of injury can incur extensive bleeding because all of the blood vessels involved may not be vasoconstrictive. A second type of traumatic amputation occurs when the limb becomes completely detached from the body. As much as 1 L of blood may be lost before the arteries spasm and become vasoconstrictive.

For optimal outcome, surgical intervention for revascularization or treatment of the amputated site is usually necessary within the first 6 hours after the accident.[50] One of the primary efforts of the surgical team for a person with lower extremity amputation is to preserve limb length to the extent that healing is possible.[50] Replantation is the surgical procedure to reattach the part of the body that has been amputated.[51] When replantation is considered, the window of opportunity is much narrower. The decision to replant is a difficult one and is influenced by the patient's age and overall health status, the level of the extremity injury, and the condition of the amputated part (Table 17.3). Replantation has been most successful in the distal upper extremity. The goal of upper extremity replantation is to provide a mechanism for functional grasp rather than solely for cosmetic restoration of the limb. The period of recovery and rehabilitation after replantation is often significantly longer than that after amputation.

Persons with trauma-related amputation undergo extreme physiologic changes as well as psychologic trauma. With the sudden loss of a body part, the patient may experience an extended period of grieving. Addressing the patient's psychologic as well as physical needs is important for optimal outcome. An interdisciplinary team approach to rehabilitation is the most effective means of addressing the comprehensive needs of a patient who has unexpectedly lost a limb to trauma.[51]

Case Example 17.2 **A Patient With Traumatic Amputation**

C.J., a 20-year-old female, was on active duty with the National Guard in Afghanistan when a rocket-propelled grenade hit her convoy and she sustained significant shrapnel injuries to both lower extremities. After emergency care on the ground, C.J.'s condition was considered critical enough to warrant immediate transport to a military hospital in Germany. Trauma surgeons at the center determined that her wounds were severe enough to require mid-length transtibial amputation on the right and a long transfemoral amputation on the left. Because of wound contamination from shrapnel and debris and a resulting high risk of infection, C.J.'s surgical wounds were initially left open (unsutured) while local and intravenous antimicrobials were administered. After several days of care, C.J. was returned to the operating room for revision and closure of her wounds. She now has significant edema and serosanguineous drainage on the right limb with a small area of wound dehiscence in the middle of the suture line. Although the left residual limb is not as edematous, the suture line there is inflamed and ecchymotic, with more than a dozen healing puncture wounds from shrapnel fragments over the anterior and lateral thigh. Once she is medically stable, C.J. will be moved to a military rehabilitation hospital in the United States for preprosthetic care and rehabilitation.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given the circumstances of these traumatic amputations, how does this patient's prognosis differ from that of the previous patient (Case Example 17.1) with a dysvascular/neuropathic amputation?
- How might the rehabilitation of this patient be similar to or different from that of the patient in Case Example 17.1 in terms of eventual outcome and duration of care?
- What plan of care would you implement to promote wound healing?

CANCER

Cancer of the bone and joint is a rare form of cancer. Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results data from the U.S. National Cancer Institute from 1988 to 2001 reported 4062 cases of bone and joint cancer. Of these, 27% occurred in children 9 years of age or younger. There are three typical histologic types of bone cancer: (1) osteosarcoma, (2) chondrosarcoma, and (3) Ewing sarcoma. These cancers arise from the growing end of long bones (osteosarcoma), cartilage (chondrosarcoma), and the axial skeleton (Ewing sarcoma).[23] The limb-presenting cancers are osteosarcoma and chondrosarcoma. Sixty-three percent of these cancers were diagnosed as osteosarcoma and 54% as chondrosarcoma. Amputation because of a primary cancer generally results from osteogenic sarcoma (osteosarcoma) (Fig. 17.6). This type of cancer occurs predominantly in late childhood, adolescence, or the early young adult years. The incidence is slightly higher among young males than among females. Osteosarcoma typically occurs at or near the epiphyses of long bones—especially the distal femur, proximal tibia, or proximal humerus—during times of rapid growth. Most patients have a history of worsening, increasingly deep-seated pain, sometimes accompanied by localized swelling. Children with osteosarcoma are vulnerable to pathologic fracture, an event that often prompts diagnosis. Since the early 1990s, the need for amputation in osteosarcoma has been greatly reduced by advances in early detection, imaging techniques, chemotherapy regimens, and limb resectioning and salvage procedures. Tumor resection followed by limb reconstruction frequently provides a functional extremity. Weight bearing is limited, and the limb is protected by an orthosis early in rehabilitation. Once satisfactory healing has occurred, full weight bearing and near-normal activity can be resumed. The American Cancer Society reports a 5-year survival rate of 60% to 80% for patients with localized nonmetastatic osteosarcoma that is resectable.[38,52] When the cancer has metastasized, the 5-year survival rate is about 15% to 30%.[52] Rhabdomyosarcoma is a rare malignant tumor occurring in the extremities that predominantly affects children. Chemotherapy and radiation are often the primary forms of medical management. On occasion amputation is performed along with chemotherapy and radiation.[53]

Case Example 17.3 **A Patient With Osteosarcoma**

R.K. is a 16-year-old male high school student who sustained an unexpected fracture of the distal femur in a collision during playoffs for the state soccer title. He had experienced increasing lateral knee pain during the previous 4 weeks but had not complained to his coaches or parents for fear he would have to "sit out." Examination in the emergency department revealed a swollen and tender distal femur and knee. A radiograph showed a fracture just proximal to a radiodense lesion of the medial femoral condyle, including the articular surfaces of the knee. Magnetic resonance imaging indicated that the tumor extended posteriorly, close to the neurovascular bundle in the popliteal fossa. Biopsy confirmed osteosarcoma. The orthopedic surgeon and oncologist reviewed the options for limb salvage and amputation with R.K. and his parents, recommending amputation because the location of the tumor precluded the wide clear margins at the knee required for endoprosthetic knee replacement or cadaver allograft salvage strategies. R.K.'s fractured limb was stabilized in a knee orthosis while a preoperative course of chemotherapy was undertaken and the possibility of metastasis to the lungs was evaluated by further testing. Resection of the tumor to a mid-length transfemoral level of amputation was planned once the initial course of chemotherapy had been completed, to be followed by a second course of chemotherapy. R.K. and his family were encouraged by visits from a survivor of osteosarcoma who had had a transfemoral amputation 7 years earlier and was now a competitive runner at the national and paralympic level.

Continued on following page

Case Example 17.3 A Patient With Osteosarcoma (Continued)

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- How does the diagnosis of a serious cancer affect the rehabilitation of young people with medically necessary amputations?
- What psychologic factors must be considered?
- What physiologic factors must be considered?
- What are the similarities and differences in the prognosis and plan of care for this patient with cancer-related amputation as compared with the previous patients with dysvascular/neuropathic and trauma-related etiologies in terms of eventual outcome and duration of this episode of care?

CONGENITAL LIMB DEFICIENCIES

Congenital amputation is the absence of a limb or part of a limb at birth. An infant with congenital amputation may be missing an entire limb or just a portion of one. Commonly, if the entire limb is absent, it has been termed "amelia"; when a part of the limb is missing, such as a missing fibula, it has been termed "longitudinal deficiency"; and when a midportion of the limb is missing, it has been termed "phocomelia."[54] Using an international system of classification based on skeletal elements, the preferred terminology for congenital limb deficiencies is either transverse or longitudinal deficiencies (see Table 17.2).[55] Transverse deficiencies are described by the level at which the limb terminates. In transverse deficiency the limb develops to a point and then ceases to develop; it resembles an amputation residual limb in which the limb has developed normally to a particular level beyond which no skeletal elements are present (Fig. 17.7).

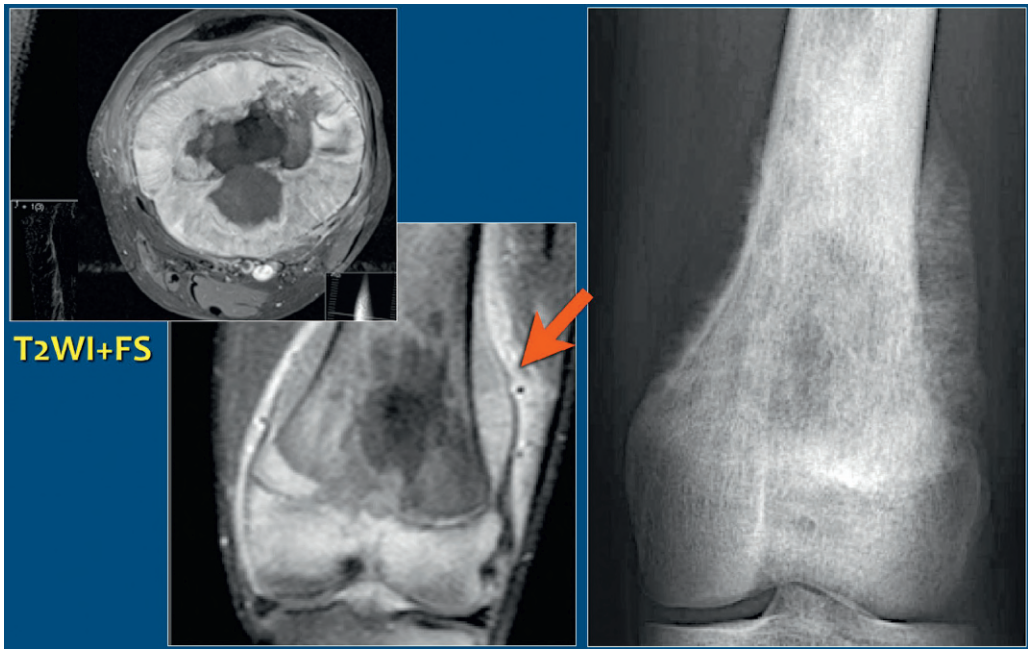


Fig. 17.6 Magnetic resonance image of the distal femur of a patient with osteosarcoma of the bone and marrow canal. The bright signal beyond the bone indicates invasion of surrounding soft tissue. (From http://www.radiologyassistant.nl/en/p4bc9b622f0885/bone-tumor-h-0.html.)

Fig. 17.7 Running with a transtibial prosthesis using a Cheetah carbon-fiber prosthetic foot. (© Össur.)

In longitudinal deficiencies, a reduction or absence occurs within the long axis of the limb, but normal skeletal components are present distal to the affected bones.[55]

The incidence of congenital limb deficiency has remained relatively stable over time, accounting for only approximately 0.8% of all limb loss–related hospital discharges. The overall prevalence is 7.9 per 10,000 live births.[56] Most are due to primary intrauterine growth inhibition or disruptions secondary to intrauterine destruction of normal embryonic tissues. The upper extremities are more commonly affected.[56]

Upper limb deficiencies in children vary from minor abnormalities of the fingers to major limb absences. Embryologic differentiation of the upper limbs occurs most rapidly at 5 to 8 weeks' gestation, often before pregnancy has been recognized or confirmed. During this period the upper limbs are particularly vulnerable to malformation. The etiology of limb malformation is unclear. Potential contributing factors cited in the research literature include (1) exposure to chemical agents or drugs, (2) fetal position or constriction, (3) endocrine disorders, (4) exposure to radiation, (5) immune reactions, (6) occult infections and other diseases, (7) single-gene disorders, (8) chromosomal disorders, and (9) other syndromes of unknown cause.[41] In many children an upper limb deficiency is the only anomaly. However, as many as 12% of these children have other malformations that do not involve the limbs.

The use of prosthetics is a common intervention for children with congenital limb deficiencies. Sometimes surgery is necessary to prepare the existing limb for the most effective use of a prosthesis, especially after periods of rapid growth. The goals of prosthetic training for the child should be to enhance the function of the limb and provide a cosmetic replacement for a missing limb. Rehabilitation efforts are designed with the child's cognitive, motor, and psychologic development in mind.

Rehabilitation Issues for the Person With an Amputation

Several factors influence the success of rehabilitation after amputation. These include age, health status, cognitive status, sequence of onset of disability, concurrent disease and comorbidity, and the level of amputation.[57] With anticipated growth in the aging segments of the population and the presence of chronic dysvascular conditions, amputation in the U.S. geriatric population will probably double from 28,000 to 58,000 per year by 2030.[3] The number of persons living with limb loss will more than double from 1.6 million in 2005 to 3.6 million in 2050. Prosthetic, physical therapy, and health care needs will increase to ensure continued independence, quality of life, and participation in activities of daily living among these individuals. Persons with limb loss will require considerable rehabilitation resources.[58,59]

The physical rehabilitation[60] process for persons with amputation occurs in different stages, beginning with a postoperative acute phase, where positioning, skin protection, sensory and proprioceptive training, joint range of motion, and muscle strengthening occur in conjunction with general conditioning activities. This leads to functional training for independence in mobility including transfer skills, balance exercises, wheelchair mobility, and ambulation with assistive devices that extends to the subacute phase of rehabilitation. The preprosthetic phase includes management of the residual limb including wound care, edema control, shaping, desensitization, and increasing joint and muscle flexibility. Strengthening of the trunk as well as the extremities is essential for prosthetic use. Traditionally, physical therapists have focused on the ability to perform functional activities such as walking, turning, and managing ramps and other uneven or unpredictable surfaces safely, independently, and efficiently with and without a prosthesis. Physical therapists assist physicians and prosthetists in determining an individual's readiness for prosthetic fitting and are often involved in decisions about prosthetic components. After initial fitting, physical therapists coordinate prosthetic training, consulting with prosthetists if problems with prosthetic alignment arise. Once these basic mobility activities are mastered, the therapist can serve as a consultant to assist the person with amputation in returning to preamputation employment and leisure activities. The rehabilitation process for persons with lower limb amputation is aimed at maximizing functional mobility outcomes. In order to achieve functional ambulation, prosthetists and physical therapists must address issues of residual limb or phantom pain management,[61] muscle strengthening,[62] balance, and ambulation training.[63,64] Quality-of-life indicators and outcome measures ultimately evaluate the success of the rehabilitation process.[65–67]

As many as 70% of persons with a lower extremity amputation report using their prosthesis on a full-time basis: putting it on in the early morning, wearing it all day, and taking it off in the evening.[65] Two major reasons for limited use or nonuse are generally cited: physical discomfort when walking with the prosthesis and psychologic discomfort. The wide variation reported in the success of functional ambulation with a prosthesis after below-knee amputation appears to be related to age and concurrent disease.[68] Healing time, indicated by time between surgery and fitting for the first prosthesis, correlates with age but not with the cause of amputation. Age is also more important than the etiology of amputation in predicting the total length of time in rehabilitation and achievement of functional ambulation: older adults with amputation are likely to require a longer rehabilitation period to accomplish an ambulatory status equal to that of the younger group.[69] Although most people recovering from amputation achieve some level of upright mobility, a smaller percentage of older persons with concurrent chronic disease become functional ambulators as compared with younger persons who had amputations because of trauma or osteomyelitis. Today, U.S. veterans with traumatic amputations have greater options for returning to active duty than were available in the recent past due to the prosthetic and rehabilitation training provided in Veterans Administration medical centers. U.S. military service members injured in Afghanistan and Iraq who sustained limb loss—including transfemoral and transradial levels of amputation—have remained on active duty and continue to serve successfully.[70]

The typical age at the time of initial lower limb dysvascular amputation is between 51 and 69 years; therefore consideration must be given to the special rehabilitation needs of the older patient. The complexity of issues during rehabilitation of the older adult who is undergoing an amputation is often compounded by comorbidity, fragile social supports, and limited resources.[68] In patients with dysvascular conditions, concomitant cerebrovascular disease can have a more complicated rehabilitation process. A preamputation history of stroke or occurrence of stroke during the course of rehabilitation is not uncommon. Similarly, cardiovascular disease can limit endurance and exercise tolerance; endurance training becomes a critical component of the postamputation preprosthetic rehabilitation program. Optimal rehabilitation care begins with consultation and patient and family education efforts before surgery. A specialized interdisciplinary team most effectively provides this presurgical and perisurgical care (Table 17.4). Team members often include a surgeon, physical therapist, certified prosthetist, occupational therapist, nurse or nurse practitioner, recreational therapist, psychologist, and social worker.[70] The patient and family members are active and essential members of the team as well. Effective communication provides the team with the necessary information to develop a tentative treatment plan from the time of amputation to discharge home.

With a specialized treatment team and the use of new lightweight, dynamic prosthetic designs, the potential for rehabilitation of the older patient has increased significantly in the past decade. At the time of surgery, special consideration is given to the optimal level of amputation. This is a particularly important concern for the older patient. The selection of the surgical level of amputation is probably one of the most important decisions to be made for the patient undergoing an amputation. A lower limb prosthesis ideally becomes a full-body weight-bearing device. However, bony prominences, adhesions of the suture line scar, fragile skin and open areas, shearing forces at the skin/socket interface, and perspiration can complicate this function. The energy cost of ambulation[71] must be considered, especially for older patients with significant deconditioning or comorbid conditions. The higher the level of amputation and loss of joints, long bone length, and muscle insertion, the greater the impairment of normal locomotor mechanisms. This leads to increased energy costs in prosthetic control and functional ambulation and a greater likelihood of functional limitation and disability.

Preservation of the knee joint seems to be a key determinant in determining the potential for functional ambulation and successful rehabilitation outcome. Persons with transtibial amputation who have an intact anatomic knee joint demonstrate a more energy-efficient prosthetic gait pattern and postural responses; they are more likely to ambulate without additional assistive devices

Table 17.4 Members and Roles of the Multidisciplinary Team for Rehabilitation After Amputation

Team Member	Role
Physician	Often serves as coordinator of the team Assesses need for amputation, performs surgery, monitors healing of suture line Monitors and manages patient's overall medical care and health status Monitors condition of remaining extremity for patients with peripheral vascular disease (PVD), neuropathy, or diabetes
Physical therapist	Provides preoperative education about the rehabilitation process and instruction in single-limb mobility Designs and manages a preprosthetic rehabilitation program that focuses on mobility and preparation for prosthetic training Evaluates patient's readiness for prosthetic fitting; can make recommendations for prosthetic fitting Designs and manages a prosthetic training program that focuses on functional ambulation and prosthetic management Monitors condition of the remaining extremity for patients with PVD, neuropathy, or diabetes
Prosthetist	Designs, fabricates, and fits the prosthesis Adapts the prosthesis to individuals, adjusts alignment, repairs/replaces components when necessary Monitors fit, function, and comfort of the prosthesis Monitors condition of the remaining extremity for patients with PVD, neuropathy, or diabetes
Occupational therapist	Assesses and treats patients with upper extremity amputation, monitors readiness for prosthetic fitting, recommends components Assists with problem solving in activities of daily living for patients with upper or lower limb amputations Makes recommendations for environmental modification and assistive/adaptive equipment to facilitate functional independence
Social worker	Provides financial counseling and coordination of support services Acts as liaison with third-party payers and community agencies Assists with patient's and family's social, psychologic, and financial issues
Dietitian	Evaluates nutritional status and provides nutritional counseling, especially for patients with diabetes or heart disease or those who are on chemotherapy or are recovering from trauma
Nurse/nurse practitioner	Monitors patient's health and functional status during rehabilitation Provides ongoing patient education on comorbid and chronic health issues Monitors condition of remaining extremity for patients with PVD, neuropathy, or diabetes
Vocational counselor	Assesses patient's employment status and potential Assists with education, training, and placement

Modified from May B. Assessment and treatment of individuals following lower extremity amputation. In: O'Sullivan SB, Schmitz TJ, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation: Assessment and Treatment*. Philadelphia: Davis; 1994:379.

(walkers, crutches, or canes). They are also more likely to be full-time prosthetic wearers than are persons with transfemoral amputation. The benefits of preserving the knee, particularly among older adults, are so crucial that a transtibial amputation may be attempted even with the risk of inadequate healing; this may necessitate later revision to a higher level.[72]

The patient with a bilateral transfemoral amputation faces additional rehabilitation challenges. The significant increase in energy consumption that is required can prevent long distance ambulation. Many older patients, as well as younger persons with bilateral transfemoral amputation, may choose wheelchair mobility as a more energy-efficient and effective means of locomotion. Ambulation potential depends on cardiac function, strength, balance, and endurance.[72]

Options for prosthetic components for the older person with an amputation have increased dramatically in the past 20 years. Selecting the most appropriate components for the individual requires input from the entire rehabilitation team in close communication with the patient and family members.

Rehabilitation Environment

Traditionally, preprosthetic and early prosthetic programs have occurred in rehabilitation departments of acute care hospitals. However, in today's health care arena, where length of stay in acute or tertiary care facilities is very limited, early prosthetic rehabilitation is more than likely to begin in the home through home care physical therapy services, in the community through ambulatory preprosthetic rehabilitation, or in a skilled nursing facility. Patients who qualify for a subacute rehabilitation or skilled nursing home stay would also receive the preprosthetic rehabilitation programs necessary to prepare for prosthetic use after limb loss. In this environment, the care is specialized for the older person with an amputation. A quality subacute rehabilitation or skilled nursing facility should have the complement of professional services and essential postamputation rehabilitation treatment team necessary to address the complex needs of this group of patients., Today's health care environment does not offer older persons with an amputation an acute inpatient rehabilitation stay until they are ready for prosthetic fitting or after they have received the prosthesis and are ready for intensive rehabilitation with the device. For patients with multiple medical complications, rehabilitation may be continued in a subacute setting or skilled nursing facility. For patients without complications and with a strong social support network, an outpatient rehabilitation program may be preferable. This plan allows them to reintegrate into the home and community while maintaining support of the treatment team. The most effective care and rehabilitation for individuals undergoing an amputation require the skills and ongoing support of an integrated treatment team.[63,73]

Summary

Amputation and limb loss can occur as a result of trauma or health conditions (nontraumatic). Amputation can affect persons of all ages. Most nontraumatic amputation surgeries are performed in older citizens who have dysvascular disease with or with diabetes mellitus. Traumatic amputation occurs in U.S. military service men and women engaged in military operations in Afghanistan, Iraq, and Syria, where explosive devices often cause limb loss to soldiers. Traumatic amputations are also the result of motor vehicle accidents, the use of power tool and firearms, and recreational activities. Congenital amputations occur rarely, and amputation due to cancer persists as a medical concern but is diminishing with the new surgical approaches and limb salvage techniques. Medical advances in the treatment of persons with dysvascular disease and diabetes mellitus offer encouragement that the rise in amputations in the elderly population will decrease in the coming years. The improved education initiatives directed at preventing diabetic foot ulcers or early management of persons with diabetic foot ulcers also provide encouragement that the rate of amputation in persons with diabetes mellitus and dysvascular disease will decrease. Advances in the field of prosthetics enable young, athletic persons with limb loss to return to active lifestyles including return to active military service for injured service men and women. The rehabilitation process after amputation is essential for making sure that patients have the opportunity to maximize their functional abilities and quality of life. Although the rehabilitation phases after amputation may present many challenges for patients, their families, and the professionals involved in their care, they also provide many opportunities for success and reward. An optimal outcome after amputation is best achieved through interaction with a patient-centered, interdisciplinary health care team. With effective physical rehabilitation and prosthetic care, most individuals with amputations can return to a level of activity and lifestyle similar to that of their preamputation status.

References

1. Wilson Jr BB. The modern history of amputation surgery and artificial limbs. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 1972;3:267–285.
2. https://catalog.data.gov/dataset/national-health-interview-survey. Accessed February 8, 2018.
3. Adams P, Hendershot G, Marano M. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/National Center for Health Statistics. Current estimates from the National Health Interview Survey, 1996. *Vital Health Stat 10*. 1999;200:1–203.
4. https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/2019_quest_redesign.htm. Accessed January 31, 2018.
5. Adams P, Hendershot G, Marano M. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/National Center for Health Statistics. Current estimates from the National Health Interview Survey, 1996. *Vital Health Stat 10*. 1999;200:1–203.
6. https://www.amputee-coalition.org/limb-loss-resource-center/resources-filtered/resources-by-topic/limb-loss-statistics/limb-loss-statistics/. Accessed January 31, 2018.
7. Ziegler-Graham K, MacKenzie EJ, Ephraim PL, et al. Estimating the prevalence of limb loss in the United States: 2005 to 2050. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89:422–429.
8. Dillingham Timothy R, et al. Limb amputation and limb deficiency: epidemiology and recent trends in the United States. *Southern Medical Journal*. Aug. 2002;875+. Academic OneFile.
9. Shurr DG, Michael JW. Introduction to prosthetics and orthotics. In: *Prosthetics and Orthotics*. 2nd ed. Norwalk, CT: Appleton & Lange; 2000:1–19.
10. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, Mackenzie EJ. Limb amputation and limb deficiency: epidemiology and recent trends in the United States. *South Med J.* 2002;95(8):875–883.
11. Li Y, Burros NR, Gregg EW, Albright A, Geiss LS. Declining Rates of Hospitalization for Nontraumatic Lower-Extremity Amputation in

the Diabetic Population Aged 40 Years or Older: U.S. 1988-2008. *Diabetes Care*. 2012 Feb;35(2):273–277.
12. https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pdfs/data/statistics/national-diabetes-statistics-report.pdf. Accessed February 8, 2018.
13. Miller AP, Huff CM, Roubin GS. Vascular disease in the older adult. *Journal of Geriatric Cardiology : JGC*.2016;13(9):727–732. https://doi.org/10.11909/j.issn.1671-5411.2016.09.011.
14. Criqui MH. Peripheral arterial disease: epidemiological aspects. *Vasc Med*. 2001;6(suppl 1):3–7.
15. Li Y, Burros NR, Gregg EW, Albright A, Geiss LS. Declining Rates of Hospitalization for Nontraumatic Lower-Extremity Amputation in the Diabetic Population Aged 40 Years or Older: U.S. 1988-2008. *Diabetes Care*. 2012 Feb;35(2):273–277.
16. Monteiro-Soares M, Martins-Mendes D, Vaz-Carneiro A, Dinis-Ribeiro M. Lower-limb amputation following foot ulcers in patients with diabetes: classification systems, external validation and comparative analysis. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev*. Jul 2015;31(5):515–529.
17. http://www.cdc.gov/media. Accessed February 8, 2018.
18. Li Y, Burros NR, Gregg EW, Albright A, Geiss LS. Declining Rates of Hospitalization for Nontraumatic Lower-Extremity Amputation in the Diabetic Population Aged 40 Years or Older: U.S. 1988-2008. *Diabetes Care*. 2012 Feb;35(2):273–277.
19. U.S Congressional Report. A Guide to U.S. Military Casualty Statistics: Operation Freedom's Sentinel, Operation Inherent Resolve, Operation New Dawn, Operation Iraqi Freedom, and Operation Enduring Freedom. *Hannah Fischer Information Research Specialist*. August 7, 2015; https://fas.org/sgp/crs/natsec/RS22452.pdf.
20. Mastboom MJL, Verspoor FGM, Gelderblom H, van de Sande MAJ. Limb Amputation after Multiple Treatments of Tenosynovial Giant Cell Tumour: Series of 4 Dutch Cases. *Hindawi Case Reports in Orthopedics*. 2017; Volume 2017, Article ID 7402570, 6 pages https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/7402570.
21. Tsuzuki S, Park HE, Eber MR, Peters CM, Shiozawa Y. Skeletal complications in cancer patients with bone metastases. *International Journal of Urology*. 2016;23:825–832. https://doi.org/10.1111/iju.13170.
22. Gunaratne DA, Howle JR, Veness MJ. Merkel cell carcinoma: A case of palliative upper limb amputation in a patient with refractory in-transit metastases. *Australasian Journal of Dermatology*. 2016;57:e53–e56. https://doi.org/10.1111/ajd.12424.
23. American Cancer Society Cancer Facts & Figures 2017. https://www.cancer.org/content/dam/cancer-org/research/cancer-facts-and-statistics/annual-cancer-facts-and-figures/2017/cancer-facts-and-figures-2017.pdf. Accessed February 17, 2018.
24. Jiang F, Shi Y, Li GJ, Zhou FA. Meta-analysis of limb salvage versus amputation in the treatment of patients with Enneking II pathologic fracture osteosarcoma. *Indian Journal of Cancer*. January 2014;51. 21-14.
25. Dillingham Timothy R, et al. Limb amputation and limb deficiency: epidemiology and recent trends in the United States. *Southern Medical Journal*. Aug. 2002;875+. Academic OneFile.
26. Cumming J, Barr S, Howe TE. Prosthetic rehabilitation for older dysvascular people following a unilateral transfemoral amputation. In: *The Cochrane Collaboration*. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.; 2015.
27. Humphry LL, Palumbo PJ, Butters MA, et al. The contribution of non-insulin dependent diabetes to lower-extremity amputation in the community. *Arch Intern Med*. 1994;154(8):885–892.
28. Borkosky SL, Roukis TS. Incidence of re-amputation following partial first ray amputation associated with diabetes mellitus and peripheral sensory neuropathy: a systematic review. *Diabetic Foot & Ankle*. 2012;3:12169. https://doi.org/10.3402/dfa.v3i0.12169.
29. Age-Adjusted Hospital Discharge Rates for Neuropathy as First-Listed Diagnosis per 1,000 Diabetic Population, by Sex, United States, 1988–2007. https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/statistics/hosplea/diabetes_complications/fig4_neuro.htm.
30. Arteriosclerosis obliterans (ASO). http://www.derm-hokudai.jp/shimizu-dermatology/pdf/11-05.pdf. Accessed February 18, 2018.
31. Criqui MH, Aboyans V. Epidemiology of peripheral artery disease. *Cir Res*. 2015 Apr 24;116(9):1509–1526. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCRESAHA.116.303849.
32. Meltzer DD, Pels S, Payne WG, et al. Decreasing amputation rates in patients with diabetes mellitus. An outcome study. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc*. 2002;92(8):425–428.
33. African Americans Diabetes and Amputations. https://vascular.org/news-advocacy/african-americans-diabetes-and-amputation-trends. Accessed February 18, 2018.
34. Duby JJ, Campbell RK, Setter SM, White JR, Rasmussen KA. Diabetic neuropathy: an intensive review. *American Journal of Health-System Pharmacy*. 2004;61(2):160–173.
35. Singh N, Armstrong DG, Lipsky BA. Preventing foot ulcers in patients with diabetes. *JAMA*. 2005;293(2):217–228.
36. Carrington AL, Abbott CA, Griffiths J, Jackson N, et al. Foot Care Program for Diabetic Unilateral Lower-Limb Amputees. *Diabetes Care*. 2001;24(2):26–221.
37. American Diabetes Association. Standards of medical care in diabetes-2014. *Diabetes Care*. 2014;37(Suppl 1). S14–80.
38. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. https://www.cdc.gov/. Accessed February 18, 2018.
39. National Center for Health Statistics. https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/index.htm. Accessed February 18, 2018.
40. Gerhard-Herman MD, Gornik HL, Barrett C, et al. 2016 AHA/ACC guideline on the management of patients with lower extremity peripheral artery disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*. 2017;135:e726–e779. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIR.0000000000000471.
41. Gnesin F, Thuesen AC, Kähler LK, Gluud C, Madsbad S, Hemmingsen B. Metformin monotherapy for adults with type 2 diabetes mellitus (Protocol). In: *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.; 2018. Issue 1. Art. No.: CD012906. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD012906 (web archive link) 2018 The Cochrane Collaboration.
42. Dorresteijn JAN, Kriegsman DMW, Assendelft WJJ, Valk GD. *Patient education for preventing diabetic foot ulceration (Review)*. Copyright © 2014 The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
43. Wang HT, Yuan JQ, Zhang B, Dong ML, Mao C, Hu D. *Phototherapy for treating foot ulcers in people with diabetes (Review)*. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2017, Issue 6. Art. No.: CD011979 https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD011979.pub2 (web archive link) 2017 The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
44. Schneiderman N, Llabre M, Cowie CC, Barnhart J, Carnethon M, et al. Prevalence of Diabetes Among Hispanics/Latinos From Diverse Backgrounds: The Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos (HCHS/SOL). *Diabetes Care*. 2014;37:2233–2239. https://doi.org/10.2337/dc13-293Hispanic.
45. Diabetes Among American Indians and Alaska Natives. https://www.cdc.gov/media/matte/2011/11_diabetes_Native_American.pdf. Accessed February 19, 2018.
46. National Limb Loss Information Center Fact Sheet. http://www.amputee-coalition.org/fact_sheets/multicultural/all_groups.html. Accessed February 19, 2018.
47. Schofield CJ, Libby G, Brennan GM, MacAlpine RR, et al. Mortality and Hospitalization in Patients After Amputation. *Diabetes Care*. 2006;29:2252–2256.
48. Bertoni AG, Krop JS, Anderson GF, Brancati FL. Diabetes-Related Morbidity and Mortality in a National Sample of U.S. Elders. *Diabetes Care*. 2002 Mar;25(3):471–475. https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.25.3.471.
49. Healey AJ, Tai N. Traumatic amputation—a contemporary approach. *Trauma*. 2009;11:177–187.
50. Ramirez C, Menaker J. Traumatic Amputations. 2017 @ www.ahcmedia.com/articles/140552-traumatic-amputations. Accessed February 19, 2018.
51. Sorenson K, Allison KT. An overview of limb replantation. *Trauma*. 2009;11:209–220.
52. Survival rates for localized osteosarcoma. https://www.cancer.org/cancer/osteosarcoma/detection-diagnosis-staging/survival-rates.html. Accessed February 18, 2018.
53. Sabapathy SR, Venkatramani H, Shankar SU. Rhabdom¬yosarcoma of the thumb: a case report with a review of the literature. *Indian J Plast Surg*. 2007;40(2):189–193.
54. Congenital Amputation. http://www.healthofchildren.com/C/Congenital-Amputation.html. Accessed February 19, 2018.
55. Day HJB. "The ISO/ISPO Classification of Congenital Limb Deficiency". In Atlas of Limb Prosthetics: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles. Chapter 33 O and P Virtual Library @ http://www.oandplibrary.org/alp/ Accessed February 19, 2018.
56. Boyd SAB. *Common Congenital Limb Defects*. http://www.merckmanuals.com/professional/pediatrics/congenital-craniofacial-and-musculoskeletal-abnormalities/common-congenital-limb-defects. Accessed February 19, 2018.

57. Esquenazi A, DiGiacomo R. Rehabilitation after amputation. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2001 Jan;91(1):13–22.
58. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, Shore AD. Reamputation, mortality, and health care costs among persons with dysvascular lower-limb amputations. *Archives of Physical Medicine.* 2005;86(3):480–486. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apmr.2004.06.072.
59. MacKenzie EJ, Castillo RC, Jones AS, Bosse MJ, Kellam JF, et al. Health-Care Costs Associated with Amputation or Reconstruction of a Limb-Threatening Injury. *J Bone and Joint Surgery.* 2007;89(8):1685–1692. https://doi.org/10.2106/JBJS.F.01350.
60. Fiedler G, Akins J, Cooper R, Munoz S, Cooper RA, et al. Rehabilitation of People with Lower-Limb Amputations. *Curr Phys Med Rehabil Rep.* 2014;2:263–272. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40141-014-0068-8.
61. Johnson MI, Mulvey MR, Bagnall AM. *Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) for phantom pain and stump pain following amputation in adults.* In Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2015 Issue 8. Art. No.: CD007264 Copyright © 2015 The Cochrane Collaboration.
62. Lane R, Harwood A, Watson L, Leng GC. *Exercise for intermittent claudication. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews.* Published by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd; 2017. Issue 12. Art. No.: CD000990. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000990.pub4. Copyright © 2017 The Cochrane Collaboration.
63. Fletcher DD, Andrews KL, Hallett JW, Butters MA, Rowland CM, Jacobsen SJ. Trends in rehabilitation after amputation for geriatric patients with vascular disease: implications for future health resource allocation. *Arch Phys Rehab.* 2002 Oct;83(10):1389–1393.
64. Paxton RJ, Murray AM, Stevens JE, Sherk KA, Christensen CL. Physical activity, ambulation, and comorbidities in people with diabetes and lower-limb amputation. *JRRD.* 2016;53(6):1069–1078.
65. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, Mackenzie EJ, et al. Use and satisfaction with prosthetic devices among persons with trauma-related amputations: a long-term outcome study. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;80(8):563–571.
66. Green GV, Short K, Easley M, Pauley T, Devlin M, Heslin K. Transtibial amputation. Prosthetic use and functional outcome. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2001;6(2):315–327. Falls sustained during inpatient rehabilitation after lower limb amputation: prevalence and predictors. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2006;85(6):521–545.
67. MacKenzie HM, Rice DB, Sealy CM, Cox PD, Deathe B, Payne MWCP. Physical Barriers to outcome measure administration and completion at discharge from inpatient rehabilitation of people with amputation. *JRRD.* 2016;53(6):1061–1068.
68. Green GV, Short K, Easley M. Transtibial amputation. Prosthetic use and functional outcome. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2001;6(2):315–327.
69. Hershkovitz A, Dudkiewicz I, Brill S. Rehabilitation outcome of post-acute lower limb geriatric amputees. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2013;35(3):221–227.
70. The process of returning to duty or not after limb loss. http://www.amputee-coalition.org/military-instep/returning-to-duty.html. Accessed February 20, 2018.
71. Houdi KH, Pollmann E, Groenewold M, Wiggerts H, Polomski W. The energy cost for step-to-step transition in amputee walking. *Gait and Posture.* 2009;30(1):35–40.
72. Waters RL. 2002 "The Energy Expenditure of Amputee Gait". In Atlas of Limb Prosthetics: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles. http://www.oandplibrary.org/alp/chap15-01.asp Accessed February 20, 2018.
73. Stineman MG, Kwong PL, Kurichi JE, et al. The effectiveness of inpatient rehabilitation in the acute postoperative phase of care after transtibial or transfemoral amputation: study of an integrated health care delivery system. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89(10):1863–1872.

18 High-Risk Foot and Wound Healing☆

MILAGROS JORGE and EDDIE J. TRAYLOR

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Explain the relationship between diabetes and the risk to developing foot disorders and delayed wound healing.
2. Identify the interactive factors that contribute to pressure ulceration in persons with vulnerable feet.
3. Describe the components of a thorough foot examination for persons with vulnerable feet at risk for pressure ulceration.
4. Explain the importance of each component of a thorough wound examination.
5. Compare and contrast the efficacy and drawbacks of the most commonly used options for reducing pressure to promote ulcer healing and prevention in the vulnerable foot.
6. Determine which wounds would benefit from the addition of therapeutic modalities.
7. Develop a comprehensive treatment plan to manage vulnerable feet, including those with delayed healing of open wounds.
8. Describe the revised National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel pressure injury staging system.

The thought of losing a limb has to be one of the most frightening things a person will ever face. For the majority of the population, the idea likely conjures up some sort of catastrophic event that can be pushed to the back of the mind as something that is unlikely to occur. Unfortunately, individuals with vulnerable feet, or feet with a high risk for injury, face the very real possibility of losing a limb in the foreseeable future. A high-risk foot is one that has an underlying disease process that puts the tissues at a greater risk of tissue breakdown. In many cases the foot wound is the result of an underlying disease such as diabetes, a condition that will negatively affect wound healing. Diabetes is the leading cause of nontraumatic lower extremity amputation.[1] The number of persons with diabetes and prediabetes in the U.S. population continues to rise. According to the National Diabetes Statistics 2017, an estimated 30.3 million people of all ages, or nearly 10% of the U.S. population, has diabetes.[2] Eighty-six million U.S. adults have prediabetes, and 90% of them do not know they have the condition.[2]

Persons with diabetes often develop peripheral neuropathy and lose sensation to the feet, which can predispose them to injury due to insensate feet. Insensate feet fail to respond to prolonged pressure or mechanical stress, which can lead to skin irritation and pressure sores such as heel ulceration or plantar surface ulceration. Often there is delayed wound healing due to neuropathic changes, impaired circulation, and edema. Delayed wound healing can result in wound site infection, tissue necrosis, and amputation. Early intervention in the instruction of proper foot care for persons with diabetes and in the management of skin abrasions, pressure sores, and open wounds is a preventive measure for avoiding foot ulceration and lower extremity amputation.[3]

This chapter addresses the clinical management of persons with vulnerable feet at high risk for skin breakdown due to pressure injuries that result in foot ulceration and place the individual at risk for foot amputation or limb loss. The importance of conducting a comprehensive physical examination that includes assessment of the vascular, sensory, motor, and autonomic systems, as well as a mobility assessment and footwear inspection, will be introduced. Current interventions and evidence-based treatment strategies aimed at preventing wounds to vulnerable feet or seek to minimize delayed wound healing will be discussed. Wound management through proper wound assessment; the use of electrotherapeutic and other modalities for infection control and healthy tissue proliferation; the importance of offloading pressure techniques such as using total contact casts (TCCs) and other pressure relieving strategies; and the use of clinical approaches that seek to prevent recurrence of injury to vulnerable feet will be highlighted in the chapter.

☆The authors extend appreciation to Edward Mahoney and Carolyn B. Kelly, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Normal Wound Healing

To fully appreciate the impact of different disease states on wound healing, it is necessary to begin with an understanding of normal wound healing. Wound healing involves a coordinated interaction of three phases: inflammation, proliferation, and remodeling.[4] Although these stages do overlap to some degree, they are discussed individually for purposes of clarity. The body's first response to injury during the inflammatory phase is to stop the bleeding at the site of injury through a process known as hemostasis. In response to an injury, platelets, which are formed in bone marrow and are free floating in the vascular system, are attracted to the injury site. The platelets also undergo activation, which causes them to change from a round shape into a sticky form that enables them to adhere to the injured area.[5] The platelet plug may be enough to stop the bleeding in minor injuries, or it may be augmented by the coagulation cascade to form a larger clot. An in-depth discussion on the coagulation cascade is beyond the scope of this chapter. In terms of wound healing, coagulation is only one part of the role of the platelet. The second role, which is critical to wound healing, is the secretion of numerous growth factors and cytokines that set the stage for later phases of wound healing.

The first cells to arrive at the wound site in response to the coagulation cascade are granulocytes, which are a form of white blood cells. Neutrophils are the most abundant of the granulocytes and are found in the wound within 24 hours after injury. These cells are nonspecific and phagocytic, which is crucial for disposing of damaged cells in the area. Other granulocytes include phagocytic eosinophils and basophils, which release histamine. The next leukocytic cells to respond are monocytes, which become macrophages in the wounded area. Macrophages are phagocytic but can also be thought of as growth factor factories because they play such a critical role in producing the growth factors that guide the remainder of the healing process.

Toward the latter stages of the inflammatory response, the wound is well into the proliferative phase of healing. The goal of this phase is to resurface the wound with a layer of viable epithelium. For this to occur, a well-vascularized dermal matrix is laid down in the wound bed. To accomplish this, new blood vessels are formed (neovascularization), and collagen is created by fibroblasts (fibroplasia). At the same time, new skin is being produced through the process of re-epithelialization, and wound contraction is occurring, which helps to approximate the wound margins and make the resultant scar smaller. The duration of this phase is greatly influenced by the size of the wound but is generally considered to last up to several weeks. Despite wound closure, the healing process is not yet complete as tissues continue to remodel. In fact, the remodeling phase is by far the longest and can last for more than a year from wound closure until the tissues have reached their maximum strength. Even after the wound has completely remodeled, it will not regain the same strength that uninjured tissue has and will continue to require close monitoring and protection to prevent reulceration.

Assessment of the High-Risk Foot

According to the most recent data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, diabetes is the leading cause of nontraumatic lower extremity amputation.[6] With that in mind, it is of particular importance to assess the patient's diabetes status (Fig. 18.1).

Following a thorough review of systems, a quick but thorough objective examination of the foot should occur. This examination should include assessments of the vascular, sensory, motor, and autonomic systems, as well as a mobility assessment and footwear inspection.

VASCULAR ASSESSMENT

It could be argued that a thorough vascular assessment is the most crucial aspect of the evaluation of vulnerable feet. Not only can impaired blood flow be a causative agent for the development of ulceration, it will impact healing of ulcers regardless of the etiology. A clinical vascular examination can be performed quickly and help the clinician decide if circulation is adequate or if further, more advanced testing is required. The examination should begin with an assessment of the pedal pulses (dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial). Pulses can be recorded as present or absent or can be graded on a more qualitative basis (Fig. 18.2):

0 = Unable to palpate
1+ = Barely perceptible
2+ = Weak
3+ = Normal
4+ = Bounding pulse; possible Charcot joint or aneurysm

The assessment of pulses should not be used alone to determine the extent of arterial compromise but should be correlated with other findings from the clinical examination. The lack of a palpable pulse (grade 0) is not sensitive for the detection of peripheral artery disease (PAD). In a study by Collins and colleagues, more than two thirds of limbs with diagnosed PAD still had palpable pulses.[7] Pulse palpation may be most useful for the comparison between the left and right limb to detect abnormalities.

The ankle-brachial index (ABI) is a simple, noninvasive clinical test that should be applied to diagnose PAD. ABI assessment is the "gold standard" for screening and diagnosing PAD.[8] In an effort to standardize the measurement technique when obtaining an ABI value, the American Heart Association (AHA), in 2012, developed a scientific position statement entitled "Measurement and Interpretation of the ABI."[9] The ABI is the ratio of the systolic blood pressure at the ankle (pedal arteries) to the blood pressure in the upper arm (brachial artery). The ABI should be performed by a clinician who has received specific education and training in the measurement technique using proper equipment. The AHA recommends using Doppler. The Wound Osteotomy and Continence Nursing society reports the ABI obtained using a pocket Doppler is interchangeable with vascular laboratory tests to detect PAD.[10] The systolic pressure is recorded in both arms, unless contraindicated (lymphedema, dialysis port), and the higher of the two values should be used. In the foot the dorsalis pedis and posterior

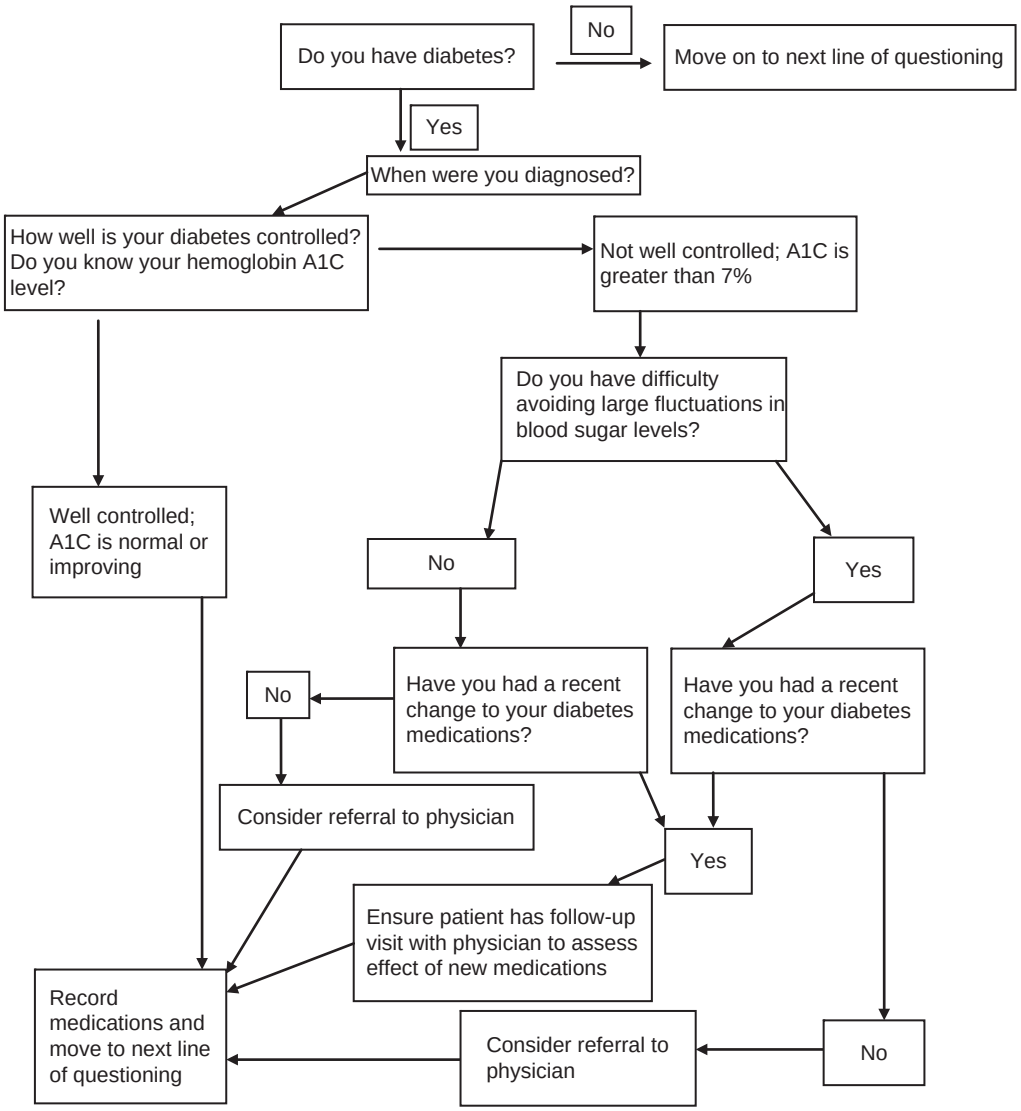


Fig. 18.1 Flow sheet for diabetes assessment.

tibial artery are both assessed and the highest value is used (Fig. 18.3).

Normal: 1 to 1.29.
- Borderline: 0.91 to 0.99
- Mild PAD: 0.71 to 0.90
- Medium severe PAD: 0.41 to 0.7
- Severe PAD: <0.4

$$\text{ABI} = \frac{\text{highest ankle systolic pressure}}{\text{highest brachial systolic pressure}}$$

A normal ABI is 1.0, which indicates normal arterial blood flow to the foot. An ABI value of less than 0.9 should be referred to the referring physician, who may in turn make a referral to a vascular specialist for further testing. In the case of individuals with long-standing diabetes, an ABI greater than 1.2 may be obtained because of calcified vessels in the lower extremity. If this is the case, the ABI value is of no significance as it pertains to arterial flow and further testing is required.

One test that can be performed is the toe pressure test. By using a specially designed cuff that fits over the digit and a Doppler flowmeter, the pressure in the digital arteries, which are less affected by calcification, can be assessed (Fig. 18.4). A systolic toe pressure greater than 50 mm Hg is generally considered normal; an increased risk of amputation and failure to heal is associated with pressures less than 30 mm Hg.[10]

Another noninvasive vascular assessment technique is transcutaneous oxygen pressure ($TcPO_2$). Low $TcPO_2$ measurement, a measurement of skin perfusion, is a predictor of ulceration[4] and healing.[11] In 1999 the American Diabetes Association's Consensus Development Conference on Diabetic Foot Wound Care recommended use of abnormal toe systolic pressures and $TcPO_2$ measurements[12,13] to predict

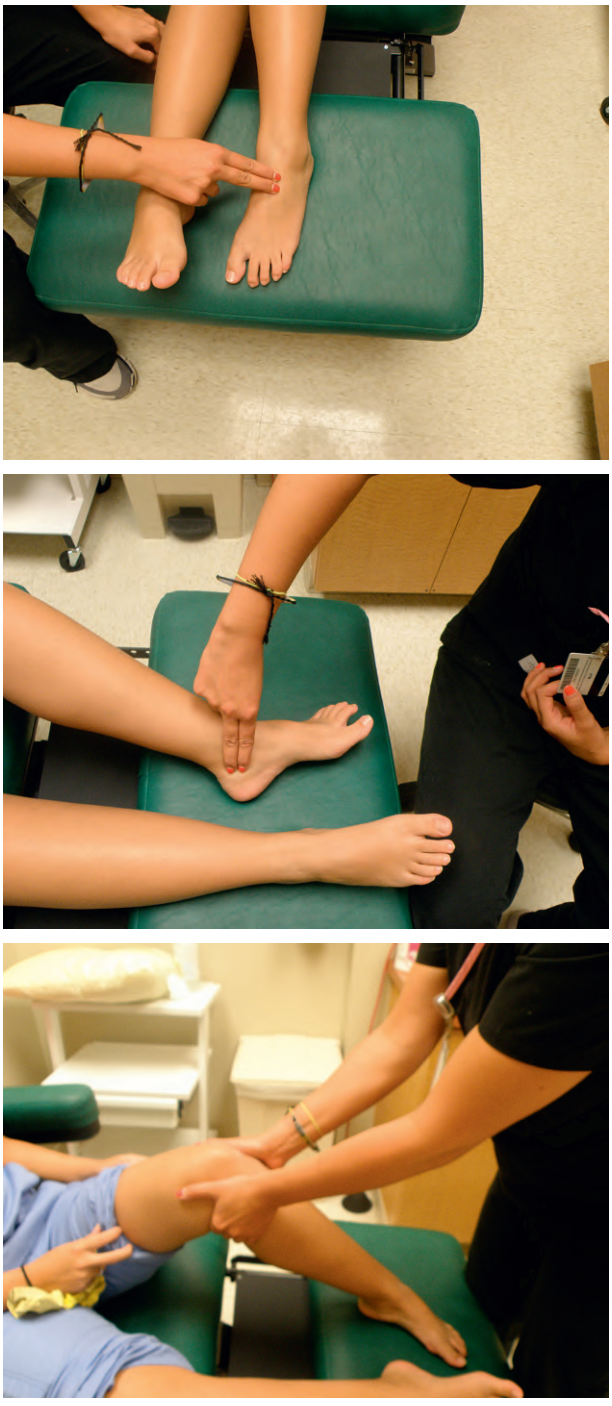


Fig. 18.2 Palpation of pedal pulses. (A) Dorsalis pedis pulse. (B) Posterior tibial pulse. (C) Popliteal pulse.

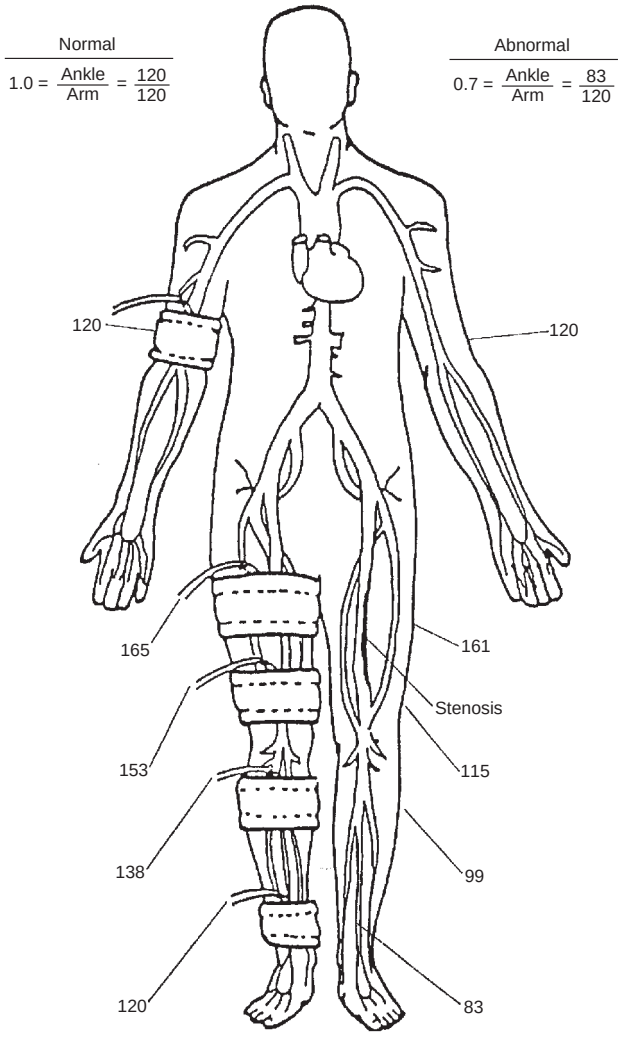


Fig. 18.3 Ankle-brachial index ratio of pedal systolic pressure and brachial systolic pressure.

poor outcomes.[14] In general, no single noninvasive test provides enough information to make decisions about vascular intervention. Analysis is usually done by a vascular specialist who interprets the results of a combination of tests.

If signs of arterial insufficiency are present and the patient has a foot wound, or if the patient has none of the typical symptoms of ischemia but has a nonhealing wound despite adequate control of infection and external pressure, referral for further vascular evaluation is warranted. Many patients have significant arterial disease but few clinical signs, such

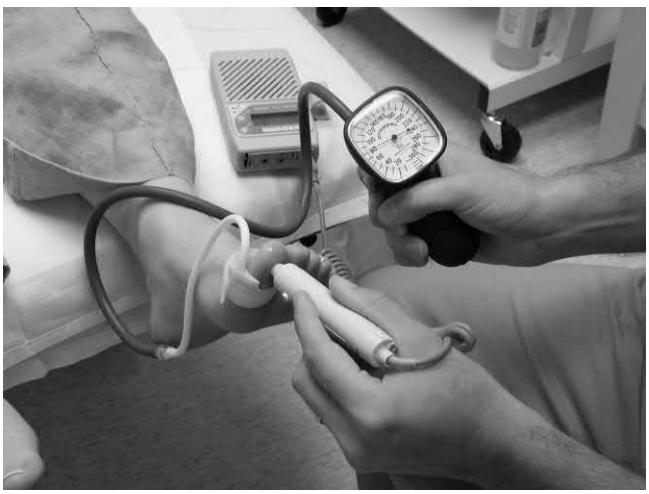


Fig. 18.4 Toe cuff for the assessment of digital blood flow.

as pain or open wounds, that warrant the risks involved with an invasive vascular procedure. They should still be educated in foot care and proper shoe fit. Because better circulation may be necessary to heal an open wound than to keep unbroken skin intact, the goal for patients with arterial insufficiency is to prevent foot wounds from occurring.

SENSORY ASSESSMENT

Patients in all settings, with many different diagnoses, may have impaired sensation. Diabetes is the most common reason for impaired sensation, but it is also associated with chronic alcoholism, syphilis, Hansen disease (formerly leprosy), spinal cord injury, and peripheral nerve injuries. Regardless of the cause, when the ability to perceive an external stimulus is diminished, it increases the risk for ulceration. In patients with diabetes, a loss of protective sensation is the leading cause of foot ulceration.[15,16] Simply put, if a patient cannot feel discomfort, there is no stimulus to change anything. In the case of a foot rubbing on a shoe or brace, an individual with intact sensation will stop to adjust the problem because of discomfort, whereas the person with impaired sensation may be unaware of the problem until the shoes are removed and blood is seen on the sock.

Protective sensation can be assessed in several different ways in the clinic, with very little special equipment needed. The two simplest methods are Semmes-Weinstein monofilaments and tuning forks. A 5.07 monofilament, which takes 10 g of perpendicular force to bend, is the most widely used clinical tool for the assessment of protective sensation (Fig. 18.5).

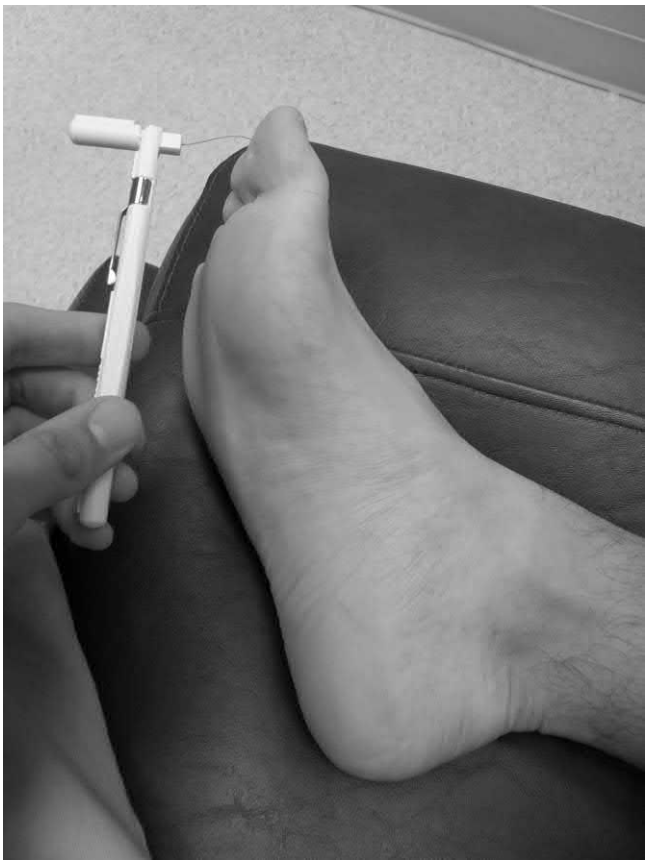


Fig. 18.5 Semmes-Weinstein monofilament.

The patient is instructed to close his or her eyes, and the monofilament is applied perpendicular to the skin surface with enough pressure to cause it to bend. Inability to sense the monofilament is considered to be a positive test for the loss of protective sensation. Care must be taken to avoid areas with thick callus, because the test results will not be valid. Alternatively, a tuning fork can be used for vibratory testing. A study by Oyer and associates found a vibrating 128-Hz tuning fork placed on the toe was more sensitive to the onset of neuropathic changes than monofilament testing.[17,18] In this testing procedure a clanging tuning fork is placed on the area to be tested and remains there until the subject can no longer feel the vibration. The tuning fork is then quickly moved to an area of known intact sensation on either the subject or examiner. If the vibration can still be felt in that site, the test is positive for a loss of vibratory sensation. Other authors[19] have found similar results using similar methods with tuning forks of different frequencies, for example, 512 Hz, which may be more convenient because the 512-Hz tuning fork is smaller (Fig. 18.6).[19]

MOTOR ASSESSMENT

A thorough musculoskeletal evaluation is necessary to determine a given patient's likelihood for ulceration. Deformities and abnormal biomechanics often change pressure distribution in the foot and can lead to discomfort, callus, and, ultimately, ulceration. The clinician can begin to assess for motor impairments while the patient is seated. The wear pattern on shoes, as well as the presence of calluses on the foot, can identify potential pathologies that ultimately may lead to ulcer formation. Following a visual inspection of the feet and footwear, a musculoskeletal examination that includes reflexes, strength, and range of motion should be performed. Particular attention should be paid to toe extension and dorsiflexion range of motion because limitations in either one greatly increases weight-bearing forces through the forefoot in the latter stance phases of gait. This becomes increasingly important to assess if the patient has diabetes, because a loss of dorsiflexion has been widely documented in that population.[20] If a patient is ambulatory, a gait assessment should be a standard part of the high-risk foot assessment.[21] Major deviations from the normal gait pattern can be assessed with a quick visual inspection. For example, patients with peroneal nerve injuries have difficulty with foot clearance and have a shorter loading response, which increases pressure at the forefoot. Alternatively, a patient could have increased forefoot pressure in terminal stance as a result of limited dorsiflexion range of motion. A mild limitation in motion may present as an early heel rise, whereas a more severe restriction can lead to excessive knee flexion for clearance during the swing phase of gait. With a static foot assessment, it may be apparent that both individuals have increased forefoot pressure, but the cause would not be known, with the result that the optimal intervention could not be selected. With careful gait analysis, the clinician can determine the cause of the pressure and choose appropriate interventions, such as a rocker bottom shoe to substitute for the midfoot rocker in the first case or an orthosis to aid in

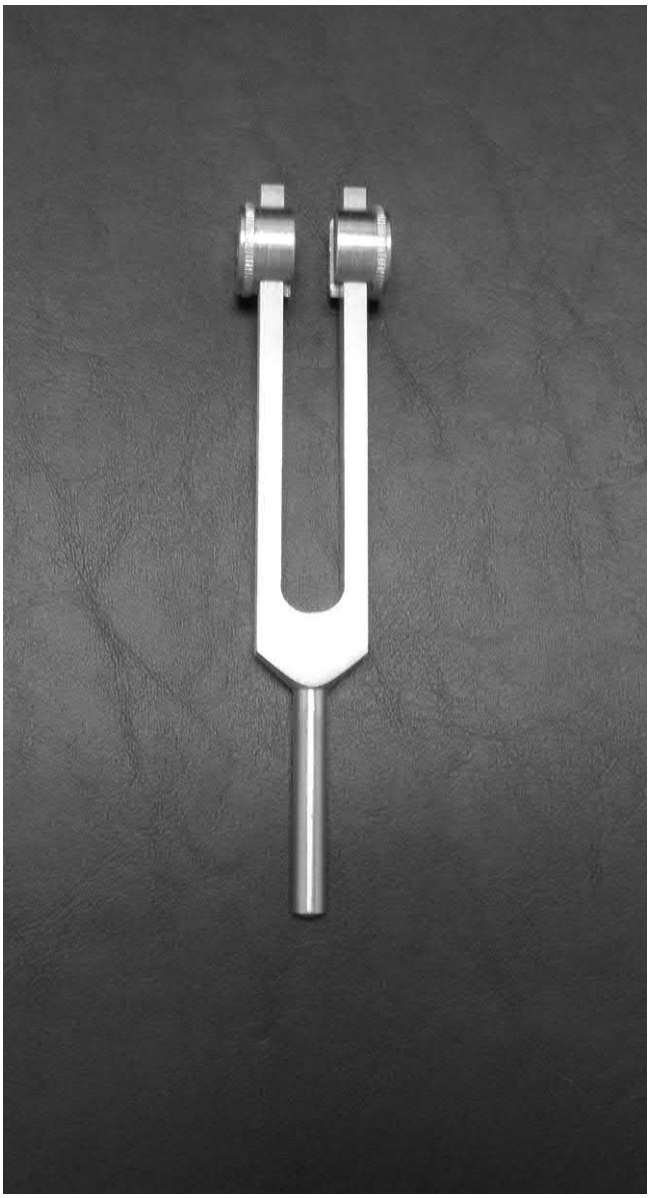


Fig. 18.6 Tuning fork for the assessment of neuropathy.

dorsiflexion in the second case. Chapter 5 provides an in-depth review of the gait assessment.

Many of the deformities that occur as a result of motor neuropathy are more subtle than the previous examples. As neuropathy advances, the intrinsic muscles atrophy and become weaker, leading to muscle imbalances and changes in joint alignment.[19,22] When tissues over these joints are then loaded, they are unable to withstand the same amount of pressure and begin to break down. As extensor muscles on the dorsum of the foot overpower flexor muscles of the plantar aspect, the net result is extension at the metatarsophalangeal joint, which increases pressure at the plantar aspect of the metatarsal head (MTH). This occurs with both claw and hammer toe deformities, the difference being that claw toes are characterized by flexion of both interphalangeal (IP) joints, whereas hammer toes have flexion at the proximal IP and extension at the distal IP joint. Care must also be taken to protect the distal tips of the toes, as well as the dorsum of the IP joints, because these areas are easily injured from rubbing on shoes. Persons with diabetes who have motor neuropathy may develop a high-risk foot, commonly referred to as an "intrinsic minus" foot because of the impairment in function of the small muscles of the foot. The intrinsic minus foot presents as a pes cavus (high arch) deformity with prominent MTHs. Compounding matters is the distal migration of the metatarsal fat pad into the toe sulcus as a result of muscle imbalance. Now the metatarsal region has increased pressure because of the foot shape, as well as the loss of fat pad over the MTH that would normally increase the total surface area being loaded.[23]

Partial foot amputation is another deformity that alters plantar pressure distribution. Because the surface area to carry the force of body weight is smaller, pressure on the remaining structures increases. Studies that have looked at great toe amputation in patients with diabetes have found an increase in plantar pressure and the development of new deformities and ulcerations after amputation.[24,25] As loss of parts of the foot occurs, the mechanics of the foot change, transferring stresses to new areas with the potential for ulceration.

Plantar ulceration has been associated with lower extremity peripheral neuropathy and excessive plantar pressures.[26] Pressure on the soft tissues of the foot is related to three variables: the magnitude of the force applied to the foot, the amount of surface over which the force is applied, and the length of time over which the force is sustained. Because much of the focus in treating and preventing foot ulcers is on reducing pressure, one must understand the relationship of pressure to these three variables. The following formula should be considered:

$$\text{Pressure} = \text{Force}/\text{Area}$$

As indicated, anything that increases the magnitude of the force applied to the foot or decreases the area over which the force is applied increases pressure and makes tissue damage more likely. Immediate injury can occur from extremely high force applied over a small area, as when a patient steps on a tack or piece of glass. Injury occurs because tremendously high pressure exceeds the tensile strength of the skin. Pressure on the foot can also become excessive when a moderate amount of force is repeatedly applied over a small surface area—when bony deformities cause small localized areas of weight bearing or when partial foot amputations decrease the patient's weight-bearing surface. The force applied to the foot (body weight) remains essentially the same, but the actual pressure on the tissues is greater because of reduction of the surface area. In patients with diabetes, factors such as limited joint mobility, structural abnormalities, and previous amputation[27] can lead to increased force or decreased surface area. All of these are associated with increased plantar pressures and ulceration.

Further complicating this picture is the time factor. In looking at tissue ischemia and resultant ulceration, Kosiak found an inverse relationship between the amount of pressure applied to tissues and length of time that the pressure was sustained.[28] Low pressures sustained over long periods of time caused tissue necrosis. This is the mechanism of tissue injury when decubitus ulceration occurs in bedridden, poorly mobile patients. Tissue necrosis also occurs along

the medial or lateral borders of the feet or tops of hammer toes when patients wear shoes that are too tight. Kosiak found that as the magnitude of pressure increased, fewer hours were necessary to induce injury.

The most common cause of skin breakdown in the neuropathic foot is repeated bouts of moderate pressure during everyday walking.[29] For health professionals who care for patients with diabetic foot problems, two facts from this research hold particular significance. First, when the inflammatory changes (heat and swelling) began to persist from 1 day to the next, breakdown of the tissue was prevented by discontinuing the repeated stress. Second, breakdown was prevented by either decreasing the amount of pressure per repetition or by reducing the number of repetitions.

AUTONOMIC ASSESSMENT

Autonomic changes represent the third category of changes associated with polyneuropathy.[30,31] With roles including the regulation of moisture and blood flow, as well as controlling hair and nail growth and overall skin integrity, the autonomic system is crucial to healthy feet. Cracks and fissures in the foot, as well as nail pathologies, can predispose people to ulceration or infection. Because these are all end products of autonomic dysfunction, patients need to be educated on how to prevent them from occurring. Patients with autonomic dysfunction, most commonly from diabetes, should be educated to moisturize their feet often so as to avoid drying and cracking of the skin. Creams or non–alcohol-based lotions should be applied liberally to the feet and legs, but the areas between the toes should be avoided because the excess moisture can lead to fungal infections. Not only is moisturized skin more comfortable, it is also stronger and less likely to develop cracks and fissures, which are easy entries for infections. If nails are too thick to be trimmed safely at home with regular nail clippers, the patient should be encouraged to seek professional help for nail care.

One of the most damaging outcomes related to dysfunction of the autonomic system is diabetic neuropathic osteoarthropathy, also known as Charcot foot. This destructive process can significantly alter the bony architecture of the foot and can lead to excessive plantar pressures[32] and subsequent ulceration if left unchecked (Fig. 18.7). This process was first recognized in patients with syphilis during the 19th century by Jean-Martin Charcot. Although several neuropathic diseases, including syphilis and Hansen disease, can cause a Charcot arthropathy, it is most commonly seen in persons with diabetes.[32] Charcot foot is a progressive disorder that leads to joint dislocation, fractures, and deformity of the foot.[33]

Charcot surmised that when the proper functioning of the autonomic system was impaired by disease, it led to an increase in blood flow to the bones, which then led to bone resorption. Over time, this became known as the neurovascular theory.[34] A second theory states that development of a Charcot foot is related to trauma in an insensate foot. Because of the lack of sensation, there is no perception of the trauma, and thus no adjustments to compensate for it. If the joint continues to be loaded, it will stay inflamed and eventually break down. This became the neurotraumatic theory.[35] Charcot foot is thought to be an inflammatory process.[36] The underlying cause is persistent hyperglycemia and microvascular disease, leading to nerve injury via osmotic changes and ischemia.[36] There is sensory neuropathy, loss of pain sensation, and the incidence of trauma including recurrent microtrauma. Upon clinical examination, the foot is erythematous and edematous, has an elevated skin temperature, and has reduced sensation to nociceptive pain and pressure.[37]

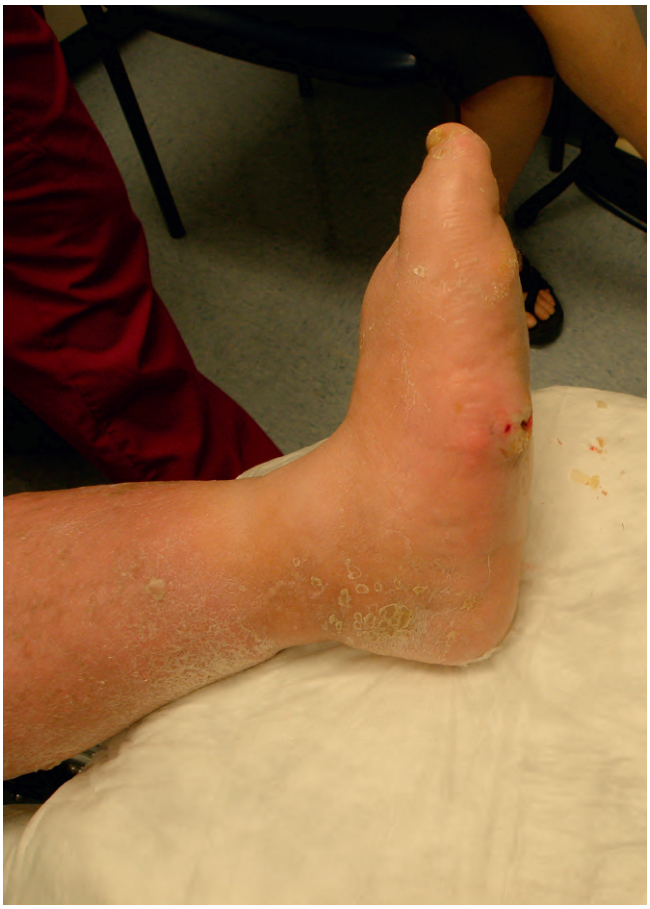


Fig. 18.7 Charcot foot with ulceration of the plantar midfoot.

Charcot foot can become debilitating if not recognized early enough to arrest the development of the rocker bottom deformity that is characteristic of the disease. It is often misdiagnosed because no single diagnostic test can confirm its presence. Medical history, clinical manifestations, and radiographic findings all must be considered. Unfortunately, the clinical presentation of a red, hot, swollen foot often leads to the diagnosis of cellulitis, which is treated with antibiotics. During the time the patient is being treated with antibiotics for an infection that does not exist, they are continuing to damage the foot by walking on it. Radiographs taken in the acute phase are not sensitive to the development of neuropathic fractures, and bone scans do not differentiate Charcot foot from osteomyelitis.[38] Magnetic resonance imaging, although a costly imaging techniques, is extremely useful for evaluating the foot and ankle in suspected Charcot neuropathy and is capable of identifying bone injury prior to complete fracture.[38]

Charcot foot should be suspected if a patient with neuropathy presents with sudden onset of localized swelling, warmth, and erythema in the absence of an open wound. Appropriate treatment for Charcot foot should be initiated until this condition is ruled out on further testing. During acute Charcot arthropathy, joint destruction can be minimized by immobilization in a TCC and avoidance of weight bearing until signs of healing become apparent (decreased temperature, decreased swelling, and improved radiographic findings). Both lack of compliance with non–weight bearing and use of orthotic devices in place of cast immobilization have shown prolonged healing times.[39] When cast immobilization is discontinued, the use of an orthotic device for continued protection of the joints during the initial return to weight bearing should be considered.[40]

The architectural changes that occur in the foot secondary to neuropathic osteoarthropathy result in high-pressure areas. Because of this, following the period of immobilization and limited weight bearing, patients with a history of Charcot foot must be provided with appropriate footwear to stabilize the foot and reduce plantar pressure. Surgical intervention may be indicated for unstable or severely malaligned fractures or dislocations, which create problems with recurrent ulceration, fitting of shoes, ability to ambulate, and recalcitrant ulcers.[41] Some of these procedures require months of immobilization and avoidance of weight bearing, which can be difficult for many patients with diabetes and neuropathy. Such surgery is usually advocated only if nonsurgical management fails.

FOOTWEAR ASSESSMENT

The analysis of the high-risk foot truly begins before the patient sits on the examination table. The type and appearance of the footwear they are wearing can give insight as to the cause of their pathology. Shoes that either do not fit properly or are excessively worn can cause problems, including blisters, calluses, and wounds. On the other hand, shoes that someone refuses to wear are not useful as they will just sit in the closet.

Characteristics of the proper shoe for the high-risk foot include:

- Snug fit at the heel to prevent pistoning (moving up and down) of the heel
- Wide toe box to accommodate for deformities such as bunions and hallux valgus
- Deep toe box to accommodate claw/hammer toes and molded inserts
- Fashionable enough that the patient will wear the shoes

It is recommended that people shop for new shoes in the mid to late afternoon to ensure the best fit. Because foot size changes throughout the day, a shoe purchased to fit the foot early in the morning may be too small by late evening, and conversely a shoe bought at night may be too large for the foot in the morning.

GAIT AND BALANCE

Motor neuropathy causes weakness of foot and ankle musculature that may result in gait deviations that change plantar pressure patterns or contribute to instability. Gait and balance are also affected by damage to sensory nerves, which leads to an inability to sense where the foot is in space. The use of ankle-foot orthoses or shoe modifications may help restore a more normal gait, stabilize joints, or improve balance.[40] Studies have found that patients with peripheral neuropathy secondary to diabetes have problems with gait and postural stability.[42,43] In examining a patient with a high-risk foot, physical therapists must include not only the patients' foot problems but also their overall functional status. To reduce the morbidity associated with falls, recommendations that address safety and function should be included in the treatment plan.[44]

Wound Assessment

Although it is clear that the most effective way to prevent amputations is to avoid getting wounds in the first place, that is not always possible. When a wound does develop, regardless of the etiology, a thorough wound assessment becomes a necessity. The comprehensive wound assessment begins with a thorough patient history, which helps the clinician not only gain a better understanding of the cause of the wound, but also forecast healing rates of the wound more accurately. It is often helpful to take the entire patient history prior to undressing the wound, because there is a tendency to focus solely on the wound once it is visible and forget about other factors that may be important.

Once the patient history is reviewed, the wound can be carefully undressed. In addition to the components already discussed for the evaluation of the high-risk foot, the assessment also includes an examination of the immediate wound and periwound area. The wound should be assessed for location, color, odor, size/depth, and drainage type and amount, and the periwound tissues should be assessed for any abnormalities (Fig. 18.8).

LOCATION

After a thorough medical history has been taken, the examiner may have a good hypothesis as to the cause of a wound before even seeing it. The objective examination can either confirm or refute this hypothesis. One of the first objective findings that should be documented is wound location. Although traumatic wounds can occur in any anatomic location, many of the common wound etiologies tend to occur most frequently in certain areas. Diabetic foot (neuropathic) ulcers are most common on the plantar aspect of the digits and MTHs, more specifically, the great toe and first MTH, but they can occur in any area of high stress.[26] Ulceration secondary to neuropathy is also common on the dorsum of the toes, as well as bony prominences, such as the lateral aspect of the first and fifth MTHs and the base of the fifth metatarsal, and anywhere a shoe or brace may be rubbing. Wounds secondary to vascular insufficiency can occur in any location that has impaired blood flow but are most frequently found on the toes, dorsum, and lateral aspects of the foot, as well as the lateral leg. In contrast, wounds of venous origin tend to be in what is often referred to as the "gaiter" area, just proximal to the medial malleolus. It should be noted that these are general guidelines, and an accurate diagnosis cannot be made based solely on location. When describing wound location, the clinician should be as precise as possible, often using bony landmarks as

descriptors. This becomes increasingly important when multiple wounds are present.

WOUND COLOR

A simple designation for wound color is to use the red-yellow-black staging system, which was first published in the United States in 1988 and had been used in Europe prior to that.[45] Red wounds are generally healthy, well vascularized, and progressing through the normal stages of healing. The red appearance is attributed to the deposition of highly vascularized collagen, known as granulation tissue. This tissue is fragile and may bleed with excessive force or friction. Granulation tissue that bleeds with minimal pressure or has a dusky appearance is called *friable* and should be investigated further as it is typically a sign of increased bacteria present in the wound. Yellow wounds indicate fibrinous slough or infection is present. Slough has a stringy, adherent characteristic and can be removed by a variety of methods, which are discussed later in this chapter (Preparing the Wound Bed by Eliminating the Source of Inflammation or Infection). Wounds also may have a black appearance,

Subjective exam:

Pain: Last dressing change:

Comments:

Objective exam:

Mode of arrival:

Assistive device:

Wearing prescribed dressings/footwear?

Wound location:

If other, enter location:

Wound stage:

Wound color:

Color	Pre-débridement	Post-débridement
	%	%
	%	%
	%	%

Edema:

Sensation:

Pulses: (L) (R)

DP		
PT		
Popliteal		
ABI		

Range of motion:

Special Tests: Results:

Odor:

Size: cm^2

L: W: D:

Drainage amount:

Drainage type:

Periwound:

Nails:

Fig. 18.8 Wound assessment flow sheet.

Continued

Comments:

Treatment:

Wound cleansed with

Débridement performed today? Débridement type:

Modalities:

Dressings: Offloading:

Comments:

Assessment:

Tolerance to treatment:

Comments:

Plan:

Comments:

Follow up:

Nails:

Edema:

Sensation:

Pulses: (L) (R)

DP		
PT		
Popliteal		
ABI		

Range of motion:

Special Tests: Results:

Fig. 18.8—cont'd

which signifies the presence of eschar. Eschar is often hard to the touch but can be soft or boggy if there is a lot of fluid present. In most cases, it is beneficial to remove the eschar because the necrotic tissue promotes the proliferation of bacteria. Several instances when this is not advised are intact eschar on heels and vascular wounds that would not be able to heal following débridement. In addition to the red-yellow-black system that is focused on the dermis, the clinician must also be aware of deeper structures that may be apparent in the wound bed. The first tissue encountered beneath the dermis is known as subcutaneous tissue, fat, or adipose. This should have a pale yellow, moist appearance when healthy but dries out and darkens when it is nonviable. Healthy muscle has a bright red color, and the striations are often visible in the tissue. Damaged muscle takes on a dusky gray appearance with a much-less-pliable texture. The remaining structures that will be encountered in a deep wound bed—ligaments, tendons, bone—all should be white if well vascularized. If these tissues are compromised, they will take on a dusky yellow appearance and continue to darken as damage proceeds.

For documentation purposes, the use of percentages is helpful in describing the wound color. For example, a wound could be 80% red, with 20% firmly adhered yellow fibrin. It is also suggested that the percentage should be documented before and after treatment if there is any significant change in the wound appearance. The use of clinical pathways and other intervention strategies such as dedicated foot clinics in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with diabetes at risk for foot ulceration can improve patient outcomes by reducing the need for lower extremity amputation.[46]

ODOR

One of the most troubling aspects of a wound from a patient's perspective is odor. Most significant wounds will have some odor when dressings are removed. As a clinician, it is important to know whether or not the odor is caused by infection or simply from the dressing having been in place for an extended period. Before making this determination, dressings should be removed and the wound should be rinsed with sterile water or saline. Odors that are eradicated are likely caused by drainage on the dressings. This is especially true of occlusive dressings, such as hydrocolloids. If cleansing the wound does not eliminate the odor, it is more likely caused by necrotic or infected tissue. Wounds with a strong odor often contain anaerobic and aerobic bacteria and are referred to as *polymicrobial*; anaerobic bacteria create odor by releasing compounds including putrescine and cadaverine. These odors can be extremely strong and are often described as acrid smelling. Aerobic bacteria also are capable of producing foul odors. Because the strength of an odor is subjective, it is recommended that descriptions such as sweet, fishy, necrotic, putrid, and the like also be included in the assessment of the odor. Infection should be considered when previously odor-free wounds develop an odor, but it should also be pointed out that some infections do not produce any odor at all.

SIZE

Wound size should be documented on a routine basis because it is an easy way to monitor progress in wound healing. For most wounds, unless they are perfectly symmetric, a diameter or even length and width may not give an accurate representation as to the true size of the wound. When length and width are used, the largest length is recorded, and the width is recorded perpendicular to the length. Although improvements can be seen as these numbers decrease, it is difficult to accurately calculate a total surface area for the wound or a percent area reduction because wounds are irregularly shaped. Alternative methods include photography with a transparent film over the wound, wound tracings with transparent film, and digital cameras that can calculate the surface area of the wound. Newer technologies using smartphone applications for wound imaging and measurement are being developed. All of these options enable the clinician to calculate surface area and percent reduction in size.

Regardless of the method used to calculate wound size, the orientation of the wound should be standardized to ensure that subsequent measurements are assessing the same dimension. Bony landmarks can be used for this purpose, but it is most common to describe length in a cephalocaudal (head-to-toe) fashion and width perpendicular to that. Unfortunately, the largest dimensions of most wounds will not line up perfectly with axes along the cephalocaudal and perpendicular plane. For this reason, many clinicians describe wound orientation using a clock face, with 12 o'clock being at the head and 6 o'clock at the feet. Using this system, a wound could be described as 6 cm in length from 10 o'clock to 4 o'clock and 3 cm in width from 1 o'clock to 7 o'clock. Undermining, tunneling, or any other abnormality in the wound can also be described using the clock face, which will help with consistency in measurement, especially if another clinician is measuring the wound.

DEPTH

A thorough understanding of anatomy is necessary for an accurate staging of wounds. In turn, an accurate staging of wounds relies on being able to assess wound depth properly. Before depth can be measured, the wound must be free of nonviable tissue so the wound base can be visualized or probed. The wound can then be probed with a sterile probe held perpendicular to the skin surface. Because wounds do not all have a uniform depth throughout, the deepest point should be measured and the location where the measurement was taken should be documented. After the depth measurement is obtained, wounds can be classified in several ways, depending on the etiology. Table 18.1 reviews different wound classification systems that rely on wound depth as a part of the staging criteria.[47–50] The revised pressure injury classification system by the National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel includes illustrations that clarify proper staging of pressure injuries.

DRAINAGE

The ideal wound will have enough moisture to prevent desiccation of the wound bed, but not so much that it causes breakdown of periwound tissues. The characteristics of wound drainage will vary depending on multiple factors, including wound location, vascular status, and presence of infection. Drainage should be classified by amount and type to accurately describe what is occurring in the wound. Assessing the amount of drainage is somewhat subjective in that it is not practical, or even possible in many cases, to weigh the amount of exudate from the wound. Instead, the clinician describes the amount of exudate along a continuum, such as the following one:

None → Scant → Minimal → Moderate → Heavy → Copious

This can be difficult to quantify, especially for the inexperienced clinician, because different dressings will absorb vastly different amounts of fluid and thus could make a heavily draining wound appear drier, or vice versa. Wounds with underlying arterial insufficiency tend to be drier because less circulation is getting to the wound bed, whereas patients with wounds that are venous in nature often experience heavy drainage because of the edema present. When the amount of exudate increases and a reason is

Table 18.1 Wound Classification Systems

Classification System	Intended Wound Etiologies	Grades	Comments
Wagner[47]	Diabetic foot	0 = Intact skin 1 = Superficial ulcer 2 = Deep ulcer (through dermis) 3 = Infection 4 = Partial foot gangrene 5 = Full foot gangrene	
University of Texas[48]	Diabetic foot	A0 = Preulcerative or postulcerative lesion AI = Superficial wound AII = Involves tendon or capsule AIII = Involves bone or joint	Letter stage changes as follows: B = Infection C = Ischemia D = Infection and ischemia
Partial/full	All wounds	Partial = Involves epidermis and up to part of the dermis Full = Involves structures deep to the dermis	
Burns[49]	Burns	Superficial = Epidermis only Superficial partial = Superficial dermis involved Deep partial = Deep dermis involved Full thickness = Subcutaneous tissue involved Subdermal = Muscle, tendon, bone involved	Some experts do not make a distinction between full-thickness and subdermal burns, because both require surgery to heal[130]
National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel[50]	Pressure injury stages	1. = Blanchable erythema or Nonblanchable erythema; skin is intact 2. = Partial-thickness skin loss with exposed dermis 3. = Full-thickness skin loss 4 = Full-thickness skin and tissue loss to subfascial tissues (muscle, tendon, ligament, capsule, bone) Unstageable full-thickness pressure injury: Obscured full-thickness skin and tissue loss and slough.	When teaching about the unstageable pressure injury, explain it is termed "unstageable" because the wound base cannot be visualized, not because the clinician cannot determine the stage of injury.

not clearly stated that relates to the change, such as changes in treatment approach (i.e., surgical intervention to increase blood flow, discontinuation of compression therapy, or resting in dependent positions), then infection should be considered as a likely cause. The presence of infection causes the wound to remain in the inflammatory phase of wound healing, which results in increased drainage. Infected wounds often exhibit purulent drainage, which can be yellow, green, tan, or even creamy or cloudy. These wounds often require a combination of local and systemic agents to treat the infection. In addition to purulent drainage, drainage can also be serous (watery), sanguineous (bloody), or serosanguineous (pink or reddish, watery).

PERIWOUND SKIN

The area immediately surrounding a wound, known as the *periwound skin*, should be assessed carefully because it can give clues as to the state of the wound. Evidence of excessive pressure, excess moisture, decreased vascularity, and the presence of infection can all be found in the periwound skin with a quick visual inspection and palpation. Table 18.2 lists periwound findings and their significance.

In addition to the factors listed in Table 18.2, the amount of soft tissue over prominent areas also can be assessed. Decreased amounts of soft-tissue bulk have been identified in persons with diabetic neuropathy in comparison with persons without diabetes used as controls.[51] With less soft tissue present, peak pressures at the prominent areas are increased, which increases the likelihood of ulceration.

Wound Management

The larger concept of wound bed preparation and wound healing involves understanding the source of the wound and addressing the patient in a wholistic manner.[52,53] The acronym "TIME"[54] is used to highlight key factors that must be addressed:

T = Tissue management
I = Inflammation and infection control
M = Moisture Balance
E = Epithelial (edge) advancement

Successful wound healing interventions can be categorized into a few essential steps, which are discussed in detail. These overlapping steps include:

1. Preparing the wound bed by eliminating the source of inflammation or infection;
2. Providing an optimal wound healing environment;
3. Reducing further trauma to the wound; and, finally,
4. Keeping the wound healed once it has closed and preventing new ulcers from forming.

Table 18.2 Periwound Skin Assessment

Appearance	Description	Significance
Callus	Area of hyperkeratosis, typically in response to high pressures[54,110,111]	Frequently associated with neuropathy and/or bony deformity. Indicates area susceptible to breakdown[110]
Blister	Fluid-filled area causing separation of epidermis from dermis	Shearing forces from rubbing on shoes, brace, bed, etc.; may also be caused by adhesive dressings on skin
Erythema	Redness	Indicates inflammation caused by local stress or infection; redness in immediate periwound area is normal in acute wounds, but excessive redness or redness that persists for 30 to 60 min after the stress is removed requires intervention; erythema associated with infection is often well demarcated; if red streaks are noted (lymphangitis), consult physician because it is a sign of spreading infection
Maceration	Changes in tissue caused by excessive moisture	Can lead to skin breakdown; may be a result of excessive sweating, heavy wound drainage, incontinence, or inappropriate dressings
Induration	Hardening of the tissue because of edema	Chronic edema impairs wound healing; induration is often associated with infection or venous disease
Hemosiderin	Brownish discoloration of the skin around a wound. Associated with deposition of hemoglobin in extravascular tissues	Often associated with venous disease
Excoriation	Wearing away of the skin	Indicates an area of trauma; often preceded by maceration and/or blistering
Presence of scars	A scar is the final result of a previous injury	May give clues to the chronicity of the problem as well as the extent of damage in the area
Temperature	Can be palpated or assessed with infrared thermometer; is typically compared with adjacent areas or to contralateral side	Nonspecific indicator of inflammation; helpful to monitor "hot spots" that may be at risk of breakdown, or for resolution of a Charcot fracture
Edema	Swelling in the tissues	Bilateral edema suggests a systemic problem; unilateral edema indicates a localized problem; can occur with infection, inflammation, venous dysfunction, and lymphedema; consider Charcot foot if insensate
Other changes	Taut, shiny, hairless, cracked skin	Taut, shiny skin with a loss of hair indicates impaired blood flow; cracked skin is associated with aging, diabetes, or vascular disease. Important to moisturize skin frequently

PREPARING THE WOUND BED BY ELIMINATING THE SOURCE OF INFLAMMATION OR INFECTION

The current model of infections that is most widely used involves the interaction between the host response and the amount of bacteria present in the wound. As outlined by this model, a patient with a healthy immune response is able to tolerate a higher bacterial load without developing signs of infection than a patient with an impaired immune response. The amount of bacteria in a wound is usually described on a continuum from sterile to a systemic infection. Sterile wounds have no bacteria, whereas systemic infections have overwhelmed the wound with bacteria and cause systemic immune responses. Intermediate stages include contaminated wounds, characterized by bacteria that is present but not invading the tissue; colonized wounds which are still capable of healing despite invading bacteria; and critical colonization in which the bacteria are overwhelming the immune system and are creating a localized response.[54–56] It is in the colonized and critically colonized wounds, and in infected wounds in conjunction with systemic medications, that selective débridement, modalities, and topical dressings are most helpful in optimizing the wound environment.

A very effective means of reducing inflammation and the risk of infection is removal of the tissue that may harbor bacteria, through a process known as *débridement*. There are many ways that débridement can be performed, and all of them are within the scope of practice of the physical therapist except for surgical débridement. Because surgical débridement may involve the excision of viable and nonviable tissue to ensure that all of the necrotic or infected tissue is removed from the area, it is called *nonselective débridement*. Slightly less aggressive is sharp débridement. Sharp and surgical débridement both use sterile sharp instruments to remove tissue, but the tissue that is being débrided is limited to nonviable tissue in sharp débridement. For this reason, sharp débridement is referred to as *selective débridement*. Despite being widely accepted, or perhaps because it is so widely accepted as a standard of care, there is limited evidence on the effectiveness of sharp or surgical débridement. Débridement with sharp instruments is the quickest way to remove undesirable tissue, but is also the riskiest method and is best used by the experienced clinician. Risks can be minimized by using the appropriate equipment and assessing the patient thoroughly to ensure that they do not have any of the contraindications/precautions listed in Box 18.1.

Box 18.1 Contraindications and Precautions to Sharp and Surgical Débridement

Medically unstable patient (surgical only)[112]
Dry gangrene or lack of vascular supply to heal wound[112]
Intact, dry eschar on heel[113]
Impaired clotting mechanism or on anticoagulants[53]
Pyoderma gangrenosum[113]
Clinician without a thorough knowledge of anatomy of the area to be débrided

In addition to sharp and surgical débridement, mechanical, acoustic, enzymatic, larval, and autolytic forms of débridement are also viable options. Of these, all are classified as selective with the exception of mechanical débridement. Mechanical débridement can be performed using a variety of methods, including abrasion, wet-to-dry dressings, and whirlpool. All of these methods may remove nonviable tissue but can be detrimental to healthy tissue and, if used at all, should be limited to cases in which the majority of the wound is nonviable.

Historically, whirlpools were frequently included in the treatment plan for an individual with a wound. Proposed benefits were increasing blood flow to the area because of the warm water, as well as the ability to remove dressings and necrotic tissue. The whirlpool also has many shortcomings as a wound care modality, including the risk of cross-contamination, unregulated pressures on the wound, exacerbation of dependent edema, and excessive maceration. As a result, pulsatile lavage with suction (PLWS) has largely replaced the whirlpool as the hydrotherapy of choice for wound management. There are no absolute contraindications to the use of PLWS, but care must be taken around exposed vessels, vital organs, and fistulas. Precautions must also be taken to reduce the risk of cross-contamination, including using personal protective equipment, treating in a private room, using a shield to prevent backsplash, and disposing of single-use components properly.

PLWS delivers a stream of irrigating solution (irrigant) such as saline or saline with antibiotic. The irrigant solution that can be directed at the area of interest to débride slough and reduce bacterial counts on the wound.[57] It appears that the effectiveness of lavage improves as the amount of irrigant used to flush out bacteria is increased.[58] With PLWS, the water pressure can be controlled and can be delivered within the safe range of 4 to 15 psi, which is effective at removing nonviable tissue and bacteria without traumatizing healthy tissue.[58] For the purposes of reducing bacterial levels, the higher end of that range is recommended, because nearly 85% of bacteria can be removed from a wound with 15 psi. Acoustic, or ultrasonic, energy is the newest form of débridement to enter the wound care arena.[59] Currently, there are several ultrasonic débridement devices on the market that are capable of performing selective débridement. These devices are classified as low frequency (kilohertz range, as opposed to megahertz with conventional ultrasound) and high-intensity ultrasound devices. Studies have demonstrated effectiveness of these devices at increasing fibrinolysis, improving blood flow to the wound, and reducing bacterial counts, and anecdotally it seems to be faster than sharp débridement in many cases.[60–62] Although capable of producing extremely rapid débridement and a reduction in bacteria, the use of ultrasonic débridement will likely be cost-prohibitive for clinics that do not specialize in wound healing. For that reason an in-depth discussion of ultrasonic débridement is not included in this chapter.

The remaining forms of débridement tend to be slower but are less harmful to healthy tissue. Larval therapy[63] involves the use of sterile maggots, which secrete enzymes to liquefy necrotic tissue but have no negative effect on granulation tissue. Similarly, enzymatic débridement involves the application of topical agent to the wound surface. The enzyme works to denature the protein in the necrotic tissue on the wound bed.[64] Autolytic débridement uses the body's own self-produced enzymes to rid a wound slowly of necrotic tissue.[64] In a moist wound, phagocytic cells and proteolytic enzymes can soften and liquefy the necrotic tissue, which is then digested by macrophages. These débridement strategies should not necessarily be thought of as independent of each other. For example, sharp débridement is often done in conjunction with enzymatic or autolytic débridement. All of the forms of débridement serve to reduce the risk of infection by removing the energy source for the bacteria. There also are interventions that specifically target the bacteria rather than the necrotic tissue.

Over the past decade or so, the number of dressings that have been developed to reduce bacteria in the wound has increased dramatically. These include a variety of dressings that contain silver, methylene blue, gentian violet, polyhexamethylene biguanide, iodine, or honey. These dressings have been shown to be superior to nonantimicrobial dressings in the reduction of bacteria, but there is insufficient evidence to state one antimicrobial dressing is superior to another in terms of promoting wound healing.[65,66] These dressings are available in so many varieties, ranging in absorptive capacity, adhesive versus nonadhesive, amorphous versus sheet form, and the like, that there is likely a good option for nearly any wound type. What is most important to remember is that none of these dressings should be used as a replacement for systemic antibiotics.

It is common to use topical antimicrobial dressings along with systemic medications, especially in the case of arterial insufficiency. For example, a patient with a diabetic foot ulcer may have an infected toe with poor vascularity. In this case the amount of the systemic antibiotic getting to the infected area may be limited and could benefit from a topical agent to reduce the degree of surface bacteria. There are several problems with the continued use of antimicrobial dressings, namely cost and the concern over developing resistance. Because they are impregnated with antimicrobial agents, these dressings are more expensive than a comparable nonantimicrobial dressing and are not intended to be used for the duration of wound healing. Likewise, there is some concern in the wound care community that overuse of silver dressings may lead to the development of resistant strains of bacteria, similar to what happened with the widespread use of antibiotics.

In addition to antimicrobial dressings and the interventions already discussed, two therapeutic modalities that

have strong evidence supporting their use in the management of infections are electrical stimulation[67] and ultraviolet light, also referred to as phototherapy.[68] Phototherapy includes the use of ultraviolet light, as well as laser light. Electrical stimulation units and ultraviolet light equipment are likely to be found in most physical therapy clinics because these modalities have been standard equipment in physical therapy clinics. Electrical stimulation for wound healing can be delivered either as a direct or pulsed current: Direct current allows the current to flow constantly in one direction. Pulsed current is separated by a period of no current flow. There are two types of pulsed current—monophasic and biphasic. In both types of pulsed current the electric current is delivered in short bursts; however, in monophasic the current flows in one direction, whereas in biphasic the current is bidirectional. The most common waveforms for electrical stimulation in wound healing are high-voltage pulsed current and low-intensity direct current (or microcurrent). Both of these currents are monophasic, (current will flow only in one direction). As a result of this, charged particles will be drawn toward the oppositely charged electrode and repelled from the like-charge electrode, just as a positive pole and negative pole on a magnet will stick together and two positives will push each other apart. This concept is known as *galvanotaxis* and is the basis for the use of electrical stimulation in tissue healing. When the goal is to treat an infection, the negative pole (cathode) should be used at the wound site and the positive pole (anode) can be placed approximately 15 to 30 cm away. By applying cathodal stimulation to the wound, activated neutrophils are recruited which can attack the bacteria that is present.[67,69] The treatment electrode may be placed on the immediate periwound skin or directly in the wound. If stimulation is applied directly to the wound, the wound must be filled with hydrogel or saline-moistened gauze. Treatment is usually continued until signs of infection are no longer present or until progress halts, at which time polarity is reversed to jump start healing.

Ultraviolet C light is another modality used for the treatment of pressure ulcer wounds. Ultraviolet therapy is effective in reducing microorganisms in colonized wounds and promoting granular tissue formation, reepithelialization, and sloughing off necrotic tissue. Studies show the use ultraviolet phototherapy has a shorter mean time to complete wound healing when compared with a control group.[70,71] Low laser light therapy is also used for the treatment of wounds.[72,73] However, the results of the use of low laser light therapy to promote wound healing have been variable with low or no efficacy.[73]

PROVIDING AN OPTIMAL WOUND-HEALING ENVIRONMENT

As mentioned previously, it is somewhat of an artificial delineation to break wound healing down into different steps because there is so much overlap. Early in the wound-healing process the primary goal may be removal of nonviable tissue, as mentioned in the previous section, but selective débridement would be of no use if concurrent steps were not taken to optimize the wound-healing environment. Once bacteria in the wound are controlled and an adequate arterial supply is ensured, the focus of therapy can shift to moist wound healing. Moist wound healing includes the use of dressings and, in some cases, compression therapy to create a wound bed that is neither too wet (macerated) or too dry (desiccated) to be suitable to wound healing. An analogy to a beach is commonly used to help explain this concept, in which the optimal wound environment is the wet sand and suboptimal environments are underwater or on dry land.

To create a moist wound bed, the clinician must have a good understanding of the wound etiology and a familiarity with the available wound care dressings. Certain wounds, such as those associated with infection, venous insufficiency, and lymphedema, tend to drain heavily and require absorbent dressings, whereas wounds without an adequate blood supply tend to be dry and often require the addition of moisture. With the appropriate use of cleansing agents, protection of the periwound skin, and selection of suitable dressings, wound healing can be positively influenced. Educating a patient about appropriate cleansing agents is particularly important if a patient will be cleansing the wound at home. The patient should be educated not to scrub the wound and to avoid the use of harsh chemicals such as bleach, iodine, hydrogen peroxide, alcohol, or surgical scrub brushes for daily cleansing, unless specifically prescribed for the management of a heavily colonized wound. Although some of these chemicals can be extremely effective at controlling bacteria, they are all cytotoxic and can impede wound healing. The general rule of thumb "if you wouldn't put it in your eye, don't put it on your wound" works well. For healthy granulating wounds, normal saline or sterile water are effective for mild cleansing and the removal of small particles of adhered dressing that may be present. Some wounds have bacteria that are adhered to the surface forming a matrix known as a biofilm. In these cases a noncytotoxic wound surfactant is a better option.

Once the wound is clean, consideration can shift to the periwound area. This skin is vulnerable to injury from adhesive dressings or excess wound drainage, but damage can be limited or prevented with the use of a skin protectant. There are literally hundreds of dressings on the market, making it impractical, if not impossible, to keep up with all of them. By having a general understanding of each class of dressings, the clinician should be able to choose a dressing that is not only safe but effective in the management of the wound at hand. Table 18.3 outlines the characteristics of some of the most commonly used classifications of dressings.

No single dressing is intended to treat a wound through all phases of wound healing, nor is each patient with the same diagnosis going to respond the same. It is important to reassess the characteristics of the wound at each patient visit to ensure that the dressing being used remains the best option. Factors such as ease of use, whether or not the patient can change the dressing independently, how often it will need changing, the degree of discomfort associated with dressing changes, and cost need to be considered. For example, a hydrocolloid is easy to apply but would not be cost-effective for a wound that needs to be changed twice per day, and a transparent film may be inexpensive and easy to use but inappropriate for an individual with poor periwound skin integrity.

Acute wounds in an otherwise healthy individual may heal without difficulty if appropriate dressings are used.

Table 18.3 Common Wound Care Dressings

Indication	Dressing Type	Contraindications	Comments
Absorption	Alginate	Excessively dry wounds Full-thickness burns	Secondary dressing required
	Hydrofiber	None	Secondary dressing required
	Foam	Excessively dry wounds	Adhesive and nonadhesive varieties Absorptive capacity varies between brands
Active bleeding	Alginate	Excessively dry wounds Full-thickness burns	Secondary dressing required
	Silver nitrate	Skin hypersensitivity	Effective on hypergranulation
Add moisture	Hydrogels	Moderate to heavy exudate	Gel or sheet forms
Maintain moisture	Hydrocolloids	Local or systemic infection Caution with fragile periwound skin	May increase wound odor at dressing removal
	Transparent films	Cavity wounds Tracts, tunnels, undermining Infection Excessive exudates	May decrease need for unnecessary dressing changes because wound can be visualized
Fragile skin	Silicone	None	Reduces scarring May be used to prevent an absorbent secondary dressing from adhering
Antimicrobial	Silver	Avoid use with enzymatic débriders	Most dressing classifications have a silver version
	Honey	None	Requires secondary dressing
	Polyhexamethylene biguanide	Avoid gauze-based dressing over exposed nerves, vessels, and tendons	Important to keep gauze moist to avoid adhering to wound bed
	Methylene blue/ gentian violet	Full-thickness burns	Requires premoistening with sterile water or saline Requires secondary dressing
	Cadexomer iodine	Iodine sensitivity Hashimoto thyroiditis Nontoxic nodular goiter Graves disease Pregnant or lactating women	Sheet and gel forms available Requires secondary dressing
Débridement	Hydrocolloid	Local or systemic infection Caution with fragile periwound skin	May increase wound odor at dressing removal
	Transparent film	Cavity wounds Tracts, tunnels, undermining Infection Excessive exudates	No absorptive capacity
	Collagenase	Hypersensitivity to collagenase Do not use with silvers	Requires daily application Requires secondary dressing
	Gauze	Directly on healthy granulation tissue Exposed nerves, vessels, tendons	Wet-to-dry dressing is not recommended; if used, it should be restricted to necrotic wounds Effective as a secondary dressing

In chronic wounds or patients with impaired wound healing potential, the use of certain modalities can be used to stimulate wound healing. Electrical stimulation, pneumatic compression, negative-pressure wound therapy, ultrasound, and laser have all been shown to be effective in the management of wounds. It is beyond the scope of this chapter to go into an in-depth discussion of each of these modalities.

REDUCING FURTHER TRAUMA TO THE WOUND

Regardless of the advanced wound care dressing used, wounds will not heal unless the wound can be protected from further trauma. In most cases, trauma comes in the form of weight-bearing forces. In a bed-bound individual, dynamic air mattresses and air-fluidized beds are used to disperse forces, which in turn, reduce the amount of pressure at the wound site and allow it to heal. For persons who are more active, offloading can be even more of a challenge because there is a balance that needs to be met between maintaining function and providing pressure relief to the wound. Take the case of an individual with drop foot whose ankle-foot orthosis is causing a wound on the plantar aspect of the fifth MTH. The patient needs to continue to wear the orthosis in order to walk, but if the patient does so, the wound will continue to deteriorate. The challenge for

the clinician is to offload the foot so that the wound can heal as quickly as possible, enabling the patient to return to the patient's normal activities.

Many of the advances in pressure reduction strategies for the foot have come about because of diabetes. As a result of the neuropathic and arterial changes discussed previously, many of these individuals will develop foot ulcers that will require offloading. Many of these wounds would respond well to several weeks of complete bed rest because all weight-bearing forces would be eliminated from the bottom of the foot. This is not practical for most patients and even if it were a possibility, it is not without risk (i.e., blood clots, deconditioning, and pressure ulcers). Maintaining non–weight bearing at home is also a major challenge for most patients. When a patient sustains an orthopedic fracture to the foot, pain serves as negative feedback and prevents the person from weight bearing. In the presence of neuropathy, the sensation of pain is diminished so the deterrent from putting the foot on the floor is absent. Although non–weight bearing or partial weight bearing is encouraged through the use of an assistive device, it is prudent to assume the device will not be used all the time and to protect the foot as if you intend weight bearing to occur.

Total Contact Casting

The gold standard for offloading the neuropathic foot has traditionally been the TCC (Fig. 18.9). Initially used in the management of Hansen disease (formerly leprosy), the TCC was first brought to the United States by Dr. Paul Brand.[74] Using the simple equation, pressure = force/area, it is evident that pressure can be reduced by reducing the amount of weight (force) going through the wound and by increasing the total area that the patient's weight is spread over. The TCC has intimate contact with the entire plantar aspect of the foot, with the exception of the wound location. This serves to increase the weight-bearing surface area and reduce the force through the wound. In addition, immobilization of the ankle in neutral prevents dorsiflexion and weight transfer toward the front of the foot during the late stance phases of gait. The TCC reduces vertical and shear forces acting on the foot.

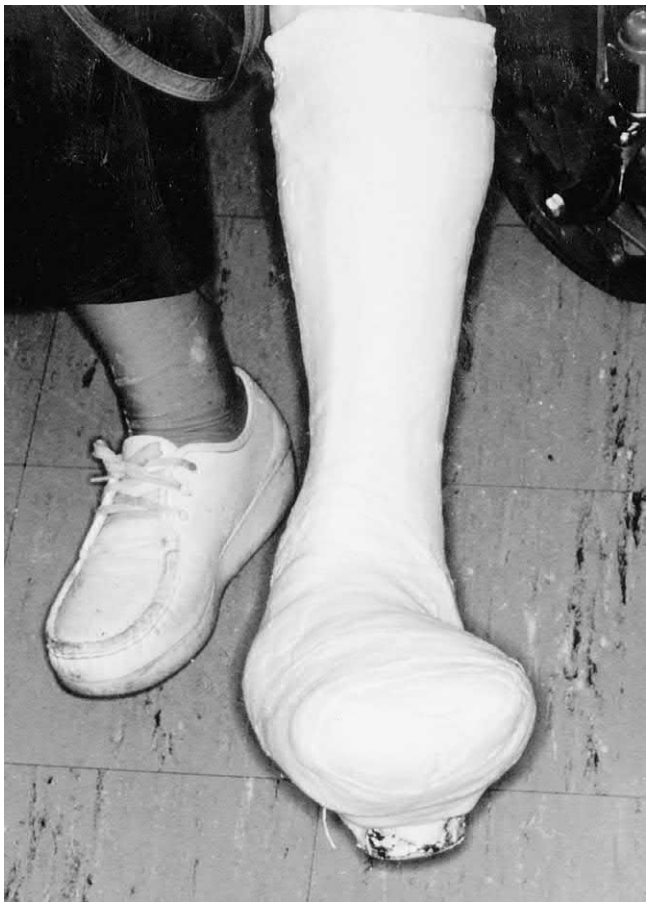


Fig. 18.9 Total contact cast.

Numerous studies report favorable results in healing diabetic foot ulcers with the use of the TCC.[74–78] Three randomized control studies found that TCC for patients with neuropathic foot ulcers had 90% healing and healed in a shorter time span compared with patients who did not have total contact casting but had other offloading strategies such as non–weight-bearing status, use of walker aid, and/or use of removable air cast.[79–81] The traditional TCC was made of plaster material, which required the patient to be non–weight bearing for at least 24 hours. Many clinics currently do a combination of plaster and fiberglass or all fiberglass casts to allow patients to return to weight bearing more quickly. The initial TCC also had contact with the entire foot, including the wound. Since that time, a modified approach in which the wound site is isolated has been shown to reduce pressure significantly more than the true "total contact" method.[82]

Although it has demonstrated superiority in offloading, the TCC is not appropriate for all cases. It should not be used in cases of excessive drainage, vascular insufficiency, infection, or fluctuating edema and for wounds that are deeper than they are wide. Because the condition of the foot cannot be monitored while it is enclosed in a cast, the patient must be able to recognize the warning signs indicating the need to have the cast changed. These signs include excessive swelling of the leg that causes the cast to become too tight, loosening of the cast that allows the foot and leg to move within the cast, a sudden increase in body temperature or of blood glucose level that might indicate infection, staining and drainage through the cast, excessive odor from the cast, new complaints of pain, and damage to the cast.

Removable Cast Walkers

Despite being the gold standard for offloading the neuropathic foot, the TCC is not widely used because of concerns over iatrogenic complications, as well as a lack of experience among clinicians. In its place, removable cast walkers have become the most widely used method to offload the foot. The removable cast walker is an orthotic device with double uprights fixed at a 90-degree angle to a rocker-soled walking platform. As with the TCC and walking splint, the fixed position of the ankle prevents propulsion at the forefoot, where the greatest pressures tend to occur. Removable cast walkers are available from various manufacturers. Because they are not custom made for each patient, care must be taken when fitting the device to ensure that it accommodates the contours of the patient's foot and ankle, particularly in the area of the uprights. A custom-molded insert can be added to most manufactured walkers.

Instant Total Contact Cast

A major advantage of the TCC over the removable walker is the forced compliance because of the inability of the patient to remove the cast. Because the cast cannot be removed, it is ensured that the wound is being offloaded 24 hours per day. Several studies show the removable cast walkers to be comparable with the TCC for pressure reduction.[83,84] However, other investigators report faster healing times with the TCC as opposed to removable cast walkers.[79–81] Under the assumption that the seemingly conflicting data was a function of the cam walker being removed, researchers designed studies that compared TCCs and removable cast walkers to cast walkers that were made nonremovable by wrapping them with a layer of fiberglass (Fig. 18.10). These nonremovable cast walkers were named instant total contact casts (iTCCs). Results of one study found the iTCC to be equivalent to the TCC in the proportion of wounds that healed in 12 weeks,[85] whereas the second study found healing rates with the iTCC to be comparable with healing rates of the conventional TCC in previous studies and superior to the removable cast walker.[86] Based on the available evidence, the iTCC is a viable option for a neuropathic wound, especially for the clinician that has not been trained in the application of, or does not have the time to apply, a TCC.

Wound-Healing Shoes

The cast, splint, and cam walker should all be considered as therapies of choice to offload neuropathic ulcerations. It is tempting to use less-restrictive devices because the devices that cover the leg seem like such an inconvenience to the patient. For most patients, putting them in devices that will be less than optimally effective is doing them a disservice. In some cases where a cast is contraindicated or the leg will not fit in a cam walker, devices that go only as high as the ankle may be useful. One of these devices is the wedge shoe, which has an elevated toe portion in relation to the heel so as to offload the forefoot (Fig. 18.11). The wedge shoe causes the body weight to shift back toward the heel, decreasing forces at the forefoot, albeit not to the same extent as the devices that transfer weight up the leg.[87] For pressure to be reduced, the area to be offloaded must be distal to the fulcrum of the shoe. To maximize pressure reduction, patients should be instructed to take short steps with the contralateral leg. This ensures that they do not propel over the wedge, causing contact between the distal end of the shoe and the ground. In clinical experience, this is often difficult for patients to do, and the telltale "clicking" of a patient in a wedge shoe can usually be heard as soon as the patient walks into the clinic. When a patient takes a large enough step to allow the front of the shoe to hit the ground, pressure at the forefoot is increased but may still be less than if the patient were ambulating in a regular shoe because of the rigidity of the wedge shoe's sole. This rigidity serves to reduce the transfer of weight toward the forefoot that typically happens in terminal stance, but it does not isolate the at-risk area in relation to the rest of the forefoot. The addition of a custom-molded insert with a relief area has been shown to be effective at addressing this problem.[76]

The issue of compliance with the wedge shoe, and all shoe offloading devices, remains a question. On one side, it could be argued that wedge shoes are less cumbersome, so are more likely to be worn; and on the other side that they are easier to remove, making it more likely that the foot will be left unprotected. Another issue is that wedge shoes are difficult for patients with limited dorsiflexion and could actually increase forefoot pressure if a patient has a limited range of motion. Walking in a wedge shoe feels very unnatural because of the functional leg-length discrepancy created. This can be difficult to manage for patients with balance issues and can also lead to back discomfort. Finally, one last drawback to the wedge shoe is that it cannot be used to offload bilaterally because it shifts the patient's weight too far posteriorly.

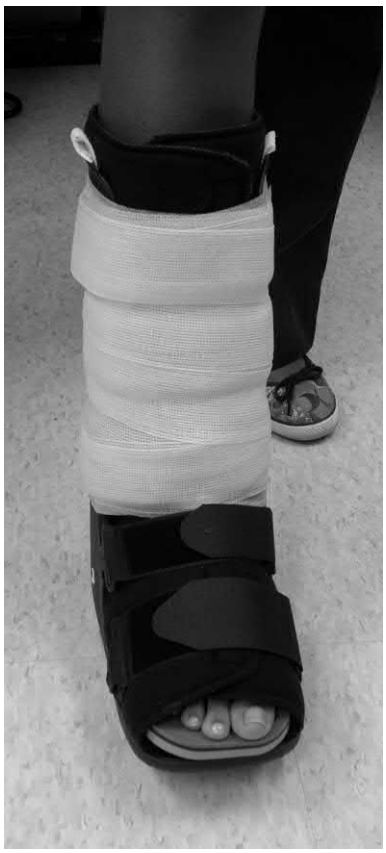


Fig. 18.10 Instant total contact cast fabricated by applying fiberglass to a removable cast walker.

Fig. 18.11 OrthoWedge shoe. (Courtesy Darco International, Huntington, WV).

An alternative shoe-type device to the wedge shoe is a shoe with modifiable insoles.[88] An example of this device, the DH shoe by Royce Medical Co. (Ossur North America, Aliso Vejo, CA), has an insole with pegs that can quickly be removed to relieve pressure to the at-risk area (Fig. 18.12). Advantages of this shoe type versus the wedge shoe include the ability to offload any part of the foot, not just the forefoot, a flat sole that is safer for those with balance issues, and the ability to offload bilateral feet simultaneously. A disadvantage to this type of shoe is that the flexible sole allows for a toe break during the gait cycle, which allows weight to transfer anteriorly.

Other Pressure-Relieving Options

There are several temporary offloading options[89,90] that can be applied directly to the foot in cases in which the previous described options either are unavailable or undesirable. The first option is adhesive felted foam (Fig. 18.13).[89] A custom-fit piece of ¼-inch felt-backed foam is adhered to the plantar surface of the foot. A U-shaped aperture is cut in the foam to reduce pressure around the ulcer. The margins of the aperture are positioned close to but not overlapping the wound edge, extending distally beyond the wound. The entire plantar surface of the foot must be examined to identify all vulnerable spots that need accommodation before the pad is applied. For forefoot ulcers, the pad extends proximally along the midfoot to increase the weight carriage in this area. All edges of the foam pad should be beveled to minimize chances of skin breakdown from edge pressure. When a bony deformity is particularly prominent, an additional layer of foam can be used to relieve pressure adequately from the ulcer site. A thin dressing is placed flatly over the ulcer. A healing sandal is used for ambulation. If the area is preulcerative or postulcerative, an extra-depth shoe can be worn. The felted foam should be thought of as temporary because the pressure relief provided by the foam pad decreases significantly by the fourth day.[91] Consequently, changing the pad every 3 or 4 days might be beneficial.

Fig. 18.12 DH Wound Healing shoe, which has pegs that can be removed. (© Össur.)

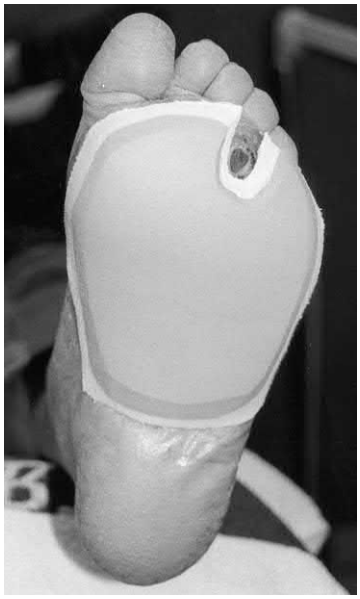


Fig. 18.13 Felted foam pressure relief. Edges of the foam have been beveled.

Felted foam is generally well accepted by the patient. Because this method allows for easier mobility than a TCC or walking splint, patients tend to walk more. This may not be desirable considering the possible effect of cumulative pressure. Despite walking more, patients using felted foam as an offloading method seem to respond well to the therapy as measured by the percentage of wounds that heal and the amount of time they take to heal.[92–94] The major benefit of the felted foam appears to constant wear time, without the excess bulk and seems to be a good option for patients that tend to walk barefoot, even though they are instructed not to.

Another temporary form of offloading is the football dressing. The football dressing was first proposed by Rader and Barry as a simple alternative to total contact casting for neuropathic ulcers.[95] The football dressing involves three layers of cast padding: the first is fan-folded over the toes, the second is wrapped circumferentially around the foot, and the third covers up to the lower one third of the leg. A layer of gauze is then applied and covered with an elastic wrap. Although there are limited data that support the use of the football dressing, a retrospective analysis of its use found it to have comparable effectiveness compared with the published data for the TCC and iTCC for the management of wounds across the spectrum on the University of Texas Diabetic Foot Classification System.[95] Some clinicians have had success using the football dressing in conjunction with a removable cam walker to ensure that the foot has some degree of protection even if the cam walker is removed.[96]

PREVENTION OF ULCERATION OR REULCERATION

The simplest and most cost-effective way to treat a wound is to avoid getting one in the first place. This is best accomplished through risk identification, patient education, fitting with appropriate footwear, and follow up for routine care. Being able to classify patients based on their risk for developing ulceration is critical for the proper management of each individual. One of the most widely used risk classifications was developed by the International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot (IWGDF). This classification system has been shown to predict foot complications (Table 18.4).[97–99]

Table 18.4 International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot Risk Classification

Risk Category	Definition
0	No neuropathy
1	With neuropathy, no deformity or peripheral vascular disease
2	With neuropathy and deformity or peripheral vascular disease
3	History of ulceration or amputation

In 2008 Lavery and associates published a revision of the IWGDF classification system.[100] In their new model, risk category 2 was divided into two groups, labeled 2A and 2B. Group 2A included patients with sensory neuropathy and deformity, and group 2B consisted of patients with peripheral arterial occlusive disease. Group 3 was divided into those with a history of an ulcer (3A) and those with a history of amputation (3B). When they applied this new classification system to 1666 patients with diabetes, they found that there were significantly more foot complications in the "B" groups than in the "A" groups. In addition, they found that there was little clinical difference between groups 1 and 2A and thought those two groups could be combined. These changes led to the development of the Texas Foot Risk Classification (Table 18.5).

Once a patient's risk factors have been identified, patient education can be tailored to the individual patient's needs. It is often helpful to have a small pamphlet or flier available for patients to take home that outlines what is safe and unsafe for them to do. A comprehensive educational pamphlet should include skin care, skin inspection, and footwear guidelines as shown in Box 18.2. Recommendations should be adjusted based on the patient's individual needs; for example, performing nail care at home would not be advisable for a patient with vascular compromise or who has difficulty reaching or seeing his or her feet.

Risk stratification is also important in determining the most appropriate footwear for a patient. Patients in the risk category 0 do not typically require special footwear but should be educated on proper shoe fit. The proper shoe should match the contours of the foot and should be comfortable at the time of purchase (no break-in period). High-risk patients should have the width and length of their feet measured every time they buy a new pair of shoes. It is also a wise investment for each clinic that deals with high-risk feet to obtain a shoe-measuring device (Fig. 18.14), because many problems can be avoided with proper fitting shoes. Width is measured across the widest part of the forefoot, typically across the MTHs, with the patient standing. Two measurements need to be taken for shoe length; one is the heel-to-toe length and the other is the heel-to-arch length. This extra measurement helps to ensure that the toe break in the shoe is in line with the MTHs. If the heel-to-toe and heel-to-arch lengths are the same, then that is the correct shoe size. If they are different, the patient should be fit with the larger of the two sizes. Patients should be instructed to try on new shoes in the mid to late afternoon, after they have been on their feet for most of the day. If they shop in the morning, they risk having shoes that are too tight by evening, and if they wait until evening to shop, shoes may be too large in the morning. A well-fitting shoe should have approximately one thumb's width between the longest toe and the end of the shoe, and the material on the dorsum of the shoe should be pinchable if the shoe is not too narrow or shallow. Patients who have a loss of sensation and no other risk factors (category 1 of original IWGDF) also do not require protective footwear but may benefit from a soft nonmolded insert in the shoe. It is important that they are educated on what to look for in a shoe. High heels increase forefoot pressure, shoes with narrow toes squeeze the foot, thongs can irritate between the toes, and slip on shoes do not stay in place very well. A supportive shoe allows the foot to stay in proper biomechanical alignment while remaining relaxed. Athletic shoes and shoes made with more flexible materials are excellent options for this low-risk group because they reduce pressure in comparison with leather shoes.[101,102]

For higher-risk groups, specialty footwear, including custom insoles and extra-depth or molded shoes, is indicated. Custom inserts are molded to the foot and reduce pressure at the heel and forefoot compared with flat insoles by spreading weight-bearing forces over a larger area.[103] The ideal insert strikes the perfect balance between durability and cushioning. No single material has been identified that accomplishes both tasks effectively, so most orthotics are fabricated with several different materials.[104] Although these multidensity insoles seem to strike a balance between support and pressure relief, they are thicker than a flat insole and require the use of an extra-depth shoe. Custom-molded insoles in combination with extra-depth shoes are effective at preventing recurrent ulceration in diabetics (Fig. 18.15).[103,105]

One of the most difficult times in the wound healing process is the transition from "treatment" footwear to everyday footwear. These patients comprise group 3 in the Texas Foot Risk Classification. Because most people with a diabetic foot ulcer see the return to normal footwear as a goal, it is often tempting for both the patient and clinician to rush this process once the wound has completely epithelialized. At this point in the healing process, the wound may not be mature enough to handle the pressure increase from the treatment shoe to a regular shoe. As an intermediary, some of the shoe-type offloading devices mentioned earlier in this chapter can serve as a bridge between treatment devices that immobilize the ankle and permanent footwear. Depending on the degree of deformity, individuals in these risk groups

Table 18.5 Texas Foot Risk Classification

Risk Group	Characteristics
0	No neuropathy or arterial disease
1	Neuropathy present
2	Arterial disease present
3	History of ulceration
4	History of amputation

From Lavery LA, Peters EJ, Williams JR, et al. Reevaluating the way we classify the diabetic foot: Restructuring the diabetic foot risk classification system of the International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot. *Diabetes Care.* 2008;31(1):154–156.

Box 18.2 Guidelines for Preventative Foot Care

Skin care

DO:	Wash feet daily. Dry them well, especially between the toes.
	Apply a thin coat of moisturizer to feet daily, avoiding between the toes.
	Trim toenails after washing and drying feet.
	Cut toenails straight across; smooth any sharp edges with an emery board.
	Have a podiatrist handle any thickened or ingrown toenails.
	Thin thick corns or calluses by gently using a pumice stone or by professional care.
	Check water temperature with a thermometer or elbow before bathing.
	Wear socks at night if feet are cold.
	Use sunscreen on the tops of feet during the summer.
	Ask health care provider to check feet at each visit.
DO NOT:	Soak feet. This can dry them out and cause cracking.
	Use moisturizer between toes. Moisture between the toes allows germs to grow.
	Cut corns and calluses.
	Use chemical agents, corn plasters, strong antiseptics, or adhesive tape on feet, because they can damage skin.
	Use hot water bottles or heating pads, because they can burn feet.

Foot Self-Inspection

DO:	Inspect all surfaces of the feet daily (including between the toes) for signs of injury: reddened areas, blisters, cuts, cracks, or sores.
	Report any injuries to a health care provider immediately.
	Feel for areas of increased temperature.
	Check for tender areas on the bottom of feet.
	Use a mirror if necessary to see the bottom of feet.
	Have a family member, friend, or health care professional check feet if necessary.
DO NOT:	Wait to report problems to a health care provider. Early attention can often prevent small problems from becoming big ones.

Footwear

DO:	Wear shoes that fit the size and shape of feet and leave room for any necessary insoles.
	Ask a health care provider to recommend the correct type of shoe.
	Break in new shoes slowly, checking feet frequently for signs of irritation. Report signs of irritation to a health care provider.
	Keep shoes and insoles in good repair.
	Always wear socks or stockings with shoes, wearing a clean pair daily.
	Before putting on shoes, check for rough areas, torn linings, or loose objects that can injure a foot.
DO NOT:	Walk barefoot (use slippers at night, special shoes or sandals for the beach).
	Wear socks that are too baggy or have holes or prominent seams.
	Wear socks or stockings that are constricting at the top.
	Wear sandals with thongs between the toes.

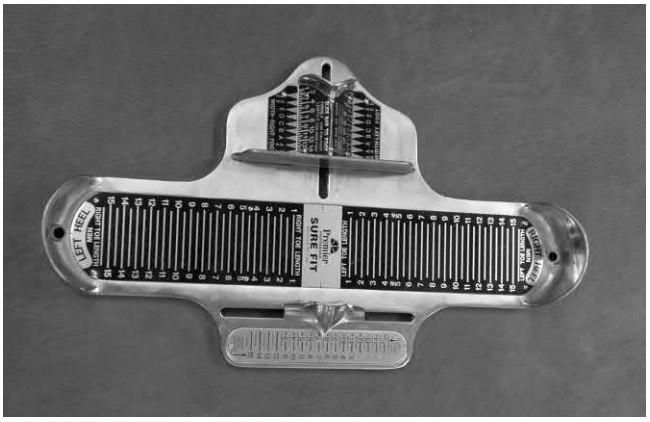


Fig. 18.14 Brannock foot measuring device. (Courtesy The Brannock Device Co., Liverpool, NY).

will need to be fit with custom insoles and either extra-depth or custom-molded shoes.[106] For added pressure relief, areas surrounding the postulcerative site can be built up with firmer materials to transfer weight away from the maturing

Fig. 18.15 Extra-depth shoe with removable insoles.

Fig. 18.16 Rocker bottom shoe.

tissue. To reduce the risk of blisters caused by shear forces, any adjustments should be made to the underside of the insole so the foot remains in contact with a smooth surface.

More aggressive shoe modifications can be used for those who require pressure reduction beyond what in-shoe modifications can achieve. The most effective of these modifications is adding a rocker bottom to the outer sole of the shoe (Fig. 18.16). Diabetic shoes with molded inserts and rocker bottom soles decrease pressure at the heel and forefoot and simultaneously increase midfoot pressures, which is typically a less vulnerable area.[116] A review by Cavanagh reported mixed results pertaining to the effectiveness of rocker bottom soles but notes several major flaws in the studies that found them to be ineffective.[107] The reduced pressure associated with the rocker sole has been shown to be clinically significant because it reduced the recurrence rate compared with patients wearing their own shoes.[108]

Many of the strategies used for patients transitioning back to permanent footwear following an ulceration can be applied to the Texas Foot Risk Classification group 4, or more simply, those whose status is postamputation. Pressure relief remains critical, and rocker bottom shoes are effective in limiting the transfer of weight anteriorly, but there are some unique complications associated with transmetatarsal amputations. Depending on the amputation site, the long extensors of the foot may be damaged or be put at a mechanical disadvantage relative to the intact plantar flexors which attach to the posterior heel. The result of this imbalance is an equinus deformity which increases pressure at the distal end of the foot. A second problem is proper shoe fit. A short shoe that is fit to the amputation can reduce pressure on the distal foot but also increases pressure on the contralateral foot; however, short shoes were not well received by patients because of cosmesis. Appearance may seem trivial in relation to preventing the recurrence of an ulcer, but it is naïve to overlook appearance. If shoes are disliked so much that they are not worn, they serve no purpose at all. Along the same line of reasoning, patients need to be educated about the importance of not only wearing their shoes while outside but also in the house, where shoes are frequently removed. If this is not feasible, some other form of offloading, such as a customized sandal, may be helpful to increase compliance with offloading. Conversely, a full-length shoe is more cosmetically pleasing but may increase shear forces as a result of the foot sliding forward in the shoe. When a full-length shoe is combined with a rigid rocker bottom and a custom-molded insert, pressures at the forefoot of both the involved and contralateral foot were reduced compared with a regular shoe with a toe filler.[109] Persons wearing this combination also had faster walking speeds and physical performance test scores compared with patients in regular footwear with a toe filler. Based on these findings, the best option for those in risk category 4 is a full-length, rigid rocker bottom shoe, with a custom-molded insole.

Summary

The largest group of people with vulnerable feet at risk for vascular, sensory, motor, and autonomic changes that can result in wounds that fail to heal and are the source of loss of toes, foot, or limb is the population of individuals with diabetes. With an ever-increasing number of individuals diagnosed with diabetes, it is important that the clinician be able to identify risk factors so as to reduce future complications. This chapter reviewed the assessment of the vulnerable foot, as well as a comprehensive wound evaluation. Applicable interventions were provided and organized according to the treatment goal to assist with the development of a successful treatment plan. Finally, footwear recommendations based on risk stratification were discussed to ensure that clients are given the best chance to return to their activities without ulcer formation or recurrence.

References

1. Li Y, Burros NR, Gregg EW, Albright A, Geiss LS. Declining Rates of Hospitalization for Nontraumatic Lower-Extremity Amputation in the Diabetic Population Aged 40 Years or Older: U.S. 1988-2008. *Diabetes Care.* 2012 Feb;35(2):273–277.
2. https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pdfs/data/statistics/national-diabetes-statistics-report.pdf Accessed February 8, 2018.
3. Hoogeveen RC, Dorresteijn JAN, Kriegsman DMW, Valk GD. Complex interventions for preventing diabetic foot ulceration. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews.* 2015; https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD007610.pub3. Issue 8. Art. No.: CD007610.
4. Deshayes N, Bloas F, Boissout F, Lecardonnel J, Paris M. 3D In vitro model of the re-epithelialization phase in the wound-healing process. *Experimental Dermatology.* 2018;27(5):460–462.
5. Pietrzak WS, Eppley BL. Platelet rich plasma: Biology and new technology. *J Craniofac Surg.* 2005;16(6):1043–1054.
6. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National diabetes fact sheet: national estimates and general information on diabetes and prediabetes in the United States, 2011. from 2011 National Diabetes Fact Sheet. Available at https://www.cdc.gov/chronicdisease/resources/publications/aag/pdf/2016/diabetes-aag.pdf. Accessed July 3, 2018.
7. Collins TC, Suarez-Almazor M, Peterson NJ. An absent pulse is not sensitive for the early detection of peripheral arterial disease. *Fam Med.* 2006;38(1):38–42.
8. Khan TH, Farooqui FA, Niazi K. Critical Review of the Ankle Brachial Index. *Current Cardiology Reviews.* 2008;4(2):101–106. https://doi.org/10.2174/157340308784245810.
9. Aboyans V, Criqui MH, Abraham P, Allison MA, et al. Measurement and Interpretation of the Ankle-Brachial Index. A Scientific Statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation.* 2012;126:2890–2909.
10. WOCN Society. Ankle Brachial Index: Quick Reference Guide for Clinicians. *J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs.* 2012;39(2S):S21–S29.
11. Bonham PA. Get the LEAD out: noninvasive assessment for lower extremity arterial disease using ankle brachial index and toe brachial

index measurements. *J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs.* 2006;33 (1):30–41.
12. Byrne P, Provan JL, Ameli FM, Jones DP. The use of transcutaneous oxygen tension measurements in the diagnosis of peripheral vascular insufficiency. *Annals of Surgery.* 1984;200(2):159–165.
13. Deng W, Dong X, Zhang Y, Jiang Y, et al. Transcutaneous oxygen pressure (TcPO2): A novel diagnostic tool for peripheral neuropathy in type 2 diabetes patients. *Diabetes Research and Clinical Practice.* 2014;105(3):336–343.
14. American Diabetes Association. Consensus development conference on diabetic foot wound care. *Diabetes Care.* 1999;22(8): 1354–1360.
15. Steeper RA. A critical review of the aetiology of diabetic neuropathic ulcers. *J Wound Care.* 2005;14(3):101–103.
16. Chuan F, Tang K, Jiang P, Zhou B, HeX. Reliability and Validity of the Perfusion, Extent, Depth, Infection and Sensation(PEDIS)Classification System and Score in Patients with Diabetic Foot Ulcer. *PLoS-ONE.* 2015;10(4). e0124739. https://doi.org/10.1371/ journal.pone.0124739.
17. Oyer DS, Saxon D, Shah A. Quantitative assessment of diabetic peripheral neuropathy with use of the clanging tuning fork test. *Endocr Pract.* 2007;13(1):5–10.
18. Meijer JWC, Smit AJ, Lefrandt JD, van der Hoeven JH, et al. Back to Basics in Diagnosing Diabetic Polyneuropathy With the Tuning Fork! *Diabetes Care.* 2005;28:2201–2205.
19. Juma A, Mandal A. Vibration sensitivity testing with tuning fork—256 Hz or 512 Hz? *Eur J Plast Surg.* 2007;30:5–6.
20. Bus SA, Yang QX, Wang JH, Smith MB, et al. Intrinsic Muscle Atrophy and Toe Deformity in the Diabetic Neuropathic Foot. *Diabetes Care.* 2002;25:1444–1450.
21. Alam U, Riley D, Jugdey R, Azmi S, et al. Diabetic Neuropathy and Gait: A Review. *Diabetes Therapy.* 2017;8(6):1253–1264.
22. Anderson H, Gjerstad MD, Jakobsen J. Atrophy of foot muscles: a measure of diabetic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care.* 2004;27(10):2382–2385.
23. Burns J, Landorf KB, Ryan MM, Crosbie J, Ouvrier RA. Interventions for the prevention and treatment of pes cavus (Review). *Cochrane Collaboration.* 2010;12:1–31.
24. Lavery LA, Lavery DC, Quebedeau-Farham TL. Increased foot pressures after great toe amputation in diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 1995;18 (11):1460–1462.
25. Boulton AJ, Hardesty CA, Betts RP, et al. Dynamic foot pressures and other studies as diagnostic and management aids in diabetic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care.* 1983;6(1):26–33.
26. Fernando ME, Crowther RG, Pappas E, Lazzarini PA, Cunningham M, et al. Plantar Pressure in Diabetic Peripheral Neuropathy Patients with Active Foot Ulceration, Previous Ulceration and No History of Ulceration: A Meta-Analysis of Observational Studies. *PLoS ONE.* 2014;9(6). e99050. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0099050.
27. Robertson DD, Mueller MJ, Smith KE, et al. Structural changes in the forefoot of individuals with diabetes and prior plantar ulcer. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2002;84A(8):1395–1404.
28. Kosiak M. Etiology and pathology of ischemic ulcers. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1959;40(2):62–69.
29. Fernando ME, Crowther RG, Lazzarini PA, Sangla K, et al. Gait parameters of people with diabetes-related neuropathic plantar foot ulcers. *Clinical Biomechanics.* Aug2016, Vol. 37, p98-107.
30. Bilous RW. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *BMJ (International Edition).* 1990;301(6752):565–568.
31. Gandhi RA, Marques JLB, Selvaraja D, Emery CJ, Tesfaye S. Painful Diabetic Neuropathy Is Associated With Greater Autonomic Dysfunction Than Painless Diabetic Neuropathy. *Diabetes Care.* 2010;33:1585–1590.
32. Frykberg RG, Zgonis T, Armstrong DG, et al. Diabetic foot disorders: a clinical practice guideline (2006 Revision). *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2006;45(5 suppl):S1–S66.
33. Dodd A, Daniels TR. Charcot Neuroarthropathy of the Foot and Ankle. *J Bone & Joint Surgery.* 2018;100(8):696–711.
34. Buttke J. Stepping up foot injury diagnosis: Jones, Lisfranc, and Charcot. *Nurse Pract.* 2005;30(12):46–52.
35. Chantelau E, Onlyee G. Charcot foot in diabetes: farewell to the neurotrophic theory. *Horm Metab Res.* 2006;38(6):361–367.
36. Papanas N, Maltezos E. Etiology, pathophysiology and classifications of the diabetic Charcot foot. *Diabetic Foot & Ankle.* 2013;4(1). 20872. https://doi.org/10.3402/dfa.v4i0.20872.
37. Chantelau EA, Wienemann T. Pressure pain perception in the diabetic Charcot foot: facts and hypotheses. *Diabetic Foot & Ankle.* 2013;4(1). 20981. https://doi.org/10.3402/dfa.v4i0.20981.
38. Mautone M, Naidoo P. What the radiologist needs to know about Charcot foot. *Journal of Medical Imaging and Radiation Oncology.* 2015;59:395–402.
39. Jeffcoate WJ. Charcot foot syndrome. *Diabetic Medicine.* 2015;32 (6):760–770.
40. Ramanujam CL, Facaros Z. An overview of conservative treatment options for diabetic Charcot foot neuropathy. *Diabetic Foot & Ankle.* 2011;2:6418. https://doi.org/10.3402/dfa.v2i0.6418.
41. Guven MF, Karabiber A, Kaynak G, Ogut T. Conservative and surgical treatment of the chronic Charcot foot and ankle. *Diabetic Foot & Ankle.* 2013;4:1–10.
42. Agostini V, De Lucca R, Mancin LC, Knaflitz M. Reduction in gait abnormalities in type 2 diabetes due to physical activity: A quantitative evaluation based on statistical gait analysis. *Journal of Mechanics in Medicine and Biology.* 2012;12(5). https://doi.org/10.1142/S021951941240025 1240025-1-10.
43. Campbell G, Skubic M. Balance and Gait Impairment: Sensor-based assessment for patients with peripheral neuropathy. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing.* 2018;22(3):315–325.
44. Battesha HHM, Ahmed GM, Amer HA, El Gohany AM, Ragab WM. Effect of core stability exercises and desensitisation therapy on limit of stability in diabetic peripheral neuropathy patients. *International Journal of Therapy & Rehabilitation.* 2018;25(3):128–134.
45. Krasner D. Wound care: how to use the red-yellow-black system. *Am J Nurs.* 1995;(5):44–47.
46. Weck M, Slesaczeck T, Paetzold H, Muench D, et al. Structured health care for subjects with diabetic foot ulcers results in a reduction of major amputation rates. *Cardiovasc Diabetol.* 2013;12:45. https://doi.org/10.1186/1475-2840-12-45.
47. Wagner FW. The dysvascular foot; a system for diagnosis and treatment. *Foot Ankle.* 1981;2:64–122.
48. Armstrong DG, Lavery LA, Harkless LB. Validation of a diabetic wound classification system: the contribution of depth, infection, and ischemia to risk of amputation. *Diabetes Care.* 1998;21:855–859.
49. Sittig K, Richardson K. Acute burn management. In: McCulloch JM, Kloth LC, eds. *Wound Healing: Evidence-Based Management.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Davis; 2010:334–335.
50. Edsberg LE, Black JM, Goldberg M, McNichol L, et al. Revised National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel Pressure Injury Staging System: Revised Pressure Injury Staging System. *J Wound, Ostomy, and Continence Nursing.* 2016;43(6):585–597.
51. Abouaesha F, Carine HM, Gareth D, et al. Plantar tissue thickness is related to peak plantar pressure in the high-risk diabetic foot. *Diabetes Care.* 2001;24(7):1270–1274.
52. Sibbald RG, Orsted H, Schultz GS, Coutts P, Keast D. Preparing the wound bed 2003: focus on infection and inflammation. *Ostomy Wound Management.* 2003;49(11):23–51.
53. Schultz GS, Sibbald R, Falangaetal V, et al. Wound bed preparation: a systematic approach to wound management. *Wound Repair Regen.* 2003;11(suppl 1):S1-S28.
54. Sibbald RG, Orsted HL, Coutts PM, Keast DH. Best practice recommendations for preparing the wound bed: update 2006. *Advances in Skin & Wound Care.* 2007;20(7):390–405.
55. Sibbald RG, Ayello EA. Optimizing the Moisture Management Tightrope with Wound Bed Preparation. *2015 Advances in Skin & Wound Care.* 2015;28:466–476.
56. Saad AZM, Khoo TL, Halim AS. Wound Bed Preparation for Chronic Diabetic Foot Ulcers. *ISRN Endocrinology.* Article ID 608313. https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/608313; 2013.
57. Svoboda SJ, Bice TG, Gooden HA, et al. Comparison of bulb syringe and pulsed lavage irrigation with use of a bioluminescent musculoskeletal wound model. *J Bone Joint Surg.* 2006;88:2167–2174.
58. Luedtke-Hoffmann KA, Schafer DS. Pulsed lavage in wound cleansing. *Phys Ther.* 2000;80:292. 230.
59. Schoenbach SF, Song IC. Ultrasonic debridement: a new approach in the treatment of burn wounds. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 1980;66:34–37.
60. Kuhn C, Angehrn F. Use of high-resolution ultrasound to monitor the healing of leg ulcers: a prospective single-center study. *Skin Research and Technology.* 2009;15:161–167.
61. Connor-Kerr T, Alston G, Stovall A, et al. The effects of low-frequency ultrasound (35kHz) on methicillin–resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) in vitro. *Ostomy Wound Manage.* 2010;56(5):32–42.

62. Stanisic MM, Provo BJ, Larsen DL, et al. Wound debridement with 25 kHz ultrasound. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2005;18:484–490.
63. Richardson M. The benefits of larval therapy in wound care. *Nursing Standard.* 2004;19(7):70–76.
64. Gethin G, Cowman S, Kolbach DN. Debridement for venous leg ulcers. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews.* 2015;(9):1–63. Art. No.: CD008599. https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD008599.
65. Ovington LG. The truth about silver. *Ostomy Wound Manage.* 2004;50:1S–10S. 9A suppl.
66. Ovington LG. Dressings and skin substitutes. In: McCulloch JM, Kloth LC, eds. *Wound Healing Evidence-Based Management.* 4th ed. Philadelphia: Davis; 2010:180–195.
67. Arora M, Harvey LA, Glinsky JV, Nier L, Lavrencic L, Kifley A, Cameron ID. Electrical stimulation for treating pressure ulcers (Protocol). *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews.* 2016;(Issue 5).https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD012196 Art. No.: CD012196.
68. Chen C, Hou WH, Chan ESY, Yeh ML, HLD Lo. Phototherapy for treating pressure ulcers. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews.* 2014; (Issue 7). https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.C D009224.pub2 Art. No. CD009224.
69. Kloth LC. Electrical stimulation for wound healing: A review of evidence from in vitro studies, animal experiments, and clinical trials. *Int J Low Extrem Wounds.* 2005;4(1):23–44.
70. Schubert V. Effects of phototherapy on pressure ulcer healing in elderly patients after a falling trauma. A prospective, randomized, controlled study. *Photodermatology, Photoimmunology & photomedicine.* 2001;17(1):32–38.
71. Dehlin O, Elmstahl S, Gottrup F. Monochromatic phototherapy in elderly patients: a new way of treating chronic pressure ulcers. *Aging Clinical and Experimental Research.* 2003;15(3):259–263.
72. Aneis YM, Mohamady HM. Effect of Low Level Laser Therapy and Ultraviolet-C Irradiation on Partial -Thickness Burn Wound Healing: A Randomized Controlled Trial. *International Journal of Therapies and Rehabilitation Research.* 2017;6(4):6–14.
73. Barreto JG, Salgado CG. Clinic-epidemiological evaluation of ulcers in patients with leprosy sequelae and the effect of low level laser therapy on wound healing: a randomized clinical trial. *BMC Infectious Diseases.* 2010;10:23.
74. Sinacore DR. Total Contact Casting for Diabetic Neuropathic Ulcers. *Phys Ther.* 1996;4(1):296–301.
75. Helm PA, Walker SC, Pullum G. Total contact casting in diabetic patients with neuropathic ulcerations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1984;65(11):691–693.
76. Sinacore DR, Mueller MJ, Diamond JE, et al. Diabetic neuropathic plantar ulcers treated by total contact casting. *Phys Ther.* 1987;67 (10):1543–1549.
77. Armstrong DG, Nguyen HC, Lavery LA, et al. Offloading the diabetic foot wound: a randomized clinical trial. *Diabetes Care.* 2001;24 (6):1019–1022.
78. Nabuurs-Franssen MH, Sleegers R, Huiiberts MSP, Wijnen W, et al. Total Contact Casting of the Diabetic Foot. *Daily Practice Diabetes Care.* 2005;28:243–247.
79. Sinacore DR, Delitto A, Blair III VP, Drury DA, Rose SJ. Total contact casting in treatment of diabetic plantar ulcers: controlled clinical trial. *Diabetes Care.* 1989;12:384–388.
80. Caravaggi C, Faglia E, De Giglio R, Mantero M, Quarantiello A, Sommariva E, Gino M, Pritelli C, Morabito A. Effectiveness and safety of a nonremovable fiberglass off-bearing cast versus a therapeutic shoe in the treatment of neuropathic foot ulcers: a randomized study. *Diabetes Care.* 2000;23:1746–1751.
81. Armstrong DG, Nguyen HC, Lavery LA, van Schie CH, Boulton AJ, Harkless LB. Off-loading the diabetic foot wound: a randomized clinical trial. *Diabetes Care.* 2001;24:1019–1022.
82. Petre M, Tokar P, Kostar D. Revisiting the total contact cast: maximizing off-loading by wound isolation. *Diabetes Care.* 2005;28 (4):929–930.
83. Beuker BJ, van Deursen RW, Price P. Plantar pressure in off-loading devices used in diabetic ulcer treatment. *Wound Repair Regen.* 2005;13(6):537–542.
84. McGuire JB. Pressure redistribution strategies for the diabetic or at-risk foot: part II. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2006;19(5):270–277.
85. Katz IA, Harlan A, Miranda-Palma B, et al. A randomized trial of two irremovable offloading devices in the management of plantar neuropathic diabetic foot ulcerations. *Diabetes Care.* 2005;28(3): 555–559.
86. Armstrong DG, Lavery LA, Wu S, et al. Evaluation of removable and irremovable cast walkers in the healing of diabetic foot wounds: a randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Care.* 2005;28(3):551–554.
87. Roniger LR. Other offloading options displace total contact cast for heel relief. *Biomechanics.* 2006;13(4):13–14.
88. Guldemond NA, Leffers P, Schaper NC, Sanders AP, et al. The effects of insole configurations on forefoot plantar pressure and walking convenience in diabetic patients with neuropathic feet. *Clinical Biomechanics.* 2007;22(1):81–87.
89. Changfeng G. A comparative study between felted and triaxial compressed polymer foams on cushion performance. *Journal of Cellular Plastics.* 2013;49(6):521–533.
90. Zimny S, Schatz H, Pfohl U. The effects of applied felted foam on wound healing and healing times in the therapy of neuropathic diabetic foot ulcers. *Diabet Med.* 2003;20(8):622–625.
91. Zimny S, Reinsch B, Schatz H, et al. Effects of felted foam on plantar pressures in the treatment of neuropathic diabetic foot ulcers. *Diabetes Care.* 2001;24(12):2153–2154.
92. Birke JA, Pavich MA, Patout CA, et al. Comparison of forefoot ulcer healing using alternative off-loading methods in patients with diabetes mellitus. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2002;15(5):210–215.
93. Al Thebati AS, Al-Ouda NM, Al Khaldi SM, Al Sofyani AD, Al Saeed M. The Effectiveness of Three Layers Foam Dressing as an Offloading Technique in Treating Diabetic Foot Ulcer - Comparative Study. *Egyptian Journal of Hospital Medicine.* 2016;65:648–651.
94. Zimny S, Schatz H, Pfohl U. The effects of applied felted foam on wound healing and healing times in the therapy of neuropathic diabetic foot ulcers. *Diabet Med.* 2003;20(8):622–625.
95. Rader AJ, Barry TP. The football: an intuitive dressing for offloading neuropathic plantar forefoot ulcerations. *Int Wound J.* 2008;5 (1):69–73.
96. McGuire J. Transitional off-loading: An evidence-based approach to pressure redistribution in the diabetic foot. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2010;23(4):175–188.
97. Peters EJ, Lavery LA. Effectiveness of the diabetic foot risk classification system of the international working group on the diabetic foot. *Diabetes Care.* 2001;24(8):1442–1447.
98. Shahbazian H, Yazdananpanah L, Latifi SM. Risk assessment of patients with diabetes for foot ulcers according to risk classification consensus of international working group on diabetic foot (IWGDF). *Pakistan Journal of Medical Sciences.* 2013;29(3):730–734.
99. Jeffcoate WJ. Screening to identify individuals at high risk of developing diabetic foot ulcers. *Nature Clinical Practice Endocrinology & Metabolism.* 2008;4(5):256–257.
100. Lavery LA, Peters EJ, Williams JR, et al. Reevaluating the way we classify the diabetic foot: Restructuring the diabetic foot risk classification system of the International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot. *Diabetes Care.* 2008;31(1):154–156.
101. Perry JE, Ulbrecht JS, Derr JS, et al. The use of running shoes to reduce plantar pressure in patients who have diabetes. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1995;7(12):1819–1928.
102. Roniger LR. Accommodating the diabetic foot: New materials bring benefits to therapeutic footwear. *Biomechanics.* 2005;12(12): 66–89.
103. Owings TM, Woerner JL, Frampton JD, Cavanagh PR, Botek G. Custom Therapeutic Insoles Based on Both Foot Shape and Plantar Pressure Measurement Provide Enhanced Pressure Relief. *Diabetes Care.* 2008;31:839–844.
104. Lo WT, Yick KL, Ng SP, Yip J. New methods for evaluating physical and thermal comfort properties of orthotic materials used in insoles for patients with diabetes. *JRRD.* 2014;51(2):311–324.
105. Viswanathan V, Madhavan S, Gnansundaram S, Gopalakrishna G, et al. Effectiveness of Different Types of Footwear Insoles for the Diabetic Neuropathic Foot. *Diabetes Care.* 2004;27:474–477.
106. van Netten J, Jannink MJA, Hijmans JM, Geertzen JHB, Postema K. Use and usability of custom-made orthopedic shoes. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research & Development.* 2010;47(1):73–82.
107. Cavanagh PR. Therapeutic footwear for people with diabetes. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev.* 2004;20(suppl 1):S51–S55.
108. Praet SFE, Louwerens JWK. The Influence of Shoe Design on Plantar Pressures in Neuropathic Feet. *Diabetes Care.* 2003; 26:441–445.
109. Dillon MP, Fatone S, Hansen AH. Effect of prosthetic design on center of pressure excursion in partial foot prostheses. *JRRD.* 2011;48 (2):161–178.

110. Murray HJ, Young MJ, Hollis S. The association between callus formation, high pressure and neuropathy in diabetic foot ulceration. *Diabet Med.* 1996;13(11):979–982.
111. Young MJ, Cavanagh PR, Thomas G, et al. The effect of callus removal on dynamic plantar foot pressures in diabetic patients. *Diabet Med.* 1992;9(1):55–57.
112. Albaugh K, Loehne H. Wound bed preparation/debridement. In: McCulloch JM, Kloth LC, eds. *Wound Healing: Evidence-Based Management*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Davis; 2010:155–179.
113. Kirshen C, Woo K, Ayello AE, et al. Debridement: a vital component of wound bed preparation. *Adv Skin Wound Care.* 2006;19(9):506–517.

19 Amputation Surgeries for the Lower Limb☆

PATRICK D. GRIMM and BENJAMIN K. POTTER

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Understand the most common indications for lower extremity amputation and compare and contrast the key methods of assessment used to decide when amputation is necessary.
2. Determine the most appropriate level of amputation based on resultant biomechanics and the need for adequate soft tissue coverage, as well as appreciate the surgical techniques used to manage bone, soft tissue, nerves, and blood vessels during lower extremity amputations.
3. Anticipate postoperative care requirements, common complications, and expected outcomes following lower extremity amputation.
4. Provide an overview of the most commonly used surgical approaches, as well as special considerations, for each level of amputation.
5. Describe current areas of active research in the field of lower extremity amputation in regard to prosthesis anchorage, methods of active prosthesis control, and strategies for treatment and prevention of amputation-related neuromas.

Introduction

Approximately 180,000 lower extremity amputations are performed in the United States each year.[1] The most common reasons to perform an amputation include vascular insufficiency, trauma, and neoplasm. Overall, more than 90% of lower extremity amputations are performed as a result of vascular disease, with a significant portion of those patients carrying a diagnosis of diabetes mellitus (DM).[2] The amputation of a limb is a truly life-altering event, affecting the physical, functional, and psychological dimensions of a person's world[3]; however, when done for the right reasons and with appropriate technique, an amputation can be an important step towards recovery. Therefore amputation surgery should be approached as a reconstructive procedure, not merely an ablation or afterthought of treatment failure.

The primary aim in performing an amputation is removal of the diseased, ischemic, mangled, or otherwise nonfunctional portion of the extremity. Once accomplished, the surgeon can then focus on reconstruction with the goal of creating the best possible conditions for the rapid return of maximal function and improved quality of life.

Although surgical technique is a key determinant in the success of an amputation,[4] other important factors include adequate preoperative counseling,[5] close postoperative follow-up with appropriate management of comorbidities and complications during the perioperative period,[6,7] and a properly implemented rehabilitation plan.

This chapter provides an overview of the indications for lower extremity amputations, surgical principles and techniques, postoperative care, commonly encountered complications, and future directions in the field of lower extremity amputations. Rehabilitation professionals play a vital role in the care of lower extremity amputees. Indeed, the surgical procedure and immediate perioperative care represent but a small fraction of the long path towards recovery. The goal of this chapter is to help rehabilitation professionals to care for amputees by cultivating a better understanding of the rationale behind the surgical procedures performed and the expected postoperative course.

Indications for Lower Extremity Amputation

DYSVASCULAR AND NEUROPATHIC DISEASE

Prevalence and Risk Factors

Peripheral artery disease (PAD) is a term that includes a variety of disease processes that affect noncardiac, nonintracranial arteries, the most common of which is atherosclerosis.[8] A basic understanding of this disease is important given that up to 90% of lower extremity amputations in the United States are due to dysvascular disease.[2] One of the strongest risk factors for developing PAD is DM, reflected by the fact that 70% of patients who have amputations for dysvascular limb also have DM.[9]

The overall prevalence of PAD in the United States, across all ethnicities, is estimated to range from approximately 2% in persons 40 to 49 years of age to 20% or higher in persons older than age 80 years.[10] Risk factors for PAD include history of smoking, DM, untreated or poorly managed hypercholesteremia, untreated or poorly managed hypertension, kidney dysfunction, and chronic

☆The authors extend appreciation to Michelle M. Lusardi and Judith L. Pepe, whose work in the prior edition provided the foundation for this chapter.

inflammation.[11] Significant morbidity and mortality are associated with PAD. It is estimated that one in four individuals with PAD undergoes some form of amputation, one in three will likely die within 5 years of diagnosis, and only one in four will survive more than 10 years after diagnosis.[12-14] Comorbid conditions that amplify risk of death in the year following PAD-related amputation include congestive heart failure, renal failure, and liver disease, as well as postoperative systemic sepsis.[15]

Patient Assessment

The assessment of an individual with compromised peripheral circulation begins with a careful and detailed health history and review of risk factors, continues with physical examination and routine blood work, and is followed by additional imaging or invasive tests as needed.[8,16]

A common symptom of chronic arterial vascular insufficiency is claudication. This vascular-related pain has been described as a deep aching, cramping, muscle fatigue, or tightness that develops during physical activity and dissipates with rest. Although most common in the superficial posterior compartment (gastrocnemius and soleus) of the lower leg, claudication can occur in any muscle with compromised blood supply, including the muscles of the thigh and hip. Claudication is the result of accumulation of lactic acid as a by-product of anaerobic metabolism during muscle contraction. When an individual has persistent pain while at rest (a.k.a. "rest pain"), nocturnal recumbent pain, or ischemic skin lesions, the individual is classified as having critical limb ischemia and is at high risk of amputation if revascularization fails or cannot be undertaken.[17]

Acute or sudden occlusion of an arterial vessel is marked by constant and unrelenting pain and may be accompanied by feelings of tingling, numbness, or coldness as peripheral nerves of the lower limb are affected by ischemia.[18,19] The signs of acute limb ischemia can be remembered as the five P's: pain, paresthesia, pallor, poikilothermia (cold skin), and pulselessness. Although a limb with chronic arterial insufficiency demonstrates dependent rubor, the skin of an acutely compromised limb may be quite pale or blanched distal to the site of occlusion. Acute occlusion is often an emergent situation, requiring pharmacologic or surgical intervention to restore blood flow to the limb.

The physical examination is an essential component of any patient assessment and provides key information for decision-making. The examination begins with visual inspection of the lower extremity and feet, concentrating on skin condition, presence or absence of hair, and nail condition.[8] Open wounds, callus, ecchymosis, dry necrosis, erythema, mottling, and altered pigmentation are documented. Wounds that lie under or are surrounded by callus on the plantar or weight-bearing surfaces of the foot are most likely neuropathic ulcers. Dry, blackened, or moist gangrenous wounds in the nail beds and between toes are likely signs of vascular insufficiency. Although "healthy" traumatic wounds often display clear serosanguineous drainage, any thickened, yellowish, or foul-smelling discharge from a wound suggests soft tissue or bone infection. When evaluating diabetic foot ulcers, the depth of ulceration and vascular supply to the region significantly guide treatment decisions (Table 19.1). Motor neuropathy may cause atrophy of the intrinsic muscles of the foot, allowing stronger flexor muscles to pull the toes into a claw deformity.[20] These newly created pressure points are at risk for ulceration. Protective sensation (as measured by perception of Semmes-Weinstein 5.07 filament), as well as touch, pressure, vibration, and position sense, are likely to be impaired or inconsistent.[21] In addition, impairment of the autonomic system often causes dry, tight, shining, easily cracked skin, as well as altered blood flow to the bones of the foot, increasing risk of Charcot arthopathy in addition to ulceration.[22,23]

Table 19.1 Wagner Classification of Diabetic Ulcers and Common Treatment Recommendations

Grade	Description	Treatment
0	Skin intact but foot at risk	Accommodative footwear or total contact casting
1	Localized superficial ulcer	Total contact casting, ± irrigation and débridement
2	Ulcer deep to tendon, bone, ligament, or joint	Surgical débridement, irrigation, antibiotics, total contact casting, correction of deforming forces
3	Deep abscess or osteomyelitis	Surgical débridement, irrigation, antibiotics, total contact casting, correction of deforming forces, may require partial foot amputation or ray resection
4	Gangrene of toes or forefoot	Local amputation—partial foot or ray resection
5	Gangrene of entire foot	Amputation

Adapted from Anakwenze OA, Milby AH, Gans I, et al. Foot and ankle infections: diagnosis and management. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2012;20:684–693.

Vascular Examination

The least invasive and simplest strategy used to assess adequacy of vascular supply to the distal limb is palpation of distal lower extremity pulses at the dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial arteries, popliteal pulse at the knee, and femoral pulse at the groin. If all pulses are palpable, it is highly likely that there is adequate circulation to heal a neuropathic ulcer. However, absent distal pedal pulses do not confirm vascular insufficiency; pedal pulses are nonpalpable in up to 10% of the general population.[24] Further examination should proceed in a stepwise, systematic fashion, beginning first with measurement of the ankle-brachial index (ABI).[8,25] This noninvasive method measures the systolic blood pressure at the level of the ankle and compares it with the systolic blood pressure of the brachial artery above the elbow. Values less than 0.9 indicate PAD, whereas values greater than 1.4 are suggestive of poorly compressible arteries due to calcification. A word of caution—it has been estimated that 30% of patients with critical limb ischemia have a normal or near normal ABI due to this phenomenon; thus physical examination remains critical and additional, more sensitive testing may be indicated.[26] Further noninvasive tests (Table 19.2) include measurement of the toe-brachial index (normal $\geq$0.7) and transcutaneous oximetry (>30 mm Hg suggests adequate perfusion for wound healing).[27] Segmental leg pressures,

Table 19.2 These noninvasive methods of vascular assessment help determine the severity of peripheral vascular disease and may predict the likelihood of wound healing following surgical intervention.

Test/Measure	Normal Values	Abnormal Findings
Capillary refill time	Elevation of limb 20 s Return to dependent position Pressure on toe or nail Blanch, then refill in 1–2 s	Delayed refill or persistent blanching Rubor of dependency
Refill after occlusion	Inflation of blood pressure cuff at thigh for 5 min On release, flush to normal skin color at toes within 10 s	>10 s: impaired arterial perfusion
Venous refill time	Elevation of the limb 2 min Return to dependent position Veins on dorsum of foot refill in 10 s	>10 s: impaired arterial perfusion <10 s: valvular incompetence of veins
Doppler ultrasound	Triphasic on auscultation	Biphasic: mild vascular impairment Monophasic: significant impairment Absent: complete occlusion
Ankle-brachial index	0.9–1	<0.9 impaired arterial flow <0.5 unlikely to heal distal wound
Segmental blood pressure	<15 mm Hg drop in systolic pressure between adjacent sites (groin, thigh, just below knee, and at ankle)	>20 mm Hg decrease: possible occlusion >10 mm Hg: possible vessel calcification
Pulse volume recordings	Sharp peaks at each recorded site Similar across left and right extremities	Flattening on recording: occlusive disease
Transcutaneous oxygen pressures	>40 mm Hg suggest healing of ulcer or surgical incision is likely	<20 mm Hg predict nonhealing of ulcer or surgical incision
Duplex scanning	Low velocity ratio; constant hue and intensity of image	Velocity ratio >4 or peak velocity >400 cm/s indicates >75% stenosis

pulse volume recording, and duplex ultrasound may also be considered. (Refer to Chapter 18 for a detailed description of noninvasive assessment strategies.) Imaging modalities that outline the specific arterial anatomy are magnetic resonance angiography and computed tomography angiography (CTA) (Fig. 19.1).[28,29] In addition to the work-up of chronic vascular disease, CTA is a valuable tool in the evaluation of suspected vascular injury in the setting of an acute trauma (Fig. 19.2A and B).[30]

Finally, conventional arteriography is indicated in symptomatic patients being considered for revascularization procedures. This invasive strategy involves local surgical placement of a catheter into the femoral artery in the groin (or alternatively, the axillary, radial, or subclavian arteries), followed by introduction of radiopaque dye into the arterial tree and exposure to radiation.[31] Although this method generally provides excellent visualization of vascular anatomy, drawbacks include difficult delineation in distal or heavily calcified vessels and the risk of kidney injury with nephrotoxic contrast agents.[25]

Indications for Amputation Versus Revascularization

PAD disease or DM may result in a nonviable or threatened limb due to occlusive vascular disease, neuropathic related reasons, or, frequently, a combination of both.[18,32] The management and prognosis for each of these groups are somewhat different. Vascular bypass surgery,[33] percutaneous endovascular stents,[34] or the use of thrombolytic intervention[35] may preserve the limbs of those with large-vessel vascular disease without significant microvascular dysfunction or neuropathy. Persons with a combination of diabetes and vascular disease are the most likely to require amputation; advanced age and multiple comorbidities (e.g., cardiovascular and

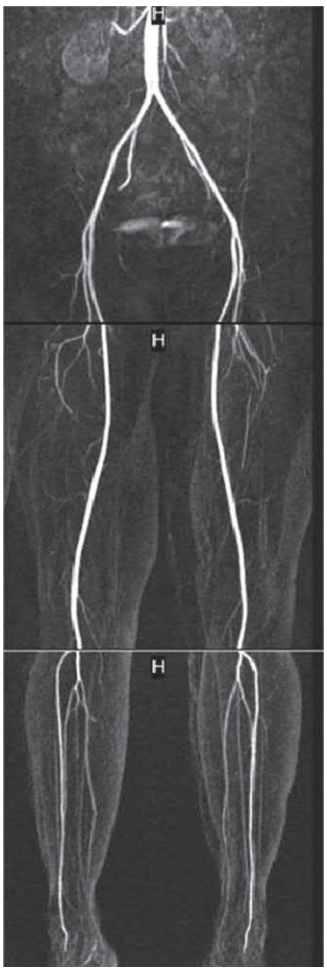


Fig. 19.1 Results of a computed tomography angiography in an individual with intact circulation.

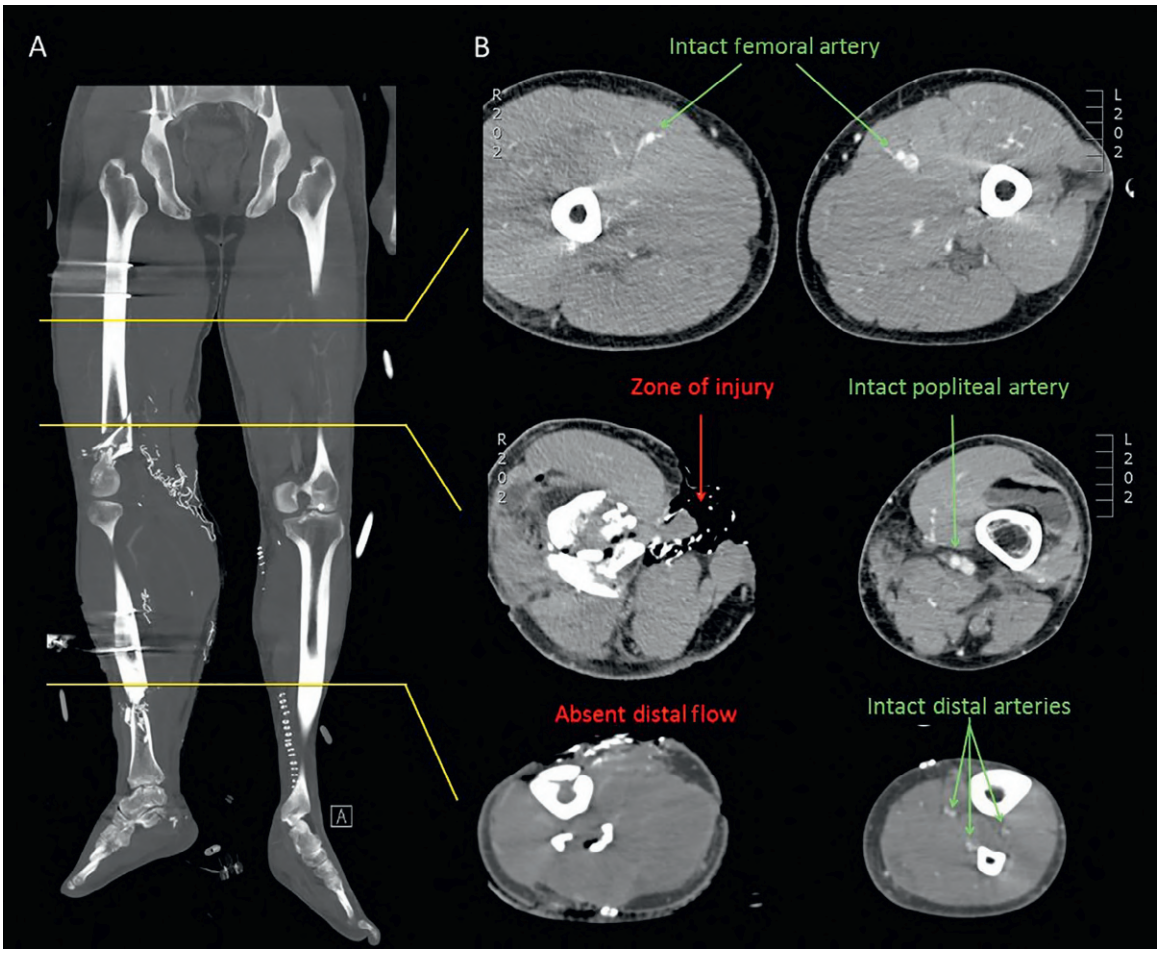


Fig. 19.2 (A) Coronal computed tomography of lower extremity in a patient who sustained a blast injury. (B) Axial cross section of computed tomography angiography proximal to the zone of injury, at the zone of injury, and distal to the zone of injury. Note the absence of flow to the distal vasculature in the limb. Vascular repair in this patient was not successful, resulting in a transtibial amputation.

cerebrovascular disease, kidney disease, and visual impairment) provide additional challenges for healing, early mobility after amputation, and the prosthetic rehabilitation process. Furthermore, chronic wounds resulting from either vascular insufficiency or neuropathy further jeopardize the viability of the extremity by providing an avenue for infection. When infected neuropathic or vascular wounds fail nonoperative management, amputation may be indicated, sometimes on an urgent or emergent basis.[36-38]

The management of PAD is a complex undertaking, and consultation with a vascular surgeon is advised to determine revascularization options and which amputation level is most likely to heal. This complexity is reflected by the numerous classification systems that have been designed to describe the disease process and, in limited cases, direct therapy.[39] Without timely revascularization, amputation rates approach 40%, and population-based studies have shown amputation rates for critical limb ischemia to be highest in regions of the country with the least intensive vascular care.[40-42] The optimal approach to critical limb ischemia (endovascular vs. open surgical techniques) has yet to be defined; however, national trends have recently reported an increase in the proportion of endovascular procedures as compared with open procedures, as well as a decrease in major amputations performed.[43] The best evidence is likely to emerge from the ongoing multicenter randomized controlled trial Best Endovascular versus Best Surgical Therapy in Patients with Critical Limb Ischemia (BEST-CLI).[44]

Amputation is often the best option when arterial anatomy precludes bypass or if severity of disease is such that bypass cannot salvage irreversibly ischemic and gangrenous tissue. Patients with complex medical conditions at high risk for intraoperative and postoperative complications may also be considered for amputation to minimize the risk of serial vascular procedures.[45] Revascularization can also be considered as an adjunct to amputation in an attempt improve healing and preserve amputation level.[46] However, given the systemic nature of the disease process and associated comorbidities, revision to a more proximal amputation level commonly occurs. Reamputation rates vary by amputation level—approximately 34% of foot and ankle amputations and 15% of transtibial amputations progress to a more proximal level of limb loss.[2] Because vascular and neuropathic disease are systemic illnesses, these patients are at risk for compromise of both lower limbs.[47] After amputation of one limb, careful monitoring of vascular status and skin condition and appropriate conservative care of the intact limb and foot are essential. This is particularly true in the postoperative-preprosthetic period when there is single limb ambulation with assistive devices, as well as in the months and years following initial amputation.[48,49]

TRAUMA

Incidence and Patient Population

In the United States, trauma accounts for up to 6% of all lower extremity amputations, with the most common causes being motor vehicle accidents, falls, firearms, or machinery; however, due to the greater life expectancy of trauma-related amputees, approximately 20% of persons living with lower limb loss experienced amputations due to trauma.[9,50] In areas of the world where there is current or recent armed conflict, traumatic amputations are more likely to be the result of improvised explosive devices, land mines, grenades, shrapnel, or direct gunfire.[51] Many of the injuries sustained by coalition personnel during the recent conflicts in Iraq and Afghanistan involve limb-threatening trauma.[52-54] Since the beginning of combat operations in 2001, nearly 1700 major limb amputations have been sustained by U.S. military personnel.[55]

In contrast to amputations performed in the setting of vasculopathy, amputations following trauma are more likely to be performed on young, otherwise healthy individuals.[9] As a result, these patients often have the potential to return to a high level of function following amputation and are likely to be reliant on their residual limb and prosthesis for many years following their injuries.

Evaluation of the Threatened Limb

Depending on the mechanism of injury, trauma may result in an acute amputation or (more commonly) in open fractures with limb-threatening soft tissue damage (Fig. 19.3). Open fractures result in a high likelihood of infection as a consequence of introduced environmental microorganisms, ischemia caused by vascular compromise, and tissue necrosis due to direct damage.[56] The most commonly used classification scheme for open fractures, the Gustilo-Anderson classification, uses both wound size and vascular status to stratify the severity of the injury (Table 19.3). Although originally developed for open tibia fractures only, it is commonly applied to all extremity fractures and provides a common language to describe open injuries. The threatened limb must undergo a thorough assessment of both limb-specific and patient factors prior to proceeding with amputation or limb salvage. Considerations include severity of bone and soft tissue loss, adequacy of arterial blood supply, neuromotor and sensory function of the extremity, potential for prosthetic use, recovery time, and anticipated long-term functional status and quality of life.

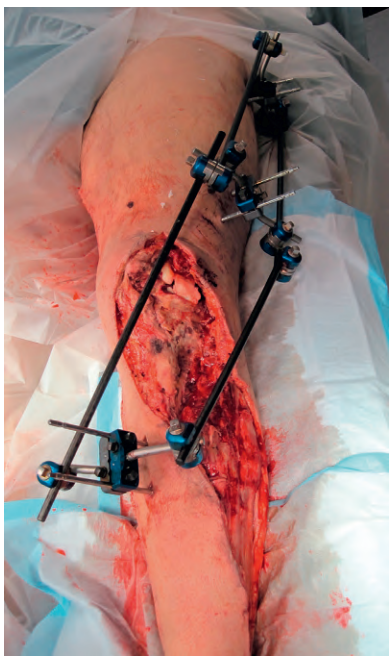


Fig. 19.3 Clinical photograph of a Gustilo-Anderson type 3B distal femur fracture with external fixation in place. This patient ultimately required transfemoral amputation.

Table 19.3 Gustilo-Anderson Classification of Open Fractures

Type	Description
1	Open clean wound <1 cm in length
2	Open wound >1 cm and <10 cm without extensive soft tissue damage
3A	Open wound >10 cm with extensive soft tissue damage but able to be closed
3B	Open wound that requires rotational or free tissue transfer for bony coverage
3C	Associated vascular injury that requires repair for viability of the limb

Adapted from Gustilo RB, Anderson JT. Prevention of Infection in the treatment of one thousand and twenty-five open fractures of long bone, retrospective and prospective analyses. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1976;58 (4):453–458.

Limb Salvage Versus Reconstruction

Advances in trauma care and surgical techniques, including microsurgery and bone transport, have increased the likelihood that a traumatized limb can be preserved. However, not all limbs can or should be saved, which presents the surgeon and patient with an often difficult decision to make. Although there are a number of decision-making models available that attempt to quantify the factors involved when such a difficult decision is necessary (e.g., Predictive Salvage Index, Mangled Extremity Severity Score, Limb Salvage Index, Hanover Fracture Scale), few accurately predict the fate of an injured extremity, although specificity in predicting successful limb salvage is fair to good.[57-60] Suggested absolute indications for amputation include blunt or contaminated traumatic amputations, a mangled extremity in a critically injured patient in shock, or a limb with a warm ischemia time of greater than 6 hours.[61,62]

The best available evidence to guide decision-making comes from the Lower Extremity Assessment Project (LEAP), a multicenter, prospective observational study that tracked outcomes for 601 patients with limb-threatening injuries who underwent either limb salvage or amputation.[63] In light of important limitations, such as the lack of randomization, the study remains controversial and has been cited by advocates of both limb salvage and amputation. What the LEAP data have shown is that long-term outcomes (e.g., return to work, perceived health status) are generally poor for both primary amputation and successful limb salvage and reconstruction patients. Furthermore, outcomes are often driven more by economic,

social, and personal resource factors rather than the initial treatment selected.[63,64]

A multivariate analysis of factors influencing surgeons' decision to perform a primary amputation in the LEAP study found a clear hierarchy with degree of soft tissue injury by far the most important component, followed by nerve function, vascular status, and extent of bony injury.[65] However, the mere absence of plantar sensation, once thought to be an important indicator of the need for amputation, has been found not to impact outcomes as the majority of patients regain sensation by 2 years after injury, and some of those with allegedly normal sensation on presentation lose this function.[65,66] Overall complication rates for both limb salvage and amputation groups are significant; however, the complication profiles (and the expected surgical course) differ between the two.[67] Given the need for multiple reconstructive procedures, patients undergoing limb salvage generally have much higher rates of rehospitalization and can expect complications to occur for up to a year following initial injury.[67] In contrast, complications in patients undergoing amputation generally resolve within 6 months. Individuals and their families must be informed of the pros and cons of limb salvage versus amputation, including risk of infection and failure, as well as intensity and time frame for rehabilitation and likelihood of returning to premorbid functional levels.[68]

In terms of the cost of care, early expenditures for both limb salvage and reconstruction were found to be similar. As might be expected due to the frequent need for multiple surgical procedures associated with limb salvage, rehospitalization costs were much higher in the reconstruction group. However, the substantial cost of prosthetic devices resulted in overall higher costs at 2 years for the amputation group. The lifetime cost of amputate care is estimated to be three times higher, again primarily due to prosthesis-related expenses.[69]

Considerations Unique to Traumatic Amputations

Initial management of trauma patients with a limb-threatening injury should focus on patient stabilization, resuscitation, and control of hemorrhage followed by thorough débridement of all contaminated wounds. An aggressive initial débridement should be performed, with removal of all devitalized muscle, skin, and bone that is devoid of soft tissue attachments. Wounds are then irrigated with normal saline, using gravity or low-flow irrigation.[70] In the vast majority of cases, definitive closure should not be attempted at the time of initial débridement. Serial débridement allows for nonviable tissue to declare itself, thus allowing for judicious removal and preservation of soft tissue that can help to preserve the length of the residual limb.[56] Accordingly, guillotine-style amputations should be avoided in most instances because this unnecessarily sacrifices soft tissue coverage. Diligent preservation of viable soft tissue may result in flaps of viable muscle and skin that do not fit classically described flaps for amputation closure and thus are considered atypical flaps or "flaps of opportunity." In general, irrigation and débridement are performed every 48 to 72 hours until the wound is considered clean and devoid of nonviable tissue and the patient is medically stable and suitable for attempted closure. Negative pressure wound therapy is a useful tool in managing open wounds during frequent trips to the operating room (Fig. 19.4), and local antibiotic delivery via antibiotic-impregnated polymethylmethacrylate (i.e., bone cement) beads is a common tactic used in the hope of mitigating infection.[56,71] The timing of wound closure is a matter of clinical judgment, and, in certain cases, definitive closure may include the use of split-thickness skin grafts, local flaps, or free tissue transfers in an effort to preserve amputation length.[72] Although associated with high complication rates, fixation of fractures proximal to a traumatic amputation can performed to preserve functional joint level or salvage residual limb length.[73]

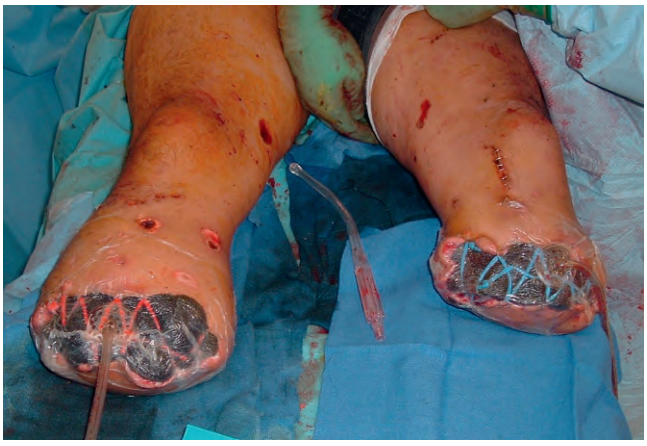


Fig. 19.4 Patient with bilateral traumatic transtibial amputations with negative pressure wound therapy in place. This technique allows for efficient management of open wounds in between multiple surgical débridement. Note also the elastic vessel loops in place on each wound, allowing for continuous tension to prevent retraction of the skin edges and preserve maximal soft tissue coverage.

NEOPLASM

Incidence and Patient Population

Neoplasm represents the least common indication for lower extremity amputation, with less than 1% of amputations performed for malignant or locally aggressive bone or soft tissue tumors.[2] The term sarcoma refers to malignant tumors that arise primarily from embryonic mesoderm and can be broadly categorized into tumors of bone or soft tissue. Seventy-five percent of all extremity sarcomas are observed in the lower extremities.[74,75] The incidence of tumors of bone and soft tissue demonstrate two age peaks: the first occurs in adolescents and young adults (e.g., osteosarcoma, Ewing sarcoma), with a second peak in mid- and late-life adults (especially metastatic).[76] Advances in diagnostic imaging, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and reconstructive surgical techniques have made limb salvage a viable option in the treatment of many tumors. Currently, consideration of amputation as a treatment option is limited to only the most aggressive tumors. Rates of amputation at tertiary centers for extremity sarcoma are reported to be less than 10%.[77]

Evaluation of the Patient

The initial evaluation of a patient with a suspected bone or soft tissue tumor includes a detailed history, physical

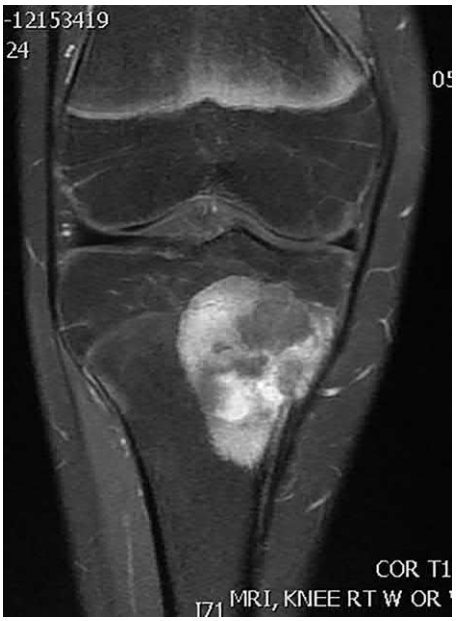


Fig. 19.5 Coronal T1 postcontrast sequence of the knee demonstrating a malignant neoplasm (osteogenic sarcoma) of the proximal tibia.

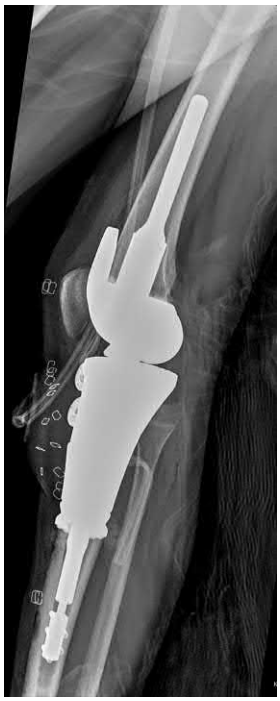


Fig. 19.6 Postoperative lateral radiograph of the same patient's knee shown in Fig. 19.4, now with a custom megaprosthesis used for limb-sparing surgery.

examination, and plain radiographs of the anatomic region of concern. Further cross-sectional imaging with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI, ideally) and/or computed tomography helps to characterize the lesion location, size, extent, and relationship to vital neurovascular structures (Fig. 19.5). Other studies such as bone scan or positron emission tomography may be indicated in certain cases. Although a select few types of lesions can be diagnosed by imaging alone, many will require biopsy to obtain a tissue diagnosis.[78] Patients requiring biopsy should be referred to an orthopedic oncologist. Prior studies have demonstrated significantly higher rates of diagnostic error for biopsies performed at referring institutions. Moreover, biopsies not performed by the treating surgeon frequently result in alterations to treatment and an ultimate change in the patient's clinical course.[79] The optimal care of patients with a musculoskeletal tumor requires a team of professionals including an orthopedic oncologist and a radiologist, pathologist, radiation oncologist, and medical oncologist.

Therapists must also be aware of the impact of chemotherapy and radiation treatments on healing soft tissue and bone; on peripheral sensation; and on physiologic response to exercise and activity, as well as the individual's overall health status, immune response, prognosis, and level of energy.[80,81] The most successful rehabilitation programs are individualized and adapt to any adverse effects of concurrent therapeutic interventions. Individuals with recent diagnosis of bone cancer often find significant support in interacting with others who have previously rehabilitated from limb-sparing or amputation surgery.[82]

Limb-Sparing Surgery Versus Amputation

Historically, most tumors of bone were managed by amputation with adjunctive chemotherapy or radiation.[83] In the modern era, current reconstruction techniques using allograft bone, endoprostheses, and arthroplasty, along with a combination of multiagent chemotherapy, radiation, or isolated limb perfusion with tumor necrosis factors, may be used in an effort to preserve the limb (Fig. 19.6).[84-87] These strategies have significantly reduced the number of tumor-related amputations performed each year. Amputation may be necessary when there is large, multifocal, high-grade, sarcoma, pathologic fracture, or significant involvement of neurovascular structures or if the tumor is chemoresistant.[88-91] Amputation may also be indicated in the case of local recurrence following previous limb salvage.[91] The decision to perform limb salvage or amputation is multifactorial but centers around four important considerations: impact of treatment choice on patient survival, short- and long-term morbidities, the function of a salvaged limb versus a prosthesis, and psychosocial impact on the patient.[92] The potential for recurrent disease and subsequent metastases or death has been the primary concern over attempts at limb salvage surgery in the setting of malignant disease. However, a landmark study published in 1982 found no difference in overall or disease-specific survival in patients with soft tissue sarcoma that were randomized to major amputation or limb-sparing surgery with adjuvant radiotherapy.[93] Subsequent studies for other types of sarcoma have confirmed that limb salvage surgery does not jeopardize survival. Indeed, multiple recent meta-analyses of amputation versus limb salvage for osteosarcoma found a higher 5-year survival rate for limb salvage procedures without an increased risk of local recurrence.[94-96] In the modern era, patients who undergo primary amputation for an extremity sarcoma are more likely to have had loss of function of the limb due to tumor involvement or lacked a feasible salvage option due to the need to remove critical limb structures or to achieve appropriate tumor margins.[77]

Patients should be counseled in regard to morbidity associated with limb-sparing surgery and with amputation. Although limb-sparing surgeries can vary drastically, these procedures generally are associated with a higher rate of perioperative morbidity than amputation. Many complications are related to large endoprosthetic implants used to reconstruct resected bone. Frequently encountered complications include aseptic loosening, deep infection, instability, and implant or periprosthetic fracture.[85] Infection rates following endoprosthetic reconstruction of lower extremity tumors are approximately 10% and have been reported as high as 25% in some series, far higher than for conventional arthroplasty.[97] Nearly 10% of patients who undergo limb salvage initially may ultimately require an amputation, most commonly due to local recurrence or infection.[98]

Objective measures such as survival or local recurrence are relatively straightforward to collect. In contrast, the effect of treatment choice on an individual's function or quality of life is far harder to measure. In general, no studies have demonstrated a difference in functional outcomes for limb salvage or amputation for oncologic indications.[99] However, more proximal levels of amputation (i.e., proximal to the knee) are generally associated with greater functional limitations. Limb salvage, rather than amputation, at these levels has been shown to result in better measures of gait efficiency, but the impact on a patient's perception of quality of life is less clear.[100,101]

LIMB DEFICIENCY DISORDERS

Limb deficiency disorders encompass a wide range of congenital anomalies that involve hypoplasia or aplasia of one or more of the bones of the appendicular skeleton. Lower limb deficiency disorders are estimated to occur in approximately 2 per 10,000 live births.[102] Nearly half of patients with lower limb deficiency are born with major anomalies of the internal organs, axial skeleton, or central nervous system.[102,103] Deficiencies are broadly categorized as transverse or longitudinal.[104] Transverse deficiencies are perpendicular to the long axis of the limb, thus resulting in the amputation of the limb at the level of the deficiency, such as the congenital absence of a foot. In contrast, longitudinal deficiency affects the long axis of the limb, as in the absence of a fibula. Transverse deficiencies are the most common type, often due to amniotic bands.[102] The rehabilitation, prosthetic, and eventual elective surgical management of children with limb deficiency is linked to age-appropriate developmental status, with the goal of enhancing function while minimizing deformity.[105] The reader is referred to Chapter 29 for in-depth information on developmentally appropriate preprosthetic and prosthetic activities for mobility and skill, as well as discussion of the therapist's and prosthetist's roles in counseling and educating the family and child about rehabilitation and prosthetic alternatives.

Orthopedic management of children with congenital limb deficiency focuses on enhancing appropriate growth of the residual limb, maintaining relatively equal limb length or proximal joint levels, enhancing joint function, and ensuring appropriate prosthetic fit. Surgical treatment options include a wide variety of interventions, ranging from relatively simple such as minor revisions to optimize the shape of the limb to more complex such as surgical distraction procedures to lengthen bone, conversion to a conventional level of amputation or disarticulation, or, in select instances, reconstruction involving a combination of surgical reorientation and arthrodesis.[106-109]

By way of example, children with severe partial longitudinal deficiency of the femur (proximal focal femoral deficiency) may be managed with a Van Nes procedure, known as a rotationplasty in which the tibia is repositioned 180 degrees and fused to the residual femur (if present) or pelvis so that the reversed ankle can function as a knee joint (Figs. 19.7 and 19.8).[110] Alternatively, isolated arthrodesis of the knee and ankle disarticulation can achieve a weight-tolerant residual limb that closely resembles a traditional transfemoral residual limb.[107] Deficiencies of the fibula or tibia may be managed, depending on the severity of the

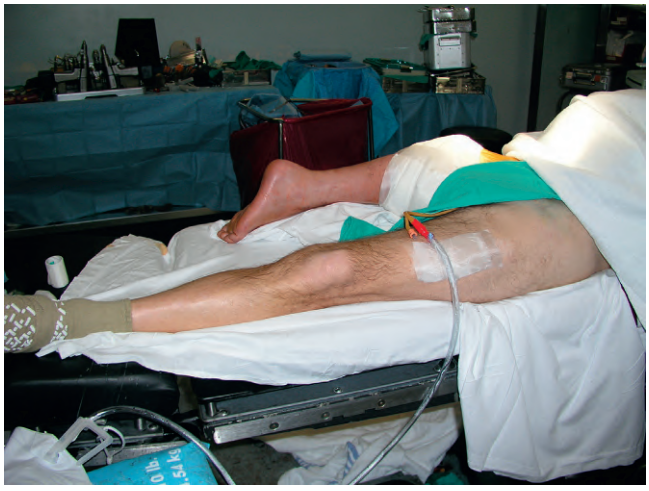


Fig. 19.7 Clinical photograph of patient who underwent right lower extremity rotationplasty for a malignant neoplasm in the right thigh. Note the right ankle has been rotated 180 degrees from its native orientation to function as a knee joint.

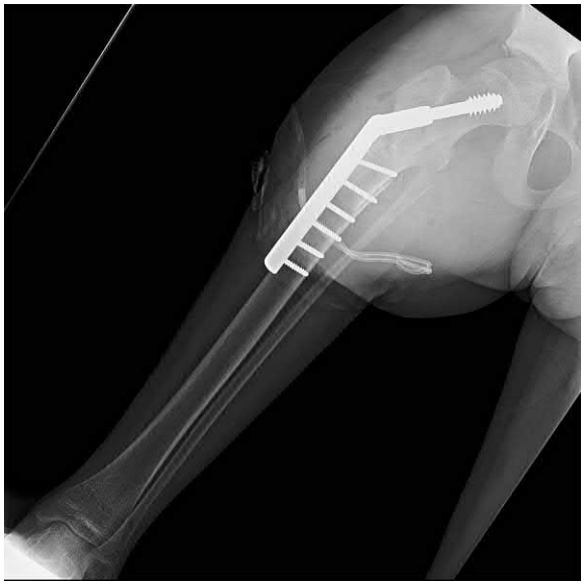


Fig. 19.8 Radiograph of same patient in Fig. 19.6 demonstrating fixation of tibia to the proximal residual femur. The ankle has been positioned at the same level as the contralateral knee.

defect and resulting deformity, by custom footwear and shoe lift, epiphysiodesis, corrective osteotomy, limb lengthening, ankle disarticulation, or conversion to traditional transtibial amputation.[111,112] Regardless of the treatment option selected, the goal is to maximize ambulatory capability by creating a functional limb that is equal to the contralateral side.

Surgical Principles of Amputation

DETERMINING THE LEVEL OF AMPUTATION

Determination of the appropriate level of amputation is guided by two principles: soft tissue coverage and preservation of residual limb length. An adequately vascularized soft tissue envelope must be present to ensure successful healing.[113] Preoperative physical examination and other previously mentioned measures such as the ABI, transcutaneous oximetry, and angiography provide key information about the adequacy of blood flow to the threatened portion of the extremity. In the setting of traumatic amputations, repeat examination of remaining soft tissue during serial irrigation and débridement prior to definitive closure aids in the determination of viable tissue.[56] Residual limb length plays an important role in the mechanical work able to be performed, as well as with prosthesis options and fit. Furthermore, as many functional anatomic joints as reasonably possible should be preserved. The energy required for ambulation increases significantly with more proximal amputations.[114,115] Remaining muscles and joints must compensate for the absence of muscle function distal to the level of amputation. For example, patients with transfemoral amputation adapt to limb loss with trunk and pelvic movement asymmetries to facilitate weight transfer during walking. In contrast, patients with transtibial amputations do not demonstrate the need for such adaptations.[116]

At times, tension occurs between the goals of length preservation and adequate soft tissue coverage. For example, for individuals with plantar neuropathic ulcers and osteomyelitis, a transmetatarsal amputation (TMA) has the potential to preserve the ankle joint and permit functional gait without prosthesis and is often less difficult for individuals to accept psychologically.[117] However, if there is delayed or failed healing, the risks of complications associated with limited activity and bed rest (e.g., further deconditioning, pneumonia, deep venous thrombosis, decubitus ulcer), and repeated anesthesia if surgical revisions to more proximal levels become necessary, can be significant.[118] In these instances an initial surgery at the transtibial level might improve the chances for optimal rehabilitation outcome.[119] In individuals with traumatic crush injury to the proximal tibia but an intact knee joint, an extremely short transtibial residual limb may actually be more difficult to manage prosthetically than a long transfemoral residual limb: the reduced surface area around a short residual tibia and fibula for weight bearing within the socket increases pressure on skin and soft tissue of the residual limb, reducing functional wearing time of the prosthesis despite the advantage of preservation of the anatomical knee joint. Put succinctly, limb length should be preserved so long as it does not result in a nonhealing, painful, or dysfunctional residual limb. This includes atypical, novel, or extra-long amputations such as a transtibial amputation below the level of the midtibia. Due to both poor soft tissue coverage and limited space available for prostheses, these levels risk leaving the patient with the limitations of both the more proximal and more distal amputation levels, without the full benefits of either.

TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Bone

Following amputation, the residual bone of the limb will be required to transmit force between the body and the prosthetic device. This transmission of force may occur either through the end of a resected bone as in a transfemoral amputation or through a disarticulated joint as in a Syme amputation. To accommodate this function, residual bone should be surgically contoured to allow for a smooth weight-bearing surface. Bony prominences not covered by adequate soft tissue should be resected.

Soft Tissue and Muscle

Careful management of skin and muscle at the site of amputation allows for the creation of a durable soft tissue envelope that can withstand the stress of weight bearing and prosthetic fit. Furthermore, appropriate muscle coverage can allow for improved control and alignment of the residual limb.[120,121] In general, there are two ways of securing muscle about the end of a residual limb: myoplasty or myodesis. Myoplasty involves suturing of a residual muscle to its antagonist over the end of the residual limb to create physiologic tension between the two muscle groups. However, this is generally not recommended in isolation because tension may not be achieved, and deep bursa formation may occur as a result of the unstable muscle mass.[56,120] Myodesis involves suturing residual muscle and fascia directly to bone through drill holes or to the periosteum. This technique results in the most structurally stable construct and allows for secure soft tissue padding, preserved muscle bulk, and functional muscle use during ambulation.[122,123] In the absence of myodesis, residual muscles are likely to experience greater atrophy, and contractures may result from unbalanced muscle units. Skin flaps should be kept as thick as possible, particularly in the setting of dysvascular amputations as the underlying subcutaneous tissue provides blood flow to the skin. In certain patients without compromised circulation, split-thickness skin grafts, local rotational flaps, or free tissue transfer can be used in "heroic" efforts to preserve length and amputation level, particularly just distal to the knee or elbow.[72,124] Patients should be counseled that, although these techniques result in successful preservation, they are associated with frequent complications. Although it is important to achieve adequate soft tissue coverage, this effort should not be taken to the extreme. Excessive, often hypermobile skin and soft tissue at the end of the limb should be avoided as it interferes with both prosthesis wear and control.

Nerve

Following transection of a peripheral nerve, regenerating axons from the proximal portion form a disorganized mass of abnormal nerve as they attempt to reconnect with the distal stump. Although presumably all transected nerves form a neuroma, not all are symptomatic. Ebrahimazed

et al. found a 13% rate of symptomatic neuromata in transtibial amputations and a 32% rate in transfemoral amputations.[125,126] Surgical management is frequently required—symptomatic neuromata were the indication for 11% of revision procedures in a retrospective review of 300 consecutive combat-related lower extremity amputations.[127] A neuroma is most likely to be symptomatic when it forms in an anatomic region where it is exposed to pressure, stretch, or vascular pulsations. A multitude of both prophylactic and therapeutic techniques have been described to address symptomatic neuromata; however, there is no clear "gold standard" treatment or prevention option.[128-130] At present, the most commonly performed and simplest procedure is a traction neurectomy in which the nerve is pulled distally and then transected.[131] Upon transection, the nerve retracts into the limb, ideally in an area of robust soft tissue coverage. This does not prevent neuroma formation but rather is intended to place the transected nerve end in an area with robust soft tissue padding well away from ligated vessels and the end of the residual limb. Recently, there have been a number of promising techniques for nerve management in the setting of amputation, as discussed later.

Vessels

Special attention should be paid to hemostasis and management of blood vessels. The use of tourniquet during the procedure allows for improved visualization and hemostasis intraoperatively and has not been shown to result in increased healing complications, even in the case of severe PAD.[132,133] Major vessels should be identified and ligated with nonabsorbable suture. Larger blood vessels, such as the popliteal artery, should be double ligated, particularly in patients with normal blood flow. The tourniquet should be deflated prior to closure and meticulous hemostasis obtained. Suction drains are routinely used to prevent accumulation of a hematoma postoperatively.

Postoperative Care

DRESSINGS

The completion of the surgical procedure is but the first stage of the intervention. A multidisciplinary team of physical medicine specialists, physical therapists, occupational therapists, and prosthetists is required to achieve the ultimate goal of restoring function via fitting of an appropriate prosthetic limb. The average time to prosthetic fitting varies widely, depending on the level of amputation and patient- and health care system–related factors. For transtibial amputations, the time to prosthetic fitting following amputation has been reported to range between 19 and 76 days.[134] Our preference is to fit most traumatic, oncologic, and congenital amputations between 4 and 6 weeks postoperatively. This period is substantially longer for dysvascular patients, to ensure that adequate superficial and deep wound healing, which is slower in such patients, has occurred.

The primary concerns in the transition from amputation to functional residual limb are adequate wound healing, edema control, prevention of joint contractures, and rapid return to activity. Toward those ends, a number of philosophies exist with regards to postoperative dressings and wound care. For the most part, patients are kept non–weight bearing on the involved extremity until the wounds are healed. Commonly used dressing techniques include soft dressing, rigid dressings, and immediate postoperative prosthesis (IPOP). When a soft dressing is used, a sterile dressing is applied to the surgical incision and the limb is wrapped in a compressive bandage. The limb is kept elevated, and, depending on the amputation level, elastic shrinkers are applied as soon as postoperative drains are removed. Alternatively, rigid dressing consists of a well-padded plaster of Paris splint or cast that is applied to the limb at the conclusion of surgery (Fig. 19.9). Potential advantages of rigid dressings include edema control, prevention of joint contractures, and a shorter time to prosthetic fitting.[134] In contrast, soft dressing may be better suited for amputations with tenuous skin closure because it allows for greater ease of wound inspection and decreased risk of pressure ulceration. Removable rigid dressings (RRDs) may provide the best of both techniques by providing the benefits of a rigid dressing with regard to contracture prevention and protection from external trauma, while at the same time providing ease of access for regular wound inspection.[135] Regardless of the selected technique, the goals remain the same: reduced edema, controlled pain, contracture prevention, and a stable limb volume that is healed and amenable to prosthetic fitting.

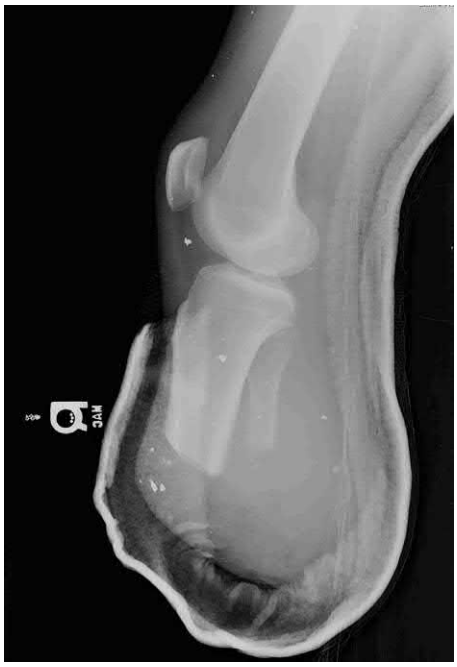


Fig. 19.9 Postoperative lateral radiograph of transtibial amputation demonstrating rigid plaster of Paris splint, molded to keep knee in an extended position. Note that the splint material stops short of the patella, an area with prominent subcutaneous bone that is prone to ulceration with rigid dressings.

As suggested by the name, a patient with an IPOP is fitted with a temporary prosthesis immediately following surgery. Reported advantages include early ambulation and rehabilitation, which may reduce the sequelae of prolonged immobilization, as well as providing a psychological

benefit.[136-138] However, the success of this technique has been demonstrated in primarily nontraumatic-related amputations, and concerns persist regarding wound healing and early detection of infection that may preclude early mobilization.[56]

PAIN MANAGEMENT

Patients undergoing lower extremity amputation commonly experience significant acute postoperative pain, with studies reporting moderate to severe residual limb pain (RLP) in 30% to 53% of patients.[139,140] Patients with acute postoperative pain are thought to be at higher risk for developing chronic RLP; thus much effort has been devoted to optimizing postoperative pain management following amputation.[140] Current recommended strategies include a multimodal approach using interventional methods with perineural regional or epidural analgesia and pharmacologic agents including acetaminophen, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatories, gabapentin, ketamine, and opioid therapy, as well as so-called alternative measures (e.g., acupuncture, biofeedback) as needed.[141] Given the complexity of analgesic techniques and the multiple classes of medication involved, consultation with a pain medicine specialist should be strongly considered, both for optimization of perioperative pain control and for management of potential chronic pain issues.

Complications

Unfortunately, complications frequently occur following lower extremity amputations. Complications can range from minor, such as superficial wound necrosis, to major, such as the need for reamputation at a more proximal level or death. A study of 2879 patients who underwent a major amputation following trauma found a 27.5% rate of major postoperative complications.[50] Data from the LEAP study further lend insight into complication profiles after trauma-related amputations. Over the course of 24 months following surgery, a total of 128 complications were reported in 149 patients who underwent amputation during the initial hospitalization. Wound infection (34.2%), wound necrosis (13.4%), phantom limb pain (PLP) (13.4%), and "stump" complications (10.7%) were most frequently reported.[67] Complications following amputations for vascular insufficiency are also regrettably common, with one multicenter prospective clinical database study finding an overall complication rate of 43%, with nearly 20% of patients being readmitted to the hospital within 30 days of the index procedure.[142] Minor amputations are also subject to complicated postoperative courses. One retrospective study of 717 patients undergoing toe amputations and TMAs found a readmission rate of 13.9%, with infection, ischemia, and nonhealing wounds as the leading causes. Nearly all (95%) of those with complications underwent reamputation, with almost two thirds (64%) requiring a transtibial or more proximal amputation.[143] Risk factors for readmission were largely nonmodifiable, including hypertension, PAD, and renal insufficiency.

WOUND HEALING

If wound healing problems are encountered, the initial step in evaluation should be re-evaluation of the amputation level. This is of particular relevance for dysvascular amputations. Previously mentioned objective measures including ABI and transcutaneous oxygen levels should be used to determine healing potential.[144] Two other key and potentially modifiable risk factors include nutrition and smoking status. Multiple authors have cited a cutoff of less than 3.5 g/dL albumin and total lymphocyte count less than 1500 cells per cubic millimeter as markers of malnutrition and a potential risk factor for wound healing following amputation.[145-148] At a minimum, nutritional intake should be optimized in the postoperative period and, if possible, preoperatively. Smoking compromises cutaneous blood flow velocity, increases the risk of microthrombi, and has been shown to be associated with a 2.5 times higher risk of infection and reamputation in smokers as compared with nonsmokers.[149] Similarly, being a current smoker predicted more complications (OR, 1.8) in transfemoral amputations performed due to critical limb ischemia.[150] In the trauma patient population, current smokers with limb-threatening open tibia fractures were found to be twice as likely to develop an infection compared with nonsmokers.[151] Although often difficult, the topic of smoking cessation should be discussed with patients undergoing amputation. Patients may benefit from counseling, nicotine replacement therapy (itself a vasoconstrictor), and pharmacologic agents such as antidepressants.[152]

FLUID COLLECTIONS

The risk of developing a postoperative hematoma can be mitigated by meticulous hemostasis during the procedure, the use of a drain, and adequate compression via either soft or rigid dressings. Surgical dogma suggests that a hematoma can compromise wound healing by serving as a culture medium for bacterial infection and may require evacuation in the operating room. However, the presence of an acute postoperative fluid collection is not indicative of an infection in and of itself. In a study of patients with combat-related amputations, more than half demonstrated fluid collection within the early (<3 months) postoperative period (Fig. 19.10).[153] The only factors associated with return to the operating room and a diagnosis of infection were clinical findings of erythema, warmth, and wound drainage. Nonetheless, given the incidence of postoperative infection following both trauma- and vascular-related amputations, wounds should be monitored closely.[67,154]

During the perioperative period, standard guidelines for the prevention of surgical site infection should be followed, including timely administration of antibiotics preoperatively, careful antiseptic technique, and thorough irrigation with normal saline in the setting of traumatic injuries. Topical, intrawound antibiotic application may also prove to play a role in infection prevention and is the focus of ongoing prospective clinical trial.[155]

HETEROTOPIC OSSIFICATION

Following amputation, particularly high-energy traumatic amputations, bone may form in the soft tissues surrounding a residual limb. This process, known as heterotopic ossification (HO), has been noted to occur in nearly 65% of high-energy, combat-related amputations (Fig. 19.11).[156]

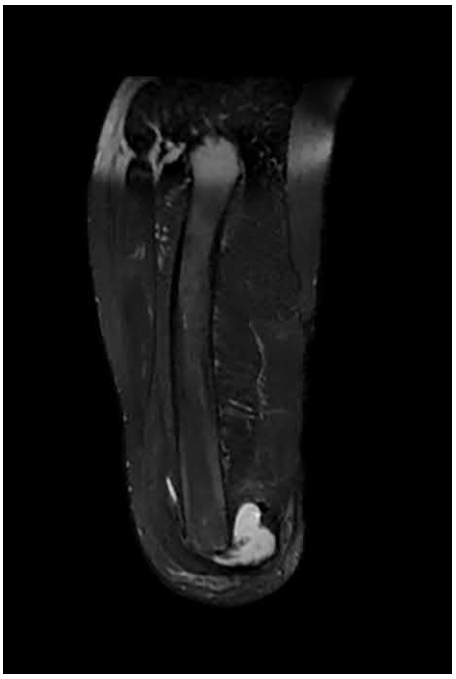


Fig. 19.10 Sagittal T2 sequence magnetic resonance imaging of transfemoral amputation demonstrating fluid collection at the distal end of the residual femur.

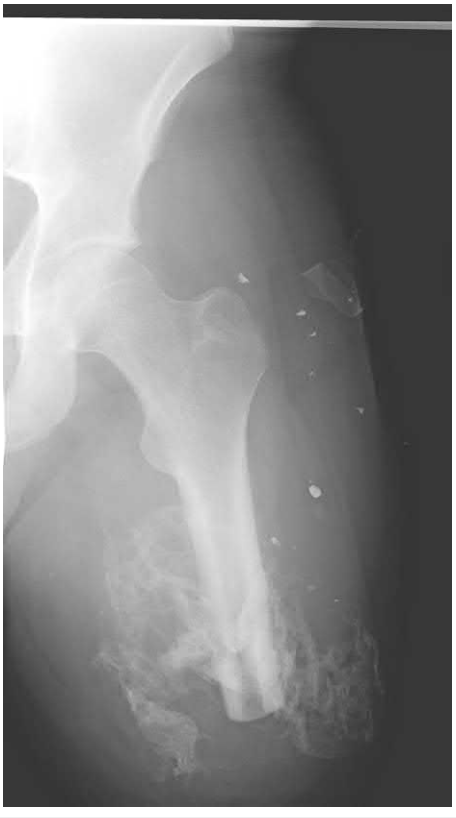


Fig. 19.11 Radiograph of transfemoral amputation with severe heterotopic ossification surrounding the distal portion of the residual femur.

Although asymptomatic HO can simply be observed, surgical excision is the only available treatment option for prominent subcutaneous bone that interferes with prosthetic fit and wear. In a study of reoperation following combat-related lower extremity amputations, HO excision was found to be the second most common indication (24%) for return to the operating room.[127] The etiology of post-traumatic HO is thought to be due to a combination of both local wound conditions and a systemic inflammatory response to injury.[157] Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory therapy and low-dose irradiation are effective measures for prevention of HO following total hip arthroplasty and surgical treatment of acetabular fractures, but concerns over both safety and feasibility in trauma-related amputations have led to a search for alternate prophylactic agents.[158-161] Bear in mind that HO does not occur exclusively in combat-related amputations—a retrospective review of 158 civilian patients with lower limb amputations found a 23% rate of HO, although the severity of HO formation and need for surgical excision was less than reported in military cohorts.[162] These differences are attributed to the lower incidence of blast mechanism and generally less severe systemic injury patterns found in civilian trauma.[156]

PAIN

Although the true prevalence of chronic amputation-related pain is unknown, several cross-sectional survey studies of patients with amputation suggest that more than 70% of individuals experience some degree of amputation-related pain, regardless of time since amputation.[163,164] Pain can be broadly categorized into PLP, RLP, or pain due to distant causes, such as a herniated disc. PLP is defined as painful sensations perceived in the missing portion of the amputated limb, whereas RLP is perceived to originate from the residuum itself. The exact pathophysiology of PLP remains unclear, but is thought to be the result of a complex interaction between the central nervous system, peripheral nervous system, and psychological factors.[165] Current methods of treatment include three broad categories: pharmacologic (nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs [NSAIDs], acetaminophen, opioids, antidepressants, anticonvulsants, *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor agonists), invasive (neurectomy, cordotomy, sympathectomy, spinal cord stimulation), and non-pharmacologic/noninvasive (mirror therapy, biofeedback, hypnosis, acupuncture). Regrettably, to date there are no treatments that provide for complete relief of PLP. However, an on going multicenter randomized controlled trial investigating optimal perioperative pain control and its ability to prevent PLP following transtibial amputation may provide the guidance needed to lessen its prevalance.[166]

RLP can most frequently be attributed to issues with prosthetic fit. Most sockets require an intimate fit to maximize function and avoid focal pressure points. If pain is increased with prosthetic wear, an evaluation for fit and alignment should be considered. Other reasons for RLP include infection, edema, or dermatologic problems. Point tenderness within the residual limb may result from bursa, muscle, bone spurs, or neuroma formation. Several promising techniques are being investigated in regard to neuroma management and will be discussed in greater detail at the end of the chapter.

Outcomes

As previously discussed, functional outcomes are intimately related to both level of amputation and the disease state leading to amputation. Distal amputations with more preserved anatomic joints result in greater patient mobility with more efficient energy expenditure.[114,167] In general, patients with trauma-related amputations are younger and have fewer medical comorbidities, resulting in superior functional outcomes. In contrast, patients undergoing dysvascular amputations have generally dismal overall survivals and much less functional outcomes. One large retrospective study found an overall survival rate of 69.7% at 1 year and 34.7% at 5 years.[168] Notably, survival for patients with transfemoral amputations (50.6% and 22.5%) was significantly worse than for transtibial amputations (74.5% and 37.8%). A separate study of major dysvascular amputations found that of those patients surviving 2 years after amputation, only half remained functionally ambulatory.[169]

Once again, the data from the LEAP study provide considerable insight into functional outcomes following trauma-related amputations. In the cohort of 161 patients who underwent amputation, functional outcomes at 2 years were generally poor, with similar Sickness Impact Profile scores among patients with transtibial, through-knee, and transfemoral amputations.[170] However, self-selected walking speeds were higher in the transtibial cohort as compared with the transfemoral cohort, and a higher percentage of patients with transtibial amputations were able to walk independently on uneven ground. Of note, patients with through-knee amputations fared worse than patients with either transtibial or transfemoral amputations, a finding that contrasted with the principles of length preservation in amputation surgery. Patients with through-knee amputations had lower self-selected walking speeds; less independence in transfer, walking, or stair climbing; and needed more help with physically demanding tasks, thus calling into question the wisdom of a through-knee amputation. The authors of the study surmised that worse functional outcomes were seen in this cohort as a result of limited soft tissue coverage at this level (i.e., long posterior flaps containing the gastrocnemius muscles generally used to cover this region are frequently absent in trauma-related amputations and were not present in 12 of the 17 through-knee amputations in that study).

A meta-analysis including 3105 patients with trauma-related lower extremity amputations lends further understanding of expected functional outcomes.[171] The author found that patients with transtibial amputations consistently demonstrate better outcomes than more proximal amputations across all outcome measures, including Short Form (36) Health Survey physical components score. A significantly higher proportion of patients with transtibial amputations (72%) and through-knee amputations (78%) were able to walk a distance greater than 500 m as compared with transfemoral amputations (55%) or bilateral amputations (50%). However, a significantly higher percentage of patients with through-knee amputation (85%) reported painful symptoms associated with the residual limb and wore their prosthesis considerably less. Overall, 70% of patients with a lower extremity amputation were able to return to work, with no statistical difference between amputation levels. However, the subgroup analysis of military patients found that only 16% of patients with a transtibial amputation were able to return to duty, whereas 11% of patients with a transfemoral amputation returned to duty. Although not as profound, decreased rates of return to duty were also demonstrated in a retrospective review of U.S. military service members with lower extremity amputation; overall, less than 50% were able to return to active duty.[172] Of particular note, this study also reported a nearly 40% rate of depressive symptoms and almost one fifth of patients screened positive for posttraumatic stress disorder. Although these statistics include both amputation and limb salvage patients, the point remains the same: the loss of a limb is a major life event and can have significant psychosocial impact. Findings were similar in a study of the civilian trauma population. Of 569 patients enrolled in the LEAP study, 48% screened positive for a likely psychological disorder at 3 months, and, at 2 years following injury, one fifth reported severe phobic anxiety or depression.[173] Despite the prevalence of these mental health concerns, only 22% of patients had received mental health services at 2 years after injury. Individuals caring for persons with limb loss must be aware of the prevalence of mental health concerns in this patient population and should facilitate access to appropriate mental health resources whenever possible.[174]

Patients with lower extremity amputations are also subject to a number of secondary health effects, mostly related to reduced mobility and biomechanical changes to ambulation patterns.

Rates of both hip and knee osteoarthritis in the intact limbs of unilateral amputees have been found to exceed that of the general population, potentially due to the increased demand placed on these joints.[175] Similarly, more than half of amputees report bothersome levels of back pain at a rate approximately twice that of the general population.[163,164] Delayed ambulation and proximal levels of amputation have also been associated with the development of low bone mineral density in patients sustaining trauma-related amputations.[176] Finally, amputation affects more than just the musculoskeletal system—there has been a long-studied association between amputation and subsequent cardiovascular risk, including the development of atherosclerosis and abdominal aortic aneurysms.[177-180] Further concerns include obesity and secondary diabetes at increased rates.[181]

Amputations of the Foot and Ankle

Amputations of one or more toes (digit, phalanx) or part of the foot are the most frequently performed surgeries in older individuals, often secondary to a nonhealing, often infected, neuropathic plantar ulcer. Individuals most vulnerable to development of plantar ulcers usually present with a combination of sensory impairment (loss of protective sensation); autonomic dysfunction (dry and brittle skin); foot deformity resulting from weakness of the intrinsic muscles of the foot; and impaired circulation that, although adequate to sustain an intact limb, is insufficient to allow healing to occur.[182] In these situations, it is especially important to determine (before amputation) the point at which limb circulation is sufficient for successful healing of the residual foot. Bear in mind that physical deconditioning due to

prolonged bed rest and systemic complications associated with repeat surgical revisions of a poorly healing amputation can substantially compromise the rehabilitation process and jeopardize the potential for a positive outcome. Amputations of the foot may also be the result of severe crush injury, land mine explosion, shrapnel wounds, or similar acute trauma to the foot. Those with partial foot amputation may require adaptive footwear, shoe filler, a passive prosthesis, or accommodative foot orthoses and may be referred to physical therapy for gait training with an appropriate assistive device.

AMPUTATIONS OF THE TOES

Phalangeal (digit) amputations are performed most often due to vascular insufficiency due to failed conservative management of a neuropathic ulcer on the plantar toe surface or when there is infection or osteomyelitis of the phalanges.[183] Digit amputation can be performed at the distal, middle, or proximal interphalangeal joints or with removal of the metatarsal head.[184] Adequate circulation for healing of the surgical wound is a prerequisite to amputation surgery at this distal level.

For removal of digits, sagittal flaps are typically used (Fig. 19.12). If there will also be resection of metatarsal head, the surgeon may opt to use a "racquet" incision. The digits are removed, either by disarticulation through the joint or transection through the shaft of the digit, using an oscillating saw. Amputation of the base of the great toe should preserve at least 1 cm of the proximal phalanx so as to allow for some retained plantar flexion at the metatarsophalangeal joint.[185] Complete loss of the hallux results in dysfunction in toe off, particularly noticeable during rapid walking or running.[186] If the base of the proximal phalanx is preserved, at least one sesamoid bone should also be saved to maintain weight-bearing function of the first metatarsal. In the case of disarticulation at the metatarsophalangeal articulation, sesamoids should be removed to prevent undue plantar pressure, particularly in the neuropathic patient.[185]

Amputation of the lesser toes causes relatively little gait disturbance; however, leaving only one or two toes in a diabetic patient may lead to concentrated pressure and subsequent ulceration, and thus it is advisable to remove all of the toes in this setting.

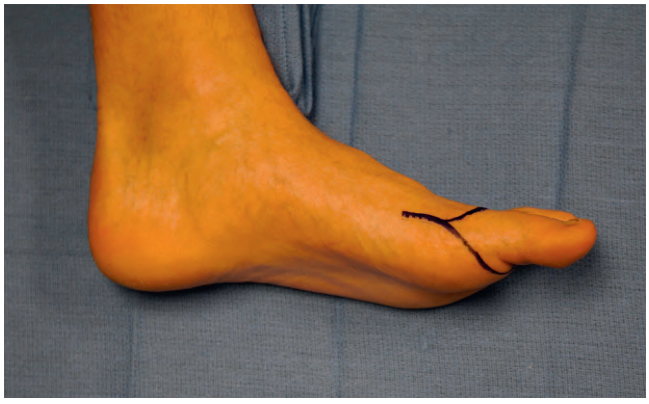


Fig. 19.12 Incision for disarticulation at the metatarsophalangeal joint. When skin conditions allow, a long plantar flap should be fashioned.

Surgical wounds are closed in a standard fashion, with the goal of a tension-free primary closure.

Toe separators may be included in the postoperative dressing to prevent drift of the remaining toes into the defect made by the amputated digit.[185]

Patients may be kept non–weight bearing or, alternatively, hind foot weight bearing only until the incisions are well healed. The individual is encouraged to keep the limb elevated as much as possible: education about avoiding prolonged dependency of the limb (i.e., elevating the limb while sitting) is essential. A stiff sole postoperative shoe may be used to protect the forefoot for several weeks or months following surgery, before returning to normal footwear. Individuals with dysvascular and neuropathic disease benefit from custom-fabricated accommodative orthoses to distribute plantar pressures and minimize the risk of developing additional neuropathic ulcers on plantar surfaces of the remaining digits and metatarsal heads.

Ray Resection

A ray resection involves removal of the toe and all or part of its corresponding metatarsal. This procedure is performed most commonly in the setting of vascular disease, neuropathic ulcer, or osteomyelitis. Regrettably, many patients undergoing partial ray resection will require reamputation at a more proximal level.[187] Border-ray resections (the first and fifth rays) are easier to perform and generally have better functional outcomes than central ray resections.[188] The gap left by central ray resection may cause difficulty with skin closure, necessitating more proximal resection of the central ray to allow the adjacent rays to drift centrally.[185]

The residual metatarsal (if any) is beveled at a 30- to 45-degree angle so that there will be no sharp edge to damage tissue during the late stance phase, as body weight rolls over the distal plantar surface of the healed residual limb. If multiple rays are resected, skin graft may be required for wound closure.[189] However, given the high rates of failure of this type of amputation at baseline, our preference is to recommend and proceed to a more proximal level of amputation if advanced skin or soft tissue coverage is required.

Ray resection may be the surgery of choice for problems of the fourth and fifth rays: as long as the first through third rays are intact, there is minimum compromise to forward progression in gait on the healed residual limb. However, when the first and second rays must be removed, there is significant disruption of weight-bearing forces during walking and a high risk of ulceration; a complete TMA managed with custom footwear with a rocker bottom often has better functional outcome than leaving the third through fifth rays intact.[190,191]

The deformity that results when multiple rays have been amputated may require an accommodative orthosis or a prosthetic filler in the shoe, along with adaptive or custom footwear to protect the residual limb from high pressures resulting from altered biomechanics during forward progression and propulsion when walking.

Transmetatarsal Amputation

A complete TMA is resection of all five metatarsals proximal to the metatarsal head. In this surgery, the goal is to preserve as much length of the shaft of the metatarsals and healthy plantar skin as possible so that the resulting residual

limb will be long enough for an effective biomechanical lever for forward progression over the foot during gait and will have enough plantar surface such that higher shear forces and pressures exerted on the shortened forefoot during the late stance phase of gait will not compromise skin condition.[192] It is difficult to predict whether primary healing is possible after TMA in persons with diabetes and critical limb ischemia. A systematic review of reoperation and reamputation after TMA reported a 33.2% rate of major amputation following the index procedure.[118]

To perform a TMA, a fish mouth–style incisions is made on the dorsal foot just proximal to the metatarsal heads and continues in a curvilinear arc along the plantar surface almost to the base of the toes (Fig. 19.13A and B). This type of incision creates a long plantar flap that will be sutured closed after bony and soft tissue elements have been excised. An oscillating saw is used to transect each of the metatarsals, and then the toes are plantar flexed to allow careful dissection of the soft tissue that will be used as the posterior flap from the bony structures being removed. The tendons and sheaths of extrinsic muscles of the foot, as well as distal attachments of intrinsic muscles, are transected; the plantar surface of residual metatarsals are beveled or rounded; and any distal nerves are resected under slight tension and allowed to retract into the residual limb. The normal cascade of the metatarsals should be recreated, progressing from distal medial to proximal lateral (Fig. 19.14A). When possible, all five metatarsal bases should be preserved for better midfoot balance and to reduce the risk of Charcot breakdown in neuropathic patients.[185] The plantar flap can be secured to the residual metatarsals via drill holes and then trimmed and debulked to fit appropriately to the dorsal incisions for a smooth wound closure.[193]

Although only tendon insertions involving toes are lost with this amputation level, muscle imbalance between dorsiflexors and plantar flexors increases as the length of a transmetatarsal residual limb decreases. This leaves individuals with short residual metatarsals at risk of developing

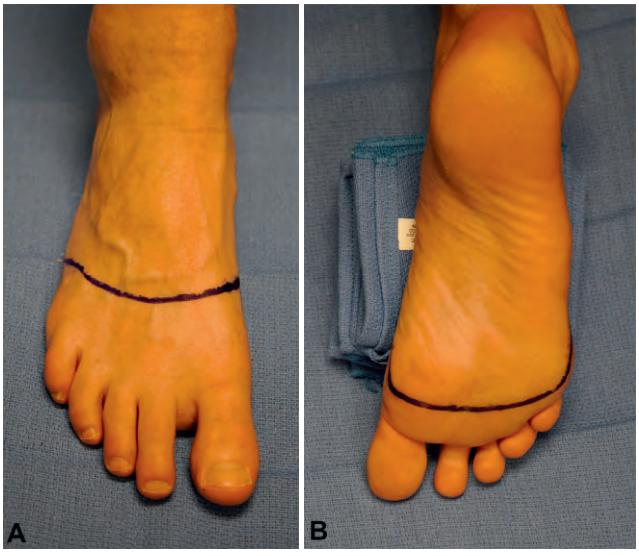
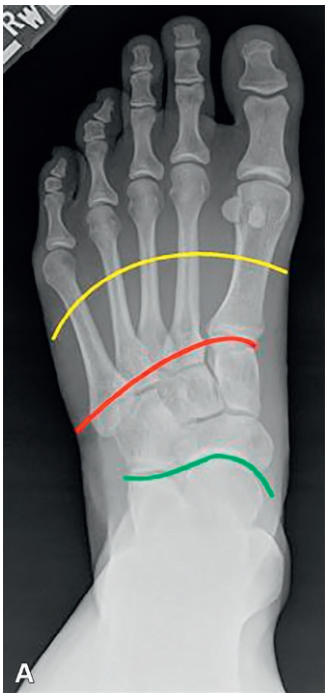


Fig. 19.13 Dorsal (A) and plantar (B) incisions for transmetatarsal amputation, note that plantar flap is longer than dorsal flap to allow coverage over the end of the transected metatarsals.



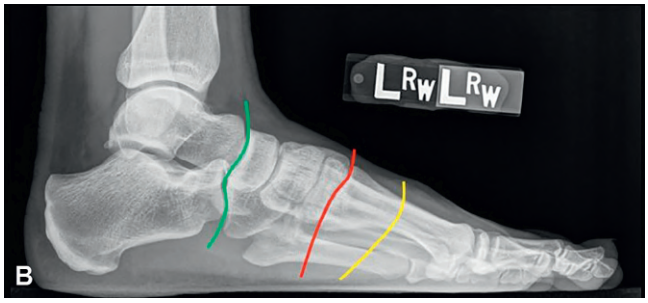


Fig. 19.14 Anterior-posterior (A) and lateral (B) radiograph of the foot with the transection levels for transmetatarsal *(yellow)*, Lisfranc or tarsometatarsal *(red)*, and Chopart or midtarsal *(green)* amputations.

equinovarus deformity in an already vulnerable foot. Tendon transfers are commonly performed to restore balance to the transmetatarsal residual limb.[194,195] Achilles lengthening is performed to provide greater ankle dorsiflexion, ultimately reducing distal plantar pressures on the residual forefoot.[196]

A standard dressing and compressive wrap are applied following the procedure. Limited mobility and non–weight-bearing ambulation is usually recommended in the immediate postoperative period; however, some authors have reported success with application of total contact cast and immediate weight bearing following the procedure.[193] Gradual progression to full weight bearing with an assistive device (walker, crutches, single cane) and independent ambulation without an assistive device is determined by skin condition of the residual limb and the individual's previous ambulatory status, postural control, and functional level. Many individuals benefit from wearing a sneaker or oxford with forefoot filler and a rocker bottom applied to the sole to dissipate higher weight-bearing forces on the distal plantar residual limb in the late stance phase; those with short residual transmetatarsal limbs may require a custom shoe that encompasses the ankle or a custom thermoplastic

ankle-foot orthosis to counteract muscle imbalance leading to equinovarus position during the swing phase of gait and to ensure efficient heel strike at initial contact and appropriate forward progression in stance. Those with polyneuropathy should be cautioned not to go barefoot, even in their home environment: their ability to detect injury to the plantar (or dorsal) surface of the foot may be significantly compromised. An open wound (neuropathic or traumatic in origin) on a transmetatarsal residual limb that becomes infected or fails to heal often leads to revision to the transtibial amputation level.

AMPUTATIONS OF THE MIDFOOT

Within the midfoot, amputations can be performed via disarticulation of the tarsometatarsal joints (Lisfranc procedure) or midtarsal joints (Chopart procedure) (see Fig. 19.14A and B). Both Lisfranc and Chopart amputations are often preferable to more proximal amputations because both procedures maintain the calcaneus and its tough, weight-bearing skin. The operative approach and postoperative care for both surgeries are similar to that for a TMA. The surgical incision is made more proximally across the dorsum of the foot, and a long posterior/plantar flap is created to wrap upward toward the dorsal incision when the surgical wound is closed. In a Lisfranc procedure, the forefoot is excised from the midfoot through the tarsometatarsal joint, usually leaving the "keystone" base of the second metatarsal in place to maintain a transverse arch of the midfoot. The distal attachments of the peroneus brevis, peroneus longus, extensor hallucis longus, and anterior tibialis may be repositioned during surgery in an attempt to restore balance between muscle groups controlling dorsiflexion/plantar flexion and inversion/eversion positioning of the foot at rest and during walking.[197] In a Chopart procedure, the disarticulation takes place in the joints between the talus and navicular and between the calcaneus and cuboid.

Both procedures necessitate either lengthening or complete sectioning of the heel cord in an effort to prevent equinovarus deformity. A bulky dressing with an ACE wrap or a slightly dorsiflexed plaster cast is applied in the operating room. Lisfranc and Chopart surgeries may be used for individuals with significant traumatic injury or bone or soft-tissue tumor in the forefoot; they are rarely used for individuals with dysvascular or neuropathic limbs.[192] Although both approaches preserve the ability to bear weight through the calcaneus, there is even greater likelihood of development of the equinovarus deformity, and prosthetic fitting can be challenging. Persons with a midfoot-level residual limb typically require custom footwear and orthoses that control the residual limb above the ankle for protection during activity and to ensure biomechanically sound, safe ambulation.[198]

SYME AMPUTATION

The most commonly performed amputation involving the hindfoot is the Syme procedure, a surgical technique that disarticulates the tibiotalar joint (a.k.a. ankle), trims the malleoli to create a flat weight-bearing surface, and repositions the fat pad and soft tissue of the heel under the distal tibia and fibula Figs. 19.15 and 19.16. Although the Syme procedure reduces leg length with removal of the calcaneus and talus, a well-healed distal residual limb is pressure tolerant for ambulation with a prosthesis and, if necessary, for short distances (e.g., emergencies, getting to the bathroom at night) without a prosthesis.[185] As such, energy expenditure in patients with Syme amputations is nearly equivalent to age-matched controls.[167] A variation of the Syme procedure, known as a Pirogoff amputation, retains the weight-bearing portion of the calcaneus and fuses it to the distal tibia. A systematic review of Syme amputations found a vascular etiology as the indication for amputation in 65% of patients.[199] The most common complications in adults

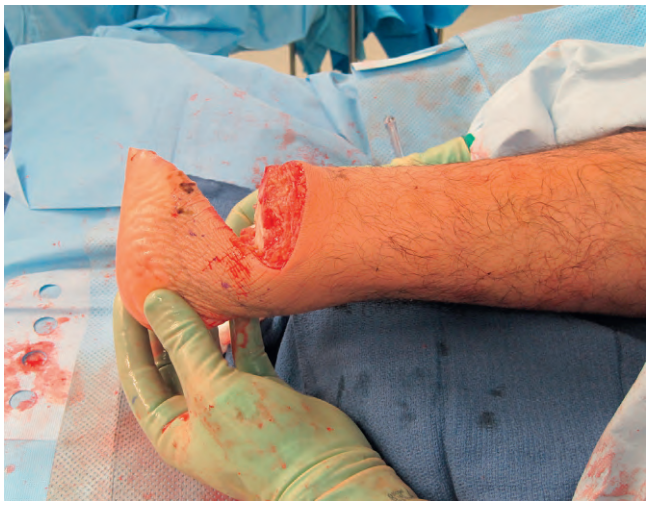


Fig. 19.15 Intraoperative photograph of a Syme amputation prior to securing heel pad to the distal end of the tibia.

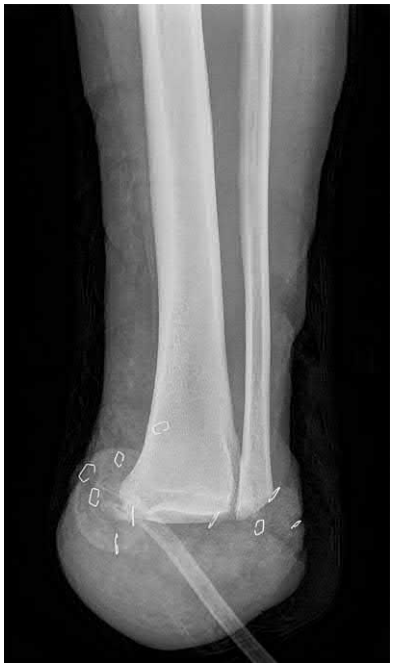


Fig. 19.16 Postoperative anterior-posterior radiograph of a Syme amputation showing disarticulation through the tibiotalar joint and resection of the medial and lateral malleoli.

included RLP (25%), ulceration or infection (23%), need for reamputation (20%), and skin problems (18%).

The surgical incision for Syme amputations extends along the anterior ankle from medial to lateral malleoli and then curves downward around the plantar (posterior calcaneus) surface to outline what will be the distal pad of the residual limb. After a sharp incision through skin and subcutaneous tissue, toe extensor and dorsiflexor tendons are cut and the anterior capsule of the ankle is exposed. The foot is passively plantar flexed so as to access and open the joint capsule medially to laterally (with care to preserve the posterior tibialis artery going to tissue that will be the pad of the residual limb) and to disarticulate the talus. The posterior joint capsule, posterior tibialis tendon, and flexor hallucis longus tendon are transected. The periosteum of the calcaneus is carefully stripped and preserved for use in attaching the posterior flap/fat pad to the tibia later in the procedure. The Achilles tendon and plantar soft tissue are then dissected from the calcaneus, and the amputated foot is completely removed. Plantar tendons and any remaining intrinsic muscle tissue are excised from the posterior flap/fat pad. The distal tips of the medial and lateral malleoli are removed using an oscillating saw, leveling them with the articulating surface of the tibia. Oblique drill holes in the medial, lateral, and anterior edges of the tibia and fibula are used to secure the preserved periosteum and posterior heel pad in place. The continued viability of the heel pad is a key component to a successful outcome. A prolonged period of non–weight bearing (usually at least 6 weeks) is essential to ensure that the heel pad is not disrupted until it is firmly healed in place. Depending on the condition of the residual limb, the individual may be ready for initial prosthetic fitting by 6 to 8 weeks following amputation. Initial prosthetic training must be with careful partial weight bearing and an appropriate assistive device, with frequent inspection of the integrity and positioning of the distal pad.

Transtibial Amputation

Transtibial amputation represents the "workhorse" and by far most common amputation level in the lower extremity. This level typically has positive surgical and rehabilitative outcomes, as long as there is sufficient circulation for healing of the residual limb.[126,200] Standard surgical teaching suggests an ideal length of 2.5 cm of residual limb for every 30 cm of patient height, typically resulting in a bone length of 12.5 to 17.5 cm[201]; our preference is to add 1 to 2 cm of length to this calculation, although ensuring adequate soft tissue padding and patient height (26–29 cm of space from the residual limb to the ground or contralateral heel pad is recommended for prosthetic fitting options) remains critical. As residual tibial length decreases toward the tibial tubercle, mechanical advantage of knee flexors exceeds that of knee extensors, making it difficult to extend the knee enough to advance a prosthesis during swing and for controlled (eccentric) knee extension for stability in the early stance phase. Because the surface area for weight bearing within the socket decreases as the length of the residual limb decreases, limb length, the likelihood of discomfort, skin irritation, and limited use of a transtibial prosthesis increase. Conversely, in long residual limbs, the larger total surface area to distribute pressures within the socket and long lever arm potentially enhance prosthetic control, although there is a risk of chronic skin irritation and discomfort along the sharp edge of the distal–anterior tibial crest. Recent advances in prosthetic materials and design can accommodate, to some degree, for the biomechanical and prosthetic fitting challenges of a long residual limb (i.e., with more than 66% of original tibial length) or of a short residual limb (i.e., preserving 33% or less of original tibial length). Comfort in the prosthesis, quality of gait, and energy cost of ambulation seem to be best balanced when the level of amputation maintains tibial length between 12 and 15 cm.[202]

Depending on the condition of the skin and soft tissue, as well as the circumstances that have led to the decision to amputate, the surgeon selects from a number of surgical approaches. The most commonly used approach is the long posterior (myofasciocutaneous) flap described by Burgess in the 1960s. This technique preserves the highly vascular gastrocnemius, as well as all anterior compartment muscles beyond the residual tibia, brings the flap up and forward, and positions the suture line across the distal anterior residual limb below the cut surface of the tibia (Fig. 19.17).[203]

In dysvascular patients, muscles of the anterior compartment can be susceptible to necrosis which may cause delayed healing and potential revision to a higher level. A modification of the posterior flap procedure described by Bruckner removes all of the tibialis anterior and the bulk of the soleus to the level of the residual tibia. The modified Bruckner method also removes the fibula.[204] Despite the theoretical advantages, no clear benefit of these techniques has been demonstrated in the literature.[205] A third modification, first described by Ertl in 1949 as an osteomyoplastic amputation with tibiofibular synostosis, incorporates a bone bridge between the distal tibia and fibula for added stability.[206]

When a posterior flap cannot be achieved, the surgeon may create equal anterior-posterior skin flaps in which the incision runs in a U shape medially to laterally across the bottom of the residual limb or equal medial-lateral flaps, in which the incision runs in a *U* shape from anterior to posterior across the bottom of the residual limb (Fig. 19.18). The surgeon may even use a long medial or long lateral flap that positions the incision on the distal opposite side of the limb.[207] To date, there is no evidence to show a benefit of one type of incision over another.[208] In the setting of

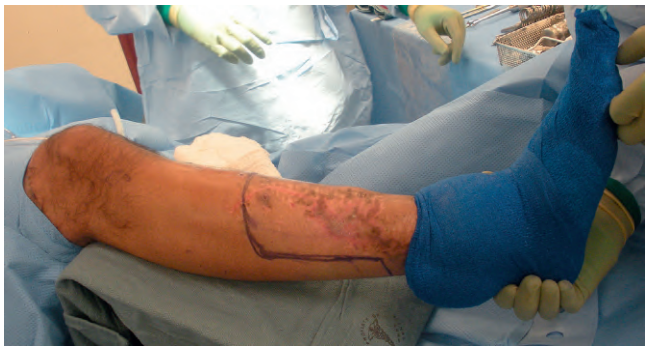


Fig. 19.17 Preoperative photograph of the skin incision for a transtibial amputation. As is commonly the case, a long posterior skin flap was used to cover the end of the residual limb.

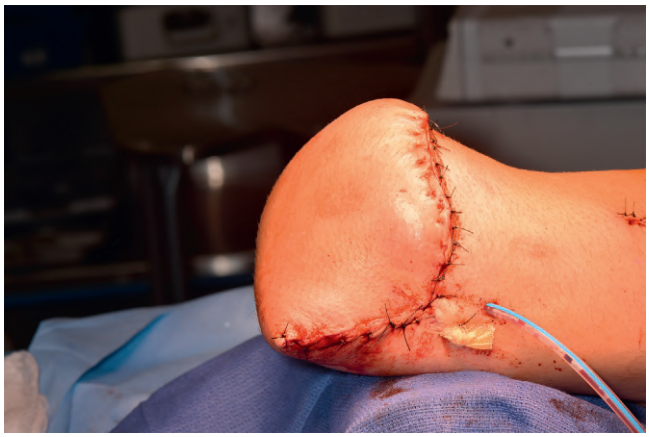


Fig. 19.18 Postoperative photograph of an atypical flap used to cover a transtibial amputation. In this case, only the saphenous nerve was intact to skin at the level of the amputation, thus a medially based, saphenous neurocutaneous flap was used to provide the patient with a sensate residual limb end.

trauma, atypical flaps may be required to achieve optimal soft tissue coverage while maintaining residual limb length.[56] In all approaches the surgeon seeks to retain enough soft tissue so that there is little or no tension across the closed incision but not so much that there will be redundant skin and tissue that might challenge prosthetic fitting.

MODIFIED BURGESS PROCEDURE

The intended tibial length is marked, and a line for the anterior incision is drawn, sweeping into a distally curved posterior flap. The anterior incision is made through skin and then soft tissue to the periosteum of the tibia, and subcutaneous blood vessels are clamped. Next, muscles in the anterior compartment are incised so that the anterior tibial artery, vein, and deep peroneal nerve can be identified, clamped, transected, and ligated.[205] Soft tissue is carefully removed from around the fibula approximately 2 cm shorter than the residual tibia. An oscillating saw is used to transect the fibula. The surgeon then cuts the tibia, taking care to bevel the anterior edge to minimize risks of potential irritation and ulceration and/or bursa formation. The skin and subcutaneous incision are now continued along what will become the posterior flap. Once the amputated limb has been removed, the posterior tibial and peroneal arteries and veins are clamped. Major nerves are grasped with gentle traction, resected at the most accessible proximal point, and allowed to retract into the residual limb.[56] The soleus muscle is then dissected from the medial and lateral heads of the gastrocnemius and removed to debulk the posterior flap for optimal wound closure. The blood vessels of the posterior and lateral compartments are clamped, transected, and ligated. High-energy injuries may lead to the disruption of the interosseous membrane between the residual tibia and fibula. The surgeon may opt to perform a bone bridge synostosis, as previously discussed, or a more proximal suture bridge construct alone in an effort to achieve tibiofibular stability.[209] This theoretically minimizes the likelihood of symptomatic distal fibular instability during subsequent activity and prosthetic use. The tourniquet is deflated, any bleeding small vessels are electrocauterized or sutured, and hemostasis is restored. The beveled anterior tibia is smoothed with a rasp, and a myodesis is performed by securing the posterior compartment musculature to the tibia, usually via drill holes.[203] The incision is closed over drains in a tension-free manner.

As previously discussed, a soft or rigid dressing may be applied. The patient is encouraged to keep the knee of the residual limb in full extension; elevation over a pillow leads to hip and knee flexion contracture that will be problematic later in rehabilitation.

Physical therapy usually begins in the first days after surgery, with transfers, and single-limb ambulation with a walker or crutches. Bedside commodes and wheelchairs with removable armrests assist self-care and mobility and reduce the risk of falls.

Staples or sutures typically remain in place for 3 weeks; if there are indications of delayed healing, the surgeon may opt to leave every second or third suture in place longer, reinforcing the incision with adhesive wound closure strips when staples have been removed. Gentle mobilization of soft tissue begins to prevent adherence of the incision scar to underlying fascia and bone. Casting for initial prosthesis occurs only when there has been adequate closure of the surgical wound and the circumference of the distal and proximal portions of the residual limb below the knee is nearly equal. For some individuals this may occur within 3 weeks; for others it may require several months.

MODIFIED BRUCKNER PROCEDURE

The modified Bruckner procedure is based on the premise that, for individuals with significant PAD, risk of postoperative muscle necrosis will be less likely if the muscles most susceptible to ischemia are removed during surgery.[205] For that reason, anterior and lateral compartment muscles, as well as the lateral gastrocnemius, are excised. In addition, the soleus and its large venous plexus are removed to reduce the risk of postoperative thrombosis.[205] The fibula is also removed, especially if the residuum is short, to create a limb that will be more tolerant of pressure within the prosthetic socket. The operation otherwise proceeds as described for the modified Burgess procedure.

MODIFIED ERTL PROCEDURE

In theory, the creation of a distal synostosis allows for a more stable weight-bearing interface and less painful residual limb; however, these theories have not been substantiated in the literature in terms of functional outcomes. Retrospective reviews comparing the modified Burgess technique and the modified Ertl technique found similar functional outcomes between the groups but noted a higher rate of reoperations in the Ertl group, many of which were bone bridge related.[210,211] Hopefully, the results of an ongoing prospective multicenter randomized trial will lend further insight into the appropriate indications for the Ertl procedure, if any.[212]

The distal bone bridge can be constructed from a variety of sources; however, a segment of the amputated fibula is most commonly used.[206] In many instances, more bony length can be preserved, resulting in a cylindrical residual limb with some end-bearing capacity for prosthetic use. This

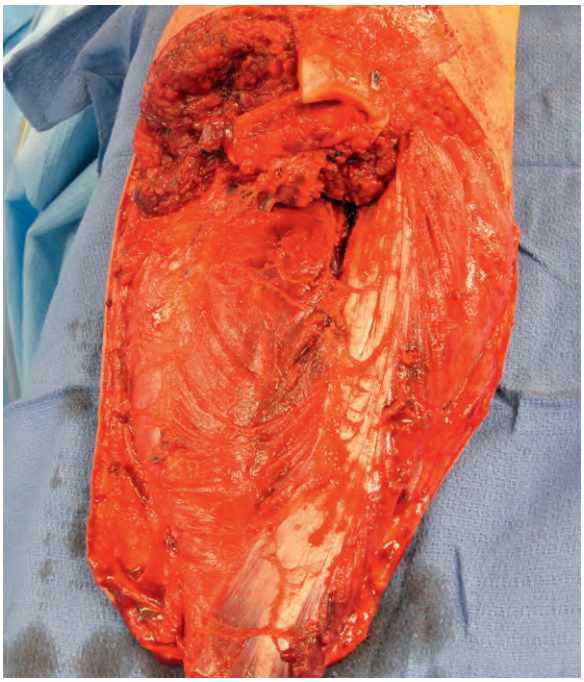


Fig. 19.19 Intraoperative photograph of a modified Ertl transtibial amputation. A cut segment of fibula is secured with a TightRope device between the tibia and fibula. Note also the long posterior flap of posterior compartment musculature preserved to close over the end of the residual bone.

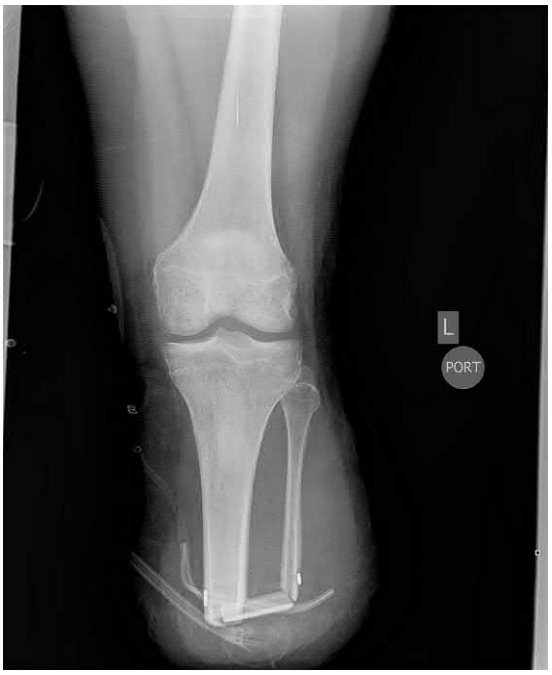


Fig. 19.20 Postoperative radiograph of modified Ertl transtibial amputation with bone bridge secured in place by a TightRope. The metallic buttons are visible on the medial cortex of the tibia and the lateral cortex of the fibula.

procedure is most typically used in young, healthy individuals expected to be very active using their prosthesis, especially for those in the military.[213] Initial preparation of the limb is similar to that of a posterior flap procedure. A segment of bone is harvested from the amputated fibular shaft, sized to bridge the space between tibia and fibula of the residual limb, but other sources of bone may also be used, such as a portion of residual tibia in the setting of a revision amputation (Fig. 19.19).[214] The inner edges of the tibia and fibula may be notched to allow the bone bridge to fit securely between them. The bone bridge may be secured in place in a number of ways; for example, use of compression screws, or running a "TightRope" (Arthrex Inc, Naples, FL) suture through a hole drilled in the fibula, then through the shaft of the bone bridge, then through a hole drilled in the tibia (Fig. 19.20).[206] Because of the extensive dissection required, this technique uses more operative time (and more time under anesthesia and with a tourniquet in place) than the modified Burgess and Bruckner surgeries.[215] Consequently, it is generally contraindicated for patients with multiple comorbidities or those who are medically frail.

Knee Disarticulation

In previous centuries, before development of surgical anesthesia and antibiotics, simple knee disarticulation surgery often had a much more favorable outcome than transtibial amputation.[216] Because this surgery does not transect major muscle mass, it can be done in less time and with significantly less blood loss than transtibial or transfemoral amputation. In addition, simple disarticulation through the knee joint disrupts only the tissue compartment of the joint itself, making postoperative infection in fascia, muscle, or bone much less likely. The femoral condyles, with their cartilaginous covering, are designed to tolerate weight bearing, and preservation of the entire femur provides mechanical advantage to the prosthetic wearer.

The residual limb heals without much atrophy, requiring less socket replacement or revision early on and allowing fitting with a definitive prosthesis in less time than the typical transtibial or transfemoral residual limb. In addition, this surgery preserves the growth plate of the distal epiphysis, an important consideration in children.[105] For individuals with severe bilateral vascular disease who are nonambulatory before surgery, the extra length of the femurs provides a larger base of support in sitting, enhancing postural control.[217]

The length of an intact femur, along with the anatomy of the condyles, creates several important challenges to prosthetic fit and function in terms of choice and placement of the prosthetic knee unit, which affects energy cost as well as efficiency of prosthetic gait. The bony, bulbous residual limb of those who undergo a simple knee disarticulation also creates a challenge regarding donning and doffing the prosthesis (Fig. 19.21). Surgical techniques developed by Mazet and Hennessy in the 1960s removed the patella and trimmed the medial and lateral condylar surfaces to address the problems associated with bulbous distal anatomy.[218]

In 1977 Burgess recommended removal of 1.5 to 2 cm of the distal condyles to permit placement of a newly developed four-bar prosthetic knee unit closer to what had been the anatomic axis of the knee.[219,220] Some surgeons advocate modifying the patella and then fusing it to the intercondylar notch of the femur to maintain quadriceps tension or sectioning the femoral condyles and fusing the patella to the transected femur while leaving the adductor magnus

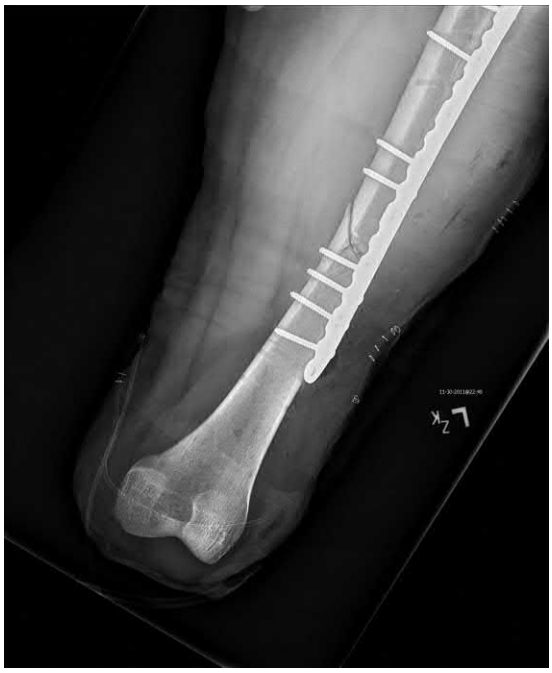


Fig. 19.21 Anterior-posterior radiograph of a knee disarticulation. The bulbous medial and lateral condyles of the femur can cause difficulty with prosthetic fit. The proximal femur fracture was fixed using a plate and screws. Although associated with frequent complications, fixation of proximal fractures preserves overall amputation length.

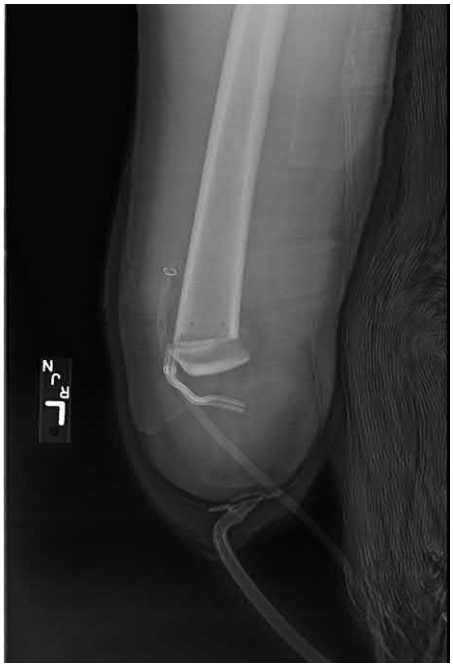


Fig. 19.22 Lateral radiograph of Gritti-Stokes knee disarticulation in which the femoral condyles are transecting just proximal to the joint and the patella is attached to the metaphyseal bone.

insertion intact. The latter is known as a Gritti-Stokes amputation (Fig. 19.22).[221-223] Typically either equal sagittal flaps or a long posterior flap is used to provide additional "cushion" for weight bearing through the distal residual limb.[115] Proponents of simple knee disarticulation, without modification of the distal femur, suggest that the combination of reduced rates of infection, better primary healing, larger surface areas for weight bearing, and advances in prosthetic design and technology lead to better functional outcome and higher rates of prosthetic use. However, these theoretical benefits, particularly in the setting of traumatic amputations, have been called in to question by recent studies, as previously discussed.[170,171] After detailed patient counseling, we still prefer knee disarticulations to long transfemoral amputations in most cases when viable gastrocnemius muscle remains for distal soft tissue coverage.

The skin incision is planned to create either equal medial and lateral flaps approximately half of the anteroposterior diameter of the knee in length or a long posterior flap. The patellar tendon is transected at the tibial tubercle, as well as the medial and lateral collateral ligaments just above the menisci. Next, the knee is slightly flexed and the infrapatellar fold is cut. This provides access to the cruciate ligaments, allowing the surgeon to free them from their attachment to the tibia. The posterior joint capsule is carefully cut, with attention to keeping neurovascular structures in the popliteal fossa intact, while exposing the femoral attachment of the gastrocnemius muscle. The popliteal artery and vein and saphenous vein are clamped and ligated, and the tibial, common peroneal, and saphenous nerves are transected under traction and allowed to retract into the residual limb. The surgeon then cuts through the gastrocnemius at the distal musculotendinous junction, and the lower leg is removed.

When transcondylar modification is desired, an oscillating saw is used to trim the edges of the condyles before irrigation. In preparation for closure, the patellar tendon is sutured to the anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments (Fig. 19.23), and the cut edge of the gastrocnemius muscle is sutured to the anterior joint capsule (myoplasty). If no patellofemoral fusion is to be attempted, the patella may either be retained or excised. Advantages of retention include creating improved prosthetic suspension and rotational control. Advantages of excision include no risk of

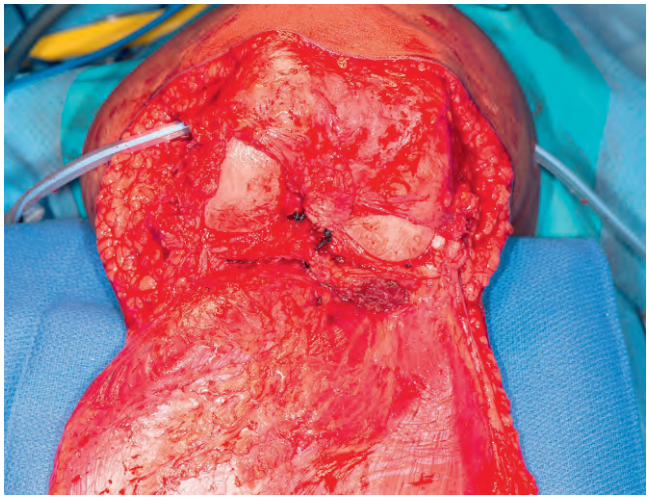


Fig. 19.23 Intraoperative photograph of knee disarticulation. In this case, the patella has been removed and the residual extensor mechanism sutured to the cruciate ligaments. Note again, a long posterior muscle flap consisting of the medial and lateral gastrocnemius muscles is preserved for closure.

breakdown over the subcutaneous patella and no theoretical risk of symptomatic patellofemoral arthrosis or motion at the expense of dead space creation. Either way, we recommend performing a suprapatellar synovectomy in an effort to minimize postoperative fluid collection risk and accelerate the scarring in of the residual extensor mechanism. The hamstring tendons are transected distally and allowed to retract or, preferably, secured to the posterior joint capsule. The lateral and medial flaps are positioned with approximated edges, and subcutaneous tissues are sutured closed. Finally, the outer layer of skin is closed using staples or sutures.

A soft or rigid dressing may be applied. Some or all of the staples or external sutures are removed at 2 to 3 weeks, depending on the condition of the incision. Readiness for a training prosthesis is determined by full healing of the surgical incision, typically between 3 and 8 weeks after surgery.

Transfemoral Amputation

When deciding on where to transect the femur, it is important to consider vascular status, muscle insertions, and residual limb biomechanics. For those patients requiring transfemoral amputation, function and prosthetic control improves as length of residual femur increases. Preservation or reattachment of the adductor brevis, adductor longus, and especially adductor magnus provides sufficient power for stabilization of the residual limb in adduction during stance so that the abductors can work to keep the pelvis level during prosthetic gait (Fig. 19.24).[122,224,225] Preservation of femoral length and of muscle mass via myodesis, rather than resection through muscle belly, results in a stronger residual limb that is more easily fit and has better prosthetic control.[123,226] It also reduces the risk of developing hip abduction and flexion contracture during rehabilitation and over the individual's lifetime (Fig. 19.25). The surgeon must work with the viable thigh tissue to create a residual limb that is balanced in muscular power, provides a long enough lever to allow hip extensors to control prosthetic knee stability in stance, and has as smooth and sensate a skin surface as possible.

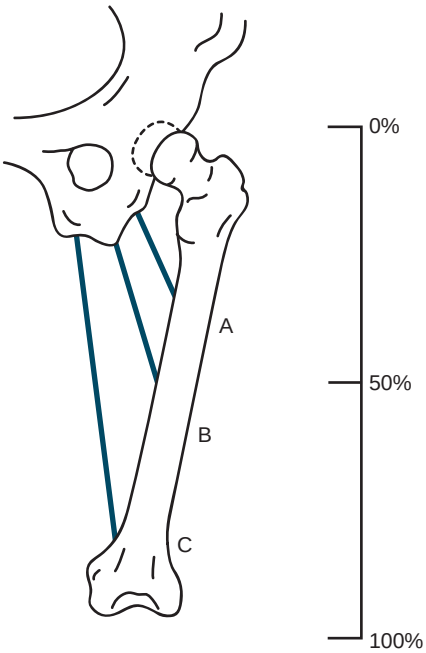


Fig. 19.24 Diagram of point of attachment and line of pull for the *(A)* adductor brevis, *(B)* adductor longus, and *(C)* adductor magnus as they relate to femoral length. As the length of the residual femur decreases, power and efficiency of adductor muscles groups are increasingly compromised.

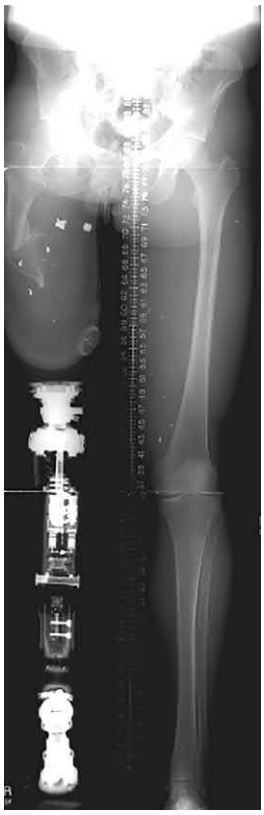


Fig. 19.25 Standing radiograph of a patient with a short transfemoral amputation. In the absence of native adductor musculature insertions or adductor myodesis, the residual limb assumes an abduction deformity, particularly noticeable on this standing radiograph.

Equal anteroposterior flaps, equal mediolateral flaps, or a long flap from any one limb surface that will be approximated to the opposite limb surface at closure may be used. The fascia and muscle of the quadriceps and adductors are transected as far distally as possible, and the femur is scored at the desired level of amputation. The femur is cut with an oscillating saw, and the distal bone is retracted anteriorly so that the surgeon can access posterior structures. The hamstrings and tensor fascia lata are incised and transected as distally as possible. Major vessels are ligated. The sciatic nerve is ligated, cut while under traction, and allowed to retract into hamstring muscle tissue. The sharp edges of the residual distal femur may be shaped and smoothed with a rasp or file. Muscle can be secured via either myoplasty or myodesis; however, myodesis results in the most stable construct.[120] The adductor muscles are pulled under the distal femur medially to laterally and sutured to the lateral femur by drill holes; this may be reinforced with additional drill holes medially to prevent subluxation and loss of tension

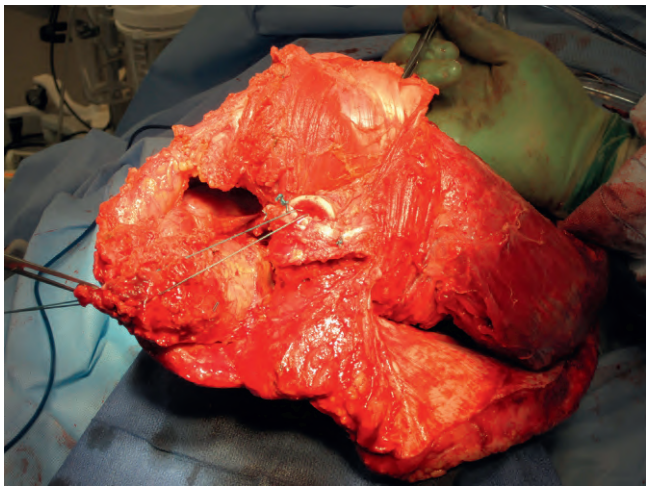


Fig. 19.26 Intraoperative photograph of an adductor and medial hamstring myodesis during a transfemoral amputation. Notice that the sutures pass through drill holes in the residual femur to provide a stable anchor point.

in the adductor myodesis (Fig. 19.26). The hamstrings are sutured to the distal femur or the quadriceps, which is pulled under the distal femur in an anterior-to-posterior direction over the repositioned adductor, attaching it to the posterior surface of the femur. The fascia, subcutaneous tissue, and skin are then closed in a layered fashion. The goal is to create a tapered, cylindrical residual limb with few "dimples" or redundant tissues. A soft or rigid dressing is applied. If a soft dressing is used, it may be helpful to use a long compressive wrap that includes the waist in a hip spica configuration.

Mobility training and early preprosthetic positioning exercises (to encourage positioning of the residual limb in hip extension and adduction) are optimally initiated the day after surgery, and single-limb gait training with an appropriate assistive device follows as soon as the individual can tolerate increasing activity. Strategies for consistent gentle soft tissue compression are initiated as soon as possible using an ACE wrap, elasticized stockinette, and eventually a commercially available "shrinker." Staples or sutures remain in place for 3 weeks or more, perhaps being removed in successive stages to ensure a solid wound closure. Fitting for initial prosthesis is, as in all other levels of amputation, determined by the condition of the suture line; for some patients this may occur as early as 3 or 4 weeks postoperatively and for others several months after surgery.

Hip Disarticulation and Hemipelvectomy

Amputation at the level of the hip or pelvis is an amputation of last resort and represents high-risk surgery that may be indicated for patients with severe trauma, uncontrollable sepsis, failed revascularization, widespread metastases, or malignant bone or soft tissue tumors.[227-229] The complex anatomy of this region and relative rarity of these procedures present a significant surgical and rehabilitative challenge. These surgeries are best performed in facilities with an experienced interdisciplinary team.

Hip disarticulations account for only 0.5% of all lower extremity amputations, and perioperative mortality rates have been reported between 0% and 44%.[2,227,230] In contrast to hemipelvectomy, this procedure preserves the pelvis, thereby allowing weight bearing through the ischium in an appropriately fit prosthesis and improved sitting balance. However, even the preservation of the iliac wing may improve potential for prosthesis wear. A racquet-shaped skin incision allows creation of a large posterior flap of skin, subcutaneous tissue, and gluteal muscle mass for wound closure. The incision begins at the medial edge of the anterior superior iliac spine, continues along the inguinal ligament to just below the ischial tuberosity and gluteal crease, and then arches upward over the greater trochanter and anterior thigh back to the anterior superior iliac spine. The surgeon must carefully free neurovascular structures in the inguinal region, as well as detach each of the many surface and deeper muscles that cross the hip joint, starting with the anterior and medial groups, then moving laterally and posteriorly. The gluteal muscles are detached from the greater trochanter but kept in place on the pelvis to be part of the posterior flap. The head of the femur is dislocated from the acetabulum. The residual gluteal muscles are then sutured to the inguinal ligament and anterior pelvic periosteum, although adductor and quadriceps-based flaps have been described for cases in which the gluteal muscles are absent or compromised. Incisions are closed in standard layered fashion over deep drains. Compression is provided by soft elastic spica wrap. Limited periods of sitting, mobility, and transfer training, as well as ambulation on the contralateral limb using a walker or crutches, begin as soon as the patient is medically stable and able to tolerate increasing levels of activity, optimally within 2 to 3 days after surgery. Special attention must be paid to the sitting posture, with minimal time spent in a posteriorly tilted "sacral sitting" position, to ensure skin integrity. Patient and family education must include efforts to carefully protect the surgical site during movement and activities of daily living. An early referral to the prosthetist for fabrication of a custom thermoplastic RRD may occur in the week immediately following surgery. Fitting for initial prosthesis, as in amputation at all other levels, is determined by rate and adequacy of healing of the surgical site.

Hemipelvectomy, as classically described, amputates the pelvic ring via disarticulation of the pubic symphysis anteriorly and the sacroiliac joint posteriorly. Variations of this procedure include the extended or modified hemipelvectomy. An extended hemipelvectomy includes portions of the sacrum, lumbar spine, and/or contralateral pelvis. A modified, or partial, hemipelvectomy resects less than the entire innominate bone (Fig. 19.27).[231] A functional limb requires an intact lumbosacral plexus, femoral neurovascular bundle, and hip joint. When two out of these structures are nonfunctional, amputation is usually the best option.[113] The procedure itself is one of the most technically demanding and invasive surgeries performed in orthopedics; the median blood loss for hemipelvectomy in a series preformed for resection of musculoskeletal tumors was found to be more than 3 L.[232] Given the proximity of vital neurovascular structures and intra-abdominal contents, a thorough understanding of the anatomy and meticulous surgical technique is required to safely perform this procedure.

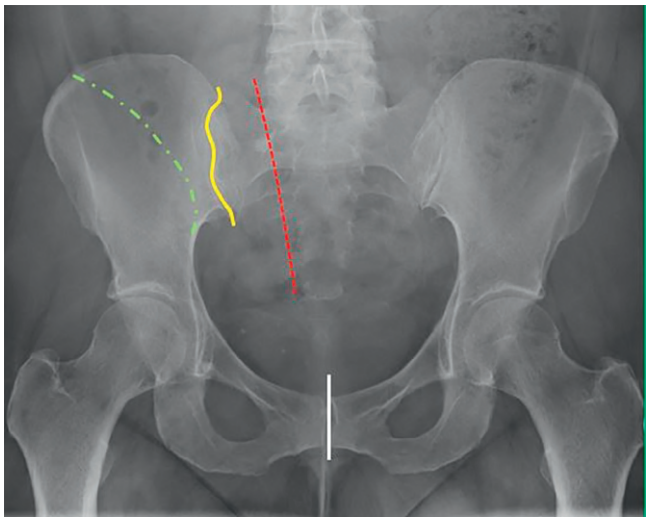


Fig. 19.27 Anterior-posterior pelvis radiograph with levels of resection for a modified *(green dashed line)*, standard *(yellow line)*, and extended *(red dashed line)* hemipelvectomy. Anteriorly, the pelvis is transected at the pubic symphysis *(white line)*.

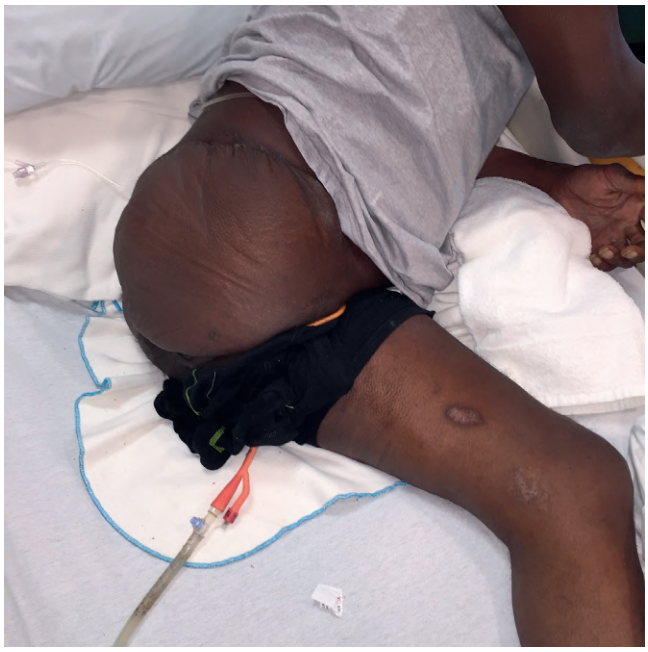


Fig. 19.28 Clinical photograph of patient who underwent hemipelvectomy with an anterior-based quadriceps flap for closure.

The surgical technique for a hemipelvectomy varies based on planned soft tissue coverage and the degree of bony resection indicated. Beginning anteriorly, superficial abdominal musculature is incised to expose the iliacus, and the iliac fossa is cleared by blunt dissection. Major blood vessels from the iliac artery are sequentially ligated. Posteriorly, a flap including the gluteal fascia and the medial portion of the gluteus maximus is elevated off of the iliac crest. The paraspinal musculature of the lumbosacral spine is divided from the iliac crest, and the gluteus maximus muscle is elevated from the sacrotuberous ligament, coccyx, and sacrum. The remaining muscles crossing the hip joint are divided, and the femoral nerve and lumbosacral nerve trunk are transected. The hip is then abducted and the pubic symphysis is divided followed by transection of the sacral nerve roots. Disarticulation is then performed through the sacroiliac joint with a scalpel and osteotome. The pelvic floor muscles are divided under tension and the process of closure may begin. Soft tissue coverage options include posterior-based flaps (most common), anterior-based flaps, or free tissue transfer from viable distal portions of the amputated limb, known as fillet flaps (Fig. 19.28).[233,234] In the absence of viable distal limb tissue, a combination of random pattern flaps and split-thickness skin grafts may be required.[235] With advances in surgical and anesthetic techniques, mortality rates for hemipelvectomy have improved from historical rates of nearly 50% mortality to less than 10% in more recent series.[236,237] Nonetheless, overall complication rates remain high, with one large series of 160 patients finding a morbidity rate of 54%, most commonly due to infection and flap necrosis.[238] Mobilization and transfer training may need to be deferred until the individual is well enough and nutritionally supported enough to tolerate increased levels of activity. Furthermore, given the high rates of soft tissue complications, infection, and flap necrosis, prolonged sitting and pressure on the flaps used for closure and coverage are best deferred until at least early wound healing has been achieved.

In the absence of bony support, custom-fit prostheses allow weight bearing through compression of the residual tissue and musculature of the amputated side.[231] At this amputation level, energy expenditure for ambulation with a prosthesis is increased by approximately 125% as compared with able-bodied controls.[239] No significant difference in energy expenditure for ambulation was demonstrated between hip disarticulation and hemipelvectomy. A recent retrospective review of 43 patients who underwent hip disarticulation or hemipelvectomy found that 43% were able to successfully use a prosthetic limb.[240] In a long-term follow-up of 76 patients with war-related pelvic level resections, 70% wore a prosthesis routinely.[241] Notably, however, 60% required a double crutch for ambulation and 80% reported upper extremity pain, likely a reflection of the increased demands placed on the upper extremity for use of ambulatory aids. Given both the cumbersome nature of prosthesis fitting, wears and use at this level, and the increased energy expenditure of ambulation, many patients with a sound contralateral lower extremity prefer single-leg ambulation with crutches. As with more distal amputation levels, functional outcomes are tied to the disease state leading to amputation. Of 63 patients who underwent hip disarticulations, only 2 of 37 patients with vascular disease were fitted with a prosthesis and could ambulate. In contrast, all 24 patients who had a hip disarticulation for oncologic reasons were able to ambulate in a prosthesis.[242]

In summary, pelvic-level resections are technically challenging procedures associated with a high rate of complications and variable postsurgical outcomes. When possible (i.e., the surgery is not emergent), patients and their families should be counseled extensively regarding the potential surgical and rehabilitative course. A multidisciplinary team capable of managing all phases of care remains critical.

Future Directions

OSSEOINTEGRATION

More than 150 years have passed since the first patent for a suction socket for lower extremity amputees was filed during the Civil War.[243] Despite many surgical and prosthetic advances in this time period, the traditional suction-based patient-prosthesis interface continues to be both most commonly used and a source of difficulty, mostly related to ulceration, folliculitis, sweating, loss of suspension, and pain. An alternative approach, known as osseointegration, bypasses many of the problems associated with conventional socket-based interfaces by attaching the prosthesis directly to the bone of the residual limb (Fig. 19.29). The concept of bony healing to metal fixtures was first demonstrated successfully in dental implants by Dr. Per Invar Brånemark and is currently a commonplace procedure in the world of oral reconstructive surgery.[244] In the 1990s, Per Invar's son, Dr. Rickard Brånemark, led a team of surgeons and prosthetists in efforts to develop a transcutaneous osseointegrated implant for patients with limb loss.[245] Since that time, the initial implant system and treatment protocols have been refined, and the concept of osseointegration has expanded to treatment centers around the world, including Germany,[246] the Netherlands,[247] the United Kingdom,[248] Australia,[249] and the United States,[250] where a clinical trial is underway with a U.S. Food and Drug Administration Humanitarian Use Device designation.

To date, clinical outcomes have been published on three separate implant systems—the Osseointegrated Prosthesis for the Rehabilitation of Amputees (OPRA) developed by Dr. Brånemark in Sweden, the Integrated Leg Prosthesis (ILP) developed by Dr. Aschoff in Germany, and Osseointegrated Prosthetic Limb (OPL) developed in Australia by Dr. Al Muderis. An in-depth review of the different types of implants currently in use is beyond the scope of this chapter; however, the principle benefits and challenges associated with each remain similar and warrant further discussion.

Indications

As a developing technique, indications for lower extremity osseointegration are not yet clearly, nor uniformly, defined. In most instances, this procedure has been offered only to patients who have demonstrated considerable difficulty with their conventional socket-based prosthesis. The prosthesis-residual limb interface at the transfemoral level has long been problematic—a large soft tissue envelope around the residual femur reduces load transfer to the skeleton and compromises control and stability. As a result, for lower extremity amputations, this technique has been implemented almost exclusively for those with transfemoral limb loss.[251] The procedure is generally, although not absolutely, contraindicated in patients with peripheral vascular disease and/or diabetes due to presumably higher risk of infection and likely shorter anticipated survival.

Implant Fixation

Depending on the protocol used, the osseointegration procedure may be performed in one or two stages.[245,252] In the staged procedure, only the intramedullary portion of the implant is placed in the first stage and the incision is closed (Fig. 19.30). After a predetermined period of time (between 6 weeks and 6 months, depending on the protocol), the transcutaneous portion of the device is implanted in stage two. Stable fixation can be achieved by bony ingrowth into the implant—either a threaded titanium implant or a press-fit porous metal surface.[245,249,253] Additional strategies for fixation included interlocking screws or the use of an axially loaded device anchored by transfixion pins.[249,250] Although all devices achieve some degree of

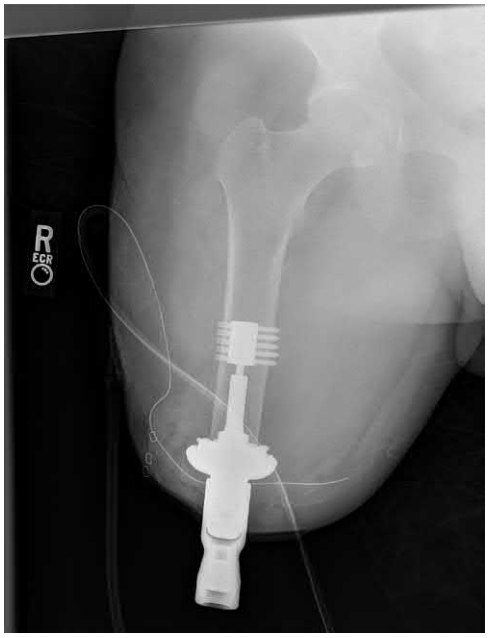


Fig. 19.29 Anterior-posterior radiograph of transfemoral osseointegration. The transcutaneous portion penetrates the soft tissue envelope and provides a point of direct attachment for a prosthetic limb.

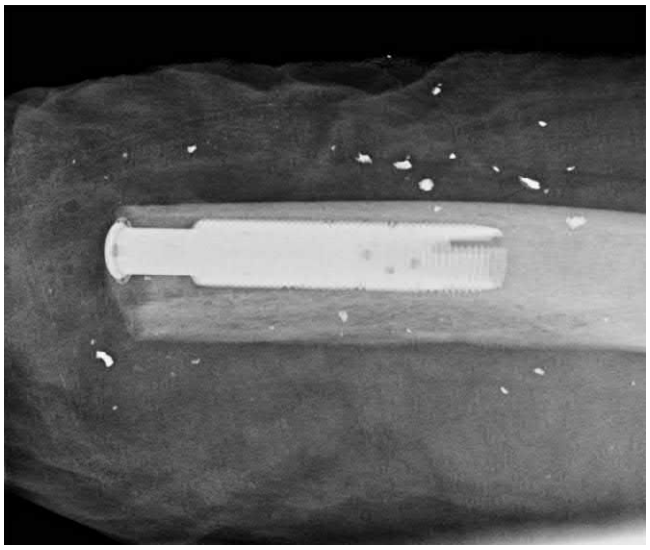


Fig. 19.30 Lateral radiograph following stage one of the osseointegration procedure using the osseointegrated prosthesis for the rehabilitation of amputees device. Only the fixture is placed and the incision is closed. With time, bony ingrowth occurs at the threaded titanium surface of the implant.

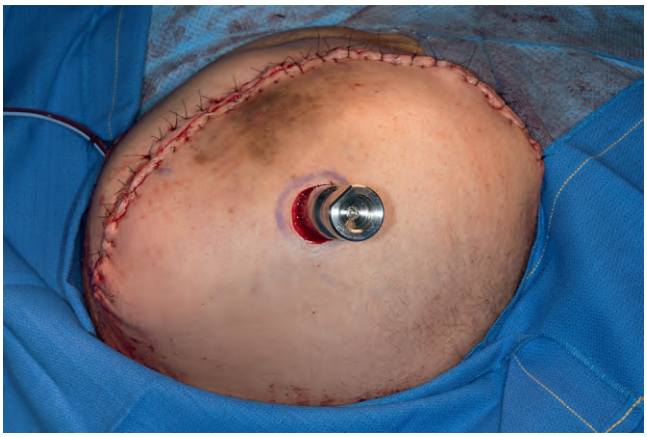


Fig. 19.31 Postoperative photograph of transfemoral amputation with transcutaneous portion of the osseointegrated device in place. The opening, or stoma, around the implant is at risk of infection and must be monitored carefully.

primary stability at the time of implantation, bony ingrowth is required for durable results.[253]

Skin Implant Interface

The skin-implant interface presents a primary challenge in the successful application of osseointegration in patients with limb loss. The transcutaneous portion of the device allows continuous exposure of underlying subcutaneous tissue to the outside environment (Fig. 19.31). Although soft tissue management strategies at the time of implantation vary, regardless of technique the patient is left with a permanent stoma around the implant, a site that, unsurprisingly, is colonized with bacteria.[254] The skin-implant interface requires daily stoma care and remains at risk of infection, which is greatest in the early postoperative period but lasts throughout the life of the implant.

Rehabilitation Protocol

Although time points vary between practitioners, rehabilitation follows a similar trajectory for all implant systems. Following implantation, a period of restricted weight bearing is enforced with gradual progression to full weight bearing as the implant achieves bony ingrowth and the muscles controlling the residual limb adapt to direct skeletal weight bearing once more. Not infrequently, muscular and myodesis-related pain persists up to 1 year following implantation, but function frequently improves to better than baseline and socket-based outcomes much sooner.[247]

Complications

The most commonly reported complication associated with osseointegration is infection. Superficial infection has been reported as high as 55% in some series, although the majority of these can be treated with antibiotics alone.[255] The long-term risk of osteomyelitis in transfemoral osseointegrated implants has been estimated at 20% at 10 years, with an associated 9% risk of implant removal due to infection.[256] Although more recent results suggest improvements over these rates as implant designs and implantation technique have evolved, these findings nonetheless represent an important baseline both for patient counseling purposes and to improve upon moving forward. Deep infections requiring implant removal are particularly problematic because this may result in further shortening of the residual limb. Other potential complications such as aseptic loosening (2%–6%) and periprosthetic fracture (0%–4%) occur at a lower rate.[246,254,255,257]

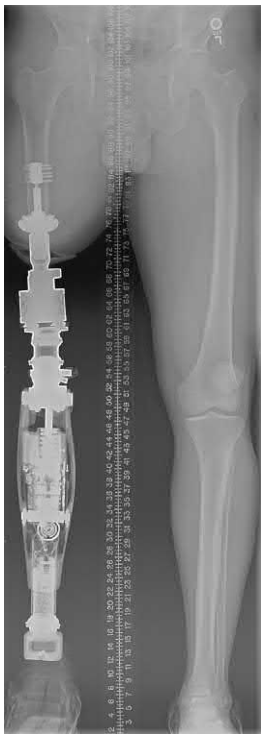


Fig. 19.32 Standing radiograph of a patient with a transfemoral osseointegrated device attached to lower extremity prosthesis. In addition to other advantages, skeletal attachment of the prosthesis allows for direct weight bearing through the residual femur resulting in improved sensory feedback known as osseoproprioception.

Outcomes

In addition to avoiding problems related to the limb implant interface, osseointegrated implants allow for physiologic weight bearing, improved range of motion at the proximal joint, and osseoperceptive (a.k.a. osseoproprioception) sensory feedback (Fig. 19.32).[245] These factors ultimately result in more frequent prosthetic wear and use and, as has been shown in multiple studies, improved quality of life.[249,252,255,258] In addition, transfemoral osseointegration appears to allow for more efficient movement, with one study finding decreased walking energy costs at the 2-year follow-up and 30% increase in the number of patients able to ambulate 500 m without stopping.[259] At the 1-year follow-up, a prospective, case-control study of 22 patients found significantly increased prosthetic use, improved 6-minute walk test, decreased oxygen consumption during treadmill walking at self-selected velocity, and overall improved prosthesis-related quality of life.[257]

In short, osseointegration has the potential to tremendously improve the quality of life for select lower extremity amputees. However, it is not without risk. Continued long-term follow-up is required, in addition to further research to optimize the skin implant interface, mitigate infection, and improve bony fixation.

ACTIVE LOWER LIMB PROSTHESES AND THE HUMAN-MACHINE INTERFACE

Unlike passive or semiactive prostheses, an active prosthesis is capable of providing net positive work—an essential capability of any device that seeks to recreate the functionality of the missing portion of a limb. More than 20 active or powered prostheses have been described in the literature, including solutions for both transfemoral and transtibial amputations.[260] However, to harness the full benefit of a powered prosthesis, the user must be able to control its movement. Control strategies vary but may require the press of a button or exaggerated body movements to switch between modes of locomotion.[261,262] These solutions fall short of the ultimate goal—intuitive, volitional control of the powered prosthesis.

However, there are promising developments within this field. Muscle contractions in the residual limb generate electromyographic (EMG) signals that can be detected by surface electrodes. Neural information obtained from these electrodes is then used to control prosthetic movements, essentially identical to what upper extremity amputees have used for the past several decades with myoelectric prostheses. When combined with pattern recognition algorithms, this approach has been demonstrated to improve control of powered leg prostheses by reducing classification error across ambulation modes and during transitions between ambulation modes.[263] Technical challenges to this approach include signal noise, latency, and the lack of proprioceptive or haptic (i.e., sensory) feedback.

A technique known as targeted muscle reinnervation (TMR) was developed initially in an effort to improve the capability of upper extremity myoprostheses to match the demands of functional tasks such as reaching or grasping.[264] This procedure surgically connects transected residual peripheral nerves to motor nerves that control muscles that are otherwise nonfunctional as a result of the amputation (Fig. 19.33). The muscle, once reinnervated by the donor nerve, acts as a biologic amplifier—volitional contraction produces an EMG signal that can be interpreted by surface electrodes and used for prosthetic control. Impressive improvements, namely reduced error rates, seamless transitions between modes of ambulation, and the ability to reposition the limb in space while nonambulatory have been demonstrated in a patient who underwent TMR following a trauma-related knee disarticulation.[265] As promising as these developments are, a persistent challenge remains in obtaining a reliable, high-quality EMG signal, particularly in the setting of a traditional socket fit prosthesis.

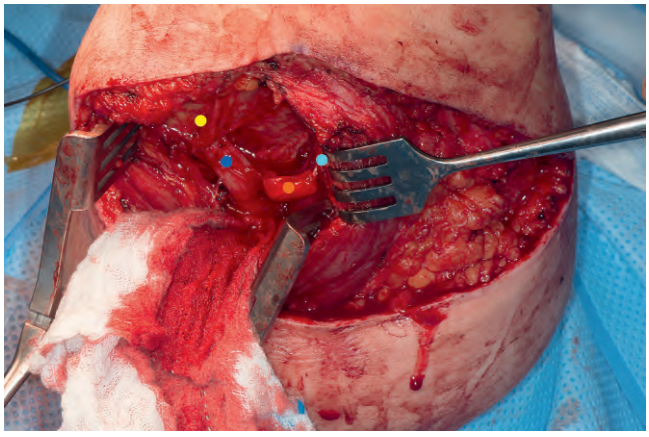


Fig. 19.33 Intraoperative photograph of targeted muscle reinnervation. The sciatic nerve has been separated into tibial and peroneal divisions. On the left, the tibial division *(blue dot)* has been coapted to motor nerve of the semimembranosus *(yellow dot)*. On the right, the peroneal division *(orange dot)* has been coapted to a motor nerve to the biceps femoris *(light green dot)*.

Since the 1960s, researchers have investigated intramuscular EMG signal recording in hopes of bypassing the problems associated with surface recordings.[266,267] Recent work has shown these intramuscular devices to be equivalent to or better than surface EMG in real-time testing of patients with upper extremity amputations.[268] Future possibilities include permanently implanted devices that wirelessly transmit signal to the prosthesis.[269]

Investigators are also working towards providing sensory feedback from the amputated limb. Targeted sensory reinnervation (TSR) follows the similar principles of TMR, except that a sensory nerve rather than a motor nerve is coapted to target the motor nerve branch. Subsequent ingrowth of the nerve through the muscle and overlying skin results in regained sensation to touch, temperature, and proprioception.[270,271] Finally, a technique known as regenerative peripheral nerve interface (RPNI) has been developed in an effort to create a long-term, stable interface with transected peripheral nerves. In this technique, a free muscle graft is wrapped around the end of the transected nerve along with an implantable electrode on the muscle's surface. Once reinnervated, the muscle serves as a bioamplifier of both afferent and efferent signals; stimulation of the implanted electrode may allow for somatosensory feedback in addition to bioprosthetic control.[272-274] To date, the concept has been demonstrated in animal studies only.

In truth, it may be the combination of these techniques—osseointegration, peripheral nerve interfaces, implanted electrodes, pattern recognition algorithms, and powered prostheses—that provides the ideal replacement for an amputated limb. In 2014 Ortiz-Catalan et al. reported 1-year follow-up of a patient with a transhumeral amputation who had received an osseointegrated implant with imbedded transosseous leads to muscle for EMG signal detection and to a peripheral nerve for sensory feedback.[275] These complementary techniques allowed for a bidirectional interface in which the patient has been able to intuitively control the movement of the limb and naturally perceive sensory feedback. Although such a combination of procedures is far from the standard of care for upper extremity amputations, much less lower extremity amputations, these are exciting developments for patients with limb loss and those who care for them.

Neuroma Prevention and Treatment

Amputation through an extremity necessarily requires transection of peripheral nerves. Invariably, this results in the formation of disorganized regenerating nerve tissue, known as a neuroma, which may or may not become

symptomatic. Symptomatic neuromata are most frequently discussed in the context of transtibial and transfemoral amputations, in part because of the larger cross-sectional diameter of nerves at these levels and also because partial foot amputations are most frequently performed due to vasculopathy and/or neuropathy in which peripheral nerve function is often severely compromised. It has been estimated that neuroma-related pain affects 13% of transtibial amputees and 32% of transfemoral amputees.[125,126] These symptoms often require surgical intervention; approximately 10% of revision procedures in combat-related amputations are due to symptomatic neuromata.[125-127]

A multitude of prophylactic and therapeutic techniques have been described for symptomatic neuroma prevention, with none being clearly superior or optimal; however, several recently developed techniques show promising results and deserve specific mention.

As discussed previously, TMR was initially developed as a method of improving myoelectric prosthesis control in upper extremity amputations. Subsequently, many patients reported complete resolution of their neuroma-related pain following TMR procedures.[276] The rationale to explain this finding is as follows: coaptation of the residual nerve to recipient motor nerve branches encourages organized regeneration into the denervated muscle. The recreation of physiologic continuity prevents disorganized axonal regeneration by giving the nerve "somewhere to go, and something to do."[277] The technique has been used in lower extremity amputations with promising results, although long-term follow-up data have not been published.[261,278] The results of a multicenter randomized trial of TMR versus traction neurectomy for the treatment of symptomatic neuromata are anticipated to lend further insight.[279]

A related technique, termed *targeted nerve implantation* (TNI), seeks to prevent neuroma formation by implanting the residual nerve into a secondary motor point within a target muscle.[280] A formal coaptation of the nerve is not performed. Of 15 patients with lower extremity amputations treated with secondary TNI (i.e., not at the time of initial amputation), 14 had resolution of neuroma pain.[280]

RPNIs have also been proposed as a treatment for symptomatic neuromata.[281] In this technique, the neuroma is excised and a free muscle graft is wrapped around the residual nerve end. A retrospective review of 16 patients (14 of which were lower extremity amputations) reported a 71% reduction in neuroma pain and a 53% reduction in PLP.

These techniques for neuroma prevention and treatment thus represent promising solutions to a vexing problem following amputation. Further prospective, comparative studies are required to better determine the superiority of any one strategy.

Summary

Understanding the epidemiology of limb loss is key to meeting the perioperative and rehabilitative needs of this patient population. No matter the indication for amputation, the decision to remove some or all of a limb is frequently challenging and always life altering. However, amputation should be viewed not as a treatment failure. When done with appropriate technique and with a multidisciplinary team approach, a positive functional outcome can result. In selecting the appropriate level of amputation, several factors must be carefully considered: the likelihood of successful healing of the surgical wound; the preservation of the ankle and knee (if possible) to minimize the impact on energy cost of gait and postural control; and the creation of a residual limb with adequate skin surface and soft tissue robustness, length, and dimensions for prosthetic fitting and function. Appropriate management of bone, muscle, nerves, and skin remains essential to a successful outcome. Even with flawless technique, complications are frequent, and patients require consistent follow-up in the perioperative period for appropriate management. Although many principles can be applied to all amputations, each individual amputation level has its own key technical points. In the future, amputation surgery may routinely involve a number of novel techniques, all of which have been developed with the goal of creating a painless residual limb that provides maximum functional benefit to the patient.

References

1. CA S, Z K, BJ M, MC I. *G P. Surgeries in Hospital-Based Ambulatory Surgery and Hospital Inpatient Settings, 2014.* Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality; 2017.
2. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, MacKenzie EJ. Limb amputation and limb deficiency: epidemiology and recent trends in the United States. *South Med J.* 2002;95(8):875–883.
3. Coffey L, Gallagher P, Horgan O, Desmond D, MacLachlan M. Psychosocial adjustment to diabetes-related lower limb amputation. *Diabet Med.* 2009;26(10):1063–1067.
4. Chen MC, Lee SS, Hsieh YL, Wu SJ, Lai CS, Lin SD. Influencing factors of outcome after lower-limb amputation: a five-year review in a plastic surgical department. *Ann Plast Surg.* 2008;61(3):314–318.
5. Howe EG. Increasing consensus with patients and their loved ones. *J Clin Ethics.* 2009;20(1):3–12.
6. Ploeg AJ, Lardenoye JW, Vrancken Peeters MP, Breslau PJ. Contemporary series of morbidity and mortality after lower limb amputation. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2005;29(6):633–637.
7. Aragón-Sánchez J, Hernández-Herrero MJ, Lázaro-Martínez JL, et al. In-hospital complications and mortality following major lower extremity amputations in a series of predominantly diabetic patients. *Int J Low Extrem Wounds.* 2010;9(1):16–23.
8. Kullo IJ, Rooke TW. CLINICAL PRACTICE. Peripheral Artery Disease. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;374(9):861–871.
9. Ziegler-Graham K, MacKenzie EJ, Ephraim PL, Travison TG, Brookmeyer R. Estimating the prevalence of limb loss in the United States: 2005 to 2050. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89(3):422–429.
10. Allison MA, Ho E, Denenberg JO, et al. Ethnic-specific prevalence of peripheral arterial disease in the United States. *Am J Prev Med.* 2007;32(4):328–333.
11. Ostchega Y, Paulose-Ram R, Dillon CF, Gu Q, Hughes JP. Prevalence of peripheral arterial disease and risk factors in persons aged 60 and older: data from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 1999-2004. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2007;55(4):583–589.
12. Aronow WS, Ahmed MI, Ekundayo OJ, Allman RM, Ahmed A. A propensity-matched study of the association of peripheral arterial disease with cardiovascular outcomes in community-dwelling older adults. *Am J Cardiol.* 2009;103(1):130–135.
13. Gregg EW, Sorlie P, Paulose-Ram R, et al. Prevalence of lower-extremity disease in the US adult population >=40 years of age with and without diabetes: 1999-2000 national health and nutrition examination survey. *Diabetes Care.* 2004;27(7):1591–1597.
14. Stern JR, Wong CK, Yerovinkina M, et al. A Meta-analysis of Long-term Mortality and Associated Risk Factors following Lower Extremity Amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2017;42:322–327.
15. Karam J, Shepard A, Rubinfeld I. Predictors of operative mortality following major lower extremity amputations using the National Surgical Quality Improvement Program public use data. *J Vasc Surg.* 2013;58(5):1276–1282.

16. Armstrong DW, Tobin C, Matangi MF. The accuracy of the physical examination for the detection of lower extremity peripheral arterial disease. *Can J Cardiol.* 2010;26(10). e346-350.
17. Norgren L, Hiatt WR, Dormandy JA, et al. Inter-society consensus for the management of peripheral arterial disease. *Int Angiol.* 2007;26 (2):81–157.
18. Falluji N, Mukherjee D. Critical and acute limb ischemia: an overview. *Angiology.* 2014;65(2):137–146.
19. Gilliland C, Shah J, Martin JG, Miller MJ. Acute Limb Ischemia. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol.* 2017;20(4):274–280.
20. Bus SA, Maas M, de Lange A, Michels RP, Levi M. Elevated plantar pressures in neuropathic diabetic patients with claw/hammer toe deformity. *J Biomech.* 2005;38(9):1918–1925.
21. Feng Y, Schlosser FJ, Sumpio BE. The Semmes Weinstein monofilament examination as a screening tool for diabetic peripheral neuropathy. *J Vasc Surg.* 2009;50(3):675–682. 682.e671.
22. Botek G, Anderson MA, Taylor R. Charcot neuroarthropathy: An often overlooked complication of diabetes. *Cleve Clin J Med.* 2010;77(9):593–599.
23. Gandhi RA, Marques JL, Selvarajah D, Emery CJ, Tesfaye S. Painful diabetic neuropathy is associated with greater autonomic dysfunction than painless diabetic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care.* 2010;33(7): 1585–1590.
24. Cournot M, Boccalon H, Cambou JP, et al. Accuracy of the screening physical examination to identify subclinical atherosclerosis and peripheral arterial disease in asymptomatic subjects. *J Vasc Surg.* 2007;46(6):1215–1221.
25. Shishehbor MH, White CJ, Gray BH, et al. Critical Limb Ischemia: An Expert Statement. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2016;68(18):2002–2015.
26. Bunte MC, Jacob J, Nudelman B, Shishehbor MH. Validation of the relationship between ankle-brachial and toe-brachial indices and infragenicular arterial patency in critical limb ischemia. *Vasc Med.* 2015;20(1):23–29.
27. Nishio H, Minakata K, Kawaguchi A, et al. Transcutaneous oxygen pressure as a surrogate index of lower limb amputation. *Int Angiol.* 2016;35(6):565–572.
28. Iglesias J, Pena C. Computed tomography angiography and magnetic resonance angiography imaging in critical limb ischemia: an overview. *Tech Vasc Interv Radiol.* 2014;17(3):147–154.
29. Cook TS. Computed Tomography Angiography of the Lower Extremities. *Radiol Clin North Am.* 2016;54(1):115–130.
30. Jens S, Kerstens MK, Legemate DA, Reekers JA, Bipat S, Koelemay MJ. Diagnostic performance of computed tomography angiography in peripheral arterial injury due to trauma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2013;46(3):329–337.
31. Pomposelli F. Arterial imaging in patients with lower extremity ischemia and diabetes mellitus. *J Vasc Surg.* 2010;52(3 Suppl):81s–91s.
32. Harrison DK, Hawthorn IE. Amputation level viability in critical limb ischaemia: setting new standards. *Adv Exp Med Biol.* 2005;566: 325–331.
33. Debus ES, Lohrenz C, Diener H, Winkler MS, Larena-Avellaneda A. Surgical reconstructions in peripheral arterial occlusive disease. *Vasa.* 2009;38(4):317–333.
34. Goodney PP, Beck AW, Nagle J, Welch HG, Zwolak RM. National trends in lower extremity bypass surgery, endovascular interventions, and major amputations. *J Vasc Surg.* 2009;50(1):54–60.
35. van den Berg JC. Thrombolysis for acute arterial occlusion. *J Vasc Surg.* 2010;52(2):512–515.
36. Kosinski MA, Lipsky BA. Current medical management of diabetic foot infections. *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther.* 2010;8(11):1293–1305.
37. Kim BS, Choi WJ, Baek MK, Kim YS, Lee JW. Limb salvage in severe diabetic foot infection. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2011;32(1):31–37.
38. Capobianco CM, Stapleton JJ, Zgonis T. Surgical management of diabetic foot and ankle infections. *Foot Ankle Spec.* 2010;3(5):223–230.
39. Hardman RL, Jazaeri O, Yi J, Smith M, Gupta R. Overview of classification systems in peripheral artery disease. *Semin Intervent Radiol.* 2014;31(4):378–388.
40. Farber A, Eberhardt RT. The Current State of Critical Limb Ischemia: A Systematic Review. *JAMA Surg.* 2016;151(11):1070–1077.
41. Hirsch AT, Haskal ZJ, Hertzer NR, et al. ACC/AHA 2005 Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with peripheral arterial disease (lower extremity, renal, mesenteric, and abdominal aortic): a collaborative report from the American Association for Vascular Surgery/Society for Vascular Surgery, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society for Vascular Medicine and Biology, Society of Interventional Radiology, and the ACC/AHA Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Writing Committee to Develop Guidelines for the Management of Patients With Peripheral Arterial Disease): endorsed by the American Association of Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Rehabilitation; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; Society for Vascular Nursing; TransAtlantic Inter-Society Consensus; and Vascular Disease Foundation. *Circulation.* 2006;113(11). e463-654.
42. Goodney PP, Holman K, Henke PK, et al. Regional intensity of vascular care and lower extremity amputation rates. *J Vasc Surg.* 2013;57 (6):1471–1479. 1480.e1471-1473; discussion 1479-1480.
43. Laird JR, Singh GD, Armstrong EJ. Contemporary Management of Critical Limb Ischemia: The BEST Is Yet to Come. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2016;67(16):1914–1916.
44. Menard MT, Farber A, Assmann SF, et al. Design and Rationale of the Best Endovascular Versus Best Surgical Therapy for Patients With Critical Limb Ischemia (BEST-CLI) Trial. *J Am Heart Assoc.* 2016;5(7).
45. Kinlay S. Management of Critical Limb Ischemia. *Circ Cardiovasc Interv.* 2016;9(2). e001946.
46. La Fontaine J, Reyzelman A, Rothenberg G, Husain K, Harkless LB. The role of revascularization in transmetatarsal amputations. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2001;91(10):533–535.
47. Glaser JD, Bensley RP, Hurks R, et al. Fate of the contralateral limb after lower extremity amputation. *J Vasc Surg.* 2013;58 (6):1571–1577. e1571.
48. Kanade RV, van Deursen RW, Price P, Harding K. Risk of plantar ulceration in diabetic patients with single-leg amputation. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2006;21(3):306–313.
49. Smith DG, Assal M, Reiber GE, Vath C, LeMaster J, Wallace C. Minor environmental trauma and lower extremity amputation in high-risk patients with diabetes: incidence, pivotal events, etiology, and amputation level in a prospectively followed cohort. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2003;24 (9):690–695.
50. Low EE, Inkellis E, Morshed S. Complications and revision amputation following trauma-related lower limb loss. *Injury.* 2017;48(2): 364–370.
51. Stansbury LG, Lalliss SJ, Branstetter JG, Bagg MR, Holcomb JB. Amputations in U.S. military personnel in the current conflicts in Afghanistan and Iraq. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2008;22(1):43–46.
52. Krueger CA, Wenke JC, Ficke JR. Ten years at war: comprehensive analysis of amputation trends. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg.* 2012;73 (6 Suppl 5). S438-444.
53. Chandler H, MacLeod K, Penn-Barwell JG. Extremity injuries sustained by the UK military in the Iraq and Afghanistan conflicts: 2003-2014. *Injury.* 2017;48(7):1439–1443.
54. Belmont Jr PJ, McCriskin BJ, Hsiao MS, Burks R, Nelson KJ, Schoenfeld AJ. The nature and incidence of musculoskeletal combat wounds in Iraq and Afghanistan (2005-2009). *J Orthop Trauma.* 2013;27(5). e107-113.
55. Fischer H. *A Guide to U.S. Military Casualty Statistics: Operation Freedom's Sentinel, Operation Inherent Resolve, Operation New Dawn, Operation Iraqi Freedom, and Operation Enduring Freedom*. Congressional Research Service 2015. RS22452.
56. Tintle SM, Keeling JJ, Shawen SB, Forsberg JA, Potter BK. Traumatic and trauma-related amputations: part I: general principles and lower-extremity amputations. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2010;92(17): 2852–2868.
57. Durrant CA, Mackey SP. Orthoplastic classification systems: the good, the bad, and the ungainly. *Ann Plast Surg.* 2011;66(1):9–12.
58. Higgins TF, Klatt JB, Beals TC. Lower Extremity Assessment Project (LEAP)-the best available evidence on limb-threatening lower extremity trauma. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 2010;41(2):233–239.
59. Ly TV, Travison TG, Castillo RC, Bosse MJ, MacKenzie EJ. Ability of lower-extremity injury severity scores to predict functional outcome after limb salvage. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2008;90(8):1738–1743.
60. Loja MN, Sammann A, DuBose J, et al. The mangled extremity score and amputation: Time for a revision. *J Trauma Acute Care Surg.* 2017;82(3):518–523.
61. Lange RH. Limb reconstruction versus amputation decision making in massive lower extremity trauma. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1989;243:92–99.
62. Shawen SB, Keeling JJ, Branstetter J, Kirk KL, Ficke JR. The mangled foot and leg: salvage versus amputation. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2010;15 (1):63–75.
63. Bosse MJ, MacKenzie EJ, Kellam JF, et al. An analysis of outcomes of reconstruction or amputation after leg-threatening injuries. *N Engl J Med.* 2002;347(24):1924–1931.

64. MacKenzie EJ, Bosse MJ, Pollak AN, et al. Long-term persistence of disability following severe lower-limb trauma. Results of a seven-year follow-up. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2005;87(8):1801–1809.
65. MacKenzie EJ, Bosse MJ, Kellam JF, et al. Factors influencing the decision to amputate or reconstruct after high-energy lower extremity trauma. *J Trauma.* 2002;52(4):641–649.
66. Bosse MJ, McCarthy ML, Jones AL, et al. The insensate foot following severe lower extremity trauma: an indication for amputation? *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2005;87(12):2601–2608.
67. Harris AM, Althausen PL, Kellam J, Bosse MJ, Castillo R. Complications following limb-threatening lower extremity trauma. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2009;23(1):1–6.
68. Chung KC, Shauver MJ, Saddawi-Konefka D, Haase SC. A decision analysis of amputation versus reconstruction for severe open tibial fracture from the physician and patient perspectives. *Ann Plast Surg.* 2011;66(2):185–191.
69. MacKenzie EJ, Jones AS, Bosse MJ, et al. Health-care costs associated with amputation or reconstruction of a limb-threatening injury. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2007;89(8):1685–1692.
70. Bhandari M, Jeray KJ, Petrisor BA, et al. A Trial of Wound Irrigation in the Initial Management of Open Fracture Wounds. *N Engl J Med.* 2015;373(27):2629–2641.
71. Cancienne JM, Burrus MT, Weiss DB, Yarboro SR. Applications of Local Antibiotics in Orthopedic Trauma. *Orthop Clin North Am.* 2015;46(4):495–510.
72. Fleming ME, O'Daniel A, Bharmal H, Valerio I. Application of the orthoplastic reconstructive ladder to preserve lower extremity amputation length. *Ann Plast Surg.* 2014;73(2):183–189.
73. Gordon WT, O'Brien FP, Strauss JE, Andersen RC, Potter BK. Outcomes associated with the internal fixation of long-bone fractures proximal to traumatic amputations. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2010;92 (13):2312–2318.
74. Lahat G, Lazar A, Lev D. Sarcoma epidemiology and etiology: potential environmental and genetic factors. *Surg Clin North Am.* 2008;88 (3):451–481. v.
75. Hui JY. Epidemiology and Etiology of Sarcomas. *Surg Clin North Am.* 2016;96(5):901–914.
76. Mirabello L, Troisi RJ, Savage SA. Osteosarcoma incidence and survival rates from 1973 to 2004: data from the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results Program. *Cancer.* 2009;115(7):1531–1543.
77. Erstad DJ, Ready J, Abraham J, et al. Amputation for Extremity Sarcoma: Contemporary Indications and Outcomes. *Ann Surg Oncol.* 2018;25(2):394–403.
78. Papp DF, Khanna AJ, McCarthy EF, Carrino JA, Farber AJ, Frassica FJ. Magnetic resonance imaging of soft-tissue tumors: determinate and indeterminate lesions. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2007;89(Suppl 3):103–115.
79. Mankin HJ, Mankin CJ, Simon MA. The hazards of the biopsy, revisited. Members of the Musculoskeletal Tumor Society. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1996;78(5):656–663.
80. Klika RJ, Golik KS, Drum SN, Callahan KE, Thorland WG. Comparison of physiological response to cardiopulmonary exercise testing among cancer survivors and healthy controls. *Eur J Appl Physiol.* 2011;111 (6):1167–1176.
81. Campos MP, Hassan BJ, Riechelmann R, Del Giglio A. Cancer-related fatigue: a practical review. *Ann Oncol.* 2011;22(6):1273–1279.
82. Ramini SK, Brown R, Buckner EB. Embracing changes: adaptation by adolescents with cancer. *Pediatr Nurs.* 2008;34(1):72–79.
83. Erstad DJ, Raut CP. Amputation for Sarcoma: Revisiting a 19th Century Treatment in the 21st Century. *Ann Surg Oncol.* 2018;25 (2):351–353.
84. Davidson AW, Hong A, McCarthy SW, Stalley PD. En-bloc resection, extracorporeal irradiation, and re-implantation in limb salvage for bony malignancies. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 2005;87(6):851–857.
85. Jeys LM, Kulkarni A, Grimer RJ, Carter SR, Tillman RM, Abudu A. Endoprosthetic reconstruction for the treatment of musculoskeletal tumors of the appendicular skeleton and pelvis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2008;90(6):1265–1271.
86. Muscolo DL, Ayerza MA, Aponte-Tinao LA, Ranalletta M. Use of distal femoral osteoarticular allografts in limb salvage surgery. Surgical technique. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2006;88(Suppl 1 Pt 2):305–321.
87. Ebeid W, Amin S, Abdelmegid A. Limb salvage management of pathologic fractures of primary malignant bone tumors. *Cancer Control.* 2005;12(1):57–61.
88. Papagelopoulos PJ, Mavrogenis AF, Savvidou OD, Benetos IS, Galanis EC, Soucacos PN. Pathological fractures in primary bone sarcomas. *Injury.* 2008;39(4):395–403.
89. Scully SP, Ghert MA, Zurakowski D, Thompson RC, Gebhardt MC. Pathologic fracture in osteosarcoma: prognostic importance and treatment implications. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2002;84-a(1):49–57.
90. Bacci G, Balladelli A, Palmerini E, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy for osteosarcoma of the extremities in preadolescent patients: the Rizzoli Institute experience. *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol.* 2008;30 (12):908–912.
91. Lietman SA, Joyce MJ. Bone sarcomas: Overview of management, with a focus on surgical treatment considerations. *Cleve Clin J Med.* 2010;77(Suppl 1). S8-12.
92. Simon MA. Limb salvage for osteosarcoma. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1988;70(2):307–310.
93. Rosenberg SA, Tepper J, Glatstein E, et al. The treatment of soft-tissue sarcomas of the extremities: prospective randomized evaluations of (1) limb-sparing surgery plus radiation therapy compared with amputation and (2) the role of adjuvant chemotherapy. *Ann Surg.* 1982;196(3):305–315.
94. He X, Gao Z, Xu H, Zhang Z, Fu P. A meta-analysis of randomized control trials of surgical methods with osteosarcoma outcomes. *J Orthop Surg Res.* 2017;12(1):5.
95. Han G, Bi WZ, Xu M, Jia JP, Wang Y. Amputation Versus Limb-Salvage Surgery in Patients with Osteosarcoma: A Meta-analysis. *World J Surg.* 2016;40(8):2016–2027.
96. Li X, Zhang Y, Wan S, et al. A comparative study between limb-salvage and amputation for treating osteosarcoma. *J Bone Oncol.* 2016;5(1):15–21.
97. Racano A, Pazionis T, Farrokhyar F, Deheshi B, Ghert M. High infection rate outcomes in long-bone tumor surgery with endoprosthetic reconstruction in adults: a systematic review. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2013;471(6):2017–2027.
98. Jeys LM, Grimer RJ, Carter SR, Tillman RM. Risk of amputation following limb salvage surgery with endoprosthetic replacement, in a consecutive series of 1261 patients. *Int Orthop.* 2003;27(3):160–163.
99. Mei J, Zhu XZ, Wang ZY, Cai XS. Functional outcomes and quality of life in patients with osteosarcoma treated with amputation versus limb-salvage surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg.* 2014;134(11):1507–1516.
100. Malek F, Somerson JS, Mitchel S, Williams RP. Does limb-salvage surgery offer patients better quality of life and functional capacity than amputation? *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2012;470(7):2000–2006.
101. Pardasaney PK, Sullivan PE, Portney LG, Mankin HJ. Advantage of limb salvage over amputation for proximal lower extremity tumors. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2006;444:201–208.
102. Wilcox WR, Coulter CP, Schmitz ML. Congenital limb deficiency disorders. *Clin Perinatol.* 2015;42(2):281–300. viii.
103. Syvanen J, Nietosvaara Y, Ritvanen A, Koskimies E, Kauko T, Helenius I. High risk for major nonlimb anomalies associated with lower-limb deficiency: a population-based study. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2014;96(22):1898–1904.
104. Day HJ. The ISO/ISPO classification of congenital limb deficiency. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1991;15(2):67–69.
105. Krajbich JI. Lower-limb deficiencies and amputations in children. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 1998;6(6):358–367.
106. Nelson VS, Flood KM, Bryant PR, Huang ME, Pasquina PF, Roberts TL. Limb deficiency and prosthetic management. 1. Decision making in prosthetic prescription and management. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2006;87(3 Suppl 1). S3-9.
107. Westberry DE, Davids JR. Proximal focal femoral deficiency (PFFD): management options and controversies. *Hip Int.* 2009;19(Suppl 6): S18–S25.
108. Tellisi N, Fragomen AT, Ilizarov S, Rozbruch SR. Lengthening and reconstruction of congenital leg deficiencies for enhanced prosthetic wear. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2008;466(2):495–499.
109. Courvoisier A, Sailhan F, Thevenin-Lemoine C, Vialle R, Damsin J. Congenital tibial deficiencies: treatment using the Ilizarov's external fixator. *Orthop Traumatol Surg Res.* 2009;95(6):431–436.
110. Ackman J, Altiok H, Flanagan A, et al. Long-term follow-up of Van Nes rotationplasty in patients with congenital proximal focal femoral deficiency. *Bone Joint J.* 2013;95-b(2):192–198.
111. Hamdy RC, Makhdom AM, Saran N, Birch J. Congenital fibular deficiency. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2014;22(4):246–255.
112. Paley D. Tibial hemimelia: new classification and reconstructive options. *J Child Orthop.* 2016;10(6):529–555.
113. Morris CD, Potter BK, Athanasian EA, Lewis VO. Extremity amputations: principles, techniques, and recent advances. *Instr Course Lect.* 2015;64:105–117.

114. Waters RL, Perry J, Antonelli D, Hislop H. Energy cost of walking of amputees: the influence of level of amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1976;58(1):42–46.
115. Bowker JH, San Giovanni TP, Pinzur MS. North American experience with knee disarticulation with use of a posterior myofasciocutaneous flap. Healing rate and functional results in seventy-seven patients. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2000;82-a(11):1571–1574.
116. Devan H, Carman A, Hendrick P, Hale L, Ribeiro DC. Spinal, pelvic, and hip movement asymmetries in people with lower-limb amputation: Systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2015;52(1):1–19.
117. Mwipatayi BP, Naidoo NG, Jeffery PC, Maraspini CD, Adams MZ, Cloete N. Transmetatarsal amputation: three-year experience at Groote Schuur Hospital. *World J Surg.* 2005;29(2):245–248.
118. Thorud JC, Jupiter DC, Lorenzana J, Nguyen TT, Shibuya N. Reoperation and Reamputation After Transmetatarsal Amputation: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2016;55 (5):1007–1012.
119. Taylor SM, Kalbaugh CA, Cass AL, et al. "Successful outcome" after below-knee amputation: an objective definition and influence of clinical variables. *Am Surg.* 2008;74(7):607–612. discussion 612-603.
120. Gottschalk F. The importance of soft tissue stabilization in transfemoral amputation: English version. *Orthopade.* 2016;45(Suppl 1). S1-4.
121. Gottschalk F. Transfemoral amputation Biomechanics and surgery. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1999;361:15–22.
122. Jaegers SM, Arendzen JH, de Jongh HJ. Changes in hip muscles after above-knee amputation. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1995;319: 276–284.
123. Jaegers SM, Arendzen JH, de Jongh HJ. An electromyographic study of the hip muscles of transfemoral amputees in walking. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1996;328:119–128.
124. Polfer EM, Tintle SM, Forsberg JA, Potter BK. Skin Grafts for Residual Limb Coverage and Preservation of Amputation Length. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 2015;136(3):603–609.
125. Ebrahimzadeh MH, Fattahi AS. Long-term clinical outcomes of Iranian veterans with unilateral transfemoral amputation. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(22):1873–1877.
126. Ebrahimzadeh MH, Hariri S. Long-term outcomes of unilateral transtibial amputations. *Mil Med.* 2009;174(6):593–597.
127. Tintle SM, Shawen SB, Forsberg JA, et al. Reoperation after combat-related major lower extremity amputations. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2014;28(4):232–237.
128. Ives GC, Kung TA, Nghiem BT, et al. Current State of the Surgical Treatment of Terminal Neuromas. *Neurosurgery.* 2018;83(3):354–364.
129. Poppler LH, Parikh RP, Bichanich MJ, et al. Surgical interventions for the treatment of painful neuroma: a comparative meta-analysis. *Pain.* 2018;159(2):214–223.
130. Poyntz SA, Dalal M, Hacking N, Fowler S. Peripheral Interventions for Painful Stump Neuromas of the Lower Limb: A Systematic Review. *Clin J Pain.* 2018;34(3):285–295.
131. Tintle SM, Donohue MA, Shawen S, Forsberg JA, Potter BK. Proximal sural traction neurectomy during transtibial amputations. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2012;26(2):123–126.
132. Choksy SA, Lee Chong P, Smith C, Ireland M, Beard J. A randomised controlled trial of the use of a tourniquet to reduce blood loss during transtibial amputation for peripheral arterial disease. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2006;31(6):646–650.
133. Wied C, Tengberg PT, Holm G, et al. Tourniquets do not increase the total blood loss or re-amputation risk in transtibial amputations. *World J Orthop.* 2017;8(1):62–67.
134. Churilov I, Churilov L, Murphy D. Do rigid dressings reduce the time from amputation to prosthetic fitting? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2014;28(7):1801–1808.
135. Reichmann JP, Stevens PM, Rheinstein J, Kreulen CD. Removable Rigid Dressings for Postoperative Management of Transtibial Amputations: A Review of Published Evidence. *PM R.* 2018;10(5):516–523.
136. Ali MM, Loretz L, Shea A, et al. A contemporary comparative analysis of immediate postoperative prosthesis placement following below-knee amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2013;27(8):1146–1153.
137. Schon LC, Short KW, Soupiou O, Noll K, Rheinstein J. Benefits of early prosthetic management of transtibial amputees: a prospective clinical study of a prefabricated prosthesis. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2002;23 (6):509–514.
138. Smith DG, McFarland LV, Sangeorzan BJ, Reiber GE, Czerniecki JM. Postoperative dressing and management strategies for transtibial amputations: a critical review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2003;40 (3):213–224.
139. Raichle KA, Osborne TL, Jensen MP, Ehde DM, Smith DG, Robinson LR. Preoperative state anxiety, acute postoperative pain, and analgesic use in persons undergoing lower limb amputation. *Clin J Pain.* 2015;31(8):699–706.
140. Hanley MA, Jensen MP, Smith DG, Ehde DM, Edwards WT, Robinson LR. Preamputation pain and acute pain predict chronic pain after lower extremity amputation. *J Pain.* 2007;8(2):102–109.
141. Kent ML, Hsia HJ, Van de Ven TJ, Buchheit TE. Perioperative Pain Management Strategies for Amputation: A Topical Review. *Pain Med.* 2017;18(3):504–519.
142. Curran T, Zhang JQ, Lo RC, et al. Risk factors and indications for readmission after lower extremity amputation in the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program. *J Vasc Surg.* 2014;60(5):1315–1324.
143. Beaulieu RJ, Grimm JC, Lyu H, Abularrage CJ, Perler BA. Rates and predictors of readmission after minor lower extremity amputations. *J Vasc Surg.* 2015;62(1):101–105.
144. Arsenault KA, Al-Otaibi A, Devereaux PJ, Thorlund K, Tittley JG, Whitlock RP. The use of transcutaneous oximetry to predict healing complications of lower limb amputations: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2012;43(3):329–336.
145. Eneroth M, Apelqvist J, Larsson J, Persson BM. Improved wound healing in transtibial amputees receiving supplementary nutrition. *Int Orthop.* 1997;21(2):104–108.
146. Kay SP, Moreland JR, Schmitter E. Nutritional status and wound healing in lower extremity amputations. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1987;217:253–256.
147. Dickhaut SC, DeLee JC, Page CP. Nutritional status: importance in predicting wound-healing after amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1984;66(1):71–75.
148. Yuwen P, Chen W, Lv H, et al. Albumin and surgical site infection risk in orthopaedics: a meta-analysis. *BMC Surg.* 2017;17(1):7.
149. Lind J, Kramhøft M, Bødtker S. The influence of smoking on complications after primary amputations of the lower extremity. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1991;267:211–217.
150. Hasanadka R, McLafferty RB, Moore CJ, Hood DB, Ramsey DE, Hodgson KJ. Predictors of wound complications following major amputation for critical limb ischemia. *J Vasc Surg.* 2011;54 (5):1374–1382.
151. Castillo RC, Bosse MJ, MacKenzie EJ, Patterson BM. Impact of smoking on fracture healing and risk of complications in limb-threatening open tibia fractures. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2005;19(3):151–157.
152. Argintar E, Triantafillou K, Delahay J, Wiesel B. The musculoskeletal effects of perioperative smoking. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2012;20 (6):359–363.
153. Polfer EM, Hoyt BW, Senchak LT, Murphey MD, Forsberg JA, Potter BK. Fluid collections in amputations are not indicative or predictive of infection. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2014;472(10):2978–2983.
154. Phair J, DeCarlo C, Scher L, et al. Risk factors for unplanned readmission and stump complications after major lower extremity amputation. *J Vasc Surg.* 2017;.
155. RV O'Toole, Joshi M, Carlini AR, et al. Local Antibiotic Therapy to Reduce Infection After Operative Treatment of Fractures at High Risk of Infection: A Multicenter, Randomized, Controlled Trial (VANCO Study). *J Orthop Trauma.* 2017;31(Suppl 1):S18–S24.
156. Potter BK, Burns TC, Lacap AP, Granville RR, Gajewski DA. Heterotopic ossification following traumatic and combat-related amputations. Prevalence, risk factors, and preliminary results of excision. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2007;89(3):476–486.
157. Edwards DS, Kuhn KM, Potter BK, Forsberg JA. Heterotopic Ossification: A Review of Current Understanding, Treatment, and Future. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2016;30(Suppl 3):S27–S30.
158. Potter BK, Burns TC, Lacap AP, Granville RR, Gajewski D. Heterotopic ossification in the residual limbs of traumatic and combat-related amputees. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2006;14. (10 Spec No.): S191-197.
159. Qureshi AT, Dey D, Sanders EM, et al. Inhibition of Mammalian Target of Rapamycin Signaling with Rapamycin Prevents Trauma-Induced Heterotopic Ossification. *Am J Pathol.* 2017;187 (11):2536–2545.
160. Seavey JG, Wheatley BM, Pavey GJ, et al. Early local delivery of vancomycin suppresses ectopic bone formation in a rat model of trauma-induced heterotopic ossification. *J Orthop Res.* 2017;35(11): 2397–2406.
161. Pavey GJ, Qureshi AT, Tomasino AM, et al. Targeted stimulation of retinoic acid receptor-γ mitigates the formation of heterotopic

ossification in an established blast-related traumatic injury model. *Bone.* 2016;90:159–167.
162. Matsumoto ME, Khan M, Jayabalan P, Ziebarth J, Munin MC. Heterotopic ossification in civilians with lower limb amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2014;95(9):1710–1713.
163. Ephraim PL, Wegener ST, MacKenzie EJ, Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE. Phantom pain, residual limb pain, and back pain in amputees: results of a national survey. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;86(10):1910–1919.
164. Ehde DM, Czerniecki JM, Smith DG, et al. Chronic phantom sensations, phantom pain, residual limb pain, and other regional pain after lower limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2000;81 (8):1039–1044.
165. Luo Y, Anderson TA. Phantom Limb Pain: A Review. *Int Anesthesiol Clin.* 2016;54(2):121–139.
166. Lirk P, Stadlbauer KH, Hollmann MW. ESA Clinical Trials Network 2012: PLATA-Prevention of Phantom Limb Pain After Transtibial Amputation: randomised, double-blind, controlled, multicentre trial comparing optimised intravenous pain control versus optimised intravenous pain control plus regional anaesthesia. *Eur J Anaesthesiol.* 2013;Vol 30:202–204. England.
167. Pinzur MS, Gold J, Schwartz D, Gross N. Energy demands for walking in dysvascular amputees as related to the level of amputation. *Orthopedics.* 1992;15(9):1033–1036. discussion 1036-1037.
168. Aulivola B, Hile CN, Hamdan AD, et al. Major lower extremity amputation: outcome of a modern series. *Arch Surg.* 2004;139(4): 395–399. discussion 399.
169. Taylor SM, Kalbaugh CA, Blackhurst DW, et al. Preoperative clinical factors predict postoperative functional outcomes after major lower limb amputation: an analysis of 553 consecutive patients. *J Vasc Surg.* 2005;42(2):227–235.
170. MacKenzie EJ, Bosse MJ, Castillo RC, et al. Functional outcomes following trauma-related lower-extremity amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2004;86-a(8):1636–1645.
171. Penn-Barwell JG. Outcomes in lower limb amputation following trauma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Injury.* 2011;42 (12):1474–1479.
172. Doukas WC, Hayda RA, Frisch HM, et al. The Military Extremity Trauma Amputation/Limb Salvage (METALS) study: outcomes of amputation versus limb salvage following major lower-extremity trauma. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2013;95(2):138–145.
173. McCarthy ML, MacKenzie EJ, Edwin D, Bosse MJ, Castillo RC, Starr A. Psychological distress associated with severe lower-limb injury. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2003;85-a(9):1689–1697.
174. Vincent HK, Horodyski M, Vincent KR, Brisbane ST, Sadasivan KK. Psychological Distress After Orthopedic Trauma: Prevalence in Patients and Implications for Rehabilitation. *Pm r.* 2015;7 (9):978–989.
175. Struyf PA, van Heugten CM, Hitters MW, Smeets RJ. The prevalence of osteoarthritis of the intact hip and knee among traumatic leg amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;90(3):440–446.
176. Flint JH, Wade AM, Stocker DJ, Pasquina PF, Howard RS, Potter BK. Bone mineral density loss after combat-related lower extremity amputation. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2014;28(4):238–244.
177. Naschitz JE, Lenger R. Why traumatic leg amputees are at increased risk for cardiovascular diseases. *Qjm.* 2008;101(4):251–259.
178. Vollmar JF, Paes E, Pauschinger P, Henze E, Friesch A. Aortic aneurysms as late sequelae of above-knee amputation. *Lancet.* 1989;2 (8667):834–835.
179. Lorenz M, Panitz K, Grosse-Furtner C, Meyer J, Lorenz R. Lower-limb amputation, prevalence of abdominal aortic aneurysm and atherosclerotic risk factors. *Br J Surg.* 1994;81(6):839–840.
180. Modan M, Peles E, Halkin H, et al. Increased cardiovascular disease mortality rates in traumatic lower limb amputees. *Am J Cardiol.* 1998;82(10):1242–1247.
181. Littman AJ, Thompson ML, Arterburn DE, et al. Lower-limb amputation and body weight changes in men. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2015;52 (2):159–170.
182. Dudkiewicz I, Schwarz O, Heim M, Herman A, Siev-Ner I. Transmetatarsal amputation in patients with a diabetic foot: reviewing 10 years experience. *Foot (Edinb).* 2009;19(4):201–204.
183. Carlson T, Reed 3rd JF. A case-control study of the risk factors for toe amputation in a diabetic population. *Int J Low Extrem Wounds.* 2003;2(1):19–21.
184. Caputo WJ. Surgical management of the diabetic foot. *Wounds.* 2008;20(3):74–83.
185. Brodsky JW, Saltzman CL. Amputations of the Foot and Ankle. In: Coughlin MJ, Saltman CL, Anderson RB, eds. *Mann's Surgery of the Foot and Ankle* Vol 2. 9th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier Saunders; 2014:1481–1506.
186. Levine SE, Myerson MS, Cook WPt. Management of hallux amputation. *Orthopedics.* 1999;22(3):330–333. quiz 334-335.
187. Borkosky SL, Roukis TS. Incidence of repeat amputation after partial first ray amputation associated with diabetes mellitus and peripheral neuropathy: an 11-year review. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2013;52 (3):335–338.
188. Pinzur MS, Sage R, Schwaegler P. Ray resection in the dysvascular foot. *A retrospective review* Clin Orthop Relat Res. 1984;191:232–234.
189. Roukis TS. Minimum-incision metatarsal ray resection: an observational case series. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2010;49(1):52–54.
190. Dalla Paola L, Faglia E, Caminiti M, Clerici G, Ninkovic S, Deanesi V. Ulcer recurrence following first ray amputation in diabetic patients: a cohort prospective study. *Diabetes Care.* 2003;26(6):1874–1878.
191. Aprile I, Galli M, Pitocco D, et al. Does First Ray Amputation in Diabetic Patients Influence Gait and Quality of Life? *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2018;57(1):44–51.
192. Roukis TS, Singh N, Andersen CA. Preserving functional capacity as opposed to tissue preservation in the diabetic patient: a single institution experience. *Foot Ankle Spec.* 2010;3(4):177–183.
193. Canales MB, Heurich ME, Mandela AM, Razzante MC. An Approach to Transmetatarsal Amputation to Encourage Immediate Weightbearing in Diabetic Patients. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2017;56(3):609–612.
194. Schweinberger MH, Roukis TS. Balancing of the transmetatarsal amputation with peroneus brevis to peroneus longus tendon transfer. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2007;46(6):510–514.
195. Roukis TS. Flexor hallucis longus and extensor digitorum longus tendon transfers for balancing the foot following transmetatarsal amputation. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2009;48(3):398–401.
196. La Fontaine J, Brown D, Adams M, VanPelt M. New and recurrent ulcerations after percutaneous achilles tendon lengthening in transmetatarsal amputation. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2008;47(3):225–229.
197. Greene CJ, Bibbo C. The Lisfranc Amputation: A More Reliable Level of Amputation With Proper Intraoperative Tendon Balancing. *J Foot Ankle Surg.* 2017;56(4):824–826.
198. Marks RM, Long JT, Exten EL. Gait abnormality following amputation in diabetic patients. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2010;15(3):501–507.
199. Braaksma R, Dijkstra PU, Geertzen JHB. Syme Amputation: A Systematic Review. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2018. 1071100717745313.
200. Johannesson A, Larsson GU, Ramstrand N, Lauge-Pedersen H, Wagner P, Atroshi I. Outcomes of a standardized surgical and rehabilitation program in transtibial amputation for peripheral vascular disease: a prospective cohort study. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;89(4):293–303.
201. Lavelle DG. Amputations of the Lower Extremity. In: Azar FM, Beaty JH, Canale ST, eds. *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics. Vol 1.* 13th Edition. Philadelphia, PA: Elsevier; 2017:674–685.
202. Arwert HJ, van Doorn-Loogman MH, Koning J, Terburg M, Rol M, Roebroeck ME. Residual-limb quality and functional mobility 1 year after transtibial amputation caused by vascular insufficiency. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2007;44(5):717–722.
203. Assal M, Blanck R, Smith DG. Extended posterior flap for transtibial amputation. *Orthopedics.* 2005;28(6):542–546.
204. Bruckner L. A standardised trans-tibial amputation method following chronic occlusive arterial disease. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1992;16 (3):157–162.
205. Stahel PF, Oberholzer A, Morgan SJ, Heyde CE. Concepts of transtibial amputation: Burgess technique versus modified Bruckner procedure. *ANZ J Surg.* 2006;76(10):942–946.
206. Taylor BC, Poka A. Osteomyoplastic Transtibial Amputation: The Ertl Technique. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2016;24(4):259–265.
207. Jain SK. Skew flap technique in trans-tibial amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2005;29(3):283–290.
208. Tisi PV, Than MM. Type of incision for below knee amputation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2014;(4). Cd003749.
209. Lewandowski LR, Tintle SM, D'Alleyrand JC, Potter BK. The utilization of a suture bridge construct for tibiofibular instability during transtibial amputation without distal bridge synostosis creation. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2013;27(10). e239-242.
210. Tintle SM, Keeling JJ, Forsberg JA, Shawen SB, Andersen RC, Potter BK. Operative complications of combat-related transtibial amputations: a comparison of the modified burgess and modified Ertl

tibiofibular synostosis techniques. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2011;93 (11):1016–1021.
211. Keeling JJ, Shawen SB, Forsberg JA, et al. Comparison of functional outcomes following bridge synostosis with non-bone-bridging transtibial combat-related amputations. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2013;95 (10):888–893.
212. Bosse MJ, Morshed S, Reider L, et al. Transtibial Amputation Outcomes Study (TAOS): Comparing Transtibial Amputation With and Without a Tibiofibular Synostosis (Ertl) Procedure. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2017;31(Suppl 1):S63–s69.
213. Taylor BC, French B, Poka A, Blint A, Mehta S. Osteomyoplastic and traditional transtibial amputations in the trauma patient: perioperative comparisons and outcomes. *Orthopedics.* 2010;33(6):390.
214. Overmann A, Potter BK. Alternative Bone Graft Sources and Techniques for Tibiofibular Synostosis Creation Following Transtibial Amputation: A Report of Two Cases. *JBJS Case Connect.* 2015;5(1). e18-e16.
215. Gwinn DE, Keeling J, Froehner JW, McGuigan FX, Andersen R. Perioperative differences between bone bridging and non-bone bridging transtibial amputations for wartime lower extremity trauma. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2008;29(8):787–793.
216. Pinzur M. Knee disarticulation: Surgical management. In: Smith D, Michaels J, Bowker J, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical Prosthetic and Rehabilitation Principles.* 3rd ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004:517–523.
217. Siev-Ner I, Heim M, Wershavski M, Adunsky A, Azariat M. Why knee disarticulation (through-knee-amputation) is appropriate for non ambulatory patients. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2000;22(18):862–864.
218. Mazet Jr R, Schmitter ED, Chupurdia R. Disarticulation of the knee. A follow-up report. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1978;60(5):675–678.
219. Burgess EM. Disarticulation of the knee. A modified technique. *Arch Surg.* 1977;112(10):1250–1255.
220. Pinzur MS, Bowker JH. Knee disarticulation. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1999;361:23–28.
221. Duerksen F, Rogalsky RJ, Cochrane IW. Knee disarticulation with intercondylar patellofemoral arthrodesis. *An improved technique* Clin Orthop Relat Res. 1990;256:50–57.
222. Yusuf SW, Baker DM, Wenham PW, Makin GS, Hopkinson BR. Role of Gritti-Stokes amputation in peripheral vascular disease. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl.* 1997;79(2):102–104.
223. Taylor BC, Poka A, French BG, Fowler TT, Mehta S. Gritti-stokes amputations in the trauma patient: clinical comparisons and subjective outcomes. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2012;94(7):602–608.
224. Gottschalk FA, Stills M. The biomechanics of trans-femoral amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1994;18(1):12–17.
225. Majeski J. Modified supracondylar amputation of the femur. *Am Surg.* 2004;70(3):265–267.
226. Jaegers SM, Arendzen JH, de Jongh HJ. Prosthetic gait of unilateral transfemoral amputees: a kinematic study. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1995;76(8):736–743.
227. Zalavras CG, Rigopoulos N, Ahlmann E, Patzakis MJ. Hip disarticulation for severe lower extremity infections. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2009;467(7):1721–1726.
228. Correa GI, Calderon WO, Burnier LA, Danilla SE, Roa RG, Guzman LM. Proximal amputation of inferior extremity secondary to recurrent pressure ulcers in patients with spinal cord injuries. *Spinal Cord.* 2008;46(2):135–139.
229. Daigeler A, Lehnhardt M, Khadra A, et al. Proximal major limb amputations-a retrospective analysis of 45 oncological cases. *World J Surg Oncol.* 2009;7:15.
230. Unruh T, Fisher Jr DF, Unruh TA, et al. Hip disarticulation. An 11-year experience. *Arch Surg.* 1990;125(6):791–793.
231. Houdek MT, Kralovec ME, Andrews KL. Hemipelvectomy: high-level amputation surgery and prosthetic rehabilitation. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2014;93(7):600–608.
232. Kawai A, Kadota H, Yamaguchi U, Morimoto Y, Ozaki T, Beppu Y. Blood loss and transfusion associated with musculoskeletal tumor surgery. *J Surg Oncol.* 2005;92(1):52–58.
233. Bibbo C, Newman AS, Lackman RD, Levin LS, Kovach SJ. A simplified approach to reconstruction of hemipelvectomy defects with lower extremity free fillet flaps to minimize ischemia time. *J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg.* 2015;68(12):1750–1754.
234. Senchenkov A, Moran SL, Petty PM, et al. Soft-tissue reconstruction of external hemipelvectomy defects. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 2009;124 (1):144–155.
235. D'Alleyrand JC, Lewandowski LR, Forsberg JA, et al. Combat-Related Hemipelvectomy: 14 Cases, a Review of the Literature and Lessons Learned. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2015;29(12). e493-498.
236. Taylor GW, Rogers Jr WP. Hindquarter amputation; experience with eighteen cases. *N Engl J Med.* 1953;249(24):963–969.
237. Carter SR, Eastwood DM, Grimer RJ, Sneath RS. Hindquarter amputation for tumours of the musculoskeletal system. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 1990;72(3):490–493.
238. Senchenkov A, Moran SL, Petty PM, et al. Predictors of complications and outcomes of external hemipelvectomy wounds: account of 160 consecutive cases. *Ann Surg Oncol.* 2008;15(1):355–363.
239. Nowroozi F, Salvanelli ML, Gerber LH. Energy expenditure in hip disarticulation and hemipelvectomy amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1983;64(7):300–303.
240. Kralovec ME, Houdek MT, Andrews KL, Shives TC, Rose PS, Sim FH. Prosthetic Rehabilitation After Hip Disarticulation or Hemipelvectomy. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2015;94(12):1035–1040.
241. Ebrahimzadeh MH, Kachooei AR, Soroush MR, Hasankhani EG, Razi S, Birjandinejad A. Long-term clinical outcomes of war-related hip disarticulation and transpelvic amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2013;95(16):111–116. e114.
242. Denes Z, Till A. Rehabilitation of patients after hip disarticulation. *Arch Orthop Trauma Surg.* 1997;116(8):498–499.
243. Parmelee DD, Inventor. Improvement in Artificial Legs 1863.
244. Adell R, Lekholm U, Rockler B, Branemark PI. A 15-year study of osseointegrated implants in the treatment of the edentulous jaw. *Int J Oral Surg.* 1981;10(6):387–416.
245. Li Y, Branemark R. Osseointegrated prostheses for rehabilitation following amputation: The pioneering Swedish model. *Unfallchirurg.* 2017;120(4):285–292.
246. Aschoff HH, Kennon RE, Keggi JM, Rubin LE. Transcutaneous, distal femoral, intramedullary attachment for above-the-knee prostheses: an endo-exo device. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2010;92(Suppl 2): 180–186.
247. Frolke JP, Leijendekkers RA, van de Meent H. Osseointegrated prosthesis for patients with an amputation: Multidisciplinary team approach in the Netherlands. *Unfallchirurg.* 2017;120(4):293–299.
248. Sullivan J, Uden M, Robinson KP, Sooriakumaran S. Rehabilitation of the trans-femoral amputee with an osseointegrated prosthesis: the United Kingdom experience. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2003;27 (2):114–120.
249. Al Muderis M, Khemka A, Lord SJ, Van de Meent H, Frolke JP. Safety of Osseointegrated Implants for Transfemoral Amputees: A Two-Center Prospective Cohort Study. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2016;98 (11):900–909.
250. McGough RL, Goodman MA, Randall RL, Forsberg JA, Potter BK, Lindsey B. The Compress(R) transcutaneous implant for rehabilitation following limb amputation. *Unfallchirurg.* 2017;120(4): 300–305.
251. Hebert JS, Rehani M, Stiegelmar R. Osseointegration for Lower-Limb Amputation: A Systematic Review of Clinical Outcomes. *JBJS Rev.* 2017;5(10). e10.
252. Al Muderis M, Lu W, Tetsworth K, Bosley B, Li JJ. Single-stage osseointegrated reconstruction and rehabilitation of lower limb amputees: the Osseointegration Group of Australia Accelerated Protocol-2 (OGAAP-2) for a prospective cohort study. *BMJ Open.* 2017;7(3). e013508.
253. Juhnke DL, Beck JP, Jeyapalina S, Aschoff HH. Fifteen years of experience with Integral-Leg-Prosthesis: Cohort study of artificial limb attachment system. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2015;52(4):407–420.
254. Tillander J, Hagberg K, Hagberg L, Branemark R. Osseointegrated titanium implants for limb prostheses attachments: infectious complications. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2010;468(10):2781–2788.
255. Branemark R, Berlin O, Hagberg K, Bergh P, Gunterberg B, Rydevik B. A novel osseointegrated percutaneous prosthetic system for the treatment of patients with transfemoral amputation: A prospective study of 51 patients. *Bone Joint J.* 2014;96-b(1):106–113.
256. Tillander J, Hagberg K, Berlin Ö, Hagberg L, Brånemark R. Osteomyelitis Risk in Patients With Transfemoral Amputations Treated With Osseointegration Prostheses. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2017;475 (12):3100–3108.
257. Van de Meent H, Hopman MT, Frolke JP. Walking ability and quality of life in subjects with transfemoral amputation: a comparison of osseointegration with socket prostheses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2013;94(11):2174–2178.

258. Hagberg K, Brånemark R, Gunterberg B, Rydevik B. Osseointegrated trans-femoral amputation prostheses: prospective results of general and condition-specific quality of life in 18 patients at 2-year follow-up. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2008;32(1):29–41.
259. Hagberg K, Hansson E, Brånemark R. Outcome of percutaneous osseointegrated prostheses for patients with unilateral transfemoral amputation at two-year follow-up. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2014;95(11):2120–2127.
260. Windrich M, Grimmer M, Christ O, Rinderknecht S, Beckerle P. Active lower limb prosthetics: a systematic review of design issues and solutions. *Biomed Eng Online.* 2016;15(Suppl 3):140.
261. Souza JM, Fey NP, Cheesborough JE, Agnew SP, Hargrove LJ, Dumanian GA. Advances in tranfemoral amputee rehabilitation: Early experience with targeted muscle reinnervation. *Curr Surg Rep.* 2014;2(51):9.
262. Tucker MR, Olivier J, Pagel A, et al. Control strategies for active lower extremity prosthetics and orthotics: a review. *J Neuroeng Rehabil.* 2015;12:1.
263. Hargrove LJ, Young AJ, Simon AM, et al. Intuitive control of a powered prosthetic leg during ambulation: a randomized clinical trial. *Jama.* 2015;313(22):2244–2252.
264. Kuiken TA, Li G, Lock BA, et al. Targeted muscle reinnervation for real-time myoelectric control of multifunction artificial arms. *JAMA.* 2009;301(6):619–628.
265. Hargrove LJ, Simon AM, Young AJ, et al. Robotic leg control with EMG decoding in an amputee with nerve transfers. *N Engl J Med.* 2013;369(13):1237–1242.
266. Stalberg E. Propagation velocity in human muscle fibers in situ. *Acta Physiol Scand Suppl.* 1966;287:1–112.
267. Herberts P, Kadefors R, Kaiser E, Petersen I. Implantation of micro-circuits for myo-electric control of prostheses. *J Bone Joint Surg Br.* 1968;50(4):780–791.
268. Kamavuako EN, Scheme EJ, Englehart KB. On the usability of intramuscular EMG for prosthetic control: a Fitts' Law approach. *J Electromyogr Kinesiol.* 2014;24(5):770–777.
269. Pasquina PF, Evangelista M, Carvalho AJ, et al. First-in-man demonstration of a fully implanted myoelectric sensors system to control an advanced electromechanical prosthetic hand. *J Neurosci Methods.* 2015;244:85–93.
270. Kuiken TA, Marasco PD, Lock BA, Harden RN, Dewald JP. Redirection of cutaneous sensation from the hand to the chest skin of human amputees with targeted reinnervation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 2007;104(50):20061–20066.
271. Hebert JS, Olson JL, Morhart MJ, et al. Novel targeted sensory reinnervation technique to restore functional hand sensation after transhumeral amputation. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng.* 2014;22(4):765–773.
272. Urbanchek MG, Kung TA, Frost CM, et al. Development of a Regenerative Peripheral Nerve Interface for Control of a Neuroprosthetic Limb. *Biomed Res Int.* 2016;2016. 5726730.
273. Larson JV, Urbanchek MG, Moon JD, et al. Abstract 17: prototype sensory regenerative peripheral nerve interface for artificial limb somatosensory feedback. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 2014;133(3 Suppl):26–27.
274. Irwin ZT, Schroeder KE, Vu PP, et al. Chronic recording of hand prosthesis control signals via a regenerative peripheral nerve interface in a rhesus macaque. *J Neural Eng.* 2016;13(4). 046007.
275. Ortiz-Catalan M, Hakansson B, Branemark R. An osseointegrated human-machine gateway for long-term sensory feedback and motor control of artificial limbs. *Sci Transl Med.* 2014;6(257). 257re256.
276. Souza JM, Cheesborough JE, Ko JH, Cho MS, Kuiken TA, Dumanian GA. Targeted muscle reinnervation: a novel approach to postamputation neuroma pain. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2014;472(10):2984–2990.
277. Bowen JB, Wee CE, Kalik J, Valerio IL. Targeted Muscle Reinnervation to Improve Pain, Prosthetic Tolerance, and Bioprosthetic Outcomes in the Amputee. *Adv Wound Care (New Rochelle).* 2017;6(8):261–267.
278. Agnew SP, Schultz AE, Dumanian GA, Kuiken TA. Targeted reinnervation in the transfemoral amputee: a preliminary study of surgical technique. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 2012;129(1):187–194.
279. Dumanian GA. *Targeted Reinnervation as a Means to Treat Neuromas Associated With Major Limb Amputation (TMR).* NCT02205385, https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02205385.
280. Pet MA, Ko JH, Friedly JL, Mourad PD, Smith DG. Does targeted nerve implantation reduce neuroma pain in amputees? *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2014;472(10):2991–3001.
281. Woo SL, Kung TA, Brown DL, Leonard JA, Kelly BM, Cederna PS. Regenerative Peripheral Nerve Interfaces for the Treatment of Postamputation Neuroma Pain: A Pilot Study. *Plast Reconstr Surg Glob Open.* 2016;4(12). e1038.

20 Postoperative and Preprosthetic Care

TAMARA GRAVANO and MICHELLE M. LUSARDI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Plan a comprehensive examination for an individual with recent lower extremity amputation, selecting appropriate tests and measures and documentation strategies.
2. Use information gathered in the examination, evidence from the clinical research literature, and knowledge of postoperative care to evaluate individuals with recent lower extremity amputation.
3. Formulate an appropriate physical therapy (PT) movement dysfunction diagnosis and prognosis for rehabilitation for individuals with recent lower extremity amputation.
4. Develop appropriate short- and long-term goals and estimate duration, frequency, and intensity of care in the postoperative, preprosthetic care of an individual with recent lower extremity amputation.
5. Develop an appropriate PT plan of care for single limb mobility, residual limb care and wound healing, and preprosthetic rehabilitation.
6. Describe strategies to monitor progress and to adapt and advance the plan of care during the preprosthetic period of rehabilitation.
7. Describe strategies to evaluate outcomes of postoperative, preprosthetic rehabilitation.

Patient-Client Management After Amputation

INDIVIDUALS WITH NEW AMPUTATION

In the early days following surgery, the person with a new amputation is likely to experience acute surgical pain and is likely to be grieving the loss of his or her limb. The immediacy of pain combined with a sense of loss may make it difficult for those with recent amputation to recognize their potential for a positive rehabilitation outcome.[1] Older persons with dysvascular or neuropathic limb loss may have had time to physically and psychologically prepare for an elective amputation after a prolonged period of managing a poorly vascularized foot or nonhealing neuropathic ulcer and therefore may be somewhat less distressed about the loss of their limb than younger persons who have suddenly lost a limb in a traumatic accident or other medical emergency. However, whatever the circumstances leading to amputation, the loss of one's limb requires significant psychological adjustment.[2] Early education and discussion about the process of rehabilitation and the person's ultimate goals are extremely important.[3]

PATIENT-CENTERED CARE AND MULTIDISCIPLINARY TEAMS

In response to the numbers of military personnel with traumatic amputation and to older veterans with dysvascular amputation, the Departments of Defense and of Veterans Affairs have adopted interdisciplinary, patient-centered care as the ideal model for rehabilitation of persons with amputation.[4–6] The physical therapist and prosthetist, as members of the rehabilitation team, will interact with surgeons, patients, and family members as decisions about surgical levels, plans for postoperative care, potential for prosthetic use, and prosthetic rehabilitation plans are made. For persons facing elective amputation because of dysvascular disease, a period of physical therapy (PT) intervention prior to surgery can positively impact on postoperative outcomes.[6]

In the days immediately after amputation, this initial stage of acute care and early rehabilitation sets the stage for eventual return to functional mobility, ability to return to valued activities, and participation in key family and social roles.[4] Although the immediate goals of each member of the interdisciplinary team vary, all ultimately lead toward the independence and return to the preferred lifestyle of the person with a newly amputated limb. To accomplish this, the team must use a holistic and comprehensive approach to address the person's comorbid burden of illness and psychological and developmental needs, as well as his or her long-term functional, vocational, and leisure goals. Surgical and medical members of the team are most concerned about the healing suture line and overall health status, especially for individuals with vascular insufficiency and for those at risk of infection after traumatic amputation.[7] Nursing professionals provide general medical and wound care as the suture line heals and

administer medications for pain management.[7,8] Registered dieticians assess the patient's nutritional needs related to wound healing and exercise demands.[9] Physical and occupational therapists focus on enhancing the patient's early single limb mobility, self-care, assessment of the potential for prosthetic use, control of edema and pain management, donning and doffing dressings and shrinkers for optimal shaping of the residual limb, and prevention of secondary complications.[10,11]

The prosthetist may fabricate an immediate postoperative prosthesis (IPOP) or an early postoperative prosthesis (EPOP) or a semirigid dressing (SRD) and begins to consider which prosthetic components and suspension systems will ultimately be most appropriate, given the individual's characteristics, abilities, and functional needs.[11,12] The person with new amputation and his or her family are often most concerned about pain management and what life will be like without the lost limb.[13] A psychologist, social worker, vocational counselor, or school counselor is involved as needed to help with psychological adjustment and to organize long-term rehabilitation care or community resources in preparation for discharge.[11,14] A spiritual leader, such as a priest or rabbi, can also be a valuable resource for the person with new amputation, the family, and the team.

Although the multidisciplinary team can vary in size, depending on patient needs and practice settings, the members at the center are the individual with new amputation and his or her caregivers.[15] Coordinated communication among all team members, including the opportunity for the amputee and his or her family members to ask questions and voice concerns, is more important in this early postoperative and preprosthetic period than it is during the process of prosthetic prescription and training later in the rehabilitation process. This early period sets the stage for the individual's expectations, and ultimately success, as a person with an amputation.[15]

The unique training, clinical expertise, and individual roles of each team member contribute, in a collaborative process, to the development of a plan for rehabilitation that best meets the needs and optimizes the potential of the individual who has lost a limb.[6] The team must come to agreement on the timing and prioritization of specific rehabilitative interventions to meet the goals defined for each patient. Effective communication and strong relationships among the surgeons, orthopedists, or trauma teams who perform the majority of amputations and the rehabilitation team substantially improve the quality of patient care and assist the rehabilitation process.

This chapter focuses on the roles of rehabilitation professionals who work with persons with new amputation in the days and weeks immediately after surgery. It explores how surgical pain and phantom sensation are managed, strategies for controlling postoperative edema, and methods to assess a patient's readiness for prosthetic fitting. Interventions that help a person with new amputation gain competence with single limb mobility tasks and exercises that provide the foundation for successful prosthetic use are identified. The strategies for patient management are organized around the model outlined in the American Physical Therapy Association's Guide to Physical Therapist Practice (Fig. 20.1).[16]

Examination

Ideally, for those undergoing a "planned" or "elective" amputation, the rehabilitation team will meet with the individual and caregivers before surgery to begin collecting information that will be used to guide intervention and provide

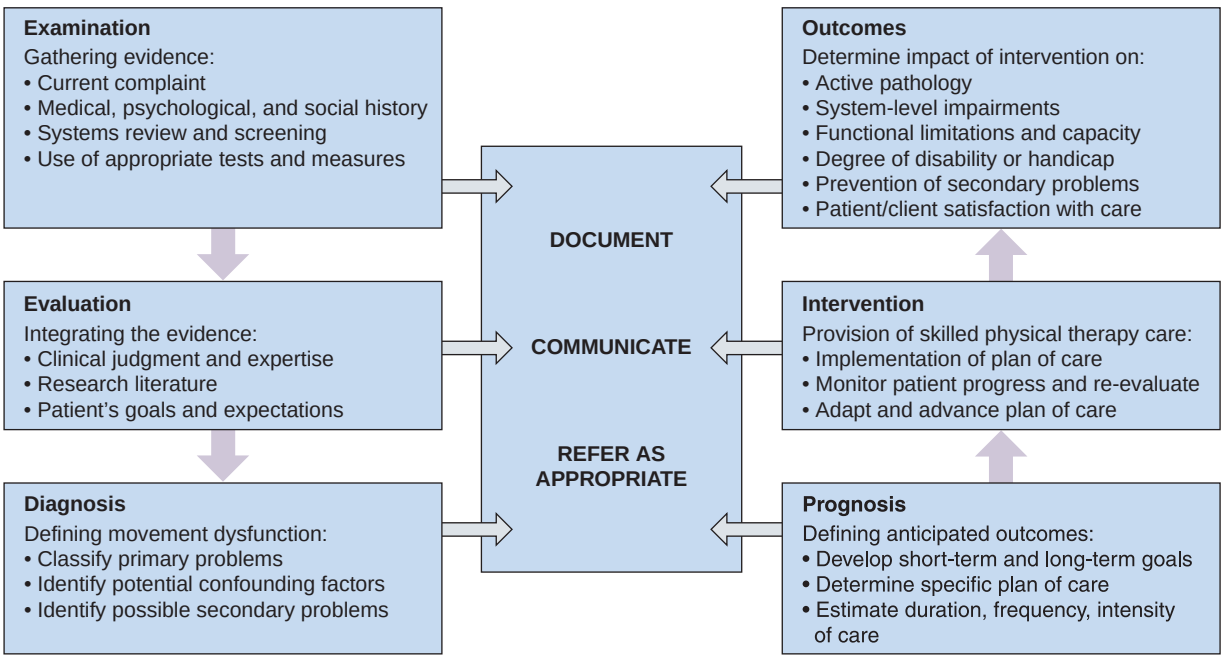


Fig. 20.1 The components of a systematic and effective patient-client management process. (Adapted from http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org/, with permission of the American Physical Therapy Association. Who are Physical Therapists? Guide to Physical Therapist Practice. © American Physical Therapy Association. All rights reserved.)

information about the rehabilitation process. In some instances, input from rehabilitation professionals may be sought by trauma surgeons to assist patients and families in making informed decisions when faced with amputation after severe injury of the limb. Preoperative interaction may not always be possible, especially when amputation occurs subsequent to failed revascularization, acute and severe limb ischemia, severe infection, or civilian or combat-related traumatic injury. If preoperative assessment is not possible, referral to rehabilitation should be made as soon after surgery as possible; delaying referrals often leads to contracture formation, further cardiovascular and musculoskeletal deconditioning, delayed prosthetic fitting and training, a greater risk of dependency, and a higher risk of reamputation, institutionalization, and mortaltity.[17,18] Box 20.1 summarizes the components of a comprehensive assessment for persons with lower extremity amputation.

Whenever the first contact with the individual and family occurs, the rehabilitation team begins by gathering baseline information that will guide planning for and implementing

Box 20.1 Comprehensive Assessment for Patients with Lower Extremity Amputation

History (Data Collected From Chart Review and Interview)

Demographics	Age, gender, primary language, race/ethnicity
Social history	Family and caregiver resources, other social support systems
Occupational history	Employment or retirement status, typical work and leisure activities
Developmental status	Physical/motor, perceptual, cognitive, and emotional dimensions
Living environment	Characteristics and accessibility of "home" environment, projected discharge destination
Current condition	Reason for referral, current concerns/needs, previous medical/surgical interventions for current condition
Past medical history	Prior hospitalizations and surgeries; smoking, alcohol, or drug use (past and present)
Family history	Health risk factors for vascular and cardiac disease
Medications	Prescription medication for current and other medical conditions
	Over-the-counter medications typically used
Functional status	Current and prior abilities and functional limitations (ADLs/IADLs)

Systems Review (Concurrent/Comorbid Disease and Impairment Related to Prognosis for and Participation in Rehabilitation)

Cardiopulmonary and cardiovascular systems
Endocrine and metabolic systems
Musculoskeletal system
Neuromuscular system
Gastrointestinal and genitourinary systems

Tests and Measures (Areas for Specific Assessment)

Pain	Presence of phantom limb sensation or pain
	Postoperative pain and pain management strategies
	Muscle soreness related to altered movement patterns
	Joint pain related to motion or comorbid arthritis, etc.
Anthropomorphic characteristics	Residual limb length (bone length, soft tissue length)
	Residual limb girth, redundant tissue ("dog ears," adductor roll)
	Residual limb shape (bulbous, cylindrical, conical)
	Assessment of type and severity of edema
	Effectiveness of edema control strategy being used
	Overall height, weight, body composition
Skin/integument	Assessment of surgical wound healing
	Assessment/management of adhesions and existing scar tissue
	Other skin problems (other incisions, grafts, psoriasis, cysts, etc.)
	Integrity of remaining foot/limb, especially if neuropathic or dysvascular etiology of amputation
Circulation	Palpation/auscultation of lower extremity pulses, residual and intact limbs
	Skin temperature and presence of trophic changes, residual and intact limbs
	Skin color and response to elevation or dependent position, residual and intact limbs
	Claudication time and distance, impact on function
Range of motion/muscle length	Range of motion, soft tissue length, and joint contracture
Joint integrity	Ligamentous integrity or joint instability
	Structural alignment or joint deformity
	Integrity or inflammation of synovium, bursae, cartilage
Muscle performance	Current muscle strength of upper extremity, trunk, lower extremity
	Muscular power for functional activity
	Muscular endurance for functional activity
	Potential for improvement
Motor function	Motor control, including dexterity, coordination, agility, tone
	Motor learning, including previous use of ambulatory aids, prostheses
Upper extremity function	Power and strength of upper extremity and of trunk
	Ability to use upper extremity in functional activities

Box 20.1 Comprehensive Assessment for Patients with Lower Extremity Amputation (Continued)

Aerobic capacity	Blood pressure, heart rate, respiratory rate (at rest, as well as during and following activity)
	Perceived exertion, dyspnea, angina, during functional activity
	Overall level of physical fitness and functional capacity
Attention/cognition/emotion	Level of consciousness, sleep patterns
	Ability to learn and preferred learning style
	Cognitive dysfunction screening (delirium, depression, dementia)
	Motivation, attention/distractibility, learning styles
Sensory integrity	Protective sensation of residual and remaining limb
	Superficial sensation: light touch, sharp/dull, pressure, temperature
	Proprioception: kinesthesia, position sense
Mobility	Changing position in bed (rolling, scooting, coming to sitting)
Postural control	Static, anticipatory, reactionary balance, in sitting, standing, during functional activities
Transfers	Ability to transfer to/from bed, toilet, wheelchair, mat, tub/shower
Assistive/adaptive equipment	Assistive devices/adaptive equipment currently being used
Ambulation and locomotion	Ability to use ambulatory aid safely for single limb gait
	Ability to use wheelchair safely
	Adaptations/equipment necessary for patient's living environment
Gait and balance	Assessment of postural control in quiet standing, reaching, ability to stop/start, change direction, and alter velocity while walking
	Reaction to unexpected perturbation, at rest and during activity
	Observational gait assessment, identification of gait deviations
	Kinematic gait assessment (e.g., speed, stride length, cadence)
	Energy cost or efficiency of locomotion/gait, perceived exertion and dyspnea
	Ability/safety to manage uneven terrain, stairs, ramps, etc.
Posture	Resting posture in sitting, standing, other positions
	Alteration in posture due to loss of limb segment
Self-care	Ability to perform basic ADLs
	Ability to perform IADLs
	Availability of assistance and preparation of caregivers
Community/work reintegration	Analysis of roles/activities/tasks
	Functional capacity analysis, determination of essential functions
	Analysis of environment, safety assessment
	Assessment of need for adaptation
Prosthetic requirements	Potential for functional prosthetic use
	Readiness for prosthetic fitting/prescription
	Appropriate prosthetic design, components, suspension

ADLs, Activities of daily living; *IADLs*, instrumental activities of daily living.

Adapted from The Guide to Physical Therapy Practice; Pattern K: Impaired gait, locomotion, and balance, and impaired motor function secondary to lower extremity amputation. Guide to Physical Therapist Practice 3.0. Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association; 2014. Available at: http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org/content/1/SEC2.body. Accessed January 30, 2019.

of the rehabilitation process. This initial information is gathered in three ways: developing a complete patient-client history, performing a review of physiologic systems to identify important comorbidities that will affect the rehabilitation process, and using appropriate tests and measures to identify impairments and functional limitations to be addressed in the rehabilitation plan of care.[19] The volume and complexity of information needed to guide planning for prosthetic rehabilitation means that information gathering is a somewhat continuous process and must be integrated with early mobility training in preparation for the individual's discharge from the acute care setting. Examination in the acute care setting likely focuses on four priorities: initial healing of the surgical site, pain management and volume control of the residual limb, bed mobility and transfers, and readiness for single limb ambulation. Examination later in the preprosthetic period (in an outpatient, home care, or subacute setting) would add more detail to determine potential for prosthetic prescription.

PATIENT-CLIENT HISTORY AND INTERVIEW

Rehabilitation professionals use several strategies to gather information about an individual's medical history. In the acute care setting, the process usually begins with a review of the individual's current medical record or chart, as well as previous medical records (if available). The chart review process provides a broad overview of the individual's health, comorbidities, current medications, previous and current functional status, and details about the surgical procedure. Data that other members of the health care team have generated in their examination and evaluative processes are quite relevant to PT care, not only to avoid redundancy in examination but also in planning what additional information will be necessary to collect during subsequent interviews and discussion with the individual and family caregivers.

The interview process provides key information about the individual's priorities and concerns so that they can be appropriately integrated into the plan of care. The physical

therapist may also choose to gather supplementary information from the clinical research literature at this point to assist in the subsequent development of prognosis and plan or care, especially if the individual's situation is unusual or complex.[20]

Demographic and Sociocultural Information

The information gathered when reviewing history often begins with basic demographics such as age, gender, race/ethnicity, primary language, and level of education. These data help us to appropriately target communication during our interaction with an individual with recent amputation. It is also important to build an understanding of the individual's sociocultural history including beliefs, expectations and goals, preferred behaviors, and family and caregiver resources, as well as access to and quality of informal and formal support systems.[21–23] There is some evidence regarding the benefits of a formal peer support system for new amputees.[24] A comprehensive examination includes assessment of both physical and psychological components regarding the amputation and use of a new prosthetic.[22] Each factor is a potentially important influence on the individual's engagement in the rehabilitation process. Rehabilitation professionals also gather information about the individual's employment status and task demands, roles and responsibilities within the family system, and leisure interests and hobbies, as well as previous and preferred involvement in the community (access, transportation, and key activities). In addition, information about smoking, alcohol intake, and other previous substance use/abuse, as well as the individual's coping style and preferred coping strategies help the team to better understand how the individual may behave in the postoperative period. This information is important in developing a prognosis and plan of care; it helps rehabilitation professionals to better define the long-term goals and anticipated outcomes of rehabilitation.

Developmental Status

Another piece of information that informs an appropriate rehabilitation plan of care is the physical, cognitive, perceptual, and emotional developmental status of the individual and his or her caregivers, as well as an understanding of the family system as an organization.[25–27] Although the relevance of developmental status is most obvious when the individual being examined is a child, the perspective afforded by understanding of life span development is valuable for individuals with recent amputation of any age. Examples of factors that evolve over the life span that affect an individual's participation in rehabilitation include postural control, motor abilities, perceptual abilities, willingness to take risks, problem solving, coping styles and strategies, and limb dominance. Observation and interchange during the interview process help the therapist to determine if further clinical examination of developmental status will be necessary.

Living Environment

Rehabilitation professionals gather information about the characteristics of an individual's physical living environment.[28] They ask about getting into and out of the house (e.g., how far is it from the car to the house? What kind of surfaces will be encountered moving from the car to the house? Are there steps and railings at the entry? What are the distances between the major living areas that the person will have to navigate? How accessible and functional are each of the major living areas in the home for those using ambulatory aids or a wheelchair for mobility? Is it possible to adapt the home if necessary? What adaptive equipment is already available? What type of assistance is likely to be routinely available? What type of equipment is likely to be acceptable for the individual and family?).

Asking about the individual's ability to drive, access to public transportation, or plans for alternatives for transport once discharged from the acute care setting is important. This may determine what services will be necessary and where they will be provided. Will the individual be returning to his or her home environment on discharge from acute care? If so, will he or she require home care or is transportation available for follow-up appointments with physicians and for outpatient rehabilitation? Alternatively, will the individual have an interim stay in another health care facility for further rehabilitation? This information will help to set rehabilitation priorities and begin the process of discharge planning.

Health, Emotional, and Cognitive Status

During the interview the rehabilitation professional's impression of the individual's general health status that initially developed during chart review broadens. The rehabilitation professional asks questions to discern how the person perceives his or her health and his or her ability to function in self-care, family, or social roles. They assess the individual's understanding of the current situation and prognosis, as well as expectations about the rehabilitation process. They may explore the person's coping style and response to stress, as well as preferred coping skills and strategies.[29,30] This conversation also provides an indication about the individual's current emotional status, ability to learn, cognitive ability, and memory function. A person who undergoes an amputation may struggle with body image and express difficulties in maintaining satisfaction with his or her quality of life.[31] Because increased levels of depression, anxiety, and body image issues are associated with sexual dysfunction in individuals with lower limb amputation, the therapist should screen for depression and be prepared to select appropriate referral sources.[30]

Because rehabilitation involves physical effort, it is important to understand the person with recent amputation's usual level of activity and fitness, as well as his or her readiness to be involved in exercise. Is physical activity a regular part of the preamputation lifestyle? Has there been a period of prolonged inactivity prior to surgery?[32] Will any additional health habits, such as smoking and use of alcohol or other substances, affect the individual's ability to do physical work and ability to learn or adapt?[33]

Medical, Surgical, and Family History

Potentially important medical conditions that may influence the postoperative/preprosthetic rehabilitation include diabetes, cardiovascular disease, cerebrovascular disease, obesity, neuropathy, renal disease, congestive heart failure (CHF), uncontrolled hypertension, and preexisting neuromuscular or musculoskeletal pathologic conditions or impairments, such as stroke or osteoporosis.[34–36] Each of these has a potential impact on wound healing, functional

mobility, and exercise tolerance during rehabilitation. Healing and risk of infection are also concerns for those with compromised immune system function, whether from diseases such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), those on transplantation medications, those involved in chemotherapy or recent stem cell transplantation, or those using medical steroids.[37] Wound healing, skin condition, and endurance may be issues for persons who are currently undergoing chemotherapy or radiation treatments for cancer.[38,39]

Review of the individual's past surgical history provides additional information that helps rehabilitation professionals to anticipate what the individual's response to physical activity might be like. Has the individual had a cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator implanted? Has there been previous amputation of toes or part of the foot of either the newly amputated or "intact" limb? Are there recent surgical scars to be aware of (e.g., following revascularization before amputation)? Has there been total joint replacement or lower extremity fracture that might affect rehabilitation activities and prosthetic component selection?

The "laundry list" of comorbidities and previous surgeries identified in chart review does not necessarily mean that the individual is in poor health.[40] Many individuals manage chronic illnesses and conditions quite effectively, and, although they may have less functional reserve than those without a pathologic condition, they have the potential for positive rehabilitation outcomes.[41]

Physical therapists must also be aware of the results of tests and diagnostic procedures that other team members have undertaken as part of their examination and evaluation. These might include preoperative cardiac or peripheral vascular studies, electrocardiogram (ECG), stress tests, pulmonary function tests, radiographs, CT, MRI, urinalysis, and laboratory tests for various components of blood (e.g., hemoglobin [Hb], cell counts, cultures). Physical therapists must recognize potential physiologic signs and symptoms that may occur when a laboratory value is out of range.[42] Comparison of the individual's test results to established norms provides an index of overall health status and tolerance of levels of activity. Monitoring laboratory test values (e.g., white blood cell [WBC], hematocrit [HCT], Hb, platelet, international normalized ratio [INR], partial prothrombin time [PPT], glycosylated Hb, and blood glucose levels) and oxygen saturation levels provide ongoing information about general health status and exercise/activity tolerance, allowing the therapist to adapt intervention to the individual's potentially changing condition.[43,44]

Because many of the medications used to manage postoperative pain affect thinking and learning, it is crucial to understand what pain management strategies are in place and when medication is typically administered.[45,46] Given the likelihood of cardiovascular comorbidity in older adults with vascular disease and diabetes, it is also important to understand what cardiac medications are being administered and how these medications affect response to physical activity and position change.[47–49] It is not unusual for persons who have been immobile or on bed rest to be at risk of postural (orthostatic) hypotension, especially if they are taking medications to manage hypertension.[50] In addition, given the stress of the surgery and hospital environment, especially if the amputation was performed under general anesthesia, there is the possibility of a temporary postoperative delirium or difficulty with learning and memory.[51] If confusion is observed, it is important to clarify typical preoperative cognitive status by speaking with family and caregivers.

Current Condition

Review of the operating room report in the medical record provides information about surgical procedure, drain placement, method of closure, and planned postoperative wound and limb-volume strategies being used (Chapter 19 provides an overview of the most common surgical procedures at the transtibial and transfemoral levels). This information, when combined with knowledge of pain management strategies and demographic information, guides early postoperative/preprosthetic care. Physical therapists use this information to identify potential issues with healing, determine educational needs for the person with new amputation, develop strategies for early positioning of the residual limb, identify potential issues affecting prosthetic fit, and prepare the residual limb for wearing a prosthesis. Determining how comorbidities and injuries are being actively managed is also important because these affect readiness for early mobility, learning, and memory. Impressions of the individual's psychological state, fears, and expectations round out the baseline with which the person will begin early rehabilitation.

SYSTEMS REVIEW

In the acute care setting, there has likely been a fairly comprehensive review of physiologic systems as a component of preoperative work-up (or emergency care in the case of traumatic injury). Rehabilitation professionals find the results of such review in the physician notes and intake forms in the medical record. The therapist may choose to screen or evaluate in more detail if the information in the record is insufficient in depth or detail as it relates to functional status and response to increasing activity and exercise. Review of systems must include anatomic and physiologic status of the cardiovascular, cardiopulmonary, integumentary, musculoskeletal, and neuromuscular systems, as well as communication, affect, cognition, language, and learning style.[52]

Ongoing screening as rehabilitation progresses will help to identify the onset of secondary problems and postoperative complications that require medical intervention or referral to other members of the team. Deterioration in cognitive status or onset of new confusion over a relatively short period of time is especially important to watch for because it is often the first indication of dehydration, adverse drug reaction, or infection (e.g., pneumonia, urinary tract infection, infection of surgical construct) in older adults.[53]

TEST AND MEASURES

In the postoperative, preprosthetic period, physical therapists use a variety of objective tests and measures to determine the severity of impairment and functional limitation and to establish a baseline that will be used to determine PT movement–related diagnosis, determine prognosis, and assess outcomes of the rehabilitation process.[54]

Table 20.1 lists examples of tests and measures appropriate for the postoperative, preprosthetic period. Although most strategies are similar to those used in general PT practice, some may need to be adapted to accommodate the condition or length of the residual limb (e.g., the point of application of resistive force during manual muscle testing of knee extension strength after transtibial amputation). However, whenever measurement technique is altered, the reliability and

Table 20.1 Examples of Tests and Measures Important in the Postoperative, Preprosthetic Period

Category	Examples of Test or Measurement Strategy
Pain	Description of nature or type of pain Visual analog scale for intensity of pain Body chart for location of painful areas Description of factors to increase/decrease discomfort
Anthropometric characteristics	Residual limb length Residual limb circumference Description of edema type and location
Integumentary integrity	Condition of the incision Nature and extent of drainage Condition of "intact" limb Skin color, turgor, temperature
Circulation	Palpation of peripheral pulse Skin temperature
Arousal, attention, cognition	Mini-Mental State Examination, Mini-Cog Delirium scales Depression scales (e.g., Geriatric Depression Scale, Centers for Epidemiologic Studies Depression scale) Saint Louis University Mental Status (SLUMS) Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MOCA)
Sensory integrity	Protective sensation (Semmes-Weinstein filament) Proprioception and kinesthesia Visual acuity, figure-ground, light/dark accommodation Vestibulo-ocular function during position change Hearing impairment (acuity, sensitivity to background noise)
Aerobic capacity, endurance	Heart rate at rest, % maximal attainable in activity Arm ergometry, single limb bicycle ergometry, combined upper extremity/lower extremity ergometry Respiratory rate at rest, during activity Ratings of perceived exertion or dyspnea
Mobility	Observation of bed mobility (e.g., rolling) Observation of transitions (e.g., supine-sit) Observation of description of level of assistance, cueing required transfers (various surfaces, heights)
Balance	Static postural control (various functional positions) Anticipatory postural control in functional activity Reaction to perturbation Specific balance tests (e.g., Berg, Functional Reach)
Gait and locomotion	Use of assistive devices Level of independence, cueing or assistance required Time and distance parameters (velocity, cadence, stride) Pattern and symmetry Perceived exertion and dyspnea
Joint integrity and mobility	Manual examination of ligamentous integrity Documentation of bony deformity
Neuromotor function	Observation of quality of motor control in activity Observation of efficiency of motor planning Determination of stage of motor learning with new or adapted tasks Muscle tone Reflex integrity
Muscle performance	Strength: manual muscle test, handheld dynamometer Power: isokinetic dynamometer, manual resistance through range at various speeds of contraction Endurance: 10 repetitions maximum, or maximum number contractions, time to fatigue
Range of motion/muscle length	Goniometry Functional tests (e.g., Thomas test, straight-leg raise)
Self-care and home management	Observation of BADLs and IADLs BADL and IADL rating scales

BADLs, Basic activities of daily living; *IADLs*, instrumental activities of daily living.

validity of the data collected may be questionable and the data generated less precise. Therapists often begin with examination at the level of impairment and then move into functional assessment.

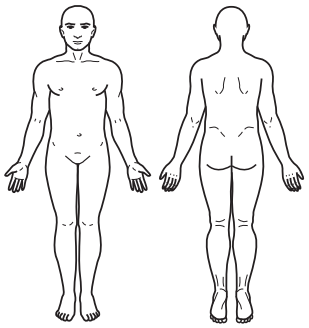
Assessing Acute Postoperative Pain

The individual with new amputation is likely to be coping with significant acute postoperative pain and may be distressed by the sense that the limb is still in place (phantom sensation) after amputation. Pain is a subjective sensation; each person defines his or her own level of tolerance. Physical therapists have a number of strategies available to document the nature of pain, location of pain, and the intensity of discomfort that the individual is experiencing. These include descriptors generated by the individual with recent amputation or circled on a pain checklist, body maps, visual analog scales, provocation tests, or specific pain indices or questionnaires developed for postsurgical patients (Fig. 20.2).[55,56] It is also important to assess how severely that pain interferes with functions, what activities or conditions increase the pain, and what positions or strategies have been helpful in managing the postoperative pain. Documentation of pain management strategies is also important: narcotic and opioid medications potentially impact on attention, ability to learn, and response time during movement and balance activities.[57,58]

McGill Pain Questionnaire

Part 1: Where is Your Pain?

Please mark, on the drawings below, the areas where you feel pain.
Put "E" if the pain is external
Put "I" if the pain is internal
Put "EI" if the pain is both internal and external



Part 2: What Does Your Pain Feel Like?

Some of the words below describe your PRESENT pain. Circle ONLY those words that best describe your pain right now. Leave out any category that is not suitable. Use only a single word in the appropriate category—the one that applies the best.

1	2	3	4
Flickering	Jumping	Pricking	Sharp
Quivering	Flashing	Boring	Cutting
Pulsing	Shooting	Drilling	Lacerating
Throbbing		Stabbing	
Beating		Lancinating	
Pounding			
5	6	7	8
Pinching	Tugging	Hot	Tingling
Pressing	Pulling	Burning	Itchy
Gnawing	Wrenching	Scalding	Smarting
Cramping		Searing	
Crushing			
9	10	11	12
Dull	Tender	Tiring	Sickening
Sore	Taut	Exhausting	Suffocating
Hurting	Rasping		
Aching			
Heavy			
13	14	15	16
Fearful	Punishing	Wretched	Annoying
Frightful	Grueling	Blinding	Troublesome
Terrifying	Cruel		Miserable
	Vicious		Intense
	Killing		Unbearable
17	18	19	20
Spreading	Tight	Cool	Nagging
Radiating	Numb	Cold	Nauseating
Penetrating	Drawing	Freezing	Agonizing
Piercing	Squeezing		Dreadful
	Tearing		Torturing

Part 3: How Does Your Pain Change With Time?

1. Which word or words would you use to describe the *pattern* of your pain?

1	2	3
Continuous	Rhythmic	Brief
Steady	Periodic	Momentary
Constant	Intermittent	Transient

2. What kind of things *relieve* your pain?

3. What kind of things *increase* your pain?

Part 4: How Strong is Your Pain?

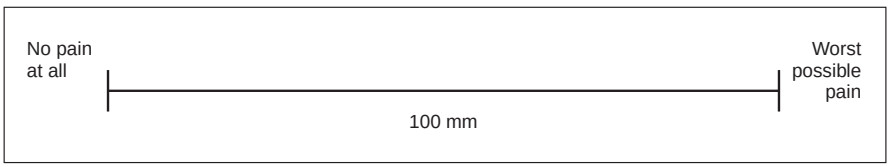
People agree that the following five words represent pain of increasing intensity. They are:

1	2	3	4	5
Mild	Discomforting	Distressing	Horrible	Excruciating

To answer each question below, write the number of the most appropriate word in the space beside the question.

1. Which word describes your pain right now? _____
2. Which word describes your pain at its worst? _____
3. Which word describes it when it is least? _____
4. Which word describes the worst toothache you ever had? _____
5. Which word describes the worst headache you ever had? _____
6. Which word describes the worst stomach-ache you ever had? _____

A



B

Fig. 20.2 Examples of tools used to document pain and discomfort. (A) McGill Pain Questionnaire. Descriptor groups: sensory (1–10), affective (11–15), evaluative (16), and miscellaneous (17–20). (B) The visual analog scale. ([A] Modified from Melzack R. The McGill pain questionnaire; major properties and scoring methods. *Pain*. 1975;1(3):277–299. [B] From Bijur PE, Silver W, Gallagher EJ. Reliability of the visual analog scale for measurement of acute pain. *Acad Emerg Med*. 2001;8(12):1153–1157.)

Phantom Sensation and Phantom Pain

Commonly, persons with recent amputation experience a sense that the amputated limb remains in place in the days and weeks after surgery.[59] Research reports indicate that from 54% to 99% of persons with new amputation have noticeable *phantom limb sensation*.[60–63] Phantom sensations are typically described as a sense of numbness, tingling, tickling, or pressure in the missing limb, and some complain of itchy toes or mild muscle cramps in the foot or calf.[60] In contrast, *phantom pain* is described as shooting pain, severe cramping, or a distressing burning sensation that may be localized in the amputated foot or present throughout the missing limb. A smaller percentage (46%–63%) of those with new amputation experience phantom pain.[60–63] Fortunately, fewer than 15% of those experiencing phantom pain rate it as severe or constant; most experience transient mild to moderate discomfort that does not interfere with usual activity. Phantom pain is more likely in those with longstanding and severe preoperative dysvascular pain and for those requiring amputation after severe traumatic injury.[60,63]

In most cases, if the individual reports significant phantom sensation or pain, careful inspection of the residual limb helps to rule out other potential sources of pain, such as a neuroma or an inflamed or infected surgical wound. A neuroma may form any time a nerve is cut, and despite multiple surgical techniques to prevent neuromas, such as electrocautery, perineural closure, and silastic capping, most surgeons will cut the nerve proximal to the bone stump and allow it to retract into the stump, hoping to avoid a painful neuroma.[64] Phantom limb sensation and pain tend to decrease over time whether the amputation was the result of a dysvascular/neuropathic extremity or a traumatic injury.[60–63] A variety of medications (e.g., amitriptyline, tramadol, carbamazepine, ketamine, morphine) can be used if phantom pain is disabling; however, efficacy appears to be low.[65] Recent studies of ketamine for phantom pain indicate its effectiveness for acute and chronic postsurgical pain.[66,67] Use of epidural anesthesia during surgery and/or perineural infusion of local anesthetic for several days following surgery may help to reduce development of phantom pain.[68,69] Although a number of models or theories for phantom limb sensation and phantom pain have been proposed, the neurophysiologic mechanism that underlies this phenomenon is not well understood.[70,71]

The likelihood of postoperative phantom limb sensation must be discussed with the individual and family before amputation surgery, as well as in the days immediately after operation. Phantom limb sensation is quite vivid; its realistic qualities can be disturbing and frightening to those with recent amputation. Candid discussion about phantom limb sensation as a normally anticipated occurrence helps to reduce an individual's anxiety and distress should phantom sensation occur. It also alerts the individual to issues of safety in the immediate postoperative period. Individuals with recent amputation are at significant risk of falling when they awaken from sleep and attempt to stand and walk to the bathroom in the middle of the night, thinking in their semialert state that both limbs are intact. Ecchymosis or wound dehiscence sustained during a fall can lead to major delays in rehabilitation and prosthetic fitting; some fall-related injuries require surgical revision or closure.

Assessing Residual Limb Length and Volume

The length and volume of the residual limb are important determinants of readiness for prosthetic use, as well as socket design and components chosen for the training prosthesis.[72–74] Initial measurements can be made at the first dressing change. Changes in limb volume are tracked by frequent remeasurement during the preprosthetic period of rehabilitation. This is important because discomfort from the poorly fitting socket is the most common reason for clinical visits for new amputees.[72]

The two components of *residual limb length* are the actual length of the residual tibia or residual femur and the total length of the limb including soft tissue. Measurements are taken from an easily identified bony landmark to the palpated end of the long bone, the incision line, or the end of soft tissue. In the transtibial limb the starting place for measurement is most often the medial joint line of the knee; an alternative is to begin measurement at the tibial tubercle (Fig. 20.3A). In the transfemoral limb the starting place for measurement can be the ischial tuberosity or the greater trochanter (see Fig. 20.3B). Clear notation must be made

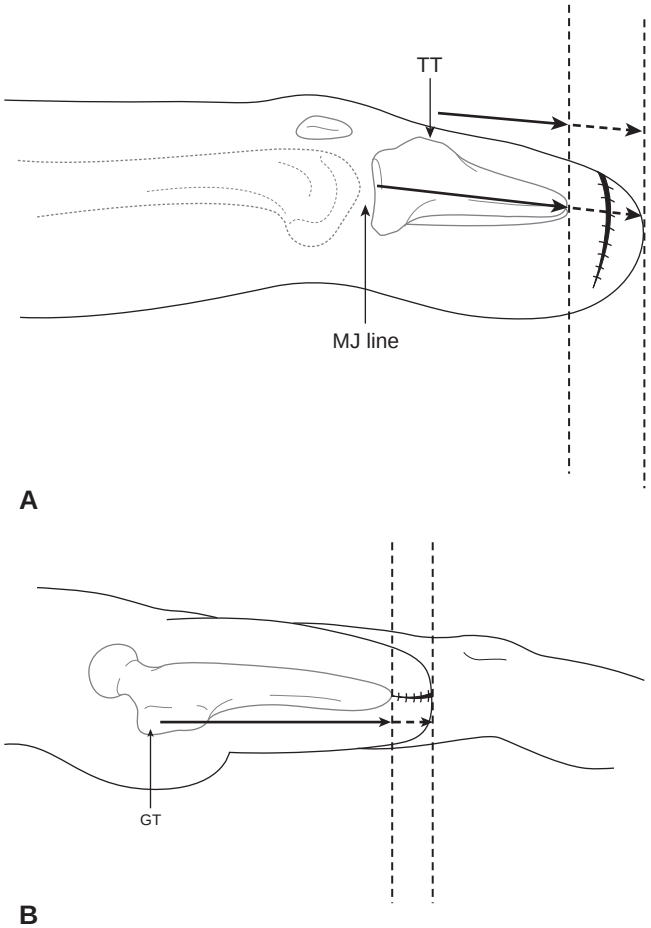


Fig. 20.3 (A) Medial view of a left transtibial residual limb. Limb length is measured to the end of the tibia *(solid arrow)* and to the end of soft tissue *(dotted arrow)* from a bony landmark such as the medial joint *(MJ)* line or tubercle of the tibia *(TT)*. (B) Lateral view of a right transfemoral residual limb. Limb length is measured from the greater trochanter *(GT)* or ischial tuberosity to the end of bone *(solid arrow)* and to the end of soft tissue *(dotted arrow)*.

Table 20.2 Residual Limb Lengths and Associated Prosthetic Consequences

Segment	Level	Preserved	Inches	Centimeters	Functional Outcome
Adult tibia[72]	Intact	100%	14.5 ± 1.2	36.9 ± 3.0	Effective walking ability
Transtibial residual limb[73,74]	Short	<35%	<5 especially if <3	<12.7 especially if <7.6	Insufficient knee extension strength and power for prosthetic control; intolerance of weight-bearing pressures applied to skin and soft tissue by a prosthetic socket
	Standard	35%–50%	5–7	12.7–17.8	Effective prosthetic control for safe and energy efficient gait; relatively comfortable prosthetic fit[73,74]
	Long	>50%	>7	>18	Distal anterior discomfort and skin irritation in sitting and during swing limb advancement related to high socket pressure at limb-socket interface.[73,74]
Adult femur[72]	Intact	100%	17.1 ± 1.1	43.5 ± 2.8[72]	Effective walking ability
Transfemoral residual limb[73,74]	Short	<35%	<5	<15.2	Insufficient hip extension and abduction strength and power for stance control when using prosthesis
	Standard	35%–50%	5–8.5	15.2–21.8	Effective prosthetic control for safe and energy efficient gait; relatively comfortable prosthetic fit
	Long	>50%	>8.5	>21.8	Long lever arm enhances prosthetic control in stance but may limit choice of prosthetic knee units (if residual limb length and knee unit length exceeds femur length of intact limb)

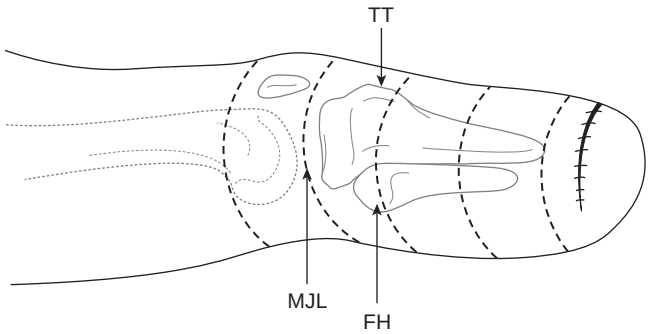


Fig. 20.4 Limb volume and shape of a transtibial residual limb is assessed by taking successive circumferential measures *(dotted lines)* from a bony landmark such as the medial joint line *(MJL)* to the suture line. *FH,* Fibular head; *TT,* tibial tubercle.

about the proximal and distal landmarks that are used for the initial measurement to ensure consistency in the subsequent measurement process. Table 20.2 presents a descriptive classification schema for residual limb lengths.

Residual limb volume is typically assessed by serial circumferential girth measurements with a tape measure.[75] For persons with transtibial amputation, circumferential measurement begins at either the medial tibial plateau or the tibial tubercle and is repeated at equally spaced points to the end of the limb (Fig. 20.4). For those with transfemoral amputation, measurement begins at either the ischial tuberosity or the greater trochanter and is also repeated at equally spaced points to the end of the residual limb. The interval between measurements should be clearly documented (i.e., every 5 cm or every inch) for consistency and reliability in future measurement. Prosthetists use a variety of technology-based volumetric measurement strategies to digitally capture residual limb anthropomorphic characteristics to guide socket fabrication.[75–77]

One determinant of readiness for prosthetic fitting is comparison of the proximal and distal circumference of the limb. Often, referral for prosthetic fit is made when the distal limb circumference measurement is equal to or no more than ¼-inch greater than proximal limb circumference. Ideally, with effective control of edema and compression, the transtibial residual limb will mature into a tapered cylindrical shape with distal circumference slightly less than proximal circumference. The transfemoral limb typically matures into a more conical shape, with distal circumference significantly less than proximal circumference. A smaller distal circumference is desirable so that shear forces on soft tissue will be minimal when the prosthesis is donned and used.

Assessing Integumentary Integrity and Wound Healing

Assessment of skin condition and the vascular, sensory, and motor status of both of the patient's limbs is imperative. During assessment there is an opportunity to introduce the individual with new amputation and family to strategies that are likely to be used for compression/edema control after surgery. Instructing the individual and family about proper positioning of the residual limb is also important, as well as the need to maintain knee extension and neutral hip alignment to minimize soft tissue tightness and joint contracture.

The physical therapist should inspect the limb at every visit because changes in dermatologic integrity can occur at any time and result from a multitude of causes, including direct physical trauma, edema, irritation, and infection.[78]

In most settings, the surgeon who performed the amputation assesses the condition of the surgical site at the initial dressing change. This can occur as early as the first postoperative day, when soft dressings and elastic wraps have been used, or on the third postoperative day, if the residual limb has been casted in a rigid dressing.[79] After this initial appraisal the status of the surgical wound is assessed by

the nurse or physician at each dressing change. In some settings, the physical therapist is charged with inspecting the residual limb to monitor the stage of healing of the incision and the limb's shape, length, sensory integrity, and volume; the therapist works closely with the surgeon in postoperative wound management and timing of prosthetic replacement.

With each dressing change, the wound is carefully examined and the quantity and quality of drainage from the wound are documented. Initially, drainage will be sanguineous (primarily bloody); typically, as the surgical wound begins to heal over the next few days, drainage transitions to serosanguineous and eventually to serous exudate. Much of this early drainage is absorbed by the wound dressing. Significant amounts of bright red arterial blood (hemorrhage) or darker venous blood (draining hematoma) should be reported to the surgeon for further assessment. Although preoperative, perioperative, and postoperative antibiotic administration is becoming the standard of care,[80,81] the incidence of postoperative infection involving the incision following amputation is relatively high: as many as one in four patients will develop infected wounds.[74] Increasing amounts of drainage, as well as thickening, discolored exudate, may signal infection of the wound; this must be immediately reported to the physician, especially if it occurs in persons who are immunocompromised or whose limbs may have been environmentally contaminated during traumatic injury.[82] Infection can significantly delay healing, increase length of acute care stay, require revision of the surgical construct or reamputation to a more proximal level, increase risk of deconditioning and contracture development associated with bed rest, and compromise rehabilitation outcomes.[83,84]

In the first several postoperative days, signs of inflammation (erythema, edema, and elevated tissue temperature surrounding the incision) are likely present along the incision line secondary to tissue trauma sustained during surgery.[85] The edges of the wound should be closely approximated for effective primary healing; any areas of wound separation (dehiscence), scab or eschar formation, ecchymosis, or other signs of tissue fragility or decreased viability must be carefully documented and monitored. Clinicians watch for signs of epithelial resurfacing across the incision, as well as development of a healing ridge along the incision, signal of collagen deposition signals progression into the proliferative stage of wound healing.[85] Prolonged edema delays wound healing because the associated pressure compromises angiogenesis, which, in turn, increases risk of wound ischemia, tissue necrosis, infection, and need for revision to a higher level.[86] Risk of residual limb osteomyelitis should be suspected when delayed healing and residual limb pain persist in the weeks and months following amputation.[87] Persons with recent or current history of smoking are more likely to experience significantly delayed healing following amputation.[88]

Many persons with traumatic or other nondysvascular amputation have achieved sufficient healing and limb volume control within 2 weeks to use a prefabricated adjustable prosthesis or to be casted for their initial (preparatory, training) prosthesis (Fig. 20.5).[89] Those with amputation secondary to vascular disease often require 4 to 8 weeks or more to achieve adequate healing and limb shaping to allow for prosthetic casting; this is greatly influenced by the strategy

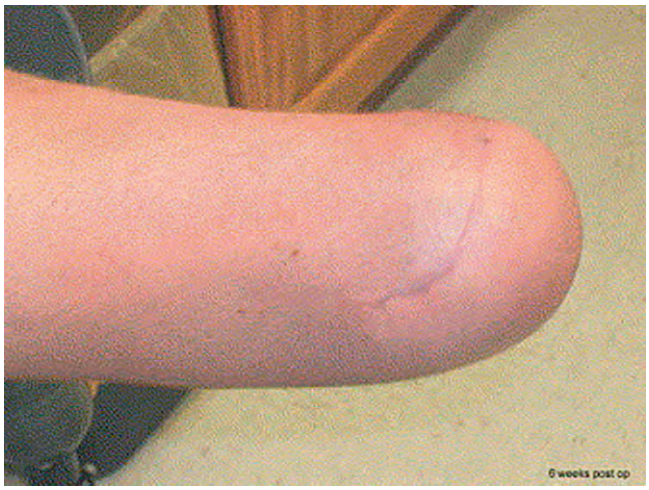


Fig. 20.5 A well-healed, transtibial residual limb with posterior flaps after successful shaping. This residual limb could be described as cylindrical, with little redundant tissue present. (From Stewart JD, Anderson CD, Unger DV. The Portsmouth modification of the Ertl bone-bridge transtibial amputation: the challenge of returning amputees back to active duty. *Oper Tech Sports Med.* 2005;13(4):222–226.)

used to manage edema in the immediate postoperative period.[90] The surgeon may begin to remove sutures or staples from the incision as early as 10 to 14 days after surgery. Initially, every other or every third suture/staple can be left in place to guard against wound dehiscence; remaining sutures or staples are removed over successive days. The surgical wound is often reinforced with Steri-Strips when sutures or staples are removed, to protect the incision from shearing forces during preprosthetic activity and early prosthetic training. The Steri-Strips can remain on the limb for 2 or more additional weeks after the sutures/staples have been removed. Gait training with a prosthesis can cautiously begin, with the approval of the surgeon, when clear evidence of primary healing is found, even if several sutures have been left in place to protect an area along the incision line that has been slow in closing.

Age alone should not be a limiting factor when assessing potential for prosthetic use. There is evidence to support a return to independent ambulation for older adults who rehabilitate in a skilled nursing facility despite other comorbidities. Successful independent prosthetic use was associated with their prior level of function and having a transtibial amputation (vs. a higher level of amputation), without phantom pain,[91] although delayed healing of the surgical wound may postpone prosthetic use. Older persons with diabetes and vascular insufficiency, as well as those who smoke, are particularly at risk for delayed healing.[88] The healing process can also be delayed as a consequence of infection, immunosuppression, or traumatic damage sustained during activity or in a fall in the days or weeks after surgery.[92] Nutritional status is a significant determinant of wound healing in the early postoperative and preprosthetic period; individuals with compromised nutritional status are more likely to experience delayed wound healing and are at greater risk of postoperative infection, as well as cardiopulmonary and septic complications.[93] When transcutaneous oxygen and carbon dioxide are carefully monitored, persons with small nonhealing incisional

wounds (1 cm × 1 cm) can safely use a pneumatic prosthesis to preserve/improve mobility and endurance before being fit with a prosthesis.[88]

Assessing Circulation

Because so many amputations are associated with the dyad of vascular insufficiency and polyneuropathy, it is necessary to examine and monitor vascular status and skin integrity of the remaining (intact) limb, as well as of the residual limb. One criterion for determining the level of amputation is the likelihood of healing of the surgical construct.[7] Surgeons caring for persons with dysvascular limbs typically determine the status of peripheral circulation using both noninvasive and invasive tests before amputation; however, delayed healing or failure of the suture line to close sometimes occurs even with careful preoperative evaluation. In the days and weeks after amputation surgery, members of the team watch for signs of vascular compromise that might threaten adequate closure of the surgical wound. There is an increased risk of mortality in older adults when a secondary, higher-level amputation is warranted, whether due to failed revascularization or disease progression.[94] In a study of amputees aged 70 and older, mortality rate after reamputation increased 4% per year of age.[94]

The remaining limb becomes much more vulnerable to skin and soft tissue damage because of increased biomechanical stress associated with single limb mobility following amputation surgery.[78,95,96] Surgeons should make every attempt to leave a thick muscle flap with ample vascular supply at the end of the stump, as much as 5 cm distal to the bone to allow sufficient padding.[64] Physical therapists must examine the residual limb using noninvasive strategies to assess the adequacy of blood flow (described in detail in Chapter 18) including skin temperature and turgor, skin color at rest and after position change, palpation or auscultation of pedal and popliteal pulses, segmental blood pressures, and calculation of an ankle-brachial index. A thorough baseline assessment enables the team to identify and respond to any circulatory problems that might develop as rehabilitation continues.

Assessing Range of Motion and Muscle Length

Having near-normal range of motion (ROM) in the remaining joints of the residual limb is paramount for effective prosthetic use.[97] Persons with recent amputation are much at risk for developing soft tissue contracture at the joint proximal to amputation during the preprosthetic period. The risk of hip and knee flexion contracture formation is associated with spending long periods of time sitting in a wheelchair or resting in bed, before and after amputation surgery. Other factors that contribute to the risk of flexion contracture formation include the protective flexion withdrawal pattern associated with lower extremity pain, muscle imbalances that result from loss of distal attachments, and the loss of tonic sensory input generated by weight bearing on the sole of the foot.[98,99] Because limitation in the lower extremity ROM can have a significant impact on the quality and energy efficiency of prosthetic gait, it is essential to assess and monitor ROM.[75] Equally important is implementing strategies to prevent or minimize contracture development as early in the postoperative, preprosthetic period as possible.[75,90]

For persons with transtibial amputation, definitive measurement of hip ROM is possible with standard goniometric techniques. With the loss of the malleolus as a distal reference point, accurate measurement of knee extension ROM can be challenging, especially when there is a short residual limb (Fig. 20.6). Familiarity with the normal anatomy of the tibia improves the therapist's positioning of the mobile arm of the goniometer and the accuracy of measurement. For individuals with transtibial and transfemoral amputation, the Thomas test may be an effective tool for determining the severity of hip flexion contracture (Fig. 20.7). Full hip extension is critical for prosthetic knee stability when walking with a transfemoral prosthesis.[97] The accuracy of standard goniometric measurement of hip adduction and abduction decreases as residual limb length decreases. There is no effective way to assess rotation of the transfemoral residual limb.

Hip flexor tightness is likely to result in increased lumbar lordosis when standing and walking with a prosthesis later in the rehabilitation process. Attempts to achieve an upright posture over the prosthesis in the presence of hip flexion contracture can lead, over time, to excessive mobility of the lumbosacral spine and the development of low back pain when walking with a prosthesis.[100] Individuals with bilateral transtibial amputation, as well as those who wear a

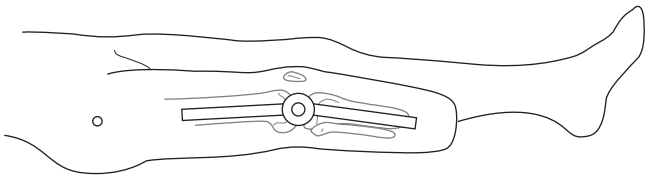


Fig. 20.6 Measurement of knee extension for persons with transtibial amputation requires an understanding of the normal anatomy of the tibia to compensate for loss of the distal malleolus as a point of reference for the mobile arm of the goniometer.

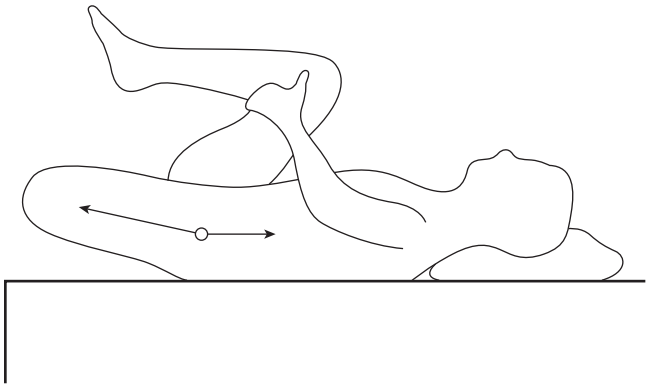


Fig. 20.7 The Thomas test can be used to assess the tightness or contracture of hip flexors for patients with transtibial and transfemoral residual limbs. The patient is positioned in supine with both limbs flexed toward the chest and the pelvis in slight posterior tilt. While the opposite limb is supported in place, the residual limb is gently lowered toward the support surface. Tightness or contracture of hip flexors causes the pelvis to move into an anterior tilt before the limb is fully lowered.

transfemoral prosthesis, are much at risk for this problem: Secondary spinal dysfunction and low back pain can be more disabling than the original amputation.[100,101] Attention to the importance of achieving near-normal joint ROM and soft tissue excursion early in the preprosthetic period has a powerful impact on effective prosthetic use long term.

When sitting or lying in bed, the natural tendency is for the lower limb to roll outward into a slightly flexed, abducted, and externally rotated position. Excursion of the hip is important to assess; tightness of external rotators may be masked by apparent tightness of hip flexors or abductors. The functional length of two-joint muscles is also important to consider. Adequate hamstring length is essential if the person with recent transtibial amputation is to maintain a fully extended knee when seated. If the knee is held in extension by a rigid dressing or thermoplastic splint, hamstring tightness will pull the pelvis into a marked posterior tilt. Instead of sitting squarely on the ischial tuberosities, the person with hamstring tightness sits in a kyphotic position with weight shifted onto the sacrum. This compromised postural alignment increases the risk of spinal dysfunction and of skin irritation and decubitus ulcer formation. Tightness in the rectus femoris, sartorius, and tensor fascia latae can interfere with advanced mobility skills such as the ability to kneel while transferring to and from the floor. Even simple mobility skills, such as the ability to transition from sit to stand to prepare for a transfer, transtibial amputees have been shown to demonstrate an asymmetric weight distribution pattern with a tendency to prefer to weight bear over the intact limb.[102] The therapist should be aware of the need to incorporate symmetric acceptance of weight to both limbs in preparation for higher level activities, such as ambulation.

Assessing Joint Integrity and Mobility

For individuals with transtibial residual limbs, the alignment and ligamentous integrity of the knee will be an important determinant of socket design, suspension strategy, and eventually the dynamic alignment of the prosthesis. Specific assessment of joint function of the residual limb is often deferred to later in the preprosthetic period when there has been primary healing of the surgical site; however, history of previous ligament injury or tear of the meniscus and concurrent degenerative joint disease or existing bony deformity (e.g., genu recurvatum, genu valgus, or genu varum) should be noted during initial assessment.

The special tests used to assess knee function in those with amputation are the same as those used to assess joint integrity in individuals with musculoskeletal dysfunction in intact limbs. They include joint play, medial and lateral gap tests to assess the integrity of the collateral ligaments, anterior and posterior draw test to assess cruciate integrity, and the various tests for meniscus tear.[103] However, the techniques must be adapted to the length of the residual limb; the loss of the foot means that the examiner's distal point of stability is moved upward on the limb, compromising the biomechanical advantage, as well as the accuracy of the examiner. It may be helpful to first examine the knee of the intact limb using traditional hand placement to get a sense of the individual's baseline, then move the distal hand upward on the intact limb and repeat the examination using hand placement appropriate for the residual limb. Comparison of distal and proximal test results of the intact limb provides a frame of reference for subsequently testing the knee of the residual limb.

Assessing Muscle Performance and Motor Control

Although assessment of strength and muscle function is a key component of preprosthetic and prosthetic rehabilitation, definitive strength assessment beyond active, nonresisted antigravity motion at the joint just proximal to the amputation is usually postponed until there is adequate healing of the surgical site so as to protect the new incision from sheer forces associated with testing. Strength of key muscle groups at the next most proximal joints can be specifically assessed with standard manual muscle testing or handheld dynamometry techniques.[104] Given time constraints during initial assessment, the therapist may opt to use functional antigravity activities to screen for impairments of strength and power of the remaining limb and trunk, specifically testing strength of particular muscles if functional problems are identified.

For those with transtibial amputation, observation of active knee flexion and extension strength is used to determine if at least fair (a rating of three out of five) full antigravity strength is present until the physician determines sufficient wound healing has been accomplished. For those with transfemoral amputation, assessment of hip muscle strength beyond active antigravity fair muscle grade must also be postponed pending incisional healing.

Once the surgeon and rehabilitation team are confident that enough healing has occurred so that the incision cannot be compromised by externally applied resistance, definitive strength testing can be implemented at the joint proximal to amputation. Because of the length of the residual limb, the examiner must apply the resistive force at a more proximal position on the extremity than is defined by the standard manual muscle test technique. With an altered manual contact, the mechanical advantage of the examiner is reduced and the subjective sense of strength grade may be somewhat inflated. This altered point of force application affects the validity of test results. Many therapists attempt to maximize validity by first testing the intact or remaining limb (assuming similarity of strength between the patient's limbs), using standard technique to assign a muscle grade (Fig. 20.8A). The intact limb is then retested with a more proximal hand placement, simulating the position for testing of the residual limb (see Fig. 20.8B). This grade serves as a point of reference when the residual limb is then tested (see Fig. 20.8C). For persons with transtibial amputation, the functional strength of hip extensors can be assessed with the individual lying in supine, a small bolster or towel roll positioned under the lower thigh of the residual limb, and the intact limb held flexed against the trunk (Fig. 20.9A). The ability to lift the pelvis (bridge) up from the supporting surface by pushing downward into the bolster suggests functional hip extensor strength. Similarly, hip abduction can be tested in side-lying position (residual limb down) against a bolster, asking the individual to push downward to raise the pelvis up off of the supporting surface (see Fig. 20.9B) These positions can also be used as strengthening exercises to repeatedly lift body weight in

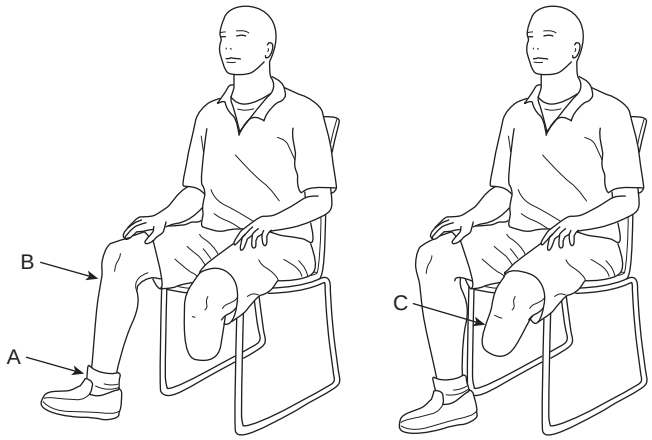


Fig. 20.8 Suggested points of force application for to improve accuracy of manual muscle test (MMT) for knee extension strength in a transtibial residual limb. *A*, Standard MMT position on the remaining limb. *B*, Moving the point of force application proximally on the intact limb provides a frame of reference for subsequent testing *(C)* of the residual limb.

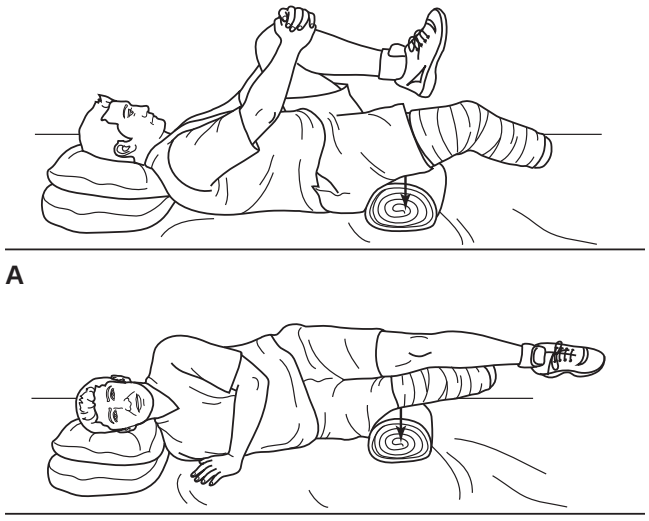


Fig. 20.9 Strategies for functional testing of hip extensor (A) and hip abductor (B) muscle strength following transtibial amputation. A small bolster or firm towel roll is positioned at the distal thigh, and the individual attempts to lift the pelvis from the supporting surface. In persons with transfemoral amputation, these positions can be used once sufficient healing of the surgical construct has occurred. These positions can later be used, with body weight as resistance, for concentric (lifting), isometric (holding), and eccentric (controlled lowering) strengthening exercises.

concentric, holding (at the top), and eccentric (controlled lowering) contraction.

Because a healing transtibial suture line is vulnerable to resistive forces applied during strength testing and strengthening exercise, resistance to knee extension should be applied only if and when the suture line can be observed. Resistance must not be applied through a soft dressing or compressive garment during the first several weeks of the preprosthetic program. Unless healing has been delayed, most surgeons consider initiation of conservative resistive exercise a few days after sutures have been removed. Surgeon preference, tissue integrity, and the individual's cardiovascular condition must be factored into strength assessment and strengthening exercise programs.

Function is not only influenced by the maximal force that the individual can generate (as examined in standard manual muscle test) but also depends on the rate and efficiency at which the individual can generate force (power); the ability of the individual to grade and sustain an effective contraction during activity (endurance); and the ability to control muscle length in concentric (shortening), isometric (holding), and eccentric (lengthening) contractions. Observation of functional activities can identify if there are impairments of these types of muscle function. More specific testing of power can be accomplished using an isokinetic apparatus set at varying speeds or by asking the person to move at varying speeds against manual resistance.

Assessment of the ability to switch between types of muscle contraction can be accomplished by providing manual resistance while asking the individual to "contract," "hold," and "let go slowly" for key muscle groups. An example of a key functional activity in which this type of control is important is the task of rising from sitting to standing and then returning to a seated position. Many persons can generate adequate force in the intact lower extremity to stand up but have difficulty controlling their descent back to sitting—"plopping" back into their seat. This is especially true for individuals who have been inactive or on prolonged bed rest.[105,106]

If there is any indication of previous or current neuromuscular dysfunction, examination of tone and motor control is also important. Assessment of muscle tone includes deep tendon reflexes (DTRs), response to passive movement of limbs and trunk (hypotonicity or hypertonicity, rigidity), placement and drop tests, coordination and fine motor tests (e.g., rapid alternating movement; fine, quick tapping or clapping), as well as observation of any abnormal synergy pattern, tremors, or involuntary movement.[107] Qualitative assessment of the individual's ability to initiate, sustain, and terminate movement during functional activities will help the therapist to identify issues of motor control that may need to be addressed as part of the plan of care.

Assessing Upper Extremity Function

Because most individuals use an ambulatory aid (e.g., four-wheeled walker, standard walker, crutches) for single limb ambulation until they are ready for prosthetic training, it is important to screen for deformity or other musculoskeletal or neuromuscular impairments involving the upper extremity. Many of those with dysvascular- and neuropathic-related lower extremity amputation have age-related degenerative joint disease that might make use of a walker or crutches challenging. Screening for functional strength and muscle endurance of muscles that stabilize the shoulder and elbow identifies individuals who would benefit from a progressive resistive exercise program targeting the upper extremity to enhance their ability to transfer and ambulate.

Polyneuropathy, in a "stocking-glove" distribution, is the most common neuromuscular impairment encountered in

those with diabetes who have undergone lower extremity amputation. Diabetic polyneuropathy affects all extremities—not only the sensory system, but also the voluntary motor and autonomic systems.[108,109] For this reason, it is important to at least screen for distal upper extremity sensory loss, weakness of intrinsic muscles of the hand, and autonomic impairment (e.g., postural hypotension) during the preprosthetic period. Compromised upper extremity sensation and functional strength may affect the type of assistive device used for mobility; compression strategy for the residual limb; and, eventually, selection of a suspension strategy for the prosthesis.

Assessing Aerobic Capacity and Endurance

Determining baseline (resting) vital signs (e.g., pulse, blood pressure, respiratory rate, blood oxygen levels via pulse oximetry) is the first step in assessment of aerobic capacity and endurance. Screening for orthostatic (postural) hypotension is important for any individual who has sustained a period of inactivity and bed rest, especially if the individual is older, is on medications that blunt blood pressure response, or has a history of autonomic dysfunction from a peripheral or systemic pathologic condition.[110] Change in vital signs during transfers or early mobility training and the time to return to resting baseline values provide information about responsiveness to exercise. Soon after surgery, anxiety about pain or risk of injury during activities may contribute to a physiologic "fight-or-flight" response, influencing vital signs.[111] A calm and focused demeanor on the part of the therapist, as well as explanation and education about what will happen and the reason for the assessment, can help an individual with recent amputation to better manage fears and concerns.

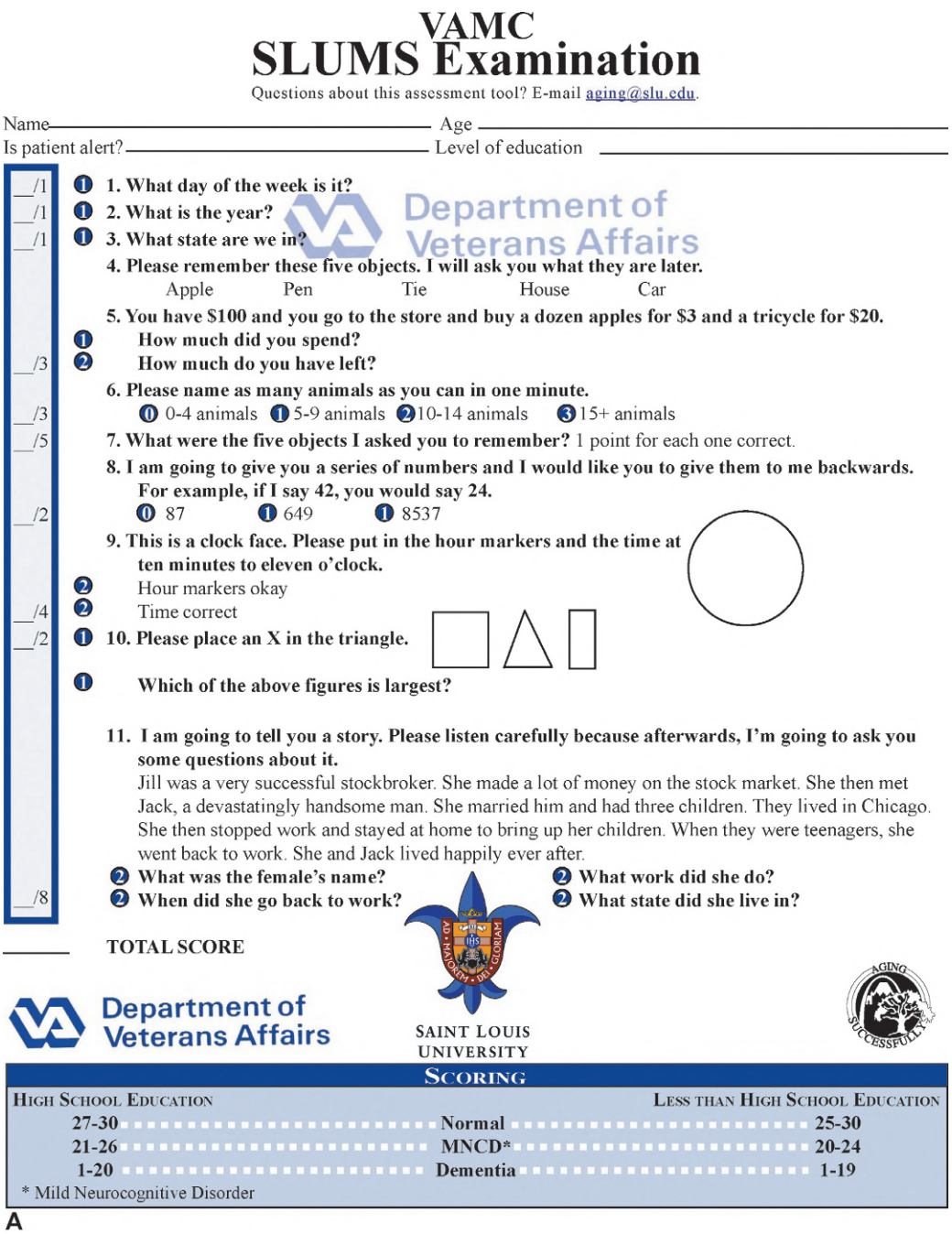
Ratings of perceived exertion and dyspnea are useful assessment strategies in the postoperative/preprosthetic period, both to assess how the person with new amputation is tolerating increasing activity and to help the individual target an appropriate level of activity.[112,113] Upper extremity ergometry, single-leg cycling tests, or combined upper and lower limb ergometry tests have been used as indexes of aerobic capacity for those who have recently lost a limb, if definitive testing is indicated.[114–116]

Given the similarities in etiology and impact of peripheral vascular, cardiovascular, and cerebrovascular disease, many persons with dysvascular amputation are likely to be at risk for, or have even had, heart attack (myocardial infarction [MI]) or brain attack (stroke).[117–119] The rehabilitation team must be alert for early signs and symptoms of cardiac compromise as the person with new amputation begins transfer and single limb mobility training. Individuals who have had previous cardiac rehabilitation following MI, angioplasty, or coronary artery bypass may better understand the importance of conditioning exercise as part of their preprosthetic program. Assessment of quality of motor control and tone is imperative if there is history of stroke.

Assessing Attention and Cognition

The Saint Louis University Mental Status (SLUMS) examination is a 30-item screening questionnaire that tests for orientation, memory, attention, and executive functions. The SLUMS is used to detect mild neurocognitive disorder, a condition that often precludes dementia (Fig. 20.10A).[120–123] The norms are dependent on education level. For those with a high school education, scores of 27 to 30 indicate normal cognitive function, 21 to 26 indicate mild neurocognitive disorder, and dementia is suspected for scores 20 and below. For those with less than a high school education, normal is 25 to 30, mild neurocognitive disorder is 20 to 24, and dementia is suspected for scores 19 and below.[122] Other measures of cognitive function include the Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE), which is now proprietary. However, the SLUMS has been found to be comparable to the MMSE and possibly better at detecting mild neurocognitive disorder than the MMSE.[120–123] In older adults, the most common form of cognitive impairment is a delirium, a temporary and typically reversible problem that is associated with physiologic stressors (e.g., clearing from anesthesia, psychotropic effects of narcotic pain medications, stress of hospitalization, dehydration, onset of infection).[120–122,124] Because cognitive status is not always linear, several examination measures exist to quantify difficulties with recall, attention, memory, registration, and orientation and should be administered periodically to identify and monitor cognitive difficulties. The Montreal Cognitive Assessment is another screening tool for physical therapists that can screen for cognitive deficits better than the MMSE.[124a] Scores of 26 to 30 are considered normal, and scores 25 and below are suggestive of mild cognitive impairment to dementia (see Fig. 20.10B). The Mini Cog (see Fig. 20.10C1 and C2) is another example of a quick cognitive screen that is useful for identifying progression of cognitive impairment. A study of veterans over 2½ years resulted in more individuals with some degree of cognitive impairment reverting to normal cognition instead of progressing to dementia.[125] Table 20.3 presents risk factors for, signs and symptoms of, and measures used to screen for and quantify severity of delirium.

Cognition and the ability to learn may also be compromised by depression associated with mourning the loss of one's limb.[23,126] Perception of acute surgical pain and phantom pain tends to increase in persons with significant depression following amputation, as well as in those who view amputation as a catastrophic event.[127,128] Persons whose amputation was traumatic (accident related, combat related, or work related) often must also contend with significant anxiety, anger, or posttraumatic stress disorder and may require psychiatric referral for posttraumatic stress disorder symptoms that hamper rehabilitation.[129–131] Measures commonly used to evaluate depression in the preprosthetic period include the Geriatric Depression Scale,[132] the Beck Depression Inventory,[133] and the Center for Epidemiological Studies Depression Scale.[134] Anxiety following amputation can be assessed using the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale,[135,136] and the Geriatric Anxiety Inventory.[137] Scores indicating moderate to high levels of delirium, depression, or anxiety should prompt referral to mental health services for further evaluation and intervention. Participation in rehabilitation often reduces levels of depression and anxiety[126]; it can be more informative to track how scores change over a period of time than to interpret a single value.



VAMC
SLUMS Examination

Questions about this assessment tool? E-mail aging@slu.edu.

Name _____ Age _____
Is patient alert? _____ Level of education _____

__/1 (1) 1. What day of the week is it?
__/1 (1) 2. What is the year?
__/1 (1) 3. What state are we in?

Department of Veterans Affairs

4. Please remember these five objects. I will ask you what they are later.
Apple Pen Tie House Car

5. You have $100 and you go to the store and buy a dozen apples for $3 and a tricycle for $20.
(1) How much did you spend?
__/3 (2) How much do you have left?

6. Please name as many animals as you can in one minute.
__/3 (0) 0-4 animals (1) 5-9 animals (2) 10-14 animals (3) 15+ animals

__/5 7. What were the five objects I asked you to remember? 1 point for each one correct.

8. I am going to give you a series of numbers and I would like you to give them to me backwards. For example, if I say 42, you would say 24.
__/2 (0) 87 (1) 649 (1) 8537

9. This is a clock face. Please put in the hour markers and the time at ten minutes to eleven o'clock.
(2) Hour markers okay
__/4 (2) Time correct

__/2 (1) 10. Please place an X in the triangle.

(1) Which of the above figures is largest?

11. I am going to tell you a story. Please listen carefully because afterwards, I'm going to ask you some questions about it.
Jill was a very successful stockbroker. She made a lot of money on the stock market. She then met Jack, a devastatingly handsome man. She married him and had three children. They lived in Chicago. She then stopped work and stayed at home to bring up her children. When they were teenagers, she went back to work. She and Jack lived happily ever after.

__/8 (2) What was the female's name? (2) What work did she do?
(2) When did she go back to work? (2) What state did she live in?

_____ TOTAL SCORE

Department of Veterans Affairs

SAINT LOUIS UNIVERSITY

AGING SUCCESSFULLY

SCORING

High School Education		Less than High School Education
27-30	Normal	25-30
21-26	MNCD*	20-24
1-20	Dementia	1-19

* Mild Neurocognitive Disorder

A

Fig. 20.10 (A) The Saint Louis University Mental Status Examination.

Continued

For those with amputation as a result of dysvascular problems, the underlying mechanism for peripheral arterial disease (PAD), cardiovascular disease, and cerebral vascular disease is the same; in population studies, persons with severe PAD tend to have more cognitive impairment than those without PAD.[138] There is a positive relationship between level of cognitive resources (e.g., memory, executive function, problem-solving ability), the ability to walk with a prosthesis, and postamputation adjustment and quality of life.[139–141] Cognitive impairment should not preclude postoperative rehabilitation and prosthetic prescription: supervised use of ambulatory assistive devices and eventually prostheses may improve safety during self-care and reduce overall caregiver burden.[142]

Readers are referred to the detailed chapter on motivation and patient education by Resnik and Avers in *Geriatric*

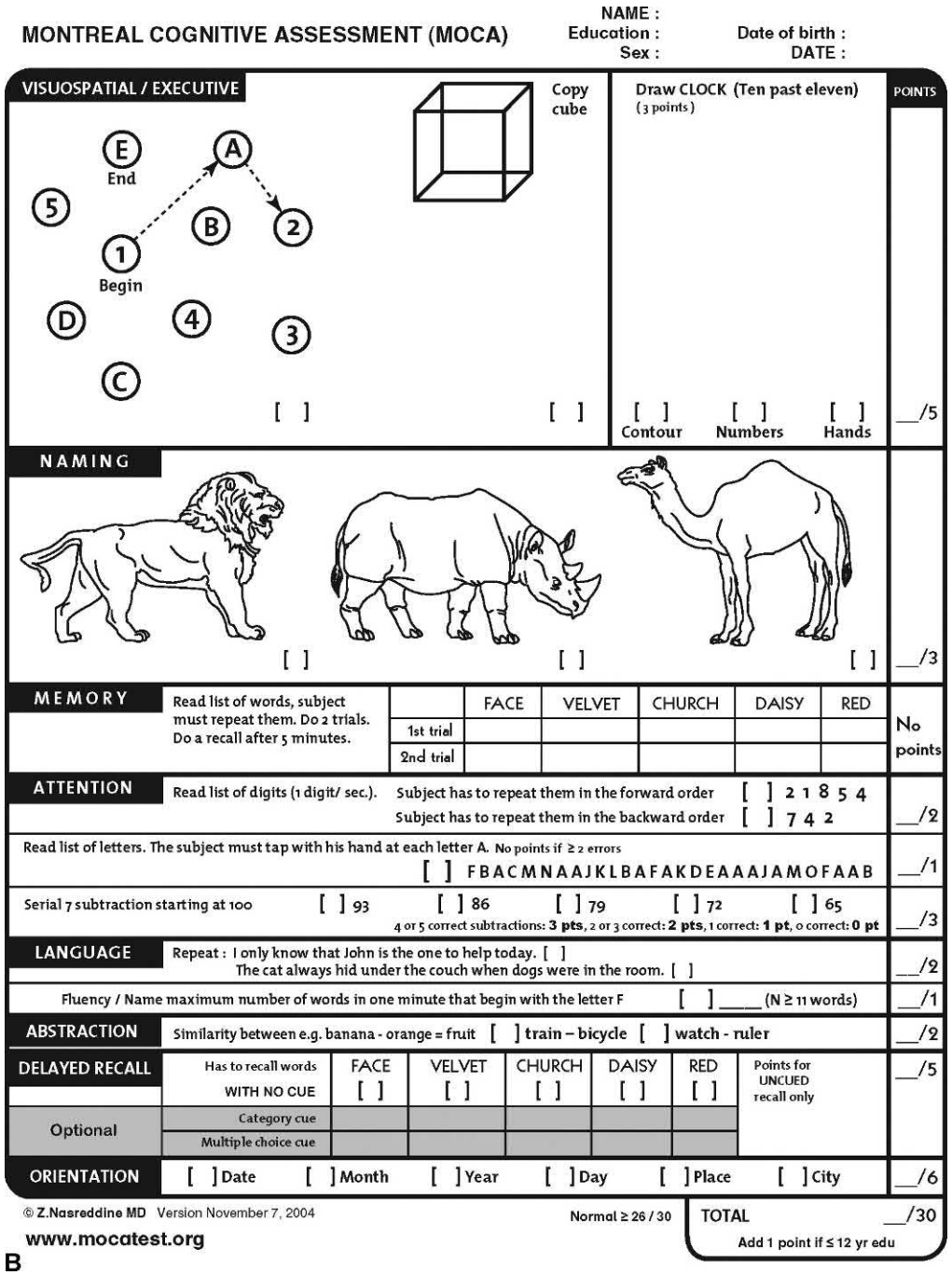


Fig. 20.10, cont'd (B) The Montreal Cognitive Assessment. (B, Copyright Z. Nasreddine MD. Reproduced with permission. Copies are available at www.mocatest.org)

Physical Therapy as a resource on assessment of learning styles and readiness to change health behaviors (as well as on facilitation of learning).[143]

Assessing Sensory Integrity

Early in the postoperative period, screening of sensory function (vision, hearing, and somatosensation) is aimed at determining if strategies for enhancing communication may be necessary and if the individual has sufficient "data-collection" mechanisms in place to monitor the surgical wound condition, to inspect the condition of the remaining foot and limb, and to scan the environment in preparation for and during functional activities.[144–146] Sensory integrity is also a factor

Mini-Cog©

Instructions for Administration & Scoring

ID:_____ Date:_____

Step 1: Three Word Registration

Look directly at person and say, "Please listen carefully. I am going to say three words that I want you to repeat back to me now and try to remember. The words are [select a list of words from the versions below]. Please say them for me now." If the person is unable to repeat the words after three attempts, move on to Step 2 (clock drawing).

The following and other word lists have been used in one or more clinical studies.[1-3] For repeated administrations, use of an alternative word list is recommended.

Version 1	Version 2	Version 3	Version 4	Version 5	Version 6
Banana	Leader	Village	River	Captain	Daughter
Sunrise	Season	Kitchen	Nation	Garden	Heaven
Chair	Table	Baby	Finger	Picture	Mountain

Step 2: Clock Drawing

Say: "Next, I want you to draw a clock for me. First, put in all of the numbers where they go." When that is completed, say: "Now, set the hands to 10 past 11."

Use preprinted circle (see next page) for this exercise. Repeat instructions as needed as this is not a memory test. Move to Step 3 if the clock is not complete within three minutes.

Step 3: Three Word Recall

Ask the person to recall the three words you stated in Step 1. Say: "What were the three words I asked you to remember?" Record the word list version number and the person's answers below.

Word List Version:_____ Person's Answers: _____ _____ _____

Scoring

Word Recall: _____ (0-3 points)	1 point for each word spontaneously recalled without cueing.
Clock Draw: _____ (0 or 2 points)	Normal clock = 2 points. A normal clock has all numbers placed in the correct sequence and approximately correct position (e.g., 12, 3, 6 and 9 are in anchor positions) with no missing or duplicate numbers. Hands are pointing to the 11 and 2 (11:10). Hand length is not scored. Inability or refusal to draw a clock (abnormal) = 0 points.
Total Score: _____ (0-5 points)	Total score = Word Recall score + Clock Draw score. A cut point of <3 on the Mini-Cog™ has been validated for dementia screening, but many individuals with clinically meaningful cognitive impairment will score higher. When greater sensitivity is desired, a cut point of <4 is recommended as it may indicate a need for further evaluation of cognitive status.

C1

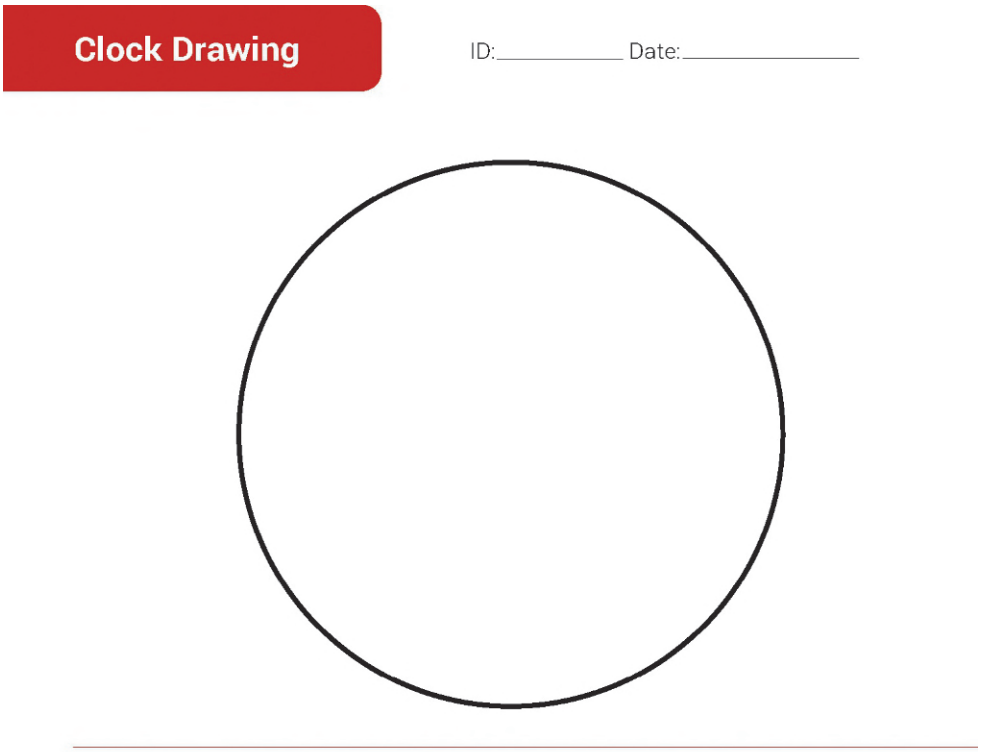
Fig. 20.10, cont'd (C1) and (C2) The Mini Cog. ([A] From http://aging.slu.edu/pdfsurveys/mentalstatus.pdf; Tariq SH, Tumosa N, Chibnall JT, Peri III HM, Morley JE. Mild Cognitive Impairment and Dementia is more sensitive than the. Mini-Mental. Status. Examination (MMSE)—A pilot study. *J Am Geriatri Psych*. 2006;14:900–910. [B] From http://www.mocatest.org/. [C1 and C2] From https://mini-cog.com/.)

Continued

influencing selection of prosthetic components and suspension method.

Given the age and common morbidities of those with vascular and neuropathic etiology of amputation, it is quite likely that some degree of visual impairment will be present in this group (Box 20.2).[147,148] If the individual typically wears glasses for daily function, glasses should be worn during examination and subsequent intervention. Simple strategies to reduce glare, increase contrast (e.g., handgrips on walkers), and enhance acuity (e.g., large, simple, bold type on written instructions) can be used to help those with common age-related visual changes be more functional during the postoperative/preprosthetic period.[149]

Similarly, there are cumulative age-related changes in structure, physiology, and function of the auditory system to be aware of (see Box 20.2) when interacting with older



References

1. Borson S, Scanlan JM, Chen PJ et al. The Mini-Cog as a screen for dementia: Validation in a population based sample. J Am Geriatr Soc 2003;51:1451–1454.

2. Borson S, Scanlan JM, Watanabe J et al. Improving identification of cognitive impairment in primary care. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 2006;21: 349–355.

3. Lessig M, Scanlan J et al. Time that tells: Critical clock-drawing errors for dementia screening. Int Psychogeriatr. 2008 June; 20(3): 459–470.

4. Tsoi K, Chan J et al. Cognitive tests to detect dementia: A systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Intern Med. 2015; E1-E9.

5. McCarten J, Anderson P et al. Screening for cognitive impairment in an elderly veteran population: Acceptability and results using different versions of the Mini-Cog. J Am Geriatr Soc 2011, 59: 309-213.

6. McCarten J, Anderson P et al. Finding dementia in primary care: The results of a clinical demonstration project. J Am Geriatr Soc 2012; 60: 210-217.

7. Scanlan J & Borson S. The Mini-Cog: Receiver operating characteristics with the expert and naive raters. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 2001; 16: 216-222.

C2

Fig. 20.10, cont'd

persons with recent amputation.[150] Attention to the ability to hear and interpret sound is vital when examining persons with concurrent confusion caused by postoperative delirium or acquired brain injury after trauma who may also have impairment of attention. Simple strategies to enhance the ability to listen and hear include dropping the pitch of the speaking voice; speaking more slowly and projecting the voice without shouting; maintaining direct eye contact; interacting in as quiet an environment as possible; and augmenting what is said with directive gestures, simple diagrams, or brief written instruction in large print.[151] Ensuring that hearing aids are in place and functional is crucial during interviews and for patient/family education. Importantly, hearing aids typically amplify all sound; attention to volume and complexity of background noise must always be considered.

In examining somatosensation the therapist is screening for areas of diminished sensation and areas of hypersensitivity or dysthesias on the surface of the residual limb, as well as on the remaining limb.[152] Box 20.2 also summarizes age-

Table 20.3 Risk Factors for, Signs/Symptoms of, and Screening Tools for Delirium

Risk factors for delirium[370,371]	Patient-related predisposing	Advanced age Dementia Previous stroke or head injury Parkinson disease Multiple comorbid diseases Impaired vision and/or hearing (nonuse of typical glasses or hearing aids) History of alcohol or other substance abuse Functional impairment Male gender
	Patient-related precipitating	Dehydration, electrolyte imbalance, hypoglycemic or hyperglycemia, other metabolic abnormalities Onset of acute medical problem, especially infection (pneumonia, urinary tract infections) Exacerbation of chronic medical problem Sepsis Polypharmacy (>3 medications) and adverse drug reaction Recent surgery and anesthesia Pain with or without opioid/narcotic pain medication Severe illness Sleep deprivation Urinary catheter use Constipation or fecal impaction Malnutrition Hepatic or renal dysfunction or failure Trauma Head injury Alcohol or other substance withdrawal Hypothermia or hyperthermia Fearfulness, loss of self-determination, altered self-esteem
	Environment related	Transition to new or unfamiliar environment Lack of privacy Differences in noise (type, loudness) and lighting Isolation Physical or chemical restraint use
Signs and symptoms of delirium[370,371]	Hypoactive and hyperactive behaviors	Change from usual cognition over hours or several days Confusion and disorientation Difficulty concentrating, poor attention span, distractibility Altered perception (illusion, delusion, visual and auditory hallucination) Inability to multitask or parallel process Impaired learning and memory Noncompliance with interventions Disorganized speech (rambling or inarticulate) Emotional lability Paranoia Disordered sleep pattern (sundown syndrome) Fearfulness Aggressiveness and anger Alternating lethargy and hyperactivity
Measures for diagnosis of delirium	Cognitive screening	Mini-Mental State Exam[372] Mini-Cog[373]
	Delirium-specific	Confusion Assessment Method (CAM)[374] One Day Fluctuation Scale[375] Delirium Index[376] Neelon and Champagne Confusion (NEECHAM) Scale[377] Delirium Observation Screening Scale[378] Delirium Rating Scale (DRS)[379] Memorial Delirium Assessment Scale (MDAS)[380]

and pathologic condition–related changes in sensation. For those with neuropathic-dysvascular disease, it is especially important to ascertain if there is adequate protective sensation (ability to consistently perceive the 5.07 Semmes-Weinstein filament) on weight-bearing surfaces of the intact limb, which will be subject to repeated loading during single limb ambulation.[153] Standard sensory testing protocols for light touch, point, and generalized pressure (am I touching you? yes/no), the ability to localize (where am I touching you?), and temperature discrimination (hot/cold) are used and often documented on a body chart.[154] This information is used to guide patient-family education about skin

Box 20.2 Age-Related and Pathologic Conditions of the Sensory Systems in Later Life

Visual System

Age-Related Changes

Diminished visual acuity
Diminished ability to accommodate between near/far visual targets
Delayed dark-light adaptation, especially sudden changes in lighting
Diminished contrast sensitivity and figure-ground discrimination
Diminished color discrimination
Diminished depth perception and visual-spatial sensitivity
Slowed pupillary light responses
Diminished corneal reflex
Diminished ability to converge eyes
Decreased ability to gaze upward/diminished upper visual field
Diminished lateral peripheral field
Increased likelihood of ptosis
Diminished efficiency of vestibular-ocular reflexes

Functional Consequences

Susceptibility to glare
Increasing need for sharp contrast (in text style and color)
Difficulty recognizing and responding to subtle changes in the visual environment
Need for gradual transition from dark-to-light environments
Need to keep directional signs at eye level
Use of bifocals/trifocals to improve visual clarity at near/far distances

Pathologic Conditions Affecting the Visual System

Cataract
Age-related maculopathy/macular degeneration
Diabetic retinopathy
Glaucoma
Homonymous hemianopsia consequent to cerebrovascular accident

Auditory System

Age-Related Changes

Gradual progressive bilateral hearing loss, beginning with high frequencies
Diminished sensitivity to low-volume sounds
Increasing pure tone auditory threshold
Diminished ability to screen background noise
Diminished discernment of speech sounds
Diminished word and sentence recognition
Decreased ability to accommodate to rapid speaking rates
Distortion of sound/sensitivity to shouting and emotional cues

Functional Consequences

Less efficient listening, especially in noisy environments
Compensation by watching facial expression, movement of mouth
Need for adaptation of learning/listening environment
Lower tone speech
Slower rate of speaking
Higher volume (loudness) without shouting
Use of hearing aids (most effective is conductive hearing loss)

Pathologic Conditions Affecting the Auditory System

Buildup of cerumen in the external auditory canal
Traumatic hearing loss from exposure to excessively loud sounds
Acoustic neuroma
Vascular insufficiency in the brainstem auditory system
Cerebrovascular accident affecting auditory cortex function
Ototoxic medications

Somatosensory System

Age-Related Changes

Decrease in number and distribution of receptors for discriminatory touch
Loss of afferent nerve fibers in peripheral nerves
Degeneration of dorsal columns (central sensory discriminatory pathway)
Increased latency for sensory stimulation (diminished conduction velocity)
Increased threshold of stimulation and decreased sensitivity
Point localization
Vibration (toe and ankle > upper extremity)
Two-point discrimination
Cutaneous pain
Temperature detection
Passive movement/joint position sense (lower extremity > upper extremity)

Functional Consequences

Reduced ability to monitor environmental conditions
Less-efficient postural responses
Increased risk of tissue damage under low-load, repetitive conditions

Pathologic Conditions Affecting Somatosensory Systems

Diabetic neuropathy
Entrapment neuropathy (e.g., carpal tunnel syndrome)
Toxic neuropathy (e.g., chronic alcoholism)
Sensory and perceptual impairment consequent to cerebrovascular accident

inspection and wound care, as well as decisions about appropriate socket-limb interface for prosthetic prescription. Screening for proprioceptive and kinesthetic awareness at intact joints provides information that will be useful when designing interventions for postural control and, eventually, prosthetic gait training.

Sensory testing requires that the individual be able to concentrate and focus so as to respond when a stimulus is presented. The reliability of sensory testing is diminished in individuals with confusion or delirium or if the examiner uses a consistent (predictable) pattern or rhythm during testing.[155] To minimize the likelihood of "lucky guesses" in those with suspected sensory impairment, it may be helpful to test specific sites multiple times, in random order and uneven timing, documenting the number of accurate responses versus number of times stimulated (e.g., 0/3, 1/3, 2/3, or 3/3) at each testing site.

Noting how the individual with new amputation perceives the residual limb is also important; is the individual willing to look at the limb, watch it during dressing changes, touch it, or freely move it? One challenge in the preprosthetic period is to assist the incorporation of this "different"

limb in the person's body image and self-perception.[22,23,156] Some individuals with dysvascular-neuropathic disease continue to perceive their limb as fragile and needing protection. Those with traumatic amputation may become emotionally distressed when confronted with the real evidence of their loss. These situations may interfere with readiness to wear and use a prosthesis effectively. Awareness of the person's emotional response to his or her altered body guides the therapist in patient education and intervention activities aimed to accomplish adaptation of body image necessary for effective prosthetic use.

Assessing Mobility, Locomotion, and Balance

An individual with recent amputation may find that simple mobility tasks (rolling over, coming to sitting/returning to supine, transitioning from sitting to standing) are more difficult than anticipated following surgery. With the reduction of body mass that results from lower extremity amputation, for example, the individual's functional center of mass (COM) shifts slightly upward and to the opposite side of the body; the degree of the shift is directly related to the amount of body mass removed during amputation surgery.[157] When this alteration in body mass is paired with deconditioning associated with bed rest, performance of mobility tasks degrades. It is important to document baseline functional status and to discern how much that altered body mass, altered muscle performance, and even fear of pain or of falling may be contributing to difficulty in moving. These alterations in COM may require adaptation of strategies used before surgery for postural control; most persons with recent amputation can effectively adapt their postural control mechanisms by practicing activities that require them to anticipate or respond to postural demands.

One of the most worthwhile aspects of preoperative assessment is determination of the usual (previous) and current (postoperative) ambulatory status of the person with new amputation. The therapist is interested in the individual's familiarity with the use of assistive devices (e.g., walker, crutches, canes), need for assistance to assume standing and while walking, typical distances walked before surgery, the overall effort (energy cost) of walking, the frequency of walking, any other factors or comorbidities that limit walking, and the type of walking environment that the person is most likely to encounter after discharge from acute care (e.g., level inside, uneven outside, stairs and ramps). Self-reports and direct observation of walking provide this information. Preamputation ambulatory status is a very strong predictor of functional postoperative prosthetic use.[158,159]

At this early point in rehabilitation the priority is safety and functionality of walking, rather than quality and preciseness of the gait pattern. Detailed observational gait analysis is typically deferred until training with the prosthesis begins. Quantitative kinematics (e.g., cadence, gait speed, step or stride length) and ratings of perceived exertion can be used to establish a baseline early in the postoperative period as a benchmark for progression and readiness for discharge. Individuals with new amputation must be able to use a step-to or swing-through gait pattern with the type of walker or crutches that provides adequate stability and energy efficiency with the least activity restriction.[160] Once gait training with the prosthesis begins, the strategies of resisted gait and functional training were found to be more effective that supervised walking to improve gait performance.[161]

In acute care settings, initial examination and training of gait is likely to focus on level, predictable surfaces in a relatively closed environment. The ability to manage on a variety of surfaces in active and open environments is examined as care progresses; discharge from acute care approaches; and preprosthetic rehabilitation continues at home, in subacute settings, or on an outpatient basis. The individual with recent amputation using an assistive device in single limb ambulation must be able to walk forward, sideways, and backward, change direction, and turn, in addition to managing stairs and inclines so as to be safe and functional in the home environment. Familiarity with and effectiveness of propulsion and maneuverability of a wheelchair are likely to be important in the preprosthetic period for both the individual and family caregivers.

Determining the effectiveness of the individual's postural control is also key. This includes stability in quiet sitting and standing; anticipatory postural adjustments in reaching, in transitions from sitting to standing, and during locomotion; and reactionary postural adjustments when there is unexpected perturbation or unpredictable environmental conditions (e.g., a wet area on the floor, an area rug that may shift when stepped on). Although objective mobility measures such as the Tinetti Performance Oriented Mobility Assessment and Berg Balance Scale are used clinically for persons with recent amputation, the reliability, validity, and norms for safe or impaired performance are not well documented in the research literature.[162–164] However, the Functional Reach test has been shown to be a valid and specific measure of balance for individuals at the definitive prosthetic phase after lower limb amputation, and it correlates with the Timed Up and Go (TUG) test.[165] Subjective assessment of postural control (poor, fair, good, excellent) is somewhat influenced by the therapist's level of experience and comfort with allowing an individual to move toward his or her limits of stability.[166] Objective measurements of balance and postural control provide the therapist with more information to help develop a specific plan of care to address balance deficits. One study found differences in limits of stability between patients with vascular and nonvascular unilateral transtibial amputation (UTA) and patients without amputation. When center of gravity excursion end points were measured across all three groups, the patients with vascular UTA had substantially reduced limits of stability compared with patients without amputation and the patients with nonvascular UTA.[167] The Amputee Mobility Predictor (AMP) (Fig. 20.11) may be a useful tool to establish baseline preprosthetic balance and walking abilities, as well as an outcome measure for preprosthetic rehabilitation.[168–170] Minimal detectable change (MDC) for the AMP is reported to be 3.5 points.[171] Providing an opportunity for the individual to practice moving from sitting to standing and ambulation with an appropriate assistive device allows the therapist to identify potential problems with balance and postural control. This also helps the individual to anticipate what mobility will be like while the residual limb heals and while awaiting the

AMPUTEE MOBILITY PREDICTOR ASSESSMENT TOOL – AMPnoPRO

Initial instructions: Testee is seated in a hard chair 40-50cm height with arms. The following maneuvers are tested without the prosthesis. Advise the person of each task or group of tasks prior to performance. Please avoid unnecessary chatter throughout the test and no task should be performed if either the tester or testee is uncertain of a safe outcome. One attempt only per item
Maximum of 2 days allowed to complete assessment
The right limb is: □ PF □ TT □ KD □ TF □ HD □ intact The left limb is: □ PF □ TT □ KD □ TF □ HD □ intact

NAME: **ASSESSOR:** **DATE:** **TIME:**

			COMMENTS
1.Sitting Balance Sit forward without backrest, with arms folded across chest for 60s.	Cannot sit upright independently for 60s Can sit upright independently for 60s	=0 =1	
2.Sitting reach Reach forwards and grasp the ruler using preferred arm (Tester holds ruler 26cm beyond extended arm midline to the sternum, or against the wall, intact foot midline)	Does not attempt Cannot grasp or required arm support Reaches forward and successfully grasps item	=0 =1 =2	
3.Chair to chair transfer 90° Chair height between 40-50cm , allowed to use aid but no armrests	Cannot do or requires physical assistance Performs task but unsteady or needs contact guarding Performs independently	=0 =1 =2	
4.Arises from chair–single effort Chair height between 40-50cm, tester asks patient to cross arms over chest. If unable, uses arms or assistive device	Unable without physical assistance Able, uses arms/assistive device to help Able without arms	=0 =1 =2	
5.Arises from chair-multiple effort Chair height between 40-50cm, multiple efforts allowed without penalty	Unable without physical assistance Able but requires >1attempts Able to rise in one attempt	=0 =1 =2	
6. Immediate standing Balance(1st 5 secs) Standing on one leg, timing commences at initial hip extension	Unable Able, but requires use of arms for support Able without arm support	=0 =1 =2	
7. Standing balance :30seconds 1st attempt do not use arm support, if unable, may use arm support on 2nd attempt	Unable Able, but requires use of arms for support Able without arm support	=0 =1 =2	
8. (Amypro only)			
9. Standing balance: standing reach Reach forward and grasp the ruler 26cm beyond preferred arm midline to the sternum or against a wall	Unable Able, but requires use of arms for support Able without arm support	=0 =1 =2	
10. Standing balance: nudge test Standing on one leg, tester gently pushes on subjects sternum with palm of hand 3 times (ONLY if safe to do so)	Begins to fall, needs catching catches self using arms for support Steady, toes come up for equilibrium reaction	=0 =1 =2	
11. Standing balance: eyes closed 30sec.	Unsteady or uses arm support Steady without arm support	=0 =1	
12. Standing balance: picking object off the floor Object is placed 30cm in front of patient, midline	Unable Able, but requires use of arms for support Able without arm support	=0 =1 =2	
13. Stand to sit Patient is asked to sit in chair with arms crossed over chest. If unable, allow use of hands	Unable, or falls into chair Able, but uses arms for support Able, without use of arms	=0 =1 =2	
14. Initiation of gait Patient is asked to hop with an aid and observed for hesitancy	Any hesitancy or multiple attempts to start No hesitancy	=0 =1	
15. Hopping 8 meters a) Step length b) Foot clearance (discourage deviations incl. Circumduction, foot sliding or shuffling	a) Does not advances 30cm on each hop Advances minimum of 30cm each hop b) Unable to clear foot without deviations Clears foot on every step	=0 =1 =0 =1	
16. Step continuity	Stopping or discontinuity between hops Hops appear continuous	=0 =1	
17. Turning 180° turn to sit in chair	Unable to turn without physical assistance No assistance, 4 or more hops to turn No assistance, 3 or less hops to turn	=0 =1 =2	
18. Variable cadence Patient is asked to hop 4 meters, and repeat a total of 4 times. Speeds are to vary from slow, fast, fast and then slow (ONLY if safe to do so)	Unable to vary cadence Able to vary cadence, but asymmetrical step lengths used or balance compromised Able without asymmetry or balance compromise	=0 =1 =2	

Fig. 20.11 Items of the Amputee Mobility Predictor scale. (Modified from Gailey RS, Roach KE, Applegate EB, et al. The amputee mobility predictor: an instrument to assess determinants of the lower limb amputee's ability to ambulate. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83(5):613–627.)

prosthesis. The AMP has two subcategories: Amputee Mobility Predictor with prosthesis (AMPPRO) and Amputee Mobility Predictor without prosthesis (AMPnoPRO). The scores on the AMPPRO range from 0 to 42 (47 if assistive device is included) and on the AMPnoPRO from 0 to 38 (43 if assistive device is included). Higher scores indicate better mobility.[168,169,172] Because the AMP is used for persons with unilateral limb amputation, the AMP-Bilateral (AMP-B) was created. The AMP-B has been shown to predict mobility and functional capabilities of service members with bilateral lower limb loss and is correlated with the 6-Minute Walk Test.[173] AMP-B scores range from 0 to 47, and it is based on modifications to the original AMP scoring.[173] A self-reported mobility scale, the Prosthetic Limb Users Survey of Mobility (PLUS-M) has been shown to have good construct validity among people with lower limb amputation and may be related to AMP scores and TUG test times.[174] For those individuals with high levels of mobility, the Comprehensive High-Level Activity Mobility Predictor (CHAMP) has been shown to correlate with the 6-Minute Walk Test for service members with lower-limb loss.[175,176]

Assessing Posture, Ergonomics, and Body Mechanics

In the assessment of symmetry of alignment in sitting and standing, the physical therapist must differentiate habitual or preferred postures from fixed postures, malalignments, and deformities.[177] This might be accomplished by noting whether a particular postural orientation is maintained during different functional activities, as well as whether the individual with new amputation can change position or alignment when so directed. Quantitative measures to document abnormalities in posture and alignment include comparison with vertical and horizontal using plumb line and grids, goniometry and angle assessment, and passive movement.

Given the typical age group of persons with dysvascular-neuropathic etiology of amputation, there may be kyphosis associated with osteoporosis, especially if there is history of pathologic compression fractures of the spine.[177] Assessing the health and function of the lumbar spine in standing and during reaching and lifting activity (including excursion of hamstrings and flexibility of hip flexors and adductors) is important because of the likelihood of developing low back pain with the use of a prosthesis if there is contracture. This is especially true for individuals with a transfemoral or any bilateral amputation level.[178] Considering back health early in the preprosthetic program is a health promotion/wellness activity that is a worthwhile investment in time and effort. Over time, persons with amputation are likely to develop osteopenia or osteoporosis of the residual limb; those with transfemoral amputation may be at increased risk of pathologic hip fracture as they age.[179,180]

Table 20.4 Dimensions of the Functional Independence Measure

Self-Care Subscale (8–56 points)	1. Eating 2. Grooming 3. Bathing 4. Dressing the upper body 5. Dressing the lower body 6. Toileting 7. Bladder management 8. Bowel management
Mobility Subscale (5–35 points)	9. Transfers: bed to chair or wheelchair 10. Transfers: to and from toilet 11. Transfers: in and out of bathtub or shower 12. Locomotion: walking or wheelchair propulsion 13. Stairs
Cognition Subscale (5–35 points)	14. Communication: comprehension (auditory and visual) 15. Communication: expression (verbal and nonverbal) 16. Social interaction 17. Problem solving 18. Memory
Total FIM Score	**Range 18–126 points**

NOTE: The Functional Independence Measure (FIM) is a proprietary measurement tool of the Uniform Data System for Medical Rehabilitation (270 Northpointe Parkway, Suite 300, Amherst, NY 14228, www.info@udsmr.org). Readers are encouraged to contact the UDSMR for detailed information about administering, scoring, and interpreting the tool.

Assessing Self-Care and Environmental Barriers

In the acute care setting and in many acute rehabilitation centers, the Functional Independence Measure (FIM) is commonly used to determine how much assistance an individual with new amputation requires for self-care, toileting, transfers, and locomotion and with cognition-related aspects of task performance (Table 20.4).[181,182] Each item on the FIM is rated between 1 (complete dependence) and 7 (complete independence); possible FIM scores range between 18 and 126 points, with low scores indicating that greater assistance is required. Because the FIM was designed to measure burden of care in hospital settings, many of the criteria used to indicate independence for mobility items do not necessarily represent level of function required for community living. In the early postoperative, preprosthetic period, use of the FIM is appropriate; later during preprosthetic care or during prosthetic care, there is likely to be a ceiling effect that makes it less sensitive to change in functional status.[183,184] FIM scores may not be particularly useful as indicators of improvement once an individual has reached relative modified independence, especially on the locomotion and mobility subscales.[172]

Whether using the FIM or other measures of function, the individual's ability to transfer to and from the toilet, in and out of the shower or bathtub, and in and out of a car, bus, or subway; to manage stairs, elevators and escalators; and to get up from the floor (in case of a fall) should be examined as the preprosthetic period advances. This is part of the assessment of readiness to return to the home environment or determine the need for continued rehabilitation. The rehabilitation team must also consider the individual's ability to dress, perform self-care and grooming activities, inspect his or her residual and remaining limbs, and function in typical food preparation roles and other instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs). A brief, preprosthetic instruction in activity of daily living (ADL) performance should be incorporated in the rehabilitation plan.[184]

The team assesses the family caregiver's ability to provide appropriate and effective assistance at home if the individual needs help or guarding during functional activities. Discussion about what work and leisure activities are important for the individual to resume once home will guide selection of appropriate adaptive equipment and adaptive movement strategies necessary to carry out important tasks and roles before receiving the prosthesis.

Finally, information about the accessibility of the person's living environment must be gathered to determine whether it is feasible to return home to function on a single limb during the preprosthetic period. The therapist may ask family members to measure doorway widths, determine whether there is adequate space for maneuvering a wheelchair, and consider the need for installation of ramps to make entering/exiting the home both less effortful and safer. Readers are referred to Cameron and Monroe (2007) for more information.[184a]

Monitoring for Postoperative Complications

Many individuals undergoing amputation, whether related to an infected diabetic foot wound, peripheral vascular disease, or traumatic injury, carry a high comorbid burden of illness. Physical therapists must be aware of potentially life-threatening and rehabilitation-delaying complications in the postoperative, preprosthetic period. In-hospital mortality following amputation is estimated to be from 4% to 20%.[185–187] Predictors of mortality during this vulnerable time include significant renal disease, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and CHF, previous MI or ischemic stroke, liver dysfunction, and an age of 75 years or older.[184–187] Transfemoral amputation and older age were found to have a higher proportion of early postoperative mortality.[187] Patients who require blood transfusion during or following surgery tend to have both more postoperative complications and a greater risk of mortality.[188]

There is high risk of morbidity during the immediate postoperative period as well. The stress of surgery may contribute to problematic hyperglycemia and need for insulin in persons with diabetes, even those who had not previously required insulin.[189] Cardiac complications for persons with diabetes, PAD, and coronary artery disease in the postoperative period include arrhythmia (with associated risk of cerebral embolism), exacerbation of CHF, and new MI or stroke.[185,186,190–192] Bed rest and inactivity are associated with risk of deep venous thrombosis and associated pulmonary embolism, risk of developing pneumonia, and risk of developing decubitus (pressure) ulcer on the heel of the intact limb or sacrum.[193,194] Placement of catheter for collection of urine increases risk of urinary tract infection.[195] Infection of the surgical wound has been reported to be between 10% and 26% in dysvascular disease and 34% in those with amputation as a consequence of trauma.[194,196,197] Pneumonia, urinary tract infection, or infection of the wound may contribute to development of sepsis and eventual multisystem organ failure.[198,199]

Case Example 20.1a **An 89-Year-Old Woman Facing "Elective" Transtibial Amputation for Severe Arterial Occlusive Disease of Her Right Foot**

N. H. is a slight but energetic woman who is referred to your interdisciplinary team for preoperative examination and education about the rehabilitation program she will be involved in after her planned transtibial amputation. She stands 5 feet 2 inches tall with slight kyphosis and weighs 101 lb. She rises to standing by scooting to the edge of her wheelchair (used for community mobility), then rocking back and forth several times to build momentum. She tells you that she spends her days reading the *New York Times*, writing to grandchildren and the few long-term friends still alive, cooking (with help to assemble ingredients and take things in and out of the oven), and talking to other "shut ins" from her church on the phone. N. H. lives in the home of her youngest son, a 67-year-old who has recently undergone quadruple coronary artery bypass grafting and is recovering from an embolic stroke that left him with mild left hemiparesis. Grandchildren and great-grandchildren visit fairly often. According to her chart, N. H. has hypertension controlled by β-blockers, had a mild MI 15 years ago, has never smoked cigarettes, and enjoys a glass of wine with her evening meal. She had lens implants for cataracts bilaterally but still wears glasses to read. Over the past year, claudication has become an increasing problem, making it uncomfortable for her to walk from her bedroom at one end of the ranch-style home to the kitchen and family room at the other. When presented with the choice of revascularization versus amputation, she decided that, in the long run, she would rather take her chances with amputation surgery with spinal anesthesia than bypass graft with general anesthesia. She expresses concern that she is "very out of shape" because her walking has been so limited by ischemic pain. She has a good friend whose husband used a transtibial prosthesis for many years after losing his foot in a lawnmower accident; this has assured her that a prosthesis will allow her adequate mobility and function once she heals after surgery. She tells you she has come through many difficult times during her long life, and, although sad at the prospect of losing her leg, she looks forward to being free of claudication pain and anticipates she will muster the determination necessary to get back on her feet.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What additional data might you want to gather from the medical record to build your understanding of her current condition and medical prognosis?
- What are the most important questions to ask during your interview with N. H. and her son as you begin to formulate her PT diagnosis and plan of care?
- Given her age and general health status, what additional review of physiologic systems would be important to carry out before surgery? Why have you chosen these systems? How might they affect her ability to participate in rehabilitation?
- What specific tests and measures, at an impairment level, will be important to do during your physical examination? How long do you think the assessment might take? How might you prioritize if your time with N. H. is limited? How reliable are the strategies that you have chosen? How precise does the information you are collecting at this preoperative visit need to be?
- What functional activities would you choose to assess before her surgery? What tests and measures will you use to document her functional status?
- What information would be important for you to share with N. H. and her son about the first few days after her surgery? Before discharge from acute care? During the preprosthetic period until she is ready to be casted for her initial prosthesis?
- Given the limited information currently available to you, what impression or expectations do you have about her postoperative care? How might this be different if she had a medical diagnosis of type 2 diabetes?

Case Example 20.2a **A 25-Year-Old Man With Bilateral Traumatic Transtibial Amputations Sustained in a Construction Accident**

P. G. is a construction worker who was pinned between the fenders of two vans when the driver of one van put the vehicle in reverse as P. G. was walking between them. He sustained severely comminuted and open fractures of the mid tibia and fibula and significant damage to soft tissue and neurovascular structures. Tourniquets were placed on his limbs by emergency medical technicians responding to the 911 call. In the emergency department, trauma surgeons determined that neither of P. G.'s limbs met criteria for limb salvage. Because the limbs were contaminated by dirt and debris from the job site, the surgeon performed bilateral open transtibial amputations to allow for frequent wound inspection. P. G. was placed on intravenous antibiotics. Three days after the operation, there is no sign of infection in either limb. Revision and closure of his residual limbs is scheduled for tomorrow, using an equal anterior and posterior flaps closure, leaving approximately 5 inches of residual tibia in length. Adjustable polypropylene, removable semirigid dressings (SRDs) are planned for compression and protection of the wound postoperatively.

Review of the medical record indicates that P. G. was in generally good health before his injury, although he has been a pack-per-day smoker since the beginning of high school. He was 6 feet 4 inches tall, weighing 210 lb before his injury. His only previous hospitalization was at age 17, for open-reduction, internal fixation of a midshaft right femoral fracture sustained in a motorcycle accident. P. G. has been married for slightly more than 1 year, and his wife is 7 months pregnant. They live on the third floor of a three-family home in the ethnic city neighborhood in which they grew up. Extended family members have kept vigil at the hospital since the accident to support P. G. and his wife. When not working, P. G. is an avid motorcycle and quad rider, competing locally in both speed and distance events. He also participates in an intracity adult basketball league.

Pain management has been via a morphine pump; even with this, P. G. reports typical pain levels of 5 to 6 out of 10, increasing in severity during dressing changes. When you come to discuss his postoperative rehabilitation with him, he is in a semireclined position in bed, with both lower limbs abducted and externally rotated at the hip, resting in apparent 20 degrees of knee flexion. He is anxious and quite angry over the situation, stating that he "can't believe this has happened" and "doesn't want to end up in a wheelchair" unable to work. The only experience he has with persons with amputation is an uncle with poorly controlled diabetes who had successive amputations of multiple toes as a consequence of vascular insufficiency, subsequently revised to transmetatarsal because of osteomyelitis of a neuropathic wound, and then to transtibial because of delayed healing. P. G.'s uncle's rehabilitation was complicated by a significant stroke a week after transtibial amputation, and, although he wears a prosthesis, his mobility limitations keep him homebound.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What additional data might you want to gather from the medical record to build your understanding of P. G.'s current condition and medical prognosis?
- What are the most important questions to ask during your interview with P. G. and his family as you begin to formulate his PT diagnosis and plan of care?
- What additional review of physiologic systems would be important to carry out before surgery? Why have you chosen these systems? How might they affect his ability to participate in rehabilitation?
- What specific tests and measures, at an impairment level, will be important to do during your physical examination? How long do you think the assessment might take? How might you prioritize if your time with P. G. is limited? How reliable are the strategies that you have chosen? How precise does the information you are collecting at this preoperative visit need to be?
- What functional activities would you choose to assess before his surgery? What tests and measures will you use to document his functional status?
- What information would be important for you to share with P. G. and his family about the first few days after the next surgery? Before discharge from acute care? During the preprosthetic period until he is ready to be casted for his initial prostheses?
- Given the limited information currently available to you, what impression or expectations do you have about his postoperative care? How might P. G.'s care be similar to or different from that of his uncle and the older woman in the previous case?

Process of Evaluation, Diagnosis, and Prognosis

Understanding an individual's rehabilitation needs emerges as baseline data are collected and integrated with health professionals' clinical expertise and judgment, as well as evidence from the clinical research literature. As part of the evaluative process, the team weighs factors that are likely to influence the rehabilitation program and begins to formulate a plan of care to address the individual's specific needs. The team identifies key problems that will need to be addressed, formulates a PT (rehabilitation) movement dysfunction diagnosis, estimates the level of function that will likely be reached and the time and intensity of intervention necessary to reach it, specifies measurable goals that will be used to judge progression over time, and prioritizes interventions to be carried out as part of the rehabilitation program. Readers are referred to the *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice* to review for details about the patient-client management process and the practice patterns applicable to PT care of persons with recent amputation (http://www.apta.org/Guide/) (Box 20.3).

PHYSICAL THERAPY DIAGNOSIS

The PT diagnosis reflects the problems with body structure and function (impairments) and activity (functional limitations) that the person with recent amputation encounters as a consequence of their surgery and current health status.

Box 20.3 Guide to Physical Therapist Practice Patterns Relevant for Individuals With Amputation

Musculoskeletal System

Impaired motor function, muscle performance, range of motion, gait, locomotion, and balance associated with amputation

Neuromuscular System

Impaired motor function and sensory integrity associated with acute or chronic polyneuropathies

Cardiovascular/Cardiopulmonary System

Primary prevention/risk reduction for cardiovascular/pulmonary disorders or
Impaired aerobic capacity/endurance associated with deconditioning

Integumentary System

Primary prevention/risk reduction for integumentary disorders
Impaired integumentary integrity associated with skin involvement extending into fascia, muscle, or bone and scar formation

The PT diagnosis differs from the medical diagnosis in that it focuses on the functional consequences of a condition at the level of the system and, more importantly, at the level of the whole person.[7]

The models used to frame the rehabilitation process have evolved from the process of disablement[200] to a focus on enablement, based on the World Health Organization (WHO) International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF).[201–203] The models provide a way of organizing information collected in the patient-client interview and examination process, to facilitate development of a PT movement diagnosis, prognosis and goals, and plan of care. For students and new therapists, it may be helpful to complete an organizational table on the basis of the ICF model that lists all relevant descriptors of active disease/comorbidity, the impairments and resources of body structures and function, and the activity and participation level issues that need to be addressed during the episode of care (Table 20.5). The entries in each column in the table can be prioritized, with notations about which issues are likely to improve or change and which will require adaptive equipment or alternative strategies. The statement of PT diagnosis for the particular individual begins with a prioritized list of activities to be addressed during the episode of care, followed by the contributing impairments of body systems and structures related to or resulting from the individual's constellation of active pathologic conditions and comorbidities. Formulating the PT diagnosis in this way clearly guides establishment of goals and appropriate interventions.

PLAN OF CARE: PROGNOSIS

Forecasting the length of the proposed episode of PT care and the potential for prosthetic replacement and rehabilitation can be challenging. Decisions must be informed by several factors:

1. The overall health, cognitive, and preamputation functional status of the individual;
2. The level of amputation as it affects prosthetic control and the energy cost of walking;
3. The likely contribution of prosthetic use to perform basic and IADLs for the individual or for the caregivers who will be assisting and managing daily function;
4. The resources (financial and instrumental) available to the individual during the entire rehabilitation process; and
5. Knowledge of typical length of stay for patients with amputation in the setting in which care if being provided (acute care, inpatient rehabilitation, subacute care, home care, or outpatient care).

The premorbid factors that tend to predict successful prosthetic use (i.e., rehabilitation potential) include the ability to walk functional distance in the months prior to surgery, overall level of physical fitness, requiring little assistance in ADLs, and the ability to maintain single limb stance without assistance.[204] Persons of advanced age often require a longer period of rehabilitation but eventually become functional prosthetic users. Delayed wound healing (which delays prosthetic fitting), as well as knee and hip flexion contracture, reduce the likelihood of successful prosthetic use.[205] A long list of past or chronic illnesses does not predict poor rehabilitation potential: Approximately 75% of persons with amputation are able to return to independent living, managing multiple chronic conditions effectively to become highly functional prosthetic users.[206] Premorbid health conditions that make prosthetic use less likely (odds ratio > 2.0) include moderate to severe dementia, end-stage renal disease, and advanced coronary artery disease.[207] Persons with very low body mass (underweight) may have more difficulty with prosthetic ambulation and functional independence than those who are overweight and obese, given a similar comorbid burden of illness.[206] Hip extensor strength is a powerful contributor to overall function with a prosthesis for persons with both transtibial and transfemoral amputation.[208] Difficulty learning has more of an impact during the postoperative and preprosthetic period than does depression or anxiety.[209] The sooner an individual is fit for a prosthesis and begins rehabilitation following amputation, the more likely the individual will become a functional prosthetic user.[210]

Long-term outcome of function and survivorship following amputation is more difficult to forecast: The relatively high morbidity and mortality for patients with amputation secondary to vascular disease have been well documented.[211–213] Unless there is clear evidence that ambulation will not be possible and that provision of prosthesis will not improve the patient's mobility (e.g., reducing the amount of assistance that is necessary to transfer), prosthetic replacement should and must be considered.

A key component of prognosis is delineation of the frequency, intensity, and duration of the episode of care. In the acute care setting, hospitalization for an uncomplicated amputation may be 4 to 7 days and PT may occur for 30 to 45 minutes, once or twice daily. For frail or chronically ill older adults coping with multiple comorbidities, length of stay often increases to 21 or more days. For individuals with amputation as a result of trauma affecting multiple systems, the period of hospitalization

Table 20.5 Application of the WHO International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF) Model, Completed Postoperatively, for Case Example 20.1a: N. H., an 89-Year-Old Woman, Following with Elective Transtibial Amputation Secondary to Severe Peripheral Arterial Disease

	Overall Health Status	Body Structure and Function (Physiological Systems)	Activity (Overall Functional Status)	Participation (Ability to Engage in Social Roles)	Buffers or Confounding Factors
Resources (preoperative)	Effective management of chronic conditions prior to surgery Intact cognitive status and effective executive function preoperatively Self-rated health "good" other than claudication	Effective vision and hearing Effective communication Highly motivated: determined to eventually return to own home	Previous use of walker and wheelchair Able to ambulate independently with assistive device functional (in home) distances Self-selected walking speed 0.85 m/s preoperatively Independent in self-care (toileting, bathing with tub seat and handheld shower, dressing) Independent in stair management, step up to step pattern, with rail	Active and engaged in community (church) Able to manage food preparation and cleanup with minimal assistance	Knowledge of successful prosthetic use by friend Understanding of the rehabilitation process: previous participation in cardiac rehabilitation Lives in one-story home, with ramp at entry Significant emotional and instrumental support available by a number of family caregivers
Active problems (examination findings)	Medical diagnosis: Peripheral arterial disease with critical limb ischemia Status post right transtibial amputation, posterior flap (2/15/12) Removable rigid dressing 2″ square ecchymosis suture line Moderate amount of serosanguineous drainage at mid suture line Postoperative pain (morphine pump) Comorbid conditions Hypertension (β-blockers) Status post MI (1997) Cataract (lens implants 6/12/07) Recent fall in hospital bathroom (2/17/12) Mild postoperative delirium with sundown syndrome Stress incontinence Possible osteoporosis Possible sarcopenia	Postoperative pain (4/10 VAS) Phantom sensation (cramping) Potential for delayed healing because of injury to surgical site sustained in fall Postoperative edema Limited excursion right knee flexion and hip extension ROM Less than 3/5 muscle strength right knee extension, hip abduction, hip extension Diminished functional core and upper extremity muscle strength Limited muscular endurance Limited cardiovascular endurance Limited short-term memory and distractibility (MMSE preoperation 28/30, postoperation 18/30) Hypersensitivity to touch and pressure bordering suture line Inadequate protective sensation left forefoot Impaired postural control in single limb support (static and dynamic)	Difficulty with transitions Effortful but functional rolling side to side Minimal assistance to shift upward in bed (difficulty sustaining "bridge" position) Minimal assistance supine to/from sitting with directional cueing Moderate assistance sit to stand, with directional cueing Maximal assistance stand to sit with poor eccentric control upper extremity and left lower extremity Inability to ambulate functionally Moderate assist of 1, hop-to pattern in parallel bars, requires consistent cueing Step length 6 inches, perceived exertion 7/10, distance 10 ft Diminished exercise and activity tolerance Difficulty with toileting, dressing, and other self-care activities Quickly becomes frustrated and agitated when encounters difficulty with mobility and self-care tasks Possible difficulty with carryover of new learning from session to session until delirium clears Difficulty self-monitoring status of residual limb and remaining limb	Inability to function in typical premorbid roles in interactions with family at home Inability to function in premorbid roles in interactions with members of her communities (church, friends, extended family)	Left lower extremity claudication may limit activity

Physical Therapy Diagnosis: N. H. has difficulty with functional activity (mobility and transfers, ambulation, and self-care activities) secondary to postoperative dysfunction of body structure and systems (transient cognitive impairment, pain, impaired muscle strength and motor control, diminished endurance, limited range of motion of at key lower extremity joints, impaired postural control) related to recent transtibial amputation, postoperative delirium, and various comorbidities. *MI*, Myocardial infarction; *MMSE*, Mini Mental Status Exam; *ROM*, range of motion; *VAS*, visual analog scale.

depends on the severity of damage across all systems, so that duration of care may be longer. Postacute care occurs in inpatient rehabilitation settings (approximately 55%), subacute rehabilitation settings (approximately 21%), or by discharge to home with referral for in-home nursing and rehabilitation services (approximately 24%).[214] Discharge location is determined by overall health status and need for care, availability and capacity of family caregivers, the type of rehabilitation settings or care that is available in the area, and insurance and financial considerations. In subacute settings, for those on Medicare, the rehabilitation stay may be for a month or more, and care is much more intense, with PT typically occurring twice daily with an hour or more of PT and occupational therapy planned each day. Care provided at home and in outpatient settings may be somewhat less intense, occurring three times a week for an hour or more but is certainly supplemented by an active home program.

PLAN OF CARE: DETERMINING APPROPRIATE GOALS

Goals to be achieved during a particular episode of care are influenced by the setting in which care is provided. Although the overall goal of the preprosthetic period is to prepare the individual for prosthetic fitting and training, the specific goals of the acute care setting may be to achieve primary wound closure, initiate an effective strategy for compression, and achieve supervision or minimal assist in transfers and in locomotion using a wheelchair or ambulatory device on level surfaces during the days or week that the person is hospitalized. In subsequent subacute, home care, and outpatient settings, goals expand to include strengthening of core and key muscle groups; ensuring adequate ROM for prosthetic use; improving cardiovascular fitness; and achieving more advanced ADLs, IADLs, and mobility skills over a longer period of intervention.[215] An effective goal is directly linked to the impairments and

Case Example 20.2b **Determining a Physical Therapy Diagnosis for P. G. Following Revision of Bilateral Transtibial Amputations**

- You have collected the following information in your chart review, interview, and brief initial examination:
- *Surgery:* Underwent revision and closure of bilateral open amputation 2 days ago (under general anesthesia) with equal anterior and posterior flaps closures; 5.25-inch residual tibia on left, 4.75-inch residual tibia on right. Placed in bulky dressing and Ace wrap for compression, then into bilateral adjustable prefabricated semirigid dressings to hold knees in full extension and protect surgical construct. Moderate serosanguineous drainage noted at first dressing change. Wound edges slightly inflamed consistent with operative trauma. No dehiscence noted. Proximal circumference at joint line 10.25 inches bilaterally, distal circumference (4 inches below) of right residual limb 11.25 inches and of left residual limb 11 inches.
- *Postoperative health:* Elevated temperature postoperatively, with diminished breath sounds in posterior bases of lungs bilaterally. Radiograph suggests early pneumonia. Cough nonproductive.
- *Cognition/affect:* Signs of agitation and distress in recovery room, being mildly sedated for combination of pain relief and calming. Currently lethargic and somewhat distractible, requiring consistent cueing to stay on task during examination.
- *Pain/phantom sensation:* Reports postoperative pain at 7 out of 10 level. Complains of shooting pains in phantom right lower extremity and is distressed by "itchy" toes on phantom left lower extremity. Currently intravenous narcotics every 3 hours for pain management.
- *ROM/muscle length:* Reports "pulling" behind knees when head of bed elevated into long sitting position. Requests time out of semirigid dressing to allow knee flexion and to be more comfortable.
- *Muscle performance/motor control:* Able to actively extend both knees to approximately 10 degrees from full extension; stops because of "pulling" behind knee.
- *Upper extremity function and transfers:* Able to "push up" to lift body weight when assisted to bedside chair, requiring contact guard/minimal assist, using a sliding board to transfer.
- *Aerobic capacity/endurance:* Reports transfer effort 6 out of 10 on perceived exertion scale. Reports dyspnea 5 out of 10 immediately following transfer.
- *Rolls independently:* Able to come to sitting from side-lying with minimal assistance.
- *Postural control:* Maintained static sitting balance on edge of bed 2 minutes. Able to reach forward 7 inches, sideward more than 10 inches bilaterally, reluctant to turn and reach behind because of discomfort. Effective postural responses to mild perturbations forward and backward, moderate perturbations sideways.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- List all of the active pathologic conditions and comorbidities that will influence P. G.'s postoperative/preprosthetic care.
- List and prioritize the impairments, across physiologic systems and from a psychological perspective, that should be directly addressed or considered in his rehabilitation plan of care.
- List and prioritize the functional limitations that will be addressed during his acute care stay. Suggest additional functional limitations that will be addressed as his rehabilitation progresses at home or at a subacute or rehabilitation facility.
- List and prioritize disabilities that P. G. is likely to be concerned about and that the rehabilitation team will be attempting to minimize over the course of his care.
- Develop a definitive PT diagnosis for P. G. on the basis of the disablement model.
- Develop a rehabilitation prognosis for P. G. and explain or justify your expectations.
- Develop a list of prioritized goals for P. G. for the next 2 weeks in the acute care hospital. Expand these goals as if care would continue after discharge in a rehabilitation center, at home, or on an outpatient basis. What will frequency, duration, and intensity of his rehabilitation sessions be? How will you judge if he is making progress toward achieving these goals?

Box 20.4 Acute Care Goals for Case Example 20.1a

N. H. is an 89-year-old woman with recent transtibial amputation secondary to peripheral arterial disease. By the conclusion of this episode of care (projected 4–5 days), N. H. will be able to do the following:

- Actively participate in inspection of her surgical wound during dressing changes and of her remaining limb.
- Describe and recognize signs of inflammation, dehiscence, ecchymosis, and infection along her incision site and of inflammation or developing neuropathic or vascular ulceration of her remaining extremity.
- Direct caregivers in the proper application of her compressive dressing and removal of her rigid dressing.
- Safely perform rolling and bridging activities, without assistance, for effective bed mobility with perceived exertion of no more than 3 out of 10.
- Demonstrate active contraction into full-knee extension in supine and seated positions.
- Demonstrate understanding of proper stretching and flexibility for knee extension and hip extension in multiple functional positions.
- Safely rise and return from sitting to standing position from a standard arm chair or wheelchair with minimal assistance and occasional verbal cues, with perceived exertion of 4 out of 10.
- Ambulate with contact guard and occasional cues, using a hop-to pattern using a standard walker for 25 feet, with a perceived exertion of 4 out of 10.
- Direct caregivers in assisting her with toilet transfers and clothing management during toileting and other self-care activities.

functional limitation identified in the PT diagnosis and is stated in measurable terms so that progression can be assessed as postoperative and preprosthetic care continues (Box 20.4).

Interventions for Persons With Recent Amputation

After amputation surgery the focus shifts to preparation for prosthetic use.[216] Strategies for control of edema, pain management, and facilitation of wound healing are implemented. The person with a new amputation and his or her caregivers receive instruction and the opportunity to practice single limb mobility with an appropriate assistive device. A recent study indicates that a majority of patients who undergo transtibial amputation due to diabetic complications report improved quality of life at least 1 year after the surgery.[217] This may be due to decreased pain and improved mobility compared with the previously nonfunctional lower extremity. For persons with dysvascular or diabetes-related amputation, the condition of the remaining foot must be carefully monitored as single limb mobility training begins.[215] Handling of the residual limb during dressing changes and skin inspection, as well as the consistent use of compression devices, helps to desensitize the residual limb, enhancing readiness for prosthetic use. Exercises to strengthen key muscle groups in the residual and remaining limb and to assist effective postural responses are implemented to assist function and prepare for prosthetic gait. Functional training in self-care and transfers begins in the acute care setting and is followed up in home care, subacute, or outpatient settings. The therapist may use a combination of manual therapy, therapeutic exercise, facilitation techniques, physical agents, and mechanical or electrotherapeutic modalities to help manage pain, assist healing, minimize risk of soft tissue contracture, and enhance mobility. A rigid dressing or temporary socket may be fabricated or adapted to protect the residual limb while it heals.

POSTOPERATIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT

In addition to reducing acute discomfort, effective postoperative pain management is key for several other reasons. Pain is a significant physiologic stressor that affects homeostasis and the patient's ability to concentrate and learn.[8,9,127] In the early postoperative period, persons with recent amputation are faced with learning how to care for their new residual limb, including monitoring for signs of infection, using strategies to control edema, and appropriate positioning to minimize the risk of contracture formation. They must also learn a variety of new motor skills including exercises to preserve strength and ROM and how to protect their healing suture while moving around with crutches or a walker on their remaining limb. If postoperative discomfort and pain are kept to a minimum, they can better learn and retain these new cognitive and motor skills. Similarly, preoperative anxiety and depression have been shown to influence pain intensity postoperatively, as well as chronic postamputation pain.[218] Health care professionals should be aware of these factors when designing a plan of care.

Pain can also be fatiguing and demoralizing; those with significant pain may be reluctant to participate fully in active rehabilitation programs because they fear that movement will only increase their pain. Individuals with significant pain may be erroneously labeled as unmotivated or uncooperative, when their primary goal is to find a way to escape their discomfort. Importantly, although certain types of pain medications (opioid and narcotic analgesics) are effective in providing relief, they may compromise cognitive function or increase the risk of postural hypotension.[57] Therapists must be aware of the actions and side effects of the pain medication being used.

In the days immediately after amputation the goal is to minimize the severity of acute postoperative pain. Because prevention is more effective than reduction of significant pain, those with recent amputations are encouraged to request pain medication before pain becomes severe.[58] Preoperative and intraoperative pain management also affects postoperative pain: In patients undergoing amputation due to vascular insufficiency who receive epidural analgesia before surgery, problematic phantom limb pain after amputation may be less likely to develop.[68,69] Effective management of postoperative edema is an important element in the control of postoperative pain as well.

DEALING WITH PHANTOM LIMB SENSATION AND PHANTOM PAIN

A variety of pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic interventions have been used for individuals with significant phantom limb sensation or pain, although management of phantom pain is often challenging and frustrating for all involved.[59,65,71,219–221] Table 20.6 summarizes the results of a recent Cochrane Review focused on efficacy of pharmacologic management of phantom limb pain.[222] Current best evidence is, at best, limited as a result of differences in study methodology and design, insufficient control groups, and acuity/chronicity of the pain. Readers are encouraged to follow developing evidence from future randomized controlled trials of pharmacologic agents in the management of phantom limb pain. One strategy designed to impact development of phantom limb pain in the postoperative period is continuous analgesic infusion to control the severity of phantom limb pain in the immediate postoperative period; the success of this intervention varies with pharmacologic agents and the rate of their administration.[69,70,223] Pulse radiofrequency ablation[224] and botulinum toxin type A injection[225] are being investigated as possible interventions for severe longstanding phantom limb pain that has not been responsive to more conservative approaches. Sympathetic blocks appear to reduce pain intensity over the short term (up to 1 week) but not over the long term (up to 8 weeks).[226] Implantation of spinal cord stimulators has been explored for persons with severe, intractable phantom limb pain; however, results appear to be equivocal and complications of the implantation worrisome.[227]

Physical Therapy for Postoperative and Phantom Pain

The success of early rehabilitation is influenced by the effectiveness of postoperative pain management; for this reason, physical therapists must be aware of medications being used and be involved in assessing the effectiveness of the pain management strategy and its impact on patient learning and function.[228] When epidural anesthesia has been used during surgery or in the immediate postoperative period, it is imperative that the patient's cognitive, autonomic, sensory, and motor function is carefully evaluated before transfer training and single limb mobility activities are begun. In whatever setting PT care is provided, it is important that administration of medications be timed so that pain control is optimal during PT activities. If the patient is experiencing phantom sensation or pain, the physical therapist plays an important role in educating the patient and family about these sensations. Noninvasive alternatives such as relaxation techniques, imagery, desensitization, hypnosis, therapeutic touch, or virtual reality activities may be effective adjuncts for pharmacologic interventions aimed at pain reduction.[229,230] Virtual reality and other simulation experiences are beginning to show promise in relief of phantom pain.[230,231]

Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) is an effective adjunct for pain management for patients with acute postsurgical pain.[232–234] TENS may also play a role in the management of troubling phantom sensation or pain in the immediate postoperative period; however, its efficacy in the prevention or management of phantom limb pain over time is not well supported in the clinical research

Table 20.6 Results of a Cochrane Review of Prescription Medications Used in the Management of Moderate to Severe Phantom Limb Pain and Their Side Effects

Medication	Class	Primary and Secondary Outcomes[a]	Adverse Effects Reported
Oral or IV morphine	Opioid	Short-term decrease in pain intensity Better sleep No impact on mood Satisfaction higher in oral versus IV	Sedation, fatigue, dizziness/vertigo, constipation, sweating, difficulty voiding, itching, respiratory depression
Ketamine or dextromethorphan	*N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonists	Short-term decrease in pain intensity Better sleep Better sense of well-being No impact on functional status	Sedation, hallucinations, loss of consciousness, hearing impairment, balance problems, insobriety
Gabapentin	Anticonvulsant	Trend toward short-term decrease in pain intensity No impact on mood No impact on functional status No impact on sleep	Somnolence, dizziness, headache, nausea
Amitriptyline	Tricyclic antidepressant	No impact on pain intensity No impact on mood No impact on functional status Negative impact on sleep	Dry mouth, drowsiness, blurred vision, dizziness, constipation, altered sleep, nausea/vomiting/diarrhea, tinnitus, urinary retention
Calcitonin infusion	Polypeptide hormone	Trend toward decreased intensity and frequency of phantom limb pain in persons with recent amputation	Facial flushing, nausea, sedation, dizziness
Lidocaine; bupivacaine	Anesthetics	No different than morphine	Stinging sensation at injection site

[a]Primary outcomes: change in phantom limb pain intensity; possible secondary outcomes: changes in mood (depression), functional status, quality of sleep, patient satisfaction with intervention, severity of adverse effects.

Adapted from Alviar MJ, Hale T, Dungca M. Pharmacologic interventions for treating phantom limb pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2011;(12):CD006380.

literature.[235–237] There is limited evidence for the use of TENS to reduce phantom limb pain using low-frequency and high-intensity settings, although more studies are needed.[221]

Additional PT interventions that have been used to manage on postoperative pain include mechanical stimulation (massage, vibration, percussion) and superficial heat (ultrasound, hot packs, cryotherapy) or cold; although there are clinical reports of short-term pain relief, there are few studies that have carefully evaluated their efficacy.[237] For any PT intervention in the postoperative/preprosthetic period, it is imperative to pay careful attention to the healing status of the wound: wound closure must not be compromised by any intervention that is aimed at reducing discomfort or pain.

Energy-based medicine therapies (e.g., mind-body connection approaches, therapeutic touch, eye-movement reprocessing and desensitization, and motor imagery) may be alternative approaches to the management of acute and chronic phantom limb pain, although there are few well-designed and well-controlled studies of their efficacy.[238,239] Mirror box therapy is being investigated as a strategy to minimize the development and severity of phantom pain after amputation.[221,240,241] This approach attempts to facilitate cortical reorganization by accessing the mirror motor and sensory neuron systems and prefrontal cortex in the brain.[242–244] In the most commonly used paradigm, persons with amputation attempted to move their "missing" limb while simultaneously moving and observing reflected image of the movement of the intact limb.[245] The degree of severity of phantom limb pain has been shown to positively correlate with the onset of relief, with the lowest levels of pain experiencing relief in the fewest number of sessions and the highest pain levels requiring the most amount of sessions before relief.[246] Although preliminary evidence suggests that mirror box therapy may be helpful,[221,245,247–249] more carefully designed and controlled studies are necessary before it can be widely adopted for clinical use. Mirror therapy is not without adverse effects: Some individuals experience dizziness and disorientation, sense irritation in their residual limb, or do not tolerate the intervention, especially if mirror therapy is concurrent with traditional prosthetic training.[250] Still, despite all of the various forms of treatment for phantom limb pain, there appears to be no first line treatment, indicating a need for further study.[251]

LIMB VOLUME, SHAPING, AND POSTOPERATIVE EDEMA

The management of postoperative edema is important for four reasons: Edema control strategies are essential components of pain control, enhance wound healing, protect the incision during functional activity, and assist preparation for prosthetic replacement by shaping and desensitizing the residual limb.[7] A variety of postsurgical dressing and edema control strategies are available. These include soft dressings with or without Ace wrap compression, SRDs, various removable rigid dressings (RRDs) applied over soft dressings, or the application of a rigid cast dressing in the operating room.[252,253] An IPOP or EPOP is a rigid dressing with an attachment for a pylon and prosthetic foot.[254,255] Pneumatic IPOP/EPOP options are also available for early ambulation. Each option contributes to pain control, wound healing and protection, and preparation for prosthetic use in a significantly different way. The choice of strategy is determined by the etiology and level of amputation, the condition of the skin, the medical and functional status of the patient, access to prosthetic consultation and care, the preference and experience of the surgeon, and established institutional protocol. Table 20.7 compares characteristics of the most commonly used postoperative/preprosthetic options.[252–254]

Soft Dressings and Compression

The traditional postoperative edema-control and wound-management strategy is a soft dressing with or without compression wrap. A nonadherent dressing is placed over the suture line, sterile absorbent gauze fluff is then placed over this, and one or more rolls of gauze is loosely overwrapped in figure-of-eight pattern around the residual limb. A compressive Ace bandage wrap may then be used in an effort to control some of the postsurgical edema. Although this method continues to be the most frequently used immediate postsurgical option for patients with transfemoral amputation or when significant wound drainage and a high risk of infection are present, soft dressings with Ace wraps are ineffective for limiting postoperative edema.[118,252,253] Soft dressings cannot protect a healing incision from bumps, bruising, or shearing during activity or from fall-related injury. The other practical disadvantage of elastic Ace bandage compression of the residual limb is the need for frequent reapplication: Movement during daily activities quickly loosens the bandages, compromising the effectiveness of the compression. Most rehabilitation professionals suggest that Ace bandages should be removed and reapplied every 4 to 6 hours and should never be kept in place for more than 12 hours without rebandaging.[256]

Effective application of an Ace wrap requires practice, manual dexterity, and attention to details if the desired distal-to-proximal pressure gradient is to be achieved (Figs. 20.12 and 20.13).[74,256,257] It may be difficult for patients with limited vision, arthritis of the hands and wrist, limited trunk mobility, or compromised postural control to master this technique for independence in control of edema. Nurses, residents, surgeons, therapists, prosthetists, and family members (and anyone else who may be taking down the soft dressing to care for the wound) must be consistent and effective in reapplication of the Ace bandage if maximal control of edema is to be achieved. Ineffectively applied elastic wraps can lead to a bulbous, poorly shaped residual limb, which is likely to delay prosthetic fitting.[257] Tight circumferential wrapping can significantly compromise blood flow, compromising healing of the incision and even leading to skin breakdown.[257]

Some patients with bulbous or pressure-sensitive residual limbs do not tolerate Ace wrap for compressions. An alternative to these patients, as well as for those with limited dexterity, is application of an elasticized stockinet or Tubigrip sock (Seton Health Care Group TLC, Oldham, England). Both materials are available with various levels of elasticity; minimal to significant compression can be achieved, depending on the patient's tolerance of pressure. The double-layer method starts with careful application of a long piece of elastic stockinet or Tubigrip over the transtibial

Table 20.7 Comparison of Various Postoperative Options for Management of New Transtibial Residual Limbs Following Amputation

	OUTCOMES							
Strategy	**Cost**	**Ease of Application**	**Wound Healing**	**Protection from Trauma**	**Degree of Postoperative Edema**	**Postoperative Pain**	**Knee Flexion Contracture Risk**	**Time to First Prosthetic Fitting**
Soft gauze dressing without Ace wrap	Inexpensive	Not difficult	Little impact on primary or secondary healing	None	Significant	Often severe	Very high	Prolonged
Soft gauze with Ace wrap	Inexpensive	Figure-of-eight wrap requires skill, frequent reapplication	Little impact on primary or secondary healing	None	Significant	Often severe	Very high	Prolonged
"Shrinker" garment	Low to moderate cost	Requires UE strength, dexterity	Used after primary healing has occurred	Minimal	Moderate	Somewhat less	Very high	Slightly shortened
Rigid dressing (above knee cast)	Low cost	Requires training; MD or CP	Reduces time to primary healing	Excellent	Minimal	Minimized	Extremely low	Shortened
RRD (below knee) Plaster/custom	Low to moderate cost	Requires training; PT or CP	Reduces time to primary healing	Very good	Minimal	Minimized	Moderate	Shortened
RRD Prefabricated (thigh level)	Moderate cost	CP custom fits	Reduces time to primary healing	Very good	Minimal if worn consistently	Minimized if worn consistently	Extremely low	Shortened
IPOP Rigid dressing Plaster/custom	Low to high cost	CP applies in the OR, or fabricates	Reduces time to primary healing if protected WtB only	Very good when worn, protected WtB only	Reduced if worn consistently	Minimized if worn consistently	Low if worn consistently	Shortened
IPOP: pneumatic	Moderate to high cost	PT uses as part of rehabilitation	Less evidence about impact on healing available	Very good when worn, protected WtB only	Reduced if shrinker worn between IPOP use	Depends on options in place between IPOP use	Moderate if not in thigh RRD between use	Shortened

CP, Certified prosthetist; *IPOP*, immediate postoperative prosthesis; *MD*, physician; *OR*, operating room; *PT*, physical therapist; *ROM*, range of motion; *RRD*, removable rigid dressing; *UE*, upper extremity; *WtB*, weight bearing.

Data from Nawijn SE, van der Linde H, Emmelot CH, Hofstad CJ. Stump management after transtibial amputation: a systematic review. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2005;29(1):13–26; Smith DG, McFarland LV, Sangeorzan BJ, et al. Addendum 1: post-operative dressing and management strategies for transtibial amputations: a critical review. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2004:16(S3):15–25; and Walsh TL. Custom removable immediate postoperative prosthesis. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2003;15(4):158–161.

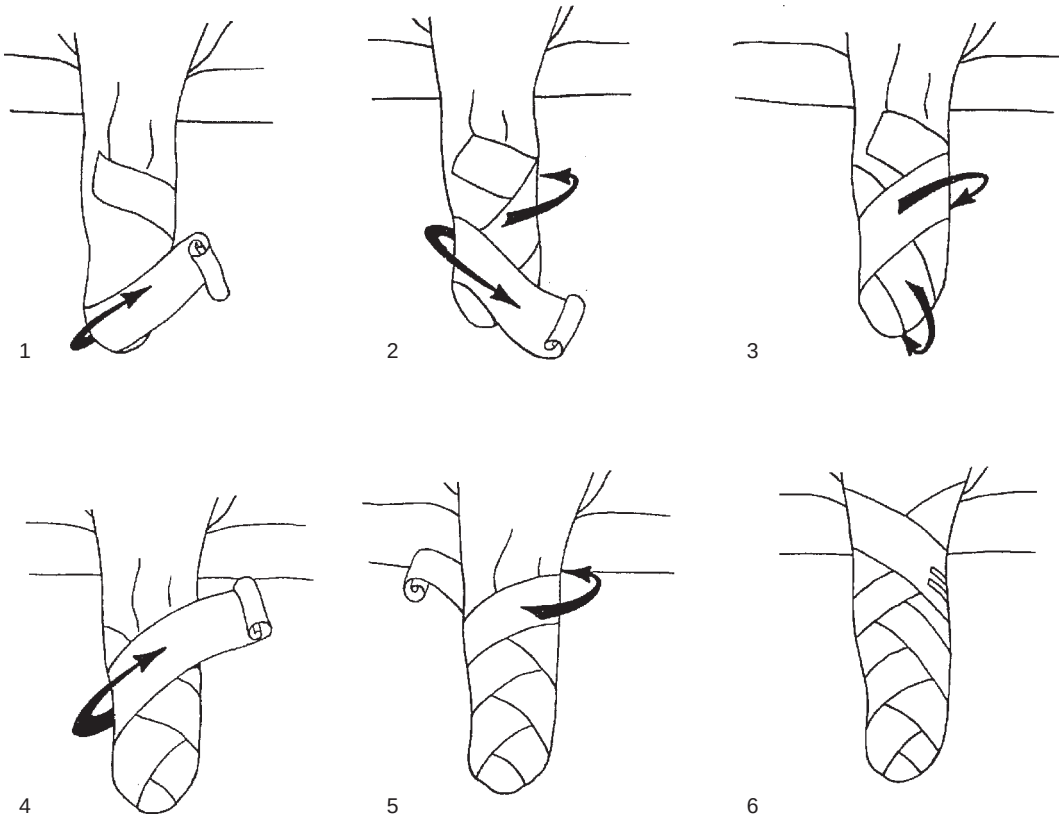


Fig. 20.12 The application of an effective Ace wrap to a transtibial residual limb uses successive diagonal figure-of-eight loops between the distal residual limb and thigh to create a distal-to-proximal pressure gradient. This creates a distal-to-proximal, tapering, cylindrical residual limb with minimal excess distal soft tissue. (Modified from Karacollof LA, Hammersley CS, Schneider FJ. *Lower Extremity Amputation*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen; 1992:16–17.)

residual limb to midthigh level (Fig. 20.14). The remaining length of elastic stockinet or Tubigrip is turned or twisted 180 degrees (to minimize pressure over the new incision) and rolled over the residual limb as a second layer of compression. As residual limb volume decreases and the limb becomes more pressure tolerant, a stockinet or Tubigrip with progressively narrower diameters is used to increase compressive forces and assist limb shrinkage and maturation. These materials are relatively inexpensive, but they are not as durable as commercially available elastic shrinker socks.

Pressure Garments: "Shrinkers"

Once the suture line has healed sufficiently, many prosthetists and therapists recommend the use of a commercially manufactured elasticized "shrinker" pressure garment whenever the prosthesis is not being worn (Fig. 20.15A and B).[90,257] These garments are designed to apply significant distal to proximal graded compressive force to the residual limb, and it may be difficult for individuals with limited manual dexterity or upper extremity strength to apply them. Patients with recent amputation must be careful to minimize or avoid excessive shear forces over the incision as the shrinker is being applied. Although shrinkers are effective for control of edema and limb volume, it is not possible to create "relief" for bony prominences or pressure-vulnerable areas on the residual limb. As with other soft dressings, commercial shrinkers cannot protect the residual limb from trauma during daily activities or in the event of a fall. It is not unusual for patients to continue to use a shrinker for limb volume control, whenever they are not wearing their prosthesis, for 6 months to a year after amputation.[90]

Although a number of edema control options are available for persons with transtibial amputation, those with transfemoral residual limbs have fewer strategies from which to choose. Commercially manufactured shrinkers are more convenient to don and are more likely to remain in place than the more cumbersome Ace wraps, but those who choose this option must be just as careful to capture all the soft tissue high in the groin within the shrinker to avoid the development of an adductor roll, redundant tissue that may make prosthetic fitting more challenging. Another alternative for those with transfemoral amputation is a custom-fit Jobst pressure garment. Jobst garments can be fabricated either as a half-pant or full pant garment; the full pant garment achieves a more consistent suspension and compression, especially for patients who are obese. A Jobst garment may be the only effective alternative for patients with short transfemoral amputation.

Because shrinkers, Tubigrip, and prosthetic socks worn over a healing residual limb are permeable, they absorb perspiration from the skin of the residual limb, as well as any drainage from the suture line. For this reason, they must

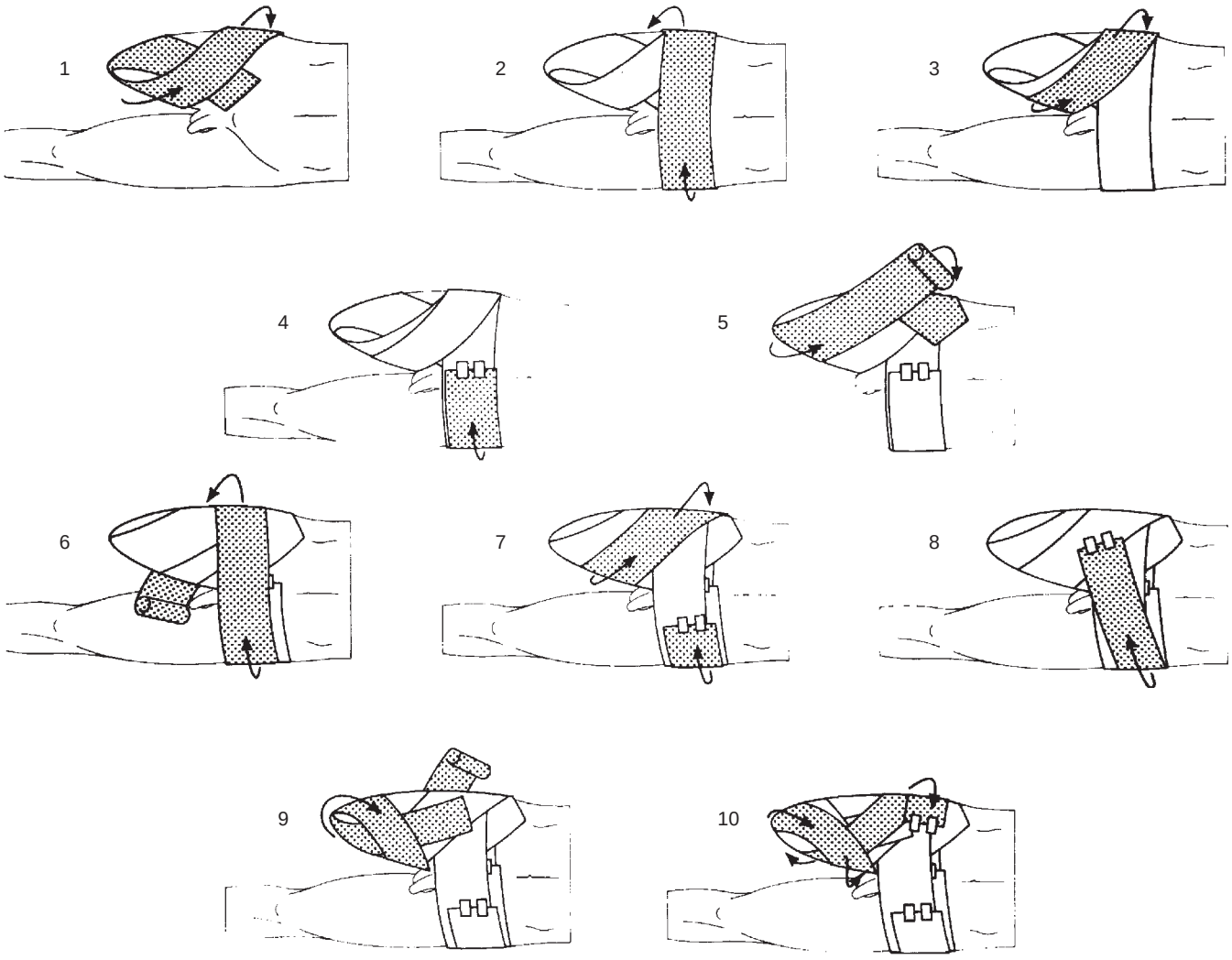


Fig. 20.13 The application of an effective Ace wrap to a transfemoral limb also strives to create a distal-to-proximal pressure gradient using a modified figure-of-eight pattern. For patients with transfemoral amputation, the wrap is anchored around the pelvis and applied to pull the hip toward hip extension and adduction. Note the importance of capturing soft tissue high in the groin within the Ace wrap to reduce the risk of developing an adductor roll of noncompressed soft tissue. (From May BJ. *Amputation and Prosthetics: A Case Study Approach*. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis; 1996:84.)

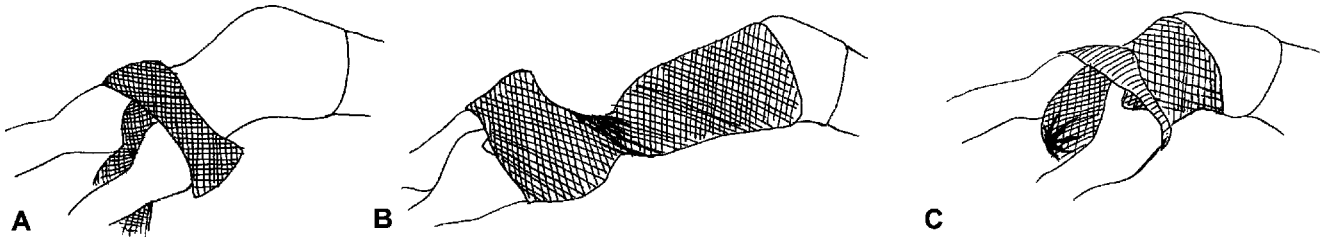


Fig. 20.14 One strategy to control edema and manage limb volume is to use a double layer of an elastic stockinet or Tubigrip to apply compressive forces to the limb. After the initial layer (A) has been smoothly applied, the stockinet is twisted closed (B) at the end of the limb and the excess is applied (C) as a second layer of compression.

be laundered daily in warm water and a mild soap. Cotton, wool, or elasticized materials do not tolerate the heat and turbulence of a clothes dryer; most prosthetists recommend that shrinkers and socks be smoothed out on a flat surface to dry. The person wearing the garment must have a sufficient number available to apply compression around the clock. In addition, sock changes are less frequent during the weekdays than on the weekends, and use of a daily "sock log"

Fig. 20.15 Examples of commercially available transfemoral (A) and transtibial shrinkers (B) used for edema control and shaping of the residual limb. (From www.juzo.com.)

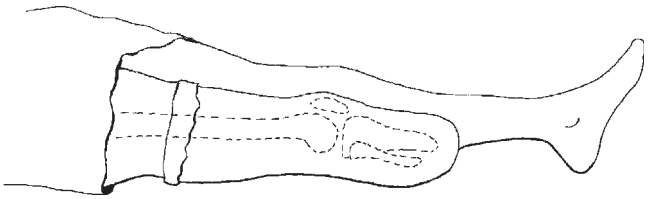


Fig. 20.16 A plaster or fiberglass cast, applied immediately after amputation in the operating room, is an effective method of edema control, protection of the residual limb, and prevention of knee flexion contracture.

may help to facilitate proper sock use for volume management and comfort.[258]

Nonremovable Rigid Dressings

Many surgeons opt to use a cylindrical plaster or fiberglass cast placed on the new transtibial residual limb in the operating room immediately after amputation (Fig. 20.16).[79,90,259,260] Rigid dressings accomplish three very important postoperative goals: (a) control of immediate postoperative edema (and subsequently, reduction of postoperative pain); (b) protection of the vulnerable newly sutured residual limb from inadvertent trauma during bed mobility, transfers, and single limb ambulation; and (c) prevention of postoperative knee flexion contracture. All three of these goals help to reduce time to initial prosthetic fitting.[98,259,261]

A rigid dressing is a simple postoperative cast applied in the same way as a cast that is used to immobilize a fracture of the proximal tibia or distal femur. The newly sutured surgical construct is dressed with gauze, and a cottonette or Tubigrip "sock" is pulled over the residual limb. A layer of cast padding is applied smoothly over the stockinette, and extra cushioning is placed to protect the patella and femoral condyles. The knee is placed in as close to a fully extended position as possible, and fast-drying plaster of Paris or fiberglass casting material is wrapped around the limb, at least to the level of upper thigh (2–4 inches below the perineum). The stockinette is then folded over the proximal edge of the newly applied cast and is incorporated into one or two addition wraps of casting material to finish the proximal border of the cast.

Modifications of the cast as it is setting or drying, such as molding it to fit closely over the supracondylar thigh, are used to aide suspension. A strip of webbing may be incorporated on the anterior surface for attachment to a waist belt to further aide to suspension. If the cast is to be used as the base for an IPOP (discussed in more detail later), the prosthetist modifies the cast as in a patellar tendon–bearing socket to ensure that weight-bearing forces are directed to pressure tolerant areas of the limb and that bony prominences and the suture line are well protected.

The initial rigid dressing stays in place on the residual limb for 2 to 5 days postoperatively (or more), depending on the patient's condition and the surgeon's preference.[90,98,252,253] When the cast is removed, the status of the wound is carefully inspected. If the wound is healing well, the physician may opt for reapplication of the cast for an additional period, which varies by protocol used, of between 5 and 21 days. If the status of the wound is questionable or risk of infection high, an alternative method of edema control that allows more frequent wound inspection and care must be used. Some physicians opt to replace a thigh-encasing rigid dressing with an RRD after the first cast is taken off, regardless of wound status.

Application of a rigid cast, especially if it is the base of an IPOP (discussed later) requires careful attention to anatomy and alignment, well-developed manual skills, and a clear understanding of prosthetic principles. A poorly applied or inadequately suspended rigid dressing can lead to skin abrasions or pressure-related ulcerations over bony prominences, delaying prosthetic fitting until wound healing occurs. Pistoning or rotation of the rigid dressing on the residual limb can apply distracting forces over the suture line, compromising healing and increasing the risk of ecchymosis or dehiscence.

A major criticism of thigh-level non-RRDs is that the cast prevents visual inspection and monitoring of the new surgical wound and limits access for wound care.[259] For this reason a non-RRD may not be appropriate for those with significant risk of infection, especially if wounds were potentially contaminated during traumatic injury. Wound status can be monitored only indirectly, using body temperature, WBC count, size and color of drainage stains on the cast, and patient reports of increasing discomfort and pain as indicators of a developing infection.

There are several strategies that physicians and prosthetists have to address to assess healing, while providing the protection and other benefits of non-RRD. One is to

Fig. 20.17 AmpuShield removable rigid dressing. (From Reichmann JP, Stevens PM, Rheinstein J, Kreulen CD. Removable rigid dressings for postoperative management of transtibial amputations: a review of published evidence. *PMR*. 2018;10(5):516–523. DOI: https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pmrj.2017.10.002.)

bivalve the cast so that it can be removed for short periods to allow wound care. Prefabricated rigid dressings, custom fit by the prosthetist to the individual with new amputation, are also available.[262]

Removable Rigid Dressings

The RRD is a "cap" cast worn over a soft or compressive dressing (Fig. 20.17).[263] This edema-control strategy effectively protects the healing residual limb and helps to limit the development of edema. RRDs are used in three circumstances. For some individuals managed with a non-RRD applied in the operating room, the next step in postoperative edema control may be fabrication of an RRD. For others the RRD is applied instead of a cylindrical cast in the operating room. The RRD can also be fabricated after surgery for those initially managed with soft dressings and elastic bandages. The physical therapist may be responsible for fabrication of the RRD, working in collaboration with the surgeon, surgical nurse, or prosthetist.

The RRD has been shown to be more beneficial than soft dressings for reducing limb edema, increasing healing time, limb contouring, reduced external limb trauma, and prevention of knee contractures.[264]

One of its major advantages, when compared with a cylindrical cast, is the ability to doff (remove) and don (apply) the RRD quickly and easily to monitor wound healing and provide daily wound care. Use of an RRD also assists residual limb shaping and shrinkage; patients who wear RRDs are often ready for prosthetic fitting more quickly than those managed with soft dressings or Ace wraps alone.[265,266] Because the RRD limits the development of edema, it is an important adjunct in the management of postsurgical pain. The protective cap limits shearing across the incision site as the person recovering from amputation surgery moves around in bed or during therapy; this soft tissue immobilization can assist wound healing.

The RRD is not as likely to become displaced or dislodged during activity when compared with Ace wrap compression. The ease of donning and doffing means that individuals with new amputation can quickly become responsible for this task component of caring for their residual limb. Because the RRD is removed and reapplied several times a day for wound care, the residual limb quickly becomes desensitized and tolerant of pressure, which assists transition to prosthetic wear. Fabrication and use of an RRD provide the opportunity to educate those new to prosthetic use about the fabrication of a preparatory prosthesis and the use of prosthetic socks to obtain and maintain socket fit.

The RRD is most appropriate for patients whose transtibial incision appears to be in the initial stages of healing. Although the wound may be inflamed secondary to the trauma of surgery, no signs of infection, significant ecchymosis, or large areas of wound dehiscence should be present. Those with substantial drainage from their surgical wound requiring bulky soft dressings and frequent dressing changes are not good candidates for RRD; it is difficult to accommodate distally placed bulky dressings within the RRD shell. Those with fluctuating edema secondary to CHF or dialysis can be managed with an RRD if it is fabricated when limb volume is high: Layering prosthetic sock ply over the limb before putting on the RRD accommodates for volume loss. The RRD works best if distal residual limb circumference is no more than ½ inch larger than its proximal circumference. Compressive dressings may be more appropriate for patients with extremely bulbous residual limbs.

The residual limb is prepared for casting by first placing a protective layer of gauze fluff over the suture line.[263,267] The limb can be loosely wrapped in plastic wrap to assist removal of the completed RRD after casting. Next, a "sock" made from elasticized cotton stockinet or Tubigrip is applied over the limb, with particular care to avoid shearing across the suture line. Pieces of Webril or a similar filler material are layered around the limb to create reliefs within the RRD for bony prominences (tibial crest, fibular head, distal tibia) and the hamstring tendons. When the distal residual limb has a larger circumference, additional padding is added proximally to ensure that the RRD will be cylindrical and easily donned. A long sock made from regular cotton stockinet is carefully donned over the padding; this will be the inner layer of the finished RRD. The outline of the patella marked on the stockinet will serve as a guide for trim lines after the cast has dried. Typically, two rolls of fast-setting plaster cast material are sufficient for an RRD. The residual limb is supported in full knee extension, and successive layers of plaster are smoothed into place, building a cast with an anterior trim line at midpatella and a slightly lower posterior trim line to allow knee flexion without tissue impingement.

The cotton stockinet sock is then folded down over the cast at the knee, and several additional circumferential layers of plaster are used to finish and reinforce the proximal brim (to ensure that the RRD can subsequently withstand repeated donning/doffing). An Ace wrap can be applied to provide additional compression while the plaster sets. Once the RRD has hardened sufficiently, the patient is asked to flex the knee slightly and the cast is carefully removed from the residual limb. The extra Webril or padding is pulled out of the RRD, and the inner surface is inspected for potentially problematic rough areas or ridges. Because the RRD is almost cylindrical, it is helpful to mark the front of the cast to ensure that it is correctly donned.

Before the completed RRD is applied, one or two gauze pads are placed over the suture line for protection. A prosthetic sock, Tubigrip, elasticized stockinet sock, or commercially manufactured "shrinker" is carefully donned, with minimal shear stress across the suture line. Additional ply of prosthetic socks are used as needed to ensure a snug fit within the RRD. A small amount of Webril or other fluffy padding is placed in the distal anterior RRD to protect the distal tibia and suture line; then the RRD is carefully slipped onto the residual limb, aligning the markings on the front of the RRD with the patella for optimal fit. A small foam filler or cushion can be placed between the anterior brim and residual limb to minimize the risk of friction during activity. The outer Tubigrip or stockinet suspension sleeve is then rolled over the RRD and onto the thigh, the supracondylar strap is secured in place, and the sock is folded back down over the strap to minimize the risk of loss of suspension. The skin must be inspected within the first 60 to 90 minutes of initial fitting with an RRD to assess skin integrity and identify potential pressure-related problems. If no skin problems develop, routine wound inspection once per nursing shift is usually adequate.

The RRD is designed to be worn continuously, even when sleeping, except during routine wound care or bathing. If the individual with recent amputation is expecting to be out of the RRD for more than several minutes, another form of compression such as a shrinker or several layers of Tubigrip must be available to minimize the development of edema. The individual wearing an RRD must be encouraged to report any localized pain or discomfort as signs of potential problems with RRD fit or function. Layers of prosthetic sock are added, over time, as the residual limb "shrinks." There is some evidence that polymer gel socks worn under an RRD may help to control edema and associated pain and reduce the time to prosthetic fitting.[268] Sometimes short distal socks are necessary to provide for distal compression without excessive proximal bulkiness that can prohibit donning. The consistent use of 12- to 15-ply socks to achieve appropriate fit usually indicates the need for fabrication of a smaller RRD. Significant change in the shape or configuration of the residual limb also requires fabrication of a new RRD.

The referral for fabrication of the initial (preparatory or training) prosthesis can occur within 12 to 17 days of surgery if the incision has healed sufficiently. Many individuals continue to use their RRD in conjunction with a shrinker for control of edema and limb protection whenever they are not wearing their prosthesis for as long as 6 months after surgery.

Removable Polyethylene Semirigid Dressings

An alternative to a plaster RRD is a removable polyethylene SRD.[269] Like the RRD, the SRD is an effective strategy for control of edema, protection of the healing incision, and shaping of the residual limb.[270] However, unlike the RRD, the SRD requires the skill of a prosthetist for fabrication. The prosthetist may take a negative mold of the patient's residual limb while in the operating room or when the rigid dressing is removed on the third or fourth postoperative day. A positive model is created using the negative mold and is modified to incorporate reliefs for pressure-intolerant areas of the residual limb. The polyethylene is heated and vacuum molded over the positive model in the same way that a thermoplastic socket would be. The polyethylene SRD is often ready for delivery in 2 or 3 days after casting. When someone is initially casted for a polyethylene SRD in the operating room before being placed in a plaster or fiberglass cast, the SRD may be delivered on the day that the rigid plaster dressing is removed.

The polyethylene SRD has several advantages when compared with the plaster of Paris RRD. First, polyethylene is easier to clean; as a result, hygiene of the residual limb may be improved. The polyethylene SRD is lighter in weight and somewhat more durable than a plaster RRD; it does not melt if exposed to liquids. The flexibility of the material makes it easier to don and doff than the stiff plaster RRD. Because the polyethylene SRD closely resembles a transtibial socket, greater carryover about proper use of prosthetic socks for optimal fit in the socket of the initial (preparatory, temporary, or training) prosthesis is likely.

The major disadvantage of a polyethylene SRD is the cost associated with casting and fabrication. Because most residual limbs become progressively smaller with maturation in the weeks and months after amputation, several successfully smaller SRDs may need to be fabricated as the limb shrinks. In some settings, plaster RRDs are used until the initial prosthetic fitting. At that point the prosthetist makes a polyethylene SRD, in addition to the socket, for the training prosthesis. Some companies now offer a prefabricated adjustable SRD with Velcro closures as an alternative to the custom-molded polyethylene SRD.

Zinc Oxide–Impregnated Semirigid Dressing

Another postoperative strategy is the fabrication of an SRD using a zinc oxide–impregnated Unna bandage. Unna is most often used in the management of chronic venous stasis ulcers (Unna boot)[271]; because it appears to enhance healing, it has also been used as a strategy to control edema and facilitate healing following transtibial amputation.[272] As the Unna dressing dries, it provides nonelastic external support to the residual limb, preventing development of edema. The Unna dressing is basically a roll of gauze impregnated with zinc oxide, triglycerine, calamine, and gelatin. This pasty dressing easily adheres to the skin on application, drying to a semirigid leathery consistency within 24 hours. Typically, an Unna dressing would be applied to the residual limb immediately after wound closure in the operating room.[272] Although not as rigid and protective as an RRD or SRD, Unna paste dressings are more effective in limiting postoperative edema than are soft dressings and Ace

wrapping.[272] An Unna SRD can be left on for as long as 5 to 7 days; if more frequent wound inspection is desired, it can be easily removed with bandage scissors. Because the Unna dressing remains in place for an extended period, fewer opportunities are available for limb desensitization and patient education about socket fit compared with those for the RRD and polyethylene SRD.

Pneumatic Compression for Early Ambulation

The deconditioning associated with inactivity is a particular concern in the postoperative and preprosthetic periods. However, ambulation on a single limb can be quite challenging for persons with a high comorbid burden of illness. Although pneumatic compression (such as the air splints use for immobilization following acute fracture) is relatively inexpensive and can be quickly removed and reapplied for wound inspection, the compression tends to be uneven, so shaping of the residual limb is not as effective as other methods. The splint can be uncomfortably hot if worn for more than 20 to 30 minutes. However, its major benefit is that it allows early protected weight bearing on the residual limb; this is especially beneficial for individuals who are physically or functionally frail.[273] The air splint provides limited mobility for patients who would not otherwise be ambulatory and may be a useful means of assessing the potential for prosthetic rehabilitation. Several air-filled early prosthetic options exist for compression in the postoperative and preprosthetic periods.[274–277] However, because regulation of the amount of weight bearing allowed within a pneumatic compression splint is difficult to control, the therapist must weigh the risks of placing too much pressure on the surgical wounds as compared with limited mobility. For this reason, many prosthetists prefer a non–weight-bearing rigid residual dressing.[278,279] Another option is the bent-knee prosthesis, which, when used with an RRD, removes weight bearing from the incision site yet does not prohibit ambulation (see Fig. 20.18).[280]

When donning a pneumatic compression device for early ambulation, the suture line is covered with smooth gauze pads for protection. Prosthetic socks, stockinet, or Tubigrip is then applied over the residual limb before the air splint is inflated. Felt pads are strategically placed over the residual limb's soft dressing, or a shrinker loads pressure-tolerant areas (medial tibial flare and patellar tendon) while protecting pressure-sensitive areas (crest of the tibia and fibular head) after inflation of the air splint. The sleeve is zipped into place around the limb, and the limb is positioned in the frame before inflation. The sleeve is inflated with a hand or foot pump to an air pressure of 35 to 40 mm Hg. This low pressure sustains toe touch to partial weight without compromising capillary blood flow to the healing suture line. Recently a variety of prefabricated pneumatic immediate postoperative prostheses, with inflatable air bladders within an adjustable closure polyethylene "socket," has become available.[281–284]

Rigid Dressing as a Base for Immediate Postoperative Prostheses

When a non-RRD is to be used as an IPOP, a prosthetist joins the surgical team in the operating room during cast application to incorporate the features of a patellar tendon–bearing socket and an attachment for a pylon into the cast (Fig. 20.19).[285] Several felt or gel pads are positioned on the limb to direct and distribute weight-bearing forces more effectively onto pressure-tolerant areas (e.g., medial tibial flare, anterior muscle compartment, patellar tendon). The residual limb is then supported with the knee extended, and several layers of elastic or nonelastic plaster of Paris or fiberglass casting material are applied. The proximal edges of the cast are finished at the upper thigh (2–4 inches below perineum) level. Modifications of the cast (as it is setting) are used to aid suspension or, for an IPOP, to ensure that weight-bearing forces are directed to pressure-tolerant areas. Pressure applied to the outside of the cast just above the femoral condyles captures normal femoral anatomy to create supracondylar suspension. For an IPOP, the prosthetist incorporates a patellar tendon bar, a broad "shelf" for the medial tibial flare, and a stabilizing popliteal bulge by applying manual pressure to these areas as the cast begins to set. The prosthetist also incorporates a point of attachment and alignment into the distal cast for subsequent attachment of a pylon and prosthetic foot. Finally, the prosthetist or surgeon can incorporate a suspension attachment, which will connect to a waist belt, into the proximal anterior surface of the cast.

In a retrospective study of individuals who underwent a below-knee amputation, at 60 days postamputation 58% of those who received a rigid plaster or plastic IPOP were ready for prosthesis casting compared with 38% of those who received a soft dressing.[279,286] The early mobility afforded by application of an IPOP may be important physically and psychologically for individuals with new

Fig. 20.18 Bent-Knee Prosthesis. (Courtesy of Hanger Inc., Austin, TX.)

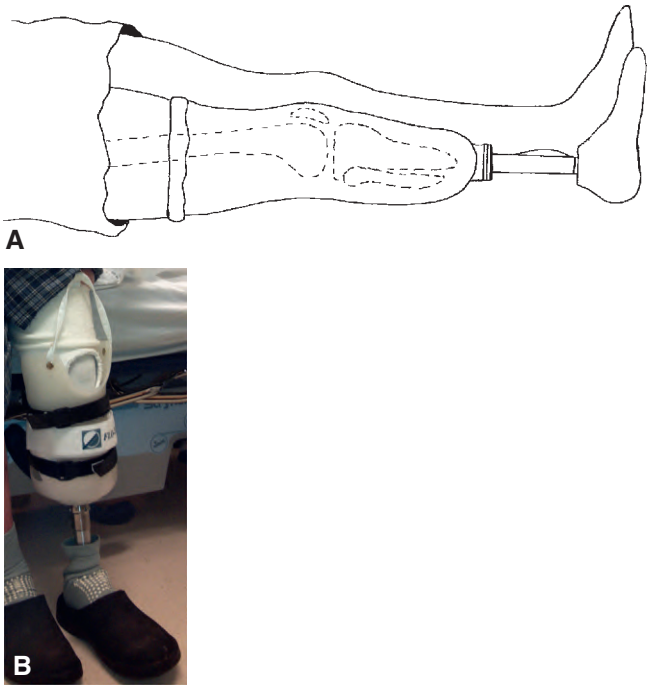


Fig. 20.19 (A and B) Incorporation of a pylon and features of a patellar tendon–bearing socket in an immediate postoperative prosthesis (IPOP) can facilitate early mobility in selected patients. (From Ali MM, Loretz L, Shea A, et al. A contemporary comparative analysis of immediate postoperative prosthesis placement following below-knee amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg*. 2013;27(8):1146–1153.)

amputation who would otherwise be unable to achieve single limb ambulation with a walker or crutches, especially those who are at significant risk of functional decline, physiologic deconditioning, or atelectasis and pneumonia secondary to inactivity and immobilization.[287] Although an IPOP replaces the amputated limb with a pylon and prosthetic foot, limited and protected weight bearing is essential in the early postoperative period: most physicians suggest toe touch or partial weight bearing. Shearing forces that result from excessive weight shift and repeated loading of the residual limb in an IPOP can compromise or delay wound healing.[285] Because of this risk, an IPOP is inappropriate for frail or confused individuals who are likely to be unreliable about limiting weight bearing. Many proponents of IPOP suggest that gradual controlled application of mechanical stress to healing connective tissues actually assists tissue modeling for better tolerance of the mechanical stresses of prosthetic wear and ambulation. Although the early application of mechanical stresses is apparently well tolerated by wounds with adequate blood supply, ischemic wounds tolerate only minimum stress in their healing phase.

Selecting the Appropriate Compression Strategy

In deciding which edema control and limb-shaping strategy is most appropriate, the rehabilitation team should consider the following questions:

1. Can the person don/doff the device independently? If not, is a family member available who can assist with this task?
2. Given the individual's physical characteristics and likely level of activity, will the device remain securely in place on the residual limb?
3. Will the device apply enough compression for effective progressive limb shrinkage?
4. Will the device apply enough compression for symmetric shaping of the residual limb?
5. Will the device protect the skin and healing suture line during daily activities, and does use of the device carry any risk of skin irritation or breakdown?
6. Is the device comfortable for the patient to use or wear over the long periods of time that are required for effective control of edema and limb shaping?
7. Is the device relatively cost effective in terms of fabrication, modification, and replacement?

Monitoring tissue tolerance and potential areas of pressure closely in whatever edema control method is chosen is very important, especially in the first few days and weeks after amputation. Although rigid dressings, IPOPs, and Unna dressing remain on the limb for extended periods, each other method of edema control and shaping should be removed and reapplied a minimum of three times each day to ensure appropriate fit and tissue tolerance in the acute phase of healing. When a rigid cast or IPOP is removed, it must be quickly replaced with an alternative compression device so that limb volume does not increase substantially. Individuals with recent amputation must wear the compression device at all times unless walking in a training prosthesis (even time out of compression during bathing should be as short as possible). Most people find that a compression device is necessary to maintain the desired limb volume for 6 months to a year after surgery. Some persons with mature residual limbs who have fluctuation in volume because of concurrent medical conditions continue to require compression well beyond the first postoperative year.

Many people with amputation experience a transient increase in residual limb volume after showering or bathing; they often choose to bathe in the evening so that volume change does not interfere with prosthetic use. Those who prefer to bathe in the morning may need to use a compression device immediately after bathing to achieve optimal prosthetic fit and suspension, especially if suction suspension (which requires consistent limb volume) is used. Those who use prosthetic socks may require a few less ply of sock immediately after bathing but need to add a few more ply after a few hours as limb volume decreases.

SKIN CARE AND SCAR MANAGEMENT

It is important that the healing incision move without adherence to underlying deep tissue or bone as healing progresses. There must be sufficient gliding between skin and underlying layers of soft tissue after healing so that shear forces will be minimal while the prosthesis is donned and used for function. An adherent scar at the distal tibia can

be quite problematic: If a point of adherence is present along an incisional scar, the mobility of tissues will be compromised. The resulting traction and shear forces are likely to lead to discomfort, skin irritation, and often recurrent breakdown of soft tissues with prosthetic use. Once primary healing has been established, the person with recent amputation learns to use gentle manual massage to enhance tissue mobility in preparation for prosthetic use. At first, this is performed above and below, but not across, the incision to minimize the risk of dehiscence.

When the wound is well closed and Steri-Strips are no longer necessary to support and protect the incision, gentle mobilization of the scar itself can begin. Handling of the limb during soft tissue mobilization and massage not only minimizes adhesion formation but also helps the individual to adapt his or her body image to include the postamputation residual limb and prepare for the sensory experience of prosthetic use.[288,289]

Persons with new amputation may have surgical scars from previous vascular bypass or from harvesting veins for coronary artery bypass surgery. These may require carefully applied soft tissue mobilization or friction massage to free adhesions and restore the mobility of the skin. Those with traumatic amputation may have healing skin grafts or abrasions from road burn, thermal injury, or electrical burn. In such cases, wound care and débridement are important components of preprosthetic rehabilitation. For individuals with healing burns or skin graft, the use of an appropriate compression garment or shrinker assists healing and maturation of skin, controls postoperative edema, and shapes the residual limb.

Once the sutures have been removed, normal bathing resumes and a routine for daily skin care is established. Most physicians, prosthetists, and therapists recommend daily cleansing of the residual limb with a mild, nondrying soap. Patting or gently rubbing the limb with a terry cloth towel until it is fully dry also helps to desensitize it in preparation for prosthetic use. A small amount of moisturizer or skin cream can be applied if the skin of the residual limb is dry or flaky. A limb with soft, healthy pliable skin is much more tolerant of prosthetic wear than a limb with tough, dry, easily irritated skin. Persons with new amputation and their caregivers are taught to inspect the skin of the entire residual limb carefully, using a mirror if necessary to visualize difficult-to-see areas. Areas over bony prominences that may be vulnerable to high pressure within the socket are especially important to assess.

Persons with amputation are as likely to have other dermatologic conditions such as eczema or psoriasis as the general population.[290–292] Those with hairy limbs or easily irritated skin may be more at risk of folliculitis and similar inflammatory skin conditions once the prosthesis is worn consistently. Effective early management of skin irritation or other skin problems is important: Serious skin irritation or infection precludes prosthetic use until adequate healing has occurred.

Some persons with new amputation mistakenly assume that something must be used to "toughen" the skin in preparation for prosthetic use. They may opt to rub the skin with alcohol, vinegar, salt water, or even gasoline, erroneously thinking that this will make the skin thicker and more pressure tolerant. In fact, these "treatments" can damage the skin, making it more susceptible to pressure-related problems. Patient and family education about effective cleansing and skin care strategies is essential in the early postoperative/preprosthetic period.

RANGE OF MOTION AND FLEXIBILITY

Persons with transtibial amputation are at significant risk of developing both knee and hip flexion contractures. Those with transfemoral amputation are very likely to develop hip flexion and external rotation contracture. Such contractures cause substantial problems for prosthetic fit and alignment, as well as on efficiency of walking with a prosthesis. Impairment of extensibility of two joint muscles, such as the hamstrings and rectus femoris, may not be obvious when an individual is seated but may have profound impact on comfort when wearing a prosthesis during functional activities. For this reason, proper positioning is a key component of preprosthetic rehabilitation.

Prolonged dependence of the residual limb held in knee flexion when sitting also leads to development of distal edema, which can delay readiness for prosthetic fitting. Persons with transtibial amputation must maintain the knee in as much extension as possible, whether in bed, sitting in a wheelchair or lounge chair, or during exercise and activity. Although it may be comfortable to place a pillow under the knee when sitting or lying in bed, a more effective strategy is to position a small towel roll under the distal posterior residual limb to encourage knee extension (Fig. 20.20). Use of a wheelchair with elevating leg rests on the side of the amputation helps to keep the residual limb in an extended position, although a "bridge" between the seat and calf

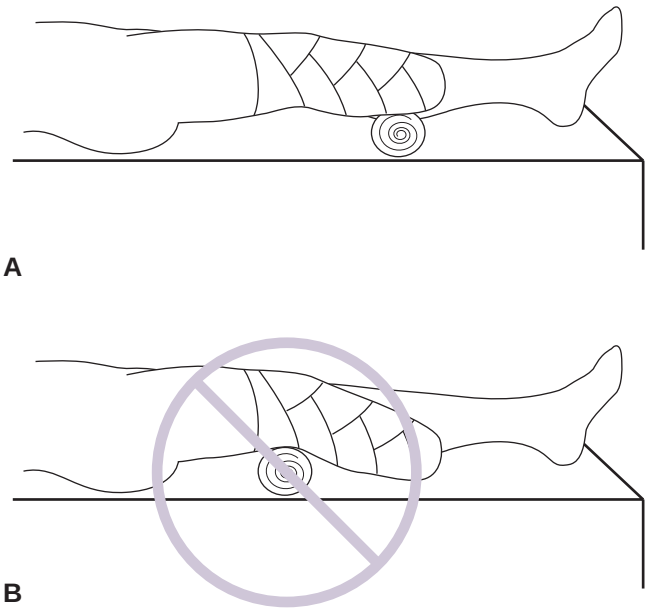


Fig. 20.20 The optimal position for individuals with recent transtibial amputation is in full extension. (A) A small rolled towel, bolster, or pillow placed under the distal posterior residual limb encourages knee extension, whereas (B) support under the knee makes development of knee flexion contracture more likely.

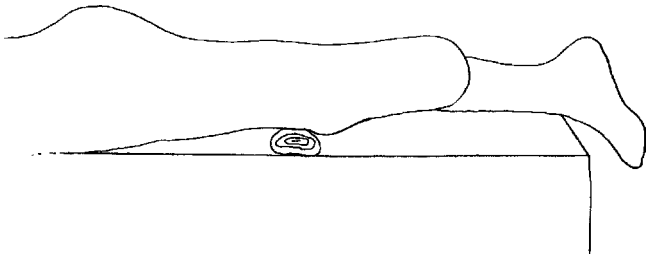


Fig. 20.21 Prone positioning for stretching of the posterior soft tissue and prevention of knee flexion contracture. A small towel roll placed just above the patella elevates the residual limb from the surface of the mat or bed. The therapist can use hold-relax or contract-relax techniques, or the patient can actively contract the quadriceps to assist elongation of the hamstrings and posterior soft tissues.

support may be necessary for those with short residual limbs. In some settings the therapist fabricates a posterior trough splint from low-temperature thermoplastic materials; this splint supports the limb in knee extension when the individual with recent amputation is resting in bed or sitting in a wheelchair.

If the individual is able to assume prone position, the weight of the limb can be used to assist elongation of the hamstring muscles and soft tissue of the posterior knee (Fig. 20.21). A small towel roll positioned just above the patella effectively positions the limb for elongation. Although there is little conclusive evidence in the research literature about contracture management in persons with recent lower limb amputation, evidence from studies of soft tissue contracture following total knee arthroplasty suggest that prolonged stretching, dynamic splinting, and manual therapy may be effective following amputation as well.[293–295] Stretching programs also have a positive impact on the quality and efficiency of gait in older adults.[296] What is not well understood is the intensity necessary if stretching is to prevent or minimize degree of contracture formation, especially if there is also evidence of central nervous system dysfunction.[297–299] Intervention strategies currently used to target joint ROM and flexibility include proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation (PNF) hold-relax or contract-relax[300,301] and myofascial release.[302] Although the strength of the clinical research evidence on interventions for stretching and flexibility following lower limb amputation is low, the consequences of not attending to risk of contracture development are substantially negative. Converging recommendations by experts strongly support that interventions aimed at contracture prevention or minimization are essential in the postoperative/preprosthetic period.[303–307] Readers are referred to *Stretching and Strengthening for Lower Extremity Amputees* (Miami, FL: Advanced Rehabilitation Therapy, 1994) and to *Facilitated Stretching* (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics, 2014) for more detailed information about designing exercise programs for stretching and flexibility.

Persons with recent amputation are instructed how to perform exercises (done at the bedside while an inpatient or at home while an outpatient) that are designed to elongate muscles and soft tissue to counteract the tendency to develop tightness, especially in two-joint muscles. Performed independently or with the assistance of a family member or caregiver several times a day, these stretching exercises are as important as individualized PT sessions during preprosthetic and prosthetic rehabilitation.

Significant hip flexion contracture can render a person with transfemoral amputation ineffective in controlling a prosthetic knee unit and walking with a prosthesis. Persons with recent transfemoral amputation tend to hold their residual limb diagonally outward when seated, unconsciously and automatically increasing their seated base of support to enhance postural stability. If they spend significant amounts of time in a seated position, development of hip flexor, abductor, and external rotator tightness is almost inevitable. PT interventions that elongate these soft tissues, including manual stretching, active exercise, and functional postural training, are used to counteract the tendency for tightness to develop.[303–309] Resting in a prone position with a towel roll under the distal anterior residual limb provides prolonged elongation for tight hip flexors. However, care must be taken to maintain a neutral pelvis or slight posterior tilt when lying prone. Excessive hip flexor tightness leads to lordosis of the lumbosacral spine.

MUSCLE PERFORMANCE

Most individuals do not achieve sufficient activity levels after lower limb amputation. A recent study found that 61% of lower limb amputees did not achieve the recommended 150 minutes of activity per week and that 33% were sedentary.[310] Rehabilitation professionals must promote physical activity participation beyond minimal functional levels but also encourage strength and aerobic conditioning to maximize health benefits. Strengthening programs have two goals: (a) remediation of specific weaknesses detected in the examination and (b) maximization of overall strength and muscular endurance for safe, energy-efficient prosthetic gait. Because functional activities require use of muscles at varying lengths and types of contraction, effective preprosthetic exercise programs include concentric, holding (isometric), eccentric, and co-contraction activities in a variety of positions and muscle lengths.[303–309] In the immediate postoperative period the specific strengthening program is often a combination of isometric and active isotonic exercise within a limited ROM of the joint just proximal to the amputation.[303–309] This strategy minimizes stress or tension across the incision while preserving and improving the strength of key muscle groups. It is as critical to include strengthening exercise for the intact (nonamputated limb) as for the residual limb. Core stability also needs to be addressed.

Incorporation of controlled exhalation during isometric contraction minimizes the risks to cardiac function and fluctuations of blood pressure that are associated with the Valsalva maneuver.[310] For persons with transtibial amputation, exercises to strengthen knee extension that are initiated within the first week of amputation might include "quad sets" in the supine position or "short arc quads" performed in the supine or sitting position. For those with transfemoral amputation, "glut sets" in the prone or supine position or "short arc" hip extension and abduction in a gravity-eliminated position would be initiated. Gailey and

Gailey[306] recommend an exercise strategy of slow, steadily controlled, 10-second muscular contractions, followed by 5 to 10 seconds of rest, for 10 repetitions as one that is easily learned and physiologically sound. As wound healing is accomplished, exercises can be progressed to include active exercises through larger arcs of motion, active resistive exercise (using weights or manual resistance), or isokinetic training. Application of manual resistance during functional activities, as in PNF, allows the therapist to provide appropriate resistance as muscle strength varies throughout the active ROM while providing facilitation and augmented sensory feedback to the patient.[215,311] Progressive resistive exercise for strength development (low repetition–high load) and muscular endurance (high repetition–low load) are key and should also be included.[312–315] Readers are referred to *American College of Sports Medicine's (ACSM's) Exercise Management for Persons with Chronic Disease and Disability* (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics, 2016),[314] *Therapeutic Exercise: Foundations and Techniques* (Philadelphia, PA: F.A. Davis, 2018), and *Essentials of Strength Training and Conditioning* (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics, 2016) for information on designing progressive resistive exercise programs of adequate intensity and duration.

Isokinetic exercise, involving both concentric and eccentric contraction, allows the patient to develop muscle strength and control at a variety of movement velocities and has a marked positive impact on functional ability.[314–318] Isokinetic exercise, if prescribed properly, is well tolerated by older adults, even at speeds of 180 degrees per second angular velocity.[319]

For individuals with transtibial amputation, attachments of the quadriceps and hamstrings are typically intact and preprosthetic strengthening exercises emphasize control of the knee, as well as hip extensor and abductor strength for stability in stance. There is evidence that older men who are unable to develop knee extension force greater than 1.13 Newton-meters (Nm)/kg (measured by handheld isokinetic dynamometer, normalized by body weight) and older women who are unable to develop knee extension force greater than 1.01 Nm/kg have a high risk for functional decline, morbidity, and mortality.[320] These strength values may represent the minimum threshold for community function and could serve as evidence-based functional goals for persons recovering from transtibial amputation (both limbs) and transfemoral amputation (remaining limb). Those with transtibial amputation are also very likely to have deficits in muscle performance around the hip; strengthening programs must include hip abductors (for stance phase stability) and hip extensors,[321] much like those who are receiving rehabilitation following total knee arthroplasty.[322,323]

Persons with transfemoral amputation must develop strong hip extension capabilities to control the prosthetic knee unit. They must also have effective hip abduction power if the pelvis is to remain level during stance.[321] It is vital to recognize that the distal attachments of the hamstrings, rectus femoris, sartorius, tensor fasciae latae/iliotibial band, adductor longus, and adductor magnus are relocated by myodesis or myoplasty or are lost entirely (for patients with short residual limbs) during transfemoral surgery. The combination of an altered line of pull and loss of muscle mass often creates an imbalance of muscle action around the hip.[324–326] The gluteus maximus, gluteus medius, and iliopsoas, with their intact distal attachments, are more powerful in determining resting hip position than the altered adductor group. If the tensor fasciae latae/iliotibial band and gluteus maximus become secondarily shortened, function of the adductor group is further compromised. Because of this imbalance, the physical therapist must consider activities that strengthen the remaining hip adductors, as well as hip extensors and hip abductors, to prepare the patient for effective postural control in sitting and standing and stance phase stability in prosthetic gait.[326] Readers are referred to *Stretching and Strengthening for Lower Extremity Amputees* (Miami, FL: Advanced Rehabilitation Therapy, 1994) for more examples of postoperative, preprosthetic strengthening activities.

General strengthening exercises for the trunk and upper extremities are also essential components of an effective preprosthetic exercise program. Back extensors and abdominal muscles play a principal role in postural alignment and postural control. Activities that involve trunk rotation or diagonal movements activate trunk and limb girdle muscles in functional patterns, addressing strength and flexibility for functional activities and enhancing reciprocal arm swing and pelvic control in gait. Upper extremity strengthening, targeting shoulder depressor and elbow extensors, enhances the patient's ability to use an assistive device for single limb ambulation before prosthetic fitting.

ENDURANCE

Many older adults with dysvascular amputation begin rehabilitation with compromised cardiopulmonary endurance because of the effects of comorbid cardiac and pulmonary diseases and on deconditioning associated with inactivity and bed rest.[327] In persons with significant peripheral vascular disease without amputation, endurance training on treadmill improved endurance (6-Minute Walk distance) and physical function (Short-Form 36 physical functioning values).[328] In deconditioned individuals, a 2-minute walk test may be a more appropriate test of aerobic conditioning than the 6-Minute Walk Test because it has been shown to be predictive of 6-Minute Walk Test distance for individuals with lower extremity amputations.[329] A distance of 113 m is necessary for patients to be likely to walk at least 300 m in the 6-Minute Walk Test to show potential as community ambulators.[329] Although treadmill training is not appropriate in the preprosthetic period, other strategies, such as cycle ergometer driven by the intact limb, upper extremity ergometer, or cycle/recumbent combined upper and lower extremity ergometers (e.g., NuStep Inc, Ann Arbor, MI) (Fig. 20.22), can be safely and successfully used for persons with lower limb amputation.[330–332] Endurance and physical conditioning are predictors of prosthetic use: the ability to exercise at or greater than 50% of age-predicted maximum volume of oxygen consumption (VO_{2max}) differentiated between persons with amputation able to walk

Fig. 20.22 Example of a combined upper and lower extremity recumbent ergometer appropriate for endurance exercise as part of the preprosthetic program for persons with amputation. (Courtesy NuStep Inc., Ann Arbor, MI.)

functional distances (100 m) with a prosthesis and those who were unable to do so.[333–335] Because energy cost of walking with a prosthesis increases as limb length decreases, endurance training is particularly important for persons with transfemoral amputation.[336–338] Energy expenditure increases with the level of amputation from transtibial to bilateral transfemoral, as much as 20% to 200%.[338,339] Persons with amputation can substantially improve level of fitness (VO_{2max}) and, with that, their potential for physical activity and prosthetic use.[337] Readers are referred to the ACSM's *Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription*, 9th edition (Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2013)[340] and ACSM's *Exercise Management for Persons with Chronic Disease and Disabilities*, 4th edition (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics, 2016)[314] for additional information about exercise testing and endurance exercise prescription.

POSTURAL CONTROL

Loss of a limb shifts the position of the body's COM, moving it slightly upward, backward, and toward the remaining or intact extremity; the magnitude of this shift is determined by the extent of limb loss. The shift may have relatively little impact on postural control and functional ability in patients with partial foot or Syme amputation. However, it may have a significant impact on sitting balance, transitions between sitting and standing, and single limb ambulation for persons with transtibial, transfemoral, or hip disarticulation amputation. An effective preprosthetic program incorporates activities that challenge patients to improve core stability, postural control, and equilibrium responses, learning how to control the repositioned COM effectively over an altered base of support. In sitting, this can be accomplished using a variety of reaching tasks including forward reaching, diagonal reaching across and away from the midline, reaching down to a lower surface or objects, reaching up and away from their center, and turning to reach behind them. Anticipatory and reactive postural responses can also be practiced by throwing and catching games that require an automatic weight shift as part of the activity. The difficulty of the task can be advanced by progressively shifting the location of the catch or toss away from the midline of the patient's trunk; alternating locations from side to side or upward or downward; increasing the speed of the activity; increasing the weight of the object or ball that is being used; or performing the activity on a less stable seating surface (e.g., TheraBall, large bolster, or air-filled balance cushion). Similar activities can be implemented in single limb stance, initially within the parallel bars with physical guarding to insure safety. Such opportunity to practice anticipatory and reactionary postural control in single limb stance lays the foundation for the postural control necessary for single limb ambulation with an assistive device, as well as for eventual prosthetic use. Readers are referred to *Balance, Agility and Coordination for Lower Extremity Amputees* (Miami, FL: Advanced Rehabilitation Therapy) for more activities that can be used to enhance postural control.

The effectiveness of postural responses is influenced by efficiency of the somatosensory system and visual systems, flexibility and strength of the trunk and limb girdles, and the length and power of the residual limb.[208,341,342] The prosthetic replacement of a missing limb increases the functional base of support in sitting; for some individuals the weight of the prosthesis serves as a stabilizing anchor during functional activity. For those with limited flexibility or strength, such a replacement might be essential for effective postural responses and the ability to reach, even if the potential for functional ambulation is small.

WHEELCHAIRS, SEATING, AND ADAPTIVE EQUIPMENT

Many patients with amputation rely on a wheelchair for at least some of their mobility needs during the postoperative, preprosthetic period.[343] Some patients with short transfemoral amputation, hip disarticulation, or bilateral amputation prefer the relative energy efficiency of wheelchair mobility to ambulation with or without a prosthesis.[344,345] For others, comorbid cardiovascular or cardiopulmonary dysfunction precludes ambulation and the wheelchair becomes their primary mode of locomotion.[346] The shift in COM after amputation has important implications in choice of wheelchairs.

The design of many standard or traditional wheelchairs is based on the anthropomorphic characteristics of an "average" adult male with intact lower extremities. With the loss of a limb, the COM shifts in a posterior and lateral direction; when the patient is seated in a wheelchair, this moves the COM closer to the axis of rotation of the chair's wheels. If the patient with lower extremity amputation turns or reaches backward during a functional activity, the COM shifts even farther toward, or even beyond, the wheel axis, and the chair may tip backward. The provision of simple antitip devices reduces the risk of posterior tipping during functional activities. For those with transfemoral or bilateral

amputation, a wheelchair with wheels that can be offset posteriorly is recommended. Patients with recent amputation must also be aware of altered dynamics when they reach forward while sitting in a wheelchair: High downward pressure on the wheelchair foot plate by the intact limb when reaching forward is likely to lead to anterior tipping.

Specific wheelchair assessments and prescription are warranted for all individuals who will be using a wheelchair as their primary means of locomotion and mobility (see Chapter 16). This individual evaluation and prescription process ensures that the wheelchair will provide adequate support of the thighs to increase seating stability and reach, effective seating with an appropriate cushion for pressure distribution, and configuration of components that provides ease of wheelchair locomotion.

Wheelchair skills to be mastered by persons with new amputation and their caregivers include effective propulsion over level, carpeted, and uneven ground; turning and backing up; positioning of the wheelchair for safe bed, toilet, bathtub, furniture, and car transfers; ascending and descending thresholds, curbs, and ramps; and getting the wheelchair into and out of the family's motor vehicle. In addition, practice getting to and from the floor and opportunity to react to a controlled fall (lowering backward to the ground) may allay concerns about aftermath of falls. Readers are referred to textbooks on spinal cord injury rehabilitation, which contain chapters on wheelchair skill development that can be applied to persons with amputation.[347,348]

Along with a wheelchair, many persons with new amputation would benefit from provision of adaptive equipment for their homes (e.g., tub benches, grab bars, toilet frames, raised toilet seats, handheld shower adapter) and installation of temporary (or permanent) ramps to entrance/egress to the home. Consideration must also be given to access to sinks, as well as to using insulated coverings of exposed hot water and drain pipes. In some cases, if the individual is likely to use the wheelchair for a long period of time as primary means of mobility, modification of the home may be recommended for both safety and efficiency of function. Although these concerns are more typically addressed in inpatient and subacute rehabilitation settings, many patients with new amputation may be discharged to home to await sufficient healing prior to beginning prosthetic rehabilitation. Therapists in acute care must consider referral to home care services if there is insufficient time to address wheeled mobility and accessibility during hospitalization. Once again, textbooks on spinal cord injury are good sources of information about durable medical equipment and home modifications for accessibility.[349,350]

BED MOBILITY AND TRANSFERS

In the acute care setting, PT intervention at the bedside includes instruction about optimal positioning of the residual limb and activities to assist the patient's ability to change position in bed and move to or from a seated position. Early mobility and activity significantly reduce the risk of atelectasis, pneumonia, and further physiologic deconditioning.[351] However, the therapist must be aware of the risk of postural hypotension and of postoperative complications, including deep venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism. Assessment and monitoring of the patient's vital signs (pulse, respiratory rate, blood pressure, pulse oximetry) are recommended as bed mobility and out-of-bed activity begin.[352] Care must also be taken to minimize the risk of trauma to the newly amputated limb during activity, exercise, or transfers.

Many individuals with recent amputation can roll from supine to or from the prone position without great difficulty, although those with transfemoral amputation of the dominant limb may need to develop an adapted movement pattern or sequence. The strategies for transition into sitting are not substantially different from preferred preoperative strategies; however, efficiency of postural responses may be challenged by the alteration in body mass after amputation. Those who have become deconditioned by inactivity in the days and weeks before amputation may find bed rails, a trapeze, bed ladders, or other devices helpful early in rehabilitation. Strategic placement of a bed table or walker near the bedside at night serves as a reminder of the amputation for individuals who are likely to get up during the night to go to the bathroom (without otherwise fully awakening), reducing the risk of falling.

A primary goal of postoperative, preprosthetic rehabilitation is development of the ability to move between seating surfaces or from sitting to standing as safely and independently as possible. The majority of falls for persons with new amputation in acute care settings occur during self-transfer between wheelchair and bed or toilet.[353] Depending on the individual's preamputation level of activity, transferring between seating surfaces may require some degree of assistance or use of adaptive devices or may be accomplished relatively smoothly and easily. Those who are deconditioned or who have previous neuromuscular-related postural impairment may require a mechanical lifting aid, multiperson lifting, or some level of assistance in the early postoperative period. Others may benefit from a strategically placed transfer board as they develop their ability to perform a pivot transfer on their remaining limb.

Some persons require a walker or crutches for extra stability in single limb stance in the midst of their pivot transfers. Still others quickly master scooting in sitting and pivoting on their remaining limb to become independent in transfers. Persons with single limb amputation initially prefer transferring toward their remaining limb but should be encouraged to master moving in either direction. Individuals with bilateral limb loss or injury that precludes weight bearing on the remaining limb can scoot across a sliding board to a wheelchair or commode that is positioned diagonally from the bed. Those with bilateral transfemoral amputation (and those with bilateral transtibial amputation who have sufficient hamstring excursion) may prefer the surface-to-surface stability that is provided when the entire anterior edge of the wheelchair seat abuts the side of the bed, allowing them to scoot directly forward. Some individuals who require significant assistance to

transfer without a prosthesis become nearly independent in pivot transfers when a prosthesis is worn: The sensory feedback that is provided to the residual limb within the socket when there is contact between the prosthetic foot and the floor enhances sitting balance during sliding board or pivot transfers. Persons with transfemoral amputation must learn that, although they can wear a prosthesis when seated, the prosthesis cannot be counted on for stability during transfers. Readers are referred to *Patient Care Skills*, 6th edition (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 2010)[354] for suggestions about interventions to enhance bed mobility, transfers, and ambulation with assistive devices.

Mastery of single limb or non–weight-bearing transfers in the postoperative period is the foundation for functional transfers whenever the person with amputation is not wearing his or her prosthesis. At times in the future, mechanical problems with the prosthesis, skin problems on the residual limb, or a medical problem (e.g., CHF or renal failure) may affect socket fit, temporarily precluding prosthetic use. Providing opportunities for patients to practice transferring between surfaces at different levels (e.g., wheelchair to stool to floor) in the postoperative, preprosthetic period is very important, especially if delayed prosthetic fitting is anticipated.

AMBULATION AND LOCOMOTION

Single limb ambulation with an appropriate assistive device provides an opportunity to enhance postural control and to build strength and cardiovascular endurance, in addition to allowing patients with recent amputation to move about in their environment. A number of factors (e.g., safety, balance and postural control, endurance, lower extremity muscle performance, fear of falling) must be considered in recommending an ambulator assistive device.[354,355] Although use of a standard or rolling walker may be appropriate in the initial PT sessions, many individuals with new amputation quickly master a two- or three-point swing-through pattern with crutches on level surfaces and are ready to build advanced gait skills on uneven surfaces, inclines, and stairs. Others are fearful of using crutches, preferring the stability provided by a walker to the mobility of crutches. A walker may be appropriate for patients with limited endurance and balance impairment who would otherwise be limited to wheelchair use. However, therapists must be aware of the potential long-term limitation in gait patterns imposed by walkers: The halting hop-to gait pattern interrupts forward progression of the COM. Individuals who have adapted to this pattern of motion before receiving a prosthesis may have difficulty developing a smooth step-through pattern or becoming comfortable with a less supportive ambulation aid once they are using their prosthesis. Walkers are also more difficult to use on inclines and are dangerous to use on stairs. Whenever possible, patients are encouraged to use crutches.[354,355] Table 20.8 summarizes the progressive single limb ambulation skills for preprosthetic rehabilitation.

Individuals with limited endurance or poor balance spend much time practicing a hop-to or swing-through gait in the parallel bars before they acquire the confidence and motor skill necessary to move out of the parallel bars with a walker or crutches. Indeed, single limb ambulation with an assistive device is often more energy intensive than walking with a prosthesis.[346,356] Achievement of functional single limb ambulation is not a prerequisite for prosthetic fitting.[357] All individuals who can stand and use an assistive device to walk should be encouraged to ambulate as much as possible, even if they are walking for aerobic exercise rather than to accomplish a functional task. For those with single limb amputation, wheelchair use should be reserved for long-distance transportation unless ambulation is not medically advisable. Wheelchairs are appropriate for patients with bilateral amputation; self-propulsion provides some aerobic conditioning and an energy-efficient means of locomotion.[358]

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: CARE OF THE REMAINING LIMB

Patient and family education begins in the initial interview process and continues throughout the acute hospital stay, as illustrated in the preceding discussions of positioning, residual limb care, remaining/intact limb care, and enhancing motor performance and functional training.

Patient education about the risk of decubitus ulceration and strategies to reduce this risk are also key components of early postoperative care. Individuals with vascular disease and neuropathy are particularly at risk, with the heel and lateral border of the remaining foot most vulnerable.[359] Those with dysvascular limbs may have barely enough circulation to support tissue health in an intact or noninjured foot; once a wound has occurred, circulation may be inadequate for tissue healing. An open wound on the remaining limb would preclude single limb ambulation, increasing the risk of inactivity-related postoperative complications and making prosthetic rehabilitation even more challenging. Pressure-related wounds significantly delay rehabilitation, increase disability, and multiply health care costs for patients with amputation. Vulnerability to pressure increases with sensory impairment; altered mechanical characteristics of injured, calcified, or scarred tissues; poor circulatory status; microclimate of the skin; and (in combination with these factors) advanced age.[360] For those who have limited ability to change position, a pressure-distributing mattress and well-designed, carefully applied heel protectors can reduce the risk of decubitus ulcer formation. A routine of frequent position change, weight shifting, and exercise reduces weight-bearing pressures and enhances circulation to vulnerable tissues.

Before discharge, the rehabilitation team must ascertain how close to functional independence the individual and caregivers are in a variety of self-care activities, in mobility and locomotion, and in performance of preprosthetic exercises (Fig. 20.23). As the program progresses, the ability of the individual and family in these areas is a key determinant of discharge readiness and placement (home with home care, home with outpatient follow-up, or to a rehabilitation or subacute facility).

Case Example 20.1b **Interventions for N. H., an 89-Year-Old Woman With "Elective" Transtibial Amputation**

N. H. is now 4 days postsurgery, and her delirium is clearing. She is conversing with her typical sense of humor with family and staff. Her casted fiberglass rigid dressing was removed yesterday; the surgical wound is draining moderate amounts of serosanguineous fluid; edges are closely approximate. An area of pressure-related abrasion and inflammation at the anterior distal tibia was noted when the cast was removed; granulation is now evident. N. H. can transfer to a bedside chair with moderate assistance of one person, with noted moderate impairment of postural control. N. H. tolerates being up in a bedside chair for 45 minutes. She rates her postoperative pain as 4 out of 10, except at dressing change, when it increases to 6 out of 10. She laughs but feels concern that she feels mild cramping in the instep of the limb that is no longer there, wanting to stretch her foot and toes into dorsiflexion to relieve her discomfort. She is somewhat reluctant to look at or to touch her residual limb but does not mind if nurses, physicians, or PT staff handle it during dressing changes or functional activities. She transferred sitting to standing with a walker at bedside with moderate assistance of one person, complaining of dizziness after standing for more than a minute and requesting to return to sitting. She tells you that she is "ready to get going" and wants to return to her own home to use her wheelchair as soon as possible.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given her postoperative pain and phantom sensation, what PT interventions would be appropriate at this time for N. H.? Why would these be most appropriate from among available options? What are the pros and cons of each, with respect to attention, memory, and ability to learn?
- Given the status of her wound and condition of her residual limb, what strategies for management of edema and limb shaping would you recommend? What are the pros and cons that you considered when deciding among options for compression and residual limb protection? Why do you think the option you selected is the most appropriate? How would this be similar or different if her amputation was at the transfemoral level?
- What strategies for intervention and patient-family education would you implement for skin care and scar management for N. H.? What issues or factors will assist or inhibit her ability to take responsibility for her skin care?
- What specific strategies for intervention and patient-family education aimed at ROM and flexibility do you recommend for N. H.? What impairments or functional limitations are you particularly concerned about for N. H.? What activities will you engage her in? What positions? For what period of time? With what equipment? What would you emphasize if her amputation was at a transfemoral level? What issues or factors will assist or inhibit her ability to take responsibility for exercises aimed at ensuring adequate ROM and flexibility in preparation for prosthetic use?
- What specific strategies for intervention and patient-family education aimed at improving muscle performance do you recommend for N. H.? How do you address strengthening of key muscle groups of extremities and trunk? How do you address power and muscle endurance? How do you address concentric, isometric, and eccentric control and performance? What issues or factors must be considered regarding exercise tolerance, intensity, frequency, and duration during her acute care stay? How will you address her concerns about her low level of aerobic fitness and conditioning?
- What specific strategies for intervention and patient-family education aimed at improving static, dynamic, and reactionary postural control during functional activities do you recommend for N. H.? During which activities is postural control most likely to be problematic? What apparatus, equipment, and activities might you use to assist her postural control?
- What are your concerns about seating and wheelchair mobility for N. H.? Do you think that a standard wheelchair will adequately meet her needs? Do you think she will be able to propel her chair? What tasks does she need to master if the wheelchair will be her primary source of mobility during the preprosthetic period?
- What types of bed mobility and transfer activities are important for N. H. and her family caregivers to master? What specific intervention and patient-family education strategies will you use to help her move toward safe and, hopefully, independent performance of bed mobility and transfer activities? How will you vary environmental conditions and task demands to ensure that she can adapt her strategies and skills?
- What strategies for intervention and patient-family education will you use to get her up and walking? What assistive or ambulatory device do you feel would be most appropriate? Why have you chosen this particular device from among available options? What gait pattern will she use? For what other dimensions or ambulatory skills (in addition to walking forward) will you provide instruction and opportunity for N. H. to practice? How will you address the likelihood that she will experience a fall at some point in her preprosthetic period? What is "functional distance" for ambulation for N. H. and her family?
- Are there any additional interventions that would be appropriate for N. H. at this point in her postoperative, preprosthetic rehabilitation?
- How will you determine her readiness for prosthetic fitting?

Case Example 20.2c **Interventions for P. G., an Individual with Recent Amputation of Both Lower Extremities Following a Construction Accident**

Now 3 days postoperation, P. G. is beginning his rehabilitation in preparation for discharge to home until there is adequate healing for prosthetic fitting and prosthetic training. Pain continues to be a serious concern, generally reported as 5 or 6 out of 10 on the visual analog scale. Postoperative agitation has cleared, although P. G.'s wife reports he is more subdued in affect than usual, and she is concerned about possible depression. Low-grade temperature persists, but white cell counts are within normal limits. P. G. can actively flex and extend both knees to within 10 degrees of full ROM, with effort and a "tight pulling sensation" behind the knee, when out of his semirigid dressing (SRD) for dressing changes and wound inspection. Although he reports feeling "weak as a baby" and is quickly fatigued, P. G. can use upper extremity and body strength for contact guard sliding board transfers to and from bed to a bedside chair. Moving between sitting and supine is effortful and fatiguing, but P. G. manages these transitions with occasional standby assistance. He was previously involved in both aerobic and strengthening exercise at the local YMCA, but he is not sure how to use the weights and equipment now that he has lost his limbs. Plans are being made to move temporarily to his parent's home, on the first floor of a three-family house (although there are six steps to reach a front porch and entryway) because it is more accessible than his third-floor walk-up apartment. In the meantime, family and friends are apartment hunting for housing that will be less challenging for P. G. in the months ahead. P. G.'s major goal is to achieve independent mobility with a wheelchair before the birth of his child.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given his postoperative pain and phantom sensation, what PT interventions would be appropriate at this time for P. G.? Why would these be most appropriate from among available options? What are the pros and cons of each, with respect to attention, memory, and ability to learn?
- Given the status of his wound and condition of his residual limb, what strategies for management of edema and limb shaping would you recommend? What are the pros and cons that you considered when deciding among options for compression and residual limb protection? Why do you think the option you selected is the most appropriate? How would this change if his amputations were at the transfemoral level?
- What strategies for intervention and patient-family education would you implement for skin care and scar management for P. G.? What issues or factors will assist or inhibit his ability to take responsibility for his skin care?
- What specific strategies for intervention and patient-family education aimed at ROM and flexibility do you recommend for P. G.? What impairments or functional limitations are you particularly concerned about for P. G.? What activities will you engage him in? What positions? For what period of time? With what equipment? How would these be similar or different if his amputations were at the transfemoral level? What issues or factors will assist or inhibit his ability to take responsibility for exercises aimed at insuring adequate ROM and flexibility in preparation for prosthetic use?
- What specific strategies for intervention and patient-family education aimed at improving muscle performance do you recommend for P. G.? How do you address strengthening of key muscle groups of extremities and trunk? How do you address power and muscle endurance? How do you address concentric, isometric, and eccentric control and performance? How would this be similar or different if his amputations were at the transfemoral level? What issues or factors must be considered regarding exercise tolerance, intensity, frequency, and duration during his acute care stay? How will you address his concerns about low level of aerobic fitness and conditioning?
- What specific strategies for intervention and patient-family education aimed at improving static, dynamic, and reactionary postural control during functional activities do you recommend for P. G.? During which activities is postural control most likely to be problematic? What apparatus, equipment, and activities might you use to assist his postural control?
- What are your concerns about seating and wheelchair mobility for P. G.? Do you think that a standard wheelchair will adequately meet his needs? Do you think he will be able to propel his chair? What tasks does he need to master if the wheelchair will be his primary source of mobility during the preprosthetic period?
- What additional bed mobility and transfer activities do you think are important for P. G. and his family caregivers to master? What specific intervention and patient-family education strategies will you use to help him move toward safe and, hopefully, independent performance of bed mobility and transfer activities? How will you vary environmental conditions and task demands to ensure that he can adapt his strategies and skills?
- How will you address the likelihood that he will experience a fall at some point in his preprosthetic period?
- Are there any additional interventions that would be appropriate for P. G. at this point in his postoperative, preprosthetic rehabilitation to assist with his coping and adjustment to his limb loss?
- How will you determine his readiness for prosthetic fitting?

Table 20.8 Progressive Strategies for Preparing for and Mastering Single Limb Mobility After Amputation

Phase	Purpose	Target	Examples of Activity Progression
Preparation	Strengthening		All activities: concentric, holding, eccentric contraction All activities: intact limb and residual limb
		Hip extensors Hip interior and exterior rotators Hip abductors	Bridging; uniplanar, diagonal antigravity, with resistance Gluteal sets Hip extension in prone, in standing, adding resistance, open chain, closed chain Hip abduction side-lying, in standing, adding resistance, open chain, closed chain

Continued

Table 20.8 Progressive Strategies for Preparing for and Mastering Single Limb Mobility After Amputation (Continued)

Phase	Purpose	Target	Examples of Activity Progression
		Knee extensors	Quad sets, short arc quads Sit to stand at varying heights and speeds Progressive resistive exercise Low load, high repetition (endurance) High load, low repetition (strength)
		Ankle dorsiflexors	Toe raises in standing Manual resistance of active movement
	Flexibility	Hip flexor tightness Knee flexor tightness Tensor fascia lata/ iliotibial band Plantar flexor tightness	Prolonged passive stretching, positioning antigravity Thomas test position or prone Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation: hold-relax/contract-relax followed by concentric exercise in new ROM Active stretching in various positions
Stability in standing	Rising to standing	Control of COM during transition	Part-to-whole practice progressing to serial practice of sit-to-stand transition Scooting to edge of seating surface Forward lean with trunk extension (anterior weight shift) Weight transfer onto foot Extension into upright position Achieving stability in upright position Controlled lowering back into sitting position Practice with varying speeds Adding appropriate resistance for sensory feedback and/or strengthening Practice with higher to lower seating surfaces Practice with various seating surfaces (firm to soft chair, toilet seat, tub seat) Practice with transfers into/out of car
	Postural control in single limb stance	Discovering limits of stability Developing postural control	Static: standing in parallel bars Bilateral upper extremity support, single upper extremity support, no upper extremity support Anticipatory: directional reaching Forward, diagonal toward stance limb, diagonal away from stance limb Throwing activities: lightweight to heavier weighted balls; forward to diagonal directions; various distances Reactionary: gentle unexpected perturbations; catching activities; lightweight to heavier weighted balls; toward body center, away from body center; various speeds and distances All activities: initially standing on firm surface, progressing to compliant surface
Mobility	Ambulation	Forward progression Changing direction Backing up Sideward stepping	In parallel bars to over ground with appropriate assistive devices Over simple (tile) surface to more challenging (carpet, grass, etc.) surfaces In closed (predictable) environment, to open (unpredictable) environment Over level surfaces, inclines (ascend and descend)
		Stair management	Bilateral railings, to railing and one crutch Low to standard height steps Provide opportunity for family caregiver to practice guarding
		Managing environmental challenges	Opening doors: away from self, toward self, weighted doors, revolving doors Managing thresholds Managing curbs Environmental scanning: avoiding obstacles in walking path Home safety evaluation Crossing the street at times crosswalks
		Fall management	At least: demonstration/observation of chair to floor, stand to floor transition Discussion of risk factors for falls from wheelchair, from standing, on stairs Develop plan of action should fall occur Practice chair-to-floor and stand-to-floor transitions in controlled circumstances

COM, Center of mass; *ROM,* range of motion.

Preprosthetic Outcome Assessment

Current models of health care practice (and reimbursement) require assessment of the efficacy of intervention that has been provided, often by comparing information collected at initial and discharge examinations. A number of tools and measures can be used to assess outcome of intervention in the preprosthetic period; Table 20.9 provides examples of such measures. The selection of the most appropriate tools from among those available can be challenging.[361] The first consideration is to determine which "population" the tool has been designed and validated

ACTIVITY		INDICATOR
Wound Inspection	____	Individual or caregiver is able to independently inspect status of incision and residual limb
	____	Individual or caregiver is able to describe signs of inflammation, infection, dehiscence, bleeding, orecchymosis requiring contact/visit with health professional
	____	Individual or caregiver is able to effectively inspect and care for intact limb
	____	Supervision or assistance by a health professional is necessary for wound inspection and care of either residual limb or intact limb
Residual Limb Care	____	Individual or caregiver is able to change wound dressings effectively, maintaining clean environment
	____	Individual or caregiver is able to appropriately cleanse and care for residual limb
	____	Individual or caregiver is able to safely effectively self-mobilize skin around incision site
	____	Individual or caregiver is able to apply appropriate compression strategy (circle: Ace wrap, removable rigid dressing or semirigid dressing, commercial shrinker garment, other)
	____	Individual with transtibial amputation is able to maintain limb in extended knee position
Mobility	____	Individual is able to move around in bed as needed Level of assistance _____ Equipment used _____
	____	Individual is able to transition from supine to sitting and return Level of assistance _____ Equipment used _____
	____	Individual is able to transfer from bed or chair to wheelchair and return Level of assistance _____ Equipment used _____
	____	Individual is able to transfer sit to single limb standing and return Level of assistance _____ Equipment used _____
	____	Individual is able to transfer to toilet and return Level of assistance _____ Equipment used _____
	____	Individual is able to transfer to shower or tub and return Level of assistance _____ Equipment used _____
Locomotion	____	Individual is able to ambulate on level surfaces using appropriate assistive device Level of assistance _____ Assistive/ambulatory device used _____ Gait pattern _____ Distance _____ Perceived exertion _____
	____	Individual is able to ascend/descend stairs using railing and appropriate assistive device Level of assistance_____ Assistive/ambulatory device used_____ Gait pattern_____ Number of steps_____ Perceived exertion_____
	____	Individual is able to ambulate on inclines and outdoor surfaces Level of assistance_____ Assistive/ambulatory device used_____ Gait pattern_____ Distance_____ Perceived exertion_____

Fig. 20.23 Example of checklist of key patient and family knowledge and skills after lower limb amputation.

for. Some measures have been evaluated for use with older adults who are hospitalized, and others have been evaluated specifically for persons with lower limb amputation.[362,363] The next concern is the domain that the tool evaluates: outcomes can be assessed at the level of body structure and function (e.g., wound healing, limb volume); activity ability or limitation (e.g., ability to ambulate, complete ADLs); or at the level of participation (e.g., quality of life, ability to participate in meaningful social roles).[364,365] The physical therapist must understand the level of measurement of the tool, so as to be able to interpret findings.[366] The various scales and tools may provide *descriptive/categorical* information (e.g., Medical Functional Classification Levels), *ordinal* information (e.g., ranking, severity, FIM scores), or robust *continuous* data (e.g., walking speed, limb circumference, functional reach distances). How the information is collected is also a factor: tools may be based on self-report, observation of performance, or they may require use of precise measurement tools. Given all of these aspects of measurement, it becomes obvious that there is no single "perfect" outcome measure for preprosthetic rehabilitative care; instead the rehabilitation team should collectively

____ Individual is able to ambulate on inclines and outdoor surfaces
Level of assistance_____
Assistive/ambulatory device used_____
Gait pattern_____
Distance_____
Perceived exertion_____
____ Individual/caregiver is able to safely propel wheelchair functional distances
Level of assistance_____
Distance_____
Perceived exertion_____

Self-Care Activities

____ Individual is able to manage clothing during activities of daily living and dressing activities
Level of assistance_____
Positions_____
Adaptive equipment needs_____
Perceived exertion_____
____ Individual is able to manage bathing and grooming activities
Level of assistance_____
Positions_____
Adaptive equipment needs_____
Perceived exertion_____
____ Individual is able to manage key instrumetal activities of daily living
Level of assistance_____
Types of activities_____
Adaptive equipment needs_____
Perceived exertion_____
____ Sufficient and safe transportation is available
Type of transportation_____
Level of assistance_____
Equipment used_____
Perceived exertion_____

Exercise Program

____ Individual and caregiver demonstrate mastery of stretching/flexibility component of program
Positions/activities _____
Assistance required_____
Equipment used_____
Repetitions and frequency_____
____ Individual and caregiver demonstrate mastery of strengthening component of program
Positions/activities _____
Assistance required_____
Equipment used_____
Repetitions and frequency_____
____ Individual and caregiver demonstrate mastery of aerobic conditioning component of program
Positions/activities _____
Assistance required _____
Equipment used_____
Repetitions and frequency_____
____ Individual and caregiver demonstrate mastery of balance/coordination components of program
Positions/activities _____
Assistance required_____
Equipment used_____
Repetitions and frequency_____

Follow-Up Care

____ Plans for return to surgeon for post-op visit are in place
____ Plans for continued rehabilitation care are in place
____ Additional services are in place as appropriate
Nursing _____
Dietician _____
Counseling_____
Home health _____
Others_____

Fig. 20.23, cont'd

select those measures that best meet the needs of the patient, therapeutic goals, and expectations of the practice environment.[367–369] Although it would be wonderful to have professional consensus of the type and scope of data that should be routinely collected, the reality is that outcome measurement in rehabilitation, although not in its infancy, is at least in its troubling teenage years!

What makes a good outcome measure for preprosthetic rehabilitation? The selection of measures should be based on the primary goals of the setting in which care is provided and the specific patient-centered goals that have been defined for the individual: What concepts, functions, or attributes need to be measured? In choosing an outcome measurement tool, we look for evidence of the following:

- *Reliability:* Can we trust the numbers that the tool provides? Is the tool consistent in measurement over time? Do different raters tend to come up with similar scores? How much measurement error might be present in the "score"?

Table 20.9 Examples of Outcome Measures for Preprosthetic Rehabilitation

Tool	Purpose	Level of Measurement	Comments
Activity Measure for Post-Acute Care (AM-PAC)	Assess limitations in three ICF Activity domains: 1. Physical and Movement 2. Personal Care and Instrumental 3. Applied Cognitive	Ordinal (raw score) Interval (standardized score) Paper and computerized instruments available	Physical and Movement and Personal Care and Instrumental subscales have minimal ceiling effect as compared with Functional Independence Measure (FIM)[362,381,382]
Amputee Mobility Predictor—no prosthesis (AMP-noPRO)	Sitting balance, transfers, standing balance, gait, stairs, use of assistive device	Ordinal scale 21 items in 6 domains Score range: 0–42 Performance-based MDD = 3.4	Predicts likelihood of prosthetic use; also used as outcome measure in preprosthetic period[168,171,172]
Barthel Index (BI)	Activities of Daily Living	Ordinal 10 items; weighted ratings 0–100 range Performance based or by interview (self-report)	Developed initially for persons with neurologic problems; applied to those with amputation. Ceiling effect possible as rehabilitation progresses[383,384]
FIM[181–185]	Burden of care, activities of daily living	Ordinal 18 items for 6 categories Score range: 18–126 Performance based or self-report (interview)	Marked ceiling effect; does not reflect community function. May be more appropriate in acute care than for intensive rehabilitation[385–387]
Office of Population Consensus and Surveys Scale (OPCS)	WHO International Classification of Impairments, Disabilities, Handicaps–based measure of functional capacity	Ordinal 108 items over 13 disability categories Weighted overall "Disability Score" (requires computer)	Developed for assessment community-living individuals with disability; useful for inpatient rehabilitation[388]
Patient Generated Index (PGI)	Impact of amputation (or other medical event) on quality of life	Ordinal Respondents identify 5 activities impacted by amputation, rate severity and importance of impact on quality of life Overall score (0–10) mathematically derived Patient Specific Functional Scale: rate current ability to	Can be challenging for patients to understand[389,390]
Patient Specific Functional Scale (PSFS)	Impact of amputation (or other medical event) on functional performance of important activities	Ordinal Respondents identify 3–5 activities impacted by amputation then rate their ability to perform (0–10) Mean of items used as PSFS score MDD: 3–4.5 per item	Effective measuring change for the individual patient[391,392]
Prosthetic Profile of the Amputee (PPA)	Assesses predisposing, enabling, and facilitating factors for eventual prosthetic use	Nominal and ordinal data 38 questions in 6 sections Self-report or interview Requires training to score (computer)	For adults with unilateral amputation Recommended for use in research, rather than clinical settings[383,393,394]
Rivermead Mobility Index (RMI)	Capacity to perform mobility activities	Ordinal 15 Items Forced choice format Self-report or interview	Poor ceiling effects in late preprosthetic and prosthetic rehabilitation[124a,395,396] Recommended for research, rather than clinical settings[396]
Short Form-36 or Short-Form-12	Health-related quality of life	Ordinal 8 subscales over 2 domains (physical and mental functioning) Self-report or interview MDD for SF-36 Health: 17.1 MDD for SF-36 Physical Functioning: 34.2 MDD for SF-36 Physical Role: 26.3	Designed for general population; has not been specifically evaluated for use with persons with amputation[397,398]

Continued

Table 20.9 Examples of Outcome Measures for Preprosthetic Rehabilitation (Continued)

Tool	Purpose	Level of Measurement	Comments
Function Component of the Late Life Function and Disability Instrument (LLFDI)	Function and disability in community-living older adults	Ordinal Interview or self-report 32 questions: rated 1–5 8 additional questions if assistive device is routinely used Raw score transformed to scaled score (0–100) Overall function score Upper extremity subscale Basic lower extremity subscale Advanced lower extremity subscale	High scores = better function Has been used for a variety of conditions and health care settings but not fully evaluated for persons with amputation[399–402]
Walking Speed (self-selected and/or fast)	Overground mobility Proxy for overall health/functional status	Continuous Performance–based MDD range: 0.10–0.2 m/s for most medical diagnoses	Minimal equipment: stopwatch and hallway Use of assistive device during testing possible 4-m walk protocol effective (6–8 m total walkway) comparable to 10 m (20 m total walkway)[403] Norms available for healthy adults by decade of age and gender[404]
2-Minute Walk Test (Brooks)	Cardiovascular endurance	Continuous Performance based Distance (m) covered in 2-min period Minimal Detectable Change: 34.3 meters or 112.5 feet (90% confidence)[171] Excellent correlation with 6-Minute Walk Test[329]	Developed as alternative to exercise stress test for persons with CHF; applied to wide variety of medical diagnoses[405,406]
Wheelchair Skills Test Version 4.1	Assessment of performance and safety of manual wheelchair use	Ordinal Performance or questionnaire 32 items Indoor use Community use Advanced skills Scoring: performance: pass/fail Safety: safe/unsafe	Used to assess ability of users of manual wheelchair, caregivers, and power chairs[407,408]

CHF, Congestive heart failure; *ICF*, International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health; *MDD*, minimal detectable difference; WHO, World Health Organization.

- *Validity:* How well does the tool measure what it intends to measure? Is it designed for patients like the ones that we provide care for? How well do scores on the measure discriminate between persons with and without the problem that the measure attempts to examine?
- *Responsiveness:* How well can this measure capture change? What is the minimal change in status or function that it can predict (minimal detectable difference [MDD] or MDC)? Do we understand what a clinically meaningful change might be (minimal clinically important difference)?[171]

Readers are referred to Portney and Watkins (2009)[409] for more information on the process of measurement and to Stokes (2011)[410] as a resource for evaluating and selecting outcome measures.

Summary

Early rehabilitation in the postoperative, preprosthetic period lays the foundation for prosthetic rehabilitation. Initial emphasis is placed on wound healing and control of edema, essential prerequisites for prosthetic use. Early in the process, the individual with new amputation and family caregivers become actively involved in the rehabilitation process and decision making, assuming responsibility for limb compression, skin care, and desensitization. The therapist is alert for postoperative medical complications such as postural hypotension or deep venous thrombosis, as early mobility begins. The therapist implements strategies to prevent secondary impairments and functional limitations such as further deconditioning and contracture formation. Strengthening exercises targeting the residual limb and overall fitness begin in the acute or subacute setting and continue as an aggressive home program to prepare the individual for prosthetic training. Persons with new amputation are encouraged to become as independent as possible in transfers, single limb gait, and wheelchair mobility, depending on their medical status and functional capability. As the wound heals and edema subsides, the individual with new amputation, family caregivers, therapist, prosthetist, and physician begin discussion about future prosthetic rehabilitation. The postoperative, preprosthetic period is a time of transition in which many individuals mourn the loss of their limb and question their future yet are challenged and encouraged by the possibilities offered by prosthetic replacement of their limb. If the consensus is that prosthetic fitting is not viable, emphasis shifts to development of

wheelchair mobility skills and adaptation of the patient's environment as rehabilitation continues. If the consensus is that prosthetic fitting is likely, rehabilitation during this time focuses on building the physical and psychological resources that will ensure the person with new amputation will become a successful prosthetic user.

References

1. Robinson V, Sansam K, Hirst L, Neumann V. Major lower limb amputation—what, why and how to achieve the best results. *Orthopaed Trauma.* 2010;24(4):276–285.
2. Kratz AL, Williams RM, Turner AP, et al. To lump or to split? Comparing individuals with traumatic and nontraumatic limb loss in the first year after amputation. *Rehabil Psychol.* 2010;55(2):126–138.
3. Livingstone W, Van de Mortel TF, Taylor B. A path of perpetual resilience: Exploring the experience of a diabetes-related amputation through grounded theory. *Contemp Nurse.* 2011;39(1):20–30.
4. Sigford BJ. Paradigm shift for VA amputation care. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2010;47(4):xv–xix.
5. Pasquina PF. DOD paradigm shift in care of service members with major limb loss. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2010;47(4):xi–xiv.
6. U.S. Department of Veteran Affairs, Department of Defense. Clinical Practice Guideline for Rehabilitation of Individuals with Lower Limb Amputation. In: *Veterans Health Administration, Office of Quality & Performance, Evidence Review Subgroup*: 2017. Revised September.
7. Wamsley C. Pre- and post–operative care: readiness for fitting. In: Murphy D, ed. *Fundamentals of Amputation Care and Prosthetics.* 3rd ed. New York, NY: Demos Medical Publishing; 2014:23–35.
8. Richardson C, Kulkarni J. A review of the management of phantom limb pain: challenges and solutions. *J Pain Res.* 2017;10:1861–1870.
9. Melsom H, Danjoux G. Perioperative care for lower limb amputation in vascular disease. *Contin Educ Anaesth Crit Care Pain.* 2011;11(5):162–166.
10. Hordacre B, Birks V, Quinn S, Barr C, Patritti BL, Crotty M. Physiotherapy rehabilitation for individuals with lower limb amputation: a 15-year clinical series. *Physiother Res Int.* 2013;18(2):70–80.
11. Cohen JM, Edelstein JE, Bayona C, et al. Limb Deficiency. In: *Medical Aspects of Disability for the Rehabilitation Professionals.* 5th ed. New York, NY: Springer; 2017:383–414.
12. Mundell B, Kremers HM, Visscher S, Hoppe K, Kaufman K. Predictors of receiving a prosthesis for adults with above-knee amputations in a well-defined population. *PM R.* 2016;8(8):730–737.
13. McFarland LV, Choppa AJ, Betz K, et al. Resources for wounded warriors with major traumatic limb loss. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2010;47(3):1–13.
14. Dillingham TR, Yacub JN, Pezzin LE. Determinants of postacute care discharge destination after dysvascular lower limb amputation. *PM R.* 2011;3(4):336–344.
15. Coslick A, Zorowitz RD, Wright S. Clinical excellence in physical medicine and rehabilitation: examples from the published literature. *J Rehabil Med.* 2016;48:253–258.
16. *Principles of physical therapist patient and client management. Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org/content/1/SEC2.body. Accessed 3.27.18.
17. Lower Limb Amputation: Working Together. *National Confidential Enquiry Into Patient Outcome and Death.* London, UK: Vascular Society of Great Britain; November 14, 2014.
18. Meier R. Principles of Contemporary Amputation Rehabilitation in the United States. *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation Clinics.* 2013;25(1):29–33.
19. Physical Therapist Patient and Client Management: The Elements of the Patient/Client Management Model. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org/content/1/SEC2.body#F6 Accessed 3.27.18.
20. O'Sullivan S. Clinical Decision Making. In: O'Sullivan S, Schmitz TJ, Fulk G, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F.A.Davis Company; 2014:1–29.
21. Nivet MA, Fair M. Defining Diversity in Quality Care. In: Martin M, Heron S, Moreno-Walton L, Jones A, eds. *Diversity and Inclusion in Quality Patient Care.* Cham: Springer; 2016.
22. Peroni F, Cornaggia CM, Cerri CG, Perin C. Distortion of body image following lower limb amputation: implications for comprehensive rehabilitation. *Current Advances in Neurology and Neurological Disorders.* 2017;1:1–6.
23. Maroukis BL, Shauver MJ, Nishizuka T, Hirata H, Chung K. Cross-cultural variation in preference for replantation or revision amputation: societal and surgeon views. *Injury, Int J Care Injured.* 2016;47:818–823.
24. Reichman JP, Bartman KR. An integrative review of peer support for patients undergoing major limb amputation. *J Vasc Nur.* 2018;36:34–39.
25. Arnett JJ. *Human Development: A Cultural Approach.* New York, NY: Pearson; 2012.
26. Lusardi MM. Older adults and their families. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 3rd ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby; 2012:207–227.
27. Anderson SA, Sabatelli RN. *Family Interaction: A Multigenerational Developmental Perspective.* 5th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall; 2010.
28. Ainsworth E, de Jonge D. *An Occupational Therapist's Guide to Home Modification Practice.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2011.
29. Couture M, Desrosiers J, Caron CD. Cognitive appraisal and perceived benefits of dysvascular lower limb amputation: a longitudinal study. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr.* 2011;52(1):5–11.
30. Hevey D, Ryall N, O'keeffe F. Sex after amputation: The relationships between sexual functioning, body image, mood and anxiety in persons with a lower limb amputation. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2018;40(14):1663–1670.
31. Akyol Y, Tander B, Goktepe AS, Safaz I, Kuru O, Tan A. Quality of life in patients with lower limb amputation: does it affect post-amputation pain, functional status, emotional status and perception of body image? *J Musculoskelet Pain.* 2013;21(4):334–340.
32. Gillis A, MacDonald B. Deconditioning in the hospitalized elderly. *Can Nurse.* 2005;101(6):16–20.
33. Williams DR, Priest N, Anderson N. Understanding associations between race, socioeconomic status and health: patterns and prospects. *Health Psychol.* 2016 Apr;35(4):407–411.
34. Stern JR, Wong CK, Yerovinkina M, Spindler SJ, See AS, Panjaki S, Loven SL, D'Andrea Jr. RF, Nowygrod, R. A meta-analysis of long-term mortality and associated risk factors following lower extremity amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg.* July 2017;42: 322-327.
35. Landry GJ, Silverman DA, Liem TK, et al. Predictors of healing and functional outcome following transmetatarsal amputations. *Arch Surg.* 2011;146(9):1005–1009.
36. Yuan Z, Defalco FJ, Ryan PB, et al. Risk of lower extremity amputations in people with type 2 diabetes mellitus treated with sodium-glucose co-transporter-2 inhibitors in the USA: a retrospective cohort study. *Diabetes Obes Metab.* 2018;20:582–589.
37. Khalil H, Cullen M, Chambers H, Calloll M, Walker J. Elements affecting wound healing time; an evidence based analysis. *Wound Repair Regen.* 2015;23(4):550–556.
38. Jacobson LK, Johnson MB, Dedhia RD, Nikman-Bienia S, Wong AK Impaired wound healing after radiation therapy: A systematic review of pathogenesis and treatment. *JPRAS.* September 2017;13:92-105.
39. Lopez M, Martin M. Medical management of the acute radiation syndrome. *Rep Pract Oncol Radiother.* 2008;5(2):246–257.
40. Remes L, Isoaho R, Vahlberg T, et al. Predictors for institutionalization and prosthetic ambulation after major lower extremity amputation during an eight-year follow-up. *Aging Clin Exp Res.* 2009;21(2):129–135.
41. Richardson J, Letts L, Chan D, et al. Rehabilitation in a primary care setting for persons with chronic illness—a randomized controlled trial. *Prim Health Care Res Dev.* 2010;11(4):382–395.
42. Academy of Acute Care Physical Therapy. Lab Values Interpretation Resource. In: *APTA*: 2017. http://c.ymcdn.com/sites/www.acutept.org/resource/resmgr/docs/2017-Lab-Values-Resource.pdf. Accessed 2 April 2018.
43. Wells CL, Walker M. Evaluation of the acute, medically complex patient. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatr J Phys Ther.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 2012:153–182.
44. Billek-Sawhney B, Wells CL. Oncology implications for exercise and rehabilitation. *Acute Care Perspect.* 2009;18(4):12–19.
45. Chapman S. Pain management in patients following limb amputation. *Nurs Stand.* 2011;25(19):35–40.

46. Ketz AK. Pain management in the traumatic amputee. *Crit Care Nurs Clin North Am.* 2008;20(1):51–57.
47. Derman W. Antihypertensive medications and exercise. *Int Sport Med J.* 2008;9(1):32–38.
48. Di Stasi SL, MacLeod TD, Winters JD, Binder-Macleod SA. Effects of statins on skeletal muscle: a perspective for physical therapists. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90(10):1530–1542.
49. Green S, Askew CD, Walker PJ. Effect of type 2 diabetes mellitus on exercise intolerance and the physiological responses to exercise in peripheral arterial disease. *Diabetologia.* 2007;50(4):859–866.
50. Knight J, Nigam Y, Jones A. Effects of bedrest 1: cardiovascular, respiratory and haematological systems. *Nurs Times.* 2009;105(21):16–20.
51. Mason SE, Noel-Storr A, Ritchie CW. The impact of general and regional anesthesia on the incidence of post-operative cognitive dysfunction and post-operative delirium: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *J Alzheimers Dis.* 2010;22(suppl 3):67–79.
52. Boissonnault WG, Umphred DA. Differential diagnosis phase 1: Medical screening for the therapist. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby; 2013:163–178.
53. Marcantonio ER. In the clinic delirium. *Ann Intern Med.* 2011;154 (11):ITC61. –ITC6-15.
54. *Physical Therapy Examination and Evaluation. Focus on Tests and Measures. Guide to Physical Therapist Practice.* Alexandria, VA: American Physical Therapy Association. http://guidetoptpractice.apta.org/content/1/SEC4.body. Accessed 3.27.18.
55. Institute for Clinical Systems Improvement. *Pain: Assessment,* Non-Opioid Treatment Approaches *and Opioid Management.* 8th ed. https://www.icsi.org/guidelines__more/catalog_guidelines_and_more/catalog_guidelines/ catalog_neurological_guidelines/pain/; August 2017. Accessed 3.27.18.
56. Pasero C, McCaffrey M. *Pain Assessment and Pharmacologic Management.* St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 2011.
57. Ciccone CD. Opioid analgesics. In: Ciccone CD, ed. *Pharmacology in Rehabilitation.* 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: FA Davis; 2016:201–218.
58. Ciccone CD. Patient-controlled analgesia. In: Ciccone CD, ed. *Pharmacology in Rehabilitation.* 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: FA Davis; 2016:261–276.
59. Casale R, Alaa L, Mallick M, Ring H. Phantom limb related phenomena and their rehabilitation after lower limb amputation. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med.* 2009;45(4):559–566.
60. Richardson C, Glenn S, Nurmikko T, Horgan M. Incidence of phantom phenomena including phantom limb pain 6 months after major lower limb amputation in patients with peripheral vascular disease. *Clin J Pain.* 2006;22(4):353–358.
61. Schley MT, Wilms P, Toepfner S, et al. Painful and nonpainful phantom and stump sensations in acute traumatic amputees. *J Trauma.* 2008;65(4):858–864.
62. Probstner D, Thuler LC, Ishikawa NM, Alvarenga RM. Phantom limb phenomena in cancer amputees. *Pain Pract.* 2010;10(3):249–256.
63. Rayegani SM, Aryanmehr A, Soroosh MR, Baghbani M. Phantom pain, phantom sensation, and spine pain in bilateral lower limb amputees: results of a national survey of iraq-iran war victims' health status. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2010;22(3):162–165.
64. Kirker SGB, Ritchie JFS. Amputations, Protheses, and Rehabilitation of the foot and ankle. In: Robinson A, Brodsky JW, Negrine JP, eds. *Core Topics in Foot & Ankle Surgery.* New York, NY: Cambridge University Press; 2018:82–99.
65. Wolff A, Vanduynhoven E, van Kleef M, et al. Phantom pain. *Pain Pract.* 2011;11(4):403–413.
66. Neil MJE. Pain after amputation. *BJA Education.* March 2016;16(3): 107–112.
67. Tsui PY, Chu MC. Ketamine: an old drug revitalized in pain medicine. *BJA Education.* March 2017;17(3):84–87.
68. Wilson JA, Nimmo AF, Fleetwood-Walker SM, Colvin LA. A randomized double blind trial of the effect of pre-emptive epidural ketamine on persistent pain after lower limb amputation. *Pain.* 2008;135(1/2): 108–118.
69. Borghi B, D'Addabbo M, White PF, et al. The use of prolonged peripheral neural blockade after lower extremity amputation: the effect on symptoms associated with phantom limb syndrome. *Anesth Analg.* 2010;111(5):1308–1315.
70. Subedi B, Grossberg GT. Phantom limb pain: mechanisms and treatment approaches. *Pain Res Treat.* 2011;2011:864605.
71. Giummarra MJ, Moseley GL. Phantom limb pain and bodily awareness: current concepts and future directions. *Curr Opin Anaesthesiol.* 2011;24(5):524–531.
72. Lee DJ, Veneri DA. Development and acceptability testing of decision trees for self-management of prosthetic socket fit in adults with lower limb amputation. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2017;40(9):1066–1071.
73. Arwert HJ, van Doorn-Loogman MH, Koning J, et al. Residual-limb quality and functional mobility 1 year after transtibial amputation caused by vascular insufficiency. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2007;44(5): 717–722.
74. Standard of Care. *Lower Extremity Amputation.* Boston, MA: The Brigham and Women's Hospital, Department of Rehabilitation Services; 2011.
75. Sanders JE, Fatone S. Residual limb volume change: systematic review of measurement and management. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48(8):949–986.
76. de Boer-Wilzing VG, Bolt A, Geertzen JH, et al. Variation in results of volume measurements of stumps of lower limb amputees: a comparison of 4 methods. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2011;92 (6):941–946.
77. Geil MD. Consistency, precision, and accuracy of optical and electromagnetic shape-capturing systems for digital measurement of residual-limb anthropometrics of persons with transtibial amputation. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2007;44(4):515–524.
78. Lyon C, Beck M. Skin problems in amputees. In: Goldsmith LA, Katz SI, Gilchrest BA, Paller AS, Leffell DJ, Wolff K, eds. *Fitzpatrick's Dermatology in General Medicine.* 8th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill; 2012.
79. Bowker JH. Transtibial amputation: surgical management. In: Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:485–492.
80. McIntosh J, Earnshaw JJ. Antibiotic prophylaxis for the prevention of infection after major limb amputation. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2009;37(6):696–703.
81. Sadat U, Chaudhuri A, Hayes PD, et al. Five day antibiotic prophylaxis for major lower limb amputation reduces wound infection rates and the length of in-hospital stay. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2008;35(1): 75–78.
82. Tintle SM, Forsberg JA, Keeling JJ, et al. Lower extremity combat-related amputations. *J Surg Orthop Adv.* 2010;19(1):35–43.
83. Lim TS, Finlayson A, Thorpe JM, et al. Outcomes of a contemporary amputation series. *ANZ J Surg.* 2006;76(5):300–305.
84. Carney ML, Ullrich P, Esselman P. Early unplanned transfers from inpatient rehabilitation. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2006;85(5): 453–462.
85. Bates-Jensen BM, Woolfolk N. Acute surgical wound management. In: Sussman C, Bates-Jensen BM, eds. *WoundCare: A Collaborative Practice Model.* 3rd ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer–Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2007:322–335.
86. Stasik CN, Berceli SA, Nelson PR, et al. Functional outcome after redo below-knee amputation. *World J Surg.* 2008;32(8):1823–1826.
87. Smith E, Ryall N. Residual limb osteomyelitis: a case series from a national prosthetic centre. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(21): 1785–1789.
88. VanRoss ER, Johnson S, Abbott CA. Effects of early mobilization on unhealed dysvascular transtibial amputation stumps: a clinical trial. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;90(4):610–617.
89. Kapp SL, Fergason JR. Transtibial amputation: prosthetic management. In: Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:493–508.
90. Smith DG, Berke GM. Standards of care in post operative management of the lower extremity amputee: Proceedings of the Clinical Standards of Practice Consensus Conference. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2004;16(3 S): 6–12.
91. Spruit, van Eijk M, van der Linde H, Buijck B, Geurts A, Zuidema S, Koopmans R. Predicting prosthetic use in elderly patients after major lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2012;3691:45–52.
92. Yu JC, Lam K, Nettel-Aguirre A, et al. Incidence and risk factors of falling in the postoperative lower limb amputee while on the surgical ward. *PM R.* 2010;2(10):926–934.
93. Jensen PS, Green SM, Anderson A, Poulsen I. Perceptions and experiences of nutritional care following the overwhelming experience of lower extremity amputation: a qualitative study. *J Clin Nurs.* March 2018;27(5-6):808–819.
94. Klaphake S, et al. Mortality after major amputation in elderly patients with critical limb ischemia. *Clin Interv Aging.* 2017;12:1985–1992.

95. Robertshaw D, Robertshaw L. What role do we play post-amputation? *Diabetic Foot J.* 2003;6(1):43–44. 46–77.
96. Evans KK, Attinger CE, Al-Attar A, et al. The importance of limb preservation in the diabetic population. *J Diabetes Complications.* 2011;25 (4):227–231.
97. Perry J. Amputee gait: normal and abnormal. In: Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:69–80.
98. van Velzen AD, Nederhand MJ, Emmelot CH, Ijzerman MJ. Early treatment of trans-tibial amputees: retrospective analysis of early fitting and elastic bandaging. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2005;29(1):3–12.
99. Gottschalk F. Transfemoral amputation: surgical management. In: Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:525–536.
100. Gailey R, Allen K, Castles J, Kucharik J, Roeder M. Review of secondary physical conditions associated with lower limb amputation and long-term prosthesis use. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2008;45(1):15–29.
101. Uellendahl JE. Bilateral lower limb amputation: prosthetic management. In: Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:631–644.
102. Agrawal V, O'Toole C, Gaunaurd I, Gailey R. Analysis of weight distribution strategies in unilateral transtibial amputees during stand-to-sit activities. *Ergonomics.* 2015;28:121–129.
103. Magee DJ. Knee. In: Magee DJ, ed. *Orthopedic Physical Assessment*. 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Saunders; 2014:765–887.
104. Avers D, Brown M. *Daniels and Worthingham's Muscle Testing: Techniques of Manual Examination and Performance Testing.* 10th ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Saunders; 2018.
105. Krebs DE, Scarborough DM, McGibbon CA. Functional vs. strength training in disabled elderly outpatients. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2007;86(2):93–103.
106. Marimuthu K, Murton AJ, Greenhaff PL. Mechanisms regulating muscle mass during disuse atrophy and rehabilitation in humans. *J Appl Physiol.* 2011;110(2):555–560.
107. O'Sullivan SB, Portney LG. Assessment of motor function: motor control and motor learning. In: O'Sullivan S, Schmitz TJ, Fulk G, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F.A.Davis Company; 2014:161–205.
108. Bales JG, Meals R. Peripheral neuropathy of the upper extremity: medical comorbidity that confounds common orthopedic pathology. *Orthopedics.* 2009;32(10):758–765.
109. May O, Arildsen H. Long-term predictive power of simple function tests for cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: a population-based study. *Acta Diabetol.* 2011;48(4):311–316.
110. Pop-Busui R. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: a clinical perspective. *Diabetes Care.* 2010;33(2):434–441.
111. Umphred DA, Thompson MH, West TM. The limbic system: influence over motor control and learning. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby; 2013:99–140.
112. Borg G, Domserius M, Kaijser L. Psychophysical scaling with applications in physical work and the perception of exertions. *Scand J Work Environ Health.* 1990;16(suppl 1):55–58.
113. Borg GA. Psychosocial bases of perceived exertions, basis of perceived exertion. *Med Sci Sports Exerc.* 1982;14(5):377–387.
114. Erjavec T, Presern-Strukelj M, Burger H. The diagnostic importance of exercise testing in developing appropriate rehabilitation programmes for patients following transfemoral amputation. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med.* 2008;44(2):133–139.
115. Vestering MM, Schoppen T, Dekker R, et al. Development of an exercise testing protocol for patients with a lower limb amputation: results of a pilot study. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2005;28(3):237–244.
116. Chin T, Sawamura S, Fujita H, et al. %VO2max as an indicator of prosthetic rehabilitation outcome after dysvascular amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2002;26(1):44–49.
117. Yosefy C. Diabetic heart and the cardiovascular surgeon. *Cardiovasc Hematol Disord Drug Targets.* 2008;8(2):147–152.
118. Belmont PJ, Davey S, Orr JD, et al. Risk factors for 30-day postoperative complications and mortality after below-knee amputation: a study of 2,911 patients from the national surgical quality improvement program. *J Am Coll Surg.* 2011;213(3):370–378.
119. Aragon-Sanchez J, Hernandez-Herrero MJ, Lazaro-Martinez JL, et al. In-hospital complications and mortality following major lower extremity amputations in a series of predominantly diabetic patients. *Int J Low Extrem Wounds.* 2010;9(1):16–23.
120. Avers D, Williams AK. Cognition in the aging adult. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. 3rd ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby; 2012:121–152.
121. Schulte OJ, Stephens J, Ann J. Aging, dementia, and disorders of cognition. In: Umphred DA, Lazaro RT, Roller ML, Burton GU, eds. *Neurological Rehabilitation.* 6th ed St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Mosby; 2013:835–862.
122. Tariq S, Tumosa N, Chibnall J, Perry M, Morley J. Comparison of the Saint Louis University Mental Status examination and the Mini-Mental State Examination for detecting dementia and mild neurocognitive disorder - a pilot study. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2006;14 (11):900–910.
123. Stewart S, O'Riley A, Edelstein B, Gould C. A preliminary comparison of three cognitive screening instruments in long term care: the MMSE, SLUMS, and MoCA. *Clin Gerontol.* 2011;35(1):57–75.
124. Balasundaram B, Holmes J. Delirium in vascular surgery. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2007;34(2):131–134.
125. Holsinger T, Plassman B, Stechuchak K, et al. Stability of diagnoses of cognitive impairment, not dementia in a veterans affairs primary care population. Jun*J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2015;63(6):1105–1111.
126. Singh R, Ripley D, Pentland B, et al. Depression and anxiety symptoms after lower limb amputation: the rise and fall. *Clin Rehabil.* 2009;23(3):281–286.
127. Ide M. The association between depressive mood and pain amongst individuals with limb amputations. *Eur J Trauma Emerg Surg.* 2011;37(2):191–195.
128. Vase L, Nikolajsen L, Christensen B, et al. Cognitive-emotional sensitization contributes to wind-up-like pain in phantom limb pain patients. *Pain.* 2011;152(1):157–162.
129. Copuroglu C, Ozcan M, Yilmaz B, et al. Acute stress disorder and post-traumatic stress disorder following traumatic amputation. *Acta Orthop Belg.* 2010;76(1):90–93.
130. Cheung E, Alvaro R, Colotla VA. Psychological distress in workers with traumatic upper or lower limb amputations following industrial injuries. *Rehabil Psychol.* 2003;48(2):109–112.
131. Cavanagh SR, Shin LM, Karamouz N, Rauch SL. Psychiatric and emotional sequelae of surgical amputation. *Psychosomatics.* 2006;47(6):459–464.
132. Friedman B, Heisel MJ, Delavan RL. Psychometric properties of the 15-item geriatric depression scale in functionally impaired, cognitively intact, community-dwelling elderly primary care patients. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2005;53(9):1570–1576.
133. Schoppen T, Boonstra A, Groothoff JW, et al. Physical, mental, and social predictors of functional outcome in unilateral lower limb amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2003;84(6):803–811.
134. Behel JM, Rybarczyk B, Elliott TR, et al. The role of perceived vulnerability in adjustment to lower extremity amputation: a preliminary investigation. *Rehabil Psychol.* 2002;47(1):92–105.
135. Pritchard MJ. Using the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale in surgical patients. *Nurs Stand.* 2011;25(34):35–41.
136. Desmond DM, MacLachlan M. The factor structure of the hospital anxiety and depression scale in older individuals with acquired amputations: a comparison of four models using confirmatory factor analysis. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2005;20(4):344–349.
137. Pachana NA, Byrne GJ, Siddle H, et al. Development and validation of the Geriatric Anxiety Inventory. *Int Psychogeriatr.* 2007;19(1): 103–114.
138. Rafnsson SB, Deary IJ, Fowkes FG. Peripheral arterial disease and cognitive function. *Vasc Med.* 2009;14(1):51–61.
139. Phelps LF, Williams RM, Raichle KA, et al. The importance of cognitive processing to adjustment in the 1st year following amputation. *Rehabil Psychol.* 2008;53(1):28–38.
140. O'Neill BR, Evans JJ. Memory and executive function predict mobility rehabilitation outcome after lower limb amputation. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(13):1083–1091.
141. Sansam K, Neumann V, O'Connor R, Bhakta B. Predicting walking ability following lower limb amputation: a systematic review of the literature. *J Rehabil Med.* 2009;41(8):593–603.
142. Taylor SM, Kalbaugh CA, Blackhurst DW, et al. Preoperative clinical factors predict postoperative functional outcomes after major lower

limb amputation: an analysis of 553 consecutive patients. *J Vasc Surg.* 2005;42(2):227–235.
143. Resnik B, Avers D. Motivation and patient education. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 2012:183–206.
144. Dhital A, Pey T, Stanford MR. Visual loss and falls: a review. *Eye (Lond)*. 2010;24(9):1437–1446.
145. Tideiksaar R. Sensory impairment and fall risk. *Generations.* 2002–2003;26(4):22–27.
146. Lord SR, Menz HB, Tiedemann A. A physiological profile approach to falls risk assessment and prevention. *Phys Ther.* 2003;83(3): 237–252.
147. Servat JJ, Risco M, Nakasato YR, Bernardina CR. Visual impairment in the elderly: impact on functional ability and quality of life. *Clin Geriatr.* 2011;19(7):49–56.
148. Dillon CF, Gu Q, Hoffman HJ, Ko CW. Vision, hearing, balance, and sensory impairment in Americans aged 70 years and over: United States, 1999–2006. In: *NCHS Data Brief*: 2010:1–8. Apr.
149. Wharton MA. Environmental design: accommodating sensory changes in the older adult. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 2012:104–120.
150. Pratt SR, Kuller L, Talbott EO. Prevalence of hearing loss in black and white elders: results of the cardiovascular health study. *J Speech Lang Hear Res.* 2009;52(4):973–989.
151. Middleton A, Niruban A, Girling G, Myint PK. Communicating in a healthcare setting with people who have hearing loss. *BMJ.* 2010;341(7775):726–729.
152. Mold JW, Vesely SK, Keyl BA, et al. The prevalence, predictors, and consequences of peripheral sensory neuropathy in older patients. *J Am Board Fam Pract.* 2004;17(5):309–318.
153. Andrews KL. The at-risk foot: what to do before and after amputation. *J Vasc Nurs.* 2011;29(3):120–123.
154. Chui KK, Schmitz TJ. Examination of sensory function. In: O'Sullivan S, Schmitz TJ, Fulk G, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F.A.Davis Company; 2014:87–123.
155. Fuller G. *Neurological Examination Made Easy.* 5th Ed. Edinburgh, UK: Churchill Livingstone; 2013.
156. Hamill R, Carson S, Dorahy M. Experiences of psychosocial adjustment within 18 months of amputation: an interpretative phenomenological analysis. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010;32(9):729–740.
157. Ward SR. Biomechanical applications to joint structure and function. In: Levangie PK, Norkin CC, eds. *Joint Structure and Function*. 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: FA Davis; 2011.
158. Munin MC, Espejo-DeGuzman MC, Boninger ML, et al. Predictive factors for successful early prosthetic ambulation among lower limb amputees. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2001;38(4):379–384.
159. Sansam K, Neumann V, O'Connor R, Bhakta B. Predicting walking ability following lower limb amputation: a systematic review of the literature. *J Rehabil Med.* 2009;41(8):593–603.
160. May BJ. Amputation. In: O'Sullivan S, Schmitz TJ, Fulk G, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F.A.Davis Company; 2014:1000–1030.
161. Wong CK, Ehrlich JE, Ersing JC, Maroldi NJ, Stevenson CE, Varca MJ. Exercise programs to improve gait performance in people with lower limb amputation: a systematic review. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2016;40 (1):8–17.
162. McGuire TL. Performance-based measures following transtibial amputation: a case report. *Top Geriatr Rehabil.* 2004;20(4):262–272.
163. Burger H, Marincek C. Functional testing of elderly subjects after lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2001;25(2): 102–107.
164. Miller WC, Deathe AB, Speechley M. Psychometric properties of the Activities Specific Balance Confidence Scale among individuals with a lower limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2003;84(5): 656–661.
165. Gremeaux V, Damak S, Troisgros O, et al. Selecting a test for the clinical assessment of balance and walking capacity at the definitive fitting state after unilateral amputation: a comparative study. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 2012;36(4):415–422.
166. Alghwiri AA, Whitney SL. Balance and falls. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *Geriatric Physical Therapy*. 3rd ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 2012:331–353.
167. Molina-Rueda F, Molero-Sánchez A, Carratalá-Tejada M, Cuesta-Gómez A, Miangolarra-Page JC, Alguacil-Diego IM. Limits of stability in patients with vascular (due to diabetes) and nonvascular unilateral transtibial amputation: a cross-sectional study. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2017;40(3):227–231.
168. Gailey RS, Roach KE, Applegate EB, et al. The amputee mobility predictor: an instrument to assess determinants of the lower limb amputee's ability to ambulate. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83(5):613–627.
169. Spaan MH, Vrieling AH, van de Berg P, Dijkstra PU, van Keeken HG. Predicting mobility outcome in lower limb amputees with motor ability tests used in early rehabilitation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2017 Apr;41(2):171–177.
170. Kaluf B. Evaluation of mobility in persons with limb loss using the amputee mobility predictor and the prosthesis evaluation questionnaire-mobility subscale: a six-month retrospective chart review. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2014;26:70–76.
171. Resnik L, Borgia M. Reliability of outcome measures for people with lower limb amputations: distinguishing true change from statistical error. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(4):555–565.
172. Gailey RS. Predictive outcome measures versus functional outcome measures in the lower limb amputee. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2006; Proceedings 6. P51–P60.
173. Raya M, Gailey R, Gaunaurd I, Ganyard H, Knapp-Wood J, et al. Amputee Mobility Predictor-Bilateral: a performance-based measure of mobility for people with bilateral lower-limb loss. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2013;50(7):961–968.
174. Hafner BJ, Gaunaurd IA, Morgan SJ, Amtmann D, Salem R, Gailey RS. Construct validity of the Prosthetic Limb Users Survey of Mobility (PLUS-M) in adults with lower limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2017;98:277–285.
175. Gailey R, Scoville C, Gaunaurd IA, et al. Construct validity of the Comprehensive High-level Activity Mobility Predictor (CHAMP) for service members with traumatic lower limb loss. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2013;50(7):919–930.
176. Gailey R, Gaunaurd IA, Raya MA, et al. The development and reliability testing of the Comprehensive High-level Activity Mobility Predictor (CHAMP) in service members with traumatic lower limb loss. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2013;50(7):905–918.
177. Lindsey C. Impaired posture. In: Guccione AA, Avers D, Wong RA, eds. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 3rd ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 2012:292–315.
178. Gailey R, Allen K, Castles J, et al. Review of secondary physical conditions associated with lower limb amputation and long-term prosthesis use. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2008;45(1):15–29.
179. Smith CC, Comisky RN. A study of bone mineral density in lower limb amputees at a national prosthetics center. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2011;1:14–20.
180. Sherk VD, Bemben MG, Bemben DA. BMD and bone geometry in transtibial and transfemoral amputees. *J Bone Miner Res.* 2008;23 (9):1449–1457.
181. Granger CV, Hamilton BB, Linacre JM, et al. Performance profiles of the functional independence measure. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 1993;72(2):84–89.
182. Masedo AI, Hanley M, Jensen MP, et al. Reliability and validity of a self-report FIM (FIM-SR) in persons with amputation or spinal cord injury and chronic pain. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;84(3): 167–179.
183. Passalent LA, Tyas JE, Jaglal SB, Cott CA. The FIM as a measure of change in function after discharge from inpatient rehabilitation: a Canadian perspective. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2011;33(7):579–588.
184. De-Rosende Celeiro I, Sanjuan LS. Santos-del-Riego S Activities of daily living in people with lower limb amputation: outcomes of an intervention to reduce dependence in pre-prosthetic phase. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2017;39(18):1799–1806.
184a. Paterson M, Mets T. Environmental assessment: home, community, and work. In: Cameron M, Monroe L eds. *Physical Rehabilitaiton: Evidence-Based Examination, Evaluation, and Intervention*. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Saunders; 2007. Ch 35.
185. Belmont PJ, Davey S, Orr JD, et al. Risk factors for 30-day postoperative complications and mortality after below-knee amputation: a study of 2,911 patients from the national surgical quality improvement program. *J Am Coll Surg.* 2011;213(3):370–378.
186. Harris AM, Althausen PL, Kellam J, et al. Complications following limb-threatening lower extremity trauma. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2009;23(1):1–6.
187. van Netten JJ, Fortington LV, Hinchliffe RJ, Hijmans JM. Early post-operative mortality after major lower limb amputation: a systematic review of population and regional based studies. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2016;51(2):248–257.

188. D'Ayala M, Huzar T, Briggs W, et al. Blood transfusion and its effect on the clinical outcomes of patients undergoing major lower extremity amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2010;24(4):468–473.
189. Rizvi AA, Chillag SA, Chillag KJ. Perioperative management of diabetes and hyperglycemia in patients undergoing orthopaedic surgery. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2010;18(7):426–435.
190. Aragón-Sánchez J, Hernández-Herrero MJ, Lázaro-Martínez JL, et al. In-hospital complications and mortality following major lower extremity amputations in a series of predominantly diabetic patients. *Int J Low Extrem Wounds.* 2010;9(1):16–23.
191. Bates B, Stineman MG, Reker DM, et al. Risk factors associated with mortality in veteran population following transtibial or transfemoral amputation. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2006;43(7):917–928.
192. Kobayashi L, Inaba K, Barmparas G, et al. Traumatic limb amputations at a level I trauma center. *Eur J Trauma Emerg Surg.* 2011;37 (1):67–72.
193. Huang ME, Johns JS, White J, Sanford K. Venous thromboembolism in a rehabilitation setting after major lower extremity amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;86(1):73–78.
194. Ploeg AJ, Lardenoye JW, Vracken-Peeters MP, Breslau PJ. Contemporary series of morbidity and mortality after lower limb amputation. *Eur J Vasc Endovasc Surg.* 2005;29(6):633–637.
194a. Gardiner MD, Faux S, Jones LE. Inter-observer reliability of clinical outcome measures in a lower limb amputee population. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2002;24:219–225.
195. Nicolle LE. Catheter-related urinary tract infection. *Drugs Aging.* 2005;22(8):627–639.
196. Lim TS, Finlayson A, Thorpe JM, et al. Outcomes of a contemporary amputation series. *ANZ J Surg.* 2006;76(5):300–305.
197. Tintle SM, Keeling JJ, Forsberg JA, et al. Operative complications of combat-related transtibial amputations: a comparison of the modified Burgess and modified Ertl tibiofibular synostosis techniques. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2011;93-A(11):1016–1021.
198. Levenhagen K, Peterson C. Infectious disease. In: Goodman CC, Fuller K, eds. *Pathology: Implications for the Physical Therapist*. 4th ed. St. Louis, MO: Elsevier Saunders; 2015:318–365.
199. Awad SS. State-of-the-art therapy for severe sepsis and multisystem organ dysfunction. *Am J Surg.* 2003;186(5A):23S–30S.
200. Jette AM. Physical disablement concepts for physical therapy research and practice. *Phys Ther.* 1994;74(5):380–386.
201. Masala C, Petretto DR. From disablement to enablement: conceptual models of disability in the 20th century. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2008;30 (17):1233–1244.
202. Roush SE, Sharby N. Disability reconsidered: the paradox of physical therapy. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(12):1715–1727.
203. Jette AM. Toward a common language for function, disability, and health. *Phys Ther.* 2006;86(5):726–734.
204. Sansam K, Neumann V, O'Connor R, Bhakta B. Predicting walking ability following lower limb amputation: a systematic review of the literature. *J Rehabil Med.* 2009;41(8):593–603.
205. Munin MC, Espejo-De Guzman MC, Boninger ML, et al. Predictive factors for successful early prosthetic ambulation among lower limb amputees. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2001;38(4):379–384.
206. Kalbaugh CA, Taylor SM, Kalbaugh BA, et al. Does obesity predict functional outcome in the dysvascular amputee? *Am Surg.* 2006;72(8):707–713.
207. Taylor SM, Kalbaugh CA, Blackhurst DW, et al. Preoperative clinical factors predict postoperative functional outcomes after major lower limb amputation: an analysis of 553 consecutive patients. *J Vasc Surg.* 2005;42(2):227–235.
208. Raya MA, Gailey RS, Fiebert IM, Roach KE. Impairment variables predicting activity limitation in individuals with lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2010;34(1):73–84.
209. Larner S, Van Ross E, Hale C. Do psychological measures predict the ability of lower limb amputees to learn to use a prosthesis? *Clin Rehabil.* 2003;17(5):493–498.
210. Wasiak K. Analysis of prognostic factors for locomotion in patients after amputation of the tibia performed due to atherosclerotic critical limb ischemia. *Ortop Traumatol Rehabil.* 2005;7 (4):411–417.
211. Icks A, Scheer M, Morbach S, et al. Time-dependent impact of diabetes on mortality in patients after major lower extremity amputation: survival in a population-based 5-year cohort in Germany. *Diabetes Care.* 2011;34(6):1350–1354.
212. Faglia E, Clerici G, Caminiti M, et al. Mortality after major amputation in diabetic patients with critical limb ischemia who did and did not undergo previous peripheral revascularization Data of a cohort study of 564 consecutive diabetic patients. *J Diabetes Complications.* 2010;24(4):265–269.
213. Moxey PW, Hofman D, Hinchliffe RJ, et al. Epidemiological study of lower limb amputation in England between 2003 and 2008. *Br J Surg.* 2010;97(9):1348–1353.
214. Dillingham TR, Yacub JN, Pezzin LE. Determinants of postacute care discharge destination after dysvascular lower limb amputation. *PM R.* 2011;3(4):336–344.
215. Gailey R, Gaunaurd I, Laferrier J. Physical Therapy Management of Adult Lower-Limb Amputees. In: Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles*. 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:597–620.
216. Harvey ZT, Loomis GA, Mitsch S, et al. Advanced rehabilitation techniques for the multi-limb amputee. *J Surg Orthop Adv.* 2012;21 (1):689–703.
217. Wukich KK, Ahn J, Raspovic KM, La Fontaine J, Lavery LA. Improved quality of life after transtibial amputation in patients with diabetes-related foot complications. *Int J Low Extrem Wounds.* 2017;16 (2):306–313.
218. Srivastava D. Chronic post-amputation pain: peri-operative management – Review. *Br J Pain.* 2017;11(4):192–202.
219. Halbert J, Crotty M, Cameron ID. Evidence for the optimal management of acute and chronic phantom pain: a systematic review. *Clin J Pain.* 2002;18(2):84–92.
220. Hanley MA, Ehde DM, Campbell KM, et al. Self-reported treatments used for lower limb phantom pain: descriptive findings. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2006;87(2):270–277. 310–311.
221. Tilak M, Isaac SA, Fletcher J, Vasanthan LT, et al. Mirror therapy and transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation for management of phantom limb pain in amputees — a single blinded randomized controlled trial. *Physiother Res Int.* 2016;21(2):109–115.
222. Alviar MJ, Hale T, Dungca M. Pharmacologic interventions for treating phantom limb pain. Dec 7. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2011;12. CD006380.
223. Grant AJ, Wood C. The effect of intra-neural local anaesthetic infusion on pain following major lower limb amputation. *Scott Med J.* 2008;53(1):4–6.
224. West M, Wu H. Pulsed radiofrequency ablation for residual and phantom limb pain: a case series. *Pain Pract.* 2010;10(5):485–491.
225. Kollewe K, Jin L, Krampfl K, et al. Treatment of phantom limb pain with botulinum toxin type A. *Pain Med.* 2009;10(2):300–303.
226. Cohen SP, Gambel JM, Raja SN, Galvagno S. The contribution of sympathetic mechanisms to post-amputation phantom and residual limb pain: a pilot study. *J Pain.* 2011;12(8):859–867.
227. Viswanathan A, Phan PC, Burton AW. Use of spinal cord stimulation in the treatment of phantom limb pain: case series and review of the literature. *Pain Pract.* 2010;10(5):479–484.
228. Kuiken T. Perioperative rehabilitation of the transtibial and transfemoral amputee. *Phys Med Rehabil State Art Rev.* 2002;16(3): 521–537.
229. Leskowitz ED. Phantom limb pain treated with therapeutic touch: a case report. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2000;81(4):522–524.
230. Ambron E, Miller A, Kuchenbecker KJ, Buxbaum LJ, Coslett HB. Immersive low-cost virtual reality treatment for phantom limb pain: evidence from two cases. *Front Neurol.* 2018;9. https://doi.org/10.3389/fneur.2018.00067.
231. Ortiz-Catalan M, et al. Phantom motor execution facilitated by machine learning and augmented reality as treatment for phantom limb pain: a single group, clinical trial in patients with chronic intractable phantom limb pain. *The Lancet.* 2016;388(10062):2885–2894.
232. Freynet A, Falcoz PE. Is transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation effective in relieving postoperative pain after thoracotomy? *Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg.* 2010;10(2):283–288.
233. Gregorini C, Cipriano G, Aquino LM, et al. Short-duration transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation in the postoperative period of cardiac surgery. *Arq Bras Cardiol.* 2010;94(3):325–331. 345–351.
234. Desantana JM, Santana-Filho VJ, Guerra DR, et al. Hypoalgesic effect of the transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation following inguinal herniorrhaphy: a randomized, controlled trial. *J Pain.* 2008;9(7): 623–629.

235. Halbert J, Crotty M, Cameron IDSrivastava D. Chronic post-amputation pain: peri-operative management – ReviewEvidence for the optimal management of acute and chronic phantom pain: a systematic review. 02, *Clin Br J Pain*. 2017;118(4):84–92. 192-20.
236. Mulvey MR, Bagnall AM, Johnson MI, Marchant PR. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) for phantom pain and stump pain following amputation in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2010 May 12;5. CD007264.
237. Casale R, Alaa L, Mallick M, Ring H. Phantom limb related phenomena and their rehabilitation after lower limb amputation. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med.* 2009;45(4):559–566.
238. Leskowitz E. Energy medicine perspectives on phantom-limb pain. *Altern Complement Ther.* 2009;15(2):59–63.
239. Moseley GL. Graded motor imagery for pathologic pain: a randomized controlled trial. *Neurology.* 2006;67(12):2129–2134.
240. Diers M, Christmann C, Koeppe C, et al. Mirrored, imagined and executed movements differentially activate sensorimotor cortex in amputees with and without phantom limb pain. *Pain.* 2010;149 (2):296–304.
241. Rothgangel AS, Braun SM, Beurskens AJ, et al. The clinical aspects of mirror therapy in rehabilitation: a systematic review of the literature. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2011;34(1):1–13.
242. Weeks SR, Anderson-Barnes VC, Tsao JW. Phantom limb pain: theories and therapies. *Neurologist.* 2010;16(5):277–786.
243. Egsgaard L, Petrini L, Christoffersen G, Arendt-Nielsen L. Cortical responses to the mirror box illusion: a high-resolution EEG study. *Exp Brain Res.* 2011;215(3/4):345–357.
244. Diers M, Christmann C, Koeppe C, et al. Mirrored, imagined and executed movements differentially activate sensorimotor cortex in amputees with and without phantom limb pain. *Pain.* 2010;149 (2):296–304.
245. Chan BL, Witt R, Charrow AP, et al. Mirror therapy for phantom limb pain. *N Engl J Med.* 2007;357(21):2206–2207.
246. Griffin SC, Curran S, Chan A, et al. Trajectory of phantom limb pain relief using mirror therapy: retrospective analysis of two studies. *Scan J Pain.* April 2017;15:98–103.
247. Hanling SR, Wallace SC, Hollenbeck KJ, et al. Preamputation mirror therapy may prevent development of phantom limb pain: a case series. *Anesth Analg.* 2010;110(2):611–614.
248. Murray CD, Pettifer S, Howard T, et al. The treatment of phantom limb pain using immersive virtual reality; three case studies. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2007;29(18):1465–1469.
249. MacLachlan M, McDonald D, Waloch J. Mirror treatment of lower limb phantom pain. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2004;26(14–15):901–904.
250. Casale R, Damiani C, Rosati V. Mirror therapy in the rehabilitation of lower-limb amputation: are there any contraindications? *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;88(10):837–842.
251. Richardson C, Kulkarni J. A review of the management of phantom limb pain: challenges and solutions. *J Pain Res.* 1861–1870;2017:10.
252. Nawijn SE, van der Linde H, Emmelot CH, Hofstad CJ. Stump management after transtibial amputation: a systematic review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2005;29(1):13–26.
253. Smith DG, McFarland LV, Sangeorzan BJ, et al. Addendum 1: post-operative dressing and management strategies for transtibial amputations: a critical review. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2004;16(S3): 15–25.
254. Walsh TL. Custom removable immediate postoperative prosthesis. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2003;15(4):158–161.
255. Tang PC, Ravji K, Key JJ, et al. Let them walk! Current prosthesis options for leg and foot amputees. *J Am Coll Surg.* 2008;206(3): 548–560.
256. Seymour R. Clinical use of dressings and bandages. In: Seymour R, ed. *Prosthetics and Orthotics: Lower Limb and Spinal*. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2002:123–142.
257. Smith S, Pursey H, Jones A, et al. *Clinical guidelines for the pre and post-operative physiotherapy management of adults with lower limb amputations.* 2nd ed. 2016.
258. D'Silva K, Hafner B, Allyn K, Sanders J. Self-reported prosthetic sock use among persons with transtibial amputation. *Prosthetics and Orthot Int.* 2014;38(4):321–331.
259. Woodburn KR, Sockalingham S, Gilmore H, et al. A randomised trial of rigid stump dressing following trans- tibial amputation for peripheral arterial insufficiency. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2004;28(1): 22–27.
260. Ficke J. Transtibial Amputation: Surgical Management. Management of Adults with Lower Limb Amputations. In: *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies*. 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:485–492. 2016.
261. Vermeulen H, Ubbink DT, Goossens A, et al. Dressings and topical agents for surgical wounds healing by secondary intention. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2004;1. CD003554.
262. Ladenheim E, Oberti-Smith K, Tablada G. Results of managing transtibial amputations with a prefabricated polyethylene rigid removable dressing. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2007;19(1):2–6.
263. Wu Y, Krick H. Removable rigid dressing for below-knee amputees. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1987;11(1):33–44.
264. Reichmann JP, Ste4vens PM, Rheinstein J, Kreulen CD. Removable rigid dressings for postoperative management of transtibial amputations: a review of published evidence. *PM&R*. 2017; https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pmrj.2017.10.002. October.
265. Deutsch A, English RD, Vermeer TC, et al. Removable rigid dressings versus soft dressings: a randomized, controlled study with dysvascular, trans-tibial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2005;29(2): 193–200.
266. Taylor L, Cavenett S, Stepien JM, Crotty M. Removable rigid dressings: a retrospective case-note audit to determine the validity of post-amputation application. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2008;32(2):223–230.
267. Wu Y. Removable rigid dressings for residual limb management. Appendix D. In: Karacoloff LA, Hammersley CS, Schneider FJ, eds. *Lower Extremity Amputation: A Guide to Functional Outcomes in Physical Therapy Management*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen: Rehabilitation Institute of Chicago Procedure Manual; 1992:241–248.
268. Graf M, Freijah N. Early trans-tibial oedema control using polymer gel socks. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2003;27(3):221–226.
269. Johannesson A, Larsson GU, Oberg T, Atroshi I. Comparison of vacuum-formed removable rigid dressing with conventional rigid dressing after transtibial amputation: similar outcome in a randomized controlled trial involving 27 patients. *Acta Orthop.* 2008;79 (3):361–369.
270. Tsai P, Geffen S. Use of a polyethylene removable rigid dressing in a transtibial amputee. *J Australasian Rehabil Nurs Assoc.* 2007;10(1): 22–23.
271. Bergan JJ, Sparks SR. Non-elastic compression: an alternative in management of chronic venous insufficiency. *J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs.* 2000;27(2):83–89.
272. Wong CK. Unna and elastic post-operative dressings: comparison of their effects on function of adults with amputation and vascular disease. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2000;81(9):1191–1198.
273. Vanross ER, Johnson S, Abbott CA. Effects of early mobilization on unhealed dysvascular transtibial amputation stumps: a clinical trial. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;90(4):610–617.
274. Scott H, Condie ME, Treweek SP, Sockalingham S. An evaluation of the Amputee Mobility Aid (AMA) early walking aid. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2000;24:39–46.
275. De Noordhout BM, Brogniez LPA. Early fitting of artificial limbs to amputated lower limbs. *Acta Chir Belg.* 2004;104:393–395.
276. Boucher HR, Low C, Schon MD, et al. A biomechanical study of two postoperative prostheses for transtibial amputees: a custom molded and a prefabricated adjustable pneumatic prosthesis. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2002;23(5):452–456.
277. Mazari FA, Mockford K, Barnett C, et al. Hull early walking aid for rehabilitation of transtibial amputees–randomized controlled trial (HEART). *J Vasc Surg.* 2010;52(6):1564–1571.
278. Reichmann J, Stevens P, Rheinstein J, Kreulen C. Removable rigid dressings for postoperative management of transtibial amputations: a review of published evidence. *PM&R*. 2017; 10.1016/j.pmrj. 2017.10.002; October 18.
279. Churilov I, Churilov L, Murphy D. Do rigid dressings reduce the time from amputation to prosthetic fitting? a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2014;28(7):1801–1808.
280. Ruskin AP, Rosner H, Saperstein H. Bent-knee prosthesis. *Geriatrics.* 1970;109–114.
281. Walsh TL. Custom removable immediate postoperative prosthesis. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2003;15(4):158–161.
282. Sathishkumar S, Manigandan C, Asha T, et al. A cost-effective, adjustable, femoral socket, temporary prosthesis for immediate rehabilitation of above-knee amputation. *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2004;27(1): 71–74.

283. Schon LC, Short KW, Soupiou O, et al. Benefits of early prosthetic management of transtibial amputees: a prospective clinical study of a prefabricated prosthesis. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2002;23(6):509–514.
284. Pinzur MS, Angelico J. A feasibility trial of a prefabricated immediate postoperative prosthetic limb system. *Foot Ankle Int.* 2003;24(11): 861–864.
285. Folsom D, King T, Rubin JR. Lower extremity amputation with immediate postoperative prosthetic placement. *Am J Surg.* 1992;164(4): 320–322.
286. Sumpio B, Shine S, Mahler D, Sumpio BE. A comparison of immediate postoperative rigid and soft dressings for below-knee amputations. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2013;27(6):774–780.
287. Ali M, Loretz L, Shea A, Poorvu E, Robinson WP, Schanzer A. Messina, L Baril DT A Contemporary Comparative Analysis of Immediate Postoperative Prosthesis Placement Following Below-Knee Amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2013;27(8):1146–1153.
288. Benetato BB. Post-traumatic growth among operation enduring freedom and operation Iraqi freedom amputees. *J Nurs Scholarsh.* 2011;43(4):412–420.
289. Atherton R, Robertson N. Psychological adjustment to lower limb amputation amongst prosthetic users. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2006;28 (19):1201–1209.
290. Uustal H. Prosthetic rehabilitation issues in the diabetic and dysvascular amputee. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2009;20(4):689–703.
291. Rossbach P. Skin care. Some do's and don'ts. *InMotion.* 2006;16(2): 10–11.
292. Highsmith JT, Highsmith MJ. Common skin pathology in LE prosthesis users. *JAAPA.* 2007;20(11):33–36.
293. Bonutti PM, Marulanda GA, McGrath MS, et al. Static progressive stretch improves range of motion in arthrofibrosis following total knee arthroplasty. *Knee Surg Sports Traumatol Arthrosc.* 2010;18 (2):194–199.
294. Bonutti PM, McGrath MS, Ulrich SD, et al. Static progressive stretch for the treatment of knee stiffness. *Knee.* 2008;15(4):272–276.
295. Slif U. Focused rehabilitation treatment of poorly functioning total knee arthroplasties. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2007;464(1):138–145.
296. Cristopoliski F, Barela JA, Leite N, et al. Stretching exercise program improves gait in the elderly. *Gerontology.* 2009;55(6):614–620.
297. Harvey LA, Glinsky JA, Katalinic OM, Ben M. Contracture management for people with spinal cord injuries. *NeuroRehabilitation.* 2011;28(1):17–20.
298. Swanton R, Kinnear B. There is robust evidence that stretch interventions do not prevent or reverse joint contractures in people with neurological conditions. *Aust Occup Ther J.* 2011;58(2):134–135.
299. Katalinic OM, Harvey LA, Herbert RD. Effectiveness of stretch for the treatment and prevention of contractures in people with neurological conditions: a systematic review. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(1):11–24.
300. Ryan EE, Rossi MD, Lopez R. The effects of the contract-relax-antagonist-contract form of proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation on postural stability. *J Strength Cond Res.* 2010;24(7):1888–1894.
301. Ferber R, Osternig LR, Gravelle DC. Effect of PNF stretch techniques on knee flexor muscle EMG activity in older adults. *J Electromyogr Kinesiol.* 2002;12(5):391–397.
302. Dommerholt J, Bron C, Franssen J. Myofascial trigger points: an evidence-informed review. *J Man Manip Ther.* 2006;14(4):203–221.
303. May BJ, Lockard MA. *Prosthetics & Orthotics in Clinical Practice: A Case Study Approach.* Philadelphia, PA: FA Davis; 2011.
304. Edelstein J, Moroz A. *Lower Limb Prosthetics and Orthotics: Clinical Concepts.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2011.
305. Carroll K, Edelstein J. *Prosthetics and Patient Management: A Comprehensive Clinical Approach.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2006.
306. Gailey RS, Gailey AM. *Stretching and Strengthening for Lower Extremity Amputees.* Advanced Rehabilitation Therapy: Miami, FL; 1994.
307. McAtee R, Charland J. *Facilitated Stretching.* 4th ed. Human Kinetics: Champaign IL; 2014.
308. Burgess EM, Rappoport A. *Physical Fitness: A Guide for Individuals With Lower Limb Loss.* Darby, PA: Diane Publishing; 1993.
309. Karacoloff LA, Mannersley CS, Schneider FJ, eds. *Lower Extremity Amputation: A Guide to Functional Outcomes in Physical Therapy Management*. 2nd ed. Austin, TX: Pro-Ed; 2005.
310. Langford J, Dillon M, Granger C, Barr C. Physical activity participation amongst individuals with lower limb amputation. *J Disabil Rehabil.* 2018; https://doi.org/10.1080/09638288.2017.1422031.
311. Adler SS, Beckers D, Buck M. *PNF in Practice: An Illustrated Guide.* 4th ed. New York, NY: Springer; 2014.
312. Kisner C, Colby L, Borstad J. *Therapeutic Exercise: Foundations and Techniques.* 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: FA Davis; 2018.
313. Haff GG, Triplett NT. Essentials of Strength Training and Conditioning. In: *National Strength and Conditioning Association.* 4th ed Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2016.
314. Moore GE, Durstine JL, Painter PL. ACSM's Exercise Management for Persons with Chronic Diseases and Disabilities. In: *American College of Sports Medicine*. 4th ed Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics; 2016.
315. Galvão DA, Taaffe DR. Resistance exercise dosage in older adults: single versus multiset effects on physical performance and body composition. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2005;53(12):2090–2097.
316. Murray DP, Brown LE, Zinder SM, et al. Effects of velocity-specific training on rate of velocity development, peak torque, and performance. *J Strength Cond Res.* 2007;21(3):870–874.
317. Salli A, Sahin N, Baskent A, Ugurlu H. The effect of two exercise programs on various functional outcome measures in patients with osteoarthritis of the knee: a randomized controlled clinical trial. *Isokinet Ex Sci.* 2010;18(4):201–209.
318. Symons TB, Vandervoort AA, Rice CL, et al. Effects of maximal isometric and isokinetic resistance training on strength and functional mobility in older adults. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2005;60A(6): 777–781.
319. Malliou P, Fatouros I, Beneka A, et al. Different training programs for improving muscular performance in healthy inactive elderly. *Isokinet Ex Sci.* 2003;11(4):189–195.
320. Manini TM, Visser M, Seok WP, et al. Knee extension strength cutpoints for maintaining mobility. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2007;55(3): 451–457.
321. Nadollek H, Brauer S, Isles R. Outcomes after trans-tibial amputation: the relationship between quiet stance ability, strength of hip abductor muscles and gait. *Physiother Res Int.* 2002;7(4):203–214.
322. Piva SR, Teixeira PE, Almeida GJ, et al. Contribution of hip abductor strength to physical function in patients with total knee arthroplasty. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(2):225–233.
323. Bhave A, Mont M, Tennis S, et al. Functional problems and treatment solutions after total hip and knee joint arthroplasty. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2005;87(suppl 2):9–21.
324. Burger H, Valencic V, Marincek C, et al. Properties of musculus gluteus maximus in above-knee amputees. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 1996;11(1):35.
325. Lewis CL, Sahrmann SA, Moran DW. Effect of position and alteration in synergist muscle force contribution on hip forces when performing hip strengthening exercises. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon).* 2009;24 (1):35–42.
326. Croisier JL, Noordhout B, Maertens de, Maquet D, et al. Isokinetic evaluation of hip strength muscle groups in unilateral lower limb amputees. *Isokinet Ex Sci.* 2001;9(4):163–169.
327. van Velzen JM, van Bennekom CA, Polomski W, et al. Physical capacity and walking ability after lower limb amputation: a systematic review. *Clin Rehabil.* 2006;20(11):999–1016.
328. Gupta S. Endurance and strength training have different benefits for people with peripheral arterial disease, but both improve quality of life. *Aust J Physiother.* 2009;55(1):63.
329. Reid L, Thomson P, Besemann M, Dudek N. Going places: Does the two-minute walk test predict the six-minute walk test in lower extremity amputees? *J Rehabil Med.* 2015 Mar;47(3):256–261. https://doi.org/10.2340/16501977-1916.
330. Simmelink EK, Wempe JB, Geertzen JH, Dekker R. The combined armleg (Cruiser) ergometer: a suitable instrument to measure physical fitness? *Clin Rehabil.* 2008;22(12):1135–1136.
331. Chin T, Sawamura S, Fujita H, et al. Effect of endurance training program based on anaerobic threshold (AT) for lower limb amputees. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2001;38(1):7–11.
332. Chin T, Sawamura S, Fujita H, et al. Physical fitness of lower limb amputees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;81(5):321–325.
333. Hamamura S, Chin T, Kuroda R, et al. Factors affecting prosthetic rehabilitation outcomes in amputees of age 60 years and over. *J Int Med Res.* 2009;37(6):1921–1927.
334. Chin T, Sawamura S, Shiba R. Effect of physical fitness on prosthetic ambulation in elderly amputees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2006;85 (12):992–996.
335. Chin T, Sawamura S, Fujita H, et al. %VO2max as an indicator of prosthetic rehabilitation outcome after dysvascular amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2002;26(1):44–49.

336. Göktepe AS, Cakir B, Yilmaz B, Yazicioglu K. Energy expenditure of walking with prostheses: comparison of three amputation levels. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2010;34(1):31–36.
337. Chin T, Kuroda R, Akisue T, Iguchi T, Kurosaka M. Energy consumption during prosthetic walking and physical fitness in older hip disarticulation amputees. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2012;49(8): 1255–1260.
338. Vllasolli TO, Zafirova B, Orovcanec N. poposka A, Murtezani A, Krasniqi B. Energy expenditure and walking speed in lower limb amputees: a cross sectional study. *Ortop Traumatol Rehabil.* 2014 Jul-Aug;16(4):419–426.
339. Cohen JM, Edelstein JE, Bayona C, Kort CJ. Limb Deficiency. In: Moroz A, Flanagan SR, Zaretsky H, eds. *Medical Aspects of Disability for theRehabilitation Professionals*. 5th ed New York, NY: Springer; 2017:383–414.
340. *ACSM's Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription.* 9th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer–Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013.
341. Quai TM, Brauer SG, Nitz JC. Somatosensation, circulation and stance balance in elderly dysvascular transtibial amputees. *Clin Rehabil.* 2005;19(6):668–676.
342. Mayer A, Tihanyi J, Bretz K, et al. Adaptation to altered balance conditions in unilateral amputees due to atherosclerosis: a randomized controlled study. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord.* 2011;12(1):118–124.
343. Stokes D, Curzio J, Berry A, et al. Pre prosthetic mobility: the amputees' perspectives. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(2):138–143.
344. Chin T, Oyabu H, Maeda Y, Takase I, Machida K. Energy consumption during prosthetic walking and wheelchair locomotion by elderly hip disarticulation amputees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;88 (5):399–403.
345. Laferrier JZ, McFarland LV, Boninger ML, et al. Wheeled mobility: factors influencing mobility and assistive technology in veterans and service members with major traumatic limb loss from Vietnam war and OIF/OEF conflicts. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2010;47(4):349–360.
346. Karmarkar AM, Collins DM, Wichman T, et al. Prosthesis and wheelchair use in veterans with lower limb amputation. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2009;46(5):567–575.
347. Somers MF. Wheelchair and wheelchair skills. In: Somers MF, ed. *Spinal Cord Injury: Functional Rehabilitation*. 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson; 2010:230–296.
348. Fleury A, Salih S, Peel N. Rehabilitation of the older vascular amputee: A review of the literature. *Geriatr Gerontol Int*. 2013;13:264–273.
349. McCarthy S, Nead C. Accessible home modification and durable medical equipment. In: Sisto S, Druin E, Sliwinski MM, eds. *Spinal Cord Injuries: Management and Rehabilitation*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 2009:326–350.
350. Somers MR. Architectural adaptations. In: Somers MF, ed. *Spinal Cord Injury: Functional Rehabilitation*. 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson; 2010:381–399.
351. Gosselink R, Bott J, Johnson M, et al. Physiotherapy for adult patients with critical illness: recommendations of the European Respiratory Society and European Society of Intensive Care Medicine Task Force on Physiotherapy for Critically Ill Patients. *Intensive Care Med.* 2008;34(7):1188–1199.
352. Schmitz TJ. Examination of Vital signs. In: O'Sullivan S, Schmitz TJ, Fulk G, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F.A.Davis Company; 2014:30–86.
353. Dyer D, Bouman B, Davey M, Ismond KP. An intervention program to reduce falls for adult in-patientsfollowing major lower limb amputation. *Healthc Q*. 2008;11(3 Spec No).117–121.
354. Duesterhaus Minor MA, Duesterhaus Minor D, Minor SR. *Patient Care Skills.* 7th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall; 2013.
355. Fulk G, Schmitz TJ. Locomotor training. In: O'Sullivan S, Schmitz TJ, Fulk G, eds. *Physical Rehabilitation*. 6th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F.A.Davis Company; 2014:444–484.
356. Waters RL, Mulroy SJ. Energy expenditure of walking in individuals with lower limb amputations. In: Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputation and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles*. 3rd ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004:395–407.
357. Condie ME, McFadyen AK, Treweek S, Whitehead L. The transfemoral fitting predictor: a functional measure to predict prosthetic fitting in transfemoral amputees—validity and reliability. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2011;92(8):1293–1297.
358. Wu Y, Chen S, Lin M, et al. Energy expenditure of wheeling and walking during prosthetic rehabilitation in a woman with bilateral transfemoral amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82 (2):265–269.
359. Baumgarten M, Margolis DJ, Localio A, et al. Pressure ulcers among elderly patients early in the hospital stay. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2006;61A(7):749–754.
360. Brem H, Tomic-Canic M, Tarnovskaya A, et al. Healing of elderly patients with diabetic foot ulcers, venous stasis ulcers, and pressure ulcers. *Surg Technol Int.* 2003;11:161–167.
361. Roach KE. Measurement of health outcomes: reliability, validity and responsiveness. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2006;18(1 S):8–12.
362. Coster WJ, Haley SM, Jette AM. Measuring patient-reported outcomes after discharge from inpatient rehabilitation settings. *J Rehabil Med.* 2006;38(4):237–242.
363. Deathe B, Miller WC, Speechley M. The status of outcome measurement in amputee rehabilitation in Canada. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83(7):912–918.
364. Hebert JS, Wolfe DL, Miller WC, et al. Outcome measures in amputation rehabilitation: ICF body functions. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31 (19):1541–1554.
365. Kohler F, Xu J, Silva-Withmory C, Arockiam J. Feasibility of using a checklist based on the international classification of functioning, disability and health as an outcome measure in individuals following lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2011;35(3):294–2301.
366. Deathe AB, Wolfe DL, Devlin M, et al. Selection of outcome measures in lower extremity amputation rehabilitation: ICF activities. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(18):1455–1473.
367. Hefford C, Haxby AJ, David Baxter G, Arnold R. Outcome measurement in clinical practice: practical and theoretical issues for health related quality of life (HRQOL) questionnaires. *Phys Ther Rev.* 2011;16(3):155–167.
368. Beattie P. Measurement of health outcomes in the clinical setting: applications to physiotherapy. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2001;17 (3):173–185.
369. Huijbregts MPJ, Myers AM, Kay TM, Gavin TS. Systematic outcome measurement in clinical practice: challenges experienced by physiotherapists. *Physiother Can.* 2002;54(1):25–31.
370. Caring for the delirious patient. part 1 of 2: assessing for risk factors and signs of delirium. *Joint Comm Perspect Pat Safety.* 2009;9 (12):5–7.
371. Brown S, Fitzgerald M, Walsh K. Delirium dichotomy: a review of recent literature. *Contemp Nurse.* 2007;26(2):238–247.
372. Cockrell JR, Folstein MF. Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE). *Psychopharmacol Bull.* 1988;24(4):689–692.
373. Alagiakrishnan K, Marrie T, Rolfson D, et al. Simple cognitive testing (Mini-Cog) predicts in-hospital delirium in the elderly. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2007;55(2):314–316.
374. Wei LA, Fearing MA, Sternberg EJ, Inouye SK. The confusion assessment method: a systematic review of current usage. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2008;56(5):823–830.
375. Walker MP, Ayre GA, Cummings JL, et al. The clinician assessment of fluctuation and the one day fluctuation assessment scale. Two methods to assess fluctuating confusion in dementia. *Br J Psychiatry.* 2000;177(3):252–256 C.
376. McCusker J, Cole MG, Dendukuri N, Belzile E. The Delirium Index, a measure of the severity of delirium: new findings on reliability, validity and responsiveness. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2004;52(10):1744–1749.
377. Matsushita T, Matsushima E, Maruyama M. Early detection of postoperative delirium and confusion in a surgical ward using the NEECHAM confusion scale. *Gen Hosp Psychiatry.* 2004;26(2):158–163.
378. Scheffer AC, van Munster BC, Schuurmans MJ, de Rooij SE. Assessing severity of delirium by the delirium observation screening scale. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2011;26(3):284–291.
379. Chakrabarti S, Shah R, Kumar V, Grover S. A factor analytic study of the Delirium Rating Scale-Revised-98 in untreated patients with delirium. *J Psychosom Res.* 2011;70(5):473–478.
380. Shyamsundar G, Raghuthaman G, Rajkumar AP, Jacob KS. Validation of memorial delirium assessment scale. *J Crit Care.* 2009;24 (4):530–534.
381. Haley SM, Coster WJ, Andres PL, et al. Activity outcome measurement for post-acute care. *Med Care.* 2004;42(suppl 1):49–61.
382. Haley SM, Andres PL, Coster WJ, et al. Short form activity measure for post-acute care. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2004;85(4):649–660.
383. Condie E, Scott H, Treweek S. Lower limb prosthetic outcome measures: a review of the literature 1995 to 2005. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2006;18(1 S):13–45.

384. Treweek SP, Condie ME. Three measures of functional outcome for lower limb amputees: a retrospective review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1998;22(3):178–185.
385. Stineman MG, Shea JA, Jette A, et al. The Functional Independence Measure: tests of scaling assumptions, structure, and reliability across 20 diverse impairment categories. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1996;77:1101–1108.
386. Masedo AI, Hanley M, Jensen MP, et al. Reliability and validity of a self-report FIM (FIM-SR) in persons with amputation or spinal cord injury and chronic pain. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;84:167–176.
387. Panesar BS, Morrison P, Hunter J. A comparison of three measures of progress in early lower limb amputee rehabilitation. *Clin Rehabil.* 2001;15(2):157–171.
388. McPherson K, Sloan RL, Hunter J, Dowell CM. Validation studies of the OPCS scale—more useful than the Barthel Index? Office of Population Census's and Surveys. *Clin Rehabil.* 1993;7(2):105–112.
389. Callaghan BG, Condie ME. A post-discharge quality of life outcome measure for lower limb amputees: test-retest reliability and construct validity. *Clin Rehabil.* 2003;17(8):858–864.
390. Martin F, Camfield L, Rodham K, et al. Twelve years' experience with the Patient Generated Index (PGI) of quality of life: a graded structured review. *Qual Life Res.* 2007;16(4):705–715.
391. Stratford PW, Gill C, Westaway M, Binkley J. Assessing disability and change on individual patients: a report of a patient specific measure. *Physiother Can.* 1995;47:258–263.
392. Kowalchuk Horn K, Jennings S, Richardson G, et al. The patient-specific functional scale: psychometrics, clinometrics, and application as a clinical outcome measure. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther.* 2012;42 (1):30–42.
393. Streppel KR, Vries J, Van Harten WH. Functional status and prosthesis use in amputees, measured with Prosthetic Profile of the Amputee (PPA) and the short version of the Sickness Impact Profile (SIP68). *Int J Rehabil Res.* 2001;24(3):251–256.
394. Gauthier-Gagnon C, Grise M. Tools to measure outcome of people with a lower limb amputation: update on the PPA and LCI. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2006;18(1 S):61–67.
395. Ryall NH, Eyres SB, Neumann VC, et al. Is the Rivermead Mobility Index appropriate to measure mobility in lower limb amputees? *Disabil Rehabil.* 2003;25(3):143–152.
396. Franchignoni F, Brunelli S, Orlandini D, et al. Is the Rivermead Mobility Index a suitable outcome measure in low limb amputees?—A psychometric validation study. *J Rehabil Med.* 2003;35 (3):141–144.
397. Pezzin LE, Dillingham TR, Mackenzie EJ. Rehabilitation and the long term outcomes of persons with trauma-related amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2000;81(3):292–300.
398. de Godoy JM, Braile DM, Buzatto SH, Longo O, Fontes OA. Quality of life after amputation. *Psychol Health Med.* 2002;7(4):397–400.
399. Jette A, Haley S, Coster W, et al. Late life function and disability instrument: I. Development and evaluation of the disability component. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2002;57A: M209–M216.
400. Haley S, Jette A, Coster W, et al. Late life function and disability instrument: II. Development and evaluation of the function component. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2002;57A:M217–M222.
401. Denkinger MD, Igl W, Coll-Planas L, et al. Evaluation of the Short Form of the Late-Life Function and Disability Instrument in geriatric inpatients-validity, responsiveness, and sensitivity to change. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2009;57(2):309–314.
402. Jette AM, Haley SM, Kooyoomjian JT. *Late Life FDI Manual.* Boston, MA: Roybal Center for the Enhancement of Late Life Function, Boston University; 2006.
403. Peters DM, Fritz SL, Krotish DEPT. Assessing the reliability and validity of a shorter walk test compared to the 10 meter walk test for measurements of gait speed in healthy, older adults. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 2013 Jan-Mar;36(1):24–30.
404. Chui KK, Lusardi MM. Spatial and temporal parameters of self-selected and fast walking speeds in healthy community-living adults aged 72–98 years. *J Geriatr Phys Ther.* 2010;33(4):173–183.
405. Brooks D, Hunter JP, Parsons J, et al. Reliability of the two-minute walk test in individuals with transtibial amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83(11):1562–1565.
406. Miller WC, Deathe AB, Harris J. Measurement properties of the Frenchay Activities Index among individuals with a lower limb amputation. *Clin Rehabil.* 2004;18(4):414–422.
407. Wheelchair Skills Test Manual. Version 4.2. http://www.wheelchairskillsprogram.ca/eng/documents/WST_Manual_version_4.2.1_approved.pdf;2013. Accessed 4 March 2018.
408. Lindquist NJ, Loudon PE, Magis TF, et al. Reliability of the performance and safety scores of the Wheelchair Skills Test Version 4.1 for manual wheelchair users. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2010;91 (11):1752–1757.
409. Portney LG, Watkins MP. *Foundations of Clinical Resarch: Applications to Practice.* 3rd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall; 2009.
410. Stokes EK. *Rehabilitation Outcome Measures.* Philadelphia: Elsevier: Churchill Livingstone; 2011.

21 Understanding and Selecting Prosthetic Feet

KEVIN CARROLL, JOHN RHEINSTEIN, and ELICIA POLLARD

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Define the Medicare functional levels and how they relate to the provision of a prosthesis and prosthetic feet.
2. Explain key factors analyzed when prescribing a prosthetic foot.
3. Define the fundamental characteristics of the different types of prosthetic feet.
4. Formulate a prescription recommendation for a prosthetic foot based on a person's needs.

Just as every person is unique, every person with a lower limb amputation presents a different set of characteristics that should be considered in the design of their prosthesis and especially when selecting a prosthetic foot. This selection should be made carefully because safety, performance, and satisfaction can be impacted if the foot is not well matched to the user.[1] To make an effective foot selection among the multitude of choices, it is important to thoroughly consider each individual's current and potential abilities and needs. The rehabilitation team should carefully review each person's current and expected physical capabilities and prosthetic history while keeping in mind the performance features, specifications, and appearance of available feet. Published research and evidence provide the basis for general clinical practice guidelines based on users' functional abilities and needs but does not yet provided complete prescriptive pathways to individual foot selection.[2–6]

The aim of providing a prosthetic foot is to maximize every person's rehabilitation potential so that they may reach their goals for their activities and function at a level comparable with their peers. Ideally, the function of a prosthetic foot should match that of an anatomic human foot.[7] It should offer shock absorption, compliance to uneven terrain, push-off, and ground clearance during the appropriate points in the gait cycle, all in a lightweight, low-maintenance package. Although modern prosthetic feet have many of these capabilities, in reality, no foot currently available matches the human foot in all these characteristics. The final choice is always a compromise because no prosthetic foot performs optimally for all activities and conditions. The most appropriate foot is one that best serves the present and future unique needs of the individual. It is incumbent upon the rehabilitation team to select the management strategies that (1) are consistent with each patient's needs, capabilities, and potential; (2) protect the patient from progressive overuse symptoms; and (3) avoid overuse and underuse of medical resources.

Once a foot model is selected, it must be ordered to meet the specific weight and activity level of each person so it will respond appropriately under load. If a person experiences significant changes in their weight or activity level, the foot should be replaced to match their new functional needs. For example, a weight gain of 20 or more pounds, and/or a substantial increase in activity, or loads carried may result in the foot being too compliant. Under these conditions the foot can no longer provide the necessary amount of support or energy return and may also result in catastrophic failure of the structural elements. All the parts of a prosthetic system, especially feet, should be checked every 6 months for wear and tear. Visible cracks or noises are signs of structural failure and warnings that the foot should be replaced. It is difficult to predict the useful life span of a foot because of the wide range of users and the way in which they are used. Most feet have a manufacturer's warranty of 2 to 3 years.

Factors in Selecting a Prosthetic Foot

When designing an appropriate prosthesis, the rehabilitation team in consultation with the user should consider the following multiple factors that influence component selection. By understanding the function and features of the chosen foot, alignment and training can be targeted to maximize its functional benefits.

FUNCTIONAL LEVEL

Medicare guidelines define five functional levels (also known as "K levels") for unilateral lower limb amputees that are widely accepted by most payers. This classification system determines the medical necessity for feet and knees based on the patient's current and potential functional abilities.

Medicare policy states, "A determination of the medical necessity for certain components/additions to the prosthesis is based on the beneficiary's potential functional abilities. Potential functional ability is based on the reasonable

expectations of the prosthetist and treating physician, considering factors including, but not limited to:

1. The beneficiary's past history (including prior prosthetic use if applicable)
2. The beneficiary's current condition including the status of the residual limb and the nature of other medical problems
3. The beneficiary's desire to ambulate

Clinical assessments of beneficiary rehabilitation potential must be based on the following classification levels:

Level 0: Does not have the ability or potential to ambulate or transfer safely with or without assistance and a prosthesis does not enhance their quality of life or mobility.
Level 1: Has the ability or potential to use a prosthesis for transfers or ambulation on level surfaces at fixed cadence. Typical of the limited and unlimited household ambulator.
Level 2: Has the ability or potential for ambulation with the ability to traverse low level environmental barriers such as curbs, stairs, or uneven surfaces. Typical of the limited community ambulator.
Level 3: Has the ability or potential for ambulation with variable cadence. Typical of the community ambulator who has the ability to traverse most environmental barriers and may have vocational, therapeutic, or exercise activity that demands prosthetic utilization beyond simple locomotion.
Level 4: Has the ability or potential for prosthetic ambulation that exceeds basic ambulation skills, exhibiting high impact, stress, or energy levels. Typical of the prosthetic demands of the child, active adult, or athlete.

The records must document the beneficiary's current functional capabilities and his/her expected functional potential, including an explanation for the difference, if that is the case. It is recognized, within the functional classification hierarchy, that bilateral amputees often cannot be strictly bound by functional level classifications."[8] It should also be noted that the use of a mobility aid is not a determinant in assessing functional level.

Ideally, the rehabilitation team examines and interviews the prosthetic candidate and reaches a consensus as to the potential functional level they are most likely to achieve. The key word in reaching such a decision is "potential," which challenges the team to predict future outcomes based on past performance, stated goals, and other unknowns. However, it can be easy to jump to conclusions because a clinical practice guideline recommends, "Neither patient age nor amputation etiology should be viewed as primary considerations in prosthetic foot type."[2] The functional level classification has real implications for the prosthetic user because it determines what type of foot they will receive. Therefore, if the rehabilitation team believes that a person currently performing at functional level 2 will reach level 3, they should receive a level 3 foot straightaway. Not only does this allow the person to train with and use a foot that supports his or her higher activity level, but it will save cost over the long run by eliminating the need to purchase two different feet. In addition to the factors mentioned later, there are a number of performance-based and self-reported outcomes measure that can assist in the determination of current and potential functionality.[9] For example, the Amputee Mobility Predictor instruments (AMPPRO and AMPnoPRO) are designed to measure ambulatory potential of lower limb amputees.[10] The Prosthetic Limb Users Survey of Mobility (PLUS-M) is a self-report instrument for measuring mobility of adults with lower limb amputation and can also be used to compare an individual with other amputees and to monitor a person's progress and satisfaction over time.[11,12]

ACTIVITIES OF DAILY LIVING, VOCATIONAL, AND WORK REQUIREMENTS

No single foot usually meets a person's needs in all situations. By determining all of their current and future activities, a balance of performance features can be achieved. For example, for someone who works in an office during the week and who also plays golf on weekends, a foot with a multiaxial ankle would be recommended to accommodate uneven terrain.

BODY WEIGHT

Foot sizes and strengths are available for people ranging from a baby to adults weighing up to 500 pounds. A small prosthetic foot for children is shown in Fig. 21.1. Because a growing population of people are overweight, manufacturers are offering prosthetic feet for those heavier individuals. A prosthetic foot expected to support heavier weights must be specially crafted for increased strength and durability; consequently, the prosthesis itself is larger and heavier because of the additional materials included in the foot, pylon, and socket. The user's weight should be recorded at every encounter to ensure that his or her foot is still appropriately matched.

Obesity makes prosthetic fitting more difficult; however, the results achieved by overweight people can be very inspirational. In one study, body mass index was not a significant independent predictor of failure for any outcome parameter measured. Interestingly, "there were significantly poorer outcomes for underweight patients."[13] Even people weighing more than 300 pounds should not give up hope.

Fig. 21.1 A very small children's foot. (Courtesy Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

Although initially confined to a nursing home bed, rehabilitation teams that work with overweight individuals can fit them with a prosthesis, assist them with standing, begin therapy, and within just a few months have the same bedridden patients walking on their own. It is common for functional K1 level patients to progress to K2 level with appropriate care and therapy. People are often deconditioned from the illnesses that precipitated their amputation and can make great strides as long as they are motivated and do the physical and occupational therapy needed to succeed.

RESIDUAL LIMB

Foot selection can bear directly on the health of the person's residual limb. Ground reaction forces that are transmitted through a person's body can be stressful or damaging to their residual limb, knee, hip, and/or back.[14] People with short or painful residual limbs are generally fit with feet that are softer to attenuate ground force transmission through the prosthesis. Choosing a foot with compliant heel action or vertical shock absorption features can reduce these impact forces.

COMORBIDITIES

Comorbid health conditions such as diabetes and peripheral vascular disease should be considered relevant only to foot selection to the degree to which they effect a person's functional abilities. Keep in mind that patients are often deconditioned from weight-bearing restrictions prior to amputation and can recover once they receive a prosthesis and physical therapy.

The deflection dynamics and alignment of a foot can have an effect on the health and well-being of a person's joints. "Patients at elevated risks for overuse injury (i.e., osteoarthritis) to the sound side lower limb and lower back are indicated for an energy storage and return (ESAR) foot to reduce the magnitude of the cyclical vertical impacts experienced during weight acceptance."[2] Excessive toe stiffness can cause hyperextension of the knee, and a prosthesis that is too short or long may cause back pain.[15]

ENVIRONMENTAL EXPOSURE AND DURABILITY

People exposed to extreme environments need a foot that will not fail under wet or dirty conditions. An additional specially designed prosthesis with a solid foot or drain holes should be provided for water use if it is needed for bathing, swimming, or water sports. Sand and dirt are especially destructive to feet.

SHOE CHOICES (HEEL HEIGHTS AND SHOE SHAPE)

A heel-height–adjustable foot (Fig. 21.2) can make a significant difference for someone who wants to wear high heels or switch between different heel-height shoes, depending on the occasion or work requirements. People who enjoy a versatile shoe wardrobe can switch from a tennis shoe or casual slipper into a dressy high-heeled shoe easily, by pushing a button on the side of the ankle, concealed by the cosmetic covering. The ankle is allowed to bend into the desired position and then safely locked. The foot still provides normal gait and energy-storing capability in any height position. Although a heel-height–adjustable foot can flatten for barefoot walking, the rubber foot shell will wear out quickly if it is used without a shoe. A prosthesis without a heel-height–adjustable mechanism cannot be worn with shoes of different heel heights unless adjustment wedges are placed in the shoes to make the effective heel height the same among all the user's shoes. It is important to note, when a heel wedge is added to the prosthetic side shoe, another must be added to the contralateral side to avoid changing the overall length of the prosthesis. However, a wedge may be added under the ball of the prosthetic foot with no effect on the overall length.

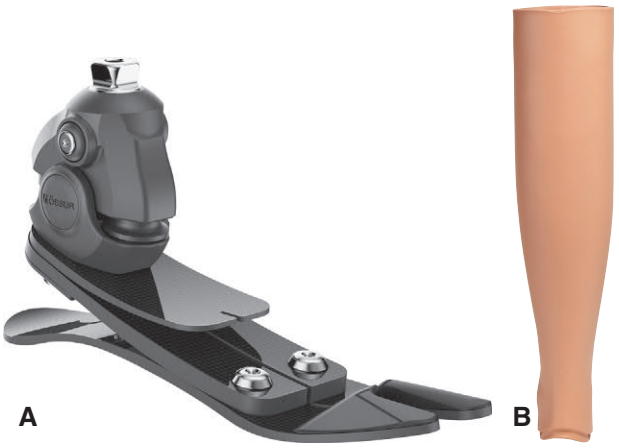


Fig. 21.2 (A) Heel height–adjustable foot. (B) Cover for foot. (© Össur.)

Seasonal changes in shoes are also important; providing a split between the big toe and its neighbor may not seem important in the fall or winter, but is very noticeable in the summer when the user wants to wear thong sandals (Fig. 21.3).

If a prosthetic foot is too wide, it may prove difficult to get into a shoe, and a foot that is too narrow may move around in the shoe causing instability. Asking the person to bring to the clinic all the shoes he or she intends to wear can reduce uncertainty about foot size and shape. Individuals who have been prescribed a diabetic shoe should be encouraged to wear only those shoes.

Fig. 21.3 Foot cover with split toes. (Courtesy Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

INTERACTION WITH OTHER PROSTHETIC COMPONENTS

The foot is part of a closed chain in which ground reaction forces are transmitted through the prosthesis. The characteristics of the foot will affect the way a prosthetic knee and hip joint respond to ground forces. For example, a foot with a stiff heel will send more flexion force to the knee at heel strike causing less knee stability. In addition, the anterior/posterior and medial/lateral placement, transverse rotation, and the dorsi-plantarflexion alignment of a foot relative to the other prosthetic components affect the way it functions and feels to the wearer, as well as the resulting gait. For example, moving a foot anterior relative to a prosthetic socket or plantarflexing it would increase forefoot stiffness and support while decreasing heel stiffness and support. Alignment changes also result in changes in socket pressures on a user's residual limb. Small alignment changes can produce dramatic changes in the biomechanics of a prosthesis and should be undertaken with care under the guidance of a certified prosthetist.

PRIOR PROSTHETIC FEET AND GAIT HABITS

People who have become accustomed to the characteristics of a particular foot over many years may have difficulty adapting to a different one. When a change is warranted, a period of adjustment is expected. Physical therapy is recommended any time a new prosthesis, foot, or component is provided. Exercises and gait training for balance, weight transfer, and loading and releasing the forefoot should be tailored to the functional dynamics of each foot.[16]

PSYCHOLOGICAL INFLUENCES AND PERSONALITY TRAITS

The wearer's age has less to do with the choice of prosthesis than the wearer's attitude. For example, an 80-year-old might be running marathons, whereas a 45-year-old with less determination remains wheelchair-bound. The difference may lie solely in their state of mind. A prosthesis wearer's personal preferences, practical goals, and lofty ambitions should all be considered when selecting a foot. Many people are able to expand their capabilities and motivation dramatically once they are fit with an appropriate prosthesis that allows them to improve their range of activities. Peer support can be an important element in helping to motivate someone who is not progressing to their potential.[17]

SKIN TONE

Each of the feet described in this chapter is available with a rubber cover or foot shell that gives the appearance of a foot, in addition to protecting its structural elements. Current foot shells have a more natural appearance and greater durability than their predecessors, but they will still wear out faster than the structural element of the foot and thus should be checked every 6 months and replaced as needed. Most have toes and are available in three basic flesh tones. Flexible skins can be added that closely approximate each person's skin tone.

COST

Foot choices may be limited by insurance coverage and the person's ability to pay. In general, higher-functional-level feet cost more; however, people with higher function and who fall less as a result of an appropriate prosthesis will likely incur less overall medical cost. Work by Dobson et al. states, "The results of our analysis indicate that patients who received lower extremity prostheses were more likely to receive extensive outpatient therapy than comparison group patients.[18] The receipt of physical therapy was associated with fewer acute care hospitalizations, emergency room admissions, and less facility-based care ($P < .05$), which nearly offset the cost of the prosthetic. As a result, patients who received prosthetics had comparable cumulative Medicare payments over 12 months than those who did not ($728, or just 1 percent higher). Results suggest that the device was nearly amortized by the end of 12 months and the patient could experience better quality of life and increased independence compared with patients who did not receive the prosthetic at essentially no additional cost to Medicare or the patient."[19]

BILATERAL LIMB LOSS

People missing both legs at the same amputation level generally receive a matched pair of feet. Outcomes for individuals with bilateral transfemoral amputations are improved if they are first trained to use very short prostheses with small rigid feet known as "stubbies."[20]

All of the factors mentioned previously should be considered when narrowing the selection of appropriate prosthetic choices. It is important to thoroughly discuss with the person the choices available to them. Everyone on the rehabilitation team should understand the person's wishes and his or her plans for future or potential activities. Each person has different values as to what is important to him or her. Many manufacturers have short trial periods during which a foot can be returned if it is not working well for the wearer.

Performance Features and Appearance of Available Prosthetic Feet

FUNCTIONAL LEVEL 1 FEET

The solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) (Fig. 21.4) foot is the most basic prosthetic foot available. It is recommended only for those with limited functional ability and potential to ambulate. The SACH foot is provided primarily for transfers and limited ambulation. This foot's immovable ankle and soft heel give it the ability to absorb the impact of heel strike but provides minimal energy return and anterior support. There are numerous manufacturers who produce a version of the SACH foot that is simply crafted from a wooden or plastic block with a soft cushion under the heel segment and rubber toes. Because the SACH foot has no moving parts, little maintenance is required until the foot is worn out, at which time it should be replaced. However, no device is indestructible, and, with our increasingly overweight

Fig. 21.4 K1 functional level foot: the solid-ankle, cushion-heel foot. (Courtesy Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

society, care should be taken to provide a foot with the appropriate weight category to avoid damage or failure. A carbon composite foot (see "K3 Feet" later) may be required if a SACH foot cannot be made strong enough to support an extremely heavy-weight person. Single axis feet with a pivoting ankle joint are also appropriate for K1 ambulators. A recent Clinical Practice Guideline consolidated available evidence and recommended that, "For patients ambulating at a single speed that require greater stability during weight acceptance due to weak knee extensors or poor balance, a single axis foot should be considered."[2] By moving quickly from heel strike to foot flat, less force is transmitted to the user's residual limb and to their knee, which makes their prosthesis more stable than with a SACH foot. Single axis feet have moving parts and require periodic maintenance.

FUNCTIONAL LEVEL 2 FEET

There is an array of different feet suitable for people with amputation at functional level 2 who are able to walk inside their homes and outside in the community at a slow pace (Fig. 21.5). Most level 2 feet are lightweight, have a flexible keel and a multiaxial ankle, and provide some energy return. A full-length toe mechanism lends stability while providing smooth transitioning from heel strike to toe-off. These feet have foam-rubber cushions that assist the wearer with soft plantarflexion by providing a smooth transition from heel strike to midstance. The feet also allow for some transverse rotation. The flexibility of the ankle on most of these feet can be softened or stiffened by changing the rubber cushions. More features and adjustments also mean that more attention and maintenance must be provided. People at functional level 2 should be reassessed regularly by the rehabilitation team to determine whether they can progress to functional level 3. Additional physical therapy and motivation may be all that is needed to push them to the next level.

FUNCTIONAL LEVEL 3 FEET

Functional level 3 feet are appropriate for people with the ability or potential to perform daily activities beyond simple locomotion and to walk with variable cadence. Known as ESAR, these feet are fabricated from lightweight flexible materials such as carbon fiber and more recently fiberglass, which are very responsive and extremely durable. Compared with a SACH foot, they reduce energy consumption, offer increased ankle motion, reduce sound side loading, and store and return more energy. ESAR feet should be considered for patients at elevated risks for overuse injuries. Individuals walking at faster speeds are subjected to higher ground reaction forces and can benefit from the way ESAR feet reduce the magnitude of the cyclical vertical impacts experienced during weight acceptance.[2] Initial studies indicate that fiberglass feet offer additional power generation over carbon fiber feet.[21] There are numerous designs available in this category, which vary based on the shape of the carbon fiber or fiberglass and the addition of other materials to absorb shock and rotational forces. They can be fitted with or without an integrated pylon. Although most are designed with no moving parts and need little maintenance, carbon fiber and fiberglass feet should be checked every 6 months for wear tear, as well as to (1) clean out or replace the foot shell, (2) replace the inner protective sock, and (3) determine if the foot still meets the needs of the wearer.

The integrated pylon foot (Fig. 21.6) is the lightest of all foot prostheses. It is one continuous composite material unit

Fig. 21.5 K2 functional level foot. Otto Bock 1M10. (Courtesy Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

Fig. 21.6 K3 functional level foot with integrated pylon—Ossur Variflex. (Courtesy Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

from the toe to the top of the pylon, with a separate heel segment. Plantarflexion and dorsiflexion are achieved by deflection of the structural material of the foot. Some of these feet also provide inversion/eversion by way of a longitudinal split that bisects the foot, a urethane cushion, or a floating sole plate. These feet cannot be used for individuals with long residual limbs. In addition, alignment capabilities are somewhat limited by the integrated pylon foot as adjustments can be made only just below the socket rather than at the ankle. Alignment wedges can be added to the foot or shoe to compensate for this shortcoming.

Energy-storing feet without the integrated pylon (Fig. 21.7) offer the same features as those described previously and are indicated for those individuals with long residual limbs. They also allow the prosthetist to perform alignment adjustments at the ankle where the foot is joined to a separate pylon.

Feet with shock and torsion absorption are especially important for high-activity people and those performing repetitive motions. These features reduce the vertical and sheer forces that are transmitted to the residual limb by allowing these motions to take place in the foot rather than inside the socket (Fig. 21.8). Hydraulic damping is another ankle feature that permits increased fluidity of sagittal plane movement (Fig. 21.9) and are available in both level 3 and level 2 versions. A number of feet are designed to generate vacuum from the motion of walking for elevated vacuum sockets (Fig. 21.10). These sockets provide volume management and reduce movement between the residual limb and the socket.[22–24]

Fig. 21.7 K3 functional level foot with integrated pyramid—Ossur LP Pro-Flex LP. (Courtesy of Ossur, Foothill Ranch, CA)

Fig. 21.8 K3 dynamic response foot with vertical shock and torque absorption—Ottobock Triton VS. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

Fig. 21.9 Foot with hydraulic ankle—Freedom Innovations Kinterra. (Courtesy of Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX)

Fig. 21.10 Foot with integrated vacuum pump—RUSH—EVA. (Courtesy Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

Microprocessor feet are the most recent development in prosthetic foot technology and have opened an exciting new spectrum of possibilities for many people with lower extremity amputation. In contrast to traditional prosthetic feet which are passive, microprocessor feet actively respond and adapt to changes in the environment such as changes in inclines, walking speed, and shoes. If the wearer ascends an incline, the foot automatically provides dorsiflexion and continues to do so for the extent of the incline. Similarly, the foot automatically responds with plantarflexion during the descent on a downhill grade. The Freedom-Innovations Kinex, Endolite Élan, Ossur Proprio, Fillaurer Raize, Ottobock Triton Smart Ankle, and Ottobock Meridium all perform these functions (Fig. 21.11A–F).

Microprocessor feet are heavier than most other feet. They are powered by an onboard battery that requires nightly recharging. The range of motion of microprocessor feet is thus far limited to this single-axis capability, but inversion and eversion flexibility are likely to be available in the future. They are indicated for functional level 3 users who encounter inclines in their activities of daily living.

Fig. 21.11 Microprocessor feet. (A) Freedom innovations—Kinex. (Courtesy Freedom Innovations, Irvine, CA.) (B) Endolite Élan. (Courtesy of Blatchford, blatchford.co.uk.) (C) Ossur Proprio. (© Össur.) (D) Fillauer Raize. (Courtesy of Fillauer Companies, Inc, Chattanooga, TN.) (E) Ottobock Smart Ankle. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.) (F) Ottobock Meridium. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.) (G) Ottobock Empower Ankle. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

Fig. 21.12 Fillauer running blade. (Courtesy Fillauer Companies, Inc, Chattanooga, TN.)

Fig. 21.14 Pediatric running foot. (Courtesy Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

Contraindications for microprocessor feet are very high activity, heavy body weight, and frequent exposure to water, dirt, and extremes of temperature. The Empower Ankle is the only microprocessor foot designed to actively replace the propulsive function of the gastrocsoleus muscles (see Fig. 21.11G). This foot generates power during plantarflexion, propelling the person forward. Research demonstrated a significant reduction in metabolic cost, which allows people with amputation to walk with less energy and better gait symmetry.[25] In spite of these benefits, adoption has been slow due to the high weight and cost of this foot.

FUNCTIONAL LEVEL 4: HIGH ACTIVITY AND SPECIALIZED FEET

A number of specialized prosthetic feet are available for the serious athlete and weekend warriors. Sprinting feet are designed for powerful bursts of speed, such as in a 100-meter or 200-meter race (Fig. 21.12). They do not have a heel component. Running feet are softer than sprinting feet for longer distance running up to marathon or half-marathon challenges and have a heel (Fig. 21.13A and B). Choice of design depends on the person's activities and special interests. Running or sprinting feet are not recommended for everyday wear. Running feet are also available for children (Fig. 21.14). Specialized activity feet are available for a variety of sports (Fig. 21.15A–C). A swim foot is available that can be locked in plantarflexion for use with a swim fin. A short, rock climbing foot is designed for use with a specialized climbing shoe, and a skiing foot clips directly into the binding without a ski boot.

Summary

Selecting the most appropriate prosthetic foot can be a complex clinical decision because of a variety of factors, including a person's current and potential functional level, specific needs, the wide array of available choices, and cost. A miscalculation in the selection process can make a significant difference in outcome and level of success. Rehabilitation team professionals, together with the wearer, family members, and caregivers, should analyze and evaluate the best prosthetic options for advancing mobility that is functional, efficient, practical, and safe for people with lower extremity amputation. Advances in energy-storing materials and microprocessor technology offer people with lower extremity amputation improved function in daily activities as well as high-activity performance in sports such as running, swimming, golfing, biking, hiking, skiing, and rock climbing.

Fig. 21.13 Running feet. (A) Ottobock Challenger. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com). (B) Fillauer allPro. (Courtesy Fillauer Companies, Inc, Chattanooga, TN.)

Fig. 21.15 Specialized activity feet. (A) Swim foot with moveable ankle. (Courtesy of Freedom Innovations, Irvine, CA.) (B) Adult climbing foot. (Courtesy TRS, Inc, Boulder, CO.) (C) Skiing foot. (Courtesy Freedom Innovations, Irvine, CA.)

Case Example 21.1 **An Individual With a Transtibial Amputation**

A. J., a former marine soldier, was 20 years old when he endured traumatic injuries after driving his motor vehicle over a landmine. He was one of three people who survived the explosion. A. J. was flown to Germany for emergency surgery and later transferred to a military medical center in Washington, D.C. He severely injured his left leg, incurred damage to his right tympanic membrane, and lost his left thumb. After multiple surgeries, bone infection in his left leg, and months of rehabilitation, doctors decided to amputate his leg below the knee. A. J. was offered an honorable discharge because of his injuries. He accepted the discharge and returned to his hometown where he continued rehabilitation.

In high school, A. J. had been a competitive athlete for his track team, and he maintained an average weight of 180 pounds. One year after the accident, the 5-foot 11-inches-tall former soldier weighs 206 pounds and is ambulating independently with a transtibial prosthesis. A. J. has accepted the loss of his left leg and is ready to return to a "normal" life. He is determined to run again and plans to enroll at a local college. A. J. currently lives with his mother in a small one-story house in a rural community and has not driven a vehicle since the accident.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- To what extent would A. J.'s age, height, weight, and lifestyle impact the selection and maintenance of a prosthetic foot?
- What prosthetic foot design would be most appropriate for athletic challenges?
- What environmental challenges might A. J. encounter on a college campus? What environmental challenges might he encounter in a rural community?
- How does a prosthetic foot simulate the functional characteristics of a human foot?
- How does a prosthetic foot's function during gait differ during running?
- What social issues might A. J. face as he enters college? How would a prosthetic foot affect his psychosocial health?
- What specific recommendations should be given to meet A. J.'s needs and to assist him in meeting his goals?

Case Example 21.2 **An Older Adult with Amputation Due to Infected Nonhealing Neuropathic Ulcer**

Mrs. R. T. is a 79-year-old woman with long-standing diabetes and peripheral artery disease who developed a neuropathic ulcer at the first metatarsal head of her right forefoot 6 months ago. Despite conservative attempts to heal the wound using a total contact cast and subsequent vascular bypass surgery to restore blood flow to the distal extremity, the wound failed to heal and osteomyelitis developed. Mrs. R. T. underwent standard transtibial amputation 2 months ago and managed postoperatively with removable rigid dressing to protect the surgical site and control postoperative edema. Although the surgical incision was slow to heal, her surgeon has determined that it is now safe to begin prosthetic training, and she has been referred for prosthetic prescription.

Until the development of her neuropathic ulcer, Mrs. R. T. lived independently in a second-floor apartment of an urban retirement community in a small city, drove her own car to a nearby park to walk for exercise at least three times each week, and participated in many activities at her local senior center. Since her surgery, she has been living with her daughter in a nearby suburb, using a wheelchair (propelling it herself) for mobility, and receiving home care physical therapy to build her strength and endurance. She reports that she is able to transfer between bed and wheelchair independently but requires assistance to get into and out of the car. She looks forward to receiving a prosthesis but wonders if she will have the ability to return to community ambulation without the need of an assistive device.

Mrs. R. T. is 5 feet, 3 inches tall and weighs 150 pounds. She admits that her memory "is not what it used to be" and has recently been diagnosed with mild cognitive impairment, but she has no clinical signs of dementia. She has significant osteoarthritis of her fingers and wrists, as well as in both of her hips.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- To what extent would Mrs. R. T.'s age, height, weight, and lifestyle impact the selection and maintenance of a prosthetic foot?
- What K level best reflects Mrs. R. T.'s functional potential? Why have you selected this K level?
- What prosthetic foot design would be most appropriate for Mrs. R. T.'s first prosthesis?
- What environmental challenges might Mrs. R. T. encounter if she is able to resume her preulcer activities? How might the challenges be similar or different in an urban versus suburban community?
- How does the prosthetic foot that you have chosen simulate the functional characteristics of a human foot?
- What are the effects of a prosthetic foot on gait?
- What specific recommendations should be given to meet Mrs. R. T.'s needs and assist her in meeting her goals?

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Thank you to Laura Rheinstein and Phil Stevens for their editorial assistance.

References

1. Powers CM, Torburn L, Perry J, et al. Influence of prosthetic foot design on sound limb loading in adults with unilateral below-knee amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1994;75(7):825–829.
2. Stevens P, Rheinstein J, Wurdeman S. Prosthetic Foot Selection for Individuals with Lower Limb Amputation: A Clinical Practice Guideline. *J Prosthet Orthot.* Accepted, pending publication
3. van der Linde H, Hofstad CY, Geurts AC, et al. A systematic literature review of the effect of different prosthetic components on human functioning with a lower-limb prosthesis. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2004;41:555–570.
4. Cummings DR, Kapp S. State-Of-The-Science Conference on prosthetic feet and ankle mechanisms. http://www.oandp.org/jpo/library/index/2005_04S.asp.
5. Czerniecki JM. Research and clinical selection of foot-ankle systems. *J Prosth Orthot.* 2005;17(4S):358.
6. Highsmith MJ, et al. Prosthetic interventions for people with transtibial amputation: Systematic review and meta-analysis of high-quality prospective literature and systematic reviews. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2016;53(2):157–184.
7. Perry J. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 1992.
8. CMS LCD L33787. www.cms.gov.
9. Kaluf B, Stevens P. Outcome Measures in Lower Limb Prosthetics. In: Krajbick J, Pinzur M, Potter B, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:645–652.
10. Gailey RS, Roach KE, Applegate EB, et al. The amputee mobility predictor: an instrument to assess determinants of the lower-limb amputee's ability to ambulate. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83(5):613–627.
11. Hafner BJ, Morgan SJ, Askew RA, Salem R. Psychometric evaluation of self-report outcome measures for prosthetic applications. *J Rehabili Res Dev.* 2016;53(6):797–812.
12. Wurdeman SR, Stevens PM, Campbell JH. Mobility Analysis of AmpuTees (MAAT I): Quality of life and satisfaction are strongly related to mobility for patients with a lower limb prosthesis. In: *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2017.
13. Kalbaugh CA, et al. Does obesity predict functional outcome in the dysvascular amputee? *Am Surg.* 2006 Aug;72(8):707–712. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16913314.
14. Snyder R, et al. The effect of five prosthetic feet on the gait and loading of the sound limb in dysvascular below-knee amputees. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research and Development;* Washington. Nov 1995;Vol. 32(Iss. 4):309–315.
15. Lower Limb Amputees and Low Back Pain. https://www.physio-pedia.com/Lower_Limb_Amputees_and_Low_Back_Pain.
16. Gailey R, Gaunaurd I, Laferrier J, Krajbick J, Pinzur M. Physical Therapy Management of Adults with Lower Limb Ampuations. In: Potter B, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:597–620.
17. Reichmann J, Bartman K. An Integrative Review of Peer Support For Patients Undergoing Major Limb Amputation. *J Vasc Nurs.* 2018;36:34–39.
18. Dobson A, et al. Economic Value of Prosthetic Services Among Medicare Beneficiaries: A Claims-Based Retrospective Cohort Study. *Mil Med.* 2016 Feb;181(2 Suppl):18–24. https://doi.org/10.7205/MILMED-D-15-00545. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26835740.
19. Dobson A, et al. Economic Value of Prosthetic Services Among Medicare Beneficiaries: A Claims-Based Retrospective Cohort Study. *Mil Med.* 2016 Feb;181(2 Suppl):18–24. https://doi.org/10.7205/MILMED-D-15-00545. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26835740.
20. Carroll C, Rheinstein J, Richardson R. Bilateral Lower Limb Amputation: Prosthetic Management. In: Krajbich I, Pinzur M, Potter B, Stevens P, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies.* 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:631–643.
21. Kaufman K, Bernhardt K. *Comparative Performance of a Fiberglass Dynamic Elastic Response Foot.* Boston, MA: The American Orthotics & Prosthetics Association 2016 National Assembly; 2016. September 8-11.

22. Board WJ, Street GM, Caspers C. A comparison of trans-tibial amputee suction and vacuum socket conditions. *Prosthetics and Orthotics International*. 2001;25:202–209.
23. Beil TL, Street GM. Comparison of interface pressures with pin and suction suspension systems. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research and Development*. 2004;41(6A):821–828.
24. Beil TL, Street GM, Covey SJ. Interface pressures during ambulation using suction and vacuum-assisted prosthetic sockets. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research and Development*. 2002;39(6):693–700.
25. Esposito E, et al. Step-to-step transition work during level and inclined walking using passive and powered ankle-foot prostheses. In: *Prosthet Orthot Int*: 2015 Jan 27.

22 Postsurgical Management of Partial Foot and Syme Amputation☆

JONATHAN DAY and MILAGROS JORGE

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Differentiate among the various joint disarticulation and transosseous surgeries used when amputation of the forefoot, midfoot, or rearfoot is necessary.
2. Describe usual gait performance and limitations of individuals with a partial foot and with Syme amputations.
3. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of prosthetic options for individuals with partial foot amputation.
4. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of the various prosthetic designs for persons with Syme amputation, including donning and pressure tolerance.
5. Compare how the various nonarticulating and dynamic response Syme prosthetic feet mimic the three rockers of gait.
6. Describe typical static and dynamic alignment variables or issues affecting gait for patients with a Syme or partial foot prosthesis.
7. Use knowledge of prosthetic options to suggest prosthetic prescriptions and plans of care for patients with partial foot and Syme amputation.

Partial foot and Syme amputations present advantages and challenges to the patient and the rehabilitation team. Preservation of the ankle and heel (in partial foot amputation) and most of the length of the lower limb (in Syme amputation) has an important advantage of distal weight-bearing capability: The individual with partial foot or Syme amputation is often able to ambulate without a prosthesis if necessary. However, the prosthesis provides protection for the vulnerable distal residual limb for patients with vascular compromise and neuropathy.

The length and shape of the residual limb present three challenges for successful fitting and prosthetic training for patients with partial foot or Syme amputation: suspension of the prosthesis on the residual limb, distribution of weight-bearing forces within the prosthesis, and attachment and alignment of the prosthetic foot. Improved communication combined with patient-centered care can have a positive influence on patient acceptance and adherence of prosthetic treatment.[1] This chapter defines the most common partial foot and Syme amputations and reviews the prosthetic management options currently available. Also identified are specific indications and contraindications for the various prosthetic designs.

☆The authors extend appreciation to Edmond Ayyappa and Heather Worden, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Partial Foot Amputations

Until the advent of antibiotics, disarticulation through the joints of the foot reduced the risk of sepsis and shock and improved the prognosis for healing compared with amputations that transected bone. The earliest partial foot amputation was recorded in 434 BC by the Greek historian Herodotus,[2] who told of a Persian warrior who escaped death while in the stocks by disarticulating his own foot. He hobbled 30 miles to a nearby town, where he was nursed to health until he could construct a prosthesis for himself. Later he became a soothsayer for the Persian army but ultimately was recaptured by the Spartans and killed.

At present, distal partial foot amputations include a wide variety of ray resections, digit (phalangeal) amputations, and metatarsal transections (Fig. 22.1). Midfoot amputations include surgical ablation at the Chopart and Lisfranc levels (Fig. 22.2).[3] Chopart disarticulation involves the talocalcaneonavicular joint and separates the talus and navicular, as well as the calcaneus and cuboid.[4] Lisfranc disarticulation separates the three cuneiform bones and the cuboid bone from the five metatarsal bones of the forefoot.

The three hindfoot amputations are the Pirogoff, Boyd, and Syme. The Pirogoff amputation is a wedging transection of the calcaneus, followed by bony fusion of the calcaneus and distal tibia with all other distal structures removed. In a Boyd amputation, the calcaneus remains largely intact rather than being wedged before arthrodesis with the tibia.

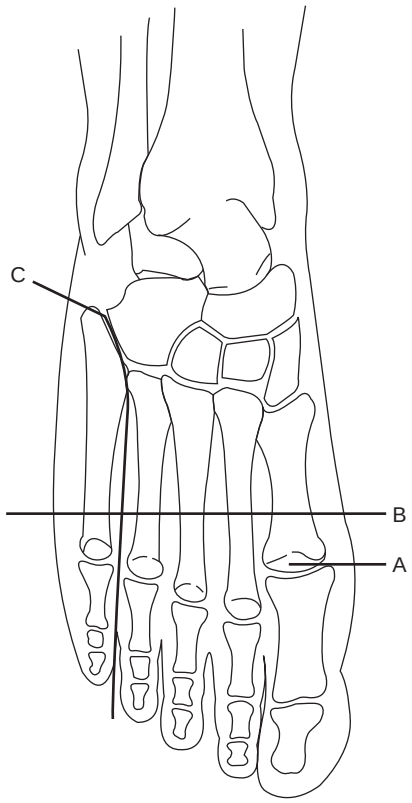


Fig. 22.1 Examples of amputations involving the forefoot. *A*, This digit (phalangeal) amputation involves disarticulation of the phalanx at the metatarsal joint. More distal digit amputations remove either the distal phalanx or the middle and distal phalanges. *B*, In this complete transmetatarsal amputation, transection occurred just proximal to all five metatarsal heads. *C*, Ray resections involve disarticulation of one or more metatarsals and their phalanges from the tarsal and neighboring metatarsals. Ray resections often require skin graft to achieve adequate tissue closure.

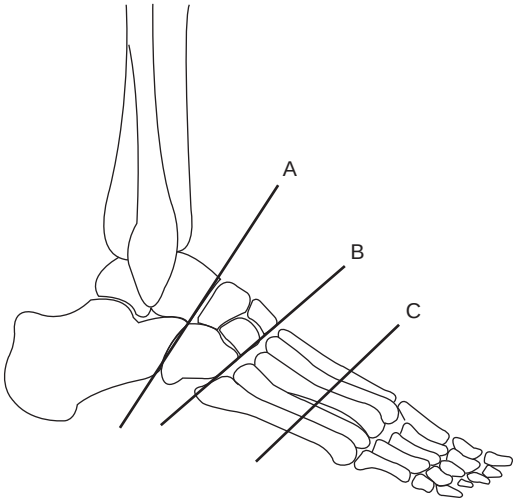


Fig. 22.2 In a Chopart amputation *(A)*, there is disarticulation of the midfoot from the hindfoot at the level of the talus and calcaneus. In a Lisfranc amputation *(B)*, there is disarticulation of the forefoot (metatarsals) from the midfoot (tarsals). *(C)*, In a transmetatarsal amputation, there is transaction through the length of one or more metatarsals, usually just proximal to the metatarsal heads.

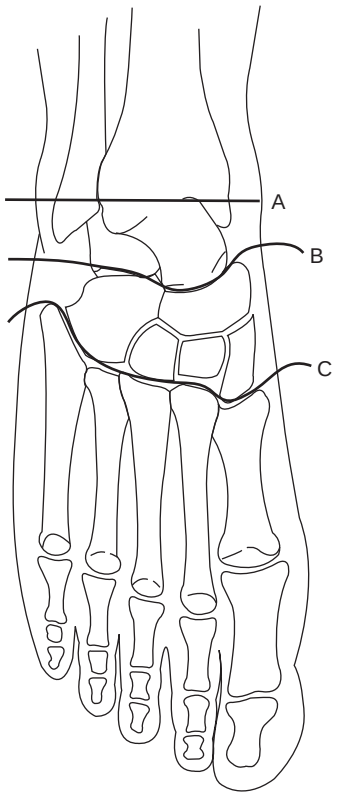


Fig. 22.3 *A*, The Syme amputation involves removal of the inferior projections of the tibia and fibula and all bone structures distally while preserving the natural weight-bearing fat pad of the heel. *B*, The Chopart amputation preserves the talus and calcaneus. *C*, The Lisfranc amputation has disarticulation of metatarsals from the midfoot.

Currently, the Pirogoff and Boyd amputations are infrequently performed on adult patients. Neither provides an easy fit with a prosthesis. The Boyd amputation has received positive clinical reviews when used in the management of congenital limb deficiencies in children in which the amputated limb is shorter than the sound limb.[5,6] In this case, there are usually fewer postoperative complications, such as scarring and heel pad migration, and less susceptibility to the bony overgrowth common in children with congenital limb deficiencies. In children, the longer the remnant limb or foot, the better the functional outcome.[7] The Syme amputation is performed more frequently in adults because of the ease of prosthetic management at this level (Fig. 22.3). Because of the length of the residual limb in Pirogoff and Boyd amputations, the attachment of a prosthetic foot lengthens the limb when a prosthesis is worn. A heel lift on the contralateral sound limb is usually necessary to counteract this artificially long prosthetic limb.

Proximal partial foot amputations often result in equinus deformities because of muscular imbalance created by severed dorsiflexors and intact triceps surae.[8-10] Nevertheless, many individuals with a partial foot amputation function extremely well. In one survey, physicians and prosthetists reported that patients with partial foot amputation function better than those with the Syme amputation.[11] Although surgeons and prosthetists have long supported the Syme amputation in preference to the Lisfranc or Chopart amputations, many patients with midfoot amputation achieve high levels of function and long remnant limb durability.[12]

For example, Jack Dempsey, a professional football player with a midfoot amputation, set several all-time field goal records wearing a custom-designed kicking boot.[13]

Patients with diabetes, particularly those with diabetic foot syndrome, have persistent high rates of limb amputation and mortality.[14] Minor amputations in patients with diabetic foot problems can be effective in limb salvage and can reduce morbidity and mortality.[15] Quality of life is influenced by age, time with diabetes, and presence of retinopathy—not level of amputation.[16] Functional benefits of partial foot amputation with a disproportionate risk of revision versus determining amputation level based on minimized risk of reulceration have to be considered prior to surgery.[17]

GAIT CHARACTERISTICS AFTER PARTIAL FOOT AMPUTATION

A person with a partial foot amputation typically has vascular insufficiency, is usually between the ages of 60 and 70 years, has compromised proprioception and sensation, and has weak lower limb musculature. After a Syme or partial foot amputation, a patient may be able to ambulate without a prosthesis but has a loss of the anterior lever arm in ambulation and an inefficient, somewhat dysfunctional gait. The primary need immediately after amputation is to protect the remaining tissue, which is vulnerable to vascular or neuropathic disease. The neuropathic walker developed at Rancho Los Amigos Medical Center locks the ankle in a custom-molded, foam-lined, thermoplastic ankle-foot orthosis (AFO) (Fig. 22.4). A rocker bottom is contoured to promote a smooth rollover as a substitute for the second and third rockers of gait, and the orthosis provides optimum protection for the insensate residual foot. For patients with adequate protective sensation, the risk of tissue breakdown is less and a custom shoe insert with in-depth or postoperative shoes often provides adequate protection.

A review of gait in partial foot case histories showed variations in single-limb support time directly related to the reduction of the forefoot lever arm of a partial foot and subsequent increase in the force concentration on the distal end

Fig. 22.4 The neuropathic walker, or CROW boot, provides maximum protection for the denervated foot at risk for amputation. The combination of custom-molded multidurometer liner, locked neutral ankle, and rocker bottom permits a rollover with minimal plantar pressure and shear. (A) Side view of custom CROW Walker. (B) Inside view of custom CROW Walker.

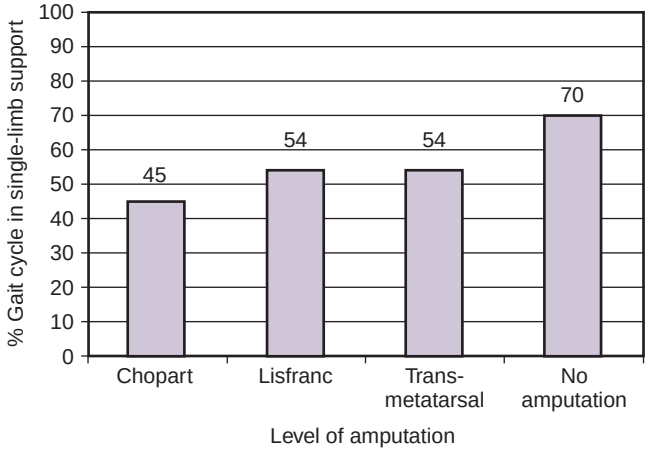


Fig. 22.5 Percent of the gait cycle spent in single-limb support for patients with midfoot Chopart or Lisfranc amputations and forefoot transmetatarsal amputation. Healthy older adults with intact feet typically spend between 65% and 75% of their gait cycle in single-limb support.

during terminal stance, reflected as reduced time in single-limb support on the limb with amputation (Fig. 22.5).[18] Uneven step lengths result from this reduced single-limb support, long ipsilateral and short contralateral steps referencing the amputated side.

In a person with a whole foot, a fully intact anterior lever arm preserves elevation of the center of mass at terminal stance. With normal quadriceps strength and eccentric control, slight knee flexion (15–20 degrees) provides shock absorption as weight is rapidly transferred onto the limb during loading response (Fig. 22.6). Some people with a dysvascular partial foot and a Syme amputation demonstrate significant weakness of the quadriceps. This functional weakness threatens eccentric control of the usual knee flexion angle that occurs during loading response. To compensate, the patient may keep the knee extended during loading response. This strategy shifts the ground reaction force vector to a position anterior to the knee joint axis, thus reducing the workload of the quadriceps. Although this compensatory strategy enhances early stance phase stability, it sacrifices the shock absorption mechanism at the knee and hip joints, increasing the likelihood of cumulative joint trauma at both joints (see Fig. 22.6B). Neuropathic impairment of proprioception and sensation may further complicate control of the knee in early stance. In addition, compromised forefoot support increases center of gravity displacement, which results in higher energy expenditure.

A study of the gait of persons with partial foot amputation included 18 patients with transmetatarsal amputations, 11 with one or more metatarsal amputations, 15 with ray resections, and 2 with either a Lisfranc or a Chopart amputation.[18-20] One portion of the analysis focused on the mechanics of the residual limb rockers. Partly because of a delay in the forefoot rocker, patients with all types of partial foot amputations walked with a significantly slower velocity than control subjects with healthy, intact feet (Fig. 22.7). Peak ankle dorsiflexion was also significantly delayed for all three partial foot groups compared with those with intact feet. Although the control group with intact lower limbs reached peak ankle dorsiflexion at a point

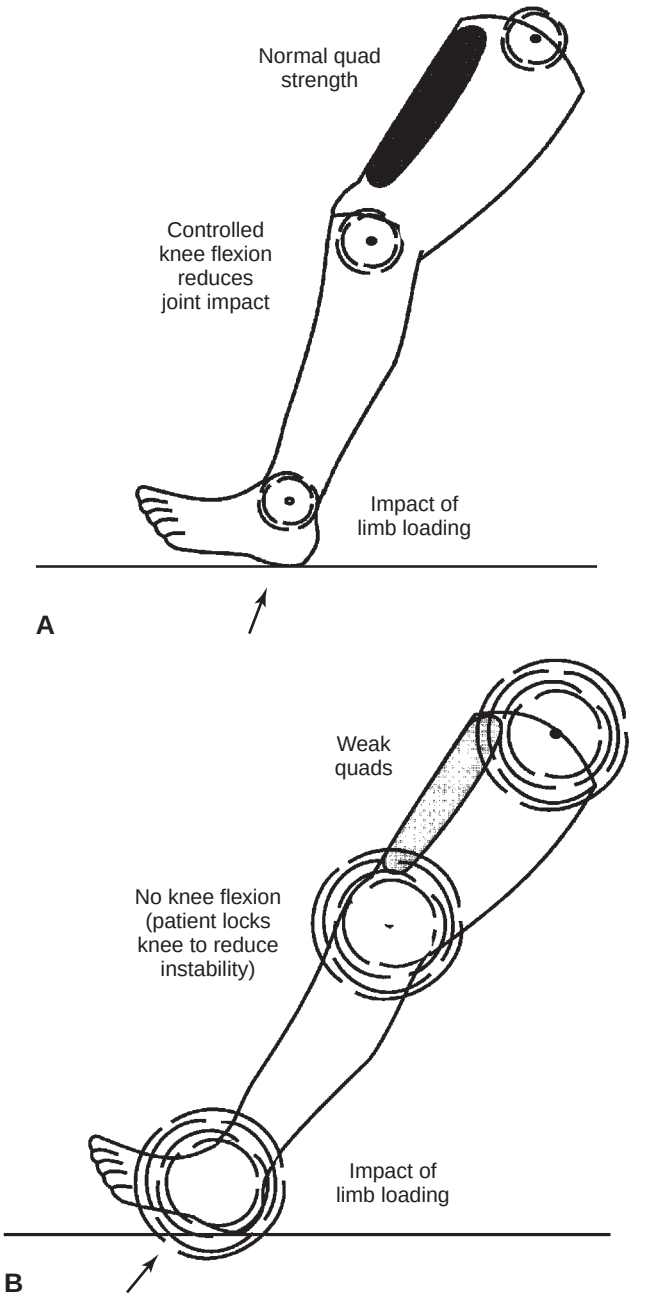


Fig. 22.6 (A) During loading in normal gait, knee flexion provides a significant shock absorption mechanism to protect the proximal joints. (B) The patient with weakness associated with dysvascular disease avoids knee flexion to increase stability, with a penalty of increased trauma to the proximal joints as a consequence of repeated higher impact loading.

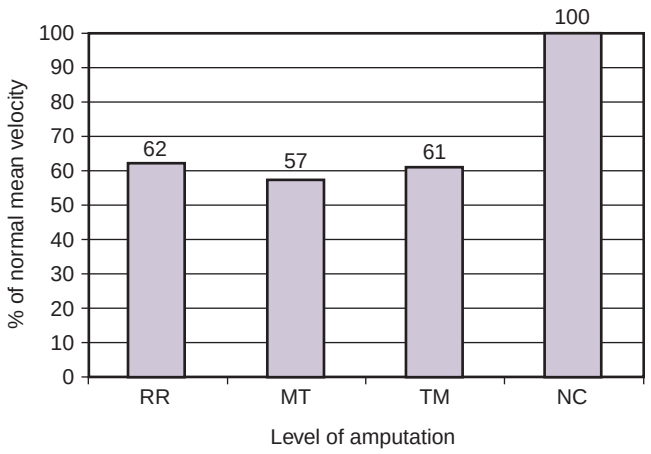


Fig. 22.7 Reduced gait velocity in patients with partial foot amputations. On average, patients walked at 62% of gait velocity of control subjects with intact lower limbs. *MT,* Metatarsal amputation of one to four rays; *NC,* normal control subjects; *RR,* ray resection; *TM,* complete transmetatarsal amputation.

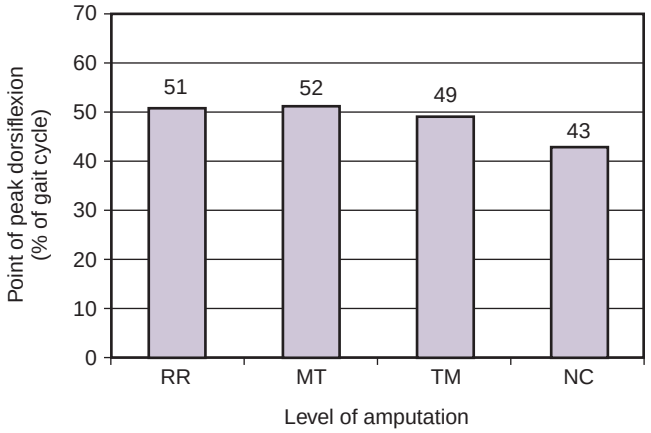


Fig. 22.8 For persons with partial foot amputations, maximum dorsiflexion is delayed during stance phase of the gait cycle. Although control subjects with intact feet achieved a maximum dorsiflexion angle at a point 43% into the gait cycle, those with partial foot amputation did not reach the maximum dorsiflexion angle until halfway through the cycle. The consequence of this delay is a slowed forward progression of the body's center of mass and transition to the subsequent period of double-limb support. *MT,* Metatarsal amputation of one to four rays; *NC,* normal control subjects; *RR,* ray resection; *TM,* complete transmetatarsal amputation.

43% into the gait cycle, patients with partial foot amputation did not reach peak dorsiflexion angle until nearly the halfway point of the gait cycle (Fig. 22.8). This delay in reaching peak dorsiflexion subsequently delays forward progression over the shortened stance limb and the transition to double-limb support.

The rise rate of the vertical ground reaction force is the amount of force that occurs in 1% of the gait cycle and can be expressed as Newtons divided by the percent of the gait cycle. After controlling for variation in velocity, the rise rate of the vertical ground reaction force from midstance to terminal stance (as the force pattern nears its F2 peak) was significantly lower for all three amputation groups compared with the control group (Fig. 22.9). Peak vertical ground reaction forces were significantly higher for the sound limb than the affected limb, likely reflecting an abrupt unloading of the partial foot amputation limb.

The forefoot lever arm of the trailing limb typically provides anterior support and results in adequate terminal stance support time (Fig. 22.10). This results in appropriate step length of the advancing limb. By contrast, inadequate anterior support of the trailing limb with partial foot amputation reduces the lever arm, resulting in premature toe break and forefoot collapse. The step length of the advancing limb may be correspondingly reduced (see Fig. 22.10B).

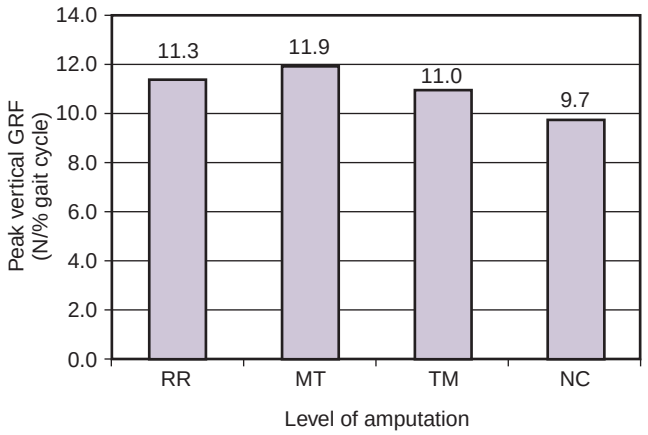


Fig. 22.9 Comparison of peak vertical ground reaction force *(GRF)* of the intact limbs of patients with partial foot amputations and persons without amputation, expressed as Newton *(N)* divided by percent of gait cycle. *MT,* Metatarsal amputation of one to four rays; *NC,* normal control subjects; *RR,* ray resection; *TM,* complete transmetatarsal amputation.

An inverse relation exists between surface area and peak pressure when body weight is loaded on the foot during stance. This relation is especially important for individuals with partial foot amputation during terminal stance. As the plantar surface area of the supporting forefoot is reduced, the magnitude of the pressure is increased.[18-20] The reduced forefoot lever arm also creates abrupt weight transfer to the contralateral side and can reduce step length, stride length, and velocity. Without prosthetic support, the advancing sound-side step length diminishes. Fear, insecurity, and pain aggravated by increased pressure near the amputation site collectively create an abrupt transfer of weight to the sound side, thus increasing the magnitude of the initial vertical force peak.[21]

In normal gait, the weight line is positioned more and more anterior to the knee joint as the gait cycle moves from midstance into terminal stance and preswing phases (Fig. 22.11). As a result, the limb is held in a passive, energy-efficient extended knee position, effectively supporting body weight and increasing stability in late stance. The length of the forefoot lever arm is one of the key determinants of this support. For persons with partial foot amputation, the lever arm of the foot is greatly reduced, leading to a less effective, premature loss of support at the end of stance phase. This shorter lever places the ground reaction force closer to or behind the knee in late stance (see Fig. 22.11B). Because much of the passive stability provided by a normal forefoot lever in late stance is absent, the quadriceps must contract to maintain stance phase stability, contributing to an increased energy cost of walking for persons with partial foot amputation.

Pinzur and colleagues[22] described a functional relation between gait velocity and the level of amputation at the foot. As the amputation level becomes more proximal (as the length of the residual foot decreases), changes in temporal and kinetic gait characteristics include reduced sound-side step length, decreased velocity, increased energy cost, and increased vertical load on the sound side. An inverse relation exists between the length of the remaining portion of the forefoot and the time spent in single-limb support on the amputated side.[21] When the level of amputation is proximal to the metatarsal heads, medial support is lost at loading response. This may require orthotic "posting" to limit resultant valgus deformity. Patients with partial foot amputation frequently have plantarflexion contracture develop from muscle imbalance. Any plantarflexion contracture, in turn, increases pressure at the distal residual limb during terminal stance, causing discomfort, pain, and risk of ulceration.[23] A contracture is even more problematic for individuals with Hansen disease or diabetic neuropathy, because they

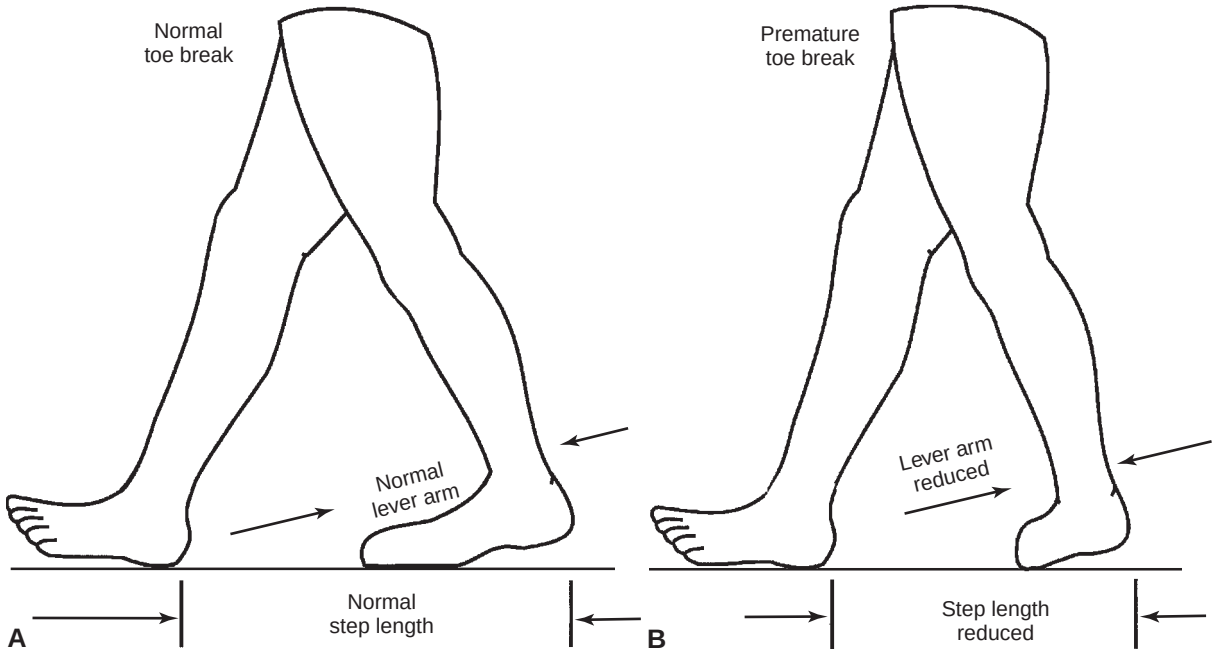


Fig. 22.10 (A) The forefoot lever arm contributes to a normal step length. (B) Reduction of the forefoot support after partial foot amputation produces a consequent reduction in contralateral step length.

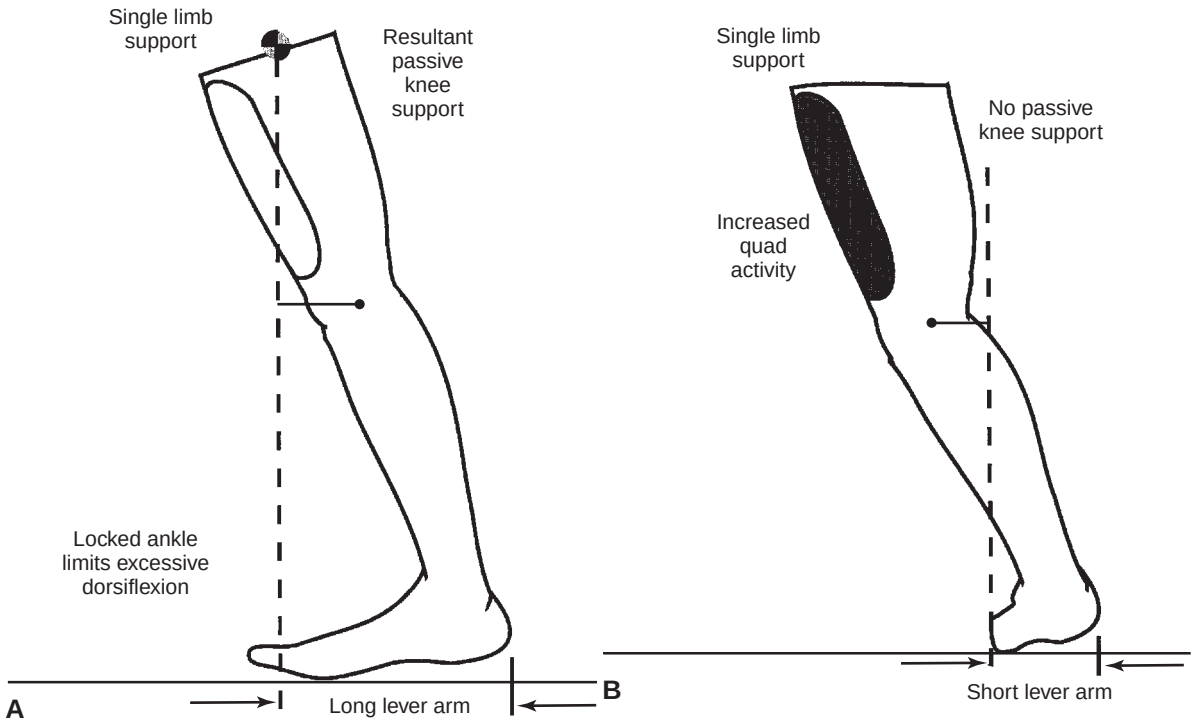


Fig. 22.11 (A) Normal energy-efficient passive knee support in late stance relies on a locked or rigid forefoot that limits further dorsiflexion at the ankle and a normal forefoot lever arm to maintain the ground reaction force anterior to the knee during late stance. (B) After partial foot amputation, the reduced forefoot lever arm often leads to increased quadriceps activity to compensate for reduced passive knee support and ensure stability in late stance.

already have compromised sensation.[24,25] Shoes worn without prosthetic replacement of the missing forefoot quickly become disfigured, collapsing at a displaced toe break, further endangering the vulnerable areas of the residual limb.[26] The areas of the residual foot most vulnerable to tissue damage during walking include the distal end, first and fifth metatarsal heads, navicular, malleoli, and tibial crest. The longitudinal and transverse arches, the heel pad, and the area along the pretibial muscle belly are pressure-tolerant areas for loading in a custom shoe or prosthesis.

PROSTHETIC MANAGEMENT

During the 1800s, digit amputations were fitted by a wood or cork sandal with a leather ankle lacer.[27,28] Partial foot amputations were sometimes fitted with a socket and keel fashioned from one piece of carefully chosen root wood, the grain of which followed the curve of the ankle. This was referred to as the *natural crook technique*. Another commonly used historical design incorporated steel-reinforced leather sockets.[29]

In recent decades, a wide variety of prosthetic options for individuals with partial foot amputation have emerged. The prescribing physician and patient care team must familiarize themselves with the broad array of options available in prosthetic components and design so that prescription considerations can best accommodate the special needs of each patient. Because of variability in level of amputation, sensitivity or insensitivity of the residual limb, concurrent foot deformity, and patient activity, no single prosthetic prescription can be used for all patients with foot amputation.[30] As the amputation level becomes more proximal and the length of the residual foot decreases, prostheses should incorporate supramalleolar-, AFO-, and patella tendon-bearing designs. This is especially true as a patient's activity level increases. Prosthetic treatment approaches include toe fillers placed inside the shoe, an arch support with a foam spacer, the University of California Biomechanics Laboratory (UCBL) shoe insert maximum-control foot orthosis with a toe filler, which provides better control of the heel position, and a boot or slipper made of flexible urethane resin (Smooth-On, Easton, PA). Cosmetic restoration of silicone and several variations of AFOs are also in common use.

The length and degree of flexibility of the prosthetic forefoot affect the anterior lever arm and consequently foot and ankle motion. The biomechanical goal of prosthetic treatment is to provide anterior support of the remnant limb and a controlled fulcrum of forward motion as the foot-ankle complex pivots over the area of the amputation level in the third rocker of late stance. An additional goal is to minimize pressure at the distal end and balance the weight-bearing forces on the remnant limb within the socket or shoe.

Toe Fillers and Modified Shoes

Historically, if a simple toe filler was prescribed, an extended steel shank or band of rigid spring steel was also placed within the sole of the shoe, extending from the calcaneus to the metatarsal heads. Currently, carbon fiber plates are designed in a variety of styles and degrees of stiffness that can be incorporated into prosthetic treatment. The challenge that faces the prosthetist is to match the appropriate degree of forefoot flexibility to the needs of each patient. For an energy-efficient and cosmetic gait, relative plantar rigidity should give way to at least 15 degrees of forefoot

Case Example 22.1 A Patient With a Unilateral Hallux (Great Toe), Second Toe, and Distal First Metatarsal Head Amputation with Rotated Skin Flap for Soft Tissue Coverage

J.C. is an 84-year-old male with a 34-year history of type II diabetes. He has controlled his diabetes but has lost protective sensation due to neuropathy. On October 10, 2017, J.C. was working with his zero turn mower (ZTR) on his property. He left the engine and mower blades running and positioned himself in front of the mower, needing to move the ZTR only approximately 12 to 18 inches forward. The ZTR got stuck on a tree root and did not come straight forward; it wiggled and then broke free as J.C. fell. J.C. watched both feet go under the deck of the mower. His left foot ended up by the discharge chute, and his right foot got wedged and staled the mower blades, preventing more extensive injuries as the mower deck came to rest on his right hip. J.C. was emergently taken to the operating room, and his right great toe, second toe, and distal first metatarsal head were amputated. A local skin flap had to be rotated for soft tissue coverage. By rotating this local skin flap, a split-thickness skin graft is not necessary (Fig. 22.12A–I). Partial foot amputations combined with split-thickness skin grafts usually require subsequent revision to a more proximal level.[43] The referring surgeon kept J.C. non–weight bearing on his right foot until mid-December, when he was released to begin the fitting of his partial foot prosthesis. There continues to be an area of healing on the dorsum of his right foot, which is expected to heal by secondary intention over time (Fig. 22.13).

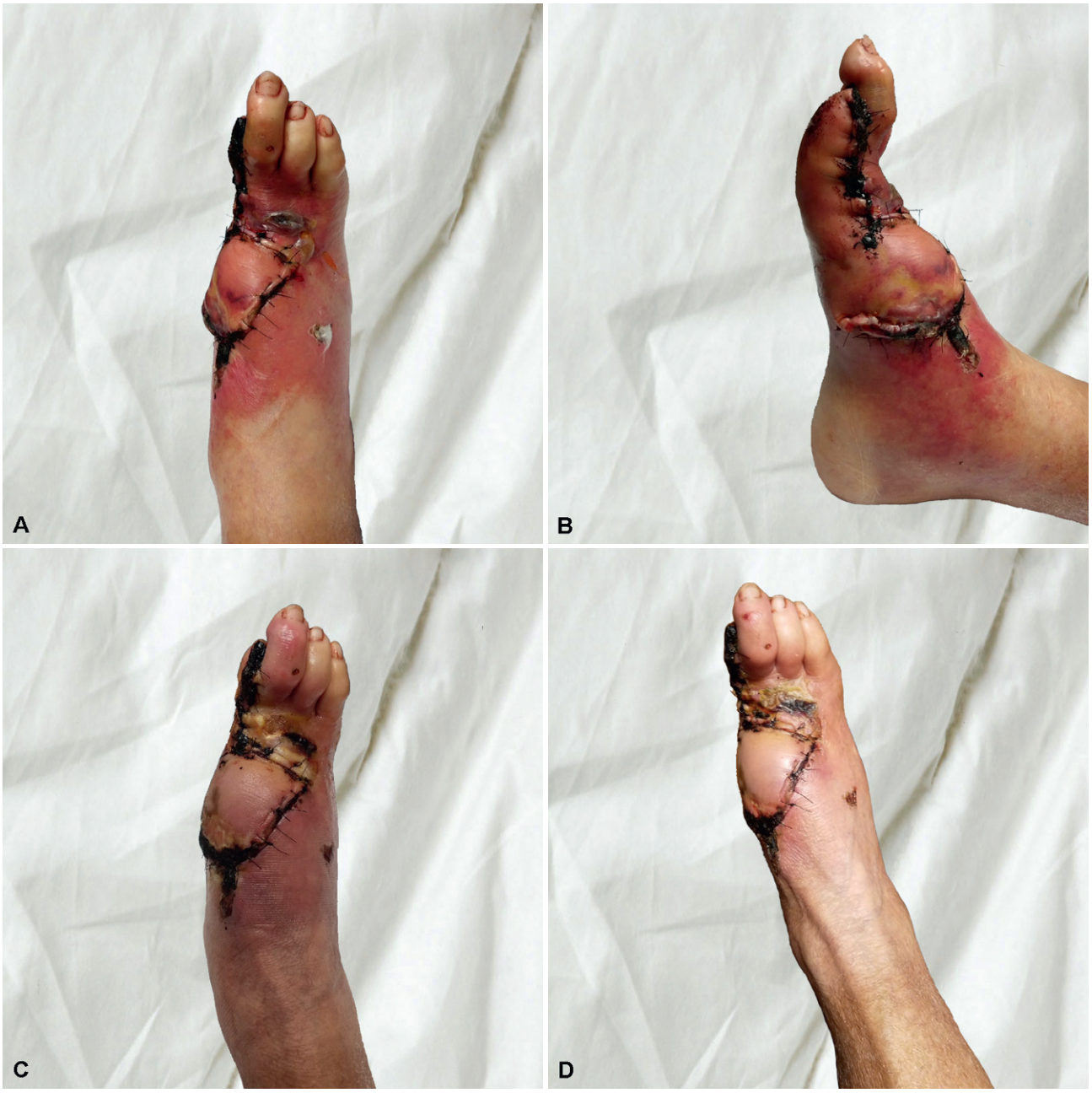


Fig. 22.12 (A–I) The progress of healing after J.C. suffered his traumatic partial foot amputation.

Continued on following page

Case Example 22.1 **A Patient With a Unilateral Hallux (Great Toe), Second Toe, and Distal First Metatarsal Head Amputation with Rotated Skin Flap for Soft Tissue Coverage (Continued)**

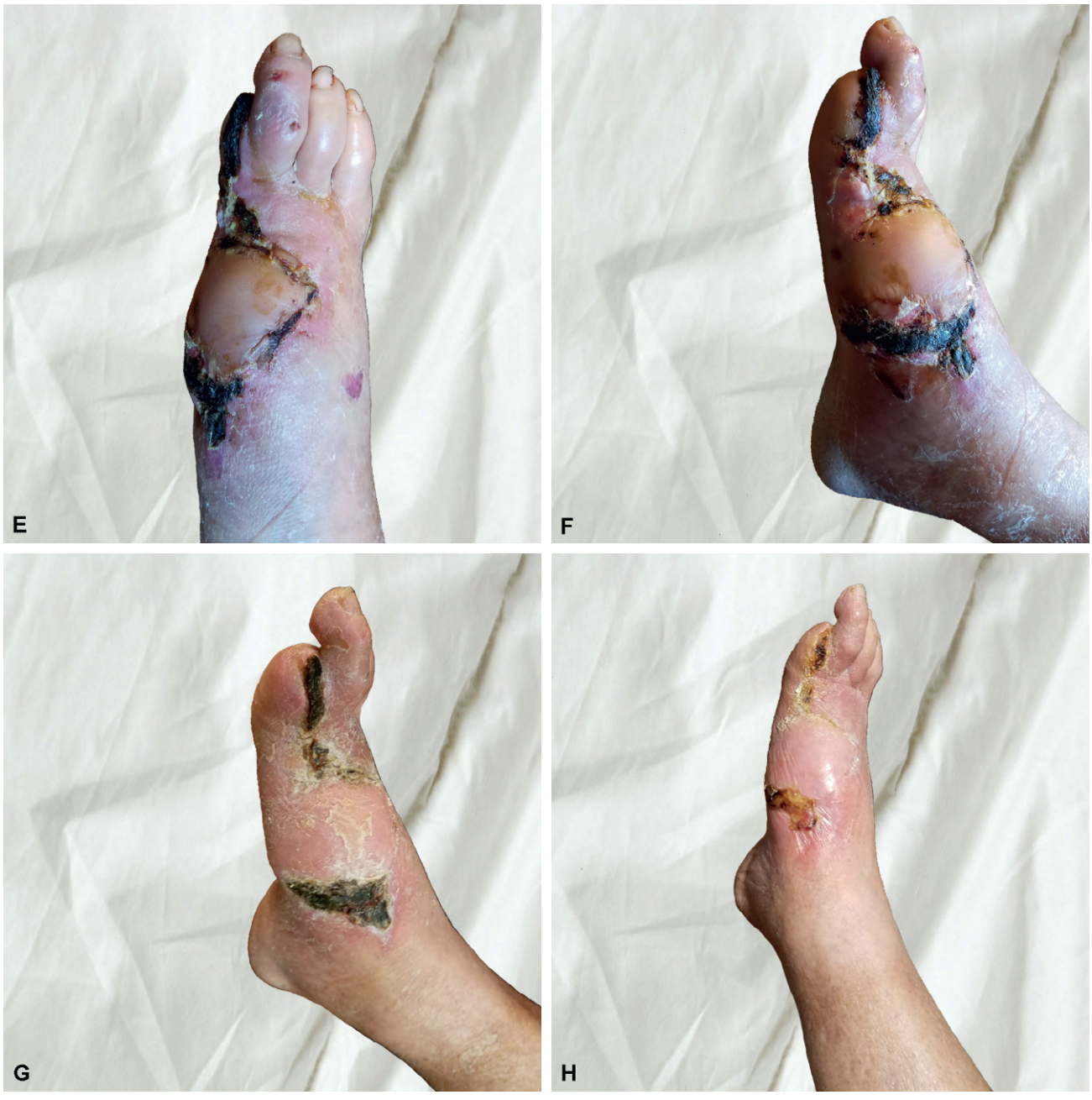


Fig. 22.12, cont'd

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Considering his medical situation and awareness of his diabetic condition, what concerns might exist about the residual foot? Which part of the foot is most vulnerable to future complications?
- What is the primary mechanism for an increase in energy consumption with any digit amputation, and what is particularly concerning about a great toe (hallux) amputation?
- How will his shortened foot affect progression throughout the gait cycle with respect to each phase of gait and the specific three rockers of the foot?
- What would be the most optimal prosthetic recommendation? What are the primary goals of the prosthesis? How should the rehabilitation team assist him in caring for his new amputation, as well as in prevention of future more proximal amputations?

Case Example 22.1 A Patient With a Unilateral Hallux (Great Toe), Second Toe, and Distal First Metatarsal Head Amputation with Rotated Skin Flap for Soft Tissue Coverage (Continued)

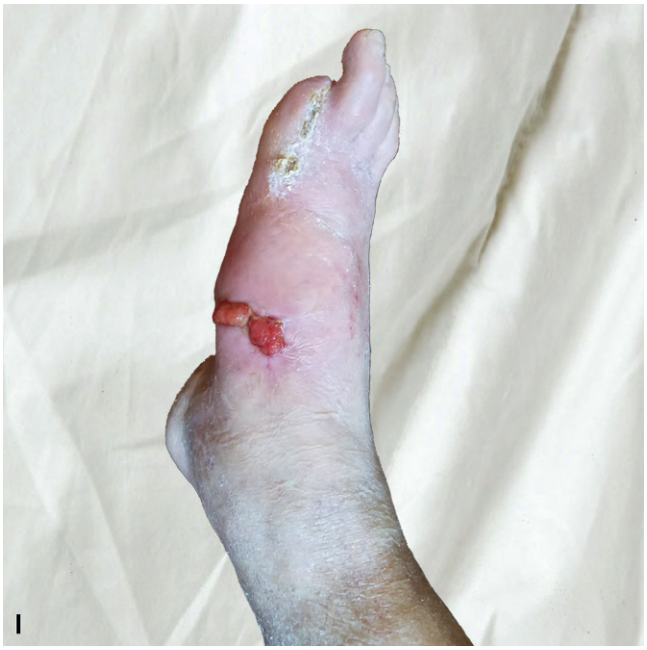


Fig. 22.12, cont'd

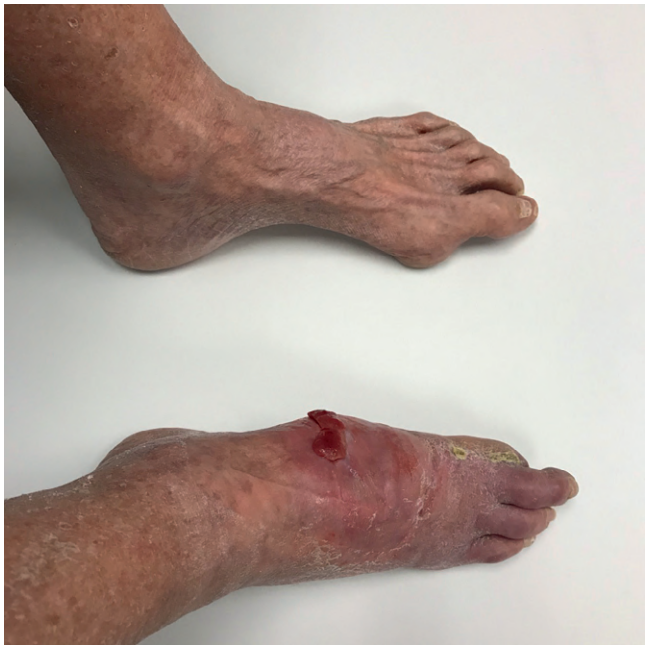
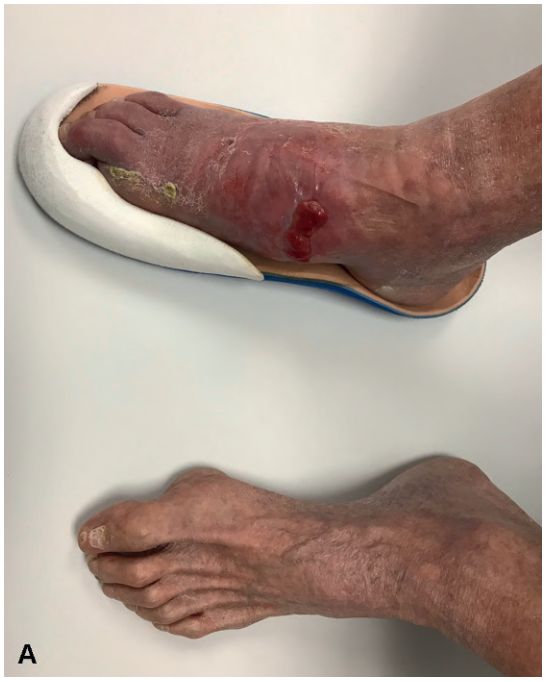


Fig. 22.13 The right remnant limb and intact foot of J.C. at delivery of his first prosthesis.



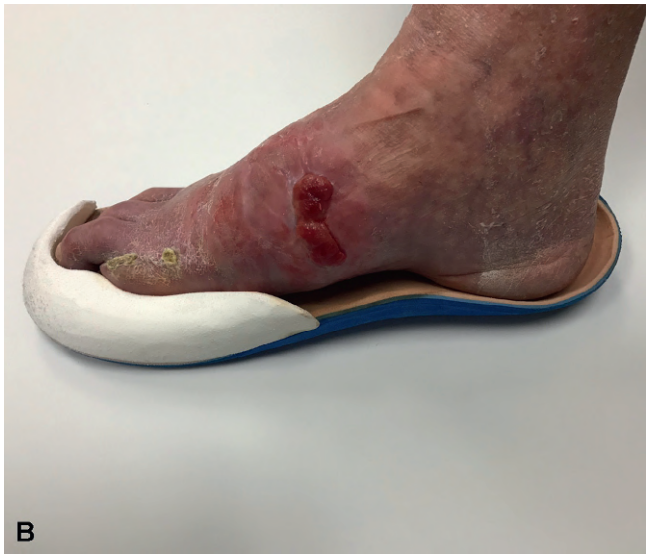


Fig. 22.14 (A and B) The right remnant limb of J.C. with his partial foot prosthesis and toe filler.

RECOMMENDATIONS

After obtaining all additional health information from J.C. and from all medical sources concerning J.C., it was noted that he had medically significant bilateral callusing of his heels and on the plantar surface of his feet over metatarsals 1, 3, and 5 on his left and 3 and 5 on his right. He had hammer toes bilaterally. His skin was thin, shiny, and frail. He was wearing appropriately sized tennis shoes. His right foot was considerably swollen relative to his left foot. After reviewing his medical history and completing his physical exam, the treatment team recommended a custom partial foot prosthesis with toe filler and carbon plate. The custom partial foot prosthesis consisted of a great, second, and medial foot filler, diabetic compliant trilaminate foam, medial longitudinal arch support, and relief at the metatarsal heads (Fig. 22.14A and B). The carbon plate was left independent for use as needed to stiffen flexible shoes. After fitting him with his new shoes and right partial foot prosthesis, J.C. was able to ambulate with relatively equal step lengths. He stated, "I am glad to be walking again and not having to use the wheelchair." At his follow-up visit in January of 2018, J.C. had discontinued his use of the carbon plate because he felt he walked better and was more comfortable in these shoes without it (Fig. 22.15A and B).

Continued on following page

Case Example 22.1 **A Patient With a Unilateral Hallux (Great Toe), Second Toe, and Distal First Metatarsal Head Amputation with Rotated Skin Flap for Soft Tissue Coverage (Continued)**

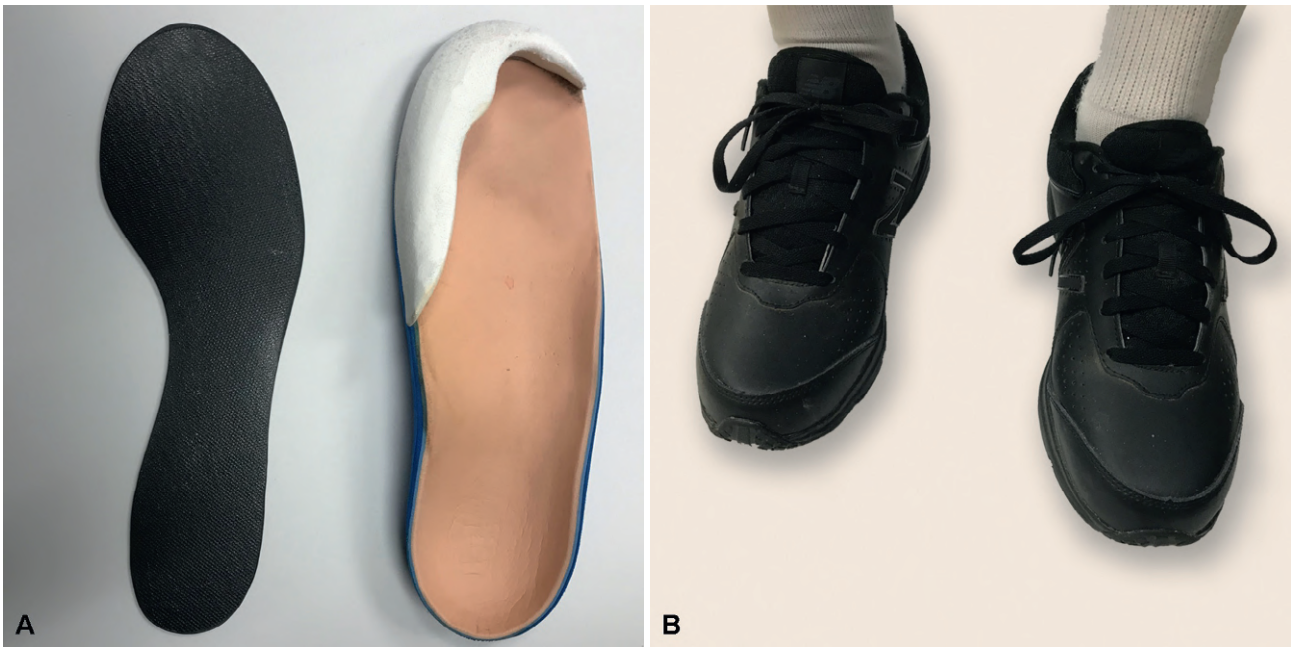


Fig. 22.15 A, J.C.'s partial foot prosthesis with the carbon fiber foot plate. B, J.C. wearing his prosthesis and shoes walking for the first time.

flexibility distal to the metatarsal heads. The steel shank (carbon plate) is helpful in providing a limited degree of buoyancy that substitutes for the lost anterior support of the foot.[31] Stiffening the sole with a spring steel shank (carbon fiber) increases the lever arm support but often at the expense of additional pressure on the distal end of the residual limb.[32]

For a patient with a more complex partial foot amputation, a rocker bottom shoe modification distributes force over a greater area and advances stance more quickly and efficiently. A curved roll or buildup on the plantar surface of the shoe encourages tibial advancement while minimizing weight-bearing pressures on the distal amputated end. For optimal function the plantar contour of a rocker bottom should follow a radius originating from the knee joint center but break or roll more abruptly just distal to the metatarsal heads. Although a rocker bottom assists rollover, it also compromises symmetry of gait. It is often prescribed for individuals with chronic pain or in conjunction with a custom-molded accommodative interface for those with a neuropathy-related risk of reamputation. Extra-depth shoes have 6 to 8 mm or more of space inside the shoe on the plantar surface to accommodate an orthotic insert or prosthesis and may be useful for patients with digit or ray amputations.[30]

Custom-molded shoes, when used in conjunction with a filler and carbon plate, improve the comfort level and reduce the risk of ulceration in many dysvascular patients with amputation. They are not as subject to forefoot collapse, provide major protection to the endangered foot, and may last longer than stock shoes.[33]

Partial Foot Inserts and Toe Fillers

A custom-molded, flexible, plantar shoe insert is one of the options for individuals with amputation of the hallux or first ray. This partial foot prosthetic approach is typically used in combination with extra-depth shoes. The goals are to provide a flexible anterior extension to compensate for a missing or shortened first ray to improve the third rocker and to support and protect the amputation site during the simulated metatarsophalangeal hyperextension in late stance and preswing.[34] This provides some relief for metatarsal head pressure, supports the arch, and probably assists in normalizing the ground reaction force pattern during terminal stance and preswing. It may incorporate a toe filler to prevent premature forefoot shoe collapse and migration of remaining toes.[35-37] Partial foot inserts should be fabricated to support subtalar neutral to minimize remnant limb tissue stress.[38] Toe fillers consist of soft foam material such as room-temperature vulcanized elastomer, which fills the voids in the toe box of the shoe. They provide limited extension of the shoe life and a moderate degree of cosmesis. They also act as spacers, keeping adjoining toes properly positioned and reducing abnormal motion that can otherwise lead to ulceration. The toe filler alone provides limited mechanical advantage. An appropriately stiff carbon plate placed inside the shoe under the partial foot insert can further improve gait. An alternative to the spring steel shank and carbon plate is a longitudinal support built into a flexible custom insole. Either support device must end at the metatarsal heads or allow proper hyperextension of the metatarsophalangeal joints. A partial foot insert with arch support and filler is

preferable to the simple filler because it can be used in different shoes and because it provides plantar support to an already compromised weight-bearing surface.[39] Custom partial foot insoles can also be made from a sawdust and epoxy resin instead of foams and thermoplastics as a base structure.

The UCBL orthosis, a foot orthosis that encapsulates the calcaneus, was developed at the UCBL during the 1960s and was comprehensively described in 1969.[40,41] The UCBL orthosis is designed to provide better control of subtalar and forefoot position than are custom-made shoe inserts, reducing motion and thus friction with a closer fit or purchase over the calcaneus and forefoot.[42] The UCBL orthosis design can be effectively incorporated into a custom partial foot prosthesis with toe filler for persons with partial foot amputation.

Cosmetic Slipper Designs

The slipper, one variation of which has been referred to as the *slipper-type elastomer prosthesis*, is fabricated from semiflexible urethane elastomer.[44] A similar design in silicone may not provide adequate forefoot support without the addition of an extended steel shank in the patient's shoe or incorporation of a carbon plate. Another similar variation is made from a combination of silicone Silastic (Dow Corning, Midland, MI), polyester resin, and prosthetic (polyurethane) foam. These designs provide much of the support and control of the UCBL approach but with added cosmesis. These designs may be appropriate for individuals with transmetatarsal and metatarsal disarticulation (Lisfranc) amputations. They are ideal for swimming or water sports because most are water impervious, cosmetic, and capable of providing a flexible whip action, which is useful with swim fins.

Some slipper-type prostheses are cosmetic restorations made of silicone or vinyl and based on a "life cast" or on an alginate impression of a human model (Fig. 22.16). This prosthesis is made for patients who consider cosmesis paramount. This custom prosthesis is most often produced in special manufacturing centers and frequently requires a considerable amount of time for delivery. It can be ordered with hair and freckles and in a large variety of skin tones; however, it is most often a less-than-perfect match when compared with the intact contralateral foot. The patient should always share responsibility in the color swatch selection. The material itself is easily stained and changes color with time when exposed to sunlight. The cosmetic restoration provides little ambulation advantage but does increase shoe life. It may be appropriate for patients with transmetatarsal amputations who place a premium on cosmesis but is not always covered by insurance and may be the patient's financial responsibility.

Prosthetic Boots

The prosthetic boot, with laced or hook-and-loop material ankle cuff closures, has greater proximal encompassment to reduce distal motion and increase control (Fig. 22.17). This design is appropriate for individuals with a Lisfranc or metatarsal disarticulation amputation. One variation, the Chicago boot, or Imler partial foot prosthesis, combines a thermoplastic UCBL-type heel cup with a flexible urethane prosthetic forefoot.[45,46] Other designs incorporate urethane with a modified solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) foot. Some are fabricated from leather, laminated plastic, Silastic elastomer (Dow Corning), or Plastazote (Bakelite Xylonite Ltd, London, UK) combinations as an insert for a boot or as an outer boot with inner filler to accommodate bony prominences.[47-50] Such boots often have an anterior or medial tongue and laces or some other means of obtaining a firm purchase above the ankle.[51-54] Some variation of the prosthetic boot may be the general prosthesis of choice for most patients with midfoot amputations.

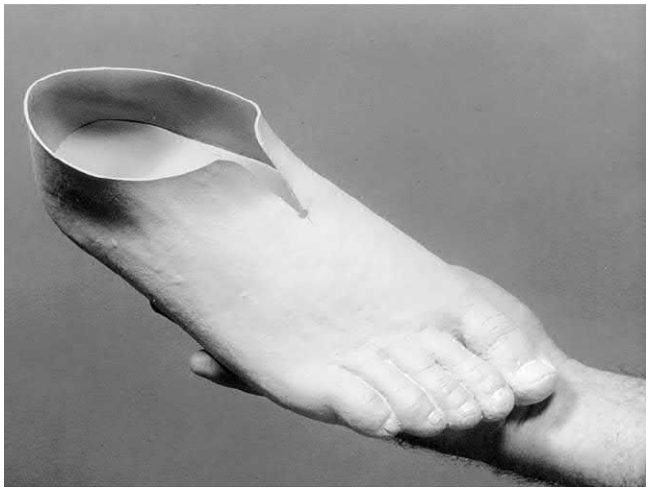


Fig. 22.16 The life cast prosthesis provides excellent cosmesis with little or no biomechanical assistance. Without additional reinforcement a silicone slipper-style prosthesis does not provide adequate forefoot support. Stiffer silicone durometers can be incorporated to provide better biomechanical function.

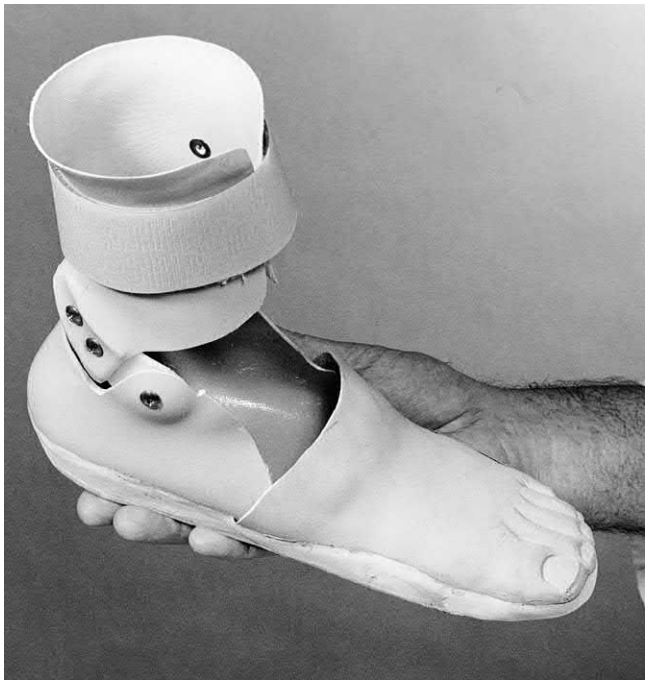


Fig. 22.17 A prosthetic boot, composed of epoxy-modified acrylic resin combined with supramalleolar containment and free motion, single-axis ankle joints may be helpful at the transmetatarsal level. Without the circumferential containment above the ankle, patients often report joint pain toward the end of the day.

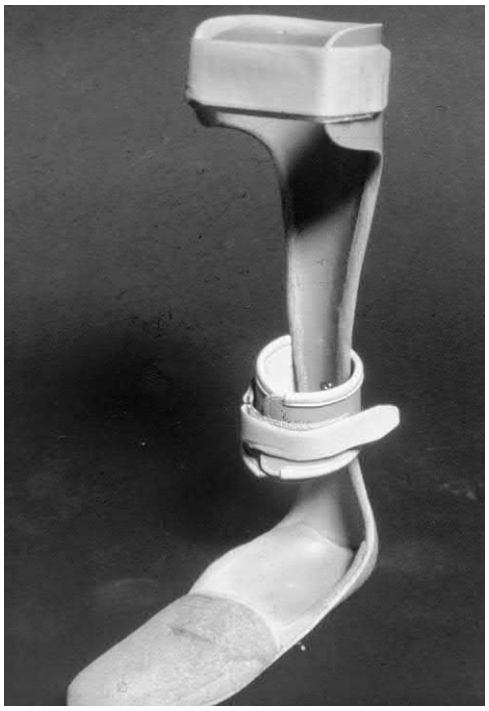


Fig. 22.18 A posterior leaf spring partial foot prosthesis with toe filler and anterior strap is successful for many patients with partial foot amputation.

Partial Foot Prostheses Incorporating an Ankle-Foot Orthosis

Individuals with reduced mobility may benefit from partial foot prostheses that extend above the ankle, incorporating an AFO design.[55] The polypropylene or copolymer shell supports the plantar aspect of the foot, incorporates the heel, and extends up the posterior leg to the belly of the gastrocnemius (Fig. 22.18). A circumferential anterior strap stabilizes the limb in the AFO. As an alternative, metal uprights may be attached to a shoe but have obvious cosmetic drawbacks. The AFO, whether metal or plastic, provides advantages of the arch support/UCBL orthosis and boot with maximum containment and a lever arm for support and substitution of the rocker mechanism. It offers enhanced stability and control because of its high proximal trim line. It has been an excellent solution for many patients with partial foot amputation and may be the prosthesis of choice for the active patient with a Chopart or Lisfranc amputation. Prefabricated carbon AFOs and custom-fabricated carbon AFOs can also be incorporated into partial foot prosthetic designs. Supramalleolar thermoplastic or laminated versions are fit with Tamarack (Blaine, MN) or Gillette (Gillette Children's Specialty Healthcare, St. Paul, MN) joints to provide free plantar and dorsiflexion motion. This biomechanical solution is popular for the higher activity level of midfoot amputations. In the presence of acute ankle pain, a patient with a Chopart amputation was successful with a rear-entry ground reaction force AFO with a rigid solid ankle design.

AFO designs incorporating an interior tibial shell, clamshell, or panel distributes the toe lever forces during the terminal stance phase of gait.[56] Partial foot prostheses designed with a stiff forefoot and restricted dorsiflexion can manage the center of pressure of the remnant limb with less excursion.[56,57] This type of partial foot prosthesis, with articulated clamshell AFO, can affectively restore the foot length.[57]

Chopart Prostheses

Chopart socket designs are similar to Syme amputations, but there is no room for Syme prosthetic feet because the leg lengths of the patient remain the same after this level of partial foot amputation. Prosthetic manufacturers have developed Chopart plates that can be directly laminated onto the plantar surface of the socket to minimize the leg length increase and to provide more dynamic function when compared with an AFO design. Otto Bock (Minneapolis, MN) has developed three Chopart plates; 1E80, 1E81, and 1E82 with heel heights of 0 (flat), 9 mm, and 19 mm, respectfully, and all three of these plates have a patient weight limit of 300 lb (136 kg). Ossur (Aliso Viejo, CA) has developed a Chopart plate that has a 10-mm heel height and a patient weight limit of 324 lb (147 kg). Ability Dynamics (Tempe, AZ) has designed a Chopart plate that has a 10-mm heel height and a patient weight limit of 360 lb (163 kg). All these plates are fixed once laminated to the distal socket and do not allow any alignment changes if the patient improves his or her strength, balance, and gait during rehabilitation.

Case Example 22.2 A 4-Year-Old With Traumatic Injuries Requiring Amputation of Right Foot

K.J. is a 29-year-old mother of two children with a 25-year history of right lower limb amputation. K.J. was run over by a lawn mower when she was 4 years of age. K.J. was a healthy, normally developing child without any medical comorbidities to consider when determining her optimal surgical and rehabilitative treatment. The limb-threatening injury ultimately required an amputation because the foot could not be salvaged.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given her pediatric medical history, what level of amputation would be best?
- Would you recommend a surgery that transects bone or disarticulates a joint?
- Would a Boyd, Syme, or transtibial amputation provide the best long-term outcome for a pediatric patient?
- Would a leg length discrepancy be created by any of these amputation techniques? What is her risk for additional surgeries as she grows?
- Should an epiphysiodesis be performed at her initial amputation, later during her development, or not at all?
- How will her shortened lower extremity biomechanically progress through the gait cycle?
- Will she have functional compromise during any of the three gait rockers from initial contact through loading response, loading response through midstance, and midstance through terminal stance?
- What are the major goals for surgical and prosthetic intervention for K.J.?
- What specific recommendations should be made and why?
- What is her prognosis for functional ambulation?
- How should the efficacy of intervention be assessed?

Case Example 22.2 A 4-Year-Old With Traumatic Injuries Requiring Amputation of Right Foot (Continued)

RECOMMENDATIONS

At 4 years of age, K.J. underwent a Syme amputation. K.J. was treated with a Syme prosthesis almost annually due to growth, with a variety of functional prosthetic feet based on the available space or leg length difference compared with the contralateral side. By age 8, the plantar calcaneal fat pad that was placed distal to her tibia and fibula during her amputation surgery had started to migrate. By age 12, the fat pad had migrated completely off the distal end of her remnant limb (Fig. 22.19 through Fig. 22.22). The uncovered distal end suffered recurrent callous and would not tolerate end bearing. The socket had to be elongated to reduce distal pressure, further limiting prosthetic foot options due to decreased space for her foot. In February of 2012, K.J. underwent a transtibial amputation due to pain and recurrent distal remnant limb skin breakdown (Fig. 22.23). Her Syme amputation got her through childhood and delayed surgical revision until she reached skeletal maturity and adulthood. Based on my clinical experience, a Boyd and epiphysiodesis would have been the preferred treatment originally. The Boyd amputation technique leaves the natural calcaneal attachment of the plantar heel fat pad, and the epiphysiodesis would provide remnant limb shortening over time to improve prosthetic foot options. Fat pad migration risk would have been reduced, decreasing the potential need for revision surgery. (See Figs. 22.20 and 22.21.)

K.J. has been an independent community ambulator with all her prostheses. Her prosthetic feet provided biomechanical function throughout her gait cycle. Growing up, K.J. participated in sports and has continued her active lifestyle into adulthood. Her step lengths are equal, and her timing and gait symmetry approach normal. When K.J. is wearing jeans, public observers do not know she has any lower extremity impairment.

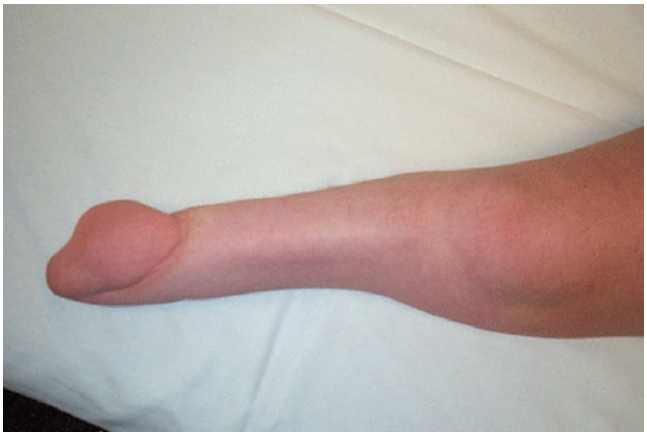


Fig. 22.19 K.J. right Syme residual limb showing the fat pad migration and tapper of her limb at 13 years of age.

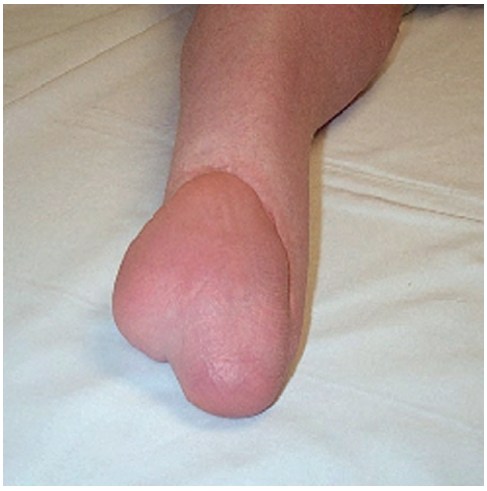


Fig. 22.20 Distal end of K.J.'s remnant limb.

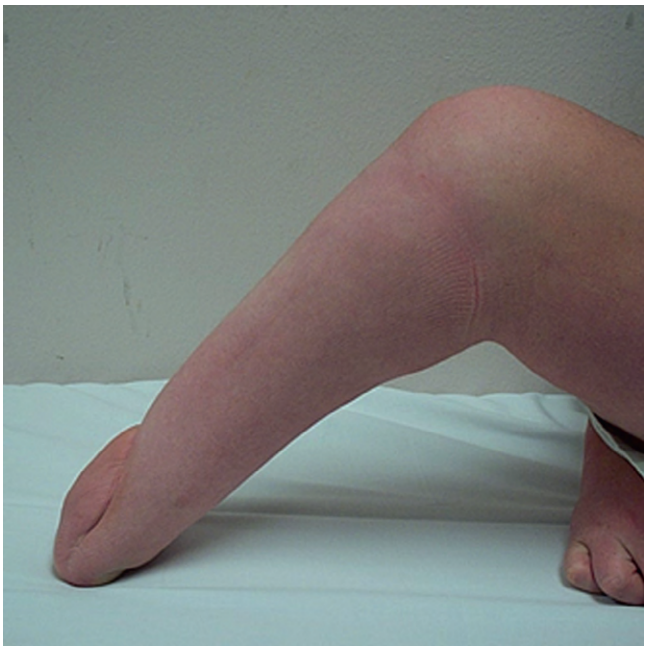


Fig. 22.21 K.J. demonstrating end bearing of her remnant limb into the exam table.

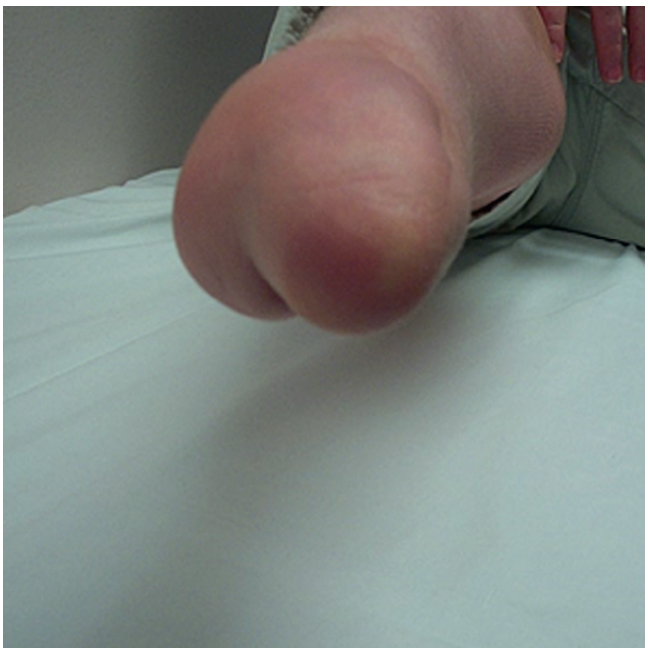


Fig. 22.22 K.J.'s distal remnant limb with skin over bone and no fat pad coverage to protect the bone during weight bearing.

Continued on following page

Case Example 22.2 **A 4-Year-Old With Traumatic Injuries Requiring Amputation of Right Foot (Continued)**

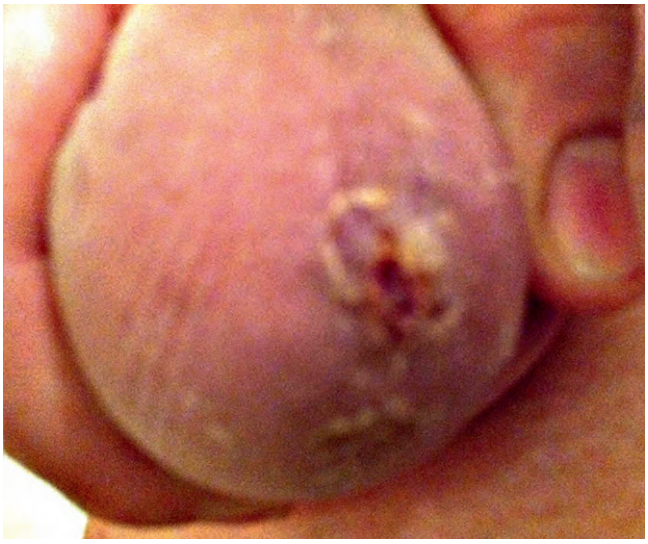


Fig. 22.23 K.J.'s distal limb with skin breakdown, which resulted in revision to the transtibial level during early adulthood.

Syme Amputation

In 1867, E.D. Hudson, the Surgeon General of the United States, described the Syme amputation with a litany of superlatives: "No amputation of the inferior extremity can ever compare in value with that of the ankle joint originated by Mr. Syme. Twelve years of experience with that variety of operation have afforded me assurance that it is a concept which is complete in itself and not capable of being improved in its general character."[58]

The Syme, or tibiotarsal, amputation is a disarticulation of the talocrural joint. The entire foot is completely removed, but the fat pad of the heel is preserved and anchored to the distal tibia. This allows distal end bearing and some degree of ambulation without a prosthesis (see Fig. 22.3).[59] It gained popularity during the late 1800s primarily because the likelihood of survival with this technique was substantially greater than with other surgical choices, given the reduced degree of sepsis and shock that occurred when bone was not severed.[60]

Two possible problems exist in amputations at the Syme level: migration of the distal heel pad (which may be surgically avoidable) and poor cosmetic result (which can sometimes be partially addressed by decreasing the mediolateral dimension of the malleoli during surgery). For a positive outcome, the vascular supply must be adequate to ensure healing. The current resurgence of popularity of the Syme amputation is from an increased awareness of its energy efficiency in gait compared with transtibial levels, as well as improved vascular evaluation techniques and medical procedures that increase the likelihood of more distal primary wound healing.[61,62] In addition, the dramatic weight-bearing potential of a well-performed Syme surgery (with or without a prosthesis) has always been considered.[63]

Pressure-sensitive areas of the Syme residual limb include the tibial crest, lateral tibial flair, fibula head, and the bony prominence around the distal expansion.[64,65] Pressure-tolerant areas include the midpatella tendon, medial tibial flair, and anterior tibialis.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE: WALKING CASTS

To avoid migration of the heel pad in the postoperative period, gait training and other therapy that involve weight bearing should be encouraged only after delivery of the prosthesis. The prosthesis is designed to hold the prosthetic foot and bulbous distal tissue of the remnant limb in an appropriate relation. A fully mature residual limb is less likely to displace. Early prosthetic fitting may involve a definitive prosthesis or a temporary walking cast with a patten bottom. The temporary walking cast may be especially preferred if the patient has edema, is obese, or has other medical conditions in which significant volume loss is anticipated. The initial walking cast should be applied as soon as the sutures have been removed, usually within 2 weeks of surgery. The successful application of the Syme walking cast requires a more thorough knowledge base in prosthetics than might be readily appreciated, and the rehabilitation team all have to work together to prevent complications. Application of a walking cast should be done by a clinician with a solid prosthetic background.

PROSTHETIC MANAGEMENT

The prosthesis for the Syme amputation must be strong enough at the ankle section to withstand the forces of tension and compression that are produced by the long tibial lever arm throughout the gait cycle and at the same time

provide an acceptable degree of cosmesis over the bulbous expansion at the ankle. All prosthetic designs strive to encompass the tibial section above the distal expansion firmly and still permit donning and doffing. Although prostheses designed for Syme amputations may be appropriate for Pirogoff and Boyd amputations, use of such prostheses may require that a lift be placed on the contralateral side to achieve bilateral limb length symmetry and a properly level pelvis during stance.

Before World War II, most patients with Syme amputations were fit with anterior lacing wooden sockets or leather sockets supported by a superstructure of heavy medial and lateral steel sidebars.[65,66] The prostheses most frequently fabricated nowadays include the Canadian, medial opening, sleeve suspension, and flexible wall (bladder) designs.

Canadian Syme Prostheses

The *Canadian Syme prosthesis* design was introduced during the 1950s as the first major improvement over the traditional steel-reinforced leather.[67-70] When viewing the ankle in the coronal plane, no obvious buildups, windows, or hardware is present to increase the ankle diameter. The Canadian Syme prosthesis has a removable posterior panel to facilitate donning and doffing. This donning window extends from the apex of the distal expansion, moving proximal as far as necessary to provide clearance for the bulbous end.[71] Breakage may be higher than with other Syme prostheses because the ankle area, which undergoes the most compression and tension during ambulation, is weakened by the window cutout around the ankle in the posterior region. Modern carbon fiber and acrylic lamination materials and techniques have aided in meeting this challenge.[72,73] The Canadian prosthesis is a relatively cosmetic approach, but more recent options have limited its use.

Medial Opening Syme Prostheses

The *medial opening Syme prosthesis,* also known as the *Veterans Administration Prosthetic Center Syme prosthesis,* followed the introduction of the Canadian Syme prosthesis. Developed at the New York City Veterans Administration Medical Center in 1959, it has a removable donning door that extends proximally from the distal expansion to a level approximately two thirds of the height of the tibial section on the medial side.[74,75] Like the Canadian design, the medial opening prosthesis is relatively cosmetic at the ankle and compares favorably with the Canadian design. The medial placement of the donning panel provides much more opportunity for anteroposterior strengthening of the prosthesis. All other factors being equal, this design is stronger than the Canadian design and is the approach of choice for many patients with Syme amputation.

Sleeve Suspension Syme Prostheses

The *sleeve suspension Syme prosthesis* is sometimes referred to as the *stovepipe Syme prosthesis* because of the cylindrical appearance of its removable liner. This design is appropriate for pediatric patients (Fig. 22.24A and B). It is constructed with an inner flexible insert or sleeve that has filler material in the areas just proximal to the distal expansion.[76,77] Before slipping into the outer shell or socket, the wearer first pulls on the flexible liner.[78] The outside sleeve then telescopes within the outer prosthetic shell (Fig. 22.25). In another

Fig. 22.24 (A and B) Two views of a Syme prosthesis showing the laminated socket and foam liner separately.

version the leather and foam inner sleeve does not cover the entire residual limb but wraps around the leg and fills up the void areas above the expansion.[79] The sleeve suspension prosthesis is bulky and not very cosmetic, but its strength is significantly better because no window is present to create a structural weakness. It is often chosen for the obese or very heavy-duty wearer or for the patient with recurring prosthetic breakage with other designs. It is more adjustable and forgiving than the other Syme designs and is often chosen when major fitting problems are anticipated.

Expandable Wall Prostheses

The *flexible, expandable wall,* and *bladder Syme prostheses,* of which several varieties are available, vary more by materials

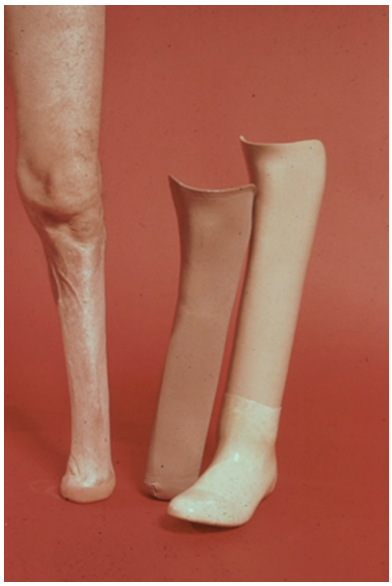


Fig. 22.25 Residuum, foam liner, and Syme prosthesis

used than by mechanism of action. All are based on the concept of an inner socket wall just proximal to the distal expansion that is elastic or expandable enough to allow entry of the limb into the prosthesis and still provide a level of total contact around the ankle once donned.[80,81] This design normally requires a double prosthetic wall. The original bladder Syme prosthesis, described by Marx in 1969, obtained expansion by using flexible polyester resin in the neck area.[82] The more recent Rancho Syme prosthesis uses a flexible inner socket, supported by a frame or superstructure of laminated thermosetting plastic. The use of flexible thermosetting plastics and silicone elastomer for expandable wall sockets has gradually eclipsed the use of Surlyn (DuPont, Wilmington, DE) and other thermoplastics as a material of choice for the inner liner. Expandable wall Syme prostheses are slightly bulkier and less cosmetic at the ankle than their Canadian or medial opening counterparts because they require a flexible inner socket and a rigid exterior superstructure. The fabrication process is more involved, and fitting adjustments to the flexible inner socket can be difficult. Creating either a silicone elastomer or a Surlyn inner socket flexible enough for comfortable donning and doffing may significantly limit its durability. The Syme residual limb presents greater pressure distribution challenges to a prosthetist than do other types of lower-limb prosthetics. A test socket is especially recommended for all Syme prostheses. Because the act of donning and doffing with this system is relatively simple, it may be the prosthesis of choice for patients with upper limb dysfunction or cognitive impairment.

Tucker-Winnipeg Syme Prostheses

The *Tucker-Winnipeg Syme prosthesis*, rarely seen in the United States, ignores the traditional requirement of comprehensive total contact by introducing lateral and medial donning slots.[83] The design is well suited for children. It is contraindicated for patients with severe vascular disease and for others who are prone to window edema. A loss of total contact can also affect proprioception and control of the prosthesis. In general, the method permits a prosthesis that is relatively cosmetic, easy to don, and not prone to the noises that are sometimes created by rubbing at the window covers of the medial opening on Canadian Syme prostheses.

Case Example 22.3 **A Patient With Bilateral Dysvascular Partial Foot Amputation**

L.P. is a 66-year-old man with a 23-year history of type II diabetes. He has comorbid history of diabetic retinopathy, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, peripheral neuropathy, stage III kidney disease, vascular complications associated with type II diabetes, bilateral foot ulcers, and vision changes. Five years ago, a right hallux amputation failed to heal and became infected, necessitating a right transmetatarsal amputation in 2013. After healing, he became proficient with a partial foot prosthesis, ambulating functional distances without assistive devices. In 2015 a large neuropathic wound developed under the metatarsal heads of his left foot. The wound failed to heal despite several attempted treatments. L.P. and his surgeon agreed that a transmetatarsal amputation on the left would allow him to heal, improve his functional status, and allow him to maintain his independence. The left transmetatarsal amputation failed to heal and became infected, leading to revision of his left partial foot back to a midtarsal level of amputation. His right residual limb is well healed, and the left is almost healed (Figs. 22.26A–C and 22.27A and B). The clinical team has agreed he is ready to return to prosthetic use and prescribes new prostheses.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given his medical history, what concerns exist about the condition of his residual feet?
- What areas are most vulnerable to pressures from repetitive loading during walking in prostheses?
- What types of muscle performance at his knee and hip are important to assess?
- What measures should be used to assess muscle function and strength?
- How will any impairments be addressed?
- How does the transmetatarsal and transtarsal amputation affect progression through the gait cycle?
- How might a prosthesis substitute for compromise of the three rockers of the gait cycle?
- How might these amputations affect step and stride length of the opposite swing limb?
- What are the major goals for prosthetic intervention for L.P.?
- What specific recommendations should be made for socket design, suspension, and biomechanical function?
- What options should be chosen from among those available?
- What is his prognosis for functional ambulation?
- Is an assistive device recommended for long-term use? Why or why not?
- How should the efficacy of intervention be assessed?

RECOMMENDATIONS

The clinical team determines L.P. is a candidate for bilateral limited motion, articulated ankle-foot orthosis style partial foot prostheses with toe fillers (Fig. 22.28A–C). L.P. currently ambulates with a rolling walker and is happy not to be using a wheelchair. He is receiving physical therapy and hopes to ambulate without any assistive devices again in the future. After delivery of the prostheses, L.P. reports immediate improvement of his balance and walking (Fig. 22.29A and B).

Case Example 22.3 **A Patient With Bilateral Dysvascular Partial Foot Amputation (Continued)**

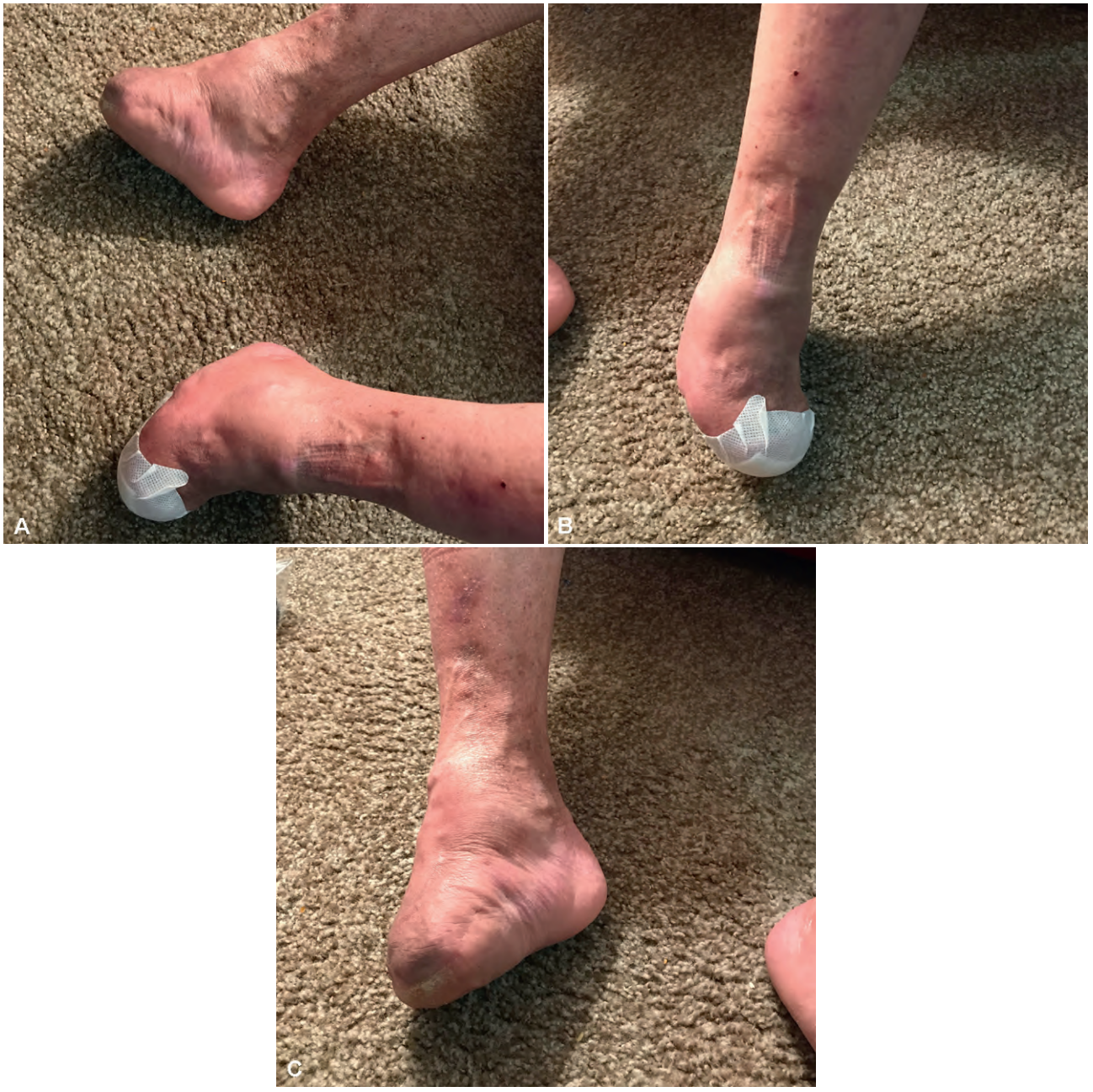


Fig. 22.26 (A) L.P.'s bilateral partial foot amputations. (B) Left transtarsal and (C) right transmetatarsal remnant feet.

Continued on following page

Case Example 22.3 **A Patient With Bilateral Dysvascular Partial Foot Amputation (Continued)**

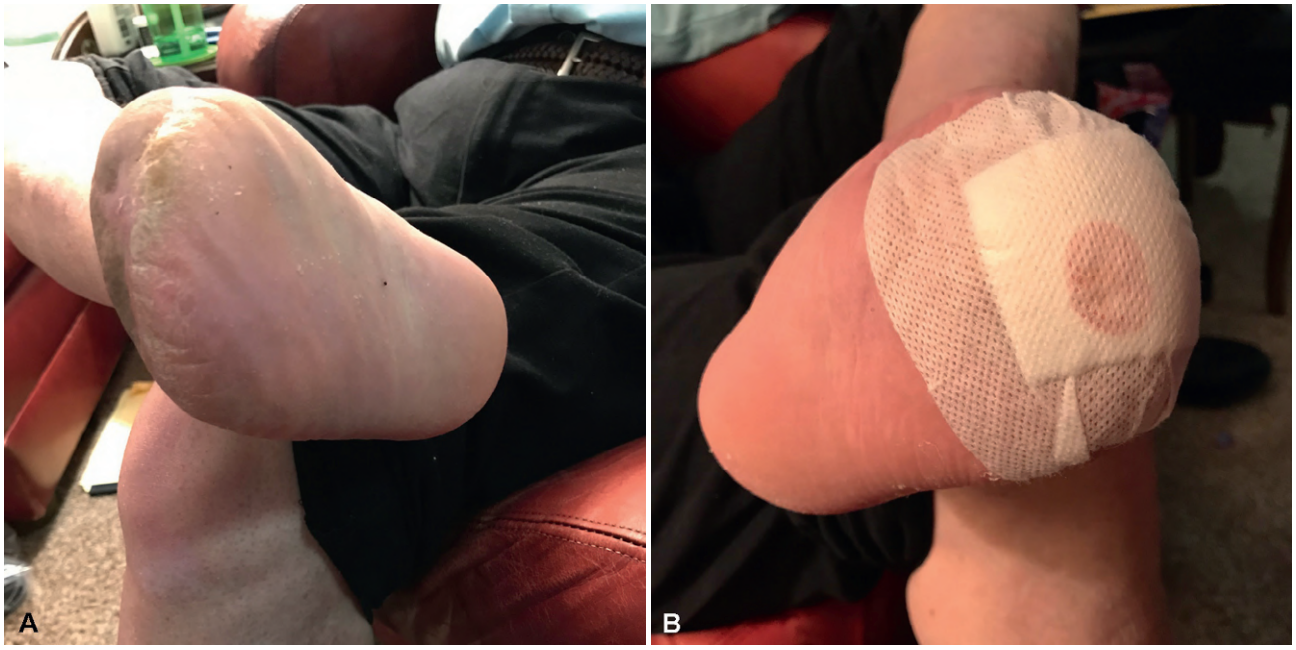


Fig. 22.27 (A) Right and (B) left plantar surface of L.P.'s remnant limbs.

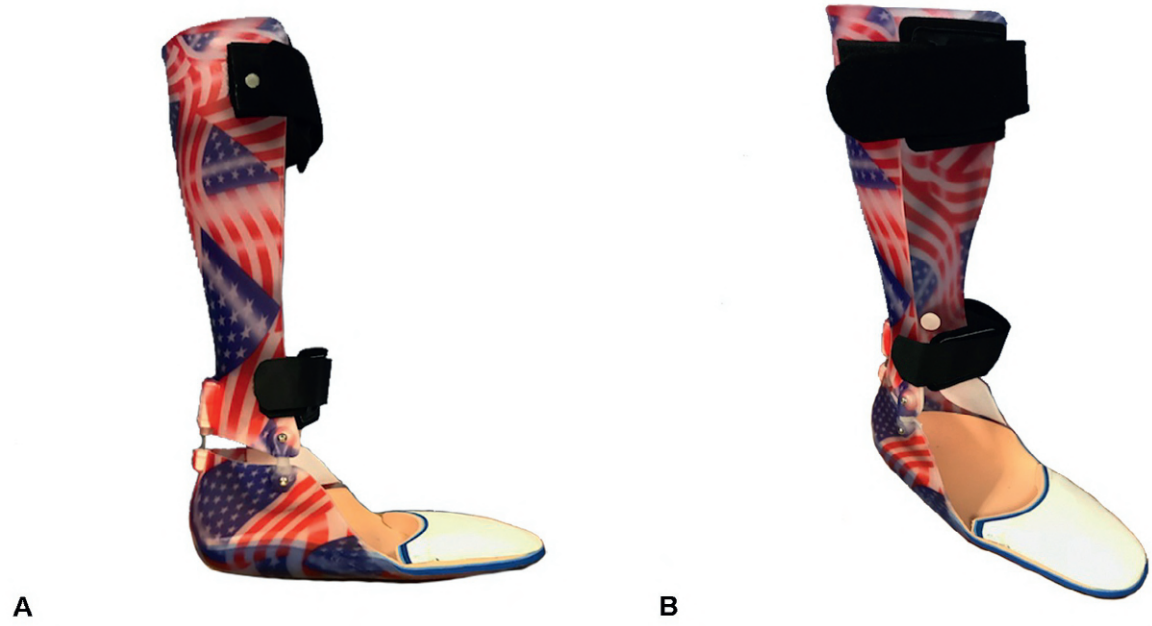


Fig. 22.28 (A–C) L.P.'s articulated ankle-foot orthosis design prostheses with toe fillers and dorsiflexion limiters.

Case Example 22.3 A Patient With Bilateral Dysvascular Partial Foot Amputation (Continued)

Fig. 22.28, cont'd

Fig. 22.29 L.P. wearing his prostheses for the first time while sitting (A) and walking (B).

PROSTHETIC FEET FOR SYME PROSTHESES

One of the challenges in selecting prosthetic components for patients with a Syme amputation is fitting a prosthetic foot within the very limited space under the residual limb while still maintaining equal leg lengths and a level pelvis. The rare exception to this is when bilateral ankle disarticulation has occurred; bilateral Syme amputation allows many more choices of foot designs to be considered for improved function. When there is unilateral Syme amputation, great care must be given to the minimal amount of space available between the distal end and shoe so that a heel lift on the contralateral side would not be necessary.

Determining the Prosthetic Clearance Value

In determining whether a particular Syme foot can accommodate a patient, the available space between the distal end of the residual limb and the floor is measured with the pelvis level and the anatomic clearance value is derived. Syme feet can be directly attached to the socket in the lamination by Syme nut (a threaded disk that is laminated into the socket) or using a variety of endoskeletal alignable lamination components. The nut, shaped to approximately match the contours of the distal residual limb, is approximately ⅝ inch tall, and this height must be considered when constructing the prosthesis. To determine the applicability of a particular foot for a patient, the space between the bottom of the heel of the foot and the top of the foot is added to height of the selected lamination component to ensure the prothesis will not create a leg length discrepancy. This measurement is the prosthetic clearance value and should be less than or equal to the anatomic clearance value.

Nonarticulating Syme Feet

Many prosthetic feet used for transtibial amputation have been adapted for the Syme amputation. The first was the *SACH* foot, patented in 1863 by Marks and further developed at the University of California at Berkeley after World War II. It was introduced as a component of the Canadian Syme prosthesis in the 1950s. The Syme SACH is distributed in the United States primarily by Kingsley (Kingsley, Costa Mesa, CA). It is available in a regular men's shoe heel height and a running shoe heel height.

The SACH foot design simulates plantarflexion as the patient rolls over a compressible heel, but because of a rigid wooden (typically maple) keel, it is neither flexible nor elastic in late stance. The SACH-type Syme foot was the historical foot of choice for patients with a Syme amputation in previous decades but is currently limited in use due to more functional options.

The *stationary-ankle flexible-endoskeletal* (SAFE) Syme foot has the advantage of providing a modest inversion and eversion component of motion through elasticity of the forefoot, and it is useful for uneven terrain ambulation. Not including the thickness of the Syme's nut, the SAFE II (Campbell-Childs, White City, OR) Syme foot requires 1⅜ inches of space between the distal end and the floor or shoe with pelvis leveled. The SAFE II was also used historically and is currently more limited in use due to lighter and more functional prosthetic feet options.

Dynamic Response Syme Feet

A variety of dynamic response foot designs have emerged for more active Syme walkers. The Impulse Syme's Foot (Ohio Willow Wood, Mt. Sterling, OH) has a Kevlar (DuPont, Wilmington, DE) keel with carbon deflection toe-spring plates and a weight limit of up to 250 lb (113 kg). The toe spring is a carbon-epoxy composite. A unique manufacturing technique allows carbon fibers to be optimally oriented and avoid wrinkling, buckling, and deformation. The most interesting part of the foot is alignment adjustability. Ohio Willow Wood also has a Carbon Copy II Syme foot available in two heel heights and with all the toe resistances and sizes of the standard (non-Syme) Carbon Copy II. The Carbon Copy II is available with a medium heel density for patient weights up to 250 lb (113 kg).

The Steplite Foot (Kingsley) provides a compressible heel design with the buoyancy of a carbon keel. It is quite durable and applicable to almost every patient with a Syme amputation because it requires only 1⅝ inches of prosthetic clearance value. That accounts for 1 inch for the foot itself and ⅝ inch for the nut and socket thickness. The low-profile version accommodates a typical man's heel height. The "Strider" is made for a man's running shoe, and "Flattie" is a narrow foot for females that accommodates a flat heel. The Steplite provides a buoyant elastic forefoot but, like many Syme feet, is limited in its heel compression.

Ossur (Aliso Viejo, CA) offers a low-profile carbon Syme foot version for a very active prosthetic wearer weighing up to 285 lb (129 kg). The same foot can be worn by a low-activity level user weighing up to 365 lb (165.5 kg). The Ossur Low Profile requires 2 inches of clearance from the floor to the distal end of the socket and is designed with a flexible double-spring keel. It uses a fenestrated heel that allows greater compression, thus reducing shock. The upper spring bumper is coated with Teflon (DuPont), which reduces squeaks, a characteristic not uncommon to feet with more than one keel in the forefoot. Another Syme foot that may be used for patients up to 500 lbs (227 kg) is the Vari-Flex (Ossur), which requires only 1¾ inches of space under the socket and is attached using epoxy filler and lamination. Freedom Innovations (Irvine, CA) has developed the Pacifica (FS2) and LP Pacifica (FS4) with 10-mm heel height and build heights ranging from 1⅞ to 2½ inches depending on the foot size. Freedom Innovations also designed an LP Syme (LP2) laminated Syme foot with a heel height of 10 mm and a build height of 1¾ to 2⅛ inches, depending on foot size. All three of these feet can be used to treat patients weighing up to 365 lb (166 kg). Ability Dynamics (Tempe, AZ) developed the Rush Rover with a unique design, moving the foot attachment to the socket more anterior, thus changing the biomechanics of the foot.

Another dynamic elastic foot choice for the active individual is the Seattle Light Foot (Seattle Orthopedic Group, Seattle, WA).

Almost all prosthetic feet for Syme prostheses have ankles that are essentially locked. This characteristic results in increased work for the quadriceps for controlled knee flexion during loading response. Incorporation of several degrees of adjustable articulated plantarflexion (at the risk of increasing the weight of the prosthesis) might improve function for certain patients.

Alignment Issues

With most prosthetic feet, the small area between the distal residual limb and floor limits the prosthetist's ability to refine the special relation between the socket and foot in the dynamic alignment phase. Chopart plates are laminated directly to the bottom of the socket and have no alignment adjustability (Figs. 22.30B, 22.31C, 22.32A). Adjustable alignment devices, similar to those available for transtibial prostheses, have historically not been compact enough to fit in the available space between the prosthetic foot and the end of the socket. Two component options have been introduced with the goal of addressing this limitation.

The SL Profile and the Lo Rider Syme feet (Otto Bock, Minneapolis, MN) provide angular adjustability by a pyramid. Unfortunately, the height of the pyramid may preclude their use on many patients with a Syme amputation. The newest and very promising addition is the 1 C20 Pro-Syme's (Otto Bock), which can be fit on most patients and is a moderately dynamic urethane carbon fiber foot for Syme amputees up to 275 lb (125 kg). It has a wide range of alignment adjustability, as well as heel height changes. Several alignable feet with various heel heights, weight limits, and functional benefits are currently being manufactured: Ability Dynamics makes the Rush Rover; Ossur makes LP Vari-Flex and Pro-Flex LP; Freedom Innovations makes Pacifica and Pacifica LP; and Otto Bock makes Axtion, Lo Rider, Triton Low-Profile, and Triton K2 (Figs. 22.30 through 22.33).

Fig. 22.30 (A) Ability Dynamics foot shell examples with (B) Rush Chopart plate and (C) Rush Rover feet.

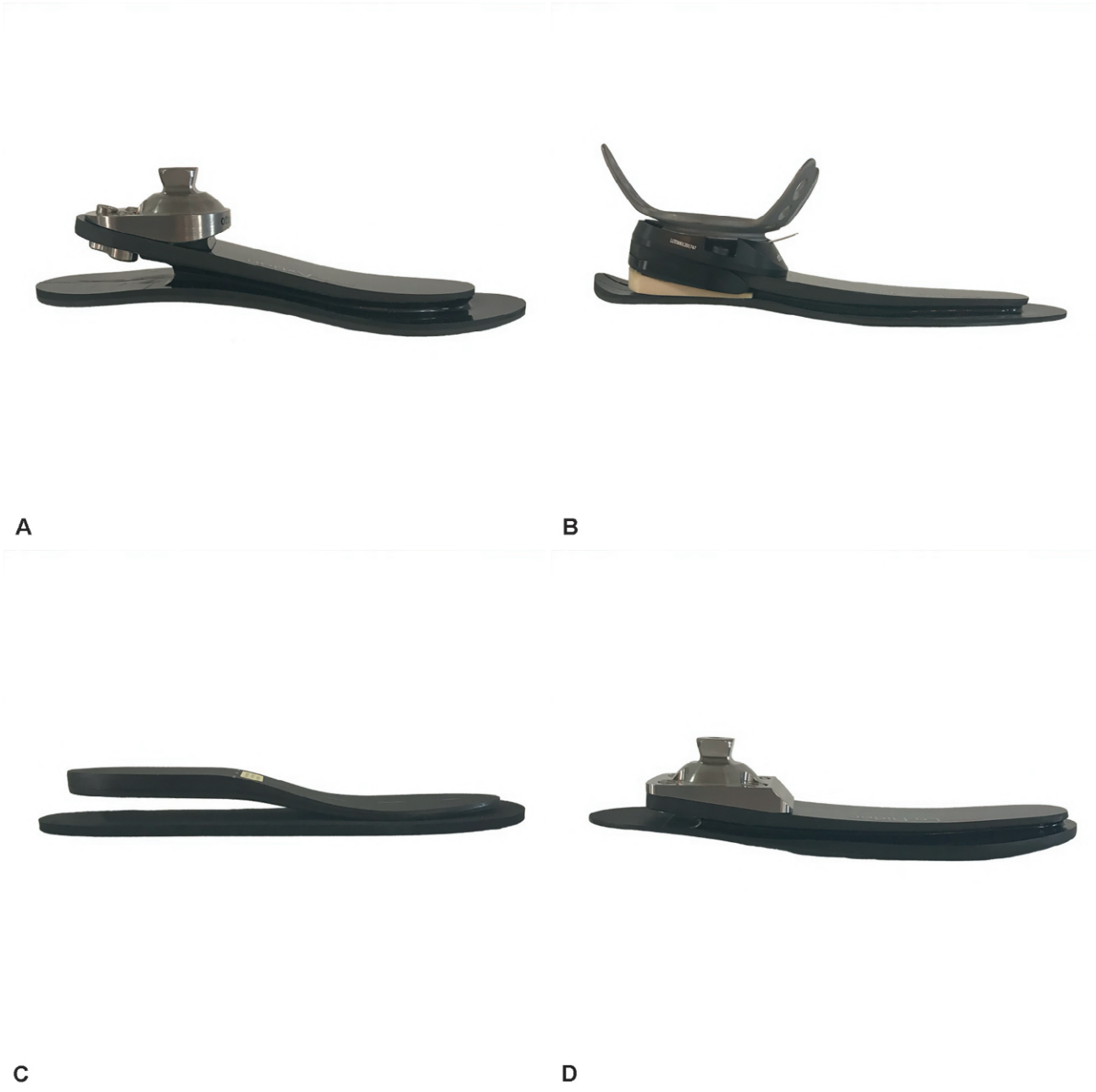


Fig. 22.31 Otto Bock feet and foot shell options. (A) Axtion. (B) Pro Syme. (C) Chopart plate. (D) Lo Rider. (E) Split toe foot shells. (F) 2C66 foot shell. (G) Pro Syme foot shell. (H) Foot shells. (I) Triton Low Profile. (J) Triton K2.

Placing the Syme foot in slight dorsiflexion relative to the shin section mimics normal gait patterns, encourages a smooth cosmetic and energy-efficient rollover during stance phase, and optimizes the weight-bearing potential of the socket contours. For individuals with quadriceps weakness, the dorsiflexion angle can be reduced to minimize excessive demands on the quadriceps. The telltale clinical sign of excessive demand is trembling of the knee during midstance. Although early alignment recommendations placed optimal initial dorsiflexion up to 12 to 15 degrees, current practice is to set the foot at a smaller angle of approximately 5 degrees.[84] The long Syme residual limb does not easily accommodate itself, cosmetically or functionally, to more than 5 degrees of dorsiflexion.

Alignment can be significantly compromised when knee flexion contracture is present. To prevent breakage and

Fig. 22.31, cont'd

premature wear from the anterior lever arm, the degree of anterior (linear) displacement of the socket over the foot is generally reduced from that of a transtibial prosthesis.

The Syme socket is positioned in an angle of adduction that matches the anatomic adduction angle of the tibia. The adduction of the socket should be positioned to create as smooth a transition as possible at the ankle and knee so that the prosthetic foot rolls over with the sole flat on the floor. The optimal spatial relation in the coronal plane is one that creates a slight varus moment. Socket adduction angle, foot eversion angle, and linear displacement affect the external varus moment at the knee during midstance. For an efficient and cosmetic gait, the knee must displace

Fig. 22.31, cont'd

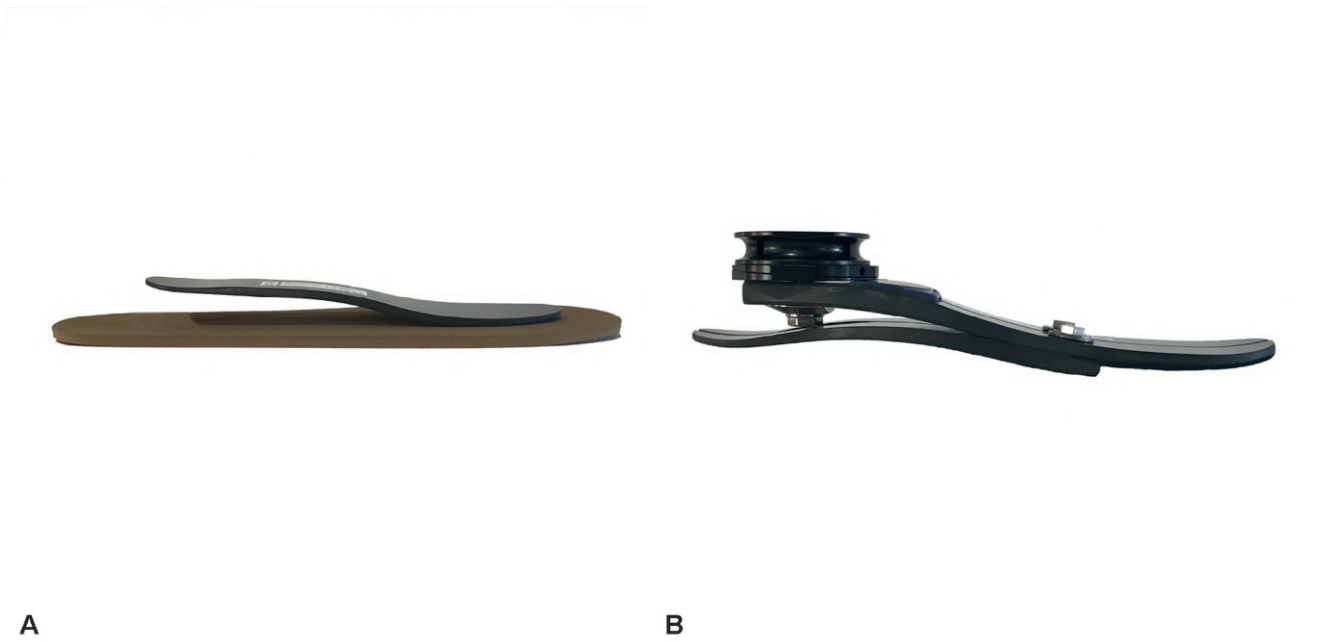


Fig. 22.32 Ossur feet and foot shells. (A) Chopart plate. (B) Flex Syme. (C) LP Variflex. (D) Proflex LP. (E) LP Variflex attachment options. (F) Foot shells.

approximately 12 mm laterally at midstance. Insufficient displacement implicates malalignment, most often at an inadequate eversion angle. Excessive displacement may be the result of malalignment or lateral collateral ligament laxity at the knee. The most successful strategy to address chronic weight-bearing ulceration at the knee that has not responded to a silicone liner, or to address major laxity of the collateral ligaments, is the addition of orthotic components (external knee joints and a thigh lacer) to provide extra support and protection.

Summary

This chapter explores the options for prosthetic management for patients with partial foot and Syme amputations.

C

D

E

F

Fig. 22.32, cont'd

Because of the variability in surgical procedures, condition of the residual limb, and altered biomechanics of the residual limb in gait, no single best option exists for prosthetic design. More scientific research is needed to improve our understanding of biomechanics of ambulation after partial foot amputation to better guide the clinical judgement of the rehabilitation team.[85] For now, the characteristics of each patient (weight, skin condition, desired activity level, and length of residual limb) must be carefully considered in prosthetic prescription. The goal is to find the best match of the person's status and needs from the growing array of prosthetic design options for the partial foot and Syme amputations. This places an increasing demand on the knowledge base of medical professionals. More than ever, the physician, physical therapist, and prosthetist are challenged to function as a cohesive team, drawing on each other's strengths to achieve the best possible outcome for each patient.

Fig. 22.33 Freedom Innovations feet and foot shells. (A) Foot shell examples. (B) LP Syme. (C) Pacifica LP.

References

1. van Netten JJ, et al. Communication techniques for improved acceptance and adherence with therapeutic footwear. *Prosthetics & Orthotics International.* 2017;41(2):201–204.
2. Herodotus. *Library IX, 37, Loeb Classical Edition.* Vol 4. London: Heinemann; 1924.
3. Bowker JH. Partial foot and Syme amputations—an overview. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1988;12(1):10–13.
4. Bahler A. The biomechanics of the foot. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1986;10(1):8–14.
5. Frankovitch KF, Farrell WJ. Syme and Boyd amputations in children. *ICIB J Assoc Childrens Prosthet Orthot Clin.* 1984;19(3):61.
6. Oglesby DG, Tablada C. The child amputee: lower limb deficiencies: prosthetic and orthotic management. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics.* 2nd ed St. Louis: Mosby; 1992:837.
7. Greene WB, Cary JM. Partial foot amputations in children. A comparison of the several types with the Syme amputation. *The Journal of bone and joint surgery American volume.* 1982;64(3):438–443.
8. Burgess EM. Prevention and correction of fixed equinus deformity in mid-foot amputations. *Bull Prosthet Res.* 1966;10(5):45–47.
9. Pritham CH. Partial foot amputation—a case study. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1977;1(3):5–7.
10. Wagner FW. Partial Foot Amputations. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics.* St. Louis: Mosby; 1981:315–325.
11. Wilson AB. Partial foot amputation results of the questionnaire survey. *Newsletter Prosthet Orthot Clin.* 1977;1(4):1–3.
12. Brown ML, Tang W, Patel A, Baumhauer JF. Partial foot amputation in patients with diabetic foot ulcers. *Foot & ankle international.* 2012;*33*(9):707–716.
13. Kay HW. Limb deficits no bar to record performance. *Int Clin Info Bull.* 1970;10(3):17.

14. Malyar NM, Freisinger E, et al. Amputations and mortality in in-hospital treated patients with peripheral artery disease and diabetic foot syndrome. *Journal of Diabetes & Its Complications*. 2016;30 (6):1117–1122.
15. Nather A, Lin Wong K. Distal amputations for the diabetic foot. *Diabetic foot & ankle*. 2013;4(1):21288.
16. Quigley M, Dillon MP, Duke EJ. Comparison of quality of life in people with partial foot and transtibial amputation: A pilot study. *Prosthetics and orthotics international*. 2016;40(4):467–474.
17. Dillon MP, Fatone S. Deliberations about the functional benefits and complications of partial foot amputation: do we pay heed to the purported benefits at the expense of minimizing complications? *Archives of physical medicine and rehabilitation*. 2013;94(8):1429–1435.
18. Dorostkar M, Ayyappa E, Perry J. *Gait Mechanics of the Partial Foot Amputee, Rehabilitation Research & Development Final Report. Project #A861-RA -2000*. Long Beach, CA: VA National Prosthetic Gait Laboratory; July 11, 1999.
19. Dorostkar M, Ayyappa E, Perry J. Gait Mechanics of the Partial Foot Amputee. *Project #A861-RA. JRRD Progress Reports*. Vol 35:. Long Beach, CA: VA National Prosthetics Gait Laboratory; July 1998;17–18.
20. Dorostkar M, Ayyappa E, Perry J. *Gait Mechanics of the Partial Foot Amputee. Project #A861-RA. JRRD Progress Reports*. Vol 36. Long Beach, CA: VA National Prosthetics Gait Laboratory; July 1999.
21. Ayyappa E, Moinzadeh H, Friedman J. In: *Gait Characteristics of the Partial Foot Amputee: Proceedings of the 21st annual meeting and scientific symposium of the American Academy of Orthotists and Prosthetists*; 1995. New Orleans, March 21–25.
22. Pinzur MS, Gold J, Schwartz D, et al. Energy demands for walking in dysvascular amputees as related to the level of amputation. *Orthopedics*. 1992;15(9):1033–1037.
23. New York University Post Graduate Medical School. *Lower Limb Prosthetics*. New York: New York University; 1979.
24. Enna CD, Brand PW, Reed JK, Welch D. The orthotic care of the denervated foot in Hansen's disease. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1976;30(1):33–39.
25. Menon PBM. A new type of protective footwear for anesthetic feet. *Int Soc Prosthet Orthot Bull*. 1976;18:4.
26. Veterans Administration Prosthetics Center. Semiannual report of the VA Prosthetics Center. *Bull Prosthet Res*. 1965;10(3):142–146.
27. Marks AA. *Manual of Artificial Limbs*. New York: AA Marks; 1931.
28. Marks GE. *A Treatise on Artificial Limbs with Rubber Hands and Feet*. New York: AA Marks; 1888.
29. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons. *Orthopedic Appliance Atlas. Vol 2: Artificial Limbs*. Ann Arbor, MI: J.W. Edwards; 1960.
30. Cestaro JM. Comments on partial foot amputations. *Newslett Prosthet Orthot Clin*. 1977;1(3):7.
31. Levy SE. Total contact restoration prosthesis for partial foot amputations. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1961;15(1):34–44.
32. Lunsford T. Partial foot amputations: prosthetic and orthotic management. In: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, ed. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1981:320–325.
33. Staros A, Peizer E. Veterans Administration Prosthetic Center research report. *Bull Prosthet Res*. 1969;10(12):340–342.
34. Zamosky I. Shoes and their modifications. In: Light S, Kampuetz H, eds. *Orthotics Etcetera*. 2nd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; 1980: 368–431.
35. Potter JW, Stockwell JE. Custom foamed toe filler for amputation of the forefoot. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1974;28(3):57–60.
36. Young RD. Functional positioning toe restoration. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1985;39(3):57–59.
37. Young RD. Special Chopart prosthesis with custom molded foot. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1984;38(1):79–85.
38. Paul S, Vijayakumar R, Mathew L, Sivarasu S. Finite element model–based evaluation of tissue stress variations to fabricate corrective orthosis in feet with neutral subtalar joint. *Prosthetics and orthotics international*. 2017;*41*(2):157–163.
39. Platts RGS, Knight S, Jakins I. Shoe inserts for small deformed feet. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1982;6(2):108–110.
40. Henderson WH, Campbell JW. UC-BL shoe insert, casting and fabrication. *Bull Prosthet Res*. 1969;10(11):215–235.
41. Inman VT. UC-BL dual axis ankle control system and UC-BL shoe insert; biomechanical considerations. *Bull Prosthet Res*. 1969;10 (11):130–145.
42. Quigley MJ. The present use of the UCBL foot orthosis. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1974;28(4):59–63.
43. Wood MR, Hunter GA, Millstein SG. The value of stump split skin grafting following amputation for trauma in adult upper and lower limb amputees. *Prosthetics and orthotics international*. 1987;11(2):71–74.
44. Stills M. Partial foot prosthesis/orthosis. *Clin Prosthet Orthot*. 1988;12 (1):14–18.
45. Imler CD. Imler partial foot prosthesis IPFP—the Chicago boot. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1985;39(3):53–56.
46. Imler CD. Imler partial foot prosthesis IPFP "Chicago boot." *Clin Prosthet Orthot*. 1988;12(1):24–28.
47. Wilson MT. Clinical application of TRV elastomer. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1979;33(4):23–29.
48. Fillauer K. A prosthesis for foot amputation near the tarsal-metatarsal junction. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1976;30(3):9–12.
49. Pullen JJ. A low profile pediatric partial foot. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1987;11(3):137–138.
50. Rubin G, Danisi M. A functional partial-foot prosthesis. *ISPO Bull*. 1972;3(7):6.
51. Collins JN. A partial foot prosthesis for the transmetatarsal level. *Clin Prosthet Orthot*. 1988;12(1):19–23.
52. Rubin G, Danisi M. Functional partial-foot prosthesis. *Bull Prosthet Res*. 1971;10(16):149–152.
53. Staros A, Goralnik B. Lower limb prosthetic systems. In: Atlas of Limb Prosthetics, ed. *American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1981:293–295.
54. LaTorre R. The total contact partial foot prosthesis. *Clin Prosthet Orthot*. 1987–1988;12(1):29–32.
55. Spaulding SE, Chen T, Chou LS. Selection of an above or below-ankle orthosis for individuals with neuropathic partial foot amputation: a pilot study. *Prosthetics and orthotics international*. 2012;36(2): 217–224.
56. Stefania Fatone PhD BPO. Effect of prosthetic design on center of pressure excursion in partial foot prostheses. *Journal of rehabilitation research and development*. 2011;48(2):161.
57. Dillon MP, Barker TM. Can partial foot prostheses effectively restore foot length? *Prosthetics and orthotics international*. 2006;30(1):17–23.
58. Hudson ED. *Mechanical Surgery; Artificial Limbs, Apparatus for Resections, by U.S. Soldiers*. New York: Commission of the Surgeon-General; 1867 [Library of Congress Call No. RD 756.H86].
59. Jansen K. Amputation—principles and methods. *Bull Prosthet Res*. 1965;10(4):19–20.
60. Harris RI. *The History and Development of the Syme's Amputation: Selected Articles from Artificial Limbs*. Huntington, NY: Krieger; 1970.
61. Burgess EM, Romano RL, Zettl JH. *The Management of Lower-Extremity Amputations*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office; 1969.
62. Wagner FW. The Syme amputation: surgical procedures. In: Atlas of Limb Prosthetics, ed. *American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1981:326–334.
63. Quigley M. The Rancho Syme prosthesis with the Regnell foot. *Clin Prosthet Orthot*. 1988;12(1):33–40.
64. Hanger HB. *The Syme and Chopart Prostheses*. Chicago: Northwestern University Prosthetic-Orthotic Center; 1965.
65. Wilson AB. Prostheses for Syme amputation. *Artif Limbs*. 1961;61 (1):52–75.
66. Leimkuehler J. Syme's prosthesis—a brief review and a new fabrication technique. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1980;34(4):3–12.
67. Foort J. The Canadian type Syme prosthesis. *UCBL Technical Reports*. 1956;30:75–76.
68. Murphy EF. Lower extremity components. In: Orthopedic Appliance Atlas, ed. *American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. Ann Arbor, MI: J.W. Edwards; 1960:212–217. Vol 2.
69. Voner R. The Syme amputation: prosthetic management. In: Atlas of Limb Prosthetics, ed. *American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons*. St. Louis: Mosby; 1981:334–340.
70. Boccius CS. The plastic Syme prosthesis in Canada. *Artif Limbs*. 1961; 6(1):86–89.
71. Department of Veterans Affairs. *Syme Amputation and Prosthesis*. Toronto: Department of Veterans Affairs, Prosthetic Services Centre; 1954.
72. Dankmeyer CH, Doshi R, Alban CR. Adding strength to the Syme prosthesis. *Orthot Prosthet*. 1974;28(3):3–7.
73. Radcliffe CW. *The Biomechanics of the Syme Prosthesis: Selected Articles from Artificial Limbs*. Huntington, NY: Krieger; 1970.
74. Schwartz RE, Bohne WO, Kramer HE. Prosthetic management of below knee amputation with flexion contracture in the child. *J Assoc Childrens Prosthet-Orthot Clin*. 1986;21(1):8–10.

75. Iuliucci L, Degaetano R. *V.A.P.C. Technique for Fabricating a Plastic Syme Prosthesis with Medial Opening.* New York: New York University Medical School; 1969.
76. Byers JL. Fabrication of Cordo, Plastizote, or Pelite removable liner for closed Syme sockets. *Bull Prosthet Res.* 1972;10(18):182–188.
77. Warner R, Daniel R, Lesswing A. Another new prosthetic approach for the Syme's amputation. *Int Clin Info Bull.* 1972;12(1):7–10.
78. Byers JL. The closed Syme socket with removable liner. *ISPO Bull.* 1973;7:4–5.
79. McFarlen JM. The Syme prosthesis. *Orthot Prosthet.* 1966;20(3):23–27.
80. Eckhardt AL, Enneberg H. The use of a Silastic liner in the Syme's prosthesis. *Int Clin Info Bull.* 1970;9(6):1–4.
81. Meyer LC, Bailey HL, Friddle D. An improved prosthesis for fitting the ankle-disarticulation amputee. *Int Clin Info Bull.* 1970; 9(6):11–15.
82. Marx HW. An innovation in Syme prosthetics. *Orthot Prosthet.* 1969;23(3):131–141.
83. Lyttle D. Tucker-Syme prosthetic fitting in young people. *Int Clin Info Bull.* 1984;19(3):62.
84. Hanger of England. *Prosthesis for Below-Knee Amputation—Roelite Instruction Manual.* Bath, UK: Trowbridges; 1982.
85. Dillon MP, Fatone S, Hodge MC. Biomechanics of ambulation after partial foot amputation: a systematic literature review. *JPO: Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics.* 2007;19(8):P2–P61.

23 Transtibial Prosthetics☆

TODD DEWEES

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the principles underlying current transtibial socket design.
2. Recognize key components of a transtibial prosthesis.
3. Discuss the pros and cons of the various options for prosthesis suspension.
4. Identify key weight-tolerant and pressure-intolerant surfaces of a typical transtibial residual limb.
5. Identify key determinants of appropriate transtibial prosthesis alignment.
6. Recognize and differentiate the various factors that may lead to gait deviations with a transtibial prosthesis.
7. Suggest appropriate strategies to address transtibial gait deviations.

Evaluation for a Prosthesis

When a candidate is being evaluated for a transtibial prosthesis, a comprehensive physical examination including a detailed history or interview is essential to determine his or her needs and limitations. The interview assesses the individual's cognitive level, age, health history, vocation, avocation, support system, and home living status. A typical physical examination includes inspection, palpation, sensory testing, and skin integrity assessment. The examination should also include manual muscle testing, an evaluation of muscle performance using both active and passive range-of-motion (ROM) testing. This is also an ideal time to discuss rehabilitation goals with the person with amputation and the rest of his or her clinical team. Setting challenging yet realistic goals offers opportunities for incremental victories, which can go a long way toward reaching a successful outcome. Each member of the clinical team—the person with amputation, the therapist, the physician, and the prosthetist—has information and input that can be useful in the rehabilitation process. The best outcome will be achieved through a collaborative endeavor involving all team members. There are no hard-and-fast rules to determine an individual's rehabilitation potential. The decision to move ahead with fitting a prosthesis is made on an individual basis.

When the candidate for a prosthesis is being interviewed, the individual's motivation and belief in his or her ability to walk with such an aid will be the deciding factors. The rehabilitation process will require both physical and mental effort; sometimes it will involve working through pain, discomfort, and weakness. When persons with amputation have the desire and drive to walk again, it is rare that they will not succeed in attaining that goal. Alternatively, if a person does not believe that walking will be possible, all efforts to enhance that person's recovery may be in vain. Involving the person with recent amputation in an amputee support group or asking a local prosthetist to arrange for a peer visit by another person with amputation can provide inspiration. Encouragement from therapists, family members, or prosthetists who have not experienced amputation may not have the same impact. Peer visitors are individuals of similar age, gender, and amputation level who have been through the rehabilitation process and have successfully reintegrated into their communities (work, leisure, and/or social). Peer visitors are often available to spend time with those with recent amputations and to share their experiences. The internet hosts a variety of organizations that provide support and information for persons new to amputation and the use of prostheses; it can serve as a way of finding local groups that may be helpful to the patient.

Because amputation is often the result of trauma or disease, there may be comorbidities that can complicate the overall management of the person with amputation. A variety of options are available to the prosthetist to provide a functional prosthesis even when the condition of a residual limb is not ideal. Mild to moderate knee flexion contractures and weakness, for example, may be accommodated by altering the alignment of the prosthesis. Skin issues, such as adherent scarring and eczema, can be addressed by selecting the appropriate interface material. Pressure on skin and soft tissue over prominent bones can be relieved by altering the socket shape. There are also options for those with severe upper-limb dysfunction that will enable the individual to don and doff a prosthesis independently. It is only with careful consideration of the persons complete profile that the clinical team can recommend the components and design that will lead to an optimal outcome.

This clinical analysis includes choosing the features that are most appropriate for the individual's current status and the anticipated level of function. The most appropriate prosthesis is the prosthesis that suits the person's individual requirements. One size does not fit all: the ideal prosthesis for one person may be completely unsuitable for another.

☆The author extends appreciation to David Knapp, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Prosthesis design is often a compromise of weight versus function. Adding features that may seldom be used will increase the weight and maintenance requirements of the device. Increased weight leads to increased energy expenditure and premature fatigue.[1] On the other hand, exclusion of features that the patient will need on a regular basis may lead to excessive stresses on the limb, premature component wear or breakdown, and inefficient gait, resulting in the inability to attain optimal function. The clinical team should agree on the individual's goals so that the prosthesis can be designed to meet these goals. With the advanced materials and fabrication techniques available to prosthetists, individuals using a prosthesis are able to walk farther and with greater energy efficiency than ever before.

Generally speaking, individuals who undergo transtibial amputations are likely to return to their previous level of function.[2] Those with dysvascular disease or those who have additional comorbidities because of injury or disease need special consideration as they develop their rehabilitation goals and anticipated level of function. The Center for Medicare Services created a hierarchical system to classify the functional potential of those with lower limb amputations. This system, comprising "K-levels," is summarized in Table 23.1.[3] Note that each functional level uses the phrase "has the ability or potential" in the description. This highlights the fact that individuals cannot reach their full potential until their prostheses are provided and rehabilitation has been successful. For certain benefits to be covered under Medicare, the individual must be certified by his or her prosthetist and physician with the appropriate K-level. This is to prevent the prescription of prostheses with costly components that the user will not be able to manage or use effectively. The selection of the proper K-level is greatly facilitated by the use of a validated, objective measurement instrument such as the Amputee Mobility Predictor.[4] These measurement instruments can be used to assess the functional level of a person with an amputation even if they have not yet received a prosthesis.

Table 23.1 Classification of the Functional Potential of Patients with Lower-Limb Amputations

K-Level	Medicare Functional Classification Level
K0	The patient does not have the ability or potential to ambulate or transfer safely with or without assistance, and a prosthesis does not enhance quality of life or mobility.
K1	The patient has the ability or potential to use a prosthesis for transfers or ambulation on level surfaces at fixed cadence. This level is typical of the limited and unlimited household ambulator.
K2	The patient has the ability or potential for ambulation with the ability to traverse low-level environmental barriers such as curbs, stairs, or uneven surfaces. This level is typical of the limited community ambulator.
K3	The patient has the ability or potential for ambulation with variable cadence. This level is typical of the community ambulator who has the ability to traverse most environmental barriers and may engage in vocational, therapeutic, or exercise activities that demand utilization of a prosthesis beyond simple locomotion.
K4	The patient has the ability or potential for prosthetic ambulation that exceeds basic ambulation skills, exhibiting high-impact, stress, or energy levels. This level is typical of the demands of the child, active adult, or athlete.

From Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. *Medicare Region C Durable Medical Equipment Prosthetic Orthotic Supplier (DMEPOS) Manual*. Columbia, SC: Palmetto GBA; 2005.

Early Management of a Prosthesis

Goals for the postoperative management of a transtibial amputee include (1) maintaining full ROM of the hip and knee, (2) facilitating rapid healing of the suture line, (3) maintaining or improving cardiovascular and pulmonary conditioning, (4) enhancing static and dynamic balance, and (5) maintaining functional strength in the remaining musculature.[5] Table 23.2 breaks the lifelong rehabilitation of the amputee down into nine distinct stages and summarizes the goals of each stage.

One common complication of transtibial amputation surgery is ~~a~~ loss of full knee extension. Failure to promote full extension of the tibiofemoral joint can lead to delays in prosthetic fitting while ROM is restored. If the lack of knee extension remains, a permanent joint contracture can alter the prosthetic fitting process and lead to a decreased functional level for the person with an amputation. The clinical team generally encourages rigid dressings that extend well above the knee and hold the knee in full extension. Rigid removable dressings (RRDs) provide more favorable outcomes than elastic bandages when used to control postoperative edema and provide protection to the surgical site.[6] RRDs

Table 23.2 Phases of Rehabilitation for Persons with Amputation

Phases	Hallmarks
1. Preoperative	Medical and body condition assessment, patient education, surgical-level discussion, functional expectations, phantom limb discussion
2. Amputation surgery and wound dressing	Residual limb-length determination, myoplastic closure, soft tissue coverage, nerve handling, rigid dressing application, limb reconstruction
3. Acute postsurgical	Residual limb shaping, shrinking, increasing muscle strength, restoring patient's sense of control
4. Preprosthetic	Wound healing, pain control, proximal body motion, emotional support, phantom limb discussion
5. Prosthesis prescription and fabrication	Team consensus on prosthetic prescription
6. Prosthesis training	Prosthetic management and training to increase wearing time and functional use
7. Community integration	Resumption of family and community roles, regaining emotional equilibrium, developing healthy coping strategies, resuming recreational activities
8. Vocational rehabilitation	Assessment and training for vocational activities, assessment of further educational needs or job modification
9. Follow-up	Lifelong prosthetic, functional, and medical assessment; emotional support

From Esquenazi A, DiGiacomo RD. Rehabilitation after amputation. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc*. 2001;91(1):13–22.

have also been shown to significantly reduce the time between amputation and commencement of prosthetic management.[7] In some regions, persons with new amputations are fitted with immediate postoperative prostheses (IPOP) in the operating room or soon after surgery. The IPOP is intended to serve the same purpose as the RRD while also additionally allowing supported weight bearing for early mobility. IPOP sockets are designed to allow some weight-bearing forces direct to the medial tibial flare and patellar tendon because these structures are far from the surgical site and are not likely to be affected by postoperative edema. It is important to note that weight bearing while in an IPOP should be at the level of toe-touch partial weight bearing. Full weight bearing is discouraged, as there is generally not enough area to distribute the full body weight in a manner that the skin will tolerate for extended periods of time. Full weight bearing through an IPOP can damage the healing surgical construct, thus delaying healing and the fitting of a prosthesis. Assistive devices should be used to encourage toe-touch weight bearing while allowing functional use of the remaining muscles.

The limb will change rapidly throughout the early rehabilitation process, therefore the prosthetist and therapist must closely monitor the fit and alignment of the IPOP. Adding extra layers of socks to the residual limb will accommodate early changes in limb volume. Eventually this will become counterproductive, and a replacement socket will have to be ordered. IPOPs are fabricated with modular components that allow changes to be made easily.

The surgeon may decide that an IPOP is not an option for the individual due to excessive soft tissue damage or delayed wound healing. In these circumstances, an RRD should be utilized.[8] One variant of the RRD is a custom-molded plaster socket with a prefabricated plastic collar encapsulating the individual's limb from the distal end to approximately two-thirds of the thigh. There are also other variations, including an adjustable prefabricated plastic socket or a custom-molded plastic socket made from a digital scan of the limb.[9] Regardless of the style of RRD chosen, the goals are the same. The RRD keeps the knee in full extension to prevent contracture, protects the limb from exterior trauma, and controls swelling through total contact. This removable device is worn over at least one layer of cotton sock and is held in place with Velcro straps (Fig. 23.1). It is also fenestrated to allow airflow and release moisture. The device can be worn 23 hours a day and can be removed easily for dressing changes and bathing. Chapter 20 offers a more detailed discussion of postoperative care.

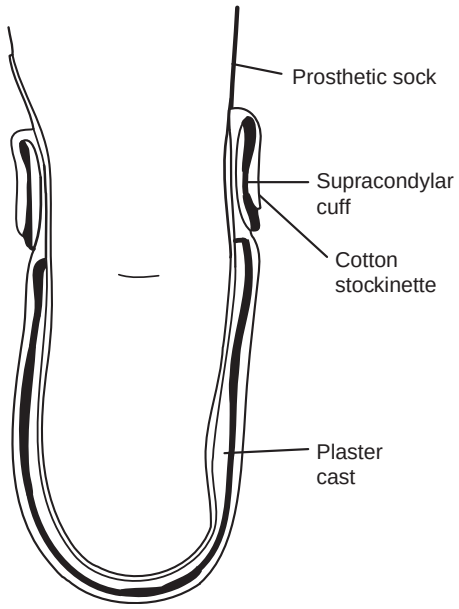


Fig. 23.1 Cross-sectional diagram of a rigid dressing for a transtibial amputation. Cotton stockinette is placed over the residual limb, and padding is placed over vulnerable areas (i.e., suture line, bony prominences). The residual limb is then wrapped with several layers of gauze impregnated with plaster of Paris. Rigid dressings can be used until the suture line closes. They have been shown to reduce postoperative complications and accelerate the rehabilitation process. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

Prescription of a Prosthesis

Such a prescription details all the features of the completed prosthesis and should include socket design, skin-socket interface, suspension strategy, and additional modular components. For transtibial prostheses, the modular components are limited to feet, ankles, shock absorbers, torque absorbers, and dynamic pylons.

The socket is the structural component of the prosthesis in which the residual limb is contained. All the forces from the ground during gait are transferred to the limb through the socket. The forces from the limb needed to control the motion of the prosthesis are transferred to the prosthesis through the socket. Much care and time should be spent on socket design and fitting, as a less than ideal fit can quickly lead to pain, injury, and lack of function. The socket design, interface, and suspension must be considered together, as their functions are often interrelated and interdependent. A soft liner, for example, can function both as an interface and as the suspension for the prosthesis. In the same way, a socket that is designed with a different interface may contraindicate certain suspension options. Forethought regarding how those three design elements intermingle will increase the probability of producing a comfortable and functional prosthesis.

Socket Designs

Early transtibial prostheses were fashioned by hollowing out a block of wood and attaching metal single-axis knee joints and a leather thigh corset. The sockets were referred to as "plug-fit" sockets because they were open-ended and the limb fit into the socket like a plug fits in a drain. The attached thigh corsets took advantage of the conical shape of the thigh to transfer weight proximally and transmit mediolateral forces to and from the limb. Although many persons with amputation were able to function with this system, the lack of contact on the distal end of the residual limb often led to painful edema in that area. Such lack of contact can also lead to verrucous hyperplasia, a painful skin condition with a warty appearance.[10] Additionally, the joints and corset added bulk and weight to the prosthesis, which restricted knee motion.[11]

PATELLAR TENDON–BEARING SOCKET

By the end of World War II, the large number of veterans who suffered limb loss during combat inspired prosthetists to experiment with new materials and techniques to improve the comfort and function of prostheses. In 1959, a symposium was held at the University of California Biomechanics Laboratory to promote the development of transtibial socket fitting. The result was the patellar tendon–bearing (PTB) socket design. This design has been used successfully over the past six decades to strategically load the limb in areas that are more tolerant of pressure. The patellar tendon, calf musculature, and medial tibial flare are used for weight loading, while reliefs are made over bony prominences like the tibial crest and head of the fibula. In most cases this eliminated the need for proximal weight bearing.[12]

The main goal of the PTB socket design was to increase the surface area on the residuum available for weight bearing so as to eliminate the need for the knee joints and thigh corset. The PTB socket was described as "total contact," meaning that there were supposed to be no voids or air pockets between the limb and the socket. This design allowed weight bearing to occur in any area capable of supporting a load. The term *patellar tendon–bearing* originates from the use of a patellar "bar" built into the socket at the level of the center of the patellar ligament, midway between the patella and the tibial tubercle (Fig. 23.2). The socket is aligned in approximately 5 degrees of knee flexion, allowing the bar to act as a weight-bearing surface within the socket and enabling 5 degrees of adduction. The proximal trim line of the posterior wall should be located just proximal to the patellar bar to stabilize the limb in the anteroposterior direction and prevent the limb from sliding too far down into the socket. The posterior trim line should be lower on the medial side to accommodate insertion of the medial hamstring tendon during knee flexion. Anteriorly directed compression of the calf musculature maintains the patella tendon firmly against the bar and stabilizes anteroposterior motion of the residual limb within the socket.

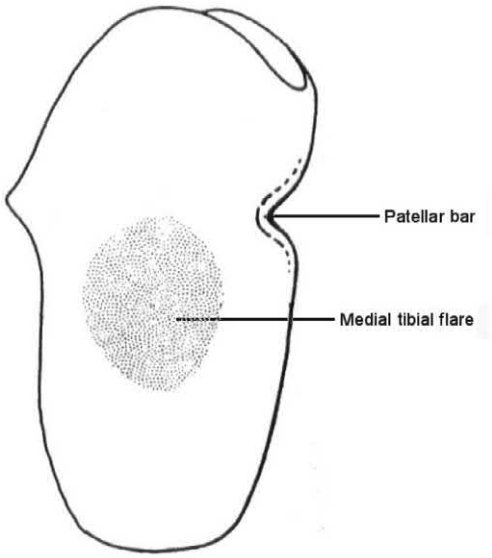


Fig. 23.2 The patellar tendon bar and medial tibial flare are the major weight-bearing areas of the patellar tendon–bearing socket; this total-contact socket design has been used for more than 60 years in constructing prosthesis enabling a comfortable fit for persons with transtibial amputation. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

The other major weight-bearing surface in the PTB socket is the medial flare of the tibia. The proximal end of the tibia broadens out medially and, when stabilized by pressure from the lateral wall of the socket, can effectively accept loading. It is necessary also to create a relief for the fibular head, which is at the same level, to avoid any pressure on that bony structure. Filling the distal end of the socket with a compliant foam material provides slight pressure during full weight bearing, which is necessary to control distal edema. The medial and lateral walls of the PTB socket extend up to the level of the adductor tubercle to provide lever arms for mediolateral stability of the prosthesis. The PTB technique is still used successfully today, and many modern fitting techniques incorporate at least some of the attributes of the original PTB design.

TOTAL SURFACE–BEARING SOCKET

The total surface–bearing (TSB) socket serves to further distribute the weight-bearing load over the entire surface of the limb, even in areas that had been traditionally considered to be pressure-intolerant. Strategic compression of soft tissue and relief for bony prominences are the tools used to direct more force into areas of the limb that can tolerate it and less force into areas prone to skin breakdown. The intent in designing a TSB socket is to distribute uniform pressure over the entire surface of the limb.[13] It is expected, however, that during a typical step, the pressure in any given location would change from a negative pressure during swing phase to high pressure in stance; if sustained, this would cause tissue damage. Because the forces on the limb change dramatically throughout the gait cycle, this dynamic pattern must be anticipated so that those forces can be used to protect the pressure-intolerant areas. Larger forces mean more tissue compression, requiring greater relief. The density and structure of the tissues comprised by the limb must also be taken into consideration. These properties vary widely between skin, muscle, adipose tissue, and bone. They can even vary within the same tissue type; muscle tissue, for example, behaves one way when it is relaxed and very differently when it is contracting. Once tissues are accommodated, the relative locations of these tissues within the socket must be preserved. This not only provides for optimum positioning of the tissues, but also allows accurate control of the prosthesis.

To fully accommodate the dynamic tissue loading that occurs in a prosthetic socket, the prosthetist must consider both the *shear* and the *normal* forces on the limb. Shear forces run parallel to the limb surface and are best mitigated through the use a socket interface. Interface materials—such as socks, sheaths, flexible liners, and gel liners—offer a continuum of shear reduction on the skin surface. The best materials to minimize shear are those found in gel liners. Normal forces are those that are applied perpendicular to the surface of the limb. The socket walls should be contoured according to the type of tissue in the area and the anticipated loading patterns. There is no way to reduce

the force on the limb without restricting the individual's activities; therefore the best way to reduce pressure is to distribute the forces over as broad a surface as possible. The actual forces on the limb are a combination of shear and normal forces that occur together in various proportions.

Ambulation is a dynamic event in which the forces on the limb are continually changing. For this reason the prosthetic socket must be designed to function under a variety of loading patterns. The socket must be designed and fitted under physiologic conditions that match those of the intended use. Soft tissue compression will vary with load; the socket contours must reflect the anticipated load so as to prevent excessive loading on bony prominences. Throughout the gait cycle, the forces and moments on the socket and limb change continuously. There is a flexion moment during loading response, a varus moment throughout midstance, an extension moment in terminal stance, and a flexion moment again in preswing (Fig. 23.3). The forces on the limb range from a compressive force 1.2 times body weight in stance to a distractive force slightly higher than the weight of the prosthesis in swing phase.[14] A well-fitting prosthesis must provide tolerable pressure distribution in all of these loading conditions. Soft tissue, muscle tissue, and bone contours must each be accounted for in a specific way to achieve a good fit. Soft tissue can tolerate moderate compression, so the prosthetist will precompress that tissue in the socket. Muscles can tolerate mild compression but should be able to contract with each step; therefore less precompression should be applied. The shape of muscle tissue changes when contracted. Flexible materials can be used over muscle bellies to allow for this geometric variability. Finally, bony prominences must be given extra volume within the socket so that when the tissue around them compresses during loading, the pressure will not exceed the tolerable limit.

The load-bearing capabilities of the limb can also be affected by the surgical technique used for the amputation. The Ertl procedure, named after Dr. Janos Ertl Sr., involves the creation of a bone bridge between the distal end of the tibia and fibula, as shown in Fig. 23.4 (see Chapter 19 for more detail). The goal of this procedure is to create a tougher, more force-tolerant limb. One problem this technique aims to solve is nerve impingement. Transtibial amputees are prone to nerve compression between the long bones of the lower leg.[15] Forces within the socket push the tibia and fibula together and compress anything in between. If the tibial nerve is trapped between the bones, pain can result. By fusing the bones together at the distal end, the relative motion is minimized, thereby protecting the soft tissue located between them. Many individuals who have had this type of surgical procedure can bear weight directly on the distal end of their limb. This end-bearing capability allows the prosthetist to distribute the person's weight differently and potentially to provide a prosthesis that does not extend as far proximally. This can increase comfort over standard weight-bearing areas and increase the range of knee flexion available to the individual. However, the increased surgical time and subsequent increase in infection risk are often cited as reasons to forgo the Ertl procedure.[16]

Interface Materials

The material that separates the limb from the socket is referred to as an *interface*. Interfaces play an important role in lower-limb prosthetics. they can offer shock absorption, mimic soft tissue to provide an extra layer of cushioning for individuals who are bony, and help to mitigate shear forces on the limb. Interfaces influence the hygiene, ease of donning, and maintenance requirements of the prosthesis;

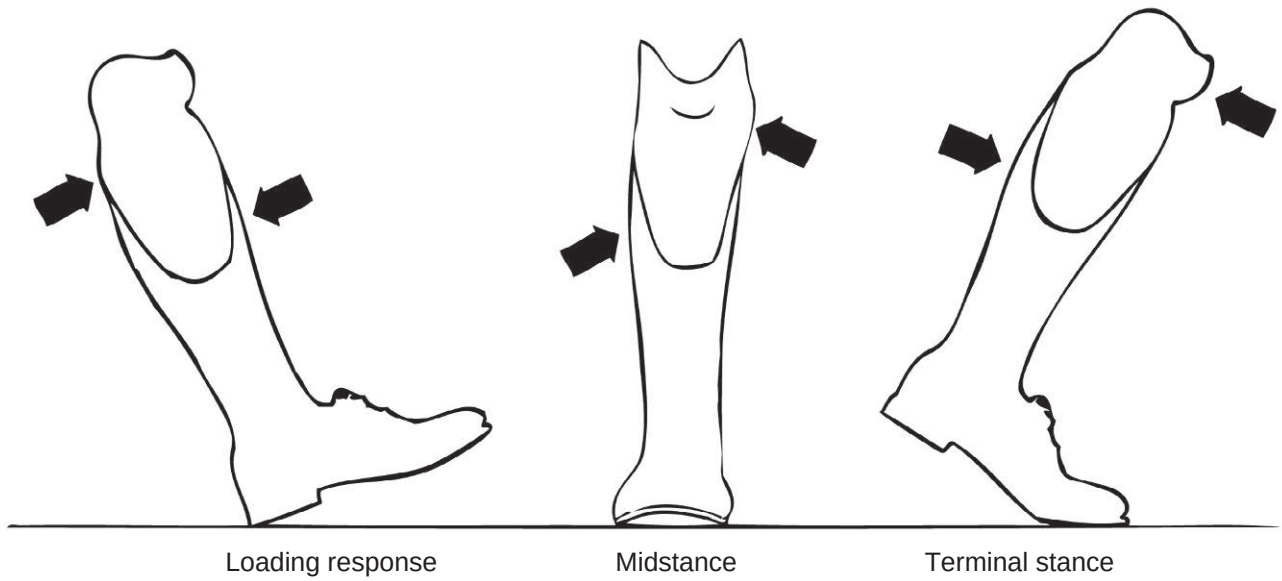


Fig. 23.3 The magnitude and direction of the forces on the socket change throughout stance phase, concentrating pressure in predictable areas. At initial contact and loading, there is an anterior force at the proximal posterior knee and distal anterior residual limb. At midstance, weight-bearing forces create proximal-medial and distal-lateral pressures. At the end of the stance phase, the anterior force moves to the proximal anterior knee and distal-posterior residual limb. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

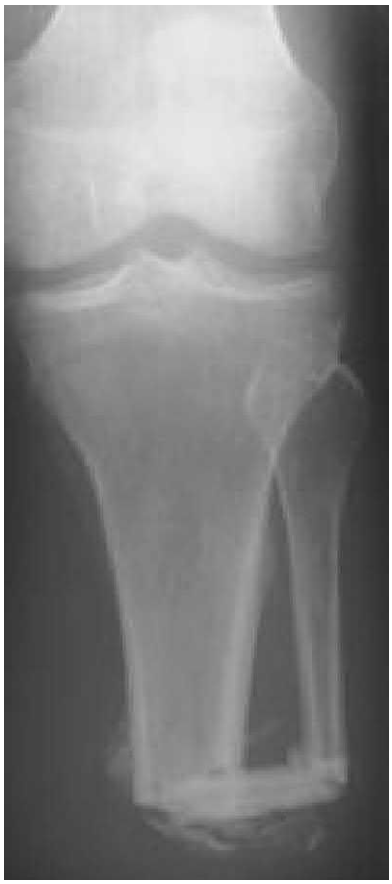


Fig. 23.4 In the Ertl procedure, a weight-tolerant transtibial residual limb is constructed by joining the distal ends of the tibia and fibula with a bone bridge made with a piece of the fibula. This radiograph shows a healed bone bridge (tibia–fibula synostosis) several months following a transtibial amputation using the Ertl approach. (Reprinted with permission from Dionne CP, Ertl WJ, Day JD. Rehabilitation for those with transtibial osteomyoplastic amputation. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2009;21[1]:64–70.)

they are often an integral part of prosthetic suspension. With new materials being developed continuously, there are many interface options for the prosthetist; a discussion of commonly used interface materials is presented here.

HARD SOCKET

Early prostheses were made from hard materials like wood, which did not offer much cushioning. Persons with amputation used layers of cotton or wool socks to provide a soft interface between their limbs and the hard sockets. There are several advantages to this system. The socket is relatively thin, so it is easily concealed under clothing; a clean sock can be used each day or changed throughout the day as needed; the number and ply of socks can be adjusted to accommodate fluctuation in limb volume during the day, and the socket itself is very durable. Because there are no compressible surfaces, the fit is reliable; it will not become "packed down" in high-pressure areas. It is nonporous, easy to clean, and relatively maintenance-free. It also does a fair job of eliminating shear, as the coefficient of friction between

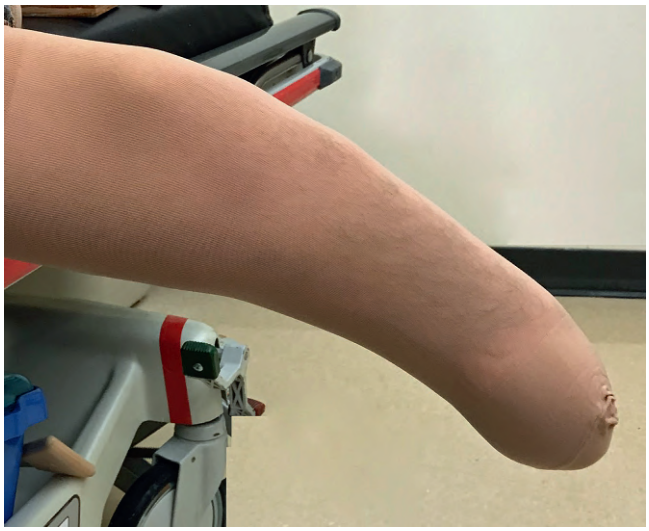


Fig. 23.5 Person with amputation wearing a prosthetic sheath. Sheaths are very thin stocking-like garments worn between the skin and prosthetic sock or socket liner. They are used to reduce friction, disperse moisture, and control bacterial growth. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

the socks and socket is relatively low compared with that between the socks and the skin.[17] This type of socket is most challenging to fit and is not recommended for mature limbs that have lost much of their soft tissue protection over bony prominences. It is also more difficult to adjust than other socket styles.

SOCKS AND SHEATHS

Prosthetic socks can be made from various combinations of cotton, nylon, wool, Lycra, polyester, and spandex. Some manufacturers use silver fibers in their fabrics to enhance the antimicrobial properties of their socks and sheaths (Fig. 23.5). The prosthetic sock provides shock absorption, decreases the shear forces on the limb, wicks away moisture, and is used to accommodate fluctuations in limb volume. To further decrease friction, a nylon sheath is often recommended as the initial layer, with the thicker socks donned over the sheath. The sock also serves as a method of controlling socket fit; as the residual limb matures and shrinks, additional sock plies may be required to restore the fit and comfort of the socket. For convenience, prosthetic socks come in various ply thicknesses. For example, a person can wear one five-ply sock rather than having to don five single-ply socks. This is particularly important since it has been shown that even within the same manufacturer, three one-ply socks are not the same thickness as one three-ply sock.[18] It is important to teach the person wearing the prosthesis to use the fewest number of socks to achieve the proper number of plies. New users of a prosthesis are typically provided with an assortment of one-, three-, and five-ply socks from which to select. The socks can be layered one on top of the other to achieve the appropriate number of plies.

SOFT INSERTS

Closed cell foam, used because it does not absorb moisture, can be molded over a model of the limb to create a soft insert.

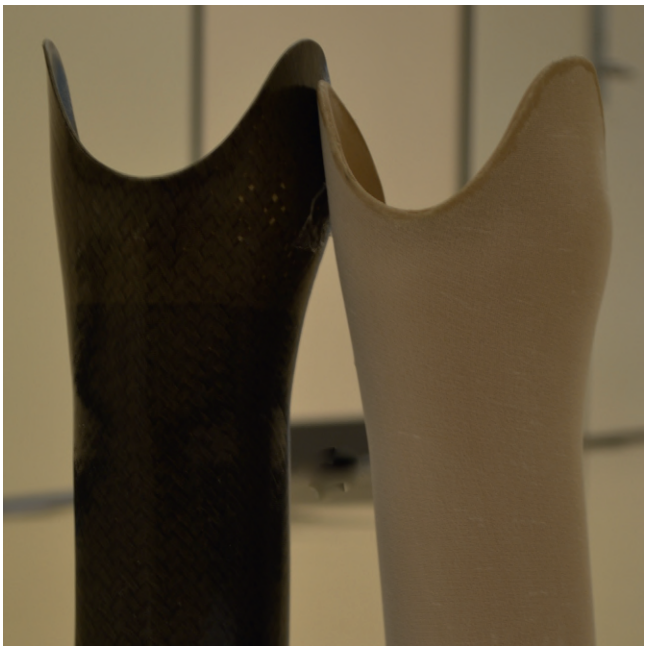


Fig. 23.6 A foam liner, right, and its socket, left. The foam is compressed as it is pushed into the socket, developing tension as a means of suspension. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

Such an insert lines the entire socket and terminates just proximal to the socket's trim lines (Fig. 23.6). For increased protection, a distal end pad, which is an extra layer of soft material at the bottom of the insert, can be used to cushion the distal end of the tibia. Soft inserts provide an extra layer of cushioning, which is needed for more mature limbs that lack adequate soft tissue thickness. Soft inserts also give the prosthetist a way of adjusting socket volume and shape for a limb that is prone to change. Such an insert can be worn over a nylon sheath, which is a very thin nylon stocking similar to women's stockings, or over any number of sock plies. Wearing the insert directly over the skin without a sock can lead to excessive shear and skin breakdown due to the relative motion between the limb and insert. Single durometer inserts provide a uniform compression profile, whereas multidurometer inserts, made from layers of different materials with varied properties, can take advantage of the force-altering characteristics of each layer. For example, a material that has high plastic deformation might offer good shock absorption but would wear out very quickly if used alone. Mating that material with one that has low compression resistance would prevent some of the plastic deformation and extend the useful life of the insert. Soft inserts that can deform during the donning process can be used to accommodate anatomic irregularities that would not be able to slide directly into a rigid socket. For example, an insert for a limb with a bulbous distal end, as in the case of a Syme's amputation, can be made thicker in the narrow area above the bulge so that the diameter of the finished socket would not impede donning. Another example is the wedge needed for supracondylar suspension; this wedge can be integrated as part of the soft insert to facilitate ease of donning.

FLEXIBLE INNER SOCKET

If PTB theory is to direct weight bearing into specific areas of the limb and away from others, then the flexible inner socket is the incarnation of that idea. With this system, an inner socket is made over a model of the limb from a flexible material that will stretch upon the application of force. Then a rigid frame is built around the inner socket, corresponding to areas of the residual limb where weight bearing is desirable. The result is a socket that flexes away from forces in areas that are not pressure-tolerant but remains rigid in the force-tolerant areas. Because flexible sockets in rigid frames can eliminate compressive forces in any specific area, this system is useful for persons with particularly bony residual limbs and those with severe localized sensitivity. However, they are not recommended for residual limbs with adherent scarring because pressure differentials created by the frame tend to amplify the shear forces on the limb.

EXPANDABLE WALL SOCKET

When a limb is amputated at or below the ankle, the resulting long residual limb present an interesting challenge to the prosthetist. The proximal trim lines of the prosthesis can be lowered to a more distal position on the limb because there is a long lever arm for prosthetic control during ambulation. However, the distal end of the residual limb is larger in diameter than it is more proximally because of the presence of malleoli. The prosthetist can accommodate for a larger distal size by creating a removable wall in the socket that is replaced after the prosthesis is donned by using a specially designed soft liner or by creating an expandable wall socket. The expandable wall socket is made from an elasticized material that stretches enough for the individual to push his or her limb through in weight bearing and tightens up over the malleoli to provide suspension. This socket is too flexible for the attachment of a foot, so a rigid frame is made over the flexible socket, leaving a small space in which the expansion can occur. This is a self-suspending socket that can be very comfortable for the wearer. It is difficult to fabricate this kind of socket and even more difficult to make adjustments to the fit once it has been fabricated. More information on these designs can be found in Chapter 22.

In addition to traditional expandable wall sockets, other technologies have been applied in this area of socket design to create nontraditional sockets. These designs have significant open areas and apply the majority of their support between the muscle bellies, so the amount of soft tissue between the socket and the bone is minimized. This allows space for the muscles of the residual limb to expand during muscle contraction and provides maximum stability to the bone of the residual limb. Examples include the Socket-Less Socket from Martin Bionics and the HI-FI Socket from Biodesigns.

GEL LINER

The term *gel liner* is loosely used in the field to describe a liner that is made from a material that exhibits gel-like properties. There are three basic varieties of these liners: (1) silicone elastomers, which are highly cross-linked at the molecular level; (2) silicone gels that have a relatively low amount of cross-

linking; and (3) urethanes. The properties of these materials vary and are relevant to the prosthetist and person with amputation because they directly affect the forces transmitted through the materials to the residual limb. Certain properties of interest are coefficient of friction, compressive stiffness, and shear stiffness. Silicone gels have the lowest compressive and shear stiffness values. This makes them useful in reducing compressive loading and limiting shear forces on the limb. Lower shear stiffness would be beneficial for a bony limb but might compromise stability by creating excessive motion on a limb that has more biologic soft tissue. Silicone elastomers present the highest compressive stiffness values, so they are best suited to supporting loading without deformation. Elastomers would be beneficial for use on a limb that has a high proportion of soft tissue. Urethanes show the highest coefficient of friction with skin, a property that is useful for preventing localized skin tension and shear.[19] Understanding these properties allows the prosthetist to choose a material that is complementary to the socket design and effectively leverages the force transmission properties of the material against the soft tissue characteristics of the limb.

Gel liners are a key component of TSB sockets. They are designed to be worn directly on the skin or over a thin liner referred to as "liner liners." Liner liners are thin nylon sheaths with silver fibers; they are meant to be worn between the skin and the gel liner to prevent skin irritation caused by the warm and moist environment of the gel. Although great effort is made to eliminate relative motion between the limb and socket, a small amount of motion is unavoidable. Gel liners have a high-friction inner surface where they are in contact with the limb and a low-friction outer surface where they meet the socket. This encourages whatever small amount of motion is present to occur on the outer surface of the liner and minimizes motion at the liner-skin interface. The colloidal nature of the gel absorbs the shear that is not dissipated by the liner-socket interface, so that only a small percentage reaches the skin (Fig. 23.7).

Incorporation of a locking pin at the distal end of the gel liner allows the liner to be used for suspension as well. This type of liner is referred to as a "locking liner", as opposed to a "cushion liner", which has no pin. The pin mates with a locking mechanism built into the socket to suspend the prosthesis.

Roll-on gel liners should fit snugly but not tightly. As the liner is stretched, a shear profile is established on the limb. A tighter fit creates higher frictional forces, and if the pressure distribution is not equal, the frictional forces on the skin will be uneven, leading to blisters and skin problems. This can occur with a very bony limb unless the liner is custom-made. Custom-made gel liners are created over a mold of the residual limb. This is indicated for unusually shaped limbs, those with deep invaginations, or those that need specifically located reliefs or cushions.

A significant consideration when gel liners are used is their tendency to retain heat against the residual limb, leading to hyperhidrosis. Since there is no way for this excessive perspiration to be removed from the liner without taking it off, there is the potential for a significant impact the user's function. In one study, 66% of participants reported that hyperhidrosis interfered with daily activities, and 13% reported the level of interference as severe.[20] Multiple options are available to users of gel liners that address issues ranging from topical antiperspirants to injections of botulinum toxin (Botox).

Fig. 23.7 An example of a roll-on liner with a distal umbrella for attachment of a suspension mechanism. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

Suspension

Another important consideration when a prosthesis is being designed is "suspension," the method by which the prosthesis is held to the limb. When a prosthesis is suspended perfectly, there is no relative motion between the socket and the limb. When motion occurs because of a faulty or inadequate suspension system, the limb is subjected to an entirely different loading pattern. This motion is referred to as "pistoning," as it bears some resemblance to the motion of a piston in the cylinder of an internal combustion engine. Pistoning can lead to pain, skin breakdown, and reduced control of the prosthesis. Excessive pistoning can also lead to decreased function for the user, due to fear of the prosthesis coming off. Great care should be taken to minimize motion within the socket. There are several strategies for suspension, which can be used individually as the primary mode of suspension, or more than one technique can be used simultaneously to provide auxiliary suspension. In addition to the methods detailed here, several other methods can be employed. They include such concepts as texturizing the inside of the socket to increase the surface contact area or the use of a unidirectional fabric to allow the residual limb to easily slide into the socket (stance phase). But these increase friction when trying to remove the residual limb (swing phase). These types of supplemental suspensions are not detailed due to the lack of published data to support their efficacy.

WAIST BELT

A waist belt connected by an elastic strap to the thigh corset was used to suspend early transtibial sockets. These belts are

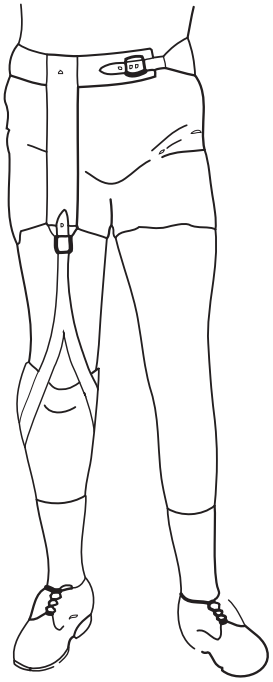


Fig. 23.8 Waist belt and an inverted Y-strap suspends the prosthesis through tension in the elastic strap between the belt and Y-strap. The strap is fitted to allow hip and knee flexion during the swing phase. The elastic recoil of the strap during the swing phase enables the swing limb to advance the prosthesis. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

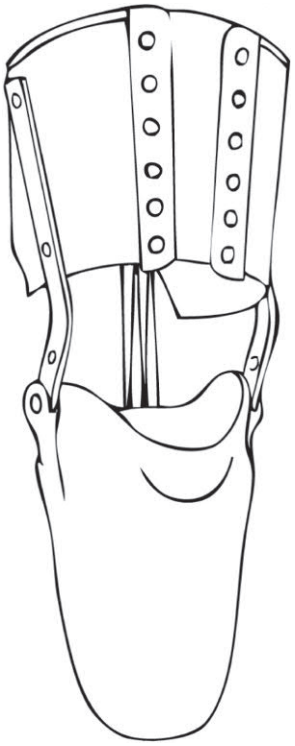


Fig. 23.9 A thigh corset with knee joints is used when the residual limb cannot support the full weight of the patient—for example, it may be useful for someone with a very short residual limb or with significant scarring or fragile skin over traditional weight-bearing surfaces. It can also be used for persons with mechanically unstable knee joints secondary to ligamentous insufficiency. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

rarely used today and are discussed here primarily as a historical reference. The belt encircles the pelvis between the iliac crests and the greater trochanters. These adjustable belts have buckles on the anterior aspect that mate with an inverted Y-strap attached to the socket, allowing them to be donned separately and then joined together. Because this system crosses the hip and knee joints, flexion and extension of these joints must be accommodated by an elastic component. Further accommodation of knee flexion is accomplished by the inverted Y-strap (Fig. 23.8). The Y-strap is fitted over the patella so that the two arms of the Y move posteriorly during knee flexion to reduce elongation of the elastic strap. The person with amputation can adjust tension in the strap based on individual comfort. Pistoning in the socket is controllable with enough tension in the elastic. Tension in the strap decreases with hip flexion so that the strap has slack while the person is seated. Hip extension produces tension in the strap and aids in limb advancement as it assists hip flexion in preswing.

JOINTS AND CORSET

The joints and corset feature (first discussed in the section on "Socket Designs") provides suspension as well as a weight-bearing element if the thigh corset is properly fitted over the femoral condyles. A skillfully molded corset can gain purchase over the smaller circumference of the thigh just proximal to the knee joint. The stiff leather corset is fabricated with either straps or laces that can be tightened as the wearer dons the prosthesis. This permits the limb to pass through the corset and be held securely in position once the corset is tightened. The knee joints, which are typically made of steel, provide a secure connection to the socket. When the condyles are prominent, this can serve as the primary means of suspension, and a waist belt is not needed. As the prosthetic knee joints are positioned slightly posterior to the anatomic knee joint center, tension in the cuff decreases over the condyles as the knee flexes, thereby enhancing sitting comfort (Fig. 23.9). The joints and corset system can also include a posterior check strap that limits full knee extension. This can be used to eliminate the terminal impact at the end of swing phase, which can be audible, and to prevent excessive wear on the prosthetic knee joints. The thigh cuff allows for full functional range of knee flexion but will cause binding in the popliteal fossa when the knee is flexed beyond approximately 110 degrees. Joints and corset may be the suspension of choice for persons with ligamentous instability of the knee or for those who have a very short residual limb. The joint and corset system can also be used to reduce rotation of the prosthesis in certain activity-specific applications.

CUFF STRAP

A cuff strap is a flexible leather cuff that attaches to the medial and lateral walls of the socket at the same point at which orthotic knee joints would be positioned—that is, just posterior and proximal to the anatomic knee center (Fig. 23.10). The cuff has an adjustable strap that

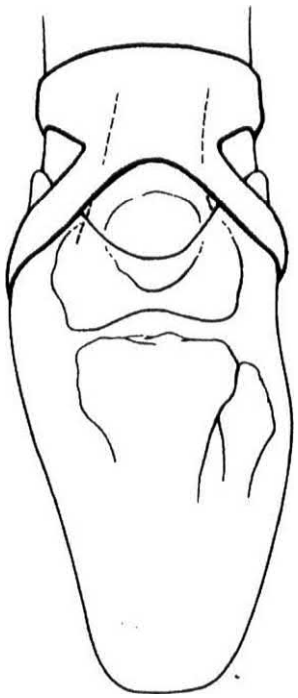


Fig. 23.10 The cuff strap suspension uses the proximal aspect of the patella as well as the femoral condyles to achieve suspension of the prosthesis on the residual limb. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

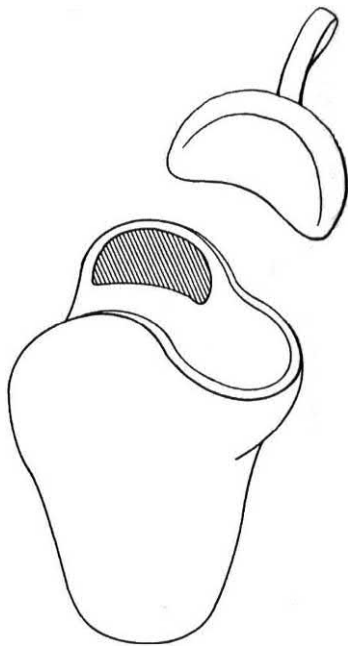


Fig. 23.11 One option to ease the process of donning a supracondylar or supracondylar/suprapatellar socket is to remove a thick medial wedge when the residual limb is pushed into the socket. This wedge is repositioned once the limb is within the socket. A ridge in the socket along the proximal edge of the wedge holds it in place during ambulation. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

completely encircles the thigh just proximal to the patella. After the person dons the socket, the cuff is secured in place so the prosthesis will hang from the cuff during standing and walking. Excessive circumferential tension should not be necessary to maintain the prosthesis in place. The anatomic structures that provide the suspension are the patella and the femoral condyles. To create a strong hold, the medial and lateral walls of the socket must be lower than the standard height. Because this reduces mediolateral stability, cuff strap suspension is not a good choice for short residual limbs. An elastic component may be added to the strap over the patella to increase sitting comfort. This system is simple, quick to fabricate, and provides a secure suspension for the prosthesis while accommodating an unencumbered angle of knee flexion. The cuff does not provide any weight-bearing or mediolateral stability. Cuff strap suspension may also be contraindicated for persons with extra muscle or adipose tissue around the lower thigh.

SUPRACONDYLAR SUSPENSION

Suspension can be achieved by incorporating the femoral condyles completely within the rigid transtibial socket. By extending the medial and lateral trim lines of the socket approximately 2 cm proximal to the adductor tubercle, the mediolateral dimension of the top of the socket can be made narrower than the knee joint. This prevents the knee joint from moving upward out of the socket by capturing the femoral condyles. Supracondylar suspension also adds significant mediolateral stability to the prosthesis by increasing the length of the lever arm proximal to knee center and also by increasing the surface contact area, which can be helpful for short residual limbs. This technique combined with a PTB-style socket is referred to as a PTB-SC.

This type of socket can be difficult to don because the width of the proximal opening is smaller than the width of the condyles. This problem can be addressed in two ways: either by including the supracondylar wedge in a soft insert or by using a detachable medial wall. The first method uses a flexible liner that has a wedge built into it proximal to medial condyle. The rigid socket is fabricated over the liner such that the mediolateral dimension of the proximal end of the socket is equal to the widest dimension of the knee. This makes it possible to don the flexible liner first. Then, with slight compression of the liner, the limb and liner together slide into the socket and are locked in place through pressure and friction (Fig. 23.11). The second method uses a steel bar that is formed into the prosthesis. The entire medial wall of the prosthesis, along with the steel bar, can be removed for donning. Once the limb is in the socket, the bar slides back into a channel in the distal portion of the socket and locks into position with a ball detent (Fig. 23.12).

It is necessary to have at least a 1-cm difference between the mediolateral dimension of the knee joint and that of the thigh just proximal to the adductor tubercle so as to provide a secure supracondylar suspension. Widening the socket in the region just posterior to the condyles serves to loosen the grip over the condyles while the wearer is seated in 90 degrees of knee flexion. It is worth mentioning that the high medial and lateral walls of this type of socket are apparent, even through long pants when the knee is flexed. Some people might find this unsightly and unacceptable.

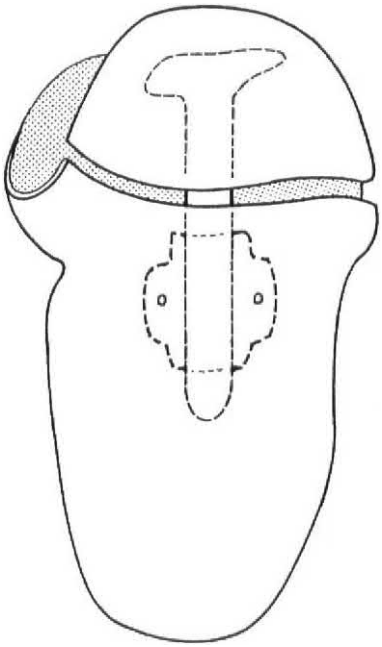


Fig. 23.12 Another option for donning supracondylar or supracondylar/suprapatellar sockets is to remove the medial wing of the socket. This allows the wide condyles to pass through the narrow proximal dimension of the socket. The medial wing is repositioned after donning; the metal flange holds the medial wing in place to achieve proximal purchase over the femoral condyles from which the prosthesis is suspended. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

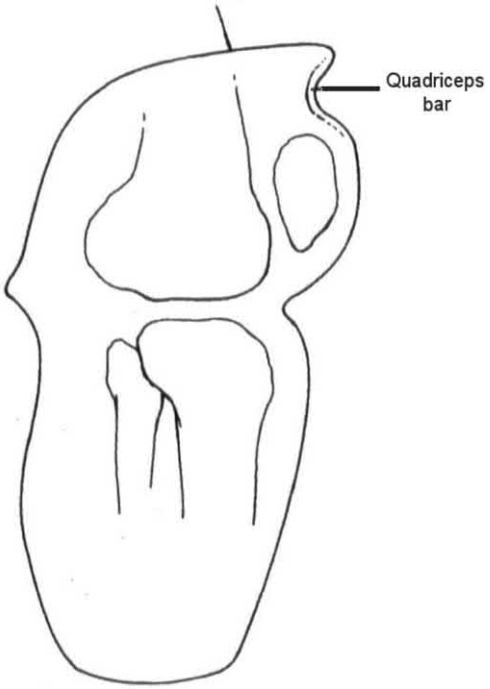


Fig. 23.13 The quadriceps bar of the patellar tendon–bearing supracondylar/suprapatellar socket resists knee hyperextension and enhances suspension. It also stiffens the wings to improve purchase over the condyles, further enhancing suspension of the prosthesis on the residual limb. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

SUPRACONDYLAR/SUPRAPATELLAR

By extending the trim line of the anterior aspect of the PTB-SC socket up to the level of the medial and lateral walls, the proximal surface of the patella can also be used to assist suspension (Fig. 23.13). The patellar tendon–bearing supracondylar/suprapatellar (PTB-SCSP) socket allows the formation of a quadriceps "bar" above the patella, which provides suspension and resists hyperextension. The continuous trim line at the proximal brim also increases the rigidity of the medial and lateral walls, further enhancing suspension. The advantages and disadvantages of this variation match those of the PTB-SC except that it is even more visible under clothing when the knee is flexed.

SLEEVE

One of the most versatile means of suspending a prosthesis is with a suspension sleeve. A suspension sleeve provides suspension through two biomechanical principles: friction and vacuum. The sleeve extends approximately 20 cm proximal and distal to knee center and is fitted over the proximal end of the prosthetic socket (Fig. 23.14). The sleeve should fit snugly but not hinder circulation. Sleeves can be made of a variety of materials depending on the goals of the design. Neoprene and elastic fabric are common materials used for sleeves because they contour nicely to the anatomy and provide a high coefficient of friction with the skin. These sleeves use friction only to suspend the prosthesis because they allow for air to flow through them, in and out of the socket. This is useful for dissipating perspiration and keeping the

Fig. 23.14 A neoprene suspension sleeve, rolled up the leg to contact the skin, can provide a low-profile suspension option. Such sleeves can be used either as primary or secondary suspension. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

limb cooler, but it also allows undesirable motion to occur between the socket and the limb. Over time, this can lead to pain and skin breakdown. The sleeve can be worn over a sock, which can be good for hygiene; however, this will affect the coefficient of friction between the sleeve and the limb, which could lead to suspension failure. Sleeves permit functional ROM for the knee, but because they bunch up in the popliteal fossa, they can restrict knee flexion beyond approximately 100 degrees.

SUCTION

Modern sleeves are referred to as "sealing sleeves" because they are made of nonporous materials that seal the proximal end of the socket against the skin so that no air can flow into or out of the socket. This creates a suction suspension. One-way air valves are commonly used in conjunction with sealing sleeves to allow air trapped during donning to escape from the socket. Sealing sleeves provide excellent suspension when they are combined with TSB sockets. Once the socket is sealed, very little pistoning can occur, as there are no voids between the limb and the socket. For the sleeve to seal, the sleeve must touch the skin directly for at least the top 5 cm. The skin must be free of deep scars or invaginations in that area, as they would provide a path for air to enter under the sleeve. Because the sealing sleeves rely on an airtight seal to function, they are highly susceptible to failure as a consequence of leaks. Even a small hole in the sleeve can allow air to flow into the socket, defeating the vacuum and impairing suspension. Although sleeves are not very durable, they can be replaced without any special tools or equipment.

The soft tissue of the residual limb behaves like an incompressible fluid. For the limb to move within the sealed volume of the socket, the volume of the limb itself would have to change. This can happen only if fluid moves into or out of the limb through the bloodstream, a process that is too slow to be accomplished within the short interval of swing phase. Therefore the cyclic alteration between compression in stance and tension in swing slowly draws fluid into the limb and pushes it back out, assisting normal circulation. Suction suspension may provide a means for improving healthy circulation in the residual limb and controlling limb volume.

LOCKING LINERS

The first references to locking liners involved the use of a roll-on silicon liner, referred to as an "Icelandic roll-on suction socket."[21,22] However, the use of the term *suction* for this type of suspension is incorrect. The liner is primarily held on by friction because it is not possible to maintain a vacuum within a flexible structure. If friction is eliminated through the use of a lubricant, the liner can be pulled off the limb. It is more accurate to describe this type of suspension as a locking mechanism. These roll-on gel liners are compliant enough to contour nicely to the shape of the residual limb and include a threaded hole at the distal end. This hole serves as a point of attachment for the suspension hardware.

There are four basic options for the hardware:

1. Early sockets used a ring screwed into the distal end of the liner. When the ring came through a special opening on the distal end of the socket, the wearer could pass a thin bar through the ring so that it could be retracted back into the socket. This system is still good for individuals who have difficulty doffing their prosthesis, as it allows them to remove the bar and then use both hands to push the socket off. This system requires additional clearance under the limb to accommodate the diameter of the ring and the associated attachment fixture. The bar is also a separate component, so it can easily get lost. The wearer should be instructed to store the bar in the prosthesis and take it out only during the donning process.
2. Difficulties with the ring gave rise to using a strap that is manually fed through a hole in the distal end of the socket and then secured to the outside of the socket (Fig. 23.15). The strap must be of sufficient length to be put through the hole before the limb enters the socket. This eliminates the need to carefully align the sleeve during donning as the limb will be drawn down into the socket by tension in the strap. It also eases the donning force required to get into the socket because the limb elongates and decreases in girth under tension as it is pulled into the socket. As no locking mechanism is mounted on the distal end, no additional clearance is needed, leaving precious space for other components. One variant of this system uses a lanyard and a special lock mechanism to secure the lanyard in the distal end of the socket. The lanyard is permanently attached to the locking mechanism; therefore it must be disconnected from the liner each time the liner is taken off.
3. Most modern sockets use a pin-and-lock mechanism. The pin can range from approximately 3 to 10 cm in length. It works in conjunction with a locking mechanism built into the distal end of the socket, which engages when the individual dons the prosthesis. Some wearers experience frustration with this as it can be difficult to align the pin so that it engages with the locking mechanism. To remove the prosthesis, the wearer must disengage the pin manually while pushing the socket off with the other hand. There are several variants of locking mechanisms. Some produce an audible "click" to indicate that the pin has engaged, but it will lock in only a limited number of positions. Others use a clutch mechanism or a smooth pin that allows for an infinite number

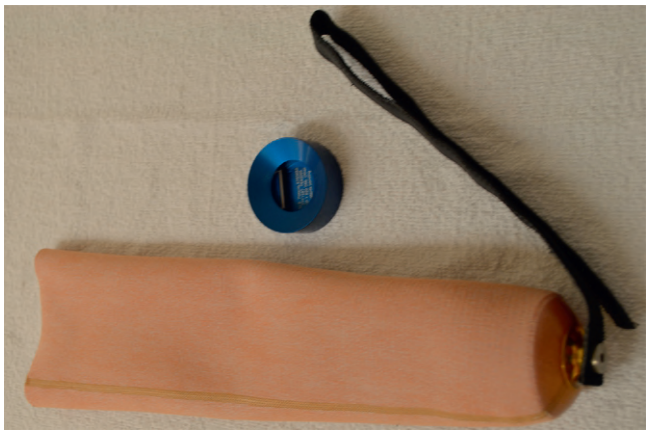


Fig. 23.15 Prosthetic gel liner with distal lanyard strap used to pull the limb into the prosthetic socket. The blue puck would be attached inside the distal end of the prosthetic socket. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

Fig. 23.16 Distal locking system and pin. The pin in threaded into the end of the prosthetic gel liner and the lock body is laminated into the prosthetic socket. (© Össur.)

of locking positions. Ideally only one position should be needed—that is, when the limb is positioned correctly in the socket. However, as an the limb volume varies throughout the day, it is not uncommon for there to be an additional click or two as the wearer spends more time bearing weight in the prosthesis (Fig. 23.16).

4. Proximal suspension through the use of a ladder strap and ratchet buckle is a fourth option. Those who find the "milking" sensation of a distal suspension unbearable or wearers who do not have clearance for a distal suspension can use this method. In this system, a ladder strap is attached to the anterolateral side of a cushion liner between the fibular head and the tibial tubercle and just low enough to be contained within the socket. An opening is made in the socket wall just large enough for the ladder strap to pass through. As the ladder strap passes through the socket, it is inserted into a ratchet buckle that has been incorporated into the socket or attached to its side. The ladder strap makes an audible click as it is locked into the buckle to help the user know that the suspension is engaged. Care should be taken not to overtension the strap, as this can damage the cushion liner. One drawback to this method is that there is slightly more motion of the residual limb in the socket as compared with distal suspension.

Locking liners allow some pistoning to occur.[23] The amount of motion can be dramatic when loose tissue is present at the distal end of the residual limb. As the limb is lifted off the ground in swing phase, the weight of the prosthesis pulls on the pin, causing the liner and limb to become longer and contract in girth. This effect is most apparent at the distal end. This milking motion creates unnecessary stress on the distal end of the limb and can lead to pain, edema, and skin breakdown.[24] This is especially problematic for limbs with adherent scar tissue, as the liner will attempt to pull the tissue away from the bone. This type of suspension is not ideal for a newly amputated limb, as the distal end will not be fully healed. This problem can be averted if suction rather than the pin is used to hold the liner to the socket wall.

SEMIRIGID LOCKING LINER

A semirigid locking liner is used to combine the convenience of a locking liner with the benefits of a full-suction suspension. The individual first dons an interface—which can be a sheath, sock, or cushion gel liner—that was designed to go under the prosthesis. Then the wearer dons a thin, flexible, custom-molded socket that has a locking liner rolled over it. Finally, the wearer steps into the rigid frame to engage the locking mechanism. Because the locking liner is under the rigid frame rather than stretched over it, the life of the locking liner is greatly extended. Having the socket under the liner prevents the locking liner from becoming deformed, so that pistoning is virtually eliminated and the distal tissue is protected. To further enhance the suction of this system, an expulsion valve can be incorporated into the flexible socket. This allows any air trapped in the socket during donning to be removed. This one-way valve provides a path for air to move from inside the socket to the outer side of the locking liner. Wearing a sock or a liner with a fabric exterior helps any remaining air to migrate toward the valve and out of the socket.

ELEVATED VACUUM

As the advantages of suction suspension are clearly documented in the literature,[25,26] there has been considerable interest in using external vacuum pumps to increase the level of suction (decrease the pressure) within the socket. Such a system is referred as providing an *elevated vacuum*. Pumps can be either electrical (battery-operated) or mechanical. Mechanical pumps use the natural cycle of compression during stance and distraction during swing to pull air from the socket during gait. Electrical pumps have the added benefit of being able to accurately control the level of vacuum within the socket by turning on and off at preset thresholds (Fig. 23.17). Both systems have advantages and disadvantages. Mechanical pumps tend to be lighter in weight, lower in profile, and easier to maintain. Electrical pumps allow more precise control of the negative pressure, and some models allow for situational control of the negative pressure. The downsides are similar except that

Fig. 23.17 This figure shows a microprocessor-controlled device that draws air out of the socket to maintain the elevated vacuum needed for effective suspension of the prosthesis on the residual limb. Electronic vacuum pumps are reliable and can accurately maintain specified levels of vacuum. (Courtesy of Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

electrical pumps must be charged and require greater clearance under the residual limb. An elevated vacuum device maintains limb volume by preventing the fluid loss that occurs during prolonged weight bearing.[27] The elevated vacuum environment within the socket leads to decreased motion and therefore to fewer skin problems, improved prosthesis control, better balance, and enhanced comfort.[24] Elevated vacuum suspensions have also been shown to improve oxygen perfusion of the amputated limb during gait[28] and to have lower peak pressures and lower impact forces than traditional suction sockets.[29] During the swing phase of gait, the elevated vacuum suspension has been shown to reduce axial motion of the socket relative to the limb as compared with the passive suction suspension.[30] To achieve an elevated vacuum, a sealing sleeve is required to prevent air from entering through the proximal end of the socket. Some wearers report a decrease in the amount of available knee flexion once the air has been evacuated from the socket. This is likely caused by tension in the sealing sleeve as it spans the entire knee joint.

Fig. 23.18 Pressure casting provides uniform pressure on the residual limb as well as slight distraction, ensuring that the mold and residual limb match in length. (© Össur.)

Impression Techniques

The first step in creating a well-fitting socket is to capture an accurate impression of the residual limb. This can be done in a variety of ways, ranging from plaster bandages to noncontact optical scanners. Each technique has its own advantages and disadvantages, and there is no one best method for every limb. All methods share the common goal of capturing a model of the limb that accurately represents the location and geometry of each aspect of the limb. Capturing a static impression of the limb is simple and any method will suffice if executed properly. The challenging task is to capture the dynamic nature of the biologic tissue by compressing the soft tissues during the process to simulate the condition of the limb during weight bearing.

HAND CASTING

During hand casting, the limb is gently wrapped with either plaster or fiberglass bandage and the prosthetist pushes in key weight-bearing areas while the casting material is setting up. How much compression is needed and which areas to compress is determined based on bony anatomy and the prosthetist's individual knowledge, skill, and experience. Multistage casting procedures involve molding specific regions of the limb individually and joining them once the individual sections have set up. This allows the prosthetist to position the limb in multiple postures during casting to capture unique features. The insertion of the hamstrings, for example, can be molded during active knee flexion, when they are most prominent. Chapter 6 gives more details about casting.

PRESSURE CASTING

Another way to precompress the tissue is to use a pressurizing technique.[31] This involves placing the limb into a vacuum or pressure chamber while the plaster is setting up (Fig. 23.18). A vacuum chamber is typically a latex bladder pulled over the wet cast and sealed on the thigh. A vacuum pump attached to the distal end removes all air between the cast and bladder, allowing the atmospheric pressure to compress the limb up to approximately 14 psi. A pressure chamber with a latex bladder attached inside it is another option. The limb, wrapped with wet plaster, is placed in the bladder and air is pumped into the space between the cylinder and the bladder. The pressure in the cylinder can be increased to 30 to 40 psi, providing additional compression. Alternatively, pressure casting can be done with the PCAST method, where pressure is provided by water in a closed cylinder. The full length of the residual limb is wrapped in casting material. The limb is then placed on a flexible bladder inside a metal cylinder. The cylinder is then filled with water, creating a supportive environment in which the prosthetic user can bear weight. He or she then places equal body weight on each limb until the casting has set. This method makes it possible to produce a weigh-tearing mold of the residual limb.[32]

In all three methods, once the casting material has hardened, the pressure is released and the limb is removed from the chamber. Regardless of the casting method, differential pressure between the limb and the environment serves to apply uniform pressure over the entire surface of the limb. This leads to the most tissue compression in the softest areas and the least amount of tissue compression in the bony areas. The amount of differential pressure required will vary with the individual's weight, and the prosthetist will use the least amount of pressure required to achieve the optimal fit.

OPTICAL SCANNING

Optical scanners can be used to capture the three-dimensional external shape of the limb to within 1 mm of accuracy (Fig. 23.19).[33] They are quite useful in situations when hand casting is impossible or impractical, as immediately following surgery or with bulbous limbs that cannot be removed from a plaster cast without cutting or distorting the cast. Digital markers and alignment lines can be attached to the virtual model to reference the location of bony landmarks and pressure-sensitive areas. Although it is not possible to compress the skin by hand while scanning because the hand would block the view of

Fig. 23.19 An optical scanner for shape capture. These units allow a mold to be created without having to physically contact the body segment and serve as a method of long-term storage of model shapes. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

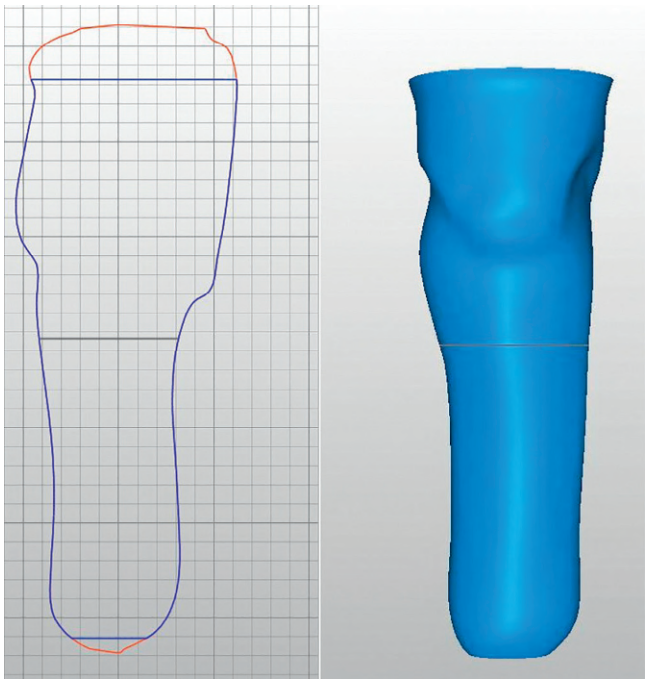


Fig. 23.20 Image of a three-dimensional scan of a residual limb. The model is highly accurate to within ± 1 mm. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

the surface, compression of tissues and reliefs for bony landmarks can be accomplished using modification software.

Scanners used in applications involving the construction of prostheses typically fall into one of two categories: (1) laser scanners and (2) structured light scanners (white or blue light). Laser scanners use triangulation of the beam reflecting off the surface of an object to determine its position in space. Since this process happens millions of times per second, the software is able to produce a map of the three-dimensional surface by connecting these points. Structured light scanners project a light pattern onto the surface of an object and, by measuring the distortion of that pattern, the software can calculate the three dimensionality of the object being scanned. Both systems provide great accuracy and fast scan times, which makes them useful tools in the clinical setting.

The use of an optical scanning system to create a digital model of the residual limb, or a computer-aided design (CAD) (Fig. 23.20), also requires a method of transferring that digital model to the real world, referred to as computer-aided manufacturing (CAM). CAD/CAM is a process used extensively in the manufacturing world, but in the Orthotics and Prosthetics world, it is often closely associated with three-dimensional printing (additive manufacturing) and foam carvings of molds (subtractive manufacturing). Although three-dimensional printing of prosthetic devices is done in some limited circumstances, it has not yet become a standard tool employed by the prosthetist. This is expected to change as advances in print materials, print methods, and print speeds are made. Currently three-dimensional printing in transtibial prosthetics is most prevalent in the production of check sockets and custom artistic fairings to provide shape to the prosthesis. More commonly, transtibial models are fabricated using a carver that is computer-guided and carves a foam block into the desired shape. The model produced in this way is then used to produce the prosthetic socket using traditional methods. Prosthetic sockets produced using a CAD/CAM carver have been shown to improve quality-of-life parameters and reduce the wearer's socket adaptation.[34] This system has the additional advantages of reducing fabrication time and maintaining objective data on socket shape and volume over the life of the prosthetic user.

Alignment

Alignment refers to the spatial orientation of the prosthetic socket relative to the foot. Alignment will influence the magnitude and direction of the ground reaction force throughout the gait cycle. There are four goals in prosthetic alignment: (1) facilitating heel strike at initial contact, (2) providing adequate single-limb stability during the stance phase, (3) creating smooth forward progression (rollover) during the transition from early to late stance phase, and (4) ensuring adequate swing-phase toe clearance.[35] These goals are reached through dynamic alignment of the prosthesis, during which the person walks on a prosthesis that is fitted with an adjustable device that allows for alignment changes in all three planes. Although "normal" gait is not a goal, modern components do allow many persons with transtibial amputations to evade detection of gait abnormalities or deviations by all but the most skillful gait observers. Prosthetic alignment can also be used in conjunction with socket fit to address pressure issues within the socket. Because of this, socket fitting and dynamic alignment must occur simultaneously. Effective fitting and alignment

requires an iterative process, as changing one aspect can affect many others. The end result is often a compromise. For example, the foot may require excessive dorsiflexion in order for the person to achieve sufficient swing clearance, even though this may contribute to a higher than optimal knee flexion moment during the loading response. The prosthetist must understand the biomechanics of the limb and gait cycle to weigh the factors appropriately and make the best decisions.

The modular components that connect the socket, pylon, and foot allow the prosthetist to make angular changes to the alignment. In the sagittal plane, socket flexion or socket extension refers to the tilting of the proximal end of the socket forward or backward in the anteroposterior direction, respectively. In the frontal plane, socket abduction moves the proximal end of the socket medially while socket adduction moves it laterally. Adjustments around the ankle can be described with standard anatomic terminology: inversion, eversion, plantarflexion, and dorsiflexion. Changes to the alignment can refer to the motion of the socket relative to the foot, or vice versa. Dorsiflexing the foot for example, causes socket flexion; while everting the foot leads to the same motion as adducting the socket.

The socket can also be shifted medially or laterally in the frontal plane and anteriorly or posteriorly in the sagittal plane. These shifts are referred to as linear changes or *slides*. These, too, are relative changes. A lateral slide of the socket for example, is equal to a medial slide of the foot. This type of adjustment is useful during static alignment to ensure the foot is directly under the individual's knee. Linear adjustments can be made by either using a special component that permits this type of slide (Fig. 23.21), or by using a pair of standard pyramid connectors and making equal but opposite angular adjustments.

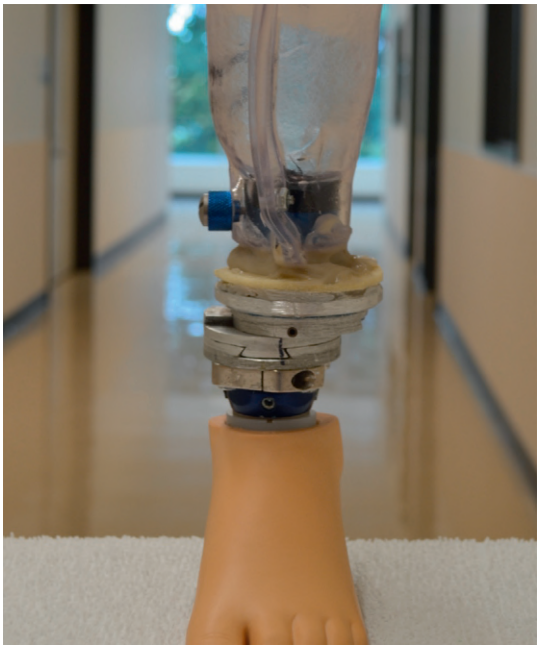


Fig. 23.21 Alignment adaptor attached to foot and diagnostic socket. This adaptor is used in the alignment phase of prosthetic fabrication only. It allows for anteroposterior and mediolateral slide of the prosthetic socket relative to the foot (the foot is shifted 1 cm medially). (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

BENCH ALIGNMENT

The first step in the alignment of a transtibial prosthesis is to position the socket in what is known as "bench alignment." This alignment serves as the starting point for the dynamic alignment process. In a standard bench alignment, the socket is set at 5 degrees of flexion and 5 degrees of adduction while the top of the prosthetic foot is level in both the frontal and sagittal planes and the medial border of the foot is parallel to the line of progression. When viewed in the sagittal plane, a plumb line should fall from anatomic knee center and pass through the foot at a point one-third of the foot length from the back of the heel. In the frontal plane, the line should go from mid-patella through the center of the heel. The reason for the 5 degrees of socket flexion is to elongate quadriceps muscles slightly so that they are better prepared to accept the full weight of the body and to aid in shock absorption during loading response. The 5 degrees of adduction ensures that the foot is sufficiently inset to create the appropriate varus moment during stance. This properly loads the proximomedial and distolateral aspects of the limb that are best able to carry those forces. Standard bench alignment is not used when joint contracture or deformity is present; instead, the actual limb alignment is marked during the casting procedure and that alignment is used as the starting point in the dynamic analysis.

HEIGHT

Once the prosthesis has been bench-aligned, the person dons the prosthesis and stands while bearing equal weight on both lower extremities. The first measurement examines the length of the prosthesis. The goal is to achieve relatively equal leg length by comparing the intact and prosthetic limbs. There are two accepted ways to assess the height: statically and dynamically. In a static assessment, the individual is asked to stand with feet shoulder-width apart, knees fully extended, and bearing equal weight on both limbs. The distances from each iliac crest to the floor can be measured and compared. An alternative is to evaluate whether left and right iliac crests appear to be level. The measurement should not be taken in the supine position because the length of the prosthesis changes during weight bearing as a consequence of flexion of the dynamic components and compression of the interface material. In a dynamic assessment, the person is asked to walk and the entire body is observed, especially the head and torso. Many factors will affect the motion of the head and torso, so it is best to focus only on gross asymmetries that can be corrected by changing the length of the prosthesis. When the static and dynamic height measurements are different, a clinical decision is made to determine the optimal length for the prosthesis to provide the best function for the individual. It is not uncommon for the prosthesis to be up to 1 cm shorter than the sound limb under static conditions.

DYNAMIC ALIGNMENT

Alignment changes can be made with the standard modular connectors that are used to fasten the components of the prosthesis together. A standard pyramid connector (Fig. 23.22) can be set anywhere within an approximately 20-degree arc of adjustability. This means, for example, that

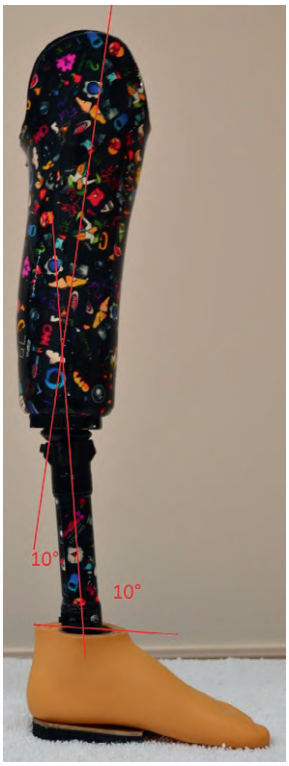


Fig. 23.22 An example of endoskeletal alignment components set in maximum socket flexion and maximum plantarflexion, creating a posterior shift of the socket relative to the foot. (Photo courtesy Todd DeWees, CPO, Shriners Hospital, Portland, OR.)

the socket can be flexed up to 10 degrees or extended up to 10 degrees from the neutral starting position. This is accomplished by loosening one screw and then tightening the opposite screw equally. Each pyramid permits adjustment in two orthogonal planes. For simplicity, the prosthetist will typically rotate the pyramid so that the adjustable planes are aligned with the frontal and sagittal planes. Transverse plane rotation is almost always infinitely adjustable; the standard connectors can accommodate any foot position. When the dynamic alignment differs greatly from bench alignment, it may be necessary to add a special alignable component to the prosthesis. This component will accommodate a larger window of adjustment and allows for linear changes in addition to angular changes. For example, the foot can be inset relative to the socket simply by sliding the foot medially and retightening the connector. This device is to be used during the dynamic alignment only and then removed during the final fabrication procedure. Small linear adjustments can also be made without the special component by performing equal but opposite angular adjustments on two adjacent pyramid connectors. This method will, however, simultaneously affect the height of the prosthesis.

During the dynamic analysis, the prosthetist will ask the individual to walk in a safe environment, typically within the parallel bars, and observe the motion of the prosthesis throughout the gait cycle. Adjustments are made to minimize gait deviations and create a smooth, stable gait pattern. The prosthetist will attempt to create an energy-efficient stride by minimizing the horizontal and vertical displacement of the center of mass. Goals for the optimal alignment are stance stability, swing clearance, equal step length, and energy efficiency. Socket fit and suspension play an important role in providing stability, so final adjustments to both aspects are included as part of the dynamic analysis. Although dynamic alignment is typically done on a flat, level surface, many prosthetists will also attempt to simulate other terrains that an individual will encounter in the course of daily life. Ramps, stairs, and uneven surfaces all require slightly different alignments for optimal performance. It is very important to optimize prosthetic alignment as it has been shown to have significant clinical impact on gait kinetics and spatiotemporal parameters, including cadence and mediolateral displacement of the socket.[36] Final alignment is often a compromise of function on the varied terrain that an amputee will encounter.

As the question of whether the alignment of the prosthesis is "good" is ultimately answered by the function and satisfaction of the person wearing the prosthesis.[36] A fairly broad range of alignments can be considered acceptable.[37] In an effort to standardize what is ultimately a subjective estimate of proper alignment, the concept of vertical alignment axis and alignment reference center has been proposed. The vertical alignment axis is a vertical line that passes through the geometric center of the socket at the level of the midpatellar tendon. The alignment reference center is the point along the line from the center of the foot through the tip of the shoe, one-third of the way forward from the back of the heel. To align the prosthesis, the individual is asked to bear full weight on the socket while the socket is supported on a padded stand. He or she then determines the socket axis based on the most comfortable weight-bearing position. When the socket is aligned with the socket axis in the most comfortable position and the vertical alignment axis goes directly through the alignment reference center (Fig. 23.23), the prosthesis is generally felt to be well aligned.

ELECTRONIC ALIGNMENT

Technology has been developed to help the prosthetist to make the alignment process more objective, thereby making prosthetic alignments more repeatable and predictable. Electronic sensors imbedded in the prosthetic components are capable of transmitting real-time gait data to a nearby computer (Fig. 23.24). The computer processes socket load information during the stance phase of gait, which is superimposed over the patient's baseline data to create a graph (Fig. 23.25).[38] Displaying the otherwise invisible forces and moments on the prosthesis cues the prosthetist to focus in on specific variances and consider their possible causes. This can prevent undetected problems with alignment from causing long-term damage to the individual's limb. For example, an excessive varus moment at the knee can lead to premature medial compartmental osteoarthritis over a long period. This objective data can be captured and kept in the person's medical record to be referenced if problems arise or changes are necessary in the future.

Additional Features

There are many modular components that can be added to a prosthesis between the socket and the foot to enhance certain features and functions. These include shock absorbers, torque absorbers, and dynamic pylons. The downside of such

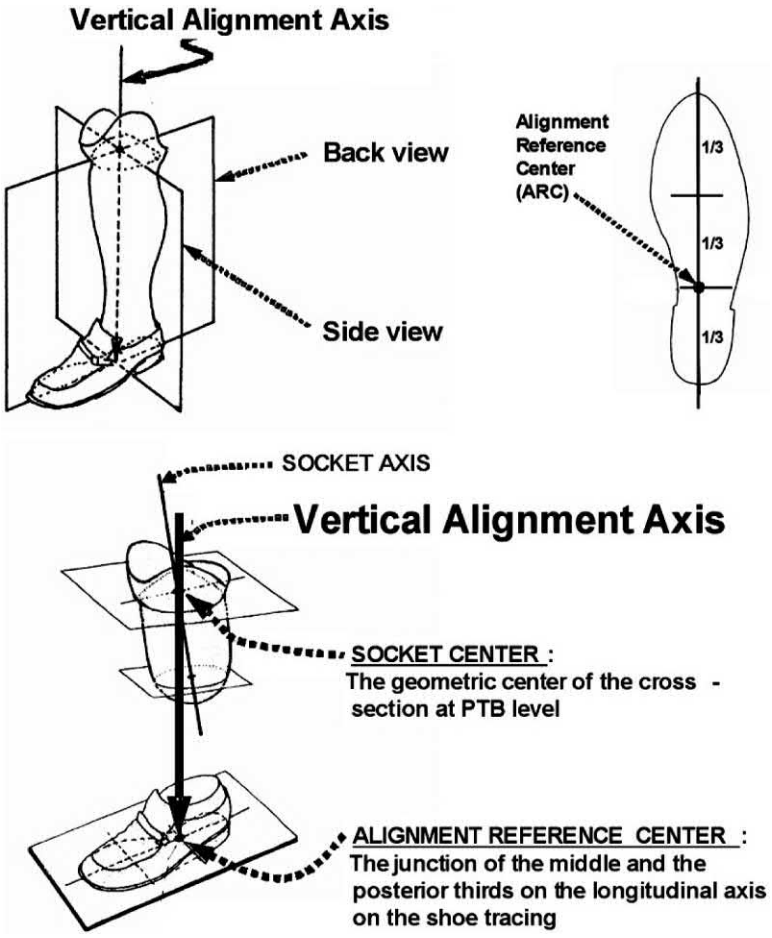


Fig. 23.23 The vertical alignment axis and alignment reference center *(ARC)* of a transtibial prosthesis. Note that the socket axis is set in slight flexion from vertical. The center of the socket should be at the center of the cross section of the socket at the level of the patellar tendon bar. The alignment reference center is one-third the distance from the posterior edge of the shoe worn on the prosthetic foot. *PTB*, Patellar tendon–bearing. (Reprinted with permission from Lin C, Wu YC, Edwards M. Vertical alignment axis for transtibial prostheses: a simplified alignment method. *J Formos Med Assoc.* 2000;99[1]:39–44.)

Fig. 23.24 A computerized sensor that can be mounted in-line with other prosthetic components. It can gather kinetic and kinematic gait data as well as socket load in real time. (Reprinted with permission from Orthocare Innovations, Edmonds, WA.)

components is the greater overall weight of the prosthesis and the requirement of sufficient clearance between the socket and foot. When clearance is an issue, the foot choices may be limited. Typically these components are used in cases where excessive shock is expected or when an acceptable gait pattern is not attainable with the existing feet alone. Care should be taken to mount these components on the prosthesis as proximally as possible to minimize the inertial effects of the additional weight on the swing phase of gait.

TORQUE ABSORBER

When rotational motion in the socket causes discomfort or excessive stress on the skin, a torque absorber can be used to decrease the rotational torque from the ground reaction force. A torque absorber is a component that uses a viscoelastic bumper to allow a limited amount of rotation to occur at the foot without displacing the socket. The amount of rotation is proportional to the torque and can range up to 30 degrees in either direction. This is especially useful in sports applications, such as golf and tennis, which require a wide range of rotation during the activity. Torque absorbers have been shown to increase participation in low- and medium-intensity activities while reducing the interference of associated pain.[39] Torque absorbers may also be beneficial for turns encountered in normal daily ambulation, especially for individuals with fragile skin.

SHOCK ABSORBER

Although much of the functional shock absorption needed for gait is attainable with controlled knee flexion in loading response, some individuals benefit from the additional vertical excursion afforded by the addition of a shock absorber.[40]

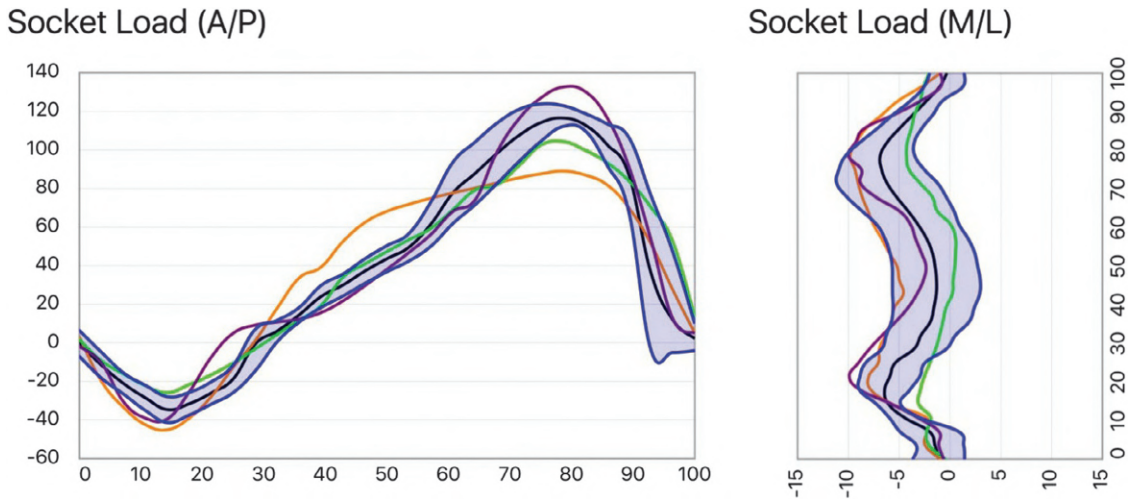


Fig. 23.25 This graph shows the anteroposterior and mediolateral socket loads per session by stance phase (0–100%) and is superimposed on the standard deviation range (blue band) of the baseline recording made at the time of first fitting. (Reprinted with permission from Orthocare Innovations, Edmonds, WA. From Europa+ Pamphlet. 2015. Available at: http://ecbiz182.inmotionhosting.com/~orthoc6/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/Europa-IFU.pdf.)

Fig. 23.26 A shock-reducing pylon is mounted directly under the socket to attenuate torque and shock that is transferred from the ground to the limb. It replaces all or part of the pylon, depending on available clearance. (Image provided by Fillauer.)

Fig. 23.27 An example of an energy-storing /energy-return foot with dynamic pylon. This foot would be mounted to the back of the socket. (© Össur.)

This component uses a viscoelastic spring to dampen the ground reaction forces by slowing their transmission to the limb. As weight is transferred to the prosthesis, the shock absorber compresses relative to the magnitude of the ground reaction force. This reduces impact by spreading the force out over a longer time interval, leading to a lower overall prosthesis height during early stance. Additionally, both features can be combined into a single unit (Fig. 23.26).

DYNAMIC PYLON

Typical prosthetic pylons are rigid and function only as n attachments between the socket and foot to establish the correct overall height. Dynamic pylons allow for energy to be stored as spring tension as they flex through midstance and into terminal stance. This energy is released in preswing to assist with hip and knee flexion, promote toe clearance, and assist limb advancement. The energy return allows the individual to walk with less energy consumption and increased efficiency, meaning that he or she can walk farther and longer. The angle of flexion in a dynamic pylon is small and is difficult to observe during casual ambulation. The effects are more readily apparent during jogging or running (Fig. 23.27), although even in walking the use of a dynamic pylon has been shown to increase step length and decrease dependency on mobility aids such as crutches.[41]

Microprocessor-Controlled Foot/Ankle Systems

Microprocessor controlled foot/ankle systems (MPAs) use computer controlled hydraulic cylinders to preposition the foot to accommodate for variations in terrain (Fig. 23.28). This is accomplished through one of two methods. The first is for the ankle to adapt to the slope or variation in terrain during the swing phase of gait while keeping the ankle fixed during stance. The second approach is to adapt to surface changes during the stance phase of gait. Regardless of the approach, all MPA systems have advantages and disadvantages.[42] Advantages include better adaptation to slopes and stairs, increased stability on uneven ground, and decreased fall risk. Disadvantages include cost, weight, greater maintenance requirements, and the need for greater clearance under the prosthetic socket.

Prosthetic Feet

Improvements in prosthetic foot design have led to the availability of foot systems that incorporate one, two, or all three of these features in one device. This has reduced the obstacles of increased weight and the need for extra clearance under the socket. The advancements are attributable to improvements in composite materials, manufacturing processes, and engineering design. An example of such a foot type is a crossover foot in which the design elements of a running-specific foot and those of a daily-use foot are combined. In healthy active prosthesis users, these feet have been shown to reduce oxygen consumption.[43] A much more detailed discussion of prosthetic feet can be found in Chapter 21.

Fig. 23.28 A microprocessor-controlled foot-ankle system. This system makes corrections of the ankle position, which is necessary to accommodate for variations in walking surface and provides improved balance for the user. (© Össur.)

DIAGNOSTIC SOCKETS

Because the fit of the socket is the single most critical factor in providing a functional prosthesis, great care must be taken to make sure that the fit is optimal. One tool used by prosthetists is a thermoplastic socket, usually clear,

Case Example 23.1 A Traumatic Transtibial Amputation

PRESCRIPTION OF A PROSTHESIS

Let us consider the case of J.W., a 37-year-old male whose left leg was amputated below the knee following a motorcycle accident. He has since recovered from all injuries and is now medically stable. He was recently approved for weight bearing on his left limb as tolerated. He is 5 ft 8 inches tall, weighs 175 lb (79.5 kg), and his residual limb measures approximately 20 cm from knee center to distal end. J.W. has significant amounts of scar tissue on the surface of the residual limb, including a skin graft from his thigh. The skin on the distal end of the limb is adherent to the distal end of the tibia. He was very active prior to his injury and would like to return to that lifestyle as soon as possible. He arrived at the clinic on crutches.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Is J.W. a good candidate for a prosthesis?
- What type of interface, suspension, and socket design would be appropriate?
- What other components could be recommended?

RECOMMENDATIONS

The first decision is to determine whether J.W. is a good candidate for a prosthesis. His entry into the clinic on crutches indicates that his balance, upper extremity strength, and contralateral limb are all sufficient condition for gait. The only factor jeopardizing J.W.'s candidacy is the condition of the soft tissue of his residual limb. In the past, poor soft tissue condition could have prevented successful use of a prosthesis, but with the help of modern techniques and materials, a successful fitting may well be possible.

The interface with the skin should be determined next. Two conditions must be considered: the adherent tissue on the distal end and the fragile skin graft. Gel liners are most efficient at eliminating shear forces on the limb. This will be a major factor in preventing skin breakdown of the adherent skin. The skin graft would benefit from a soft durometer gel rather than a silicone elastomer or urethane liner. Selection of the right interface will be critical to J.W.'s outcome. The decision to use an off-the-shelf size or a custom-made liner will depend on the shape of the limb and how well he could be fitted with a standard-size liner.

The suspension for J.W. should be the system that will lead to the least amount of pistoning. Elevated vacuum will maintain the limb volume by drawing fluid back into the tissues between weight-bearing cycles. This is important for J.W., as the tissues of his limb will be subjected to a large amount of strain once he reaches his goal of readopting an active lifestyle.

FITTING AND ALIGNMENT OF THE PROSTHESIS: VISIT 1

J.W. is seen today for the initial fitting of his first prosthesis. The gel liner is donned directly on the skin and a single-ply sock is worn over the liner. The limb is then placed into the socket and a sealing sleeve is rolled up to mid-thigh to seal off the proximal edge of the socket. J.W. is then asked to stand up between the parallel bars, keeping all his weight on the sound limb. J.W. will

Case Example 23.1 A Traumatic Transtibial Amputation (Continued)

then slowly transfer his weight over to the prosthesis as tolerated. Once he is comfortable bearing his full weight on the prosthesis, he can begin to take his first steps.

As he begins to walk and feel more confident, J.W. begins to let go of the bars and walk hands-free. Once he does this, his knee begins to flex rapidly during the loading response and the foot starts slapping the floor.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Is the alignment of the prosthesis adjusted properly? Is the foot making an appropriate heel strike? Has the heel height of the shoe been properly accommodated?
- Is the socket stable on his limb? Are there signs of pistoning? Is there excessive medial shift of the prosthesis during stance?
- Are his knee extensors strong enough to eccentrically control knee flexion during full weight bearing?

RECOMMENDATIONS

A plumb bob through the midline of the socket falls between the posterior one third and anterior two thirds of the foot when the shoe is donned, and the top of the foot shell is level with the ground. This indicates that the alignment is appropriate. Muscle strength testing reveals that the quadriceps of the residual limb are 2/5 (two out of five). Due to the lack of strength in the quadriceps muscle group, J.W. is unable to regulate knee flexion during the loading response. A rehabilitation protocol for quadriceps strengthening that includes ambulation with the prosthesis should be implemented. At the same time, the prosthesis can be altered to improve J.W.'s gait pattern as he regains his strength. The foot should be moved anteriorly, relative to the socket. This will decrease the mechanical advantage of ground reaction force to flex the knee by shortening the heel lever. It will simultaneously increase the length of the toe lever, which will provide more stability in midstance. The potential downside is that the knee extension moment in terminal stance will also be increased, so there is potential for the knee to hyperextend. J.W. should be asked to monitor his posterior knee pain and report any as soon as it is recognized.

Because his muscle weakness is expected to resolve relatively quickly, alignment of the prosthesis should be monitored on a regular basis so that the foot can gradually be shifted back to the appropriate position and normal gait can be restored.

FITTING AND ALIGNMENT OF THE PROSTHESIS: VISIT 2

J.W. has done well with rehabilitation and use of his lower-extremity prosthesis. His limb has healed well and his strength is generally good. He has good balance and endurance for walking with the prosthesis. He has gradually increased his wear time and activity level. He works a 5-hour day in agriculture. Today he returns to therapy for a scheduled follow-up appointment. He complains of discomfort at the distal end of his residual limb and loss of stability in the socket. While observing his gait, the prosthetist finds that it appears to be a bit short. Assessment of the residual limb reveals erythema on the distal end and on the distal aspect of the patella.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What changes have occurred since J.W.'s last visit? Has he made changes in the number of sock plies or in his footwear? Has he gained or lost weight?
- Is this an alignment- or fit-related issue? When does the pain occur in the gait cycle? Does the pain increase throughout the day?
- Is the interface worn out? How old is the interface now? How long should it be expected to last? Are there thin areas in the interface that might indicate excessive pressure and premature wear?

RECOMMENDATIONS

J.W. reports that his weight and footwear have not changed. He is wearing the same single-ply sock with which he began. His gel liner is still in excellent condition and should be expected to last for about a year of constant wear. Consideration of all the information indicates that the limb has changed since the initial fitting. As his pain is worst at midstance and increases proportionally with the time spent bearing weight, the prosthetist concludes that the limb is too far distal in the socket. J.W. should increase the number of socks he is wearing, one ply at a time, until the limb is seated correctly in the socket. This will also address the length of the prosthesis, which had appeared to be too short.

In experimenting with sock plies, J.W. went from initially wearing a single sock to six plies, but he found that this number of socks created a new set of problems. He is feeling excessive pressure on the tibial tubercle and proximal aspect of the fibular head. During loading response, he is unable to regulate his knee flexion because of pain on the anterodistal aspect of the tibia. Despite good suspension, he is also starting to scuff his toe during swing phase. All these symptoms indicate that he is now too far out of the socket. This position decreases control of the tibia and allows the socket to flex and extend beyond the position of the limb, leading to excessive pressure on the ends of the bones. It also positions the bony prominences of the limb in areas that do not have adequate reliefs. Removal of several sock plies is the correct intervention, as this will allow J.W. to seat his limb further into the socket and thus increase comfort and stability. When he wore four-ply socks, his comfort and control were restored.

Case Example 23.2 An Amputation Related to Vascular Disease

PROSTHETIC PRESCRIPTION

G.R. is a 76-year-old woman with type 2 diabetes and peripheral vascular disease. She sustained an abrasion at the lateral malleolus of the right leg that failed to heal and developed into a stage 4 nonhealing wound. Circulation at the lower leg was markedly impaired. After several months of multiple failed therapies to improve circulation and promote wound healing, the right leg was amputated below the knee. G.R. is 5 ft 4 inches tall and weighs 204 lb (92.5 kg). Prior to the problems with her leg, she was living independently and caring for her husband, who is significantly disabled. Two months after her surgery, the transtibial amputation wound site was fully healed. Her physician is recommending that she begin bearing weight on the limb as tolerated. She has been using a wheelchair for mobility in the house, but she is able to stand on her left leg with the support of a standard walker. She is concerned that she will not be able to do her chores around the house and go shopping even after she receives her prosthesis.

Continued on following page

Case Example 23.2 An Amputation Related to Vascular Disease (Continued)

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What are G.R.'s goals for the prosthesis? Will she be a functional ambulator? Will the prosthesis be used only for standing and transfers?
- Will she require assistance with activities of daily living and care for her husband?
- What are the main design goals for her prosthesis? What system will allow her to don the prosthesis independently? Which type of prosthesis will require the least maintenance and have most reliable function?

RECOMMENDATIONS

Evaluating G.R.'s candidacy for a prosthesis will involve assessing her risk-to-benefit ratio as a bipedal ambulator against the negative health effects of prolonged sitting. Her motivation to ambulate is clear in her expressed desire to continue to care for her husband. Her ability to stand on one leg is a fortuitous sign, even if her balance is impaired at this point. Her knee ROM is within normal limits. If her skin integrity is good and her right knee extensors are four of five, she will likely be a good candidate for a prosthesis.

Her prosthesis should be easy to put on, as she will not have assistance available. Her limb has ample soft tissue based on her weight and etiology, although her diabetes puts her at risk for fragile skin and delayed healing. The most appropriate interface for her will be one that most effectively reduces shear. A silicone elastomer cushion liner in a TSB socket will work well for her. A sealing sleeve and expulsion valve will utilize suction as a means of suspension, thus minimizing pistoning. This prosthesis should allow her to wear a cotton sock that is easily laundered as she loses limb volume. The trim lines should be set higher proximally to gain as much control as possible for her prosthesis.

FITTING AND ALIGNMENT OF THE PROSTHESIS: VISIT 1

G.R. is seen for delivery of her preparatory prosthesis. She is instructed on donning the device and is able to roll on the gel liner and place her limb into the socket with moderate effort. Her limb is seated correctly all the way in the socket. After she rolls the sealing sleeve into position, she stands at her walker and slowly begins to load the prosthesis. She is comfortable in the socket and a small amount of air is heard as it is expelled from the socket through the valve. The sleeve is rolled down so that a corset stay can be inserted between the gel liner and the socket. As no areas of excessive pressure are found, the corset stay is removed and the sleeve is rolled back up. Her first steps are tentative and she is bearing the majority of her weight through her arms during stance on the prosthetic side. After some guidance from her therapist, she begins to bear more weight through the prosthesis. Her strides are asymmetric, with a very large step on the prosthetic side and a truncated step on the sound side.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Why is G.R.'s step length shorter on the sound side? Is the prosthesis aligned properly? Is her range of hip flexion and extension within functional limits? Is she stable in stance?
- What are her goals for ambulation? Does she have sufficient stance stability? Does she have adequate clearance in swing? Is her gait pattern energy-efficient?

RECOMMENDATIONS

The gait pattern G.R. uses is typical of the individual with recent amputation who is uncertain about weight bearing through a mechanical device. The feeling of instability on the prosthesis causes G.R. to limit stance time on that side, thereby shortening swing phase on the sound side. Alternately, the individual may be accustomed to bearing weight unilaterally on the sound side so that the stance time is increased, allowing the prosthesis to move ahead excessively. Weakness of the quadriceps and gluteus minimus and medius will also impair stance stability. G. R. should be encouraged to take smaller steps with the prosthesis and larger steps with her sound limb. She may need further conditioning of her knee extensors and hip abductors to completely eliminate this asymmetry.

Excessive socket flexion can increase prosthetic step length, but it also tends to increase the step length on the sound side as well. Extending the socket makes it more difficult to advance over the foot during stance and will tend to shorten step length on the contralateral side.

FITTING AND ALIGNMENT OF THE PROSTHESIS: VISIT 2

G.R. returns for therapy and complains about discomfort in her socket. Inspection of her skin reveals excessive pressure, as evidenced by erythema, on her femoral condyles and fibular head. She has been doing a good job managing her sock plies and is now seated correctly in the socket wearing eight plies. She explains that the tightness she feels does not get worse during weight bearing.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What changes may have taken place since her last visit? As her activity level increases, what is the effect on limb volume? Which areas of the limb are most susceptible to volume loss?
- What is the source of the erythema? Is there swelling of the knee? Does the redness appear anywhere else on the limb? Does it appear to be an allergic reaction, such as contact dermatitis? Is her liner clean and in good condition?

RECOMMENDATIONS

After discussing good hygiene and prosthesis care with G.R., it is clear that she is washing her gel liner daily with a mild soap and then rinsing it thoroughly; she is also washing her limb every day and patting it dry. She is not using any lotions that could create buildup in the liner or cause an allergic reaction within the warm, moist environment of the liner. The fit of the socket is assessed next by probing between the liner and socket with a thin metal corset stay. This is done in the non-weight-bearing state, as that is when she feels the pressure. The corset stay encounters great resistance when it passes over the fibular head and is completely stuck when trying to pass over the femoral condyles. This indicates excessive pressure over those bony structures. Although G.R. is wearing the appropriate number of socks, they are creating extra bulk, which makes the socket too tight in those areas. A referral should be made to her prosthetist so that the socket can be modified. It is likely that pads can be added in strategic areas that are more prone to volume loss, such as the area over the calf muscle and on either side of the tibia. This will take up volume in the socket and require G.R. to reduce the number of sock plies she is wearing. Following that adjustment, she is feeling more comfortable in the socket and her skin is free of irritation.

which is used during the fitting process and then discarded and often destroyed during the fabrication process. The diagnostic socket or "check socket" is made of a transparent thermoplastic so that the prosthetist can inspect the limb during loading and see the blanching of the skin as the person goes through various activities of weight bearing. The plastic is also very amenable to changes in shape and volume simply by heating a given area and reforming the plastic. Extended fittings, during which the individual takes the diagnostic socket home for a day or more, must be conducted carefully, as some of the materials used for diagnostic sockets are brittle and can fracture under normal loading conditions. Extended fittings can be quite useful, however, the prosthesis will be used under more realistic conditions and some problems will become apparent only after the wearer has spent several hours wearing the prosthesis.

Finishing Techniques

After the prosthetist and the wearer are both satisfied with the fit and alignment, the final prosthesis can be fabricated. The exact finishing technique varies based on the components selected, but the main goal is to preserve the alignment and create a lightweight prosthesis with a cosmetically satisfactory appearance. The foot is removed and the remainder of the prosthesis is secured in a vertical alignment jig (Fig. 23.29). The socket is filled with plaster and a pipe, held in place by the alignment jig, and set into the wet plaster. After the plaster hardens, the alignment has been captured and the prosthesis can be removed from the jig. The jig preserves the alignment until the final prosthesis is reassembled. The prosthetist will determine the best method of fabrication to create the lightest-weight prosthesis without sacrificing structural integrity. Extra alignment devices are removed during this process. The final limb is assembled with either endoskeletal or exoskeletal components based on the user's individual needs.

Fig. 23.29 A prosthetist uses this device to preserve the relative positions of the foot and socket during fabrication. This allows the exact alignment of the diagnostic prosthesis to be transferred to the definitive prosthesis. (Image provided by Fillauer.)

ENDOSKELETAL CONSIDERATIONS

As the term *endoskeletal* implies, the structure of this type of prosthesis is located deep inside the device. The exterior of the prosthesis may consist of passive foam rubber or latex that gives the prosthesis a more anatomic appearance and protects the structural and functional parts hidden underneath (Fig. 23.30). This type of prosthesis has two distinct advantages: adjustability and a realistic appearance. Endoskeletal design allows for the use of modular components that can be adjusted or replaced quickly and easily as needed. If a single component were to fail, repair would involve simple removal and replacement of that component, just as a tire on a car can be changed. These modular components can easily be obtained from the prosthetist, as they are not custom-made. The appearance of the endoskeletal limb can be quite realistic. Virtually any size and shape can be created by shaping soft, lightweight foam over the components. The foam can be coated with a variety of finishes that provide color and texture and may include life-like details such as moles, freckles, pores, and even hair.

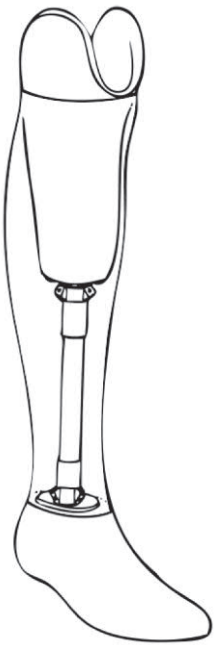


Fig. 23.30 A diagram of an endoskeletal prosthesis in which the socket and pylon are concealed within a cosmetic cover. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

Premium restorations are nearly indistinguishable from a sound limb.

EXOSKELETAL CONSIDERATIONS

When a more durable and easily cleanable prosthesis is desired, an exoskeletal prosthesis can be fabricated. The socket of an exoskeletal prosthesis is attached to the foot through an external composite lamination custom-shaped for the individual (Fig. 23.31). To create this shape, a prosthetic ankle block is first bonded to the socket with rigid foam in the vertical alignment jig. The foam is rigid enough to maintain the alignment between the socket and foot that was preserved in the jig. The foam and ankle block are then shaped by hand to match the contralateral side, only a little bit smaller to accommodate the thickness of the final lamination. The final step is to seal the foam and laminate the exterior. This final composite covering provides the structure of the prosthesis as well as the anatomic shape. Exoskeletal prostheses are often heavier than their endoskeletal counterparts and are always less adjustable. The advantage of the exoskeletal system is durability. The hard surface covering the prosthesis is nonporous, chemically inert, and waterproof, making it easy to clean and less susceptible to damage.

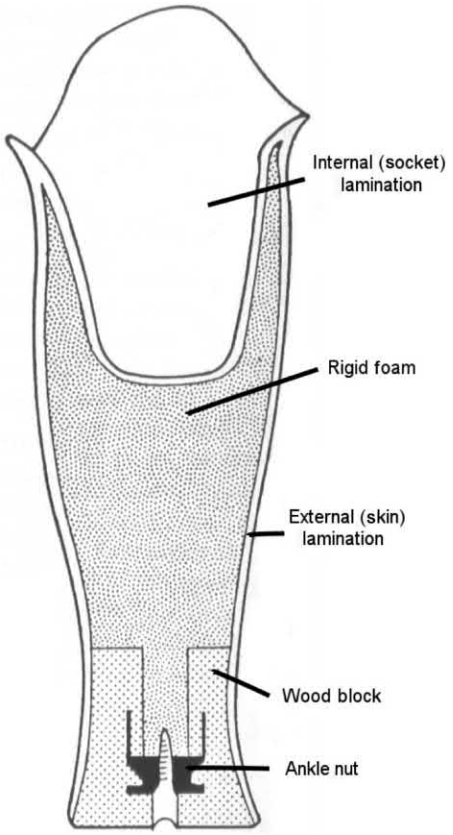


Fig. 23.31 A cross-sectional diagram of an exoskeletal prosthesis that transmits weight-bearing forces through the external lamination. The lamination gets its shape from the rigid foam interior. (From Knee Prosthetics, Prosthetics-Orthotics Program, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, TX, 1998).

Deviations in Gait

Gait deviations can be caused by improper socket fit, by misalignment of the prosthesis, or by weakness or other musculoskeletal pathologic conditions of the individual. They can be quite common in persons with transtibial amputations; one study has shown deviations in nearly 20% of the 60 kinetic, kinematic, and temporospatial parameters of gait.[44] Such deviations are known to increase metabolic cost due to excessive displacement of the center of mass.[45]

Careful evaluation is essential to determine the cause of deviations and what can be done to correct them (Chapter 5 presents a review of the biomechanics of normal gait). Variations in limb volume or shoe type can introduce deviations in a wearer's gait that had not been noted before. It can be very productive to ask wearers whether they have recently made any changes in their routines. Changes in diet, medications, shrinker wear, or activity level can all affect limb volume. If a shoe with a higher or lower heel is placed on the prosthesis, it will change the socket's orientation to the ground. Unless there is a component that will accommodate the new heel height, the wearer's gait will be affected adversely. Common gait deviations are reviewed in the following paragraphs as they occur in the gait cycle in each individual plane.

INITIAL CONTACT

Sagittal

Initial contact should be made with the heel (Fig. 23.32). If the user makes contact at the midfoot/forefoot first, there may be either excessive plantarflexion of the prosthetic foot or limitation of the person's knee extension ROM (i.e., knee flexion contracture). Both of these circumstances contribute to a high knee extension moment during loading response that causes the knee to move posteriorly. This motion negatively impacts efficiency and can damage the knee joint over time. Every effort should be made to create a heel strike at initial contact. Interventions include therapeutic

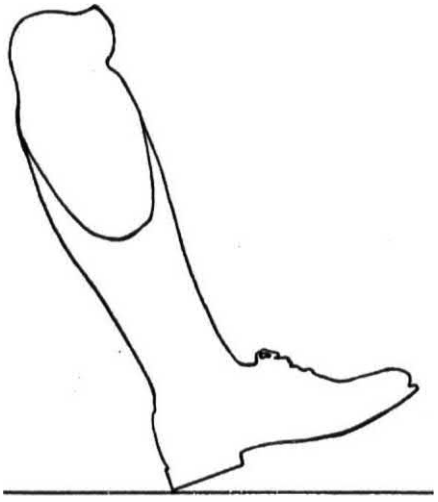


Fig. 23.32 Ideally, initial contact of the prosthesis with the ground should be at the heel, followed by a controlled flexion of the knee and foot flat. (Diagram courtesy David A. Knapp, CPO, Hanger Prosthetics & Orthotics, North Haven, CT.)

exercises to increase knee ROM and knee extensor strength, prosthetic alignment changes to accommodate knee flexion contractures, and proper height and suspension of the prosthesis. If the prosthesis is too long or does not suspend well, the prosthesis may hit the ground early, shortening swing phase.

Frontal

Excessive inversion or eversion of the foot at initial contact indicates misalignment of the prosthesis. The heel of the prosthetic foot should be level when it meets the ground. The lateral border of the heel should contact the surface first; this is related to the transverse plane alignment of the foot to accommodate a normal toe-out angle of 5 to 10 degrees. This lateral heel contact sets up the standard progression of the ground reaction force up the lateral border of the foot and then crossing to the medial aspect of the forefoot during stance phase.

Transverse

The rotation of the prosthesis is fairly consistent throughout stance phase. The medial border of the foot should be parallel to the line of progression. Transverse plane rotation at initial contact is an indicator that the limb is fitting too loosely in the socket or that the foot is not directly under the limb. External rotation of the prosthesis may be seen with an inset foot, whereas internal rotation could be a result of an outset foot (Fig. 23.33).

Loading Response

Sagittal. Excessive knee flexion moment during loading response is caused by a foot that is set too far posteriorly, is too dorsiflexed, or has a heel that is too rigid. The transition during loading response should be smooth and controlled. The knee should bend to approximately 20 degrees of flexion as the forefoot meets the ground. This advances the limb and aids in shock absorption. Insufficient knee flexion moment can be caused by a heel that is too soft or a foot that is positioned too far anteriorly. This can cause the knee to hyperextend, leading to pain and inefficiency. Adjustment of the heel lever length, stiffness, and orientation should be made to provide the appropriate degree of knee flexion. When accommodation for the heel stiffness is made, the soling material of the shoe should also be taken into account, because an excessively stiff or soft heel material can exaggerate this tendency.

Frontal

Rapid loading of the foot during this phase would produce significant moments at the knee if the foot is not parallel to the ground at initial contact. The plantar surface of the foot should be level during this phase as viewed in the frontal plane. Some modern prosthetic feet have rearfoot inversion and eversion capabilities and can adapt to the surface on weight bearing, making them useful for uneven surfaces. The prosthetist must make sure to observe the motion as the loading occurs. When there is motion while ambulating on a flat surface, the alignment of the foot should be changed to eliminate that motion.

Transverse

Any rotation of the foot during loading may indicate an excessively loose socket or faulty torsion adapter. Rotary moments can be generated by excessive toe-in or toe-out, and the torsion adapters allow that motion to occur uncontrolled.

MIDSTANCE

Sagittal

A choppy or segmented midstance is caused by differences in the dynamic characteristics between the prosthetic heel and the prosthetic toe, indicating a lack of stability. The heel and toe lever arms are adjustable by shifting the socket anteriorly to shorten the toe or posteriorly to shorten the heel. The optimal foot position is one where the forward velocity of the knee is consistent between loading response and midstance. The prosthetic foot must accommodate smooth transition of the ground reaction force from the heel to the forefoot during midstance. Over this period, the moment at the knee changes from a flexion moment to an extension moment. A steady increase in dorsiflexion should be observed as the knee moves over the foot.

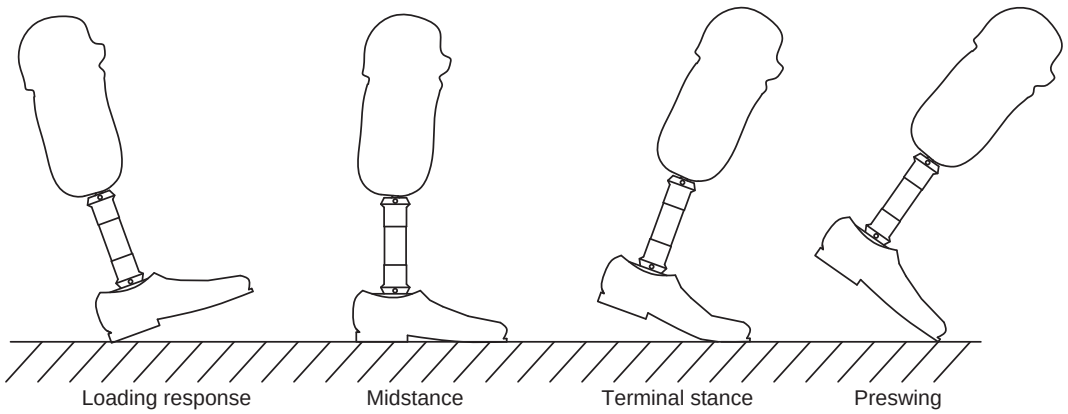


Fig. 23.33 The progression of the transtibial prosthesis during stance phase. Initial contact is made at the heel, and compression of the prosthetic heel simulates controlled lowering of the foot during loading response. At midstance, weight-bearing forces move anteriorly to the ball of the foot. In terminal stance, the anterior portion of the prosthetic foot simulates toe extension and the heel rises. In preswing, the individual rolls over the toe and moves into knee flexion for effective shortening of the limb for swing limb clearance. (Diagram courtesy David A. Knapp, CPO, Hanger Prosthetics & Orthotics, North Haven, CT.)

Frontal

There is a normal and desirable varus moment during midstance. In order to maximize energy efficiency during gait, the body's center of mass does not shift all the way over the stance foot. The knee should move laterally approximately 1 cm during midstance. Shift of the knee greater than 2 cm indicates an excessive varus moment and will lead to stress on the medial compartment and lateral ligaments of the wearer's knee. This stress can be reduced by adducting the socket or shifting it medially. If the socket does not move or shifts medially during midstance, the socket is too far inset (or the foot is too far outset), or the socket is excessively adducted. Lateral gapping is a condition in which a large gap occurs during loading between the limb and the lateral wing of the socket. If a gap larger than 2 cm is observed, the socket may be too loose and an additional ply of sock should be added.

Transverse

Rotation that occurs during midstance is typically seen between the limb and socket and is almost always attributable to poor socket fit. If motion occurs, the wearer may complain of patellar impingement on either the medial or lateral aspects of the patella. Often, the remedy is to tighten the socket by adding a ply or two of socks. In cases where socks are insufficient to stabilize the rotation, the socket should be adjusted by the prosthetist. Pretibial pads that provide pressure on either side of the tibial crest are an effective solution to stop rotation.

TERMINAL STANCE

Sagittal

Drop off is the excessive descent of the center of mass during terminal stance caused by a toe lever that is either too short or too soft. It is often characterized by diminished heel rise. This compromises the energy efficiency of walking. It occurs at a point when the body's center of mass is already near the bottom of its sinusoidal path. The toe lever of the prosthetic foot must have sufficient stiffness to resist dorsiflexion when the wearer's entire weight is placed on the ball of the foot. In terms of energy efficiency, this is a critical phase of gait. Proper loading of the forefoot promotes knee stability, maintains altitude (i.e., level pelvis), and stores energy in the ligaments that can be released during swing phase to assist with limb advancement (Fig. 23.34).

Early heel-off is an indication that the foot is too plantarflexed or the toe lever is too stiff. The heel should come off the ground at the point when the swing foot has already passed anterior to the stance limb. Forward momentum of the body is impeded by early toe-off and may force the individual into an anterior lean with the trunk to maintain forward progression. The ankle should be set to dorsiflex until the swing limb reaches terminal swing so that the heel remains on the ground until the center of mass has progressed sufficiently forward. This will preserve step length and enhance stability.

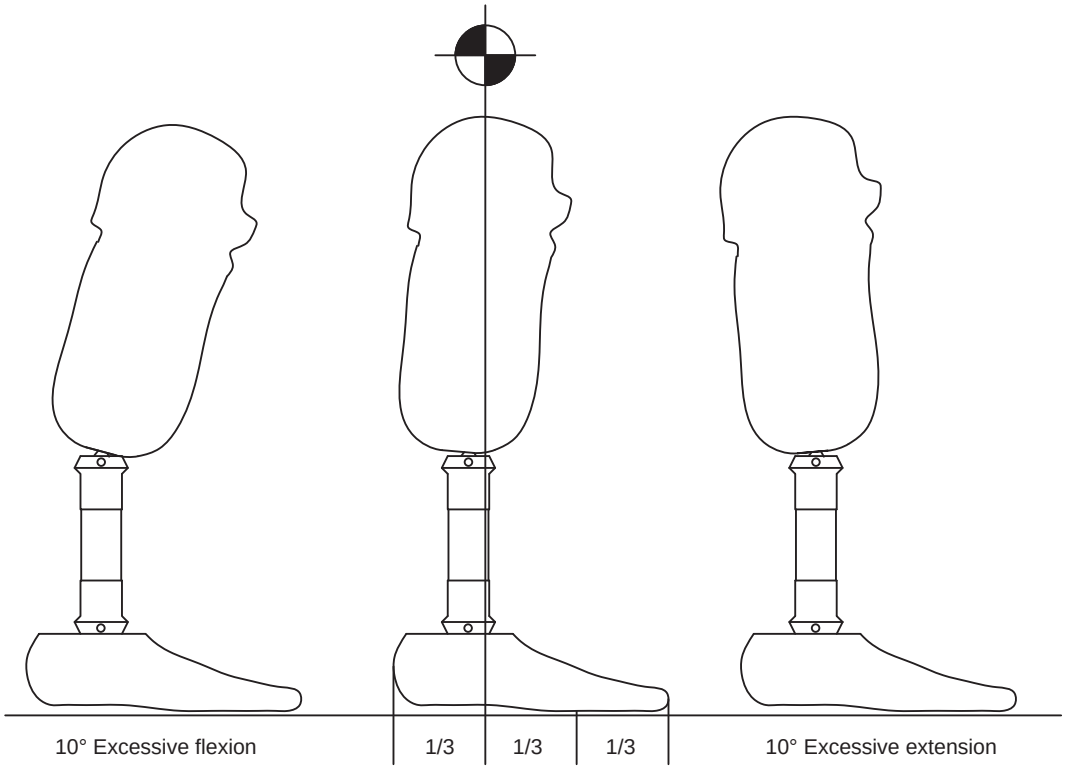


Fig. 23.34 The socket angle will affect the magnitude and timing of the ground reaction force through the knee during stance phase. Optimal alignment *(center)* varies with specific foot design but will be approximated by the centerline of the socket falling through the posterior one third and anterior two thirds of the foot. (Diagram courtesy David A. Knapp, CPO, Hanger Prosthetics & Orthotics, North Haven, CT.)

Frontal

The heel should rise off the ground with the knee breaking over the point on the foot between the first and second toes. Any large variance from this position will create instability and consequently shorten step length. The knee should travel in a straight line as it flexes; any lateral motion during this phase will lead to a whip in swing.

Transverse

The toe load is highest during this phase of gait; therefore there is potential for rotation of the prosthesis due to suboptimal alignment. External rotation can be caused by a foot that is too far outset or having excessive toe-out. Internal rotation is caused by an excessively inset or internally rotated foot.

PRESWING

Sagittal

As the body weight transfers rapidly to the contralateral limb, the prosthesis should roll forward over the toe and lift off the ground. Toe-drag may result from a foot that is excessively plantarflexed or from a faulty suspension system.

Frontal

The knee should not move medially or laterally during preswing. An externally rotated foot can cause a valgus moment that pushes the knee medially as weight is transferred off the prosthesis. A valgus moment can also be caused by an outset foot or an excessively adducted socket. Lateral motion during preswing can be caused by an internally rotated foot, an excessively inset foot, or an excessively abducted socket.

Transverse

Many of the same factors that lead to instability in the frontal plane can lead to instability in the transverse plane. Appropriate attention to transverse plane alignment throughout stance phase should help to avoid issues in preswing as well.

SWING PHASE

Sagittal

The transtibial prosthesis swings passively forward during swing phase. If sufficient ground clearance is not obtained, the amount of knee flexion should be noted. In cases where appropriate knee flexion is observed, the suspension of the prosthesis should be evaluated. A faulty suspension or a plantarflexed foot will reduce swing clearance. The amount of pistoning varies with the type of suspension used. Motion exceeding 1 cm should be considered excessive. If knee flexion is observed during swing phase, active and passive motion should be assessed. Weakness or contracture of the knee can limit knee motion, as can a tight suspension sleeve or an aggressive supracondylar wedge. Although suspension and knee flexion are often adversarial, a balance should be attainable that permits enough foot clearance for safe ambulation; otherwise the prosthesis may require shortening.

Frontal

Socket instability during swing is typically caused by either a faulty suspension or a loose-fitting socket. The weight of the socket pulls the prosthesis into varus during swing if the limb is not well seated in the socket. Adding more sock plies and implementing an improved suspension should remedy any swing-phase instability.

Transverse

Rotation during swing phase is often caused by a prosthetic "whip." A medial whip occurs when the heel of the prosthetic foot moves medially in initial swing and then laterally during midswing. A lateral whip follows the opposite pattern. Whips can be caused by misalignment of the knee axis at the onset of swing or by irregular loading of the limb in terminal stance. Alignment of the knee axis in a person using a transtibial prosthesis is determined by the function of the hip and should be addressed by strengthening and ROM exercises. Remedies involve examining the loading of the prosthesis. Medial whips can be caused by a foot that is too far inset or externally rotated. Both medial and lateral whips can be caused by a foot that is too plantarflexed or a toe lever that is too stiff.

Troubleshooting

A common problem encountered by individuals with recent transtibial amputation is the application of too few or too many sock plies. Sock-ply management is a skill that develops as the individual wears the prosthesis more and is conscientious about examining the limb after doffing the prosthesis. The number of socks will eventually become consistent, but variability is common early in the process of limb maturation. The correct number of socks may vary from day to day or even from hour to hour. There are a few basic cues that those new to the use of a prosthesis must consider to ensure that the limb is in the correct position within the socket.

The first cue arises during donning—the limb should slide into the socket with some resistance. This is a subjective determination, and the wearer should be trained to recognize the amount of force needed to fully don the prosthesis with the correct number of socks. Too few socks allows the limb to "bottom out" in the socket, where most of the weight bearing occurs on the distal end, leading to pain, instability, and increased pistoning. Conversely, too many socks prevent the limb from fully entering the socket; leading to loss of control and pressure on bony prominences. Too many plies of socks can also lead to hammocking, which is stress on the distal end soft tissues as they are pulled tight over the distal tibia during weight bearing. For the person who has recently started using a prosthesis, this sensation may feel very much like the bottoming out sensation they feel with too few sock plies. It is important to educate the wearer on differentiating between the two conditions.

The second cue indicating the limb is not in the correct position within the socket is increased pistoning, anteroposterior, or mediolateral motion within the socket while walking. This can be caused by an insufficient number of socks.

The final cue to incorrect position are signs of erythema found while doffing the prosthesis. Erythema on the distal

aspect of the fibular head or patella indicates that the limb is too far in the socket and that more socks are needed. If too many socks are being used, the erythema will appear on the tibial tubercle or the proximal aspect of the fibular head because the limb is not far enough into the socket. In this case, there may also be signs of verrucous hyperplasia on the distal end of the limb due to the lack of distal contact.

Another common problem that arises is caused by inappropriate shoe wear. Although some prosthetic feet accommodate for the heel height of the shoe, most do not. Wearing a heel that is too high positions the limb, such that there is a relative excessive flexion of the socket and actual excess flexion of the knee joint during stance. A heel that is too low or is used without a shoe tends to hyperextend the knee. Proper footwear is important for safe ambulation. The prosthesis can be checked by evaluating the top surface of the foot shell while the prosthesis is stands on a level surface. If the top of the foot shell tilts posteriorly, the heel is too low (Fig. 23.35). Similar sagittal-plane gait problems can occur by changing between footwear of similar heel height but differing stiffness on soling material. A stiff-soled (leather-soled) shoe will have similar effects to an increased heel height and a softer sole will be similar to bare foot. These changes will be most noticeable in the initial contact and loading response phases of gait.

In a well-fitting socket, the skin should appear uniform in color after the prosthesis has been worn. Areas of erythema that fade after 20 minutes are not likely to be problematic. The skin should be soft and supple, especially on the distal end. Firm tissue associated with edema is a sign of poor contact, and an effort should be made to create some contact in the area of the firm tissue. The wearer may not tolerate much pressure, but only a small amount of pressure is needed to push the extra fluid back into circulation. If erythema is observed over bony prominences and the person's residual limb is properly seated in the socket, pressure in those areas must be relieved. Prosthetists can adjust the fit of thermoplastic sockets by heating and reshaping the areas needing adjustment. Thermoset sockets, like composites, can be adjusted only by cutting out fenestrations or adding padding to the area around the prominent bone to shift it away from the socket wall. It is important to note that the addition of padding requires the removal of some sock plies to maintain the same volume within the socket.

If skin irritation is present, especially over a bony prominence, placing a small mark on the affected areas with lipstick before donning the prosthesis will allow the lipstick to transfer to the socket during ambulation. Once the wearer removes the prosthesis, the lipstick will mark the areas of excessive contact. Alternatively, a thin flexible steel probe (a corset stay works exceptionally well) can be inserted between the socket and the interface to act as a feeler gauge to find areas of high pressure. The wearer should be putting some weight through the socket during this evaluation. To assess distal contact in a finished socket, a ball of soft clay about the size of a pea can be placed into the bottom of the socket prior to donning. After the person dons the prosthesis and walks a few steps, the prosthesis should be removed and the clay examined. The clay should appear compressed. A postcompression clay thickness of 3 to 5 mm is considered ideal. Total contact in the socket can be assessed by lightly powdering the interior surface of the socket with a fine powder like cornstarch and having the individual carefully don the prosthesis and walk a few steps. Any powder that remains on the socket's surface after walking indicates that those areas are not in contact with the residual limb.

The amount of pistoning that is present in a socket depends on the socket design and the type of suspension

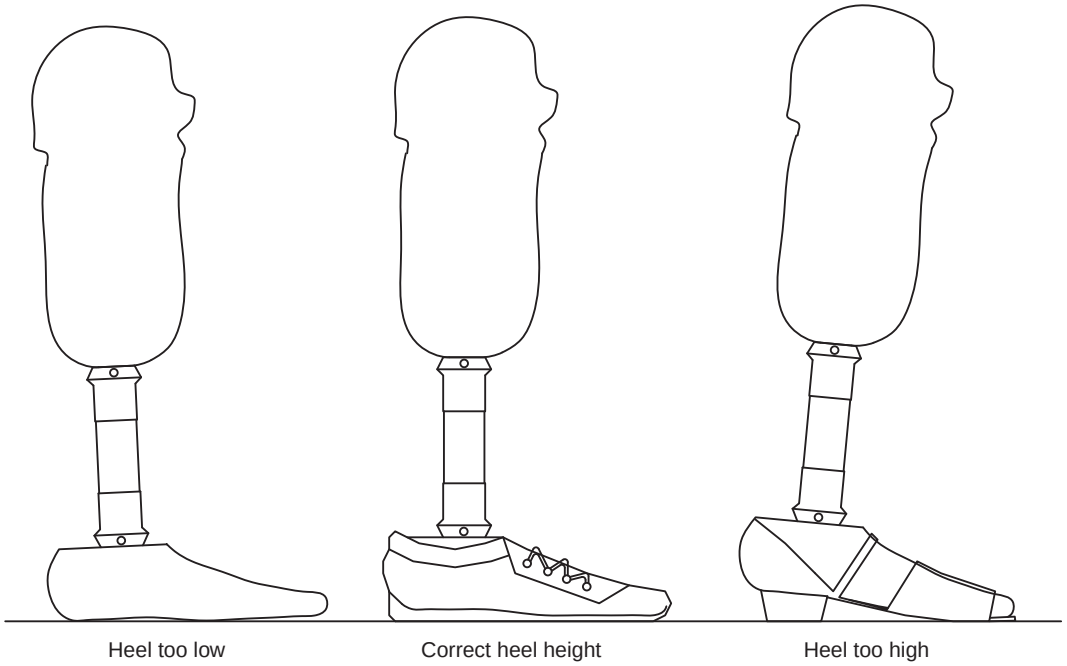


Fig. 23.35 Heel height of the shoes affects the sagittal plane moments throughout stance. A heel that is too low for the prosthetic foot creates excessive extensor moment at the knee in midstance, hampering forward progression. A heel that is too high for the prosthetic foot creates a flexion moment at the knee at midstance, leading to early "drop off" and compromise of stance phase stability. (Diagram courtesy David A. Knapp, CPO, Hanger Prosthetics & Orthotics, North Haven, CT.)

used. If the wearer complains of discomfort while ambulating but is comfortable while standing, pistoning is the likely cause of pain. Pistoning can be assessed by asking the wearer to bear full weight on the socket and then lift the prosthesis off the ground while the examiner palpates the patella. Motion of more than 1 cm should be considered excessive. Faulty suspension and/or loose socket fit are generally responsible for pistoning. Wearing the correct number of sock plies and ensuring that the suspension is functioning well should minimize motion within the socket to pain-free levels.

There are several patterns of erythema that indicate poor alignment of the prosthesis. Excessive varus moment on the limb is suspected when signs of pressure are observed on both the distolateral and the proximomedial aspects of the limb. This pattern can be caused by excessive foot inset or too much socket adduction. When the erythema is observed on the distomedial and proximolateral aspects of the limb, an excessive valgus moment is likely. The foot may be too far outset or the socket may be excessively abducted. Anterior distal pressure accompanied by pressure in the posterior proximal aspect of the socket may be a result of an excessively long heel lever arm, excessive dorsiflexion, excessive socket flexion, or a heel that is too firm. This pattern can also be observed when an individual wears a shoe that has a higher heel than the prosthesis can accommodate. Conversely, if the person goes barefoot, the opposite pattern of pressure will be observed—erythema on the posterior distal end and the anteroproximal end. The same pattern can be caused by a toe lever arm that is too long, an overly plantarflexed foot, or an excessively extended socket.

Specialty Prostheses

There are novel prosthetic designs that are intended for use in specialized activities such as water sports, running, and bicycling. The biomechanical goals of these prosthetic devices are different from those designed for everyday ambulation. The designs must take into account the unique loading and various environmental exposures. Running feet, for example, lack a heel spring because sprinting takes place on the toes only; a heel would interfere with limb motion and add unnecessary weight. As knee flexion during a sprint may reach beyond 110 degrees, the posterior proximal trim line must be lower. There is significantly more impact force at initial contact; therefore more care should be taken to make sure the person and prosthesis are capable of absorbing the impact slowly in a manner that will prevent damage to the skin and limb. Running also subjects the prosthesis to greater tension in swing phase, so the suspension system will be under increased strain. Runners often use an auxiliary suspension in case their primary suspension fails at high speed.

A prosthesis designed for swimming includes more than just the ability to get wet. Attention must be given to the buoyancy of the device. Neutral buoyancy is preferred because a prosthesis that floats may inhibit the individual's ability to keep his or her head above the water surface, and a prosthesis that sinks could drag the person down with it. Any water that gets inside the prosthesis should have a quick path to get back out once the person finishes swimming. A swimming prosthesis can also be fitted with an adjustable ankle that allows the swimmer to lock the ankle in approximately 70 degrees of plantarflexion, which accommodates the use of a swim fin. Waterproof components and materials that do not absorb water are the best choices when one is designing a swimming prosthesis so that the individual can also use the device on the way to and from the swimming area. Any time the prosthesis is used in salt water, it should be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water after swimming, even if it was designed for the marine environment.

There are specialized feet for downhill skiing that clip directly into the ski binding, rock-climbing feet that require no shoes, cycling feet that clip directly into the pedals, and many other specialized feet for sports and recreational activities. To save money and time and to avoid having to carry several complete prostheses, active wearers can use a quick disconnect adapter to keep one socket and rapidly switch between different specialty feet. The adapter ensuring the alignment of the prosthesis is optimal for each activity for which the specific foot is intended. It also provides a secure and safe connection so that the individual can feel confident that the prosthesis will not fail. This component does add weight to the system and requires additional clearance under the socket. Most insurance companies will pay for these types of prostheses when the medical necessity is well documented.

Summary

Individuals with transtibial amputations have the opportunity to participate in a rehabilitation process that seeks to maximize function and minimize impairments so that they can participate as fully as possible in activities of daily living and instrumental activities of daily living. An interdisciplinary team is available to support medical, nursing, social/psychosocial, rehabilitation, and prosthetic needs of the individual. The team helps develop a plan of care that addresses the goals of the person, family, and caregivers. Current technology, along with advances in prosthetics for persons with transtibial amputations, offer a wide array of options to the user. These options range from prosthesis use for cosmetic purposes and for home-bound ambulation to community ambulation with variable cadence to intensive athletic involvement. The clinicians dedicated to enhancing the quality of life of persons with transtibial amputation must evaluate many variables when engaging in a postamputation rehabilitation program including the following: (a) the amputee's overall health, functional status, and mobility skills; (b) the amputee's motivational level; (c) the componentry and technology of the prosthesis to make sure that the most appropriate and best-fitting prosthesis is produced; and (d) materials and equipment tailored to the individual to optimize the outcome of the rehabilitation process. The Medicare K-level standards speak to the "potential" to achieve a level of ambulation and community engagement. Persons with transtibial amputation should be scheduled for follow-up care to ensure that the prosthetic prescription provided at one point in time meets the needs of the individual later on as changes associated with skill progression and advancement occur. Therapists, prosthetists, and other health care providers should advocate on behalf of persons with amputation for changes in prostheses as the need arises.

References

1. Gailey R, Nash M, Atchley T, et al. The effects of prosthesis mass on metabolic cost of ambulation in non-vascular trans-tibial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1997;21(1):9–16.
2. Green VG. Transtibial amputation: Prosthetic use and functional outcome. *Foot Ankle Clin.* 2001;6(2):315–327.
3. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. HCFA Common Procedure Coding System (HCPCS). Springfield (VA): U.S. Department of Commerce. *National Technical Information Service.* 2001;2001 [Chapter 5.3].
4. Gailey Robert S, et al. The amputee mobility predictor: an instrument to assess determinants of the lower-limb amputee's ability to ambulate. *Archives of physical medicine and rehabilitation.* 2002;83(5):613–627.
5. Esquenazi A, DiGiacomo R. Rehabilitation after amputation. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc.* 2001;91(1):13–22.
6. Mueller MJ. Comparison of removable rigid dressings and elastic bandages in preprosthetic management of patients with below-knee amputations. *Phys Ther.* 1982;62(10):1438–1441.
7. Churilov Irina, Churilov Leonid, Murphy David. Do rigid dressings reduce the time from amputation to prosthetic fitting? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Annals of vascular surgery.* 2014;28(7):1801–1808.
8. Wu Y, Keagy RD, Krick HJ, et al. An innovative removable rigid dressing technique for below-the-knee amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1979;61(5):724–729.
9. Ladenheim E, Oberti-Smith K, Tablada G. Results of managing transtibial amputations with a prefabricated polyethylene rigid removable dressing. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2007;19(1):2–4.
10. Chang Ji Hea, et al. Intractable Verrucous Hyperplasia: A Surgically Corrected Case. *PM&R.* 2015;7(3):322–325.
11. Witteck F. Some experience with patellar-tendon bearing below-knee prostheses. *Artif Limbs.* 1962;6:74–85.
12. Radcliffe CA. *The Patellar-Tendon-Bearing Below-Knee Prosthesis.* Berkeley: University of California Biomechanics Laboratory; 1961.
13. Staats T, Lundt J. The UCLA total surface bearing suction below-knee prosthesis. *Clin Prosthet Othot.* 1987;118–130.
14. Perry J. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function. 2 Thorofare.* SLACK: NJ; 2010.
15. Pinzur MS, Beck J, Himes R, et al. Distal tibiofibular bone-bridging in transtibial amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2008;90:2682–2687.
16. Granata JD, Philbin TM. Distal tibiofibular bone bridging in transtibial amputation. *Curr Orthop Pract.* 2010;21:264–267.
17. Sanders JE, Greve JM, Mitchell SB, et al. Material properties of commonly-used interface materials and their static coefficients of friction with skin and socks. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 1998;35:161–176.
18. Sanders Joan E, et al. Amputee socks: how does sock ply relate to sock thickness? *Prosthetics and orthotics international.* 2012;36(1):77–86.
19. Sanders J, Nicholson B, Zachariah S, et al. Testing of elastomeric liners used in limb prosthetics: classification of 15 products by mechanical performance. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2004;41:175–186.
20. Hansen Colby, et al. Incidence, severity, and impact of hyperhidrosis in people with lowerlimb amputation. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research & Development.* 2015;52(1).
21. Fillauer C, Pritham C, Fillauer K. Evolution and development of the silicone suction socket (3S) for below-knee prostheses. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 1989;1:92–103.
22. Kristinsson Ö. The ICEROSS concept: a discussion of a philosophy. *The Journal of the International Society for Prosthetics and Orthoics J Prosthet Orthot.* 1993;17(1):49–55.
23. Ferraro C. Outcomes study of transtibial amputees using elevated vacuum suspension in comparison with pin suspension. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2011;23:78–81.
24. Beil T, Street G. Comparison of interface pressures with pin and suction suspension systems. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2004;41(6A):821–828.
25. Roberts RA. Suction socket suspension for below-knee amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1986;67(3):196–199.
26. Grevsten S. Ideas on the suspension of the below-knee prosthesis. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1978;2(1):3–7.
27. Board W, Street G, Caspers C. A comparison of trans-tibial amputee suction and vacuum socket conditions. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2001;25:202–209.
28. Rink Cameron, et al. Elevated vacuum suspension preserves residual-limb skin health in people with lower-limb amputation: Randomized clinical trial. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research & Development.* 2016;53(6).
29. Biel TL, Street G, Covey S. Interface pressures during ambulation using suction and vacuum-assisted prosthetic sockets. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2002;39(6):693–700.
30. Darter Benjamin J, Sinitski Kirill, Wilken Jason M. Axial bone–socket displacement for persons with a traumatic transtibial amputation: The effect of elevated vacuum suspension at progressive bodyweight loads. *Prosthetics and orthotics international.* 2016;40(5):552–557.
31. Goh J, Lee P, Chong S. Comparative study between patellar-tendon-bearing and pressure cast. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2004;41(3B):491–502.
32. Vee Sin Lee Peter, et al. 10Pressure casting technique for transtibial prosthetic socket fit in developing countries. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research & Development.* 2014;51(1).
33. Polhemus. Cobra_Scorpion_brochure.pdf. Available at: http://www.polhemus.com/polhemus_editor/assets/New%20FastSCAN%20Cobra& Scorpion%20brochure.pdf; 2008. Accessed 12.03.11.
34. Karakoç Mehmet, et al. Sockets Manufactured by CAD/CAM Method Have Positive Effects on the Quality of Life of Patients With Transtibial Amputation. *American journal of physical medicine & rehabilitation.* 2017;96(8):578–581.
35. Smith DG, Fergason JR. Transtibial amputations. *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 1999;361:108–115.
36. Lin C, Wu YC, Edwards M. Vertical alignment axis for transtibial prostheses: a simplified alignment method. *J Formos Med Assoc.* 2000;99(1):39–44.
37. Jonkergouw Niels, et al. The effect of alignment changes on unilateral transtibial amputee's gait: a systematic review. *PloS One.* 2016;11(12). e0167466.
38. *Europa+ Pamphlet.* 2015. Available at: http://ecbiz182.inmotionhosting.com/~orthoc6/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/Europa-IFU.pdf.
39. Segal Ava D, Kracht Rose, Klute Glenn K. Does a torsion adapter improve functional mobility, pain, and fatigue in patients with transtibial amputation? *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research®.* 2014;472(10):3085–3092.
40. Gard S, Konz R. The effect of a shock-absorbing pylon on the gait of persons with unilateral transtibial amputation. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2003;40(2):109–124.
41. Lass R, et al. The effect of a flexible pylon system on functional mobility of transtibial amputees. A prospective randomized study. *European journal of physical and rehabilitation medicine.* 2013;49(6):837–847.
42. Kaluf B, Smith C. *"Advantages and Disadvantages of Microprocessor-Controlled Prosthetic Ankles" O&P News Aug.* 18–20.
43. McDonald Cody L, et al. Energy expenditure in people with transtibial amputation walking with crossover and energy storing prosthetic feet: A randomized within-subject study. *Gait & posture.* 2018;62:349–354.
44. Rábago Christopher A, Wilken Jason M. The prevalence of gait deviations in individuals with transtibial amputation. *Military medicine.* 2016;181(suppl_4):30–37.
45. Weinert-Aplin RA, et al. Medial-lateral centre of mass displacement and base of support are equally good predictors of metabolic cost in amputee walking. *Gait & posture.* 2017;51:41–46.

24 Transfemoral Prostheses☆

JOAN E. EDELSTEIN and KEVIN K. CHUI

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe the functional characteristics, advantages, and limitations of the components of transfemoral prostheses.
2. Compare the design, fit, and function of transfemoral socket designs.
3. Indicate how the alignment of the transfemoral prosthesis influences comfort, stability, and ease of walking with transfemoral prostheses.
4. Relate gait characteristics to prosthetic and anatomic factors.

Components of the Transfemoral Prosthesis

The transfemoral prosthesis consists of a foot-ankle assembly, shank, knee unit, socket, and means of suspension.[1-3]

FOOT-ANKLE ASSEMBLY

Most prosthetic feet-ankle assemblies (see Chapter 21) are suitable for a transfemoral prosthesis. The basic solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) foot is adequate for the wearer who will walk at home, but rarely in the community. For the person who is expected to be somewhat more active, the single-axis or multiple-axis foot is a good alternative because the ankle joint can move from heel contact to foot flat position quickly to maintain prosthetic knee stability during stance phase, especially if the individual has a short amputation limb or weak hip extensors. Active individuals benefit from dynamic response feet, which provide energy storing and release capability to promote rapid advancement of the shank in late stance. Most dynamic response feet are lighter than articulating feet.

Shank

The portion of the prosthesis between the foot and the knee unit is the shank. Most transfemoral prostheses have an endoskeletal shank (Fig. 24.1A). It consists of a metal tube that usually has proximal screws for slight adjustments in alignment of the prosthesis. The endoskeletal system enables the prosthetist to interchange or replace modular components rapidly. These considerations are particularly relevant as new wearers become more competent in controlling the knee unit or when the individual has greater functional needs (e.g., involvement in athletic activities). The pylon is ordinarily covered with a foam encasement and a smooth cover colored to match the wearer's skin tone.[4,5] The foam cover is carved to mirror the shape of the remaining limb. The foam shell is, in turn, covered by cosmetic stockings or a silicone "skin" tinted to match the wearer's skin color. Usually, the cover is fitted over the socket, knee unit, and pylon. Some transfemoral covers are split at the knee to minimize wear that would be caused by frequent knee flexion. A few individuals choose ornamental covers made of plastic or other materials; the covers feature fanciful designs and are placed over the shank portion of the prosthesis. Some people, particularly women, like ornamental covers, often made of plastic that has been printed by the three-dimensional process. An endoskeletal shank weighs less than the exoskeletal one. Some people, particularly athletes and those whose occupations involve materials that may stain a cover, prefer to keep the endoskeletal shank bare.

A few wearers prefer an exoskeletal (crustacean) shank, especially if their work requires lifting or moving heavy objects, such as furniture. The weight-bearing strength and cosmetic shape of an exoskeletal prosthesis are provided by a laminated shell that incorporates the socket, knee-shin component, and ankle block (see Fig. 24.1B). This system is more durable than the foam-covered endoskeletal shank and requires little maintenance but cannot be easily adjusted.

Both exoskeletal and endoskeletal shanks may have a transverse rotation unit installed to allow passive rotation of the shank (Fig. 24.2). The unit has an external button which, when pushed, unlocks the unit, allowing 360 degrees of rotation. The unit automatically locks when the shank is moved back to its normal position. The unit allows the wearer to sit in a crossed-legged position, change shoes without having to remove the prosthesis, and enter and exit automobiles with greater ease.

Torque absorbers installed in an endoskeletal or exoskeletal shank respond to the axial rotation that occurs during stance phase, thereby protecting the skin within the socket from excessive shear stress. Torque absorbers are indicated for individuals with fragile, sensitive skin or adherent scars and those involved with sports, such as golfing, or with work

☆The authors thank Mr. Kei Takamura, MSOP, Resident for his assistance with the pictures. The authors also extend appreciation to Richard Psonak, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

Fig. 24.1 (A) Endoskeletal shank; (B) exoskeletal shank. (A, Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon. B, Pacific University—Physical Therapy Program.)

that requires negotiating uneven ground and forceful rotation. These units add weight to the prosthesis and are susceptible to mechanical failure.

A compression spring may also be added to an endoskeletal shank to absorb vertical force, thus facilitating more comfortable walking on rigid surfaces. Often, the endoskeletal shank has a unit that combines vertical and transverse shock-absorbing mechanisms.

Fig. 24.2 Transverse rotation unit installed between the socket and the knee unit. (© Ottobock.)

Knee Unit

Prosthetic knee units may be classified by axis, stance phase control, and swing phase control mechanisms.

AXIS

Knee units permit knee flexion when the wearer sits and, in most instances, when the person walks. The upper part of the unit is connected to the lower part by an axis, either single or polycentric.

Single-Axis Knee Units

The single-axis knee has a transverse hinge that allows the shank to swing in flexion and extension. This knee is lightweight and durable. Stability of the knee is achieved by alignment of the parts of the prosthesis with or without additional mechanism.

Polycentric Knee Units

The polycentric knee has two or more pairs of bars connecting the upper and lower portions of the unit. The bars pivot at both ends thus creating a moving center of rotation (Fig. 24.3). As the wearer bends the knee, the bars cross proximally and posteriorly, thereby changing the center or rotation and thus promoting knee stability during stance phase. The polycentric knee unit's inherent stance phase stability makes it especially appropriate for individuals

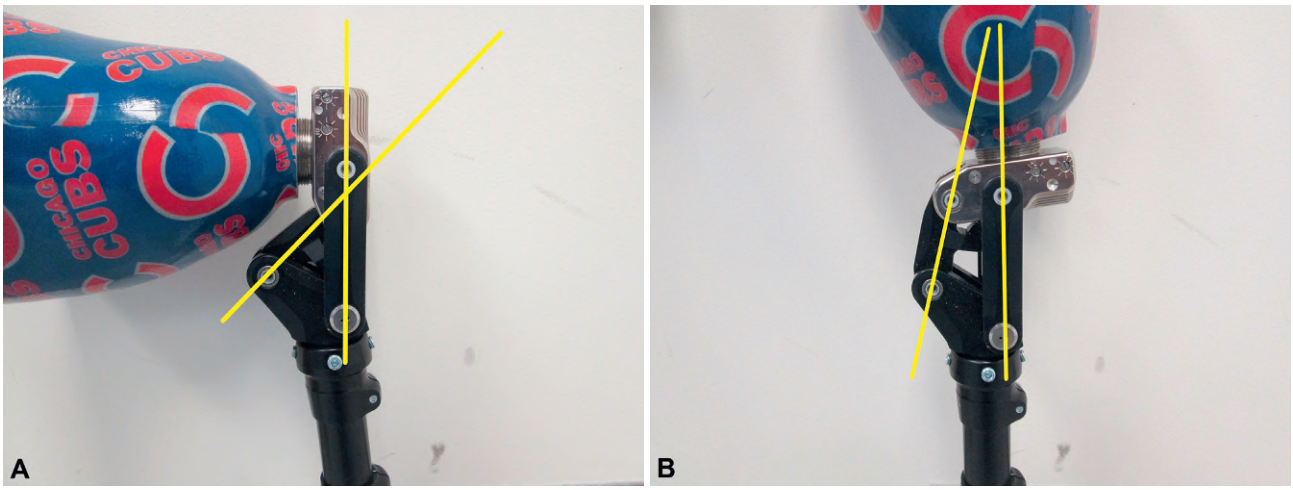


Fig. 24.3 Polycentric knee unit. (A) Flexed. (B) Extended. (A and B, Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

who have short amputation limbs or weak hip extensors. However, polycentric knees are less durable than single axis units.

STANCE CONTROL

Manual Locking Knee Units

A single-axis knee may have a distal pin lock (Fig. 24.4). The pin automatically locks with an audible click when the knee is fully extended. The wearer stands without worrying about inadvertent knee flexion, but walks with a stiff knee. The prosthesis is often slightly shorter than the sound side limb to facilitate foot clearance during swing of the prosthesis. The person unlocks the knee by pulling a cord on the outside of the socket; the cord is attached to the lock mechanism. A manual lock is indicated for those with weak hip extensors or whose balance, endurance, or cooperation are problematic. It is also useful for people whose occupations require prolonged standing.

Braking Mechanisms

A knee unit with a braking mechanism is stabilized during early stance phase (Fig. 24.5) but permits knee flexion in late stance and swing phase. In one version a wedge is forced into a curved groove, thereby preventing unwanted knee flexion, particularly if initial contact is made when the knee is not completely extended, as when walking on uneven ground. During late stance and swing phase, the weight-activated brake is disengaged. This unit is indicated for individuals who have recently undergone amputation or who have poor balance. Braking units add weight, mechanical complexity, and cost to the prosthesis.

Some knee units incorporate both a lock and a brake.

SWING PHASE CONTROL

Extension Aid

An extension aid can be a strip of elastic webbing attached to the front of the socket and proximal shank. Flexing the

Fig. 24.4 Manual locking knee. (© Ottobock.)

Fig. 24.5 Stance control knee. (© Ottobock.)

knee in late stance stretches the webbing; during swing phase the webbing recoils, exerting an extension force on the shank, kicking it forward so the wearer can strike the floor with an extended knee. Webbing located inside the knee unit has a similar effect in late swing; in addition, an internal extension aid maintains the knee flexed when the person sits.

HYDRAULIC KNEE UNITS

Hydraulic knee units regulate the swing of the shank according to the walker's speed. The unit has an oil-filled cylinder attached to the knee axis, whether single-axis or polycentric. A piston from the axis to the cylinder interior descends during early swing; this action forces oil to flow through narrow channels to provide frictional resistance. The faster the knee swings, the greater the resistance. Variable resistance permits a swing phase that simulates normal gait. The amount of resistance can be adjusted by the prosthetist who widens or narrows the channels through which the oil flows. The more narrow a channel, the greater the resistance. Variable resistance is useful for active individuals and those with mobility impairment. However, hydraulic units are heavier and more expensive than other units.

Some hydraulic knee units also have stance control provided by a braking mechanism that markedly increases resistance to knee motion at early stance when the knee unit is subjected to a flexion moment of force (Fig. 24.6). This feature allows the individual to walk with greater confidence over uneven surfaces and use a step-over-step pattern when negotiating hills and descending stairs. Some units have a mechanism that enables the wearer to lock the knee against flexion. This feature is useful when the person sits and prepares to stand on an unsteady surface. While sitting, the individual lifts a lever at the rear of the knee. During the standing maneuver, the knee extends but cannot flex. The person walks away on a knee locked in extension until the individual voluntarily moves the rear lever.

Fig. 24.6 Hydraulic knee unit. (Endolite a Blatchford Company.)

PNEUMATIC KNEE UNITS

Pneumatic knee units have an air-filled cylinder into which a piston descends during early swing and ascends during late swing. Because air is also a fluid, the amount of resistance is directly proportional to the speed of motion; the faster the person walks, the greater the resistance thereby reducing the asymmetry between anatomic and prosthetic leg motion. Pneumatic knees usually weigh less and are less expensive than hydraulic ones; however, they provide less precise cadence control because air is less dense and less viscous than oil.

MICROPROCESSOR KNEE UNITS

Microprocessor knee units have electronic sensors that monitor the action of hydraulic knee units during swing and ground force during stance. Sensors measure angles, moments of force, and pressures at 50 or more times per second. Adjustments can be made with a laptop or handheld computer. Software algorithms determine the phase of gait, automatically adjusting knee functions to approximate normal function. Most outcome measures taken with adults using microprocessor units were favorable, enabling people to move more naturally.[6-16] Most of these mechanisms provide a stumble recovery feature that limits unintentional bending of the knee that could occur on uneven terrain. With electronic units, wearers experienced fewer falls.[17,18] Units have been successfully fitted to adults wearing bilateral transfemoral prostheses.[19] Microprocessor knee units are powered by rechargeable lithium-ion batteries, which usually can be fully charged in 2 hours and last for approximately 24 hours.

Microprocessor knee units are more expensive than other knee units and may not be robust enough for obese patients or those whose activities involve imposing heavy loads on the prosthesis or those who wear the prosthesis in hazardous environments, such as water, coal mines, or commercial bakeries.

SOCKET

As with all prostheses, the socket is the most important component because the wearer inserts the amputation limb into the socket. Sockets must be comfortable and permit the wearer to move the hip during walking and sitting.

MATERIALS

Most transfemoral sockets are made from plastic. Thermosetting resin creates a rigid socket that is durable, easy to clean, and usually less expensive to produce. However, it is more difficult to adjust the contours to achieve a comfortable fit for individuals with minimal soft tissue or sensitive amputation limbs.

Flexible sockets are vacuum formed from flexible thermoplastics. The socket is encased in a rigid frame, which provides support during weight bearing. The socket accommodates to changes in muscle contour as the wearer moves and can be easily modified by heat. They are more comfortable, especially in sitting, because the wearer contacts the chair with a pliable interface. Flexible sockets are somewhat less durable and more expensive to fabricate than rigid ones.

SHAPE

Quadrilateral

This shape has four walls fashioned to contain the thigh (Fig. 24.7A). A flat posterior shelf is the primary weight-bearing surface for the ischial tuberosity and adjacent gluteal muscles. The anterior wall creates a posteriorly directed force to stabilize the ischial tuberosity on its seat; the wall is approximately 2 inches higher than the posterior wall to minimize unit pressure. The anterior wall has a convexity (buildup), the Scarpa bulge, which increases the area contacting the tender femoral triangle. The medial wall has a concavity (relief) for the adductor longus tendon and is approximately level with the posterior brim. The lateral wall is approximately as high as the anterior wall; it has a relief for the greater trochanter. The anterior-posterior dimension is more narrow than the medial-lateral dimension.

ISCHIAL CONTAINMENT

The ischial containment socket (see Fig. 24.7B) covers the ischial tuberosity. The socket is thus wider anteroposteriorly than mediolaterally to resist lateral shifting of the socket during weight bearing and to maintain the femur in as much adduction as possible. The relatively wide anteroposterior dimension is intended to provide more room to accommodate muscle contraction. The ischial containment socket has relatively high medial and posterior walls and a lower anterior wall than the quadrilateral socket. The lateral wall is approximately the same height on both the ischial containment and quadrilateral designs. A variation of the ischial containment socket is the Marlo Anatomical Socket (see Fig. 24.7C). Its lower posterior trim lines allow the user to sit directly on the buttock instead of on the posterior socket.[20]

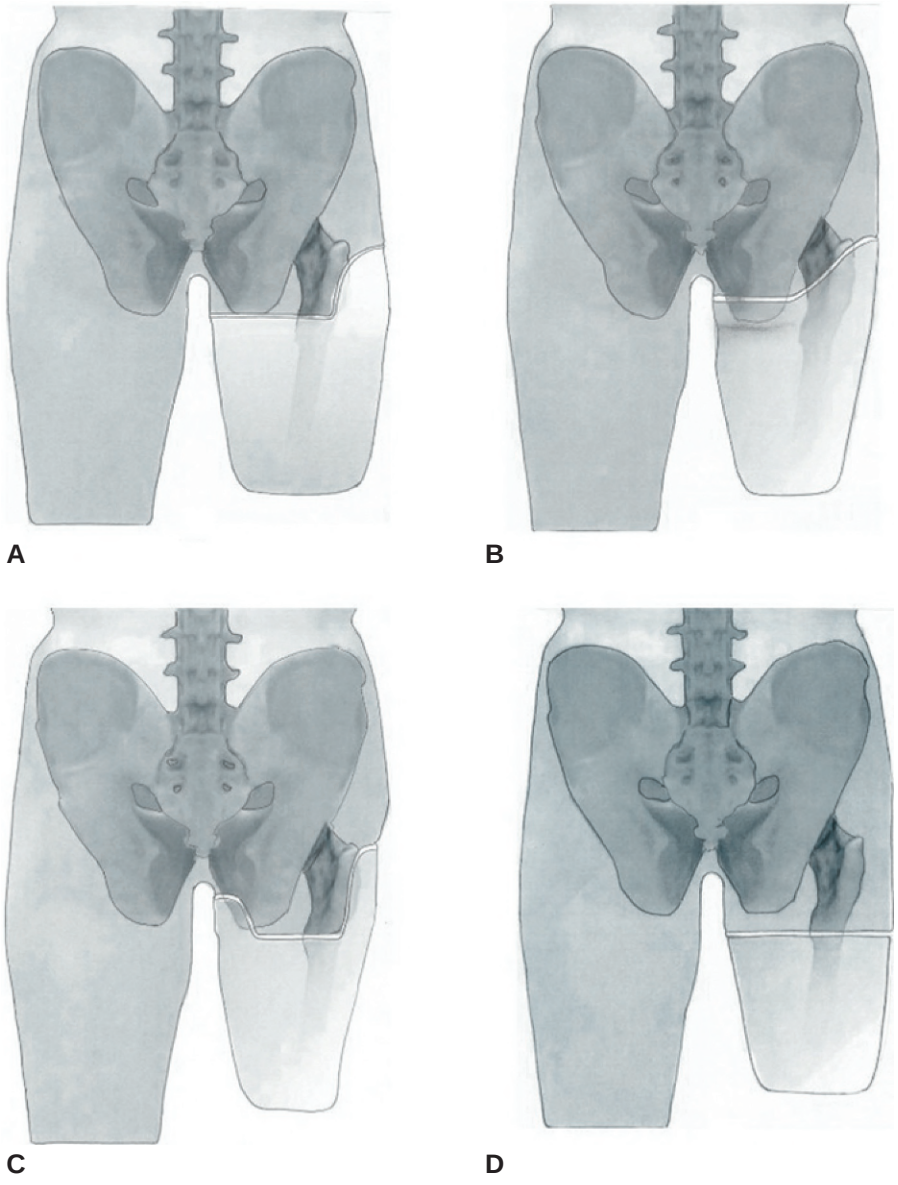


Fig. 24.7 Posterior views of quadrilateral socket (A) with the ischial tuberosity on the posterior brim; ischial containment socket (B) with ischial tuberosity inside the socket; Marlo Anatomical Socket (C) with the ischial tuberosity within the socket; and subischial socket (D) with the socket trim line considerably below the ischium.

Unlike the quadrilateral and ischial containment designs, the subischial socket terminates several inches below the pelvis (see Fig. 24.7D). Preliminary evidence suggests that wearers are more comfortable and have greater hip mobility and stability while wearing this socket.[21-24] The transverse contours of the sockets also differ (Fig. 24.8).

Suspension Systems

Some provision for suspending the transfemoral prosthesis is necessary during the swing phase of walking and when the wearer is climbing ladders, stairs, and ramps. As compared with a transtibial prosthesis, the heavier transfemoral prosthesis creates a greater challenge for suspension.[25]

SUCTION

Suction suspension requires snug proximal socket fit and an air-expulsion valve that allows air to exit but prevents air from entering the socket. Donning may be accomplished by drawing tubular cotton stockinet (or an elastic bandage) over the thigh to the inguinal ligament, then passing the distal end of the stockinet through the valve hole. Usually, the patient stands and pulls down on the stockinet while flexing and extending the opposite hip and knee until the entire stockinet is withdrawn. This process requires considerable agility and balance. The valve is then installed in the socket. A second option is to apply a lubricant to the thigh to enable sliding the limb into the socket that already has the valve installed. After the thigh is inside the socket, the valve is pressed to release any trapped air.

Intimate fit required for suction suspension enhances prosthetic control and proprioception.[26,27] Suction suspension is inappropriate for patients with a recent amputation whose limb volume will continue to reduce or for those with fluctuating edema or unstable weight. High shear force associated with donning may preclude its use for patients with fragile or sensitive skin, painful trigger points, significant scarring, adhesions, or upper limb weakness.

Elevated Vacuum (Subatmospheric) Suspension

A variation of suction suspension is elevated vacuum (subatmospheric) suspension, which also uses a difference in air pressure to suspend the socket on the amputation limb.[26-29] Suction suspension allows air to exit through the valve when the amputation limb moves in swing phase, whereas elevated vacuum suspension uses a pump to create a constant pressure differentiation. Consequently, suspension is more secure and the socket can have a lower trim line.

A person with a long transfemoral amputation limb may be fitted with a socket that exerts greater suction distally as compared with other socket designs. The proximal border is 2 to 4 inches lower with other designs, thus increasing comfort and range of hip motion. Elevated negative pressure around the distal two-thirds of the amputation limb eliminates compressing the proximal limb. A roll-on liner contains soft tissues and a vacuum pump creates negative pressure to remove air from the sealed environment between socket and liner. Vacuum holds the liner firmly to the walls of the socket and controls volume fluctuations. Pistoning between the limb, liner, and socket is virtually eliminated, affording wearers greater proprioception and a sense that the prosthesis feels lighter. Elevated vacuum improves blood circulation and may help to heal wounds.

LINERS

Suspension with liners significantly reduces friction on the amputation limb. Donning is simple and can be accomplished while seated. However, liners become worn or torn and must be replaced several times a year depending on the wearer's activity level. Liners may increase skin temperature and perspiration. A few people develop dermatitis. Liners must be cleaned daily to prevent accumulation of perspiration and bacteria.

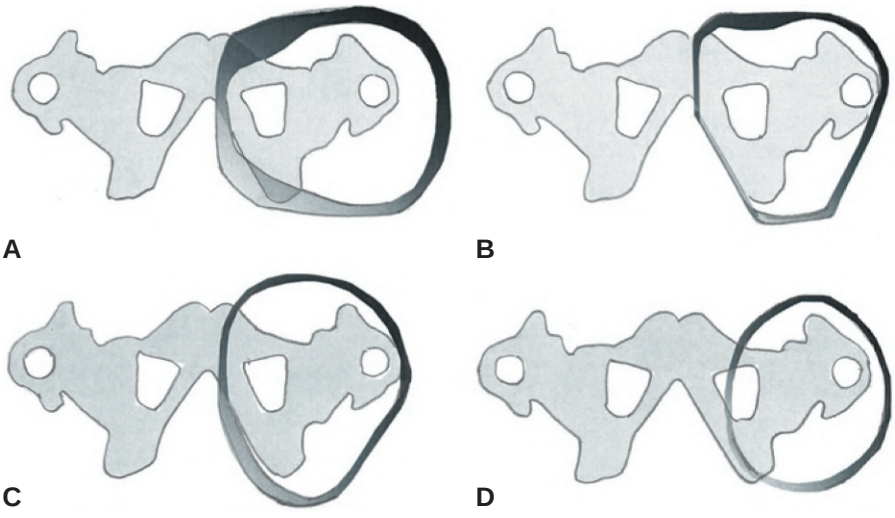


Fig. 24.8 Cross-section views of transfemoral sockets. The quadrilateral socket has a narrow anteroposterior dimension (A); ischial containment socket (B) and Marlo Anatomical Socket (C) have narrow mediolateral dimensions. The subischial socket (D) has a more oval shape.

ROLL-ON LINERS

Roll-on liners are made from urethane and other elastomers. Worn against the skin, roll-on liners are donned by being turned inside-out, then rolled over the amputation limb. The roll-on liner creates negative pressure and is somewhat adhesive. The liner can be used for suspension with a shuttle lock, lanyard, or air expulsion valve or as part of an elevated vacuum socket. Although liner use facilitates donning, sitting, walking, and comfort, problems with durability remain.

Cushion Liner With Air Expulsion Valve

A resilient liner is put on the amputation limb, which is then pushed into the socket, creating negative pressure environment by expelling air through an expulsion valve (Fig. 24.9A).

A vacuum pump may be installed in the socket to create negative pressure to enhance suspension.

Shuttle Locking Liner

The liner has an external cap. In the center of the cap a serrated pin protrudes approximately 1½ inches (Fig. 24.9B). The pin engages a shuttle lock inside the bottom of the socket, when the wearer stands and pushes the amputation limb down into the socket. To remove the prosthesis, one disengages the serrated pin by depressing a release button on the medial aspect of the socket exterior.

Lanyard

The wearer dons a liner on the bottom of which is a lanyard (strap or cord). The lanyard is routed through a hole in the distal socket. The person then guides the lanyard (see Fig. 24.9C) up the lateral exterior of the socket to secure it with hook and loop tape or a ratcheted strap (see Fig. 24.9D).

TOTAL ELASTIC SUSPENSION BELT

The total elastic suspension (TES) belt is made of an elastic neoprene. The distal sleeve of the TES belt fits snugly around the proximal half of the socket. TES encircles the waist and attaches in front with hook and loop tape (Fig. 24.10). The TES belt is easy to don, comfortable to wear, and an excellent auxiliary suspension system. It is often chosen for the person who has had recent surgery whose amputation limb has not yet matured to stable size, for older patients unable to use suction or liners, and for those with tender skin or adhesions. It is also secondary suspension for athletes. The TES system has limited durability, especially for active people, and tends to retain heat.

SILESIAN BELT

A Silesian belt is usually made from Dacron webbing or leather (Fig. 24.11). One end is attached to the lateral aspect of the socket. The belt encircles the lower trunk and passes

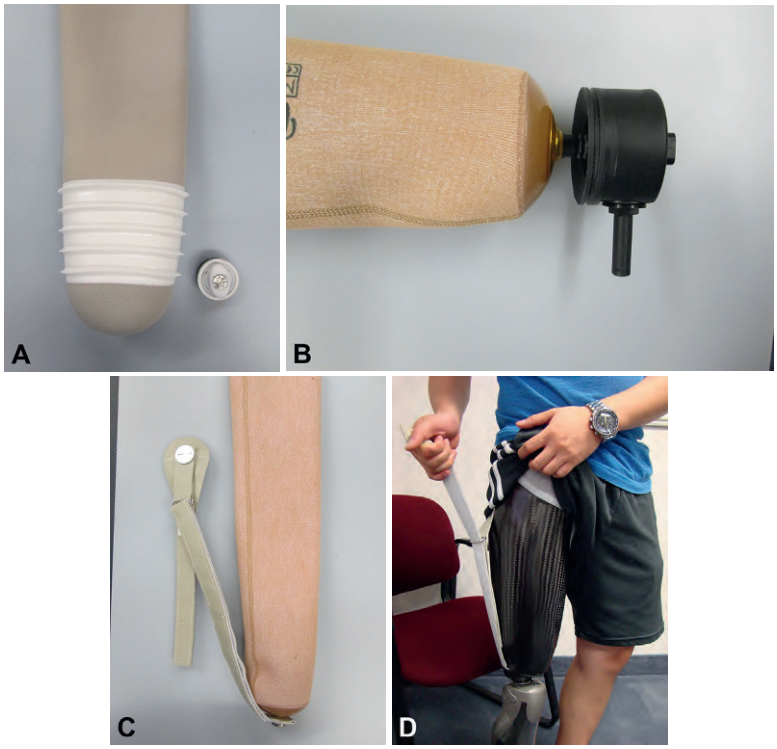


Fig. 24.9 (A) Air expulsion valve system. After the liner is donned, the amputation limb is pushed into the socket, expelling air through the valve, creating negative pressure. A vacuum pump attached to socket creates negative pressure between the socket and roll-on liner. (B) The shuttle lock system uses a pin that engages into a receptacle in the bottom of the socket (C). The lanyard system incorporates a strap or cord in the liner that is routed through a slot or hole in the distal socket and used to pull the amputation limb into the socket. (D) Lanyard suspension with lateral rotational control. (A–C, Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon. D, Image courtesy of KISS Technologies LLC.)

Fig. 24.10 Total elastic suspension belt. (Image by Amputee Supplies Inc via https://amputeestore.com.)

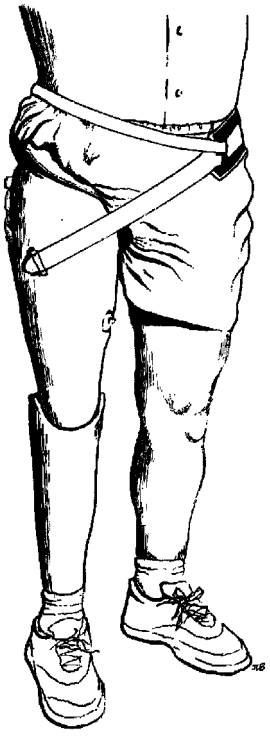


Fig. 24.11 Silesian belt suspension.

through a loop or buckle on the anterior socket where it is secured. The Silesian belt augments other modes of suspension. It resists the tendency of the prosthesis to rotate internally during the donning process.

PELVIC BELT

The pelvic belt (Fig. 24.12) is made of leather and attached to the prosthesis by means of a metal or solid nylon single-axis hip joint. The joint center should be positioned just superior and anterior to the greater trochanter to permit maximum hip motion. This system suspends the prosthesis and helps to control rotation and medial-lateral stability of the amputation limb. The pelvic belt is bulky and heavy and may be uncomfortable when the wearer sits.

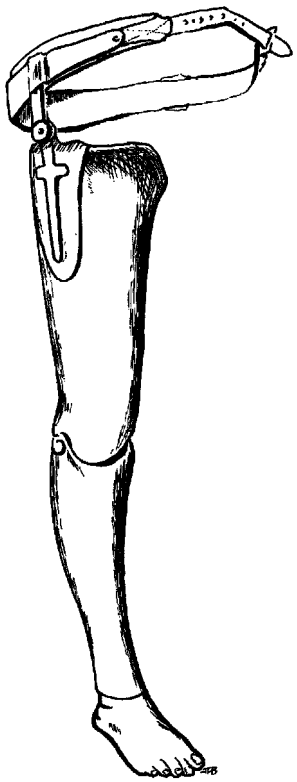


Fig. 24.12 Pelvic belt with hip joint.

Osseous Integration

Osseous integration involves attaching a metal pin surgically implanted in the femur to a metal fixture surmounting the knee unit, thereby eliminating the need for a socket. Implantation is performed after the amputation limb has healed from the initial amputation surgery. Prosthetic duration of use, mobility, and gait efficiency improve with this procedure.[27,30-32] Mild infection at the skin penetration site can be readily managed,[33] with implant-associated osteomyelitis necessitating removal of the femoral pin being relatively uncommon.[34] Patients with shorter amputation limbs experience more force on the thigh duration a fall.[35] Those with osseous integration required fewer visits for prosthetic service than adults with socket-suspended prostheses.[36]

TRANSFEMORAL ALIGNMENT

Prosthetic alignment refers to the spatial relationship of each part of the device to the others. The purpose of alignment is to increase the wearer's comfort and ability to control the prosthesis.[37-39]

SAGITTAL ALIGNMENT

The most important goal in transfemoral prosthetics is to obtain knee stability during stance phase. A prosthetic knee

Case Example 24.1 Grandmother Who Wants to Dance at Her Granddaughter's Wedding

T. F. is a 68-year-old grandmother who wants to attend her granddaughter's wedding. She visits her prosthetist, asking for assistance with her 6-year-old transfemoral prosthesis. T. F. underwent elective amputation 6 years ago after she developed osteomyelitis and nonunion of a comminuted fracture of her left femur after being hit by a car. Although she was initially deconditioned, her rehabilitation was successful, and she returned home to live independently after a 2-month stay in a subacute rehabilitation setting.

T. F.'s amputation limb is relatively short: 4½ inches from the perineum to the distal end. Her prosthesis has a pelvic belt, rigid quadrilateral socket, polycentric knee, endoskeletal shank, and single-axis foot. She walks in the community with a straight cane. She complains that her prosthesis rubs her thigh, is heavy and noisy, and pinches when she sits. Her immediate goal is that she be able to "blend into the wedding ceremony" with her prosthesis not a distraction. She hopes to dance with her son and her new grandson-in-law at the wedding reception.

Her prosthetist consults with her physician and suggests a new flexible ischial containment socket in a rigid frame, retaining the original foot and knee unit. The prosthetist recommends a roll-on liner with a shuttle locking device to replace the pelvic belt to improve suspension and decrease pistoning. The new socket and suspension system will give T. F. better control of her prosthesis, allowing her to participate in all wedding activities more easily.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Why was a pelvic belt used in T. F.'s initial prosthesis? Why did the team not recommend a TES belt, Silesian belt, or suction suspension?
- Why did the team decide to replace T. F.'s rigid socket with a flexible one?
- Why did the team retain the polycentric knee unit? What other knee units would be appropriate for her?
- Why did the team retain the single axis foot? What other feet would be appropriate?

Case Example 24.2 Young Man Injured in a Motorcycle Accident

C. J. is a 23-year-old electrician who lost control of his motorcycle on an icy roadway 10 days ago, sustaining moderate head injury, traumatic amputation of the left lower limb, and comminuted fracture of the right femur. On admission, he was taken to the operating room for débridement and closure of his amputated limb and open reduction/internal fixation of the fractured femur. Initially responsive to pain and voice, C. J. now fluctuates between level 4 (confused and agitated) and 6 (confused and appropriate) on the Rancho Los Amigos Cognitive Scale. C. J. is extremely agitated and combative while in bed but calms somewhat when seated in a bedside chair. He demands to be allowed to get up to walk but cannot comprehend the need to limit weight bearing on the fractured side and does not seem to understand that he has an amputation. The rehabilitation team wonders if his cognitive function will improve if he can be upright. After much consideration, the team decides that C. J.'s amputation limb is healed sufficiently for early fitting with an ischial containment socket suspended by suction and a TES belt, with a locking knee and solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) foot. The team hopes that careful early mobilization into upright posture will reduce his combativeness without compromising healing.

When on a tilt table (with a 3-inch lift under the left foot to maintain the non–weight-bearing status of the fractured right femur), C. J.'s cognition and behavior improved rapidly. Within several days, he could begin to ambulate in the three-point pattern, non–weight bearing on the right side, using a walker for short distances with moderate assistance. Over the next 3 weeks, he became independent with crutches and continued to use the locking knee while his fracture heals enough to safely tolerate full weight bearing safely. The team anticipates that his prosthetic prescription will be significantly modified as he recovers from his head injury and can learn to use a more advanced prosthesis.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Why was an ischial containment socket selected for C. J.'s initial prosthesis?
- Considering his current cognition and non–weight-bearing status, why did the team select a locking knee unit?
- Why did the team recommend a SACH foot for the initial prosthesis? (See Chapter 21 for detailed information about prosthetic feet.)
- Would an extension aid, torque absorber, and/or transverse rotational unit be appropriate at this point for C. J.?
- What are the implications for safety, energy cost, and appearance of gait when using a locked knee and a SACH foot?
- As C. J. regains cognitive function and the fracture heals, what options should the rehabilitation team consider for his next prosthesis?

that is unstable could lead to a fall. Alternately, a knee that is difficult to flex interferes with swing phase clearance and increases the likelihood of tripping.

Variables influencing knee stability are:

1. Alignment of the socket, knee, and ankle
2. Mechanical stability of the knee unit
3. Muscular control of knee action

Optimum alignment allows the wearer to control prosthetic movement. If the knee axis is positioned slightly posterior to a vertical line from the greater trochanter to the ankle, the weight line passes anteriorly, the resulting extensor moment provides alignment stability; thus minimal hip extensor power is required. However, stable alignment increases the hip flexor effort required to initiate knee flexion in late stance phase. If the knee is positioned at or slightly in front of the vertical line, the weight line passes behind the knee, and stance phase is less stable and greater muscular contraction is needed; however, this alignment enhances the ability to flex the knee to initiate swing phase (Fig. 24.13).

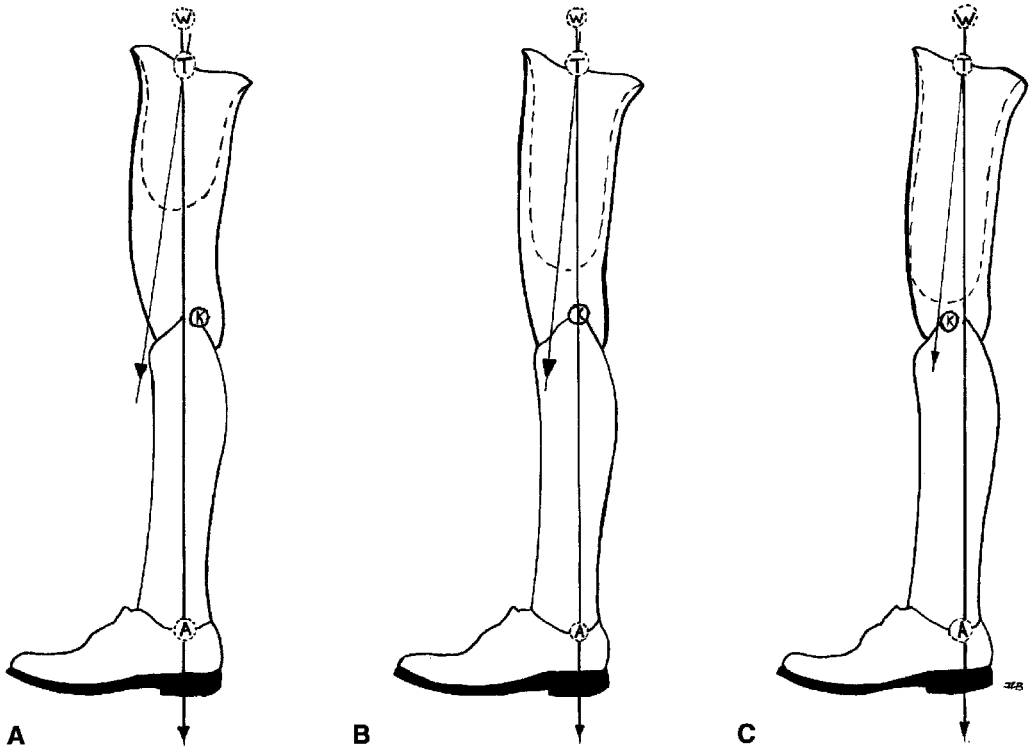


Fig. 24.13 (A) Maximum alignment stability when the weight line (W) passes anteriorly to the knee axis. (B) Minimum alignment stability when the weight line passes through the center of the knee axis. (C) No alignment stability when the weight line passes behind the knee axis. Stability must be achieved by mechanism within the knee unit.

An individual's ability to control the prosthetic knee is determined by the strength of hip extensors and by the length of the amputation limb. An inverse relationship exists between length of amputation limb and amount of muscular force necessary to control the prosthetic knee. Voluntary control is compromised by a hip flexion contracture and weakness of hip extensors.

Aligning the socket in slight flexion elongates hip extensors, thereby enhancing their contractile ability. Socket flexion also reduces the wearer's tendency to substitute for hip extensor weakness with excessive pelvic lordosis. Knee control is also influenced by the mechanical properties of the prosthetic knee. A manually locking knee offers complete stability. Mechanical stability can be provided by (1) hydraulic swing and stance units and (2) weight-activated stance control knee units. Stability is compromised when the wearer descends ramps. Stability increases when the prosthetic foot is placed relatively anteriorly and by a low shoe heel.

FRONTAL ALIGNMENT

The socket is adducted to maximize the effect of the adductors, thereby reducing lateral trunk bending. The femur, without its distal attachment at the knee, is susceptible to marked lateral displacement within the socket during stance phase. Lateral shift results in lateral bending of the trunk to maintain balance (Fig. 24.14). Pelvic stability is compromised by shortness of the amputation limb and abduction contracture. The prosthetic foot is placed as

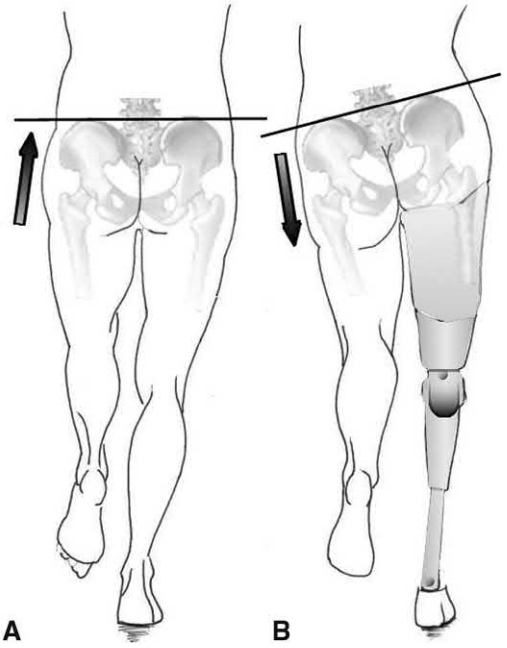


Fig. 24.14 (A) In the intact leg, when weight is borne on the stance limb, gravity causes the pelvis to dip to the swing side. Contraction of the gluteus medius on the stance side prevents excessive dip. (B) Amputation removes the distal attachment of the femur to the knee; consequently, the femur tends to move laterally within the socket during weight bearing. Adduction of the lateral socket wall helps to counteract lateral femoral displacement.

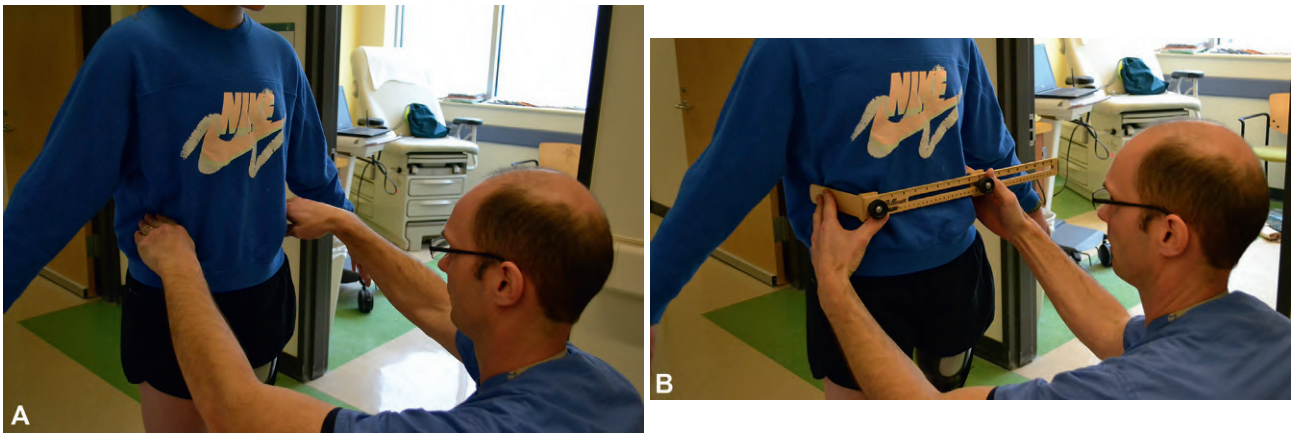


Fig. 24.15 Height of the prosthesis should approximate that of the sound limb. (A) Compare the heights of the iliac crests. (B) Checking the pelvis using a leveling device. (A and B, Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

medial as possible to permit a relatively narrow walking base that also reduces fatiguing trunk sideward motion.[40]

EVALUATION OF THE PROSTHESIS

Whatever its design, the socket must fit comfortably when the patient stands, walks, and sits, without undue pressure from its margins. The patient dons the prosthesis, stands, then walks for several minutes. When the prosthesis is removed, the clinician examines the skin of the trunk and amputation limb, noting any evidence of excessive pressure that would indicate the need to modify the contours of the socket.

The height of the prosthesis is evaluated when the wearer stands with weight equally distributed on both feet. The pelvis should be level (Fig. 24.15). The initial prosthesis may be ¼ inch shorter than the intact side to enhance toe clearance in swing phase.

Case Example 24.3 **Why Should Changing Shoes Be an Issue?**

P. O. is 21-year-old accountant and former marathon runner who sustained amputation just above the knee as the result of a motor vehicle accident. He was fitted with a transfemoral prosthesis. After a few days of inpatient rehabilitation, P. O. could ambulate with a straight cane in a fairly symmetric step-through pattern. He often attempts to ambulate without the cane. Whenever he does, his physical therapist cautions him against varying from the therapy program until his amputation limb is completely healed and tolerates full weight bearing on the prosthesis. P.O. can tolerate 3 h in his prosthesis and is anxious to begin full-time wear.

P. O. discharged himself from the hospital against physician's orders. Two days after leaving the hospital, he wore his favorite pair of cowboy boots with 2-inch heels to party with friends. While negotiating the first step out of his house, his prosthetic knee buckled and he fell down the rest of the steps, fracturing the femur of his residual limb and cracking the frame of his socket. He is readmitted to the hospital for open reduction internal fixation and eventually learns to ambulate with a swing-through pattern using bilateral axillary crutches. He is discharged from the hospital after 1 week but is not able to return to prosthetic use for the next 3 months. He returns to physical therapy on an outpatient basis for prosthetic training once again. This time, he is more cautious and attentive to the instruction and advice of his rehabilitation team. His story now serves as a warning about "what not to do when you go home" to everyone who attends the prosthetic clinic that assisted him.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Describe the functional relationships among (a) mechanical stability of P.O.'s weight-activated stance control knee, (b) its alignment and position with respect to the trochanter-knee-ankle line, and (c) the length of his residual limb. How might the alignment of his knee unit be adjusted as his limb heals and is better able to tolerate forces generated during normal walking?
- What are the advantages of moving the axis of rotation of the knee unit forward? Under what conditions would the prosthetist move the axis of rotation of the knee until it is posterior? What would you recommend for P. O. as he begins his outpatient rehabilitation after his fractured femur heals?
- Why would the rehabilitation team be concerned about the time P. O. spends in his prosthesis only 2 weeks after the amputation? What would be an appropriate wearing schedule for someone like P. O. who has been had an early prosthetic fitting? In what ways might the team's recommendation about in-prosthesis time be different as P. O. begins his second period of rehabilitation?
- Why did P. O.'s weight-activated stance control knee become unstable when he changed into his cowboy boots? What forces were acting at the knee at the time that it buckled? Is there anything he could have done to counteract the instability associated with higher heels?
- What would have happened if he had instead put on a pair of sandals with no heels at all? What types of functional problems might he have encountered during gait? How might he minimize the effect of changing to shoes with lower heels and preserve his functional abilities?
- What is the lesson from P. O.'s situation that should be conveyed to individuals new to prosthetic use?

BASE OF SUPPORT

The distance between heel centers during comfortable walking is 2 to 4 inches. The prosthetic foot and shoe should be flat on the ground with relatively equal weight bearing on medial and lateral borders. This can be assessed by slipping a piece of paper under both sides of the forefoot and rearfoot—the distances should be fairly equal. The individual must also be able to shift weight comfortably between the intact and prosthetic limbs. Adequacy of the suspension system is evaluated by asking the patient to elevate the pelvis on the amputated side to lift the prosthetic foot off the ground. The amputation limb should remain securely within the socket.

TRANSFEMORAL GAIT

Normal gait results from symmetric relationships of the head, trunk, and upper and lower limbs. A transfemoral prosthesis markedly alters these relationships. Asymmetry imposed by amputation increases the demand for postural and balance adaptations. The more asymmetric the pattern, the greater the energy cost of walking. Individuals with musculoskeletal and neuromuscular impairment, common among those with diabetes or advanced age, experience altered gait with significant increase in falls.[41-44]

SIDE VIEW

Viewing the patient from the side of the prosthesis enables determining the adequacy of hip, knee, and ankle motion. The wearer should extend the hip at heel contact to stabilize the prosthetic knee. The knee should extend smoothly, with little hesitation. Heel contact is the most unstable point in prosthetic gait. Stability increases when the foot-flat position is reached. Prosthetic and intact limb step lengths should be equal in distance and cadence. The individual should initiate swing phase smoothly. Step length and swing arc are influenced by knee flexion during late stance phase. As the patient moves from midstance into early swing, controlled, gradual knee flexion should occur for toe clearance during swing phase. Adults wearing the C-Leg knee unit that has electronic control walked with increased step length and velocity.[45]

REAR VIEW

Viewing the patient from behind enables judging the adequacy of suspension, width of the walking base, and trunk movement during prosthetic stance. The prosthesis should remain securely on the body throughout the gait cycle. Slipping or rotation of the prosthesis should be minimal. The walking base and path of the swinging legs should be approximately 2 to 4 inches between the heel centers. A wide base increases energy expenditure and is less attractive.

The pelvis should remain relatively horizontal during the prosthetic stance phase, with a maximum drop of 5 degrees on the intact swing side. Patients with a short amputation limb or weak hip abductors will probably exhibit a pelvic drop to the side of the intact limb during stance on the prosthesis. Lateral trunk bending ensures toe clearance, but this maneuver is fatiguing. Ideally the foot and knee move forward in the same plane. If the prosthesis has been donned improperly, evidence of a medial or lateral whip may be seen with the foot circumscribing with an inward or outward arc during swing phase.

Asymmetric movement is common among those who walk with a transfemoral prosthesis because the individual lacks sensation from the prosthetic foot and knee. The socket may not stabilize the femur sufficiently, and the knee unit does not move in exactly the same way as the anatomic knee. Consequently, the walker achieves lower plantar pressure and ground reaction force.[46,47] Trunk muscle force and spinal loads are also lower among people walking with a transfemoral prosthesis,[48] although the walker uses more muscle activity.[49]

Case Example 24.4 **Problem Solving When the Prosthesis Suddenly Does Not Fit**

T. M. is a 60-year-old businessman who, 3 years ago, sustained transfemoral amputation as the result of diabetes. He is complaining about his prosthesis. He had been comfortably fitted 9 weeks earlier. Today he reports that his socket is too small, preventing him from fitting fully into it. He fears that the tightness will cause skin breakdown, a frightening prospect for a person with diabetes. T. M. is wearing a transfemoral prosthesis with a stance control knee, dynamic response foot, and he is using a locking roll-on-liner for suspension.

T. M. wears his prosthesis at least 10 h a day. When T. M. enters the clinic, he is obviously experiencing discomfort and is not shifting his weight equally over the prosthesis during the stance phase of gait. He has returned to using a pair of axillary crutches to reduce his discomfort. When he removes the prosthesis, proximal redness and tenderness over the medial thigh is apparent.

On T. M.'s previous visit he wore a single three-ply sock over a 3-mm roll-on liner. Today he is donning a five- and a three-ply sock over the liner. When asked why he has increased the sock ply, T. M. reports that since he had progressed from a liner-only fit to wearing an additional three-ply sock in 3 weeks, he thought that by 9 weeks he should be wearing eight to nine ply of sock. The prosthetist and therapist explain the indications for increasing sock ply. T. M. returned to using a three-ply sock over the liner and regained the comfort he experienced before his arbitrary addition of socks. He is relieved to be able to ambulate without crutches.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What is the typical strategy for managing volume control and limb shrinkage in the first months following amputation? What factors influence the maturation of limb volume? When might a new user expect that the amputation limb will reach stable volume?
- What are the indicators that an additional sock is necessary? What must the new prosthetic wearer understand to adjust

Continued on following page

Case Example 24.4 Problem Solving When the Prosthesis Suddenly Does Not Fit (Continued)

sock ply appropriately? How can the clinician help a new prosthetic wearer master the art of changing sock ply to adjust prosthetic fit?
- How would T. M.'s complaints about fitting be different if he were wearing too few prosthetic socks?
- How many sock ply must a new user be wearing before it is time for the prosthetist to adjust the socket or fabricate a new one? What other indicators might there be that it is time for a change in socket or suspension?
- How might improper socket fit (whether too loose or too tight) affect the wearer's stability in stance and mobility during swing phase?

CHANGING SHOE HEEL HEIGHT

All prosthetic feet are designed to be worn with shoes of a particular heel height (Fig. 24.16). Matching the heel rise of the prosthetic foot to the shoes most often worn by the patient is essential. A heel wedge placed inside the shoe can be used to accommodate shoes that have a lower heel than that for which the foot was designed. Changing to shoes with significantly lower heels results in excessive knee stability in stance. Conversely, a change to shoes with much higher heels compromises alignment stability of the knee and places much greater demand on muscular control of knee unit.

OVERUSE

Whether learning to use a prosthesis, most patients benefit from a gradual break-in period. This strategy allows the skin, soft tissue, and musculature to become accustomed to forces acting on the amputation limb. Overuse can lead to muscle soreness, skin irritation, and, if excessive, skin breakdown. New users should increase the wear time in their prosthesis gradually, carefully inspecting the skin each time the prosthesis is removed; they should wear a compression garment when not in the prosthesis.

IMPROPER DONNING

When a prosthesis is not properly oriented on the amputation limb, it cannot operate efficiently. The wearer may experience discomfort within the socket or may exhibit gait deviations. Emphasis on developing a systematic method of donning is essential.

INADEQUATE SUSPENSION

Inadequately tightened or badly worn suspension straps, belts, or closures should be suspected when the wearer experiences pistoning (vertical motion) of the amputation limb within the socket. The prosthesis drops when it is unweighted during swing, resulting in a relatively longer swing limb and challenging toe clearance. In addition, the socket may rotate on the amputation limb, leading to gait deviations. New users should assess the adequacy of suspension systematically each time they don the prosthesis. All must periodically inspect belts, straps, and closures for signs of fraying, stretching, or significant wear.

WORN OR LOOSENED COMPONENTS

As for any device used daily, the prosthesis should be inspected periodically for signs of excessive wear or loosening of components. Periodic checkups with the prosthetist should be scheduled, especially if the wearer engages in physically demanding work or leisure activities.

PATIENT INNOVATION

Prosthetic wearers who do not understand the alignment and design specifics of their prostheses may attempt to modify them. If a patient who had been progressing well in gait training and compliant with compression strategies suddenly has difficulty with socket fit, patient innovation should be suspected. Padding may have been added or removed from inside the socket. If knee stability has suddenly changed, the wearer may have attempted to adjust knee unit function. Concerns about alignment should be

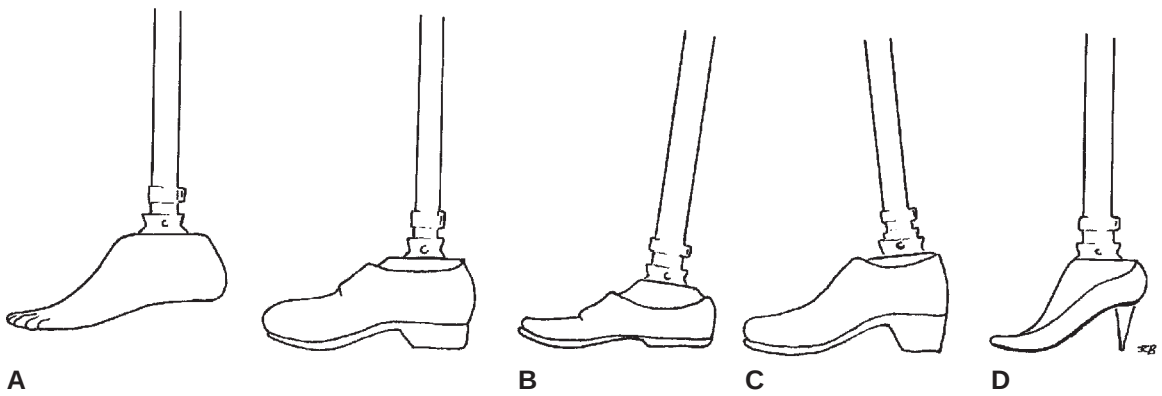


Fig. 24.16 Shoes with differing heel heights affect knee stability for individuals who are using a transfemoral prosthesis. (A) Most prosthetic feet are designed for a standard {3/4}-inch heel. (B) Decreasing heel height creates an extension moment at the knee, leading to an excessively stable knee. (C) Increasing heel height creates a flexion moment, leading to instability of the prosthetic knee. (D) Special prosthetic feet are made for shoes with high heels.

directed to the prosthetist whose knowledge, equipment, and experience can make any necessary adjustments.

TRANSFEMORAL PROSTHETIC GAIT

Balance

Walking depends on confident balance. Consequently, rehabilitation of the individual who has been fitted with a transfemoral prosthesis includes exercise designed to enable the patient to achieve stable balance. Level, type, and etiology of amputation influence balance,[56-58] as does the stiffness of the ankle unit.[59] The Berg Balance Scale is a suitable assessment of balance for adults wearing prostheses.[59-61]

Assessing Ability to Walk

Because people walking with a prosthesis consume more energy and are more vulnerable to stress on the vascular system, assessing the patient's walking potential is vital. The 6-minute walk test is a practical, valid assessment.[62-64]

ENERGY EXPENDITURE

An individual with a transfemoral amputation faces considerable energy expenditure when ambulating with a prosthesis (Box 24.1).[50-55] The energy cost of gait increases significantly as the length of the residual limb decreases. The individual ambulating on a transfemoral prosthesis walks more slowly to avoid an increase in energy consumption per minute and is less efficient in terms of energy expended over distance (per meter). This increase in energy cost is manifested as a higher rate of oxygen consumption, elevated heart rate, and notable reduction in comfortable (self-selected) walking speed.

Because of high energy cost, older individuals with high-level transfemoral amputations may be limited in their ability to become functional community ambulators. Those with vascular disease who wear a prosthesis often walk slowly, on flat terrain, with the assistance of a walker or cane. Elderly adults with bilateral transfemoral amputations rarely become community ambulators, instead choosing a wheelchair for mobility.

The goal of a well-designed and accurately fitted transfemoral prosthesis is an energy-efficient gait in as natural a pattern as possible. Gait quality improves as the individual becomes more experienced with the prosthesis. If gait problems persist, especially if the risk of falls or skin irritation is present, the source of the problem should be identified, and attempts made to correct it. A person wearing an ill fitted or improperly aligned prosthesis will compensate by altering the gait pattern.

Box 24.1 Prosthetic Features That Affect Energy Expenditure

- Weight of the prosthesis
- Socket fit
- Alignment of the prosthesis
- Functional characteristics of the prosthetic components

EARLY STANCE COMPENSATIONS

Lateral Trunk Bending

The observer stands on the prosthetic side, facing the walker, and notes bending toward the prosthetic side when the prosthesis is in stance phase. Lateral trunk bending (Fig. 24.17) is a common compensation for failure to stabilize the femur in the socket. If the lateral prosthetic wall does not stabilize the femur in adduction, the femur abducts, causing pelvic drop on the swinging side. Some wearers lean toward the stance (prosthetic) side to ensure toe clearance. Lateral trunk bending also avoids uncomfortable pressure in the perineum, especially if the medial socket wall is excessively high or sharp. The patient with a fleshy adductor roll is likely to be pinched by the socket. Lateral trunk bending can also occur if too few prosthetic socks are worn so that the amputation limb is positioned too deeply in the prosthesis. A socket aligned in abduction or a prosthetic foot excessively outset from the midline position both widen the base of support; consequently, the only way to shift weight onto the prosthesis is by leaning laterally. Trunk bending is more apparent in the individual with a short amputation limb. Walking with a cane, preferably on the prosthetic side, reduces lateral trunk bending.

Abducted Gait

The observer stands behind the walker, facing the individual. The walking base is abnormally wide. The patient exhibits excessive side-to-side sway to accomplish weight transfer from one limb to the other. The prosthesis may be too long. The socket may be aligned in insufficient

Fig. 24.17 Lateral trunk bending over the prosthesis is typically the result of discomfort in the perineum. (Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

adduction or may cause discomfort in the groin or laterodistal end of the amputation limb. Weak hip abductors fail to stabilize the femur during stance phase on the prosthesis. The person with poor balance may abduct the prosthesis to widen the walking base, even though this maneuver results in excessive mediolateral trunk motion.

KNEE INSTABILITY

The observer stands on the prosthetic side, facing the walker. At initial contact, the prosthetic knee should be fully extended to position the prosthetic foot appropriately for smooth loading as body weight is transferred onto the prosthesis. As loading occurs, the prosthetic foot rolls smoothly into a foot-flat position. Problems with either of these functions increase the risk of instability and shorten the swing time and step length of the contralateral limb.

If the prosthetic knee cannot maintain the necessary extension as the heel strikes the ground and the prosthesis is loaded, several possible prosthetic and patient-related factors should be considered (Fig. 24.18). The most common patient-related problems that lead to knee instability at initial contact include significant hip flexion contracture or weakness of hip extensor muscles, which compromise the patient's ability to stabilize the prosthetic knee by using active hip extension. If strength and range of motion are adequate, four different prosthetic factors might lead to knee instability:

Fig. 24.18 An unstable prosthetic knee during stance phase often results in a quick, short step taken by the sound limb. The problem may be caused by hip extensor weakness, hip flexion contracture, or anterior displacement of the prosthetic knee. (Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

1. The knee axis may be aligned too far anterior to the weight line, promoting a flexion moment.
2. The socket may not have been set in the optimal preflexed position that places the hip extensor muscles at a biomechanical advantage for stabilizing the knee.
3. The prosthetic foot may have been aligned in excessive dorsiflexion.
4. The plantar flexion bumper or SACH heel may be too stiff.
5. The shoe heel may be too high.

Foot Slap

The observer stands on the prosthetic side, facing the walker. The speed that the prosthetic forefoot descends to the floor at heel contact is determined by the stiffness of the heel or plantar flexion bumper and by how forcefully the individual loads the heel. The heel cushion or plantar flexion bumper may be too soft for the user's weight and activity level. Alternatively, someone who fears instability in early stance may drive the heel into the ground to ensure complete knee extension. For those using a locking knee, reaching a foot-flat position quickly is essential for smooth transition throughout stance phase.

External Rotation of the Prosthetic Foot

The observer stands behind the walker, facing the individual. If the wearer exhibits external rotation of the prosthetic heel in early stance as weight is transferred onto the prosthesis, this action can lead to skin irritation and instability. The most common causes are an excessively firm heel cushion or plantar flexion bumper and inappropriate toe-out alignment of the prosthetic foot. When girth of the amputation limb is decreasing, the socket may become loose, compromising the wearer's control of the prosthesis. In the presence of weak hip muscles, the wearer may be unable to control the prosthesis during transition from swing to stance phase. Someone who fears knee instability in early stance may extend the prosthetic knee too vigorously at heel contact to ensure full knee extension. The shoe may be too tight for the prosthetic foot.

MIDSTANCE TO LATE STANCE COMPENSATIONS

Swing Phase Compensations

The wearer must initiate swing with enough hip flexion momentum to achieve the prosthetic knee flexion necessary for toe clearance and, in late swing, extend the knee in extension in preparation for the next heel contact.

Excessive Knee Flexion (High Heel Rise)

The observer stands on the prosthetic side, facing the walker. With excessive knee flexion/high heel rise (Fig. 24.19), the prosthetic foot rises higher than does the contralateral foot during its swing phase. High heel rise may delay extension of the prosthetic knee during late swing phase. This compensation occurs if friction on the knee unit is inadequate or the knee extension aid is loose.

Lateral and Medial Whips

The observer stands behind the walker, facing the individual. A whip occurs when forward progression of the distal

Fig. 24.19 Excessive knee flexion/heel rise in early swing delays the extension of the knee, which is necessary to prepare for the next initial contact. (Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

parts of the prosthesis follows a semicircular path. A lateral whip (Fig. 24.20A) describes the lateral arc made by the prosthetic heel. The knee unit may be aligned in excessive internal rotation, or the socket may have been internally rotated during donning.

With a medial whip (see Fig. 24.20B), the prosthetic heel moves medially. The heels of the swing and stance limbs may narrowly miss contact at midstance and midswing. Although this occurs when the prosthetic knee is aligned in too much external rotation, it also results when the prosthesis is donned in too much external rotation or the Silesian belt pulls the socket into excessive external rotation. Medial whips may also be the consequence of poor socket fit, especially by those with flabby thigh tissue.

Terminal Impact

The observer stands on the prosthetic side, facing the walker. Terminal impact occurs during late swing. The shank moves forward so quickly that one can hear an audible impact at the knee unit. This gait compensation occurs when the friction at the knee unit is insufficient with or without an excessively taut extension aid. Wearers fearful of knee instability in early stance may flex the hip on the amputated side forcefully in early swing to increase momentum for knee extension, then forcefully extend the hip in late swing to snap the knee into full extension in preparation for the next early stance.

Vaulting

The observer stands behind the walker, facing the individual. A wearer who forcefully plantar flexes the ankle on the intact side ensures clearance for the prosthesis through its swing (Fig. 24.21). Causes of vaulting include insufficient suspension, loose socket, excessive friction in the knee unit, and a foot set in excessive plantar flexion effectively lengthening the prosthesis and thereby compromising toe clearance. A prosthesis that is too long may compel the patient to vault. Individuals who are frail will exhibit other means of clearing the floor during swing phase rather than vaulting.

Circumduction

The observer stands behind the walker, facing the individual. The patient with weak musculature who has difficulty clearing the prosthesis during swing phase may circumduct the prosthesis (Fig. 24.22). The foot moves in a semicircular pattern. The pattern is also adopted by prosthetic wearers who fear stubbing their toe during swing or who are reluctant to use knee flexion because of anticipated instability in the subsequent early stance period. Circumduction also can be the result of a foot set in excessive plantar flexion, which makes the prosthesis functionally longer.

Hip Hiking

The observer stands behind the walker, facing the individual. Rather than circumduct to clear the prosthetic toe during swing phase, the patient may elevate the pelvis on the prosthetic side.

OTHER ISSUES

Ideally, an individual ambulating with a transfemoral prosthesis walks with a narrow base with minimal sway. Symmetry in stride length, cadence, and arm swing characterize an optimal gait pattern, with minimal energy cost. In addition to walking on level surfaces, patients with sufficient muscular and cardiopulmonary function should be trained to negotiate stairs.[65,66] Prostheses equipped with microprocessor knee units facilitate ascent and descent.[67-70]

Negotiating ramps is another advanced skill for people wearing transfemoral prostheses. Standing on a slope is facilitated by a prosthesis with a microprocessor-controlled prosthetic foot.[71] The microprocessor-controlled knee unit also aids ramp ascent and descent.[72-76]

Summary

Advances in technology and rehabilitation have greatly benefited individuals wearing transfemoral prostheses. Treatment by the prosthetic clinic team, namely physician, prosthetist, and physical therapist, should enable the patient to obtain the best possible function. The team should develop a prosthetic prescription based on relating the characteristics of the foot-ankle assemblies, shanks, knee units, socket designs, and suspension options to the needs of a given patient. Alignment of the various components is intended to maximize comfort and enable walking with the prosthesis in the most efficient manner.

Fig. 24.20 (A) A lateral whip describes the shank and foot swinging in a lateral arc. (B) A medial whip describes the opposite movement. (A and B, Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

Fig. 24.21 Vaulting describes exaggerated plantar flexion of the intact ankle, which provides clearance for the prosthesis during swing phase. (Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

Fig. 24.22 With circumduction, the prosthesis swings in a wide lateral arc to facilitate toe clearance in swing. (Shriners Hospital Portland Oregon.)

References

1. Edelstein JE, Moroz A. *Lower-Limb Prosthetics and Orthotics: Clinical Concepts.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack Inc.; 2011.
2. Carroll K, Edelstein JE. *Prosthetics and Patient Management: A Comprehensive Clinical Approach.* Thorofare, NJ: Slack Inc.; 2006.
3. Schuch CM, Pritham CH. Transfemoral amputation: prosthetic management. In: Smith DG, Michael JW, Bowker JH, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 3rd ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004:541–556.
4. Cairn N, Muray K, Corney J, McFadyen A. Satisfaction with cosmesis and priorities for cosmesis design reported by lower limb amputees in the United Kingdom: instrument development and results. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38:467–473.
5. Highsmith MJ, Kahle JT, Knight M, Olk-Szost A, Boyd M, Miro RM. Delivery of cosmetic covers to persons with transtibial and transfemoral amputations in an outpatient prosthetic practice. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2016;40:343–349.
6. Sawers AB, Hafner BJ. Outcomes associated with the use of microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees among individuals with unilateral transfemoral limb loss: a systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2013;50:273–314.
7. Prinsen EC, Nederhand MJ, Olsman J, Rietman J. Influence of a user-adaptive prosthetic knee on quality of life, balance confidence, and measures of mobility: a randomized cross-over trial. *Clin Rehabil*. 2015;29:581–591.
8. Prinsen EC, Nederhand MJ, Sveinsdottir H, Prins MR, et al. The influence of a user-adaptive prosthetic knee across varying walking speeds: a randomized cross-over trial. *Gait Posture*. 2017;51:254–260.
9. Bellmann M, Schmalz T, Ludwigs E, Blumentritt S. Immediate effects of a new microprocessor-controlled knee joint: a comparative biomechanical evaluation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2012;93:541–549.
10. Simon AM, Ingraham KA, Fey NP, Finucane SB, Lipschutz RD, et al. Configuring a powered knee and ankle prosthesis for transfemoral amputees with five specific ambulation modes. *PLoS One*. 2014;9. e99387.
11. Eberly VJ, Mulroy SJ, Gronley JK, Perry J, et al. Impact of a stance phase microprocessor-controlled knee prosthesis on level walking in lower functioning individuals with a transfemoral amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38:447–455.
12. Uchytil J, Jandacka D, Zahradnik D, Farana R, Janura M. Temporal-spatial parameters of gait in transfemoral amputees: comparison of bionic and mechanically passive knee joints. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38:199–203.
13. Kaufman KR, Frittoli S, Frigo CA. Gait asymmetry of transfemoral amputees using mechanical and microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2012;27:460–465.
14. Howard CL, Wallace C, Perry B, Stokic DS. Comparison of mobility and user satisfaction between a microprocessor knee and a standard prosthetic knee: a summary of seven single-subject trials. *Int J Rehabil Res*. 2017. Dec 29; Epub.
15. Wong CK, Reinstein J, Stern MA. Benefits for adults with transfemoral amputations and peripheral artery disease using microprocessor compared with nonmicroprocessor prosthetic knees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2015;94:804–810.
16. Hafner BJ, Askew RL. Physical performance and self-report outcomes associated with use of passive, adaptive and active prosthetic knees in persons with unilateral, transfemoral amputation: randomized cross-over trial. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2015;52:677–700.
17. Kannenberg A, Zacharias B, Probsting E. Benefits of microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees to limited community ambulators: systemic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2014;51:1469–1496.
18. Fuenzalida Squella SA, Kannenberg A, Brandao Benetti A. Enhancement of a prosthetic knee with a microprocessor-controlled gait phase switch reduces falls and improves balance confidence and gait speed in community ambulators with unilateral transfemoral amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2018;42(2):228–235.
19. Lawson BE, Ruhe B, Shultz A, Goldfarb M. A powered prosthetic intervention for bilateral transfemoral amputees. *IEEE Trans Biomed Eng*. 2015;62:1042–1050.
20. Traballesi M, Delussu AS, Averna T, Pellegrini R, Paradisi F, Brunelli S. Energy cost of walking in transfemoral amputees: comparison between Marlo Anatomic socket and ischial containment socket. *Gait Posture*. 2011;34:270–274.
21. Fatone S, Caldwell R. Northwestern University flexible subischial vacuum socket for persons with transfemoral amputation—Part 1: Description of technique. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2017;41:237–245.
22. Fatone S, Caldwell R. Northwestern University flexible subischial vacuum socket for persons with transfemoral amputation—Part 2: Description and preliminary evaluation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2017;41 (3):246–250.
23. Kahle JT, Highsmith MJ. Transfemoral interfaces with vacuum assisted suspension comparison of gait, balance, and subjective analysis: ischial containment versus brimless. *Gait Posture*. 2014;40:315–320.
24. Kahle JT, Highsmith MJ. Transfemoral sockets with vacuum-assisted suspension comparison of hip kinematics, socket position, contact pressure, and preference: ischial containment versus brimless. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2013;50:1241–1252.
25. Gholizadeh H, Abu Osman NA, Eshraghi A, Ali S. Transfemoral prosthesis suspension systems: a systematic review of the literature. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2014;93:809–823.
26. Gholizadeh H, Lemaire ED, Eshraghi A. The evidene-base for elevated vacuum in lower limb prosthetics: literature review and professional feedback. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2016;37:108–116.
27. Al Muderis M, Lu W, Li JJ. Osseointegrated prosthetic limb for the treatment of lower limb amputatioons: experience and outcomes. *Unfallchirurg*. 2017;120:306–311.
28. Gholizadeh H, Abu Oman NA, Eshraghi, Ali S, Yahyavi ES. Satisfaction and problems experienced with transfemoral suspension systems: a comparison between common suction socket and seal-in liner. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 2013; 94:1584-1589.
29. Rink C, Wernke MM, Powell HM, Gynawali S, Schroeder RM, et al. Elevated vacuum suspension preserves residual limb skin health in people with lower limb amputation: randomized clinical trial. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2016;53:1121–1132.
30. Branemark R, Berlin O, Hagberg K, Bergh P, Gunerberg B, Rydevik B. A novel osseointegrated percutaneous prosthetic system for the treatment of patients with transfemoral amputation: a prospective study of 51 patients. *Bone Joint J*. 2014;96-B:106–113.
31. Hagberg K, Hansson E, Branemark R. Outcome of percutaneous osseointegrated prostheses for patients with unilateral transfemoral amputation at two-year follow-up. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2014;95: 2120–2127.
32. Van de Meent H, Hopman MT, Frolke JP. Walking ability and quality of life in subjects with transfemoral amputation: a comparison of osseointegration with socket prostheses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2013;94: 2174–2178.
33. Al Muderis M, Khemka A, Lord SJ, Van de Meent H, Frolke JP. Safety of osseointegrated implants for transfemoral amputees: a two-center prospective cohort study. *J Bone Joint Urg Am*. 2016;98:900–909.
34. Tillander J, Hagberg K, Berlin O, Hagberg L, Branemark R. Osteomyelitis risk in patients with transfemoral amputations treated with osseointegration prostheses. *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2017;475: 3100–3108.
35. Schwarze M, Hurschler C, Seehaus F, Correa T, Welke B. Influence of transfemoral amputation length on resulting loads at the osseointegrated prosthesis fixation during walking and falling. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2014;29:272–276.
36. Haggstrom EE, Hansson E, Hagberg K. Comparison of prosthetic costs and service between osseointegrated and conventional suspended transfemoral prostheses. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2013;37:152–160.
37. Gottschalk F, Kourosh S, Stills M. The biomechanics of transfemoral amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1994;18:12–17.
38. Zahedi MS, Spence WD, Solomonidis SE, Paul JP. Alignment of lower-limb prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 1986;23:2–19.
39. Kobayashi T, Orendurff MS, Boone DA. Effect of alignment changes on socket reaction moments during gait in transfemoral and knee disarticulation prostheses: case series. *J Biomech*. 2013;46:2539–2545.
40. Fatone S, Dillon M, Stine R, Tillges R. Coronal plane socket stability during gait in persons with transfemoral amputation: pilot study. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2014;51:1217–1228.
41. Perry J, Burnfield JM. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function.* 2nd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2010.
42. Esquenazi A. Gait analysis in lower-limb amputation and prosthetic rehabilitation. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am*. 2014;25:153–167.
43. Malchow C, Fiedler G. Effect of observation on lower limb prosthesis gait biomechanics: preliminary results. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2016;40: 739–743.

44. Barr JB, Wutzke CJ, Threlkeld AJ. Longitudinal gait analysis of a person with a transfemoral amputation using three different prosthetic knee/foot pairs. *Physiother Theory Pract*. 2012;28:407–411.
45. Devan H, Carman A, Hendrick P, Hale L, Ribeiro DC. Spinal, pelvic, and hip movement asymmetries in people with lower-limbk aamputation: systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2015;52:1–19.
46. Castro MP, Soares D, Mendes E, Machado L. Plantar pressures and ground reaction forces during walking of individuals with unilateral transfemoral amputation. *PM R*. 2014;6:698–707.
47. Pruziner AL, Werner KM, Copple TJ, Hendershot BD, Wolf EJ. Does intact limb loadin differ in servicemembers with traumatic lower limb loss? *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2014;472:3068–3075.
48. Shojaei I, Hendershot BD Wolf EJ, Bazrgari B. Persons with unilateral transfemoral amputation experience larger spinal loads during level-ground walking compared to able-bodied individuals. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2016;32:157–163.
49. Wentink EC, Prinsen EC, Rietman J, Veltink PH. Comparison of muscle activity ptterns of transfemoral amputees and control subjects during walking. *J Neuroeng Rehabil*. 2013;10:87.
50. Bell JC, Wolf EJ, Schnall BL, Tis JE, Potter BK. Transfemoral amputations: Is there an effect of residual limb length and orientation on energy expenditure? *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2014;472(10):3055–3061.
51. Wezenberg D, van der Woude LH, Faber WX, de Haan A, Houdijk H. Relation between aerobic capacity and walking ability in older adults with a lower-limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2013;94:1714–1720.
52. Jarvis HL, Bennett AN, Twiste M, Phillip RD, Etherington J, Baker R. Temporal spatial and metabolic measures of walking in highly functional individuals with lower limb amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2017;98:1389–1399.
53. Starholm IM, Mirtaheri P, Kapetanovic N, Versto T, Skyttemyr G, et al. Energy expenditure of transfemoral amputees during floor and treadmill walking with different speed. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2016;40:336–342.
54. Giovaag T, Starholm IM, Mirtaheri P, Hegge FW, Skjetne K. Assessment of aerobic capacity and walking economy of unilateral transfemoral amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38:140–147.
55. Wezenberg D, de Haan A, Faber WX, Slootman HJ, van der Woude LH, Houdijk H. Peak oxygen consumption in older adults with a lower limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2012;93:1924–1929.
56. Kamali M, Karimi MT, Eshraghi A, Omar H. Influential factors in stability of lower-limb amputees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2013;92:1110–1118.
57. Ku PX, Abu Osman NA, Wan Abas WA. Balance control in lower extremity amputees during quiet standing: a systematic review. *Gait Posture*. 2014;39:672–682.
58. Nederland MJ, Van Asseldonk EH, van der Kooij H, Rietman HS. Dynamic Balance Control (DBC) in lower leg amputee subjects: contribution of the regulatory activity of the prosthesis side. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2012;27:40–45.
59. Wong CK, Chen CC, Welsh J. Preliminary assessment of balance with the Berg Balance Scale in adults who have a leg amputation and dwell in the community: Rasch rating scale analysis. *Phys Ther*. 2013;93:1520–1529.
60. Wong CK. Interrater reliability of the Berg Balance Scale when used by clinicians of various experience levels to assess people with lower limb amputations. *Phys Ther*. 2014;94:371–378.
61. Major MJ, Fatone S, Roth EJ. Validity and reliability of the Berg Balance Scale for community-dwelling persons with lower-limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2013;94:2194–2202.
62. Erjavec T, Vidmar G, Burger H. Exercise testing as a screening meaure for ability to walk with a prosthesis after transfemoral amputation due to peripheral vascular disease. *Disabil Rehabil*. 2014;36:1148–1155.
63. Kahle JT, Highsmith MJ, Schaepper H, Johannesson A, Orendurff MS, Kaufman K. Predicting walking ability following lower limb amputation: an updated systematic literature review. *Technol Innov*. 2016;18:125–137.
64. Sansam K, O'Connor RJ, Neumann V, Bhakta B. Can simple clinical tests predict walking ability after prosthetic rehabilitation? *J Rehabiil Med*. 2012;44. 968974.
65. Young AJ, Simon AM, Hargrove LJ. A training method for locomotion mode prediction using powered lower limb prosthesis. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng*. 2014;22:671–677.
66. Hobara H, Kobayashi Y, Tominaga S, Nakamura T, Yamasaki N, Ogata T. Factors affecting stair-ascent patterns in unilateral transfemoral amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2013;37:222–228.
67. Inoue K, Hobara H, Wada T. Effects of inertial properties of transfemoral prosthesis on leg swing motion during stair ascent. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 2013;2013:1591–1594.
68. Bellmann M, Schmalz T, Ludwigs E, Blumentritt S. Stair ascent with an innovative microprocessor-controlled exoprosthetic knee joint. *Biomed Tech (Berl)*. 2012;57:435–444.
69. Aldridge Whitehead JM, Wolf EJ, Scoville CR, Wilken JM. Does a microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knee affect stair ascent strategies in persons with transfemoral amputation? *Clin Orthop Relat Res*. 2014;472:3093–3101.
70. Lawson B, Varol HA, Huff A, Erdemir E, Goldfarb M. Control of stair ascent and descent with a powered transfemoral prosthesis. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng*. 2013;21:466–473.
71. rnst M, Altenburg B, Bellmann M, Schmalz T. Standing on slopes – how current microprocessor-controlled prosthetic feet support tanstibial and transfemoral amputees in an everyday task. *J Neuroeng Rehabil*. 2017;14:117.
72. Burnfield JM, Eberly VJ, Gronely J, Perry J, et al. Impact of stance phase microprocessor-controlled knee prosthesis on ramp negotiation and community walking function in K2 level transfemoral amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2012;36:95–104.
73. Wolf EJ, Everding VQ, Linberg AL, Schnall BL, Czerniecki JM, Gambel JM. Assessment of transfemoral amputees using C-Leg and Power Knee for ascending and descending inclines and step. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2012;49:831–842.
74. Lura DJ, Wernke MM, Carey SL, Kahle JT, Miro RM, Highsmith MJ. Differences in knee flexion between the Genium and C-Leg microprocessor knees while walking on level ground and ramps. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2015;30:175–181.
75. Ledoux ED, Lawson BE, Shultz AH, Bartlett HL, Goldfarb M. Metabolics of stair ascent with a powered transfemoral prosthesis. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc*. 2015;2015:5307–5310.
76. Highsmith MJ, Klenow TD, Kahle JT, Wernke MM, Carey SL, et al. Effects of the Genium microprocessor knee system on knee moment symmetry during hill walking. *Technol Innov*. 2016;18:151–157.

25 Prosthetic Options for Persons With High-Level and Bilateral Amputation ☆

MILAGROS JORGE, J. DOUGLAS CALL and TYLER MANEE

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Discuss the incidence and prevalence of high-level and bilateral lower limb amputations.
2. Describe the etiology of high-level and bilateral lower limb amputations.
3. Identify the two primary biomechanical limitations of hip disarticulation and higher-level prostheses.
4. Estimate the relative energy cost of ambulation with high-level or bilateral lower limb loss.
5. Describe the prosthetic and rehabilitation needs of persons with high-level and bilateral lower limb amputations.

High-level transfemoral and bilateral amputations of the lower extremity are the result of trauma or disease pathology such as peripheral vascular disease due to health conditions such as diabetes. The 21st century began as a time of war in many places around the globe. The United States and other members of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization have engaged in war and military conflicts. Traumatic amputations associated with war due to the use of land mines, improvised explosive devices (IEDs), and combat fire have resulted in the increased incidence and prevalence of high-level and bilateral lower limb amputations.[1] Peripheral vascular disease—either primary or diabetes-related—is the leading cause of bilateral amputations in the United States.[2,3] Such a significant limb loss presents a substantial challenge to the patient, the prosthetist, and other rehabilitation professionals. Successful fitting of a prosthesis is often time-consuming and difficult; however, for many individuals with high-level or bilateral lower extremity amputations, prostheses can enhance functional independence and mobility. This chapter summarizes key concepts for the prescription and fabrication of prostheses in individuals with high-level transfemoral and bilateral lower extremity amputations as well as their rehabilitation as based on clinical factors, research evidence, and expected outcomes.

High-Level Lower Limb Loss

The first part of this chapter focuses on options for patients with a unilateral high-level lower limb loss, which is an amputation at or above the hip joint. Hip disarticulation and transpelvic and translumbar losses have been estimated to comprise fewer than 2% of all amputations in the United States.[4] As a result, only those clinicians associated with specialty centers, such as major trauma hospitals, have the opportunity to see significant numbers of such cases. Most prosthetists, therapists, and physicians see only a handful of patients with such high-level loss in a practice lifetime. One result of treating each high-level patient as one of a kind is that many different approaches can be found in the literature.

ETIOLOGY

Hip disarticulation is a relatively rare amputation. The incidence is reported at 0.5% to 3.0%.[4,5] There are three distinct causes of hip disarticulation: vascular disease, trauma, and malignancy. Vascular impairment, whether or not associated with diabetes mellitus, is the most common cause of lower limb loss in the industrialized world. Dysvascular symptoms are generally most pronounced in the distal limb, leading to nonhealing ulceration, infection, gangrene, and ablation. The trunk and upper thigh are usually spared even in the presence of severe peripheral vascular disease. Vascular disease sometimes, although rarely, leads to high-level amputation.[6,7] The assumptions about healing, cardiovascular limitations, and tolerance of activity derived from experience with dysvascular amputations do not apply to patients with high-level amputations. Most of the latter are relatively healthy and have reasonable cardiopulmonary reserves, excellent cognition, and a strong desire to attempt the use of a prosthesis.

The more common cause for hip disarticulation or high-level lower limb amputations today is a traumatic injury, resulting in lifesaving emergency medical and surgical

☆The authors extend appreciation to John W. Michael, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

intervention. In civilian life within the industrialized countries, motor vehicle accidents are the most common cause of lower extremity amputations. The use of land mines in developing nations throughout the 20th century has also contributed to high-level limb loss. Although the international community has banned the practice of placing land mines, many still exist and continue to inflict trauma that may result in high-level amputations. Military conflicts in Iraq and Afghanistan and the use of IEDs has created numerous wounded warriors who survive the trauma and are transported to military hospitals for medical care and rehabilitation.[8] Military hospitals are aggressively addressing the rehabilitation needs of military amputees. The Intrepid Center for Fallen Heroes Fund constructed the Center for the Intrepid at Brooke Army Medical Center in San Antonio, Texas. This is a state-of-the-art rehabilitation facility that can, in some cases, enable soldiers with limb loss to continue their military careers. The center's rehabilitation programs work to maximize the functional abilities of men and women whether they plan to return to active duty or go back to civilian life. Because of the prolonged U.S. involvement in the Iraq and Afghanistan wars, there are now a greater number of individuals with hip disarticulations.[9]

Many high-level amputations are performed because of tumors of the femur, such as osteosarcoma. Fortunately the frequency of tumor-related high-level amputation is decreasing with advances in limb salvage procedures and more effective chemotherapy and radiation therapy.[10-13] Patients who require amputation because of tumor can be divided into two groups: those with benign or fully contained tumors who require no further oncologic intervention and those undergoing chemotherapy and radiation after amputation. Persons with benign or fully contained tumors are typically in excellent physical condition after their amputations, eager to return to their former lives as much as possible, and ready for early fitting of a prosthesis. The benefits of early fitting are well established and are both physical and psychologic.[10] Early mobilization and single-limb gait training on the contralateral limb with an appropriate assistive device is recommended to reduce the risk of deconditioning, which occurs even after a few days of hospitalization.[14,15] The rehabilitation and management of patients requiring chemotherapy or radiation therapy may have to be adapted or delayed depending on the patient's physical condition, energy level, tolerance of activity, and stage of healing.

Most patients with high-level amputations should be offered the opportunity for be fitted with a prosthesis and for rehabilitation. A multidisciplinary rehabilitation team experienced in the management of persons with amputations is essential to assure the most desirable outcomes.[14,15] Physical therapists working with individuals with high-level amputations are encouraged to initiate immediate postoperative fitting, which facilitates mobility training as soon as possible.[16]

BIOMECHANICS

Although, historically, loss of the entire lower limb assumed the use of locked joints in the prosthesis, ample clinical evidence indicates that locked prosthetic joints are seldom necessary. Since the 1950s, free-motion hip, knee, and ankle joints for hip disarticulation and transpelvic prostheses have become the norm. The Canadian design hip disarticulation prosthesis was introduced by Colin McLaurin,[17] and its biomechanics were clarified by Radcliffe in 1957.[18] These same biomechanical principles also apply to the functional design of prostheses for patients with higher-level amputation.

In essence, the high-level prosthesis is stabilized by the ground reaction force (GRF), which occurs during walking.[19] For example, when standing quietly in the prosthesis, the person's weight-bearing line falls posterior to the hip joint, anterior to the knee joint, and anterior to the ankle joint. The resultant hip and knee extension moments are resisted by mechanical hyperextension stops of the prosthetic hip and knee joints, and the dorsiflexion moment is resisted by the stiffness of the prosthetic foot (Fig. 25.1). This same principle permits the patient with paraplegia using bilateral Scott-Craig knee-ankle-foot orthoses to stand without external support.[20] (See Case Example 25.1 and Case Example 25.2.)

Ambulation with a high-level prosthesis also relies on the GRF (Fig. 25.2). When an experienced prosthetic wearer walks with an optimally aligned hip disarticulation or transpelvic prosthesis, the dynamic gait is surprisingly smooth and consistent. Patients with hip disarticulation or transpelvic amputations who have sufficient balance and strength

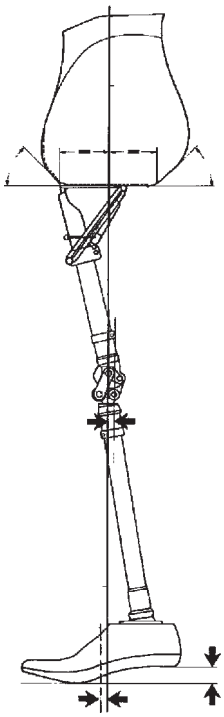


Fig. 25.1 Static balance with a high-level lower limb prosthesis is achieved when the ground reaction force passes posterior to the hip joint and anterior to the knee and ankle joints. The resulting extensor moments at the hip and knee and dorsiflexion moment at the ankle make the prosthesis stable. Mechanical stops in the prosthetic joints prevent further movement and the patient is able to stand without exertion. (Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

Case Example 25.1 A Patient With Traumatic Hip Disarticulation

J.S. is a 20-year-old man with a traumatic hip disarticulation amputation caused by a motorcycle accident 2 weeks earlier. His residual limb is healed but complicated by multiple skin grafts and insensate areas in the abdominal region from the amount of trauma. He is eager to return to college as quickly as possible to avoid having to repeat this semester's courses but must walk several blocks to various buildings on the small, hilly campus. He has a lean, athletic build and demonstrates excellent balance and strength when ambulating on his remaining limb with bilateral forearm crutches.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What additional information might be gathered to help determine J.S.'s potential to use a hip disarticulation prosthesis? How does his medical history and reason for amputation affect his rehabilitation prognosis?
- How should J.S.'s readiness to be fitted with a prosthesis be determined? What tests and measurements should be used?
- What major concerns or challenges will J.S., his prosthetist, and his rehabilitation team face in fitting his hip disarticulation prosthesis?
- What options for socket and suspension will the team likely consider for J.S., given his functional needs and prognosis?
- What factors will influence the choice of knee unit for J.S.'s prosthesis? What type of knee should be recommended? Why?
- What factors will influence the choice of a prosthetic foot for J.S.'s prosthesis? What type of foot should be recommended? Why?
- How should J.S.'s rehabilitation goals be prioritized as he begins his prosthesis training? How should his rehabilitation progress? How should the efficacy of intervention be assessed to determine how well these goals have been met?
- How should the International Classification of Function Core Set for persons following amputation be applied to this patient?

RECOMMENDATIONS

On the basis of findings during the evaluation and discussion with J.S. about his current functional needs and ultimate goals for the use of a prosthesis, the team recommends an initial endoskeletal prosthesis with a foam-lined thermoplastic socket that includes additional gel padding in the region of the tender grafted skin, a microprocessor-controlled stance and swing-control hydraulic knee, dynamic-response foot, and torque absorber. The clinical team considered first providing a less complex knee but decided against that option because it would require training to use a less responsive prosthesis followed by retraining with the microprocessor knee more appropriate for his projected functional abilities, thereby increasing the duration of his rehabilitation.

Intensive in-patient therapy should be focused on ambulation first within the parallel bars and then with his forearm crutches to facilitate J.S.'s return to campus. He will continue with outpatient therapy until his gait has matured and will likely learn to ambulate with no balance aids. When his socket no longer fits because of normal postoperative atrophy, he will receive a new custom socket and protective covering for the prosthesis but will continue to use the same functional components originally provided for as long as they remain functionally appropriate for his needs.

Case Example 25.2 A Patient With Bilateral Lower Extremity Amputations Caused by Chronic Dysvascular/Neuropathic Disease

R.W. is a 72-year-old woman who recently underwent an elective right transtibial amputation because of infection associated with diabetic neuropathy. Her residual limb is well healed and not unduly edematous, and she is eager to return to the condominium she shares with her daughter. Five years previously, R.W. underwent left transfemoral amputation after failed femoral-popliteal bypass surgery; she had been a successful full-time prosthesis wearer until she was hospitalized for her second amputation.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What additional information might be gathered to help determine R.W.'s potential to use prostheses for her new right transtibial and existing left transfemoral residual limbs? How will her medical history and reason for amputation affect her rehabilitation prognosis?
- How should R.W.'s readiness to be fitted with a transtibial prosthesis be determined? What tests and measurements should be used to make this determination?
- What major concerns or challenges will R.W., her prosthetist, and her rehabilitation team face in fitting the new transtibial prosthesis?
- Given her functional needs and prognosis, what options for socket and suspension will the team likely consider for R.W.'s new transtibial and transfemoral prostheses?
- What factors will influence the choice of knee units for R.W.'s transfemoral prosthesis? What type of knee should be recommended? Why?
- What factors will influence the choice of prosthetic feet for R.W.'s transtibial and transfemoral prostheses? What type of foot should be recommended for each prosthesis? Why?
- How should rehabilitation goals be prioritized as R.W. begins her training?
- How should rehabilitation be assessed?
- Should R.W.'s wearing schedules for her new transtibial limb be similar to or different from her that for her transfemoral limb? Why or why not?
- How should the efficacy of intervention be assessed to determine how well the goals have been met?
- How should the International Classification of Function Core Set for persons following amputation be applied to this patient?

RECOMMENDATIONS

Although her age and comorbidities make the use of two artificial limbs challenging, R.W. is a good candidate for bilateral fitting because of her motivation and proven success with a prior prosthesis. Her existing transfemoral prosthesis is well worn and no longer fitting optimally, so the rehabilitation team recommended that two new prostheses be prescribed.

The transtibial prosthesis will provide primary balance and propulsion and enable R.W. to rise from a seated position,

Case Example 25.2 A Patient With Bilateral Lower Extremity Amputations Caused by Chronic Dysvascular/Neuropathic Disease(Continued)

applying significant forces to her residual limb. Her initial transtibial prosthesis will include a roll-on locking liner for suspension and a soft insert to protect the residual limb and provide added mediolateral stability at the knee through its supracondylar contours. She will use lightweight, solid-ankle dynamic response prosthetic feet on both artificial limbs because she prefers these components and has found them both stable and functional with her unilateral prosthesis.

R.W.'s new transfemoral prosthesis will be similar to what she has successfully worn, with a roll-on locking liner for suspension and a flexible ischial containment socket within a rigid frame for weight bearing and rotational stability. The roll-on suspension permits donning from a seated position, which is particularly advantageous for people with bilateral amputations. Initially R.W. will wear an auxiliary elastic suspension belt for added security and rotational control.

R.W.'s unilateral prosthesis incorporated a single-axis knee with pneumatic swing control, but she will require a more mechanically stable design for bilateral stability. Because of cardiopulmonary restrictions and the loss of her second leg, the clinical team believes that she will not vary her walking pace as widely henceforth, so the weight of a pneumatic swing-control unit is no longer necessary. R.W. will receive a stable polycentric knee in her new prosthesis and undergo gait training for several weeks.

Although she is eager to have her endoskeletal prostheses finished with protective covers that make them appear more lifelike, this fabrication step will be deferred until after she has completed gait training and mastered the use of bilateral artificial limbs. R.W.'s prosthetist will see her periodically to reevaluate the alignment of both prostheses as her gait pattern matures, making small changes in alignment in response to her changing needs and balance. Once her gait pattern has stabilized, the final fabrication will be completed.

For traversing long distances, R.W. will also be prescribed a wheelchair with a posteriorly offset axle. Training in wheelchair transfers and mobility will also be an important part of her rehabilitation.

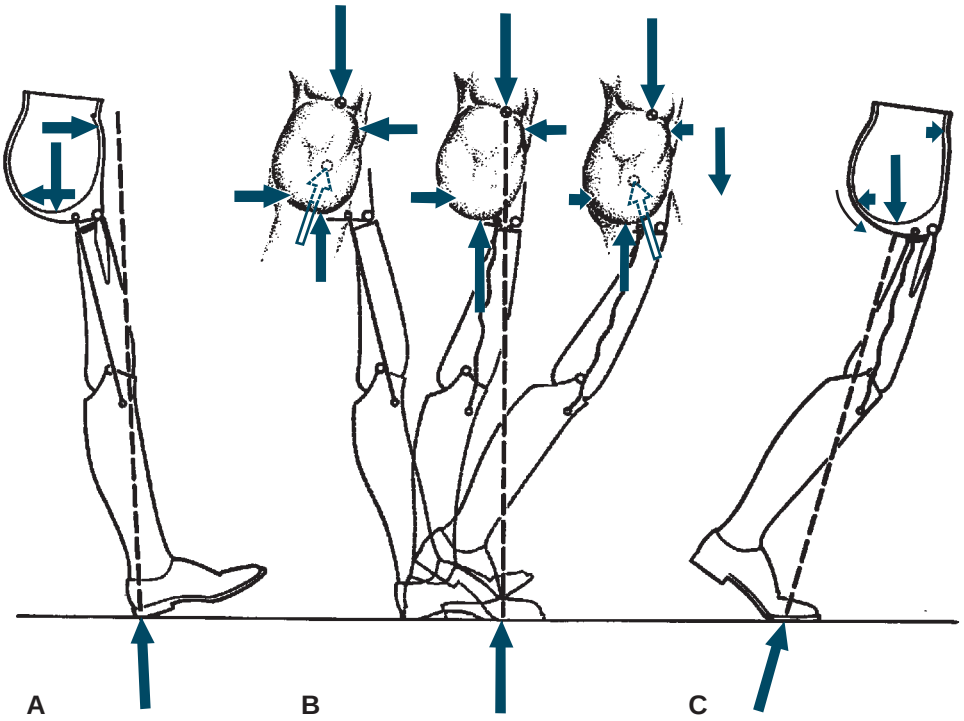


Fig. 25.2 The ground reaction force at initial contact. From loading response through midstance (A) and terminal stance (B) and just prior to preswing (C) of the gait cycle for patients using a unilateral high-level prosthesis. Once properly aligned, the prosthesis will move in a consistent, predictable fashion and permit slow but steady ambulation. The patient uses trunk motion to initiate and control prosthetic movements. (From Van der Waarde T, Michael JW. Hip disarticulation and transpelvic management: prosthetic considerations. In: Bowker JH, Michael JW, eds. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles*. 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book; 1992:539–552.)

can learn to walk without any external aids, although the use of a cane is common.

The basic functions of the GRF during ambulation with one type of high-level prosthesis can be summarized as follows: At initial contact, as the prosthetic heel touches the ground, the GRF passes posterior to the ankle axis, the heel cushion compresses, and the foot is lowered to the ground. At the same time an extension moment is created at the prosthetic knee as the GRF passes anterior to the knee joint axis (see Fig. 25.2A). By midstance, alignment stability is maximal as the GRF passes posterior to the prosthetic hip joint axis and anterior to the prosthetic knee joint axis, just as it does during quiet standing (see Fig. 25.2B). As forward progression continues into preswing, the GRF moves posterior to the knee joint axis, allowing the knee to bend passively and facilitate swing-phase foot clearance while weight is being shifted onto the opposite limb (see Fig. 25.2C).

Two major biomechanical deficits are inherent with hip disarticulation and transpelvic prostheses. First, the prosthetic limb is always fully extended at midswing because of the loss of active hip flexion. As a result, the length of the prosthesis is typically shortened slightly compared with

the length of the remaining limb to assist in toe clearance during the swing phase of gait. The consequence of this strategy, however, is a second biomechanical deficit—limb-length discrepancy.[21]

COMPONENT SELECTION

The earliest designers of prosthesis for hip disarticulation insisted on locking all prosthetic joints. Later, proponents of free-axis joints advocated the use of only basic components, such as a single-axis knee and ankle. In recent years, a strong consensus has emerged that, to meet the patient's functional needs and goals fully, components for patients with hip disarticulation and transpelvic amputations should be selected for the same reasons and with the same criteria as for those with transfemoral and transtibial amputation.[22-24] The assessment of components such as a passive microprocessor-controlled knee versus an active powered microprocessor-controlled knee for level walking is evaluated for each individual.[25]

Choosing a Prosthetic Foot

All prosthetic feet have been successfully used for high-level amputations. Nonarticulating designs are often chosen because of their dependability, durability, and low maintenance; these designs rarely require servicing as a result of wear and tear. Single-axis feet (which allow the patient to quickly attain a stable foot-flat position) are used when enhanced knee stability is a concern. Multiaxial and dynamic response designs are usually reserved for higher-activity individuals who appreciate the added mobility of such components. Microprocessor-controlled hydraulic and externally powered prosthetic foot/ankle systems such as the Biom, Elan, Triton, and Proprio are additional options to assist in gait but are generally cost-prohibitive or avoided due to their additional weight.[26]

Choosing a Prosthetic Knee Unit

The prosthetist selects a particular knee unit on the basis of the patient's functional needs. Because of the biomechanical stability of these prostheses, locked-knee designs are rarely necessary. They have two additional drawbacks: they must be unlocked before sitting and they may increase the risk of injury in the event of a fall. When stability is a primary concern, stance control or polycentric knees may be most appropriate. When properly aligned, single-axis knees also work well. The prosthetist might choose a pneumatic or hydraulic knee unit to provide fluid swing-phase control for patients who are active and want the ability to change cadence.[27,28] Most recently, quite encouraging clinical results have been reported with a microprocessor-controlled hydraulic stance- and swing-control knee, allowing active individuals to descend stairs foot over foot with a hip disarticulation prosthesis for the first time.[29,30] As with prosthetic foot/ankle systems, powered knee systems such as the Ossur Power Knee are available to provide the user with not only stance stability and free swing but also propulsion. This can drastically reduce energy expenditure during ambulation.[26]

Choosing a Prosthetic Hip Joint

The majority of patients with hip disarticulation benefit from a free-motion hip joint, although locking joints are still sometimes chosen for those with limited ambulation capabilities. Great effort has been made to provide some measure of active hip flexion motion in these prostheses because that would reduce or eliminate the key biomechanical deficits previously noted. In prior decades, modification of the hip joint by adding a coil-spring mechanism that induced hip flexion when the prosthesis was unweighted was tried with some success, but maintenance and breakage of the spring precluded widespread acceptance. More recently, a flexible carbon fiber thigh strut that functions as a leaf spring has been used clinically with good success. Initial reports suggest that this approach increases cadence and that the improved swing clearance achieved by better prosthetic hip and knee flexion eliminates the need to shorten the prosthesis.[31] The use of vertical shock-absorbing shin elements and knees with stance flexion features is also being explored, with encouraging clinical acceptance. More advanced options, such as the Ottobock Helix system, also exist, providing dynamic stability and triplanar motion control, making it easier to extend the leg and clear the toe during gait.[32,33]

Torque Absorbers

With the loss of three major biologic joints of the lower limb, a corresponding loss of the body's ability to compensate for the rotary motions inherent in gait occurs. For this reason, many prosthetists strongly recommend that a torque-absorbing device be included in these high-level prostheses. Torque absorbers typically improve both stride length and comfort by absorbing rotational forces that would otherwise be transmitted to the socket as skin shear. Incorporation of a lockable turntable above the prosthetic knee is also suggested to facilitate common daily activities such as dressing and entering a vehicle (Fig. 25.3).

ENERGY CONSUMPTION

The major unresolved drawback to prosthetic use in those with high-level amputations is the tremendous increase in effort required to control a prosthetic limb with passive joints. Walking with a hip disarticulation or transpelvic prosthesis is much like controlling a flail biologic leg. The weight of the prosthesis is a contributing factor to the energy needed to be ambulatory. The concentration and energy required to ambulate makes short-distance ambulation much more practical than distance walking for all but the most vigorous adult wearers. Researchers investigating energy consumption during prosthetic walking and the relationship to physical fitness have reported that older persons with hip disarticulation who have good physical fitness were able to use the prosthesis successfully in community settings.[34]

Most rehabilitation professionals believe that any patient with an amputation who is physically and mentally capable of using a prosthetic device should, if interested, be fitted with an initial prosthesis. This recommendation applies particularly to those with high-level amputations who may feel "cheated" and become depressed if their clinical teams do not allow them to try using a prosthesis. Although patients may opt not to use the prosthesis for some activities, having the device available as a tool is worthwhile. This gives the user the ability to employ it situationally as he or she

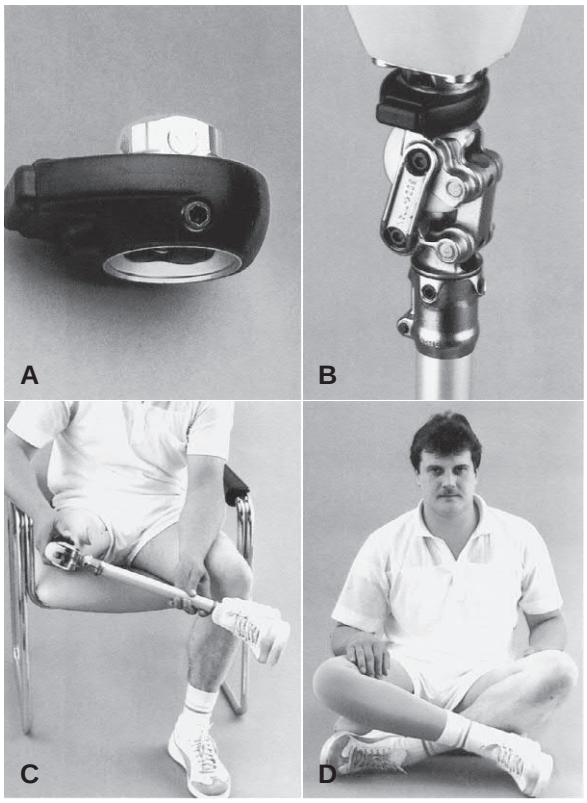


Fig. 25.3 A lockable turntable (A) positioned in the prosthesis above the prosthetic knee (B) makes dressing, entering a vehicle, and similar daily tasks much easier for individuals with high-level amputation (C and D). A torsion adapter absorbs the torque forces generated during gait and decreases the stress on both the patient's skin and the prosthetic components. Such ancillary components should always be considered for patients with high-level amputations. (Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

may. These situations can include standing for long periods while they are using their hands for manual tasks or social situations where they wish to appear symmetric or without crutches. Younger patients with hip disarticulation surgery due to trauma are capable to intensive rehabilitation training and proficient users of prosthetic devices.[35]

SOCKET DESIGN

A variety of socket designs have been described in the clinical literature. The most critical factors for their successful use are careful fitting and secure suspension regardless of which socket design is selected. For patients with hip disarticulation, encapsulation of the ascending pubic ramus may add stability, although not every patient is able to tolerate a proximal trim line in the perineum. Suspension is achieved by carefully contouring the socket just proximal to the iliac crests whenever possible. The socket should provide stability from front to back, side to side, and top to bottom. The interior of the hip disarticulation socket is fabricated from either flexible silicone rubber (Fig. 25.4A) or thermoplastic material (see Fig. 25.4B). The socket contour prevents a pistoning action within the socket. The socket is aligned with the knee and foot components (see Fig. 25.4C). When the patient is obese or has no ileum, shoulder straps may be necessary to minimize swing-phase pistoning of the prosthesis.

Custom silicone designs and the Martin Bionics Bikini Socket™ (available at martinbionics.com) (Fig. 25.5) are newer options that show considerable promise.

The transpelvic socket must fully enclose the gluteal fold and perineal tissues and completely contain the soft tissues on the amputated side. Full enclosure provides comfortable weight bearing on the residual tissues despite the absence of a hemipelvis. Failure to contain the transpelvic residuum adequately results in obvious protrusion where the trim lines are insufficient. Prosthetists modify the positive plaster model of the transpelvic residuum to incorporate a diagonally directed compressive force in the socket design in order to support and contain transpelvic tissues and eliminate the risk of perineal shear and tissue breakdown.

For patients with translumbar amputations, weight bearing is achieved with a combination of soft tissue compression and thoracic rib support. Despite the loss of more than half of the body mass in this amputation, weight-bearing tolerance is better than might be expected. Designs that allow the patient to vary the compression by adjustable straps are often useful.

Patients with translumbar amputations require a socket for effective seating and wheeled mobility. Many patients with translumbar amputations successfully progress to ambulation for short distances with a prosthesis and may choose to wear prosthetic limbs to enhance their cosmetic appearance and self-image. Long-term follow-up demonstrates positive outcomes; return to work or school is usually a realistic goal. For most patients, polycentric knees provide sufficient stability for the household ambulation typical of this population, making locking joints unnecessary. The development of hip-knee-ankle systems such as the Helix 3D system from Ottobock (which incorporates a microprocessor knee and ankle systems to dynamically react to the patient's gait and thus improve efficiency and safety) have dramatically improved the quality of gait obtainable by persons with high-level amputation. However, there cost may be prohibitive; they are generally reserved for those with veterans or worker's compensation insurance coverage.[32]

REHABILITATION OUTCOMES AFTER HIGH-LEVEL AMPUTATION

Despite the obvious challenges that face patients with high-level amputations, a substantial percentage are able to manage a prosthetic device with appropriate training and long-term follow-up. Although the rate of prosthesis use varies, the trend is toward increasing functional use of a prosthesis.[36,37] The use of a multidisciplinary team approach and fitting by an experienced prosthetist are believed to enhance the likelihood of success and to improve functional outcomes. In the rehabilitation of persons with lower extremity amputations, a primary functional goal is ambulation with a prosthetic device. Because these devices are very expensive and lower extremity amputations often occur in the elderly, insurance gatekeepers are faced with the task of determining who would best benefit from prosthetic equipment and how to best utilize the available resources. There is a need to assess amputees regarding the potential for use versus nonuse of the prosthetic equipment ordered.[38]

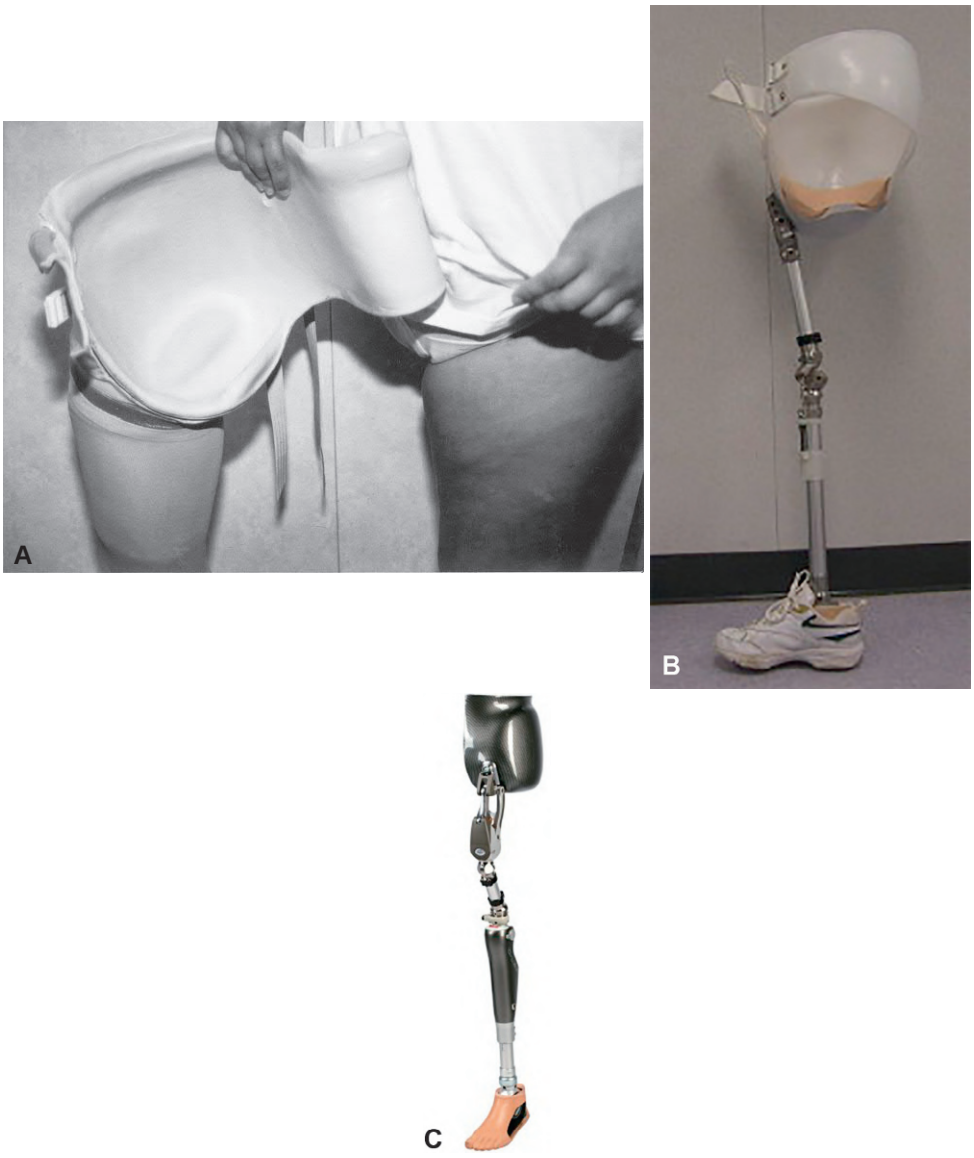


Fig. 25.4 (A) The interior of a hip disarticulation socket fabricated from flexible silicone rubber. Note the contouring of the proximal brim to encase the crest of the ileum. (B) Hip disarticulation thermoplastic socket. (C) Hip disarticulation prosthesis with components: socket, hip joint, upper pylon, rotator, knee joint, lower pylon, and foot. (A, From Michael JW. Component selection criteria: lower limb disarticulations. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1988;12(3):99–108. B, From Kelly BM, Spires MC, Restrepo JA. Orthotic and prosthetic prescriptions for today and tomorrow. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2007;18(4):785–858, Copyright © 2007 Elsevier Inc. C, Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

Fig. 25.5 The Martin Bionics Bikini Socket™ (martinbionics.com) has been on the market since about 2005, and has become the standard of care on an international basis for hip disarticulation and hemipelvectomy level users, with thousands of amputees around the world using it. Its an incredible technology. At ⅓ the size and ⅓ the weight of a conventional socket, it offers exceptional stability, control and comfort, and overcomes many of the issues surrounding antiquated conventional hip level sockets. (www.martinbionics.com).

In the United States in 1995, Medicare established K levels or Medicare Functional Classification Levels as a structured approach to quantifying need and potential benefit of prosthetic devices for patients after lower limb amputation. Today the Medicate K Levels are widely used to determine the predictability of persons with amputations to be effective users of prosthetic equipment (Table 25.1).[39]

Detailed information on the rehabilitation of persons with amputations is covered in Chapter 26. For persons who have undergone hemipelvectomy, hip disarticulation, or multiple amputations, the rehabilitation process varies based on the precipitating events that led to the limb loss—for example, in the instance of limb loss due to IEDs, burn care may be the priority.[13] The outcomes vary based on health-related circumstances, the patient's age, and his or her motivating factors. Using the International Classification of Function model, persons with high-level amputations should be assessed and supported in achieving the highest functional levels possible.[40]

Table 25.1 Medicare Functional Classification Levels

Level 0	Does not have the ability or potential to ambulate or transfer safely with or without assistance; a prosthesis does not enhance quality of life or mobility
Level 1	Has the ability or potential to use a prosthesis for transfers or ambulation on level surfaces at fixed cadence; typical of limited and unlimited household ambulators
Level 2	Has the ability or potential for ambulation with the ability to traverse low-level environmental barriers such as curbs, stairs, or uneven surfaces; typical of the limited community ambulator
Level 3	Has the ability or potential for ambulation with variable cadence; typical of the community ambulator who has the ability to traverse most environmental barriers and may have vocational, therapeutic, or exercise activity that demands utilization of a prosthesis beyond simple locomotion
Level 4	Has the ability or potential for ambulation that exceeds basic ambulation skills, exhibiting high-impact, stress, or energy levels; typical of the demands of the child, active adult, or athlete

From https://www.amputee-coalition.org/resources/your-k-level/.

Bilateral Lower Limb Loss

The loss of both lower limbs complicates the rehabilitation process, especially if both limbs are lost simultaneously. In North America, simultaneous bilateral loss is infrequent; such cases are typically the result of traumatic transportation or industrial accidents or electrocution. In the developing world, simultaneous limb loss is more frequent; in areas of armed conflict and postwar zones, roadside bombs, and land mines are major causes.[41,42] Fortunately most patients with traumatic amputations are healthy and strong and generally have a good prognosis for the successful use of prostheses.

In the United States the major cause of bilateral lower extremity limb loss is dysvascular disease. The National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) is the principal source of information on the health of Americans and is one of the major data collection programs of the National Center for Health Statistics, which is part of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). The 1996 NHIS includes the most current data base with the most comprehensive data on amputation and persons living with limb loss.[43] The CDC reports the number of hospital discharges for nontraumatic lower extremity amputation; the number of cases of diabetes (listed as a discharge diagnosis) increased from 45,000 in 1991 to 86,000 in 1996, when they peaked; they then decreased to 66,000 in 2006. From 1988 to 2006, the number of diabetes discharges again increased by 20%.[4] When vascular disease affects both limbs, as is often the case, patients with single dysvascular amputations face a significant risk of eventual bilateral limb loss. After the amputation of a single lower limb, the chance that the contralateral limb will also be lost over the following 2 to 3 years has been reported to be as high as 50%.[44] Clinical follow-up suggests that successful use of a unilateral prosthesis increases the likelihood of success with bilateral artificial limbs. For this reason early fitting after initial amputation is strongly advocated, even when amputation of the opposite limb seems imminent.

The rehabilitation of persons with bilateral lower extremity limb loss is similar to the rehabilitation of persons with unilateral amputation.[45] One major difference is that using two artificial limbs is physically more difficult; thus the pace of advancement is slower and treatment must be individualized according to the patient's strength, balance, and ability. Breaking down complex skills into small incremental tasks that can be more readily mastered is generally useful. Without the benefit of a sound limb, patients with bilateral loss can be expected to walk slowly and cautiously, often with a relatively wide-based gait that maximizes their sense of balance. Bilateral transfemoral amputees face even greater energy demands and lower rates of full-time prosthetic use for functional ambulation.[14]

The use of balance aids such as canes is common but not universal in the gait training and mobility rehabilitation process for persons with bilateral amputations. Environmental barriers such as ramps, hills, irregular surfaces, and curbs or stairs present special challenges that must be identified and overcome. The ability to sit, rise from a chair, fall in a controlled manner, and recover from a fall are all important tasks to be mastered. Transfer with and without artificial limbs is also an important skill to foster independence. Persons with bilateral lower limb amputations require a wheelchair for mobility for independent toileting in the night and for times when the prosthetic legs need repair.

The rehabilitation of persons with bilateral lower limb amputations occurs in various phases, including a preoperative phase if time permits, an immediate postoperative phase, and an acute rehabilitation phase. The rehabilitation process is patient-centered and should be individualized for each one, taking into account his or her physical condition, biomechanical loss, and need for a prosthesis. The reason for the amputation influences the pace and level of rehabilitation. An otherwise healthy individual who sustained traumatic limb loss may be able to advance rapidly unless there is skin trauma on the residual limb. Early fitting is a critical factor in attaining a long-term successful outcome.[46]

ENERGY COST

The effort required to use a unilateral prosthesis increases in direct proportion to the level of amputation: the longer the residual limb, the lower the energy cost of walking with a prosthesis.[47] Saving as much functional limb length as possible is therefore an axiom in amputation surgery. Although preservation of the anatomic knee joint is important for patients with unilateral amputations, it is a critical consideration in cases of bilateral limb loss. When at least one biologic knee joint remains, the chances for practical ambulation increase significantly.

In general patients with dysvascular amputations have lower energy reserves and expend more effort in walking than do those with traumatic amputations.[38] Long-term use of bilateral transfemoral prostheses is uncommon but not impossible for elderly patients with dysvascular amputations. In contrast, a significant number of those with traumatic bilateral transfemoral amputations successfully use prostheses long term.[48] Patients with bilateral transtibial amputations tend to do well with prostheses regardless of the reason for the amputation. Interestingly, bilateral transtibial prostheses require less effort than a unilateral transfemoral prosthesis; this finding emphasizes the importance of retaining biologic knee function whenever possible.

COMPONENT SELECTION

The selection of components for patients with bilateral lower limb amputations is made by the same guidelines as for unilateral limb loss. There are no unique or distinct components specifically designed or intended for use in bilateral prostheses. The prosthetist should consider both prostheses together rather than simply generate a "right-side" and a "left-side" prescription recommendation. Prosthetists generally recommend that the same ankle-foot device be used on both sides so that gait mechanics will be consistent, but this is not an absolute necessity. Some patients ambulate best with different prosthetic feet depending on the level of their amputations, the length and condition of their residual limbs, the nature of their preferred activities, and other individual characteristics.

The range of physical differences between two patients with bilateral lower limb loss makes each patient and each prosthetic fitting a unique challenge. During the dynamic alignment procedure, a brief clinical trial with the recommended components is often helpful in confirming suitability for a specific individual before the prescription details are finalized. This trial is particularly helpful for experienced ambulators, who commonly develop strong preferences for specific components after walking with them for many years.

Bilateral Transtibial Amputations

In North America, a solid-ankle cushion-heel prosthetic foot is often chosen for patients with bilateral transtibial amputation because such feet offer predictable standing balance. Most patients with bilateral amputation are concerned about falling backward. The prosthetist often chooses to use a slightly stiffer heel resistance to minimize the risk of backward falls. When concern about forward falls also exists, the prosthetist may also choose to use a slightly stiffer keel to offer additional resistance to falling forward. Patients classified as limited ambulators, those with poor postural responses, and those who walk with a very slow cadence often find this approach useful.

Active patients walk well with elastic-keel and dynamic-response feet or with multiaxial designs as long as they have sufficient strength and postural responses to manage these flexible components. Theoretically single-axis feet are designed to generate an abrupt hyperextension moment at midstance, which loads the cruciate ligaments of the residual limb. In practice there is little evidence that this loading is harmful; some patients with bilateral transtibial amputations prefer single-axis feet, choosing them over solid-ankle or dynamic-response designs. Patient preference is an important consideration in prosthetic prescription; preference is even more critical for patients with bilateral amputation who literally have no "good foot" to stand on other than the feet on the prosthetic devices. If a patient expresses definite dissatisfaction with a particular foot during the fitting process, an alternative component should be tried before proceeding further.

The consideration of ancillary components, such as torque absorbers or shock-absorbing pylons, is important for all patients with bilateral amputations. Because such patients must bear all their body weight on prosthetic devices all the time, components that increase comfort or protect the skin are particularly appropriate. Lessening the weight of the prostheses, particularly at the ankle-foot area, is also important, because lighter-weight prostheses are easier to control and they are more likely to be accepted. Whenever possible, heavier components should be placed as close to the socket as possible.

Bilateral Transfemoral Amputation

Postural responses are compromised in patients with bilateral transfemoral amputations because of the loss of both anatomic ankles and knees. For this reason, a primary goal of prosthetic prescription is stability in the stance phase of gait. One of the most effective prosthetic components for stance-phase stability during level walking is a polycentric knee unit. For those patients who have the potential to walk at varying speeds, the addition of fluid swing-phase control is recommended. Hydraulic stance- and swing-control units are also quite successful for this population. In recent years, microprocessor-controlled hydraulic knees offering both stance- and swing-phase control have been well received clinically, and many experts believe that this technology offers more reliable stability and better mobility under real-world conditions than strictly mechanical knee mechanisms. The risk of injury in a fall is greater if locking or stance-control knees are used in both prostheses. For patients with significant stability issues, such a knee may be used on one side. Because single-axis knees are stabilized by muscle control and postural responses at the hip, older adults with dysvascular amputations often find bilateral single-axis knees difficult to use safely. Bilateral single-axis knees may be appropriate for small children because their short stature reduces the balance required to manage adult-size components.

Ankle-foot components that emphasize stability and standing balances are typical for the group with bilateral limb loss. Solid-ankle designs predominate. Articulating designs are used less often; only individuals with very long transfemoral residual limbs and good muscle strength are typically able to control the added mobility provided by articulating ankle components. Many patients with bilateral transfemoral amputations use crutches or canes to assist with balance and postural control. Single-axis or multiaxial feet become easier to control if the patient leans forward slightly, shifting the center of gravity forward, so that the weight line falls anterior to the ankle axis at all times, thus eliminating the risk of falling backward.

Ancillary components, such as torque absorbers, often make walking easier and more comfortable for patients with bilateral transfemoral amputations. There is some evidence that including components that permit controlled transverse rotation improves the gait kinematics of patients who wear two lower limb prostheses. Locking rotation devices make many activities of daily living easier to accomplish. Because the weight of such ancillary components must be considered, the perception of the artificial limb feeling heavy is minimized if the devices are positioned as far proximally within the prosthesis as possible.

Transfemoral and Transtibial Amputation

For patients with one transfemoral and one transtibial amputation, the preservation of one biologic knee makes

prosthetic use much easier and successful ambulation more likely. For most patients, the transtibial side is the propulsive and balance limb and the transfemoral side supplements these functions. On the basis of these functional differences, the prosthetist may choose to use different prosthetic feet. When the transfemoral amputation is relatively short, for example, a single-axis foot and stance control knee might be recommended for the transfemoral prosthesis whereas a dynamic response foot might be used in the transtibial prosthesis.

SOCKET DESIGNS AND SUSPENSION

The person with bilateral lower limb loss is constantly bearing full weight on artificial limbs while walking or standing. All options to increase skin protection and comfort should be actively considered, and suspension must be as secure as possible. A soft insert and flexible sockets may be used to enhance comfort during wear and reduce the likelihood that shear forces will be problematic for the skin. Suction and/or elevated vacuum suspension—with silicone sleeves or inserts as necessary—minimize pistoning during swing and should be considered for the majority of patients with bilateral amputation.

Cotton or wool prosthetic socks are often used as an interface between the residual limbs and the sockets when suction suspension is not feasible. In that event, supracondylar wedge or cuff suspensions are typically used in transtibial prostheses; Silesian belts are often used in transfemoral designs. Because most patients with bilateral amputations use a pair of prostheses, suspension belts are usually integrated into a single assembly. Because thigh corsets with metal side joints, hip joints, pelvic bands, and waist belts can be cumbersome for donning and doffing, they are typically avoided unless absolutely necessary.

Ischial containment sockets are as effective for patients with bilateral amputation at the transfemoral level (of one or both limbs) as they are for patients with a single transfemoral amputation. Patients who have previously worn a quadrilateral transfemoral socket and those who are limited ambulators may be satisfied with a traditional quadrilateral design. Total contact of the residual limb in the socket is important for both ischial containment and quadrilateral socket skin integrity.

The loss of both feet and both knees makes the use of bilateral transfemoral prostheses quite challenging. For many adults with acquired limb losses, an initial fitting with sockets attached to special rocker platforms may be advocated to facilitate initial gait training. These "stubbies" lower the wearer's center of gravity considerably and therefore require less energy and balance than full-length prosthetic limbs, giving the patient the best chance for successful ambulation (Fig. 25.6). Once the patient is able to balance effectively on the stubbies, the prostheses can be converted to use artificial feet with solid pylons, which are gradually lengthened to increase the height of the prostheses. If the patient is able to manage full-length prostheses, prosthetic knees are incorporated and a definitive prosthesis with full components is provided.

Not all patients with bilateral transfemoral amputation choose to pursue ambulation with prostheses. Some are unable to build the necessary muscle strength or postural control for a safe gait. Others find the energy cost of ambulation with prostheses excessive. In these cases, patients choose wheelchair mobility as a much less strenuous means of mobility and willingly adopt wheelchair use for the independence it provides.

Fig. 25.6 A pair of shortened prostheses, sometimes called *stubbies*, for early gait training in patients with bilateral traumatic transfemoral amputations. In these prostheses, patients can develop postural control without having to worry about the stability of prosthetic knee units. (From Devinuwara K, Dworak-Kula A, O'Connor RJ. Rehabilitation and prosthetics post-amputation. *Orthop Trauma*. 2018;32(4):234–240. Copyright © 2018. Elsevier.)

Many patients with bilateral transfemoral amputations find a wheelchair most practical for long-distance mobility and use their prosthetic limbs for walking short to moderate distances at home and work. Some patients accept the stubbies for long-term use, particularly if these devices allow them to remain independent in the home setting. Others choose to use their stubbies at home because they take less effort, but they wear full prostheses in public.

Summary

Individuals with high-level or bilateral lower limb amputations are rare in the developed world. In North America, they are believed to represent fewer than 5% of all persons with amputations. Given these statistics, most prosthetists and therapists have limited opportunity to work with patients with such significant levels of limb loss. Although successful prosthetic training and rehabilitation for these patients are challenging, a large body of clinical information about managing such cases is available in the literature. This chapter highlights the key principles involved in rehabilitation of the person with high-level or bilateral lower limb amputations.

Surgical technique during the amputation largely determines the potential for long-term ambulation. Gentle handling of soft tissues and careful preservation of all functional joints and bone lengths are essential. Anchoring functioning muscles to bone (myodesis) at their normal resting length is strongly encouraged whenever possible.

The socket design and suspension methods chosen for patients with high-level or bilateral amputations should incorporate strategies to protect the skin and maximize patient comfort, especially for individuals with bilateral amputations. Components reflect each individual's need for stability and responsiveness at the ankle-foot, knee, or hip joint level. Ancillary components to make the prosthesis more comfortable and easier to manage are advocated.

Although patients with bilateral transfemoral amputation caused by vascular disease often have difficulty mastering dual prosthetic devices, long-term use of functional prostheses is a realistic goal for patients with traumatic or tumor-related amputation who are otherwise healthy. With appropriate fitting and rehabilitation, many patients with hip disarticulation and transpelvic amputations continue to use their prostheses definitively. Even patients with translumbar amputation are able to return to productive education or work activities with an appropriate prosthesis for sitting or limited ambulation.

Despite the obvious physical and psychological challenges faced by patients with high-level or bilateral lower limb amputations, prosthetic rehabilitation must always be considered and is often successful, especially when offered by an experienced multidisciplinary team in a supportive setting. Although the sequelae from amputations of this magnitude present significant challenges, advances in surgical technique, prosthetic design and components, and rehabilitation contribute to successful outcomes for patients with high-level and bilateral amputations.

References

1. Hermes LM. Military lower extremity amputee rehabilitation. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2002;13(1):45–65.
2. Li Y, Burros NR, Gregg EW, Albright A, Geiss LS. Declining Rates of Hospitalization for Nontraumatic Lower-Extremity Amputation in the Diabetic Population Aged 40 Years or Older: U.S. 1988-2008. *Diabetes Care.* 2012 Feb;35(2):273–277.
3. Monteiro-Soares M, Martins-Mendes D, Vaz-Carneiro A, Dinis-Ribeiro M. Lower-limb amputation following foot ulcers in patients with diabetes: classification systems, external validation and comparative analysis. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev.* Jul 2015;31(5):515–529.
4. Zeigler-Graham K, Mackenzie EJ, Ephraim PL, et al. Estimating the prevalence of limb loss in US 2005–2050. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89(2):422–429.
5. Dillinger TR, Pezzin LE, Mackenzie EJ. Limb amputation and limb deficiency; epidemiology and recent trends in US. *South Med J.* 2002;95 (8):875–883.
6. Group TG. Epidemiology of lower extremity amputation in centers in Europe, North America, and East Asia. The global lower extremity amputation group. *Br J Surg.* 2000;87(3):328–337.
7. Narres M, Kvitkina T, Claessen H, Droste S, Schuster B, Morbach S, et al. Incidence of lower extremity amputations in the diabetic compared with the non-diabetic population: A systematic review. *PLoSONE.* 2017;12(8). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0182081.
8. DeBruyne Nese F. *American War and Military Operations Casualties: Lists and Statistics.* https://fas.org/sgp/crs/natsec/RL32492.pdf; April 2017. Accessed 8 January 2018.
9. Schnall BL, Baum BS, Andrews AM. Gait characteristics of a soldier with a traumatic hip disarticulation. *Phys Ther.* 2008;88(12): 1568–1577.
10. Ferrapie AL, Brunel P, Besse W, et al. Lower limb proximal amputation for a tumor: retrospective study of 12 patients. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2003;27(3):179–185.
11. Katrak P, O'Connor B, Woodgate I. Rehabilitation after total femur replacement: a report of 2 cases. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2003;84(7): 1080–1084.
12. Belthur MV, Grimer RJ, Suneja R, et al. Extensible endoprosthesis for bone tumors of the proximal femur in children. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2003;32(2):230–235.
13. Healey AJ, Tai N. Traumatic amputation—a contemporary approach. *Trauma.* 2009;11:177–187.
14. Davidson JH, Jones LE, Cornet J, et al. Management of the multiple limb amputee. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2002;24(13):688–699.
15. Madsen UR, Hommel A, Berthelsen CB, Bååth C. Systematic review describing the effect of early mobilisation after dysvascular major lower limb amputations. *Journal of Clinical Nursing.* 2017;26(21):3286–3297.
16. Hordacre B, Birks V, Quinn S, Barr C, Patritt BL, Crotty M. *Physiotherapy Rehabilitation for Individuals with Lower Limb Amputation: A 15-Year Clinical Series*; June 2012: 70–80. [wileyonlinelibrary.com]. https://doi.org/10.1002/pri.1529.
17. McLaurin CA. The evolution of the Canadian-type hip disarticulation prosthesis. *Artif Limbs.* 1957;4:22–28.
18. Radcliffe CW. Biomechanics of the Canadian-type hip disarticulation prosthesis. *Artif Limbs.* 1957;4:29–38.
19. Stark G. Overview of the hip disarticulation prosthesis. *JPO J Pract Orthod.* 2001;13(2):50–53.
20. Lehmann JR, Wareen CG, Craig-Scott Hertling D. orthosis: a biomechanical and functional evaluation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1976; 57(9):438–442.
21. Van der Waarde T, Michael JW. Hip disarticulation and tran¬spelvic management: prosthetic considerations. In: Bowker JH, Michael JW, eds. *Atlas of Limb Prosthetics: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles.* 2nd ed St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book; 1992:539–552. reprinted 2002.
22. Michael JW. Component selection criteria: lower limb disarticulations. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1988;12(3):99–108.
23. Michael JW. Prosthetic knee mechanisms. *Phys Med Rehabil State Art Rev.* 1994;8(1):147–164.
24. Ludwigs E, Dipl-Ing AK, Wüstefeld D. Evaluation of the Benefits of a New Prosthetic Hip Joint System in Activities of Daily Function in Patients after Hip Disarticulation or Hemipelvectomy. *Journal of Prosthetics & Orthotics (JPO).* 2013;25(3):118–125.
25. Creylman V, Knippels I, Janssen P, Biesbrouck E, Lechler K, Peeraer L. Assessment of transfemoral amputees using a passive microprocessor-controlled knee versus an active powered microprocessor-controlled knee for level walking. *BioMed Eng OnLine.* 2016;15(Suppl 3):142.
26. Windrich M, Grimmer M, Christ O, Rinderknecht S, Beckerle P. Active lower limb prosthetics: a systematic review of design issues and solutions. *BioMed Eng OnLine.* 2016;15(Suppl 3):140.
27. Klute GK, Berge JS, Biggs W, Pongnumkul S, Popovic Z, Curless B. Vacuum-assisted socket suspension compared with pin suspension for lower extremity amputees: effect on fit, activity, and limb volume. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2011;92(10):1570–1575.
28. Michael JW. Prosthetic knee mechanisms. *Phys Med Rehabil State Art Rev.* 1994;8(1):147–164.
29. Stinus H. Biomechanics and evaluation of the microprocessor controlled C-leg exoprosthesis knee joint. *Z Orthop Ihre Grenzgeb.* 2000;138(3):728–782.
30. Seelena HMA, Hemmena B, Schmeetsa AJ, Amentb AJHA, Eversb SMAA. Costs and consequences of a prosthesis with an electronically stance and swing phase controlled knee joint. *Technology and Disability.* 2009;21:25–34.
31. Kralovec M, Houdek M, Andrews K, Shives T, Rose P, Sim F. Prosthetic Rehabilitation After Hip Disarticulation or Hemipelvectomy. *American Journal of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation.* 2015;94(12):1035–1040.
32. l2013 Ludwigs E, Kannenberg A, Wüstefeld D. Evaluation of the Benefits of a New Prosthetic Hip Joint System in Activities of Daily Function in Patients after Hip Disarticulation or Hemipelvectomy. *Journal of Prosthetics & Orthotics (JPO).* 2013;25(3):118–125.
33. Nelson LM, Carbone N. Functional Outcome Measurements of a Veteran With a Hip Disarticulation Using a Helix 3D Hip Joint: A Case Report. *Journal of Prosthetics & Orthotics (JPO).* 2011;23(1):21–26.
34. Chin T, Kuruda R, Akisue T, Iguch T, Kurosaka M. Energy consumption during prosthetic walking and physical fitness in older hip disarticulation amputees. *JRRD.* 2012;49(8):1255–1260.
35. Schnall BL, Baum BS, Andrews AM. Gait Characteristics of a Soldier With a Traumatic Hip Disarticulation. *Phys Ther.* 2008;88(12): 1568–1577.
36. Hordacre B, Birks V, Quinn S, Barr C, Patritti BL, Crotty M. Physiotherapy Rehabilitation for Individuals with Lower Limb Amputation: A 15-Year Clinical Series. *Physiother Res Int.* 2013;18:70–80.

37. Melcer T, Pyo J, Walker J. et al. Rehabilitation and multiple limb amputations: A clinical report of patients injured in combat. *JRRD*. 2016;53(6):1045–1060.
38. Roffman CE, Buchanan J, Allison GT. Locomotor Performance During Rehabilitation of People With Lower Limb Amputation and Prosthetic Nonuse 12 Months After Discharge. *Phys Ther*. 2016;96(7): 985–994.
39. K-Levels. https://www.ottobockus.com/therapy/resources-for-prosthetics/what-are-k-levels.html. Accessed 31 May 2018.
40. Deathe AB, Wolfe D, Devlin M, Hebert J, Miller W, Pallaveshi L. Selection of outcome measures in lower extremity amputation rehabilitation: ICF activities. *Disability & Rehabilitation.* 2009;31 (18):1455–1473.
41. Korver AJH. Amputees in a hospital of the International Committee of the Red Cross. *Injury.* 1993;24(9):607–609.
42. Shahriar SH, Masumi M, Edjtehadi F, et al. Cardiovascular risk factors among males with war-related bilateral lower limb amputation. *Mil Med.* 2009;174(10):1108–1112.
43. Adams P, Hendershot G, Marano M. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/National Center for Health Statistics. In: *Current estimates from the National Health Interview Survey, 1996. Vital Health Stat 10*; 1999:1–203. 200.
44. Amputee Coalition. https://www.amputee-coalition.org/limb-loss-resource-center/resources-filtered/resources-by-topic/limb-loss-statistics/limb-loss-statistics/.
45. Marzoug EA, Landham TL, Dance C, Bamj AN. Better practical evaluation for lower limb amputees. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2003;25(18): 1071–1074.
46. Webster JB, Hakimi KN, Williams RM, Turner AP, Novell DC, Czemieck JM. Prosthetic fitting, use, and satisfaction following lower-limb amputation: A prospective study. *JRRD*. 2012;49(10) 1493–15.
47. Traballesi M, Porcacchia P, Averna T, Brunelli S. Energy cost of walking measurements in subjects with lower limb amputations: a comparison study between floor and treadmill test. *Gait Posture.* 2008;27(1):70–75.
48. Su P-F, Gard SA, Lipschutz RD, Kuiken TA. Gait characteristics of persons with bilateral transtibial amputations. *JRRD*. 2007;44(4): 491–502.

26 Early Rehabilitation in Lower Extremity Dysvascular Amputation☆

JULIE D. RIES and KELLY J. NEGLEY

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Organize each component of a comprehensive physical therapy examination for the individual with transtibial or transfemoral amputation and synthesize this information.
2. Establish diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment plan of care for rehabilitation.
3. Implement a well-defined and focused treatment plan that addresses the needs of the individual with transtibial or transfemoral amputation as related to participation restrictions, activity limitations, and impairments.
4. Prioritize issues about which transtibial or transfemoral amputees and their caregivers must be educated and execute a reasonable education plan.
5. Identify appropriate outcome measures for use with transtibial or transfemoral amputees.
6. Provide a justification for the clinical decision making associated with each phase of the comprehensive physical therapy rehabilitation of dysvascular amputees.

Persons who have undergone transtibial or transfemoral amputations may approach rehabilitation with a sense of expectancy, excitement, and, often, apprehension. They may be relieved to have healed and curious about the prostheses that they are about to receive. They may be anxious to commence their rehabilitation and may have realistic or not-so-realistic expectations. To facilitate optimal rehabilitation outcomes, the physical therapist must consider the amputee's goals, physical abilities, and mobility needs along with his or her previous functional level. This chapter explores the key components of successful rehabilitation for dysvascular transtibial or transfemoral amputees. It presents the components of a thorough examination and discusses the evaluation process resulting in a diagnosis and prognosis.[1] The chapter also provides a range of interventions for persons with new transtibial or transfemoral amputations, from early physical therapy (PT) treatment ideas that focus on preparing the limb for the use of a prosthesis and building tolerance to prosthesis wear to more functionally oriented activities aimed at ensuring safety and efficiency in gait as well as the development of functional mobility skills. As the amputee masters these skills, interventions progress to more complex, higher-level bipedal activities. With many individuals, vocational, leisure, and even sporting activities can be addressed to facilitate the return to a productive and enjoyable life. This chapter focuses primarily on strategies for initial and intermediate-level rehabilitation, including a short discussion of more advanced training. Anticipated functional outcomes for prosthesis users who have undergone a transtibial or transfemoral amputation are addressed.

Evidence-based practice requires the integration of best research evidence, clinical expertise, and the patient's values.[2] Although more research is needed to inform rehabilitation decisions for lower extremity dysvascular amputees,[3] evidence does support that those who participate in more intensive postamputation rehabilitation—especially in collaborative interdisciplinary care—benefit from these programs.[4–7] Changes in reimbursement for the provision of health care services have necessitated a transition in how postamputation rehab ilitation care is provided in the United States.[8] Preeducation and early training for prosthesis wear, which historically was performed in the inpatient rehabilitation environment, is now more often provided in home-care or outpatient clinics, with stringent limits to the number of PT visits. It is imperative that therapists working with this population have an excellent understanding of the "big picture" progression of care, the need for appropriately intensive training, and a mechanism for follow-up over time. The goal of this chapter is to provide a foundation for evidence-based practice in the management of dysvascular transtibial or transfemoral amputees regardless of the practice setting.

Components of the Physical Therapy Examination

Effective PT management for amputees begins with a thorough and comprehensive initial examination. In the PT examination, the physical therapist must obtain the patient's history,

☆The authors extend appreciation to Victor Vaughan, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

conduct a systems review, administer tests, and take measures to obtain baseline data. Ideally, the data collected will represent all levels of the World Health Organization's International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health (ICF) model,[9] including impairments, activity limitations, and especially participation restrictions (e.g., What would the individual like to be able to do that he or she cannot do currently?), with attention to contextual factors (environmental and personal modifiers). The PT examination may occur before amputation, immediately following amputation, at the time the prosthesis is fitted, or after the individual has already obtained his or her prosthesis; it may also occur in any practice setting.

PATIENT'S HISTORY

The patient's history comprises the health-related, personal, and social data that give context to the individual's current situation and reveals the individual's desires and expectations. The person's perspective of his or her illness, functional limitations, and disability has a powerful influence on the rehabilitation process and the person's adaptation to limb loss.[10] In fact, components of a positive outlook—such as optimism and hopefulness—are associated with constructive coping, adjustment to amputation, and better rehabilitation outcome.[11,12]

A number of important areas must be explored while the patient's history is being taken. Although all areas provide important information, several are integral to the establishment of the diagnosis and treatment plan. The person's general health status may affect his or her overall health perceptions, physical functions, psychologic functions, role, and social functions. Discussion of the current condition/chief complaint gives the therapist a sense of the individual's concerns, previous interventions, and course of events. It is important to understand the individual's goals and aspirations and to gauge whether they appear to be over- or under-ambitious. The therapist can then address these issues, with education and interaction with peer mentors as possible interventions.

The interview process provides valuable insights about the person's communication ability, emotional status, cognitive abilities, preferred coping strategies, insight into the rehabilitation process, and usual learning style as well as the availability of emotional and instrumental support systems (assistance with activities of daily living [ADLs]). Information about the person's preamputation and/or preprosthetic level of activity and mobility is helpful in establishing a realistic prognosis. Amputees who are functionally ambulatory prior to and/or immediately following amputation surgery are more likely to recover at least a modest degree of ambulation ability with a prosthesis; specifically, the ability to stand on one leg and higher levels of fitness are associated with prosthetic success.[13,14] Focused and probing interview questions are often helpful in obtaining clear and accurate information. Although many individuals are excellent historians, others may have an incomplete understanding or imprecise memory of what has happened. It is always advisable to confirm information when possible. Table 26.1 represents relevant components of the client's history.

Table 26.1 Important Patient–Client History Components of Physical Therapy Examination

Component	Issues to Consider
Social history	Cultural beliefs and behaviors Family and caregiver resources Social interactions, activities, and support systems Amenability to peer/mentor support
Employment/work/leisure	Current and/or prior work Current community/leisure activities and goals related to community/leisure activities Family/work roles
Living environment/equipment	Assistive devices and adaptive equipment Home environment (e.g., stairs? railings? shower vs. tub?) Projected discharge destination if inpatient
General health status	General health perception Physical and psychologic function
Social health habits	Health risks (e.g., smoking, alcohol, or drug abuse) Level of physical fitness and exercise habits
Family history	Relevant family medical history and health risks
Medical/surgical history	Prior hospitalizations, surgeries Preexisting medical and other health-related conditions
Chief complaint/current condition	Concerns that led the amputee or caregiver to seek physical therapy services Current medical or therapeutic interventions Mechanism of injury/disease including date of onset and course of events Amputee/caregiver/family expectations and goals Amputee/family/caregiver's perceptions of the amputee's emotional response to the current situation Previous therapeutic interventions for this problem
Activity level	Amputee's current and prior level of function in mobility, self-care, activities of daily living, and home management Current and previous functional demands in work and community/leisure activities
Medications	Medications for current condition (prescription and over-the-counter) Medications for other coexisting conditions (prescription and over-the-counter)
Review of available records	Laboratory and diagnostic tests

Format and terminology adopted from *The Guide to Physical Therapist Practice*.[1]

The interview is a means to gather important information that is later used to guide treatment interventions and begin the process of education about amputation, treatment, and prosthesis training. Many individuals with amputations do not have a clear understanding of what to expect during rehabilitation or how their disease process might progress. Amputation is not selective to a specific age group, cultural background, educational experience, or socioeconomic level. Every individual benefits from being well educated about his or her condition and treatment. For many, the events that brought them to rehabilitation may be a blur of disjointed experiences and medical jargon or a laundry list of conditions that seem unrelated or independent. The physical therapist can help them to place their history and experience into a meaningful context, which, in turn, assists them in forming realistic expectations and may decrease the likelihood of complications or a second amputation.

SYSTEMS REVIEW

The systems review is a gross, limited review of the anatomic and physiologic status of the amputee's cognitive, cardiopulmonary, musculoskeletal, vascular, integumentary, neuromuscular, endocrine, gastrointestinal, and urogenital systems. This screening process aids in focusing and prioritizing the tests and measures portion of the examination. For instance, a gross screen of range of motion (ROM) and strength of all uninvolved extremities may reveal them to be within normal limits, eliminating the need for further assessment. An integumentary screen may reveal an intact and healing surgical site but also a stage II sacral pressure ulcer requiring further assessment and inclusion in the plan of care. The systems review helps to focus the rest of the examination in the most constructive and productive way.

TESTS AND MEASURES

Tests and measures are deliberately prioritized to elicit the most relevant objective data for a given individual. Components of functional status will always be a top priority (this may include tests and measures associated with balance, gait, and mobility). Some categories of tests and measures may be revealed as unwarranted if the systems review "clears" the system (e.g., integumentary, musculoskeletal, and cognitive screenings may effectively eliminate the need for immediate further testing in these areas). Combining collected data with findings from the history and systems review, the physical therapist establishes a working diagnostic hypothesis related to the movement system dysfunction that the individual is experiencing. The physical therapist chooses, from an array of possible tests and measures, those that will best confirm or deny the developing diagnostic hypothesis. Data collected funnel the therapist's thought process to prioritize problems and formulate the most appropriate plan of care. It is important to note that some assessments, such as strength testing or joint play motions, might require modification of technique because limb loss necessitates a change in the lever available for applying therapeutic forces. Table 26.2 provides categories of tests and measures appropriate for the lower extremity amputee. Decisions about specific areas included in the assessment are driven by many factors, including clinical setting, time since amputation, and whether or not the individual has received

Table 26.2 Data Gathered in the Initial Physical Therapy Examination

Functional mobility	Strategies used and need for assistance with bed mobility (rolling, scooting, supine to/from sit) and transfers (transfer method and surfaces with and without prosthesis) Wheelchair mobility if appropriate: method of propulsion, need for assistance
Anthropometric characteristics and postural screen	Comment on body composition and dimensions, including height and weight (body mass index not valid given amputation); observe any issues with edema and presumed cause (e.g., congestive heart failure, renal dysfunction) Postural screen in sitting and standing: focus on pelvic and spine position Body mechanics during functional tasks
Motor function of trunk and extremities	Strength screening and specific tests where indicated Screening of hand function and dexterity (relevant to prosthetic donning/doffing) Observation of muscle power and endurance Observations on motor control: timing, coordination, and agility
Balance	Sitting balance assessment without prosthesis (accommodation to loss of body part, change in center of mass and base of support); with prosthesis this might include ability to maintain static sitting and withstand displacement forces; ability to dynamically reach and shift trunk in varying directions Assessment of standing balance without prosthesis (important predictor of prosthetic success) and with prosthesis might include timed ability to maintain static standing without upper extremity (UE) support, ability to withstand displacement forces, ability to dynamically reach and shift center of mass in varying directions
Ambulation status and gait deviations	Ambulation without prosthesis (i.e., need for assistance, type of assistive device, distance, terrain) Ambulation with prosthesis (i.e., need for assistance, type of assistive device, distance, terrain) Prosthetic gait deviations from observational gait analysis Functionally ambulatory clients will require assessment of higher level ambulatory skills (e.g., stops/starts, turns, altered terrain, stairs, ramps)
Residual limb inspection	Size (length, girth), shape (cylindrical, conical, bulbous), redundant tissue ("dog ears" or adductor roll), edema (characteristics of edema); current efforts at shrinking/shaping Integument status: incision line (indications of healing versus concern/infection); scar (general appearance, tissue mobility versus adhesions), overall color and integrity of skin Tolerance to prosthetic wear: observations on prosthesis removal

Table 26.2 Data Gathered in the Initial Physical Therapy Examination (Continued)

Remaining limb inspection	Circulation: assessment of color, temperature, trophic changes, pulses, responsiveness to position changes Integument: overall status and integrity of skin, presence of ulcers, lesions, calluses; status of nails Neurologic: peripheral nerve integrity (motor and sensory testing), reflex integrity Evidence of neuropathy via motor, sensory, and/or autonomic signs Under the care of a podiatrist? If not, is this a referral that is warranted? Appropriate footwear?
Prosthesis assessment	Ability to don/doff: based on client report, observation Socket fit: based on client perceptions of comfort, observation, and palpation of residual limb landmarks in socket Prosthetic alignment: based on observation in static standing and during gait If client does not yet have a prosthesis, therapist should be considering optimal components to meet the client's needs
Aerobic capacity/endurance	Descriptor of any activity undertaken by client that could be considered an endurance activity and how it is tolerated Data may include (1) rate of perceived exertion during functional activities; (2) vitals with activity as compared to rest, including recovery vitals; (3) signs or symptoms of cardiovascular and/or pulmonary system pathology (e.g., angina, dyspnea) in response to increased oxygen demand during increased activity Exercise testing not likely a component of exam, but, during functional activities, does the amputee's aerobic capacity seem to be a limiting factor?
Mental functions	Cognitive screen Observations related to individual's ability to comprehend instructions, attend to task, solve problems, show good safety awareness and judgment Preferred learning strategies Motivation
Pain	Location and description of pain experience with intensity ratings Screen for surgical pain, residual limb pain, phantom pain, remaining limb pain, back pain, longstanding chronic pain, pain associated with comorbidities (e.g., arthritis) Current regimen for management of pain and its effectiveness
Range of motion (ROM) and joint integrity and mobility	ROM limitations with functional implications (these will reveal themselves in mobility and gait assessment) Especially important to assess: hip extension, adduction, internal rotation (both lower extremities [LEs]); knee extension (both LEs as able); ankle dorsiflexion (remaining LE); bilateral UE overhead function Are limitations due to muscle length/flexibility and/or soft tissue extensibility? Observed joint play/accessory motions at joints with limitations Any signs of joint pathology or ligamentous integrity issues noted?
Assistive/adaptive devices and equipment	Is current equipment serving the needs of the client? Is other equipment warranted? Occupational therapy colleagues may advise clients as related to self-care and activities of daily living equipment
Attention to specific client needs	Home-care environment: if therapist has the benefit of seeing client in his or her living environment, it is prudent to assess the ability to enter/exit the home and manage relevant environmental obstacles Specific client goals: if a client comes to physical therapy with unambiguous goals related to home, community, work, or leisure activities, the therapist should assess the client's skills relevant to achieving these goals and include them in the plan of care

a prosthesis. An inpatient assessment on postoperative day 2 will include different priorities than those associated with a home-care assessment for an individual who is 1 month post-amputation and ready to be fitted for a prosthesis. And here again the priorities will differ from those associated with the outpatient clinic visit of an individual who has recently received a prosthesis and is ready to learn how to use it.

The Evaluation Process

The process of evaluation requires the physical therapist to interpret and integrate the information obtained from the history, systems review, and tests and measures to identify the primary areas of participation restriction, activity limitation, and impairment. The physical therapist uses professional judgment to predict the likely functional outcome and time required for effective preprosthetic and/or prosthetic rehabilitation. The evaluation must include a summary of the individual's major problems and the presumed underlying causes. Problems are prioritized, with those that have the most significant functional implications receiving top priority. This is done within the personal and environmental context of the individual, as the same problem may affect different people in different ways. For instance, poor sensation of the residual limb in an individual who is cognitively intact may be easily resolved with education about compensating for the sensory deficit with visual inspection, effectively reducing the risk of compromising skin integrity. Another person with the same sensory deficit who also has cognitive impairment may present a higher risk of skin problems and require a more extensive educational intervention focused on residual limb care with the assistance of others who can help monitor skin integrity. Physical therapists must also be skilled in determining the functional implications of specific problems. For instance, a slight knee flexion contracture can be accommodated for in transtibial socket alignment, whereas a significant knee flexion contracture prohibits fitting with a conventional prosthesis. Prosthesis prescription and PT intervention may be different for two individuals with similar amputations but different degrees of contracture.

Establishing a Physical Therapy Diagnosis and Prognosis

The establishment of the PT diagnosis for a lower extremity amputee is related to the movement system and must be put into a functional context; for instance, a documented PT diagnosis might be: "difficulty in walking" or "abnormality of gait and mobility." The physical therapist uses data from the history and test findings in the context of knowledge of previous amputee outcomes to predict each person's rehabilitation potential and probable functional outcome. Based on the individual's prognosis, measurable short-term and long-term goals are defined to guide intervention planning. These goals are used to inform outcomes assessment as rehabilitation progresses. An important component of the prognosis is determining the likely time frame for achievement of the optimal outcome. A young, active, healthy person with a traumatic transtibial amputation void of postoperative complications is likely to progress through rehabilitation quickly, achieving a high level of function in a short time, perhaps a few weeks. A medically frail and deconditioned individual who has a transfemoral amputation as a result of vascular compromise or a nonhealing neuropathic ulcer will have a longer rehabilitation course, often many months, likely resulting in a less ambitious final functional outcome.

Research findings indicate several prognostic indicators of functional use of a prosthesis following rehabilitation. All of the following have been found to negatively affect functional use despite rehabilitation efforts: advanced age,[13–15] the presence of comorbidities,[13–15] level of amputation (transfemoral vs. transtibial),[13,14] cognitive and/or memory impairment,[13,14,16] and lower levels of functioning prior to amputation rehab ilitation as indicated by fitness, mobility, ADLs, and/or functional tests.[13–15] This information is *not* intended to suggest the exclusion of individuals with any of these predictors from rehabilitation efforts; in fact, there is some evidence of training success in those 80 years of age and older[17,18]; but therapists must be realistic in assessing the challenges facing each individual user of a prosthesis. An efficient and useful predictor of functional prosthesis use is the level of preamputation mobility. Persons with amputation who were ambulatory before surgery and/or after amputation prior to receiving a prosthesis are much more likely to be able to use a prosthesis for ambulation.[13,14,19,20] Consideration of all of these factors should be reflected in the plan of care, along with specific goals and the anticipated rate at which those goals will be met.

PLAN OF CARE

The PT plan of care includes information about the frequency, duration, location, and specific PT interventions and is directly related to the goals delineated by the evaluation/prognostic process. Little is known about dose-response relationships in PT generally and in amputation rehabilitation specifically,[21] although underdosing in rehabilitation is a consistent issue. The prioritized problem list provides a foundation for functional short- and long-term goals that direct rehabilitation activities. If independent donning and doffing of a prosthesis is the primary short-term goal, the associated treatment plan must include education strategies, opportunities to practice this skill, and remediation or adaptation of any movement components that, if missing, would compromise the individual's ability to perform this necessary task (e.g., the person may need to improve grip strength or intrinsic hand strength to manipulate prosthetic suspension). The plan includes information about equipment to be ordered, referrals to be made, and the ultimate PT discharge plan. A person's perception of lack of compassion on the part of the health care providers or conflicting information related to care will affect the individual's experience negatively[22]; therefore the plan of care should be established sensitively and in collaboration with the individual, including good bidirectional communication related to goals and expectations.[23]

Preprosthetic Interventions

Successful use of a prosthesis involves a variety of prerequisites, including functional ROM of the hip and (if applicable) knee; functional strength of muscles at the hip and (if applicable) knee; adequate motor control and balance; sufficient aerobic capacity and endurance; effective edema control, skin and soft tissue management of the maturing residual limb; and sensory integrity of the residual limb. It is crucial to address these areas early in the rehabilitation process. Inability to achieve a certain status or level of performance in one area does not prohibit a good prosthetic outcome; however, difficulties in multiple areas have an impact on prosthetic candidacy and use. Each of these areas should be carefully evaluated and appropriate interventions undertaken to achieve at least minimal requirements for functional prosthetic use if not an optimal level of performance. Even when older adults with dysvascular amputations are deemed not to be candidates for the use of a prosthesis, they should be given the opportunity to benefit from rehabilitation interventions.[17,24]

RANGE OF MOTION

Early and aggressive achievement of functional ROM of the involved lower extremity is of paramount importance. Assessment and treatment of ROM of the intact limb is also important, as loss of ROM of either limb has an impact on the quality and energy efficiency of functional mobility and gait. The flexor withdrawal pattern of hip flexion, abduction, external rotation, and knee flexion is a position associated with lower extremity pain and is often a position of choice for the residual limb after surgery. Elevation of the extremity on pillows serves to reinforce this undesirable posture and puts these individuals at risk for contracture formation (especially hip and knee flexor contractures), which can have a negative impact on the ultimate use of a prosthesis.[14,25] Maintaining or increasing available ROM at the hip for persons with a transfemoral residual limb and at the hip and knee of the transtibial residual limb continues to be a primary treatment goal as the person moves from preprosthetic into prosthetic rehabilitation. The prevention of loss of ROM is much easier than efforts to regain lost motion. Prone positioning is an excellent strategy to combat contracture formation of the hip flexors and should be prescribed (30–60 minutes daily in bouts of 10–15 minutes) as

early as possible for all individuals who are able to tolerate this position. Those with significant contractures may not be able to tolerate prone initially; a pillow or wedge under the abdomen may minimize discomfort while still achieving a stretch. Low-load long-duration stretch is safe and can lead to significant elastic and plastic changes in soft tissues.[26] Side-lying hip extension or the Thomas test position are options for those unable to achieve a prone position. Amputees should understand the difference between hip joint extension and the substitution of increased anterior pelvic tilt or lumbar lordosis. Full-functional hip active range of motion into flexion, extension, and adduction is critical to achieving efficient ambulation and functional mobility with a prosthesis. Typical gait on level surfaces requires the hip to move from 30 degrees of flexion to 10 degrees of extension and requires adduction slightly beyond neutral.[27] More extreme ranges of hip flexion are required for transitioning from sit to stand and reaching forward from a seated position; hip abduction range is required for sidestepping in a functional context. Although alignment of the transfemoral socket will decrease the need for the typical amount of hip extension required during walking or abduction during side-stepping (due to the slight flexion/posterior tilt and adduction/lateral tilt of the transfemoral socket), it is advisable to work toward functional ROM in all planes of motion and to balance strength and ROM around the hip joint.

To avoid knee flexion contracture in a transtibial amputee, a postoperative rigid dressing or knee extension splint or board (e.g., transfer board extending from under a seating cushion) can be an effective technique early in the process to position the knee when it is resting in an extended position while the amputee is seated. Full knee extension ROM is required in typical ambulation on level surfaces[27] and for exploiting passive stability at the knee joint in static standing; however, prosthetic alignment of the typical transtibial socket (slight flexion/anterior tilt) eliminates the need for full knee extension during gait. Nonetheless, maintaining or regaining full knee extension in individuals with recent transtibial amputations should be encouraged with the use of strategic positioning, a knee-extension splint, and/or frequent active quadriceps exercises ("quad set"). If the person is using a splint or positioning board, he or she must also be taught to check the integrity of the residual limb's skin regularly so as to minimize the risk of pressure-related skin damage, which would delay use of the prosthesis. For individuals with transtibial amputations, achieving knee flexion ROM is sometimes overlooked early in rehabilitation. Typical gait on level surfaces generally requires approximately 60 degrees of knee flexion,[27] and more than 90 degrees is required for efficient step-over-step stair ambulation, rising from a seated position, and high-level mobility activities such as kneeling or rising from the floor.

Table 26.3 summarizes potential prosthesis problems associated with loss of functional ROM. Physical therapists may utilize active and passive stretching, joint mobilization, manual therapy techniques, and other modalities to facilitate ROM recovery. ROM is emphasized in individual education and home positioning and exercise routines. All exercises started during the preprosthetic phase are generally appropriate to continue as prescribed or to be progressed as tolerated during the prosthesis training phase. Once full functional ROM is achieved, the person should be educated to maintain this level.

STRENGTH

There is abundant evidence of a significant strength difference between the muscles of the amputated limb compared with those of the sound limb in transtibial and transfemoral amputees as well as evidence that the sound limb shows strength deficits compared with the limbs of age-matched peers without amputations.[28–33] Although direct relationships between strength impairment and activity limitations cannot be assumed, there is some evidence to support the

Table 26.3 Consequences for Prosthetic Use Due to Limitations in Range of Motion

Range-of-Motion Limitation	Potential Functional Limitation	Implication
↓ Hip extension	Inability to achieve upright posture in stance and inability to take advantage of extensor moment at hip; hip and low back extensors firing continually to maintain upright Resultant anterior pelvic tilt Compensatory knee flexion in transtibial amputees Body cannot progress beyond prosthetic leg during gait	Fatigue of hip and low back extensors Chronic low back pain Instability during stance phase of gait Decreased step and stride length of contralateral limb in gait
↓ Hip adduction	Abducted stance in gait (wide base of support) or lateral lean in stance phase	Increased lateral excursion of center of mass or abductor lurch/lateral lean on ipsilateral side during stance, decreasing gait efficiency
↓ Internal rotation	Toe-out stance and gait Pelvic progression over stance limb in gait may be limited (contralateral pelvis rotates anteriorly from fulcrum of weight bearing hip; if limited internal rotation, this will impede pelvic rotation on fixed femur)	Knee joint pain and/or pathology of knee joint because of lack of anterior/posterior orientation in transtibial amputee using prosthesis Decreased step and stride length of contralateral limb in gait
↓ Knee extension in transtibial prosthetic user	Limb functionally shorter Inability to take advantage of extensor moment at knee; knee extensors firing continually to maintain knee stability	Gait deviations associated with leg-length discrepancy Quadriceps fatigue, decreased midstance stability in gait
↓ Knee flexion in transtibial prosthetic user	Inability to place foot flat on the floor when sitting Inability to climb or descend stairs step over step	Inability to weight bear through prosthesis during sit-to-stand transfers Limited to step-to-step method, which may be less efficient and slower

impact of weakness on gait and mobility. Hip extensor strength in the lower extremity amputee is the most critical contributor to knee stability in the sagittal plane during gait[34] and a useful component to predict functional outcome (e.g., performance on the 6-minute walk test).[35] Hip abductor strength in lower extremity amputees is correlated with improved weight bearing on the prosthetic limb in quiet stance and stability in the frontal plane during gait.[32,36] Accurate baseline strength assessment on both the involved and intact lower extremity during the preprosthetic phase will serve to guide therapeutic exercise interventions. Assessing hip and, in transtibial amputees, knee strength of the residual limb may be challenging, as the standard lever arm for providing resistance has been altered by the amputation. Isokinetic instrumentation or a handheld dynamometers may be used to more objectively evaluate muscle strength, although the psychometric properties of these tests are still under scrutiny.[37,38] Functional strength of the hip and knee during closed-chain (reverse action) activities both concentrically and eccentrically is very important, as this reflects muscle activity during normal gait and functional activities.

Although strengthening programs should address all muscles of the residual and sound limbs, prioritizing exercises that address hip extensor and abductor strength on the amputated side—and knee extensors for those with transtibial amputations—are appropriate, as these muscle groups will be pivotal for stance stability during prosthetic gait.[29,31–34] Preamputation weakness of proximal muscles is often subtle with little to no observable abnormality in preamputation gait patterns; however, these impairments of strength (and likely muscle endurance) may be magnified in prosthetic gait. Periods of disuse prior to and following amputation typically produce further weakness and disuse atrophy in the involved limb. With proximal muscle weakness and the loss of distal musculature replaced by the weight of a prosthesis, problems with gait are likely.

Hip and pelvic control in single-limb stance is inherently important to stability and to the effective forward progression of the body over the prosthesis. The strength requirements for ambulation with a prosthesis are similar but not identical to those of normal gait. Both the involved and intact lower extremities display increased muscle activity during their respective stance phases. Biomechanical review studies of prosthetic gain provide evidence of increased and prolonged activity of the hip abductors and extensors on the amputated side and, if present, the knee extensors.[39–41] Studies also confirm increased ground reaction forces and demand on the intact limb, presumably as a result of the absence of the normal foot and ankle mechanism on the prosthetic side. This results in increased hip abductor, hip extensor, and, if present, knee extensor muscle activity and power generation of the intact limb.[39,40]

A comprehensive strengthening program targeting the lower extremity muscle groups should be initiated early and progressed appropriately. Utilization of closed- (e.g., residual limb on bolster or gymnastic ball, or individual in kneeling position if tolerated) and open-chain exercise techniques, with both concentric and eccentric muscle contractions, is appropriate and effective. Progressive resistance protocols are often used to improve strength and muscle endurance. Resistance may be applied manually (e.g., proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation [PNF] techniques are desirable, as they strengthen multiple joints and planes simultaneously) or with equipment (e.g., cuff weights, elastic bands, or pulley weights). Resistance is generally not applied at or near the suture line until the surgical wound is well healed. Using body weight is an effective way to introduce resistance training (e.g., bridging or planks with modifications as needed). Basic physiologic principles of strengthening (e.g., overload principle, specificity of training) are employed in the design of an appropriate resistance program, and exercises should specifically target muscles identified as weak in the examination and muscles that are functionally required in gait, transfer, and mobility activities. Strengthening within the context of functional activities is ideal. Correct exercise technique is important to achieving the desired strength gains, and the physical therapist's expertise in movement analysis is important in helping individuals to understand how to perform their exercises properly and how to self-critique performance. Table 26.4 highlights some exercises that may be helpful

Table 26.4 Examples of Therapeutic Exercises for Strengthening Used in Preprosthetic Training

Muscle Group	Exercises
Hip extensors	Bridging with residual limb over ball, bolster, foam wedge, or padded stool; start bilateral and progress to unilateral with focus on pelvic stability Prone leg lifts with weights or elastic band Manual resistance in prone, side lying, or even sitting (to strengthen early in range) Supported standing (parallel bars) hip extension with manual resistance, pulley weights, or elastic band PNF resistive techniques in supine, side lying, or standing
Hip abductors	Side lying bridges (amputated side down) with small deflated ball, small foam block, small bolster or wedge under knee (TTA) or distal femur (TFA) of residual limb; hip abduction into small bolster elevates pelvis and body weight Hip abduction in side lying (amputated side up) with weights, elastic band, or manual resistance Supported standing hip abduction with pulley weights or elastic band PNF resistive techniques in supine, side lying, or standing
Hip adductors	Side lying bridges (amputated side up) straddling small stool with padding/pillow under knee (TTA) or distal femur (TFA) of residual limb with intact lower extremity (LE) through legs of stool; hip adduction into padding on stool elevates pelvis and body weight Hip adduction in side lying (amputated side down with intact limb resting anteriorly flexed on pillow or wedge) with weights, elastic band, or manual resistance Supported standing hip adduction with pulley weights or elastic band PNF resistive techniques in supine, side lying, or standing

Table 26.4 Examples of Therapeutic Exercises for Strengthening Used in Preprosthetic Training (Continued)

Muscle Group	Exercises
Hip flexors	Supine hip flexion (with knee extension for TTA) with manual resistance or weights Supported standing hip flexion with pulleys or elastic bands PNF resistive techniques in supine, side lying, or standing
Hip ER/IR	Seated or supine hip ER and IR with manual resistance or elastic bands PNF resistive techniques in supine, side lying, or standing
Knee extensors (TTA)	Seated long-arc quad with manual resistance or weights Supine short-arc quad over bolster or wedge with manual resistance or weights PNF resistive techniques in supine, side lying, or standing
Knee flexors (TTA)	Seated knee flexion with manual resistance or elastic bands Prone knee flexion with manual resistance, elastic band, or weights PNF resistive techniques in supine, side lying, or standing

ER, External rotation; *IR*, internal rotation; *PNF*, proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation; *TFA*, transfemoral amputation; *TTA*, transtibial amputation.

in strengthening the residual limb of a transtibial or transfemoral amputee.

Amputees often go through protracted periods of inactivity before and after amputation and present with a generalized loss of strength. A comprehensive strengthening program addresses not solely the residual limb but also the uninvolved limb, trunk, and upper extremities, as the full-body strength demands will be increased during preprosthetic and prosthetic training. Strengthening of the abdominals, paraspinals, and other trunk muscles is important, as a stable core is essential for mobility training, transfers, and gait. Hand strength and dexterity may be a prerequisite to independent prosthetic donning and should be addressed as needed. As an individual's strength improves, exercises become more functionally oriented as well as more intense. Closed-chain exercises can take on greater emphasis as individuals transition to prosthetic training from the preprosthetic phase, and strengthening may occur in the context of upright functional activities. The optimal strengthening protocol will depend on the characteristics of the individual amputee, including his or her general health and mobility and current strength levels and goals.

BALANCE AND POSTURAL CONTROL

Effective postural control during functional tasks has two fundamental components: (1) controlling the body's position in space for purposes of stability (maintaining center of mass over base of support) and (2) orientating the trunk and limbs in space (appropriate relationship between body segments and between body and environment).[42] The normal balance mechanism relies on visual, vestibular, and somatosensory input. Visual and vestibular information add awareness of position in space with respect to objects in the environment and to gravity, and somatosensory input provides information about the positions of the joints of the lower extremity and the pressures through those joints. Balance mechanisms function both proactively and reactively. With loss of the distal limb to amputation, somatosensory and proprioceptive input can no longer provide direct information about the position of the limb and its interaction with support surfaces. Balance deficits are well documented in amputees,[28,43,44] as is diminished balance confidence.[45,46] Balance, as assessed with a variety of different measures, is associated with prosthetic ambulation outcome.[13,14,28,35] Static stance in prosthetic users is epitomized by the uneven distribution of weight (favoring the intact side) and increased postural sway.[44,47] This information is useful for formulating plans for balance interventions.

Risk factors for falls in individuals with dysvascular amputations are consistent with those for the general older adult population (i.e., lower extremity weakness, increased age, multiple comorbidities, and/or polypharmacy)[48]; however, an additional finding, somewhat paradoxic, is the protective nature of lower balance confidence and poorer performance on balance tests against falling.[45,49] This probably reflects the self-limiting mobility of those who lack confidence in their balance, yet it serves as an excellent reminder that overconfidence in balance performance can be dangerous. The incidence of falls among amputees is higher than that in age-matched peers without amputation, and risk factors for falls seem to vary across different phases of recovery (acute care vs. rehabilitation vs. community dwelling).[43,48] Notably such falls often occur in the context of transitional movements such as transfers to and from a wheelchair,[50] thus highlighting the importance of education regarding safe transfer strategies.

Before discussing standing balance training, it is important to mention that some individuals will have difficulty adjusting to changes in sitting balance and bed mobility following lower extremity amputation. The loss of the weight of the amputated lower extremity diminishes the stabilizing potential of the lower body for supine-to-sit transitional movements; this is abundantly evident in individuals with bilateral lower extremity amputations who struggle to achieve sitting from a side-lying or supine position. Such individuals must rely more on upper extremities and trunk musculature for position changes. In sitting, lack of a second foot on the floor and, in the case of transfemoral amputation, loss of the surface area of the thigh on the seating surface alter the base of support, and loss of the mass of the lower extremity elevates the body's center of gravity, making sitting more precarious. Most individuals adjust

fairly quickly, developing competence and confidence in static sitting; but the inability to shift weight onto the missing foot can challenge dynamic sitting, especially with reaching tasks requiring movement anterior and ipsilateral to the amputated side. For this reason, seated reaching ability is evaluated during the initial examination and is addressed in treatment as necessary. Once an individual is training with a prosthesis and again has 2 feet on the floor, dynamic sitting balance often need not be a focus of treatment.

In the preprosthetic phase, standing balance assessment and training might include single-limb standing in the parallel bars or at a support surface with decreasing reliance on upper extremity support. Ability to stand on the sound limb without upper extremity support has been associated with better prosthetic gait outcomes in individuals with unilateral lower extremity amputations,[13,14] making this an important skill to assess and train as early as possible.

In transtibial amputees, if the individual can tolerate a kneeling position over the healed surgical site (early efforts at this may include straddling a bolster with knees on mat and progressing to high kneeling), this is an excellent way to decrease the degrees of freedom for early upright balance training. In those with transfemoral amputation, if they can tolerate some pressure to the healed distal end, the individual may kneel with the intact limb on the mat and the residual limb resting on a foam block or wedge. A progression might be to stand with the sound limb on the floor and rest the residual limb (transtibial or transfemoral) on an elevated surface (e.g., mat, gymnastic ball, or foam block), providing balance support but minimal weight bearing. Preprosthetic gait training with an appropriate assistive device (AD) is another useful and functional approach to upright balance training.

Because sensory and proprioceptive input from the distal segment is absent after amputation, individuals must learn to compensate for this lack of important postural information. Given underlying vascular pathology and comorbidity of diabetic neuropathy in amputees, the somatosensory mechanisms that inform balance cannot be presumed to be intact on the remaining limb. In addition to the loss of sensory input (due to loss of limb and compromised sensory status of remaining limb), the loss of muscles of the amputated foot and ankle will compromise preprogrammed postural responses. Balance reactions are considered to result from the combination of preprogrammed synergistic muscle activity as well as a continuous adaptive feedback system gleaning information from lower extremity joints.[42] The ankle, hip, and change in support/stepping strategies are used to ensure that the center of mass stays within the base of support in response to anteroposterior perturbations and these postural strategies are evident during functional activities. The ankle strategy requires intact ROM and strength of the ankle. After amputation, this strategy is no longer available to the involved limb and the person may not be able to resolve the balance perturbation using intact limb response only; thus he or she may have to rely on a hip strategy (movement of the trunk over the base of support) or a change in support strategy (stepping or hopping to move the base of support under the center of mass).

Therapeutic balance challenges during preprosthetic rehabilitation provide opportunities to address environmental demands during various functional tasks in anticipatory (feedforward) and reactive (feedback) modes. For example, successfully catching and throwing a ball or batting a balloon requires the person to anticipate postural demands in an effort to throw and react to postural challenges in an effort to catch. This task can be progressed through a series of postures (e.g., seated, straddling bolster on mat, kneeling on mat with amputated side on foam block, standing in parallel bars with amputated side on foam block, standing in parallel bars in unilateral stance, decreasing reliance on upper extremity support in bars). Reaching activities in standing help individuals develop skill and confidence in their anticipatory postural responses and, should the reach distance be excessive, their reactive postural responses as well. Therapists must consider the person's ultimate likely functional requirements and design a variety of balance tasks to help the person achieve levels of functioning commensurate with his or her potential. To facilitate improved balance and success in the self-identification of limits of stability, individuals must experience loss of balance in the context of training. This can be achieved safely with excellent guarding technique and can be facilitated by the use of harness systems (e.g., Zero G, Biodex, LiteGait) if available.

Independent donning of the prosthesis may require a certain level of balance proficiency. Once the amputee has been fitted with a prosthesis, the therapist can revisit the same balance activities performed preprosthetically and the focus of balance training becomes the equal distribution of weight between the intact and prosthetic sides. In the context of integration of sensory information within the balance systems, individuals may learn to substitute for lost somatosensation and deduce the position of the prosthetic foot and contact with the support surface by the angle of the hip or, in the case of the person with a transtibial amputation, the knee, and pressures felt within the prosthetic socket.

CARDIOVASCULAR ENDURANCE

A thorough assessment of an amputee's cardiovascular status followed by appropriate aerobic/endurance training is an integral part of preprosthetic and prosthetic management. The energy requirement for prosthetic gait is higher than that of individuals who ambulate on two intact lower limbs. The aerobic capacity of dysvascular amputees has been demonstrated to be lower than that of age-matched peers without amputation.[51–53] Some key physiologic considerations for prosthetic gait as evidenced in literature reviews[52,53] include the following:

- The energy cost of walking is greater in individuals with amputations than those without.
- Higher level amputations are associated with higher energy costs of gait than lower level amputations.
- Persons with dysvascular amputations demonstrate greater energy cost of gait than those with traumatic amputations.

- Customary or self-selected gait speed decreases with higher levels of amputation.
- The average rate of oxygen consumption during self-selected gait speed may not be significantly greater than normal, especially for transtibial prosthetic users, as individuals decrease their self-selected speed to mitigate rising oxygen consumption.
- It is generally more efficient for an individual with a prosthesis to ambulate with the prosthesis (with or without an AD) than it is to ambulate without the prosthesis using an AD. An exception to this may be the person with a dysvascular transfemoral amputation, where energy expenditure may be similar with and without a prosthesis if the individual is highly dependent on the AD.

Energy expenditure for over-ground walking in people with unilateral dysvascular amputations is increased by up to 36% for transtibial and up to 65% for transfemoral amputations.[53–57] Many individuals are deconditioned upon entering the rehabilitation course and, given that fitness correlates with the successful use of a prosthesis,[13,14] aerobic training is an essential component of the preprosthetic and early prosthetic rehabilitation phases. It is well documented that peak oxygen consumption (VO_{2max}) in individuals with dysvascular amputations is significantly less than in healthy age-matched peers without amputation.[51,52,58] The VO_{2max} is decreased, but the energy cost of gait is increased, thus simply walking can consume a much larger percentage of VO_{2max}[52,59] and cause individuals to be functioning closer to their aerobic threshold. With this in mind, there is some evidence that the ability to train at $\geq$50% of VO_{2max} may be associated with a "successful" prosthetic outcome (operationally defined as the ability to walk 100 m with or without an AD) in older adults with high-level amputations (transfemoral and hip disarticulation).[60,61]

Preprosthetic aerobic conditioning may be in the form of wheelchair propulsion, single-limb ambulation with an appropriate AD, bilateral upper and/or unilateral lower extremity ergometry, circuit training, or swimming. Amputees often continue these activities as they enter the prosthetic phase of rehabilitation. As the condition of the residual limb and wearing tolerance permit, ambulation with the prosthesis can be used as a cardiovascular endurance activity. Individuals who are taught to monitor their own pulse, respiratory rate, and/or rate of perceived exertion are able to participate more confidently and independently in aerobic training. Training programs are individually prescribed by the therapist based on the person's past medical history and current cardiovascular, pulmonary, and musculoskeletal status utilizing standardized guidelines for older adults as a goal (see American College of Sports Medicine Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription).[62] For maximal impact, the therapist must introduce the appropriate level of challenge within the context of an activity that is agreeable and motivating to the amputee. For individuals with few cardiovascular restrictions, once they are tolerating prosthetic wearing, brisk walking and/or the use of exercise equipment (e.g., treadmill, stationary bicycle, NuStep, stair climber, elliptical machine, circuit training) constitute excellent endurance training activities for the appropriate person. An amputation need not prevent individuals from participating in health and wellness exercise programs during and following their rehabilitation.

EDEMA CONTROL OF THE RESIDUAL LIMB

The reduction of postsurgical edema is critical in the early postoperative rehabilitation phase. Use of standard or removable rigid postoperative dressings (e.g., cast or prefabricated polyethylene dressing) after transtibial amputation appear to be superior to soft dressings (including Ace wrapping) in controlling the volume of the residual limb[63,64] and are associated with a shorter time from amputation to initial fitting of the prosthesis.[65,66] Removable rigid dressings seem to be the optimal choice for postoperative dressings because they offer the same benefits as standard rigid dressings (edema control, limb shaping, and protection) but also offer the opportunity to inspect the surgical site and monitor wound healing; however, this type of postoperative care is not routinely used in the United States, perhaps because of the debate among payers regarding who is responsible for reimbursement (hospital vs. insurance). When the more common soft dressings are used, Ace wrapping for compression is applied over the transtibial residual limb dressing. Ace wraps should be applied in oblique angles (not circumferentially, so as to avoid a tourniquet effect), with a gradual increase in pressure from distal to proximal, and always extending above the knee (as the transtibial prosthetic socket engulfs the medial and lateral aspects of the knee). Amputees and their family members should be instructed in wrapping technique, as the Ace wrap typically has to be reapplied several times a day.

The transfemoral residual limb does not lend itself to rigid postoperative dressings and is more challenging to Ace wrap, as it requires anchoring over the pelvis, and it may be difficult for an amputee to elevate the pelvis for wrapping. Nevertheless, techniques for postsurgical compression wrapping should be a part of the treatment plan.

After the staples or sutures have been removed, use of a commercial pressure garment ("shrinker") is suggested for persons with either transtibial or transfemoral amputations. Residual limb edema plays a big role in determining when initial prosthesis fitting will take place—if the prosthesis is fitted too early and the residual limb is still substantially shrinking, this will affect the intimacy of prosthetic socket fit, making training more difficult and increasing the risk of complications caused by a poorly fitting socket. Prerequisites for initial prosthesis fitting include sutures removed, surgical wound healed or healing, and edema controlled, with distal measurements less than or equal to proximal measurements. The importance of continued shrinking efforts, even after prosthesis training has begun, should be emphasized. Individuals must usually continue to wear a shrinker when they are not wearing their prosthesis, at least during early training efforts, to reduce the likelihood of insidious edema when the prosthesis is not being worn. If amputees allow the edema to return to the limb, the socket may no longer fit and aggressive efforts to reduce the limb volume will have to precede any further prosthesis training. Individuals

prone to fluctuations in fluid volume (e.g., those with kidney dysfunction or congestive heart failure [CHF]) will likely have to use a shrinker indefinitely. For others, whose residual limb ultimately reaches a stable size and shape, a shrinker may not be necessary once the prosthesis is consistently being used. The decision to discontinue the use of a shrinker permanently is based on two factors: (1) consistency in the number of sock layers worn during the day and (2) the ability to don the prosthesis without decreasing the usual number of sock layers after a night's sleep without the shrinker. Significant changes in body weight can also dramatically affect socket fit. All amputees should be educated regarding the importance of contacting the prosthetist and/or therapist if their weight changes significantly over time.

SOFT TISSUE MOBILITY OF THE RESIDUAL LIMB

Soft tissue and bony adhesions that limit tissue mobility around the incision scar and the surrounding area may have an impact on tolerance, comfort, and use of the prosthesis. Surgical amputation can include muscle-to-muscle (myoplasty), muscle-to-fascia (myofascial), and/or muscle-to-bone (myodesis) surgical fixations to stabilize the remaining muscle.[67] Scarring or adhesions can occur in any or all of these tissues. The normal stresses and shearing forces of cyclic loading and unloading during gait require that soft tissue throughout the residual limb be mobile. If the soft tissue is not able to move independently of the scar tissue or skeletal structures, the resulting stress can lead to tissue breakdown and/or discomfort. Soft tissue mobilization techniques early in the rehabilitation process can help to establish appropriate tissue mobility in the residual limb. Once the surgical incision has been closed securely, soft tissue massage can be an effective tool for maintaining tissue mobility. Deep friction massage may be helpful in managing scar tissue that is restrictively adhered. Individuals can be instructed in the use of this modality with specific guidelines for proper technique. Appropriate deep friction massage targets movements between skin, subcutaneous soft tissue and fascia, and muscle layers. Improper deep friction massage technique is ineffective in managing scar tissue and potentially harmful for the person with fragile skin and soft tissue, as friction generated between the fingers and skin results in irritation, blistering, or breakdown and can delay the use of a prosthesis until adequate healing has occurred.

SENSORY STATUS OF THE RESIDUAL AND REMAINING LIMBS

Residual limb and sound limb sensibility is formally assessed during the initial PT examination. Standard sensation testing guidelines may be used to assess all sensory modalities (pain, temperature, light touch, deep pressure, proprioception, vibration). Semmes-Weinstein monofilament testing may be used to assess for protective sensation of the sound limb. Several commonly occurring postamputation sensory phenomena can have implications for functional outcome in persons with amputations. These include hyposensitivity, hypersensitivity, phantom sensations, and phantom limb pain.

Hyposensitivity

Hyposensitivity is most often encountered among those with a history of diabetes, neuropathy, traumatic nerve damage, or vascular disease. Limited research suggests that deep pressure remains intact but superficial pain sensibility is impaired in transtibial residual limbs.[68] Amputees who have impaired sensation are at high risk for skin breakdown because they may not recognize discomfort associated with skin irritation resulting from repetitive stresses and pressures. Inclusion of education about the preventative need for visual inspection for signs and symptoms of soft tissue lesions and supervised practice of this task can reduce the risk of skin breakdown. Adaptive equipment, such as mirrors, or the assistance of caregivers may be necessary for people with concurrent limitations in cognition, flexibility, and/or visual impairment.

Hypersensitivity

Early in rehabilitation, it is not uncommon to encounter a generalized hypersensitivity of the residual limb. This hypersensitivity is thought to be a consequence of nerve damage from amputation surgery itself.[69] Hypersensitivity can be effectively managed by bombarding the residual limb with tactile stimuli using a variety of textures and pressures. Strategies for reducing hypersensitivity include gently tapping with the fingers, massaging with lotion, touching with a soft fabric (e.g., flannel or towel), rolling a small ball over the residual limb, and implementing a specific wearing schedule for shrinkers and removable rigid dressings. Intensity of intervention is based on the individual's tolerance to the sensory stimulation. The techniques can be progressed in intensity, type of modality used, and duration of stimulus (e.g., touching the limb with a rougher fabric and increasing wearing time for the shrinker). Amputees are strongly encouraged to use these techniques independently as part of their home program. Over time these techniques should help to reduce the hypersensitivity, with the ultimate goal of tolerance to normal sensory input without discomfort. Physiologically, overloading the nervous system with sensory stimuli is thought to encourage habituation via down-regulation of neural receptors.

Localized hypersensitivity may be an indication that a troublesome neuroma has developed at the distal end of a surgically severed peripheral nerve. A neuroma is suspected when localized tapping sends a shock sensation up the leg (the Tinel sign).[70] If conservative clinical treatment is unsuccessful in reducing hypersensitivity and pain caused by a neuroma, injection of a local anesthetic directly into the region or surgical removal may be necessary. Targeted muscle reinnervation is a surgical technique that can be both preventative and corrective for cases of acute and chronic postamputation neuroma pain and hypersensitivity.[69,71] Although this technique was initially developed to facilitate intrinsic control of upper extremity prostheses, it appears that it also has the added benefit of reducing neuroma formation and decreasing postamputation pain in lower limb amputees.[69,71,72] The procedure involves transferring the cut ends of peripheral nerves to targeted motor units of the remaining limb (e.g., tibial nerve to a motor branch of the semitendinosis),[71] creating specific electromyographic signals detectable by a myoelectric prosthesis.

Targeted nerve reinnervation is another similar technique that also demonstrates success at reducing neuroma formation at the time of amputation. It may be more appropriate for those individuals who are ineligible or uninterested in using myoelectric prostheses because the procedure is less concerned with the rearrangement of the muscle-nerve units following amputation and generally allows for more distal nerve transfers.[73] Although slightly different in approach, both procedures may minimize neuroma formation by reducing the aberrant sprouting of the severed nerves.[69,72,73]

Phantom Limb Sensations

Phantom limb sensations are quite common after amputation.[70,74–76] Many individuals report experiencing feelings of itching, tingling, numbness, or sensations of heat and cold in the toes or foot of the limb that has been amputated. Although the sensation can include the entire missing extremity, proximal sensation often fades, leaving only distal perceptions, a phenomenon known as "telescoping," presumably related to the large area of somatosensory cortex dedicated to the distal extremity.[70,77,78] Phantom limb sensation is a relatively harmless condition that tends to resolve in 2 to 3 years without treatment.[70,78] It has potential functional implications, as it may be useful in providing a semblance of proprioceptive feedback from the prosthesis. Be alerted, however, as to the importance of educating individuals of the potential danger of phantom limb sensations: nighttime falls are not uncommon when, half asleep, an individual attempts to stand and walk to the bathroom, expecting the phantom foot to make contact with the floor.

Phantom Limb Pain

Phantom limb pain occurs in 50% to 80% of all persons with amputation and has wide variability in presentation.[75,76,78] The incidence of phantom limb pain has been demonstrated to be greater with upper extremity as compared with lower extremity amputations[78–80] and with proximal as compared with distal amputations[78]; both have been shown to decrease over time.[76,78,79] When phantom pain occurs, it is most often described as a cramping, squeezing, aching, or burning sensation in the part of the limb that has been amputated. The spectrum of complaints may vary from occasional mild pain to continuous severe pain. The absence of observable abnormalities in the residual limb is common. Although the etiology of phantom pain is not definitively understood, changes in the peripheral nervous system, the spinal cord, and reorganization at the level of the cerebral cortex may all be involved in the perception of phantom limb pain.[76,78,81–83] It is uncertain whether phantom pain is associated with preamputation limb pain, and the relationship with source of amputation (vascular versus traumatic) is also unclear.[74,79,84] Whatever the etiology and predisposing factors, phantom limb pain is challenging to manage and disabling if the pain is severe. At present there are no evidence-based practice recommendations for the management of phantom limb pain. Mirror therapy has been used in the management of phantom limb pain[85]; it involves strategically placing the sound limb in front of an angled mirror to create the illusion that the amputated limb is intact; the individual watches the reflection in the mirror as he or she performs exercises of the sound limb and imagining the movement of the phantom limb. The individual receives visual feedback (in the mirror) confirming the "movement" of the phantom limb (the residual limb is concealed behind the mirror). This pairing of *thinking* about moving the phantom limb and *seeing* it move is aimed to help resolve the mismatch of information that exists in phantom limb pain (i.e., feeling pain in an extremity that does not exist is a conflict between the sensory experience and the visual experience). Graded motor imagery[85,86] has also been used in treating phantom limb pain. Intervention components include a series of left/right limb orientation tasks directed toward limb laterality (distinguishing the phantom from the intact limb), explicit motor imagery tasks (imagining moving the amputated limb through a series of exercises), and mirrored visual feedback tasks. Although the mechanism by which these strategies minimize pain remains unknown, it is thought that both mirror therapy and graded motor imagery influence neural networks and cortical reorganization to combat the maladaptive neural plasticity caused by phantom limb pain. Other strategies used to address phantom limb pain include medications (antidepressants, anticonvulsants, and analgesics), neural blockade, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, heat and cold modalities, acupuncture, biofeedback, firm pressure applied to the residual limb (e.g., massage, compression or prosthetic socket), exercises of the phantom limb, psychologic treatment, and education.[75–78,87,88]

Residual Limb Pain

Residual limb pain is another potential limiting factor in lower extremity amputees. Common early after surgery, this pain usually subsides over time.[70,76,78] Ongoing complaints of residual limb pain should prompt careful inspection of the residual limb, as the therapist may pick up on signs of infection or small cutaneous or subcutaneous problems that could manifest as pain. This careful inspection and follow through is especially important in individuals with diabetes and vascular disease, as data suggest that those who have an initial distal amputation at any level are at a substantial risk of revision of amputation to a higher level (Table 26.5);[89] they have higher mortality[90] and increased risk of readmission to the hospital.[91] The therapist should also be mindful that residual limb pain is often confused with prosthesis-related pain, and in some cases a simple fix (e.g., adjustment of prosthesis or number of socks) can provide relief.[70]

CARE OF THE SOUND LIMB

Ongoing assessment of the intact lower extremity should be the responsibility of the amputee with support from the physical therapist and, if necessary, caregiver. Individuals with diabetes, peripheral neuropathy, or peripheral vascular disease who have lost one leg as a result of the disease process have a significant chance of losing the other leg, given the symmetric distribution of disease processes and the increased functional demand on the remaining limb after amputation. The added burden to the remaining limb extends beyond the preprosthetic period. Once ambulatory with a prosthesis, individuals will preferentially initiate level surface walking with the prosthetic limb, placing a larger burden on the sound limb for stability and propulsion.[92] As an ambulatory individual makes adjustments to increase walking speed and distance and navigate uneven surfaces, demands continue to increase on the sound limb.[93–95]

Table 26.5 Published Data on Reamputation of the Ipsilateral Limb or Amputation of the Contralateral Limb by Level of Initial Amputation

	1 Year	3 Years	5 Years
Izumi (2006)[164]—Retrospective review of 277 participants with major and minor amputations with diabetes over a 10-year period			
Overall rate of a second amputation surgery	26.7%	48.3%	60.7%
Ipsilateral minor[a]	22.8%	39.6%	52.3%
Ipsilateral major	4.7%	11.8%	13.3%
Contralateral minor[a]	3.5%	18.8%	29.5%
Contralateral major	11.6%	44.1%	53.3%
Glaser (2014)[89]—Retrospective review of 1715 participants with major and minor amputations from nonhealing wounds with or without peripheral artery disease or ischemic rest pain over a 12-year period			
Overall rate of a second amputation surgery	N/A	32.5%	N/A
Ipsilateral minor	10.5%	N/A	14.2%
Ipsilateral major	7.1%	N/A	8.4%
Contralateral minor	3.2%	N/A	8.4%
Contralateral major	5.7%	N/A	11.5%
Shah (2013)[96]—Review of 391 participants with major amputations and vascular disease over a 5-year period			
Ipsilateral	N/A	N/A	14%
Contralateral	N/A	N/A	13.8%
Contralateral amputation-free survival rate	60%	49%	33%

[a]Data reported as "minor" amputation was at the level of the toe.

Contralateral limb amputation is a very real threat in those with diabetes and renal and/or vascular compromise,[89,96] although advances in revascularization technology may explain the recent trend toward decreased rates of reamputation (see Table 26.5). Special consideration should be given to those with chronic renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease, as current literature suggests that this population has the highest risk of contralateral limb loss.[89,96] To minimize the risk of loss of the remaining limb, close monitoring of limb condition (especially for subtle or insidious trophic, sensory, or motor changes) and optimal foot care is essential. Ongoing, systematic and frequent assessment of pulses, edema, temperature, and skin is suggested. Education about the importance of a daily routine of cleansing, drying, and closely inspecting the foot (including the plantar surface and between the toes) is crucial. Podiatric care of nails, corns, and plantar calluses, appropriately fitting footwear or accommodative foot orthoses, and avoidance of barefoot walking are three additional imperatives for the longevity of the remaining foot. If unable to perform daily foot inspection independently because of disease or visual impairment or decreased agility, individuals must be able to direct a caregiver in inspecting the foot. Even if individuals are physically incapable of performing certain tasks for their own health and safety, they are ultimately responsible for their own care. Developing or improving on a person's skill at directing assistance is a useful and realistic PT treatment goal.

CANDIDACY FOR A PROSTHESIS AND PRESCRIPTION

The members of the interdisciplinary team involved in the care and rehabilitation of an amputee may include the surgeon, a physiatrist, a prosthetist, a physical therapist, an occupational therapist, a social worker, a rehabilitation nurse, and a vocational rehabilitation counselor. Many hospitals and rehabilitation centers have established prosthesis clinics that bring together the appropriate professionals to address the needs and problems of users. Deciding on an individual's candidacy for a prosthesis the first major clinical step to be taken. Although the literature has identified predictors of the outcome of prosthesis use,[13–15] the team considers the individual's needs, motivation, and functional capacity in determining candidacy. Factors most often considered in whether to fit an individual with a prosthesis include the following:

1. *Medical history:* Disabling medical conditions may prohibit successful prosthetic use. Although the specific influence of multiple comorbidities on an amputee's candidacy for a prosthesis and its later use remain unknown, several studies relate an increased number of comorbidities with poorer prosthetic outcome.[13] Advanced cardiac or pulmonary disease that significantly impairs functional status before amputation has an impact on a person's prosthetic candidacy. A history of cerebrovascular accident with hemiplegia of the side opposite the amputation may limit functional use of a prosthesis, although some evidence suggests that the degree of motor impairment is more predictive of outcome than the side of involvement.[14] Cognitive functioning may be associated with prosthetic outcomes, suggesting the value of a cognitive screen as a component of prosthetic candidacy assessment. In 2017, Frengopoulos et al. demonstrated that lower scores on the Montreal Cognitive Assessment were associated with poorer prosthetic performance and outcomes.[97]
2. *Premorbid and present level of function:* An individual who required substantial assistance for functional mobility before amputation may have limited prosthetic training goals. Preamputation ambulation ability is predictive of walking ability with a prosthesis,[14] although it is important to consider how far back to measure walking ability; a series of toe or forefoot amputations may precede transtibial or transfemoral amputation, and individuals may have had limited walking mobility for months prior to the final surgery. Individuals who are independent with functional activities, ADLs, and ambulation with an AD after amputation will do well with a prosthesis.
3. *Body build:* Morbid obesity may pose significant challenges to fitting a prosthesis. Amputees should not, however, be

excluded from fitting and training on the basis of their weight alone, as an updated systematic review by Kahle et al. suggests that when controlled for comorbidities, age and sex, body mass index is not a significant predictor of walking ability.[13] There is some evidence that underweight individuals may perform more poorly than people of normal weight and obese individuals,[98,99] although this is an admittedly confounded variable.

4. *ROM:* Significant hip and knee flexion contractures are best addressed prior to prosthetic fitting if an individual is to achieve efficiency and functional independence with a prosthesis, as contractures have been shown to have a negative impact on functional outcome.[13,25,100]
5. *Support at home:* People who are likely to require assistance must depend on family members, significant others, or formal caregivers to help with one or more tasks. The potential to be a limited household ambulator with a prosthesis may be important in reducing the burden on caregivers and may allow a person to remain at home with a caregiver as opposed to living in an institution.

Because there are no definitive criteria for determining who is and is not a strong candidate, careful consideration of the individuals' characteristics and situation is imperative. Some authors believe that even individuals who show limited or moderate potential for success based on existing criteria should be fitted with a prosthesis and afforded the opportunity to try.[17] Should an individual be deemed a reasonable candidate, these same considerations and others are used in determining the specific prescription for that individual.

The Medicare Functional Classification Level consists of five categories (K levels 0–4) and is used to determine which prosthesis components are appropriate based on the amputee's level of function and rehabilitation potential.[101] Although all components of the prosthesis must be justified for payment by Medicare, only knees and feet are bound by Medicare K levels (e.g., a K-1 amputee can have the same suspension system as another with a K-3 level). It is imperative that amputees be assigned the appropriate functional level, as assignment into a lower K level may hinder optimal mobility. For instance, classification as K-1 will result in a SACH foot, whereas a K-2 amputee is eligible for a multi-axis foot and a K-3 for a dynamic response foot; amputees rated K-2 or K-3 will have greater ease in walking over uneven surfaces compared with those classified as K-1.[101] Use of higher K-level componentry transfemoral amputees who were initially assigned into lower K levels (i.e., upgrade to use of microprocessor knees) appears to reduce falls risk and improve mobility, reminding therapists to suspend biases that higher-tech equipment should be reserved only for younger individuals.[102–104]

The process of K-level determination is not consistent across clinicians, prosthetists, and physicians, and the providers who determine the K levels are also not consistent. A survey of 213 U.S. prosthetists by Borrhenpol et al. in 2016 found that 47.3% of prosthetists assign K levels alone, 42.9% of prosthetists collaborate with other health care providers (e.g., physical therapists), and 7.3% reported that K levels were assigned by the amputees' physicians.[101] In the same study, it was also concluded that a standard method for K-level determination does not exist; some prosthetists and clinicians reported using performance-based measures such as the Amputee Mobility Predictor (AMP), Berg Balance Scale [BBS], or the 2-minute walk test; others used self-report measures such as the Orthotics and Prosthetics Users Survey (OPUS) or Activities Specific Balance Confidence (ABC) Scale.[101] Some literature suggests that the AMP may be the ideal outcome measure to determine K levels, especially in differentiating between K levels 3 and 4.[105] However, the wide range of scores across multiple K levels makes it difficult to use the AMP to determine one specific level.[106] It should be noted that if an individual's functional ability increases over time, the rating can be raised.

K Level 0: This does not imply the ability or potential to ambulate or transfer safely with or without assistance, and such a prosthesis does not enhance the individual's quality of life or mobility.

K Level 1: This enables the ability or potential to use a prosthesis for transfers or ambulation on level surfaces at a fixed cadence; it is a household ambulator.

K Level 2: A prosthesis at this level enables the ability or potential for ambulation with and to traverse low-level environmental barriers such as curbs, stairs, and uneven surfaces; it is a limited community ambulator.

K Level 3: Such a prosthesis can facilitate the ability or potential for ambulation with variable cadence; it is an advanced community ambulator, enabling the amputee to traverse most environmental barriers. It may also enable vocational, therapeutic, or exercise activity that demands utilization of the prosthesis beyond simple locomotion.

K Level 4: This type of prosthesis implies an ability or potential for ambulation that exceeds basic ambulation skills, exhibiting high-impact, stress, or energy levels; it is useful to active children, young adults, and older adults engaged in recreational activities and sports.

It is important for physical therapists to understand the role they play in determining the K level. Because therapists spend a great deal of time working with people one on one, they often have a clearer idea of the individual's goals or needs than do other members of the team. The therapist may gain insight or information that is important in the decision-making process. If he or she is familiar with the components of prostheses and the K levels under which those components are covered, the therapist may begin to form an opinion about the best prosthetic prescription for a given amputee during the early rehabilitation phase. Reassessment on a regular basis during the initial stages of rehabilitation and sharing the current and projected mobility status with the interdisciplinary team is the ideal model for the determination of K levels and prosthetic prescriptions.

The physical therapist must have a basic understanding of prosthetic components and design to be able to contribute to the prescription process. In the dynamic biomedical industry, it is challenging to stay current with developments in prosthetic design and technology, and prosthetic options can seem overwhelming! Excellent working relationships with local prosthetists can be of great benefit, and therapists should be critical consumers of the professional literature related to componentry with special attention to research sponsors (who are often the prosthetic companies). A therapist with

a thorough understanding of the different characteristics of prosthetic feet can help to work with the prosthetist in identifying the type of foot that is most suitable and economical to meet a specific person's functional needs. Therapists must also be familiar with the special needs of certain clinical populations so that they can assist in determining the optimal prescription to meet those needs. People with diabetes who are at great risk for additional skin breakdown and poor healing may benefit from a socket with a soft insert or from a silicone sleeve designed to reduce friction during use. Frail or deconditioned individuals may reach higher levels of function if lightweight components are chosen and stability in prosthetic prescription is emphasized. Decisions to change socket design or suspension for long-term prosthesis users must be carefully considered. A person who has worn a particular type of prosthesis for a long time may have difficulty acclimating to a new type of device. If a person has no complaints about a prosthesis other than "it's worn out," it is advisable to use similar components for a replacement prosthesis. If a person is expressing interest in new goals or activities (e.g., a prosthesis user who has never run and would like to try jogging), prescription changes may be warranted.

Early Training for Use of a Prosthesis

Initial fitting occurs when the surgical incision is healed (or is healing without complications) and girth measurements at the distal residual limb are equal to or less than proximal girth measurements. The time from surgery to initial fitting in uncomplicated dysvascular amputees generally ranges from 6 to 12 weeks. Individuals with uncomplicated traumatic amputations may be fitted as early as 2 to 3 weeks, and individuals with dysvascular amputations complicated by delayed wound healing or medical issues may have to wait several months prior to being fitted for initial prosthesis. Although a prolonged wait time may be frustrating, it can be used in priming the amputee for training with appropriate flexibility, resistance, endurance, and balance. Several important components of early rehabilitation can be effectively addressed in group classes and/or through printed materials. These components include care of the sound limb, donning and doffing the prosthesis, establishing a wearing schedule, managing and preventing skin breakdown, positioning with the prosthesis, and care of equipment.

DONNING AND DOFFING THE PROSTHESIS

Donning the prosthesis will become second nature for an amputee—just another component of getting dressed each day—but early in rehabilitation it must be deliberately taught through a series of specific steps that will be dictated by the prosthesis's components. The most common suspension system for a transtibial prosthetic device is a roll-on silicone liner with a pin-lock suspension system. Donning of this type of prosthesis is represented in Fig. 26.1. This procedure requires the individual to attend to the orientation of the distal pin when rolling the liner onto the residual limb so as to anticipate appropriate need for socks for optimal fit, to orient the pin into the ring-lock mechanism in a seated position, and to stand and bear weight for the final engagement of the suspension mechanism. On weight bearing, the pin will depress into the ring, which is confirmed by a predetermined number of audible clicks to indicate appropriate fit (too many or too few clicks point to a need to reassess alignment and prosthetic socks). Other types of suction/vacuum suspension systems (e.g., a roll-on seal-in ring for transtibial or transfemoral prostheses or double wall vacuum system or classic valve system for transfemoral prostheses) have

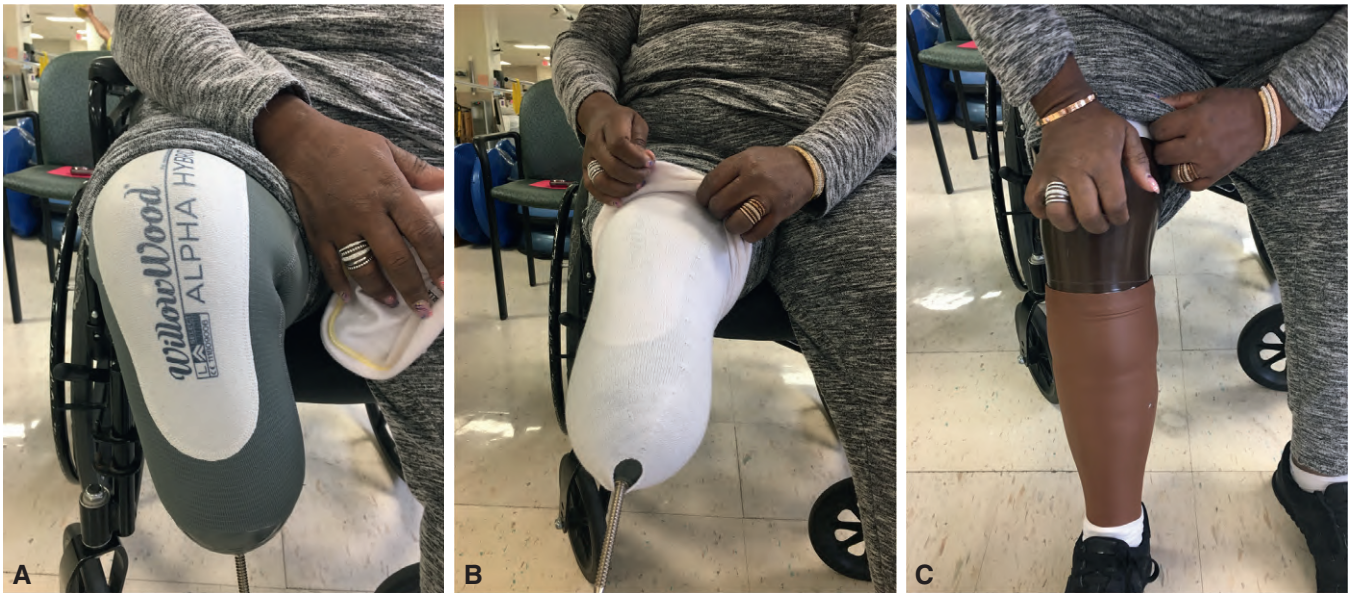


Fig. 26.1 This person with a recent transtibial amputation demonstrates the correct sequence for donning her prosthesis. (A) First, she applies the silicon liner, attending to the orientation of the pin. (B) Once the liner has been positioned, prosthetic socks are added, one at a time, and carefully adjusted for a smooth fit until the desired number of layers is reached. (C) The final step is to insert the residual limb with socks and liner into the prosthesis. The prosthesis is donned in the seated position, gradually increasing weight bearing to achieve the desired total contact fit.

distinctive requirements for optimal donning technique and usually require cleaning of the residual limb and/or application of a lubricant prior to donning. Balance and hand strength and dexterity may be prerequisites to independent donning; they are therefore addressed in the preprosthetic phase. The chapters on prosthetic components elucidate further the donning requirements for specific types of prostheses, and therapists can rely on their prosthetist colleagues to answer questions about specific donning needs related to any device with which they are not familiar.

Whereas donning technique is specific to socket and suspension type, there are some universal themes in donning that should be taught to all users. For instance, individuals are taught to dress the prosthesis first (i.e., for ease of dressing, put the prosthesis through a pant leg and place a shoe on the prosthetic foot prior to donning the limb). Additionally, all users must learn to pay close attention to the orientation of the socket in the horizontal plane. The contours of the socket are precisely designed to accommodate the residual limb's anatomy. In a person with a sensate residual limb, this may be constructive in assuring proper alignment, as the socket will not "feel right" unless it is oriented correctly. In the person with impaired sensation in the residual limb, vision and palpation of the residual limb structures may be used to assure proper alignment. Often individuals use the prosthetic foot as a reference for horizontal plane alignment; static prosthetic alignment often places the foot in slight outtoeing in standing, and the individual can use this visual cue as affirmation of proper prosthetic alignment.

Early instruction and assessment of donning and fit of the transfemoral socket often requires the therapist to palpate the ischial tuberosity and potentially other structures (e.g., pubic rami, adductor tendons) for optimal positioning within the socket. This requires clear and professional communication and education to clarify the purpose and process of a palpation that would otherwise be considered a serious invasion of personal space.

Prosthetic Fit: Socket Design and Sock Use

A close fit between the residual limb and the socket is necessary for successful training. The optimal prosthetic fit is quite snug, like that of a custom-made glove on the hand. The total-contact socket is designed to distribute weight bearing over a maximal surface area, assist in venous blood return, provide sensory feedback through the residual limb, and enable an efficient transfer of muscle function to the prosthetic device. Although the socket is prepared over a positive model of the amputee's limb, either through casting or computer technology, the dynamic nature of the residual limb may require socket modifications in the early days of training. Frequent and careful inspection of the residual limb and feedback from the user will serve to assess socket fit and tolerance to wear.

Socket comfort is extremely important to amputees regardless of etiology.[107–109] New users must be educated on the principles of fit and weight bearing and on what to expect with their first attempts at standing while wearing a prosthesis. Because of the nature of the full-contact socket and the distribution of weight bearing throughout, the prosthesis may feel "tight," "squeezing," or "strange." All are normal and expected initial responses to prosthesis wear. Total contact within the socket is very important, and skin problems can occur when total contact is not achieved. Amputees should understand where weight-bearing pressures are best tolerated on the limb and where pressure sensitivity is likely to occur. Although they may initially expect to bear weight through the distal end of the limb, they must understand that sockets are designed to distribute weight-bearing forces across several areas. For the transtibial socket, these areas include the patellar tendon, anteromedial and anterolateral surfaces of the residual limb, medial tibial flare, and distal posterior aspect of the residual limb. For the ischial-ramal containment transfemoral socket, they include the posterior aspect of the residual limb, with the pubic ramus (medially), ischial tuberosity (posteriorly), and greater trochanter (laterally) contained in the prosthetic socket. The ischial-ramal containment socket also distributes pressure through the lateral femur to increase the efficiency of the hip abductors in weight bearing. The quadrilateral socket, not often prescribed but still in use with long-time users, utilizes pressure anteriorly on the Scarpa triangle, forcing the ischial tuberosity to rest on a posterior shelf of the socket.

Prosthetic socks are used to modify the fit between the socket and the shrinking residual limb. Proper use of prosthetic socks enhances residual limb weight bearing in pressure-tolerant areas, decreases the likelihood of skin breakdown in pressure-intolerant areas, and increases comfort within the socket. Wool or cotton prosthetic socks are available in three different layers (thicknesses): one (thinnest), three, and five (thickest). Amputees who use a rigid or flexible socket may first apply a thin sheath directly over the skin (under the socks) to minimize friction and wick moisture away from the skin. Socks are then applied before the limb is placed in the socket. If a sheath is not used, socks are applied directly on the residual limb. When silicone suction suspension or a friction-reducing liner that requires skin contact is used, socks are applied after the sleeve or liner has been placed on the clean residual limb. For liners with a pin-in-ring locking mechanism, a small hole in the bottom of each sock will allow for engagement of the pin within its receptacle. Socks are combined to create a snug fit that uses the fewest socks to achieve the appropriate sock thickness (e.g., one 3-layer sock is preferable to three 1-layer socks). Users should be encouraged to establish a careful routine of donning the appropriate number of socks, one layer at a time, smoothed free of wrinkles, with seams facing down and away from the residual limb. For some users, including those prone to fluctuations in fluid volume (e.g., those with kidney dysfunction or CHF), a few minutes in a dependent position without a shrinker or Ace wrap in place can substantially increase the size of the residual limb. For this reason, they must wear their compression device until the moment when they are ready to don their prostheses.

Amputees should be informed that initiation of weight-bearing activities in the prosthetic socket significantly decreases limb edema and accelerates maturation of the residual limb as a result of the total contact and the pumping of muscle contractions during weight-bearing and movement. Shrinkage of the residual limb in early training is accommodated by the addition of layers of socks to maintain a snug residual limb-prosthesis interface. Fluctuations in limb volume associated with edema in the first weeks and months after amputation often mean that the appropriate number of sock layers must vary from day to day and often within a given day. Given fluctuations in the size of the

residual limb during early training and the need for a precise socket fit, new users of prostheses must carry extra socks with them whenever they are going to be out for more than 2 to 3 hours. Because of the potential for rapid fluctuations in limb size, choosing and monitoring the correct number of socks may be challenging for those new to the use of a prosthesis. Therapists and prosthetists work with new users to assist in the development of problem-solving skills and strategies to determine the appropriate number of socks to use. Most individuals become adept at judging the adequacy of sock layers when given the opportunity to practice and solve problems early in their rehabilitation.

When too few socks are used, the residual limb can descend too far down within the socket and the distribution of weight throughout the residual limb may be affected. Sometimes the amputee will hear more than the usual number of clicks when donning a pin-in-ring suspension device. Another indication may be sensations of pain in the distal residual limb and/or pistoning during ambulation; this can occur when the prosthesis slips downward when unweighted and upward on weight bearing. If pistoning is suspected, close observation of the anterior or posterior trim line of the socket or border of the liner during an unweighted hip-hiking motion of the prosthetic side may reveal that slippage is occurring; in such a case, additional sock layers are indicated. When the transtibial prosthesis and socks are taken off to inspect the skin, reactive hyperemia (redness) is seen at the proximal patellar tendon and the inferior border of the patella as well as at the distal anterior residual limb. Redness may also be present on the fibular head, which has contacted the socket below its intended relief area. These are all signs that the residual limb is sinking too deep into the socket and that additional sock layers should be added. Too few socks in a transfemoral socket may lead to increased weight bearing and hyperemia on the distal residual limb and complaints of pressure in the groin as the socket rides up higher than intended.

Although pistoning is usually an indication of too few layers of socks, paradoxically it can also be seen in a person wearing too many layers because the residual limb is never fully situated in the socket and therefore never gains good purchase, causing the socket to move up when weight bearing and down when unweighted. Indications that too many layers of socks have been donned may be complaints that the prosthesis is difficult to don, fits too tightly, or feels slightly longer during gait. In the transtibial amputee, if inspection of the skin after ambulation reveals reactive hyperemia on the distal patellar tendon, tibial tubercle, and/or head of fibula, these landmarks may be contacting the socket above their intended reliefs (i.e., too many socks prohibits the residual limb from being well positioned in the socket). In the ischial containment transfemoral socket, too many socks will prohibit the residual limb from gaining good purchase within the socket and the amputee will not feel "locked" into the socket. In long-term users who are still using a quadrilateral socket design, the ischial tuberosity will be elevated off the posterior shelf. These are indications that one or more layers of socks should be removed to enhance socket fit.

Prosthetic socks can also be used creatively to solve problems with socket fit. If, for example, the girth of the amputee's distal residual limb has decreased more quickly than its proximal girth, creating a pendulum effect within the socket during ambulation, one of the prosthetic socks can be cut to cover just the lower half of the residual limb. When layered between two full-sized socks, the shorter sock helps to fill the extra space within the socket, ensuring total contact between the limb and socket.

Typically, when the precision of fit within the socket is compromised by 15 or more layers of sock, switching to a new prosthetic socket is indicated. How soon the initial socket will have to be replaced varies depending on the pattern of shrinkage of the residual limb. For some, the first replacement socket may be necessary in 2 to 3 months, whereas others may use their initial socket for 6 months or more. The socket may be replaced additional times as the residual limb continues to shrink during the first postoperative year. An individual is considered to be ready for the definitive prosthetic socket when the size of the residual limb is stable for an 8- to 12-week period, as indicated by girth measurements and by a consistent number of sock layers for prosthetic fit; this generally takes anywhere from 6 to 18 months after surgery. With each new socket, close monitoring of the residual limb throughout the adjustment period is necessary.

ALIGNMENT OF THE PROSTHESIS

This is evaluated in quiet standing (statically) and during gait activities (dynamically). *Static alignment* refers to the relationships between the socket, prosthetic knee joint (if applicable), pylon, prosthetic ankle/foot, and floor; the length of the prosthesis; and the overall fit of the socket on the residual limb. Because the assessment of static alignment is the first standing activity in which an amputee engages, it is prudent to carry this out in the parallel bars or with substantial support if parallel bars are not readily available. Information gleaned from this assessment can provide clues regarding pressure distribution on the tissues of the residual limb within the socket. Problems with alignment affect not only pressures within the socket but also the biomechanics of gait and the translation of forces from the prosthetic foot up the kinematic chain. The assessment of dynamic alignment includes all components of static alignment but in the context of movement and also the assessment of suspension and symmetry of gait. Both static and dynamic alignment must be evaluated from anterior, posterior, and lateral (prosthetic and sound side) views. Table 26.6 provides a basic rationale for standard transtibial and transfemoral static alignment, which is important for therapists to understand given the close association of prosthetic alignment with the biomechanics of gait. For a thorough review of prosthetic alignment, see the chapters on the relevant components.

WEARING SCHEDULE FOR THE PROSTHESIS

It is vital that new users of a prosthesis understand the importance of the gradual progression of wearing time and are compliant with their personalized wearing schedule. Constant reassessment of socket fit and comfort and diligent assessment of the skin of the residual limb after bouts of wear are necessary during the entire training phase. Amputees and/or their care providers should be well educated on residual limb inspection. Rapid and significant changes in residual limb shape and size are common in early

Table 26.6 Static Alignment of Prosthesis and Rationale

Alignment	Rationale for Alignment
POSTERIOR VIEW	
Prosthesis height (symmetric leg length)	Prevents gait deviations associated with leg-length discrepancy Provides optimal weight bearing through the socket to prevent pain and skin issues Prevents sound limb orthopedic deformity associated with leg-length discrepancy
Plumb line: midsocket to slightly lateral to midheel	In the transtibial prosthesis, creates slight varus moment during stance, as in normal gait In the transtibial socket, directs compressive forces to pressure-tolerant areas at medial proximal (medial tibial flare, medial femoral condyle) and lateral distal (fibular shaft) residual limb and minimizes compressive forces on nontolerant areas at lateral proximal (fibular head) and medial distal residual limb In the transfemoral socket, directs forces onto the residual lateral femoral shaft
Slight adduction of transfemoral socket	Adduction of the transfemoral socket serves to improve length tension relationship and efficiency of the hip abductors in maintaining a level pelvis during unilateral stance
LATERAL VIEW	
Transtibial socket in 5–10 degrees of flexion (anterior tilt of socket, encouraging slight knee flexion) when in a midstance position	Distributes weight-bearing forces to anterior pressure-tolerant aspect of transtibial residual limb Limits vertical displacement of center of mass at midstance to decrease energy cost of gait Allows for controlled knee flexion in loading response and late stance, as in normal gait Prevents abnormal hyperextension of the knee in midstance
Transfemoral socket in 5 degrees of flexion (posterior tilt of socket, encouraging hip flexion) with the knee in full extension at the midstance position	Serves to improve length tension relationship and efficiency of the hip extensors during stance phase of gait Distributes weight bearing forces to posterior pressure-tolerant aspect of transfemoral residual limb
Plumb line: midsocket to anterior edge of heel	In transtibial alignment, allows for knee flexion from mid- to terminal stance In transtibial alignment, prevents hyperextension of the knee in stance
Assessment of trochanter-knee-ankle line	In transfemoral alignment, provides assessment of the location of the center of rotation of the knee joint in the transfemoral prosthesis relative to hip and ankle, which dictates the stability of prosthetic knee extension during stance and the ease of prosthetic knee flexion in preparation for swing

prosthetic training due to weight bearing, compression within the socket, and the muscle pumping action that occurs with walking. As a result, socket fit may become less intimate, which can lead to skin issues. The duration of early wearing time is usually conservative, especially for individuals with a history of skin integrity problems. Initial weight-bearing activities are closely supervised, lasting no longer than 5 to 10 minutes in between skin inspections. Inspection of the residual limb after the first few minutes of weight bearing should reveal redness of the skin in predictable load-bearing regions. Because both the transtibial and transfemoral sockets are designed to be in total contact with the residual limb, the entire limb may develop a mild reactive hyperemia (redness) that is apparent when the socket is first removed.

Once an individual is spending 30 to 60 minutes in the prosthesis without problems, total time in the prosthesis is gradually increased, often in increments of 15 to 30 minutes as tolerated. The therapist works with the amputee to determine how much of the wearing time he or she should spend up and walking. People with no history of skin integrity problems (e.g., traumatic amputation or revision of congenital limb anomaly) often progress quickly with wearing activities, whereas those with sensory impairment or peripheral vascular disease may have to progress more cautiously. An individualized written schedule should be provided to guide prosthetic wearing of the prosthesis and prevent misunderstandings about the time permitted for its use and the suggested amount of upright weight-bearing activity per bout of wear.

POSITIONING

People will often need instruction about positioning of the lower extremity in the prosthesis when seated. The trim lines of the transtibial socket are designed for optimal pressure distribution during upright weight-bearing activities. The high posterior wall of the socket is necessary to provide counterpressure to the anterior weight-bearing surface in stance but can place undue pressure on the hamstring tendons in sitting. The patellar tendon indentation in the prosthesis is designed to take weight in standing but can place

pressure on the anterior aspect of the tibial tuberosity if the prosthesis slips down when the person is seated. Similarly, the transfemoral socket can shift or lose suction in sitting, which can result in undue pressure if the person remains sitting for a long time. It is optimal that, when seated, the individual's prosthetic foot rest flat on the floor or foot plate of the wheelchair so that the residual limb remains in total contact with the socket. This helps avoid the risk of undue pressure and decreases the chance of gapping between the prosthesis and the residual limb, which may allow edema to develop. Additionally, although some individuals may be anxious to carry out exercise programs with the prosthesis in place, they must understand that using the prosthesis for activities other than walking (e.g., weighted long-arc quad riceps exercise, recumbent cycling ergometer use) changes the magnitude and direction of forces on the residual limb and may increase the possibility of skin breakdown.

PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT OF SKIN PROBLEMS IN THE RESIDUAL LIMB

Because prolonged wound healing and the development of skin irritation can delay training and significantly affect daily functioning,[110,111] the prevention and management of skin problems are important components of treatment. The prevalence of skin problems on the residual limb in prosthesis users has been reported to be between 36% and 63%.[112–114] Especially vulnerable to skin issues are very active users and those with impaired hand function.[114,115] Thermal discomfort and sweating within the socket is a complaint shared by up to 53% of prosthesis users.[111,116] Pressure, friction, and shearing forces are the primary causes of skin breakdown related to prosthetic wear. If, during weight bearing, external pressure exceeds capillary refill pressure (25–32 mm Hg) for an extended time, the delivery of oxygen and nutrients and the removal of waste products from active tissues are interrupted. If relief of pressure is provided, this local ischemia is followed by a reactive vasodilation or hyperemia. This is the mechanism that produces the redness over weight-bearing areas that is observed in new users of prostheses. A blanchable area of redness over weight-bearing areas, which returns to normal skin coloration within 10 minutes, is to be expected in early training and indicates normal reactive hyperemia.[117] If redness persists or the skin does not blanch on firm palpation, tissue damage has likely occurred and the risk of skin breakdown will increase significantly.

It is important that therapists and amputees recognize the implications of redness over pressure-tolerant versus pressure-sensitive areas of the residual limb. If a pressure-tolerant area shows evidence of excessive pressure, socket fit and alignment may be appropriate but the amount of weight bearing or duration of wearing may have to be decreased. If pressure-sensitive areas are showing signs of too much pressure, it is more likely that socket fit or alignment must be adjusted. When excessive redness is observed, successful problem solving dictates changing a single variable at a time and assessing the effect of this one change on the problem. If multiple changes are made at the same time (e.g., wearing time, alignment, and socket fit are all altered), it will be unclear which change solved the problem if indeed the problem is solved. If the problem is not solved, there will be no way of knowing if the interventions may have been more successful independent of one another.

An individual's risk for skin breakdown on the residual limb is determined by physiologic and mechanical factors. The vascular, sensory, and musculoskeletal conditions of the residual limb are the physiologic determinants, whereas socket fit, prosthetic alignment, amount of weight bearing, and duration of weight bearing are the mechanical determinants. Each of these risk factors may have clinical implications. A conservative prosthetic wearing schedule and frequent residual limb inspection may be indicated for those with skin breakdown caused by any of the physiologic risk factors. If poor scar and soft tissue mobility of the residual limb leads to tissue breakdown, deep friction massage over the involved area (after healing) and/or application of a friction-minimizing sheath within the socket may be appropriate interventions.

Improper socket fit or alignment can result in increased weight bearing on pressure-sensitive areas of the residual limb and may result in skin breakdown. If poor fit is suspected, problem solving requires a thorough reevaluation of donning technique, the number of socks being used, and reassessment of total contact within the socket. If these areas are sufficient, potential problems with prosthetic alignment are investigated. It is important to note that increasing duration of prosthetic wearing too quickly in a well-aligned and appropriately fitting prosthesis can result in skin breakdown in pressure-tolerant areas of the residual limb. An individual who has been successfully ambulating with partial weight bearing using axillary crutches may develop skin breakdown on progression to cane use as a result of increased weight bearing.

The presence of skin breakdown is not a direct contraindication to further use of the prosthetic device. In fact, the physiologic (and psychologic) benefits of keeping an older adult with a dysvascular amputation mobile and ambulatory versus the drawbacks of immobility that may result from discontinuing use of the prosthesis must be considered in deciding how best to manage skin issues. A recent systematic review by Highsmith et al. revealed that comorbidities that may delay the healing of residual limb ulcers—such as chronic smoking, volume fluctuations, infection, or a history of ulceration—may lead to a decision to discontinue use of a prosthesis for the duration of wound healing; however, in a compliant amputee without these characteristics, modified use of the prosthesis is a viable strategy.[110]

The first priority should be to identify the cause of breakdown and eliminate it by systematically making appropriate changes. Close observation and ongoing assessment and treatment of any lesions using appropriate nonadherent dressings inside the socket will allow use of the prosthesis to continue, although it may be on a modified schedule. Certainly if during training a lesion becomes progressively worse despite clinical management, a hiatus may be indicated. In the example presented previously, a return to bilateral crutch use and diminished prosthetic wearing time may be indicated until the lesion has healed. After healing, ambulation time might be divided between bilateral and unilateral crutch use to build tolerance for increased weight bearing. Full-time unilateral crutch use may then be attempted as a prelude to transitioning again to cane use.

As the amputee begins to ambulate over different terrains, the magnitude and direction of weight-bearing pressures within the socket may change, presenting additional mechanical risk factors for skin breakdown. Descending stairs using a step-to-step pattern protects the residual limb by leading with the prosthetic leg; when advancing to a reciprocal step-over-step technique, the residual limb experiences a different pattern of pressure distribution. As step height increases, so does the total excursion through ROM necessary to descend the stairs using a step-over-step strategy. Ambulation on uneven terrain, such as grass or gravel, produces different pressures within the socket than walking on a predictable, level surface. When the potential causes of skin breakdown are being evaluated, it is important to consider the characteristics of the environments and the task demands of the activities in which the individual has been engaging. Changing task technique by adapting the movement strategy or the environment or adding an AD can provide just enough protection for the residual limb to prevent skin irritation and breakdown.

If localized increased pressure is determined to be the cause of tissue breakdown, pressure relief is the goal and socket modification by the prosthetist may be necessary. Certain methods of pressure relief are inappropriate and should be avoided. The use of "donut" padding around an area of breakdown or potential breakdown is counterproductive for three reasons. A donut pad (1) increases pressure to the area surrounding the lesion when the limb is placed in the socket, (2) increases the ischemic effect of weight bearing, and (3) potentially leads to edema or extrusion of the vulnerable tissue through the "hole" of the donut. Dressings should be used sparingly inside a prosthetic socket as the socket fit is designed to be snug, and any padded dressing increases pressure over the affected area, which is counterproductive to the goal of wound healing. There are multiple options for thin, self-adherent, nontextured dressings (e.g., Tegaderm, Second-Skin) that can be used within the prosthesis's socket to effectively provide another "tissue" layer to an area that is threatening to break down or is in the process of healing.

CARE OF PROSTHETIC EQUIPMENT

Amputees will likely receive explicit instructions about the proper care and maintenance of their prosthetic equipment from the prosthetist but may need reinforcement of these concepts during rehabilitation. The prosthetic's socket and liner should be wiped daily with a damp cloth. Prosthetic socks should be washed daily and laid flat to dry (wool socks shrink when dried in an electric clothes dryer). When not being worn, most prosthetic devices (with the exception of those with hydraulic mechanisms) should be stored in a flat position to minimize the risk of damage should they fall over (hard sockets are particularly vulnerable to traumatic cracks).

Prosthetic Gait Training

Functional ambulation involves moving the body through space effectively and efficiently while meeting environmental and task demands. In the prosthesis user, this has many prerequisites, including (1) achieving the necessary baseline of flexibility, strength, and endurance; (2) building tolerance to prosthesis wear and weight bearing through the residual limb; (3) controlling dynamic weight shifting through the prosthetic foot in all planes of movement; and (4) reintegrating postural control and balance despite the missing sensory/proprioceptive input, muscle activity, and ROM from the amputated limb. The skilled physical therapist will shepherd the amputee through the training process, helping him or her to build proficiency and confidence along the way. An individual's fears and concerns influence determination and motivation and are powerful determinants of community ambulation.[46,118] A person who is otherwise functionally capable of safe ambulation may choose not to venture outside home because he or she lacks confidence or is fearful of being identified as disabled or different. In contrast, a person whose clinical picture is less promising for functional prosthetic use but who is determined to return to a busy and productive life "on two feet" may very well do so; thus therapists must not underestimate the power of motivation!

INITIAL TRAINING

For the new user of a prosthesis, the initiation of gait training typically begins with ambulation on level surfaces with few environmental demands. The parallel bars are an excellent starting point, offering a stable, secure, protected environment with minimal challenges. If bars are unavailable, a countertop or table, raised mat or plinth, chair backs, or ADs can all be appropriate alternatives. Individuals are encouraged to use a relaxed, open-handed grip when they train in the bars, as the tendency to pull and rely heavily on the secure bars is a difficult habit to "untrain" when transitioning to a less protected environment (Fig. 26.2). When an individual receives the prosthesis and is eager to take the first steps, it is useful to limit cues and simply allow the individual to walk. Ambulation in the parallel bars helps the therapist to identify gait deviations early in training before maladaptive habits become problematic. Based on this preliminary gait assessment, individual problem areas can be addressed with gait training and exercise activities. Early therapeutic activities will progress from initially supporting and later challenging the individual's postural stability. Progressing from weight bearing and gait activities with significant bilateral upper extremity support to minimal or no support is a common early goal in the rehabilitation process of both transtibial and transfemoral amputees. During all activities with the new user of a prosthesis, the therapist must remain cognizant of the need for frequent skin checks for signs of pressure intolerance and skin irritation.

A typical progression of early prosthetic training activities might include the following:

1. Static weight bearing with decreasing dependence on upper extremity support (e.g., progressing from bilateral open-handed upper extremity support to contralateral open-handed upper extremity support to ipsilateral open-handed upper extremity support to no upper extremity support).
2. Standing reaching activities that require the person to reach to a variety of heights and directions within a functional context. These activities are progressed by

Fig. 26.2 Weight bearing, weight shifting, and balance activities in early prosthetic training. (A) A new prosthetic user practices loading weight onto the prosthesis by performing a trunk rotation and reaching activities in the parallel bars. Note full weight bearing through the prosthesis, demonstrating good prosthetic alignment and erect trunk and head posture, with a gentle open-handed grip on the parallel bars. (B) Rotation to the sound limb facilitates weight shifting on and off the prosthesis and can challenge balance and postural control. (C) Stepping up a low step can increase weight bearing through the prosthesis in the early stages of rehabilitation.

decreasing upper extremity support, increasingly challenging reaching limits in all directions, and varying foot position. Therapists should carefully observe and critique weight shifting and weight bearing during reaching tasks. Reaching excursion in the direction of the prosthetic limb should be significantly greater with the prosthesis than it is without. If reaching distances are similar, this is likely an indication that the individual is not truly using the prosthesis to broaden his or her base of support; this is required to promote a larger shift of center of mass in reaching. These early reaching activities are prerequisites to later more progressed functional goals such as reaching to high shelves, lifting something of substantial weight, and picking objects up from the floor.

3. Simple dynamic weight-shifting activities, consisting of loading and offloading body weight through the prosthesis in multiple directions (anterior/posterior, medial/lateral, and diagonal patterns) as is required in gait and functional activities. These tasks are progressed by decreasing upper extremity support and/or varying foot positions (parallel stance, step stance, tandem stance). It may be helpful to cue the individual to think about the weight going through the "ball" or "heel" or the medial or lateral surface of the prosthetic foot as he or she shifts weight in different directions. This heightened awareness of what is happening distally may help to correlate sensations within the prosthesis's socket with former somatosensory experiences of the foot. Another strategy during weight-shifting activities is to have the individual focus proximally on pelvic position. The focus on the pelvis is important for several reasons: (a) There is clear evidence of asymmetries in pelvic stability and control during gait in amputees.[119] (b) The pelvis is key to stability in upright posture, so the individual is cued in to this important locus of control. (c) By focusing on the pelvis, the individual is being directed to control a part of the body that is intact and "whole." Although he or she may never have focused on pelvic awareness prior to rehabilitation, this takes the focus off the prosthesis and the "new" challenges that the amputee is facing. (d) Awareness of pelvic position in early weight-shifting activities may make later gait demands, such as emphasizing pelvic protraction or rotation, easier for the individual to grasp. In controlling the pelvis during weight-shifting activities, the amputee might envision the pelvis as a tabletop with a tall vase centrally located on the table, so if the pelvis tips in any direction, the vase will fall and break; or they may imagine a ball on that table and—regardless of the direction of the weight shift—they must not let the ball roll off of the table. These cues are intended to encourage anterior, posterior, and lateral translational movements of the pelvis without substantial anterior, posterior, or lateral tilting of the pelvis.
4. Repeated stepping activities (e.g., breaking down the gait cycle into its component parts, varied stepping patterns in different directions) with decreasing upper extremity support. The focus here is in loading and offloading the prosthetic limb with good proximal/pelvic control. Repetitive loading of the prosthesis is an appropriate task, even without full translation of weight over the foot, as it requires repetitive and appropriate positioning of the prosthetic limb (as required for the initial contact phase of gait) and initiation of the transfer of weight (as required for the transition from initial contact into loading response). The progression to full weight bearing and the single-limb support phase of gait is an intuitive next step, as is the integration of loading and offloading the prosthesis within the full gait cycle. Although the use of weight bearing and stepping strategies outside of the

functional context of walking may seem contrary to fundamental tenets of motor learning (i.e., encouraging action-directed/whole task performance), practicing the component parts and integrating them into functional gait and mobility skills is a reasonable and acceptable motor learning principle.[42] Regardless of the focus of the intervention (weight bearing, balance, postural control, or coordination and sequencing), the activity can and should be integrated into the gait cycle or the functional task within the same treatment session.

5. Stepping with the uninvolved limb onto an elevated surface (begin with a low surface and progressing to height and/or beginning with a stable surface, such as stepstool or thick book, and progressing to a less stable surface, such as an air disc or small ball) forces increased weight bearing through the prosthetic limb with progressively decreasing upper extremity support. The focus is on slow and controlled motions of the sound limb without substantial proximal instability on the weight-bearing prosthetic limb. Activities might include stable standing on the prosthetic limb while performing toe tapping with the sound limb on a stool or manipulating of a ball on the floor (rolling the ball forward and back under the foot) (see Fig. 26.2).
6. Gait training to minimize gait deviations within or progressing out of the parallel bars. Early in gait training, individuals may benefit from an exaggerated effort to dig the prosthetic heel into the floor at initial contact so as to use the resulting pressure at the posterior residual limb as an indicator of contact with the floor and, in the case of transfemoral amputation, to assure prosthetic knee extension. The individual may learn to interpret this sensory experience within the socket as the secure position for proceeding with loading response and progressing into midstance. Many prosthetic knees rely on the translation of weight bearing over the prosthetic forefoot in terminal stance and preswing to generate the knee flexion required to forward the limb in swing phase and this may require focused practice. These loading and offloading techniques can be practiced in pregait stepping drills or repetitively in early gait training.
7. Sit-to-stand and stand-to-sit activities, to enhance the ease and independence of transitional movements. Transtibial amputees are encouraged to integrate partial weight bearing through the prosthesis, whereas it is much more difficult for transfemoral amputees to bear weight during transitional movements with a prosthesis. Beginning training to/from high surfaces with arm rests and progressing to lower surfaces without arm rests and varying training to include different types of support surfaces will enhance the individual's ability to generalize the sit-to-stand skill to a variety of settings.

Some individuals may have difficulty aligning themselves symmetrically over their feet in static stance when initially training with the prosthesis. They may appear hesitant to weight the prosthetic limb and their perceived line of gravity may strongly favor the sound limb with the prosthetic-side hip appearing abducted and the sound hip adducted. Ironically, individuals who have been especially active and functional during the preprosthetic phase, ambulating with crutches or a walker, may find weight bearing through a prosthesis difficult. During the preprosthetic phase, the sound limb often gravitates to a more central location under the individual so that their center of gravity is directly over their single-foot base of support. These individuals must work to reorient their lower extremity positioning and line of gravity to center themselves over their "new" 2-footed base of support. Fig. 26.3 represents this concept.

Individuals who are hesitant to bear weight through the prosthesis due to fear or weakness or habitual pattern may be tempted to use the prosthesis as an "assistive device" for

Fig. 26.3 Line of gravity with and without the prosthesis. (A) During the preprosthetic phase, the line of gravity shifts to directly over the sound limb. (B) Individuals must work to reorient their lower extremity positioning and line of gravity to fall midline when wearing their prostheses.

ambulation rather than as a true replacement limb. These individuals maintain the prosthetic limb in an abducted posture and struggle to decrease reliance on upper extremities and the sound lower extremity during standing and ambulation activities. It is important for both therapist and new prosthesis wearer to recognize that improved weight bearing allows for decreased mechanical stresses on the sound limb, which inevitably has vascular compromise. Clinical strategies that are used to encourage optimal alignment and weight shifting over the prosthesis may include stepping on a bathroom scale to provide objective data regarding weight bearing through the prosthesis, use of a mirror for visual feedback to self-assess alignment, and biofeedback in the form of video games such as the Wii fit.[120]

Progressing prosthetic training requires increasing challenges to postural control and balance. A typical and detrimental mistake often made in rehabilitation is implementing a treatment plan that is beneath the capabilities of the amputee. Therapists are reminded that physically and functionally challenging the person training with a prosthesis is vital to reaching his or her full potential. New prosthesis users who constantly seek upper extremity support and/or have the therapist guarding and intervening with even the slightest loss of balance will never establish and understand their own limits of stability and will not develop the ability to monitor and maintain their own balance with confidence. Ultimately, dynamic therapeutic activities without (or with limited) upper extremity support and activities that require both anticipatory and reactive balance strategies (e.g., playing catch, kicking a ball with a partner) can be used to prepare the prosthesis user for more open, unpredictable real-world environments (Fig. 26.4). Coordination, sequencing, and timing of gait may be facilitated by auditory or visual cues. Use of a metronome or musical beat to time steps or a floor ladder or spaced targets to drive step length can be integrated into gait training.

The focus on pelvic awareness and control (as introduced in the context of weight shifting, discussed earlier) can be further emphasized in training with the integration of PNF techniques in standing and during pregait and gait activities.[121] Facilitating muscle activation via joint approximation, using rhythmic stabilization (i.e., having the individual hold pelvic position against resistance in varying directions) to strengthen and improve pelvic control, and providing mindful and deliberate verbal, tactile, and/or manual cues to facilitate control and movement of the pelvis are all PNF strategies. The therapist's hand placed on the anterolateral aspect of the involved pelvis to cue movement into the hand can facilitate anterior progression of the pelvis over the prosthetic foot (Fig. 26.5). Although techniques focusing on pelvic control are relevant for transfemoral amputees—as the position, movement, and control of the pelvis and hip will dictate knee stability and mobility—transtibial amputees will also benefit from improved pelvic control. These manual techniques are relevant for facilitating both the stance and swing phases of gait.

In unilateral stance on the prosthetic limb, the amputee must be able to stabilize and control the trunk and pelvis over the prosthesis. This requires adequate reverse-action function and strength in hip abductors (to counteract the gravitational adduction torque in the frontal plane at the hip) and extensors (to maintain the hip and trunk in an upright and extended position in the sagittal plane). Forward progression with weight bearing on the prosthetic limb is a challenge that requires a focus on pelvic control. There is often a tendency for the prosthetic limb to rotate or "drift" posteriorly during the stance phase (sometimes referred to as a "retracted" position of the pelvis), accompanied by hip flexion/anterior trunk lean; the swing-side pelvis should be rotating forward at this time, but the stance-side pelvis should not actively rotate posteriorly. This posterior pelvic rotation and hip flexion makes smooth transition over the prosthetic limb impossible as it disrupts the normal forward translation of body weight over the prosthetic foot. The therapist can facilitate forward pelvic progression during stance using principles of PNF with deliberate application of hand position and input to muscles (e.g. resistance, quick stretch).

Swing phase likewise requires training to facilitate the correct motion. An effective swing will allow for correct step length and facilitates a smooth transition into stance. Symmetric step lengths are conducive to a fluid and energy efficient gait pattern. There are two specific cues that may help transfemoral amputees to achieve a good swing of the prosthetic limb. First, the person must be encouraged to step forward with a normal step on the uninvolved side; amputees are often hesitant to do this. When they have an asymmetric gait pattern, it is often because the prosthetic step is very large (because they are comfortable taking weight through the sound limb) and the sound limb step is very small (because they are not comfortable taking weight through the prosthesis). A full-size step with the sound limb step leaves the prosthetic-side hip extended and pelvis posteriorly rotated (relative to the active anterior rotation of the swinging sound limb). Because of the design of many prostheses, anterior pelvic rotation in the transverse plane at preswing will facilitate "knee break." This effectively shortens the limb to allow clearance during swing phase. Transfemoral amputees should be cued to rotate the pelvis forward while flexing the hip, which will swing the prosthetic limb forward, extending the knee for initial contact. Early gait training with a transfemoral prosthesis might involve practice and perhaps facilitation of this forward pelvic translation to help the person get the feeling of the knee break and initial swing. The same types of PNF techniques that are used to facilitate stability of the pelvis during weight bearing can be used to facilitate active movement of the pelvis for optimal swing. Forceful hip flexion in the absence of pelvic rotation to advance the prosthesis prohibits normal step length. Likewise vaulting, hip hiking, and circumduction are not efficient methods of forwarding the prosthesis during swing phase. These are common gait deviations that should be mitigated as quickly as possible.

Gait training with a harness (with or without bodyweight support) either over ground or on a treadmill has become a popular treatment strategy in many PT clinics, perhaps because it offers a safe environment to challenge and progress walking ability and increase walking confidence. Finding a consensus in the literature on optimal gait training methods to advance distance, speed, and other time/space parameters is challenging owing to the heterogeneity of the research literature as it relates to subject population (traumatic vs. dysvascular), training techniques,

Fig. 26.4 Progression of weight shifting and balance activities in prosthetic training. (A) Trunk rotation outside of the parallel bars, using all planes of movement and decreasing reliance on upper extremities. (B) Stepping up to a higher surface outside of the parallel bars to increase the challenge and translate into community mobility. (C) Throwing and catching activities encompass balance (feedforward and feedback), coordination, postural control, and weight bearing through the prosthesis.

and varying levels of amputation.[122] The effects of harnessed treadmill training with and without body weight support have not yet been examined in new users of prostheses. A preliminary study of "seasoned" community users found no significant difference between body weight support and conventional treadmill training in improving endurance and falls risk as measured by the 6-minute walk test and the Timed Up and Go.[123] Self-selected comfortable gait speed on the treadmill has been demonstrated to be significantly slower than over-ground walking at the same energy cost, which suggests a higher energy cost in walking on the treadmill than over ground.[124] A small case series suggests that movement strategies may also be altered in walking on a treadmill versus over ground,[125] although some authors attribute this to the constraints of the treadmill.[126] Therapists who have harness systems and/or

Fig. 26.5 Facilitation of forward pelvic motion for efficient prosthetic gait. (A) The therapist can use manual techniques to cue pelvic position. (B) The therapist can use proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation at the pelvis and appropriate resistance, asking the patient to move the pelvis upward and forward as he or she steps with either limb.

treadmills available should use their critical reasoning skills to determine the individualized potential benefit of these modalities as a component of gait training activities.

The use of mental imagery of successful motor mastery of prosthetic training activities may be an appropriate adjunct to PT,[127] although recent research efforts to demonstrate its effectiveness are not without methodologic flaws.[128] Virtual reality and video gaming have become more common in the rehabilitation of older adults[129] and lower limb amputees but are not yet well studied. A small Canadian survey study demonstrated therapists' positive perceptions about the use of commercial gaming (e.g., Nintendo Wii Fit) in improving weight shifting and walking abilities in amputees undergoing rehabilitation.[120] Therapists could consider gaming as a potentially fun and motivating treatment modality within their treatment tool kit. There is limited evidence that treadmill walking in a virtually depicted environment via a Computer Assisted Rehabilitation Environment (CAREN) system may translate to over-ground walking,[126,130] but this limited research involves young participants with traumatic amputation, and this technology is not readily available.

ASSISTIVE DEVICES

ADs can provide help with balance only (i.e., single-point cane or quad cane) or with weight bearing and balance (i.e., standard walker, rolling walker, axillary crutches, or Lofstrand crutches). The goals of AD use are to provide only the amount of support that is necessary to protect the healing residual limb and to reduce the risk of falling without hampering the individual's willingness or ability to load the prosthesis. It may be prudent to spend time on prosthetic weight-bearing and weight-shifting activities in the protected environment of the parallel bars or at a stable surface to allow the person to progress directly to an AD that aids in balance only. Optimally, the prosthetic limb can tolerate 100% weight bearing, so that upper extremity weight bearing through an AD is unnecessary. Individuals who demonstrate good weight bearing, strength, and balance may progress directly from the parallel bars to the use of a single-point cane or no AD at all. Quad canes should be prescribed with caution, as they are frequently misused as weight-bearing devices and the wide base can create a tripping hazard. For those who are unable to achieve early full weight bearing through the prosthesis and require a weight-bearing AD, the devices of choice are crutches or rolling walkers. Crutches allow individuals to progress to a two-point gait using a step-through gait pattern. Individuals may begin with bilateral support and progress to unilateral support with crutches as prosthetic weight bearing improves. Rolling walkers are preferred over standard walkers, which impede a reciprocal gait pattern, limiting forward progression to a "step-to" rather than "step-through" movement strategy. This limitation, imposed by the walker's cross bar, hampers smooth forward progression of the center of mass over the base of support and precludes effective terminal stance and preswing. A wheeled walker can minimize interruptions to the gait cycle if it is advanced between each step or if the person is instructed to push the walker continually while walking (like a grocery cart). Standard walkers are used only when individuals are long-term users and are resistant to transitioning to a new device or are threatened by the potential instability of the wheels.

Individuals may require different levels of ADs in different environments. For instance, a transtibial amputee may reach functional independence with a prosthesis and no AD in the home but utilize a straight cane while walking in the community, where there are more challenging environmental conditions. The use of ADs by transtibial and transfemoral amputees may be influenced by age, strength, balance, confidence, and the manner in which a long history of vascular disease has affected their physical activity and mobility up to the amputation.

PROSTHETIC GAIT

An understanding of the biomechanics of normal gait is crucial for physical therapists, as it provides the standard by which prosthetic gait is measured.[131] An important objective of prosthetic fit, alignment, and PT intervention is to achieve a gait that is safe, comfortable, energy-efficient, and cosmetically agreeable to the amputee. Although some may demonstrate a near-normal symmetric gait pattern that is free of significant deviations without the use of ADs, this may not be a realistic goal for all dysvascular amputees. In fact, review studies support a definite asymmetry in gait in both traumatic and dysvascular amputees.[39,40,92,119] This is attributable to adaptation following the loss of muscle activity of the amputated limb. Although therapists often strive for symmetry in gait activities, perhaps a truly symmetric gait pattern is an unlikely achievement. It is also well documented that the gait speed of amputees is slower than that in age-matched peers without amputation.[28,52,132]

Biomechanically there are several well-documented changes in comparing prosthetic gait to gait of able-bodied individuals. In transtibial amputees, the lack of plantarflexors is thought to be the most influential component driving gait changes[39,40,133,134]; this is compensated for by increased activity and power of the muscles around the hip of the prosthetic limb, most notably the hip extensors. In transfemoral amputees, the strength, endurance, and power demands on the musculature of the hip are higher still, as the hip must also compensate for the missing knee.

Prosthetic devices are often marketed as improving efficiency, biomechanics, and quality of prosthetic gait. Systematic reviews do not provide statistically convincing evidence of these benefits when microprocessor- and non-microprocessor–controlled knees are compared (e.g., pneumatic, hydraulic, and mechanical)[135] or dynamic response/energy-storing feet are compared with articulating feet (e.g., single-axis, multiple-axis). However, there is some evidence of improved gait efficiency with energy-storing feet as compared with SACH feet in transtibial amputees.[136] There is also some limited evidence of componentry positively affecting balance in dysvascular older adult amputees (e.g., microprocessor knee, vacuum-assisted socket).[137,138] Despite the lack of evidence supporting objective benefit of more advanced prosthetic componentry, individuals often perceive benefits related to efficiency and confidence in their gait.[135] Power or robotic knees and feet and the introduction of bionics to prosthetic components are not yet well studied, so their benefits and drawbacks are yet to be identified. A broader discussion of prosthetic componentry is beyond the scope of this chapter, but the therapist should work closely with the prosthetist in identifying the best prosthetic prescription for amputees based on their ambulation and functional goals.

As movement experts, physical therapists perform observational gait analysis to determine gait deviations and their causes. Commonly observed prosthetic gait deviations have many different potential contributors. Deviations may be a product of intrinsic factors (pertaining to the individual using the prosthesis) or extrinsic factors (pertaining to the prosthesis and/or environmental factors). The observed problem may be a primary gait deviation, caused directly by an intrinsic or extrinsic factor, or a compensatory/secondary deviation, a result of the individual's attempt to avoid a primary deviation.

During initial gait training, prosthetic alignment issues may not be immediately evident. Hesitancy to fully load the prosthesis and upper extremity weight bearing through the parallel bars or AD will affect the resulting gait pattern. As the individual becomes more willing to bear weight through the residual limb, a "truer" gait pattern will emerge and the function of the prosthesis will become more critical. The therapist, along with the prosthetist, must be attentive to the need to correct prosthesis alignment as the individual improves in weight bearing and as impairments improve (i.e., changes in strength, ROM, or balance might warrant changes in the alignment of the prosthesis).

When occupied in solving problems, the clinician must think about why certain gait deviations might occur and whether they are primary or compensatory. Answers to these questions allow the therapist to focus treatment on the most salient issues. For example, a transfemoral amputee new to the use of a prosthesis is observed to ambulate with a forward-leaning trunk throughout the stance phase of gait. This may be a primary gait deviation resulting from a hip flexion contracture that limits the individual's ability to achieve upright posture, or it could be the direct result of weak hip extensors. This may also be a compensatory strategy of the person who is fearful of knee instability during stance. By using a forward-leaning trunk, the individual modifies the ground reaction force vector during stance phase to stay significantly anterior to the knee joint, thus improving stability at the knee by creating an extensor moment at that joint. If this is deemed to be the issue, the therapist must determine if it is related to an intrinsic (e.g., weakness, lack of confidence) or extrinsic issue (e.g., prosthetic alignment). In another example, consider a transtibial amputee who shows knee instability during loading response and throughout midstance, as evidenced by lack of knee extension or excessive knee flexion. If the instability is occurring on level surfaces, environmental causes of the problem can be ruled out (walking down a slope will cause this problem). If evaluation of the static alignment of the prosthesis reveals appropriate alignment of the foot and pylon but the socket is set in excessive knee flexion, this could contribute to the problem. Thorough evaluation of the problem requires assessment of potential intrinsic causes as well. If examination reveals full, strong, active ROM at the knee and no complaints of pain, the therapist must look to the joints proximal to the problem. Assessment of the hip may reveal a hip flexion contracture that leads the person to maintain knee flexion as a compensatory strategy to maintain upright posture. When these two (excessive socket flexion and hip flexion contracture) distinct potential causes of the problem are identified, the therapist can then prioritize and address each cause. Initiation of a stretching intervention to address the ROM limitation can be started immediately but will take time before it has an impact on the problem. Extrinsic causes can be modified immediately: if quality of gait improves and deviations are eliminated after realignment (typically the responsibility of the prosthetist), this suggests that alignment was the factor underlying the gait deviation. If a socket realignment does not have a significant impact, magnifies the observed gait problem, or leads to a new gait deviation, the underlying cause is likely to be an intrinsic issue needing PT intervention. Table 26.7 describes some of the more common prosthetic gait deviations and their most likely potential causes.

Table 26.7 Prosthetic Gait Deviations

Gait Deviation	Phase of Gait	Category[a]	Possible Causes
GAIT DEVIATIONS COMMON TO TRANSTIBIAL AND TRANSFEMORAL AMPUTEES USING PROSTHESES			
Lateral trunk lean toward prosthetic side	Loading response through terminal stance	Intrinsic	Lacking hip abductor strength and/or timing on prosthetic side (compensate with lateral lean to avoid Trendelenburg) Abductor contracture on prosthetic side Hip joint pain on prosthetic side Very short transfemoral residual limb (poor purchase in socket, poor leverage)
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Prosthesis too short Foot too outset Transfemoral socket medial wall trim line too high Transfemoral socket places femur in abduction Transfemoral socket lateral wall fails to provide adequate femoral support/stabilization
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Uneven terrain
Anterior trunk lean	Loading response through terminal stance	Intrinsic	Hip flexion contracture Lacking knee extensor strength and/or timing in individual with transtibial amputation (compensate with forward lean to create extensor moment at knee) Fear of instability of physiologic or prosthetic knee Insufficient hip extensor strength or lumbar extensor strength making maintenance of an upright trunk difficult
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Transtibial socket set too posterior (forcing knee hyperextension) Transtibial socket lacks anterior tilt Transfemoral prosthetic knee positioned too anterior (TKA line not providing stability)
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking up incline
Insufficient weight bearing through prosthesis	Loading response through terminal stance	Intrinsic	Residual limb pain or hypersensitivity Excessive upper-extremity weight bearing on assistive device Instability of the physiologic or prosthetic knee joint Decreased muscle strength of residual limb Fear of falling/lack of confidence in prosthesis
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Prosthesis is too long Poor socket fit
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking uphill Walking on rugged terrain
Inadequate prosthetic foot clearance[b]	Throughout swing phases	Intrinsic	Poor hip stabilization on sound limb (pelvic drop on prosthetic side during swing) Lacking active anterior pelvic rotation (strength and/or timing issue) to initiate prosthetic swing Lacking hip flexion (strength and/or timing issue) to initiate prosthetic swing Lacking knee flexion (strength and/or timing issue) to contribute to prosthetic swing in transtibial amputation
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Prosthesis too long Transfemoral prosthetic knee too "stiff" Prosthetic foot/ankle too plantarflexed
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Uneven terrain with unexpected elevations

Pistoning (downward translation of prosthesis on residual limb when unloaded)	Throughout swing phases	Intrinsic	Error in sock application (too few or too many layers)
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Inadequate suspension Poor socket fit
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Muddy or flooded environment can create pull on prosthesis
GAIT DEVIATIONS COMMON TO TRANSTIBIAL AMPUTEES USING PROSTHESES			
Excessive knee flexion/knee instability	Initial contact or loading response to midstance	Intrinsic	Knee or hip flexion contracture Lacking knee or hip extensor strength and/or timing Anterior distal residual limb pain
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Excessive dorsiflexion of the prosthetic foot Excessive transtibial socket flexion (anterior tilt) Transtibial socket positioned anterior to prosthetic foot Excessive heel cushion stiffness (SACH foot) Prosthesis too long
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking down inclines
Excessive knee extension (no shock absorption)/hyperextension	Initial contact or loading response to midstance	Intrinsic	Lacking knee extensor strength and/or timing (hyperextend knee as compensation) Cruciate ligament insufficiency Lacking hip extensor strength and/or timing Posterior distal residual limb pain
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Excessive plantarflexion of prosthetic foot Lacking appropriate socket flexion (posterior tilt of socket) Excessively soft heel cushion (SACH foot) Socket positioned posterior to prosthetic foot Prosthesis too short
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Ascending inclines/walking uphill
Genu valgus moment at knee	Midstance	Intrinsic	Medial collateral ligament insufficiency Coxa vara at hip Medial distal residual limb pain
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Excessive outset of prosthetic foot Tilt of transtibial socket in frontal plane
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking on uneven surfaces
Excessive genu varus moment at knee	Midstance	Intrinsic	Lateral collateral ligament insufficiency Coxa valga at hip Lateral distal residual limb pain
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Excessive inset of prosthetic foot Tilt of transtibial socket in the frontal plane
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking on uneven surfaces

Continued on following page

Table 26.7 Prosthetic Gait Deviations (Continued)

Gait Deviation	Phase of Gait	Category[a]	Possible Causes
Early heel rise/early knee flexion or "drop off"	Midstance to preswing	Intrinsic	Hip and/or knee flexion contracture Weakness of hip extensor muscles Anterior/distal residual limb pain
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Excessive dorsiflexion of prosthetic foot Socket positioned anterior to prosthetic foot Too much socket flexion (anterior tilt) The opposite prosthetic problems (plantarflexed foot, socket positioned posteriorly, not enough socket flexion) can all cause this same gait deviation if the person is working to "overcome" being forced into hyperextended knee position by the prosthesis
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking down inclines or hills
Delayed heel rise/delayed knee flexion	Terminal stance to preswing	Intrinsic	Knee hyperextension as compensation for instability or weakness earlier in stance makes transition to knee flexion difficult Decreased anterior weight shift (weight through heel of prosthesis) Posterior/distal residual limb pain
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Excessive plantarflexion of prosthetic foot Socket positioned posterior to prosthetic foot Insufficient socket flexion Excessively long keel of prosthetic foot
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking up inclines/hills
GAIT DEVIATIONS COMMON TO TRANSFEMORAL AMPUTEES USING PROSTHESES			
Excessive anterior pelvic tilt/lumbar lordosis	Initial contact through preswing	Intrinsic	Hip flexion contracture Weak hip extensors and/or abdominals Effort to shift center of gravity anteriorly for stability at prosthetic knee
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Insufficient flexion (posterior tilt) of socket TKA line does not provide adequate knee stability
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking up inclines/uphill
Abducted gait	Initial contact through preswing	Intrinsic	Hip abduction contracture Adductor tissue roll/redundant tissue Impaired balance (compensatory widened base of support) Distal femur pain
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Prosthesis too long Socket alignment places femur in abduction Medial socket wall too high
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Uneven terrain
Delayed prosthetic knee flexion	Terminal stance to preswing	Intrinsic	Lacking active anterior pelvic rotation (strength and/or timing issue) to offload prosthesis Lacking hip flexion (strength and/or timing) to initiate swing of prosthesis
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	TKA line providing excessive knee stability Excessive plantar flexion of prosthetic foot or excessively soft heel cushion (SACH foot)
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Walking up inclines

Medial heel whip	Preswing to early swing	Intrinsic	Loose residual limb tissue that rotates freely around femur Improperly donned socket in internally rotated position
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Prosthetic knee oriented in external/lateral direction Prosthetic foot oriented laterally Prosthetic foot toe break oriented laterally
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Rugged terrain
Lateral heel whip	Preswing to early swing	Intrinsic	Loose residual limb tissue that rotates freely around femur Improperly donned socket in externally rotated position
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Prosthetic knee oriented in internal/medial direction Prosthetic foot oriented medially Prosthetic foot toe break oriented medially
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Rugged terrain
Terminal swing impact (prosthetic knee extension thrust)		Intrinsic	Excessive anterior pelvic rotation and/or hip flexion to assure knee extension in swing
		Prosthetic (extrinsic)	Insufficient knee stiffness, excessive extension aid
		Environmental (extrinsic)	Environment demands rapid movement

[a]Intrinsic problems are due to personal factors. Extrinsic problems are associated with prosthetic issues (alignment or fit) or environmental issues (best understood by analyzing the specific condition or activity in which they are observed).

[b]Possible compensations for inadequate prosthetic swing-phase clearance include a lateral lean of the trunk toward the sound limb, vaulting on the sound limb, hip hiking or circumduction of the prosthetic limb, and, in the case of transtibial amputation, a steppage gait.

SACH, Solid ankle cushioned heel; *TKA*, trochanter-knee-ankle.

Notably, chronic low back pain is a common complaint among both transtibial and transfemoral amputees using prostheses, with studies reporting a prevalence of back pain between 52% (study population with roughly half traumatic and half disease-related amputations)[139] and 61% (subgroup of study including only dysvascular amputations).[140] Back pain may be associated with lumbopelvic asymmetries in the movement strategies of the individual with amputation.[141,142] Chronic back pain has been linked to strength and endurance deficits of low back extensors in individuals with amputation;[143] A recent study demonstrated pain-relieving benefits of a strengthening program that improved strength and endurance of lumbar extensors and strength of abdominal muscles in long-term prosthetic users (amputation etiology was trauma, although mean subject age was 64 years).[144] Therapists should be prepared to utilize manual therapy techniques and exercise interventions as appropriate to address complaints of back pain.

GAIT TRAINING ON ALTERNATE SURFACES

To adapt to and meet environmental demands, the individual using a prosthesis must be able to adjust his or her step length and cadence while ambulating in response to environmental conditions or circumstances. The PT program might begin with practice opportunities until the person is able to achieve a normal cadence. It might then progress to activities that demand an increased or decreased cadence, stops and starts, and transitional gait movements, such as sidestepping, turning, walking backward, and obstacle avoidance. These skills can initially be practiced in the clinic with minimal environmental demands. They can be progressed to situations in which the environment presents a challenge, such as crossing a street in a timely manner, getting on and off an elevator or escalator, walking through a crowded corridor in a busy store, or walking to a seat in the middle of an auditorium. Successful community ambulation also requires management of many different ground surfaces, including steps, curbs, ramps, and varied terrain. In providing therapeutic practice opportunities for a person who is new to the use of a prosthesis, the therapist considers the following important extrinsic variables:

1. Level of physical assistance required for safe performance
2. The specific demands of the environment, such as depth or height of steps and curbs or degree of slope of a ramp
3. The need for an AD or railing
4. The optimal technique for performing the task safely
5. The ability to superimpose an additional activity while walking or moving in the environment (dual and multitasking)

An initial goal might be to decrease the level of assistance (physical assist or AD) on these alternative surfaces. This can be accomplished by simplifying one or more of the variables of the task, such as decreasing the depth of the step/curb, allowing the use of sturdy rail versus crutch or cane, and/or allowing the sound limb to "lead" or dominate the task. As skill improves, the task demands are increased. Early skills in stair climbing are generally developed in a step-to gait pattern with the sound limb leading in ascent and the prosthetic limb leading in descent. Advanced gait training activities may instead require the person with amputation to use the sound limb first in descent, placing the weight bearing eccentric control demand on the prosthetic limb, or require ascent with the prosthetic limb leading. These step-over-step stair ascent/descent strategies are possible for transtibial and transfemoral amputees who have the appropriate knee componentry (e.g., microprocessor knees allow for descent, power knees allow for ascent/descent). Step-over-step stair descent requires placement of the prosthetic forefoot off of the step to allow for the forward progression of the prosthetic shank, mimicking the ankle dorsiflexion required in lowering the body weight to the next step.

The management of slopes, inclines, and ramps is challenging for both transtibial and transfemoral amputees. In both situations, the loss of sensory information in the prosthetic limb (and possibly the sound limb) limits the ability to know where the foot is in space and the relative stiffness of the ankle (depending on type of prosthesis) does not allow for the fully functional dorsiflexion or plantarflexion that is required for adaptability to the slope of the surface.[145] In the person with a transfemoral prosthesis, the loss of the knee joint and accompanying quadriceps control compounds the challenge. Most people with transfemoral prostheses navigate inclines, declines, ramps, and slopes using one of two methods (or some combination of the two). They will either shorten the step length of the involved limb to help compensate for the lack of quadriceps contraction and ankle mobility and continue with an asymmetrical step-to-step pattern or they will turn partially sideways and employ a sidestepping pattern leading with the uninvolved limb going up and prosthetic limb going down. By reorienting the axis of rotation for knee motion in this manner, there is less risk of the slope directly affecting knee position or stability. The method used is generally determined by personal preference and the grade of the slope. As in stair descent, if the person has a microprocessor-controlled knee, angled surfaces are more easily managed by the computer control of the knee, especially in descending. New technology has focused on the design of an "intelligent" ankle prosthesis that allows for real-time adaptability when walking over uneven surfaces and also provides some plantarflexion power during push-off.[145,146] Literature also suggests that these types of ankles allow transtibial amputees to have increased gait speed and toe clearance when walking over uneven surfaces as compared with those using nonpowered prosthetic ankles[145] and to some extent help improve dynamic balance in stance when walking down a slope.[147] Research to date has not involved older dysvascular amputees; only adults with traumatic amputations.

Curtze demonstrated that when transtibial amputees using prostheses were faced with the challenge of rough terrain versus smooth surfaces, arm swing speed increased (presumably to assist with balance) and gait speed decreased slightly, but other gait parameters were not significantly altered.[148] Vrieling and colleagues concluded that specific training for prosthetic gait initiation, termination, obstacle crossing, and incline and decline management should be a purposeful component of the rehabilitation regime, as movement strategies of these functional tasks are different

than those of able-bodied individuals,[93,149–151] and addressing these tasks in rehabilitation has the potential to impact safety and confidence.

Superimposing functional activities on gait during therapeutic treatment prepares individuals for the daily "real world" challenges that they are sure to encounter. The variety of functional tasks practiced by the individual should be driven by the goals specific to that person. Safe ambulation while carrying objects of varying weights and sizes is an important functional skill and an appropriate PT activity. The individual's specific goal may be to carry a full laundry basket down the hall or a cup of hot coffee from the kitchen to the living room. As individuals become functional users of prostheses, household tasks and leisure or work activities may guide their therapeutic needs. Safe ambulation while using other skills, such as texting, is another very likely goal.

The physical therapist should anticipate the home and community mobility needs of the amputee and provide a repertoire of practice opportunities, appropriately increasing the environmental challenges as tolerated. Ideally, when crossing the street, one can ascend the curb without disrupting gait cadence, even if this means leading with the prosthetic foot; this may be a realistic goal for some but not others. The unpredictable surface of uneven terrain encountered in walking across a lawn can challenge postural responses significantly; this requires varying practice strategies depending upon AD use. Backward stepping is required to open a refrigerator door and sidestepping is a skill needed in environments such as theaters. These skills can be practiced out of context and then put into the appropriate functional framework. A supervised community outing is an excellent strategy for addressing and achieving some of these advanced ambulation goals.

High-level activities, such as jogging and athletic endeavors, are not routine goals of individuals with dysvascular amputation; however therapists should not discount participation in advanced activities for appropriate prosthetic users. Some individuals with amputation may wish to resume certain sport or leisure activities that they participated in prior to their amputation, and this may be a motivating factor in rehabilitation. With technologic advances in prosthetics and increased exposure of high-level athletes in venues like the Paralympics, there is greater visibility and awareness of the potential for active living with a prosthesis. Therapists should be willing to work with individuals with amputations to return to sport or to take up a new sport. Gardening, bowling, even indoor rock climbing may be specific activities that can be integrated into therapy goals. Table 26.8 describes some more advanced rehabilitation activities that can help to prepare individuals to take part in their chosen activity.

FUNCTIONAL ACTIVITIES

A comprehensive rehabilitation program includes a variety of other functional activities, such as transfer training from a variety of surfaces, reaching and picking up objects from different levels and surfaces, kneeling, management of falls, and rising from the floor. Motor learning theory supports that prescriptive instruction on different functional tasks such as these may not be the most effective way to assist individuals in developing these skills; rather, encouraging individuals to solve their own motor problems and figure out how to best perform a given functional task allows them to "own" the task and to better generalize to other related tasks.[42] The skilled therapist will design an environment for success when introducing new skills and should have

Table 26.8 Advanced Exercises and Activities for Lower Extremity Amputees

Standing balance activities	Standing activities on compliant surface (foam, Bosu ball) or mobile surface (rocker board, Biomechanical Ankle Platform System [BAPS] board); can progress to superimpose tasks while standing (ball catch/throw) Catching and throwing balls of different shapes, sizes, and weights and throwing variable distances; can progress with altered base of support (staggered stance, tandem stance) Prosthetic single-limb stance, with stool stepping with sound limb, progress to stepping on less stable surface (foam, Bosu ball); can progress to superimpose tasks while standing (ball catch/throw) Elastic band UE and/or LE strengthening activities while standing without UE support (i.e., band affixed to wall or door and individual works against resistance in diagonal or straight plane patterns); this requires balance and stability of the core and LEs when performing UE exercise and stability of the opposite LE and core when performing LE exercises
Dynamic balance activities with progressively superimposed speed and agility requirements	Dynamic ambulatory tasks: functional multidirectional walking; starts, stops, and turns in rapid progression; obstacle avoidance (over, around); figure-eight walking; head turns while walking; progressively more narrow base of support with goal of line/beam walking Altered terrain walking: a string of yoga mats laid out over towels on floor at unpredictable intervals makes a nice indoor rugged terrain; outdoor walking on grass, sand, or gravel. Other environmental challenges: steps, curbs, ramps, elevators, escalators Picking up objects of different weights and sizes from floor: carrying objects while walking Dual-tasking: superimposed motor task on gait (ball catch/throw), superimposed cognitive task on gait (serial subtractions, naming items in a category) Floor transfers: reasonable to train with all individuals (not reserved for only high-level training), but can work toward less reliance on external support and getting onto and off of floor in timely and safe manner Progressing to task-specific goals: fast-walking; sport/leisure-specific goals (gardening, bowling)
Cardiovascular activities	Swimming, cycling, treadmill walking, stepper

LE, Lower extremity; *UE*, upper extremity.

suggestions and ideas to offer, if needed, to the amputee who is attempting new tasks. Additionally, the therapist should creatively progress the demands of the task as appropriate, always challenging the individual as they work toward realistic and functional goals. Specific functional tasks should also be designed to address unique goals as they relate to ADLs, job-related activities, or recreational activities. Occupational therapists have excellent knowledge of adaptive devices and skill in environmental adaptation and may also screen for return to driving, thus working with these team members is of great benefit.

For many amputees there is a strong desire or need to return to work and leisure activities. A review of international studies on return to work after lower extremity amputation identified the return to work rate at 66% for persons with lower extremity amputation (inclusive of changes in job responsibilities and transition to part-time work), but this was for all amputation etiologies, and many studies represented young adults with traumatic amputations.[152] Factors found to be associated with success in returning people to work after lower extremity amputation include younger age at the time of amputation, lower level of amputation, higher education level, good prosthetic comfort, and higher gross annual income.[152,153] Certainly no amputee who is motivated to return to work should be discouraged on account of having failed to meet these criteria. Functional tasks that simulate job activities would be appropriate to incorporate into the plan of care. A small study of return to leisure activity in older adults demonstrated that after surgery, lower extremity amputees decreased their participation in leisure activities, but their satisfaction with the activities remained high.[154] In progressing functional, vocational, and leisure activities, therapists should design interventions that are specific to the individual's needs and desires, are task-oriented, and provide opportunities for creative problem solving. Whether the individual is working toward a very focused goal (e.g., of walking his daughter down the aisle at her wedding without an AD) or a goal that requires a variety of skills (e.g., returning to gardening, which entails walking over rugged terrain, kneeling, rising, and carrying objects), the physical therapist must use his or her expertise in movement analysis, motor learning, and skill acquisition to facilitate the amputee's success.

OUTCOME ASSESSMENT

Measuring the effectiveness of PT interventions on the function and quality of life of an amputee is an important component of the plan of care for both prognosis and reimbursement.[155] The overriding goal of rehabilitation is to return the amputee to the highest functional level attainable with the best possible outcome and to do so within the number of visits allotted by the insurance company (unless the person can self-pay). The documentation of change over time is also important to determine functional K levels to assist with prosthetic prescription and eligibility. The ICF framework reminds us that it is important to assess performance at different levels of the ICF paradigm: the body-function level (impairments), the activities level (activity limitations), and the participation level (participation restrictions). Currently there are no definitive guidelines as to what outcome measures should be used with individuals undergoing rehabilitation[15,156,157]; however, careful documentation of performance in each domain of the ICF can be useful. Additionally, some outcome measures may be more or less appropriate depending on whether or not the individual has obtained his or her prosthesis. Impairment level changes that may be measured might include increases in ROM or strength. Changes in activity limitations might include improvements in transfer ability (less assistance or improvement in varied surfaces), ambulation (less assistance, change in AD, or increased distance and/or speed), or ADLs (less assistance or improved endurance). Participation restriction level changes might include improved satisfaction with ability to carry out specific life roles in the family or with respect to social/work/leisure activities.

Some of the outcome measures that have been used in amputation rehabilitation are amputation-specific (e.g., Amputation Mobility Predictor with and without prosthesis [AMP and AMPnoPRO], Houghton Scale, or the Prosthetic Evaluation Questionnaire [PEQ]); others are broader rehabilitation outcome measures that have been used with this population (e.g., BBS, ABC Scale, Functional Independence Measure [FIM]). Standardized walking tests that have been used in amputation rehabilitation research include 2-minute walk test, 6-minute walk test, Timed Up and Go, and 10-minute walk test. Reid et al. recently demonstrated that the 2-minute walk test predicts the 6-minute walk test in lower extremity amputees and therefore may be used to save the time and energy of those evaluated.[158] Although normative values for these outcome measures in amputees have not been well established, norms are available for the older adult, and these can be useful in monitoring change over time and assessing performance relative to age-matched peers without amputation. Gait speed has been routinely linked to function and overall health status in the older adult; therefore it is important to assess baseline gait speed and monitor change over time.[159] Self-selected gait speed is slower in dysvascular versus traumatic amputees and slower in transfemoral versus transtibial amputees.[160,161] Recent normative data on gait speed in the dysvascular amputees are scarce; however, a 2016 study by Wong et al. presented gait speed data from 180 users of prostheses (about half of whom were dysvascular amputees) as calculated from the 2-minute walk test.[162] Independent community ambulators walked at 1.06 ± 0.32 m/s (range: >0.8–1.2 m/s); limited community ambulators/household ambulators walked at 0.59 ± 0.29 m/s (range: 0.5–0.8 m/s); and limited household ambulators walked at 0.41 ± 0.29 m/s (range < 0.5 m/s). These benchmarks may be useful in considering the functional implications of gait speed findings.

Minimal detectable change (MDC) scores are becoming an increasingly popular way to demonstrate change in performance in PT. MDC provides the amount of change required to represent "true" change in performance, more than the expected performance variability and measurement error. A systematic review in 2014 by Hawkins et al. ranked many of the available outcome measures that may be useful in monitoring the progress of lower-limb

Table 26.9 Outcome Measures for Lower Extremity Amputees

Outcome Measure	Test-Retest Reliability Intraclass Correlation Coefficient (95% Confidence Interval)	Standard Error of Measurement (SEM)	Minimal Detectable Change (Calculated at 90% Confidence Interval)
AMPUTATION-SPECIFIC			
Amputee Mobility Predictor (AMP)[165]	.88 (.79–.93)	1.5 U	3.4 U
Houghton Scale[166]	.96 (.92–.97)	N/A	N/A
Orthotics and Prosthetics Users Survey (OPUS)[167]	.96 (.89–.98)	N/A	12.1 U[a]
Prosthetic Evaluation Questionnaire–Mobility Subscale (PEQ-MS)[168]	.92 (.90–.94)	.24 U	.55 U
Locomotor Capabilities Index (LCI)[169,170]	.91 (.79–.96)	.98 U[b]	2.72 U[b]
Prosthetic Limb Users Survey of Mobility (PLUS-M)[168]	.97 (.95–.98)[c]	1.93 U	4.50 U
GENERAL			
2-min walk test[165]	.83 (.71–.90)	14.8 m	34.3 m
6-min walk test[165]	.97 (.95–.99)	19.4 m	45.0 m
Timed Up and Go[165]	.88 (.80–.94)	1.6 s	3.6 s
Berg Balance Scale[171]	.945[d]	N/A	N/A
Activities specific Balance Confidence (ABC) Scale[168]	.95 (.93–.96)	.21 U[e]	.49 U[e]

[a]Authors focused on smallest detectable difference as compared against the Lower Extremity Functional Scale (LEFS).
[b]Data for the LCI-5 (newer version of original LCI) and MDC(95).
[c]Data for the 12-item version of test.
[d]Authors focused on intra- and interrater reliability.
[e]Data for five-point ordinal scale version of test.
MDC, Minimal detectable change.

amputees.[156] Table 26.9 displays the test-retest reliability and MDC scores (if available) of those outcome measures that were ranked high for both validity and/or reliability for the lower-limb amputee population.

Summary

The rehabilitation of lower-limb amputees is both challenging and rewarding. Early in the rehabilitation process, functional mobility, ROM, strengthening, and aerobic conditioning are prioritized as the residual limb is prepared for the fitting of a prosthesis. On receipt of the prosthesis, a gradual wearing schedule in the context of a comprehensive rehabilitation program[6,163]—including weight-bearing activities, gait training, resistive training in gait, balance training, and functional task training—is introduced and strategically progressed. Emphasis is on gait safety, comfort, quality, and efficiency (with or without an AD) and on safe and independent functional mobility with the prosthesis. Training progresses to include varied functional activities under many environmental conditions. Physical therapists may work with these individuals in acute care, inpatient rehabilitation, or long-term care, home care, or another outpatient environment. The diversity of amputees requires the therapist to carefully consider individual circumstances to guide the education and practice strategies of the rehabilitation program.

References

1. American Physical Therapy Association. *Guide to Physical Therapist Practice 3.0.* 3.0. APTA: Alexandria VA; 2014.
2. Sackett D, Strauss S, Richardson W, Rosenberg W, Haynes R. *Evidence-Based Medicine: How to Practice and Teach EBM.* 2nd ed. Churchill Livingstone; 2000.
3. Cumming J. Prosthetic rehabilitation for older dysvascular people following a unilateral transfemoral amputation. In: Barr S, Howe TE, eds. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*; 2015 [1].
4. Kristensen MT, Holm G, Krasheninnikoff M, Jensen PS, Gebuhr P. An enhanced treatment program with markedly reduced mortality after a transtibial or higher non-traumatic lower extremity amputation. *Acta Orthop.* 2016;87(3):306–311.
5. Roth EV, Pezzin LE, McGinley EL, Dillingham TR. Prosthesis Use and Satisfaction Among Persons With Dysvascular Lower Limb Amputations Across Postacute Care Discharge Settings. *PM&R.* 2014;6(12):1128–1136.
6. Ülger Ö, Şahan TY, Çelik SE. A systematic literature review of physiotherapy and rehabilitation approaches to lower-limb amputation. *Physiother Theory Pract.* 2018;0(0):1–14.
7. Madsen UR, Hommel A, Berthelsen CB, Bååth C. Systematic review describing the effect of early mobilisation after dysvascular major lower limb amputations. *J Clin Nurs.* 2017;26(21-22):3286–3297.
8. Meier RH, Heckman JT. Principles of Contemporary Amputation Rehabilitation in the United States, 2013. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25(1):29–33.
9. World Health Organization (WHO). *International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health: ICF;* 2001.
10. Belon HP, Vigoda DF. Emotional Adaptation to Limb Loss. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25(1):53–74.
11. Unwin J, Kacperek L, Clarke C. A prospective study of positive adjustment to lower limb amputation. *Clin Rehabil.* 2009;23(11):1044–1050.

12. Kortte KB, Stevenson JE, Hosey MM, Castillo R, Wegener ST. Hope predicts positive functional role outcomes in acute rehabilitation populations. *Rehabil Psychol.* 2012;57(3):248–255.
13. Kahle JT, Highsmith MJ, Schaepper H, Johannesson A, Orendurff MS, Kaufman K. Predicting Walking Ability Following Lower Limb Amputation: An Updated Systematic Literature Review. *Technol Innov Tampa.* 2016;18(2/3):125–137.
14. Sansam K, Neumann V, O'Connor R, Bhakta B. Predicting walking ability following lower limb amputation: a systematic review of the literature. *J Rehabil Med.* 2009;41(8):593–603.
15. Czerniecki JM, Turner AP, Williams RM, et al. The development and validation of the AMPREDICT model for predicting mobility outcome after dysvascular lower extremity amputation. *J Vasc Surg.* 2017;65(1): 162–171. e3.
16. Lee DJ, Costello MC. The effect of cognitive impairment on prosthesis use in older adults who underwent amputation due to vascular-related etiology: A systematic review of the literature. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* March 2017. 0309364617695883.
17. Fortington LV, Rommers GM, Geertzen JHB, Postema K, Dijkstra PU. Mobility in Elderly People With a Lower Limb Amputation: A Systematic Review. *J Am Med Dir Assoc.* March 2011.
18. Graham LA, Fyfe NCM. Prosthetic rehabilitation of amputees aged over 90 is usually successful. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2002;24(13):700–701.
19. Taylor SM, Kalbaugh CA, Blackhurst DW, et al. Preoperative clinical factors predict postoperative functional outcomes after major lower limb amputation: an analysis of 553 consecutive patients. *J Vasc Surg Off Publ Soc Vasc Surg Int Soc Cardiovasc Surg North Am Chapter.* 2005;42(2):227–235.
20. van Eijk MS, van der Linde H, Buijck B, Geurts A, Zuidema S, Koopmans R. Predicting prosthetic use in elderly patients after major lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2012;36(1):45–52.
21. Christiansen C, Fields T, Lev G, Stephenson RO, Stevens-Lapsley JE. Functional outcomes following the prosthetic training phase of rehabilitation after dysvascular lower extremity amputation. *PM&R.* 2015;7(11):1118–1126.
22. Bennett J. Limb loss: The unspoken psychological aspect. *J Vasc Nurs.* 2016;34(4):128–130.
23. Klarich J, Brueckner I. Amputee rehabilitation and preprosthetic care. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25(1):75–91.
24. Fleury AM, Salih SA, Peel NM. Rehabilitation of the older vascular amputee: a review of the literature. *Geriatr Gerontol Int.* 2013;13 (2):264–273.
25. Sansam K, O'Connor RJ, Neumann V, Bhakta B. Can simple clinical tests predict walking ability after prosthetic rehabilitation? *J Rehabil Med.* 2012;44(11):968–974.
26. Kisner C, Colby LA, Borstad J. *Therapeutic Exercise: Foundations and Techniques.* F.A. Davis; 2017.
27. Perry J, Burnfield J. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function.* 2 edition. Slack Incorporated: Thorofare, NJ; 2010.
28. van Velzen JM, van Bennekom CAM, Polomski W, Slootman JR, van der Woude LHV, Houdijk H. Physical capacity and walking ability after lower limb amputation: a systematic review. *Clin Rehabil.* 2006;20(11):999–1016.
29. Croisier JL, de Noordhout BM, Maquet D, et al. Isokinetic evaluation of hip strength muscle groups in unilateral lower limb amputees. *Isokinet Exerc Sci.* 2001;9(4):163–169.
30. Pedrinelli A, Saito M, Coelho RF, Fontes RBV, Guarniero R. Comparative study of the strength of the flexor and extensor muscles of the knee through isokinetic evaluation in normal subjects and patients subjected to trans-tibial amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2002;26(3):195–205.
31. Kowal M, Rutkowska-Kucharska A. Muscle torque of the hip joint flexors and extensors in physically active and inactive amputees. *Biomed Hum Kinet.* 2014;6(1).
32. Molina-Rueda F, Alguacil-Diego IM, Cuesta-Gómez A, Iglesias-Giménez J, Martín-Vivaldi A, Miangolarra-Page JC. Thorax, pelvis and hip pattern in the frontal plane during walking in unilateral transtibial amputees: biomechanical analysis. *Braz J Phys Ther.* 2014;18(3):252–258.
33. Lloyd CH, Stanhope SJ, Davis IS, Royer TD. Strength asymmetry and osteoarthritis risk factors in unilateral trans-tibial, amputee gait. *Gait Posture.* 2010;32(3):296–300.
34. Koehler-McNicholas SR, Lipschutz RD, Gard SA. The biomechanical response of persons with transfemoral amputation to variations in prosthetic knee alignment during level walking. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2016;53(6):1089–1106.
35. Raya MA, Gailey RS, Fiebert IM, Roach KE. Impairment variables predicting activity limitation in individuals with lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2010;34(1):73–84.
36. Nadollek H, Brauer S, Isles R. Outcomes after trans-tibial amputation: the relationship between quiet stance ability, strength of hip abductor muscles and gait. *Physiother Res Int J Res Clin Phys Ther.* 2002;7 (4):203–214.
37. Moirenfeld I, Ayalon M, Ben-Sira D, Isakov E. Isokinetic strength and endurance of the knee extensors and flexors in trans-tibial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2000;24(3):221–225.
38. Leijendekkers RA, Hinte G, van, Sman AD, Staal JB, Nijhuis-van der Sanden MWG, Hoogeboom TJ. Clinimetric properties of hip abduction strength measurements obtained using a handheld dynamometer in individuals with a lower extremity amputation. *PloS One.* 2017;12 (6). e0179887.
39. Sagawa Y, Turcot K, Armand S, Thevenon A, Vuillerme N, Watelain E. Biomechanics and physiological parameters during gait in lower-limb amputees: A systematic review. *Gait Posture.* 2011;33(4):511–526.
40. Soares ASO de C, Yamaguti EY, Mochizuki L, Amadio AC, Serrão JC. Biomechanical parameters of gait among transtibial amputees: a review. *São Paulo Med J Rev Paul Med.* 2009;127(5):302–309.
41. Seyedali M, Czerniecki JM, Morgenroth DC, Hahn ME. Co-contraction patterns of trans-tibial amputee ankle and knee musculature during gait. *J Neuroengineering Rehabil.* 2012;9:29.
42. Shumway-Cook A, Woollacott M. *Motor Control: Translating Research into Clinical Practice.* 5th ed. Wolters Kluwer: Philadelphia PA; 2017.
43. Steinberg N, Gottlieb A, Siev-Ner I, Plotnik M. Fall incidence and associated risk factors among people with a lower limb amputation during various stages of recovery - a systematic review. *Disabil Rehabil.* March 2018;1–10.
44. Seth M, Lamberg E. Standing balance in people with trans-tibial amputation due to vascular causes: A literature review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2017;41(4):345–355.
45. Mandel A, Paul K, Paner R, Devlin M, Dilkas S, Pauley T. Balance confidence and activity of community-dwelling patients with transtibial amputation. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 2016;53(5):551–559.
46. Miller WC, Deathe AB. A prospective study examining balance confidence among individuals with lower limb amputation. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2004;26(14-15):875–881.
47. Ku PX, Abu Osman NA, Wan Abas WAB. Balance control in lower extremity amputees during quiet standing: a systematic review. *Gait Posture.* 2014;39(2):672–682.
48. Hunter SW, Batchelor F, Hill KD, Hill A-M, Mackintosh S, Payne M. Risk Factors for Falls in People With a Lower Limb Amputation: A Systematic Review. *PM&R.* 2017;9(2):170–180. e1.
49. Wong CK, Chen CC, Blackwell WM, Rahal RT, Benoy SA. Balance ability measured with the Berg balance scale: a determinant of fall history in community-dwelling adults with leg amputation. *J Rehabil Med.* 2015;47(1):80–86.
50. Dyer D, Bouman B, Davey M, Ismond KP. An intervention program to reduce falls for adult in-patients following major lower limb amputation. *Healthc Q Tor Ont.* 2008;11:117–121 [3 Spec No.].
51. Wezenberg D, de Haan A, Faber WX, Slootman HJ, van der Woude LH, Houdijk H. Peak oxygen consumption in older adults with a lower limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2012;93(11):1924–1929.
52. Czerniecki JM, Morgenroth DC. Metabolic energy expenditure of ambulation in lower extremity amputees: what have we learned and what are the next steps? *Disabil Rehabil.* 2017;39(2):143–151.
53. Waters RL, Mulroy S. The energy expenditure of normal and pathologic gait. *Gait Posture.* 1999;9(3):207–231.
54. Torburn L, Powers CM, Guiterrez R, Perry J. Energy expenditure during ambulation in dysvascular and traumatic below-knee amputees: a comparison of five prosthetic feet. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 1995;32(2): 111–119.
55. Traugh GH, Corcoran PJ, Reyes RL. Energy expenditure of ambulation in patients with above-knee amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1975;56(2):67–71.
56. Gitter A, Czerniecki J, Weaver K. A reassessment of center-of-mass dynamics as a determinate of the metabolic inefficiency of above-knee amputee ambulation. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil Assoc Acad Physiatr.* 1995;74(5):332–338.
57. Waters RL, Perry J, Antonelli D, Hislop H. Energy cost of walking of amputees: the influence of level of amputation. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 1976;58(1):42–46.

58. Chin T, Sawamura S, Fujita H, et al. Physical fitness of lower limb amputees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil Assoc Acad Physiatr.* 2002;81(5): 321–325.
59. Wezenberg D, van der Woude LH, Faber WX, de Haan A, Houdijk H. Relation Between Aerobic Capacity and Walking Ability in Older Adults With a Lower-Limb Amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2013;94(9):1714–1720.
60. Hamamura S, Chin T, Kuroda R, et al. Factors affecting prosthetic rehabilitation outcomes in amputees of age 60 years and over. *J Int Med Res.* 2009;37(6):1921–1927.
61. Chin T, Sawamura S, Fujita H, et al. %VO2max as an indicator of prosthetic rehabilitation outcome after dysvascular amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2002;26(1):44–49.
62. American College of Sports Medicine. *ACSM's Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription.* 10th edition. Philadelphia PA: Wolters Kluwer; 2017.
63. Smith DG, McFarland LV, Sangeorzan BJ, Reiber GE, Czerniecki JM. Postoperative dressing and management strategies for transtibial amputations: a critical review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2003;40(3): 213–224.
64. Reichmann JP, Stevens PM, Rheinstein J, Kreulen CD. Removable Rigid Dressings for Postoperative Management of Transtibial Amputations: A Review of Published Evidence. *PM&R.* October 2017;.
65. Taylor L, Cavenett S, Stepien JM, Crotty M. Removable rigid dressings: a retrospective case-note audit to determine the validity of post-amputation application. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2008;32(2): 223–230.
66. Churilov I, Churilov L, Murphy D. Do rigid dressings reduce the time from amputation to prosthetic fitting? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2014;28(7):1801–1808.
67. Azar F, Canale T, Beaty J. *Campbell's Operative Orthopedics.* 13th ed. Elsevier; 2016.
68. Kosasih JB, Silver-Thorn MB. Sensory changes in adults with unilateral transtibial amputation. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 1998;35(1):85–90.
69. Souza JM, Cheesborough JE, Ko JH, Cho MS, Kuiken TA, Dumanian GA. Targeted Muscle Reinnervation: A Novel Approach to Postamputation Neuroma Pain. *Clin Orthop.* 2014;472(10):2984–2990.
70. Hsu E, Cohen SP. Postamputation pain: epidemiology, mechanisms, and treatment. *J Pain Res.* 2013;6:121–136.
71. Bowen JB, Wee CE, Kalik J, Valerio IL. Targeted Muscle Reinnervation to Improve Pain, Prosthetic Tolerance, and Bioprosthetic Outcomes in the Amputee. *Adv Wound Care.* 2017;6(8):261–267.
72. Kuiken TA, Barlow AK, Hargrove LJ, Dumanian GA. Targeted Muscle Reinnervation for the Upper and Lower Extremity. *Tech Orthop.* 2017;32(2):109.
73. Pet MA, Ko JH, Friedly JL, Mourad PD, Smith DG. Does Targeted Nerve Implantation Reduce Neuroma Pain in Amputees? *Clin Orthop.* 2014;472(10):2991–3001.
74. Richardson C, Crawford K, Milnes K, Bouch E, Kulkarni J. A Clinical Evaluation of Postamputation Phenomena Including Phantom Limb Pain after Lower Limb Amputation in Dysvascular Patients. *Pain Manag Nurs.* 2015;16(4):561–569.
75. Richardson C, Kulkarni J. A review of the management of phantom limb pain: challenges and solutions. *J Pain Res.* 2017;10:1861–1870.
76. Casale R, Alaa L, Mallick M, Ring H. Phantom limb related phenomena and their rehabilitation after lower limb amputation. *Eur J Phys Rehabil Med.* 2009;45(4):559–566.
77. Chapman S. Pain management in patients following limb amputation. *Nurs Stand R Coll Nurs G B 1987.* 2011;25(19):35–40.
78. Manchikanti L, Singh V. Managing phantom pain. *Pain Physician.* 2004;7(3):365–375.
79. Bosmans JC, Geertzen JHB, Post WJ, van der Schans CP, Dijkstra PU. Factors associated with phantom limb pain: a 31/2-year prospective study. *Clin Rehabil.* 2010;24(5):444–453.
80. Davidson JH, Khor KE, Jones LE. A cross-sectional study of post-amputation pain in upper and lower limb amputees, experience of a tertiary referral amputee clinic. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010;32(22): 1855–1862.
81. Andoh J, Milde C, Tsao JW, Flor H. Cortical plasticity as a basis of phantom limb pain: Fact or fiction? *Neuroscience.* November 2017;.
82. Raffin E, Richard N, Giraux P, Reilly KT. Primary motor cortex changes after amputation correlate with phantom limb pain and the ability to move the phantom limb. *NeuroImage.* 2016;130: 134–144.
83. Alviar MJM. Pharmacologic interventions for treating phantom limb pain. In: Hale T, Dungca M, eds. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*; 2016 [10].
84. Hanley MA, Jensen MP, Smith DG, Ehde DM, Edwards WT, Robinson LR. Preamputation pain and acute pain predict chronic pain after lower extremity amputation. *J Pain Off J Am Pain Soc.* 2007;8(2):102–109.
85. Colmenero LH, Marmol JMP, Martí-García C, et al. Effectiveness of mirror therapy, motor imagery, and virtual feedback on phantom limb pain following amputation: A systematic review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* November 2017. 0309364617740230.
86. Limakatso K, Corten L, Parker R. The effects of graded motor imagery and its components on phantom limb pain and disability in upper and lower limb amputees: a systematic review protocol. *Syst Rev.* 2016;5(1).
87. Tilak M, Isaac SA, Fletcher J, et al. Mirror Therapy and Transcutaneous Electrical Nerve Stimulation for Management of Phantom Limb Pain in Amputees - A Single Blinded Randomized Controlled Trial. *Physiother Res Int.* 2016;21(2):109–115.
88. Johnson MI. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) for phantom pain and stump pain following amputation in adults. In: Mulvey MR, Bagnall A-M, eds. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*; 2015 [8].
89. Glaser JD, Bensley RP, Hurks R, et al. Fate of the contralateral limb after lower extremity amputation. *J Vasc Surg.* 2013;58(6).
90. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE. Rehabilitation setting and associated mortality and medical stability among persons with amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89(6):1038–1045.
91. Ries Z, Rungprai C, Harpole B, et al. Incidence, Risk Factors, and Causes for Thirty-Day Unplanned Readmissions Following Primary Lower-Extremity Amputation in Patients with Diabetes. *J Bone.* 2015;97(21):1774–1780.
92. Prinsen EC, Nederhand MJ, Rietman JS. Adaptation Strategies of the Lower Extremities of Patients With a Transtibial or Transfemoral Amputation During Level Walking: A Systematic Review. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2011;92(8):1311–1325.
93. Vrieling AH, van Keeken HG, Schoppen T, et al. Gait adjustments in obstacle crossing, gait initiation and gait termination after a recent lower limb amputation. *Clin Rehabil.* 2009;23(7):659–671.
94. Nolan L, Wit A, Dudziñski K, Lees A, Lake M, Wychowañski M. Adjustments in gait symmetry with walking speed in trans-femoral and trans-tibial amputees. *Gait Posture.* 2003;17(2):142–151.
95. Yeung LF, Leung AKL, Zhang M, Lee WCC. Long-distance walking effects on trans-tibial amputees compensatory gait patterns and implications on prosthetic designs and training. *Gait Posture.* 2012;35(2):328–333.
96. Shah SK, Bena JF, Allemang MT, et al. Lower extremity amputations: factors associated with mortality or contralateral amputation. *Vasc Endovascular Surg.* 2013;47(8):608–613.
97. Frengopoulos C, Payne MW, Viana R, Hunter SW. MoCA Domain Score Analysis and Relation to Mobility Outcomes in Dysvascular Lower Extremity Amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* September 2017;.
98. Kalbaugh CA, Taylor SM, Kalbaugh BA, et al. Does obesity predict functional outcome in the dysvascular amputee? *Am Surg.* 2006;72(8):707–712. discussion 712-713.
99. Vivas LLY, Pauley T, Dilkas S, Devlin M. Does size matter? Examining the effect of obesity on inpatient amputation rehabilitation outcomes. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2017;39(1):36–42.
100. Sansam K, Neumann V, O'Connor R, Bhakta B. Predicting walking ability following lower limb amputation: a systematic review of the literature. *J Rehabil Med Off J UEMS Eur Board Phys Rehabil Med.* 2009;41(8):593–603.
101. Borrenpohl D, Kaluf B, Major MJ. Survey of U.S. Practitioners on the Validity of the Medicare Functional Classification Level System and Utility of Clinical Outcome Measures for Aiding K-Level Assignment. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2016;97(7):1053–1063.
102. Hafner BJ, Smith DG. Differences in function and safety between Medicare Functional Classification Level-2 and -3 transfemoral amputees and influence of prosthetic knee joint control. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2009;46(3):417–433.
103. Kannenberg A, Zacharias B, Pröbsting E. Benefits of microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees to limited community ambulators: systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2014;51(10):1469–1496.
104. Theeven P, Hemmen B, Rings F, et al. Functional added value of microprocessor-controlled knee joints in daily life performance of

Medicare Functional Classification Level-2 amputees. *J Rehabil Med.* 2011;43(10):906–915.
105. Megan Sions J, Beisheim EH, Manal TJ, Smith SC, Horne JR, Sarlo FB. Differences in Physical Performance Measures among Patients with Unilateral Lower-Limb Amputations Classified as Functional Level K3 versus K4. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.*
106. Gailey RS, Roach KE, Applegate EB, et al. The amputee mobility predictor: an instrument to assess determinants of the lower-limb amputee's ability to ambulate. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2002;83(5): 613–627.
107. Gholizadeh H, Abu Osman NA, Eshraghi A, Ali S. Transfemoral prosthesis suspension systems: a systematic review of the literature. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2014;93(9):809–823.
108. Desmond D, Gallagher P, Henderson-Slater D, Chatfield R. Pain and psychosocial adjustment to lower limb amputation amongst prosthesis users. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2008;32(2):244–252.
109. Butler K, Bowen C, Hughes A-M, et al. A systematic review of the key factors affecting tissue viability and rehabilitation outcomes of the residual limb in lower extremity traumatic amputees. *J Tissue Viability.* 2014;23(3):81–93.
110. Highsmith MJ, Kahle JT, Klenow TD, et al. Interventions to manage residual limb ulceration due to prosthetic use in individuals with lower extremity amputation: A systematic review of the literature. *Technol Innov.* 2016;18(2-3):115–123.
111. Meulenbelt HEJ, Geertzen JHB, Jonkman MF, Dijkstra PU. Skin problems of the stump in lower-limb amputees: 2. Influence on functioning in daily life. *Acta Derm Venereol.* 2011;91(2): 178–182.
112. Meulenbelt HEJ, Geertzen JHB, Jonkman MF, Dijkstra PU. Skin Problems of the Stump in Lower Limb Amputees: 1. A Clinical Study. *Acta Derm Venereol.* February 2011.
113. Meulenbelt HE, Geertzen JH, Jonkman MF, Dijkstra PU. Determinants of skin problems of the stump in lower-limb amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2009;90(1):74–81.
114. Dudek NL, Marks MB, Marshall SC, Chardon JP. Dermatologic conditions associated with use of a lower-extremity prosthesis. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;86(4):659–663.
115. Baars ECT, Dijkstra PU, Geertzen JHB. Skin problems of the stump and hand function in lower limb amputees: A historic cohort study. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2008;32(2):179–185.
116. Ghoseiri K, Safari MR. Prevalence of heat and perspiration discomfort inside prostheses: Literature review. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 2014;51(6):855–868.
117. Goodman CC, Fuller KS. *Pathology: Implications for the Physical Therapist.* 4th ed. Saunders Evolve: St. Louis MO; 2015.
118. Miller WC, Deathe AB. The influence of balance confidence on social activity after discharge from prosthetic rehabilitation for first lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2011;35(4):379–385.
119. Devan H, Carman A, Hendrick P, Hale L, Ribeiro DC. Spinal, pelvic, and hip movement asymmetries in people with lower-limb amputation: Systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 2015;52(1): 1–19.
120. Imam B, Miller William C, Finlayson Heather C, Eng Janice J, Jarus Tal. A clinical survey about commercial games in lower limb prosthetic rehabilitation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* November 2017.
121. Anjum H, Amjad I, Malik AN. Effectiveness of Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation Techniques as Compared to Traditional Strength Training in Gait Training Among Transtibial Amputees. *J Coll Physicians Surg–Pak JCPSP.* 2016;26(6):503–506.
122. Highsmith MJ, Andrews CR, Millman C, et al. Gait Training Interventions for Lower Extremity Amputees: A Systematic Literature Review. *Technol Innov.* 2016;18(2-3):99–113.
123. Lamberg EM, Muratori LM, Streb R, Werner M, Penna J. Harness-Supported Versus Conventional Treadmill Training for People with Lower-Limb Amputation: A Preliminary Report. *JPO J Prosthet Orthot.* 2014;26(2):93.
124. Traballesi M, Porcacchia P, Averna T, Brunelli S. Energy cost of walking measurements in subjects with lower limb amputations: a comparison study between floor and treadmill test. *Gait Posture.* 2008;27(1):70–75.
125. Button C, Moyle S, Davids K. Comparison of below-knee amputee gait performed overground and on a motorized treadmill. *Adapt Phys Act Q APAQ.* 2010;27(2):96–112.
126. Gates DH, Darter BJ, Dingwell JB, Wilken JM. Comparison of walking overground and in a Computer Assisted Rehabilitation Environment (CAREN) in individuals with and without transtibial amputation. *J NeuroEngineering Rehabil.* 2012;9:81.
127. Malouin F, Richards CL. Mental practice for relearning locomotor skills. *Phys Ther.* 2010;90(2):240–251.
128. Cunha RG, Da-Silva PJG. dos Santos Couto Paz CC, da Silva Ferreira AC, Tierra-Criollo CJ. Influence of functional task-oriented mental practice on the gait of transtibial amputees: a randomized, clinical trial. *J NeuroEngineering Rehabil.* 2017;14.
129. Skjæret N, Nawaz A, Morat T, Schoene D, Helbostad JL, Vereijken B. Exercise and rehabilitation delivered through exergames in older adults: An integrative review of technologies, safety and efficacy. *Int J Med Inf.* 2016;85(1):1–16.
130. Darter BJ, Wilken JM. Gait training with virtual reality-based real-time feedback: improving gait performance following transfemoral amputation. *Phys Ther.* 2011;91(9):1385–1394.
131. Esquenazi A. Gait analysis in lower-limb amputation and prosthetic rehabilitation. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25(1):153–167.
132. Powers CM, Boyd LA, Fontaine CA, Perry J. The influence of lower-extremity muscle force on gait characteristics in individuals with below-knee amputations secondary to vascular disease. *Phys Ther.* 1996;76(4):369–377. discussion 378-385.
133. Winter DA, Sienko SE. Biomechanics of below-knee amputee gait. *J Biomech.* 1988;21(5):361–367.
134. Sadeghi H, Allard P, Duhaime PM. Muscle power compensatory mechanisms in below-knee amputee gait. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil Assoc Acad Physiatr.* 2001;80(1):25–32.
135. Sawers AB, Hafner BJ. Outcomes associated with the use of microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees among individuals with unilateral transfemoral limb loss: a systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2013;50(3):273–314.
136. Highsmith MJ, Kahle JT, Miro RM, et al. Prosthetic interventions for people with transtibial amputation: Systematic review and meta-analysis of high-quality prospective literature and systematic reviews. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 2016;53(2):157–183.
137. Samitier CB, Guirao L, Costea M, Camós JM, Pleguezuelos E. The benefits of using a vacuum-assisted socket system to improve balance and gait in elderly transtibial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016;40(1):83–88.
138. Wong CK, Rheinstein J, Stern MA. Benefits for Adults with Transfemoral Amputations and Peripheral Artery Disease Using Microprocessor Compared with Nonmicroprocessor Prosthetic Knees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2015;94(10):804–810.
139. Ehde DM, Smith DG, Czerniecki JM, Campbell KM, Malchow DM, Robinson LR. Back pain as a secondary disability in persons with lower limb amputations. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82(6):731–734.
140. Ephraim PL, Wegener ST, MacKenzie EJ, Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE. Phantom Pain, Residual Limb Pain, and Back Pain in Amputees: Results of a National Survey. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2005;86 (10):1910–1919.
141. Devan H, Carman A, Hendrick P, Hale L, Ribeiro DC. Spinal, pelvic, and hip movement asymmetries in people with lower-limb amputation: Systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2015;52(1):1–19.
142. Devan H, Hendrick P, Hale L, Carman A, Dillon MP, Ribeiro DC. Exploring Factors Influencing Low Back Pain in People With Nondysvascular Lower Limb Amputation: A National Survey. *PM&R.* 2017;9(10):949–959.
143. Friel K, Domholdt E, Smith DG. Physical and functional measures related to low back pain in individuals with lower-limb amputation: an exploratory pilot study. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2005;42(2):155–166.
144. Shin MK, Yang HS, Yang H-E, et al. Effects of Lumbar Strengthening Exercise in Lower-Limb Amputees With Chronic Low Back Pain. *Ann Rehabil Med.* 2018;42(1):59–66.
145. Gates DH, Aldridge JM, Wilken JM. Kinematic comparison of walking on uneven ground using powered and unpowered prostheses. *Clin Biomech.* 2013;28(4):467–472.
146. Herr HM, Grabowski AM. Bionic ankle–foot prosthesis normalizes walking gait for persons with leg amputation. *Proc R Soc B Biol Sci.* 2012;279(1728):457–464.
147. Pickle NT, Wilken JM, Whitehead JMA, Silverman AK. Whole-body angular momentum during sloped walking using passive and powered lower-limb prostheses. *J Biomech.* 2016;49(14):3397–3406.
148. Curtze C, Hof AL, Postema K, Otten B. Over rough and smooth: Amputee gait on an irregular surface. *Gait Posture.* 2011;33(2):292–296.
149. Vrieling AH, van Keeken HG, Schoppen T, et al. Uphill and downhill walking in unilateral lower limb amputees. *Gait Posture.* 2008;28(2): 235–242.

150. Vrieling AH, van Keeken HG, Schoppen T, et al. Gait termination in lower limb amputees. *Gait Posture.* 2008;27(1):82–90.
151. Vrieling AH, van Keeken HG, Schoppen T, et al. Gait initiation in lower limb amputees. *Gait Posture.* 2008;27(3):423–430.
152. Burger H, Marincek C. Return to work after lower limb amputation. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2007;29(17):1323–1329.
153. Schoppen T, Boonstra A, Groothoff JW, van Sonderen E, Göeken LN, Eisma WH. Factors related to successful job reintegration of people with a lower limb amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82(10): 1425–1431.
154. Couture M, Caron C, Desrosiers J. Leisure activities following a lower limb amputation. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2010;32(1):57–64.
155. Xu J, Kohler F, Dickson H. Systematic review of concepts measured in individuals with lower limb amputation using the International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health as a reference. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2011;35(3):262–268.
156. Hawkins AT, Henry AJ, Crandell DM, Nguyen LL. A systematic review of functional and quality of life assessment after major lower extremity amputation. *Ann Vasc Surg.* 2014;28(3):763–780.
157. Norvell DC, Williams RM, Turner AP, Czerniecki JM. The development and validation of a novel outcome measure to quantify mobility in the dysvascular lower extremity amputee: the amputee single item mobility measure. *Clin Rehabil.* 2016;30(9):878–889.
158. Reid L, Thomson P, Besemann M, Dudek N. Going places: Does the two-minute walk test predict the six-minute walk test in lower extremity amputees? *J Rehabil Med.* 2015;47(3):256–261.
159. Middleton A, Fritz SL, Lusardi M. Walking Speed: The Functional Vital Sign. *J Aging Phys Act.* 2015;23(2):314–322.
160. Su P-F, Gard SA, Lipschutz RD, Kuiken TA. Differences in gait characteristics between persons with bilateral transtibial amputations, due to peripheral vascular disease and trauma, and able-bodied ambulators. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89(7):1386–1394.
161. Hagberg K, Häggström E, Brånemark R. Physiological cost index (PCI) and walking performance in individuals with transfemoral prostheses compared to healthy controls. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2007;29(8):643–649.
162. Wong CK, Gibbs W, Chen ES. Use of the Houghton Scale to Classify Community and Household Walking Ability in People With Lower-Limb Amputation: Criterion-Related Validity. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2016;97(7):1130–1136.
163. Wong CK, Ehrlich JE, Ersing JC, Maroldi NJ, Stevenson CE, Varca MJ. Exercise programs to improve gait performance in people with lower limb amputation: A systematic review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016; 40(1):8–17.
164. Izumi Y, Satterfield K, Lee S, Harkless LB. Risk of reamputation in diabetic patients stratified by limb and level of amputation: a 10-year observation. *Diabetes Care.* 2006;29(3):566–570.
165. Resnik L, Borgia M. Reliability of Outcome Measures for People With Lower-Limb Amputations: Distinguishing True Change From Statistical Error. *Phys Ther.* February 2011.
166. Devlin M, Pauley T, Head K, Houghton Garfinkel S. Scale of prosthetic use in people with lower-extremity amputations: Reliability, validity, and responsiveness to change. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2004;85(8): 1339–1344.
167. Jarl G, Holmefur M, Hermansson LM. Test–retest reliability of the Swedish version of the Orthotics and Prosthetics Users' Survey. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2014;38(1):21–26.
168. Hafner BJ, Morgan SJ, Askew RL, Salem R. Psychometric evaluation of self-report outcome measures for prosthetic applications. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2016;53(6):797–812.
169. Larsson B, Johannesson A, Andersson IH, Atroshi I. The Locomotor Capabilities Index; validity and reliability of the Swedish version in adults with lower limb amputation. *Health Qual Life Outcomes.* 2009;7:44.
170. Scopes J, van der Linden M, Gleeson N. Minimal detectable change values of common outcome measures used in lower limb prosthetic rehabilitation in the UK. *Physiotherapy.* 2015;101: e1356–e1357.
171. Major MJ, Fatone S, Roth EJ. Validity and Reliability of the Berg Balance Scale for Community-Dwelling Persons With Lower-Limb Amputation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2013;94(11):2194–2202.

27 Advanced Rehabilitation for People With Microprocessor Knee Prostheses

CHRISTOPHER K. WONG and JOAN E. EDELSTEIN

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Provide a chronology for the development of prosthetics research leading to the microprocessor knee (MPK) prosthesis.
2. Compare knee control function for a variety of MPK prostheses.
3. Explain functional ambulation skills and activities of daily living that are challenging for users of transfemoral prosthesis or higher that do not have MPK.
4. Describe the Medicare K-level requirements when considering MPK prostheses for patients.
5. Explain the similarities and differences of MPK prostheses.
6. Describe how an MPK unit can benefit the user during gait, stair climbing and ramp negotiation, transfers, and stumbling.
7. Discuss prosthetic and training solutions for common gait deviations from which MPK prostheses can significantly benefit.
8. Evaluate a variety of physical therapy interventions that can be applied when rehabilitating individuals with transfemoral amputation who use MPK prosthesis.
9. Describe the evidence to support use of MPK prostheses.

Historical Development

Since Ambroise Paré's sixteenth-century articulated transfemoral prosthesis,[1] surgeons, patients, and engineers have attempted to imitate the function of the human leg. In the United States, scientific prosthetics development began in 1945 with the establishment of the Prosthetic Appliance Service of the Veterans Administration and the research and development program of the National Academy of Science.[2] Early versions of sophisticated knee units include the 1942 Filippi hydraulic stance control unit[3] and the hydraulic swing and stance control knee unit patented by engineer Hans Mauch and radiologist Ulrich Henschke in 1949.[4] The Veterans Administration approved the first hydraulic swing-phase control mechanism in 1962; the component linked a hydraulic knee unit to a single-axis ankle.[5]

Research beginning in the 1970s led to the 1993 introduction by Blatchford (Basingstoke, England) of the first commercially available microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knee: the Endolite Intelligent Prosthesis. The Intelligent Prosthesis required a wired connection to program the variable swing phase control. The Adaptive Prosthesis followed in 1998, allowing wireless programming and featuring an onboard processor that controlled adjustment of the hybrid pneumatic/hydraulic microprocessor knee (MPK); Endolite's sixth-generation MPK is the Orion (Fig. 27.1).[6] Since introduction of the Intelligent Prosthesis, at least six other companies have joined the marketplace in offering MPK prostheses. Otto Bock (Duderstadt, Germany) initiated the hydraulic C-Leg MPK in 1997.[2,7-10] Other manufacturers presented comparable units. Ossur (Reykjavik, Iceland) launched the Rheo Knee in 2006 and the Power Knee in 2009.[11] In the United States, Freedom Innovations (Irvine, California) introduced the Plié MPK unit.[12] The Nabtesco Corporation of Japan also offers MPK units through the Swedish distributor, Centri AB.[13]

The purpose of this chapter is to (1) discuss the unique features of MPKs that are increasingly available and (2) provide prosthetic and training solutions for persons with common gait deviations that can be reduced by using an MPK.

Overview of Non-Microprocessor Knee Prostheses

After amputation that includes the knee joint, people face significantly more difficulty in mobility tasks than those whose knees remain intact. Without the knee and the muscles that control it, the prosthesis user must control knee flexion in new ways to avoid falling. The simplest way to remain stable is to use a mechanically locked knee unit. Some older first-time prosthesis users prefer the security of a locked knee to one that is unlocked.[14] If the knee is not locked, knee stability can be maintained simply through

Fig. 27.1 Orion: a pneumatic microprocessor knee unit with stance and swing-phase control. (Courtesy of Blatchford, blatchford.co.uk.)

Fig. 27.2 Prosthetic and sound foot placement for stair descent. (Courtesy Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

alignment of the joint axes combined with significant residual limb gluteal muscle power. However, many prosthesis users who wish to walk in the community with additional stability benefit from more sophisticated non-MPK units.

Weight-activated friction-brake knees are non-MPK units that control knee flexion upon initial loading and through most of stance phase. Weight bearing on the prosthesis activates strong braking resistance to knee flexion even when the knee is slightly bent. If the knee is flexed more than 20 degrees, no flexion resistance is provided, making stair descent or stumble recovery difficult. Hydraulic non-MPK units provide sufficient resistance to weight-bearing knee flexion beyond 20 degrees to allow step-over-step descent of stairs or curbs (Fig. 27.2).[15] Hydraulic or pneumatic knees also provide variable levels of resistance to knee flexion during swing phase to minimize asymmetry between sound and prosthetic knee flexion at different gait speeds.

The two different resistance modes in hydraulic knees make these units ideal for those who are able to move at different speeds and traverse a variety of surfaces such as encountered in the community. However, these knees require specific motions during gait to provide the mechanical cue, such as a firm knee hyperextension force of at least 0.1 second in terminal stance phase,[11] to switch between the two different levels of resistance required for weight-bearing stance phase and non–weight-bearing swing phase. If a sufficient cue is not achieved at the end of swing phase, the appropriate resistance to support the weight-bearing limb will not be applied and a fall may occur. Alternatively, if the cue is not achieved at the end of stance phase, the leg may remain stiff in swing phase, leading to an awkward gait pattern. As a result, the user must be careful to move with adequate hip action to prevent stumbles.

Users of non-MPK prostheses must use compensatory techniques for other activities. For instance, to go from sit to stand, the wearer generally places more weight on the sound limb and depends on that leg, and arms as needed, to raise themselves to standing. When sitting, unweighting the prosthetic leg is required in order for the knee to bend easily. Such basic activities place extra stress on the sound limb, which can contribute to the frequent reporting of low back and sound limb pain among prosthesis users.[16] Another example is descending slopes, a difficult activity for users of transfemoral prostheses. A step length matching that of the sound limb often results in a prosthetic knee angle that exceeds the approximately 20-degree safety range of a hydraulic stance phase control or a weight-activated knee unit. Thus most prosthesis users learn to take very short steps. Finally, ascending stairs step-over-step is very difficult for any transfemoral prosthesis user, generally requiring use of a bannister if the step is of standard height.

Introduction to Microprocessor Knee Prostheses

Unlike non-MPK prostheses that use alignment, locked knees, or weight-activated friction brakes, and hydraulic or pneumatic mechanisms, MPK prostheses incorporate an onboard microprocessor to compute data from various electronic sensors and provide real-time adjustments during the user's activities. The computer's processor enables rapid adjustments in knee resistance during both swing and stance phase control, usually with pneumatic or hydraulic components. The speed of microprocessors allows data sampling from sensors in the MPKs at speeds of faster than 50 times per second[17] to provide more responsiveness to individual movements than can be offered by non-MPK pneumatic and hydraulic knee prostheses. Based on input from various combinations of joint position and motion sensors,

pressure sensors, and gyroscopes, proprietary software algorithms determine the phase of gait or function of the leg to provide real-time adjustment of resistance within the MPK unit to facilitate the optimal walking pattern.

The prosthetist performs the initial MPK calibration for the wearer's typical use patterns with software specific to the MPK manufacturer. Calibration requires that the wearer walk at slow, normal, and fast speeds for about 12 meters (40 feet). Then the wearer negotiates stairs and ramps so that the appropriate knee resistance levels can be set. At times, additional adjustments may be necessary as the user bears more weight on the prosthesis and participates in more activities.

MPKs offer a variety of swing and stance phase control functions, including resisted swing phase knee extension and knee flexion, resisted stance phase knee flexion, powered stance phase knee extension, locked or unlocked (free) knee motions, and various combinations for specific functional applications. MPKs offer stance phase knee resistance within a 0- to 35-degree range (Table 27.1).[6]

As with the non-MPK units that have both swing and stance phase control functions, the MPK must switch between different functions. MPK units receive data from various sensors, such as force and angle sensors, accelerometers, and gyroscopes, that indicate the portion of stance phase, especially initial loading. Some MPKs, like the C-Leg and the Rheo Knee, allow controlled knee flexion upon initial loading to reduce vertical shock impact and normalize gait. Angle and velocity of the knee indicate the oncoming of terminal swing. An MPK like the Genium has a gyroscope, which senses the direction of movement and determines when the user lifts the leg to ascend stairs or to step over an obstacle (Fig. 27.3).

In general, manufacturers suggest that MPKs with stance phase control be prescribed for Medicare K2 to K3 level users (Table 27.2) whereas MPKs with both stance and swing phase control be prescribed for K3 to K4 level users who will utilize different walking speeds.[11,17] However, most available MPKs are designed for low- to moderate-impact activities.[11,17] Processor and actuator speeds are typically insufficient for high-speed activities and, as with all electronic devices, MPKs are vulnerable to overheating. While a few new entries into the market such as the Otto Bock X3 have been designed to support high-speed and impact activities, most prosthesis users at the K4 level who engage in high-impact activities, such as running or jumping, are more suited to hydraulic non-MPK designs.[11]

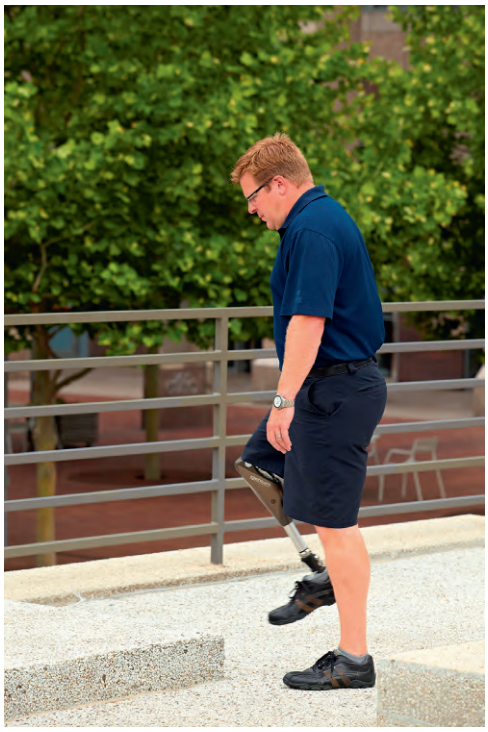


Fig. 27.3 Genium microprocessor knee with gyroscope, accelerometer, and angle sensors responds to movement in all directions. (Courtesy Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

In addition to different combinations of swing and stance phase control, the commercially available MPKs have other options. For instance, the Plie 3.0 knee utilizes a pneumatic mechanism that the user pumps regularly to adjust resistance levels (Fig. 27.4).[12] The pneumatic Hybrid is available with both single and multiaxis knee joints that allow up to 160 degrees.[13] MPKs, however, generally provide knee flexion range from 120 to 140 degrees, which exceeds that of most non-MPKs. MPKs generally dampen knee extension to minimize terminal knee extension impact as well as to adjust the arc of shank swing to the speed of walking, but not early swing phase knee flexion. The C-Leg and Genium have dampened swing phase knee flexion to approximate the 60 degrees normal in level walking.[17,18] The Power Knee offers powered robotic assistance in sit-to-stand and stair ascent functions (Fig. 27.5).[11]

All MPKs have some common characteristics. Although individual MPK technical specifications vary, all are

Table 27.1 Microprocessor Knee Prostheses Offer a Variety of Knee Control Functions

	MANUFACTURER				
Gait Phase Controlled	**Endolite**	**Freedom Innovations**	**Fillauer Europe**	**Otto Bock**	**Ossur**
Swing only	Smart IP		Intelligent Hybrid		
Stance only				Compact	
Swing and stance	Orion 3, Smart Adapt	Plie 3.0	Intelligent Single Axis	C-Leg, X3, Genium	Rheo Knee, Power Knee
Stair ascent (powered assist)					Power Knee

Table 27.2 Medicare Functional Levels for People With Unilateral Transtibial and Transfemoral Amputation

Level	Typical User Profile	Functional Abilities With Prosthesis
K1	Household ambulator	Has ability or potential to transfer and ambulate on level surfaces at slow speeds with fixed cadence. Time and distance severely limited.
K2	Limited community ambulator	Has ability or potential to ambulate and traverse common environmental barriers such as curbs, stairs, or uneven surfaces. Time and distance often limited.
K3	Community ambulator	Has ability or potential to ambulate at faster speeds with variable cadence and traverse most environmental barriers. Can undertake vocational, therapeutic, or exercise activity that demands use beyond ambulation. Time and distance still somewhat limited.
K4	Active user (child, active adult, athlete)	Has the ability or potential for prosthetic use that exceeds ambulation, including high impact, torsion, or energy levels common to sport. Time and distance essentially unlimited.

Fig. 27.4 Plie 3.0: a water-resistant pneumatic microprocessor knee unit. (Courtesy Freedom Innovations LLC, www.freedom-innovations.com.)

Fig. 27.5 Power Knee provides assisted knee extension. (© Össur.)

powered by batteries that must be charged 4 to 14 hours for use limited in general to 1 to 5 days. The Power Knee, the only MPK to provide robotic assistance to movement, maintains its charge for only 12 hours.[11] Depending on use intensity, the Smart Adaptive MPK can maintain charge for up to 14 days.[6] The battery and hydraulic mechanisms do not function in all environments and are limited to operating temperatures ranging from −10 to 60°C (14 to 140°F) for the C-Leg,[17] sufficient for most people's requirements. As with other electronic devices, such as laptop computers, MPKs are also vulnerable to sand, debris, and water—especially salt water. The Plie knee can withstand occasional submersion in shallow water, while the Ottobock X3 can operate underwater and is even salt-water resistant (see Fig. 27.4).

Electronic signals such as repeated beeps or vibrations warn the user of impending shutdown due to computer or hydraulic overload or other malfunction, as well as changes in mode of function. The wearer must learn the meaning of the different signals to assure proper use. Upon shutdown, MPK will default to various states. Most default to swing phase control, which allows knee bending in swing phase but can also permit collapse in stance phase. The C-Leg and Power Knee default to stance phase resistance, which causes the knee to lock and protects against falls if the microprocessor receives abnormal input that can occur during a stumble or step onto an obstacle or uneven surface. A stance phase resistance default setting, however, requires circumduction, hip hiking, or vaulting in swing phase until normal MPK function is restored.

The battery and other electronic components add weight, causing MPKs to be heavier than hydraulic non-MPK units. Weights for MPK units range from 1145 g (2.5 lbs) to 2700 g (6 lbs) for the more complicated Power Knee, compared with the hydraulic non-MPK units such as the SR95[17] that weighs 360 g (12.6 oz) or the Mauch Knee that weighs 1140 g (2.5 lbs).[11] Although the Mauch Knee Plus can accommodate high-impact use by users weighing up to 166 kg (366 lbs),[11] MPKs are generally designed for low- to moderate-impact use by individuals who weigh less than 125 kg (275.6 lbs). The Genium can support people up to 150 kg (330.7 lbs).[17] Typical MPK units cost US$16,000 to 18,000 with total cost of the prosthesis as much as US$50,000 in 2004.[19] Costs for a prosthesis outfit with an MPK now can exceed US$120,000 for the Ottobock X3.[20] Standard warranties run 2 to 3 years with some

companies offering extended 5- to 6-year warranties.[17] Cost to provide the prosthesis can be 2 to 3 times the cost of a non-MPK unit. Among 40-year-old adults seeking to negotiate stairs and enhance safety, the benefits of transitioning to an MPK yielded gains in multiple quality-adjusted life years at just over €3000.[21] Patient and family expenses, such as housekeeping and decreased work productivity for non-MPK users, more than exceeded the per-unit MPK cost and associated interventions such that the overall cost to MPK users was roughly half of non-MPK users in a two-group Dutch cost-analysis study.[22]

Any MPK can be integrated with many other prosthetic components. Endoskeletal construction is typically employed to save weight and provide space for componentry. Each company recommends integrating its MPK with an energy-storing foot selected from its catalog. The difference between feet may not make a substantial difference[23] and can be individually determined based on the judgment of the prosthetist, patient, physician, and therapist.

When integrating an MPK into a hip disarticulation prosthesis, some shank, feet, or hip joint units may provide functional benefits. Particularly useful are shank devices that provide transverse plane rotation, such as the Delta Twist, which can dampen rotation and can be combined with most MPKs. The Ceterus foot,[11] for instance, may also help provide transverse plane rotation accentuated by the longer step lengths that sometimes result when using an MPK.[24] The Helix3D hip joint provides transverse plane rotation unlike other prosthetic hip joints.

Microprocessor Knee Prostheses Control Mechanisms

The MPK works by sensors transmitting input to the microprocessor, which converts the data so that the appropriate output can be provided. In some cases, artificial intelligence allows the MPK to adapt to the user's movements in different activities. Two types of mechanisms provide input to the MPK namely, computational and interactive.[25]

Computational control mechanisms use sensors to detect movement and forces and send this information to a computer that processes the information and adjusts the resistance provided by the knee mechanism to accommodate for variations determined by the data. For instance, 70% body weight borne through the weight-bearing foot will be interpreted as occurring during stance phase leading to full resistance to knee flexion. This intrinsic mechanism is so-called because the sensory information and decision-making process is intrinsic to the knee unit sensors and microprocessor, which prompts an automatic reaction. It is the most common form of input mechanism.

Interactive control mechanisms, more common to upper-limb myoelectric prostheses, integrate the user's conscious initiation. Pattern recognition or electromyographic signal sensors detect the movement initiation. Upper-limb prosthetic function is distinctly different from lower-limb function. Arm movement is modulated primarily by the cognitively variable central nervous system to perform complex acts like grasping a variety of foods. In the lower limb, most everyday function involves walking, which is modulated by the spinal cord and central pattern generators without many fine motor variations.

While the prosthesis user would not want to think about each of the average 6000 steps taken each day,[26] the future may bring interactive control of the prosthesis through myoelectric input. Preliminary experiments with people with lower-limb amputations using myoelectric technology in a virtual environment demonstrate that electrodes imbedded in muscles of the residual lower limb can be used to facilitate specific movements, as is typically done in myoelectric upper-limb prostheses. However, the time to complete simple tasks like extending and relaxing the knee in sitting exceeded 1.5 seconds.[27] Perhaps myoelectrically driven intrinsic control mechanisms may eventually assist slow and deliberate non-weight-bearing tasks for people with leg amputation.

Currently, the Proprio foot, outfitted with an accelerometer, joint sensor, and motorized actuator, can plantarflex and dorsiflex the foot in non-weight-bearing positions upon receiving the correct cues (by heel tap or wireless remote control) enabling the user to sit or don trousers more easily (Fig. 27.6). Other functions for the transfemoral prosthesis user, such as rotating the leg to place it on the knee to don shoes and socks, would be the kind of action such an interactive control system may perform in the future.[11]

Once the sensor data has been input and the microprocessor has determined what function is occurring, the MPK can provide two types of knee movement output: resistance or powered assistance. Most commonly, MPKs resist movement, which can be thought of as an eccentric force such as knee function in gait that resists knee flexion in early stance or resisting knee extension in terminal swing phase. By providing the appropriate amount of resistance through the required range of motion, the MPK can assist the wearer to walk at varied speeds and descend stairs and ramps with less difficulty.

Powered MPKs can also assist movement, comparable to a concentric force. Such a force can be helpful in ascending stairs and rising from a chair, especially for those with

Fig. 27.6 Proprio foot. (© Össur.)

bilateral limb loss or a weak intact limb. While powered assistance provides the potential for the most complete replication of normal leg function, this potential is limited by actuator technology and electromechanical speed. For instance, the human knee moves over 300 degrees/s in walking[28] and can increase to over 600 degrees/s in running.[29] It would be difficult for actuators that have activation times only as fast as 10 ms[12] to create such high velocities, without overheating when maximum speeds are maintained. User adaptation and acceptance of a powered MPK improves over time[30] and has led to improvements in functional walking tests. However, active control can restrict mobility for middle-age and older adults,[31] perhaps due to the complexity even though most adjustable parameters are not required for common functions.[32]

Artificial intelligence is used in MPKs to varying degrees. Standard setup includes initial programmed learning while the wearer walks with the MPK at various speeds and negotiates ramps and stairs. Setup programming prepares the prosthesis for normal function but may not provide sufficient information for the knee to respond appropriately during unexpected events, such as stepping into a divot. Though technically possible, most MPKs do not use real-time accommodation, as it is unnecessary for ordinary use. For instance, even unexpected situations such as stumbles cause predictable inputs that are anticipated by default settings.

Common Mobility Problems and Potential Solutions

Despite sophisticated technology, prosthesis users face a variety of problems in moving around the community. Some problems can be significantly improved by MPK use, although users who are transitioning from non-MPK prostheses may have developed habits that must be unlearned. To illustrate how an MPK unit can benefit the user, common problems in gait, stair and ramp negotiation, transfers, and stumbling will be presented.

People with lower-limb loss using an MPK demonstrate improved gait symmetry.[33,34] Few studies have focused on physical therapy training to improve prosthetic walking function, but various approaches including functional training, balance training, and exercises for specific muscle groups have shown promise.[35] Despite rigorous training and dedicated practice, some gait deviations persist.[15,36] The most common deviations from which MPK users can significantly benefit are discussed here with prosthetic and training solutions.

STANCE PHASE

Loading response: A common stance phase deviation is decreased prosthetic knee flexion during loading response. Decreased knee flexion develops because amputation of the knee robs the lower limb of the eccentric function of the quadriceps, which typically absorbs impact shock as the knee flexes approximately 15 degrees during initial loading.[37] Knee buckling in loading response is a primary concern in early prosthetic training. The experienced non-MPK user may prevent collapse and potential falls by keeping the knee extended in loading response. Decreased prosthetic knee flexion, however, diminishes shock attenuation and transmits stress up the kinetic chain to the hip, pelvis, and spine.[38] Weight-activated friction brakes stabilize the knee when in the safe 0- to 20-degree knee flexion range. Hydraulic units provide graded resistance to knee flexion within the 0- to 20-degree range for descent of stairs, but will buckle readily beyond this range. Although this range of support is usually adequate for level walking, more range is required when descending a ramp, stepping on uneven surfaces, or when missteps occur. Lacking graded eccentric knee flexion control upon initial loading, the user learns to walk with a habitually extended knee.

Prosthetic solutions: Some MPKs, like the C-Leg and Rheo Knee, allow knee flexion upon loading to provide the normal shock-absorbing function of the anatomic knee upon heel strike. For experienced prosthesis users who have learned to walk with the prosthetic knee extended upon initial contact, this function may seem strange. Indeed, the transfemoral amputation limb generates substantial hip extension power in the initial loading phase of gait particularly on the amputated side to push the thigh posterior and maintain the knee extended as well as to power the body forward over the stance limb.[39] The new MPK user transitioning from a non-MPK unit must unlearn old habits and let the knee bend upon initial contact to benefit from the MPK's capacity for greater shock absorption. The prosthetist can adjust the level of resistance as the user adapts.

Training solutions: Whether learning to walk with a prosthesis for the first time or transitioning to an MPK that allows dampened knee flexion upon initial contact, prosthetic training should develop both movement ability and trust in the leg. Although strengthening the gluteus maximus is always beneficial to increase eccentric motor control that can support knee flexion control, the major factor is developing the trust in the MPK to allow knee flexion. Initially standing in parallel bars to provide security, the MPK user can step forward onto the prosthesis, perceiving the resistance to knee flexion as weight progresses from the heel to the toe. Repeatedly leaning on the prosthetic foot to rock from heel to toe as the knee bends gives the MPK user awareness of the strength of knee resistance and helps foster trust in the leg (Fig. 27.7). Training can progress to practice stepping performed with knee flexion upon heel contact as the body advances over the prosthetic foot, causing knee extension, similar to an able-bodied gait. This can be practiced in the parallel bars and later advanced to walking with initial knee flexion upon heel contact, guarded by the physical therapist, who can ensure that the knee unit will progress into extension as in normal gait. Training proceeds to ramp descent, best begun using a railing with therapist assistance. Developing the confidence to descend ramps while the MPK flexes through initial loading can seem like a leap of faith at first. Making the transition from walking with a hyperextended prosthetic knee to allowing the knee unit to flex during loading response can be difficult. Nevertheless, as little as 10 weeks has been needed to acclimate to the MPK.[40]

Asymmetric step length: Various physical impairments make asymmetric step length a common deviation for prosthesis users. The sound-limb step is typically shorter than that of the prosthesis. Amputated side hip extensor

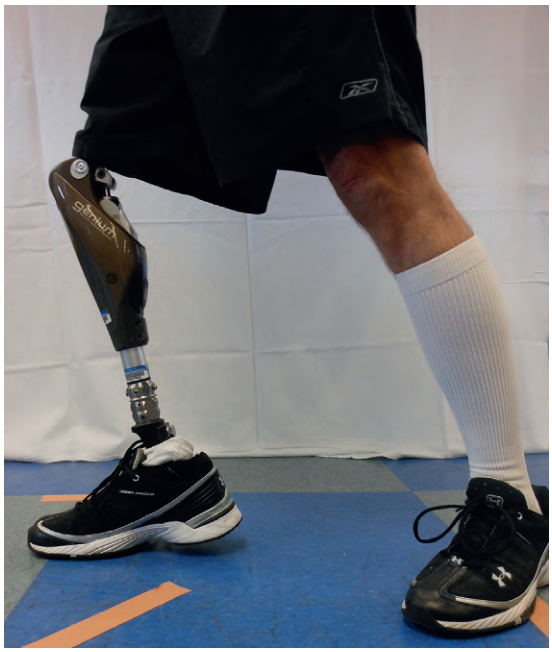


Fig. 27.7 Rocking onto toes to feel the microprocessor knee flexion resistance.

weakness, uncertain balance, and limited hip extension range of motion, further restricted by the 10-degree hip flexion built into the transfemoral socket bench alignment all cause a briefer sound-limb swing time and shorter step length. Decreased hip rotation and concomitant lessened contralateral pelvic rotation also contribute to shorter prosthetic steps. Increasing hip extension range of motion and hip strength improves balance and facilitates longer prosthesis stance time. Practice walking with shorter sound-limb step lengths can also reduce asymmetry.[24]

Gluteus maximus strength is critical during initial loading to generate the hip extension force in early stance that lifts the center of gravity from lowest to highest point and converts stance limb torque from internal to external rotation. Extensor strength is the strongest predictor of prosthetic walking speed.[41] In the absence of quadriceps and with the inevitable atrophy of the hamstrings,[42] hip extension and abduction display the greatest strength loss after amputation.[43] Atrophy of gluteal fast twitch fibers explains the slower gluteal contraction latency periods observed in amputated limbs.[44] Greater demand and slower contractions on the weakened amputated side hip extensors decrease the user's ability to quickly raise the center of gravity from the lowest point in dual limb stance to the highest point by midstance,[41] particularly if long prosthetic steps are emphasized early in the rehabilitation process when gluteal strength is weakest. As a result, prosthetic stance time is significantly briefer than on the sound side, leading to shorter sound-limb swing phase duration and step lengths.[45,46]

Hip abductor weakness reduces the ability to maintain the body in prosthetic limb stance. This leads to a similar scenario in the frontal plane that also contributes to shorter sound-limb steps.[47] Insufficient gluteus medius strength also diminishes the confidence to maintain single-limb stance long enough to complete the normal lateral weight shift. The prosthesis user compensates by placing the sound foot farther from the midline, widening the base of support. The wide base shortens the gluteus medius length-tension relationship, further impairing hip abduction strength while simultaneously requiring a larger lateral weight shift. Hip abductor weakness also plays a role in step length asymmetry, with weakness correlating with slower gait, shorter steps on both sides, and decreased weight bearing on the prosthesis.[47] Those with shorter amputation limbs have more abductor weakness, demonstrated in midstance by faster and/or greater pelvic drop.[48,49] In both situations, longer and/or wider steps are a disadvantage to the gluteal muscles.

In terminal stance, decreased prosthetic side hip extension range of motion restricts the body's advance over the prosthetic foot causing the sound limb to take a shorter step forward. Lack of sufficient hip extension due to hip flexor contracture occurs with able-bodied people but is more prevalent among people with lower-limb amputation. Prolonged sitting during the rehabilitation process that can continue at home due to decreased activity is common after amputation.[26] The standard flexed bench alignment of the transfemoral socket can accommodate mild hip flexion contractures but reduces hip extension excursion.[46]

In the presence of limited hip extension range of motion, users attempt to advance the body over the prosthesis by exaggerating anterior pelvic tilt[48,49] with accentuated lumbar paraspinal muscle use, leading to greater lumbar extension compared with able-bodied people.[50] Such compensation may lead to lower back strains; people with both amputation and low back pain had weaker back extensors.[51] Increased demand for hip and lumbar extension strength and range of motion might be met with extra training to guard against low back pain. Abdominal and hip flexor strength is also critical to maintain hip stability and protect end-range lumbar extension in double support phase of gait.[52]

In normal gait, stance phase hip extension occurs with rotation around the stance hip.[37] Although often observed as contralateral forward pelvic rotation, the rotation occurs primarily at the hip. After amputation, hip extension and contralateral forward rotation around the prosthesis are greatly reduced compared with the sound limb,[48] because transection through the femur minimizes transverse plane bony leverage. As a result, translation of rotary forces from the limb to the socket is greatly reduced because the femur rotates within the soft tissues of the thigh. Any looseness in socket fit reduces the translated forces even more. In fact, unlike sound side or able-bodied individuals, prosthetic stance phase is marked by internal, rather than external, torque,[49] which decreases trunk counterrotation and arm swing. Less trunk rotation is needed to counterbalance pelvic rotation when the individual wears a prosthesis. Nevertheless, when pelvic rotation is decreased, trunk rotation for prosthesis users is also diminished by limited joint mobility, weaker abdominal strength, incoordination between pelvis and trunk, and habit.

Lessened trunk rotation decreases the alternating forward momentum that normally drives arm swing, leading to decreased shoulder movement. The ipsilateral upper limb may be unconsciously held posterior to the hip axis to maintain a hip extension moment for enhanced stability (Fig. 27.8).

For more experienced and usually healthier users who have more confidence in the prosthesis and have striven

Fig. 27.8 Reduced prosthetic side arm swing provides a hip extension moment but causes gait asymmetry.

to walk faster, prosthetic steps may be shorter than those of the sound limb.[18,53] Multiple years of hip flexor stretching increases hip extension range.[51] However, iliopsoas often atrophies and weakens,[52] providing insufficient power to protect the hip and lumbar spine and to enable uniform step lengths. Increased lumbar rotation that compensates for limited hip rotation after amputation may exacerbate low back pain.[50] Regardless of which step is shorter, coordination of trunk and pelvis is important to stabilize the lumbar spine dynamically and produce sufficient trunk and pelvic rotation to achieve symmetrical step length.

Prosthetic solutions: The enhanced stance phase stability of an MPK obviates the need to use the arm to maintain a hip extension moment throughout stance and allows the user to spend more time on prosthetic single-limb stance, thus equalizing step lengths and restoring the normal external rotation torque in stance phase. A torque adaptor in the shank can augment the limited contralateral pelvic rotation around the prosthesis. Regardless of the type of knee unit, significant hip abductor strength is required for single limb stance on the prosthesis without contralateral pelvic drop or ipsilateral trunk lean.

Training solutions: Developing symmetry in prosthetic gait requires a comprehensive approach that reduces underlying joint and muscular impairments to optimize functional outcomes.[54] For the experienced wearer, the habit of keeping the arm behind the hip is likely to be ingrained. Focused training is required to restore normal trunk counterrotation and arm swing. To enable the user to walk with as much symmetry as possible, the person should have normal range of motion throughout the lower limb, particularly the hip. Anterior hip capsular tightness limiting hip extension range is common due to prolonged sitting. Anteriorly directed hip mobilization can help restore hip extension and rotation range (Fig. 27.9).[55] Additional mobilization of the sacroiliac and lumbar joints may also be beneficial. Soft tissue mobilization or trigger point therapy for the iliopsoas followed by stretching[56] can help maintain hip flexor flexibility[57] and can be performed in the prone position or with the patient lying prone with the sound foot on the floor to help maintain or increase hip range (Fig. 27.10). Hip mobilization may also result in gluteal strengthening.[58,59]

Once joint motion is optimized, weight-bearing gluteal strength must be increased. These muscles minimize lumbar extension and frontal plane gait compensations that typically result from hip weakness. In addition to residual limb hip abduction exercise performed side-lying against a bolster,[60] the person can wear the prosthesis to perform closed chain exercises. Forward step-ups are a challenge; however, lateral step-ups on a low platform activate the gluteus medius.[61] To progress a user's efforts, increase the step height

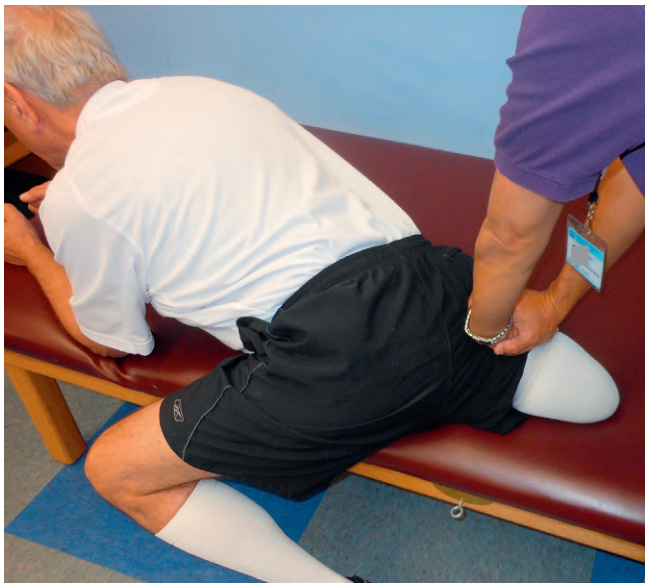


Fig. 27.9 Anterior hip joint capsule mobilization.

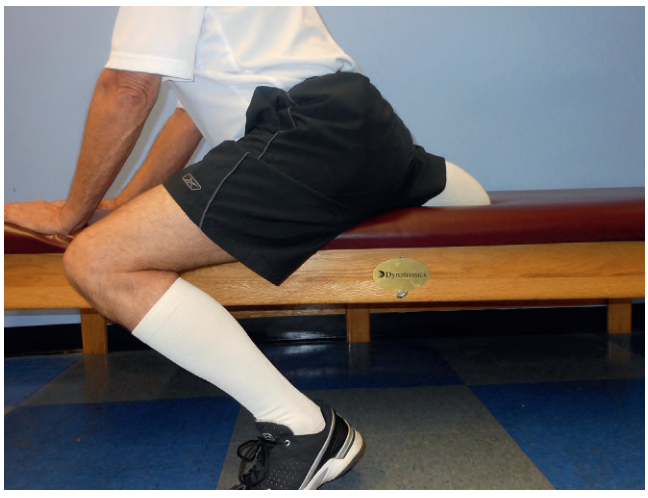


Fig. 27.10 Hip flexor stretch.

gradually. Activities involving sustained stance on the prosthesis also develop prosthetic side hip strength, especially hip abductors. Standing on the prosthesis while pushing in the opposite direction against a wall is an example (Fig. 27.11A and B). More dynamic activities include standing on the prosthesis while using the sound limb to roll a ball on the floor, kicking against Theraband,[62] reaching in different directions around a circle like the star excursion balance test,[63] or maintaining the sound limb on a stool or unstable surface while throwing a ball (Fig. 27.12). Using one hand to lightly maintain balance is important for safety; however, if both hands are required, the activity is probably too difficult and should be modified.

In addition to unilateral trunk bridging that focuses on gluteus maximus strengthening and control, hip extensor strength can be developed wearing the prosthesis while standing or simulating gait positions. One method to activate the gluteus maximus is to stand with hands in front pushing forward against a wall or kitchen counter, while leaning forward far enough to lift the prosthetic heel off the floor. As the trunk shifts forward over the forefoot, a hip flexion moment is created that must be maintained with hip extensors to keep the heel high (Fig. 27.13). Promoting forefoot loading facilitates gluteus maximus activation and trains the user to activate MPK functions. Developing sufficient prosthetic side hip power to take long sound-limb steps can be performed by standing with the prosthetic foot ahead of the intact foot facing a low stool. The wearer steps forward with the sound limb progressing to higher steps. This activity exaggerates the demands on the gluteus maximus and can be used to develop the power needed for more challenging activities (Fig. 27.14).

Strengthening the gluteus maximus, the primary external rotator of the hip, is also vital in transforming the leg torque from internal to external rotation after initial loading. Activities described above such as the sound limb star balance excursion test or exaggerated step lengths to ever higher steps increase gluteal strength and develop pelvic rotation around the prosthetic stance limb. Exercises that emphasize hip rotator strength include pressing the contralateral arm or leg back against a wall to promote isometric contralateral trunk rotation (see Fig. 27.11B). Active rotation around the prosthesis can be performed by turning the pelvis to point the sound foot as far around as possible in each direction and then maintaining the position, using the hands of a clock as a visual cue (Fig. 27.15A and B). Rotational activities can be progressed by pivoting on both

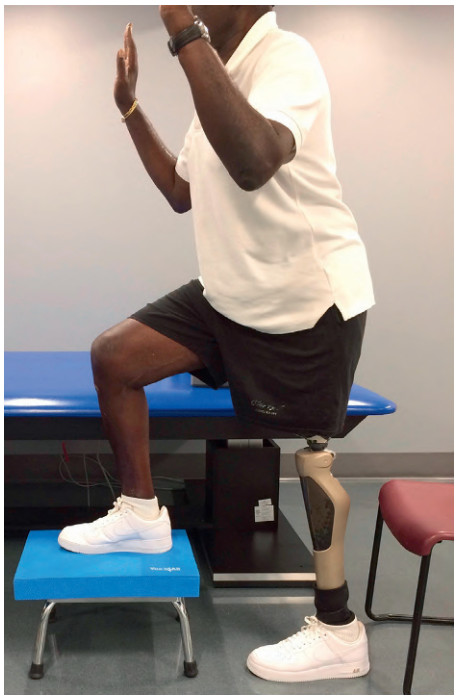


Fig. 27.12 Step standing with sound limb on an unstable surface.

Fig. 27.11 (A) Isometric hip abduction and (B) isometric hip external rotation against a wall.

Fig. 27.13 Pushing forward against a wall while rising onto the forefoot for hip extension and external rotation.

Fig. 27.14 Sound limb to high step.

heels to turn the toes in and out. Even more challenging is weight bearing through the forefeet while turning first one then both heels medially and laterally (Fig. 27.16A and B). Pivoting with weight on the toes develops hip strength and assists functional use of the MPK during turns and sidesteps. For effective neuromuscular reeducation and activation of the hip rotators, the therapist may use cueing or apply resistance through the sound limb (Fig. 27.17). Pelvic rotation contributes to the overall goal of uniform step length with faster gait speeds although specific pelvic motions may become less symmetrical.[48]

More advanced gluteal strengthening activities can integrate trunk and upper extremity function through exaggerated elements of gait. One method is to face a wall, then press only the ipsilateral hand against the wall while simultaneously lifting the prosthetic heel off the floor and flexing the sound hip as high as possible (see Fig. 27.13). Avoid lumbar hyperextension to protect the back. Maintaining this

Fig. 27.15 Stepping and holding in hip rotation: (A) internal and (B) external.

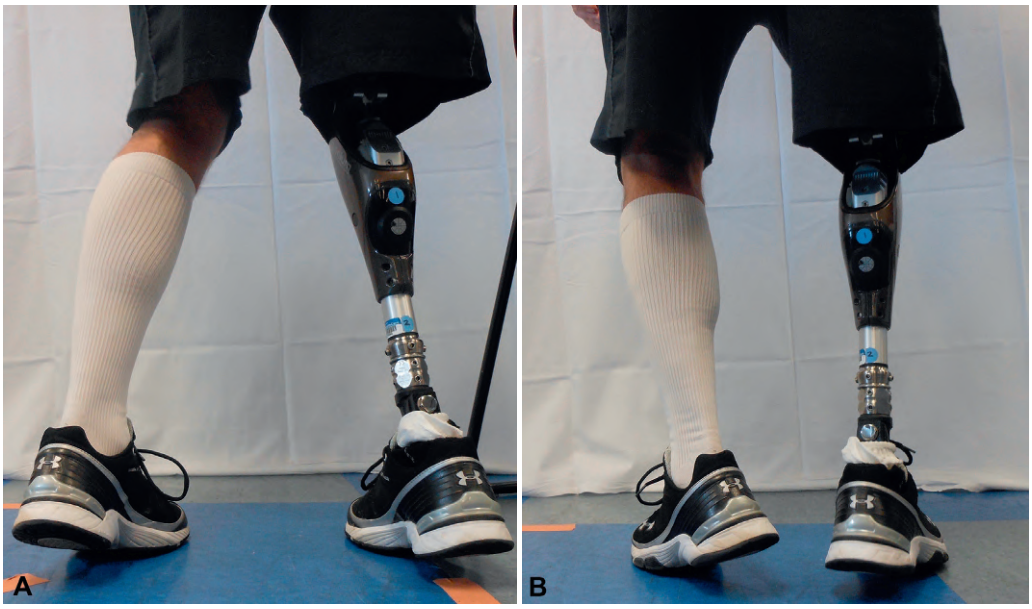


Fig. 27.16 Pivoting on both heels (not pictured) and toes from (A) internal to (B) external.

position with spinal stability activates the abdominal muscles and helps promote contralateral pelvic rotation around the prosthesis with upper trunk counterrotation and arm swing often impaired in gait. Spinal stabilization exercises increase prosthetic step length and gait speed.[53] Strengthening the hip flexors of both limbs also helps protect the hip and spine as they extend in terminal stance phase. Hip flexion generates power through swing phase. Hip strengthening and functional proficiency are important for both legs because sound limb hip rotation adds impetus to prosthetic swing phase, trunk counterrotation, and arm swing.

In addition to pelvic and trunk rotation training, additional practice may be necessary to make arm swing natural. Facilitating arm swing through the shoulders or with canes held in each hand by both user and therapist while walking in synchronicity can help. Pelvic and trunk rotation in gait can be progressed by having the user and therapist face each other while the user walks forward as the therapist walks backward resisting the pelvis or hands to integrate trunk counterrotation and arm swing (Fig. 27.18).

Functional activities to develop transverse plane rotation and gait symmetry can eventually be used for independent practice by highly functioning individuals include tandem balancing (Fig. 27.19) and walking or grapevine walking to encourage rotation around each hip as well as decrease the base of support. Floor markers placed evenly apart can serve as visual cues for uniform step lengths, and a full-length mirror at the end of a walkway allows the prosthesis user to check the symmetry of arm movements and general symmetry. A metronome provides an audible cue to rectify asymmetric stance times. A treadmill can be used to train progressive and consistent gait speed on level and inclined surfaces. As the patient builds strength, confidence, and awareness of muscle function and the limit of stability, the ability to take normal-length steps during functional activities improves. As ability increases, additional challenges can be designed, such as stepping onto unstable surfaces.

Fig. 27.17 Resisted hip external rotation by therapist through the sound knee.

Other stance phase deviations discussed elsewhere in this text, such as wide base of support and lateral trunk lean or Trendelenburg, are unlikely to be affected specifically by MPK use but may benefit from the proposed training solutions. Regardless of prosthetic components, training is required to minimize gait deviations and maximize function.

Swing phase: Gait asymmetry can be affected by the difficulty transitioning from stance to swing phase. For able-bodied individuals, ankle plantarflexion prior to swing phase raises the body, providing much of the propulsive power.[37] Hip flexors contract to decelerate end range hip

Fig. 27.18 Resisted gait with cane.

Fig. 27.19 Tandem stance in a doorway.

extension, then initiate swing phase with the adductors. The flexing hip and the forward propulsion of the body create momentum that first passively flexes the knee from heel off to early swing then extends the knee through terminal swing when hip flexion is reversed by the hip extensors. When momentum is reduced, as in slow gait, the hamstring muscles flex the knee to assure toe clearance augmenting foot dorsiflexion.

Amputation eliminates active ankle plantarflexion. Work shifts to the iliopsoas muscle increasing power derived from the hip flexor group by over 50%.[39] Without active knee flexion, the hip flexors must contract even stronger to supply sufficient momentum to advance the limb through swing phase. Unfortunately, the ipsilateral iliopsoas atrophies.[52] Developing hip flexor strength can be difficult, especially with shorter amputation limbs. The new user can have difficulty advancing the limb, leading some to exaggerate hip flexion by kicking the leg laterally to initiate swing. Exaggerated kicking can lead to swing phase deviations like steppage (exaggerated hip and knee flexion) that can linger long after sufficient strength is restored.

Non-MPK hydraulic knee users must also switch their knees from stance phase control knee flexion resistance to swing phase resistance. While unnatural at first, prosthesis users learn to perform the knee extension motion without much thought.[64] However, swing phase is delayed and stance times asymmetric.[45] When momentum is not directed forward, such as when turning or sidestepping, transition between stance and swing phase knee resistance can be ineffective resulting in occasional circumduction, hip hiking, or vaulting if adequate swing resistance is not activated. Knee collapse and falling may occur if stance resistance is not activated.

Prosthetic solutions: For the MPK user, transition between resistance phases is initiated intrinsically in response to electronic sensors. In the C-Leg the user must achieve knee extension for 0.1 second with 70% body weight forefoot loading to disengage stance control and allow swing phase knee flexion. The amount of body weight required can be adjusted depending on the user's needs. Default settings of the specific MPK determine what happens if the criteria are not met. For instance, the C-Leg defaults to stance phase control to protect the wearer from knee collapse, a significantly improved safety feature compared with non-MPK prostheses. Other MPK units like the Rheo Knee default to swing phase control to avoid toe drag in swing phase.

Training solutions: To ensure that the user is comfortable bearing weight through the prosthetic forefoot, activities involving forefoot loading are critical. Pivoting can be practiced with weight on both forefeet to allow rapid swing phase action during turns (see Fig. 27.16B). Lateral weight shifts onto the toes with one or two quick bounces can help prepare for side-stepping. Forefoot bouncing can also be useful, and some MPKs like the Power Knee use forefoot bounces as mechanical cues to change knee resistance modes. Pushing off the forefoot to kick into swing phase can assist forward walking or the quick transition into swing phase necessary for a brief jog.

For those with decreased pelvic and trunk motion, abdominal muscles may be recruited to assist swing phase, particularly for people with amputation limbs shorter than 57% of the sound length where hip flexors are weaker. Shorter limb length correlates with increased pelvic tilting during gait even after traumatic amputation.[65] Core abdominal mobility exercises are even more important after hip disarticulation or higher amputations that deprive the user of all active hip motion. In addition, rapid stepping can improve coordination and hip flexion power necessary to increase gait speed and avoid obstacles.

Stairs and Ramps

Descents: Stairs and ramps remain difficult for even for experienced users. Descents and ascents pose different problems. As in walking, limited prosthetic knee flexion is a particular problem when descending stairs and declines. Limited shock attenuation is particularly evident upon landing on the prosthetic limb when descending stairs, curbs, or declines. Because the wearer descends stairs onto the heel, not the forefoot as able-bodied individuals do, more shock is transmitted to the extremity; the user commonly feels a jolt upon landing. Although the prosthetic limb is subjected to less vertical force than a normal limb upon landing, this force is more poorly attenuated without normal knee flexion and ankle dorsiflexion upon loading. The hip on the prosthetic side must exert greater extension force to help control the knee. On the sound limb, the relative lack of prosthetic knee flexion results in about 50% greater vertical impact forces as the body lowers from a greater height.[66,67] In fact, all sound limb joints experience increased stress in gait, exposing the sound side to more risk of injury.[30] As a result, most people with transfemoral or higher amputations instinctively take smaller steps of shorter duration to decrease ground reaction forces and muscle demand on ramps whether descending or ascending.[68] The new wearer usually takes short prosthetic steps to prevent accidental collapse and compensates with longer sound-limb steps to maintain speed, making gait asymmetrical.

Non-MPK hydraulic stance control knees provide graded resistance to knee motion beyond 20 degrees flexion, giving time for the sound limb to alight onto the next lower step in a step-after-step pattern. Nevertheless, most users still have noticeably decreased prosthetic stance time when descending stairs.[67] Descending ramps is more difficult than stairs because in order to place the prosthetic foot flat on the ground without the normal ankle plantarflexion range, the prosthetic shank must be thrust forward downhill, creating a rapid, sizeable knee flexion moment. Knee flexion resistance in a non-MPK hydraulic stance control unit can be adequate on shallow ramps, but knee flexion resistance is not always sufficient on steeper ramps. Prosthetic users often hesitate when descending ramps.

Prosthetic solutions: As in level walking, MPK sensors provide data used to adjust the real-time resistance needed for descent. For the typical MPK, full knee extension at terminal swing combined with prosthetic heel weight bearing triggers knee flexion resistance to match the individual's body weight, angle of descent, and gait speed through a greater range of motion (30–35 degrees) than provided by non-MPK units.[24] Slow, interrupted, or unsteady stair descent may cause insufficient momentum to create full knee extension, thereby leaving MPKs with swing phase resistance default settings unready to provide stance phase stability; this deficiency can lead to knee collapse. Collapse is less of a problem for the C-Leg, which defaults to stance phase knee resistance, even in knee flexion ranges of 36 to 55 degrees.[66] Prosthesis users functioning at the Medicare K2 or K3 levels (see Table 27.2) performed better on stairs and declines with MPK compared with non-MPK hydraulic knees.[69] After the MPK software is adjusted and the user develops confidence and balance through training, the wearer can descend steep declines with significantly longer prosthetic steps that promote less asymmetry and faster speeds.[24]

Training solutions: To descend stairs, the MPK user must learn to place only the rear foot on the lower step and load substantial body weight through the heel (see Fig. 27.2). This foot placement triggers the graded knee flexion resistance needed while leaving the toes to angle down and progress to the next step as the knee bends. To step down stairs onto the heel in this manner can be anxiety producing for the new MPK user and should be practiced initially on the bottom step using a bannister with guarding.

The prosthesis user can mitigate some of the impact shock to the residual limb by reaching the prosthetic leg down toward the next step so the foot meets the lower stair with less impact. This motion, referred to as pelvic anterior depression,[70] can be practiced on level ground or by standing on a low platform to reach the heel forward and down with a pelvic motion before returning to the starting position.

Taking long prosthetic steps when descending a ramp is unnatural to the person who has habitually used a non-MPK prosthesis. This habit may be overcome by training the MPK user to (1) utilize pelvic anterior depression in terminal swing, (2) activate the hip extensors to advance the body forward during initial loading, (3) rotate the contralateral pelvis around the stance hip in midstance, and (4) maintain weight bearing through the prosthetic forefoot in terminal stance. Training can include practice placing the prosthetic heel on targets placed on the floor around the individual. A banister provides safety during the training process until the new wearer develops confidence to progress to resisted training and finally unassisted declines.

Ascents: Most people with transfemoral amputation ascend stairs in a step-to fashion. A similar gait pattern is used for steep inclines. When ascending, the wearer typically flexes the sound limb more to make up for the lack of prosthetic side elevation normally provided by ankle plantarflexion.[68] In the community, some people ascend stairs two steps at a time with the sound limb to maintain the same speed as companions. Greater knee flexion, however, increases forces on all sound limb joints when climbing stairs.[67] In the stance phase of ramp ascent, the prosthetic shank is thrust backward making it difficult to advance the body forward and causing a short step on the intact side.

Prosthetic solutions: When ascending ramps, forefoot weight-bearing causes the shank to be thrust backward, exerting a strong knee extension moment. An MPK in the stair ascent mode gives less swing phase resistance to knee flexion to help the foot clear the edge of the next step. Software can be adjusted to the user's needs. Once the foot is on the next step, however, the user must exert considerable hip extensor power to lift the body onto the next step, which is typically accomplished with the assistance of a hand on a bannister. In the absence of a bannister, step-over-step stair ascent is very difficult for most users.

The Power Knee provides powered assistance to ascent. The user must stop at the bottom stair for 3 seconds to default to the standing state before ascending. Initiating knee extension activates the assisted knee extension function. Data sent wirelessly from sensors strapped to the sound leg help match prosthetic movement to the sound limb. At the top of the stairs, the user must pause again for 3 seconds

to reset the MPK before walking. The powered mechanism makes sounds noticeable to passersby; the noise bothers some users.

The Genium uses a gyroscope and accelerometers to recognize that the user is ascending a step. A quick hip extension movement to drag the foot off the ground followed by quick hip flexion in a whipping motion lifts the foot to the next step with prosthetic hip and knee flexion. Once the foot is on the next higher step, the Genium provides maximal resistance preventing further knee flexion in the bent knee weight-bearing position. Use of the Genium has shown to improve step-over-step ability, though significant effort is still required by the opposite lower limb to raise the body and upper limbs to pull up on a bannister.[71-73]

Training solutions: Due to hip flexor weakness, the prosthesis user may have to elevate or tilt the pelvis posteriorly, using the abdominals to gain sufficient elevation and to compensate for limited prosthetic ankle dorsiflexion on stairs and inclines. If the user stops on a step, restarting swing phase up the stairs is difficult. Turning diagonally allows space for the foot to clear after a stop on the stairs without excessive hip hiking. Ascending step-over-step requires great hip extensor strength and usually the assistance of a bannister. Recent MPK designs, including the Power Knee and Genium, meet this challenge. The Power Knee only requires the user to initiate knee extension with the hip extensors. Step-over-step ascent with the Genium requires significant hip extensor strength and is recommended only for active users at the K3 to K4 levels (see Table 27.2).

Sitting and squatting: Although navigating stairs can be difficult for people using prosthetic knees, any knee bending and straightening activities like rising from a chair or squatting demands compensatory movements, which imposes added stress to the sound limb. Many prosthetic knees require unloading the prosthesis to allow the knee unit to bend so that the user can sit at a speed similar to able-bodied individuals. As a result, many prosthesis wearers stand with 10% to 30% more body weight on the sound limb than on the prosthesis.[47,74] Squatting with both legs can be useful. For instance, the prosthesis user may want to squat to reach down to a child or pick up something from the floor without bending from the waist to avoid low back pain, which occurs in more than 80% of people using transfemoral prostheses.[52] After 30 degrees knee unit flexion, most MPKs provide insufficient flexion resistance to prevent collapse.[66] Thus, for many users, sit-stand transitions and especially squatting become single-limb activities that place substantial stress on the sound limb. Potential solutions for sit-to-strand transitions and squatting follow.

Prosthetic solutions: When the wearer begins to sit down, MPKs like the C-Leg and Rheo Knee provide controlled resistance to knee flexion activated by prosthetic weight bearing. MPKs allow symmetrical distribution of weight between the feet to reduce stress on the sound limb; resistance settings can be adjusted to the needs of the user. Whether using non-MPK or MPK, wearers continue to bear weight asymmetrically and sit slower than able-bodied individuals.[74] To sit rapidly without adjusting the resistance, MPKs that have swing phase default settings can be off-loaded; this shifts stress to the sound limb as with non-MPKs.[38] Although MPKs allow symmetrical weight bearing during stand-to-sit transitions, the user must be trained to bear more weight on the prosthesis by pressing the thigh against the inner posterior socket wall with a hip extension force to off-load the sound limb.

Most MPKs do not assist sit-to-stand activity; the user depends greatly on sound limb strength to rise. The Power Knee, however, assists user-initiated knee extension. A push up from the chair armrests activates the assisted sit-to-stand function. As compared with those wearing unpowered knee units, prosthesis users rising with the Power Knee move with greater symmetry with hip force closer to that exhibited by able-bodied individuals.[74] To sit using a Power Knee, the user must pause to activate the default standing mode, then slowly lower the body to the chair. If the sitting motion is stopped midway, the Power Knee will support the user in a squat until the prosthesis is unweighted. Transferring the weight to the sound limb allows further knee unit bending.

Some MPKs provide special function modes that allow squatting or prolonged standing. The C-Leg, for instance, permits prosthetic weight bearing with the knee unit flexed to any angle between 7 and 70 degrees allowing maximal support for squatting or bent-knee standing. The Compact knee, designed for K2 level users, offers the same function in a 0- to 30-degree range. This mode is activated by handheld wireless remote control unit, with predetermined physical cues such as bouncing quickly on the forefoot, but also more intuitively by lowering the body to the desired degree of knee flexion and then slightly straightening the prosthetic knee to turn on the maximal knee flexion resistance needed to squat.[17] The Power Knee facilitates squatting by locking when the user stops the stand-to-sit motion at the desired degree of knee flexion.[11]

Training solutions: When sitting, the MPK user should place the hands on the arm rests to enhance safety and decrease the chance that the wearer will fall backward. Using arm rests, however, shifts the body weight backwards onto the heels rather than forward onto the forefeet as in able-bodied sit-to-stand transitions. For those who demonstrate the potential to stand unassisted, transferring weight forward over the forefeet can be practiced from surfaces of decreasing height as the person improves. The user's hands can be positioned anteriorly or on the thighs while arising. Placing both feet behind the knees helps advance weight over the forefeet but can be difficult due to limited prosthetic ankle dorsiflexion. Keeping the spine straight minimizes patellar compressive forces and back pain. Practicing at different speeds on different seat heights and while holding objects of different weights can prepare the user for a range of functional activities.

To develop the strength and control to squat, the user should practice single-limb squats with the sound limb. If unable, the wearer can start by performing a wall squat with a chair at hand for support. Methods to stimulate greater contribution of hip extensors on the amputated side will help in controlling the descent to the desired knee flexion angle. Squats on an unstable surface such as a cushion or tilt board performed between parallel bars and with appropriate guarding for safety, can be effective. Step-ups with the prosthesis leading also help enable knee unit extension through forceful hip extensor contractions. Gluteal strengthening exercises are essential.

Fall protection: People with leg amputation have a greater risk of falling than do able-bodied individuals, with reported

incidences of 20% to 32% during rehabilitation[75,76] and 52% within the community.[77] Falls occur when the wearer unexpectedly bears weight on the flexed prosthetic knee, as can happen when a user slips, stubs a toe, or steps on a rock unbalancing the prosthetic foot and causing the knee unit to bend. Stepping onto a flexed knee can also occur when the user turns, takes small sidesteps, or stops suddenly, preventing the knee unit from fully extending and activating stance phase control. When using a hydraulic non-MPK, tripping or stepping on an object leads to swing phase knee flexion resistance and increases the risk of falls.[78] Slips may occur upon heel strike onto slick surfaces such as ice. A slip causes very high demand for gluteal muscle strength that must respond rapidly to the anteromedial shear upon landing.[79] The muscles of prosthetic users, including postural muscles like the erector spinae and oblique abdominal muscles, do not consistently contract when walking and respond to slips and trips slower than the muscles of sound limbs or able-bodied people.[79] The wearer may adapt to the risk of unexpected knee instability by taking shorter prosthetic steps, which results in slow, asymmetrical gait.

Prosthetic solutions: Whether a stumble or fall will result from an unexpected step onto a flexed knee depends greatly on the MPK default setting. MPKs with swing phase knee resistance default settings require great compensatory movements; otherwise, falls occur even in younger people whose amputation etiologies were non-dysvascular.[66] Knee collapse can also occur when knee unit flexion exceeds the 30- to 35-degree range programmed for stance phase resistance capacity.[66] The Power Knee and C-Leg default to stance phase knee resistance and will prevent collapse even after swing phase is interrupted.[78] In everyday situations, stance phase default C-Leg users reported significantly fewer stumbles and falls[80] and a safer experience compared with non-MPK users.[81]

Training solutions: Because stumbling is unexpected, it is difficult to prepare the new user. However, most slips result from the foot sliding upon initial contact rather than in terminal stance. Thus the gluteal muscles are the most important group to strengthen and the hip flexors are a secondary concern. Consistent contraction of the core muscles throughout gait, not typically present in prosthesis users, should be developed and strengthened to allow stronger and faster response to postural disturbances.[79] Methods for strengthening gluteal muscles and integrating abdominal contractions in gait have been presented in training solutions for asymmetric steps.

Practice in functional activities encountered in real life also prepares users to respond to stumbles and falls. Obstacle courses should include different walking surfaces and stepping up, over, and onto obstacles. Carrying items and performing dual tasks can develop overall functional ability. With training, MPK users can negotiate obstacle courses quickly with fewer steps compared with those wearing non-MPK prostheses.[82] Practice on outdoor terrain can enable the wearer to participate fully in daily activities.

Other activities: The user may wish to participate in activities that require free-swinging knee function like biking or locked knee function like prolonged standing.

Prosthetic solutions: Non-MPK hydraulic or pneumatic knees sometimes have a manual switch at the back of the knee that will switch the knee to different modes of function.[11] MPKs offer various modes of function but eliminate the need to operate a switch manually. A physical cue like pushing down on the toes three times followed by unweighting the leg for 1 second switches the mode of operation from walking to free swinging for biking or maximal knee resistance for prolonged standing.[17] Regardless of whether wireless remote or leg movements are used to switch functional modes, an electronic signal, either a series of beeps or vibrations, confirms the change in setting to the user.

Training solutions: The ability to remember how to switch modes, performing the physical cue, and hearing or feeling the confirming electronic signals varies among users. As with gait training, forefoot weight-bearing practice is a fundamental skill to develop. Having the user practice initiating the cues and perceiving the signals is important to the smooth, effective use of these MPK features.

Although clinicians may focus on gait deviations that persist despite dedicated training for even the most experienced and high-level users, wearers themselves tend to focus more on their functional abilities. Even active prosthesis users typically take part in bouts of activity lasting less than 2 minutes and averaging only 17 steps per minute. Most wearers only engage in activity lasting more than 15 continuous minutes less than once per day.[83] Functional ability and attitude toward the prosthesis are the strongest predictors of patient satisfaction.[84] Prosthetic outcomes can be maximized through a clinical approach that addresses range of motion and strength impairments while integrating functional abilities to optimize participation in the pleasures and challenges of real life.

Outcomes

Success of prosthetic fitting can be measured by objective factors, principally energy consumption, walking velocity, and step symmetry, as well as subjective responses such as falls history and quality of life questionnaires. Overall, prosthesis users perform somewhat better and report greater satisfaction when wearing MPK prostheses than with less sophisticated components. A few investigators compared function of people wearing prostheses with various units. Even in the presence of laboratory evidence regarding the biomechanical characteristics of MPK units, clinicians' and wearers' subjective reactions remain the mainstay of formulating prosthetic prescription and thus determining prosthetic rehabilitation outcomes.[84,85]

Physical characteristics appear to outweigh the importance of a particular prosthetic component in determining the individual's performance. Review of combat-associated amputations reveals that function and amputation limb length are directly correlated, whereas energy consumption and length are inversely related.[86] People with mid-length or longer thighs, however, showed no significant kinematic or kinetic gait differences.[65]

Gait studies: Laboratory comparisons of performance with prostheses equipped with the C-Leg and the Mauch Swing and Stance hydraulic knee unit generally indicate that subjects walked faster with the C-Leg by as much as 21% depending on terrain.[18,80] Faster self-selected walking speed with a C-Leg did not necessarily come at higher energy costs.[87] One research team, however, reported no significant differences in free walking speed.[64] Faster gait speeds obtained with people after transfemoral amputation using

the C-Leg compared with non-MPK prostheses have also been documented in a case report of one person with bilateral knee disarticulations.[88] Laboratory comparison of subjects wearing the Endolite Intelligent Prosthesis and non-MPK units reveal similar results as those involving C-Leg.[89]

A goal of prosthetic fitting is to enable the patient to walk as inconspicuously as possible. People wearing the C-Leg exhibited less step length asymmetry than when using a hydraulic non-MPK unit.[18,40,45] Kinematic analysis of subjects walking with MPK units showed less delay between late swing phase knee extension and heel contact than with other units.[45]

Optimum rehabilitation restores the individual's ability to walk greater distances without appreciable fatigue. In one study, subjects who wore prostheses with step counters and distance monitors took similar numbers of steps and walked for equivalent durations in the home and community environments whether using the C-Leg or Mauch knee units,[83] whereas another group reported that wearing an MPK prosthesis was associated with greater physical activity in the community.[90] Much research involves measuring oxygen consumption. Some investigators detected no significant difference in oxygen cost of walking when comparing performance of subjects wearing the C-Leg and hydraulic non-MPK units,[88] whereas others suggest that walking with C-Leg is more energy efficient.[82,91,92] Although metabolic demand when wearing the microprocessor Adaptive Knee was comparable to that of a hydraulic non-MPK unit,[93] use of the Intelligent Prosthesis was associated with slightly reduced oxygen consumption.[94-97] Although use of different MPKs produced similar levels of oxygen consumption, the energy cost for young adults with traumatic amputation using MPK was much higher than required by the able-bodied control subjects.[98] Metabolic demand with the Rheo Knee unit was slightly less than with the C-Leg.[99] In general, any MPK reduces energy consumption modestly compared with a non-MPK, confirmed by laboratory comparison of adults walking with several types of MPKs.[66]

Performance in other ambulatory activities: Sit-to-stand transitions required less hip force for subjects wearing the Power Knee as compared with performance with the C-Leg or the Mauch Swing and Stance Control unit, although all participants relied primarily on the intact limb.[74] The C-Leg offers more protection against tripping as compared with non-MPK units. Three subjects participated in a randomized study in which the examiner tugged on a cord in an attempt to cause prosthetic knee flexion. Unlike other knee units, the C-Leg either produced rapid knee extension or supported the wearer on the flexed knee.[78] Performance on stair and ramp descent was safest with the C-Leg, as compared with the Rheo Knee, Adaptive 2 Knee, and Hybrid Knee.[66] On hill and stair descent, MPK users exhibited smoother maneuvering over obstacles, fewer stumbles, and superior multitasking ability, allowing many to advance to a higher Medicare functional level.[69] The Rheo Knee and the C-Leg were associated with smoother gait and decreased hip power generation as compared with performance with the Mauch Swing and Stance Control units.[97] Subjects who walked on a treadmill while solving mental problems swayed less when tested with the Intelligent Prosthesis, suggesting that it was not as cognitively demanding as less sophisticated knee units.[100]

Several research teams administered questionnaires to people who wore prostheses equipped with C-Legs. Respondents praised confidence, gait, and maneuverability,[81] as well as overall satisfaction.[22] Scores on the Prosthesis Evaluation Questionnaire were higher.[80,82] Subjective response to the Intelligent Prosthesis was also favorable, with users preferring it to non-microprocessor units when walking at different speeds and greater distances with less fatigue.[100] Survey respondents commended increased quality of life when wearing MPKs.[90]

Although many studies of adults wearing MPKs have been published, few have addressed issues such as mechanical durability, effect of unit weight on performance, and whether the cost of the units equates to substantially greater benefit. Ideally, future research would involve larger sample sizes. Nevertheless, at the present time, one can conclude that MPK units can improve the quality of life of many people with transfemoral amputation.

Prescriptive Cases

Selecting the prosthesis that matches an individual's needs requires taking into account the person's general health, level and status of the residual limb, history of prosthetic use, features and limitations of the available prosthetic components, impact level of the intended use, and the individual's functional level. Manufacturers recommend MPKs for low- to moderate-impact activities (Table 27.3) by users

Table 27.3 Impact Levels

Levels	Target Activity	Typical Use
Low	Walking with small cadence variations	Daily walking with low foot forces. Examples: household tasks, gardening, shopping, and occasional non-impact sports such as golf and leisure walking.
Moderate	Walking with variable cadence	Daily walking of long durations with moderate forces. Examples: aerobics, jogging, sports like tennis, and vocational activities like lifting/carrying.
High	High cadence walking	Daily activities involving vigorous and repetitive actions with fast speeds and high loading forces. Examples: distance jogging, running, jumping, sports like basketball, and vocational activities like construction work.
Sport-Extreme	High-impact sports and activities	Daily activities with high or extreme forces common in repetitive, fast, and/or sustained activities. Examples: sprinting, long-distance running, active military service.

at the Medicare K2 to K4 functional levels (see Table 27.2), regardless of insurance company policies. After transfemoral amputation many people may not attain the functional ability to become K3 community ambulators, who often average walking speeds > 0.8 m/s (1.8 mph) and negotiating steps and curbs.[101] For K2 level walkers, MPK units like the C-Leg Compact with stance phase control only improve balance and walking on level and slopes may be sufficient.[102-104] Prosthesis users who walk faster, traverse daily distances of 5 km (3.1 miles) including stairs, and engage in moderate-impact activities are at the K3 to K4 functional level, thus both stance and swing phase features are recommended. In addition to matching prosthetic components to the individual's physical and functional needs, another inescapable consideration is the cost of incorporating an MPK. Insurance will often reimburse the price of an MPK only for users at the K3 to K4 levels. The cases that follow highlight important considerations relevant to MPK prescription.

Those with hip disarticulation or higher amputations can be considered at the K2 level if walking independently, regardless of speed, although Medicare K-levels are not intended for people other than unilateral transtibial and transfemoral amputation.

Case Example 27.1 **The Active Athlete**

A 29-year-old 110-kg (245-lb) former college athlete has a transfemoral amputation resulting from a motorcycle accident 5 years ago. He has been using a non-MPK hydraulic knee prosthesis for his everyday life, which includes work as a sales representative during the week and recreational basketball and tennis on the weekends. He jogs proficiently using the skip-hop style but has become interested in more sports activities and wants to run step-over-step and potentially compete in athletic contests. He is ready for a new prosthesis that can facilitate reaching his goals.

What type of knee unit best matches his needs? His activities show K4 level functioning and would qualify him for reimbursement of an MPK prosthesis by many insurance companies. Although an MPK prosthesis would be an excellent choice for his everyday activities, they are designed for low- to moderate-impact activities and could be overloaded by the sustained and high-impact nature of his intended sports. If he is going to proceed with only one prosthesis, one with a non-MPK hydraulic knee unit such as the Mauch Knee Plus may serve him best. Such a knee could be paired with a heavy-duty energy storing foot designed to absorb shock like the Re-Flex VSP.

Case Example 27.2 **A Risk to Fall?**

A 65-year-old woman underwent transfemoral amputation 4 years ago resulting from a thrombosis associated with peripheral vascular and cardiovascular disease. She was active prior to amputation. Her activity has increased since the amputation and she has returned to work as a school administrator using a weight-activated friction brake knee unit. She gardens and enjoys leisure walking in the community, although her strength and endurance limit her from walking as fast or as far as she would like. She has recently qualified for Medicare and wants a prosthesis that can help her reach her goals.

What type of knee unit best matches her needs? Her activities demonstrate K2 level prosthetic functioning with K3 level potential. Medicare and her employer-based insurance may not approve an MPK prosthesis because her functional activities do not demand a varied cadence or fast walking speed. Her age and general health status may also mitigate against her efforts to get reimbursed for the cost of an MPK prosthesis. However, community ambulating prosthesis users are at heightened fall risk.[77] Falls within her age group have annual incidence rates from 19% to 60% with 27% reporting injury at the rate of 14.1/1000 person-months.[105] Although current reimbursement practice often does not include an MPK for a K2 level patient/client, she would benefit from using an MPK prosthesis, particularly its stumble and fall protective features. Physical therapy can increase hip extension range of motion, strength, and gait speed[59]; use of an MPK prosthesis for a trial period has also allowed increases in walking speed of 14% to 25%.[106] Physical therapy and prosthetic intervention may help her advance to walking speeds >0.8 m/s[101] or distances >400 m[107] that may help her achieve community walking speeds and qualify for reimbursement of a K3 MPK prosthesis.

Case Example 27.3 **Hemipelvectomy: Cost and Effectiveness**

Case 3: A 44-year-old man had a hemipelvectomy 3 months ago due to chondrosarcoma. His incision has healed and he is ready for fitting. He has never used a prosthesis but was very active until 1 year ago when he underwent tumor resection and internal hemipelvectomy and suffered a bout of depression. After the resection, he limited activity to working in an office and curtailed most sporting activities other than occasional walks in the park. Since his amputation, he has returned to work as an accountant and is adept with crutches, which he uses for light sports activities such as soccer with his children. He uses a wheelchair for traversing long distances. He complains that it is difficult to rise from a chair or hold something in his hands while using crutches. He lives with his wife and teenage sons in a suburban two-story house. He is insured through his employer and his prosthetist is confident that an MPK prosthesis will be covered by insurance. His goals are to continue work and family life with greater ease.

What type of knee unit best matches his needs? As a previously active adult who is able to walk after hemipelvectomy, he is comparable to the K2 functional level. His status has been changing and his medical and prosthetic prognoses remain unclear. He may achieve K3 level functioning. An MPK prosthesis would allow him to descend stairs and slopes with safety on two legs and walk without crutches and thus free the upper limbs for normal functions at work and social functions. However, most MPK prostheses will not provide assistance for this man in rising from a chair or ascending stairs at the same pace as his peers. Difficulty rising from a chair, walking, and negotiating stairs are complicated by fit problems common to people with hemipelvectomies who fluctuate in body weight. He may benefit from a temporary prosthesis with a non-MPK to determine his level of prosthetic use before expending the cost of an MPK prosthesis.[108]

References

1. Murphy EF. Lower Extremity Components, In American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons. In: *Orthopaedic Appliances Atlas*. Ann Arbor, MI: J.W. Edwards; 1960:2.
2. McAleer J. Mobility redux: post World War II prosthetics and functional aids for veterans, 1945 to 2010. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2011;48: vii–xvi.
3. Filippi P. *US Patent 2,305,291*. December 15, 1942.
4. Henschke U, Mauch H. *US Patent 2,490, 806*, December 13, 1949.
5. Erback JR. Hydraulic prostheses for above-knee amputees. *J Am Phys Ther Assn*. 1963;43:105–110.
6. Endolite. *User manuals and technical information, and history available at*. http://www.endolite.com/products/knees/. Accessed 7 February 2018.
7. Aeyels B, Peeraer L, Vander Sloten J, Van der Perre G. Development of an above-knee prosthesis equipped with a microcomputer-controlled knee joint: first test results. *J Biomed Eng*. 1992; 14:199–202.
8. Bar A, Ishai G, Meretsky P, Koren Y. Adaptive microcomputer control of an artificial knee in level walking. *J Biomed Eng*. 1983;5:145–150.
9. Berry D. Microprocessor prosthetic knees. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am*. 2006;17:91–113.
10. Dietl H, Kaitan R, Pawlik R, Ferrara P. The C-Leg®: a new system for fitting of transfemoral amputees. *Orthopadie Technik*. 1998;49: 197–211.
11. Össur. User manuals and technical information available at: https://www.ossur.com/americas. Accessed February 7, 2018.
12. Innovations Freedom. LLC. *User manuals and technical information available at: Knees*. http://www.freedom-innovations.com. Accessed 7 February 2018.
13. Fillauer Europe (Centri AB and Nabtesco). User manuals and technical information available at: http://fillauer.eu/prosthetics-lower. Accessed February 7, 2018.
14. Devlin M, Sinclair LB, Colman D, et al. Patient preference and gait efficiency in a geriatric population with transfemoral amputation using a free-swinging versus a locked prosthetic knee joint. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2002;83:246–249.
15. Seymour R. *Prosthetics and Orthotics: Lower Limb and Spinal. Baltimore*. Maryland: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2002:144–159 213, 230-4.
16. Taghipour H, Moharamzad Y, Mafi AR, et al. Quality of life among veterans with war-related unilateral lower extremity amputation: a long-term survey in a prosthesis center in Iran. *J Orthop Trauma*. 2009;23:525–530.
17. Otto Bock Health Care. User manuals, technical information, and mobility grading system available at: https://www.ottobockus.com/prosthetics/. Accessed February 7, 2018.
18. Segal AD, Orendurff MS, Klute GK, et al. Kinematic and kinetic comparisons of transfemoral amputee gait using C-Leg® and Mauch SNS prosthetic knees. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2006;43:857–870.
19. Zamiska N. Bionic knee 'learns' how to walk. *Wall Street Journal* online, July 6, 2004. http://online.wsj.com/ad/article/philips/SB108907039283655627.html Accessed July 7, 2011.
20. Birnbaum I. The 'Maserati' of microprocessor prosthetics costs $120,000. Motherboard 2016, Sep 28. Available at https://motherboard.vice.com/en_us/article/jpgagx/luxury-prosthetics. Accessed 18.02.05.
21. Brodtkorb TH, Henriksson M, Johannesen-Munk K, Thidell F. Cost-effectiveness of C-leg compared with non-microprocessor-controlled knees: a modeling approach. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2008;89 (1):24–30.
22. Seelen HAM, Hemmen B, Schmeets AJ, et al. Costs and consequences of a prosthesis with an electronically stance and swing phase controlled knee. *Technol Dis*. 2003;21:25–34.
23. Graham LE, Datta D, Heller B, Howitt J. A comparative study of conventional and energy-storing prosthetic feet in high-functioning transfemoral amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88:801–806.
24. Hafner BJ, Willingham LL, Buell NC, et al. Evaluation of function, performance, and preference as transfemoral amputees transition from mechanical to microprocessor control of the prosthetic knee. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88:207–217.
25. Martin J, Pollock A, Hettinger J. Microprocessor lower limb prosthetics: review of current state of the art. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2010;22:183–193.
26. Stepien JM, Cavenett S, Taylor L, Crotty M. Activity levels among lower-limb amputees: self-report versus step activity monitor. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2007;88:896–900.
27. Hargrove LJSA, Lipschutz RD, Finuncane SB, Kuiken TA. Real-time myoelectric control of knee and ankle motions for transfemoral amputees. *J Am Med Assoc*. 2011;305:1542–1544.
28. Richards JD, Pramanik A, Sykesand L, Pomeroy VM. A comparison of knee kinematic characteristics of stroke patients and age-matched healthy volunteers. *Clin Rehabil*. 2003;17:565. https://doi.org/10.1191/0269215503cr651oa.
29. Kellis E, Liassau C. The effect of selective muscle fatigue on sagittal lower limb kinematics and muscle activity during level running. *J Orthop Sports Phys Ther*. 2009;39:210–220. https://doi.org/10.2519/jospt.2009.2859.
30. Creylman V, Knippels I, Janssen P, Biesbrouck E, et al. Assessment of transfemoral amputees using a passive microprocessor-controlled knee versus an active powered microprocessor-controlled knee for level walking. *Biomd Eng Online*. 2016;15(Suppl 3):142.
31. Hafner BJ, Askew RL. Physical performance and self-report outcomes associated with use of passive adaptive, and active prosthetic knees in persons with unilateral, transfemoral amputation: randomized crossover trial. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2015;52:677–700.
32. Simon AM, Ingraham KA, Fey NP, et al. Configuring a powered knee and ankle prosthesis for transfemoral amputees within five specific ambulation modes. *PLoS One*. 2014;9:e99387.

33. Kaufman KR, Frittoli S, Frigo CA. Gait asymmetry of transfemoral amputees using mechanical and microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2012;27:460465.
34. Uchytil J, Jandacka D, Zahradnik D, et al. Temporal-spatial parameters of gait in transfemoral amputees: comparison of bionic and mechanically passive knee joints. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38:199–203.
35. Wong CK, Ehrlich JE, Ersing JC, et al. Exercise programs to improve gait performance in people with lower limb amputation: a systematic review. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2016;40(1):8–17.
36. Psonak R, Lusardi MM, Jorge M, Nielsen CC. Transfemoral prostheses. In: *Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation*. 3rd ed St Louis, MO: Saunders Elsevier; 2013.
37. Olney SJ, Eng J, Levangie PK, Norkin CC. Gait. In: *Joint Structure and Function*. 5th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis; 2011.
38. Nolan L, Lees A. Functional demands on the intact limb during walking for active trans-femoral and trans-tibial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2000;24:117–125.
39. Sadeghi H, Allard P, Duhaime M. Muscle power compensatory mechanisms in below-knee amputee gait. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2001;80:25–32.
40. Kaufman KR, Levine JA, Brey RH, et al. Gait and balance of transfemoral amputees using passive mechanical and microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees. *Gait & Posture*. 2007;26:489–493.
41. Raya MA, Gailey RS, Fiebert IM, Roach KE. Impairment variables predicting activity limitation in individuals with lower limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2010;34:73–84.
42. Jaegers SMHJ, Arendzen JH, de Jongh HJ. Changes in hip muscles after above-knee amputation. *Clin Orthop Rel Res*. 1995;319:276–284.
43. Jandrić S. Isometric hip muscle strength in posttraumatic below-knee amputees. *Vojnosanit Pregl*. 2007;64:807–811.
44. Burger H, Valencic V, Marincek C, Kogovsek N. Properties of musculus gluteus maximus in above-knee amputees. *Clin Biomech*. 1996;11:35–38.
45. Mâaref K, Martinet N, Grumillier C, et al. Kinematics in the terminal swing phase of unilateral transfemoral amputees: microprocessor-controlled versus swing-phase control prosthetic knees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2010;91:919–925.
46. Peterson AO, Comins J, Alkjaer T. Assessment of gait symmetry in transfemoral amputees using C-Leg® compared with 3R60 prosthetic knees. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2010;22:106–112.
47. Nadollek H, Brauer S, Isles R. Outcomes after trans-tibial amputation: the relationship between quiet stance ability, strength of hip abductor muscles and gait. *Physiother Res Int*. 2002;7:203–214.
48. Sjodahl C, Jarnlo G-B, Soderberg B, Persson BM. Pelvic motion in trans-femoral amputees in the frontal and transverse plane before and after special gait re-education. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2003;27:227–237.
49. Goujon-Pillet H, Sapin E, Fodé P, Lavaste F. Three-dimensional motions of trunk and pelvis during transfemoral amputee gait. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2008;89:87–94.
50. Morgenroth DC, Orendurff MS, Shakir A, et al. The relationship between lumbar spine kinematics during gait and low-back pain in transfemoral amputees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2010; 89:635–643.
51. Friel K, Domholdt E, Smith DG. Physical and functional measures related to low back pain in individuals with lower-limb amputation: an exploratory pilot study. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2005;42:155–166.
52. Kulkarni J, Gaine WJ, Buckley JG, et al. Chronic low back pain in traumatic lower limb amputees. *Clin Rehabil*. 2005;19:81–86.
53. Corio F, Troiano R, Magel JR. The effects of spinal stabilization exercises on the spatial and temporal parameters of gait in individuals with lower limb loss. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2010;22:230–236.
54. World Health Organization. *Classifications: International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF)*. http://www.who.int/classifications/icf/en/. Accessed July 12, 2018.
55. Hoeksma HL, Dekker J, Ronday HK, et al. Comparison of manual therapy and exercise therapy in osteoarthritis of the hip: a randomized clinical trial. *Arthritis Rheum*. 2004;51:722–729.
56. Ingber RS. Iliopsoas myofascial dysfunction: a treatable cause of "failed" low back syndrome. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1989; 70:382–386.
57. Selkow NM, Grindstaff TL, Cross KM, et al. Short-term effect of muscle energy technique on pain in individuals with non-specific lumbopelvic pain: a pilot study. *J Man Manip Ther*. 2009;17:E14–E18.
58. Yerys S, Makofsky H, Byrd C, et al. Effect of mobilization of the anterior hip capsule on gluteus maximus strength. *J Man Manip Ther*. 2002;10:218–224.
59. Wong CK, Varca MJ, Stevenson CE, et al. The impact of a 4-session physical therapy program emphasizing manual therapy and exercise on the balance and prosthetic walking ability of people with lower limb amputation: a pilot study. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2016;28(3): 95–100.
60. Ries JD, Vaughan V, Lusardi MM, Jorge M, Nielsen CC. Early rehabilitation in lower-extremity dysvascular amputation. In: *Orthotics and Prosthetics in Rehabilitation*. 3rd ed. Saunders Elsevier: St Louis, MO; 2013.
61. Mercer VS, Gross MT, Sharma S, Weeks E. Comparison of gluteus medius muscle electromyographic activity during forward and lateral step-up exercises in older adults. *Phys Ther*. 2009;89:1205–1214.
62. Gailey RS. Ten exercises to maximize the performance of your prosthetic feet. *In Motion*. 2001;11:1–3.
63. Leavey VJ, Sandrey MA, Dahmer G. Comparative effects of 6-week balance, gluteus medius strength, and combined programs on dynamic postural control. *J Sport Rehabil*. 2010;19:268–287.
64. Williams RM, Turner AP, Orendurff MS, et al. Does having a computerized prosthetic knee influence cognitive performance during amputee walking? *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2006;87:989–994.
65. Baum BS, Schnall BL, Tis JE, Lipton JS. Correlation of residual limb length and gait parameters in amputees. *Injury*. 2008;39:728–733.
66. Bellmann M, Schmalz T, Blumentritt S. Comparative biomechanical analysis of current microprocessor controlled prosthetic knee joints. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2010;91:644–652.
67. Schmalz T, Blumentritt S, Jarasch R. A comparison of different prosthetic knee joints during step over step stair descent. *Orthop Teknik*. 2002;7:586–592.
68. Vrieling AH, van Keeken HG, Schoppen T, et al. Uphill and downhill walking in unilateral lower limb amputees. *Gait & Posture*. 2008;28:235–242.
69. Hafner BJ, Smith DG. Differences in function and safety between Medicare Functional Classification Level-2 and -3 transfemoral amputees and influence of prosthetic knee joint control. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2009;46:417–434.
70. Adler SS, Beckers D, Buck M. *PNF in Practice: An Illustrative Guide*. 2nd ed. Berlin, Germany: Springer; 200082.
71. Bellmann M, Schmalz T, Ludwigs E, Blumentritt S. Stair ascent with an innovative microprocessor-controlled exoprosthetic knee joint. *Biomed Tech (Berlin)*. 2012;57:435–444.
72. Bell EM, Pruziner AL, Wilken JM, Wolf EJ. Performance of conventional and X2® prosthetic knee during slope decent. *Clin Biomech (Bristol, Avon)*. 2016;33:26–31.
73. Lura DJ, Wernke MW, Carey SL, Kahle JT, et al. Crossover study of amputee stair ascent and descent biomechanics using Genium and C-Leg prostheses with comparison to non-amputee control. *Gait & Posture*. 2017;58:103–107.
74. Highsmith MJ, Kahle J, Carey SL, et al. Kinetic asymmetry in transfemoral amputees while performing sit to stand and stand to sit movements. *Gait & Posture*. 2011;34:86–91.
75. Pauley T, Devlin M, Heslin K. Fall sustained during inpatient rehabilitation after lower limb amputation: prevalence and predictors. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2006;85:521–532.
76. Gooday HMK, Hunter J. Preventing falls and stump injuries in lower limb amputees during inpatient rehabilitation: completion of the audit cycle. *Clin Rehabil*. 2004;18:379–390.
77. Miller WC, Speechley M. The prevalence and risk factors of falling and fear of falling among lower extremity amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2001;82:1031–1037.
78. Blumentritt S, Schmalz T, Jarasch R. The safety of C-Leg®: biomechanical tests. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2009;21:2–15.
79. Yang J, Jin D, Ji L, et al. The reaction strategy of lower extremity muscles when slips occur to individuals with trans-femoral amputation. *J Electromyograph Kinesiol*. 2007;17:228–240.
80. Kahle JT, Highsmith MJ, Hubbard SL. Comparison of nonmicroprocessor knee mechanism versus C-Leg® on prosthesis evaluation questionnaire, stumbles, falls, walking tests, stair descent, and knee preference. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2008;45:1–14.
81. Berry D, Olsen M, Larntz K. Perceived stability, function, and satisfaction among transfemoral amputees using microprocessor and nonmicroprocessor controlled prosthetic knees: a multicenter survey. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2009;21:32–42.

82. Seymour R, Engbretson B, Kott K, et al. Comparison between the C-Leg® microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knee and non-microprocessor control prosthetic knees: A preliminary study of energy expenditure, obstacle course performance, and quality of life survey. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2007;31:51–61.
83. Klute GK, Berge JS, Orendurff MS, et al. Prosthetic intervention effects on activity of lower-extremity amputees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2006;87:717–722.
84. Kark L, Simmons A. Patient satisfaction following lower-limb amputation: the role of gait deviation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2011;35:225–233.
85. Van der Linde H, Hofstad CJ, Geurts AC, et al. A systematic literature review of the effect of different prosthetic components on human functioning with a lower-limb prosthesis. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2004;41:555–570.
86. Fergason J, Keeling JJ, Bluman EM. Recent advances in lower extremity amputations and prosthetics for the combat injured patient. *Foot Ankle Clin*. 2010;15:151–174.
87. Orendurff MS, Segal AD, Klute GK, et al. Gait efficiency using the C-Leg®. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2006;43:239–246.
88. Perry J, Burnfield JM, Newsam CJ, Conley P. Energy expenditure and gait characteristics of a bilateral amputee walking with C-Leg® prostheses compared with stubby and conventional articulating prostheses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2004;85:1711–1717.
89. Chin T, Machida K, Sawamura S, et al. Comparison of different microprocessor controlled knee joints on the energy consumption during walking in trans-femoral amputees: intelligent knee prosthesis (IP) versus C-Leg®. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2006;30:73–80.
90. Highsmith MJ, Kahle JT, Bongiorni DR, et al. Safety, energy efficiency, and cost efficacy of the C-Leg for transfemoral amputees: a review of the literature. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2010;34:362–377.
91. Schmalz T, Blumentritt S, Jarasch R. Energy expenditure and biomechanical characteristics of lower limb amputee gait: the influence of prosthetic alignment and different prosthetic components. *Gait & Posture*. 2002;16:255–263.
92. Jepson F, Datta D, Harris I, et al. A comparative evaluation of the Adaptive knee and Catech knee joints: a preliminary study. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2008;32:84–92.
93. Buckley JG, Spence WD, Solomonidis SE. Energy cost of walking: comparison of "Intelligent prosthesis" with conventional mechanism. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 1997;78:330–333.
94. Chin T, Sawamura S, Shiba R, et al. Effect of an Intelligent Prosthesis (IP) on the walking ability of young transfemoral amputees: comparison of IP users with able-bodied people. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2003;82:447–451.
95. Taylor MB, Clark E, Offord EA, Baxter C. A comparison of energy expenditure by a high level trans-femoral amputee using the Intelligent Prosthesis and conventionally damped prosthetic limbs. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1996;20:116–121.
96. Datta D, Heller B, Howitt J. A comparative evaluation of oxygen consumption and gait pattern in amputees using Intelligent Prostheses and conventionally damped knee swing-phase control. *Clin Rehabil*. 2005;19:398–403.
97. Johansson JL, Sherrill DM, Riley PO, et al. A clinical comparison of variable-damping and mechanically passive prosthetic knee devices. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2005;84:563–575.
98. Kaufman KR, Levine JA, Brey RH, et al. Energy expenditure and activity of transfemoral amputees using mechanical and microprocessor controlled prosthetic knees. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2008;89:1380–1385.
99. Heller BW, Datta D, Howitt J. A pilot study comparing the cognitive demand of walking for transfemoral amputees using the Intelligent Prosthesis with that using conventionally damped knees. *Clin Rehabil*. 2000;14:518–522.
100. Datta D, Howitt J. Conventional versus microchip controlled pneumatic swing phase control for trans-femoral amputees: user's verdict. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 1998;22:129–135.
101. Wong CK, Gibbs W, Chen E. Use of the Houghton Scale to classify community and household walking ability in people with lower limb amputation: criterion-related validity. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil*. 2016;97(7):1130–1136.
102. Burnfield JM, Eberly VJ, Gronley JK, et al. Impact of stance phase microprocessor-controlled knee prosthesis on ramp negotiation and community waling function in K2 level transfemoral amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2012;36:95–104.
103. Eberly VJ, Mulroy SJ, Gronley JK, et al. Impact of a stance phase microprocessor-controlled knee prosthesis on level walking in lower functioning individuals with a transfemoral amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int*. 2014;38:447–455.
104. Wong CK, Rheinstein J, Stern MA. Benefits for adults with transfemoral amputations and peripheral artery disease using microprocessor compared with nonmicroprocessor prosthetic knee. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2015;94:804–810.
105. Wong CK, Chihuri S, Li G. The risk of fall-related injury in community-dwelling people with lower limb amputation: a prospective cohort study. *J Rehabil Med*. 2016;48:80–85.
106. Kannenerg A, Zacharias B, Pobsting E. Benefits of microprocessor-controlled prosthetic knees to limited community ambulators: systematic review. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2014;51:1469–1496.
107. Hahn A, Lang M, Stuckart C. Analysis of clinically important factors on the performance of advanced hydraulic, microprocessor-controlled exo-prosthetic knee joints based on 899 trial fittings. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95:e5386.
108. Yari P, Dijkstra PU, Geertzen JHB. Functional outcome of hip disarticulation and hemipelvectomy: a cross-sectional national descriptive study in the Netherlands. *Clin Rehabil*. 2008;22:1127–1133.

28 Athletic Options for Persons With Limb Loss☆

CAROL PIERCE DIONNE and JOSHUA THOMAS WILLIAMS

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

Upon completing the chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Discuss the relationship of physical exercise and sports to the overall health and wellness of people with limb loss.
2. Describe barriers that contribute to lack of participation in athletics for persons with physical challenges.
3. Identify organizations that support athletic participation for persons with physical challenges including limb loss.
4. Compare and contrast the different sports and recreational activities available for persons with limb loss.
5. Describe prosthetic components available to assist in active participation within a variety of sports.

"Games, sport, that is what we must have." Sir Ludwig Guttman,[1] Founder, Paralympic Games

Introduction

The importance of participation in sports, recreation, and/or physical activity for all people is well understood. Numerous authors have extolled the virtues of being physically active for both physical and mental health, as well as the prevention of "hypokinetic diseases," such as obesity, diabetes, hypertension, and cardiovascular disease. Benefits for individuals who regularly participate in sports or recreational activities include maintenance of normal muscle strength, flexibility, and joint function.[2,3] These benefits are essential in slowing the functional decline often associated with normal aging and/or the presence of a disabling condition such as limb loss. The importance of participation in sports, recreation, and physical activity is true for both able-bodied and those with physical challenges such as limb loss. In fact, health organizations' recommendations for physical activity are the same for both able-bodied people and those with physical challenges.[4,5] In addition, most epidemiologic studies have concluded that athletes with physical challenges are most likely at no higher risk for injury than their able-bodied counterparts during performance of sports-related activities.[6-8]

In addition to the physical benefits, participation in sports or recreational activities has a significant psychological benefit for both able-bodied people and individuals with physical challenges. Body image and quality-of-life outcome scores have improved in individuals with physical challenges who participate in physical activity and sports.[9-11] Steptoe and Butler have shown that participation in regular sport or vigorous recreational activity has favorable effects on the emotional state of adolescents.[12] Many psychological constructs, such as improved social acceptance, improved physical self-concept and self-esteem, increased self-efficacy and self-confidence, and a greater locus of control, build upon the physical performance accomplishments of the athlete with a physical challenge.[13] Therefore regular participation in sports and recreational activities can help one achieve goals relating to not only physical function such as reversing deconditioning secondary to impaired mobility, optimizing physical functioning, and promoting overall well-being,[14] but also goals related to psychological well-being such as confidence and coping behaviors.[15]

Even though the benefits of participation in sports and physical activity are well recognized, there remains a disconnect between knowledge and action. More than half of the adults with disabilities in the United States do not participate in any leisure-time physical activity compared with one third of adults without disability.[16] This reinforces the notion that, on average, people with a disability, including those with limb loss, are more inactive than the general population.[17] Therefore, to impact the general health of those with limb loss, it is important to understand the barriers that prevent this population from participating more in sports and recreation, as well as the motivators that can facilitate them in moving toward a more active lifestyle.

Barriers and Motivation

The most common barriers[18,19] to sports participation for individuals with a physical challenge are lack of financial

☆The authors extend appreciation to Mark Anderson, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

support, unsuitable local facilities, lack of access, and health concerns. Additional barriers may include transportation issues, a lack of sports offerings for those with physical challenges, and a lack of a peer group with which to participate.[19] Only 10% of those with a physical challenge report a lack of motivation as a barrier to participate. Among those with a physical challenge who do regularly participate, reasons given for participation include health benefits, a feeling of accomplishment after participation, and developing and maintaining lasting social contacts.[19] Recommendation from physicians or other health care professionals was another facilitator to participate. Although it clearly influences performance, it is unclear whether age, level of limb loss, and etiology of limb loss influence sports participation following amputation surgery.[20] Most studies that investigated physical activity, sports, and recreation among those with limb loss have a study population that is younger than 65 years of age and have experienced limb loss due to nonvascular circumstances.[20] However, the general population of people with limb loss includes a large number of individuals who are older than 65 years old and have experienced limb loss due to a vascular condition.[20] Regardless, it does appear that a history of sports participation prior to amputation surgery increases the likelihood of sports participation following limb loss. Therefore, older age, limb loss due to vascular complications, and a previously sedentary lifestyle may all also serve as barriers in participating in sports, recreation, and/or physical activity following limb loss.

As previously stated, a patient's physician or other health care provider may have a large influence on decisions to participate in sports, recreation, and physical activity. Therefore the remainder of this chapter will describe various athletic activities and the opportunities for active engagement in sports and recreation available to persons with limb loss. This will assist the reader in developing resources for their patients that help to promote health and wellness within this population.

Organizational Support for Sports or Recreation Participation

Sports for athletes with physical challenges are governed by various disabled sports organizations and national governing bodies that are disability specific. In the United States, several organizations exist to support and develop athletes with limb loss.

DISABLED SPORTS, USA[21]

Disabled Sports, USA is a national organization created to "improve the lives of wounded warriors, youth, and adults with disabilities by providing sports and recreation opportunities."[22] Their motto is, "If I can do this, I can do anything!" and its mission is "to provide national leadership and opportunities for individuals with disabilities to develop independence, confidence, and fitness through participation in community sports, recreation, and educational programs."[22] Disabled Sports, USA is composed of a nationwide network of more than 120 community-based chapters that offer a variety of sports/recreational programs through a grassroots approach that allows local chapters to identify specific needs within each community.[22] Disabled Sports, USA community partners offer more than 50 different sports, including skiing, snowboarding, biathlon, kayaking, water skiing, sailing, scuba, surfing, rafting, outrigger canoeing, fishing, hiking, golf, athletics, archery, cycling, running/wheeling, rock climbing, equestrian, and others.[22]

AMPUTEE COALITION[23]

The Amputee Coalition is a national organization created in 1986 to "work to provide people with limb loss and limb difference, their families and caregivers the resources they need to recover, readjust, and live life fully with limb loss/difference."[24] The Amputee coalition contains a network of more than 350 support groups and coordinates the National Limb Loss Resource Center (NLLRC).[24] The NLLRC supports programs and publications "designed to help people return to an active lifestyle and function as a productive member of society."[24]

CHALLENGED ATHLETE FOUNDATION[25]

The Challenged Athlete Foundation's mission is "to provide opportunities and support to people with physical challenges, so they can pursue active lifestyles through physical fitness and competitive athletics."[26] Their vision includes reaching out "to the physically challenged community by providing inspiration, awareness, and mentoring."[26] The organization provides a variety of grants, camps and clinics, community outreach, and educational programs to work toward their overall mission.[25]

US AND INTERNATIONAL PARALYMPIC COMMITTEES[27,28]

The US Paralympic Committee sanctions and conducts competitions and training camps to prepare athletes to represent the US at the Summer and Winter Paralympic Games. The Paralympic Games are the major international multisport event for athletes with physical challenges and are second to only the Olympic Games in number of athletes participating. These Paralympic Games are organized and conducted under the supervision of the International Paralympic Committee (IPC) and other international sports federations. For athletes with limb loss, there are opportunities to compete in a variety of different Summer and Winter Paralympic sports.

The US Paralympics Committee also offers an Emerging Sport Program, which is designed to identify, recruit, track, support, and retain Paralympic-eligible athletes with physical challenges seeking to become internationally competitive. The success of this program depends on the collaboration between community and military programs, partner organizations, military and veteran facilities, and national governing bodies.

Athlete recruitment and identification begin at the local level. Potential athletes are identified in a variety of ways, including military sport camps, site coordinators for specific sports or events, community programs, coaches, technical officials, or current athletes. Once an athlete is identified as having high-performance potential, the Emerging Sports

manager facilitates appropriate communication between athlete(s) and local program(s), as well as with the appropriate Paralympic sport coaches and high-performance directors. Assistance is provided to these athletes by way of connections to local training resources, participation in select emerging and/or national US Paralympics Team camps and competitions, as well as information regarding able-bodied competitions, events, and other general sport program opportunities for developing and emerging athletes.

Sport Classification[29]

The IPC and other organizations involved with sport for athletes with physical challenges use a functional classification system that is designed to create equal and fair competition within each sport. Athletes with a physical challenge undergo an evaluation by a classification panel made of two to three trained evaluators. This evaluation results in the athlete being placed into a classification category for competition that is based on their ability to perform within the sport. Classifications are specific to each sport. Athletes with the same classification will then compete against others within their same classification category, but will not compete against athletes with physical challenges in a different classification. This is similar to age or weight categories within able-bodied sports.

Summer Paralympic Sports

Summer Paralympic sports available to those with limb loss include archery, badminton, athletics (track and field), boccia, cycling, canoeing, equestrian, fencing, triathlon, powerlifting, rowing, wheelchair rugby, sailing, shooting, swimming, table tennis, tennis, sitting volleyball, taekwondo, and wheelchair basketball. Each sport has its own unique set of requirements, which may necessitate a modification of the traditional rules of the sport to allow the athlete with physical challenge to compete.

ARCHERY[30]

Archery has been a medal sport since the first Paralympic Games in Rome in 1960. Athletes with physical disabilities demonstrate their shooting precision and accuracy from either a standing or seated (wheelchair) position, in men's and women's categories. Paralympic competition format is identical to that of the Olympic Games. Paralympic archers shoot 72 arrows from a distance of 70 m at a target of 122 cm using a recurve bow (Fig. 28.1A) or from a distance of 50 m at a target of 80 cm using a compound bow (Fig. 28.1B). For competitions other than the Paralympics, athletes shoot at each of four distances. Thirty-six arrows are shot at each distance. The two longest distances use a 122-cm target; the two shorter distances use an 80-cm target (approximately 36 inches). Distances are 90, 70, 50, and 30 m for men and 70, 60, 50, and 30 m for women. Depending upon the athletes' classification, their level and number of amputations, and their functional ability, the athlete may use either a recurve bow or a compound bow. Archery competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- or lower-extremity amputation/limb loss. Most athletes with limb loss will be classified into the "open" division. This classification includes athletes in wheelchairs who have relatively normal arm function and athletes who compete while standing but have impairments that affect their balance, arms, and/or trunk.[29] Specialized devices are also available to assist athletes with upper-extremity prostheses in drawing back the bow and releasing the string.

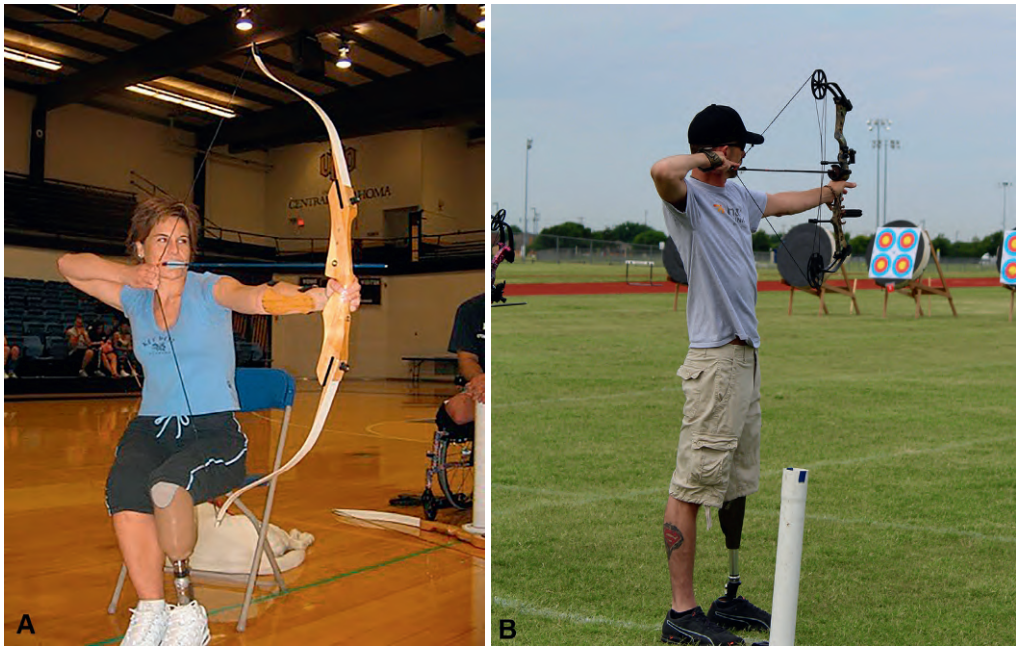


Fig. 28.1 (A) Archery recurve bow. (B) Archery compound bow. (A, Courtesy Disabled Sports, USA. B, Photos taken and given with permission from O. Raiber and J. Williams OUHSC.)

BADMINTON[30]

Disabled badminton is played by people with many different disabilities, including those with both upper- and lower-extremity limb loss. Participants may compete either standing or in a wheelchair. The sport is scheduled to make its Paralympic debut at the 2020 games in Tokyo. Badminton provides players of different disabilities and backgrounds an opportunity to participate in a common sport. Although more common in Europe, most people in the United States become involved in badminton through word of mouth and people introducing others to the sport. It is a growing sport with an increasing number of participants taking up the game either socially, competitively, or both. Both men and women in all age groups participate in badminton. For badminton, there are two classification levels for athletes who compete in wheelchairs (WH1 and WH2) and three classification levels for athletes competing while standing (SL3, SL4, and SU5).[29]

ATHLETICS (TRACK AND FIELD)[30]

Athletic events are open to athletes in all disability classes and have been a part of the Paralympic program since the first Paralympic Games in Rome, Italy, in 1960. Events include track (running distances from 100 m to 10,000 m and 4 × 100-m and 4 × 400-m relays), throwing (shot put, discus, and javelin), jumping (high jump, long jump, and triple jump), pentathlon (athlete competes in 5 events: long jump, shot put, 100-m run, discus, and 400-m run), and the marathon. The rules of Paralympic track and field are almost identical to those of its nondisabled counterpart. Paralympic track and field competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Prosthetic devices may be used, or the athlete with limb loss may compete in the wheelchair events. Prosthetic devices used for track and field have been specifically developed to withstand the demands of sports competition (Fig. 28.2). A large variety of classifications exist for track and field. Track events and field events are classified separately. For athletes with limb loss competing with a prosthesis, there are seven different classifications (T45–T47 and T61–T64).[29] For athletes with limb loss competing in a wheelchair, four different classifications exist (T51–T54).[29] Likewise, athletes can compete in standing field events under the F42 to F46 or F61 to F64 classifications or in wheelchairs under the F51 to F57 classifications.[29]

CANOEING[30]

Canoeing made its Paralympic debut in the summer of 2016 in Rio de Janeiro. The sport is identical to the competition in which able-bodied athletes compete. Men and women may compete in kayaks using a double-bladed paddle over a 200-m course. Additional competition and recreational events, including both kayaks and outrigger canoes such as va'as boats, are available at the international level, but are currently not a part of the Paralympic competition. Athletes competing in canoeing compete in one of three different classifications (KL1, KL2, or KL3).[29]

Fig. 28.2 Track and field event. (Photos taken and given with permission from O. Raiber and J. Williams OUHSC.)

CYCLING[30]

Cycling was first introduced as a Paralympic sport in 1984 in Mandeville, England, and involved only those athletes with cerebral palsy. However, it was not until 1992 that athletes with limb loss competed at the Paralympic Games in cycling. At the 2004 Paralympic Games in Athens, handcycling (for wheelchair users) made its debut as a medal event.

Athletes compete in both track (velodrome) and road events. Track events generally consist of sprints as short as 200 m to time trials and pursuits up to 4 km. Relay races consisting of three-person teams are also contested on the track. Competition on the roads consists of time trials and road races. In time trials, athletes start individually in staggered intervals, racing mostly against themselves and the clock. Road races consist of mass starts. Distances vary based on the host country's discretion, ranging from 5 to 65 km in length. Paralympic cycling competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple amputation/limb loss. Most athletes with limb loss will compete in classifications H1 to H5 if handcycling or classes C1 to C5 if bicycling.[29]

EQUESTRIAN[30]

Equestrian made its debut appearance at the Paralympic Games in 1996, with riders from 16 countries competing. By the Paralympic Games in 2008 in Beijing, that number had grown to 73 riders from 28 countries. Riders compete in two dressage events: a championship test of set movements and a freestyle test to music. There is also a team test for three or four riders. Competitors are judged on their display

of horsemanship skills demonstrated through their use of commands for walk, trot, and canter. Paralympic equestrian competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss who are classified into one of five groups (Ia–IV).[29]

FENCING[30]

Fencing has been part of the Paralympic Games since 1960. Athletes compete in wheelchairs that are fixed to the floor. They rely on ducking, half-turns, and leaning to dodge their competitors' touches. However, fencers can never rise up from the seat of the wheelchair. The first fencer to score five touches is declared the winner. Athletes play the best out of three rounds and compete in single and team formats. Weapon categories for men include foil, epee, and sabre. Women compete in foil and epee. Paralympic fencing competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Most athletes with limb loss will fall into classification category A for fencing.[29]

TRIATHLON[30]

Triathlon is an emerging sport that is quickly gaining popularity and was first included in the Summer Paralympic Games at the 2016 games in Rio de Janeiro. The sport is similar to the able-bodied version with athletes competing in the "sprint" distances of a 750-m swim, a 20-km cycling event, and a 5-km running event. The sport is governed by the International Triathlon Union, and national championships are held in more than 27 different countries. Paralympic triathlon is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. There is a single classification category for athletes competing in wheelchairs (PT1) and three different categories for ambulatory athletes (PT2–PT4).[29]

POWERLIFTING[30]

Powerlifting is one of the fastest growing Paralympic sports. Paralympic athletes have been competing in powerlifting since 1964; however, it was initially offered only to lifters with spinal cord injuries. Currently, athletes from many different disabled sports groups participate in the sport, assimilating rules similar to those of nondisabled lifters. Athletes compete only in the bench press (Fig. 28.3), and they draw lots to determine order of weigh-in and lifts. After the athletes are categorized within the 10 different weight classes (male and female), they each lift three times (competing in their respective weight class). The heaviest "good lift" (within the weight class) is the lift used for final placing in the competition. Paralympic powerlifting competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Based on disability, there is only one classification category for powerlifting. There is currently a move to include the single-arm press in powerlifting competitions for those individuals with upper-extremity amputation, with the hope of making this a Paralympic sport.

Fig. 28.3 Powerlifting. (Photos taken and given with permission from University of Central Oklahoma Endeavor Games.)

ROWING[30]

Rowing is a relatively new Paralympic sport, making its first appearance in Beijing in 2008. The sport was selected for Paralympic inclusion in 2005, just 3 years after adaptive rowing made its debut on the world championship level in 2002. The rowing events include the men's and women's single sculls, the trunk-arms double sculls, and the legs-trunk-arms mixed four with coxswain. Paralympic rowing competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss, and most athletes with limb loss will classify as a TA or LTA-PD classification level.[29]

RUGBY[30]

Another sport gaining a lot of popularity recently is wheelchair rugby. Originally called "murderball," it was developed in the 1970s and originally included only athletes with quadriplegia. However, the sport has currently opened up to athletes with a variety of different disabilities. Wheelchair rugby was a demonstration sport at the 1996 Paralympic Games in Atlanta and was subsequently included as a medal sport in the 2000 Sydney Games. The International Wheelchair Rugby Federation (IWRF) is the governing body of the sport and has developed rules that combine elements of able-bodied rugby, handball, and basketball. The sport is played on a regulation basketball court, where two teams of four athletes compete. Like wheelchair basketball, athletes are grouped by demonstrated playing ability, rather than strictly by medical classification. Wheelchair rugby is open to both males and females with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Athletes are classified into one of four sport classes (0.5, 1.5, 2.5, or 3.5), and the total number for sports class "points" on the court at any one time may not exceed eight.[29]

SAILING[30]

Sailing first became a medal sport for the 2000 Paralympic Games in Sydney, Australia. Three boat types raced at the 2008 Paralympic Games in Beijing: the 2.4mR, a single-person keelboat; the SKUD-18, a two-person keelboat; and the Sonar, a three-person keelboat, along with the high performance SKUD-18 m, which must include one female and one person deemed a Functional Classification System "1," or severely disabled, such as an athlete with quadriplegia. Sailors are seated on the centerline for Paralympic events,

but the boat can be sailed with or without either of the seats and configured to suit different sailors' needs. Because of its design and control, the 2.4mR was selected for single-person races. The boat's ease of use allows for a level playing field, making tactical knowledge the dominant factor in competition. The Sonar uses a versatile crew-friendly design that is accommodating to athletes with physical disabilities. It is used by sailors of all experience and ability levels, from the novice to international competitors. Paralympic sailing competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Seven different classification levels exist for sailing.[29]

SHOOTING[30]

Shooting, divided into rifle and pistol events, air and .22 caliber, has been a Paralympic sport since 1976. The rules governing Paralympic competition are those used by the International Shooting Committee for the Disabled. These rules take into account the differences that exist between disabilities, allowing ambulatory and wheelchair athletes to compete shoulder to shoulder. Shooting matches athletes of the same gender, with similar disabilities, against each other, both individually and in teams. Paralympic shooting competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss who may be classified into one of six different classification categories based on both type of disability and the shooting event.[29]

SWIMMING[30]

Swimming for men and women has been a part of the Paralympic program since the first Paralympic Games in 1960 in Rome, Italy. Races are highly competitive and among the largest and most popular events in the Paralympic Games. Paralympic swimming competitions occur in 50-m pools and, while competing, no prostheses or assistive devices may be worn. Athletes compete in the following events: 50-, 100-, and 400-m freestyle; 100-m backstroke; 100-m breaststroke; 100-m butterfly; 200-m individual medley; 4 × 100-m freestyle relay; and 4 × 100-m medley relay. Paralympic swimming competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Different classification categories exist for breaststroke compared with the other three events. There are 10 different classification levels for the majority of the events, with 9 different classification levels for breaststroke. Lower classification number (i.e., 1 vs. 7) indicates a more severe limitation as it relates to swimming.[29]

TABLE TENNIS[30]

Table tennis has been a part of the Paralympic program since the inaugural Paralympic Games in 1960. Rules governing Paralympic table tennis are the same as those used by the International Table Tennis Federation, although they are slightly modified for players using wheelchairs. Athletes must use the same quick technique and finesse in the games of competitors from various disability groups, including men's and women's competitions, as well as singles, doubles, and team contests. All matches are played best-of-five games to 11 points. Paralympic table tennis competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. There are five classification levels for those using wheelchairs to compete and five different classifications for those who stand to compete.[29]

TAEKWONDO[30]

Taekwondo will make its Summer Paralympic Games debut at the 2020 games in Tokyo. Taekwondo includes both kyorugi (sparring) and/or poomsae (forms), but only kyorugi will be included in the Tokyo 2020 Games. Kyorugi consists of three 2-minute rounds with a 1-minute rest period between each round. Athletes score points similar to the able-bodied version, and the athlete with the most points at the end of three rounds is the winner.[31] Taekwondo is open to both males and females with upper-extremity single or multiple limb loss and full use of both lower extremities. Although four different classification categories exist (K41–K44),[29] only a combined K43 to K44 category will compete in the Tokyo Games.[31] In addition, athletes compete in one of three different weight classes.

WHEELCHAIR TENNIS[30]

Wheelchair tennis first appeared at the Paralympic Games in Barcelona in 1992 and is played on a standard tennis court and follows many of the same rules as tennis. However, in wheelchair tennis, a player is allowed to let the ball bounce twice, if necessary, before hitting a return shot and the doubles court lines are used for both singles and doubles. In addition, the athlete's wheelchair is considered to be a part of the body, so rules applying to the player's body apply to the chair as well. Paralympic wheelchair tennis competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Most athletes with limb loss will compete in the open classification category.[29]

SITTING VOLLEYBALL[30]

Instituted in 1976 as a standing Paralympic sport, Paralympic volleyball has become exclusively a sitting sport. Paralympic volleyball follows the same rules as its able-bodied counterpart, with a few modifications to accommodate the various disabilities. In sitting volleyball, the net is approximately 3½ feet high and the court is 10 × 6 m with a 2-m attack line. Players are allowed to block serves, but one buttock "cheek" must be in contact with the floor whenever they make contact with the ball. Paralympic volleyball competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Athletes will compete in gender-specific teams with six athletes being on the court at any one time. Athletes are classified as "minimally disabled" (MD) or "disabled" (D), and at least five of the six athletes on the court at any one time must have a D classification.[29]

WHEELCHAIR BASKETBALL[30]

Basketball has been a part of the Paralympic Games since 1960 and originally played only by men with spinal cord

injuries. Currently, both men's and women's teams throughout the world, with a variety of disabilities, compete in the sport. Many of the same rules from its able-bodied counterpart apply in the wheelchair game. Although plays and tactics are similar, special rules, such as those to accommodate dribbling from a wheelchair, are also in place. The sport is governed by the International Wheelchair Basketball Federation. The International Wheelchair Basketball Federation governs all aspects of the game, including court size and basket height, which remain the same as in able-bodied basketball. Athletes in this event are grouped by demonstrated playing ability, rather than strictly by medical classification. Athletes are classified into one of five categories (1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, or 4.5), and a team of five players is allowed to have a total of only 14 classification points on the court at any one time.[29] Paralympic basketball competition is open to male and female athletes with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss.

Winter Paralympic Sports

Just like the Summer Paralympic Games, the Winter Paralympic games are held every 4 years following the conclusion of the Winter Olympic Games in the host city of the Olympics. Paralympic athletes with limb loss compete in six winter sports: alpine skiing; biathlon; cross-country skiing; curling; snowboarding, and sled (sledge) hockey.

ALPINE SKIING[30]

Paralympic alpine skiing competition is open to male and female athletes with amputation. There are four individual events in alpine skiing: downhill, which started as a demonstration event at the 1980 Paralympic Games in Norway; slalom; giant slalom, which was introduced as a demonstration event in 1984; and super-G. Mono-skiing was introduced in both alpine and Nordic events in 1988 at the Games in Innsbruck, Austria. Skiing equipment varies, depending on the athlete's level and number of amputations. Athletes with double-leg limb loss above the knee (transfemoral) typically use two skis with two outriggers but may also choose to sit-ski in a mono-ski (Fig. 28.4A). Athletes with single transfemoral amputation often use one ski with two outriggers (see Fig. 28.4B). Athletes with double-leg below-knee (transtibial) amputation and those with single-leg transtibial amputation may use two skis with two ski poles. Athletes with double-upper-extremity amputations, regardless of level, ski with two skis but no ski poles, whereas single-upper-extremity amputee athletes use two skis and one ski pole. If athletes have one upper-extremity and one lower-extremity amputation, they may use ski equipment that facilitates the athletes' best function. Seven different classification categories exist for standing skiers (LW1, LW2, LW3, LW4, LW5/7, LW6/8, and LW9), and three different categories exist for sit-skiers (LW10, LW11, and LW12).[29]

NORDIC SKIING[30]

Paralympic Nordic skiing is a Winter Paralympic sport consisting of two events: biathlon and cross-country skiing. Biathlon combines elements of cross-country skiing and target shooting. Athletes ski three 2.5-km loops (7.5 km total), stopping after the first two loops to shoot at five targets (10 targets total). One minute is added to the athlete's finishing time for each miss. Biathlon has been a part of the Paralympic Winter Games since 1992. Cross-country skiing started with the Paralympic Games in Sweden in 1976. Cross-country races range from 2.5 to 20 km depending on disability and gender. Paralympic Nordic skiing competition is open to male and female athletes with limb loss. Classification categories exist for those with lower-extremity impairments (LW2, LW3, and LW4), those with

Fig. 28.4 (A and B) **Alpine skiing.** (Courtesy Disabled Sports, USA.)

upper-extremity impairments (LW5/7, LW6, and LW8), those with both upper- and lower-extremity impairments (LW9), and sit-skiers (LW10–LW12).[29]

CURLING[30]

Paralympic curling is a wheelchair sport that was introduced at the 2006 Paralympic Winter Games. As in able-bodied curling, teams are composed of two competitors who throw "stones" by hand or by the use of a stick towards a target at the opposite end of the ice. However, there is no sweeping and only competitors in wheelchairs are allowed to compete. The object of the game is to get a team's stones as close to the center of the target (the "house") as possible. Six ends are played, with a possible extra end if the teams are tied after six. Paralympic wheelchair curling competition is open to male and female athletes with limb loss.

SLED (SLEDGE) HOCKEY[30]

Sled hockey is a variation of ice hockey in which the athletes compete on the ice by means of a sled. Just as in ice hockey, sled hockey is played with six players (including a goalie) at a time. Players propel themselves on their sled by use of spikes on the ends of two three-foot-long sticks, enabling players to push themselves and shoot and pass the puck. Rinks and goals are regulation Olympic size, and games consist of three 15-minute stop-time periods. Sledge hockey became a medal sport in the 1994 Paralympic Games. Paralympic sled hockey competition is open to male athletes with lower-extremity limb loss, and there is only one classification category in sled hockey.[29]

SNOWBOARDING[30]

Snowboarding debuted at the Winter Paralympic Games in 2014 in Sochi. Athletes with disability may compete in one of four different snowboarding disciplines: snowboard cross head-to-head, banked slalom, snowboard cross time trial, and/or giant slalom. Only snowboard cross time trial was included in the 2014 Paralympic Winter Games; however, medals were awarded in both time trial and banked slalom at the 2018 Pyeong Chang Games. Athletes may use specialized equipment to adapt the snowboard and/or use orthopedic aids to allow them to compete (Fig. 28.5). Snowboard is open to males and females with upper- and/or lower-extremity single or multiple limb loss. Classification categories exist for athletes with unilateral lower-extremity impairment (SB-LL1), bilateral lower-extremity impairment (SB-LL2), and upper-extremity impairment (SB-UL).[29]

Fig. 28.5 Snowboarding. (Courtesy Disabled Sports, USA.)

Non-Paralympic Sports and Recreational Activities for Individuals With Limb Loss

Individuals with limb loss may use Paralympic sports activities for noncompetitive purposes such as physical activity and/or recreation such as swimming, skiing/snowboarding, equestrian, archery/shooting, water sports, and/or weight lifting. Although these Paralympic sports are popular among individuals with limb loss, there are many other sports and recreational activities available to this population. Many of these sports require little or no adaptation for participation by those with limb loss, allowing participation and/or competition between able-bodied and individuals and those with limb loss.

FISHING[32]

Fishing is a sport that can be enjoyed by anyone. There are many different types of specialized equipment available to the disabled angler such as rods, reels, line, rod holders, and tackle, as well as easy cast and electric fishing reels for individuals who may have difficulties casting and reeling in a fish. There are also harness rod holders that can mount on a wheelchair or the side of a boat and allow an individual with limited use of their arm(s) to participate in recreational fishing. Pontoon boats can provide easy accessibility for those in wheelchairs. The Paralyzed Veterans of America sponsors a variety of fishing tournaments for people with disabilities, and there are disability fishing groups and clubs that cater for children with disabilities who enjoy fishing. They offer several bass fishing tournaments where those interested in fishing can learn new skills or improve old ones. The Paralyzed Veterans of America Bass Tour offers Team/Open Competition, pairing disabled anglers with able-bodied boat partners. Those who prefer not to fish from a boat can participate in the Bank Competition. Both novice and experienced anglers can compete for significant cash and other prizes. Fishing Has No Boundaries, Inc. is another nonprofit organization for all persons with disabilities that has grown into a national organization with 23 chapters in 11 states. Fishing Has No Boundaries enables thousands of people with disabilities to participate fully in the recreational activity of fishing.

HUNTING[32]

As with fishing, hunting is a recreational activity that can be enjoyed by all, and any disability can be offset by adaptive hunting equipment and adaptive hunting techniques. There are many different types of adaptive equipment that can be used by either gun or bow hunters with either upper- or lower-extremity limb loss. This includes hunting blinds that are more wheelchair friendly, protective clothing to make cold weather hunting more enjoyable, adaptive tree stands, tripod-mounted crossbow or gun rests, and wheelchair-based gun rests. Federal, state, and local governments are providing easier access to thousands of acres of trails, parks, and wilderness areas. There are organizations and clubs with programs for persons with disabilities who want to participate in hunting activities.

GOLF[33]

Just about anyone, regardless of ability level, can participate in golf. This makes it one of the best sports for people with disabilities, especially those with limb loss (Fig. 28.6). Anyone with limb loss can successfully play golf, including those with lower-extremity prostheses, where a torsion absorber and rotator allow them to pivot to finish their swing. For those with upper-extremity amputation, they may play with just one arm, or, if they play with one arm and a prosthesis, there are a number of pieces of adaptive hardware that allow them to attach their prosthetic arm to their club, allowing them to swing with both hands. If they are unable to walk a full 18-hole course, they may play golf from a seated position on a single-rider golf cart. Numerous other devices exist to help golfers with amputation tee-up and retrieve their ball, better grip the club, and aid their game.

Fig. 28.6 Golfing. (Courtesy Disabled Sports, USA.)

TRAIL ORIENTEERING[34] AND CLIMBING[35]

Conventional orienteering combines fast running with precise navigation, typically through forests or over moorland. Trail orienteering is a discipline of the sport designed so that people with disabilities could have meaningful orienteering competitions. It completely eliminates the element of speed over the ground but makes the map-interpretation element more challenging. Able-bodied people can compete on equal terms with the physically challenged. Depending on the level of difficulty, up to five control markers are placed at each site, and only one will correspond exactly with the control description and control circle position. Sites are chosen so that they can be seen from a wheelchair-navigable path or area, but they may be quite a distance into the forest or over unnavigable terrain. The only special equipment needed is a compass. An escort can give the competitor physical help—pushing a chair, holding and orienting the map and compass, and even marking the control card with the decision according to the competitor's instructions. However, it is an important rule that escorts must not help in the decision-making process; they can give as much physical help as may be necessary but must not offer advice or opinions to the competitor. For serious competitions, escorts are "swapped" so they do not know the competitor they are helping.

Along with trail orienteering, other ambulatory sports/activities may be appropriate for individuals with amputation. For those who enjoy the outdoors, hiking, mountain climbing, rock climbing, and ropes courses are popular (Fig. 28.7). These activities are easily done with able-bodied friends and can be done safely as long as normal outdoor precautions are observed. For those activities that require additional training or practice, there are many qualified instructors available at most recreational areas for lessons or instructions to increase enjoyment and reduce the likelihood of injury while participating in these sports.

SKY DIVING[36]

Skydiving is a sport that can involve skydivers who have one or more amputated limbs. Because of their prosthetic devices, amputee skydivers often have to compensate for the change in weight with the positioning of their body for both themselves and other divers in a formation. Many of these individuals begin skydiving in tandem, making jumps while attached to a certified jump instructor. However, as individuals become more experienced, many progress to solo (accelerated free fall) jumps. Modifications to prosthetic devices, particularly lower-extremity prostheses, may need to be made because of the forces incurred during landing after the jump.

Additional Water Sports and Activities

Besides swimming, there are numerous other water sports in which individuals with amputation may participate. These include surfing, windsurfing, water skiing, kayaking, and scuba diving (Fig. 28.8). Surfing for individuals with amputation can be a fun and exciting sport.[37] Individuals

Fig. 28.7 Rock climbing. (Courtesy Disabled Sports, USA.)

Fig. 28.8 Scuba diving. (Courtesy Disabled Sports, USA.)

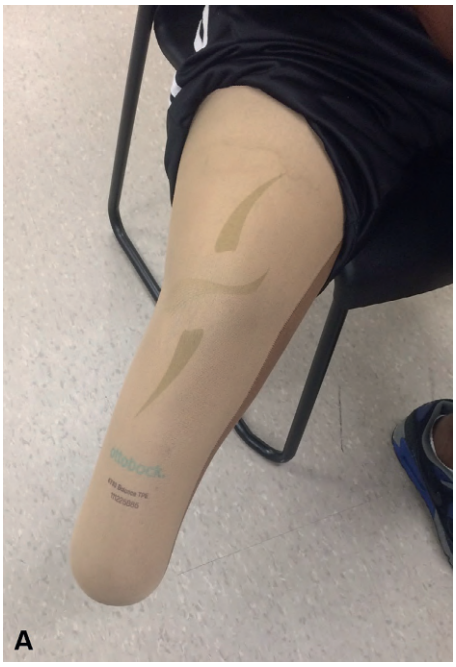


Fig. 28.9 (A) Prosthetic liner. (B) Prosthetic socket. (A, Photos taken and given with permission from CP Dionne OUHSC. B, Photos taken and given with permission from CP Dionne OUHSC.)

may begin surfing while lying on the board, progressing to seated, quadruped, kneeling, and finally standing. Once standing, individuals may choose to surf with or without their prosthetic device (Fig. 28.9).

Until recently, windsurfing[38] has been an inaccessible sport to people with limb loss. However, equipment modifications have made windsurfing accessible to people with all types of disabilities. One may begin to windsurf in a fixed or swivel seat attached to the windsurfing board. Outriggers or flat-bottom pontoons can be attached to the sides of the windsurfing board to provide additional stability. A standing rail can be used on the board for someone to stand with an instructor for support. One or two sails can be used so that instructors can be on the windsurfing board to help assist. Such adaptations open the sport up to men and women with all types of disabilities, including amputation.

Water skiing[39] has been adapted so that physically disabled individuals can participate and compete. Competition is held in three events (slalom, tricks, and jumping) for individuals with upper- and lower-extremity limb loss regardless

of amputation level. The skiers compete with the same water ski equipment used by able-bodied skiers; however, the use of a prosthetic device is optional.

Kayaking may be done solo or in tandem. To avoid entrapment, individuals with lower-extremity amputations should not wear a regular prosthesis in the kayak. A water-sports prosthesis that can be strapped to the outside of the boat for easy access is recommended. For those with upper-extremity amputations, one-handed paddles may be used, or individuals may practice paddling using heavy tape or rubber rings to secure their grip on the paddle, because conventional terminal devices are not designed to hold paddles. Rowing prosthetics also are available for amputees using other types of water crafts. For safety, wetsuits, helmets, and flotation devices are recommended for all participants.

Scuba diving can be an excellent recreational activity for individuals with amputation. Because of the buoyancy provided by the water, mobility issues are significantly reduced, and scuba diving can be taught to swimmers with both upper- and lower-extremity limb loss with virtually no modifications. For some, scuba diving represents total freedom because it affords one the opportunity to move about without an assistive device in a barrier-free, gravity-free environment. Many individuals choose to scuba dive without their prostheses, but water-sport prostheses are available if desired. As with able-bodied divers, the same basic safety and equipment concerns apply to everyone.

Prosthetic Components for Athletes With Limb Loss

Historically, individuals with limb loss were considered disabled. Without exception, they were marginalized in activities of everyday life, most notably so, in participation in recreational and competitive sports. Exoskeletal prosthetics, essentially the only choice of artificial limb design available at the time, were heavy and difficult to manage while attempting to throw a ball or walk at a varied pace required in any skilled sport. With the advent of inclusion of people with all levels of ability, people with limb loss are currently part of the societal mainstream. Most people with limb loss receive rehabilitation to improve overall function to return to the family, a workplace, and, more recently, sport-related activity. Moreover, motivated people with limb loss have formed sport enthusiast groups that have created the market demand for improvement and acceleration of modifications to everyday-use prosthetic limbs and creation of more sport-specific designs.

Prosthetic Components for Athletes With Lower Limb Loss

Lower-limb prosthetics are commonly composed of a means of suspension, a prosthetic socket, joint articulation (as needed), shaft (or pylon), and foot. Prosthetics have now become modular in construction such that the athlete can still use the prosthetic socket of choice and interchange certain components to meet the demands of a specific sport.[40-42] Even recreational athletes with limb loss can enjoy sports using their usual prosthetics with additional or interchangeable modification. However, committed athletes with limb loss must consider the biomechanical demands of their sport and apply the components that allow safe and competitive participation and choose prosthetic components accordingly. For example, triathletes may choose to use a swimming prosthetic leg or opt not to use a prosthesis during the swimming portion of the competition. In addition, prosthetic design has advanced to the creation of sport-specific prosthetics, such as for swimming and track and field competition. However, affordability for these devices poses an obstacle to common accessibility.[42]

Once the residuum has sufficiently recovered from amputation surgery and "matured" to be able to accept the shear, torsion, and load demands of a desired sport, athletes with limb loss can be fitted with prosthetics to help meet the rigors of training.[43,44] Considerations must be made for sports that demand high levels of shear, such as those that involve running or cutting. These excessive forces increase the risk of soft tissue breakdown, pain, time out of the prosthesis, and away from the sport.[41] High levels of activity also increase added perspiration within the prosthetic socket, increasing the risk of infections and related skin problems.[40] Regardless of choice of prosthetic components, proper prosthetic management and aggressive skin care are essential in sport.

SUSPENSION AND SOCKETS

If people recovering from limb amputation surgery set a goal for participation in sport, they should closely consult with the rehabilitation team, composed of the surgeon, physical therapist, occupational therapist, athletic trainer, and specifically the prosthetist to create a prosthesis to meet that goal. Added prosthetic suspension (cuff, straps, sleeve) may be required for the prosthesis to remain intimate to the residual limb, in light of expected changeable limb volume during play. The residuum skin must be protected during participation in recreational sports, as well as everyday activities. Gel liners or sleeves provide a protective socket-residuum interface to minimize shear and other loading factors, particularly during the early phases of recovery or during repetitive movements in play.[41] Thus gel liners are also recommended for the higher-level athletes. Special accommodation for boney areas at the socket-residuum interface should be considered and is usually warranted. Total surface–bearing prosthetic sockets are recommended because they are designed to disperse forces evenly over the entire surface area of the residuum-socket interface to minimize risk for soft tissue breakdown.

PROSTHETIC KNEE JOINTS

There are a variety of computerized knee joints on the market that are designed for user-matched walking speeds. However, there has not yet been a computerized knee joint designed to withstand the rigors of "stop-start" running, cutting, jumping, or swimming.[44] The athlete with transfemoral limb loss can choose to use a mechanical running limb because it is a simpler, more reliable knee joint design that can be controlled in "real time." However, the athletes usually depend on the energy-storing running foot and the power of the hip extensors to substitute for natural knee function, or these athletes can choose to use no articulation at all, such as when competing in track and field events.[43,45]

LOWER LEG/FOOT/ANKLE COMPONENTS

Prosthetics have become modular in construction such that the athlete can still use the socket of best fit and change out the prosthetic components to minimize risk and maximize performance. Application of the appropriate prosthetic foot to maximize efficiency towards symmetric step lengths during varied walking speeds enables the recreational amputee to participate in higher levels of activity.[40] In some cases, prosthetic foot/ankle/knee components can be interchanged using a "quick-release" coupler for use in specific sport-like activities.[46,47]

Forces untoward residuum health must be minimized with proper selection of prosthetic components. Pylons, special-designed prosthetic ankles, and heels that absorb and dissipate energy during loading are important considerations. Athletes with either transtibial or transfemoral limb loss who are required to run or sprint typically use an energy-storing foot.[47] This specialized foot is constructed of materials that essentially "store" the energy during locomotion and transfer energy with significant efficiency to propel the athlete forward in walking or running gait. This particular prosthetic foot is posteriorly attached to the prosthetic socket. For the athletes involved in running or sprinting, these high-performance carbon fiber foot components (a.k.a. "blades") have become essential (Figs. 28.10 and 28.11). This design enables the athlete with bilateral or unilateral, transtibial or transfemoral limb loss to participate and successfully compete in sports never before considered. However, there are limitations to these designs. For those who play sports on uneven ground and need ankle designs that simulate foot pronation and supination, athletes must depend on the older, mechanical designs to compete with less risk for injury and falls.[47]

Fig. 28.10 Prosthesis without knee articulation. (Photos taken and given with permission from O Raiber and J Williams OUHSC.)

Fig. 28.11 Carbon fiber foot. (Photos taken and given with permission from O Raiber and J Williams OUHSC.)

Athletes With Upper Limb Loss

Although there are fewer people with upper-extremity limb loss than with lower-extremity limb loss, there is a growing number of those who are competing in sports who require skilled use of the arms and hands. As with lower-extremity prosthetics with high levels of technologic applications, so too the advanced upper extremity prosthetics pose even a more daunting obstacle for pragmatic use in sport. So, prosthetic designers have created with use of the human-powered prosthesis terminal devices that are used to throw and catch a ball or hold a bow and arrow.[47] The devices do not simulate human anatomy but are designed for function, not cosmesis.

Children With Limb Loss in Sport

Prosthetic design for children with limb loss is typically made simpler in design when the child is small. However, as the child develops and grows, more complicated, adult-level components are added.[45] Current pediatric knee components usually provide control, shock absorption, and freedom to move like a growing child. Use of carbon-fiber energy-storing prosthetic feet is considered the norm. Components must be light, yet strong and sufficiently durable to enable the young athletes to compete (Fig. 28.12).

Prosthetics in Sports: What Is Best?

Despite many advances in the design and composition of either upper- or lower-extremity prosthetic limbs, there is no tangible evidence as to which component designs are

Fig. 28.12 Pediatric components. (Photos taken and given with permission from University of Central Oklahoma Endeavor Games.)

Fig. 28.13 Prosthesis with a foot. (Photos taken and given with permission from CP Dionne OUHSC.)

best suited for any one particular sport or consumer group. According to systematic review, there are several studies whose aims were to determine the effectiveness of a group of prosthetic foot-ankle or knee joint designs, but, due to the poor quality and incomparability of research designs, no conclusions could be drawn.[47] However, due to additional, national-level funding of research, technology has currently advanced prosthetic designs that are sports specific, tailored to those at the most elite level of competition,[48] but these prosthetics are cost-prohibitive to the everyday athlete with limb loss. Thus it is currently individualized, case-by-case, expert opinion that drives the decisions made in prosthetics for those in competitive sport[49] (Fig. 28.13).

References

1. Whitteridge D, Guttmann L. 3 July 1899 – 18 March 1980. In: *Biographical Memoirs of Fellows of the Royal Society*. London: The Royal Society; 1983:226–244. 29.
2. Pringle D. Winter sports for the amputee athlete. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1987;11(3):114–117.
3. Nolan L. Lower limb strength in sports-active transtibial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2009;23(3):230–241.
4. Center for Disease Control and Prevention. United States Department of Health and Human Services. *2008 Physical activity guidelines for Americans.* Available at www.health.gov/paguidelines/guidelines. Accessed February 28, 2018.
5. Pate RR, Pratt M, Blair SN, et al. Physical activity and public health: A recommendation from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American College of Sports Medicine. *JAMA.* 1995;273(5):402–407.
6. Kegel B, Malchow D. Incidence of injury in amputees playing soccer. *Palaestra.* 1994;10(2):50–54.
7. Weiler R, Van Mechelen W, Fuller C, Verhagen E. Sports injuries sustained by athletes with disability: A systematic review. *Sports Med.* 2016;46:1141–1153.
8. Fagher K, Lexell J. Sports-related injuries in athletes with disabilities. *Scan J Med Sci Sports.* 2014;24:e320–e331.
9. Tater Y. Body image and its relationship with exercise and sports in Turkish lower-limb amputees who use prosthetics. *Science Sports.* 2010;25:312–317.
10. Deans SA, McFadyen AK, Rowe PJ. Physical activity and quality of life: A study of a lower-limb amputee population. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2008;32(2):186–200.
11. Groff DG, Lundberg NR, Zabriskie RB. Influence of adapted sport on quality of life: Perceptions of athletes with cerebral palsy. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2009;31(4):318–326.
12. Steptoe A, Butler N. Sports participation and emotional well-being in adolescents. *Lancet.* 1996;347:1789–1792.
13. Hutzler Y, Bar-Eli M. Psychological benefits of sports for disabled people: A review. *Scand J Med Sci Sports.* 1993;3:217–228.
14. Murphy NA, Carbone PS. Promoting the participation of children with disabilities in sports, recreation, and physical activities. *Pediatrics.* 2008;121:1057–1061.
15. Webster JB, Levy CE, Bryant PR, et al. Sports and recreation for persons with limb deficiency. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82(3 Supp1):38–44.
16. Rimmer JH, Wolf LA, Sinclair LB. Physical activity among adults with a disability- United States, 2005. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep.* 2007;56(39):1021–1024.
17. Modan M, Peles E, Halkin H, et al. Increased cardiovascular disease mortality rates in traumatic lower limb amputees. *Am J Cardiol.* 1998;82(10):1242–1247.
18. Finch N, Lawton D, Williams J, et al. *Disability survey 2000: Survey of young people with a disability and sport*. Available at www.sportengland.org. Accessed on April 15, 2011.
19. Jaarsma EA, Dijkstra PU, Geertzen JHB, Dekker R. Barriers to and facilitators of sports participation for people with physical disabilities: A systematic review. *Scand J Med Sci Sports.* 2014;24:871–881.
20. Bragaru M, Dekker R, Geertzen JHB, Dijkstra PU. Amputees and sports: A systematic review. *Sports Med.* 2011;41(9):721–740.
21. Disabled Sports USA. Available at www.disabledsportsusa.org. Accessed on February 21, 2018.
22. Disabled Sports USA. Available at www.disabledsportsusa.org/about/our-mission/. Accessed on February 21, 2018.
23. Amputee Coalition. Available at www.amputee-coalition.org. Accessed on February 21, 2018.
24. Amputee Coalition. Available at www.amputee-coalition.org/about-us/history. Accessed on February 21, 2018.
25. Challenged Athlete's Foundation. Available at www.challengedathletes.org. Accessed on February 21, 2018.
26. Challenged Athlete's Foundation. Available at www.challengedathletes.org/mission-and-history/. Accessed on February 21, 2018.
27. International Paralympic Committee. Available at www.paralympic.org. Accessed on February 28, 2018.
28. United States Paralympic Committee. Available at www.paralympic.org/united-states-america/. Accessed on February 28, 2018.
29. International Paralympic Committee. Classification Introduction. Available at www.paralympic.org/classification. Accessed February 28, 2018.

30. International Paralympic Committee. Sports. Available at www.paralympic.org/sports. Accessed February 28, 2018.
31. World Taekwondo. *Standing Procedures for Taekwondo Competition at Olympic Games.* Available at www.worldtaekwondo.org/rules/. Accessed on February 28, 2018.
32. Disabled Sports USA. Take it Outside- Hunting, Fishing Adapt to Meet Physical Abilities and Enhance Experience. *Challenge Magazine.* 2005;10(2):29–31.
33. Disabled Sports USA. Golf is for Everyone. *Challenge Magazine.* 2005;10(1):23–26.
34. Braggins A. *Trail Orienteering.* Available at www.trailo.org. Accessed February 28, 2018.
35. Disabled Sports, USA. *Rock Climbing.* Available at www.disabledsportsusa.org/sport/rock-climbing. Accessed on February 28, 2018.
36. Amputee Skydiving. Available at www.atwiki.assistivetech.net/index.php/amputee_skydiving. Accessed on April 16, 2011.
37. AmpSurf. Available at www.ampsurf.org. Accessed February 28, 2018.
38. ActiveAmp. *Sports and Activities for the Active Amp.* Available at www.activeamp.org/sport_dir.htm. Accessed February 28, 2018.
39. Water Skiers with Disabilities Association. Available at www.usawaterski.org/pages/divisions/wsda/main.asp. Accessed on February 28, 2018.
40. Prince F, Allard P, Therrien RG, McFadyen BJ. Running gait impulse asymmetries in below-knee amputees. *Prosthetics and Orthotics International.* 1992;16:19–24.
41. Lyon CC, Kulkarni J, Zimerson E, Van Ross E, Beck M. Skin disorders in amputees. *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology.* March 2000;42:501–507.
42. Klute GK, Berge JS, Orendurff MS, Williams RM, Czerniecki JM. Prosthetic intervention effects on activity of lower extremity amputees. *Archives of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation.* May 2006;87:717–722.
43. Tazawa E. Analysis of torso movement of transfemoral amputees during level walking. *Prosthetics and Orthotics International.* 1997;21:129–140.
44. Van der Linde H, Hofstad CJ, Geurts AC, Postema K, Geertzen JHB, van Limbeek J. A systematic literature review of the effect of different prosthetic components on human functioning with a lower-limb prosthesis. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research & Development.* 2004;41(4):555–570.
45. Wind WM, Schwend RM, Larson J. Sports for the physically challenged child. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons.* 2004;12:126–137.
46. May BJ, Lockard MA. *Prosthetics & Orthotics in Clinical Practice A case Study Approach.* Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2011.
47. Bragaru M Dekker R, Geertzen JHB. Sport prosthesis and prosthetic adaptations for the upper and lower limb amputees: An overview of peer reviewed literature. *Prosthetics and Orthotics International.* 2012;36:290–296.
48. Horton's Orthotics & Prosthetics. *How advanced prosthetics are changing the world of sports and its athletes.* Available at http://www.hortonsoandp.com/how-advanced-prosthetics-are-changing-the-world-of-sports-and-its-athletes. Accessed on June 21, 2018.
49. Nolan L. Carbon fibre prostheses and running in amputees: A review. *Foot and Ankle Surgery.* 2008;14:125–129.

29 Rehabilitation for Children With Limb Deficiencies

JOAN E. EDELSTEIN and SUSAN ANN DENNINGER

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Relate developmental milestones to the habilitation of children with congenital limb deficiency and rehabilitation of those with amputation.
2. Describe how prostheses can be designed to accommodate longitudinal and circumferential growth so that fit remains comfortable and the child can attain maximum function.
3. Outline the ways a clinician can address psychosocial concerns for infants, toddlers, school-age children, and adolescents.
4. Compare prosthetic options for children of various ages who have upper- or lower-limb deficiencies.
5. Specify the training goals for children of various ages fitted with upper- and lower-limb prostheses.
6. Design a habilitation program for an infant born with multiple limb deficiencies.

Ellen, who was born without a left forearm and hand, Bobby, age 4, who caught his foot in a powered lawn mower, and Pedro, age 12, who is recovering from femoral sarcoma have different skeletal, neuromuscular, learning, and psychosocial challenges from those of adults with amputation. Children share some rehabilitation issues with adults, particularly the basic components of the prosthesis and the essential elements of postoperative care. However, other considerations are unique. Because children are smaller than adults, the choice of prosthetic components is not as broad. Youngsters grow and develop through the rehabilitation process. In addition, young people legally, financially, and emotionally depend on adults for their medical, surgical, and rehabilitation care.

Clinicians concerned with comprehensive management of children with limb deficiencies need to consider the causes of limb deficiency, the relationship of developmental milestones to prosthetic selection and use, and the psychosocial factors that affect children to design optimal programs.[1] Care of the infant born with a limb anomaly is habilitation, whereas management of someone who undergoes amputation because of trauma or disease is rehabilitation. However, unless the distinction is relevant, habilitation and rehabilitation are used interchangeably in this chapter. Similarly, limb deficiency is used to designate both congenital and acquired limb absence. The overall goal of physical therapy is to facilitate the normal developmental sequence and prevent the onset of secondary impairments and functional limitations such as contractures, weakness, and dependence in self-care.

Comprehensive Considerations in Childhood

The philosophy of this chapter is that the child with a limb deficiency is first and foremost a person, with the beauty, delight, and promise inherent in all young people.

CLASSIFICATION AND CAUSES OF LIMB DEFICIENCIES

The International Organization for Standardization approved a system of limb deficiency classification in 1989 (Fig. 29.1).[2] Congenital limb anomalies are described anatomically and radiologically as transverse, in which no skeletal elements exist below the level of normal development, or longitudinal, in which a reduction or absence of elements is present within the long axis of the limb with normal skeletal elements usually present distal to the affected bone (see Fig. 29.1). This system replaces older terms, such as phocomelia (distal segments attached to the torso), amelia (complete absence of a limb), and hemimelia (partial absence of a limb).

Childhood limb deficiency is caused by congenital malformation, trauma, and cancer and other diseases. In the U.S. population, the incidence of congenital deficiency has remained stable.[3] Among those born with anomalies, transverse deficiency of the upper limb, especially the left, is the most common.[4] The overall prevalence of limb deficiency among 161,252 newborns was 0.7 per 1000 births. Thirty percent of the defects were caused by genetic factors, 35%

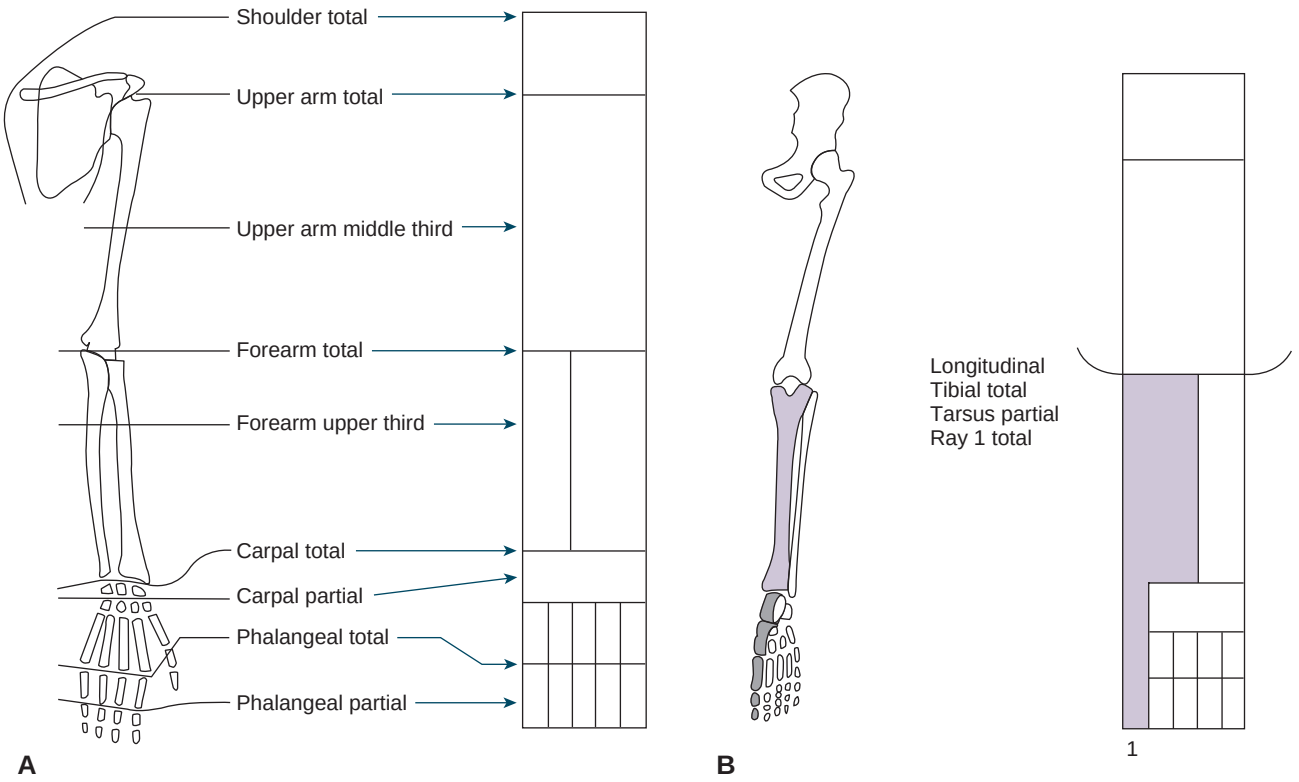


Fig. 29.1 (A) International Organization for children with Standardization/International Society for Prosthetics and Orthotics system for classifying upper-limb congenital limb deficiencies. Lower-limb transverse deficiencies are named in a similar fashion. Levels can also be described by naming the absent bone(s). (B) Lower-limb longitudinal limb deficiency. The *shaded area* represents missing segments. (Reprinted with permission from Murdoch G, Wilson AB, eds. *Amputation: Surgical Practice and Patient Management*. Oxford, UK: Butterworth Heinemann; 1996:352.)

by vascular disruption, 4% by teratogens, and 32% by an unknown cause.[5]

Powered lawn mowers[6-8] and all-terrain vehicles[9] are responsible for many traumatic amputations among children and adolescents. Preserving limb length is a crucial factor in mature limb length.[10] Replantation of the severed body part or its revascularization has met with satisfaction by most young patients.[11]

Some patients with tumor are treated by various limb-sparing procedures, and others undergo amputation. Long-term outcome is similar, although more patients with amputation used walking aids and were less satisfied, as children, with their status.[12-15]

DEVELOPMENTAL MILESTONES

Motor skills develop in a predictable sequence, with well-established milestones that mark achievement of important functional abilities.[16-18] In the absence of cerebral maldevelopment or malformation, the infant born with a limb anomaly or a young child who undergoes amputation demonstrates physical control at approximately the same time as an unaffected child does. However, limb deficiency often alters how the developmental tasks and activities are performed. For example, the 5-month-old infant who has only one intact leg will develop a distinctive style of crawling. Therapists who conduct initial evaluations of these children focus on muscle strength, range of motion, gross motor patterns, coordination, attention span, and interests.

All children, not just those with limb deficiency, display varying rates of neuromuscular development. Chronologic age cannot provide a complete picture of a child's developmental level. In this chapter, milestones pertaining to upper- and lower-limb development are related to habilitation of children with limb disorders.

Physical conditioning programs, especially active sports, are important to enhance general health and endurance, particularly for those who wear a prosthesis. Play and games increase coordination and improve strength. Swimming is particularly beneficial because it does not traumatize the limbs and does not require a prosthesis; nevertheless, some children may be reluctant to display an anomalous limb.

ACCOMMODATING GROWTH

All children grow, regardless of congenital anomalies or amputations. Prosthetic planning should incorporate measures to maintain comfortable socket fit and symmetric limb length. The preschool-age child may need a new prosthesis almost yearly. Those in grade school often require a new prosthesis every 12 to 18 months, and teenagers outgrow prostheses every 18 to 24 months.

Longitudinal growth is typically more rapid than circumferential growth, a troublesome fact for children with lower-limb deficiency. Reconstructive surgery, especially circular (Ilizarov) fixation, suits children with minimal length discrepancy, whereas amputation remains preferable for those with severe limb loss. Too short a lower-limb prosthesis disturbs the quality and efficiency of gait and substantially

increases energy cost. In contrast, an upper-limb prosthesis that is slightly short will probably not present a noticeable asymmetry and will have little effect on bimanual activities. Endoskeletal prosthetic components facilitate lengthening and substitution of more sophisticated components.

Vigorous play causes considerable wear of the mechanical parts of prostheses. These parts are also vulnerable because of their small size and the sand, grass, and mud that children find inviting. Youngsters are likely to wear out prostheses from everyday use before circumferential growth necessitates a change. Signs of an outgrown socket include a tendency of the residual limb to slip out of the socket, pain or skin reddening caused by socket tightness, and a flesh roll around the margin of the socket. Socket liners are a convenient way to accommodate circumferential growth; as the child grows, liners can be removed. Alternatively, the prosthesis can be fitted with several layers of socks; the child eventually wears fewer socks to accommodate the added residual limb girth. Flexible sockets fitted to extra-thick frames are another way to accommodate growth. To fit the larger residual limb, a new flexible socket is made and material is ground from the frame.

Prosthetic alignment should complement the immature skeleton and joint capsules. Children with surgical amputations through the bony diaphysis or metaphysis may have terminal bony overgrowth (Fig. 29.2). As these children grow, terminal periosteal new bone may protrude beneath the terminal subcutaneous tissue and skin. Without treatment, a bursal sac forms and the skin becomes ecchymotic and hemorrhagic. The underlying bone then ruptures the bursal sac, and infection can occur. Overgrowth is a particular problem when the adolescent growth spurt begins.

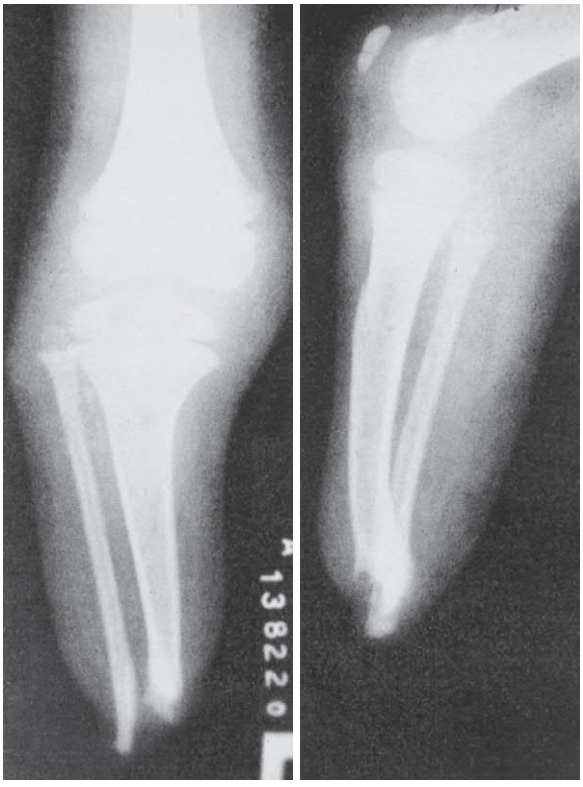


Fig. 29.2 Bony overgrowth of the fibula in the transtibial amputation limb of a 7-year-old child. In the original amputation surgery, the fibula was slightly shorter than the tibia. (Courtesy J.E. Edelstein.)

Customary treatment is excision of the periosteal sac, transection of the distal 2 to 3 cm of bone, and primary closure of the incision. Children may require this procedure several times during the growth period.[19] Another approach is continuous skin traction, which can be used to maintain skin and soft-tissue coverage over the distal end of the residual limb until skeletal growth is complete. The difficulties of keeping distal force on the limb day and night usually preclude this method. Disarticulation preserves the distal epiphyseal plate and thus is not associated with overgrowth.

Near-normal range of joint motion is an important determinant of effective prosthetic use in children with limb deficiencies, as well as in adults with amputation. Active therapeutic exercise designed to increase joint excursion is preferable to passive stretching, especially in the presence of congenital contracture.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Postoperative care is simpler for young children who undergo amputation than for adolescents and adults. Ordinarily the residual limb presents little or no edema and the wound heals rapidly.

Phantom limb sensations are commonly experienced by adults with amputation, but little literature is available that discusses the impact phantom limb sensations and pain might have on pediatric patients. Phantom pain is associated with the extent of preoperative pain and is generally short lived.[20] The prevalence of phantom limb pain varies depending on the cause of amputation. In pediatric traumatic amputation the prevalence of phantom limb pain ranges from 12% to 83%, 3.7% to 20%, and 48% to 90% for traumatic, congenital, and oncology-related amputation, respectively.[21] Symptoms are highly variable, ranging from the perceived ability to voluntarily move the phantom limb, to sharp pain, to tingling sensations. Furthermore, these symptoms typically last for minutes but can be almost constant and can be highly distressing. Episodes typically occur in the afternoon and evening and may be triggered by physical (e.g., bumping/injuring the amputated limb or long periods of walking or standing) and psychosocial (e.g., meeting new people or stress) triggers.[21]

Treatment for phantom limb sensations varies based on the individual's symptoms, age, and impact on their function. Desensitization techniques such as rubbing or massaging the uninvolved limb at similar points to those in which they are experiencing the phantom limb sensation of the amputated limb can be used to control symptoms.[1] A pain diary may help older children and adolescents to cope with phantom pain from traumatic amputation. The majority of research for nonpharmacologic treatments has focused on mirror therapy in pediatric cancer. Mirror therapy uses the facilitation of an illusion of the unaffected limb, thus helping to reorganize the somatosensory cortex of the brain to reduce phantom limb pain/sensations.[1,21,22] Pharmacologic treatments are usually managed by a pain management team. At this time, no one medication is standard of practice, but several pharmacologic treatments have demonstrated effectiveness. Gabapentin, tricyclic antidepressants, and opioids have all demonstrated usefulness in treating phantom limb pain. Wang and colleagues found that preoperative use of gabapentin in pediatric patients with oncology-related amputation had a beneficial impact on postoperative pain intensity

and phantom limb pain prevention when compared with a placebo.[23] Other agents such as nerve blocks or epidural catheters have also been described in pediatric postoperative pain management protocols.[20,21]

PSYCHOSOCIAL FACTORS IN HABILITATION AND REHABILITATION

Habilitation amounts to more than selecting a suitable prosthesis and devising appropriate training. All children have personalities that develop along with their physical growth. Optimal emotional development occurs when parents and clinicians promote wholesome interactions.[24] The essential message is that the child has a unique personality and that independence commensurate with age can be fostered.[25,26]

Infants

Infants learn trust when their basic needs are met. The baby with limb anomaly has as much need for trusting, responsive care as does the infant with intact limbs. Infants respond to the anxieties of parents and others who interact with them. Successful habilitation depends on the parents' replacing the expectation of a "perfect" infant with the reality of a baby who happens to have a limb deficiency. Birth of a baby with a limb deficiency can elicit intense emotion. Because such an event is rare in any hospital, medical staff may display shock and feelings of helplessness or revulsion. Some parents characterize the first few weeks after birth as a nightmare. They believe they are alone with a unique and hopeless problem when questions go unanswered or evaded. Reactions of the infant's grandparents, siblings, and other family members influence habilitation. Mourning for the loss of the ideal child is part of the coping process.[1]

Newborns are too young for prosthetic fitting; nevertheless, early referral to a specialized clinic is highly desirable. The core team is composed of a pediatrician, physical therapist, occupational therapist, and prosthetist. The team should be able to draw on the expertise of psychologists, social workers, orthopedists, and engineers, depending on the needs of the child and family.[2] Effective clinical team management involves the family in rehabilitation decisions and weighs management recommendations in light of the immediate impact on the child's welfare and the long-term consequences on his or her appearance and function as an adult. An important resource is the Association of Children's Prosthetic-Orthotic Clinics (9400 West Higgins Road, Suite 500, Rosemont, IL 60018-4976; http://www.acpoc.org). The association, founded in 1958, has held an annual interdisciplinary conference since 1972.

The clinical team creates an atmosphere in which parents and their youngster are welcome, encouraging conversation about feelings and obtaining answers to questions. The team's approach aims to maximize the child's function, while learning the parents' style of dealing with unexpected events. Team members should empathize with parents' grief, which can bear little relation to the extent of the infant's disability. Some parents resist holding the baby, hide the deformity, avoid direct contact, or withdraw into silence. When clinicians hold the baby, parents usually realize that the infant really is lovable. Rather than denying any difference, the team fosters the attitude that, yes, they know the child is different, but they recognize and accept the infant for who the person is and what he or she can do.

Case Example 29.1 **A Newborn With Congenital Transradial Limb Deficiency**

Mr. and Mrs. M. anticipated the birth of their second child with great eagerness. Mrs. M. had excellent prenatal care and an easy pregnancy. During a routine second trimester ultrasound, Mr. and Mrs. M. were told that the ultrasound demonstrated that their infant had a left transradial limb deficiency. The obstetrics team referred Mrs. M. to high-risk obstetrics and genetic counseling. After repeat ultrasounds throughout the remainder of the pregnancy, the team ruled out further congenital abnormalities. The family was referred to a Family Connections program where they were able to connect with other parents of children with congenital limb deficiency prior to the infant's birth. The couple prepared their 2-year-old daughter for her new role as "big sister," encouraging her to feed her dolls bottles and push them in a stroller. Mrs. M. struggled to bond with the infant during her pregnancy and opted not to decorate the nursery or accept gifts in fear that something would go wrong. She was anxious and depressed that this infant's birth would be different than her first and was fearful of a potential neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) stay and complications. Maternal grandparents flew in from out of town to be with the family for the birth of the baby.

S.M. was born a few days later in a regional hospital equipped with a NICU. She was a healthy, term infant with lusty lungs. The obstetric nurse wrapped her in a receiving blanket and presented her to her anxious, but very proud, parents. Mrs. M. was wheeled to her room. S.M. had no immediate medical concerns and was therefore able to stay with her mother and avoid the NICU. Once settled in her room, Mr. and Mrs. M. unwrapped the baby and were able to visualize the left transradial limb deficiency for the first time. The couple cried and consoled each other as they grieved the fact that their daughter would have a disability and was not "perfect." A child-life specialist was consulted to help their older daughter prepare to see her new sister and explain, in a way she could understand, why her baby sister was missing her hand. A physical therapist was consulted the next day to assist the parents in proper positioning and simple range of motion exercises. Mrs. M. was silent, turning her head to the wall, tearful, and refusing to participate in the baby's care. Mr. M. attempted to engage with the physical therapist and learn how to care for his daughter's arm but was clearly distracted by how upset and depressed his wife was. Discharge to home with the baby is planned for the next morning.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Given Mrs. M.'s depression, how should the attending physician and medical team proceed?
- What impact do you think prenatal counseling and support had for this family?
- How might the grandparents and older sister help Mr. and Mrs. M. when they return home with their new daughter?
- What is the most constructive response the physical therapist can give when first meeting S. M. and her parents?
- How can the physical therapist facilitate positive immediate and long-term family interaction?

Families may be interested in seeing pictures or examples of the type of prosthesis that the child will probably use. However, expectations regarding the extent of prosthetic restoration may be unrealistic. Parents should understand what prosthetic and surgical possibilities exist so they can make rational decisions for their child. Infants usually

receive the first prosthesis at approximately 6 to 9 months of age.[21-28] Comparing the performance of children fitted with an upper-limb prosthesis before 1 year of age with those fitted later indicates no difference in satisfaction with the prosthesis nor functional use.[27] Some parents find it difficult to accept the prosthesis, believing that it draws attention to the limb deficiency.

The team can also help parents of children who undergo amputation because of trauma or disease cope with feelings of guilt and shock. Team members assist the family in realizing that they were not negligent in protecting the child against injury or not recognizing symptoms of a disease process early enough to prevent amputation.

In addition to clinical team management, families benefit from participating in peer support groups in which they can share concerns, exchange information, and observe children of various ages playing with and without prostheses. Some groups publish newsletters that share information with those who live too far from the meeting site. The Amputee Coalition (900 East Hill Avenue, Suite 390, Knoxville, TN 37915; www.amputee-coalition.org) is a peer advocacy organization that produces a magazine, monographs, and videos; has annual conferences; operates the National Limb Loss Information Center; and sponsors a youth camping program, national peer network, and limb-loss education and awareness program, among many other activities.

Parental acceptance of and active cooperation in the training program are the most important factors in its success and largely determine whether the child regards the prosthesis as a tool in daily activities.[1] Families need to learn skin care, prosthetic operation, maintenance, and the capabilities and limitations of the prosthesis. Outpatient training is preferable to avoid homesickness. The constant presence of one or both parents during therapy sessions enables the entire family to learn about prosthetic use and maintenance. Putting a prosthesis on an active child is a skill that takes time for parents to master. Scheduling appointments after naps and meals is generally more productive than attempting to coerce a tired, hungry child to participate in therapy. Clinicians should incorporate many brief activities in the treatment session, recognizing that young children have short attention spans. Therapists who treat infants need to interpret nonverbal indications of comfort or discomfort and satisfaction or dissatisfaction with the prosthesis. The infant who coos, smiles, and engages in play is probably content with the prosthesis and the function it offers, whereas a cranky, crying person may be contending with an ill-fitting socket. As with all patients, the clinician must frequently examine the skin, with particular attention to persistent redness, indicating high pressure, and irritation, which may signal dermatitis.

Case Example 29.2 **A Child With Congenital Transradial Limb Deficiency**

S.M. eats heartily, allows her older sister to sprinkle talcum powder on her, and is developing normally. She smiles and gurgles when someone approaches her. By 6 months, she is sitting independently and can use both arms to clutch stuffed toys. She grabs the railings of her crib, attempting to pull herself to standing. The physical therapist recommended that the family take S. M. to a rehabilitation center that specializes in caring for children with amputations. At the center, Mr. and Mrs. M. overcame their initial hesitation and now participate enthusiastically in a peer support group in which a dozen parents of children with limb deficiency trade advice and provide emotional support.

Mr. and Mrs. M. are concerned about unwelcome comments regarding their daughter's appearance, both with an empty sleeve and with the possibility of a hook terminal device substituting for the absent hand. They tried to persuade the clinical team to provide S.M. with an infant passive mitt, which would disguise the anomaly. The therapist showed Mr. and Mrs. M. that the mitt has no prehensile capability. One of the members of the support group extolled the virtues of a myoelectric hand, so Mr. and Mrs. M. then argued that S.M. should be provided with "only the best," regardless of cost. Support group members pointed out that S. M. was too small for myoelectric fitting but might be a candidate in another year or two. S.M. is fitted with a simple transradial prosthesis consisting of infant voluntary-opening hook, wrist unit, socket, and infant harness. The prosthesis does not have a cable.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What activities in the clinic would help S.M. to acclimate to her new prosthesis?
- What activities would be appropriate for a home program for the first week after prosthetic fitting?
- What types of bimanual activities can be accomplished with a transradial prosthesis with a passive hand rather than a cable-controlled terminal device?
- What toys can be recommended to the grandparents that will help S.M. to incorporate the prosthesis in her play time?
- How can the prosthesis facilitate S.M.'s physical and psychological development?

Toddlers

Toddlers must develop self-control to acquire the autonomy necessary to cope with their environment. The interval between 1 and 3 years of age is characterized by the development of language and functional communication, assertion of independence, and interpersonal control. Children as young as 3 years should be informed of any impending surgery, whether to revise a congenital anomaly or treat disease or injury. Doll play can help the child to understand surgery and rehabilitation. Special dolls that depict amputations at various levels, with and without prostheses, are available from A Step Ahead Prosthetics (132 Newbridge Road, Hicksville, NY 11801, www.weareastepahead.com).

Children must resolve feelings of deprivation and resentment that accompany the visible alteration of their bodies. Mobility, control, exploration, initiative, and creativity are prime emotional developmental milestones for older toddlers and young school-age children. Parents and professional staff should encourage the child's independence. Facile use of a prosthesis can help youngsters to achieve their psychological potential. Children compare themselves with others and ask, "Where is my other hand (or leg)?" Patients form two body images, one with and the other without the prosthesis. Parents should give a simple, truthful answer,

clearly stating that the child will not grow another hand, saying something like "You were born this way." Similarly, toddlers who undergo amputation need a realistic answer to the question, "What happened to you?" The child may engage parents in a power struggle regarding prosthetic wearing. A firm yet gentle approach with a range of acceptable choices usually enables the youngster to incorporate autonomy needs while gaining prosthetic proficiency.

The clinical team should respect the parents' comments and involve the family in all aspects of care. The waiting room should have a variety of safe toys to make visits more pleasant. Parents should be present during the child's examination and prosthetic fitting to increase communication and thereby reduce anxiety and maximize effectiveness of the prosthetic prescription and fitting process.

School-age Children

School-age children need to become industrious and engaged in planning and executing tasks. The upper- or lower-limb prosthesis can be instrumental in fostering this important psychological task. The clinical team can help to prepare the child and family for encounters with teachers, scout masters, clergy, and other adults.

In group experiences, the student may have to deal with feelings of social devaluation. The teacher or other group leader is in a position to bolster the child's sense of self-worth. The first day at school or camp can be the occasion when the child displays the prosthesis and demonstrates its function. The presentation usually dispels the mystery of the appliance and shows that the prosthesis is simply a tool that makes it easier for its wearer to engage in certain activities. The teacher should be aware of the appearance of the residual limb, the child's function with and without the prosthesis, any environmental or programmatic adaptations that may be advisable, and how to cope with prosthetic malfunction. Anticipating awkward situations helps to develop coping strategies. For example, in a circle game, classmates may be reluctant to hold hands with someone who wears an upper-limb prosthesis. If the teacher holds the child's prosthetic hook, the other students are likely to realize that it is not scary or unacceptable to do so. School officials may be concerned about the ability of a child with a prosthetic leg to maneuver in the classroom and playground. Classmates' natural curiosity should be dealt with through honest, simple answers. Although teasing is inevitable, the young student who feels secure understands that taunts are merely crude expressions of interest.

Among school-age children with limb deficiencies, demographic variables (such as age, sex, socioeconomic status, and degree of limb loss) are not significant predictors of self-esteem. In contrast, social support, family functioning, self-perception, and microstressors affect the child's adaptation. Many school-age and older children respond favorably to scouting, camping, and other group recreational activities. Sports programs, such as skiing, horseback riding, and track events, are fun and give children with disabilities pride in athletic achievement.

Older Children and Adolescents

Adolescents face the critical step of developing a satisfying identity within themselves and with their peers. The teenager may select times when prosthetic wear is not desirable (e.g., eschewing an upper-limb prosthesis during a football game or discarding the leg prosthesis when swimming or playing beach volleyball). Adults should nurture young adults so they develop sufficient self-esteem to make satisfying decisions about when to use or remove the prosthesis. Teenagers with limb loss must cope with being visibly different. Young adults have to adapt to a culture designed for those who do not have a disability and must evaluate whether people relate to them as individuals or as people with handicaps. During adolescence, feelings such as "Why did this happen to me?" are often intensified. Adolescents constantly reexamine their body image; group showering after physical education class may be especially stressful for those with limb loss. Other developmental concerns in which limb loss plays a role are choosing a vocation, obtaining a driver's license, and engaging in sexual activity. The family and clinical team need to be sensitive to concerns about privacy, confidentiality, and independence.

Adolescents with bone cancer who undergo an amputation typically pass through a stage of initial impact when they learn that the treatment plan includes amputation. This news may be met with despair, discouragement, passive acceptance, or violent denial. Informing the adolescent of the rehabilitation process and the achievements of others can be helpful. The next stage is retreat, during which the adolescent experiences acute grief. Anger may be part of the coping process. The goal of grieving is relinquishing hope of retrieving the lost object. The staff can reinforce the patient's strengths and encourage maximal independence. The third stage is acknowledgment, when the adolescent is willing to participate in rehabilitation and has incorporated the changed appearance into his or her body image. Reconstruction, the final stage, involves the return to developmentally appropriate activities, such as school, sports, and dating.

Case Example 29.3 **An Adolescent With Osteogenic Sarcoma**

E.K., who is 15 years old, is scheduled tomorrow to have surgical ablation of his right arm at the level of the humeral epicondyles to remove an osteogenic sarcoma. Six months ago, he fractured his right radial head. Although the fracture healed well, he noticed persistent tenderness at the elbow with a firm mass that was increasing in size. His physician referred him to an orthopedist. After a series of bone scans and biopsies, the orthopedist confirmed the diagnosis of osteogenic sarcoma and recommended immediate amputation. E.K. and his parents refused the surgery and traveled to four clinics in the surrounding states seeking advice regarding treatment of the tumor. They explored alternate methods of treatment, including herbal preparations to shrink the sarcoma, en bloc resection with implantation of an endoprosthetic elbow joint, and amputation of the arm distal to the epicondyles. After meeting with the clinical team at the children's medical center and speaking with several patients who had had surgery and rehabilitation, they reluctantly agreed to amputation during his summer vacation.

An excellent student, E.K. is also the shortstop on his high school varsity baseball team and plays the tuba in the

Continued

Case Example 29.3 (Continued)

marching band. For the past two summers he has been a counselor at a sports- and computer-oriented camp. The family is committed to devoting all its financial and emotional resources to enable E.K. to resume a full agenda of academic and recreational activities. E.K. has compiled considerable information from the internet regarding prostheses.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What postoperative management would foster wound healing and enable E.K. to become accustomed to a prosthesis?
- How can the occupational therapist and physical therapist help E.K. to cope with loss of his dominant hand?
- Compare the advantages of a cable-controlled prosthesis with a prosthesis having a myoelectrically controlled terminal device and cable-controlled elbow unit.
- What terminal device would be most suitable for E.K.?
- How can the clinical team guide E.K. when he returns to school in September?
- In what recreational activities can E.K. engage after his amputation?

Rehabilitation and Prosthetic Decision Making

Not all children with limb deficiency benefit from prostheses. With certain upper-limb anomalies, the remaining portion of the limb is more functional when bare than it would be if it were covered by a prosthesis.[24] Some children who are born with bilateral arm absence generally use their feet to play and can do almost everything they need to without using complicated and heavy prostheses.[17,24,28]

REHABILITATION OF CHILDREN WITH UPPER-LIMB AMPUTATION

Because functional use of an upper-limb prosthesis often involves control of a terminal device (substitute for the missing hand), the prosthetic design and the rehabilitation program should be appropriate for the child's level of motor, cognitive, and perceptual development.

Infants

Prosthetic fitting and training should complement an infant's development. Although a prosthesis usually is not fitted until babies are at least 6 months of age, earlier developmental accomplishment paves the way for successful prosthetic use.

The average 2-month-old infant can hold objects with both hands. The baby who lacks one or both hands typically attempts to hug a stuffed animal with the forearms or upper arms, capitalizing on the tactile sensitivity of the skin. The normal 3-month-old child can bring grasped objects to the mouth. Three months is also the age when babies attempt two-handed prehension, although this skill is not perfected until the child attains sitting balance at age 6 to 9 months.[1]

The 4-month-old infant props on the forearms, shifts weight to reach, and usually enjoys shaking noisy rattles by using rapid elbow flexion and extension. An important developmental step is reached at approximately the same age when the child can manipulate objects with one hand while the other hand stabilizes the toy. Simultaneous sitting and manipulating are still challenging at this age. Increased trunk strength enables the baby to reach unilaterally and bilaterally. Bilateral coordination at 4 months allows the infant to reach objects at the midline. Two-handed holding of a bottle typically occurs at approximately 4.5 months.[18]

By the fifth month, the infant can transfer toys from one hand to the other and is thus aware of the usefulness of holding objects. The youngster's dominant interests are in getting food, exploring surroundings, and making social contact with those who feed, hold, and provide care. Holding a large ball encourages the infant to clasp objects between the arms. Manipulating blocks or beads promotes stabilization of proximal body parts to allow fine movements with distal parts. Although a baby with intact limbs can get to the quadruped position and shift weight from side to side,[18] the infant who is missing one or both arms will probably find that crawling is impossible and will have difficulty coming to a sitting position and pulling to a standing position.

Six months is generally considered the optimal age for upper-limb prosthetic fitting (Fig. 29.3). The baby with unilateral amputation has achieved good sitting balance, can free the sound hand for manual activities while sitting,

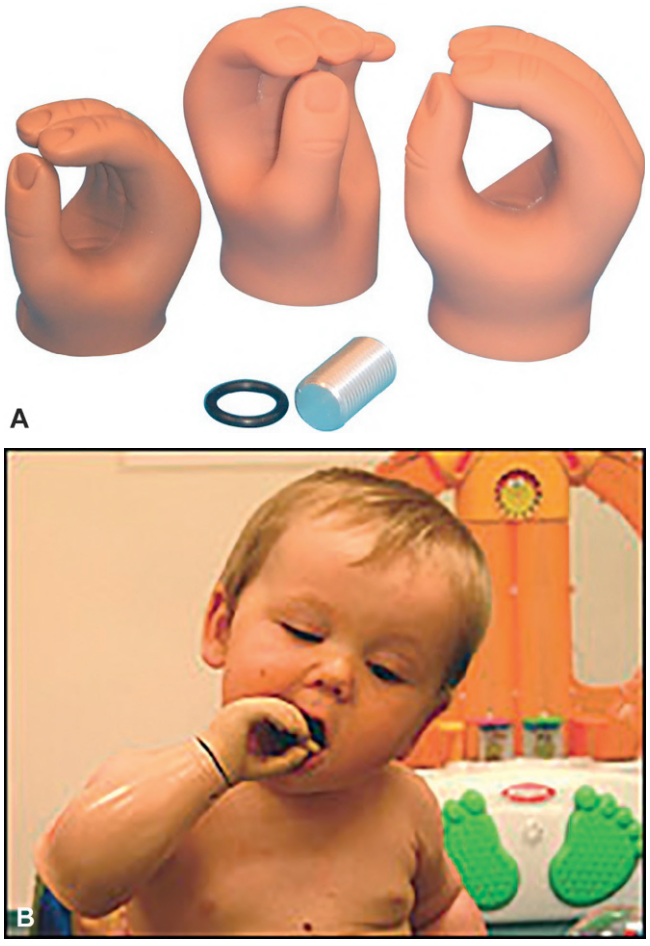


Fig. 29.3 Infant prosthetic hands. (A) Greek Series Hands are soft and flexible. (B) Infant mouthing on toy with Alpha hand. (A and B, Courtesy TRS, Inc., Boulder, CO.)

and is actively engaged in exploring the environment. The prosthesis restores symmetric limb length and enables the infant to hold stuffed animals and similar toys at the midline. The prosthesis also accustoms parents to the concept that a prosthesis will likely be a permanent part of their child's wardrobe. Fitting can assuage parental guilt or shame regarding their infant's abnormal appearance by replacing negative reactions with a constructive device that enhances the baby's development. Many parents seek a prosthetic hand to disguise the limb anomaly. Early fitting provides experience that will be the basis for the young person's later decision regarding whether to continue with prosthetic use. Fitting earlier to a rapidly growing infant makes the maintenance of socket fit difficult. In addition, a younger baby may find the prosthesis a hindrance during rolling maneuvers. Infants who are much older than 6 months may resist a prosthesis that deprives them of using the tactile sensation at the end of the residual limb. Initial fitting after 2 years tends to result in greater rejection of the prosthesis because by then the child has developed compensatory techniques.

At 8 months, most babies sit while manipulating objects with both hands by using gross palmar grasp and controlled release. A prosthesis aids in clasping large objects and stabilizing smaller ones while the sound hand explores them. By 15 months, most children can place a pellet in a small container and use crayons for scribbling and a spoon for feeding. These skills can also be performed with a prosthesis.

The first prosthesis is usually passive (i.e., it does not have a cable or other operating mechanism). The terminal device may be a hook or a passive mitt. The hook is covered with pink or brown resilient plastic to disguise its mechanical appearance. The plastic also blunts the impact of the hook as infants explore with it, swiping themselves and others in the vicinity. The hook may be a voluntary-opening design without a cable. Parents can place a rattle or other object in the hook to acquaint the baby with prehension on the deficient side. A few children start with the Child Amputee Prosthetics Project (University of California at Los Angeles, Los Angeles, CA) terminal device (Fig. 29.4), which functions in the voluntary-opening mode. Some infants have a voluntary-closing hook on the first prosthesis (Fig. 29.5); in the absence of a cable, the hook holds the toy secured with tape or a rubber band. The three options offer little difference in function. A fourth terminal device option is the infant passive mitt. The mitt has a less mechanical appearance than other terminal devices but has no prehensile function; objects can be taped to it for the amusement of the baby. The absence of a hooked configuration hampers use of the mitt when the baby attempts to pull to standing at the side of the crib or playpen. Whatever the design, the terminal device is generally fitted into a wrist unit at the distal end of the socket.

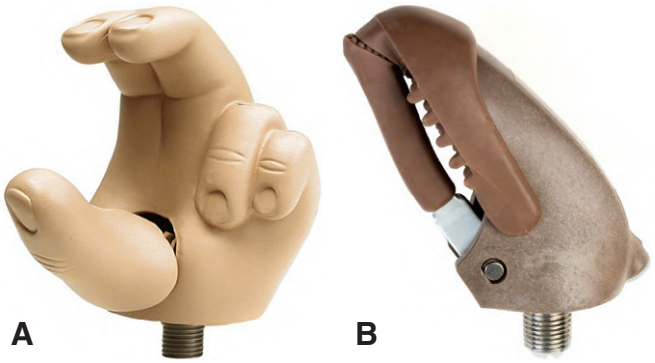


Fig. 29.4 Children's terminal devices. (A) Voluntary-closing hand. (B) CAPP (Child Amputee Prosthetics Project) voluntary-opening terminal device (A, Courtesy TRS, Inc., Boulder, CO. B, Courtesy Fillauer Companies, Inc., Chattanooga, TN.)

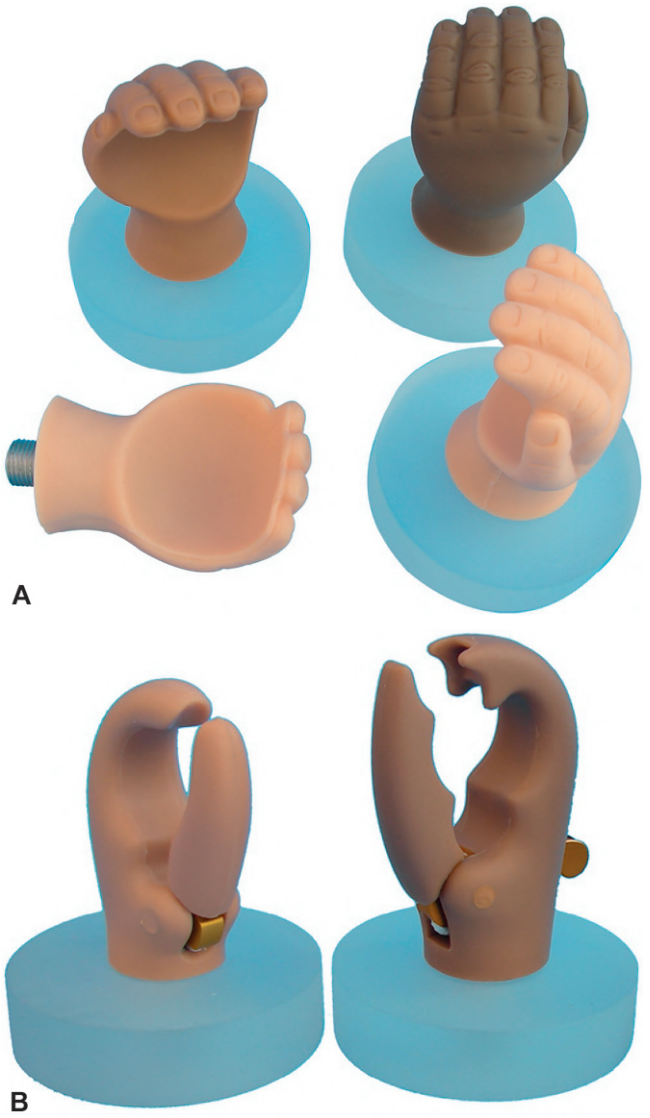


Fig. 29.5 Voluntary-closing terminal devices on prostheses. (A) Lite-Touch hand. (B) Adept hook. (Courtesy TRS, Inc., Boulder, CO.)

The thermoplastic socket may be custom molded to a plaster model of the child's residual limb. A fabric sock protects the skin from pressure concentration imposed by the socket. A snug fit is needed around the humeral epicondyles to stabilize the prosthesis on the child's residual limb. Depending on the rate of growth, changes may be needed every 2 to 4 months. If the anomaly is higher, the first prosthesis usually does not have an elbow unit even if the limb anomaly is comparable with transhumeral amputation.

Increasingly, prosthetic components, especially for children, are being created by three-dimensional (3D) printing.[29] Medical application of 3D printing is additive manufacturing

in which 3D objects, such as a prosthetic hand or socket, are created under computer control. The object is made by successively adding viscous plastic or other material. Alternative prosthetic fabrication is either subtractive, in which material is removed, as from a plaster model of the body part, or molded over a plaster model. 3D manufacturing dates from the 1980s. In most prosthetic applications, the patient's limb is scanned with a handheld device or photographed by a digital camera, thereby recording its shape and enabling the creation of a digital model of it. The rapidity of the 3D process is ideal for accommodating the need to create a larger socket or hand[30-33] when the patient has outgrown the previous device. The process has also been used to make a transhumeral prosthesis.[34]

Regardless of the level of limb loss, the prosthetic socket is suspended on the infant's torso by a harness, which typically has more straps than an adult harness. The toddler harness inhibits the infant's attempts to remove the prosthesis, whether deliberately or inadvertently during rolling and crawling.

Clothing problems arise when a prosthesis is worn. The rigid parts of the prosthesis can cause holes in fabric. Shirts and blouses worn over the prosthesis should be loose fitting. Raglan sleeves are roomier than sleeves set at the natural shoulder line; the latter can interfere with cable operation.

Training the infant fitted with a passive prosthesis usually begins with two sessions in a 1-week period and then at periodic follow-up appointments. The first meeting should be held when the baby is well rested and content. The therapist or parent puts the prosthesis on the infant, who is then placed on the floor with various toys. The therapist encourages the parents to play with and handle the baby while the infant is wearing the prosthesis. The baby may ignore the prosthesis because its socket eliminates the sense of touch and because the length of the prosthesis feels awkward. Parents should present large toys that require the use of both arms. The basic prosthesis allows the infant to cuddle a teddy bear, swat at a dangling toys, and use both upper limbs for rolling and crawling. Training involves instructing the parents, siblings, and other caregivers to gain familiarity with the prosthesis, care for the infant's skin by making certain that the socket and harness do not exert undue pressure, and provide toys that require bimanual prehension (Box 29.1). Placing a rattle or other noise maker in the terminal device is another way to acquaint the infant with grasp on the side of limb deficiency. At the end of the session, the therapist and parent remove the prosthesis to inspect the child's skin for signs of irritation from the socket or harness.

Box 29.1 Prosthetic Training Goals for Infants

Therapy sessions are designed to increase the infant's
- Comfort with the prosthesis
- Wearing tolerance
- Ability to clasp large objects
- Ability to use the prosthesis to aid in sitting and crawling

Parents of an infant with a prosthesis should do the following:
- Apply and remove the prosthesis correctly
- Care for the child's skin
- Care for the prosthesis
- Recognize and report to the clinical team any problems with the prosthesis or child

Parents learn how to apply the prosthesis and how to encourage full-time wear except during baths, naps, and bedtime. The youngster may be awkward when sitting and moving while adjusting to the weight of the prosthesis. Toys suitable for the child's developmental level, such as large balls, dolls, stuffed animals, balloons, xylophones, and other noisy and colorful objects, provide incentives for enjoying the prosthesis. Parents can put a mallet or other toy in the hook so that the infant can obtain pleasure from using the prosthesis. Push and pull toys are appropriate when the child is able to stand and cruise.[21] Arranging blocks is a good activity for the new prosthesis wearer.[35]

Printed instructions, augmented by audiotapes or videotapes, are useful guides for the family. Instructions can address parental concerns regarding the possibility that the child may catch the prosthesis on table legs or use it to strike themselves or others; children recover balance readily, and peers are usually able to defend themselves.

At the second training session, ideally a few days later, the therapist can assess the parents' experiences. Donning and doffing the prosthesis should be reviewed. Initially, the child may tolerate the prosthesis only for a few minutes. It should be frequently applied during the day. Eventually, the youngster should be able to wear it most of the day, except when sleeping and bathing.

Subsequent follow-up sessions focus on the adequacy of prosthetic fit and the child's readiness for the addition of a cable to the prosthesis or substitution of a myoelectrically controlled prosthesis for a passive one, or, in the case of the child with transhumeral amputation, the addition of an elbow unit.

Toddlers

When the child is between the ages of 15 and 18 months, control cables may be added to traditional, body-operated prostheses (Fig. 29.6). Active control may not become

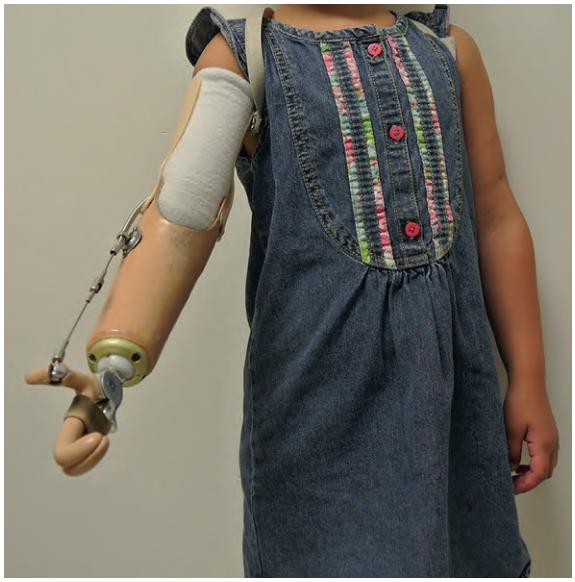


Fig. 29.6 Toddler with congenital transverse upper limb difference using a body-powered prosthesis. (From Le JT, Scott-Wyard PR. Pediatric limb difference and amputations. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2015;26 [1]:95–108.)

Box 29.2 Prosthetic Training Goals for Toddlers

Therapy sessions are designed to increase the toddler's
- Control of the terminal device
- Control of the elbow unit
- Use of the prosthesis in bimanual prehension
- Use of the prosthesis in functional activities

Parents of toddlers with prostheses should do the following:
- Provide toys that require bimanual prehension
- Encourage use of the prosthesis as an assistive device
- Inspect the skin to determine whether the prosthesis causes undue irritation

reliable until the toddler is approximately 2.5 years of age, when the understanding of cause and effect is well established. Readiness for the cable is indicated when the child wears the prosthesis full time, can follow simple instructions, has an attention span of at least 5 minutes, and will allow the therapist and prosthetist to handle him or her. A toddler who resists instruction from someone other than the parent may be too immature to learn to control the prosthesis.

If the prosthesis has a voluntary-opening hook, it should be fitted with a half- or a quarter-width rubber band to facilitate opening. The tension in the terminal device should be sufficient to let the child hold objects but not so great that opening the hook is difficult. Young children appear to use the voluntary-closing hook with as much ease as the more traditional voluntary-opening terminal devices. Box 29.2 summarizes the goals of prosthetic training for toddlers.

The training environment should be quiet, with a low table holding a few toys that require bimanual grasp, such as large beads and a string with a rigid tip. For the child with unilateral amputation, the terminal device serves to hold an object, such as a bead, while the child threads the string through the bead. The therapist is on the child's prosthetic side, holding the child's forearm at 90 degrees of elbow flexion, the optimal position of cable operation. This position also keeps the terminal device and the grasped object within the child's view. The adult moves the child's forearm forward, flexing the shoulder, tensing the cable, and causing the hook to operate. When the arm is moved back (shoulder extension), the terminal device changes position. A voluntary-opening hook opens with shoulder flexion, whereas a voluntary-closing hook closes with shoulder flexion. The therapist encourages the child to help with the control motion. With either design, the initial training involves placing a toy in the hook and encouraging the child to discover how to keep it in place. With a voluntary-opening hook, the child simply relaxes to allow the rubber bands or springs to keep the hook fingers closed. The voluntary-closing hook requires that the wearer exert tension on the control cable by the harness to keep the hook closed. Children use the same control motions as do adults, namely shoulder flexion or shoulder girdle protraction for terminal device operation. The toddler may revert to the earlier practice of opening the terminal device with the sound hand; eventually he or she will find that cable operation is more efficient, allowing more complex bimanual play maneuvers.

Reaching for objects with the sound hand is the child's initial preference. To provide the child the necessary practice with the prosthesis, the therapist or parent should offer large objects or toys that require bimanual grasp to operate. Another technique to encourage prosthetic use is to have the child hold one object in the sound hand and another in the prosthesis. For example, two hand bells are twice as tuneful as one. With some young patients, prosthetic training merely involves using the terminal device as a stabilizer rather than as a prehensile tool; for example, the child may lean the prosthesis onto a replica of a mailbox while placing objects in the slot with the sound hand. The prosthesis also serves to stabilize paper while the child draws and colors pictures.

Although children as young as 18 months have been fitted with myoelectrically controlled transradial prostheses, those who are at least 3 years of age have an easier time learning to contract the appropriate flexors and extensors to close and open the hand (see Fig. 29.6). The prosthesis is heavier, more fragile, and needs more maintenance than does a cable-operated device. To prepare the child for a myoelectric prosthesis, weight should be gradually added to the passive prosthesis. Rudimentary training begins with practice with the prosthesis off the arm. At first, the therapist may place an electrode on the sound forearm and ask the child to flex and extend the wrist to close and open the fingers of the prosthetic hand. The therapist then places an electrode on the forearm on the amputated side and encourages the child to discover that contraction of the forearm musculature on that side achieves the same results. Motorized toys can be used to help the child practice deliberate contraction of flexors and extensors to cause an electric train, for example, to go backward and forward, depending on which electrode is stimulated. When the child gains reasonable proficiency, the prosthetic socket can be made with the electrodes embedded in it. Care must be taken to achieve and maintain snug fit so that the electrodes are in constant contact with the skin. Empirical evidence is lacking regarding functional differences between cable- and myoelectrically operated prostheses for children.[36]

Fitting a myoelectrically controlled transradial prosthesis before the patient is 2 years old has been associated with greater long-term acceptance.[37-39]

Whether the prosthesis is cable or myoelectrically controlled, practice to gain prosthetic proficiency is the same. The beginner experiences many instances of dropping objects while learning the amount of muscle contraction or cable tension needed to maintain suitable terminal device closure. The ability to close the terminal device around an object develops before active release. Grasping an object from the tabletop is difficult. Children attempting to put objects into their mouths discover that the change in shoulder position alters the tension on the control cable. Similarly, children who drop toys and try to retrieve them from the floor discover how to hold the shoulder to maintain adequate cable tension. Those who are wearing myoelectrically controlled prostheses also notice that the prosthesis is easier to operate in some forearm positions than in others.

Moving pegs on a board affords the child practice in opening and closing the terminal device. Tossing a beanbag or playing card games are useful for teaching terminal device opening and closing. Cutting paper is another satisfying activity. The child holds the paper in the terminal device and uses the scissors in the sound hand. Prosthetic training

should acquaint the child with objects of various textures, sizes, and shapes. Resilient foam toys are easier to grasp than are those made of rigid material. Playing with sewing cards, nested barrels, and snap-apart beads; removing objects from a drawstring bag; opening a zipper; removing loose clothing; opening small boxes of raisins; opening and closing felt-tipped pens; and playing the xylophone entice the child to attempt grasping, holding, and releasing motions with the terminal device. Moving checkers or other markers from one location to another on a game board is a good drill. The prosthesis is helpful when swinging and climbing on the playground, rolling a wheelbarrow or doll carriage, jumping rope, and riding a tricycle. Children with unilateral amputation usually regard the intact limb as the dominant one. Many children with unilateral amputation refer to the prosthesis as the helper, which correctly identifies its role as a device that assists the intact hand.

Functional training depends on the child's ability to reach the mouth, waist, hips, feet, and perineum. Feeding, dressing, writing, and personal hygiene are incorporated at the appropriate times. Thirty-month-old children can throw and catch a ball, start uncomplicated dressing, and eat with a spoon with little spillage. Children play in sand, earth, and water and engage in rough-and-tumble activities, which can damage the prosthesis and the skin. Daily inspection and attention to minor problems help to avoid major prosthetic repairs and skin disorders.

A 2-year-old with transhumeral amputation may have a prosthesis with an elbow unit, although mastery of the elbow-locking cable is unlikely to occur before the third birthday. Strategies to self-manage donning and doffing the prosthesis can be introduced to children as young as 3 years. Most find removing the prosthesis easier than donning it.

At 3 years of age, the child may begin to be curious about the rotational possibilities of the wrist unit. Objects of various shapes within reach oblige the child to turn the terminal device in the wrist unit to the suitable position. Most objects can be manipulated with the terminal device in the pronated position; however, paper and other thin items are more easily managed with the terminal device in midposition, and small balls are best cradled in the terminal device when it is rotated to the supinated position. Holding the handlebars of a tricycle or manipulating hand controls in other wheeled toys helps the child to learn how to use terminal device rotation in the wrist unit. Prosthetic activities for the toddler should include eating, drinking, dressing, and managing crayons and other writing implements. Three-year-olds blow soap bubbles, pull up pants, pull a belt through loops in pants, and fill a cup with water from a spigot.

Throughout the toddler phase, work periods should alternate with free play that may or may not involve the prosthesis. Weekly training sessions are effective. Parents should inspect the axilla; persistent redness indicates that the harness is applying undue pressure. The home program should include written suggestions regarding activities to promote bimanual prehension, instructions concerning the care of the prosthesis and the care of the child's skin, terminology pertaining to parts of the prosthesis, and ideas regarding clothing that will not impede prosthetic function.

School-age Children

An important consideration for the growing child is a socket large enough for comfortable fit and adequate prosthetic control.

The 4-year-old child is usually coordinated enough to grasp fragile objects without breaking or crushing them. With a voluntary-opening hook, the child must maintain tension on the control cable to prevent the hook fingers from snapping shut. A voluntary closing terminal device necessitates application of gentle tension on the cable rather than forceful shoulder motion. With a myoelectrically controlled hand, the child must contract flexors minimally so that the fingers close on the object without undue pressure (Fig. 29.7). Four-year-olds can pour from containers, peel a banana, sharpen a pencil with a handheld sharpener, sew, hammer nails, and apply adhesive bandages (Fig. 29.8). The average 5-year-old can open a milk container and sweep with a brush and dust pan. Box 29.3 summarizes the goals of prosthetic training for school-age children. Performing an activity with the sound hand may facilitate accomplishing the same task with the prosthesis.[40]

Assessing the ability of a child to grasp various objects may include stringing four large beads, opening four 35-mm film cans, separating three nested screw-top barrels, assembling 10 interlocking beads, and separating a five-piece notched plastic block. More challenging activities are using a sewing card, stringing small beads, sticking an adhesive bandage to the table, cutting a paper circle and gluing it to another paper, and opening a small package of facial tissues. The most demanding tasks include cutting modeling plastic with a knife and fork, discarding five playing cards from a hand of 10 cards, lacing a shoe and making a bow, and wrapping a book.

Card games often fascinate children in elementary school. Maintaining several cards in the terminal device and then releasing the desired card involves a gradation of tension on the control cable for prostheses equipped with a voluntary-opening or -closing terminal device. Card playing is more difficult with a myoelectrically controlled prosthesis because the child must contract the forearm flexors and extensors with the correct amount of force at the appropriate time. The 5-year-old should be independent in dressing, except for small buttons, shoelaces, and pullover shirts and sweaters. The child also needs to learn how to take care of the prosthesis, keep it clean, and ask for help when parts malfunction. Skin inspection is an essential part of training.

Older Children and Adolescents

Many are able to incorporate the prosthesis into school activities. A myoelectric hook terminal device (Fig. 29.9) may be practical for the teenager who is interested in repairing bicycles and cars. Sports prostheses, such as those with a terminal device designed to hold a basketball, give wearers more opportunities to participate in group activities (Fig. 29.10).[41] Teenagers may find that playing a musical instrument is pleasurable. Simple adaptations, such as fingering a trumpet with the sound hand and supporting it with the prosthesis, can open a world of enjoyment to the musician. Older adolescents should have vocational exploration, vocational assessment, and, when indicated, job training. Obtaining a driver's license is a meaningful event

Fig. 29.7 (A) Myoelectric prosthesis. (B) Girl contracting forearm muscles to operate a myoelectrically controlled terminal device. (Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

Fig. 29.8 Bimanual activities. (A) Playing a toy saxophone. (B) Blowing bubbles. (C) Girl wearing right prosthesis while eating watermelon (A, Courtesy TRS, Inc., Boulder, CO. B and C, Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

for most teenagers. The use of a prosthesis does not influence the capacity to drive, although those with upper-limb deficiency are more likely to use adaptive devices when driving than those with lower-limb deficiency.[42,43]

Some adolescents with unilateral limb deficiency seek escape from parental control by abandoning their prostheses, preferring to manage with the intact limb. Peer acceptance and social integration appear to be more important for adolescents than the functional benefits that may be achieved with prosthetic use.[44] Certain activities are more easily accomplished without the prosthesis or cannot be done with a prosthesis. For example, prostheses are not worn when showering. Individuals with transradial amputation may prefer to stabilize objects in the antecubital fossa, using elbow flexion, rather than use a prosthetic terminal device. Simple equipment adaptation can facilitate one-handed performance, such as the use of a book holder, guitar pick band,

Box 29.3 Prosthetic Training Goals for School-age Children

Therapy sessions assist the school-age child to do the following:
- Maintain proper prosthetic fit
- Grasp firm and fragile objects without dropping or crushing them
- Open and close the terminal device reliably
- Don and doff the prosthesis independently
- Dress independently
- Recognize when the prosthesis needs repair or alteration

Parents of school-aged children with prostheses should do the following:
- Be independent in daily activities and play

Fig. 29.9 Myoelectric Greifer terminal device on right transradial prosthesis. (Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

or camera grip. Some individuals become facile with the remaining upper limb, learning to hit a baseball and folding laundry with one hand. Most people develop strategies that enable them to perform all desired activities.[45]

Function of children fitted with unilateral upper prostheses can be measured by the Prosthetic Upper Extremity Functional Index administered to parents and older children[46] or the similar University of New Brunswick Test of Prosthetic Function.[47] Results from formal testing compare favorably with questionnaires regarding prosthetic use.[48]

Older children report quality of life about the same for those who do and do not wear prostheses,[49] with prostheses used for specific activities.[50] Overall, children with upper-limb deficiency are as socially competent as able-bodied peers.[51]

REHABILITATION OF CHILDREN WITH LOWER-LIMB LOSS

Children with lower-limb deficiencies deserve clinic team management similar to that described for those with upper-limb deficiencies. Early referral to a clinical team is equally important for the family with a child who has a lower-limb amputation or limb deficiency. Peer support is also invaluable for parents who need to share concerns, suggestions, and camaraderie with others who are coping with a similar situation. Treatment should suit the patient's developmental stage so that prosthetic use fosters achievement of key milestones.[52] Parents serve as the primary instructors of their children, with the guidance of the physical therapist and other members of the clinical team.

Infants

Sitting balance is a major guide to lower-limb prosthetic fitting. The average age when babies accomplish independent sitting is 6 months. Sitting depends on postural control and antigravity muscle strength. Sitting balance and trunk stabilization are also important for freeing the hands to explore the environment. Box 29.4 summarizes the goals of rehabilitation of infants with lower-limb malformation or amputation.

Infants who are 5 to 7 months of age discover the mobility possibilities of crawling and creeping, moving from supine to four-point and sitting positions, and moving to the hands and knees from the sitting position. Crawling involves the alternate action of the opposite arms and legs in a manner similar to walking. Hip extensors strengthen during crawling and kneeling. Rocking on four points before launching into crawling is another important precursor to walking.

Most babies are able to overcome gravity to pull up to a standing position and rise from kneeling to standing at approximately 8 months. When pulling to a standing position, the baby expends great energy bouncing and actively disturbing balance. Bouncing gradually gives way to shifting weight from side to side. The initial standing posture is wide based, with the hips abducted, flexed, and externally rotated. The base accommodates the child's new center of gravity position, which is higher than when crawling. Maintaining upright posture depends on sufficient maturity of the visual, proprioceptive, and vestibular systems.

Stepping movements are common among 7-month-olds who are supported. Cruising along furniture is a preferred mode of locomotion when the child is approximately 10 months old. Cruising strengthens the hip abductors. The typical nondisabled child stands alone at approximately 11 months and walks alone at 12 months.[18] The urge to walk is the culmination of the endless pulling and standing activity that has occupied the baby for several preceding months.

Some infants undergo surgery either to transform a congenitally anomalous limb into one that is more suitable for a prosthesis or as part of the treatment of a limb that has been involved in trauma or in the presence of tumor. Skin grafting in these instances does not result in adverse functional outcome.[53] Another intervention applicable to a few children is limb lengthening using an Ilizarov apparatus.[54,55] For children born with proximal focal femoral deficiency (PFFD), where there is shortening of the thigh with an intact foot, a knee rotationplasty is often performed. This involves sectioning the limb and rotating the distal portion posteriorly; the foot thus serves as a partial leg, enabling fitting with a transtibial prosthesis (Fig. 29.11).[56,57] Very few children with myelodysplasia undergo amputation of lower limbs that have severe contractures or have intractable ulcers.[58]

Regardless of the etiology of limb deficiency, the goal of prosthetic fitting is to facilitate the child's attainment of motor milestones. The infant who is missing a lower limb should have prosthetic restoration at approximately 6 months, when the baby has enough trunk control for sitting and is ready to pull to a standing position. A simple

Fig. 29.10 Activity-specific terminal devices. (A) Girl playing volleyball with Barrage terminal device. (B) Girl downhill skiing with right Downhill Racer Ski terminal device. (C) Girl mountain biking wearing a transradial prosthesis with Swinger terminal device. (D) SuperSport terminal device. (C, Courtesy of M.A. Sweezy and TRS, Inc., Boulder, CO.)

prosthesis fosters symmetric sitting balance and aids the baby's attempts to pull to standing. In addition, the prosthesis equalizes leg length, adds weight to the anomalous side, and obviates the tendency to compensate with a one-legged standing pattern. Reducing the weight asymmetry inherent in limb deficiency facilitates rotational control of the trunk. The prosthesis enables standing and walking. Otherwise, the world is circumscribed by the confines of the stroller or playpen, and the deficiency becomes a source of shame. Fitting before 6 months might hinder the baby's efforts to turn from prone to supine position and back again.

The first prosthesis includes a solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) foot, the smallest foot manufactured (Fig. 29.12). Rubber-soled shoes give the infant more traction and are

Box 29.4 Prosthetic Training Goals for Infants With Lower-Limb Deficiency

Therapy sessions are designed to facilitate the infant's
- Comfort with the prosthesis
- Wearing tolerance
- Ability to stand by leaning against a table
- Ability to cruise around furniture
- Ability to walk with and without support from a doll carriage or other supporting toy

Parents of infants with lower-limb prostheses should do the following:
- Apply and remove the prosthesis correctly
- Care for the child's skin
- Care for the prosthesis
- Recognize and report any problems with the prosthesis

therefore preferable to leather-soled shoes. The prosthesis must be comfortable when the baby stands, sits, squats, crawls, and climbs. A silicone socket liner (Fig. 29.13) is desirable to protect sensitive skin from chafing in the socket. The toddler with transfemoral amputation may start with a prosthesis having a locked knee (Fig. 29.14).[59,60] Another type of knee joint available to the pediatric population is a polycentric knee (Fig. 29.15). The use of a four-bar linkage system allows for the axis of motion to be posterior during stance, allowing greater stability, and anterior during swing to assist in clearance. Polycentric knee units are being incorporated into prostheses for young toddlers and often into the child's first prosthesis. Teenagers are often fitted with hydraulic-, pneumatic-, or microprocessor-controlled knees that allow for greater variability of movement and physical activities. The drawbacks to hydraulic and pneumatic knees are added weight, cost, and intricacy of adjustments which is why they are typically reserved for the adolescent population.

During the first training session, the therapist and parent confirm that the prosthesis fits comfortably, without redness of the residual limb. Most of the handling of the child should be done by the parent, rather than the therapist, so that the family gains confidence in managing the child at home. Useful equipment includes a play table, an elevated sandbox, a floor mat, a rolling stool, a full-length mirror, steps, and a ramp. The parent should encourage the child's standing on both feet by first supporting the trunk and then gradually reducing the support. The young child gains prosthetic tolerance and standing balance by being near the table. Initially, the child may lean the torso against the table while manipulating toys that require use of both hands. Toys should be moved to places on the table where the child has to reach in different directions, shifting weight. Eventually, the child will move along the periphery of the table to place objects in the desired location. When first learning to walk with a prosthesis, the child moves cautiously. Initially, the child takes small steps and has a wide base, keeping the trunk upright and arms abducted. The new prosthesis wearer resembles normal peers who begin walking with

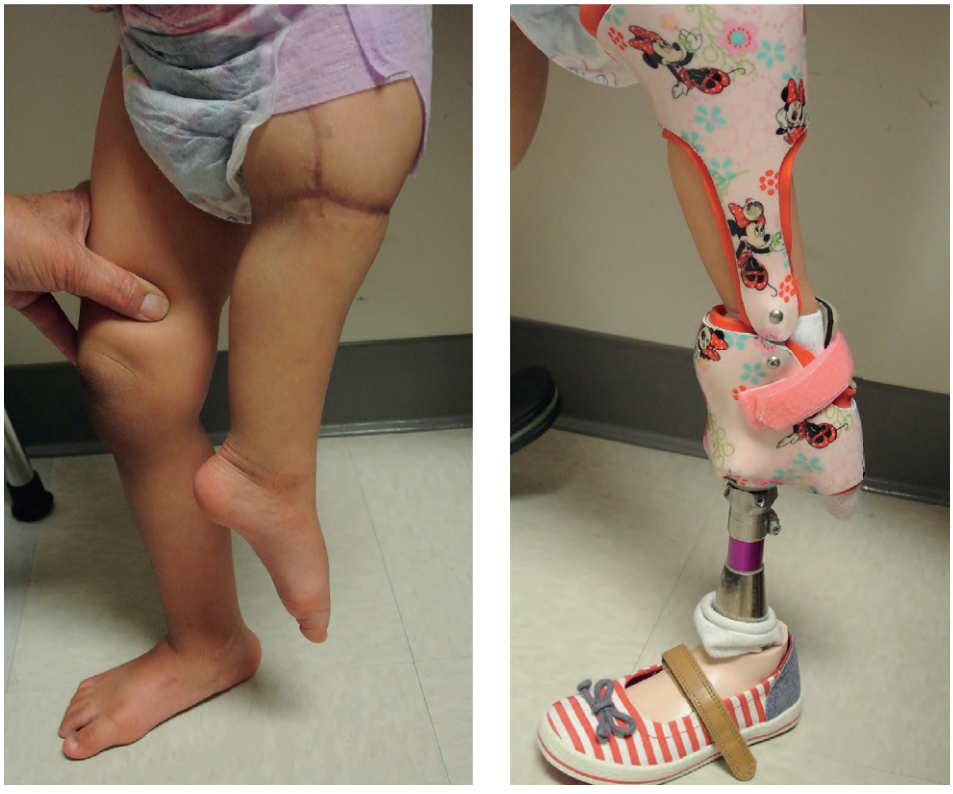


Fig. 29.11 (A) A child with proximal focal femoral deficiency after rotationplasty (B). Same child from figure A, now wearing prosthesis. The presence of ankle function offers superior control and function over a mechanical prosthetic knee. (From Le JT, Scott-Wyard PR. Pediatric limb difference and amputations. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2015;26[1]:95–108.)

Fig. 29.12 Children's prosthetic feet. (A) Solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) foot. (B) SACH feet adaptable for crawling and walking. (C) Flex Foot Junior. (D) Boy running while wearing transtibial prostheses with Runner Junior feet. (A and D, Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN. [B] Courtesy TRS, Inc., Boulder, CO. C, © Össur.)

increased hip and knee flexion, full-foot initial contact, short stride, increased cadence, and relative foot drop on the sound side in swing phase.[16-18]

At home, a sturdy table that is chest high to the child encourages standing balance and cruising during play with toys placed on the table. Raised sandboxes, blocks, finger paints, and pans of water with floating toys all promote standing balance. A playpen is a good environment to enable the baby to pull to standing, cruise the perimeter, and sit when the baby wishes. Balls are useful in prosthetic training. Kicking a ball requires balance on one leg and flexion of the other leg. The baby starts by holding on to a stable object with both hands, then with one, and eventually letting go. Throwing a ball requires good balance and usually sustains the infant's interest. Wheeled toys, such as a doll carriage, enable the child to walk with a modicum of support. Placing toys where the child must take a few steps to reach them fosters independent walking.

Young children frequently revert to crawling and sitting on the floor as they grow accustomed to the prosthesis. Falling is seldom a problem, inasmuch as the child generally lands on the buttocks as an able-bodied child would. When the child falls or tries to retrieve a toy on the floor, the parents and therapist should let the young person explore the movement and not be overly protective. Just as other children learn to walk by supporting themselves on furniture, the child who wears a prosthesis should have the same experience to develop confidence. Parallel bars, walkers, and

Fig. 29.13 Silicone socket liner suspension system. Uses a pin-locking mechanism to attach to the distal end of the socket. (© Össur.)

Fig. 29.14 Single-axis knee units with manual lock. (Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

harnesses are seldom advisable for children with unilateral amputation or bilateral transtibial amputation.

A prosthesis imposes weight-bearing loads on portions of the leg not ordinarily used for this purpose. Consequently, building tolerance to prosthetic wear is important so that skin over weight-bearing areas can adjust to the pressure. During the first week, most infants tolerate 1 hour of wear, after which the prosthesis should be removed and the skin examined. After a 10- to 15-minute rest period, the prosthesis can be reapplied for another hour. Signs of fatigue, limping, and the avoidance of standing on the prosthesis indicate that the prosthesis is irritating and should be removed. The infant with a transfemoral prosthesis should be checked to determine whether skin near the proximal part of the prosthesis is irritated by urine or feces, which may leak from the diaper.

Toddlers

By 15 months, toddlers are upright and mobile. The heel-toe sequence replaces flat-foot contact during the second year. Neurologic maturation, changes in physique, and improved strength are evident as the child's base of support narrows. Muscular activity has matured into the adult pattern. Goals for rehabilitation (Box 29.5) reflect the developmental activities of a preschool-age child. Young children with transfemoral amputation who were fitted with a prosthesis having an articulated knee used the prosthesis successfully.[61]

Another milestone expected of all children, including the child with a prosthesis, is running, which begins between 2 and 4 years of age. The flight phase (double float), the period when both feet are off the ground, occurs by strong application of propulsive force during late stance. The prosthetic foot offers much less energy storage and release compared with the gastrocnemius. Consequently, the child with a prosthesis adopts an asymmetric running gait that emphasizes propulsion on the sound side. Two-year-olds can kick a ball accurately, steer a push toy, and jump. As with running, jumping with a prosthesis is primarily an action of the sound side. Games of throwing and catching a ball or beanbag and tossing darts help the toddler to refine balance with the prosthesis.

The 3-year-old will probably leap, jump, gallop, climb stairs step over step, and ride a tricycle. The tricycle pedal may have a strap to secure the prosthetic foot. Jumping from a step and hopping are other toddler stunts. Playground equipment, such as a jungle gym, slide, swing, seesaw, sandbox, and tunnels, is enticing. Children with unilateral transtibial amputation achieve an almost normal gait and have no difficulty in climbing inclines and stairs. Opportunities for kneeling, managing various types of chairs, and getting to and from the floor are additional elements in rehabilitation. The child will need help in removing and donning the prosthesis.

School-age Children and Adolescents

By 4 years of age, most children can descend stairs step over step, ride a bicycle, and roller skate (Fig. 29.16). Five-year-olds skip rope and play dodgeball. Accurate kicking demonstrates balance on one foot while transferring force to the ball. By age 6 years, most children can don and doff the prosthesis independently. They can start, stop, and change direction with ease, as well as skip and hop for long distances. The child moves toward independence in prosthetic management as well, taking more responsibility for donning and doffing, skin inspection, and maintenance of the prosthesis (Box 29.6). Minimal difference exists between the gait performance of children wearing Syme prostheses and those with transtibial prostheses.[62,63]

Children who undergo lower-limb amputation after 5 years may respond favorably to balance and gait training similar to that appropriate for adults.[64] Video games that involve weight shifting, such as bowling and tennis, improve balance in an engaging manner.[65] Physical therapy emphasizes dynamic stability, weight shifting, control of the prosthetic foot, and, in the case of the child with transfemoral amputation, the knee unit (Fig. 29.17). The C-leg can be fitted to adolescents who are tall enough to accommodate the size of the microprocessor-controlled knee unit.[66]

Sports are particularly useful for developing self-esteem, as well as strength and coordination. Most children with amputations take part in physical education classes at school, sometimes with modified activity. Carbon acrylic or graphite reinforcements enable the prosthesis to withstand high stresses. The child should understand that shoes must always be worn; the plantar surface of most prosthetic feet is not durable enough to withstand abrasion by a sidewalk, and the alignment of the foot is intended for a shoe.

Fig. 29.15 Polycentric knee units used to provide stability and aid in initiation of smooth gait pattern. (A) Total Knee Junior. (B) 3R66 Knee Joint for Children. (A, © Össur. B, Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

Box 29.5 Prosthetic Training Goals for Toddlers With Lower-Limb Deficiency

Goals of rehabilitation for toddlers with lower-limb deficiency include the following:
- Full-time wear of the prosthesis, except for bathing and sleeping
- Use of the prosthesis in age-appropriate ambulatory activities

Parents of toddlers with lower-limb prostheses should do the following:
- Encourage use of the prosthesis
- Provide toys and equipment that require age-appropriate activities
- Inspect the skin to determine whether the prosthesis causes undue irritation

Teenagers who sustained amputation in an earthquake displayed similar quality of life, although those with transtibial amputation achieved higher levels of activity than those who had transfemoral amputation.[67]

Some activities are more easily performed without a prosthesis or do not require a prosthesis. Children should learn how to use crutches as an alternate mode of locomotion when the prosthesis is being repaired. Bathing is facilitated either by sitting on the shower floor or by using a sturdy bath seat. Most people prefer to swim and scuba dive without a prosthesis. They hop or use crutches to get from the dressing room to the water's edge. Sports prostheses, such as a swimming prosthesis with a fin in place of the foot, can be constructed. Bicycling, skiing, and mountain climbing are other sports that can be enjoyed with or without a prosthesis.

REHABILITATION OF CHILDREN WITH MULTIPLE LIMB AMPUTATION

Babies who have lower-limb deficiency, together with anomalies of one or both upper limbs, generally do best by being fitted first with simple lower-limb prostheses to

Fig. 29.16 Boy wearing transtibial prosthesis pedaling an adaptive bike. (Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

Fig. 29.17 (A) Boy wearing transfemoral prosthesis with hydraulic knee kneeling to pick up a ball. (B) Same child wearing a prosthesis fitted with a modular hydraulic sports knee. (Courtesy Otto Bock Orthopedic Industry, Inc., Minneapolis, MN.)

Box 29.6 Goals for School-age Children and Adolescents With Lower-Limb Deficiency

In later childhood and adolescence, rehabilitation includes the following:

- Monitoring and maintaining proper prosthetic fit
- Inspecting the skin
- Donning and doffing the prosthesis independently
- Dressing independently
- Engaging in the full range of ambulatory activities with the prosthesis
- Recognizing when the prosthesis needs repair or alteration

Parents of school-age children and adolescents with lower-limb prostheses should do the following:

- Encourage the young person's independence
- Provide opportunities for sports participation

foster sitting balance. The introduction of upper- and lower-limb prostheses simultaneously is apt to overwhelm the infant and family.

When both upper limbs are anomalous, a simple bilateral fitting counteracts the tendency toward development of positional scoliosis. The baby with bilateral upper-limb deficiency should receive prostheses after independent walking is established; otherwise, prostheses make it more difficult to crawl, move about on the floor, and pull to standing with the chin for support. Those with bilateral upper-limb deficiency become quite skillful with foot prehension. The extent to which foot use should be encouraged is controversial. Foot prehension is so rarely observed in public that the child who does use the feet may experience unwanted stares. Nevertheless, feet have the tactile sensation and considerable dexterity that prostheses lack. Children with bilateral longitudinal deficiencies have partial or complete hands; they would be encumbered by wearing prostheses. Functional activities with and without prostheses should be introduced according to the physical and emotional maturity of the child. Adaptive aids may be required for some functions, such as personal hygiene.

Infants with trimembral or quadrimembral limb deficiency move about by rolling along the floor. They need

Case Example 29.4 **A Child With Traumatic Transfemoral Amputation**

P.J., who is 4.5 years old, was riding his bicycle on the street in front of his home at twilight when an automobile turned the corner and struck him. In the police statement, the driver said he did not notice the child. P.J.'s father rushed him to the local hospital, where the boy was admitted to have his leg and thigh wounds débrided and dressed. Despite meticulous care at the hospital, the thigh wound became necrotic. The attending pediatrician arranged a consultation with the surgeon, who advised amputation at the transfemoral level immediately proximal to the femoral condyles. The family consented to the surgery, which proceeded uneventfully.

P.J.'s amputation wound was covered with an Unna dressing and healed rapidly. He is scheduled to come to the prosthetic clinic this morning.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- Describe the postoperative program that will enable P.J. to achieve the most rapid rehabilitation.
- What components (foot, shank, knee unit, socket, and suspension) would suit P.J. in his first prosthesis?
- Outline the steps in training P.J. to use his prosthesis.
- In addition to walking on level surfaces, what other activities should the physical therapist include in the initial rehabilitation program?
- How will P.J. resume riding his bicycle?
- What knee unit would suit P.J. when he enters junior high school?

opportunities to look at objects and manipulate toys with their mouths and their residual limbs. Most infants develop good sitting balance and can scoot along on their buttocks. Because of the drastic reduction in body surface, these children can easily become overheated. They should be dressed very lightly to enable heat dissipation. Young children with bilateral transfemoral deficiency usually begin with a pair of prostheses that do not have knee units. They may walk indoors without any assistive devices; however, few are willing to venture outdoors and across streets without at least one cane. In adolescence, many find that a wheelchair provides more efficient mobility. Those with bilateral hip disarticulations may be able to walk with prostheses at home but usually rely on a wheelchair for community travel.

Summary

Habilitation or rehabilitation of children with limb deficiencies can be most gratifying. The physical therapist, together with all members of the clinical team, should design the program to assist the child in achieving developmental milestones associated with maturing upper- and lower-limb function. Psychosocial factors govern the behavior of all children, although it appears that those with limb deficiency behave in a comparable manner to able-bodied peers. Peer support is very helpful for children and parents. Clinic team members need to recognize the basis for parental distress while fostering realistic expectations for the child's function by demonstrating that the child is lovable regardless of the condition of the limbs.

References

1. Stanger M. Limb deficiencies and amputations. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical Therapy for Children*. 4th ed. T. Louis; 2014.
2. Fisk JR. Terminology in pediatric limb deficiency. In: Smith DG, Michael JW, Bowker JH, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies: Surgical, Prosthetic, and Rehabilitation Principles*. 3rd ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004:779–781.
3. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, MacKenzie EJ. Limb amputation and limb deficiency: epidemiology and recent trends in the United States. *South Med J*. 2002;95:875–883.
4. Jain S, Lakhtakia PK. Profile of congenital transverse deficiencies among cases of congenital orthopaedic anomalies. *J Orthop Surg (Hong Kong)*. 2002;10:45–52.
5. Le JT, Scott-Wyard PR. Pediatric limb differences and amputations. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am*. 2015;26:95–108.
6. Conner KA, et al. Pediatric traumatic amputations and hospital resource utilization in the United States, 2003. *J Trauma*. 2010;68:131–137.
7. Nguyen A, et al. Lawn mower injuries in children: a 30-year experience. *ANZ J Surg*. 2008;78:759–763.
8. Vollman D, Smith GA. Epidemiology of lawn-mower-related injuries in children in the United States, 1990–2004. *Pediatrics*. 2006;(11):273–278.
9. Bhatta ST, et al. All-terrain vehicle injuries in children: injury patterns and prognostic implications. *Pediatr Radiol*. 2004;34:130–133.
10. Griffet J. Amputation and prosthetic fitting in paediatric patients. *Orthop Traumatol Surg Res*. 2016;102:S161–S175.
11. Lindfors N, Marttila I. Replantation or revacularisation injuries in children: incidence, epidemiology, and outcome. *J Plast Surg Hand Surg*. 2012;46:359–363.
12. Ginsberg JP, et al. A comparative analysis of functional outcomes in adolescents and young adults with lower-extremity bone sarcoma. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2007;40:964–969.
13. Robert RS, Ottaviani G, Huh WW, et al. Psychosocial and functional outcomes in long-term survivors of osteosarcoma: a comparison of limb-salvage surgery and amputation. *Pediatr Blood Cancer*. 2010;54:990–999.
14. Ottaviani G, Robert RS, Huh WW, et al. Functional, psychosocial and professional outcomes in long-term survivors of lower-extremity osteosarcomas: amputation versus limb salvage. *Cancer Treat Res*. 2009;152:421–436.
15. Hopyan S, Tan JW, Graham HK, et al. Functional and upright time following limb salvage, amputation, and rotationplasty for pediatric sarcoma of bone. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 2006;26:405–408.
16. Edelstein JE. Developmental kinesiology. In: Smith DG, Michael JW, Bowker JH, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies*. 3rd ed. Rosemont, Ill: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004:783–788.
17. Campbell SK. Understanding motor performance in children. In: Campbell SK, Palisano RJ, Orlin MN, eds. *Physical Therapy for Children*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2014.
18. Cech D, Martin S. *Functional Movement Development across the Life Span*. 3rd ed. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2012.
19. Fixsen JA. Major lower limb congenital shortening: a mini review. *J Pediatr Orthop*. 2003;12:1–12.
20. Burgoyne LL, Billups CA, Jiron JLJR, et al. Phantom limb pain in young cancer-related amputees: recent experience at St. Jude children's research hospital. *Clin J Pain*. 2012;28:222–225.
21. DeMoss P, Ramsey LH, Karlson CW. Phantom Limb Pain in Pediatric Oncology. *Frontiers in Neurology*. 2018;9. Article 219.
22. Anghelescu DL, Kelly CN, Steen BD, et al. Mirror therapy for phantom limb pain at a pediatric oncology institution. *Rehabil Oncol*. 2016;34:104–110.
23. Wang X, Yi Y, Tang D, et al. Gabapentin as an Adjuvant Therapy for Prevention of Acute Phantom-Limb Pain in Pediatric Patients Undergoing Amputation for Malignant Bone Tumors: A Prospective Double-Blind Randomized Controlled Trial. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*. 2018;55:721–727.

24. Andrews L, Anderson L, Fairbain S, Downing L. Care planning for children with lower limb amputation. *Nurs Child Young People.* 2012;24:14–19.
25. Mandacina S, Uellendahl JE, Edelstein JE. Special considerations with children. In: Carroll K, Edelstein JE, eds. *Prosthetics and Patient Management*. Thorofare, NJ: Charles Slack; 2006:181–190.
26. Cohen J, Edelstein JE. Limb Deficiency. In: Moroz A, Flanagan SR, Zaretsky H, eds. *Medical Aspects of Disability for the Rehabilitation Professional.* 5th ed. New York: Springer; 2017:383–414.
27. Huizing K, Reinders-Messelink H, Maathuis C, et al. Age at first prosthetic fitting and later functional outcome in children and young adults with unilateral congenital below-elbow deficiency: a cross-sectional study. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2010;34:166–174.
28. Meurs M, Maathuis CG, Lucas C, et al. Prescription of the first prosthesis and later use in children with congenital unilateral upper limb deficiency: a systematic review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2006;303:165–173.
29. Ten Kate J, Smit G, Breedveld P. 3D-printed upper limb prostheses: a review. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol.* 2017;12:300–314.
30. Burn MB, Ta A, Gogola GR. Three-dimensional printing of prosthetic hands for children. *J Hand Surg Am.* 2016;41:e103–e109.
31. Zuniga JM, Peck JL, Srivastava T, Pierce JE, Dudley DR, et al. Functional changes through the usage of 3D-printed transitional prostheses for children. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol.* 2017;8:1–7. Nov.
32. Gretsch KF, Lather HD, Peddada KV, Deeken CR, Wall LB, Goldfarb CA. Development of novel 3D-printed robotic prosthetic for transradial amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016;40:400–403.
33. Zuniga JM, Peck J, Srivastava Katsavelis D, Carson A. An open source 3D printed transitional hand prosthesis for children. *J Prosthetics & Orthotics.* 2016;28:103–108.
34. Zuniga JM, Carson AM, Peck JM, Kalina T, et al. The development of a low-cost three-dimensional printed shoulder, arm, and hand prostheses for children. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2017;41:205–209.
35. Shimokakimoto T, Ueno T, Akimichi N, Suzuki K. Building blocks system for a prosthesis training of a child with congenital amputee. *Conf Proc IEEE Eng Med Biol Soc.* 2016;5034–5037.
36. Carey SL, Lura DJ, Highsmith MJ. Differences in myoelectric and body-powered upper-limb prostheses: systematic literature review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2015;52:247–262.
37. Routhier F, Vincent C, Morissette MJ, et al. Clinical results of an investigation of paediatric upper limb myoelectric prosthesis fitting at the Quebec Rehabilitation Institute. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2001;25: 119–131.
38. Egermann M, Kasten P, Thomsen J. Myoelectric hand prostheses in very young children. *Int Orthop.* 2009;33:1101–1106.
39. Toda M, Chin T, Shibata Y, Mizobe F. Use of powered prosthesis for children with upper limb deficiency at Hyogo Rehabilitation Center. *PLoS One.* 2015. eo131746.
40. Romkema S, Bongers RM, van der Sluis CK. Intermanual transfer effect in young children after training in a complex skill: mechanistic, pseudorandomized, pretest-posttest study. *Phys Ther.* 2015;95: 730–739.
41. Walker JL, Coburn TR, Cottle W, et al. Recreational terminal devices for children with upper extremity amputations. *J Pediatr Orthop.* 2008;28:271–273.
42. Burger H, Marincek C. Driving ability following upper limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2013;37:391–395.
43. Fernandez A, Lopez MJ, Navarro R. Performance of persons with juvenile-onset amputation in driving motor vehicles. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2000;81:288–291.
44. Vasluian E, de Jong IG, Janssen WG, Poelma MJ, et al. Opinions of youngsters with congenital below-elbow deficiency, and those of their parents and professionals concerning prosthetic use and rehabilitation treatment. *PLoS One.* 2013;. e67101.
45. de Jong IG, Reinders-Messelink HA, Tates K, Janssen WG, Poelma MJ, et al. Activity and participation of children and adolescents with unilateral congenital below elbow deficiency: an online focus group study. *J Rehabil Med.* 2012;44:885–892.
46. Korkmaz M, Erbahceci F, Ulger O, Topuz S. Evaluation of functionality in acquired and congenital upper extremity child amputees. *Acta Orthop Traumatol Turc.* 2012;46:262–268.
47. Burger H, Brezova D, Vidmar G. A comparison of the University of New Brunswick Test of Prosthetic Function and the Assessment of Capacity for Myoelectric Control. *Eur J Phy Rehabil Med.* 2014;50:433–438.
48. Burger H, Brezovar D, Marincek C. Comparison of clinical test and questionnaires for the evaluation of upper limb prosthetic use in children. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2004;26:911–916.
49. James MA, Bagley AM, Brasington K, et al. Impact of prostheses on function and quality of life for children with unilateral congenital below-the-elbow deficiency. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2006; 88:2356–2365.
50. Buffart LM, Roebroeck ME, van Heijningen VG, et al. Evaluation of arm and prosthetic functioning in children with a congenital transverse reduction deficiency of the upper limb. *J Rehabil Med.* 2007; 39:379–386.
51. Hermansson L, Eliasson AC, Engstrom I. Psychosocial adjustment in Swedish children with upper-limb reduction deficiency and a myoelectric prosthetic hand. *Acta Paediatr.* 2005;94:479–488.
52. Chambers HG. Pediatric gait analysis. In: Perry J, Burnfield JM, eds. *Gait Analysis: Normal and Pathological Function.* 2nd ed. Thorofare, NJ: Slack; 2010:341–363.
53. Parry IS, Mooney KN, Chau C, et al. Effects of skin grafting on successful prosthetic use in children with lower extremity amputation. *J Burn Care Res.* 2008;29:949–954.
54. El-Sayed MM, Correll J, Pohlig K. Limb sparing reconstructive surgery and Ilizarov lengthening in fibular hemimelia of Achterman-Kalamchi type II patients. *J Pediatr Orthop B.* 2010;19:55–60.
55. Walker JL, Knapp D, Minter C, et al. Adult outcomes following amputation or lengthening for fibular deficiency. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2009;91:797–804.
56. Busse JW, Jacobs CL, Swiontkowski MF, et al. Complex limb salvage of early amputation for severe lower-limb injury: a meta-analysis of observational studies. *J Orthop Trauma.* 2007;21:70–76.
57. Sakkers R, van Wijk I. Amputation and rotationplasty in children with limb deficiencies: current concepts. *J Child Orthop.* 2016;10:619–626.
58. Benedetti MG, Okita Y, Recubini E, Mariani E, Leardini A, Manfrini M. How much clinical and functional impairment do children trated with knee rotationplasty experience in adulthood? *Clin Orthop Relat Res.* 2016;474:995–1004.
59. Jeans KA, Karol LA, Cummings D, Singhal K. Comparison of gait after Syme and transtibial amputation in children: factors that may play a role in function. *J Bone Joint Surg Am.* 2014;96:1641–1647.
60. Andrysek J, Naumann S, Cleghorn WL. Design characteristics of pediatric prosthetic knees. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng.* 2004;12:369–378.
61. Andrysek J, Naumann S, Cleghorn WL. Design and quantitative evaluation of a stance-phase controlled prosthetic knee joint for children. *IEEE Trans Neural Syst Rehabil Eng.* 2005;13:437–443.
62. Geil M, Coulter C. Analysis of locomotor adaptations in young children with limb loss in an early prosthetic knee prescription protocol. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2014;38:54–61.
63. Feick E, Hamilton PR, Luis M, Corbin M, Salback NM, et al. A pilot study examining measures of balance and mobility in children with unilateral lower-limb amputation. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016;40:65–74.
64. Tofts LJ, Hamblin N. C-Leg improves function and quality of life in an adolescent traumatic trans-femoral amputee: a ase study. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2014;38:413–417.
65. Chu CK, Wong MS. Comparison of prosthetic outcomes between adolescent transtibial and transfemooral amputee after Sichuan earthquake using Step Activity Monitor and Prosthesis Evaluation Questionnaire. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016;40:58–64.
66. Michielsen A, Van Wijk I, Ketelaar M. Participation and quality of life in children and adolescents with congenital limb deficiencies: a narrative review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2010;34:351–361.
67. Edelstein JE. Rehabilitation without prostheses. In: Smith DG, Michael JW, Bowker JH, eds. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies.* 3rd ed. Rosemont, Ill: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004:745–756.

30 Prosthetic Options for Persons With Upper Extremity Amputation ☆

SUSAN SPAULDING and TZUREI CHEN

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Describe potential functional outcomes for individuals with various levels of upper extremity amputations or limb deficiency.
2. Describe preprosthetic care goals and associated prosthetic interventions.
3. Discuss and document clinical-reasoning factors related to prosthetic options (i.e., no prosthesis, passive functional prosthesis, restorations, body-powered, externally powered, hybrid, or activity-specific prostheses) with interdisciplinary colleagues.
4. Explain the purpose of the prosthetic socket.
5. Compare terminal device options for use in functional activities (e.g., voluntary closing and voluntary opening hooks; single degree-of-freedom, multiarticulating, and passive hands; and activity-specific terminal devices).
6. Explain donning and suspension techniques with upper extremity prostheses.
7. Describe the movement strategies necessary for control of transradial and transhumeral body-powered prostheses.
8. Describe various methods to acquire a signal for control of externally powered prostheses.
9. Identify potential sources of noise and methods to reduce noise in the myoelectric signal.
10. Compare dual-site and pattern recognition externally powered control systems.
11. Explain the basic control schemes for operation of transradial and transhumeral externally powered prostheses.

Prosthetic management of individuals with upper extremity amputations presents all health professionals, including prosthetists and therapists, with a set of unique challenges. For those wearing an upper extremity prosthesis, the terminal device (TD) of the prosthesis is not covered or obscured by clothing in the same way that a lower extremity prosthesis is "hidden" by pants, socks, and shoes. The person with upper extremity amputation must cope with not only physical appearance changes, but the loss of some of the most complex movement patterns and functional activities of the human body.

In addition, upper extremity limb loss deprives the patient of an extensive and valuable system of tactile and proprioceptive inputs that previously provided "feedback" to guide and refine functional movement.[1,2] Even the simplest tasks related to grasp and release become challenging. The ability to position the prosthetic limb segments in space, as well as the ability to maintain advantageous postures needed to manipulate objects, challenge the medical community to continuously improve the functional and aesthetic outcomes of prostheses for patients in this population.[3–5]

Many of these design challenges have been addressed with new and emerging technologies. These new technologies have made it possible, in some circumstances, to successfully "fit" a patient with high-level amputation who previously would have little or no reasonable expectation to succeed with traditional technology and fitting techniques.[6,7] Advanced socket interface designs and material science have afforded prosthetists the ability to offer stronger, more stable platforms for all levels of amputation, while in most cases saving substantial amounts of weight. Similarly, more innovative suspension strategies and interface materials have increased the functional ranges of motion a patient can comfortably achieve.[8]

These advancements have had a profound and positive effect on the comfort, function, and compliance of both body-powered and externally powered prostheses at all levels of amputation. Furthermore, the huge strides made in the externally powered arena have in large part been driven by these advancements and technologic breakthroughs.

Length of the Residual Limb

Amputations to the upper extremity can be classified or named by the limb segments affected (Fig. 30.1). The most

☆The authors extend appreciation to John R. Zenie, whose work in the prior edition provided the foundation for this chapter.

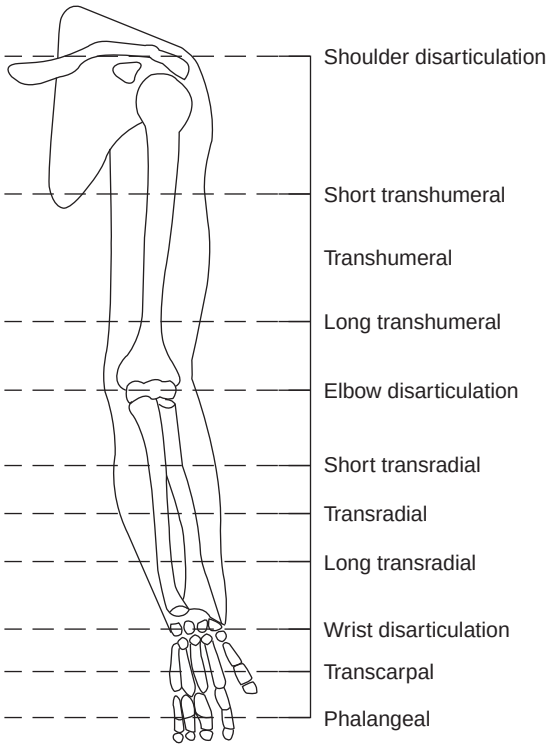


Fig. 30.1 Classification of upper extremity amputation and residual limbs. (From Murdoch G, Wilson AB. *Amputation: Surgical Practice and Patient Management*. Oxford, UK: Butterworth; 1996:308.)

distal are at the finger, partial hand, or transcarpal levels. Amputations that separate the carpal bones from the radius and ulna are referred to as wrist disarticulations. Amputations that occur within the substance of the radius and ulna are classified as transradial amputations. When the humerus is preserved but the radius and ulna are removed, the amputation is referred to as an elbow disarticulation. Those that leave more than 30% of humeral length are designated as transhumeral amputations. Residual limb length less than 30% of the proximal humerus is treated like shoulder disarticulation because of the lack of humeral lever arm. More proximal amputations that invade the central body cavity, resecting the clavicle and leading to derangement of the scapula, are described as interscapulothoracic (forequarter) amputations.

For those with transverse amputations of the forearm, the length of the residual limb affects the amount of functional elbow flexion and functional forearm pronation and supination that will be retained independent of prosthetic intervention.[1] Articulations between the radius and the ulna along the entire forearm are necessary to provide for natural anatomic movements in supination and pronation; as the level of amputation moves proximally from the styloid process of the radius toward the elbow, the ability to perform and to use pronation and supination during functional activities is progressively lost (Fig. 30.2). In addition, not all available transverse motion can be fully captured in the prosthetic socket. When the residual forearm is extremely short, all transverse motion is essentially lost, and it is difficult to gain any active functional forearm rotation for prosthetic use.

Amputations at the level of the elbow (elbow disarticulation) derive little functional benefit from the added length

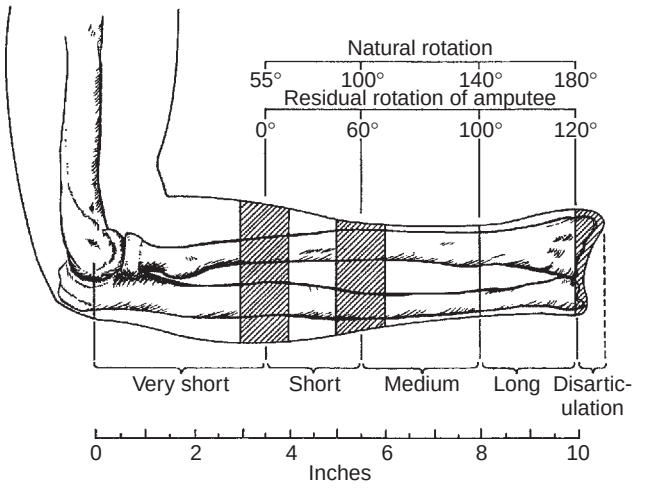


Fig. 30.2 Potential for pronation and supination of transradial residual limbs of differing lengths. (From Taylor CI. The biomechanics of control in upper extremity prosthetics. *Orthot Prosthet.* 1981;35:20.)

because the length of the limb limits options for cosmetic and functional placement of elbow units within the prosthesis without substantially improving functional leverage.

Although the primary concern of surgeons who perform an upper extremity amputation is adequate closure of the wound, they must also consider the potential advantages of a fairly long lever arm, balanced by an understanding of the space requirements for prosthetic components. Provided that adequate skin and tissue viability are not compromised, consideration should be given to adequate room for a full array of prosthetic componentry.

Etiology of Upper Extremity Amputation

The etiology of upper extremity amputations varies widely. The earliest recorded use of limb prostheses was that of a soldier who reportedly amputated his own limb around 484 BC.[9] One of the earliest known prostheses was fabricated of copper around 300 BC.[10] These early attempts at prosthetic management predate early surgical considerations for lifesaving reasons by many decades. Ambrose Pare (1510–1590), whom many consider the father of modern orthopedic surgery, contributed significantly to the advancement of amputation surgery.[11] It is believed that Pare performed the earliest upper extremity amputation, an elbow disarticulation, late in 1536. The incidence and prevalence of upper extremity amputation over the past several centuries is attributed to advances in the pharmacologic and surgical management of disease and trauma.[12] Upper extremity trauma related to industry, mechanized farming, and armed conflict has been the catalyst for medical and prosthetic advancements in the 20th century.[13]

In all individuals living with upper limb loss, approximately 8% ($n = 41{,}000$) of the persons with upper extremity amputations were categorized as major (i.e., excluding fingers).[14] Because the number of upper extremity cases is relatively small in comparison to lower extremity cases, many prosthetists who are highly skilled and qualified in

lower extremity prosthetic care have far less experience and confidence when dealing with complex upper extremity management. Furthermore, in the area of externally powered prosthetics, fewer still have the additional education and certifications to work with these complex systems.

Upper limb loss occurs due to trauma, dysvascular conditions, cancer, and congenital limb deficiency. The primary cause of acquired upper extremity amputation is trauma,[14,15] Upper extremity accounts for approximately 70% of all trauma-related amputations. Some causes of traumatic amputation include explosions, fireworks, gunshot wounds, traffic accidents, and farm/work-related accidents.[13] More trauma-related amputations occur among males than females.[14,15]

More than 29 million Americans are living with diabetes.[16] Of all persons with amputations due to diabetic complications, the number of patients with an upper extremity amputation is small (3%) in comparison to all total amputations.[17] Other causes of upper extremity amputation are the various sarcomas, as well as congenital limb deformities, including amelias and phocomelias.[14,18,19] About 70% of all upper extremity amputations occur in persons younger than 64 years of age.[14] These amputations are most often performed on those between 20 and 40 years old.[17]

Preprosthetic Care

All patients with upper extremity amputation, regardless of cause, require some degree of prosthetic management. Early postoperative care goals include strengthening of the joints proximal to the residual limb, core strengthening, psychosocial support, and care of the residual limb including edema control, wound healing, pain control, and desensitization.[20] Shrinkers, immediate postoperative prostheses, and preparatory prostheses facilitate these goals. Care is most effective when coordinated through a multidisciplinary team—the surgeon, physiatrist, prosthetist, nurses, physical and occupational therapists, counselors, and others as necessary.[21,22]

The earlier a patient can be evaluated, fitted with a prosthesis, and trained, the more likely a positive rehabilitation outcome occurs. Malone and colleagues[23] 1984 review of the literature reported the "advantages to early post-op fitting include decreased edema, decreased postoperative pain and phantom pain, accelerated wound healing, improved patient rehabilitation, decreased length of hospital stay (and perhaps of hospital costs), increased prosthetic use, maintenance of some continuous type of proprioceptive input through the residual limb, and improved patient psychological adaptation to amputation." Malone et al.[23] found a difference in rehabilitation success between patients fitted within 30 days of surgery and those fitted more than 30 days after surgery. Specifically, all 13 of the patients who had job-related injuries and were fit with a prosthesis within 30 days of surgery returned to work, whereas only 15% (3/20) of the patients who had job-related injuries but were fit with a prosthesis more than 30 days of surgery returned to work.[23]

Most professionals agree that there is a fairly short window of opportunity within which the prospects for successful rehabilitation are greatest, although there is disagreement about the duration of this "optimal rehabilitation" period. Most patients are first interested in restoring their body image[24] and independent bimanual function. Brenner suggests an ideal timetable for fitting a prosthesis after wrist disarticulation or transradial amputation (Table 30.1).[25] The timing and type of prosthesis depend on the level of residual limb healing, comorbidities, and patient-centered factors (Fig. 30.3).

Fig. 30.3 The postoperative upper extremity prosthesis can help to improve edema control, wound healing, pain control, desensitization, proximal joint and core strengthening, and psychosocial adaptation. (Courtesy of Hanger Clinic, Austin, TX.)

Regardless of the type of intervention, rehabilitation should focus on the patient and his/her desires. The rehabilitation postoperative goals are to enhance upper extremity strengthening, residual limb healing, psychosocial support, restoration of body image and independent bimanual function, and return to the patient's desired lifestyle. Once the wound site is adequately protected and bandaged, compressive wraps or shrinkers should be used when an early postoperative or preparatory prosthesis is not appropriate. In most cases, multidirectional shrinker garments control volume and shape the residual limb more effectively than other methods, including elastic bandages.[26] When donned properly, shrinkers have less tendency to migrate or shift position on the residual limb and therefore are more effective at creating the consistent distal to proximal pressure gradient. The compressive garment should terminate proximal to the joint above the amputation site when possible. With the transhumeral amputation, this requires the shrinker to

Table 30.1 Timelines for Prosthetic Fitting After Amputation

Type of Prosthesis	Postoperative Application
Immediate or early postoperative prosthesis	24 h to 14 days
Preparatory/training body-powered prosthesis	2–4 weeks
Definitive body-powered prosthesis	6–12 weeks
Preparatory/training electronic prosthesis	2–12 weeks
Definitive electronic prosthesis	4–6 months

Reprint with permission from Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens PM. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies*. 4th ed. Rosemont, IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2018.

include a modified shoulder cap. Such a device is rarely commercially available and usually requires custom fabrication. Due diligence must be exercised to ensure that appropriate tension and compression gradients are achieved and maintained. The nature of any volume management protocol in and of itself begins the limb maturation and desensitization process simultaneously. In addition, effective and timely volume management influences more than the residual limb volume and shape; compression with shrinkers has been used by clinicians to help manage phantom pain.[27]

Prosthetic Options

Depending on the patient's lifestyle and physical condition, the prosthetic team can make a number of recommendations. These include not providing a prosthesis, designing a passive prosthesis or cosmetic restoration, designing a body-powered or externally powered or hybrid system, or designing an activity specific prosthesis (Fig. 30.4). The physician, prosthetist, therapist and patient must consider the benefits and limitations of the various prosthetic options to best meet patients' needs. The team should consider prostheses as tools intended to enable patients to achieve participation similar to that of a nondisabled person.[28]

NO PROSTHESIS

A significant percentage of patients with upper extremity amputations elect not to use a prosthesis on a regular basis. In many cases this decision can be traced to poorly implemented prosthetic care or lack of prosthetic training.[29,30] Some individuals report that the prostheses they have been exposed to are uncomfortable, heavy, and too slow during use or difficult to don and suspend. Advanced materials have enabled prosthetists to create lighter, stronger, and more comfortable systems,[31,32] as well as extremely cosmetic restorations.[21,33] Despite these advancements, not all individuals with amputations integrate a prosthesis into their body image or lifestyle. The physiatrist should follow patients who choose not to use a prosthesis initially at regular intervals (often yearly) to ensure that their functional and occupational needs are being met, because these may change over the life span. Given the rate of technologic development, new components or devices are likely to become available to address problems the patient might have had at an earlier time. Consideration of adaptive tools and resources such as "One-Handed in a Two-Handed World" and the Amputee Coalition should be discussed to address each patient's needs.[34,35]

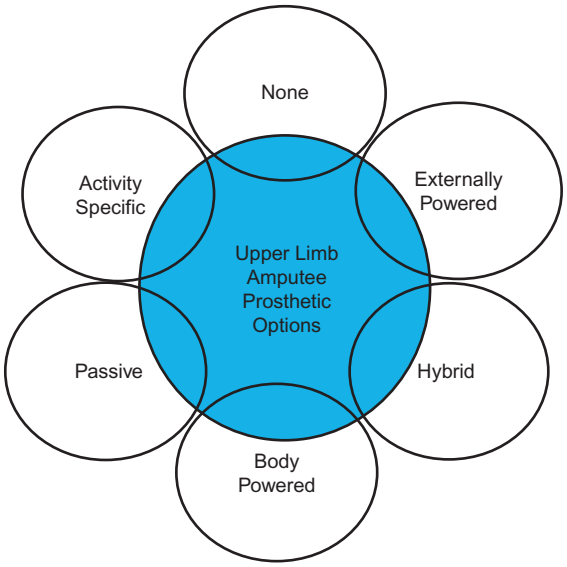


Fig. 30.4 Upper limb prosthetic options. (From Melton DH. Physiatrist perspective on upper-limb prosthetic options: using practice guidelines to promote patient education in the selection and the prescription process. *JPO.* 2017;29:40–44.)

PROSTHETIC PRESCRIPTION

Assessment of persons with upper extremity amputations should include complete evaluation of the level of amputation, residual limb condition, upper extremity musculoskeletal condition, cognitive ability, and presence of degenerative conditions or comorbidities.[36] Practitioners must identify the patient's perspectives and priorities about his/her own needs for control, durability (maintenance), function (speed, work capability, type of grip, ruggedness, high grip force, visibility), comfort (harness, weight, effort), cosmesis (appearance), and reliability.[37] When asked, "what is the goal of the upper limb prosthesis?," the answer always depends on the goals of the wearer.[38] Satisfaction with a prosthesis is associated with clear clinician-patient communication,[39–41] the relationship with their prosthetist, and focused attention to patient preferences.[42,43]

Recognizing patient priorities helps in balancing the benefits and limitations of the various prosthetic options. Invariably, the prosthetist and the patient make a compromise between form and function when selecting various components and design features of the prosthesis.[37,44–46] For example, realistic appearance and optimal function may be on opposite ends of the spectrum when selecting a prosthetic hand. Although a passive hand provides a realistic appearance, it does not allow for an active grasp. Repeated discussions with the family and patient about the benefits and limitations of each element of the prosthesis are necessary to maintain realistic expectations.

When formulating the rehabilitation and prosthetic treatment plans to enhance functional outcomes, the team should consider the influence of adaptive equipment on prosthetic component selection. For example, kitchen and bath adaptive equipment may meet the functional needs without complicating the prosthetic prescription. Furthermore, surgical interventions should also be considered, because functional potential is largely determined by surgical procedures.[17] Ultimately, the functional outcome of the rehabilitation and prosthetic interventions depends on the patient's perspective of *function*. The clinic team must clearly understand the patient's vocational, recreational, and aesthetic functional needs during this decision-making process.

The prosthetic prescription (Box 30.1) includes a base code and add-on codes. Prosthetic and orthotic L-codes within the Healthcare Common Procedural Coding System (HCPCS) allow for patient specificity in which the team may select various combinations of codes to address

Box 30.1 Elements of the Upper Limb Prosthetic Prescription

- Socket type
- Test sockets
- Interface (e.g., liner, socks, sheaths, foam insert, roll-on liner)
- Control system (passive-functional, body-powered, externally powered, hybrid, or activity specific)
- Suspension mechanism (e.g., harness, anatomic, suction, lanyard, or pin)
- Components: terminal device, glove, wrist, elbow (if applicable) and shoulder (if applicable)

patient-specific needs. HCPCS L-code base codes imply the design (e.g., preparatory or definitive), the control, and often basic elements of the prosthesis. For example, the myoelectric prosthesis base code (Table 30.2) includes the electrodes, cables, two batteries, and a charger. L-codes also include (1) the initial patient evaluation; (2) consultation with the physician or nurse practitioner; (3) measurements, casting, and scanning; (4) parts cost; (5) shipping, receiving, and restocking charges; (6) fabrication; (7) fitting trial appointments; and (8) follow-up appointments or adjustments for 90 days after the patient goes home with the completed prosthesis.[47] The add-on codes state specific elements of the prosthesis such as the type of socket interface (e.g., socks, foam insert, gel insert), suspension mechanism (e.g., harness, suction, roll-on liner, and pin), TD, wrist unit (if applicable), elbow unit (if applicable), and shoulder unit (if applicable).[45] Tables 30.2 and 30.3 provide examples of two prostheses with different components and types of control. However, some design elements may be similar between them: both include test sockets, frame type socket design, and acrylic laminations.

Table 30.2 Example of a Prescription for an Upper Extremity Externally Powered Prosthesis

Base Code and Description	Add-On Codes and Descriptions
L6935: Below elbow, external power, self-suspended inner socket, removable forearm shell, Ottobock or equal electrodes, cables, two batteries and one charger, myoelectronic control of terminal device	L6680: Upper extremity addition, test socket, wrist disarticulation or below elbow L6687: Upper extremity addition, frame type socket, below elbow or wrist disarticulation L7403: Addition to upper extremity prosthesis, below elbow/wrist disarticulation, acrylic material L7007: Electric hand, switch or myoelectric controlled, adult L6881: Automatic grasp feature, addition to upper limb electric prosthetic terminal device L6882: Microprocessor control feature, addition to upper limb prosthetic terminal device L6629: Upper extremity addition, quick disconnect lamination collar with coupling piece, Ottobock or equal L6890: Addition to upper extremity prosthesis, glove for terminal device, any material, prefabricated, includes fitting and adjustment L7499: Upper extremity prosthesis, not otherwise specified

Table 30.3 Example of a Prescription for an Upper Extremity Body-Powered Prosthesis

Base Code	Add-On Codes
L6110: Below elbow, molded socket, (muenster or northwestern suspension types)	L6680: Upper extremity addition, test socket, wrist disarticulation or below elbow L6687: Upper extremity addition, frame type socket, below elbow or wrist disarticulation L7403: Addition to upper extremity prosthesis, below elbow/wrist disarticulation, acrylic material L6706: Terminal device, hook, mechanical, voluntary opening, any material, any size, lined or unlined L6704: Terminal device, sport/recreational/work attachment, any material, any size L 6615: Upper extremity addition, disconnect locking wrist unit L6616: Upper extremity addition, additional disconnect insert for locking wrist unit, each L6675: Upper extremity addition, harness, (e.g., figure-of-eight type), single cable design L6655: Upper extremity addition, standard control cable, extra

If the rehabilitation goal requires the prosthesis to be as lightweight as possible, the team may select an endoskeletal design (Fig. 30.5). Using endoskeletal components and/or lightweight materials requires less suspension and less harnessing and may enhance comfort for the user. Endoskeletal prostheses have a tubular structure connecting the socket to the components, which is covered by a protective foam, whereas exoskeletal prostheses have a rigid outer shell that provides structure and shape.[48] Although endoskeletal prostheses are lighter in weight, currently available upper limb componentry is limited and not as durable as lower limb endoskeletal componentry. Therefore most upper limb prostheses are exoskeletal. Both endoskeletal and exoskeletal components may be operated passively or through cable and harnessing (body-powered).

An interdisciplinary approach is necessary due to the specialization and complexity of the necessary skills and knowledge when working with this small population of individuals with upper limb loss. The rehabilitation team (e.g., physician, nurse, psychologist, prosthetist, physical therapist, occupational therapist, social worker, and pharmacist) has shared treatment goals toward improving the patients' quality of life. This interdisciplinary rehabilitation team approach is well recognized in upper extremity rehabilitation.[31,49–53] Clear chart note documentation from all team members is necessary to enhance interdisciplinary communication/collaboration and best meet the rehabilitation goals. Box 30.2 lists information that must be documented in the patients' charts.[45]

Fig. 30.5 Example of a light-weight endoskeletal prosthesis. (Courtesy Steeper Group.)

Prosthetic Socket

Upper extremity prosthetic sockets secure the prosthesis onto the residual limb and extend the control function (movement and direction) of the distal components (e.g. wrist, TD). Depending on the control system, a secure socket might provide the transmission of force and motion needed for body-powered TD operation and/or stabilization of surface electrodes on the skin for myoelectric control.

Prosthetic sockets are designed according to the skin condition and amount of soft tissue; residual limb length and shape; and the patient-specific functional needs. Critical elements for effective socket designs include comfort, cosmesis, stabilization, suspension, anatomic contouring, contralateral/ipsilateral involvement, range of motion (ROM), and vocation/avocational/personal needs.[54] These critical elements are interrelated and sometimes inversely related. For example, a higher anterior socket trimline to the cubital fold often provides more socket stability but reduces elbow joint flexion ROM. Weighing the advantages and disadvantages of each element to meet the patient-specific needs is part of the practitioner's clinical reasoning.

Socket "fit" refers to the stability of the socket on the residual limb and the comfort from the patient's perspective. Patient comfort with the socket interface plays a major deciding role in whether a patient will use their prosthesis.[55] Strategically placed socket pressures reduce residual limb movement inside the socket,[56] consequently improving rehabilitation outcomes.[57]

Socket pressures were evaluated using the Tekscan pressure measuring system.[58,59] Daly et al.[58] found that pressure did not correlate well with socket discomfort scores, although they reported a potential limitation in the reliability of the sensor technology with curved surfaces. Whereas Schofield et al.[59] found unique pressure distribution patterns among four transhumeral participants. Both studies reported that the amount of tolerable pressure varied for each individual patient. These studies reinforce examination of tolerance to forces as an important part of the evaluation. In addition, the prosthetist must find a balance between the individual patient's ability to tolerate pressure and the amount of stability the socket will provide when identifying where and how much pressure to place around the residual limb.

Box 30.2 Supporting Documentation for an Upper Limb Prosthesis and Prosthetic Training

Physician or Nurse Practitioner Documentation

- The cause, date, level of limb loss, include right or left or bilateral;
- The patient's preamputation level of independence and function, as well as the potential to return or increase in function when successfully using a prosthesis;
- Comorbidities that could interfere with function of the prosthesis;
- Pain interference of function (including residual pain);
- Adequate neurologic and cognitive ability to operate the prosthesis effectively;
- The type of prosthesis being prescribed (preparatory or definitive);
- Rehabilitation treatment plan describing the long-term and short-term goals and the anticipated timeline for recovery.

Prosthetist Documentation

- The individual's perspectives about his/her
  - Vocational and avocational needs including information about the specific activity or activities that the prosthesis will be used for
  - Motivation to use the prosthesis
  - Lifestyle: habits, interests, opinions
  - Social network support
  - Use environment
  - Hand dominance
  - Perspectives and priorities with respect to function, cosmesis, reliability, comfort, and cost
- Functional assessment of the need for function, cosmesis, durability, protection, support, control, and perceived ability to learn and use a prosthesis
- Myotesting results: minimum microvolt threshold and whether this would allow operation of a myoelectric prosthesis
- Prosthetic treatment plan describing the long-term and short-term goals, barriers and facilitators of desired outcomes, and interdisciplinary communication
- Patient-specific justification for each element of the prosthesis

Therapist Documentation

- Occupational/functional evaluation of activities of daily living, instrumental activities of daily living, and vocational and avocational needs
- The individual's perspectives about his/her
  - Motivation to use the prosthesis
  - Lifestyle: habits, interests, opinions
  - Social network support
  - Use environment
- Occupational/functional assessment of the client's need for function, cosmesis, durability, protection, support, control, and perceived ability to learn and use a prosthesis
- Myotesting results: minimum microvolt threshold and whether this would allow operation of a myoelectric prosthesis
- Therapy treatment plan describing the short-term and long-term goals, type, amount, intensity, duration and frequency of therapy visits, complicating factors, and interdisciplinary communication

One of the most significant factors that affect socket fit is limb volume. Reducing residual limb volume during the early postoperative and preprosthetic care phases is essential because variations in residual limb volume affect stabilization, anatomic contouring, and suspension which then affect comfort and function of the prosthesis for the patient. Limbs with large longitudinal contours or bulbous distal contours are least desirable because these adversely influence the ability to capture the skeletal structures. In these cases, surgical reconstruction may be necessary to remove the redundant tissues.[60]

Upper extremity sockets often provide suspension to avoid use of harnessing. Suspension may be provided through anatomic shape, suction, harness, or roll-on liner and pin. Selection of suspension method is determined by the residual limb condition and the functional needs of the individual, such as ease of donning and the weight of objects being manipulated.

Influences on the advancement of socket designs can be attributed to advances in material science and upper extremity prosthetic specialists.[31] Most contemporary upper extremity prosthetic socket designs use some type of flexible interface with a rigid frame exterior. The interface material is often composed of a high–silicone content conformable elastomer. These elastomers have dramatically improved patients' perceptions of fit and function with regard to comfort.[32,61]

In summary, the socket secures the prosthesis to the patient's body. The prosthetist needs to ensure that the socket (a) matches the patient's anatomy; (b) is comfortable and stable; (c) provides suspension and ROM; (d) is easy to don/doff; and (e) supports the patient's vocational, avocational, and personal needs. Alignment between the socket and the distal components needs to be considered to reduce compensations at the proximal joints. Socket fit is an ongoing dynamic process. The prosthetist makes changes to the socket over a patient's life span as the patient's body condition changes (e.g., weight, atrophy).

Passive Functional Prostheses and Restorations

This category of prostheses consists of systems that do not have the ability to actively position a mechanical elbow in space or actively provide grasp and release. However, the passive operation of the components does not render the prosthesis as idle as the name might suggest. The term "passive" refers to the mechanical operation of the components. These devices are extremely functional in terms of supporting objects or stabilizing items during bimanual tasks and activities.[21,62] They appear to be important for social integration[63] and psychosocial well-being.[64] Low body image is associated with depression and general anxiety in individuals with upper extremity amputation.[65]

The absence of operational mechanical components generally results in a lightweight prosthesis. Lighter weight prostheses generally require less suspension. These systems most frequently have a self-suspending design and use a realistic-appearing hand as a TD. Suspension may be achieved with specific socket interface geometry, suction, roll-on liner, and pin/lanyard.

The finish of these devices varies widely. Production polyvinyl chloride (PVC) cosmetic gloves provide a cost-effective short-term outcome for patients; short term because PVC readily stains and deteriorates in ultraviolet light. Silicone gloves provide an added benefit of longevity, because they can be cleaned with soap and water. In general, the additional cost of silicone is mitigated by its superior cosmesis, durability, and increased coefficient of friction.

Many individuals seek out aesthetic, or transparent, restorations (Fig. 30.6). These restorations require greater investments in time and financial resources. Options to enhance the aesthetic appearance may include enhanced or acrylic nails, skin shading, and the addition of hair. Laser scanning and computer modeling may create near perfect "mirror" images of high-level amputations, such as shoulder disarticulations and scapulothoracic amputations. This investment is most often rewarded with an aesthetic, natural, and transparent-appearing body image.

The appearance of a prosthesis can be described from three perspectives: the *passive cosmesis* based on the static visual appearance, the *cosmesis of wearing* based on the aesthetics while wearing the prosthesis such as while walking, and the *cosmesis of use* based on the appearance during activity performance.[24] Although patients may not voice their insecurities about the cosmesis (transparency) of wearing or using a prosthesis, they often avoid activities

Fig. 30.6 Aesthetic restorations address the psychosocial needs of individuals by reducing social stigma and enhancing community participation to optimize healthcare outcomes. (A) Woman working in customer service. (B) Skin restoration with tattoos (A, © Össur. B, Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

that require unnatural movements. During training, the patient needs instruction about how to move in a natural way with and without their prosthesis.[24]

Partial-Hand Prostheses

The human hand is used for prehension, stabilization, pushing, pulling, communication, mobility, balance, and sensory feedback to perform activities throughout our day. Each part of the hand plays a role for grasping. The thumb allows for opposition with the fingers; the second and third phalanges allow for fine grasp; and the fourth and fifth phalanges provide power grip. Although individuals have a variety of priorities, common activity limitations include cutting meat, peeling vegetables, trimming nails, fastening buttons, opening packages, and carrying bulky items.[66]

Berger et al. found that fewer than half of individuals who underwent partial-hand amputation returned to their same job even with prosthetic restoration (n = 48).[67] Although the greatest impairment was associated with partial or complete thumb amputation, multiple finger amputation also reduces the likelihood of returning to the same job.[67,68] The partial-hand amputation presents design challenges for the prosthetist because of its long residual limb length. Longer residual limb length reduces the amount of space to place components, sometimes resulting in a bulky and less aesthetically appearing prosthesis. In addition, the prosthetist aims to preserve open sensate areas to allow sensation (and sometimes mobility) while finding enough area to distribute socket pressures to achieve a secure "fit" between the limb and the prosthesis. Because of these challenges, surgical reconstruction may be preferred.[62] Preoperative consideration of the sensation and mobility of remaining functional digits should not be understated. If functional range and sensation are inadequate, the surgeon may consider a more proximal level of amputation. The patient, surgeon, prosthetist, and therapist should discuss the prosthetic design challenges, surgical interventions, and hand function in advance to avoid unrealistic expectations and to achieve optimal outcomes.[69]

Partial-hand prostheses may be categorized as active or passive (static or adjustable).[70] Passive-static tools (oppositional posts) are most useful when either the thumb is remaining and fingers are missing or when fingers are missing and thumb is remaining.[71] They allow the patient to regain grasp and release capability of the affected limb and can be fabricated for heavy-duty activities, depending on the condition of the residual limb. Passive-static hands (aesthetic or transparent) are shaped to appear as a "typical" hand and allow for reduced social stigmatism, as described earlier. Users of prosthetic hands consider appearance and function a priority.[70] When designed to match the individual's specific needs, passive prostheses enhance activity performance (Fig. 30.7).

Active partial-hand prostheses include both body-powered and externally powered partial-hand prosthetic options. Body-powered partial-hand prostheses allow independent and immediate operation of each finger such as playing the piano (Fig. 30.8A) and performance of heavy-duty activities in dusty environments (see Fig. 30.8B). Externally powered advancements of small electric componentry permits electric control despite lack of clearance with long residual limbs (Fig. 30.9).

Fig. 30.7 Passive partial finger prosthesis designed to enable use of a keyboard. (Courtesy Regal Prosthesis Ltd.)

Disarticulation Considerations

Disarticulation amputations provide a long lever. Their anatomy allows for suspension and preserves rotational control for functional performance. However, the disadvantages of disarticulations for prosthesis use include reduced clearance between the end of the socket and the prosthetic componentry. Reduced clearance means that there is limited space for batteries and fewer component options. For wrist disarticulation, the reduced clearance may lead to a difference in arm length with the wrist and prosthetic hand unit secured, which negatively affects functional performance. For elbow disarticulation, the reduced clearance requires the use of body-powered external locking elbow hinges. The finished prosthesis with outside locking hinge technology is less ideal for a few reasons: they are bulky, making it difficult to fit into shirt sleeves; they lack durability; and they do not include options for flexion assist or externally powered options. At the shoulder disarticulation level, the clinical team needs to consider many more variables. Here, the rehabilitation goals not only include grasp and stabilization of objects for bimanual function but also body image and postural symmetry (Fig. 30.10).

If the surgeon removes the bony anatomy (styloids or condyles) or leaves hypersensitive distal tissues,[25] the benefits (self-suspension and rotation control) of disarticulation are lost. Therefore additional bony length should be removed to improve functional performance when using a prosthesis. The ideal residual limb length is the compromise between form and function—the benefits of having a longer limb with costs of reduced cosmesis and loss of functional control.

Transradial and Transhumeral Considerations

Componentry for transradial and transhumeral prostheses is selected based on functional needs, patient's habitus, and level of amputation. For transradial level limb loss, the lateral

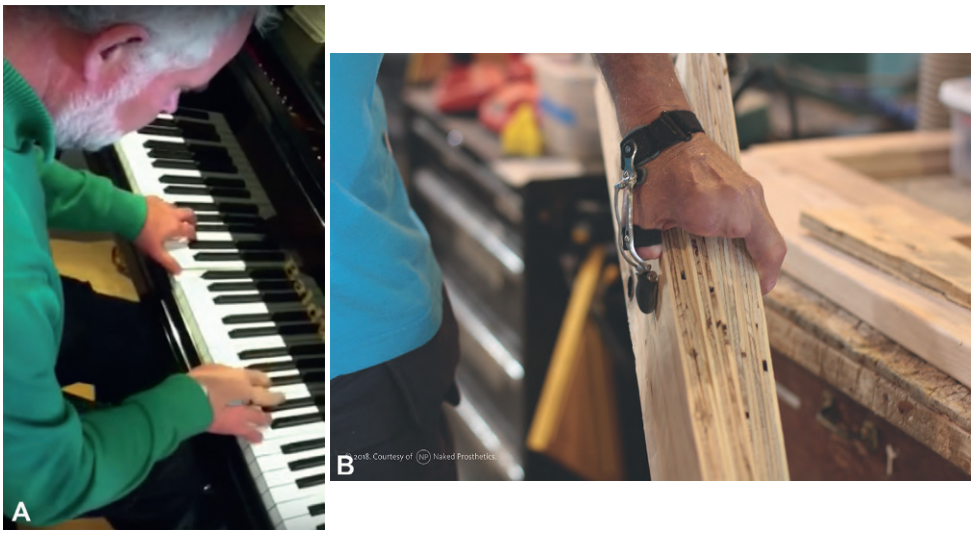


Fig. 30.8 Body-powered active partial-hand prostheses operate with immediate response and require no battery power. (A) Professional piano player who had lost his fingers in an accident. He had not sat down at a piano since his accident, 2 years prior. (B) Demonstrating the ability to hold heavy and bulky loads in dusty environments. (A, Courtesy Didrick Medical. B, Courtesy Naked Prosthetics.)

Fig. 30.9 Externally powered active partial-hand prostheses are designed based on the remaining digits and the functional needs of the individual. The multiarticulating iLimb allows for single-digit operation. (© Össur.)

Fig. 30.10 Prosthetic care of individuals with shoulder disarticulation presents complex functional and aesthetic needs. (Courtesy Advanced Arm Dynamics.)

epicondyle is typically the bony landmark used for reference length measurements. On the contralateral side, the measurement is taken from the lateral epicondyle to the radial styloid. On the affected side, the measurement is taken from the lateral epicondyle to the distal end of the residual limb. To accommodate the length of a quick disconnect unit, a difference of at least 5.7 cm is needed, whereas 8.9 cm or more of difference is sufficient to allow for an electric wrist rotator (M. Lang, personal communication, February 2, 2018). At the transhumeral level, the acromium is typically the bony landmark used for reference length measurements. The measurement is taken from the acromium to the distal aspect of the olecranon on the contralateral side and from the acromium to the distal end of the residual limb on the affected side. To accommodate all potential internal locking elbow units, 14 cm of space must be present beyond the distal residual limb. Certain elbow units are more compact and will fit within 10.2 cm while maintaining symmetry. Additional skeletal length significantly enhances suspension and force distribution, especially at the transhumeral level. Therefore M. Lang recommends that the length of amputation should not be dictated solely by the availability of components.

For individuals with a short residual humerus, a body-powered prosthetic system may not be realistic, and even an externally powered prosthesis may be difficult or problematic to fit, suspend, and control. When the residual humerus is very short (<4 cm), it may be necessary to treat a transhumeral limb loss functionally as a shoulder disarticulation level to capture stability.

Body-Powered Components

Prosthetic components can be thought of as a means to replace lost functional capacity associated with the anatomic loss of limb segments. A TD is used to replace the function of a hand. An elbow unit is used to replace the humeral-ulnar articulation; a shoulder unit is placed proximally to provide humeral orientation in space at the shoulder disarticulation and interscapulothoracic amputation levels. Rotators can be placed in the forearm of the prosthesis to substitute for pronation and supination or in an above-the-elbow unit to substitute for internal and external rotation of the shoulder as well.[72,73]

TERMINAL DEVICES FOR BODY-POWERED PROSTHESES

The TDs most often used for body-powered prostheses are either a hook or hand. Both are available as a voluntary opening system (closed at rest, opened by means of the cable) or as a voluntary closing system (opened at rest, closed by means of the cable). Each configuration has its own inherent strengths and weaknesses.

Voluntary opening devices enable the wearer to apply volitional force and excursion of the cable (using shoulder flexion or protraction/biscapular abduction) to open the TD (Fig. 30.11). Once tension is released from the cable, the object being grasped is "trapped" in the device, allowing the wearer to position the object in space as the task demands. The individual does not need to generate force or excursion to maintain grasp. The prehensile force (grip strength) is determined by some external closing mechanism, most frequently springs or elastic bands. Significant prehensile forces can be generated by using multiple layers of elastic bands or multiple springs but must match the wearer's ability to create and sustain cable excursion when less than maximum grip force is desired. Because grip force with a voluntary opening terminal device (VO TD) is determined by the number of elastic bands or springs used, the maximum force cannot be increased when handling heavy objects. The friction inherent in a cable control system slightly increases the force necessary to open the TD above the closing force achieved by the elastic bands or spring systems. Finding the right prehensile force to perform the variety of activities one performs throughout the day can be challenging. Several manufacturers market voluntary opening prehensors with settings the wearer can adjust to increase or decrease the prehensile force (Fig. 30.12).[74]

With voluntary closing TDs, the volitional force and excursion supplied by the wearer closes the TD from its normally open position (Fig. 30.13).[75] This action is similar to the natural physiologic motion of reaching and grasping. The key advantage of a voluntary closing TD is the possibility of significantly higher forces that can be applied through the cabling system as compared with the VO TD. In fact, with most voluntarily closing TDs, voluntary prehensile force is limited only by the strength available from the wearer or by discomfort from the harness or the residual limb. When using a voluntary closing TD, the individual must maintain both excursion and power so as to retain the object in the TD grasp, unless using a cleat or cable lock and retainer system. The sustained force allows for the ability to volitionally grade prehensile force, adapting it to the characteristics of the object to be held.[76] In addition, graded prehension allows for activities requiring fine motor control.

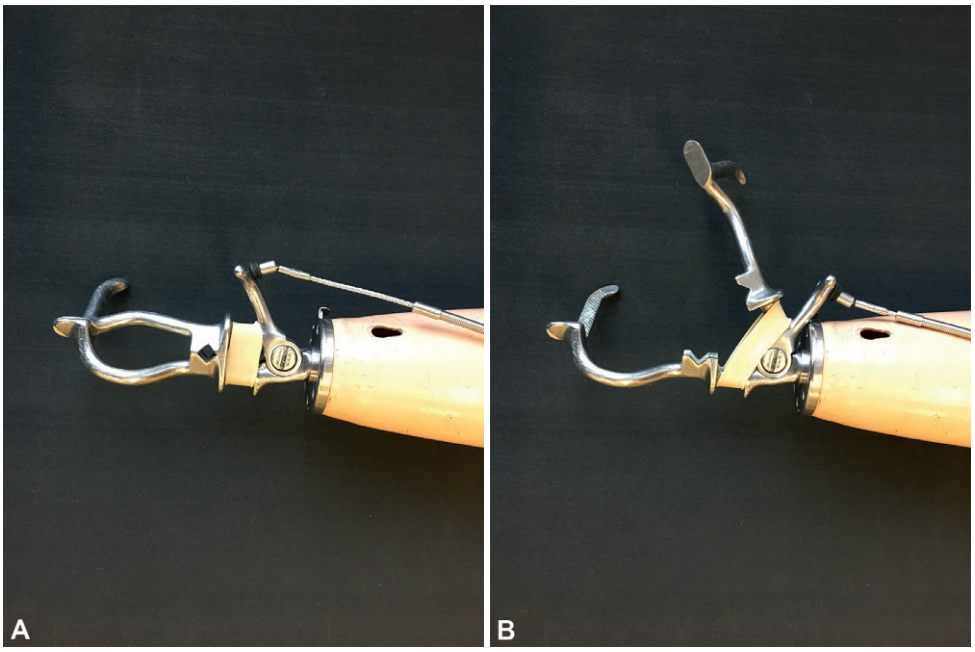


Fig. 30.11 The voluntary opening terminal device grip force is dependent by the number of elastic bands or springs. The individual must introduce force and excursion to open the hook. (A) Voluntary opening hook without tension on the cable. (B) Voluntary opening hook with full tension on the cable.

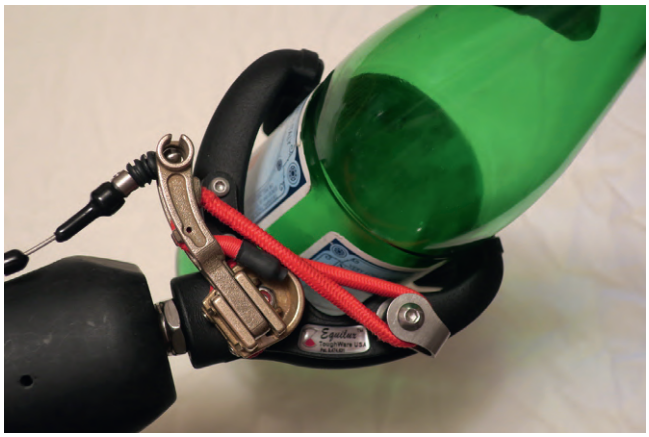


Fig. 30.12 The V2P terminal device has a variable grip closure mechanism that allows the individual to grasp objects with more or less grip force. The lever is currently positioned for maximum grip force. The individual rotates the lever to reduce grip force. (Courtesy ToughWare Prosthetics.)

Fig. 30.14 Individuals with bilateral transhumeral limb loss may participate in activities that require dexterity in wet and dirty environments. This individual is using internal locking elbows with voluntary opening terminal devices. (Courtesy Fillauer.)

Voluntary closing devices are selected less often for individuals with transhumeral amputations using a body-powered prosthesis with a dual-control cable system. This is because the dual-control cable system operates both the elbow and TD, thus requiring more excursion. Functionally, much of the cable excursion would be used to close the TD, leaving less available to position the forearm. Although those with transhumeral amputation frequently have adequate strength and motor control to position the forearm in space, many are quite challenged to produce enough excursion to effectively operate the elbow throughout full ROM while maintaining a graded prehension of the TD. These actions become even more challenging when the residual transhumeral limb is relatively short. In addition, because cable excursion is typically limited for those with bilateral amputations, VO TDs are also the TDs of choice if bilateral body prostheses are recommended. Consequently, the passive closure (i.e., elastic bands or spring) of VO TDs tends to be more functional for individuals with limited excursion capacity (Fig. 30.14).

Several groups have attempted to design body-powered TDs that can be switched between voluntary open and voluntary close mode because each mechanism has its own advantage and disadvantage.[77,78] The challenges to design a voluntary open and voluntary close TD include higher cost, increased weight, and variable need for cable excursion.

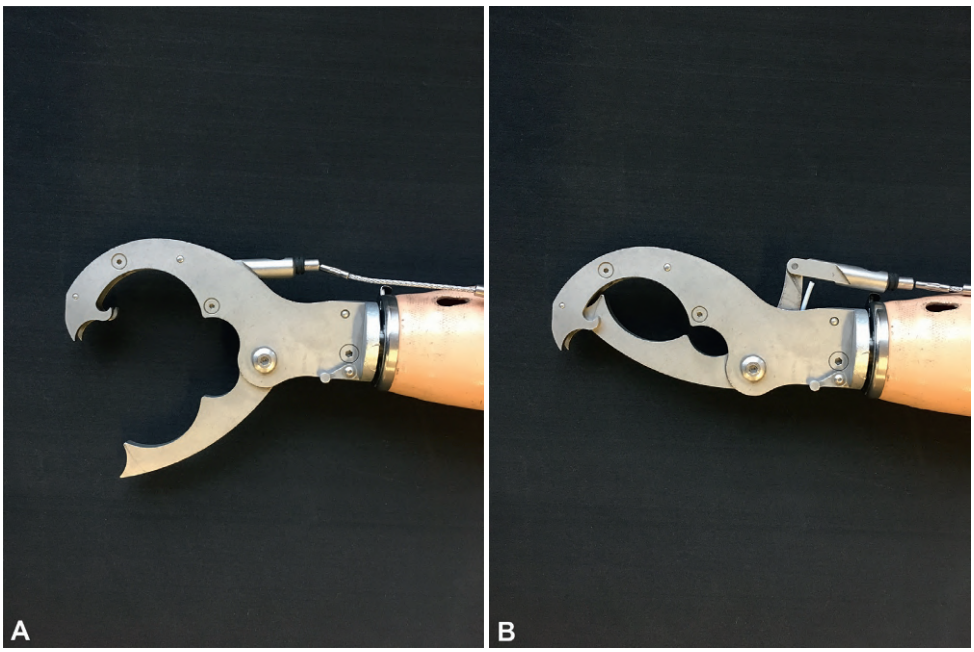


Fig. 30.13 The voluntary closing terminal device grip force is dependent only on the individual's strength and excursion capacity. The individual must introduce force and excursion to close the hook. (A) Voluntary closing hook without tension on the cable. (B) Voluntary closing hook with tension on the cable.

WRISTS FOR BODY-POWERED PROSTHESES

A wrist is used to attach and preposition the TD for activities. Several wrist types exist to accommodate different functional needs.[79] *Friction Wrists* are simple wrist units that use friction to control the TD positions. These wrists can be prepositioned by the other hand. Individuals with bilateral limb loss may preposition the wrist by pushing the TD against a stable object or securing the TD between the thighs and then rotating the socket and forearm. *Locking Wrists* can lock the wrist in various fixed positions to facilitate grasping and lifting heavy objects and stop transverse rotation of the TD. *Quick Disconnect Wrists* allow quick swapping of different TDs. In addition, some quick disconnect models are designed to allow precise locking position of pronation and supination (Fig. 30.15). *Flexion Wrists* provide wrist flexion, which is essential to perform several functional activities at midline of the body, such as feeding, dressing, and personal hygiene, especially for individuals with bilateral upper limb loss. *Multifunction Wrists* combine multiple degrees of freedom (DOF), enhance ergonomic postures, and reduce compensatory movements (Fig. 30.16).

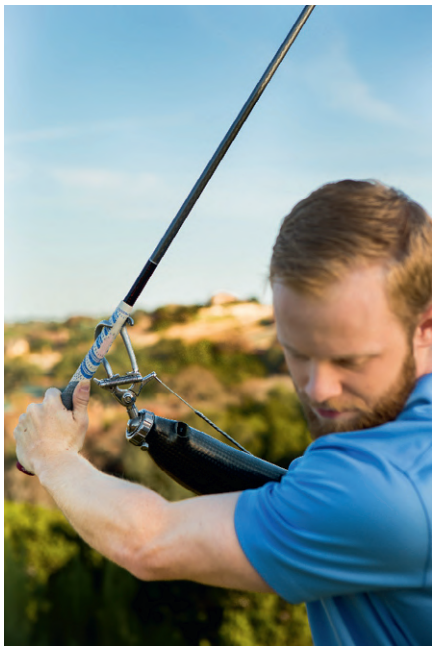


Fig. 30.16 Mobility of the wrist joint reduces compensatory motions in the proximal joints, permitting movement that is more natural and ergonomic. The position on the terminal device with the Robo wrist is adjusted by rotating the base of the wrist unit. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

ELBOWS FOR BODY-POWERED PROSTHESES

A mechanical elbow unit is necessary for elbow disarticulation, transhumeral prostheses, and above to allow control of elbow flexion, extension, and transverse rotation. Two types of elbow locking system are used: *Outside-Locking Hinges* (Fig. 30.17) and *Internal-Locking Elbows*. *Outside-Locking Hinges* are used for long transhumeral residual limb and elbow disarticulation that do not have sufficient space for an elbow unit. However, they lack durability and are more bulky as compared with internal-locking elbows. *Internal-Locking Elbows* have the advantage of allowing manual transverse rotation of the forearm to compensate for the loss of humeral internal and external rotation.

For transradial prostheses, elbow hinges aid in suspension of the socket. *Flexible Elbow Hinges* allow natural residual limb supination and pronation and reduce the need to manually preposition the TD. *Rigid Elbow Hinges* restrict residual limb supination and pronation but provide transverse rotational stability between the limb and the socket. The full humeral cuff may be used with the rigid hinges to relieve loads from the residual limb by distributing pressure to the humerus. Rigid elbow hinges may be selected for individuals who perform work with heavier objects or for individuals with a short residual limb when voluntary supination and pronation are absent and transverse rotational stability is needed.

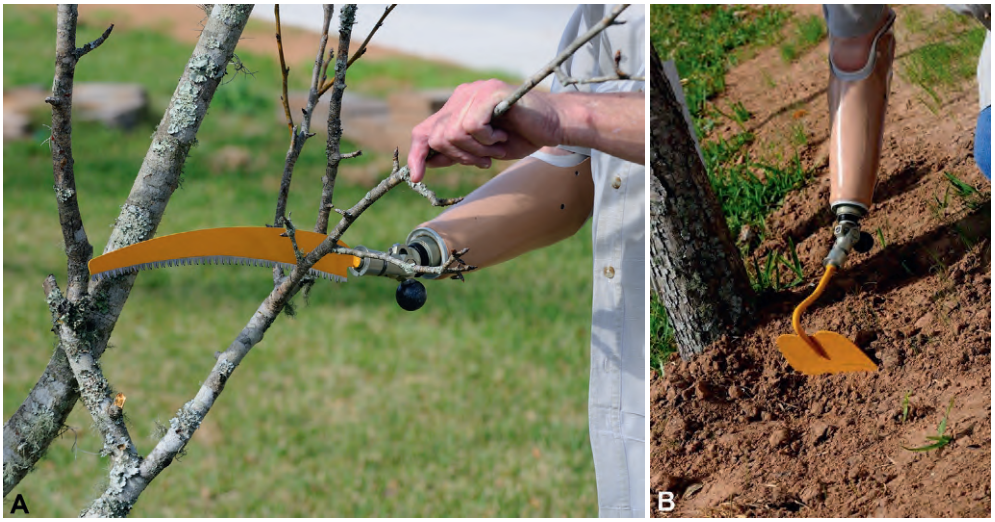


Fig. 30.15 Quick disconnect wrist joints allow the individual to switch out terminal devices (TDs) for various work activities. (A) Cutting a tree branch with a pruning saw TD. (B) Gardening with a hand hoe TD. (A, Courtesy Texas Assistive Devices. B, Courtesy Texas Assistive Devices.)

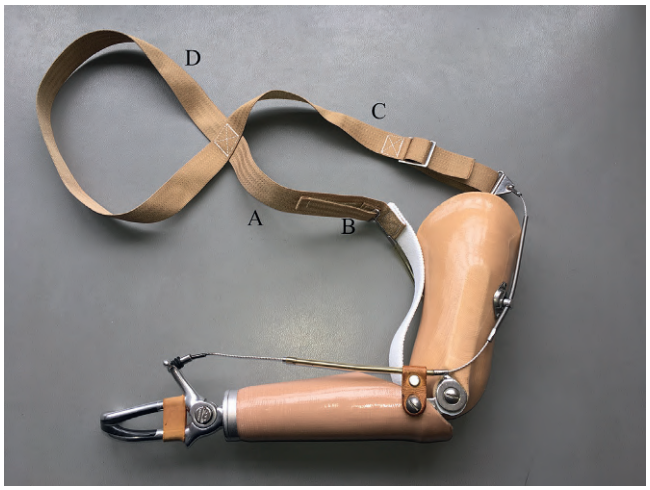


Fig. 30.17 This elbow disarticulation prosthesis uses outside locking hinges with a figure-of-eight harness and dual-control cable. The harness includes *(A)* an anterior suspension strap, *(B)* an elbow lock control strap to control the locking and unlocking of the elbow, *(C)* a control attachment strap, and *(D)* a contralateral axilla loop. The lateral suspensor, the main suspensor for the transhumeral prosthesis, is missing from this harness. It originates at the posterior upper portion of the axilla loop and extends horizontally over the anterior support strap and over the acromion to the lateral proximal aspect of the socket.

Body-Powered Control

Body-powered systems include a prosthesis that uses a control cable system to translate volitional muscle force and arm movement to operate the TD and/or prosthetic elbow. Both force and excursion are necessary to operate body-powered components. Excursion can be defined as the length that the cable needs to be pulled to operate the components, measured in inches or centimeters. Compared with externally powered prostheses, body-powered prostheses are more durable, are easier to maintain, require shorter training time and fewer adjustments, and provide more sensory feedback.[3] However, several areas of improvements in body-powered prosthetic operation have been identified by its users, such as wrist movement and control, task completion time, coordination, and sensory feedback.[3] The individual must use specific strategies to effectively create enough excursion in the cable to operate the TD or preposition the forearm in space. In most instances, glenohumeral flexion contributes the largest amount of excursion in body-powered prosthesis control. Additional excursion can be achieved through scapular and biscapular abduction (scapular protraction). These secondary movements allow a well-trained and skilled prosthesis wearer to increase their functional work envelope, the space in which the wearer can effectively control the TD.

For most body-powered upper extremity prostheses, the functional envelope is limited to a relatively small area below the shoulders, above the waist, and not far outward past shoulder width. Many individuals have significant difficulty with tasks that involve grasp-and-release tasks above the head or down near their feet. Because the control strategy involves generating cable excursion through flexion or protraction, or both, tasks and activities occurring behind the back are not possible. Despite these functional limitations, body-powered prostheses have provided many individuals with reliable and durable prosthetic systems.

FIGURE-OF-EIGHT HARNESS FOR SUSPENSION AND CONTROL

The foundation of all body-powered prostheses is a harnessing system that provides both a firm anchor for the control cables and in some cases a stable means of suspension. Most body-powered systems use a figure-of-eight–style harness (see Fig. 30.17). The terminal ends of the figure-of-eight harness are formed by an axillary loop that fits over the contralateral shoulder, a control attachment strap, and an anterior suspension strap on the amputated side. The crosspoint (center of the figure-of-eight) can be positioned just below the seventh cervical vertebra and slightly toward the contralateral side to increase cable excursion. The axillary loop can be adjusted through its attachment to a circular ring or fixed with a sewn crosspoint. The use of a center ring often makes the donning process less difficult and appears to provide the most satisfactory ROM. The size of the axillary loop determines the location of the crosspoint and determines the relation of comfort versus excursion capability. A larger and looser axillary loop is more comfortable but limits the individual's ability to capture excursion due to the slack in the material and the relative location of the control attachment strap across the back. To capture as much excursion as possible, the control attachment strap should be taut and positioned over the lower third of the scapula. Harnessing materials are most frequently fabricated with medium-weight Dacron webbing with both leather and plastic integrated components.

Individuals with transradial amputations control the TD by means of a single-control (Bowden) cable.[80] In most instances a triceps cuff is used to secure the cable housing in an optimal position, as well as provide an integral link to the forearm section (Fig. 30.18). Metal flexible hinges can be substituted for the Dacron flexible hinges in circumstances in which extremely heavy axial loads can be expected (i.e., if a wearer must carry or move heavy objects at work).

Individuals with transhumeral amputations need a dual-cable harness with an anterior single-control cable that controls the locking and unlocking of the elbow unit and a dual-control cable that controls the TD (if the elbow is locked) or moves the prosthetic forearm (if the elbow is unlocked). This second (longer) dual-control cable that attaches to the TD requires a split-cable (fairlead) housing system (Fig. 30.19). The proximal portion of the housing is attached to the humeral section, while the distal portion is attached just distal and anterior to the elbow center.

Most elbow units have multiple locking positions at equally spaced intervals moving from full extension to flexion. The locking mechanism is most frequently activated using a rapid and forceful shoulder extension and abduction. When the elbow unit is "locked" in any given position, this quick and forceful ipsilateral shoulder depression and extension pulls the elbow lock cable that releases the lock; subsequent shoulder flexion or scapular abduction (protraction) affecting the dual-control cable repositions the prosthetic forearm in space. This happens because the

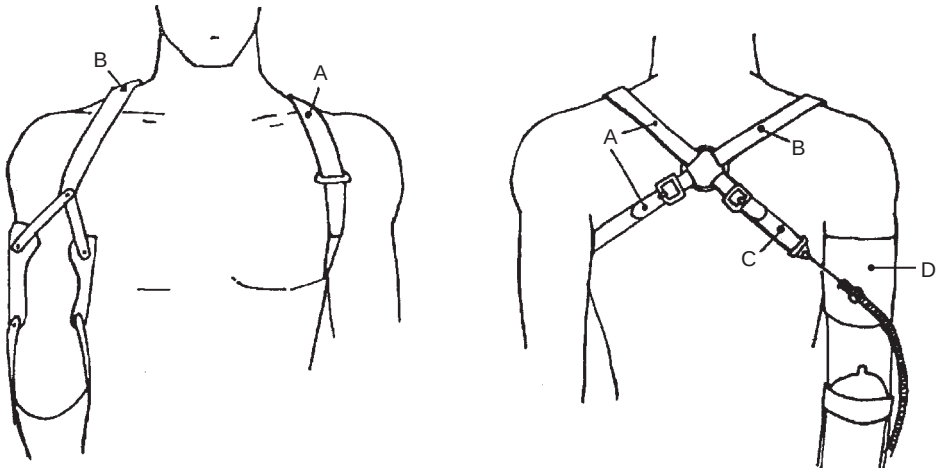


Fig. 30.18 Anterior and posterior view of a figure-of-eight harness system for a transradial prosthesis, with *(A)* the axillary loop, *(B)* the anterior support strap that provides stability during a downward pull, *(C)* the attachment strap for cable control of the terminal device, and *(D)* the triceps pad that anchors the control cable in the most effective position. (Modified from the Northwestern University Printing and Duplicating Department, Evanston, IL, 1987.)

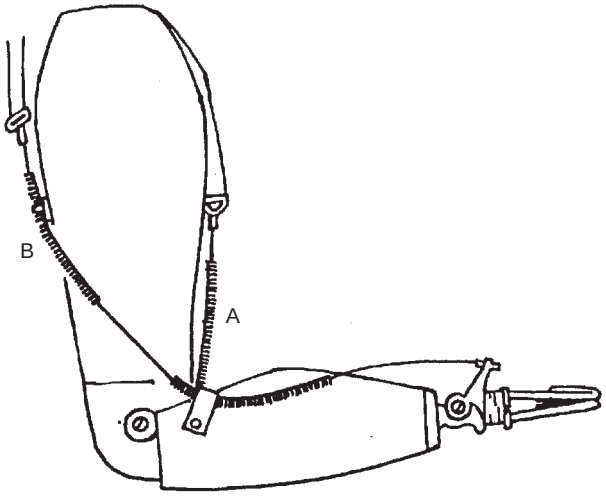


Fig. 30.19 Dual control cable and forearm lift tab of a body-powered transhumeral prosthesis with *(A)* an elbow lock cable and *(B)* a dual-control cable. (Modified from Northwestern University Printing and Duplicating Department, Evanston, IL, 1987.)

dual-control cable running to the TD is aligned anterior to the axis of rotation of the elbow unit; when the elbow is unlocked, tension through this dual-control cable causes the forearm to rise in flexion. When the forearm reaches the desired inclination for the task at hand, another quick down-and-back motion will reengage the lock. Once the elbow unit is locked, cable control is transferred to the TD, and subsequent shoulder flexion or protraction operates the prosthetic hook or hand. To achieve live lift with the dual-control cable, the amount of force required to open the VO TD needs to be greater than that needed to flex the forearm. If the force to open the VO TD is less than the force needed to flex the forearm, then the TD will open before the forearm lifts. Live lift is the ability to flex the forearm while holding something in the TD. Because this control strategy with the dual-control cable is always sequential in nature, careful consideration and assessment must be given to the force-excursion ratio. Failure to maximize these criteria results in incomplete elbow flexion or incomplete TD control. Challenges in operation of the dual control cable can be addressed with the triple-control harness[81]; however, care must be taken to avoid crossover contamination between control motions.

FIGURE-OF-NINE HARNESS FOR CONTROL WITH SELF-SUSPENDING SOCKETS

If the prosthetist recommends a self-suspending socket, the anterior suspension strap of a figure-of-eight harness is unnecessary. In these instances a figure-of-nine harness, consisting mainly of the contralateral axillary loop, is used to minimize cumbersome harnessing while still maximizing a firm anchor for the control cable. Self-suspending sockets may use an anatomically contoured socket design, suction, or a roll-on liner and pin or lanyard for suspension.

CONTROL AND SUSPENSION FOR BILATERAL PROSTHESES

For individuals with amputation of both upper extremities, careful clinical consideration must be given to ease donning and control. Instead of using a traditional figure-of-eight harness with a contralateral axillary loop for each prosthesis, the two anterior suspension components can be linked. In this arrangement, the bilateral prosthetic system is effectively stabilized by the equal counteracting forces from each prosthesis. On the basis of an individual's functional needs, the prosthetist may use either a single-ring, dual-ring, or bio-mechanically aligned harness anchor ring system to maximize the efficiency of the body-powered prostheses.

Some individuals with bilateral amputations opt to use separate and completely independent harness systems for their prostheses, especially if they are a new prosthesis user, or sometimes wear only one prosthesis, or if their prostheses are dissimilar. For example, an individual with bilateral transradial amputations might elect to use a body-powered system on their nondominant side and a self-suspending externally powered prosthesis on their dominant residual limb.

Electric Components

In addition to the socket, interface, and suspension system, the externally powered prosthesis includes (1) electric component(s) that are (2) activated by the electronics to acquire and process the input signal(s), (3) directed by the controller, and (4) powered by the battery (Fig. 30.20).

Electric components are available in many forms, including shoulders, elbows, wrists, hooks, hands, fingers, and work tools. Selection of components and control system remains dependent on the patient-specific needs. Electric components were once selected for use only during less demanding activities; however, some currently available electric systems are quite robust (Fig. 30.21). With advancements in technology, individuals with limb loss can return closer to their preinjury lifestyle.

ELECTRIC TERMINAL DEVICES

Electric TDs allow for active grasp and can be placed into two general categories: hands and nonanthropomorphic prehensors.[82] Selection of the TDs depends on the type of activity, the environment and the shape, size, and weight of the objects being manipulated, and the specific characteristics of the TD. Hands are available in "single degree-of-freedom" (single-DOF) designs allowing combined movement between the thumb and fingers and "multiple degree-of-freedom" (multi-DOF or multiarticulating) designs allowing independent movement of each digit, including the proximal interphalangeal and distal interphalangeal joints. All hands are capable of a "three-jaw chuck" and palmar pinch grasp pattern between the thumb and first two digits, which is ideal for grasping cylindrical objects such as cups, steering wheels, and hand rails (Fig. 30.22A).

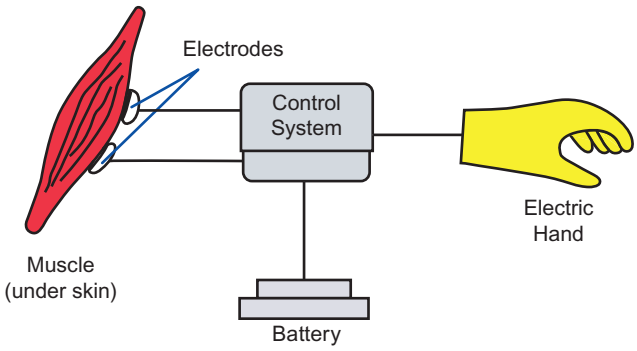


Fig. 30.20 Basic concept of myoelectric control: myoelectrodes, controller, battery, and electric component. (From Muzumdar, A. *Powered Upper Limb Prostheses*. Berlin: Springer; 2004:36.)

Fig. 30.21 Performing heavy-duty activities with self-suspension and an externally powered prosthesis. (Courtesy Advanced Arm Dynamics.)

Fig. 30.22 Single degree-of-freedom hand. (A) Three-jaw chuck grasp of steering wheel enhances driving performance. (B) The internal mechanism of the three-jaw chuck hand is visible through the outer structure. The motor controls movement of the index and middle fingers, while the fourth and fifth digits follow. (A, Courtesy Advanced Arm Dynamics. B, Courtesy Steeper Group.)

Fig. 30.23 The individual can concentrate on the activity rather than on the operation of the terminal device with the Sensor Hand Speed. (Courtesy Advanced Arm Dynamics.)

Single-DOF hands are limited to simple opening and closing of the thumb and the digits; most often the first two digits move toward the thumb while the remaining fingers (digits four and five) follow passively (see Fig. 30.22B). Some hands include sensors in the digits to provide slip control. This allows objects to be retained in the grasp without conscious control from patient input (Fig. 30.23).

Significant grasp forces can be achieved with single-DOF electric hands; in fact, pressures can be so significant that individuals must be cautioned during early training about the amount of force production. With proportional control, maximum grip strength is achieved with corresponding maximum input signal generated by forceful muscle contraction. The maximum grip force of a multiarticulating hand is somewhat lower than the single-DOF (noncompliant) hand. However, the amount of grasp necessary to stabilize an object is dependent on the type of grasp, number of contact points and friction between the fingers and object, and the weight and geometry of the object.[83] The reduced grip force of multiarticulating hands as compared with single-DOF hands is offset by the additional surface area and contour of multiple fingers around an object (Fig. 30.24).

Fig. 30.24 Multiarticulating hands are also called "compliant hands" because they comply to the shape of the object being grasped. Grasping the object with greater surface area provides a secure hold on the object. (© Össur.)

Multiarticulating hands permit many activities that were previously impossible to perform with single-DOF hands because of the variety of grasp patterns. For example, single-DOF hands do not have the capability of fully opening or allowing for single-digit movement. Multiarticulating hands allow for variation in individual preferences and manipulation strategies (Figs. 30.9 and 30.25). For those who had the option of six grasp patterns for use in their home environment (power, tool, chuck, fine pinch open, fine pinch close, and lateral pinch), lateral grip followed by chuck then pinch closed were most often selected by the individual.[84] Substantial variation of grasp pattern use exists between professions (housekeeper vs. machinist),

Fig. 30.25 Variable grip patterns allow the individual to hold, stabilize, and grasp objects of various sizes and shapes. Stabilizing a plate with a Michelangelo Hand. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

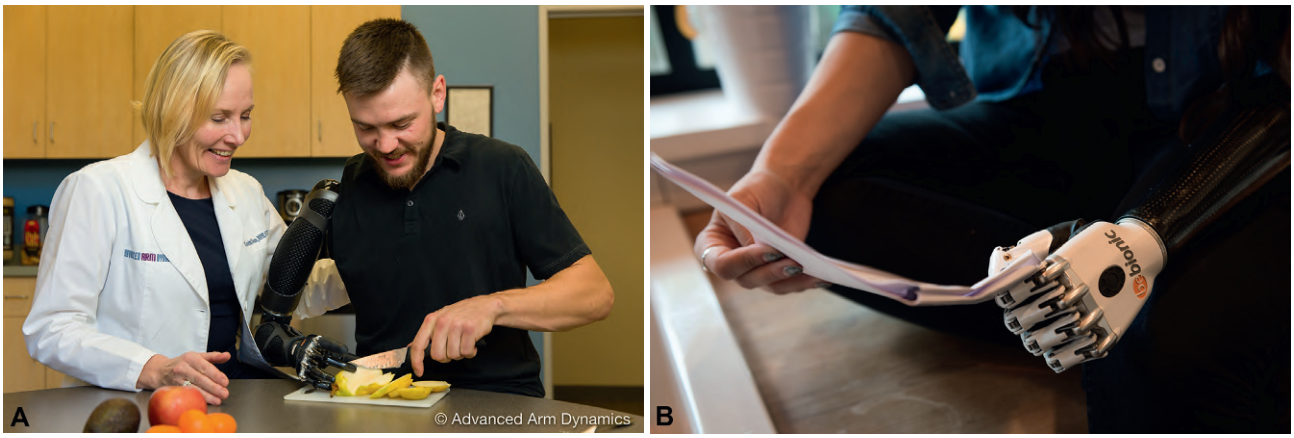


Fig. 30.26 Powered adduction of the thumb allows for both palmar and lateral prehension grasp patterns. (A) Palmar prehension allows for grasp of round or cylindrical objects. (B) Lateral prehension is one of the most common grasp patterns used during daily activities. (A, Courtesy Advanced Arm Dynamics. B, Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

as well as between individuals within those professions when performing different activities.[84,85] Because increasing DOF is associated with enhanced activity performance, powered opposition of the thumb that allows active movement from lateral prehension to palmar prehension is a prosthetic hand design recommendation.[83] This ability to move between palmar prehension (Fig. 30.26A) and lateral prehension (see Fig. 30.26B) reduces compensatory motions at the proximal joints.

Because most prostheses include a quick-disconnect option for the TD, prosthetic wearers can easily change TDs to suit their functional demands. Nonanthropomorphic (hook-style or utility) electric prehensors range from tools that closely resemble portable vices (Fig. 30.27A) to terminal hardware that closely mimics the functional characteristics of an electric hook (see Fig. 30.27B). Many of the nonanthropomorphic prehensors can generate even greater forces than the corresponding hands. The geometries of the opening mechanism allow these alternative tools to easily grasp larger, cylindrical, and irregularly shaped objects. The smaller tips of some of these prehensors allow individuals to grasp smaller and flatter objects and have less obstruction of the visual field. To date, no one TD is commercially available that satisfactorily replicates the lost proprioception and sensation or combines the function, durability, and cosmesis of the anatomic hand.

ELECTRIC WRISTS

Wrist units are necessary to connect the TD to the prosthesis and substitute for lost pronation and supination and sometimes for radial-ulnar deviation and flexion-extension motions. These movements may require prepositioning by the contralateral extremity unless using an electric rotator. Loss of wrist motion leads to compensatory motions.[86,87] Use of electric wrists with active DOF often requires more clearance and adds weight to the distal end of the prosthesis, thus requiring clinical decisions about the cost and benefits. Although two DOF electric wrist units exist, the additional weight and clearance requirements limit their clinical use.[88] Some TDs incorporate wrist flexion/extension or ulnar/radial deviation within the TD components, which provide the individual with advantageous approaches for improved grasp (Fig. 30.28).

Fig. 30.27 Nonanthropomorphic terminal devices for externally powered prostheses. (A) The Griefer opens with a parallel grasp and can provide the extremely strong grasp forces. (B) The electric terminal device opens with a nonparallel grasp and allows for activities in wet environments. (A, Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com. B, Courtesy Fillauer.)

Fig. 30.28 The Michelangelo hand incorporates a wrist that allows ulnar deviation for ergonomically correct positions. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

Fig. 30.29 The electric elbow provides elbow flexion whereas the electric wrist rotator pronates the hand after the hand grasps the object from the floor. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

ELECTRIC ELBOWS

A number of electric elbow components are commercially available; like TDs, many require that the prosthetist be specially trained in their implementation. Each electric elbow uses proprietary signal processing and drive mechanisms to achieve design-specific functional capabilities. In selecting electric elbow units, the prosthetist considers the specific functional needs of individuals in relation to the characteristics of the elbow such as weight lifting capacity, speed, weight, weight distribution, control options, mechanical configuration, and drive mechanism. Most commercially available elbow systems incorporate microprocessors that are compatible with a large array of input devices and can be programmed to use wrists and TDs from many but not all manufacturers. Prosthetists need to consider the compatibility of components from different manufacturers.

Functionally, electric elbow units provide powered flexion and extension at the elbow joint (Fig. 30.29). Substitution for internal and external rotation of the shoulder is more difficult. Most systems integrate a passive friction humeral rotator that allows the individual to reposition the forearm and TD in the desired amount of internal or external shoulder rotation though powered rotation is commercially available.[73,89] For individuals with exceptionally short transhumeral limbs and shoulder disarticulation, most prostheses use a mechanical device to replace the shoulder joint that can be passively prepositioned, although electrically actuated locks are available for clinical use and provide an effective means of locking the position of the humerus relative to the midline of the body for individuals with high-level amputations.

Externally Powered Control

One of the most important factors in the proper functioning of a prosthesis is the correct selection and implementation of the control system. For the externally powered prosthesis, the control system includes the input devices and the controller. The electronics to acquire the input signal(s) are called input devices. Examples of input devices include myoelectrode assemblies, switches, linear transducers (servos), and force-sensing resistors (touch pads); these are discussed in the myoelectric and alternative control system sections later in this chapter. The controller translates the signal from the input device to the correct command then transmits the commands to the motor in the electric component.[90,91]

Programmable microprocessors have had a positive impact on prosthetic fitting and maximize the individual's rehabilitation potential. Before microprocessors were available, myoelectric components were designed for individuals without the benefit of real-time clinical assessment. The current technology allows the prosthetist to identify individual-specific control schemes without having to replace hardware. Benefit is derived from the ability to save, recover, and manipulate software configurations easily and quickly with immediate feedback. Prosthesis users can trial various control schemes with the ease of returning to the precise original scheme and settings quickly. In addition, programmable controllers allow individuals with recent amputations to maximize their current physiologic control and then progress to significantly more complex and involved control schemes without having to replace components or relinquish a prosthesis for modification.

Although the microprocessor allows electric components to operate more predictably and smoothly, multiple items can interfere with their function, such as temperature extremes, electromagnetic interference, and incompatibility with the power source. Contemporary prostheses use lithium-based cells, which are smaller and lighter than nickel-cadmium batteries. The prosthetist must consider the voltage amplitude, voltage polarity, battery capacity,

and electrical connections when interconnecting transducers with control systems. Additional issues that may interfere with operation of the electric components include mechanical wear and tear of the electric and mechanical components and mechanical restrictions of an aging glove. In addition, not all microprocessors are compatible with commercially available TDs. Therefore the prosthetist must contact the component manufacturers to check compatibility and warranty guidelines.

MYOELECTRIC CONTROL SYSTEMS

The most common and preferred means to control a prosthesis is with myoelectric signals (MESs).[24,92] Among the advantages of myoelectric control are cosmesis,[3] increased prosthesis use in activities of daily living,[30] psychosocial adaptation,[93] reduced cortical reorganization and reduction of phantom limb pain intensity,[94] strengthening of muscle tone, and comfort. For an individual with a transradial amputation, the greatest advantage of myoelectric prostheses is the elimination of the harness. The harness is the most common source of prosthesis discomfort[29]; with the harness eliminated, the prosthesis is easier to don and doff, even when the person is fully dressed.[95]

The MES is the small electrical activity generated by the ionic activity of the contracting muscles and detected by surface electrodes. Modern circuitry and sophisticated filters allow most individuals, even those with small signals, the potential for reasonable control. "The amplitude and appearance of the signal is a function of many variables: *depth* of the muscle, *size* of the muscle, *strength* of the contraction, overlying *tissue*, as well as the *type, location, and orientation* of electrodes."[90]

Specific to myoelectric control, the practitioner must evaluate the MES to determine the minimum microvolt threshold and whether this would allow operation of a myoelectric prosthesis, the number of muscle sites or switches that can be independently controlled, signal separation, and the cognitive ability of the user (Box 30.3). These attributes are analyzed in consideration of the number of components and the DOFs needed for control.

Before the MES is sent to the controller, it is processed through a differential amplifier and filtered (dual-site control also requires that the MES be rectified and smoothed). Some software programs (Motion Control and Touch Bionics) allow prosthetists the ability to alter the smoothing algorithm. The MES inherently carries noise from a variety of sources, which is a problem because the noise may be confused with the true intended MES. Noise is reduced through a variety of mechanisms (Table 30.4). Common mode voltage is the noise from the environment that appears as an offset on both electrodes; the signal is literally common (belonging equally to both) electrodes. Devices that plug into outlets in the United States use a 60-Hz frequency, whereas in most other countries it is 50 Hz. The differential amplifier and notch filters reduce this common mode voltage.

Box 30.3 Myoelectric Input Signal Evaluation

- Myoelectric signal minimum microvolt threshold
- Cognitive ability of the user
- Specific to direct control
  - Number of muscle sites or switches that can be independently controlled
  - Signal separation

Table 30.4 Various Sources of Signal Noise

Signal Noise Source	Resolution
Common mode signal	Differential amplifier Notch filter
Motion artifact	Well-fitting socket
Crosstalk contamination[a]	Reduce the gain or reposition the sensor to reduce the signal level.
Physiologic noise	Locate sensor further away from the source

[a]Crosstalk contamination is not permitted in pattern recognition control.

Motion artifact occurs with vertical and horizontal movement of the electrode over the surface of the skin. It may be problematic during dynamic contractions, vigorous activities, or when lifting heavy loads.[90] Skin motion artifact is avoided by a snug and well-fitting socket. This means that the socket fit and the control system have been evaluated as the individual performs activities in various positions within their work space.

For dual-site myoelectric control, it is critical to identify isolated signals during myotesting and myotraining because signals from neighboring muscles can distort the amplitude and timing of the desired signal.[96] To avoid crosstalk contamination, the gain is reduced or a location identified with less interference from the undesired MES. Physiologic noise can be reduced only by repositioning the electrode further away from the source of the tissues that generate the interfering electrical signals.

After processing the signal (filtering out the noise, amplification, rectification, and smoothing), the MES can be thought of conceptually as a command that triggers the motor. When the MES is greater than the threshold, the controller sends a signal to the motor to be active. The clinician can alter the threshold or the gain setting to adjust the sensitivity of activation.

If the MES does not provide a varying voltage, the controller sends a fixed speed command to the motor. This digital speed control is in contrast to proportional control in which the MES provides a varying voltage that can control the speed, force, and position of the component(s). In other words, the speed and force of the electric component are proportional to the contraction level and intensity of the MES. This graded control enables individuals to develop extremely precise speed and grip strength function. Because of its superior function, most systems use proportional control. Clinicians need to adjust the gain setting so that the MES lies within the control range when using proportional control. Setting the amplification of the signal too high (i.e., gain setting) may result in loss of control-efficiency as strong MES may exceed the control range.[97] Depending on the strength and isolation of the signals, the prosthetist selects the appropriate control scheme such as dual-site control or pattern recognition control and sequential control or simultaneous control.

Sequential and simultaneous control refers to the operation of one or more components. Sequential control means that each component's motion is operated one at a time from the same input. For example, the controller sends a signal to the elbow to operate, then the controller switches modes from the elbow to the wrist for wrist operation. With simultaneous control, the same two MESs at the biceps and triceps can be used to control movement of elbow and wrist at the same time. Individuals use their biceps to simultaneously close the TD and pronate the prosthetic forearm or use their triceps to simultaneously open the TD and supinate the prosthetic forearm. For example, the person could grasp something off the floor with a pronated wrist and then flex his or her elbow while simultaneously positioning the wrist in neutral (see Fig. 30.29). Although simultaneous control is more challenging to operate, it allows for more seamless and efficient movement patterns. For a beginning prosthesis user, sequential control is recommended.

Dual-Site Control

Single-site and dual-site controls refer to the number of myoelectrode sites: one site and two sites, respectively (Fig. 30.30). Ideally, the prosthetist tries to identify two independent MESs in a set of physiologically paired (agonist and antagonist) muscles. For those with transradial limb loss, electrodes are typically positioned over flexor muscle residuum in the forearm to control grasp (closing of the TD) and the extensor muscle residuum to control release (opening of the TD). Many individuals who, with sufficient training, master independent contraction of these muscle groups are candidates for even more sophisticated control. The traditional dual-site sequential control scheme for an individual using an externally powered transhumeral prosthesis might include one myoelectrode to capture MES of the biceps and a second myoelectrode over the triceps. Assuming both MESs are of satisfactory amplitude and differentiation, successful myoelectric control of two devices—an electrically powered elbow and an electrically powered TD—can be successfully achieved. To extend the elbow, the individual purposefully contracts the triceps. The MES is provided continuously until the forearm and elbow reach the desired position in space. The elbow locks in this position by holding the elbow steady (no longer flexing or extending) through a predetermined and programed time interval. The controller then cycles to TD (hand) control, using the same two electromyography (EMG) inputs. To grasp an object, the individual purposefully contracts the biceps. The most commonly used sequential control scheme is contraction of the triceps to open the hand or extend the elbow and contraction of the biceps to close the hand or flex the elbow. Again, the beginning user might initially use this sequential control scheme. As they progress, some microprocessors can be adjusted to allow simultaneous control during therapy sessions until they are ready for it full time.

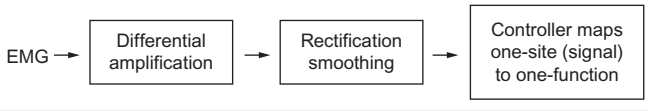


Fig. 30.30 Basic illustration of the stages of electromyography (EMG) myoelectric signal processing with single-site and dual-site myoelectric control.

A prosthetic control scheme with sequential control of two or more components or components with multiple DOFs (i.e., multiarticulating hands) requires a method for mode selection. Various selection methods, ways to use an MES trigger to switch modes or hand positions, exist. MES selection methods include a cocontraction, quick-slow contraction, impulse contraction (single, double, or triple), or a sustained hold-open contraction.

Many individuals wearing transradial myoelectric prostheses can use a quick cocontraction of forearm flexors and extensors to switch control between operation of the hand and the wrist unit, whereas those with transhumeral prostheses use a quick cocontraction of biceps and triceps to switch between control of the electric elbow, wrist, and hand. Cocontraction mode selection is based on the simultaneous timing of contraction of two muscles (usually antagonistic muscles). Effective mode selection with cocontraction requires an individual to fire antagonistic muscles above a predetermined threshold at nearly the same instant, which presents a training challenge for the therapist. Early in training, many new myoelectric prosthesis users focus on forcefulness of contraction in an effort to increase amplitude of the signal, rather than on producing the desired quick cocontraction. If an individual struggles or is unable to master cocontraction, the clinician can program a different MES trigger.

If an individual struggles or is unable to master mode selection with MES triggers, alternative control strategies are available. Non-MES inputs such as a button, Bluetooth beacons, radio-frequency identification tags, or movement of the device (gesture control) may be integrated to select a component or specific hand position. In addition, many systems allow the user a default mode (usually to the TD) to which the mode selector reverts after a predetermined time interval.

Pattern Recognition Control

Whereas dual-site (two-muscles:two-functions) control connects a single MES to control a single component's movement, pattern recognition connects multiple MES to produce muscle activation patterns that in turn send a variety of commands to the components. Pattern recognition control for multifunctional control has been discussed since the early 1970s[98] and has demonstrated improving accuracy and timely performance.[99] Individuals report that pattern recognition is closer to true intuitive control and more consistency of performance as compared with dual-site control.[99] When using pattern recognition, individuals contract their muscles as if they are opening/closing their hand, rotating their wrist, or flexing/extending their elbow commonly while imagining they are performing these motions with their phantom limb. The MES signals are sent to the controller for processing, which involves feature extraction from all MES signals. These features are then classified to determine the motion (or no motion) that is most likely intended by the prosthesis wearer. The controller then sends a motion command, which includes the relative speed, to actuate the prosthesis (Fig. 30.31).[100,101]

Pattern recognition control reduces some of the challenges of dual-site myoelectric control, such as muscle coactivation and EMG crosstalk contamination. Most importantly, it eliminates the need for mode selection. For

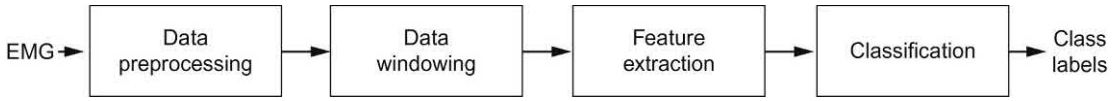


Fig. 30.31 Basic illustration of the stages of electromyography (EMG) myoelectric signal processing with pattern recognition myoelectric control. (From Scheme E, Englehart K. Electromyogram pattern recognition for control of powered upper-limb prostheses: state of the art and challenges for clinical use. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48(6):643–659.)

Fig. 30.32 With pattern recognition, the individual's intuitive motor patterns are used to select the desired grasp position and to select operation of the desired component. Here the individual produces a distinct motor pattern to grasp the tomato with index and thumb and a separate motor pattern to rotate the wrist. (© Össur.)

example, if an individual using a prosthetic hand and a wrist rotator would like to grasp an object, he or she would send an intuitive MES that means "pronate wrist" then a signal that means "open hand" followed by a signal that means "close hand" (Fig. 30.32). There is no need for the user to send a separate MES to switch control between the wrist and hand components because the intuitive signals are directly mapped to those motions. In addition, pattern recognition allows the individual to easily select a hand position of choice, such as three-jaw chuck, finger point for computer use, or lateral grip when using a multiarticulating hand (see Fig. 30.32).

The key for optimal user control is consistency and distinguishability of the MES patterns. Nonstationarities (i.e., variation) in MES patterns may be related to fatigue, sweat, changes in tissue location in the socket with donning, and surface motion of the electrodes such as during dynamic contractions, unusual static postures, vigorous activities, or lifting heavy loads. Variation in the MES patterns is well recognized by engineers who have designed the controller to select some MES features to account for the variation, as well as systems to allow the user to recalibrate the control system. The therapist's greatest challenge when training an individual to use a prosthesis with pattern recognition control is related to training muscle relaxation, as well as training how to generate a repeatable and distinct MES pattern.

ALTERNATIVE CONTROL SYSTEMS

If effective myoelectric control is too difficult to master for an individual immediately after amputation surgery, the prosthetist may opt to use an alternative means to operate the electric prosthetic components. Alternative control systems may include switch control, linear potentiometers, force transducers, and force sensing resistors.[102]

Switch control does not require myoelectric sensors against the skin. Simple switch control systems require extremely small movement to trigger—typically an excursion in millimeters and a force in fractions of pounds. This reduced excursion reduces the force required for control as compared with body-powered components that required larger cable excursions to operate the TD or lock or unlock the prosthetic elbow. The ease of operation of grasp and release can be mastered fairly readily by most new prosthesis users and the reduced forces for excursion limit exposure to stresses on the recently amputated residual limb. In addition to being used in early postoperative fittings, switches can be used in definitive prostheses because the small excursion and light force required to operate switch control makes prosthesis use feasible for individuals with limited ROM or strength. Although most switches are activated by pulling a cable or strap, other applications are activated by depressing a lever or button. Some switches are complex in nature because they have numerous functions that are dictated by the position of the switch. When switches are used to trigger electric prosthetic components, proportional control (graded action where the action of the device is proportional to the effort made to trigger its operation) is not possible. Unfortunately, this absence of proportional control is a limiting factor in many switch control applications.

Proportional control of all externally powered devices (especially of elbows and the TDs) enables individuals to achieve fine control of speed and force with less effort as compared with digital control.[103] Technology has enabled proportional control to further expand the functional range of the prosthesis, with higher-speed drive motors and clutches that allow extremely responsive and rapid control. When proportional control is coupled with circuitry designed to create and maintain stable prehensile patterns within the electric components, wearers can achieve increasingly complex and sophisticated tasking patterns.

To achieve true proportionality, a servo-resistor or other sensing resistor is necessary. Transducers detect biomechanical signals (force or excursion) and turn them into electrical signals.[91] These devices may (1) interpret the travel (excursion transducers or linear potentiometers) applied to the system and translate this input quantitatively with predetermined electrical outputs, or they may (2) translate force (force transducers or servos) simultaneously or independently of excursion to create a proportional output. Force transducers, as compared with linear potentiometers, are more challenging for the user to control because their activation requirements are minimal; thus a sleep mode is necessary to prevent inadvertent activation.[102]

Force-sensitive resistors (FSRs, also called touch pads) have found utility as a possible control driver in instances when MESs are not readily available. FSRs are designed to interpret surface pressure on the pad and supply a resultant proportional output. Because these devices are extremely flat and small in diameter, they are well suited for applications such as residual limb buds in children with congenital limb deficiencies or in partial-hand prostheses. However, special consideration must be given to the location and preparation of sites in which an FSR is to be used. These devices can become problematic if the base on which they are placed is not perfectly flat. Even a small radius can cause the conductive gel inside the sensor to fail. The location must be placed strategically to allow any perspiration to settle away from the sensor. In addition, FSRs can be challenging to operate for the prosthesis user. Because minimal movement is required to activate the sensor, they may detect inadvertent pressures from positioning the limb and/or the prosthesis in space. This makes it is difficult to determine how much force is being volitionally applied and thus sent to the controller.[38]

Engineers continue to develop alternative methods to produce control signals and create more intuitive control schemes.[104,105] However, despite the technologic advancements in externally powered prosthetics, lack of relevant sensory feedback of touch and proprioception within the system confines the intuitive nature of movement and requires visual and cognitive input for control of the components.[38,91] When considering the prosthesis design, the rehabilitation team (including the patient) needs to recognize this functional limitation when considering the desired functional performance outcomes.

Hybrid Prostheses

For some individuals, the integration of technology from both the body-powered and externally powered systems provides the greatest potential for functional outcome. Prosthetic systems can be configured to use an electric elbow with a body-powered mechanical prehensor or an electric prehensor with a body-powered elbow. Hybrid control refers to prostheses that combine body-powered control with externally powered control.[95] Compelling arguments can be made for various control systems; the ultimate decisions for components and control systems are based on an individual's ability to capture the necessary excursion and use proprioceptive feedback from the cable system, as well as the available inputs for the electric components.

Frequently, hybrid systems are sought due to insufficient range or strength available to provide complete functional control at the elbow joint and prehensor with body-powered systems. This may be the result of a frozen shoulder, an unstable joint that is vulnerable to frequent subluxation, or shoulder disarticulation. If the residual limb muscles can generate satisfactory MESs, despite the more proximal shoulder involvement, then myoelectric control of the prehensor can be achieved. Placement of the forearm in space can then be assisted using a large variety of spring-assisted or forearm-balancing mechanical devices. Advantages of hybrid designs include the potential for simultaneous control of elbow and prehensor, reduced overall weight of the prosthesis, and a wider selection of prosthetic components. The prosthetist must consider the compatibility of the components, whereas the therapist considers the specific training strategies with the control scheme.

Activity-Specific Prostheses

Most of this chapter's discussions have revolved around functions that relate to ADLs and vocational pursuits. Most individuals with upper extremity amputations want to be involved in various pursuits beyond ADLs and vocational activities, just as they were before their amputations. However, few individuals with limb loss participate in exercise and sports. Participation following amputation is lower than preamputation level.[106] A number of unique prosthetic interventions, as well as adaptations and assistive tools for an existing prosthesis, can effectively address the recreational and avocational desires of individuals.[94,107] Although conventional wisdom suggests that these pursuits not proceed until complete maximal rehabilitation has occurred with the primary prosthetic device, this is not always the case; being able to return to an important avocational activity might be a major motivating factor in rehabilitation. However, few individuals have the financial resources for specialized prostheses for vocational and avocational activities. Most prosthetists make every attempt to implement activity-specific devices within the primary prosthetic design. Because the array of activities in which individuals participate is limitless, so too is the creation of specific tools and adaptations to accommodate these needs. Quick disconnect wrists allow for a myriad of options in place of the existing TD. Commercial application of TDs can include nearly any imaginable adaptation for sport and recreational pursuits (Fig. 30.33). Specific challenges such as exposure to the elements, vibration, and impact may require more significant modification to ensure acceptable durability of the device.

Summary

Prosthetic rehabilitation of persons with upper limb loss is both challenging and rewarding. In addition to understanding the individual's needs, consideration of the needs and expectations of spouse, children, and extended family is important. Once functional, psychosocial, and other health care needs are completely understood, the team develops careful and thoughtful rehabilitation treatment plans. The rehabilitation team (including the physician, nurse, prosthetist, therapist, psychologist, and the individual) needs to explicitly define the patient-specific rehabilitation goals.

Upper extremity prosthetic technology has made rapid advancements, especially over the past decade. With engineering advancements in osseointegration[108] and osseoperception[109] and other technologies,[110] further progress is expected. Upper extremity prosthetic care requires attention to detail. Because of the rapid advancement, unique problem-solving, and the infrequent patient population, referral to an upper extremity prosthetic specialist is recommended.

An effective prosthetic prescription will specify (1) the control system (passive-functional, body-powered, externally powered, hybrid, or activity specific), (2) the socket

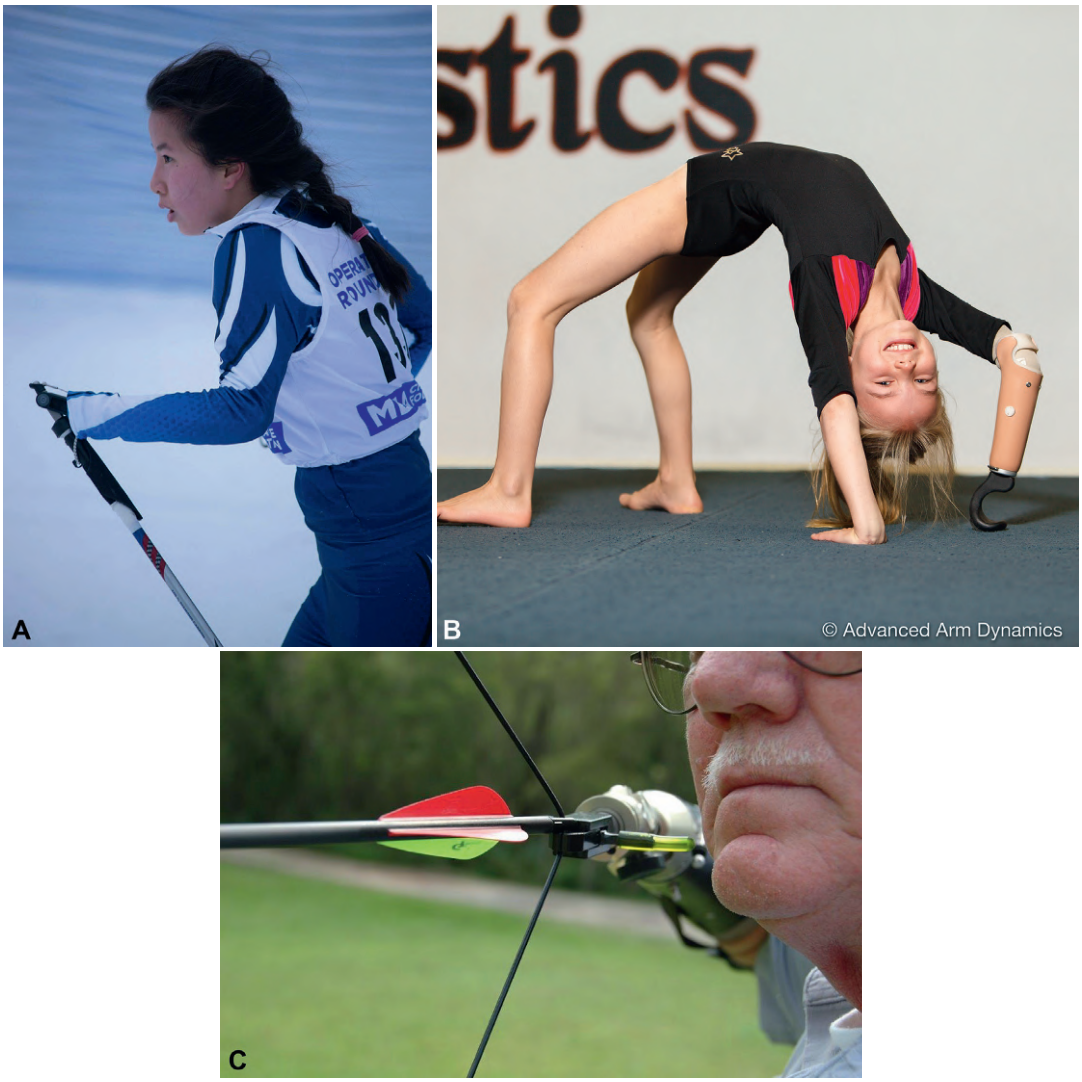


Fig. 30.33 Activity-specific prostheses allow for participation in various recreational activities across the life span. (A) Winter sports, (B) gymnastics, and (C) archery. (A, Courtesy TRS Prosthetics. B, Courtesy Advanced Arm Dynamics. C, Courtesy Texas Assistive Devices.)

type and interface (e.g., socks, foam insert, gel insert), (3) the suspension mechanism (e.g., harness, suction, roll-on liner, and pin), and (4) the appropriate TD components, wrist unit, elbow unit (if applicable), and shoulder unit (if applicable). Each of these categories can be subdivided, with the number of divisions based on the complexity of the case and the clinical resources available. A prescription for therapy should accompany the prescription for the prosthesis.

Prosthetic intervention plays an important role in the rehabilitation of the individual. Although each clinician has a specific focus, maximizing functional potential for community reintegration is the overarching rehabilitation goal. Clear communication and coordination are critical to enhance treatment outcomes. Rehabilitation success may be determined when the needs of the individual are met; when the technology is intuitive, functional, and comfortable from the individual's perspective; and when the individual is able to resume his or her participation in society at the same or higher level than before their amputation. Follow-up and continued care throughout the life span are critical to ensure a healthy lifestyle.

Acknowledgments

The authors acknowledge Susan Kapp, CPO, and Wayne Daly, CPO, who reviewed this chapter for clarity and accuracy.

References

1. Baumgartner RF. Guest editorial. Upper extremity amputation and prosthetics. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2001;38:vii–x.
2. Wijk U, Carlsson I. Forearm amputees' views of prosthesis use and sensory feedback. *J Hand Ther Off J Am Soc Hand Ther.* 2015;28:269–277. quiz 278.
3. Carey SL, Lura DJ, Highsmith MJ. Differences in myoelectric and body-powered upper-limb prostheses: Systematic literature review. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 2015;52:247–262.
4. González-Fernández M. Development of Upper Limb Prostheses: Current Progress and Areas for Growth. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2014;95:1013–1014.
5. Zuniga JM, et al. The development of a low-cost three-dimensional printed shoulder, arm, and hand prostheses for children. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2017;41:205–209.
6. Resnik L, et al. Advanced Upper Limb Prosthetic Devices: Implications for Upper Limb Prosthetic Rehabilitation. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2012;93:710–717.

7. Lenzi T, Lipsey J, Sensinger JW. The RIC Arm #x2014;A Small Anthropomorphic Transhumeral Prosthesis. *IEEEASME Trans Mechatron.* 2016;21:2660–2671.
8. Blanck RV. Upper Extremity Prosthetic Technology and Care. *Curr Phys Med Rehabil Rep.* 2014;2:290–299.
9. Fliegel O, Feuer SG. Historical development of lower-extremity prostheses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1966;47:275–285.
10. Magee R. Amputation through the ages: the oldest major surgical operation. *Aust N Z J Surg.* 1998;68:675–678.
11. Bowker JH, Pritham CH. The Interwoven Histories of Amputation Surgery and Prosthetics. In: Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies, 4th Edition *3–22*. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016.
12. Robinson KP. Historical aspects of amputation. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl.* 1991;73:134–136.
13. Clasper J, Ramasamy A. Traumatic amputations. *Br J Pain.* 2013;7:67–73.
14. Ziegler-Graham K, MacKenzie EJ, Ephraim PL, Travison TG, Brookmeyer R. Estimating the Prevalence of Limb Loss in the United States: 2005 to 2050. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2008;89:422–429.
15. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, Mackenzie EJ. Limb Amputation and Limb Deficiency: Epidemiology and Recent Trends in the United States. *South Med J.* 2002;95:875–883.
16. Fact Sheets | Resources & Publications | Diabetes | CDC. (2017). Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/library/factsheets.html. (Accessed: 26th January 2018).
17. Nicolas Walsh E, Bosker G, Santa Maria D, Frontera WR. Upper and Lower Extremity Prosthetics. In: Delisa's Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation: Principles and Practice *2017–2049*. Wolters Kluwer Health; 2015.
18. Ephraim PL, Dillingham TR, Sector M, Pezzin LE, MacKenzie EJ. Epidemiology of limb loss and congenital limb deficiency: a review of the literature1. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2003;84:747–761.
19. Koskimies E, Lindfors N, Gissler M, Peltonen J, Nietosvaara Y. Congenital Upper Limb Deficiencies and Associated Malformations in Finland: A Population-Based Study. *J Hand Surg.* 2011;36:1058–1065.
20. Meier RH, Esquenazi A. Rehabilitation Planning for the Upper Extremity Amputee. In: Functional Restoration of Adults and Children with Upper Extremity Amputation *55–62*. Demos Medical Publishing; 2004.
21. Krajbich JI, Pinzur MS, Potter BK, Stevens PM. *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies. 4th Edition.* American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016.
22. Klarich J, Brueckner I Amputee. Rehabilitation and Preprosthetic Care. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25:75–91.
23. Malone JM, et al. Immediate, Early, and Late Postsurgical Managment of Upper-Limb Amputation. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 1984;21:33–41.
24. Van Lunteren A, van Lunteren-Gerritsen GHM, Stassen HG, Zuithoff MJ. A field evaluation of arm prostheses for unilateral amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 1983;7:141–151.
25. Brenner JK. Wrist Disarticulation and Transradial Amputation: Prosthetic Management. In: *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies* 4th. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:233–241.
26. Manella K. Comparing the effectiveness of elastic bandages and shrinker socks for lower extremity amputees. *Phys Ther.* 1981;61:334–337.
27. Miller, Q., Spires, M. C., Davis, A. J. & Kelly, B. M. Upper Extremity Prosthetic Training: Use and Intergration into Life. in *Prosthetic Restoration and Rehabilitation of the Upper and Lower Extremity* 153–165 (Demos Medical Publishing).
28. Alimusaj, M. *et al. Compendium: Quality Standard in the Area of Upper Limb Prosthetics*. (Verein zur Qualitätssicherung in der Armprothetik e.V., 2014).
29. Biddiss E, Chau T. Upper-Limb Prosthetics: Critical Factors in Device Abandonment. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 2007;86:977–987.
30. Østlie K, et al. Prosthesis rejection in acquired major upper-limb amputees: a population-based survey. *Disabil Rehabil Assist Technol.* 2012;7:294–303.
31. Lake C, Dodson R. Progressive upper limb prosthetics. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin.* 2006;17:49–72.
32. Uellendahl JE, Ramdial S. *Custom silicone sockets for myoelectric prostheses,* 2005.
33. Passero T, Doolan K. Functional Aesthetic Prostheses: Upper Limb. In: *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies*. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016.
34. Mayer T. *One-Handed in a Two-Handed World.* Prince-Gallison Press; 2007.
35. Amputee Coalition - Learn about amputation & prosthetic care & request support for people living with limb loss, their families, caregivers and clinicians who care for amputees. *Amputee Coalition* Available at: https://www.amputee-coalition.org/. (Accessed: 19th February 2018).
36. Melton, D. H. Physiatrist Perspective on Upper-Limb Prosthetic Options: Using Practice Guidelines to Promote Patient Education in the Selection and the Prescription Process. in *JPO: Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics* 29, P40–P44 (LWW, 2017).
37. Sears H. Approaches to Prescription of Body-Powered and Myoelectric Prostheses. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin.* 1991;2:361–371.
38. Williams III TW. Progress on Stablizing and Controlling Powered Upper-Limb Prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48:ix–xix.
39. Pezzin LE, Dillianham TR, Mackenzie EJ, Ephraim P, Rossbach P. Use and satisfaction with prosthetic limb devices and related services. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2004;85:723–729.
40. Berke GM, et al. Comparison of satisfaction with current prosthetic care in veterans and servicemembers from Vietnam and OIF/OEF conflicts with major traumatic limb loss. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2010;47:361–372.
41. Murray CD. 'Don't you talk to your prosthetist?' Communicational problems in the prescription of artificial limbs. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2011;35.
42. Schaffalitzky E, et al. Identifying the Values and Preferences of Prosthetic Users: A Case Study Series Using the Repertory Grid Technique. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2009;33:157–166.
43. Semple KA. *Exploring Decision Making and Patient Involvement in Prosthetic Prescription.* University of Stirling; 2015.
44. Passero T. Devising the Prosthetic Prescription and Typical Examples. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25:117–132.
45. Spires M, Kelly B, Davis A. *Prosthetic Restoration and Rehabilitation of the Upper and Lower Extremity.* Demos Medical Publishing; 2014.
46. U.S. Army Medical Department Center & School Portal. Available at: http://www.cs.amedd.army.mil/Portlet.aspx?ID=3e4c64b4-3b35-483f-900b-a394a0ae45eb. (Accessed: 24th October 2017).
47. DMEPOS Quality Standards - ICN 905709. Available at: https://www.cms.gov/Outreach-and-Education/Medicare-Learning-Network-MLN/MLNProducts/DMEPOSQuality/DMEPOSQualBooklet-905709.html. (Accessed: 1st February 2018).
48. Nelson F, Blauvelt C. *A Manual of Orthopaedic Terminology,* 2015.
49. Soyer K, Ünver B, Tamer S, Ülger ÖG. The importance of rehabilitation concerning upper extremity amputees: A Systematic Review. *Pak J Med Sci.* 2016;32.
50. Brenner CD, Brenner JK. The Use of Preparatory/Evaluation/Training Prostheses in Developing Evidence-Based Practice in Upper Limb Prosthetics. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2008;20:70–82.
51. Smurr LM, Gulick K, Yancosek K, Ganz O. Managing the Upper Extremity Amputee: A Protocol for Success. *J Hand Ther.* 2008;21:160–176.
52. Nelson VS, et al. Limb Deficiency and Prosthetic Management. 1. Decision Making in Prosthetic Prescription and Management. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2006;87(3–9).
53. Carey, S. L., Stevens, P. M. & Highsmith, M. J. Differences in Myoelectric and Body-Powered Upper-Limb Prostheses: Systematic Literature Review Update 2013–2016. in *JPO: Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics* 29, P17–P20 (LWW, 2017).
54. Alley RD, Miguelez JM. *Prosthetic Rehabilitation of Glenohumeral Level Deficiencies. in* Functional Restoration of Adults and Children with Upper Extremity Amputation. Demos Medical Publishing; 2004.
55. Schultz AE, Baade SP, Kuiken TA. Expert opinions on success factors for upper-limb prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2007;44:483.
56. Miguelez JM, Lake C, Conyers D, Zenie J. The transradial anatomically contoured (TRAC) interface: design principles and methodology. *JPO J Prosthet Orthot.* 2003;15:148–157.
57. Miguelez J, Conyers D, Lang M, Dodson R, Gulick K. Transradial and wrist disarticulation socket considerations: case studies. *JPO J Prosthet Orthot.* 2008;20:118–125.
58. Daly W, Voo L, Rosenbaum-Chou T, Arabian A, Boone D. Socket pressure and discomfort in upper-limb prostheses: a preliminary study. *JPO J Prosthet Orthot.* 2014;26:99–106.
59. Schofield JS, et al. Characterization of interfacial socket pressure in transhumeral prostheses: A case series. *PloS One.* 2017;12. e0178517.
60. Daly WK. Elbow Disarticulation and Transhumeral Amputation: Prosthetic Management. In: *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies.* American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004.

61. Uellendahl EN. Silcone Interface Options in Upper Limb Prostheses. In: Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies 1. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016.
62. Uellendahl JE. Partial Hand Amputation: Prosthetic Management. In: Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies 1. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016.
63. Vasluian E, et al. Opinions of Youngsters with Congenital Below-Elbow Deficiency, and Those of Their Parents and Professionals Concerning Prosthetic Use and Rehabilitation Treatment. *PLoS ONE.* 2013;8(e67101).
64. Saradjian A, Thompson AR, Datta D. The experience of men using an upper limb prosthesis following amputation: Positive coping and minimizing feeling different. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2008;30:871–883.
65. Desteli EE, Ömren Y, Erdoğan M, Sarısoy G, Coşgun S. Comparison of upper limb amputees and lower limb amputees: a psychosocial perspective. *Eur J Trauma Emerg Surg.* 2014;40:735–739.
66. Whelan L, Flinn S, Wagner N. Individualizing goals for users of externally powered partial hand prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2014;51:885–894.
67. Burger H, Maver T, Marinček Č. Partial hand amputation and work. *Disabil Rehabil.* 2007;29:1317–1321.
68. Sagiv P, Shabat S, Mann M, Ashur H, Nyska M. Rehabilitation process and functional results of patients with amputated fingers. *Plast Reconstr Surg.* 2002;497(503).
69. Stapanian MA, Stapanian AMP, Staley KE. Rehabilitation for Bilateral Amputation of Fingers. *Am J Occup Ther.* 2010;64:923–928.
70. Maat B, Smit G, Plettenburg D, Breedveld P. Passive prosthetic hands and tools: A literature review. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2017. 0309364617691622.
71. Uellendahl J, Uellendahl E. Experience Fitting Partial Hand Prostheses with Externally Powered Fingers. In: Grasping the Future: Advances in Powered Upper Limb Prosthetics *15–27*. Bentham Science; 2012.
72. Bajaj NM, Spiers AJ, Dollar AM. State of the Art in Prosthetic Wrists: Commercial and Research Devices. *IEEE Int Conf Rehabil Robot ICORR.* 2015;331–338. https://doi.org/10.1109/ICORR.2015.7281221.
73. Ivko JJS. Independence Through Humeral Rotation In the Conventional Transhumeral Prosthetic Design. *JPO J Prosthet Orthot.* 1999;11:20.
74. Frey DD, Carlson LE, Ramaswamy V. Voluntary-opening Prehensors with Adjustable Grip Force. *Jpo J Prosthet Orthot.* 1995;7:124–131.
75. Radocy B. Voluntary closing control: a successful new design approach to an old concept. *Clin Prosthet Orthot.* 1986;10:82–86.
76. de Visser H, Herder JL. Force-directed design of a voluntary closing hand prosthesis. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 2000;37:261–271.
77. Sensinger JW, Lipsey J, Thomas A, Turner K. Design and evaluation of voluntary opening and voluntary closing prosthetic terminal device. *J Rehabil Res Dev Wash.* 2015;52:63–75.
78. Procter S, LeBlanc M. Clinical Evaluation of a New Design Prosthetic Prehensor. *JPO J Prosthet Orthot.* 1991;3:79.
79. Hess A. Upper limb body-powered components. In: *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies, 4th Edition*. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016.
80. Fryer CM, Michael JW. Harnessing and Controls for Body-Powered Devices. In: *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies*. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016.
81. Bertels, T. Results of a study with the Goal to Optimize Harnesses by Means of Up-To-Data Biomechanical Engineering. in (University of New Brunswick, 2002).
82. Miguelez J, Conyers D, Lang M, Gulick K. *Upper Extremity Prosthetics. in* Textbooks of Military Medicine: Care of the Combat Amputee *607–640;* 2009.
83. Belter JT, Segil JL, Dollar AM, Weir RF. Mechanical design and performance specifications of anthropomorphic prosthetic hands: A review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2013;50:599.
84. Resnik L, Acluche F, Borgia M. The DEKA hand: A multifunction prosthetic terminal device—patterns of grip usage at home. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2017. 0309364617728117.
85. Bullock IM, Zheng JZ, Rosa SDL, Guertler C, Dollar AM Grasp. Frequency and Usage in Daily Household and Machine Shop Tasks. *IEEE Trans Haptics.* 2013;6:296–308.
86. Carey SL, Jason Highsmith M, Maitland ME, Dubey RV. Compensatory movements of transradial prosthesis users during common tasks. *Clin Biomech.* 2008;23:1128–1135.
87. Metzger AJ, Dromerick AW, Holley RJ, Lum PS. Characterization of Compensatory Trunk Movements During Prosthetic Upper Limb Reaching Tasks. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2012;93:2029–2034.
88. Kyberg PJ, et al. Two-degree-of-freedom powered prosthetic wrist. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48:609.
89. LUKE Arm Detail Page – Mobius Bionics. Available at: http://www.mobiusbionics.com/luke-arm/#section-one. (Accessed: 1st March 2018).
90. Lovely DF. Signals and Signal Processing for Myoelectric Control. In: *Powered Upper Limb Prostheses*. Springer-Verlag; 2004.
91. Childress DS, Weir RF. Control of Limb Prostheses. In: *Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies*. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2004.
92. Stein R, Walley M. Functional comparison of upper extremity amputees using myoelectric and conventional prostheses. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 1983;64:243–248.
93. Hafshejani M, et al. The comparison of psychological and social adaptation below elbow amputation men using a mechanical and myoelectric prosthesis by using of TAPES questionnaire. *Life Sci J.* 2012;9:5583–5587.
94. Carey SL, Lura DJ, Highsmith MJ. CP & FAAOP. Differences in myoelectric and body-powered upper-limb prostheses: Systematic literature review. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2015;52:247–262.
95. Uellendahl, J. Myoelectric versus Body-Powered Upper-Limb Prostheses: A Clinical Perspective. in *JPO: Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics* 29, P25–P29 (LWW, 2017).
96. What factors affect EMG Signal Quality? Available at: http://www.delsys.com/products/software/emgworks/sqm/factors/. (Accessed: 19th February 2018).
97. Kampas P. The optimal use of myo-electrodes. *Med Ortho Tech.* 2001;121:21–26.
98. Wirta R, Taylor D, Finley F. Pattern-recognition arm prosthesis: a historical perspective-a final report. *Bull Prosthet Res.* 1978;8(35).
99. Wurth SM, Hargrove LJ. A real-time comparison between direct control, sequential pattern recognition control and simultaneous pattern recognition control using a Fitts' law style assessment procedure. *J Neuroengineering Rehabil.* 2014;11(91).
100. Scheme E, Englehart K. Electromyogram pattern recognition for control of powered upper-limb prostheses: State of the art and challenges for clinical use. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48:643.
101. Simon AM, Hargrove LJ, Lock BA, Kuiken TA. Target Achievement Control Test: Evaluating real-time myoelectric pattern-recognition control of multifunctional upper-limb prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48:619.
102. Kyberg P, Bush G, Hussanini A. Control Options for Upper Limb Externally Powered Components. In: Atlas of Amputations and Limb Deficiencies 1. American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons; 2016:193–201.
103. Sears H, Shaperman J. Proportional Myoelectric Hand Control: An Evaluation. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil.* 1991;70:20–28.
104. Lipschutz RD, Lock B, Sensinger J, Schultz AE, Kuiken TA. Use of two-axis joystick for control of externally powered shoulder disarticulation prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48:661.
105. Losier Y, Englehart K, Hudgins B. Evaluation of shoulder complex motion-based input strategies for endpoint prosthetic-limb control using dual-task paradigm. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2011;48:669.
106. Deans S, Burns D, McGarry A, Murray K, Mutrie N. Motivations and barriers to prosthesis users participation in physical activity, exercise and sport: a review of the literature. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2012;36:260–269.
107. Webster JB, Levy CE, Bryant PR, Prusakowski PE. Sports and recreation for persons with limb deficiency. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil.* 2001;82:S38–S44.
108. Salminger S, et al. Attachment of upper arm prostheses with a subcutaneous osseointegrated implant in transhumeral amputees. *Prosthet Orthot Int.* 2016.
109. Häggström E, et al. Vibrotactile evaluation: Osseointegrated versus socket-suspended transfemoral prostheses. *J Rehabil Res Dev.* 2013;50:1423–1434.
110. Lipschutz, R. D. Impact of Emerging Technologies on Clinical Considerations: Targeted Muscle Reinnervation Surgeries, Pattern Recognition, Implanted Electrodes, Osseointegration, and Three-Dimensional Printed Solutions. in *JPO: Journal of Prosthetics and Orthotics* 29, P35–P39 (LWW, 2017).

31 Rehabilitation for Persons With Upper Extremity Amputation☆

ANNEMARIE E. ORR

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

On completion of this chapter, the reader will be able to do the following:

1. Identify the therapeutic goals of rehabilitation in adult clients with upper extremity amputation in the postoperative care, preprosthetic, basic prosthetic training, and advanced functional skills training phases of rehabilitation.
2. Identify the key components of a comprehensive evaluation for clients with upper extremity amputation.
3. Develop an appropriate plan of care for clients with upper limb amputation in each of the phases of rehabilitation.
4. Recognize the key characteristics of therapeutic interventions in the preprosthetic and prosthetic training phases of rehabilitation for body-powered and myoelectric prosthetic devices.
5. Identify therapeutic activities and interventions to facilitate functional independence in activities of daily living (ADLs) with and without a prosthesis.
6. Identify the current research and advancements in prosthetic technologies for upper extremity amputation and analyze how these may have future implications on functional outcomes for clients.

"Hands can do all kinds of things…change a tire, bake a pie, fly a kite or catch a fly, plant a seed and help it grow, point the way for feet to go.…Rough hands, smooth hands, plump hands, thin hands like wrinkled apple skin. Hands can do most anything…wear a ring, wear a glove, most important…hands can love!"[1] *Edith Baer*

Rehabilitation after Upper Extremity Amputation

Human hands are wonderfully complex sensory and motor organs capable of interpreting and interacting with the environment. The fine manipulative skills and intricate grasp patterns of the hand cannot be duplicated. When a hand is lost, the ability to perform normal daily tasks is greatly changed. Although a prosthesis does not duplicate hand function, it can help to provide for basic grasp in the performance of normal daily activities and help to maintain bilateral hand function.

This chapter discusses the rehabilitation of adults with upper extremity amputations including aspects of postoperative care, preprosthetic training, basic prosthetic training, and advanced functional skills training. The rehabilitation of adults with amputation requires a team approach. The client is the primary member of this interdisciplinary team and is encouraged to play an active role in their rehabilitation plan of care. The role of the therapist in working with clients with upper limb amputation is to facilitate the individual's return to maximum performance of daily occupations and roles that contribute to living a meaningful life.[2,3]

Incidence and Causes of Upper Extremity Amputation

The primary cause of upper limb amputations in adults is trauma. Of the approximately 75% that are traumatic, the most common causes of injury are work-related accidents such as crush injuries or electrical burns, gunshot wounds, and, in times of active warfare, traumatic injuries sustained in combat. Congenital anomalies, infections, and tumors are examples of nontraumatic causes of amputation. Because upper extremity amputations are typically occupation related, they primarily occur in young adults between the ages of 20 and 40 years; the ratio of men to women is 4:1. Dillingham[4] reported approximately 18,500 new upper extremity amputations per year. Just fewer than 2000 of these are at wrist level or higher. The ratio of upper extremity amputations to lower extremity amputations is 1:4.[4,5]

Classification and Functional Implications

The classifications for levels of upper extremity amputation are described anatomically and are illustrated in Fig. 31.1.

☆The author extends appreciation to Margaret Wise, whose work in prior editions provided the foundation for this chapter.

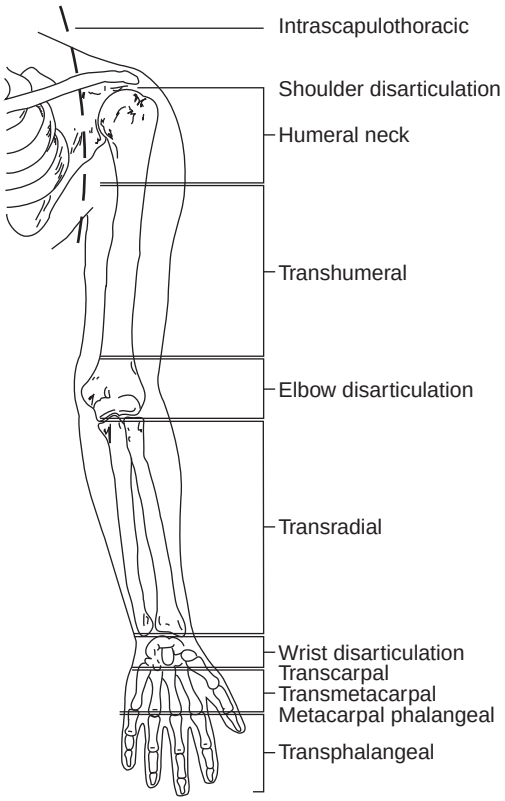


Fig. 31.1 Classification levels of upper extremity amputation. (Modified, with permission, from Kottke F, Lehman JF, eds. *Krusen's Handbook of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 1990. p. 1011.)

The term *disarticulation* describes an amputation through the joint. From proximal to distal, the term *intrascapular* thoracic describes an amputation of the entire upper extremity, scapula, and clavicle. *Transhumeral* describes an amputation through the humerus, also known as an above-elbow amputation. The term *transradial* describes an amputation through the radius and ulna, also known as a below-elbow amputation (see Fig. 31.1).[4-6]

Functionally speaking, with more proximal levels of amputation, fewer joints and muscles are available to control the prosthetic device. Although a longer residual limb provides better mechanical advantage for prosthetic use, limb length does not always correspond to an increase in prosthetic function. For example, the length of the residual limb in an elbow disarticulation or long transhumeral amputation limits the space available for an elbow unit and affects both cosmesis and function of the prosthesis.

Stages of Rehabilitation

The rehabilitation of individuals with upper extremity amputation can be divided into four phases: postoperative care, preprosthetic training, basic prosthetic training, and advanced functional skills training. Although certain goals and activities are unique to each phase, there is overlap between each phase that allows for bidirectional movement and flexibility based on the client's progression, tolerance, and goals. The phases may be repeated with each prosthetic device the client receives.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

The postoperative care phase begins immediately after injury until wound healing is complete. The initial goals of therapy during this phase must be modified according to the client's medical status. Goals of the postoperative care phase of rehabilitation include the following:

- To perform a comprehensive evaluation of the client
- Pain management
- To promote wound healing
- To establish a strategy for effective edema control
  - To preserve range of motion (ROM), flexibility, and body symmetry
  - To psychological support

Comprehensive Evaluation

A comprehensive evaluation is used to determine baseline information about the client's past medical history and current functional status. The evaluation includes an interview with the client and family members, identification of occupational roles, home and work environments, and leisure interests. The therapist also assesses the client's upper extremity ROM and strength, sensation, wound and skin healing, limb volume, pain, ADL performance, and psychological adjustment postamputation.

A comprehensive examination begins with conducting a thorough history and gathering preliminary or background data, including the following:

- The cause and date of amputation
- Any associated injuries that might influence the rehabilitation process
- Hand dominance
- All medications the client is currently taking

The examination continues with an assessment of the psychosocial environment as a resource for rehabilitation and discharge planning. The therapist assesses the following client characteristics:

- The availability of family and other support systems
- Living situation
- Level of education
- Prior occupation and leisure interests

The therapist then considers the condition of the residual limb, documenting the following:

- The presence and description of any phantom limb sensation
- The presence and description of any pain the client is experiencing
- The length of the residual limb
- The presence of edema, measured by limb circumference
- Skin condition, wound healing, and the presence of scar tissue or soft tissue adhesion

- Detailed ROM of the residual limb to identify any contractures or tightness that may be present
- Evaluation of upper extremity strength bilaterally
- Evaluation of possible sites for placement of electrodes for myoelectric control

The comprehensive examination concludes with a consideration of mobility and functional status, including the following:

- Posture and skeletal alignment as a result of the missing limb
- Pertinent limitations of the lower extremity
- Postural control (static, anticipatory, and reactionary balance)
- Current and potential abilities to perform activities of special interest to the individual (e.g., self-care, work, leisure activities)

If the client previously used a prosthesis, a prosthetic history is taken that includes the type of prosthesis used, how long the prosthesis was worn each day, and how the prosthesis was used in basic and instrumental ADLs. The findings from the initial comprehensive evaluation will guide the rehabilitation plan of care to assist the client in meeting his or her functional goals.[6]

Pain Management

There are various types of pain following amputation. It is important for the therapist to understand how each type of pain is distinct and its effect on the clients' prosthetic rehabilitation. Residual limb hyperesthesia, or an overly sensitive residual limb, is common after amputation. Reduction of hypersensitivities through desensitization techniques improves the client's tolerance to wearing a prosthesis. Desensitization techniques to include tapping, vibration, and introduction of various textures to the skin are performed after wound closure.[7]

Phantom limb sensation is a normal phenomenon experienced by most clients with upper limb amputation.[8] It is a painless sensation of the limb that is no longer there. Clients typically report that they feel all or part of their amputated limb. Some describe a pulling, tingling, or burning sensation in the missing limb, and the distal aspect of the limb is most frequently felt. The sensation may decrease over time, or the client may experience it throughout their life.

Phantom limb pain occurs in 90% of individuals with amputation.[9] Clients often describe the pain as stabbing, burning, or throbbing. Treatment methods include desensitization techniques, analgesics, mirror therapy, biofeedback, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, and surgical revision.[10,11] Effectiveness of these techniques vary with each client. Currently no evidence strongly supports any one approach for the treatment of phantom limb pain. Therefore a multimethod team approach is recommended to maximize the management of this pain.

Wound Healing

Wound dressings are often removed during therapy in order to assess the incision and the skin. A thorough wound assessment should include the anatomic location, measurements (length, width, and depth in centimeters), color and quality of the wound (i.e., closed incision), type and color of exudate, odor, pain, and a description of the periwound skin.[12] Additional assessment data may be required depending on the type and character of the wound, and treatment protocols may vary according to physician or facility preference. Therapists should feel comfortable cleansing the wound and reapplying new dressings. Wound débridement is occasionally required, and the therapist may collaborate with the physician or the wound specialist to determine appropriate débridement practices during dressing changes.

A significant client-centered concern during the acute postoperative phase is pain. Initial dressing changes may be painful for the client, leading to anxiety for subsequent treatments. Physicians may prescribe pain medications for dressing changes. Nonpharmalogic approaches to pain management should include the use of nonadherent, atraumatic dressings, education, empowerment, and anxiety reduction.[12]

In general, closed incisions should be treated with nonadherent dressings or they may be left open to air after 1 to 3 days postoperatively. If they are located directly under a prosthesis or other device, they may require additional protection. Skin grafts need to remain covered with nonadherent dressings for several weeks postoperatively, and measures should be taken to avoid shearing forces along the site of the graft.

EDEMA CONTROL

Immediately following surgery and limb closure, edema control is initiated. Limb wrapping is used to decrease edema and promote optimal shaping of the residual limb. The residual limb is wrapped with an elastic bandage in a figure-of-eight configuration for distal to proximal compression. Education should be provided to the client and family members to never wrap the limb in a circular fashion because it will restrict circulation and cause a tourniquet effect. Once clearance is obtained from a physician, the client can be fit with an elastic shrinker or compression garment. The client is educated to wear the shrinker at all times for edema control and perform skin checks two to three times daily. Ideally, the bandage should continue up and over one joint proximal to the amputation (e.g., above the elbow in transradial amputation) (Figs. 31.2 and 31.3).

Range of Motion, Flexibility, and Body Symmetry

Implementation of a comprehensive exercise program is of utmost importance in the weeks following upper limb amputation. After amputation, clients tend to hold their residual limb in a position of comfort, and soft tissue contractures begin to develop if the limb is consistently held in this position. In clients with transhumeral amputation, limitations of shoulder flexion, abduction, and external rotation are likely to occur. Elbow flexion contracture and loss of supination and pronation are common occurrences in clients with transradial amputation.

Once medical clearance has been given, the occupational therapist will engage the client in exercises to maintain or increase ROM and to strengthen the upper quadrant and trunk. Early ROM exercise to gently elongate tissues of joints most at risk of contracture formation is essential. It is

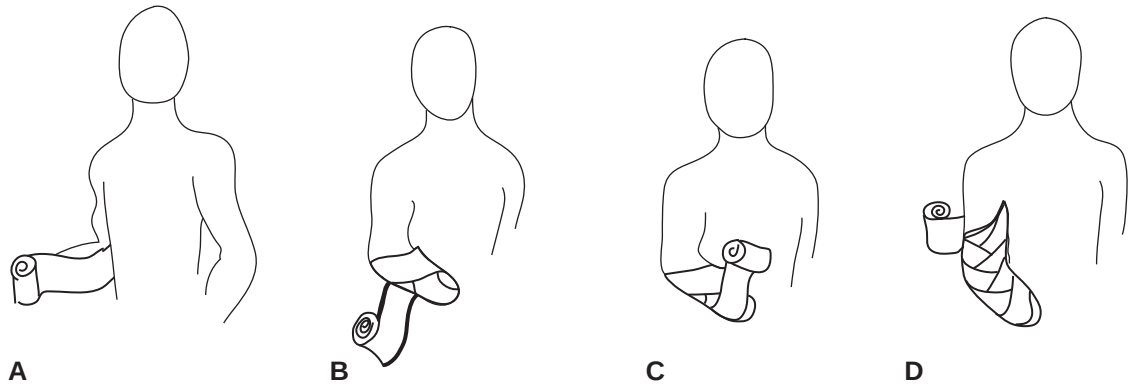


Fig. 31.2 (A) To apply a compressive wrap to a transradial residual limb, the client anchors the elastic bandage between the elbow and trunk and wraps it around the distal end of the limb. Next, a series of overlapping figure-of-eight layers of the wrap (B and C) are applied, creating a distal-toward-proximal pressure gradient. The wrap should continue proximally for several inches above the elbow joint (D).

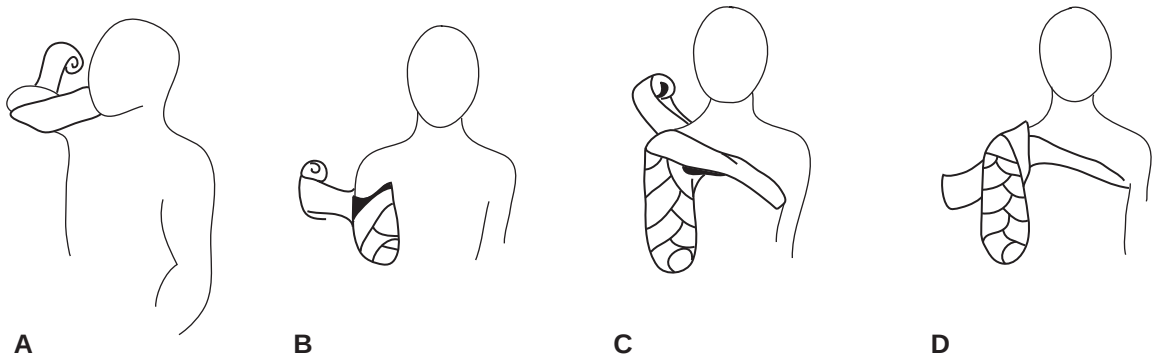


Fig. 31.3 (A) To apply a compressive wrap to a transhumeral residual limb, the client anchors the elastic bandage between the chin and clavicle and wraps it over and behind the distal end of the residual limb. (B) Once the initial figure-of-eight layer is applied to anchor the end of the bandage, the client continues to apply overlapping layers, creating a distal-toward-proximal pressure gradient. The wrap continues up and over the shoulder (C), over the anterior chest wall under the contralateral axilla, and then around the back, over the residual shoulder, and under the axilla before being secured in place (D).

necessary to maintain ROM, strength, and flexibility of the shoulder flexors, abductors, rotators, and scapular protractors/retractors to decrease the risk of rejection of a prosthesis.[13]

Maintenance of body symmetry and proper trunk alignment following upper limb amputation can decrease the risk of overuse injuries of the upper limb, neck, or back.[5] Therapeutic activities are performed in front of a mirror to provide visual feedback and promote body awareness.

Psychological Support

Psychological adjustment following amputation is multifactorial. The client's personality, quality of social support, and sociocultural response to amputation all contribute to the individual's process of adjustment following limb loss.[14] Psychological support should be addressed throughout each phase of the rehabilitation process, from initial amputation through reintegration into the community. It is the role of the therapist to build a relationship of trust with the client. This rapport encourages an open discussion about the individual's psychological adjustment to loss of their limb. An individual's response to amputation is complex and individualized. Although the therapist can play an important role in providing psychological support, it is important to refer the client to a behavioral health specialist or spiritual counselor, as indicated.[15]

Case Example 31.1 **A Client With Bilateral Traumatic Amputation of the Forearm**

T. M. is a 17-year-old high school soccer player who underwent traumatic amputation of his right and left forearms when the sleeves of his winter jacket became caught in the blades of a running snow blower that had jammed, then suddenly released, as he was trying to clear the mechanism. T. M. was home alone when the accident occurred and had significant blood loss before he was able to reach a neighbor's home for assistance. At the local hospital, tourniquets were placed to control blood loss, wounds were flushed and cleaned, intravenous fluids with antibiotics and packed red blood cells were begun, and morphine was administered. T. M. was prepared for emergency transfer to the nearest trauma center.

On arrival at the trauma center, he was immediately taken to surgery for débridement and closure of his wounds. His parents arrived at the trauma center while he was in surgery. The right transradial residual limb had 3 inches of radius and ulna preserved and required a split-thickness skin graft to close (the donor site was the anterior right thigh). The left transradial residual limb had 7 inches of radius and ulna preserved and was closed without skin graft.

Continued on following page

Case Example 31.1 A Client With Bilateral Traumatic Amputation of the Forearm (Continued)

Two days have passed since T. M.'s surgery, and he is recovering in the surgical intensive care unit. His white blood cell count and temperature are moderately elevated. His residual limbs are in bulky dressings with elastic compressive wraps, with significant serosanguineous drainage noted at dressing changes. A morphine pump is being used for pain management. T. M. is currently receiving supplemental oxygen by nasal cannula and is sleeping fitfully. On questioning, he is semi-alert, oriented to family members and place, but not to others or time.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What questions and assessments are most appropriate to include in the evaluation at this point in the postoperative phase of T. M.'s care? How will the information collected guide the development of a plan of care for this young man?
- What specific intervention strategies should the rehabilitation team use to address issues of pain control, limb volume and edema, and wound healing in the next 2 to 5 days? How should client and family education be best integrated with these strategies?
- What specific ROM is most important to target for this young man with a short transradial residual limb on the right and a long transradial residual limb on the left, anticipating the need for bilateral prostheses in his future? Which upper extremity joints are most at risk of contracture formation and why? What specific intervention strategies should the therapists initiate to preserve as much functional ROM as possible? How might pain, medications, and level of consciousness influence the potential development of soft tissue contractures?
- In what ways can the team help to establish an effective relationship with T. M. and his parents in these early days of care? What information is most important to help the family cope with this crisis situation and prepare for the days ahead? How will the rehabilitation team assess the family's understanding of the situation and need for emotional support?

PREPROSTHETIC TRAINING

The preprosthetic training phase begins after wound closure and ends with the client being fit with a preparatory prosthesis. Time spent in this phase of rehabilitation depends largely on the client's limb volume, ROM, pain and hypersensitivity, and psychological status. The primary goal of this phase is to prepare the client and their residual limb to be fit with a prosthetic device. Many of the goals from the postoperative care phase carry over and advance in the preprosthetic training phase.

Goals for the preprosthetic training phase include the following:

- Continue to provide psychological support
- Edema control and limb shaping for optimal fit of a prosthesis
- Enhancing ROM and strengthening
- Myosite testing and training
- Basic training in ADLs

Psychological Support

Psychological support is considered an integral part of the early rehabilitation program and should be made available for the family and client.[16] Clients may benefit from meeting with a peer mentor or with individuals who have experienced similar amputations.[14] Peer visits help to facilitate discussions about the rehabilitation process, provide education on the phases of recovery, and can assist in setting expectations for the client to return to their life roles.[14]

Edema Control and Limb Shaping

In the preprosthetic training phase, the client must continue to use some type of compression on the residual limb nearly 24 hours a day, removing it only for wound care and bathing. At this point, elasticized shrinkers or a roll-on liner may replace the figure-of-eight bandages because they are more convenient and provide more consistent compression (Figs. 31.4 and 31.5). For those with transradial amputations, the shrinker should extend at least 2 inches above the elbow. For those with transhumeral amputations, the sock extends as high as possible on the humerus and may be anchored with a strap going across the chest.

As limb volume decreases, the shrinker should be made smaller (leaving the seam on the outside of the sock) or replaced with a smaller size garment so that it still compresses the residual limb. If shrinkers are not available or the client is not yet able to tolerate the compressive force provided by a shrinker, tubular elastic bandaging, such as Compressogrip (Knit-Rite, Kansas City, KS) or Tubigrip (Seton Healthcare Group, Oldham, England), is an alternative. Typically a double layer of bandage is worn, with the layer underneath longer and extending 2 inches further proximally than the second layer. Use of a cylindrical tube, or donner, is recommended to increase ease of application of the shrinker on the residual limb. Client and family education is provided on use of the donner and independent application of the shrinker.

Edema can further be reduced through soft tissue mobilization and retrograde massage. Soft tissue mobilization around areas of adherent tissue through gentle friction

Fig. 31.4 An appropriately applied double layer of tubular elastic bandage on a transradial amputation

Fig. 31.5 A roll-on gel liner provides consistent compression for limb volume and shaping. It can also be used for suspension with a pin-lock prosthetic system, as shown on this client with a transradial amputation.

Fig. 31.6 In the preprosthetic training phase of rehabilitation, clients can incorporate equipment such as a cuff with D-rings to advance their upper extremity strengthening exercise program.

massage helps to enhance circulation and increase flexibility. Ending treatment with retrograde massage with gentle stroking techniques in the direction of lymphatic flow also helps to control edema.[17] Heat modalities may be useful as a preparation for subsequent massage and active exercises. Elevation, although still important, becomes more difficult to enforce with a mobile client. Raising the residual limb over the head and performing contractions of remaining musculature at least once an hour during the day also helps to control edema. Active participation in self-care and use of the arm as an assist during functional activities is encouraged for edema control.

Enhancing Range of Motion and Strengthening

Daily ROM exercises are important to prepare the client for use of a prosthetic device. Having as close to full upper extremity ROM as possible allows the client to use the prosthesis to its full capability. Interventions such as heat modalities, soft tissue mobilization, gentle stretching, and active ROM exercises can often improve motion in clients with recently developed tissue tightness and ROM restriction.

According to the level of upper limb amputation, the client will perform exercises that mimic the movements required to control the prosthetic device. As a strengthening exercise, the therapist will position the residual limb in the desired posture and ask the client to hold the appropriate muscles in place. Isometric exercises allow the client to participate in an exercise program without equipment. As the client progresses, equipment such as elastic bands, strap-on weights, and adaptive cuffs with D-rings can be incorporated (Fig. 31.6).

For control and operation of a body-powered prosthesis or a hybrid prosthesis, clients must strengthen the muscles that control shoulder flexion, scapular protraction, retraction, and depression. The muscles used to stabilize the glenohumeral and scapulothoracic joints are the trapezius, serratus anterior, rotator cuff, and deltoids. Open and close of the terminal device is controlled through shoulder and scapular movements. Scapular protraction or retraction (depending on if the system is voluntary open or close), combined with shoulder flexion of the residual limb, produces tension on the control cable and activates the terminal device. It is the role of the therapist to guide the client through a home exercise program for self-stretching and upper extremity strengthening in preparation for use of a prosthesis.

Myosite Testing and Training

An externally powered or myoelectric prosthesis uses electromyographic (EMG) signals to control the prosthetic device. When a muscle contracts, it generates an EMG signal. The EMG signals produced by the muscles in the residual limb are detected by surface electrodes placed in the socket of the prosthesis and are used to control operations of the prosthesis. Whenever possible, with adults, agonist-antagonist pairs are used to operate the prosthesis.[18] Traditionally, the wrist flexors and extensors are used with transradial amputations, and the biceps and triceps are used with transhumeral amputations. With short transhumeral amputations, myosites can often be located in the pectoralis or deltoid anteriorly and in the infraspinatus or trapezius posteriorly. The use of agonist-antagonist pairs is called two-site control. In cases with nerve injuries, which do not allow for two-site control, a single muscle site can be used to control for two functions of the prosthesis.[19] The muscle groups are typically used according to their physiologic function. For example, with transradial amputations, the wrist extensors control for hand open and the wrist flexors control for hand close.

Both the therapist and prosthetist can complete myosite testing with the client. Precise electrode placement optimizes control for use of a myoelectric prosthesis. Distal myosites are preferable to allow adequate space within in the prosthetic socket for electrode placement and good suspension. A biofeedback system or myotester is used to measure the strength of EMG signal produced by the residual muscle.

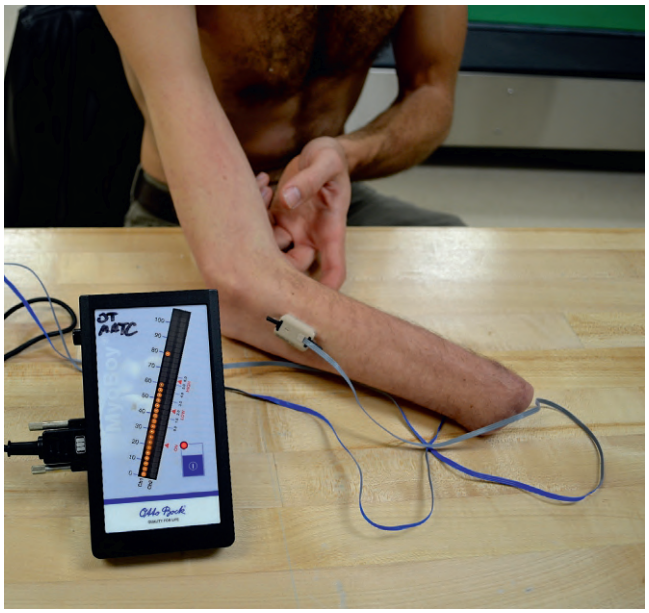


Fig. 31.7 A Myoboy system with surface electrodes is used to locate potential myosites and provide biofeedback to help clients master the types of contractions necessary to control actions of a myoelectric prosthesis. (Courtesy of Otto Bock Health Care, www.ottobockus.com.)

A surface electrode is placed over the myosite and connected to biofeedback equipment, such as a Myolab II (Motion Control, Salt Lake City, UT) or the Myoboy (OttoBock HealthCare, Vienna, Austria) (Fig. 31.7). The strength of the EMG signal is read from the meter, and precise electrode placement is adjusted as necessary. Once the electrode site is determined for one muscle, the second electrode site is found over the antagonist in a similar manner. The goal is to identify two myosites on the residual limb that have the greatest difference in microvolt between them. These are not necessarily the strongest signals available. The therapist and prosthetist will identify the minimum signal necessary to operate the myoelectric system.[20]

Once the best electrode sites have been located, the client will begin myosite training with the therapist. The goal is to increase myosite strength and to isolate the muscle contractions. For effective use of a myoelectric prosthesis, good muscle control is more important than overall strength of contractions. During control site training, the client will learn three patterns of muscle activation:

1. To contract one muscle (muscle A, agonist) to a specific level, while leaving the other (muscle B, antagonist) at rest or in a quiet state.
2. To contract muscle B to a specific level while leaving muscle A at rest or in a quiet state.
3. To perform quick and equal cocontractions of muscles A and B.

Biofeedback equipment, or muscle trainers, greatly facilitates this training to master effective, efficient muscle control. An advantage of myosite training is that the client can initiate training during the preprosthetic phase and practice their control prior to receiving their initial myoelectric prosthesis. A client's effectiveness with prosthetic use is closely correlated to the quality of preprosthetic training.

Basic Training in Activities of Daily Living

Following amputation, one of the main goals for occupational therapy is to achieve independence in basic self-care activities. It is important for the client to begin to feel a sense of independence and gain control over their environment. Once a client is medically stable, ADL retraining can be initiated. The ADLs that should be addressed first are self-feeding, toileting, and oral hygiene.[3] It is the role of the therapist to educate the client on adaptive equipment and environmental modifications that will set the client up for success with basic self-care activities. Adaptive equipment such as universal cuffs, bidets, adapted clothing, and wall-mounted scrub brushes can provide initial independence for the client.

When the dominant hand is amputated, change of hand dominance training for activities such as writing and eating is initiated during this phase of rehabilitation. Clients learn to adapt and compensate quickly and often initiate ADL performance with their nondominant hand. The therapist will assist with education on one-handed techniques as necessary. Although independence in self-care with and without a prosthesis is encouraged, it is important to facilitate opportunities for bimanual use of the upper extremities for ease of performance and to minimize risk of overuse syndrome of the remaining extremity.

Case Example 31.2 **A Client With Transhumeral Amputation**

R. O. is a 37-year-old automobile mechanic who underwent a traumatic transhumeral amputation of the right upper extremity 3 weeks ago after he sustained a crush injury when a car slipped off the jack while he was changing its tire in a neighbor's driveway, pinning him at the elbow. While struggling to get out from under the vehicle, he seriously strained his right rotator cuff. At this point, all surgical drains and sutures have been removed, and the wound has closed except for a ¼-inch area on the medial distal humerus that continues to leave slight signs of clear drainage on the nonadherent dressing. R. O. is currently using a double layer of elasticized Tubigrip (Seton Healthcare Group, Oldham, England) for limb volume control and shaping. He reports a sensation of a tight constrictive cuff around his "missing" right elbow and a somewhat unpredictable shooting "electric" sensation into his missing forearm and hand. He tends to hold his residual limb diagonally across his lower chest. R. O. experiences pain in his right shoulder with movement in all planes.

Active and passive ROM is evaluated with R. O. in the supine position. Active ROM at the shoulder is currently 0–90 degrees of flexion, 0–70 degrees of abduction, 0 degrees of internal rotation, and 0–25 degrees of external rotation. His shoulder and residual limb can be passively moved into 115 degrees of flexion, 90 degrees of abduction, 10 degrees of internal rotation, and 40 degrees of external rotation.

R. O. is having a difficult time imagining how he will be able to return to work to support his young family (a wife and two preschool-age children). He is discouraged and impatient with his postoperative pain and phantom sensation. He is reluctant

Case Example 31.2 A Client With Transhumeral Amputation (Continued)

to allow his residual limb to be moved, passively or with active assistance, toward any end ROM at the shoulder because of impingement pain. He is discouraged with the skill level he has reached in self-care with his nondominant left upper extremity.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What are R. O.'s most immediate educational and support needs now that he has begun the preprosthetic training phase of care? What strategies would help to strengthen rapport with R. O., help him to understand the next steps in the process, and enhance his outlook and motivation?
- Given the length of his residual limb and the status of his incision line, what specific strategies for volume control, edema, and limb shaping should be recommend at this time? What are the indicators of readiness for prosthetic fitting?
- Given his current level of discomfort and the concurrent rotator cuff dysfunction, what contractures are most likely to develop at R. O.'s shoulder? Considering his hopes to return to work as an auto mechanic, what shoulder motions would be most important to preserve and enhance in preparation for prosthetic training? What specific strategies should be used to accomplish this?
- What impact might a rotator cuff injury have on R. O.'s potential to use a prosthesis successfully? How should the severity of his rotator cuff impairment be assessed? What strategies could be used to improve the function of his shoulder, given the acuity of his rotator cuff injury?
- What types of muscle performance are most important to address at this point? What muscles would be used for myosite training for R.O. specific to his level of amputation? What strategies should be used to address strength, power, and control of the various types of muscle contractions that R.O. will need to use his prosthesis effectively?
- What basic ADL skills should be priorities for training at this point? What strategies should be used to enhance motor learning of skilled activity with his left (nondominant) hand? How might his residual limb be incorporated during these functional activities? What types of adaptive equipment may be beneficial to R.O. for performance of basic self-care activities without a prosthesis?

Determining a Prosthetic Plan

Comprehensive examination and evaluation by the members of the interdisciplinary team, which includes the physician, occupational and physical therapists, prosthetists, and other team members, determine prosthetic options that can be discussed with the client and family. Factors such as the client's strength, ROM, handedness, cognition, vocational pursuits, and long-term goals are important determinants of an individual prosthetic plan. The client, family, and team members decide from the following options:

1. No prosthesis
2. Passive prosthesis
3. Body-powered prosthesis
4. Externally powered prosthesis (myoelectric prosthesis)
5. Hybrid prosthesis
6. Activity-specific prosthesis

The prosthetist and therapist begin by educating the client on the advantages and disadvantages of the various upper extremity prosthetic systems available, with the goal of selecting the control schemes and system that will allow the client the most function. The prosthetist provides education on the specific prosthetic options and componentry selection whereas the therapist informs the client regarding how the prosthesis relates to occupational performance. One of the most significant factors influencing acceptance of the prosthetic device is early fitting.[21,22] When medically able, early fittings have been shown to increase the client's incorporation of the prosthesis into daily activities and increase functional use for bimanual tasks.

BASIC PROSTHETIC TRAINING

Once the client receives their prosthesis, the basic prosthetic training phase of care begins. Goals in basic prosthetic training include the following:

- Residual limb hygiene and care of the prosthesis
- Wearing schedule
- Donning and doffing the prosthesis.
- Controls training and functional use training

Residual Limb Hygiene and Care of the Prosthesis

Education on residual limb hygiene is provided to the client and family members early in the prosthetic training phase. Perspiration is common with prosthetic use and can cause irritation or maceration of the skin. The client is instructed to perform skin inspections of the residual limb each time the prosthesis is removed, to look for redness or irritation. Regardless of the control system being used, the residual limb and axilla must be washed daily with mild soap and water, and the socket of the prosthesis must be wiped clean with a damp cloth. The harness should be removed and cleaned as needed. Clients using a body-powered prosthesis often wear prosthetic socks as an interface between the skin and socket surface. A fresh, clean sock should be used each day; in hot weather, the sock may need to be changed several times per day. For those using a myoelectric prosthesis, the electrodes may need to be cleaned with an alcohol wipe to ensure effective contact between control site and the electrode. Although skin pliability is important, the application of moisturizers or lotions before donning the prosthesis is generally not recommended and is contraindicated with a myoelectric prosthesis. Prosthetic components should be maintained according to the manufacture's guidelines. The therapist and prosthetist should guide the client through basic maintenance of their prosthetic device to include socket cleaning, componentry maintenance, harness adjustment, cable system modifications, and battery-charging procedures.[11,19]

Wearing Schedule

Upon initial fitting of a preparatory prosthesis, a wearing schedule is provided to increase the client's tolerance to the device over time and to decrease the risk of skin breakdown. Initially, the prosthetic wearing period is typically

30 minutes at a time for up to three times per day. After each wearing period, the prosthesis is removed and skin condition carefully examined. Areas of redness (reactive hyperemia) that persist for more than 20 minutes after the residual limb is out of the socket may indicate areas of high pressure. If no skin issues develop, wearing time is gradually increased by 30-minute increments according to the client's tolerance, skin condition, and need for prosthesis use. If skin problems do occur and persist, the client should consult with their prosthetist, therapist, or physician. The client is advised not to wear their prosthesis if they have skin issues, as modifications to the device may be required.

Donning and Doffing the Prosthesis

Independence in donning and doffing the full prosthetic system is one of the most important goals for prosthetic training and should be addressed during the initial treatment sessions. There are various methods for each prosthetic system and clients should be educated on all methods to determine preference. Each type of prosthesis can be donned by either the push-in or pull-in method. Unless a roll-on liner with pin lock is used, the pull-in method is the preferred method for several reasons. It offers the advantage of distributing tissue equally in the socket and provides a close interface between the socket and skin. Equal and consistent tissue placement is especially important for those using an externally powered prosthesis. Pulling-in to the socket is accomplished in the following manner:

1. The client applies a low-friction sleeve (often made of parachute-type material) over the residual limb (Fig. 31.8A).
2. The distal end of the sleeve is positioned through a pull hole in the wall of the prosthesis (see Fig. 31.8B).
3. The client then gently pulls each side of the sleeve, equally and repeatedly, until the sleeve completely comes out of the pull hole and the residual limb is pulled snuggly into the socket (see Fig. 31.8C).

A body-powered prosthesis, because of its harnessing, has additional donning methods: the coat method and the pullover (or sweater) method. The coat method is performed in the following steps[23]:

1. The residual limb is inserted into the socket and the axilla loop of the harness dangles behind the client's back
2. The sound arm reaches behind the back and slips into the axilla loop
3. The harness is then pulled close to the body as if the client is putting on a coat

The pullover or sweater method can be broken down into the following steps[23]:

1. The socket and harness are placed in front of the client, face up
2. The client places the residual limb into the socket and threads the sound arm through the axilla loop (Fig. 31.9A)
3. Both arms are raised overhead while the axilla loop and harness slide into place across the back (see Fig. 31.9B)

For individuals with high levels of amputation or bilateral amputations, special equipment such as a dressing tree or wall mounted hooks may be used to allow for independent donning and doffing of prosthetic devices.

Controls Training and Functional Use Training

There are two phases of prosthetic training: prosthetic controls training and functional use training. The goal of controls training is to achieve smooth, consistent movement of each operation of the prosthesis with minimal awkward movement or delay. Functional use training translates the skills in controls training to task performance and functional application of the prosthetic device.[6] Operation of each component of the prosthesis should be trained separately prior to combining all of the movements into functional performance. Progression of controls training for body-powered

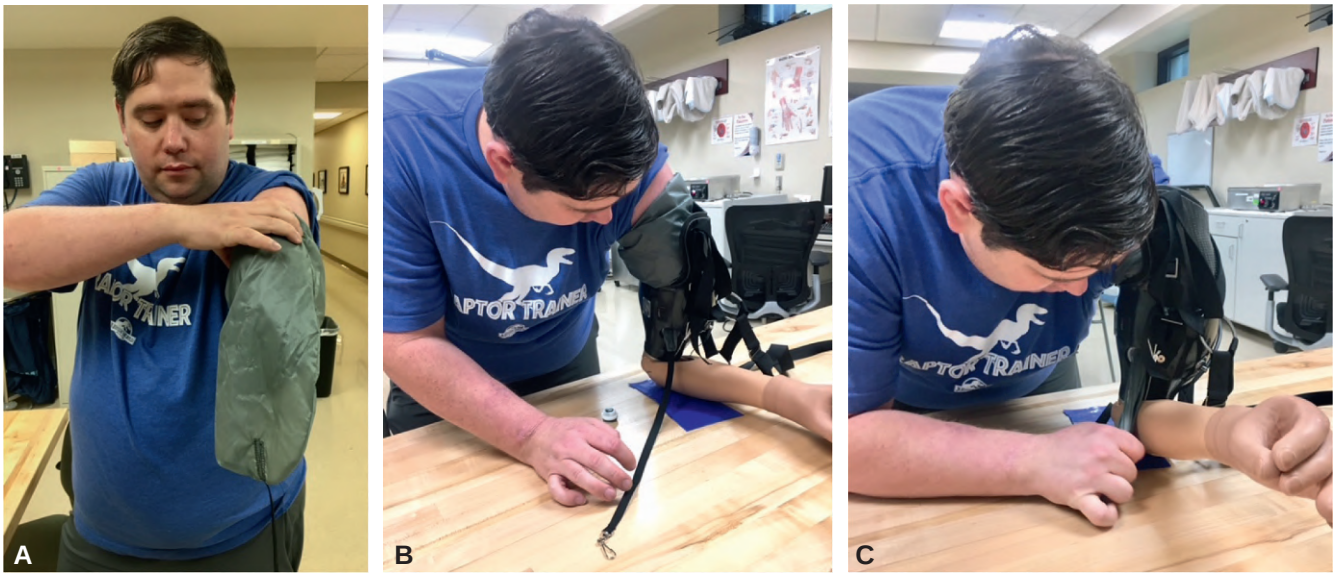


Fig. 31.8 This client is donning his hybrid transhumeral prosthesis using the pulling-in method. First, he positions his pull-in sleeve on the residual limb (A), leaving a distal "tail" that he will thread through the distal opening in the socket (B). Once his limb is positioned in the socket, he gently tugs the sleeve out through the opening so that total contact between skin and socket surface is achieved (C).

Fig. 31.9 This client is donning his body-powered transradial prosthesis using the pullover method. First, he places his residual limb into the socket (A) and threads his contralateral limb into the axilla loop. The harness is then raised overhead and slides into position across his back (B).

prostheses and myoelectric prostheses begins with education on operation of each component of the prosthetic device. Once the client has demonstrated continuous, smooth control of each component in a natural sequence, clients progress to performing grasp and release in both seated and standing positions. This will encourage prepositioning of the shoulder, elbow, and terminal device (TD) for optimal use. Objects of various size, shape, and densities are incorporated into the training progression. Clients are trained to manipulate objects with proportional control to increase proprioceptive awareness of their prosthesis and minimize the potential for crushing items, such as a Styrofoam cup. Once the client has demonstrated how to operate and control each prosthetic component, they can transition to functional use training. Functional use training minimizes awkward and compensatory movements by emphasizing prepositioning of each prosthetic joint, increasing prosthetic tolerance and muscle endurance, and promoting incorporation of the prosthetic device into task performance.

Control and Functional Use of Body-Powered Prostheses

In the body-powered prosthesis, forces generated by gross body motions are translated through the harness and cable system to activate each prosthetic component (Fig. 31.10). The control movements used to operate the TD for a transradial prosthesis are scapula abduction and glenohumeral flexion. Individuals with wrist disarticulations typically retain active forearm supination and pronation; this active

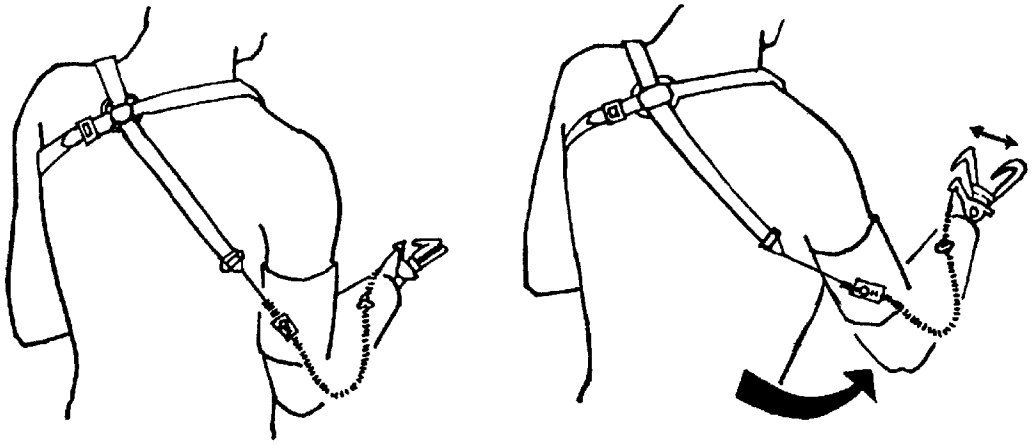


Fig. 31.10 The harness and cable system of a body-powered transradial prosthesis. Glenohumeral flexion and scapular abduction (protraction) increase tension on the control cable to operate this voluntary-opening terminal device during activities performed away from the center of the body. Bilateral scapular (biscapular) abduction increases cable tension for fine motor activities performed near the midline or closer to the trunk. The same motion would allow graded prehension in a voluntary-closing terminal device. (Modified with permission from Northwestern University Printing and Duplicating Department, Evanston, IL, 1987.)

movement can be used to position the TD for function. If active movement is lost or limited, the TD must be passively rotated in the wrist unit. Wrist flexion units are typically operated manually; the client changes the angle of the TD with the opposite hand. There are two types of TD options: voluntary-open and voluntary-close. In voluntary-open systems, the hook or hand TD rests in a closed position, and tension on the cable opens the TD. In voluntary-close TDs, the TD remains open until tension is applied on the cable, then the device closes in proportion to the amount of tension on the cable. Clients will be instructed to demonstrate activation of the TD with the arm positioned in various planes. The client is also educated on prepositioning the TD, including the wrist unit to optimize the use of the prosthesis and to minimize compensatory body movements.

Transhumeral prosthetic devices use a dual-control cable system. The client must demonstrate control of the TD, the wrist, and the elbow locking and unlocking mechanism. Activation of the elbow joint for above-elbow amputations combines three movements: scapular depression and shoulder extension and abduction.[3] This "down, out, and away" combination lengthens the attachment between the harness and elbow unit, which in turn unlocks and locks the elbow. When the elbow component in a transhumeral prosthesis is *locked*, the TD operates exactly as the TD in the transradial prosthesis—by using glenohumeral flexion or scapula abduction. However, when the elbow component is *unlocked,* tension on the cable created by these movements causes the elbow to flex. As tension on the cable gradually releases (by using eccentric contraction of these muscles), the elbow returns to extension. The client will be instructed to perform elbow locking and unlocking in various ranges.[6,21,24] Verbal cues for "down, out, and away" are provided to reinforce the controls training and to promote proprioceptive memory. To position the TD optimally for the functional task, passive internal and external rotation of the prosthesis is controlled by rotation at the elbow turntable.

Shoulder disarticulation prostheses may use a manually operated, friction-held shoulder unit. A dual-cable control system is also used for this level of amputation. A chin-operated nudge control will be used if the client does not have sufficient shoulder movements to operate a prosthetic elbow unit. Clients with high levels of amputation or those with nerve involvement may need to also use chest expansion to operate the prosthesis.

Control and Functional Use of the Myoelectric Prosthesis

Myoelectric prostheses have various control schemes based on the client's prosthetic system componentry and the individual's musculoskeletal integrity. Typically a two-site control system is used. When using two-site control the individual with a transradial amputation must switch from hand (or other TD) mode to wrist mode. Several options exist for control of the wrist. The wrist unit can be passively positioned, or the wrist rotator can be myoelectrically controlled. Clients are trained to contract their muscles to produce a signal that corresponds to that prosthetic control. For example, the wrist extensors typically control hand open. A controlled contraction of those muscles will open the hand proportionally to the strength and speed of the muscle signal provided. To supinate the wrist unit, the same wrist extensors are used, but the client will give a quick muscle contraction and hold it to activate that motion. Control schemes are dependent on the componentry and programming can be done by the prosthetist to maximize the client's control of the prosthesis.

Clients with transhumeral myoelectric prostheses have to manage the additional complexity of controlling the TD, wrist, and elbow units. Typically, transhumeral control schemes use the biceps and triceps to operate the prosthetic device. Bicep contractions operate elbow flexion and hand close, whereas triceps contractions operate elbow extension and hand open. Control training is performed to practice smooth transitions from elbow to TD mode.

Controls training for myoelectric prostheses begin with open/close of the TD in various positions to ensure that the electrodes are maintaining good contact with the skin in each position. The client will be trained in proportional control to include opening the TD through one-third, one-half, and three-fourths range. Practice drills will be performed for each prosthetic joint to maximize functional use and minimize extraneous movement and energy.

Advanced Functional Skills Training

After learning to control and use the prosthesis, the client is ready to begin incorporating prosthetic use in ADLs. There are five characteristics of advanced functional skills training that can assist in guiding the treatment plan[11]:

1. The client's rehabilitation plan is individualized and each person has his or her own set of goals.
2. The client uses tools or interacts with an object such as writing utensil or sports equipment.
3. Advanced prosthetic training involves complex, multistep tasks that are typically bimanual.
4. Training involves the client's prosthetic device of choice.
5. Activity selection and training is meaningful to the client.

Advanced functional use training will focus on incorporation of the prosthesis into ADL and instrumental activities of daily living (IADL) performance (Fig. 31.11). There are

Fig. 31.11 A client participates in advanced functional use training with breakdown and reassembly of a firearm. The client uses his body-powered prosthesis as a functional assist during this bimanual activity.

many ways to accomplish most tasks; therefore the therapist will guide the client through use of the prosthesis in an efficient way that is practical and allows them to meet their goals. Clients are also taught to assess and analyze each activity and its relation to the environment. Often the environment in which the activity is performed can be modified or used to assist the client in activity performance. When able, the therapist should bring clients into the actual environment in which the activity is performed. This promotes realistic training and allows the client to use their prosthesis in a meaningful way. A rating guide, developed by Atkins, the Unilateral Upper Extremity Amputation: Activities of Daily Living Assessment, provides a comprehensive checklist of ADLs that can be performed and assessed to show the client's progress in the advanced functional skills training phase.[6] Individuals with unilateral upper extremity amputation learn how to adapt and perform activities with one hand fairly quickly. Therefore therapists will educate the clients on use of adaptive equipment to assist with task performance while also training the client to incorporate the prosthesis into bimanual activities for stabilization or support.[25] Clients with unilateral and bilateral upper extremity amputations often incorporate adaptive equipment into their daily life to achieve maximal independence. Adaptive equipment may include items such as a rocker knife for cutting, suction cup brushes for bathing, zipper pulls on jackets to increase ease of dressing, and a bidet for toileting.

Recreational and vocational activities, community reintegration, driving, and adaptive sports are part of advanced functional skills training. There are a variety of recreational activities and adaptive sports available for individuals with all levels of upper extremity amputations. It is the role of the therapist as a member of the interdisciplinary team, to promote participation in recreation and adaptive sports as part of their rehabilitation program. Modifications can be made to prosthetic devices to allow for participation in adaptive sports programs (Fig. 31.12). This allows for the opportunity to train in advanced functional use of the client's prosthetic system of choice or of his or her activity-specific prosthetic device. Participation in adaptive sports and recreation not only promotes advanced use of the prosthesis but also promotes social and psychological health that assists individuals with limb loss to focus on their abilities rather than their limitations.[26,27]

Case Example 31.3 A Client With Bilateral Upper Extremity Amputation After Electrocution

E. H. is a 19-year-old college freshman studying to become a marine biologist. Six months ago he participated in a school project on a boat with an instructor and other students to measure lake depth and take samples of underwater plants. The day before, the local power company had begun stringing power lines that extended over the edge of the lake and inadvertently left these wires lower than intended. E. H. was using an aluminum pole to measure water depth and accidentally touched these live wires with the pole. He was immediately electrocuted, rendered unconscious, and fell into the water. The other students pulled him from the lake and resuscitated him in approximately 4 min. He was medically evacuated to the trauma center, where he was found to have burns on both hands and forearms. The entrance wound, where the electrical current entered his body, was in his right (dominant) hand. The exit wounds were in his left forearm and thigh. As a result of the burns and subsequent tissue damage, amputation was necessary on the right side at the midtransradial level and on the left at midhumeral level; he received a skin graft on his left thigh and left arm.

E. H. was hospitalized for 2 months near his home and then discharged to live with his family (parents and brother) and receive outpatient therapy. At the time of discharge, in addition to bilateral upper extremity ROM limitations, E. H. had severe balance deficits and limited lower extremity strength and flexibility bilaterally. He was completely dependent in ADLs.

Three months later he is referred to an outpatient prosthetic center for prosthetic fitting and therapy. The goal is to train him to use his prostheses to become as independent as possible, including returning to school to pursue his career in marine biology. E. H.'s wounds are well healed. His arms are well contoured, show minimal edema, and have few adhesions and full ROM. Hip flexion is limited to 85 degrees, extension to neutral. He is able to stand on the right foot for 20 seconds and the left for 5 seconds. Because of inactivity, E. H. is 40 lbs overweight. E. H. received his prostheses 3 weeks after beginning prosthetic rehabilitation.

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER

- What is the stage of E. H.'s rehabilitation? What tests and measures are appropriate at this time? What are the most important goals in his current prosthetic rehabilitation phase? How will his goals change as prosthetic rehabilitation progresses? How many weeks will likely be required?
- What factors should be considered when planning prosthetic options? What are the advantages and disadvantages of body-powered or myoelectric prostheses for E. H.? Will one type of prosthesis meet his needs? Why or why not?
- Should his initial prosthetic training be unilateral or bilateral? Why? If beginning training with a single prosthesis, which side should be targeted? Why? What basic components should be recommended for each of his prostheses?
- How can the team assist E. H. in learning to use his myoelectric devices? What control motions are needed for the right (transradial) side? What motions are needed for the left (transhumeral) side? How might E. H. progress from simple activity to more complex and functional activities with his terminal devices to facilitate learning while minimizing frustration?
- What effect does elbow function have on hand positioning? How will elbow function affect the use of his transradial prosthesis? What is the sequence that E. H. needs to master to control elbow function of his transhumeral prosthesis? What kinds of activities would help him to master elbow control in both single-limb and bimanual tasks? How would training tasks be graded to ensure success?
- What vocational and recreational activities can be integrated into E.H.'s rehabilitation plan to assist him in meeting his goals?

Fig. 31.12 Custom modifications to bilateral upper extremity prosthetic devices allow this client to participate in the adaptive sport of rock climbing.

Current Research and Advancements in Technologies

Research and advancements in technologies in the field of upper limb amputation and prosthetics continues to expand. As a result of the collaboration between various medical, government, academic, and research institutions, advancements are being made in the area of upper limb prosthetic socket design, signal control schemes, prosthetic componentry, and surgical techniques.

Targeted muscle reinnervation (TMR) is a surgical technique used to increase the number of myosites available in the residual limb to enhance prosthetic control. The brachial plexus and peripheral nerves in the residual limb remain intact following amputation. This surgical procedure takes residual nerves in the arm and transfers them to spare target muscles in the residual limb. The EMG signals of the target muscle now correspond to the motor commands of the limb. The resulting myosites, when successful, will correspond physiologically to the prosthetic control functions. For example, in a transhumeral amputation with TMR surgery, the distal radial nerve will innervate the lateral head of the triceps for hand open and the median nerve will innervate the short head of the biceps for hand close.[28,29] TMR has also been shown to elicit a targeted sensory reinnervation in which sensory nerves in the residual limb can be redirected, resulting in perceived touch of the phantom limb. Targeted sensory reinnervation is being researched to provide sensory feedback within a prosthetic device.

One key area of research is exploring ways to provide precise control and sensory feedback to upper limb prosthetic devices.[30] The Hand Proprioception and Touch Interfaces (HAPTIX) program is part of the Defense Advanced Research Project Agency (DARPA). HAPTIX technologies are being designed to use sensory and motor signals in the residual limb to allow the individual to control their prosthetic device with the same neural signaling used for their intact limbs.[30] The goal is to provide intuitive control of multiple degrees of freedom of the hand while providing sensory feedback to improve grip force, precision, and proprioception with a prosthesis.

Pattern recognition is a type of myoelectric control that uses multiple surface electrodes versus the typical two-site control scheme to recognize the pattern that is generated by the muscle contractions in the residual limb. Pattern recognition does not require isolated myosites for control; instead it allows the individual to control the various movements of the prosthetic device by reproducing the natural motions of the amputated limb and translating that pattern into prosthetic control. To be effective, pattern recognition requires additional muscle signal input. In more proximal amputation levels, such as shoulder disarticulation and transhumeral amputations, the use of TMR enhances the myoelectric signals available for control. Pattern recognition paired with TMR surgery optimizes those myoelectric signals in the residual limb to create more natural, intuitive prosthetic control for the myoelectric prosthesis.[28,31,32]

Osseointegration (OI) is a surgical procedure that provides direct skeletal attachment of a prosthetic device to the residual limb. An implant is surgically fixed into the bone of the residual limb, with a skin-penetrating abutment for skeletal attachment of the prosthesis. This procedure eliminates need for a prosthetic socket or suspension system.[33] OI was developed as an alternative for individuals with upper and lower extremity amputation who have difficulty using a conventional prosthetic system because of issues such as skin breakdown, residual limb length, or shape and have significant limitations in function.

Summary

This chapter presents rehabilitation techniques and interventions for adults with upper extremity amputation, including postoperative care, preprosthetic training, basic prosthetic training, and advanced functional skills training. Expertise on the part of the therapist and the interdisciplinary team of providers is essential in the rehabilitation of upper extremity amputations. Comprehensive evaluation and a client-centered approach to therapeutic intervention, combined with effective communication with the interdisciplinary team, can make the rehabilitation process rewarding while ensuring that the best functional outcomes for clients with upper limb loss are achieved.

References

1. Baer E. *The Wonder of Hands.* New York: MacMillan; 1992.
2. Johnson SS, Mansfield E. Prosthetic training: upper limb. *Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am.* 2014;25:133–151.
3. Smurr LM, Yancosek K, Gulick K, et al. Occupational therapy for the polytrauma causality with limb loss. In: Pasquina PF, Cooper RA, eds. *Care of the combat amputee*. Washington DC: Dept. of the Army Borden Institute; 2009.
4. Dillingham TR. Rehabilitation of the upper limb amputee. In: Dillingham TR, Belandres RV, eds. *Rehabilitation of the Injured Combatant*. Washington, DC: Office of the Surgeon General, Department of the Army; 1998:33–73.
5. Dillingham TR, Pezzin LE, MacKenzie EJ. Limb deficiency and amputation: epidemiology and recent trends in the United States. *South Med J.* 2002;95(8).

6. Atkins DJ, Meier RH. *Comprehensive Management of the Upper-Limb Amputee.* New York: Springer-Verlag; 1989.
7. Waylett-Rendall J. Desensitization of the traumatized hand. In: Hunter J, Mackin E, Callahan A, eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1995:693–700.
8. McMahon SB, Koltzenburg M, Tracey I, et al. *E Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain.* ed 6. Philadelphia: Elsevier/Saunders; 2013.
9. Chan BL, Witt R, Charrow AP, et al. Mirror therapy for phantom limb pain. *N Engl J Med.* 2007;357:2206–2207.
10. Weeks SR, Anderson-Barnes VC, Tsao JW. Phantom limb pain: theories and therapies. *Neurologist*. 2010;16:277–286.
11. Smurr LM, Gulick K, Yancosek K, et al. Managing the upper extremity amputee: a protocol for success. *J Hand Ther*. 2008;21: 160–176.
12. Krasner DL, Rodeheaver GT, Sibbald RG, Woo KY. Chronic Wound Care 5: A clinical source book for healthcare professionals, Volume 1. In: *Communications*. Malvern: HMP; 2012.
13. Esquenazi A, Wikoff E, Lucas M. Amputation rehabilitation. In: Grabois M, Garrison SJ, eds. *Phyiscal medicine and Rehabilitation: the complete approach*. Ames: Blackwell Science; 2000.
14. Friedman LW. *The psychological rehabilitation of the amputee.* Springfield, IL: Charles C Thomas; 1978.
15. Van Dorsten B. Common emotional concerns following limb loss. In: Atkins DJ, Meier RH, eds. *Functional restoration of adults and children with upper extremity amputation*. New York: Demos Medical Publishing; 2004.
16. Desmond D, MacLachlan M. Psychosocial issues in the field of prosthetics and orthotics. *J Prosthet Orthot.* 2002;14(1):19–21.
17. Colditz JC. Therapist's management of the stiff hand. In: Hunter J, Mackin E, Callahan A, eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity*. 5th ed St. Louis: Mosby; 2002:1021–1049.
18. Hubbard S. Myoprosthetic management of the upper limb amputee. In: Hunter J, Mackin E, Callahan A, eds. *Rehabilitation of the Hand and Upper Extremity*. 4th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 1995:1241–1252.
19. Mitsch S, Walters LS, Yancosek K. Amputations and Prosthetics. In: Radomski MV, CAT Latham, eds. *Occupational Therapy for Physical Dysfunction*. ed 7. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2014.
20. NovaCare. *Motion control: training the client with an electric arm prosthesis.* King of Prussia, PA: NovaCare (videotape); 1997.
21. Anderson MH, Bechtol CO, Sollars RE. *Clinical prosthetics for physicians and therapists*. Springfield, IL: Charles C Thomas; 1959.
22. Pinzur MS, Angelats J, Light TR, et al. Functional outcome following traumatic upper limb amputation and prosthetic limb fitting. *J Hand Surg Am*. 1994;19(836).
23. Santschi WR, ed. *Manual of upper extremity prosthetics.* ed 2. Los Angeles, CA: University of California Press; 1958.
24. Wright G. *Controls training for the upper extremity amputee* (film), San Jose, CA, Instructional Resources Center, San Jose State University.
25. Wellerson TL. *A manual for occupational therapists on the rehabilitation of upper extremity amputees.* Dubuque, IA: William C. Brown; 1958.
26. Sherril C. Social and psychological dimensions of sports for disabled athletes. In: Sherril C, ed. *Sport and disabled athletes*. Champaign IL: Human Kinetics; 1986.
27. Wetterman KA, Hanson C, Levy CE. Effect of participation in physical activity on body image of amputees. *Am J Phys Med Rehabil*. 2002;81: 194–201.
28. Kuiken TA, Li G, Lock BA, et al. Targeted muscle reinnervation for real-time myoelectric control of multifunction artificial arms. *JAMA*. 2009;301:619–628. 28.
29. Stubblefield KA, Miller LA, Lipschutz RD, et al. Occupational therapy protocol for amputees with targeted muscle reinnervation. *J Rehabil Res Dev*. 2009;46:481–488.
30. Emondi A. *Hand Proprioception and Touch Interfaces (HAPTIX), Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency.* February 2015. Web.
31. Stevens P. *Pattern Recognition, The O&P Edge.* December 2014. Web.
32. Powell MA, Thakor NV. A training strategy for learning pattern recognition control for myoelectric prostheses. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2013;25(1):30–41.
33. Johnsson S, Caine-Winterberger K, Branemark R. Osseointegration amputation prostheses on the upper limbs: methods, prosthetics and rehabilitation. *J Prosthet Orthot*. 2011;35(2):190–200.

Index

Note: Page numbers followed by *f* indicate figures, *t* indicate tables, and *b* indicate boxes.

A

Abducted gait, 648–649
Access method, for wheeled mobility, 419, 423–424*f*
Accessory navicular bone, 169
Accommodative foot orthosis, 199, 204
Accommodative padding, 205*t*
Accumulated extrinsic feedback, 52*b*
Ace wrap
  for residual limb, 675
  for transfemoral limb, 535, 538*f*
  for transtibial residual limb, 535, 537*f*
Acetabulum
  fractures of, 332, 334*f*
  structure of, 320, 320*f*
Achilles tendinitis, 177
ACL. *See* Anterior cruciate ligament
Acquired brain injury (ABI), 276–279, 286*b*
Acrylic resins, 148
Action systems, in motor control, 41, 42*f*
Active lower limb prostheses, 496, 496*f*
Active seating systems, 411–412
Activities of daily living (ADLs)
  after burn injuries, 394
  basic training in, 790
  prosthetic foot selection and, 567
Activity. *See* Exercise(s)
Activity Measure for Post-Acute Care (AMPAC), 555–556*t*
Activity-specific prostheses, 780, 781*f*
Actuation, 160
Acute postoperative pain, assessment, 511, 511*f*
Adam's closed-loop theory, of motor learning, 46
Adam's forward-bending test, for scoliosis, 361–362, 363*f*
Adaptive equipment
  for neuromuscular disorders, 279, 282*f*
  postoperative, 506–507*b*, 547–548
Adaptive seating. *See* Wheelchairs
Additive manufacturing, 161
ADLs. *See* Activities of daily living
Adolescent idiopathic scoliosis (AIS), 359, 361–362*t*. *See also* Scoliosis
Adolescents
  bone growth in, 318
  with limb deficiency
    with lower-limb loss, 754–755, 756*f*, 756–757*b*
    psychosocial factors in, 743–744*b*
    upper-limb amputation in, 748–750, 750–751*f*
  transtibial amputation in, 63*b*
Adult scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Aerobic capacity (VO_{2max})
  determinants of, 14, 15*f*
  heart rate and, 21–23
  initial examination of, 668–669*t*
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 518
Aerobic exercise
  for elderly, 21
Aerobic exercise *(Continued)*
  motor learning and, 49, 49*b*
  neural plasticity and, 59–60
Aerobic oxidative pathway, 27
Aerobic training, preprosthetic, 675
Afferent neurons, 263
AFO. *See* Ankle-foot orthosis
Afterload, aging and, 18
Age, neural plasticity and, 58
Aging, 14–37. *See also* Elderly
  cardiopulmonary changes, 14
    cardiovascular, 16–17, 16*t*
    functional consequences of, 19*t*
    monitoring exercise for, 23–24
    optimizing performance for, 22–23, 22*f*
    physical training for, 24–25
    precautions for, 20–22
    pulmonary, 18–20
Air splints, 398
Airplane splints, 397, 397*f*
Airway, aging and, 19
Alginate impression, 587
Alignment
  calcaneal, 196–197, 196*f*
  foot, 200, 206
  pelvis/lower leg, 197
  for prosthesis, 682
  static, 682, 683*t*
  Syme prostheses, 597–600, 597–598*f*, 600*f*, 602*f*
  tibiofibular, 197, 197*f*
  transtibial prosthetics, 619–621, 620*f*
    bench, 620
    dynamic, 620–621, 621–622*f*
    electronic, 621, 622–623*f*
    height, 620
Alloy steel, 146
Alpine skiing, Paralympic, 730, 730*f*
Alternative control systems, prosthesis, 779–780
Aluminum, 147
Ambulation. *See also* Gait
  pneumatic compression for, 542, 542*f*
  postoperative, 506–507*b*, 549, 551–552*t*
Amedeo, 87
American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 304
American Board for Certification in Orthotics and Prosthetics, 5
American Burn Association, 389
American Orthotic and Prosthetic Association, 5
American Physical Therapy Association (APTA), 79–80
American Society of Hand Therapists (ASHT), Splint Classification System, 370, 371*f*
AMP. *See* Amputee Mobility Predictor
AMPAC. *See* Activity Measure for Post-Acute Care
AMP-Bilateral (AMP-B), 525–526
Amputation, 431–445. *See also* Foot amputation, partial; High-level amputation; Lower extremity amputation; Transfemoral amputation; Transhumeral amputation; Transtibial amputation; Traumatic amputation
  of ankle, 483–487
  for burn injuries, 400–401, 401–402*b*
  causes of, 435–441
  epidemiology of, 432–434, 433–434*f*
  footwear for, 178–179
  gait patterns in, 124–137
  hemipelvectomy, 138*b*, 139–140*f*
  interventions for, 533–551
    ambulation and locomotion in, 549, 551–552*t*
    bed mobility and transfers in, 548–549
    endurance in, 546–547, 547*f*
    limb volume, shaping, and postoperative edema in, 535–543, 536*t*
    muscle performance in, 545–546
    patient and family education in, 549–551, 553–554*f*
    phantom limb sensation and phantom pain, dealing with, 534–535, 534*t*
    postoperative pain management in, 533
    postural control in, 547
    range of motion and flexibility in, 544–545, 544–545*f*
    skin care and scar management in, 543–544
    wheelchairs, seating, and adaptive equipment in, 547–548
  levels of, 434–435, 435*t*, 479
  lower limb, 471–503, 654–660
    biomechanics of, 655–658, 655*f*, 656*b*, 657*f*
    component selection for, 658
    energy consumption of, 658–659
    etiology of, 654–655
    interventions for, 551*b*
    socket design for, 659, 660*f*
  patient education, 10
  patient-client management after, 504–505
    individuals with, 504
    multidisciplinary teams in, 504–505, 505*f*
    patient-centered care in, 504–505
  principles of, 479–480
  racial differences in, 437
  rehabilitation after
    environment for, 443
    issues in, 441–443
    multidisciplinary team for, 442*t*
  Syme, 486–487, 486*f*
  systematic reviews of, 89*t*
  technical considerations for, 479–480
  of toes, 484–486, 484*f*
Amputee Coalition, 725
Amputee Mobility Predictor (AMP), 525–526, 526*f*, 555–556*t*
Angle of anteversion, 320, 320*f*
Angle of force application, in splinting, 379–380, 380*f*
Angle of thoracic inclination, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*

Ankle
  amputations of, 483–487
  burns, splints for, 398–399
  function of, in gait, 187–188, 189–190*f*
  hydraulic, 571, 571*f*
Ankle joints, mechanical
  for dynamic AFO, 226, 226*f*
  for KAFO, 241
Ankle (second) rocker of stance, 105–106, 223, 224*f*
Ankle-brachial index, 473*t*
Ankle-foot orthosis (AFO), 145
  for bilateral amputation, 592–595*b*, 593–595*f*
  biomechanical principles of, 226
  design/tone/postural control, 237
  dorsiflexion assist options for, 232–233
  dynamic, 230–237, 231*f*
  force systems for, 228*f*
  for fractures, 340–341, 341*f*
  gait and, 28, 222–223
  hinged thermoplastic, 234–235
  indications/contraindications for, 225–226*t*
  motor learning for, 62*b*
  for partial foot amputation, 588, 588*f*
  prefab/custom-fit/custom-molded, 223–224
  prescription for, 225–226
  for spastic diplegic cerebral palsy, 251*b*
  static, 225
Antalgic gait, 108
Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL), 296, 296*f*
  insufficiency, 302–303, 302*f*
    biomechanical implications of, 302
    functional implications of, 302–303
    recommendations, 303
  orthoses for, 301–304
  postoperative reconstruction, 303–304
    biomechanical implications, 303
    recommendations, 304
    role in rehabilitation, 303–304
Anterior floor reaction ankle-foot orthosis, 229
Anterior/posterior ankle conformer splints, 398
Anterior/posterior elbow gutter splint, 397, 397*f*
Anthropomorphic characteristics, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Antideformity hand position, 375, 376*f*
Antideformity splint, 398
Antimicrobial dressings, 459, 461*t*
Apical vertebra, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Aponeurosis, plantar, 186
Aramid fibers, 149
Archery, Paralympic, 726, 726*f*
Arches
  of foot, 186–187, 195–196, 198
  of hand, 374–375, 374*f*
Arm supports, wheelchair, 416*t*
Arrhythmias, 16
Arterial injury, fracture with, 342
Arterial occlusive disease, "elective" transtibial amputation for, 528*b*
Arterial-venous oxygen difference (AVO_{2diff}), 14, 15*f*
Arteries, aging of, 16–17
Arteriosclerosis obliterans, 435–436
Arthritis
  footwear for, 177–178
  hand splints for, 385*f*
Arthrodesis, 177
Arthroplasty, total hip, 328–329, 328*f*
Articular orthoses, 371
Articulating ankle-foot orthoses, 234
  motor learning for, 62*b*
Artificial Limb Program, 145
Assistive devices
  for gait training, 690
  motor learning for, 62*b*
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Ataxic gait, 109
Athetosis, 268–269
Athletic shoe gear, 170
Athletics
  Paralympic, 727, 727*f*
  prosthesis for, 734
Atlanta/Scottish-Rite hip abduction orthosis, 325–326, 325*f*
Attention
  initial examination of, 668–669*t*
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 518–520, 519–522*f*, 523*t*
Attrition rate, in research studies, 84
Auditory system
  age-related and pathologic conditions of, 524*b*
  for feedback, 53
Augmented feedback, 52–53, 52*b*
Autografts, for burns, 390
Autonomic neuropathy, 452–453
Axillary burns, splints for, 397, 397*f*
Axis, of knee unit, 636–637, 637*f*

B

Back pain, low
  foot orthoses for, 213
  spinal orthoses for, 349
Background questions, 72
Badminton, Paralympic, 727
Balance
  exercises for, 673–674
  foot orthoses and, 210–211
  initial examination of, 668–669*t*
  neuropathic foot and, 453
  in orthotic rehabilitation, 250
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 525–526, 526*f*
  transfemoral prosthetic gait and, 648
Ball-and-socket device, for stretching shoes, 174, 174*f*
Bal-Oxford closure, 164–165, 165*f*
Baroreceptor reflex, aging and, 17
Barthel Index (BI), 555–556*t*
Barton wedge, 172, 173*f*
Base of support, in transfemoral prostheses, 646
Basic prosthetic training, for upper-extremity amputation, 791–796
Bed mobility, in amputation, 548–549
Bench alignment, 126–127
Bench alignment, in transtibial prosthetics, 620
Berg Balance Scale, 525–526
Bernstein's model of motor control, 39–41
Beta-adrenergic sensitivity, 17
Bilateral amputations
  AFO, 592–595*b*, 593–595*f*
  prostheses for
    therapeutic activities for, 43*f*
  transfemoral, 662
  transtibial, 529*b*, 662
    revision of, physical therapy diagnosis for, 532*b*
    risk for, 515–516
  traumatic, 787–788*b*
Bilateral lower limb loss, 661–663
  component selection for, 661
  energy cost of, 661
  socket design and suspension for, 663, 663*f*
Bilateral prostheses, body-powered, 772
Biofeedback equipment, 790
Biomechanical examination of foot/ankle
  dynamic, 198
  non-weight-bearing, 188–196, 189–191*f*
  static weight-bearing, 196–198
Biomechanics
  of AFO, 230–231
  of high-level lower limb loss, 655–658, 655*f*, 657*f*
  of knee motion, 298–299, 299*f*
  lower extremity
    foot orthoses and, 207
    foot type and, 207
  of spinal orthoses, 349–350
    for scoliosis, 360
  of wheelchair support/propulsion, 420–421*t*, 421–422
Biomedical model, 6
Biopsychosocial model of disability, 6–7
Biosensors, 160
Bladder Syme prostheses, 591–592
Blocked practice, 49*b*, 50–51
Blood pressure
  exercise intolerance and, 21*t*, 22
  monitoring, 23
  segmental systolic, 447–448, 449*f*
Blood vessels
  age-related changes in, 16*t*
  oxygen transport by, 15
Blowout patches, for shoes, 175
Blucher style closure, 164–165, 165*f*
Body alignment, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Body mechanics, assessment, 527
Body symmetry, after upper-extremity amputation, 786–787
Body-powered prosthesis
  after upper-extremity amputation, 793–794, 793*f*
  components of, 768–770
  control, 771–772
  elbows for, 770, 771*f*
  figure-of-eight harness, 771–772, 771–772*f*
  figure-of-nine harness, with self-suspending sockets, 772
  terminal devices for, 768–769, 768–769*f*
  wrists for, 770, 770*f*
Bonding materials, 382, 383*f*
Bone cancer, amputation for
  case example, 439–440*b*
  overview of, 439, 440*f*
Bone mass, 318–319
Bones. *See also* Fractures
  amputation and, 479
  growth and remodeling of, 318–319
  structure and function of, 314–317, 315–317*f*
Bony prominences, padding of, 376, 377*b*, 377*f*
Boots, prosthetic, 587, 587*f*
Border-ray resections, 484
Borg scales, for perceived exertion, 23*t*
Boston brace, 364
Boston thoracolumbosacral orthosis, 364
Boyd amputation, 577–578
Braces. *See also* Orthoses
  cervicothoracic, 355–356
  hybrid cast, 339–340, 339–340*f*
  orthoses *vs.*, 3
  for scoliosis, 362–365
Brain injury, acquired, 276–279, 286*b*
Brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), 49
Brainstem, CNS function and, 261

Brannock foot measuring device, 466*f*
Breathing, neural control of, 20
Breathlessness, 23, 24*t*
Bruckner procedure, modified, 488
Bunions
  in children, 169
  footwear for, 176
Burgess procedure, modified, 488
Burns, 389–405
  amputation/prosthetics for, 400–401
  care for, 391
  causes of, 389
  depth of, 389–390, 390*f*
  electrical, 401–402*b*
  healing/scar formation, 392–393
  location of, 390
  Lund and Browder chart for, 391*f*
  patient education for, 402
  physical agents for, 395
  positioning for, 395, 396*b*
  psychology of, 392
  rehabilitation goals, 392–394
  scar management for, 393–394
  splinting/orthotics for, 395–399
  surgical management of, 390
  TBSA of, 390, 391*f*
  therapeutic exercise for, 394–395
  upper-extremity, 400*b*
Bursitis, 177
Burst fractures, spinal, 350, 351*b*

C

CAD/CAM. *See* Computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM)
Cadence, defined, 103
Café au lait spots, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Calcaneovalgus, 168–169
Calcaneus
  alignment of, 196–197, 196*f*
  foot structure and, 185
  range of motion, 189–190
Canadian Syme prosthesis, 591
Cancellous bone, 317, 318*f*
Canoe, Paralympic, 727
Capillary refill time, 473*t*
Carbon composite KAFO, 240–241, 241*f*
Carbon dioxide, 27
Carbon Fiber Spring orthoses (CFO), 232, 232*f*
Cardiac output (CO), 14, 15*f*, 17*f*
Cardiopulmonary system
  age-related changes in, 14
    cardiovascular, 16–17, 16*t*
    functional consequences of, 17–18
    interventions for, 20–25
    pulmonary, 18–20, 19*t*
  anatomy/physiology of, 15*f*
  oxygen transport by, 14
Cardiovascular endurance, assessment of, 674–675
Cardiovascular system
  assessment, for adaptive seating, 427
  functional changes, 16*t*, 17–18
  physiological changes, 17
  structural changes, 16–17
Carpometacarpal joint, OA of, 385*f*, 385–386*b*
CASH brace, 356–357
Cast braces, hybrid, 338–340*f*, 339–340
Cast walkers, removable, 462, 463*f*
Casts
  defined, 336
  for foot ulcers, 462
  for fractures
    application of, 337
    complications of, 342–344
    as immobilization strategy, 334–335
    lower extremity, 337–338
    materials for, 336–337
    removal of, 339
  hip spica, 321, 338, 338*f*
  negative impression, 201–203
  for neuromuscular disorders, 279, 282*f*
  for Syme amputation, 590
Catterall classification, of LCPD, 324–325
Central fabrication, 159–161
Central nervous system (CNS), 260–263
  consciousness and, 262–263
  coordination systems of, 261
  disorders affecting, 259, 269
  motivational system and, 262
  pyramidal/extrapyramidal systems and, 260–263
  somatosensory and perceptual systems and, 261–262
  spasm in, pharmacological interventions for, 276–278*t*
  visual system and, 262
  visual-perceptual system, 262
Cerebral palsy
  clinical questions for, 75*b*
  motor learning for, 62*b*
  orthoses for, 285–286*b*
  overview of, 272*t*
  spastic, gait in, 121–123, 123*f*, 123*b*
Cerebrovascular accident. *See* Stroke
Cervical spine, orthoses for, 352–355
Cervicothoracic orthoses (CTO), 355–356
Cervicothoracolumbosacral orthosis (CTLSO), 359, 362–364
Chairback orthosis, 358–359, 358*f*
Charcot arthropathy, causes/symptoms of, 452, 452*f*
Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease, 120*f*, 120*b*
Charleston Nighttime brace, 364
Chemical burns, 389
Children
  bone growth in, 318
  foot disorders in, 168
  hip dysplasia in (*see* Developmental dysplasia of hip (DDH))
  hypertonicity in, 279, 283*f*
  LCPD in, 324, 325*f*
  with limb deficiencies, 738–758
    accommodating growth and, 739–740, 740*f*
    classification and causes of, 738–739, 739*f*
    developmental milestones in, 739
    postoperative care for, 740–741
    rehabilitation/prosthesis for
      decision making in, 744–757
      for lower-limb loss, 750–755
      multiple limb amputation, 755–757
      psychosocial factors in, 741–743
      for upper-limb amputation, 744–750, 745*f*, 746*b*
    upper-limb amputation in, 748–750
  limb deficiencies in (*see* Limb deficiencies)
  motor learning for, 62*b*
  postoperative hip orthoses for, 327, 327*f*
  scoliosis in (*see* Scoliosis)
Chopart amputations, 486
  gait after, 579–580
  procedures for, 577, 578*f*
  prostheses for, 588–589
Chopart plates, 597, 597–598*f*
Chorea, 268–269
Chrome-tanned leather, 146
Chromium, 147
Circulation, assessment of
  initial examination of, 668–669*t*
  for neuropathic foot, 447
  postoperative, 506–507*b*, 515
Circumducted gait
  defined, 108
  transfemoral prostheses and, 650, 651*f*
Citations, locating, 79–80
Clasp-knife spasticity, 265–267
Claw toes, 176, 451
Cleaning, burn splints, 399
Clearance value, of Syme feet, 596
Climbing, with limb loss, 732, 733*f*
Clinical expertise
  in EBP, 86–88, 87*f*
  in rehabilitation teams, 8
Clinical judgment, 72*f*
Clinical practice guidelines (CPGs)
  National Guideline Clearinghouse, 93–95*t*
  PEDro, 79*t*
  sources for, 79
Clinical questions, formulating, 72–74, 74–75*b*
Clinician's QuickTakes, 80
Clonus, pharmacological interventions for, 276–278*t*
Closed fractures, 338
Closed kinetic chain examination, of foot/ankle, 196–198
Closed-cell foams, 149–150
Clubfoot, 192
Cobb angle, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (CDSR), 80
Cognition
  in motor control, 41, 42*f*
  in patient-client history and interview, 508
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 518–520, 519–522*f*, 523*t*
Collaboration, 8
Color(s)
  foot ulcers, 454–456
  thermoplastics, 383
Comminuted fractures, 331, 332*f*
Communication assessment, for adaptive seating, 427
Community reintegration, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Comparison, in PICO model, 72–73, 72*f*
Compartment syndrome, 342–343
Compensated forefoot varus, 194, 194*f*
Compensated rearfoot varus, 192, 192*f*
Compensatory curve, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Complete bone loss, in fractures, 332*f*
Component systems, for hand orthoses, 384, 384*f*, 416*t*
Composites, 147–150
  carbon, 240–241, 241*f*
  fabrication, 149
Compound bow, for archery, 726, 726*f*
Comprehensive High-Level Activity Mobility Predictor (CHAMP), 525–526

Compression
pneumatic, for early ambulation, 542, 542*f*
for postoperative edema, 535–537, 537–538*f*, 543
Compression fractures, spinal, 350, 351*b*
Compression neuropathy, postfracture, 342
Compression spring, in shank, 636
Compressive stress, splinting and, 379
Compressive wrap, 787*f*
Computer-aided design/computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM), 145, 157–159
data acquisition in, 157–158, 158*f*
milling and production in, 158–159, 159*f*
shape-manipulation software in, 158
Computer-controlled robotic systems, 160
Concurrent extrinsic feedback, 52*b*, 53
Conduction system, of heart, aging, 16
Congenital deformity, footwear for, 178–179, 179*f*
Congenital limb deficiencies. *See* Limb deficiencies
Congenital scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Consciousness system, 262–263
Consolidation, of bone mass, 318–319
Contact digitizers, 157
Contextual interference, in random practice, 49*b*, 51
Contoured seating systems, in wheelchair cushions, 414–415, 415*f*
Contractures
burn scar, 392–394, 397, 399
postamputation, burn-related, 401, 401*f*
Contralateral pelvic drop, increased, 108
Control systems
body-powered prosthesis, 771–772
externally powered, 776–780
SAFO, 227, 228*f*
Conventional body-powered prosthesis. *See* Body-powered prosthesis
Conventional double upright orthoses, 236, 236*f*
Coordination
movement and, 269–275
neural control of, 261
Coronary arteries, aging and, 16
Corset, for transtibial prosthetics, 613, 613*f*
Corsets, lumbar, 358–359, 358*f*
Cortical bone, 317, 317*f*
COSMED K4b2 system, 110–111
Cosmesis, 765–766
Cosmetic slippers, 587, 587*f*
Cost, of prosthetic feet, 569
Covering materials, for foot orthoses, 205
Coxa valga/vara, 320*f*
Craig-Scott orthosis, 240
Creep, defined, 150
Critical appraisal, of evidence, 82–86
Crouched gait, 109, 121–123, 123*f*, 230*f*
CROW boot, 579*f*
Crutches, 326
Cuboid bone, 185–186, 186*f*
Cuboid pulley system, 194–195, 195*f*
Cuff strap, for transtibial prosthetics, 613–614, 614*f*
Cumulative Index of Nursing and Allied Health Literature (CINAHL), 80
Curling, Paralympic, 731
Curly toes, 169
Current condition, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 509
Cushion liner with air expulsion valve, for transfemoral prostheses, 641, 641*f*
Custom devices, central fabrication facilities for, 159
Custom-contoured seating systems, 415
Custom-fit antiburn scar supports, 393–394
Custom-fit Jobst pressure garment, for transfemoral amputation, 537
Custom-fit/molded ankle-foot orthoses, 223–224
Custom-molded footwear, 171–172, 172*f*
Custom-molded orthoses, 224
Cycling, Paralympic, 727

D

DAFO. *See* Dynamic ankle-foot orthosis
Dartfish system, 113
DDH. *See* Developmental dysplasia of hip
Débridement
of foot ulcers, 458–460, 459*b*
in traumatic amputation, 476
Decerebrate hypertonicity, 265*f*, 286*b*
Decorticate hypertonicity, 265, 265*f*
Deep second degree burns, 390, 390*f*
Deep tendon reflexes, 259, 266*f*
Delirium, risk factors for, 518, 523*t*
Demographics, patient, 506–507*b*, 508
Denis type thoracolumbar fractures, 351*b*
Descents, MPK and, 716
Design descriptors, for hand orthoses, 372, 372*b*
Developmental dysplasia of hip (DDH)
complications in treatment, 324
goals of intervention, 324
incidence and etiology of, 320–321, 321*f*
orthotic management in, 321, 322*f*
overview of, 320
Developmental milestones, limb deficiencies and, 739
Developmental status, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 508
DH Wound Healing shoe, 464, 464*f*
Diabetes mellitus
amputation due to, 432, 435–438
foot risk assessment in, 447, 448*f*
foot risk classification for, 464, 465*t*
footwear for, 178, 179–180*b*
upper-extremity amputation and, 761
Diabetic polyneuropathy, 517–518
Diabetic ulcers, Wagner classification of, 472*t*
Diagnosis, research studies of
clinical relevance of, 86
critical appraisal of, 83*b*
searching for, 81
Diagnostic sockets, in transtibial prosthetics, 624–627
Diagnostic test in evidence-based literature, 74
Diaphysis, of long bone, 314–317, 317*f*
Digital casting techniques, 201, 202*f*
Digitizers, 157–158
Direct pressure impressions, 201–202, 202*f*
Direction, of hand orthoses, 371
Disability
defined, 2
models of, 6, 7*f*
Disabled Sports, USA, 725
Discipline-specific skills, in rehabilitation teams, 8
Displaced fractures, 331*f*
Distal transverse arch, of hand, 374*f*, 375
Distance parameters, in instrumented gait analysis, 110
Distinct extrinsic feedback, 52*b*
Distributed practice, 49*b*, 51
Doffing, of prosthesis, after upper-extremity amputation, 792, 792–793*f*
Donning
improper, of transfemoral prostheses, 647
of prosthesis, after upper-extremity amputation, 792, 792–793*f*
Doppler ultrasound, 473*t*
Dorsal-resting extension splints, 398
Dorsiflexion-assist ankle-foot orthoses, 233, 233*f*, 236*f*
Double action ankle joint, 234
Double action (Double Klenzak) ankle joint, 236*f*
Double Klenzak joint, 234
Double Limb Stance, 103
Double limb support, 103
Double major scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Double thoracic curves, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Double-bar hip-stabilizing orthosis, 240
Dress shoes, 171
Dressings
burn wound, 391
foot ulcer, 459, 461*t*
for lower limb amputation, 480–481
Drop lock, for orthotic knee, 242, 243*f*
Drugs. *See* Medications
Dual Carbon Fiber Spring orthoses (CFO), 232, 232*f*
Dual obliquity, of hand, 375, 376*f*
Dual-site control, of prostheses, for upper-extremity amputation, 778, 778*f*
Ductility, 146–147
Duplex scanning, 473*t*
Durometer, 149–150
Dynamic alignment
defined, 127
in transtibial prosthetics, 620–621, 621–622*f*
Dynamic ankle-foot orthosis (DAFO), 230–237
Dynamic anticipatory postural control, 269
Dynamic gait assessment, of foot, 198
Dynamic Gait Index (DGI), in gait, 118–119
Dynamic orthoses, 373, 373*f*
Dynamic pylon, in transtibial prosthetics, 623–624, 623*f*
Dynamic reactionary postural control, 269
Dynamic systems model, of motor control, 39–45, 40–41*f*
Dynamic-response feet
gait in, 30
with shock and torque absorption, 571, 571*f*
for Syme prostheses, 596
Dysesthesia/neuropathic pain, pharmacological interventions for, 276–278*t*
Dyspnea, 22, 24*t*
Dystonia, pharmacological interventions for, 276–278*t*
Dysvascular disease, lower extremity amputation for, 471–474

E

Early postoperative prosthesis (EPOP), 505, 535
Edema
control of, in residual limb, 675–676
in high-risk foot assessment, 458*t*
postoperative control of
after upper-extremity amputation, 786–789, 787–788*f*
management, 535–543, 536*t*
pressure therapy for, 393
shoe size and, 167, 168*f*
Education. *See also* Patient education
interdisciplinary, 9
for orthotic/prosthetic practice, 5–6
Efferent neurons, 263

Elastic foams, 415
Elastomer slipper-type prostheses, 587, 587*f*
Elbow(s)
  for body-powered prosthesis, 770, 771*f*
  burns, splints for, 397, 397*f*
  mobilization splints for, 373*f*
Elderly. *See also* Aging
  amputations in, 74*b*
  foot disorders in, 169–170
Elective transtibial amputation, 528*b*, 531*t*, 550*b*
Electric components, of prostheses, 773–776, 773*f*
Electric elbows, 776, 776*f*
Electric terminal devices, 773–775, 773–775*f*
Electric wrists, 775, 776*f*
Electrical burns
  amputation due to, 400, 401–402*b*
  characteristics of, 389
Electrical stimulation
  for foot infection, 459–460, 461*t*
  neuromuscular, in AFO, 232–233
Electrocution, bilateral upper-extremity amputation after, 795*b*
Electromyography (EMG)
  in foot orthoses studies, 210
  in instrumented gait analysis, 113–116
Electronic alignment, in transtibial prosthetics, 621, 622–623*f*
Electronic databases, 79*t*
  clinical practice guidelines in, 93–95*t*
  examples of, 79*t*
  PEDro, 79*t*, 80, 96–99*t*
  search strategies for, 79–82, 79*t*
Elevated vacuum
  for transfemoral prostheses, 640–650
  for transtibial prosthetics, 617–618, 617*f*
Emotion, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 508
End vertebra, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Endolite Echelon, 571*f*
Endolite Élan foot, 572*f*
Endoskeletal shank, 635, 636*f*
Endosteum, 314–317, 317*f*
Endurance
  in orthotic rehabilitation, 250
  postoperative assessment of, 518, 546–547, 547*f*
  training, for elderly, 24–25
Energy cost, of walking, 110–111
  measuring, 26–27
  normal gait and, 25
  orthoses and, 28–29, 29*t*
  prostheses and, 29–31, 30*t*
  self-selected speed and, 25–28, 26*t*, 26*f*
  transfemoral prostheses in, 648, 648*b*
Environment
  characteristics of, in motor control, 41*f*, 44–45, 44*f*
  prosthetic foot for, 568
Environmental barriers, postoperative assessment of, 527, 527*t*
Epiphysis, of long bone, 314–317
Equestrian, Paralympic, 727–728
Equinus deformity, 192, 197
Equipment simulation, in adaptive seating, 424–425
Ergonomics, postoperative assessment of, 527
ERTL procedure, modified, 488–489, 489*f*
Erythema, of foot, 458*t*
Ethnicity, amputation rates and, 437
EvaRT motion analysis system, 111–112
Evidence
  critical appraisal of, 82–86
  locating, 75–82
  sources of, 76–79, 76–77*t*
    clinical practice guidelines as, 79, 93–95*t*
    electronic, 79–82, 79*t*
    full-text articles as, 82
    integrative and systematic review articles as, 78–79, 89*t*
    journal articles as, 78
    textbooks as, 78, 78*b*
Evidence-based practice (EBP)
  applicability to patients/practice, 86
  clinical expertise in, 86–88, 87*f*
  critically appraising evidence, 82–86
  defined, 71
  formulating clinical question for, 72–74
  locating evidence, 75–82
  model for, 71, 72*f*
  process of, 72
Excessive knee flexion, transfemoral prostheses and, 649, 650*f*
Exercise(s)
  for burn injuries, 394–395
  cardiac output and, 15
  for elderly
    cardiopulmonary conditioning, 23
    monitoring response to, 23–24
    performance training, 24
    precautions, 20–21, 21*t*
  intolerance, signs and symptoms, 21*t*
  for muscle performance, 545–546
  neural plasticity and, 59–60
  preparation for, 23
  testing protocols, 24
Exertion, perceived, 23, 23*t*
Exoskeletal robotics, 160–161
Expandable wall socket, for transtibial prosthetics, 611
Expandable wall Syme prosthesis, 591–592
Explicit learning, 48–49, 48*f*
Extended training, neural plasticity and, 57
Extension aid, of knee unit, 637–638
External fixation devices, for fractures, 335*f*, 340*f*, 342
Externally powered control, of prostheses, for upper-extremity amputation, 776–780
Extraarticular fractures, 331–332, 332–333*f*
Extrapyramidal system, 260–261
Extrinsic feedback, 52–60, 52*b*

F

Fabrication process, 153–157
  measurement for, 153–155
  negative mold for, 155–156, 155*f*
  positive model for, 156, 156*f*
  socket in, 157, 157*f*
Facial burns, 399, 399*f*
Family history, assessment of, 506–507*b*, 508–509
Fasciitis, plantar, 177, 212–213
Fatigue, rating scale for, 24*t*
Feedback, in motor learning, 52–60, 52*b*
Feedforward extrinsic feedback, 52–53, 52*b*
Feet. *See* Foot; Prosthetic feet
Felted foam pressure relief pads, 464, 464*f*
Femoral anteversion/retroversion, 198, 199*f*
Femoral derotation osteotomy, 325
Femoral torsion, 198, 199*f*
Femur. *See also* Transfemoral amputation
  fractures of, 332, 334*f*
Fencing, Paralympic, 728
Fiber orientation angle, 149
Fiber-reinforced plastics (FRPs), 148
Fibula
  foot structure and, 184–185
  fractures of, 338
Figure-of-eight harness, in body-powered prosthesis, 771–772, 771–772*f*
Figure-of-nine harness, with self-suspending sockets, in body-powered prosthesis, 772
Fillauer Raize foot, 572*f*
Fillauer running blade, 573*f*
Finger gutter splints, 398
First ray
  examination of, 194–195
  plantarflexed, 195*f*, 205
First-degree burns, 390, 390*f*
Fishing, with limb loss, 731
Fit evaluation, for shoes, 166–167
FKOs. *See* Functional knee orthoses
Flaccid paralysis, of pretibial muscles, 120*f*, 120*b*
Flaccidity, 268
Flame burns, 389
Flash burns, 389
FlexFoot, energy cost of gait in, 30
Flexibility, postoperative assessment of, 544–545, 544–545*f*, 786–787
Flexible flatfoot, 168–170
Flexible forefoot valgus, 194
Flexible inner socket, for transtibial prosthetics, 611
Flexible Syme prosthesis, 591–592
Flexion Wrists, 770
Floor reaction ankle-foot orthoses, 229, 229–230*f*
Fluid-filled cushions, 411*f*, 415
Foam materials
  felted, 464*f*
  for foot orthoses, 201, 201*f*, 204
  in wheelchair cushions, 415
Foamed plastics, 149–150
Foot. *See also* Prosthetic feet
  abnormal mechanics of, 200
  abnormal pronation of, 200
  alignment of
    abnormal, 200
    lower extremity biomechanics and, 207
    normal, criteria for, 206
    overuse injuries and, 207–208
    Root's paradigm for, 206
  biomechanical examination of, 188, 189–190*f*
    dynamic, 198
    non-weight-bearing open chain, 188–196, 191*f*
    weight-bearing closed, 196–198
  burns, splints for, 398–399
  contour of, 167
  deformities/disorders of
    footwear for, 175–177
    in later life, 169–170
    pain management for, 211–212
    pediatric, 168
    pregnancy and, 169
    shoes and, 168
  function of, in gait, 187–188
  high-risk, 446–470
    assessment of, 447–453
    interventions for, 458–460, 461*t*
    periwound skin assessment, 457, 458*t*
    preventive care for, 464–467, 466*b*

Foot *(Continued)*
wound assessment, 453–457, 454*f*
wound management, 457–467
measurement of, 166–167
muscle weakness/imbalance, 200
size/contour changes in, 167, 167*t*
structure of, 184–187
Foot amputation, 483–487
partial, 577–589 (*see also* Syme amputation)
footwear for, 465
gait characteristics after, 579–582, 579–582*f*
prosthetic management of, 582–589
ulceration risk after, 451
Foot care, preventive
patient education for, 465, 466*b*
professional, 465
Foot orthoses, 183–219
accommodative, 199
functional
checkout/troubleshooting for, 205–206
examination for, 188
for forefoot deformity, 205
goals of, 200
for high-risk foot, 464–467
history of, 184
lower extremity function and, 208–211
measurement and fabrication of, 201–204
for overuse injuries, 211–213
purpose of, 198–200
for rearfoot deformity, 205
supplements for, 205*t*
lower extremity function and, 208–211
for overuse injuries, 211–213
Foot slap, 649
Foot supports, wheelchair, 416*t*
Foot ulcers. *See* Ulcers, foot
Foot-ankle assembly, 635
Football dressing, for foot ulcers, 464
Footwear, 164–182, 224–225. *See also* Shoes; Socks
Force plates, 103
Force(s)
in adaptive seating system, 422
in hand orthoses, 380
in orthotic design, 222, 222*b*, 223*f*
in solid-ankle foot orthosis, 228–229
Forearm burns, 397, 397*f*
Forefoot
amputation of, 577, 578*f*
deformities of
assessment of, 192–194, 193–194*f*
footwear for, 175–176
orthoses for, 205
dysfunction of, 214–215*b*
in step length, 580, 581*f*
structures of, 186
Forefoot posting, 203, 203–204*f*
Forefoot rocker, 106
Forefoot valgus/varus
assessment of, 193, 193*f*
orthoses for, 205
pregnancy and, 169
Foreground questions, 72–73, 72*f*
Fractional curve, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Fracture dislocations, spinal, 351*b*
Fracture orthoses, 340–342
Fractures
classification of, 331–333
hip, 328–330
hybrid cast braces for, 339–340
Fractures *(Continued)*
management of, 330–344
casts and splints for, 334–339
complications in, 342–344
external fixation devices for, 335–336*f*, 338–340*f*, 342
mechanisms of healing, 330–331, 330*f*
orthoses for, 340–342
odontoid, 355
stages of healing, 327–328
Freedom Innovations
feet and foot shells, 602*f*
Friction Wrists, 770
Frontal initial contact, 629
Frontal loading response, 629
Frontal midstance, 630
Frontal plane
foot deformities in, 198
foot/ankle examination in, 196–197
Frontal preswing, 631
Frontal swing phase, 631
Frontal terminal stance, 631
Full curve, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Full thickness-burns, 390, 390*f*
Function Component of the Late Life Function and Disability Instrument (LLFDI), 555–556*t*
Functional Ambulation Classification (FAC), 119
Functional compensation, 55–56
Functional electrical stimulation
in ankle-foot orthoses, 232–233, 233*f*
for burns, 395
Functional Independence Measure (FIM), 527, 527*t*, 555–556*t*
Functional knee orthoses (FKOs). *See also* Knee orthoses
for ACL insufficiency, 301–302, 302*f*
purpose of, 294
Functional level, Medicare, 566–567
Functional limitation in disablement models, 6, 7*f*
Functional position, of hand, 375, 376*f*
Functional Reach test, 525–526
Functional recovery, 55–56
Functional reserve capacity, 18, 18*f*
Functional status, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Function-based assessment, for gait, 117–119
Dynamic Gait Index in, 118–119
Functional Ambulation Classification in, 119
functional measures in, 117–119
Modified Gait Abnormality Rating Scale in, 119
Timed Up and Go in, 118
Walking Speed in, 118

G

Gait
asymmetry of, MPK and, 711, 711–715*f*
characteristics of, 579–582
clinical assessment of, 102–143
deviations in
associated with abnormal muscle tone, 108–109
elderly and, 169–170
neuropathic foot and, 453
obesity and, 167
during stance, 108
during swing, 108
transtibial prosthetic, 130–131, 130–131*t*
foot function in, 187–188
functional, determinants of, 222–223
Gait *(Continued)*
functional tasks during, 119–124
in flaccid paralysis of pretibial muscles, 120*f*, 120*b*
in hemiplegia, 119–121, 122*f*, 122*b*
in spastic diplegic cerebral palsy, 121–123, 123*f*, 123*b*
in spina bifida, 124, 124–125*b*, 125*f*
human walking, kinetic and kinematic descriptors of, 102–103
initial examination of, 668–669*t*
normal, 102
pathological, 108–109
patterns of, in amputation, 124–137
postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
transfemoral prosthesis, 132–136, 648
abducted, 648–649
alignment in, 132
deviations in, 136–137, 136–138*t*
initial contact and loading response in, 132–133
midstance in, 133–134, 134*f*
normal, 646
preswing in, 135
swing phase in, 135–136
temporal values in, 132
terminal stance in, 134
transtibial prosthetics, 125–130, 628–631
alignment in, 126–127, 127*f*
initial contact, 628–629, 628–629*f*
initial contact and loading response in, 128
midstance, 629–630
midstance in, 128–129
preswing, 631
preswing in, 129
studies of, 125–126
swing phase, 631
swing phase in, 129–130
terminal stance, 630–631, 630*f*
terminal stance in, 129
unilateral transtibial amputation in, 131*b*
Gait analysis
appropriate assessment tool for, 116–117
electromyography in, 113–116
energy cost in, 110–111
function-based, 117–119
instrumented, 109–116
kinematic and kinetic systems in, 111–113, 111–112*f*, 114–115*f*
for neuromuscular disorders, 279
pressure-sensing technology in, 116, 116*f*
qualitative, 109
strategy for, 119
technology in, 110
temporal and distance parameters in, 110
Gait Assessment and Intervention Tool (GAIT), 109
Gait cycle, 103–108, 104*f*
limb advancement, 106–108, 107*f*
rearfoot motion in, 206
single limb support, 105–106, 105*f*
weight acceptance in, 103–105
Gait training
for burn injuries, 394–395
prosthetic, 685–699
activities for, 697–698
on alternate surfaces, 696–697, 697*t*
assistive devices for, 690
controls training, 792–793
deviations, 692–695*t*
functional use training, 792–793

Gait training *(Continued)*
initial, 685–690, 686–687*f*, 689–690*f*
outcome assessment for, 698–699, 699*t*
GAITRite mat, 110
GAITRite system, 110
Gel liner, for transtibial prosthetics, 611–612, 612*f*
General strengthening exercises, for muscle performance, 546
Gentile's Taxonomy of Movement Tasks, 43–44, 43*f*
Genu recurvatum, 197
Gibbus, 361–362*t*
Gillette modification for UCBL orthoses, 230–231
Gluteus maximus strength, 710
Golf, with limb loss, 732, 732*f*
Goniometric measurement, of foot/ankle
non-weight-bearing, 188–196, 191*f*
static weight-bearing, 196–198
Gout, 178
Grafts for burns, 390
Gravity, adaptive seating and, 421–422
Gritti-Stokes amputation, 489–490, 490*f*
Ground reaction force (GRF) vector
gait assessment and, 103
for high-level prosthesis, 655
during walking, 187, 187*f*
Growth
bone, 318–319
childhood, accommodating, 739–740, 740*f*
Guide to Physical Therapist Practice, 392
Guillain-Barré syndrome, 264, 268
Gussets for shoes, 175
Gustilo-Anderson classification, of open fractures, 475, 475*t*

H

Habilitation, 738
Haglund deformity, 177
Hallux
amputation of, 583*f*, 583–586*b*, 585–586*f*
examination of, 195
structure of, 186
Hallux abductovalgus (HAV), 195
Hallux rigidus (limitus)
examination of, 195
footwear for, 176
Hallux valgus
in children, 169
examination of, 195
footwear for, 166–167, 176
Halo vest, cervical, 354*f*, 355
Hammertoes
footwear for, 176
neuropathy and, 451
Hand
anatomy of, 374–377
burns on, 398
Hand casting, in transtibial prosthetics, 618
Hand orthoses, 370–388
anatomical principles for, 374–377
arches, 374–375, 374*f*
metacarpal length/mobility, 375, 376*f*
palmar creases, 375, 375*f*
tissue precautions, 376–377, 377*b*, 377*f*
articular/nonarticular, 371*f*
case examples, 385–387*b*
classification of, 370, 371*f*
materials/equipment for, 380–384, 381*b*
component systems, 384, 384*f*
padding and lining, 383*f*, 384
Hand orthoses *(Continued)*
strapping, 383, 383*f*
thermoplastic materials, 380–383
mechanical principles, 378–380
nomenclature for, 370–374
for osteoarthritis, 385*f*, 385–386*b*
positioning for, 375, 376–377*f*
process for, 384–386
tissue healing in, 377–378
for wrist fracture, 386–387*b*, 386*f*
Hand simulation, for adaptive seating, 426
Handheld contact digitizers, 157
Hanger WalkAide System, 232
Hard socket, for transtibial prosthetics, 610
Hardwoods, 147
Harnesses
figure-of-eight, 771–772, 771–772*f*
figure-of-nine, with self-suspending sockets, 772
Pavlik, 321, 322*f*
Head-hips principle, with bilateral KAFO, 247, 248*f*
Healing process
burns, 392–393
tissue, 447
Health care teams, multidisciplinary. *See* Multidisciplinary teams
Health status, in patient-client history and interview, 508
Heart
aging of, 15–18
oxygen transport by, 14, 15*f*
Heart rate (HR)
cardiac output and, 15, 17*f*
cardiac workload and, 21–22
exercise intolerance and, 21*t*
monitoring, 23
PCI and, 27
Heel
of shoe, 165
Thomas, 173–174, 174*f*
Heel (first) rocker of stance, 105, 223, 224*f*
Heel height, shoe
pregnancy and, 169
for prosthetic foot, 568, 568*f*
transfemoral prostheses and, 649
Heel spur, 177
Heel wedge, 172, 172–173*f*
Height, alignment of, in transtibial prosthetics, 620
Hemiparesis, 62*b*
Hemipelvectomy amputation, 138*b*, 139–140*f*, 492–493, 493*f*
defined, 435*t*
Hemiplegia, gait in, 119–121
Henschke, Ulrich, 704
Herring classification, of LCPD, 324–325
Heterotopic ossification (HO), in lower limb amputation, 481–482, 482*f*
High-activity prosthetic feet, 573, 573–574*f*
High-density polyethylene, 148
High-heeled shoes, 169, 171
High-level amputation, 654–660
biomechanics of, 655–658, 655*f*, 656*b*, 657*f*
component selection for, 658
energy consumption of, 658–659
etiology of, 654–655
rehabilitation outcomes after, 659–660, 661*t*
socket design for, 659, 660*f*
High-temperature plastics, 148
Hindfoot, amputation of, 577–578, 578*f*
Hinged ankle-foot orthoses, 235–236*f*
Hinged thermoplastic ankle-foot orthosis, 234–235
Hip
anatomy of, 319*f*
burns on, 396*b*, 398
developmental dysplasia of, 321–323
exercises for, 672–673*t*
lower extremity amputations and, 670
structure/function of, 319–320
Hip abduction orthoses
for DDH, 323, 323*f*
for LCPD, 323, 326*f*
postoperative adult, 328
Hip arthroplasty, total, 328–329, 328*f*
Hip disarticulation, 492–493
case example on, 656–657*b*
etiology of, 654
Hip dysfunction, orthotic management of, 319–330
Hip flexor tightness, 515–516
Hip guidance orthosis (HGO), 247, 249*f*
Hip hiking, 650
Hip joints
orthotic, 340, 342*f*
prosthetic, 658
Hip orthoses
indications for, 319
for LCPD, 324
postoperative, 327–328
postoperative pediatric, 326–327, 327*f*
postoperative/postcast adult, 328–329
posttrauma care, 329–330
Hip spica casts
for DDH, 321
for fractures, 338, 338*f*
Hip-knee-ankle foot orthosis (HKAFO), 246
conventional, 245*f*, 247
design options, 246–249
for hip arthroplasty, 328, 328*f*
parapodiums/standing frames/swivel walkers, 246–247
for posttrauma care, 329
for reciprocal gait, 247–248, 249*f*
History, patient
for lower extremity dysvascular amputation, 667–668, 667*t*
for neuropathic foot, 453
postoperative, 507–509
HKAFO. *See* Hip-knee-ankle foot orthosis
Homeostasis, 262–263
Human-machine interface, 496, 496*f*
Hunting, with limb loss, 732
Hybrid cast braces, 339–340, 339–340*f*
Hybrid orthoses, 234
Hybrid prostheses, 780
Hydraulic ankle, 571, 571*f*
Hydraulic knee prostheses, 638, 638*f*, 705–706
Hydrotherapy, for burns, 395
Hyperkyphosis, 361–362*t*
Hypersensitivity, in residual limb, 676–677
Hypertension, exercise and, 22
Hypertonicity
adaptive equipment for, 275, 282*f*
of muscles, 153
in neurological disease, 260, 265–267, 265*f*
pharmacological interventions for, 276–278*t*
Hypertrophic scars
formation of, 392, 393*f*
management of, 393
Hypokyphosis, 361–362*t*

Hyposensitivity, in residual limb, 676
Hypothalamus, 263
Hypotonus, 267–268, 268*f*
Hysterical scoliosis, 361–362*t*

I

Icelandic roll-on suction socket (ICEROSS), 616
Idiopathic scoliosis. *See also* Scoliosis
  classification of, 360*b*, 361–362*t*
  evaluation of, 360–362, 363*f*
  prevalence and natural history of, 359–360
Iliac epiphysis/apophysis, 361–362*t*
Iliotibial band (ITB), 296, 296*f*
Imagery, for motor learning, 54
Immediate postoperative prosthesis (IPOP), 480–481, 505, 535, 539, 542, 543*f*
Immobilization orthoses, for hand, 371, 372*f*, 374
Impacted fractures, 332, 333*f*
Implant failure, postfracture, 342
Implicit learning, 48–49, 48*f*
Impulse Syme's Foot, 596
Inclinometer, 361–362*t*
Incomplete fractures, 331
Infant, with limb deficiency
  developmental milestones for, 739
  with lower-limb loss, 750–754, 752–755*f*, 752*b*
  psychosocial factors in, 741–743, 741*b*
  with upper-limb amputation, 744–746, 744–745*f*, 746*b*
Infantile scoliosis, 360*b*, 361–362*t*
Infants
  bone growth in, 318–319
  foot of, 168
  hip dysplasia in, 320
Infections, eliminating source of, 458–460
Inflammation, in postoperative days, 514
Inflammatory phase of healing, 330, 378, 378*f*, 392
Infracalcaneal fat pad migration, 196, 196*f*
Inherent feedback, 52–53, 52*b*
Initial contact (IC)
  in gait cycle, 103–104, 104*f*
  in transfemoral prosthetic gait, 132–133
  in transtibial prosthetics, 128, 628–629, 628–629*f*
Initial swing, in gait cycle, 106, 107*f*
Insoles/inserts
  foot amputation and, 586–587
  for high-risk foot, 465, 466*f*
Instant total contact cast (iTCC), 463, 463*f*
Institute of Medicine disablement model, 6, 7*f*
Instrumented gait analysis, 109–116
Integrated approach of rehabilitation teams, 8–9
Integrated pylon foot, 571, 571*f*
Integrated vacuum pump, prosthetic foot with, 571*f*
Integrative review articles, 78–79
Integumentary system assessment
  for adaptive seating, 427
  for neuropathic foot, 457, 458*t*
  postoperative assessment of, 513–515, 514*f*
Intensity, in neural plasticity, 58
Intention-to-treat analysis, 84
Interdisciplinary teams
  case examples, 10–12*b*
  characteristics of, 7–8
  collaborative approach of, 10
  factors influencing, 9
  patient-centered approach of, 9*f*
Interdisciplinary teams *(Continued)*
  summary, 12
Interface materials
  covering materials, 204
  for transtibial prosthetics, 609–612, 610–612*f*
Interference, neuroplastic, 59
Intermittent claudication, in vascular insufficiency, 435–436
Internal consistency, 85*t*
Internal femoral torsion, 168
Internal tibial torsion, 168
International Classification of Functioning Disability and Health (ICF), 6, 7*f*, 74, 221*t*
International Classification of Impairments, Disabilities, and Handicaps (ICIDH), 6
International Organization for Standardization, 738, 739*f*
International Wheelchair Basketball Federation, 729–730
Internet, as sources of evidence, 76
  critical appraisal of, 83*b*
Interrater reliability, 85*t*
Intertrochanteric fractures, 332, 334*f*
Interventions
  in PICO model, 72*f*, 73–74
  research studies of
    clinical relevance of, 86
    critical appraisal of, 83*b*
    searching for, 81
Interview process, in physical therapy examination, 667
In-toeing, 168
Intraarticular fractures, 332, 333*f*, 335*f*
Intrarater reliability, 85*t*
Intrinsic feedback, 52–60, 52*b*
Ischial containment socket, 639–640, 639–640*f*
Isokinetic exercise, for muscle performance, 546

J

Jewett brace, 356–357, 357*f*
Jobst garments, for transfemoral amputation, 537
Joint (limb) motion, 153
Joint motion
  foot, 184–187
  knee, 298–299, 299*f*
Joints
  assessment of, 668–669*t*
    postoperative, 506–507*b*, 516
  compromised integrity of, 200
  for transtibial prosthetics, 613
Journals
  full-text articles in, 82
  relevant to orthotics/prosthetics, 76–77*t*
  as sources of evidence, 78
Jump gait, 123
Juvenile scoliosis, 360*b*, 361–362*t*

K

KAFO. *See* Knee-ankle-foot orthosis
Kinematics
  in human walking, 102
  in instrumented gait analysis, 111–113, 111–112*f*, 114–115*f*
  of knee, 298
Kinetics
  in instrumented gait analysis, 111–113, 111–112*f*, 114–115*f*
  of knee, 298
Kleim and Jones principles of neural plasticity, 56–57, 57*t*
Knee
  anatomy of, 294–298
  burns on, 398–399
  exercises for, 672–673*t*
Knee adduction moment (KAM), 305–306
Knee cylinder casts, 338, 338*f*
Knee disarticulation, 435*t*, 489–491, 490*f*
Knee instability, in transfemoral prostheses, 649, 649*f*
Knee joints, orthotic
  cast braces with, 339
  indications/contraindications for, 242*t*
Knee orthoses, 294–313
  anatomy of, 294–298
  anterior cruciate ligament insufficiency, 302–303, 302*f*
  biomechanics of knee motion, 298–299, 299*f*
  case example, 310*b*
  classification of, 294, 298*t*
  components of, 299, 299*f*
  functional, 294
  for osteoarthritis, 298*t*, 304–307, 305*f*
  patellofemoral disorders, 307–309, 308*f*
  prophylactic, 299–301, 300*f*
  rehabilitative, 294, 295*f*
Knee prostheses, microprocessor, 704–723
  common mobility problems and potential solutions, 709–715
    stance phase, 709–715
  control mechanisms, 708–709, 708*f*
  historical development of, 704, 705*f*
  introduction to, 705–708, 706–707*f*, 706–707*t*
  non-microprocessor knee prostheses, 704–705
  outcomes of, 718–719
  prescriptive cases of, 719–720, 719*t*, 720*b*
  symmetry, in prosthetic gait, 711, 711–715*f*
Knee unit, of transfemoral prostheses, 636–637
  axis, 636–637, 637*f*
  braking mechanism of, 637–640
  hydraulic, 638, 638*f*
  microprocessor, 638
  pneumatic, 638
  stance control, 637, 637*f*
  swing phase control of, 637–638
Knee-ankle-foot orthosis (KAFO), 28–29
  abduction bar for, 326*f*
  advantages/disadvantages of, 239*b*
  challenges to, 237–238
  controlling ankle, 241–242
  controlling knee, 242–245
  delivery/training for, 246
  design options for, 238–246
    carbon composite, 240–241, 241*f*
    conventional, 239–240, 239*b*, 239*f*
    medially linked bilateral, 245–246, 245*f*
    thermoplastic, 240, 240*f*, 241*b*
  for fractures, 341–342
  function and alignment, 238, 238*f*
  with knee extension, 282*f*
  postoperative care, 327–328, 327*f*
  thermoplastic orthoses, 237–238, 241*b*, 241*f*
Knowledge of performance (KP), 52*b*, 53–55
Knowledge of results (KR), 52*b*, 53–55
Kyphos, 361–362*t*
Kyphoscoliosis, 361–362*t*
Kyphosing scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Kyphosis, 350

L

Lace-to-toe style, of shoe closure, 165*f*
Lactate, serum, 27

Laminar composites, 149
Laminate code system, 149
Lanyard, in transfemoral prostheses, 641, 641*f*
Lasts, for shoes, 165, 166*f*
Lateral collateral ligament (LCL), 296, 296*f*
Lateral trunk bending, in transfemoral prostheses, 648, 648*f*
Lateral whips, transfemoral prostheses and, 649–650, 651*f*
LCL. *See* Lateral collateral ligament
Learned nonuse theory, in neural plasticity, 57
Learning process, principles of, 48, 48*f*
Leather, 146
  moldable, for footwear, 171
Left pelvic obliquity, 414, 414*f*
Left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF), 18
Leg supports, wheelchair, 416*t*
Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease (LCPD), 319
  etiology of, 324
  evaluation and intervention for, 324–325
  orthotic management in, 324–326
Leg-length discrepancy, 172, 197
Lesser toes, amputation of, 484
Letter of medical necessity, 427
Levers, orthoses as, 378–379, 379*f*
Life cast foot prostheses, 587, 587*f*
Life span, neural plasticity and, 58
Lifts, for leg-length discrepancy, 172
Light-weight endoskeletal prosthesis, 764*f*
Limb advancement, in gait cycle, 106–108, 107*f*
Limb deficiencies
  amputation due to, 433*f*, 434
  athletic options for, 724–737
    barriers and motivation for, 724–725
    sport classification for, 726
  children with, 738–758
    accommodating growth and, 739–740, 740*f*
    classification and causes of, 738–739, 739*f*
    developmental milestones in, 739
    postoperative care for, 740–741
    rehabilitation/prosthesis for
      decision making in, 744–757
      for lower-limb loss, 750–755
      motor learning for, 63*b*
      multiple limb amputation, 755–757
      psychosocial factors in, 741–743
      for upper-limb amputation, 744–750, 745*f*, 746*b*
  classification/causes of, 435*t*, 440–441, 440*f*
  disorders, 478–479, 478*f*
Limb, residual
  edema control of, 675–676
  hypersensitivity in, 676–677
  hyposensitivity in, 676
  pain, 677, 678*t*
  sensory status of, 676–677
  soft tissue mobility of, 676
Limb salvage, in traumatic amputation, 475–476
Limb shaping, after upper-extremity amputation, 788–789, 789*f*
Limb sparing surgery, for neoplasm, 477–478, 477*f*
Limbic system, 262, 263*f*
Linear fractures, 332, 333*f*
Liner liners, 612
Liners
  for hand orthoses, 383*f*, 384
  for transfemoral prostheses, 640
Lisfranc amputation
  gait after, 579–580
  procedures for, 577, 578*f*
Lisfranc amputations, 486
Living environment
  in patient-client history and interview, 508
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Lo Rider Syme feet, 597
Loading response (LR)
  in gait cycle, 104–105, 104*f*
  knee flexion and, 709
  prosthetic foot in, 187
  in transfemoral prosthetic gait, 132–133
  in transtibial prosthetics, 128, 629
Locking liners, for transtibial prosthetics, 616–617, 616–617*f*
Locking mechanisms
  midtarsal joint, 193, 193*f*
  tibiofemoral joint, 295
Locking Wrists, 770
Locomotion, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 525–526, 526*f*, 549, 551–552*t*
Long bones, 314–317, 317*f*
Long leg casts, 338, 338*f*
Longitudinal arch of hand, 374*f*, 375
Longitudinal limb deficiencies, 435*t*
Lordoscoliosis, 361–362*t*
Lordosis
  features of, 350
  orthotic option for, 362–364
Low back pain
  foot orthoses for, 213
  spinal orthoses for, 349
Low-density polyethylene, 148
Lower extremities
  alignment of, 197
  burns on, 398–399
  fractures of, 329
    casts and splints for, 336*f*, 337–338
    classification of, 331–333
    complications of, 342–344
    external fixation devices for, 342
    hybrid cast braces for, 339–340, 339–340*f*
    orthoses for, 340–342
  function of
    foot orthoses and, 208–211
    foot type and, 207
  overuse injuries of, 207–208
  torsional deformities of, 198, 199*f*
Lower extremity amputation, 471–503
  bilateral, 661–663
    component selection for, 661
    energy cost of, 661
    socket design and suspension for, 663, 663*f*
  causes of, 435–438, 436*f*
  complications of, 481–482
    fluid collections in, 481, 482*f*
    heterotopic ossification in, 481–482, 482*f*
    pain in, 482
    wound healing in, 481
  comprehensive assessment for, 505–506, 506–507*b*
  for dysvascular and neuropathic disease, 471–474
  fluid collections in, 481, 482*f*
  future directions for, 494–495
    active lower limb prostheses in, 496, 496*f*
    human-machine interface in, 496, 496*f*
    osseointegration in, 494–495, 494*f*
  high-level, 654–660
Lower extremity amputation *(Continued)*
    biomechanics of, 655–658, 655*f*, 656*b*, 657*f*
    component selection for, 658
    energy consumption of, 658–659
    etiology of, 654–655
    socket design for, 659, 660*f*
  indications for, 471–479
  for limb deficiency disorders, 478–479
  for neoplasm, 476–478
  outcomes of, 483
  postoperative care in, 480–481
    dressings for, 480–481, 480*f*
    pain management for, 481
  prosthetic components of, 734–735
    for athletes, 735, 735*f*
  rehabilitation for, 750–755
  for trauma, 475–476
Lower Extremity Assessment Project (LEAP), 475–476
Lower extremity dysvascular amputation, rehabilitation in, 666–703
  diagnosis in, 670
  evaluation process in, 669
  interventions for, 670–680, 671–673*t*
  physical therapy examination in, 666–669, 667*t*
  plan of care for, 670
  preprosthetic interventions for, 670–680
  prognosis in, 670
  prosthesis
    alignment of, 682
    donning and doffing, 680–682, 680*f*
    early training, for use of, 680–685
    equipment, care of, 685
    gait training, 685–699
      activities for, 697–698
      on alternate surfaces, 696–697, 697*t*
      assistive devices for, 690
      deviations, 692–695*t*
      initial, 685–690, 686–687*f*, 689–690*f*
      outcome assessment for, 698–699, 699*t*
    positioning for, 683–684
    socket design, and sock use for, 681–682
    wearing schedule for, 682–683
Lower extremity orthoses, 208–209
  principles of, 220–258
    ankle-foot orthoses, 225–226
    appropriate footwear, 224–225
    case examples, 250–253, 251–254*b*
    dynamic ankle-foot orthoses, 230–237, 231*f*
    hip-knee-ankle-foot orthosis, 246
    implications for rehabilitation, 249
    KAFO delivery and functional training, 246
    knee-ankle-foot, 237–238, 241*b*, 241*f*
    outcome measures in orthotic rehabilitation, 249–250
    prefab/custom-fit/custom-molded, 223–224
    rockers of stance phase, 223, 224*f*
Lower motor neurons, 263
Low-temperature thermoplastics, 148
Lumbar corsets, 358–359, 358*f*
Lumbar lordosis, 134
Lumbosacral orthoses (LSOs), 358
Lund and Browder chart, for burns, 391*f*
Lungs
  aging and, 19
  gas exchange in, 15*f*

M

Magnesium alloys, 147
Major curve, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*

Mallet toes, 176
Manipulation, tasks for, 42–43, 42*f*
Manual locking knee units, 637, 637*f*
Manual muscle test (MMT), 516–517, 517*f*
Manual wheelchairs
  demographics of, 419–423
  features of, 417*f*, 418*t*, 419–423, 422*f*
  propulsion of, 422
Mass production, 159–161
Massed practice, 49*b*, 51
Mat evaluation, for adaptive seating, 425–426
Materials, 144–163
  for casts/splints, 336–337
  distributors of, 381*b*
  for foot orthoses, 204
  for hand orthoses, 380–384
  for orthotics and prosthetics, 145–150
  for splints, 396
  in wheelchair cushions, 415
Matrix, 148–149
Maturation phase, of wound healing, 392
Mauch, Hans, 704
McGill Pain Questionnaire, 511*f*
McKeever, D.A, 4
MCL. *See* Medial collateral ligament
Mechanical ankle joints
  for dynamic AFO, 226, 226*f*
  for KAFO, 241
Mechanical debridement, of foot ulcers, 459
Medial collateral ligament (MCL), 295–296, 296*f*
Medial longitudinal arch (MLA), of foot, 186–187
Medial opening Syme prosthesis, 591
Medial posts/wedges, 205
Medial whips, transfemoral prostheses and, 649–650, 651*f*
Medially linked bilateral KAFO, 245–246, 245*f*
Medical history, in patient-client history and interview, 508–509
Medical justification, letter of, 427
Medicare functional levels
  for lower limb amputations, 661*t*
  for prosthetic feet, 566–567
Medications
  for neuromuscular disorders, 276, 276–278*t*
  for phantom pain, 534–535, 534*t*
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Medline, 79–80, 79*t*
Memory, in thermoplastics, 382
Meningocele, 273*t*
Menisci of knee, 295
Mental practice, for motor learning, 54
Meta-analysis, 79
Metacarpal length/mobility, 375, 376*f*
Metacarpophalangeal (MP) joint, 375, 377*f*
Metals, 146–147
Metaphysis, of long bone, 314–317, 317*f*
Metatarsal bars, 173, 173*f*
Metatarsalgia, 175
Metatarsophalangeal (MTP) joint, fifth, metatarsalgia of, 175–176
Metatarsus adductus, 168
Methodological quality, of evidence, 82–86
Miami J collar, 353*f*, 354
Microprocessor controlled foot/ankle systems (MPAs), 624, 624*f*
Microprocessor foot, 571, 572*f*
Microprocessor knee (MPK) prostheses, 638, 704–723
  control mechanisms, 708–709, 708*f*
  historical development of, 704, 705*f*
  introduction to, 705–708, 706–707*f*, 706–707*t*
Microprocessor knee (MPK) prostheses *(Continued)*
  mobility problems and potential solutions, 709–715
    stance phase, 709–715
  outcomes of, 718–719
  overview of non-microprocessor knee prostheses, 704–705
  prescriptive cases of, 719–720, 719*t*, 720*b*
  symmetry, in prosthetic gait, 711, 711–715*f*
Microstomia prevention splints, 399, 399*f*
Midfoot
  amputation/disarticulation of, 486, 577, 578*f*
  problems in, footwear for, 176–177
  structures of, 185–186
Midstance
  in gait cycle, 105–106, 105*f*
  in transfemoral prosthetic gait, 133–134, 134*f*
  in transtibial prosthetics, 128–129, 629–630
Midswing, in gait cycle, 106, 107*f*
Midtarsal joint (MTJ)
  mobility/locking of, 193, 193*f*
  structure and motions of, 185–186, 186*f*
Milwaukee brace, 362–364, 364*f*
Minerva brace, 355, 356*f*
Mini Cog, 518, 519–522*f*
Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE), 518
Minor curve in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Mobility
  assessment of, 424–427
  follow-up, 428–429
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 525–526, 526*f*
  principles of, 406–407
  tasks for, 42–43, 42*f*
  while walking, 250
Mobility base, wheelchair, 406
Mobility system, 419–424
Mobilization orthoses, for hand, 371, 372*f*
  component systems for, 384, 384*f*
  objectives of, 374
Modified Bruckner procedure, 488
Modified Burgess procedure, 488
Modified Dynamic Gait Index (mDGI), 119
Modified ERTL procedure, 488–489, 489*f*
Modified Gait Abnormality Rating Scale, in gait, 119
Modulus, of elasticity, 147
Molded thermoplastic KAFO, 240
Moment, defined, 103
Monofilaments, Semmes-Weinstein sensory, 450, 450*f*
Montreal Cognitive Assessment, 518, 519–522*f*
Morton neuroma, 175, 213
Morton syndrome, 175
Motion, joint
  foot, 184–187
  knee, biomechanics of, 298–299, 299*f*
Motivational system, 262, 263*f*
Motor control
  applications for, 60–61
  evaluation of
    for neuromuscular disorders, 280–281*t*
    postoperative, 506–507*b*, 516–517, 517*f*, 668–669*t*
  lower extremity amputations and, 670
  neural plasticity in, 55–59
  rehabilitation and, 38–39
  theories of, 39–45
    dynamic systems perspectives, 39–45, 40–41*f*
    skill acquisition models, 45
Motor cortex, 260
Motor learning
  aerobic exercise and, 49, 49*b*
  applications for, 60–61, 62–63*b*
  defined, 46
  feedback in, 52–60, 52*b*
  mental practice/imagery for, 54
  neural plasticity in, 55–59
  patient/client-centered goals in, 55, 56*f*
  practice in, 49–52, 49*b*
  rehabilitation and, 38–39
  sleep and, 54–55
  theories of, 45–49, 47*t*
    evolution of, 46
    implicit/explicit aspects, 48–49, 48*f*
    temporal considerations in, 47–48
Motor neuropathy, 450–452
Motor performance, 46
Motorcycle accident, transfemoral prostheses and, 643*b*
Moulage techniques, 156
Mouth burns, splints for, 399, 399*f*
MPK. *See* Microprocessor knee (MPK) prostheses
Multidisciplinary teams, 1–13
  characteristics of, 7–8
  clinical expertise in, 8
  collaborative approach of, 10
  factors influencing, 9
  following amputation, 442*t*
  patient-centered approach of, 9*f*
  in postoperative/preprosthetic care, 504–505, 505*f*
Multifunction Wrists, 770, 770*f*
Multiple sclerosis
  drugs for, 273–274*t*
  overview of, 273–274*t*
Muscle, amputation and, 479
Muscle length, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 515–516, 515*f*
Muscle performance
  tone and, 264–269, 264*f*
Muscle performance, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 516–517, 517*f*, 545–546
Muscle strength
  exercises for, 671–673, 672–673*t*
  improving elderly, 25
  lower extremity amputations and, 670
Muscle tone
  abnormal
    functional *vs.*, 264*f*
    gait deviations associated with, 108–109
  AFO inhibition of, 237
  muscle performance and, 264–269, 264*f*
Muscle trainers, 790
Muscle weakness, foot orthoses for, 200
Musculoskeletal system
  aging of, 19–20
  assessment
    for adaptive seating, 427
    for neuropathic foot, 450–451
  bones of, 314
Myelomeningocele, 273*t*
Myoboy system, 789–790, 790*f*
Myocardium, aging of, 16
Myodesis, 479
Myoelectric prosthesis
  control systems, 777–779, 777*b*, 777*t*
  functional use of, 794
  motor learning for, 63*b*
Myolab II, 789–790

Myoplasty, 479
Myosite testing and training, after upper-extremity amputation, 789–790, 790*f*

N

Nagi model of disablement, 74
Nagi model of disablement process, 6, 7*f*
National Guideline Clearinghouse, 93–95*t*
National Library of Medicine (PubMed), 79–80, 79*t*
Natural crook technique, 582
Navicular bone
  accessory, 169
  structure of, 185–186, 186*f*
Navicular drop test, 197–198
Neck burns, 396–397
Negative casting
  direct pressure impression techniques for, 201–202, 202*f*
  errors in, 202–203
  techniques used for, 201
Negative mold, in fabrication process, 155–156, 155*f*
Negative pressure wound therapy (NPWT), in traumatic amputations, 476, 476*f*
Neoplasm, amputation for, 476–478
  evaluation for, 476–477, 477*f*
  incidence of, 476
  limb sparing surgery *vs.*, 477–478, 477*f*
  patient population of, 476
Neoprene suspension sleeves, 295*f*
Nerves
  amputation and, 479–480
  splinting precautions for, 376, 377*b*
Neural compensation, 55–56
Neural plasticity
  aerobic exercise and, 59–60
  defined, 55–56
  Kleim and Jones principles of, 56–57, 57*t*
  learning and, 48, 48*f*
  in motor control, 55–59
  rehabilitation and, 38–39
Neural recovery, 55–56
Neurogenic shock, 260
Neurological system assessment, for adaptive, seating, 426
Neuroma, 479–480
  after amputation, 676–677
  Morton, 175, 213
  prevention and treatment of, 496–497
Neuromotor status assessment, 280–281*t*
Neuromuscular disorders
  implications for orthotic use, 259–293
  management of, 275–284
    case examples, 285–288*b*
    medical and surgical care in, 276–279
    pharmacological, 276–278*t*
    rehabilitation, 279–281, 282*f*
  movement impairment in, 259–260
    central nervous system and, 260–263
    common pathologies, 270, 270–275*t*
    determinants of effective movement, 264–275
    differential diagnosis of, 260–264
    mobility and coordination and, 269–275
    muscle tone and, 264–269
    peripheral nervous system and, 263–264
    postural control in, 269
  orthoses for
    decision tree for, 284*b*
    examination for, 280–281*t*
    selection of, 282–284
Neuromuscular scoliosis, 360*b*, 361–362
Neuromuscular system, foot orthoses and, 209–211
Neuropathic disease, lower extremity amputation for, 471–474
Neuropathic foot ulcer, footwear for, 179–180*b*
Neuropathic walker, 579, 579*f*
Neuroprostheses, 232
Neutral forefoot position, 193–195, 193*f*
Newington orthoses, 326, 326*f*
Nonarticular orthoses, 371
Nonarticulating Syme feet, 596
Noncontact laser digitizers, 157
Noncontoured seating systems, 414–415
Nondisplaced fractures, 331, 331*f*
Non-paralympic sports/recreational activities, 731–732
Nonremovable rigid dressings, for postoperative edema, 539–540, 539*f*
Nonstructural curve, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Nonverbal channels, for extrinsic feedback, 52*b*
Non-weight-bearing examination, of foot/ankle, 188–196, 191*f*
Nordic skiing, Paralympic, 730–731
Normative feedback, 54

O

Obesity, foot size and, 167
Oblique fractures, 331–332, 332–333*f*
Occulta, 273*t*
Occupational history, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Odontoid fractures, 355
Office of Population Consensus and Surveys Scale (OPCS), 555–556*t*
Offset heels, 174
Offset orthotic knee joints, 243, 243*f*
Oklahoma joints, 234, 236*f*
1C20 ProSyme's, 597
Open chain examination, of foot/ankle, 188–196
Open fractures, 334
Open fractures, Gustilo-Anderson classification for, 475, 475*t*
Open-cell foam, 149
Optical scanning, in transtibial prosthetics, 618–619, 619*f*
Optimal postural alignment, 406–407, 407*f*
Orion, microprocessor knee prostheses, 704, 705*f*
ORLAU Parawalker, 247
Orthoses
  for burns, 395–399
  characteristics of ideal, 222*b*
  fracture, 340–342
  gait and, 28–29, 29*t*
  maintenance of, 161–162
  materials used in, 380–384, 381*b*
  for neuromuscular disorders, 279, 284*b*
  in orthopedic care, 314–348
  for partial foot amputation, 588, 588*f*
  selecting ideal, 220
  shoe attachments for, 174
  trauma, 314–348
Orthostatic (postural) hypotension, screening for, 518
Orthotic shell, 204
Orthotics
  clinical practice guidelines for, 93–95*t*
  history of, 4–5
  journals relevant to, 76–77*t*
  prescription for, 150–153, 151–152*f*, 154*f*
  socket, fabricating, 157, 157*f*
Orthotics *(Continued)*
  technologies poised to transform, 160–161
  in 20th century, 144–145
Orthotists
  definition/education of, 3, 3–4*f*
  roles/responsibilities, 5–6
OrthoWedge shoe, 463, 463*f*
Ortolani sign, 321, 321*f*
Osseointegration, 494–495, 494*f*
  complications of, 495
  implant fixation for, 494–495, 494*f*
  indications for, 494
  outcomes of, 495, 495*f*
  rehabilitation protocol for, 495
  skin implant interface in, 495, 495*f*
  in transfemoral prostheses, 642
Ossur prosthetic foot
  foot shells, 600*f*
  Low Profile Syme, 596
  Proprio, 572*f*
  Variflex, 570*f*
Osteoarthritis
  hand splints for, 385*f*, 385–386*b*
  knee orthoses for, 304–307, 305*f*
    biomechanical implications, 305–306
    evidence of effectiveness of, 306–307, 306*f*
    recommendations of, 307
  patellofemoral, 307–308
Osteoblasts, 317
Osteoclasts, 317
Osteocytes, 317
Osteosarcoma, amputation for, 439, 439–440*b*
Otto Bock prosthetic foot, 570, 570*f*, 598*f*
Ottobock Challenger, 573*f*
Outcome, in PICO model, 72*f*, 74
Outcome measures
  methodological quality of, 84–86
  for orthotic rehabilitation, 249–250
Outsole of shoe, 164, 165*f*
Out-toeing, 168
Overuse injuries
  foot orthoses for, 211–213
  foot type and, 207–208
  wheelchair use and, 422–423
OVID database, 79–80, 79*t*
Oxygen consumption
  cardiac workload and, 23
  gait speed and, 26–27, 28*f*, 30*t*
Oxygen cost
  normal gait and, 26–27
  orthotic gait and, 28–29
  prosthetic gait and, 29, 30*t*
Oxygen transport system, 14–15, 15*f*

P

Padding
  cast, 337
  foot orthoses, 205*t*
  for hand orthoses, 384
Pain
  back, 213
  during exercise, 24*t*
  foot, 211–212
  in lower limb amputation, 482
  management of
    after lower limb amputation, 481
    after upper-extremity amputation, 786
    postoperative assessment for, 506–507*b*, 533
  patellofemoral joint, 207
  postoperative assessment of, 511, 511*f*

Palmar creases, of hand, 375, 375*f*
Palmar-resting extension splints, 398
Palpation, of subtalar neutral position, 188, 191*f*
Pan splint, 398, 398*f*
Paraffin, for burns, 395
Paralympic sports, 726–730
  archery, 726, 726*f*
  athletics (track and field), 727, 727*f*
  badminton, 727
  canoe, 727
  cycling, 727
  equestrian, 727–728
  fencing, 728
  powerlifting, 728, 728*f*
  rowing, 728
  rugby, 728
  sailing, 728–729
  shooting, 729
  sitting volleyball, 729
  swimming, 729
  table tennis, 729
  taekwondo, 729
  triathlon, 728
  wheelchair basketball, 729–730
  wheelchair tennis, 729
Parapodiums, 246–247
Parietal lobe, 261–262
Paris splint, for lower limb amputation, 480, 480*f*
Parkinson disease, rigidity in, 267, 267*f*
Partial-hand prostheses, 766, 766–767*f*
Partial-thickness burns, 390, 390*f*
Part-to-whole training, 51–52
Passive cosmesis, 765–766
Passive exercise, for burns, 395
Passive functional prostheses, 765–766
Passive seating systems, 411–412
Past medical history, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Patella, 297, 297–298*f*
Patellar tendon-bearing (PTB) ankle-foot orthoses, 225
Patellar tendon-bearing (PTB) casts, 336*f*, 338
Patellar tendon-bearing (PTB) socket, for transtibial amputation, 608, 608*f*
Patellofemoral disorders, orthoses for, 307–309, 308*f*
Patellofemoral joint
  anatomy of, 297–298
  dysfunction of
    foot orthoses for, 212
    knee orthoses for, 294, 297–298
  types of, 298*t*
Patellofemoral osteoarthritis, 307–308
Patellofemoral pain syndrome (PFPS), 212, 308–309
Pathological fractures, 333
Pathological gait, 108–109
Patient characteristics, in PICO model, 72*f*, 73, 73–74*t*
Patient education
  for burn injuries, 402
  for foot care, 465, 466*b*
  in foot orthoses, 206
  for hand orthoses, 385–387
  importance of, 9–10
  postamputation, 549–551, 553–554*f*
  for wheelchairs, 411
Patient Generated Index (PGI), 555–556*t*
Patient Specific Functional Scale (PSFS), 555–556*t*
Patient-centered care, 87*f*, 504–505, 505*f*
Patient-centered goals, 55, 56*f*
Pattern recognition control, of prostheses, for upper-extremity amputation, 778–779, 779*f*
Pavlik harness, 321, 322*f*
PCL. *See* Posterior cruciate ligament
Pedal pulses, 447, 449*f*
Pediatric postoperative care, 326–328, 327*f*
PEDro database, 79*t*, 80, 96–99*t*
Pelvic band, in hip orthoses, 328, 328*f*, 340
Pelvic belt, in transfemoral prostheses, 642, 642*f*
Pelvic obliquity, 361–362*t*
Pelvic osteotomy, 325
Pelvic stability, adaptive seating and, 417
Pelvis
  alignment of, 197
  burns on, 398
  fractures of, 332–333, 335*f*, 338*f*
Perceptual systems, in motor control, 41, 42*f*, 261–262
Perforations, in thermoplastics, 382–383
Periosteum, 314–317, 317*f*
Peripheral arterial disease (PAD)
  AHA/ACC clinical guideline for, 8*t*
  amputation for
    diabetes and, 2–3, 3*b*, 435–438, 437*b*
    incidence of, 432, 434*f*
    indications for, 473–474
    outcomes of, 437–438
    patient assessment for, 472, 472*t*
    prevalence of, 471–472
    prosthetic gait after, 29, 30*t*
    risk factors for, 471–472
    vascular examination for, 472–473, 473–474*f*, 473*t*
  elective transtibial amputation secondary to, 531*t*
  revascularization, indications for, 473–474
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), 263–264
Peripheral neuropathy
  amputation for
    diabetes and, 436
    incidence of, 436
    rehabilitation outcome for, 437–438
  burn-related, 399
  footwear for, 178
Peripheral vascular disease, foot problems in, 178
Periwound skin assessment, 457, 458*t*
Pes cavus, 177
Pes equinus, 176–177
Pes planus, 176
PFPS. *See* Patellofemoral pain syndrome
Phalangeal (digit) amputations, 435*t*, 484
  of foot, 577, 578*f*
Phantom limb sensation/pain
  assessment, 512
  dealing with, 534–535, 534*t*
  lower, 677
Philadelphia collars, 352, 353*f*, 397
Physical agents, for burns, 395
Physical examination, of neuropathic foot, 446
Physical performance training, 24–25
Physical therapists, 5, 221, 530*b*
Physical therapy
  diagnosis and prognosis, 670
  diagnosis of, 529–530, 531*t*
  examination, components of, 666–669, 667*t*
  history of, 4–5
  patient-centered care in, 87*f*
  for postoperative and phantom pain, 534–535
Physiological cost index (PCI), 111
Physiotherapy Evidence Database (PEDro), 79*t*, 80, 96–99*t*
PICO model, 72–73, 72*f*
Pirogoff amputation, 486–487, 577–578
Pistoning, 612
PKOs. *See* Prophylactic knee orthoses
Plantar fascia, 186–187
Plantar fasciitis
  footwear for, 177
  orthoses for, 212–213
Plantar flexion
  control system, 223*f*
  first ray, 195*f*, 205
Plastazote shoe, 172
Plaster casting, 201
Plaster casts, 344
Plastics, 147–150
Pneumatic compression, 542, 542*f*
Pneumatic knee prostheses, 638, 705–706
Poliomyelitis
  epidemic, 5
  flaccidity in, 268
Polycentric knee units, 636–637, 637*f*
Polyethylene, 148
  foams, 149–150
Polyethylene semirigid dressings, removable, for postoperative edema, 541
Polymer composites, 148–149
Polyneuropathy, 517–518
Polypropylene, 148, 204
Polyurethane casts, 337
Polyurethane open-cell foams, 150
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) cosmetic gloves, 765
Positioning
  in adaptive seating, 413, 415*f*
  for burn injuries, 395, 396*b*
  for hand orthoses, 375, 376–377*f*
  for lower extremity amputation, 683–684
Positive cast modifications, 203–204, 203*f*
Positive model
  fabricating and modifying, 156, 156*f*
  for foot orthoses, 203–204, 203*f*
Posterior cruciate ligament (PCL), 296–297, 296*f*
  knee control by, 295
Posterior foot drop splints, 398
Posterior leaf spring (PLS) ankle-foot orthosis, 231–232, 231*f*
Posterior oblique ligament, 296
Posterior pelvic tilt, 413–414, 414*f*
Posterolateral corner of knee, 297
Posting
  forefoot, 205
  rearfoot, 205
Postoperative care, 504–565
  evaluation, diagnosis, and prognosis in, 529–533, 530*b*
    goals, 532–533, 533*b*
    physical therapy diagnosis, 529–530, 531*t*
  examination in, 505–528, 506–507*b*
    acute postoperative pain, 511, 511*f*
    aerobic capacity and endurance, 518
    attention and cognition, 518–520, 519–522*f*, 523*t*
    circulation, 515
    current condition, 509
    demographic and sociocultural information, 508
    developmental status, 508
    health, emotional, and cognitive status, 508
    integumentary integrity and wound healing, 513–515, 514*f*

Postoperative care *(Continued)*
joint integrity and mobility, 516
living environment, 508
medical, surgical, and family history, 508–509
mobility, locomotion, and balance, 525–526, 526*f*
muscle performance and motor control, 516–517, 517*f*
patient-client history and interview, 507–509
phantom sensation and phantom pain, 512
postoperative complications, monitoring for, 528
posture, ergonomics, and body mechanics, 527
range of motion and muscle length, 515–516, 515*f*
residual limb length and volume, 512–513, 512–513*f*, 513*t*
self-care and environmental barriers, 527, 527*t*
sensory integrity, 520–525, 524*b*
systems review, 509
test and measures, 509–528, 510*t*
upper extremity function, 517–518
hip orthoses for
adult, 328–330, 328*f*
pediatric, 326–328, 327*f*
posttrauma care, 329–330
for Syme amputation, 590
Postoperative reconstruction, ACL and, 303–304
biomechanical implications, 303
recommendations, 304
role in rehabilitation, 303–304
Postural control
in AFO, 237
for amputation, 547
dimensions of, 269
effectiveness of, 525–526
exercises for, 673–674
foot orthoses and, 210–211
postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Postural support, in adaptive seating
components of, 408–411*t*
problems with, 420–421*t*
Posture, assessment of, 506–507*b*, 527
Power, 103
muscle tone and, 264
Power analysis, of sample size, 82–83
Power assist manual wheelchair, 418*t*
Power assistance, 160
Powered scooters, 418*t*
Powered wheelchairs, 412*f*, 418*t*, 423–424, 423–424*f*
Powerlifting, Paralympic, 728, 728*f*
Practice
appropriate level of challenge, 49–50
characteristics of, 49*b*
conditions of, 50–51
importance of, 49–52
motivation and, 50
part- *vs.* whole-task training for, 51–52
retention/transfer in, 52
self-efficacy and, 50
variability and, 50
Precontoured seating systems, 415
Prefabricated ankle-foot orthoses, 223–224
Pregnancy, foot during, 169
Preload, aging and, 17–18
Preprosthetic care, 504–565
for lower extremity, 670–680
range of motion, 670–671, 671*t*
strength, 671–673, 672–673*t*
outcome assessment for, 552–556, 555–556*t*
Preprosthetic training, in upper-extremity amputation, 788–791
Prescription examination, for orthotics, 221, 221*t*
Prescription footwear, 171–175, 177–179
Prescription guidelines
for materials and technology, 150–153
orthotic, 150–153, 151–152*f*, 154*f*
prosthetic, 153, 762–765, 763*b*, 763*t*, 764*f*
lower extremity, 678–680
Prescriptive cases, of microprocessor knee prostheses, 719–720, 719*t*, 720*b*
Pressure
adaptive seating and, 411–412, 411*f*, 414
on foot
reduction of, 461–464
ulceration and, 451
hand orthoses and, 376, 377*b*
Pressure casting, in transtibial prosthetics, 618, 618*f*
Pressure garments/devices
for hypertrophic scars, 394
for postoperative edema, 537–539, 539*f*
Pressure mapping for adaptive seating, 426, 426*f*
Pressure-sensing technology, 116, 116*f*
Preswing
in gait cycle, 106, 107*f*
in transfemoral prosthetic gait, 135
in transtibial prosthetic gait, 129
in transtibial prosthetics, 631
Primary curve, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Primary sources of evidence, 78
Prognosis, research studies on
clinical relevance of, 86
critical appraisal of, 83*b*
searching for, 81
Prognostic marker, 74
Programmable microprocessors, 776
Proliferative phase, of healing, 378, 378*f*, 392
Pronation
abnormal foot, 200
joint motion in, 186
Prophylactic knee orthoses (PKOs)
biomechanical implications of, 300–301
evidence of effectiveness, 301
purpose of, 299–301
Proprioception, 300
Propulsion
foot, 187–188
wheelchair, 420–421*t*, 421–422
Prosthesis, 400–401. *See also* Prosthetic feet; Transfemoral prostheses; Transtibial prosthetics; Upper-extremity amputation
alignment of, 682
donning and doffing, 680–682, 680*f*
early training, for use of, 680–685
equipment, care of, 685
fitting of, 646–647*b*
gait in, energy cost of, 29, 30*t*
maintenance of, 161–162
for partial foot amputation, 577, 582–589
passive, for infants, 745, 745*f*
positioning for, 683–684
socket design, and sock use for, 681–682
for Syme amputation, 590–595
Prosthesis *(Continued)*
for upper-extremity amputation
body-powered, 793–794, 793*f*
donning and doffing of, 792, 792–793*f*
myoelectric, 794
residual limb hygiene and care of, 791
wearing schedule for, 682–683
Prosthetic boots, 587, 587*f*
Prosthetic components, for athletes with limb loss, 734
Prosthetic feet
for ADLs, 567
bilateral, 569
body weight, 567–568, 567*f*
case examples, 574–575*b*
comorbidities and, 568
cost of, 569
durability of, 568
dynamic response of, 30
external rotation of, 649
features of, 569–573
functional level 1, 569–570, 570*f*
functional level 2, 570, 570*f*
functional level 3, 570–573, 570–572*f*
functional level 4, 573, 573–574*f*
gait habits and, 569
for high-level amputations, 658
interaction with other prosthetic components, 569
microprocessor, 571, 572*f*
prior, 569
psychological influences, 569
selection of, 566–569
shoe choices for, 568, 568*f*
skin tone, 569
specialized activity, 573, 573–574*f*
for Syme prostheses, 596–600
transtibial, 624
Prosthetic fitting, readiness for, 513
Prosthetic hip joint, for high-level amputations, 658
Prosthetic knee
for athletes, 734
for high-level amputations, 658
non-MPK unit, stability and, 704–705
Prosthetic Limb Users Survey of Mobility (PLUS-M), 525–526
Prosthetic Profile of the Amputee (PPA), 555–556*t*
Prosthetics
clinical practice guidelines for, 93–95*t*
history of, 4–5
journals relevant to, 76–77*t*
postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
prescription for, 153
socket, fabricating, 157, 157*f*
technologies poised to transform, 160–161
in 20th century, 144–145
Prosthetists
definition/education of, 3, 4*f*
roles/responsibilities of, 5–6
Protective sensation, testing for, 450, 450*f*
Proximal femoral derotation osteotomy, 325
Proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joint, 371–372, 372*f*
Proximal transverse arch, of hand, 374*f*, 375
Psychological support, after upper-extremity amputation, 787–788
Psychosocial factors, in prosthetic foot selection, 569
PubMed, 79*t*, 89*t*

Pulmonary system
aging of
functional consequences of, 18*f*, 20
lung and airway changes, 19
musculoskeletal system changes, 19–20
physiological changes, 19, 19*f*
ventilation control and, 20
assessment, for adaptive seating, 427
Pulsatile lavage with suction (PLWS), 459
Pulse volume recordings, 473*t*
Pulses, assessment of, in foot, 447
Push rims, wheelchair, 419
Pyramidal system, volitional movement and, 260

Q

Quad canes, 690
Quadrilateral socket, 639, 639–640*f*
Qualitative gait assessment, 109
Quebec Back Pain Disability Scale, 213
Quick Disconnect Wrists, 770, 770*f*

R

Racial populations, amputation rates and, 437
Radiographs, for scoliosis, 360–361
Ramps, MPK and, 716–718
Random practice, 49*b*, 50–51
Range of motion (ROM), 668–669*t*
calcaneal, 189–190
lower extremity
assessment of, 668–669*t*
interventions for, 670–671, 671*t*
post-burn exercises for, 394–395
postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 515–516, 515*f*, 544–545, 544–545*f*
of talocrural joint, 190–191, 191*f*
upper extremity, 786–787
Rate pressure product (RPP), 21–22
Ray resection, 484, 577, 578*f*
Rays, of forefoot, 186
examination of, 192
plantar flexed first, 195*f*, 205
Rear quarters, of shoe, 164–165, 165*f*
Rearfoot
deformities of
assessment of, 191–192, 192*f*
footwear for, 177
orthoses for, 205
dysfunction of, 214–215*b*
examination of, 188–192
orthotic effects on, 208
structures of, 185, 185*f*
Rearfoot posting, 204, 204*f*
Rearfoot varus
examination of, 191–192, 192*f*
orthoses for, 205
Reciprocal gait orthosis, 249*f*
bilateral KAFO as, 249*f*
dual cable systems for, 247–248, 249*f*
hybrid, 248–249
Reclining frame wheelchair, 412*f*, 418*t*
Reconstruction, in traumatic amputation, 475–476
Recreation participation, organizational support for, 725–726
Reduction, loss of fracture, 342
Refill after occlusion, 473*t*
Regenerative peripheral nerve interface (RPNI), 496–497
Rehabilitation
after amputation, 441–443, 442*t*
for burn injuries, 392–395
Rehabilitation *(Continued)*
clinical practice guidelines for, 93–95*t*
habilitation *vs.*, 738
HKAFO in, 249
journals relevant to, 76–77*t*
in lower extremity dysvascular amputation, 666–703
diagnosis in, 670
evaluation process in, 669
interventions for, 670–680, 671–673*t*
physical therapy examination in, 666–669, 667*t*
plan of care for, 670
preprosthetic interventions for, 670–680
prognosis in, 670
motor control and, 38–39
of neuromuscular disorders, 279–281, 280–281*t*
orthotic, outcome measures in, 249–250
patient/client-centered goals in, 55, 56*f*
systematic reviews of, 89*t*
technologies, 160–161
Rehabilitation teams, characteristics of, 7–11
Reinforcements, shoe, 165
Relaxed calcaneal stance (RCS), 194, 194*f*
Reliability
of foot measurements, 206
of outcome measures, 85, 85*t*, 554
Remodeling phase of healing, 331, 378, 378*f*
Removable cast walkers, 462
Removable polyethylene semirigid dressings, for postoperative edema, 541
Removable rigid dressings (RRDs)
for lower limb amputation, 480
for postoperative edema, 540–541, 540*f*
Repetition, in neural plasticity, 57
Replantation surgery, 438
Research literature
clinical relevance of, 86
critical appraisal of, 82–86, 83*b*
locating evidence in, 75–82
staying current with, 87–88
Research question, formulating, 72, 74–75*b*
Residual limb
hygiene and care of, after upper-extremity amputation, 791
length assessment, 512–513, 512*f*, 513*t*
lower
edema control of, 675–676
hypersensitivity in, 676–677
hyposensitivity in, 676
pain, 677, 678*t*
prevention and management of skin problems in, 684–685
sensory status of, 676–677
soft tissue mobility of, 676
volume, assessment, 512–513, 513*f*
prosthetic foot selection and, 568
Resources, individual, in motor control, 41, 41*f*
Respiratory rate
exercise intolerance and, 21*t*, 22
neural control of, 20
Responsiveness, of outcome measures, 556
Restorations, of prostheses, for upper-extremity amputation, 765–766, 765*f*
Restriction orthoses, for hand, 371, 372*f*, 374
Retention, practice and, 52
Revascularization, for peripheral artery disease, 473–474
Rigid dressings
for lower limb amputation, 480
for postoperative edema
nonremovable, 539–540, 539*f*
removable, 540–541, 540*f*
for postoperative prosthesis, 542–543, 543*f*
for transtibial amputation, 607*f*
Rigid flatfoot, 168–170
Rigid forefoot valgus, 194
Rigid frame ultralight wheelchair, 416, 417*f*, 418*t*
Rigid orthoses, 204, 208
Rigidity, in Parkinson disease, 267, 267*f*
Risk stratification for diabetic feet, 465, 465*t*
Risser sign, 359–360, 361–362*t*
Rivermead Mobility Index (RMI), 555–556*t*
ROADMAP algorithm, for orthotic intervention, 283
Rocker-bottom soles
after amputation, 467
for high-risk foot, 467, 467*f*
for lower extremity orthoses, 173, 173*f*
for partial foot amputations, 579, 579*f*
Rockers of stance phase, 223, 224*f*
Roll-on gel liners, 612
Roll-on liners, for transfemoral prostheses, 641
Root's paradigm, for foot biomechanics, 188, 206
Rotary motion, 153
Rotational prominence, 361–362*t*
Rowing, Paralympic, 728
Rugby, Paralympic, 728
Running, prosthetic foot for, 573, 573–574*f*

S

SACH foot. *See* Solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) foot
Sackett, David, 71
Sacroiliac joints, 359
SAFO. *See* Solid-ankle foot orthosis
Sagittal initial contact, 628–629, 628*f*
Sagittal midstance, 629
Sagittal plane, foot/ankle examination in, 197–198
Sagittal preswing, 631
Sagittal swing phase, 631
Sagittal terminal stance, 630, 630*f*
Sailing, Paralympic, 728–729
Saint Louis University Mental Status (SLUMS) examination, 518, 519–522*f*
Salience, in neural plasticity, 58
Salter-Thompson classification, of LCPD, 324–325
Sample size, appraisal of, 82–83
Sandals, Velcro closure for, 167, 168*f*
Sandwich splint, 398, 398*f*
Sarcomas, 476
Scald injuries, 389
Scarpa bulge, 639
Scars
amputation, management of, 543–544
burn
assessment of, 393*b*
formation of, 392–393, 393*f*
management of, 393
Schmidt's schema theory, of motor learning, 46
School-age children, with limb deficiency
with lower-limb loss, 754–755, 756*f*, 756–757*b*
psychosocial factors in, 743
upper-limb amputation in, 748, 749*f*, 750*b*
Scissor gait, 109, 123

Scoliosis
classification of, 360*b*
defined, 359–365, 359*f*
evaluation of, 360–362, 363*f*
future directions in treatment for, 365–366
prevalence and natural history of, 359–360
terminology for, 361–362*t*
types of braces for, 362–365
Scooters, powered, 418*t*
Screw home, of tibiofemoral joint, 298
Seat belt injuries, spinal, 351*b*
Seat cushions, wheelchair, 412
Seating and mobility
assessment of, 424–427
follow-up, 428–429
principles of, 406–407
Seating equipment, for amputation, 547–548
Seating simulator, 426
Seating solutions, 407
Seating system, 407–417
components of, 413–417, 414*f*
Seattle Light Foot, 596
Secondary sources, of evidences
clinical practice guidelines, 79, 93–95*t*
integrative and systematic review articles, 78–79, 89*t*
Second-degree burns, 390, 390*f*
Segmental systolic blood pressure, 447–448, 449*f*, 473*t*
Segmented fractures, 332*f*
Seizures, pharmacological interventions for, 276–278*t*
Selective debridement, of foot ulcers, 458
Self-care, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 527, 527*t*
Self-selected walking speed, 25–28, 26*t*, 26*f*
Semifunctional orthosis, 204
Semirigid locking liner, for transtibial prosthetics, 617
Semirigid orthoses, 204
Semisolid ankle-foot orthosis, 231–232
Semmes-Weinstein sensory monofilament, 450, 450*f*
Sensory assessment of neuropathic foot, 450
Sensory status
postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 520–525, 524*b*
of residual limb, 676–677
Sensory systems
age-related and pathologic conditions of, 524*b*
in motor control, 41, 42*f*
Sensory testing, 524
Serial casting, for neuromuscular disorders, 279, 280–281*t*, 283*f*
Serial practice, 49*b*, 50–51
Serial static orthoses, 372–373, 373*f*
Serum lactate, 27
Sesamoiditis, 175
Shank, of shoe, 164, 165*f*
Shape-manipulation software, 158, 161
Sharp debridement, of foot ulcers, 458, 459*b*
Shear stress, hand orthoses and, 379, 380*f*
Sheaths, for transtibial prosthetics, 610, 610*f*
Shock absorption
by foot, 187
by shoe, 166, 169
in transtibial prosthetics, 622–623, 623*f*
Shoe counters, 174
Shoes
changing of, 645*b*
choosing appropriate, 170–171
Shoes *(Continued)*
components of, 164–166, 165*f*
custom-molded, 171–172, 172*f*, 586
for deformities, 175–177
diagnosis-related considerations, 177–179
for elderly, 169–170
fitting/shape and size of, 166–167
for foot burns, 398–399
for foot ulcers, 463–464, 463*f*
function of, 165–166
for high-risk foot, 453
ill-fitting, consequences of, 167
measurement of, 465, 466*f*
modifications, 172–175
moldable leather, 171
orthotic-related function of, 166
for partial foot amputation, 582–586
for pediatric foot, 168
Plastazote, 172
postamputation, 467
during pregnancy, 169
prescription, 171–175
for prosthetic foot, 568, 568*f*
reading wear on, 179–180
standard sizes, 167, 167*t*
stretching, 174, 174*f*
Shooting, Paralympic, 729
Short Form-12, 555–556*t*
Short Form-36, 555–556*t*
Short leg casts, 337–338, 341*f*
Short leg walkers, 341, 341*f*
Shoulder burns, splints for, 397
Shrinkers
for postoperative edema, 537–539, 539*f*
for residual limb, 675–676
Shumway-Cooks model of motor control, 41*f*, 44–45
Shuttle locking liner, for transfemoral prostheses, 641
Silesian belt, in transfemoral prostheses, 641–642, 642*f*
Silicone gel, for burn scars, 394
Simulation techniques, for adaptive seating, 426, 426*f*
Single limb mobility, after amputation, 551–552*t*
Single limb support (SLS), 103
in gait cycle, 105–106
midstance in, 105–106, 105*f*
terminal stance in, 105*f*, 106
Single limb transfers, in postoperative period, 549
Single-axis joints, for hinged AFO, 242, 243*f*
Single-axis knee units, 636
Single-axis orthotic knee joints, 242–243, 243*f*
Sitting volleyball, 729
Skeletal age (bone age), 361–362*t*
Skill acquisition models, of motor control, 45
Skin
breakdown
in neuropathic foot, 452
wheelchair use and, 411
care for
amputation, 543–544
grafts/burn scars, 400
high-risk foot, 466*b*
examination of, in neuropathic foot, 457
grafts, for burns, 390, 400
maceration, postfracture, 344
postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
tone, in prosthetic foot selection, 569
Sky diving, with limb loss, 732
Sled (Sledge) hockey, Paralympic, 731
Sleep, motor learning and, 54–55
Sleeve suspension
Syme prosthesis, 591, 591–592*f*
for transtibial prosthetics, 615–616, 615*f*
Slice fractures, spinal, 351*b*
Slipper-type elastomer prosthesis, 587, 587*f*
Snowboarding, Paralympic, 731, 731*f*
Sociocultural information, 506–507*b*, 508
Sockets
for high-level lower limb loss, 659, 660*f*
for lower extremity dysvascular amputation, 681–682
for transfemoral prostheses, 638
ischial containment, 639–640, 639–640*f*
materials of, 638
shape of, 639, 639*f*
for transtibial prosthetics, 607
design of, 607–609
interface materials for, 609–612, 610–612*f*
for upper-extremity amputation, 764–765
Socks
selection of, 171
for transtibial prosthetics, 610
Tubigrip, 535–537, 538*f*
Soft cervical collars, 352–353, 353*f*
Soft dressings
for lower limb amputation, 480
for postoperative edema, 535–537, 537–538*f*
Soft inserts, for transtibial prosthetics, 610–611, 611*f*
Soft orthoses, 204, 208
Soft tissue
amputation and, 479
examination of, in high-risk foot, 457
healing of, 377–378
mobilization of, 371
supplements, for foot orthoses, 205*t*
Sole, of shoe, 164
Sole wedge, 172, 173*f*
Solid-ankle, cushion-heel (SACH) foot
for bilateral transtibial amputations, 662
features of, 569–570, 570*f*
gait in, 30
for Syme prostheses, 596
Solid-ankle foot orthosis (SAFO), 226–229, 227*f*
force systems in, 228*f*
indications for, 228–229
Somatosensory system, 261–262
age-related and pathologic conditions of, 524*b*
examination of, 522–524
for feedback, 53
SOMI brace, 355, 356*f*
Sorbothane, 150
Sound limb, care of, 677–678
Spastic diplegic cerebral palsy, 285*b*. *See also* Cerebral palsy
clinical questions for, 75*b*
gait in, 121–123, 123*f*, 123*b*
orthotic options for, 251*b*
Spastic quadriplegic cerebral palsy, 285*b*
Spasticity, deep tendon reflexes in, 265–267
Specialized activity feet, 573, 573–574*f*
Specificity, neural plasticity and, 57
Speed of walking, in orthotic rehabilitation, 250
Spina bifida, 273*t*
flaccidity in, 268
gait in, 124, 124–125*b*, 125*f*
Spinal cord injury, 274–275*t*
clinical questions for, 75*b*
orthoses for, 287–288*b*
Spinal cord injury, ambulation after, 28–29

Spinal dysfunction, orthoses for, 349–369
Spinal orthoses
  biomechanics of, 349–350
  cervicothoracic and thoracic, 355–356
  lumbosacral, 358–359
  nomenclature for, 350*t*
  for scoliosis
    biomechanics of, 360
    braces for, 362–365
    complications with, 365
    prescription for, 365–366
  team approach to, 349
  thoracolumbar, 356–358
Spine
  curvature of (*see* Scoliosis)
  three-column concept of, 350–351, 351*f*
SpineCor brace, 364–365
Spiral fractures, 331–332, 332–333*f*
Splints
  air, postoperative, 398
  for burn injuries
    advantages/disadvantages of, 396*b*
    of axilla and shoulder, 397
    of elbow and forearm, 397, 397*f*
    of face and mouth, 399, 399*f*
    of lower extremity, 398–399
    of neck, 396–397
    purposes/fabrication of, 396
    of trunk and pelvis, 398
    of wrist and hand, 398, 398*f*
  classification of, 370, 371*f*
  defined, 336
  for fractures
    complications of, 342–344
    as immobilization strategy, 334–339
    materials for, 336–337
  for neuromuscular disorders, 274–275*t*, 279
Split-thickness grafts, 390
Sports
  children with limb loss in, 735, 736*f*
  classification of, 726
  organizational support for, 725–726
  prosthetics in, 735–736, 736*f*
  summer paralympic, 726–730
    archery, 726, 726*f*
    athletics (track and field), 727, 727*f*
    badminton, 727
    canoe, 727
    cycling, 727
    equestrian, 727–728
    fencing, 728
    powerlifting, 728, 728*f*
    rowing, 728
    rugby, 728
    sailing, 728–729
    shooting, 729
    sitting volleyball, 729
    swimming, 729
    table tennis, 729
    taekwondo, 729
    triathlon, 728
    wheelchair basketball, 729–730
    wheelchair tennis, 729
  transtibial prostheses and, 63*b*
Stability, tasks for, 42–43, 42*f*
Stainless steel, 147
Stairs, MPK and, 716–718
Stance phase, 709–715
  asymmetric step length, 709–710, 711*f*
  gait deviations observed during, 108
  loading response in, 709
Stance phase *(Continued)*
  rockers of, 223, 224*f*
  SAFO progression through, 227–228
  subtalar neutral position in, 206
  training solutions in, 709, 710*f*
Stance-control knee-ankle-foot orthoses, 243–245, 243*f*, 244–245*t*
Standard biomechanical orthosis, 203, 204*f*
Standard shoe sizes, 167, 167*t*
Standing frames, 246–247
Static alignment, 126–127, 682, 683*t*
Static ankle foot orthoses, 226–230
Static hip abduction orthosis, 323, 323*f*
Static orthoses for hand, 372, 373*f*
Static postural control, 269
Static progressive orthoses, for hand, 373–374, 374*f*
Static weight-bearing closed kinetic chain examination, of foot/ankle, 196–198, 196–197*f*
Stationary-ankle flexible-endoskeletal (SAFE), Syme foot, 596
Steel, 146–147
Step length, 102
Step width, 103
Steplite Syme Foot, 596
Step-over-step descent, 705*f*
Steppage gait, 109
Stockinet
  for casting, 337
  for compression, 535–537, 538*f*
Stovepipe Syme prosthesis, 591, 591–592*f*
Strapping, for hand orthoses, 383, 383*f*
Strength training, preprosthetic
  lower extremity, 671–673, 672–673*t*
  upper extremity, 789, 789*f*
Stress
  mechanical
    foot ulceration and, 451
    splinting and, 379, 380*f*
  orthoses and, 379, 380*f*
Stress fractures, 333
Stretch resistant materials, 381–382, 381*f*, 382*t*
Stretching exercises
  for amputation, 545, 545*f*
  for burns, 395
  for elderly, 25
Stride length, 102
  in limitations in range of motion, 671*t*
Stroke, 270–271*t*
  central nervous system and, 260
  gait after, 28
  orthoses for, 286–287*b*
Stroke volume (SV), 15, 17*f*
Structural curve, in scoliosis, 361–362*t*
Structural malalignment, of foot, 200
Subtalar joint (STJ), 185, 185*f*
Subtalar neutral position (STN)
  forefoot orientation in, 193–195, 193*f*
  for rearfoot examination, 188, 191*f*
  reliability of, 206
  in stance, 206
Suction, for transtibial prosthetics, 616
Summer paralympic sports, 726–730
  archery, 726, 726*f*
  athletics (track and field), 727, 727*f*
  badminton, 727
  canoe, 727
  cycling, 727
  equestrian, 727–728
  fencing, 728
Summer paralympic sports *(Continued)*
  powerlifting, 728, 728*f*
  rowing, 728
  rugby, 728
  sailing, 728–729
  shooting, 729
  sitting volleyball, 729
  swimming, 729
  table tennis, 729
  taekwondo, 729
  triathlon, 728
  wheelchair basketball, 729–730
  wheelchair tennis, 729
Superficial nerves, 376, 377*b*
Superficial partial-thickness burns, 390, 390*f*
Supination, joint motion in, 186
Support frame, wheelchair, 406
Supracondylar suspension, for transtibial prosthetics, 614, 614–615*f*
Supracondylar/suprapatellar suspension, for transtibial prosthetics, 615, 615*f*
Supramalleolar orthoses (SMOs), 231, 231*f*
Surface adaptation, of foot, 187
Surgical debridement, of foot ulcers, 458, 459*b*
Surgical management, of neuromuscular disorders, 275–276
Suspension, for transtibial prosthetics, 612–618
Swimfoot, with moveable ankle, 574*f*
Swimming, Paralympic, 729
Swing phase
  gait asymmetry and, 714–715
  in gait cycle, 103
  gait deviations observed during, 108
  in transfemoral prosthesis, 135–136, 649
  in transtibial prosthetic gait, 129–130
  in transtibial prosthetics, 631
Syme amputation, 435*t*, 486–487, 486*f*
  case example, 588–590*b*, 589–590*f*
  postoperative care for, 590
  procedures for, 577–578, 578*f*, 590–600
  prosthetic management of, 590–595
    alignment issues, 597–600, 597–598*f*, 600*f*, 602*f*
    clearance value, 596
    dynamic response, 596
    nonarticulating, 596
Symptomatic neuromata, 479–480
Systematic reviews
  Cochrane, 79*t*
  critical appraisal of, 83*b*
  locating citations, 80
  PEDro, 79*t*, 96–99*t*
  PubMed, 89*t*
  quality indicators for, 78*b*
  searching for, 82
  as sources of evidence, 78–79
Systems review
  for adaptive seating, 425
  for lower extremity dysvascular amputation, 668
  in postoperative and preprosthetic care, 509
Systolic blood pressure, segmental, 447–448, 449*f*

T

Table tennis, Paralympic, 729
Taekwondo, Paralympic, 729
Talar bulge, 198
Talipes equinovarus, 192
Talocrural joint (TCJ)
  range of motion, 190–191, 191*f*
  structure of, 184–185, 185*f*

Talus, 184–185, 185*f*
Targeted muscle reinnervation (TMR), 116
Targeted nerve implantation (TNI), in neuroma, 497
Tarsometatarsal joints, 186
Task, nature of, in motor control, 41–44, 41–42*f*, 43*b*
Task success reinforcement, 59
Technical analysis form, for orthotic prescription, 150–153, 151–152*f*, 154*f*
Technologies, 144–163
  in gait assessment, 110
  processing, 149
Temporal parameters
  in instrumented gait analysis, 110
  in motor learning, 47
Temporal values, in transfemoral prosthetic gait, 132
Tendinitis, Achilles, 177
Terminal devices
  for body-powered prosthesis, 768–769, 768–769*f*
  for toddlers, 746*f*, 747, 747*b*
Terminal extrinsic feedback, 52*b*
Terminal impact, transfemoral prostheses and, 650
Terminal stance
  in gait cycle, 105*f*, 106
  in transfemoral prosthetic gait, 134
  in transtibial prosthetics, 129, 630–631, 630*f*
Terminal swing, in gait cycle, 106–108, 107*f*
Test-retest reliability, 85*t*
Tests and measures
  for lower extremity dysvascular amputation, 668–669, 668–669*t*
  in wheelchair assessment, 425–427
Texas Foot Risk Classification, 465*t*
Textbooks
  locating evidence in, 78
  quality indicators for, 78*b*
Thalamus, 261
Thermoforming, 148
Thermold shoes, 167, 168*f*, 170–171
Thermoplastic materials
  for foot orthoses, 204
  for hand orthoses, 380–383
  for splints, 396, 397*f*
Thermoplastic orthoses
  ankle-foot, 229–230
  hinged, 236, 236*f*
  knee-ankle-foot, 237–238, 241*b*, 241*f*
  thoracolumbosacral, 364
Thermoplastic thoracolumbosacral orthosis (TLSO), 357–358, 364
Thermoplastics, 147–148
Thermosetting materials, 148–149
Thickness, of burn injuries, 389–390, 390*f*
Thickness of thermoplastics, 382
Third-degree burns, 390, 390*f*
Thomas heels, 173–174, 174*f*
Thomas test, 515, 515*f*
Thoracic orthoses, 355–356
Thoracic spine, orthoses for, 355–356
Thoracolumbar spine
  fractures of, 351*b*
  orthosis for, 356–358
3D printers, 161
3D scanners, 161
Three-column burst fractures, 351
Three-stage models, of motor learning, 47, 47*t*
Tibia
  cast braces for, 340, 340–341*f*
  foot structure and, 184–185
  fractures of, 332*f*, 335*f*, 338
Tibial torsion
  assessment of, 198, 199*f*
  internal, 168
Tibial varum/valgum, 197, 197*f*
Tibiofemoral joint
  anatomy of, 295–297, 295*f*
  motion of, 296*f*, 298
Tibiofibular alignment, 197, 197*f*
Tics, pharmacological interventions for, 276–278*t*
Tilt-in-space frame wheelchair, 418*t*
Timed Up and Go (TUG), in gait, 118
Timing, in neural plasticity, 58
Tinetti Performance Oriented Mobility Assessment, 525–526
Tip, of shoe, 164–165, 165*f*
Tissue healing, 377–378, 378*f*, 378*b*
Tissue precautions, for hand orthoses, 376–377, 377*b*, 377*f*
Titanium, 147
Toddlers
  hip dysplasia in, 323
  with limb deficiency
    with lower-limb loss, 754, 755*b*
    psychosocial factors in, 742–743, 742*b*
    terminal devices for, 746*f*, 747, 747*b*
    with upper-limb amputation, 746–748, 746*f*, 747*b*
  spastic diplegic cerebral palsy in, 75*b*
Toe box, of shoe, 165, 165*f*
Toe box stretcher, 174*f*
Toe conformer splints, 398–399
Toe fillers, 582–587, 585*f*
Toe sign, 198*f*
Toe (third) rocker of stance, 106, 223, 224*f*
Toe walking, 168
Toes
  amputations of, 484–486, 484*f*
  deformities of, 175
  examination of, 198, 198*f*
  structure of, 186
Tongue, of shoe, 164–165, 165*f*
Topical agents, for burns, 391
Toronto hip-knee-ankle foot orthosis, 326, 326*f*
Torque, 103, 113
Torque absorber
  for high-level amputations, 658, 659*f*
  in shank, 635–636
  in transtibial prosthetics, 622
Torsion, tibial/femoral, 198, 199*f*
Total body size area (TBSA), of burns, 390, 391*f*
Total contact cast (TCC), for foot ulcers, 462, 462*f*
Total elastic suspension belt, in transfemoral prostheses, 641, 642*f*
Total hip arthroplasty, 328–329
Total surface-bearing (TSB) socket, for transtibial amputation, 608–609, 609–610*f*
Trabecular bone, 317, 318*f*
Track and field, Paralympic, 727*f*
Trail orienteering, with limb loss, 732
Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), for burns, 395
Transcutaneous oxygen pressure ($TcPO_2$), 448–449, 473*t*
Transfemoral amputation, 491–492, 491–492*f*
  for burn injuries, 401*f*
  defined, 435*t*
  incidence of, 435
  muscle performance and motor control in, 516
  for peripheral arterial disease, 436
  rehabilitation for, 443
Transfemoral prostheses, 635–653
  alignment of, 132, 642
    frontal, 644–645, 644*f*
    sagittal, 642–644, 644*f*
  base of support in, 646
  case example in, 643*b*, 645–647*b*
  components of, 635
  elevated vacuum (subatmospheric) suspension, 640–650
  in energy expenditure, 648, 648*b*
  evaluation of, 645*f*
  gait, 132–136, 648
    abducted, 648–649
    alignment in, 132
    deviations in, 136–137, 136–138*t*
    initial contact and loading response in, 132–133
    midstance in, 133–134, 134*f*
    normal, 646
    preswing in, 135
    swing phase in, 135–136
    temporal values in, 132
    terminal stance in, 134
  improper donning of, 647
  knee instability in, 649, 649*f*
  knee unit, 636–637
    axis, 636–637, 637*f*
    braking mechanism of, 637–640
    hydraulic, 638, 638*f*
    microprocessor, 638
    pneumatic, 638
    stance control, 637, 637*f*
    swing phase control of, 637–638
  lanyard in, 641, 641*f*
  lateral trunk bending in, 648, 648*f*
  liners, 640
  osseous integration in, 642
  overuse of, 647
  patient innovation in, 647–648
  pelvic belt, 642, 642*f*
  rear view of, 646
  risk for, 515–516
  shank, 635–636, 636*f*
  shoe heel height and, 647, 647*f*
  side view of, 646
  Silesian belt, 641–642, 642*f*
  socket, 638
    ischial containment, 639–640, 639–640*f*
    materials of, 638
    shape of, 639, 639*f*
  stance compensations in, 648–650
  suction for, 640
  suspension systems, 640
    inadequate, 647
  total elastic suspension belt, 641, 642*f*
  worn or loosened components of, 647
Transference, in neural plasticity, 58–59
Transfers
  in amputation, 548–549
  postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
Transhumeral amputation, 766–767, 790–791*b*
Transition, tasks for, 42–43, 42*f*
Translatory motion, 153
  of knee, 299

Transmetatarsal amputation (TMA), 484–486, 485*f*
defined, 435*t*
footwear for, 173, 467
procedure for, 577, 578*f*
Transparent plastics, 145
Transpelvic amputation, prosthesis for, 655–657, 657*f*
Transtibial alignment, 126–127
Transtibial amputation, 435*t*, 487–489, 487–488*f*
clinical questions for, 74*b*
elective
interventions for, 550*b*
for severe arterial occlusive disease, 528*b*
muscle performance and motor control in, 516
rehabilitation for
evaluation of, 605–606, 606*t*
management of, 606–607, 606*t*, 607*f*
phases of, 606*t*
related to vascular disease, 625–626*b*
traumatic, 624–625*b*
Transtibial prosthetics, 605–634
additional features of, 621–627
diagnostic sockets, 624–627
dynamic pylon, 623–624, 623*f*
shock absorber, 622–623, 623*f*
torque absorber, 622
alignment of, 619–621, 620*f*
bench, 620
dynamic, 620–621, 621–622*f*
electronic, 621, 622–623*f*
height, 620
bilateral, therapeutic activities for, 43*f*
endoskeletal considerations in, 627–628, 627*f*
exoskeletal considerations in, 628, 628*f*
finishing techniques in, 627–628, 627*f*
gait, 125–130
alignment in, 126–127, 127*f*
deviations in, 130–131, 130–131*t*
energy cost of, 29, 30*t*
initial contact and loading response in, 128
midstance in, 128–129
preswing in, 129
studies of, 125–126
swing phase in, 129–130
terminal stance in, 129
gait deviations in, 628–631
initial contact, 628–629, 628–629*f*
midstance, 629–630
preswing, 631
swing phase, 631
terminal stance, 630–631, 630*f*
impression techniques for, 618–619, 618–619*f*
motor learning for, 63*b*
prescription of, 607
sockets for
design of, 607–609
interface materials for, 609–612, 610–612*f*
specialty prostheses, 633
suspension for, 612–618
troubleshooting in, 631–633, 632*f*
Transtibial residual limbs, management of, 536*t*
Transverse arch, of foot, 186–187
Transverse contact, 629, 629*f*
Transverse fractures, 332*f*
Transverse limb deficiency, 738
Transverse loading response, 629
Transverse midstance, 630
Transverse plane
foot deformities in, 198
foot/ankle examination in, 198, 198*f*
Transverse preswing, 631
Transverse rotation unit, 635, 636*f*
Transverse swing phase, 631
Transverse terminal stance, 631
Traumatic amputation, 475–476
case examples, 439*b*
considerations unique to, 476, 476*f*
hip disarticulation, 654
incidence of, 434, 475
limb salvage *vs.* reconstruction in, 475–476
overview of, 438, 438*t*
patient population of, 475
prosthetic gait in, 29, 30*t*
threatened limb, evaluation for, 475, 475*t*, 475*f*
Traumatic fractures, 333, 335*f*
Trendelenburg gait pattern, 108
Triathlon, Paralympic, 728
Trimlines, for lower extremity casts, 336*f*, 338
Triplanar structure, of foot, 184–187
Troubleshooting, in transtibial prosthetics, 631–633, 632*f*
Trunk burns, splints for, 398
Tubigrip sock, 535–537, 538*f*
Tucker-Winnipeg Syme prosthesis, 592–595
Tuning fork, for sensory assessment, 450, 451*f*
2-minute walk test
for endurance, 546–547
for preprosthetic rehabilitation, 555–556*t*
Two-stage models of motor learning, 47*t*, 48

U

UCBL orthosis. *See* University of California Biomechanics Laboratory (UCBL) orthosis
Ulcers, foot
amputation due to, 436
in Charcot arthropathy, 452, 452*f*
depth of, 456, 457*t*
drainage of, 456–457
examination of, 453, 454*f*
footwear for, 463–464, 463*f*
interventions for, 458–460, 461*t*
location of, 453–454
odor of, 456
pressure reduction for, 461–464
prevention of, 464–467, 465*t*, 466*b*
size of, 456
Ultrasonic debridement, of foot ulcers, 459
Ultraviolet C (UVC) light, for foot infection, 460
Uncompensated forefoot varus, 194, 194*f*
Uncompensated rearfoot varus, 192, 192*f*
Unilateral transtibial amputation (UTA), 131*b*, 525–526
University of California Biomechanics Laboratory (UCBL) orthosis, 230–231, 587
Unna dressing, 541–542
Upper extremities
bony prominences/nerves of, 377*b*
burns on
positions for, 396*b*
rehabilitation for, 400*b*
splints for, 398
congenital deficiency of, motor learning for, 63*b*
postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*, 517–518
Upper, of shoe, 164–165, 165*f*
Upper-extremity amputation, 759–783
athletes with, prosthetic components for, 735
bilateral, after electrocution, 795*b*
body-powered prosthesis for
components of, 768–770
control, 771–772
elbows for, 770, 771*f*
figure-of-eight harness, 771–772, 771–772*f*
figure-of-nine harness, with self-suspending sockets, 772
terminal devices for, 768–769, 768–769*f*
wrists for, 770, 770*f*
classification of, 759–760, 760*f*, 784–785, 785*f*
comprehensive evaluation after, 785–786
etiology of, 760–761
functional implications of, 784–785
incidence and causes of, 784
prosthesis for
activity-specific, 780, 781*f*
advancements in, 780
alternative control systems for, 779–780
body-powered, 793–794, 793*f*
disarticulation considerations, 766, 767*f*
documentation, 764*b*
donning and doffing of, 792, 792–793*f*
dual-site control, 778, 778*f*
electric components of, 773–776, 773*f*
electric elbows in, 776, 776*f*
electric terminal devices in, 773–775, 773–775*f*
electric wrists in, 775, 776*f*
externally powered control, 776–780
fitting of, 761*t*
hybrid, 780
myoelectric, 777–779, 777*b*, 777*t*, 794
options for, 762–765, 762*f*
partial-hand, 766, 766–767*f*
passive functional, 765–766
pattern recognition control, 778–779, 779*f*
prescription, 762–765, 763*b*, 763*t*, 764*f*
residual limb hygiene and care of, 791
restorations of, 765–766, 765*f*
socket designs for, 764–765
transradial and transhumeral considerations, 766–767
rehabilitation after, 744–750, 784
advanced functional skills training, 794–795, 794*f*, 796*f*
basic prosthetic training in, 791–796
for children, 744–750, 745*f*, 746*b*
controls training and functional use training in, 792–793
current research and advancement in, 796
edema control in, 786–787, 787*f*
postoperative care in, 785–786
preprosthetic care in, 761–762, 761*t*, 761*f*
preprosthetic training in, 788–791
prosthetic plan in, 791
questions to consider in, 788, 791, 795
stages of, 785–796
wearing schedule in, 791–792
residual limb, length of, 759–760, 760*f*
US Paralympic Committees, 725–726
Use-dependent plasticity (UDP), 59

V

"Vacuum bag" lamination, 149
Valgus/varus, forefoot
assessment of, 193–195, 193–194*f*
orthoses for, 205
pregnancy and, 169

Validity, of outcome measures, 85, 85*t*, 556
Valves, cardiac, aging of, 16
Vamp, of shoe, 164–165, 165*f*
Vancouver Scar Scale, 393, 393*b*
Variable position orthotic knee joints, 243, 243*f*
Variable practice, 49*b*, 51
Varus, rearfoot
  examination of, 191–192, 192*f*
  orthoses for, 205
Vascular assessment, of neuropathic foot, 447–450, 449–451*f*
Vascular compromise, 377
Vascular injury, postfracture, 342
Vaulting
  during stance, 108, 135
  transfemoral prostheses and, 650, 651*f*
Velcro closure shoes/sandals, 167, 168*f*
Velocity, gait, 103, 118
  foot amputation and, 580, 580*f*
  oxygen consumption and, 28, 28*f*
Venous refill time, 473*t*
Ventilation, control of, 20
Verbal channels, for extrinsic feedback, 52*b*
Vertebral compression fracture (VCF), 355–356
Vertebral end plates, 361–362*t*
Vertebral growth plate, 361–362*t*
Vertebral ring apophyses, 361–362*t*
Vessels, in amputation, 480
Veterans Administration Prosthetic Center Syme prosthesis, 591
Vicon motion systems, 111–112
Viscoelastic foams, 415
Viscoelastic polymers, 150
Visual system
  age-related and pathologic conditions of, 524*b*
  for feedback, 53
  in motor control, 262
Visual-perceptual system, 262

W

Waddling gait, 109
Wagner classification, of diabetic ulcers, 472*t*
Waist belt, for transtibial prosthetics, 612–613, 613*f*
Walkabout Orthosis, 245–246
Walker, in amputation, 548–549
Walking
  as rehabilitation measure, 250
  transfemoral prosthetic gait and, 648
Walking casts, 590
Walking shoes, 170–171
Walking Speed, 118, 555–556*t*
Walking splints, 462
Water sports, limb loss and, 732–734, 733*f*
Wearing schedule, in rehabilitation, after upper-extremity amputation, 791–792
Wedge shoes, 463, 463*f*
Wedges
  for forefoot deformity, 205
  heel, 172, 172*f*
  for rearfoot deformity, 205
  sole, 172, 173*f*
Weight
  of patient, prosthetic foot and, 567–568, 567*f*
  post-burn stabilization of, 401
Weight acceptance, in gait cycle, 103–105
  initial contact in, 103–104, 104*f*
  loading response in, 104–105, 104*f*
Weight-bearing examination
  of neuropathic foot, 461–462
  postfracture, 342
  static, of foot/ankle, 196–198, 196–197*f*
Weight-relieving ankle-foot orthoses, 229–230
Welt, of shoe, 164
Wheel locks, wheelchair, 416*t*
Wheelchair basketball, 729–730
Wheelchair Skills Test, 555–556*t*
Wheelchair tennis, 729
Wheelchairs, 406–430, 547–548
  accessing, 419
  advantages/disadvantages of, 418*t*
  assessment for
    components of, 406, 416*t*
    simulation techniques/equipment, 426, 426*f*
  biomechanics of, 421–422
  components of, 406, 407*f*, 416*t*
  delivery of, 428
  documentation for, 428
  frame of, 417–419, 418*t*
  manual, 417*f*, 419–423
  ordering of, 427–428
  pelvic stability and, 417
  plan/prescription for, 425
  powered, 412*f*, 418*t*, 423–424, 423–424*f*
  pressure management by, 411–412, 411*f*
  problems with, 420–421*t*
Wheelchairs *(Continued)*
  proper size/setup, 411
  propulsion of, 422
  seating system
    classification of, 413
    for function/comfort, 412
    indications for use of, 408–411*t*
    materials used in, 415
    problems for, 413*t*
  standards for, 427*t*, 429
  state of the art, 429
  training for, 421–422, 428
Whirlpool therapy, for foot ulcers, 459
Whole-task training, 51–52
Winter paralympic sports, 730–731
  Alpine skiing, 730, 730*f*
  curling, 731
  Nordic skiing, 730–731
  sled (sledge) hockey, 731
  snowboarding, 731, 731*f*
Wood, in fabrication, 147
Work reintegration, postoperative assessment of, 506–507*b*
World Health Organization (WHO), disablement framework, 2, 6, 7*f*
Wound care
  for burns, 391
  for foot ulcers, 457–467
Wound healing
  assessment, 513–515, 514*f*
  in lower limb amputation, 481
  in upper-extremity amputation, 786
Wounds
  assessment of, 453–457
  burns, healing of, 392–393
  classification systems for, 457*t*
  normal healing of, 447
Wrists
  for body-powered prosthesis, 770, 770*f*
  burns on, 398, 398*f*
  fractures of, 386–387*b*, 386*f*
Wrought aluminum alloys, 147

Y

Yield strength, 146–147

Z

Zinc oxide-impregnated semirigid dressing, for postoperative edema, 541–542